INFORMATION REDACTED PURSUANT TOTHE FREEDOM
OF INFORMATION ACT (FOIA), 5 U.S.C.552(B)(6)

This file represents a consolidation of multiple files sent by the manufacturer. Please use the bookmarks to navigate to each file. (Each bookmark label is the name of the original file.)

This file may have been split into multiple files after consolidation. Such files have the suffix “1 of n”appended to the end of the file name.

LINK:
CONTENT & A-Z

The Ultimate
Driving Machine®

OWNER'S MANUAL.

THE BMW 5 SERIES SEDAN.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1204
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 964 227 - II/20

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1205
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

WELCOME TO BMW.

Owner's Manual.

BMW 5 Series.

Thank you for choosing a BMW.

The more familiar you are with your vehicle, the better control you will have on the road. We therefore strongly suggest:

Read this Owner's Manual before starting off in your new BMW. Also use the Integrated Owner's Manual in your vehicle. It contains important information on vehicle operation that will help you make full use of the technical features available in your BMW. The manual also contains information designed to enhance operating reliability and road safety, and to contribute to maintaining the value of your BMW.

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

You can find supplementary information in the additional brochures in the onboard literature.

We wish you a safe and enjoyable ride.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1206
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

TABLE OF CONTENTS

After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

NOTES

Information 6
Owner's Manual media 14

QUICK REFERENCE

Entering 16
Set-up and use 20
On the road 24

CONTROLS

Cockpit 32
Operating state of the vehicle 37
iDrive 40
BMW Remote Software Upgrade 57
General settings 60
Personal settings 65
Connections 70
Opening and closing 78
Seats, mirrors, and steering wheel 103
Transporting children safely 117
Driving 122
Displays 140
Lights 157
Safety 164
Driving stability control systems 196
Driver assistance systems 200
Driving comfort 241
Climate control 243

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1207
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Interior equipment 256
Storage compartments 266
Cargo area 270

DRIVING TIPS

Things to remember when driving 276
Saving fuel 281

MOBILITY

Refueling 288
Wheels and tires 290
Engine compartment 323
Operating materials 326
Maintenance 333
Replacing components 335
Breakdown assistance 343
Care 350

REFERENCE

Technical data 354
Appendix 357
Everything from A to Z 358

© 2020 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Reprinting, including excerpts, only with the written consent of BMW AG, Munich.
US English ID7 II/20, 03 20 490
Printed on environmentally friendly paper, bleached without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1208
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Information

Using this Owner's Manual

Orientation

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic is by using the index.

An initial overview of the vehicle is provided in the first chapter.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication

The Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can be obtained as a printed book from the service center.

The topics are also discussed in the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Additional sources of information

Service center

A service center will be glad to answer questions at any time.

Internet

Vehicle information and general information on BMW, for instance, on technology, are available on the Internet: www.bmwusa.com.

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

The Integrated Owner's Manual specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle. The Integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the Control Display.

BMW Driver's Guide app

The BMW Driver's Guide app specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle. The app can be displayed on smartphones and tablets.

BMW Driver's Guide Web

Driver's Guide Web shows the most suitable information for the selected vehicle. If possible, only equipment and functions that are actually installed in the vehicle will be explained. Driver's Guide Web can be displayed in any current browser.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1209
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Symbols and displays

Symbols in the Owner's Manual

Symbol	Meaning
	Precautions that must be followed in order to avoid the possibility of injury to yourself and to others as well as serious damage to the vehicle.
	Measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.
"..."	Texts in vehicle used to select individual functions.
›...‹	Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.
»...«	Responses generated by the voice activation system.

Action steps

Action steps to be carried out are presented as a numbered list. The steps must be carried out in the defined order.

1. First action step.
2. Second action step.

Enumerations

Enumerations without mandatory order or alternative possibilities are presented as a list with bullet points.

- First possibility.
- Second possibility.

Symbols on vehicle components

This symbol on a vehicle component indicates that further information on the component is available in the Owner's Manual.

Vehicle features and options

This Owner's Manual describes all models and all standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series. Therefore, this Owner's Manual also describes and illustrates features and functions that are not available in a vehicle, for example because of the selected optional features or the country-specific version.

This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

For any options and equipment not described in this Owner's Manual, refer to the Supplementary Owner's Manuals.

Your BMW service center is happy to answer any questions that you may have about the features and options applicable to your vehicle.

Status of the Owner's Manual

Basic information

The manufacturer of your vehicle pursues a policy of constant development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards. In rare cases, therefore, the features described in this Owner's Manual may differ from those in your vehicle.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's

Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

For Your Own Safety

Intended use

Heed the following when using the vehicle:

- Owner's Manual.
- Information on the vehicle. Do not remove stickers.
- Technical vehicle data.
- The traffic, speed, and safety laws where the vehicle is driven.
- Vehicle documents and statutory documents.

Warranty

Your vehicle is technically configured for the operating conditions and registration requirements applying in the country of first delivery, also known as homologation. If your vehicle is to be operated in a different country it might be necessary to adapt your vehicle to potentially differing operating conditions and registration requirements. If your vehicle does not comply with the homologation requirements in a certain country you may not be able to lodge warranty claims for your vehicle there. Further information on warranty is available from a service center.

Maintenance and repairs

Advanced technology, for instance the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires suitable maintenance and repair work.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you entrust corresponding procedures to a BMW center. If you choose to use another service facility, BMW recommends use of a facility that performs work, e.g., maintenance and repair, according to BMW specifications with properly trained personnel, referred to in the Owner's Manual as "another qualified service center or repair shop".

If work is performed improperly, for instance maintenance and repair, there is a risk of subsequent damage and related safety risks.

Improperly performed work on the vehicle paint can lead to a failure or malfunction of components, e.g., the radar sensors, and thereby result in a safety risk.

Parts and accessories

BMW recommends the use of parts and accessory products approved by BMW.

Approved parts and accessories, and advice on their use and installation are available from a BMW center.

BMW parts and accessories have been tested by BMW for their safety and suitability in BMW vehicles.

BMW warrants genuine BMW parts and accessories.

BMW does not evaluate whether each individual product from another manufacturer can be used with BMW vehicles without presenting a safety hazard, even if a country-specific official approval was issued. BMW does not evaluate whether these products are suitable for BMW vehicles under all usage conditions.

California Proposition 65 Warning

For vehicles sold in California, the law requires vehicle manufacturers to provide the following warning:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1211
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

⚠ Warning

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of Automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Batteries also contain other chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer. Wash your hands after handling. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly. Your vehicle is covered by the following warranties:

- New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- Rust Perforation Limited Warranty.
- Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty.
- Federal Emissions Performance Warranty.
- California Emission Control System Limited Warranty.

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

Your vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating conditions and homologation requirements in your country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish to operate your vehicle in another country or region, you may be required to adapt your vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and homologation requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

Maintenance

Maintain the vehicle regularly to sustain the road safety, operational reliability and the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Specifications for maintenance measures:

- BMW Maintenance system.
- Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models.
- Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

If the vehicle is not maintained or is improperly maintained, this could result in serious damage to the vehicle. Such damage is not covered by the BMW New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Refer to chapter engine oil change regarding recommended service intervals for oil changes.

Data memory

General information

Electronic control devices are installed in the vehicle. Electronic control units process data they receive from vehicle sensors, self-generate or exchange with each other. Some control units are necessary for the vehicle to function safely or provide assistance during driving, for instance driver assistance systems. Furthermore, control units facilitate comfort or infotainment functions.

Information about stored or exchanged data can be requested from the manufacturer of the vehicle, in a separate booklet, for example.

Personal reference

Each vehicle is marked with a unique vehicle identification number. Depending on the country, the vehicle owner can be identified with the vehicle identification number, license plate and corresponding authorities. In addition, there are other options to track data collected in the vehicle to the driver or vehicle owner, for instance, via the ConnectedDrive account that is used.

Operating data in the vehicle

Control units process data to operate the vehicle.

For example, this includes:

- Status messages for the vehicle and its individual components, e.g., wheel rotational speed, wheel speed, deceleration, transverse acceleration, engaged safety belt indicator.
- Ambient conditions, e.g., temperature, rain sensor signals.

The processed data is only processed in the vehicle itself and generally volatile. The data is not stored beyond the operating period.

Electronic components, e.g. control units and ignition keys, contain components for storing technical information. Information about the vehicle condition, component usage, maintenance requirements events or faults can be stored temporarily or permanently.

This information generally records the state of a component, a module, a system, or the environment, for instance:

- Operating states of system components, for instance, fill levels, tire inflation pressure, battery status.
- Malfunctions and faults in important system components, for instance lights and brakes.
- Responses by the vehicle to special situations such as airbag deployment or engagement of the driving stability control systems.
- Information on vehicle-damaging events.

The data is required to perform the control unit functions. Furthermore, it also serves to recognize and correct malfunctions, and helps the vehicle manufacturer to optimize vehicle functions.

The majority of this data is volatile and is only processed within the vehicle itself. Only a small share of the data is stored event-related in event or fault memories.

When servicing, for instance during repairs, service processes, warranty cases, and quality assurance measures, this technical information can be read out from the vehicle together with the vehicle identification number.

A dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop can read out the information. The socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis required by law in the vehicle is used to read out the data.

The data is collected, processed, and used by the relevant organizations in the service network. The data documents technical conditions of the vehicle, helps with the identification of the fault, compliance with warranty obligations and quality improvement.

Furthermore, the manufacturer has product monitoring duties to meet in line with product liability law. To fulfill these duties, the vehicle manufacturer needs technical data from the vehicle. The data from the vehicle can also be used to check customer claims for warranty and guaranty.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1213
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Fault and event memories in the vehicle can be reset when a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop performs repair or servicing work.

Data entry and data transfer into the vehicle

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, comfort and individual settings can be stored in the vehicle and modified or reset at any time.

For example, this includes:

- Settings for the seat and steering wheel positions.
- Suspension and climate control settings.

If necessary, data can be transferred to the entertainment and communication system of the vehicle, for instance via smartphone.

This includes the following depending on the respective equipment:

- Multimedia data such as music, films or photos for playback in an integrated multimedia system.
- Address book data for use in conjunction with an integrated hands-free system or an integrated navigation system.
- Entered navigation destinations.
- Data on the use of Internet services.

This data can be stored locally in the vehicle or is found on a device that has been connected to the vehicle, e.g., a smartphone, USB stick or MP3 player. If this data is stored in the vehicle, it can be deleted at any time.

This data is only transmitted to third parties upon personal request as part of the use of online services. The transmission depends on the selected settings for the use of the services.

Incorporation of mobile devices

Depending on the vehicle equipment, mobile devices connected to the vehicle, for instance smartphones, can be controlled via the vehicle control elements.

The sound and picture from the mobile device can be played back and displayed through the multimedia system. Certain information is transferred to the mobile device at the same time. Depending on the type of incorporation, this includes, for instance position data and other general vehicle information. This optimizes the way in which selected apps, for instance navigation or music playback, work.

There is no further interaction between the mobile device and the vehicle, such as active access to vehicle data.

How the data will be processed further is determined by the provider of the particular app being used. The extent of the possible settings depends on the respective app and the operating system of the mobile device.

Services

General information

If the vehicle has a wireless network connection, this enables data to be exchanged between the vehicle and other systems. The wireless network connection is realized via an in-vehicle transmitter and receiver unit or via personal mobile devices brought into the vehicle, for instance smartphones. This wireless network connection enables 'online functions' to be used. These include online services and apps supplied by the vehicle manufacturer or by other providers.

Services from the vehicle manufacturer

Where online services from the vehicle manufacturer are concerned, the corresponding functions are described in the appropriate place, for instance the Owner's Manual or manufacturer's website. The relevant legal information pertaining to data protection is provided there too. Personal data may be used to perform online services. Data is exchanged over a secure connection,

for instance with the IT systems of the vehicle manufacturer intended for this purpose.

Any collection, processing, and use of personal data above and beyond that needed to provide the services must always be based on a legal permission, contractual arrangement or consent. It is also possible to activate or deactivate the data connection as a whole. That is, with the exception of functions and services required by law such as Assist systems.

Services from other providers

When using online services from other providers, these services are the responsibility of the relevant provider and subject to their data privacy conditions and terms of use. The vehicle manufacturer has no influence on the content exchanged during this process. Information on the way in which personal data is collected and used in relation to services from third parties, the scope of such data, and its purpose, can be obtained from the relevant service provider.

Event Data Recorder EDR

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder EDR. The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were fastened.
- How far, if at all, the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

EDR data is recorded by your vehicle only if a nontrivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data, for instance name, gender, age, and crash location, are recorded.

However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Vehicle identification number

Engine compartment

The vehicle identification number can be found in the engine compartment, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1215
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Windshield

The vehicle identification number can also be found behind the windshield.

iDrive

It is also possible to display the vehicle identification number via iDrive.

Additional information:

Displaying the vehicle identification number and software part number, refer to page 71.

Reporting safety defects

For US customers

The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration NHTSA, in addition to notifying BMW of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or BMW of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may call the toll-free hotline 1-800-333-0510. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety.

Owner's Manual media

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

General information

Media at a glance

You can use various media formats to call up the content in the Owner's Manual. The following Owner's Manual media formats are available:

- Printed Owner's Manual.
- Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

Printed Owner's Manual

Concept

The printed Owner's Manual describes all standard, country-specific, and optional features offered with the series.

General information

The Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can be obtained as a printed book from the service center.

Supplementary Owner's Manuals

Also follow the Supplementary Owner's Manuals, which are included in addition to the onboard literature.

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

Concept

The Integrated Owner's Manual specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle.

The Integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the Control Display.

Selecting the Owner's Manual

1. HOME Press the button.
2. "CAR"
3. "Owner's Manual"
4. Select the desired method of accessing the contents.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1217
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Scrolling through the Owner's Manual

Turn the Controller, until the next or previous contents are displayed.

Context help

General information

The Integrated Owner's Manual can be accessed from any menu. Depending on the selected function, either the associated description or the main menu of the Integrated Owner's Manual will be displayed.

Opening via iDrive

Change directly to the Options menu from the function on the Control Display:

1. OPTION Press the button.
2. "Help"

Opening when a Check Control message is displayed

Directly from the Check Control message on the Control Display:

"Owner's Manual"

Programmable memory buttons

General information

The entry points into the Owner's Manual can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly.

Storing

1. Select the desired entry point via iDrive:
   - ▷ "Keyword search"
   - ▷ "Picture search"
   - ▷ "Operating tips"
   - ▷ "Quick reference"
   - ▷ "Topics"
   - ▷ "Quick link"
2. 1 ... 7 Press and hold the desired button until the displayed bar on the Control Display has loaded completely.

Executing

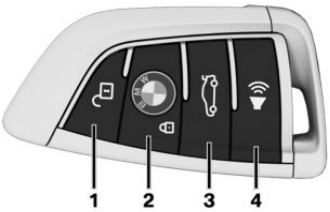
1 ... 7 Press the corresponding button.

The owner's manual is directly displayed at the selected entry point.

Entering

Opening and closing

Buttons on the vehicle key



1 Unlocking

2 Locking

3 Opening the trunk lid

4 Press and hold or press three times in quick succession: panic mode

Press briefly: pathway lighting

Unlocking the vehicle

Press the button on the vehicle key.

Depending on the settings, either only the driver's door or all vehicle access points are unlocked.

If only the driver's door is unlocked, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key after unlocking.

The windows and the glass sunroof are opened, as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Press the button on the vehicle key.

All vehicle access points are locked.

Buttons for the central locking system

Overview

Buttons for the central locking system.

Locking

Press the button with the front doors closed.

The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

Unlocking

Press the button.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

- ▷ Press the button on the vehicle key and hold for at least 3 seconds.
- ▷ Briefly press the button on the vehicle key three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1219
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Comfort Access

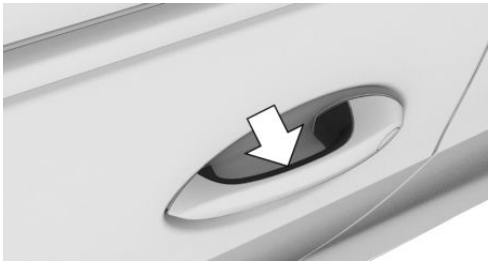
Concept

The vehicle can be accessed without operating the vehicle key.

Carrying the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket, is sufficient.

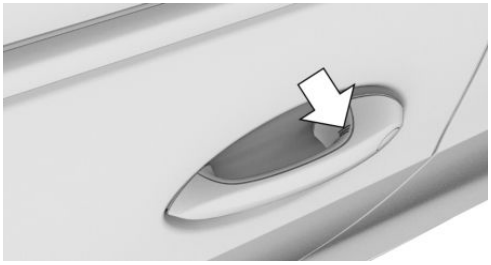
The vehicle automatically detects the vehicle key when it is in close proximity or in the car's interior.

Unlocking the vehicle



Grasp the handle of a vehicle door completely.

Locking the vehicle



Touch the grooved surface on the handle of a closed vehicle door with your finger for approx. 1 second without grasping the door handle.

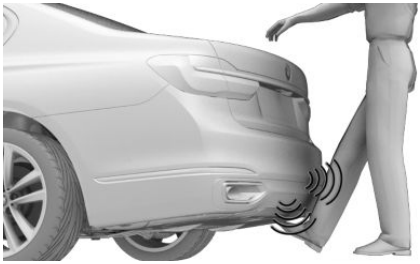
Opening and closing the trunk lid with no-touch activation

Concept

The trunk lid can be opened and closed with no-touch activation using the vehicle key you are carrying.

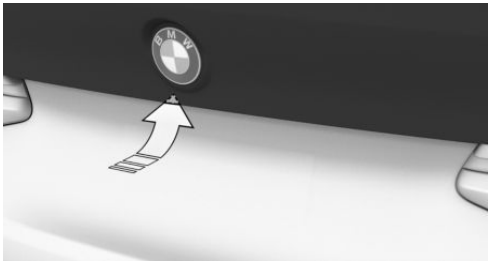
Performing the foot movement

1. Stand in the middle behind the vehicle at approx. one arm's length away from the rear of the vehicle.
2. Wave a foot under the vehicle in the direction of travel and immediately pull it back. With this movement, the leg must pass through the ranges of both sensors.



Trunk lid

Opening



▷ Unlock the vehicle and then press the button on the outside of the trunk lid.

▷ Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1220
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Depending on the setting, the doors may also be unlocked.

Without automatic tailgate operation: closing

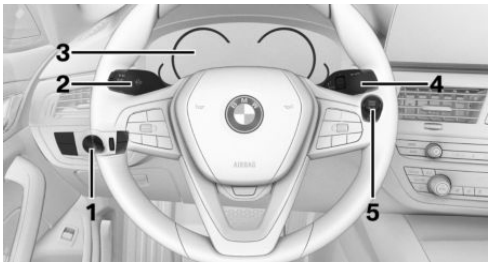
Close the trunk lid manually.

With automatic tailgate operation: closing

Press the button on the inside of the trunk lid.

Displays, control elements

In the vicinity of the steering wheel



1 Light switch element
2 Turn signal indicator, high beams
3 Instrument cluster
4 Wipers
5 Start/Stop button

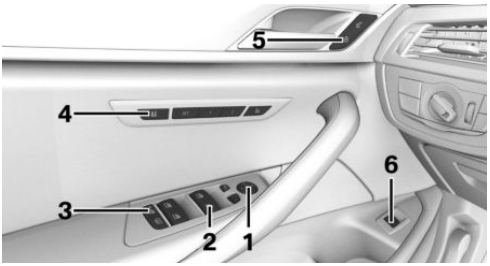
Indicator/warning lights

Instrument cluster

The indicator/warning lights can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

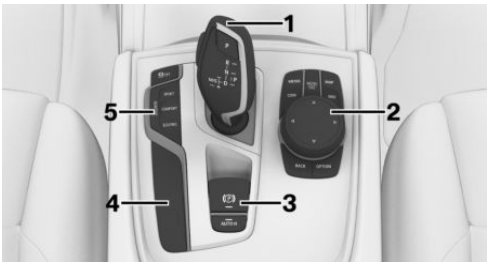
Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when the engine is started or standby state is switched on.

Driver's door



1 Exterior mirrors
2 Power windows
3 Safety switch
4 Seats, comfort features
5 Central locking system
6 Opening the trunk lid

Switch console



1 Selector lever
2 Controller
3 Parking brake, Automatic Hold
4 Parking assistance systems
5 Driving Dynamics Control

iDrive

Concept

The iDrive combines the functions of many switches. These functions can be operated via the Controller.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1221
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Buttons on the Controller

Button	Function
MENU	Opens the main menu.
MEDIA	Opens the Media/Radio menu.
COM	Opens the Communication menu.
MAP	Opens navigation map.
NAV	Opens destination input menu for navigation.
BACK	Opens the previous display.
OPTION	Opens the Options menu.

Voice activation

Activating the voice activation system

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the signal.
3. Say the command.

This symbol indicates that the voice activation system is active.

No other commands may be available. In this case, operate the function via iDrive.

Terminating the voice activation system

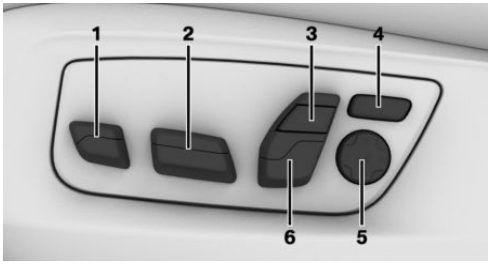
Press the button on the steering wheel or ›Cancel‹.

This symbol indicates that the voice activation system is deactivated.

Set-up and use

Seats, mirrors, and steering wheel

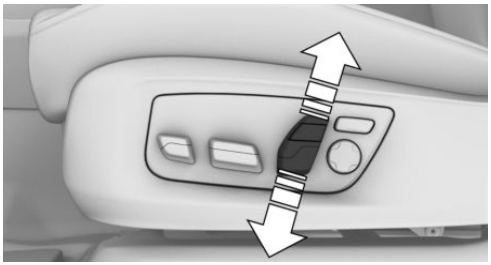
Electrically adjustable seats



1 Thigh support
2 Forward/backward, height, seat tilt
3 Upper backrest
4 Backrest width
5 Lumbar support
6 Backrest tilt, head restraint

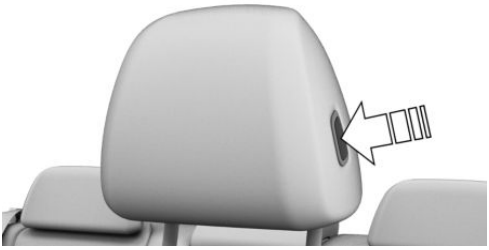
Adjusting the head restraint

Adjusting the height: power head restraints



Push switch up or down.

Adjust distance: manual head restraints



- Back: press the button and push the head restraint toward the rear.
- Forward: pull the head restraint toward the front.

Adjusting the distance: power head restraints

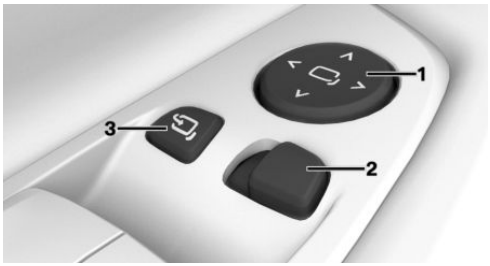
The head restraint is automatically repositioned when the upper backrest is adjusted.

Side extensions

Fold the side extensions forward to increase lateral support.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1223
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

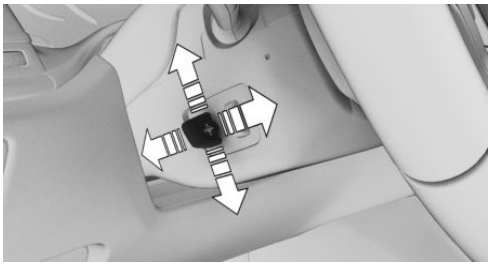
Adjusting the exterior mirrors



1 Adjusting
2 Selecting a mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor
3 Folding in and out

Adjusting the steering wheel

Electrical steering wheel adjustment



Press the switch to adjust the forward/back position and height of the steering wheel to the seat position.

Memory function

Concept

The following settings can be stored and, if necessary, retrieved using the memory function:

- Seat position.
- Exterior mirror position.
- Steering wheel position.
- Height of the Head-up Display.

Storing

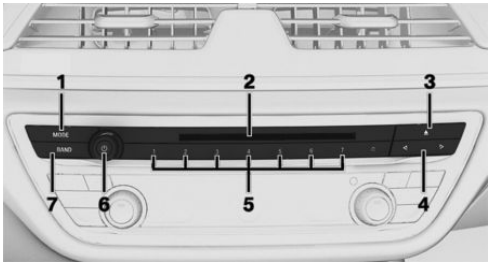
1. Set the desired position.
2. SET Press button on the door. The writing on the button lights up.
3. Press the desired button 1 or 2 at the door while the writing is lit. A signal sounds.

Calling up settings

Press the desired button 1 or 2.

Infotainment

Radio



1 Changing the entertainment source
2 CD/DVD drive
3 Eject CD/DVD
4 Changing the station/track
5 Programmable memory buttons
6 Sound output on/off, volume
7 Changing the waveband
Waveband/satellite radio

Navigation destination entry

Entering a destination via quick search

1. NAV Press the button on the Controller.
2. "Where to?"
3. Enter at least two letters or characters.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1224

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

The search term may be completed automatically in gray print.

Press or move the controller up to apply the suggested search term.

4. OK Select the symbol, if needed.

   Results are displayed in a list.
5. "Search location": select search location.
6. Move the Controller to the right.
7. Select desired destination.

Connecting a mobile phone

General information

After the mobile phone is connected once to the vehicle, the mobile phone can be operated using iDrive and the steering wheel buttons.

Connecting the mobile phone via Bluetooth

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. If necessary, select the following setting: "Telephone"
3. "Connect new phone"
4. To perform additional steps on the mobile phone, refer to the mobile phone owner's manual: e.g., search for or connect the Bluetooth device or a new device.

   The Bluetooth name of the vehicle appears on the mobile phone display. Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle.
5. Depending on the mobile device, a control number is displayed or the control number must be entered.
   - ▷ Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number on the display of the device.

     Confirm the control number on the device and on the Control Display.
   - ▷ Enter and confirm the same control number on the device and via iDrive.

   The device is connected and displayed in the device list.

Using the phone

Accepting a call

Depending on the equipment, incoming calls can be answered in several ways.

- ▷ Via iDrive:

  "Accept"
- ▷ /

  Press the corresponding button on the steering wheel.
- ▷ Via the selection list in the instrument cluster:

  Use the thumbwheel on the steering wheel to select: "Accept"
- ▷ Via touch screen: tap on the corresponding entry on the Control Display.
- ▷ Via gestures: point the index finger into the direction of the Control Display.

Dialing a number

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. If necessary, "Telephone"
3. "Dial number:"
4. Enter the numbers.
5. Select the symbol. The connection is established via the mobile phone to which this function has been assigned.

Establish the connection via the additional phone:

1.

Press the button.
2. "Call via"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1225
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Apple CarPlay preparation

Concept

CarPlay allows certain functions of a compatible Apple iPhone to be used via Siri voice operation and iDrive.

Functional requirements

- Compatible iPhone.
  iPhone 5 or later with iOS 7.1 or later.
- Corresponding mobile contract.
- Bluetooth, WLAN, and Siri voice operation are activated on the iPhone.

Switching on Bluetooth and CarPlay

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. Select the following setting:
   "Apple CarPlay"
6. Activate the function.

Pairing the iPhone with CarPlay

Pair iPhone via Bluetooth with the vehicle.

Select CarPlay as the function:

"Apple CarPlay"

The iPhone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1226

On the road

Driving

Drive-ready state

Switching on drive-ready state

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

Switching off drive-ready state

Steptronic transmission:

1. Engage selector lever position P with the vehicle stopped.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

   The engine is switched off.
3. Set the parking brake.

Auto Start/Stop function

The Auto Start/Stop function switches the engine off automatically while stationary to save fuel. The engine starts automatically under the following preconditions:

Steptronic transmission:

- By releasing the brake pedal.
- When Automatic Hold is activated: step on the accelerator pedal.

Parking brake

Setting

Pull the switch.

The LED on the switch and the indicator light in the instrument cluster are illuminated.

Releasing

With drive-ready state switched on:

Steptronic transmission: press the switch while the brake is pressed or selector lever position P is set.

The LED and indicator light go out.

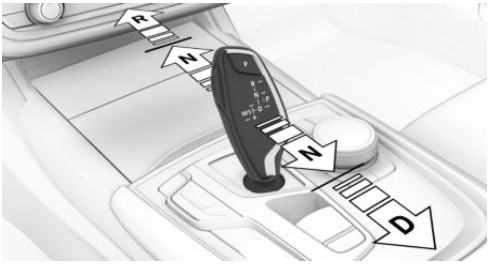
The parking brake is released.

Steptronic transmission: parking

The parking brake is automatically set if the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold and the drive-ready state is switched off or the vehicle is exited.

Steptronic transmission

Engaging selector lever position D, N, R



- Drive mode D.
- Neutral N.
- R is reverse.

With the driver's safety belt fastened, briefly push the selector lever in the desired direction, past a resistance point, if needed. The selector lever returns to the center position in each case.

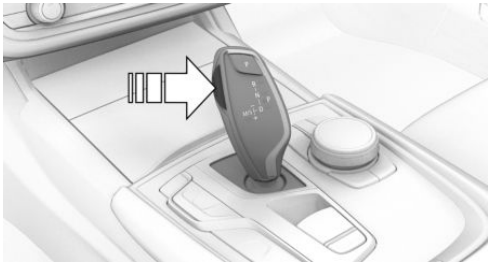
To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a drive mode or reverse, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1227
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

A selector lever lock prevents the inadvertent shifting to selector lever position R or the inadvertent shifting from selector lever position P.

Engage selector lever position R only when the vehicle is stationary.

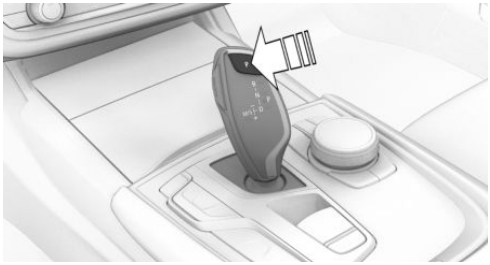
Releasing the selector lever lock



Press the button.

Engaging P

Engage selector lever position P only when the vehicle is stationary.



Press button P.

Steptronic transmission, Sport program and manual mode

Activate the Sport program/manual mode:

Press the selector lever to the left from selector lever position D.

Manual mode:

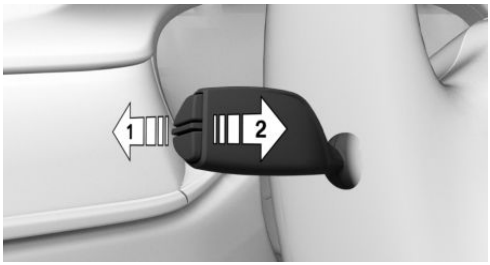
- To shift down: press the selector lever forward.
- To shift up: pull the selector lever rearwards.

End the sport program/manual mode:

Push the selector lever to the right.

High beams, headlight flasher, turn signal

High beams, headlight flasher



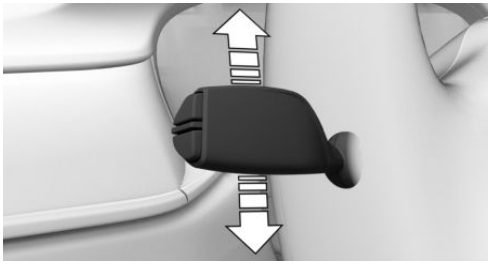
Push the lever forward or pull it backward.

- High beams on, arrow 1.

  The high beams light up when the low beams are switched on.
- High beams off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1228

Turn signal



- On: press the lever past the resistance point.
- Off: press the lever past the resistance point in the opposite direction.
- Triple turn signal activation: lightly tap the lever up or down.
- Brief signaling: press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

Lights and lighting

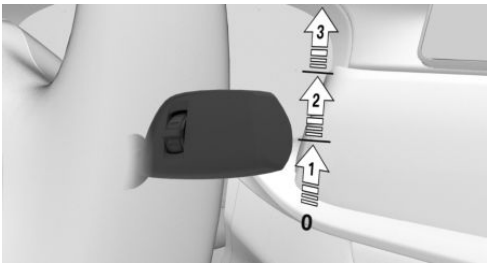
Light functions

Symbol	Function
	Front fog lights.
	Night vision.
	Lights off. Daytime running lights.
	Parking lights.
	Automatic headlight control. Adaptive light functions.
	Low beams.
	Instrument lighting.
	Right roadside parking light.
	Left roadside parking light.

Wiper system

Switching the wipers on/off and brief wipe

Switching on

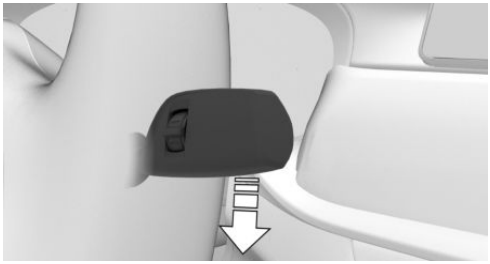


Press the lever up until the desired position is reached.

- Resting position of the wipers: position 0.
- Rain sensor: position 1.
- Normal wiper speed: position 2.
- Fast wiper speed: position 3.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1229
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Brief wipe and switching off

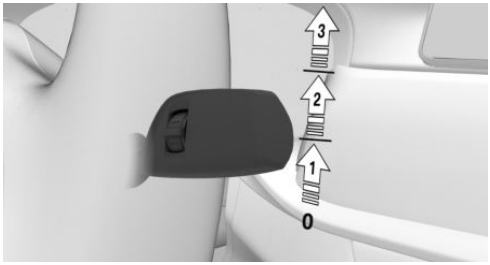


Press the lever down.

- Switching off: press the lever down until it reaches its standard position.
- Brief wipe: press the lever down from the standard position.

Rain sensor

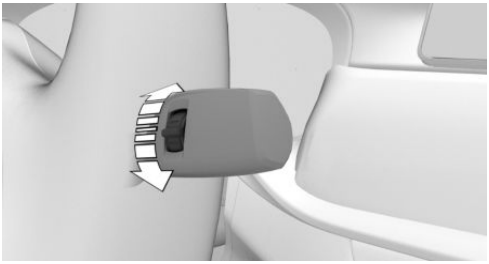
Activating/deactivating



To activate: press the lever up once from its standard position, arrow 1.

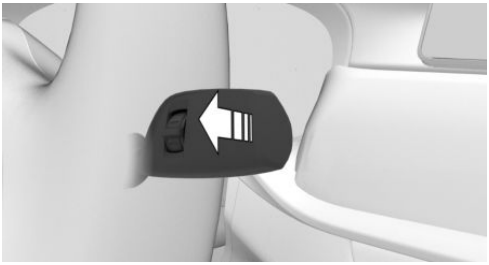
To deactivate: press the lever back into the standard position.

Adjusting the sensitivity



Turn the thumbwheel on the wiper lever.

Cleaning the windshield



Pull the wiper lever towards you.

Climate control

Automatic climate control

Button	Function
	Temperature.
A/C	Climate control operation.
MAX A/C	Maximum cooling.
AUTO	AUTO program.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1230

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

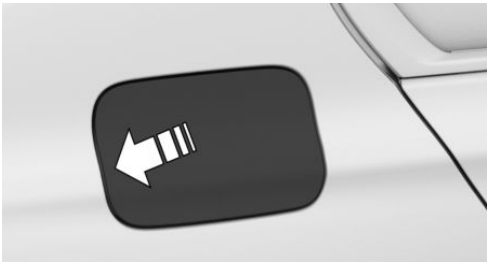
Button	Function
	Recirculated-air mode.
	Air flow, manual.
	Air distribution, manual.
	SYNC program.
	Defrost and defog window.
	Rear window defroster.
	Active seat ventilation.
	Seat heating.
	Opening the Climate menu. For example, for the following settings: upper body temperature adjustment, parked-car ventilation.

Refueling

Refueling

Fuel cap

1. To open the fuel filler flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.



2. Turn the fuel cap counterclockwise.
3. Place the fuel cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.

Gasoline

For the best fuel efficiency, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.

Wheels and tires

Tire inflation pressure specifications

The tire inflation pressure specifications can be found in the tire inflation pressure table in the printed Owner's Manual.

After correcting the tire inflation pressure

With runflat tires:

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

With Tire Pressure Monitor:

The corrected tire inflation pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the correct tire settings have been made.

With tires that cannot be found in the tire pressure values on the Control Display, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM.

Checking the tire inflation pressure

Regularly check the tire inflation pressure and correct it as needed:

- ▷ At least twice a month.
- ▷ Before embarking on an extended trip.

Cleaning the wheels

The friction during hard braking may produce brake dust and make the rims dirty. Brake dust can be removed by cleaning the rims. BMW recommends using vehicle care and cleaning products from BMW.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1231
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Electronic oil measurement

Functional requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of normal driving with the combustion engine running.

Displaying the engine oil level

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"

Different messages appear on the Control Display depending on the engine oil level. Pay attention to these messages.

Adding engine oil

General information

Safely park the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before adding engine oil.

Adding engine oil

Only add engine oil when the message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Observe the quantity to be added in the message.

Take care not to add too much engine oil.

Observe recommended engine oil types.

Providing assistance

Hazard warning flashers

The button is located in the center console.

Breakdown assistance

BMW Roadside Assistance

Via iDrive:

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "BMW Assist"
4. If necessary, "BMW Roadside Assistance"

   A voice connection is established.

ConnectedDrive

Concierge service

The BMW Assist Concierge service offers information on events, gas stations or hotels, and provides phone numbers and addresses. Many hotels can be booked directly by the BMW Concierge service. The Concierge service is part of the optional BMW Assist Response Center.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "BMW Assist"
3. If necessary, select the entry for the Concierge Service.

A voice connection to the Concierge service is established.

Teleservices

Teleservices are services that help to maintain vehicle mobility.

Teleservices can comprise the following services:

- BMW Roadside Assistance.
- BMW Accident Assistance.
- Service Request.
- Teleservice Report.
- Teleservice Battery Guard.
- Your dealer's service center.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1233
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1234

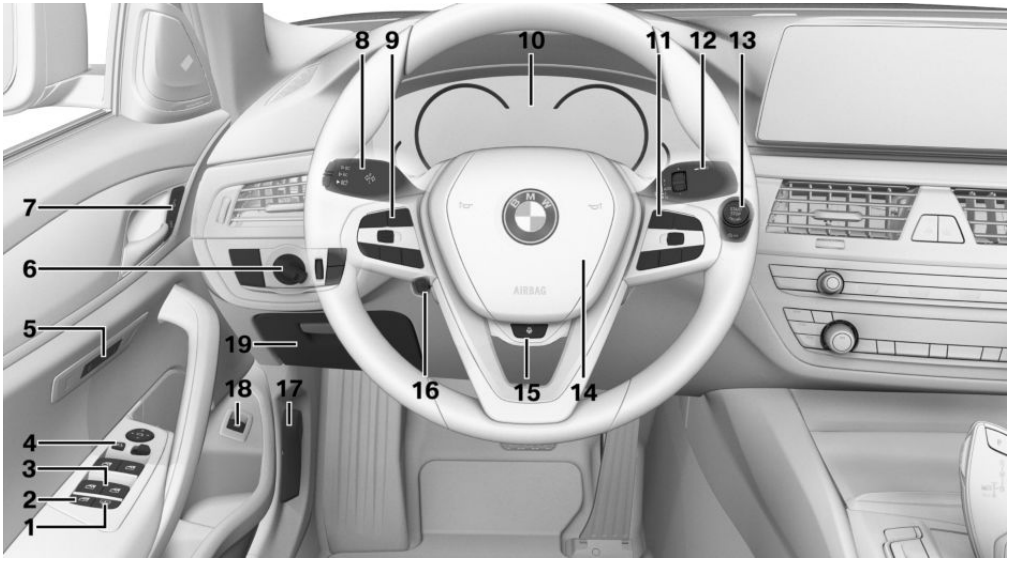
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Cockpit

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

In the vicinity of the steering wheel



1 Roller sunblind in the rear window 99

2 Safety switch 98

3 Power windows 97

4 Exterior mirror operation 111

5 Seating comfort features

SET Memory function 113

Massage function 114

6 Lights

Front fog lights 161

Night Vision 178

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1235
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Light switch 157

Lights off

Daytime running lights 159

Parking lights 158

Automatic headlight control 157

Adaptive light functions 159

High-beam Assistant 160

Low beams 158

Instrument lighting 162

Right roadside parking light 158

Left roadside parking light 158

7 Central locking system

Unlocking 88

Locking 88

8 Steering column stalk, left

Turn signal 130

High beams, headlight flasher 131

High-beam Assistant 160

Widgets in the instrument cluster 141

Trip data 152

9 Steering wheel buttons, left

Cruise control on/off 200

Active Cruise Control on/off 203

Steering and traffic jam assistant on/off 210

Cruise control: to store the speed

Pause or continue cruise control

Active Cruise Control: increase distance

Active Cruise Control: reduce distance

With steering and traffic jam assistant: adjust distance

Cruise control rocker switch

10 Instrument cluster 140

11 Steering wheel buttons, right

Selection lists 151

Volume, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6

Voice activation system 48

Changing the station/track, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6

Thumbwheel for selection lists 151

12 Steering column stalk, right

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1236

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Wipers 131

Rain sensor 132

Cleaning the windshield and headlights 133

13 Switching drive-ready state on/off 122

Auto Start/Stop function 122

14 Horn, entire surface

15 Heated steering wheel 113

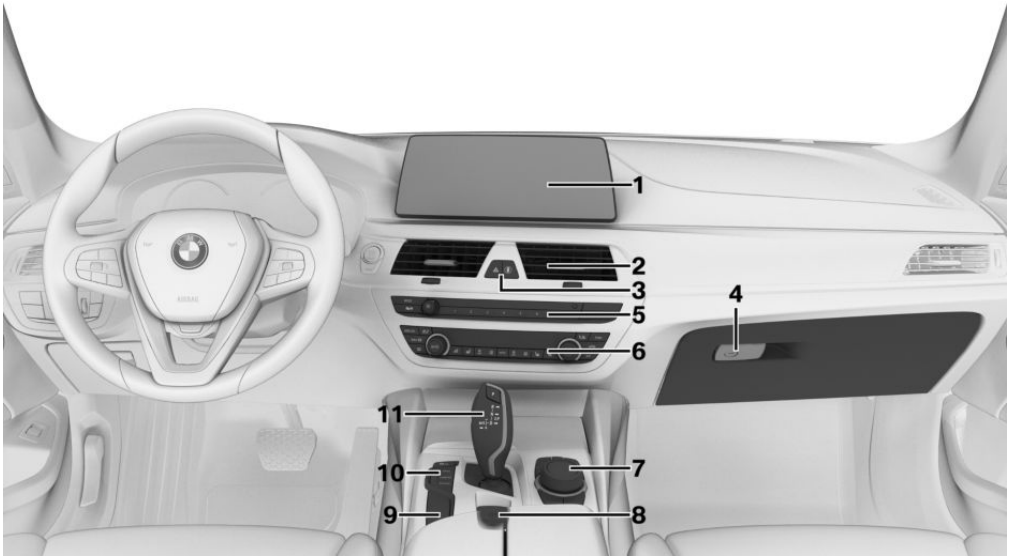
16 Adjusting the steering wheel 113

17 Unlocking the hood 324

18 Opening and closing the trunk lid 92

19 Glove compartment 267

In the vicinity of the center console



1 Control Display 43

2 Ventilation 248

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1237
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

3 Hazard warning system 343

Intelligent Safety 168

4 Glove compartment 266

5 Radio/multimedia, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication 6

6 Automatic climate control 243

7 Controller with buttons 43

8 Parking brake 127

Automatic Hold 128

9 PDC Park Distance Control 214

Without Surround View: rearview camera 219

Surround View 221

Cross traffic warning 238

Parking assistant 229

Remote Control Parking 234

Surround View: Panorama View 221

10

Driving Dynamics Control 125

SPORT driving mode

COMFORT driving mode

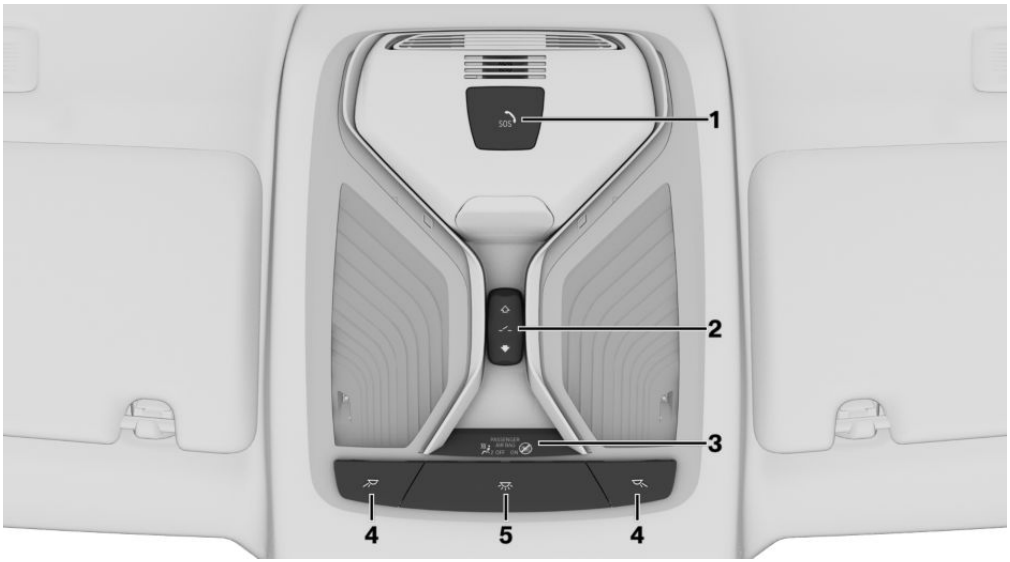
ECO PRO driving mode

ADAPTIVE driving mode

DSC Dynamic Stability Control 196

11 Steptronic transmission: selector lever 134

In the vicinity of the roofliner



1 SOS Emergency Request, SOS 345

2 Operating the glass sunroof 99

3 PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON Indicator light, front-seat passenger airbag 167

4 Reading lights 162

5 Interior lights 162

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1239
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Operating state of the vehicle

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

General information

Depending on the situation, the vehicle is in one of the three states:

- Idle state.
- Standby state.
- Drive-ready state.

Idle state

Concept

When the vehicle is in idle state, it is switched off. All power consumers are deactivated.

General information

The vehicle is in idle state prior to opening from the outside and after exiting and locking.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Automatic idle state

The idle state is automatically established under the following conditions:

- After several minutes, if no operation takes place on the vehicle.
- If the charge state of the vehicle battery is low.
- Depending on the setting via iDrive, if one of the front doors is opened when exiting the vehicle.

The idle state is not automatically established while a phone call is active.

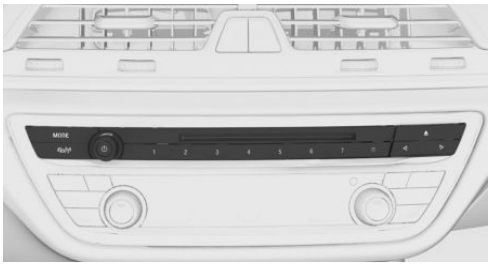
Establishing idle state when opening the front doors

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Access"
4. "Turn off vehicle after opening door"

Manual idle state

To establish idle state in the vehicle after end of trip:



Press and hold the button until the OFF indicator on the instrument cluster goes out.

Standby state

Concept

When standby state is switched on, most functions can be used while the vehicle is stationary. Desired settings can be adjusted.

General information

The vehicle is in the standby state after the front doors are opened from the outside.

Display in the instrument cluster

OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster. The drivetrain is switched off and standby state switched on.

Drive-ready state

Concept

Switching on drive-ready state corresponds to starting the engine.

General information

Some functions, such as DSC Dynamic Stability Control, can only be used with drive-ready state switched on.

Safety information

⚠ DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can enter into the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1241
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

NOTICE

In the case of repeated starting attempts or repeated starting in quick succession, the fuel is not burned or is inadequately burned. The catalytic converter can overheat. There is a risk of damage to property. Avoid repeated starting in quick succession.

Switching on drive-ready state

Concept

Drive-ready state is switched on via the Start/Stop button.

Steptronic transmission

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

The ignition is activated automatically for a brief time and is stopped as soon as the engine starts.

Most of the indicator/warning lights in the instrument cluster light up for a varied length of time.

Gasoline engine

Depending on the motorization, the full drive power may not be available for approximately 30 seconds after starting the engine. In this case, the vehicle will not accelerate as usual.

Display in the instrument cluster

When drive-ready state is switched on, the tachometer shows the current engine speed.

Switching off drive-ready state

Steptronic transmission

1. Engage selector lever position P with the vehicle stopped.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

   The engine is switched off. The vehicle switches into standby state.
3. Set the parking brake.

iDrive

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Operating concept

Concept

iDrive includes a large number of functions. These functions can be operated via the Controller and, depending on the equipment version, via touchscreen, voice activation system or gesture control.

Safety information

Warning

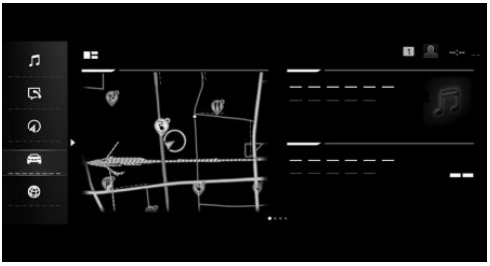
Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. As warranted, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.

Input and display

Main menu

General information

The main menu is divided into two areas. The left area contains menu items that can be used to call up all the iDrive functions. The right area contains widgets that provide quick access to certain functions.



Media/Radio

All functions of the entertainment system, e.g., radio stations or connection with external devices.

Communication

Phone and message functions, e-mail and calendar, and also the connection and management of mobile devices, such as smartphones.

Navigation

Access to the navigation system, destination input and traffic bulletins. Configurable map views and other functions, such as Points of Interest and areas to be avoided.

My Car

Information about vehicle status and trips. Access to the Integrated Owner's Manual and also administration of driver profiles and range of adjustments for vehicle and iDrive.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1243
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Apps

Management of apps, access to apps and vehicle functions. Additional apps can be purchased from the BMW Store.

Widgets

Widgets provide quick access to frequently used functions. The configured widgets display dynamic contents such as the navigation map, and serve as interfaces at the same time.

Letters and numbers

Letters and numbers can be selected when the destination is entered, for example.

Letters and numbers can be entered using the Controller and, depending on the equipment version, via touchscreen or voice activation system. The keyboard's display changes automatically.

Symbol	Function
abc ABC	Change between capital and lower-case letters.
␣	Enter a blank space.
EN	Switching between languages.
	Use voice activation.
OK	Confirm entry.
← →	Slide the input area to the left or right.

Entry comparison

When entering names and addresses, the choice is narrowed down with every letter and number and added automatically as needed.

Entries are continuously compared with data stored in the vehicle.

- Only those letters and numbers are offered during entry for which data is available.
- Destination search: place names can be entered in all languages that are available in iDrive.

Activating/deactivating the functions

Several menu items are preceded by a checkbox. The checkbox indicates whether the function is activated or deactivated. Selecting the menu item activates or deactivates the function.

☑ Function is activated.

☐ Function is deactivated.

Status information

General information

The status field can be found in the upper area of the Control Display. Status information is displayed in the form of symbols.

Radio symbols

Symbol	Meaning
HD	HD Radio station is being received.
SXM	Satellite radio is switched on.

Telephone symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Incoming or outgoing call.
	Missed call.
	Signal strength of cellular network.
	Network search.
	Cellular network is not available.
	The critical charge state of the mobile phone has been reached.
R	Roaming is active.
	Locating is active.
	SMS text message received.
	Message received.

Symbol	Meaning
	Reminder.
	Sending not possible.

Entertainment symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Music hard disk.
	Bluetooth audio.
	USB storage device.
	WLAN.

Other symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Check Control message.
	Sound output active.
	Sound output deactivated.
	Voice activation system active.
	Request for the current vehicle position.
	Checking the current vehicle position.
	Driver profile.
1	Messages.
	Service notifications.
	Information.
	Stop.
	Data protection.

Programmable memory buttons

General information

The iDrive functions can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly, for instance radio stations, navigation destinations, phone numbers and menu entries or pages in the Integrated Owner's Manual.

Settings are stored for the driver profile currently used.

Overview

1 ... 7 Programmable memory buttons

Storing a function

A function can be stored on a programmable memory button. A button with a stored function can be overwritten with another function.

1. Select function via iDrive, for instance radio station.
2. 1 ... 7 Press and hold the desired button until the displayed bar on the Control Display has loaded completely.

Executing a function

1 ... 7 Press the button.

The function will work immediately. This means, for instance that the number is dialed when a phone number is selected.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1245
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Displaying the key assignment

Touch buttons with finger. Do not wear gloves or use objects.

The assignment of the buttons is displayed in the upper area of the Control Display.

Deleting all button assignments

All button assignments can be deleted.

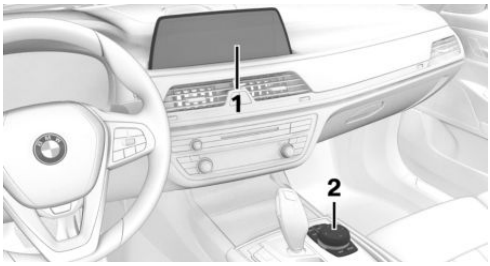
1. Press and hold buttons 1 and simultaneously for approx. 5 seconds.
2. "OK"

Control Display and Controller

Concept

The iDrive functions are displayed on the Control Display. The Control Display can be operated using the Controller, touchpad, and touch screen.

Overview



1 Control Display with touchscreen

2 Controller with buttons and touchpad

Control Display

Safety information

NOTICE

Objects in the area in the front of the Control Display can shift and damage the Control Display. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not place objects in the area in front of the Control Display.

Switching on/off automatically

The Control Display is switched on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked or as soon as the Control Display is needed for operation.

In certain situations, the Control Display is switched off automatically, for instance if no operation is performed on the vehicle for several minutes.

Switching on/off manually

The Control Display can also be switched off manually.

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Screen off"

Press the Controller or any button on the Controller to switch it back on again.

System limits

In the case of very high temperatures on the Control Display, for instance due to intense solar radiation, the brightness may be reduced down to complete deactivation. Once the temperature is reduced, for instance through shade or air conditioning, the normal functions are restored.

Controller

General information

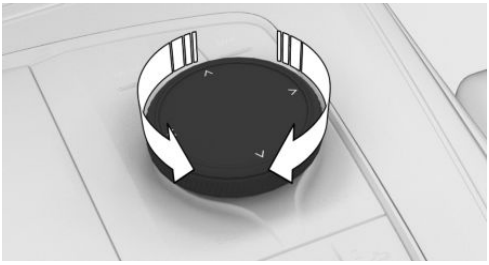
The buttons can be used to open the menus directly. The Controller can be used to select menu items and enter the settings.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1246
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

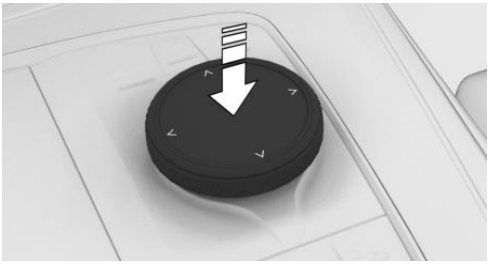
Some iDrive functions can be operated using the touchpad on the Controller.

Operation

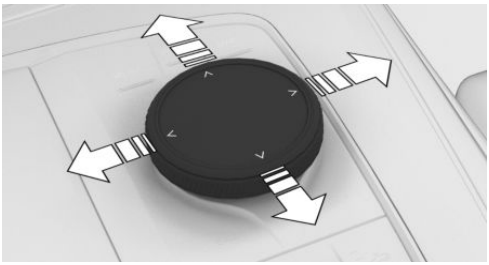
▷ Turn to switch between menu items, for example.



▷ Press to select a menu item, for example.



▷ Tilt in four directions to switch between displays, for example.



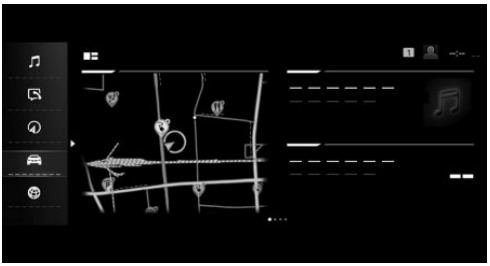
Buttons on the Controller

Button	Function
MENU	Opens the main menu.
MEDIA	Opens the Media/Radio menu.
COM	Opens the Communication menu.
MAP	Opens navigation map.
NAV	Opens destination input menu for navigation.
BACK	Opens the previous display.
OPTION	Opens the Options menu.

Operating via the Controller

Opening the main menu

MENU Press the button.



The main menu is displayed.

Selecting a menu

Selecting menu items

1. Turn the Controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.
2. Press the Controller.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1247
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Select a widget

1. Move the Controller in the main menu to the right.
2. Turn the Controller until the desired widget is selected.
3. Press the Controller.

It is also possible to select widgets in the instrument cluster.

Adjusting the menu

Adjusting widgets

The widgets can be adjusted in the main menu. It is possible to create multiple pages with widgets and switch between pages. The adjustments can only be performed when the vehicle is stationary.

Via iDrive:

1. Select the desired page in the main menu. Only the currently selected page can be adjusted.
2. Tip the Controller up.
3. "Adjust main menu"
4. Select the desired adjustment:
   - ▷ + Symbol and select desired widget: add new widget.

     The requested widget will be inserted in the relevant position. A maximum of four widgets can be displayed per page.
   - ▷ ✕ Select symbol: delete selected widget.
   - ▷ Add new page: "Add page".
   - ▷ Delete selected page: "Delete page".
   - ▷ Adjust the content of the widget: select widget.
5. "Done"

Adjusting menu contents

The display of menus "MEDIA", "COM" and "NAV" can be adjusted, for instance to remove the entries of functions that are not used from the menu.

Via iDrive:

1. Select the menu.
2. "Personalize menu"
3. Select menu items that should not be displayed.

Changing between displays

After a menu item is selected, for instance "Settings", a new display appears.

▷ Move the Controller to the left.

The current display closes and the previous display is shown.

▷

Press the button.

The previous display re-opens.

▷ Move the Controller to the right.

The new display opens.

An arrow indicates that additional displays can be opened.

Opening the Options menu

Press the button.

The "Options" menu is displayed.

The menu consists of various areas, for instance:

- ▷ "MEDIA": control options for the selected main menu.
- ▷ "Help": help for the selected menu.
- ▷ "Display off": system settings.

Entering letters and numbers

Input

1. Turn the Controller: select letter or number.
2. OK : confirm entry.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1248

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Deleting

Symbol	Function
⌫	Press the Controller: delete letter or number.
⌫	Hold the Controller down: delete all letters or numbers.

Using alphabetical lists

For alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries, the letters for which an entry exists can be displayed in a text box.

1. Turn the Controller to the left or right quickly.
2. Select the first letter of the desired entry.

   The first entry of the selected letter is displayed in the list.

Operation via touchpad

General information

Some iDrive functions can be operated using the touchpad on the Controller.

Selecting functions

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Touchpad"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Character input": enter letters and numbers.
   - ▷ "Map": use the map.
   - ▷ "Search fields": to write letters without selecting the list field.
   - ▷ "Audio confirmation": pronounces entered letters and numbers.

Entering letters and numbers

- ▷ Enter characters as they are displayed on the Control Display.
- ▷ Always enter associated characters, such as accents or periods so that the letter can be clearly recognized.
- ▷ The set language determines what input is possible. Where necessary, enter special characters via the Controller.

Entering special characters

Input	Operation
Delete a character.	Swipe to the left on the touchpad.
Enter a blank space.	Swipe to the right in the center of the touchpad.
Enter a hyphen.	Swipe to the right in the upper area of the touchpad.
Enter an underscore.	Swipe to the right in the lower area of the touchpad.

Using the map

The map in the navigation system can be moved via the touchpad.

Function	Operation
Move map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Enlarge/shrink map.	Drag in or out on the touchpad with fingers.
Display menu.	Tap once.

Operation via touchscreen

General information

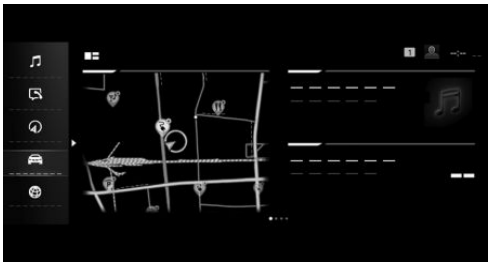
The Control Display is equipped with a touchscreen.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1249
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

You can tap on menu items and widgets. Touch the screen with your fingers. Do not use any objects.

Opening the main menu

Tap on the symbol.



The main menu is displayed.

Adjusting widgets

The widgets can be adjusted in the main menu. It is possible to create multiple pages with widgets and switch between pages. The adjustments can only be performed when the vehicle is stationary.

Via iDrive:

1. Select the desired page in the main menu. Only the currently selected page can be adjusted.
2. Tap the symbol in the main menu.
3. Select the desired adjustment:
   - ▷ + Tap symbol and select desired widget: add new widget.

     The requested widget will be inserted in the relevant position. A maximum of four widgets can be displayed per page.
   - ▷ × Tap symbol: delete selected widget.
   - ▷ Add new page: tap "Add page".
   - ▷ Delete selected page: tap "Delete page".
   - ▷ Adjust content of the widget: tap center of widget.
4. Tap "Done".

Showing/hiding the display bar

In the upper area of the Control Display, it is possible to show or hide a display bar with additional functions.

- ▷ To show the display bar, pull down the display bar at the top edge of the screen.
- ▷ To hide the display bar, pull up the display bar at the top edge of the screen.

Changing between displays

After a menu item is selected, a new display opens.

An arrow indicates that additional displays can be opened.

- ▷ Swipe to the left.
- ▷ Tap arrow.

The new display opens.

Entering letters and numbers

Input

1. Depending on the equipment version, tap the symbol on the touchscreen or a keyboard is displayed on the Control Display when the touchscreen is approached.
2. Enter desired letters and numbers.

Deleting

Symbol	Function
⌫	Tapping the symbol: deletes the letter or number.
⌫	Tapping and holding the symbol all letters: deletes all letters or numbers.

Using the map

The navigation map can be moved using the touchscreen.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1250

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Function	Operation
Move map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Enlarge/shrink map.	Drag in or out with the fingers.
Display menu.	Tap once.

Voice activation system

Concept

The voice activation system can be used to operate functions with spoken commands. The system supports you with announcements during input.

The voice control system and the feedback it provides are not a substitute for the printed or Integrated Owner's Manual.

General information

- Functions that can only be used when the vehicle is stationary can only be operated via the voice activation system to a limited extent.
- The system includes special microphones on the driver side and the front passenger side.
- ›...‹ denotes commands to use with the voice activation system.

Functional requirements

- A language must be set via iDrive that is supported by the voice activation system.

  To set the language, refer to page 62.
- Always say commands in the language of the voice activation system.

Activating the voice activation system

General information

There are various methods for activating the voice activation feature:

- Press the button on the steering wheel.
- Say the wake word ›Hello BMW‹ or a personal wake word.

This symbol indicates that the voice activation system is active.

Then say the command. No other commands may be available. In this case, operate the function via iDrive.

The voice activation can be terminated:

- Press the button on the steering wheel again.
- ›Cancel‹

This symbol indicates that the voice activation system is deactivated.

Button on the steering wheel

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the signal.
3. Say the command.

Wake word

General information

Speaking the wake word ›Hello BMW‹ or the personal wake word will start the system.

Preset wake word

The preset wake word ›Hello BMW‹ can be activated and deactivated.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1251
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

›Hello BMW‹ activates the preset and personal wake word.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. "Activation with "Hello BMW""

Personal wake word

In addition to a preset wake word ›Hello BMW‹, a personal wake word can be set up.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. "Personal wake word"
6. "Start recording"

   For "Start recording", online speech processing must be available and activated. Alternatively, the personal wake word can be entered using the Controller.
7. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Possible commands

General information

Most contents on the Control Display can be spoken as commands, e.g. menu items or list entries. Speak these list entries out loud exactly as they are shown in the list.

Say the commands and numbers with normal volume, emphasis, and speed.

The status of the voice recognition is displayed in the upper area of the Control Display.

Function examples

Menu items

The commands of the menu items are spoken just as they are selected via the Controller.

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. ›MEDIA‹
3. ›Presets‹

The stored stations are displayed on the Control Display.

Navigation

Destinations can be entered in the navigation system using the voice activation system. It is also possible to say Points of Interest or have traffic reports announced.

- ›Drive me to 300 Chestnut Ridge Road, Woodcliff Lake in New Jersey‹
- ›Take me home‹
- ›Are there any traffic messages‹

Communication

For example, when a mobile phone is connected, the voice activation system can be used to start calls or send SMS.

- ›Call John Doe on cell phone‹
- ›Dial the number 1 8 0 0 8 3 1 1 1 1 7‹
- ›New text message to John Doe: I'll be right there‹

Media and Radio

Most radio functions can be used via the Active Voice Recognition.

- ›Turn on music‹
- ›Music off‹
- ›Next title‹

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1252

Climate control

Most climate control functions can be used via voice.

- ›Activate climate control‹
- ›Deactivate air recirculation‹
- ›Temperature [...] at ...‹

Help on the voice activation system

- ›Voice commands‹: to have the available spoken commands announced.
- ›General information on voice control‹: have information on the operating principle of the voice activation system read out loud.
- ›Help‹: have help for the current menu read out loud.

Information for Emergency Requests

Do not use the voice activation system to initiate an Emergency Request. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change. This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a phone connection.

Instead, use the SOS button close to the interior mirror.

Additional information:

Emergency Request, refer to page 345.

Adjusting

Setting the language

The language to be used for voice activation and system announcements can be set.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. "System language"
6. Select the desired language.

Setting the voice dialog

You can set the system to use standard dialog or a short version.

The short version of the voice dialog plays back short messages in abbreviated form.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. "Response length"
6. Select the desired setting.

Speaking during voice output

It is possible to answer during inquiries of the voice activation system. The function can be deactivated if inquiries are often undesirably interrupted, for instance due to background noise or conversations in the vehicle.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. "Speaking during voice output"

Online speech processing

Online speech processing provides a dictation function, a natural method of entering destinations and improves the quality of voice recognition. To use the functions, data is transmitted to a service provider via an encrypted connection and stored locally there.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. "Online speech processing"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1253
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Adjusting the volume

Turn the volume button during the spoken instructions until the desired volume is set.

- The volume remains constant even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.
- The volume is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Using the voice activation system of the smartphone

A smartphone connected to the vehicle can be used via voice activation.

Activate voice command response on the smartphone for this purpose.

1. Press and hold the button on the steering wheel for approx. 3 seconds.

   Voice command response is activated on the smartphone.

2. Release the button.

   If activation is successful, a confirmation appears on the Control Display.

If it was not possible to activate voice command response, the list of Bluetooth devices appears on the Control Display.

Amazon Alexa Car Integration

Concept

Alexa is a digital voice-controlled assistant by Amazon. With Amazon Alexa Car Integration, Alexa can be used in the vehicle.

General information

Some of the Alexa functions are limited in the vehicle to prevent any impairment of safety while driving.

Functional requirements

- Connected Voice Services purchased via ConnectedDrive Store.
- Same ConnectedDrive account used in the vehicle and in the BMW Connected app.
- Vehicle added in the BMW Connected app.
- Amazon account and BMW account are linked in the BMW Connected app.
- Smartphone connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth or USB.

Activation in the BMW Connected app

The Amazon Alexa Car Integration is activated in the BMW Connected app.

Follow the instructions in the app.

Activation in the vehicle

An authorization for the use of Amazon Alexa Car Integration is required every time before starting a trip.

1. Authorizing Amazon Alexa Car Integration:
   - Connect the smartphone to the vehicle via Bluetooth.
   - Selects appropriate driver profile.

     Driver profiles, refer to page 66.

2. If necessary, press the button on the steering wheel and wait for signal tone.
3. Say activation word ›Alexa‹ and desired command.

   Information about the active function is displayed on the Control Display.

Malfunction

In case of a malfunction, switch off the engine and start the engine again.

System limits

- Certain noises can be detected and may lead to problems. Keep the doors, windows, and glass sunroof closed.
- Noises from the front passenger or the rear seat bench can impair the system. Avoid

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1254

making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.

- Major language dialects can cause problems with the voice recognition feature. Speak loud and clear.

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant

Concept

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is the personal assistant that expands the voice activation system with intelligent functions and improves the interaction in the vehicle.

General information

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is available depending on the national-market version. The use of the personal assistant is based on voice operation. The voice operation is enhanced with personal recommendations and messages as well as the automation of routines.

The personal assistant is connected to other digital services such as the Concierge service and is continually being developed. The full scope requires an active driver profile.

The BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is available in two variants:

- In the Guest profile: the variant is linked to a vehicle and cannot be personalized. Not all described functions are available to the full extent.
- With active Driver profile: the variant can be used and personalized in different vehicles. All described functions are available to the full extent.

Functional requirements

Enter the following settings to access the full range of functions:

- The Driver profile is activated.
- Relevant ConnectedDrive Services have been purchased via ConnectedDrive Store.
- Registered in the ConnectedDrive Store.
- "Online speech processing" is activated.
- "Synchronize driver profile" under "Personalization" is activated.

  "Data privacy", refer to page 65.
- All settings under "BMW ConnectedDrive" activated.

  "Data privacy", refer to page 65.

Example for function

1. Say the wake word ›Hello BMW‹ or a personal wake word.
2. ›Is my engine oil level still OK?‹

   The personal assistant provides information about the engine oil level.

Adjusting

Situational adaptation

General information

Depending on the situation, different conditions can be activated.

Condition	Description
"Do not disturb"	Incoming calls and some messages are not displayed.
"Do not learn"	Routines are no longer learned.
"Passenger on board"	Personalized variant only: private contents, e.g., e-mails, are not displayed.

Activating/deactivating

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "Personal assistant"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1255
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

4. "Situational adjustment"
5. Select the desired setting.

Automating routines

General information

The personal assistant can learn routines, e.g., the automatic activation of the seat heating from a specific external temperature. Rules are created for this purpose, which can be activated and deactivated at any time.

Creating a rule

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "Personal assistant"
4. "Automate habits"
5. Select the desired setting.

Functions

Caring Car

General information

Different vehicle functions in the car's interior are harmonized for the driver in a short-term program. A program takes 3 minutes.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Caring Car"
3. Select the desired channel.

The program can be stopped prematurely:

"End program"

Connected Command

General information

Connected Command enables passengers to control different functions in the vehicle via smartphone and the BMW Connected App and receive information about the trip.

Functional requirements

- The smartphone is connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth and WLAN.
- The BMW Connected app is installed on the smartphone.

Managing rights

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Select the desired setting for the respective device.

Owner's Manual via voice operation

Concept

You can ask simple questions about vehicle functions and the operation of the vehicle.

General information

The voice control system and the feedback it provides are not a substitute for the printed or Integrated Owner's Manual. The voice recognition and quality of the feedback may vary.

The system supports questions that begin with How or What.

Example for function

1. ›Hello BMW‹
2. ›How can the passenger airbag be deactivated‹

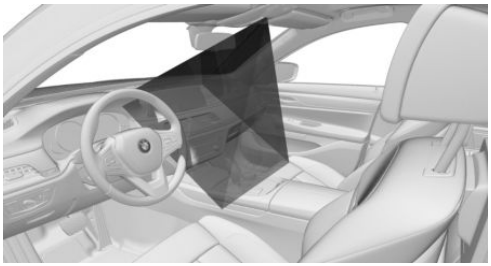
The voice activation system returns a feedback. When stationary, the section of the integrated Owner's Manual is displayed on the Control Display.

BMW Gesture Control

Concept

Several iDrive functions can be operated by hand motion using BMW Gesture Control.

Overview



The camera in the roofliner detects gestures that are carried out in the area of the center console at the height of the Control Display.

Activating/deactivating

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Gesture control"
5. "Gesture control"

Adjusting

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Gesture control"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Operating tips display": the possible gesture is shown on the Control Display.
   - ▷ "Audio confirmation": an acoustic signal is emitted once the gesture is recognized.

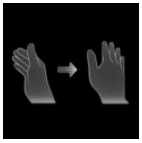
Carrying out gestures

Perform gestures underneath the interior mirror and next to the steering wheel.

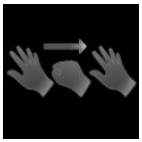
Execute gestures clearly.

The gestures can also be executed from the front-passenger side.

Possible gestures

Gesture	Operation	Function
	Move index finger forward and backward in the direction of the screen.	Accept call. Select a highlighted entry in a list during voice activation. Confirm pop-up.
	Move hand across the width of the Control Display in the direction of the front-passenger side.	Reject call. Close pop-up. Terminate voice activation.
	Slowly move hand clockwise in a circular pattern with the index finger stretched out forward. Gesture is detected after one circular motion.	Increase the volume.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1257
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Gesture	Operation	Function
	Slowly move hand counterclockwise with the index finger stretched out forward. Gesture is detected after one circular motion.	Reduce the volume.
	Pinch with thumb and index finger and move hand horizontally to the right or left.	Surround View: turn camera view. This gesture can only be executed while the vehicle is stationary.
	Move stretched out index and middle finger forward.	Individually assignable gesture.
	Move fist with thumb extended to the left back and forth.	Reverse Skip function. The previous music track is played.
	Move fist with thumb extended to right left back and forth.	Forward Skip function. The next music track is played.
	Stretch out five fingers, form a fist and stretch five fingers out again.	Individually assignable gesture.

Assigning gesture individually

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the following functions can be assigned to gestures that allow individual assignments:

- Destination guidance to home address.
- Voice command response.
- Mute/Playback
- Last calls.
- Control Display on/off
- Notifications.
- Music recognition
- NightVision on/off
- No function.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1258

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Select function

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Gesture control"
5. "Function assignment gesture 1" or "Function assignment gesture 2"
6. Select the desired setting.

System limits

Gesture recognition by the camera in the roof-liner can be disturbed by the following circumstances:

- The camera lens is covered.
- Objects are located on the interior mirror.
- The camera lens is dirty, clean camera lenses.

  Sensors and camera lenses, refer to page 353.
- The gesture is executed outside of the detection range.
- Wearing of gloves or jewelry.
- Smoking in the car's interior.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1259
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

BMW Remote Software Upgrade

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

BMW Remote Software Upgrade

Concept

Remote Software Upgrade can be used to update the software of the vehicle. Remote Software Upgrade makes new functions, functional enhancements or quality improvements available.

General information

BMW recommends performing the Remote Software Upgrade as soon as it becomes available.

The available data for Remote Software Upgrade is automatically loaded into the vehicle.

For reasons of safety, the loaded upgrade can only be installed when the vehicle is stationary. The installation is not installed until it was confirmed on the vehicle.

- The installation may take around 20 minutes.
- The installation cannot be terminated.
- The vehicle cannot be used during the installation.
- The vehicle can be exited during the installation.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

Functional requirement

The use of the Remote Software Upgrade requires an active ConnectedDrive contract.

Information about the version

General information

The information about the version contains a description of the updates that are included in the Remote Software Upgrade. During the download and after the installation has been completed successfully, the information about the version can be displayed on the Control Display. The information is available in the ConnectedDrive customer portal at any time.

Logging on to the ConnectedDrive customer portal on the Internet under:

www.bmw-connecteddrive.com.

Displaying information about the version

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. "Installed version:"

Safety information

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Search for and download of an upgrade

General information

There are various options to search for and download an upgrade:

- Automatic.
- Via iDrive.
- Via BMW Connected app.

Automatic download

The available data for Remote Software Upgrade is automatically loaded into the vehicle. The download does not require an approval.

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. "Search for upgrades"
6. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Via BMW Connected app

1. Download the available upgrade to the smartphone in the BMW Connected app.
2. Follow the instructions in the BMW Connected app.
3. Establish a simultaneous WiFi and Bluetooth connection between the smartphone and the vehicle.

   The data transfer of the upgrade from the smartphone to the vehicle occurs only while driving.
4. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Install the upgrade immediately

General information

After successful download completion, installation is offered once the vehicle is parked. The installation can be carried out immediately following the download.

Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

After the successful completion of the upgrade, booked services, for example RTTI, will be reactivated automatically while driving.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1261
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Functional requirements

- The battery is sufficiently charged.
- The external temperature is above 14 °F/-10 °C.
- Vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- Hazard warning system is switched off.
- Selector lever position P is engaged.
- Engine is sufficiently cooled down.

Preparing the vehicle

- Park the vehicle safely away from the public road.
- Cellular network reception must be ensured so that an error message can be sent, for instance if the installation is terminated.
- Close the windows.
- Close the glass sunroof.
- Close the trunk lid.
- Remove energy consuming devices, such as a mobile phone.
- The vehicle key is in the vehicle at the start of the installation.
- Switch off the exterior lighting.

Additional vehicle related functional requirements are shown on the Control Display.

Install the upgrade later

The installation of the upgrade can be carried out at a later time.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. "Start upgrade now"

   Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Functional limitations

During the upgrade, the majority of functions is temporarily unavailable, for instance:

- Hazard warning system.
- Central locking system.
- Parking lights.
- Horn.
- Alarm system.
- Emergency Request.
- Power windows.
- Glass sunroof.
- Checking the fuel filler flap lock.

The driver's door can be locked and unlocked from the outside using the integrated key.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, follow the instructions on the Control Display or in the BMW Connected app.

If the malfunction cannot be remedied, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

General settings

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Messages

Concept

The menu centrally displays all messages arriving in the vehicle in list form.

General information

The following messages can be displayed:

- Traffic messages.
- Check Control messages.
- Messages on service notifications.
- Communication messages, for example e-mails, SMS text messages or reminders.
- Messages from, e.g., the Concierge service or the BMW Connected app.
- Messages from the vehicle manufacturer.

The number of messages is additionally displayed in the status field.

The Messages menu can also be created as Widget.

Retrieving messages

Via iDrive:

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Select the desired message.

Deleting messages

All messages, except Check Control messages or messages from the vehicle manufacturer, can be deleted from the list.

Check Control messages or messages from the vehicle manufacturer are displayed as long as they are relevant.

Via iDrive:

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Select desired message, for instance. SMS.
4.

Press the button.
5. ▷ "Delete this notification"
   ▷ "Delete all notifications"

Adjusting

The following settings can be adjusted:

- Select the applications, from which messages will be permitted.
- All messages or a limited time period for received messages.

Via iDrive:

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. Select the desired setting.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1263
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Time

Setting the time zone

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time zone:"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the time

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time:"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired hours are displayed.
7. Press the Controller.
8. Turn the Controller until the desired minutes are displayed.
9. "OK"

Setting the time format

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time format:"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Automatic time setting

Depending on your vehicle's optional features, the time, date and, if needed, the time zone are updated automatically.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Automatic time setting"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Date

Setting the date

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Date:"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired day is displayed.
7. Press the Controller.
8. Make the settings for the month and year.
9. "OK"

Setting the date format

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Date format:"
6. Select the desired setting.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1264

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Language

Setting the language

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language:"
5. "System language"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the voice dialog

Set the voice dialog for the voice activation system.

Additional information:

Setting the voice dialog, refer to page 50.

Setting the units of measurement

Depending on the country version, you can set the units of measurement for some values, for instance consumption, distances, and temperature.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Units"
5. Select the desired menu item.
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Trip data settings

Concept

The intervals in which the trip data will be reset can be configured.

Resetting trip data

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Reset trip data"
5. Select the desired setting.

Speed warning

Concept

A speed limit can be set that when reached will cause a warning to be issued.

General information

The warning is repeated if the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed limit again, after it has dropped below it by 3 mph/5 km/h.

Adjusting

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Warning at:"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired speed is displayed.
7. Press the Controller.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1265
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Activating/deactivating

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Speed warning"

Setting your current speed as the speed warning

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Select current speed"

Driver Attention Camera

Concept

A camera that monitors driver activity is located in the instrument cluster. The camera evaluates the head position and eye opening and uses the data to analyze the attention of the driver. This system supports various vehicle assistance systems, e.g.:

- Fatigue alert.

Activating/deactivating

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Driver Attention Camera"
5. Select the desired setting.

System limits

The Driver Attention Camera may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- When the Driver Attention Camera is covered by the steering wheel rim.
- When the driver is wearing infrared impermeable sunglasses.

Activating/deactivating popup windows

For some functions, popup windows are displayed automatically on the Control Display. Some of these popup windows can be activated or deactivated.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Pop-ups"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Control Display

Brightness

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Control display"
5. "Brightness at night"
6. Press the Controller.
7. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is set.
8. Press the Controller.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Depending on the light conditions, the brightness settings may not be clearly visible.

Resetting the vehicle configuration

All individual settings can be reset to the factory settings when the drive-ready state is switched off.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Reset vehicle data"
5. "Reset vehicle data"

When the stored settings in a driver profile are synchronized with the ConnectedDrive account, these settings will remain in the ConnectedDrive account.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1267
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Personal settings

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Data protection

Data transfer

Concept

The vehicle offers different services, whose use requires a data transfer to BMW or a service provider. The data transfer can be deactivated for some services.

General information

When the data transfer is deactivated, the respective service cannot be used.

Only make these settings while stationary.

Adjusting

The data transfer can be configured in different stages or individually for separate services.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. Select the desired setting.

Deleting personal data in the vehicle

Concept

Depending on the usage, the vehicle stores personal data, such as stored radio stations. This personal data can be permanently deleted using iDrive.

General information

Depending on the equipment package, the following data can be deleted:

- Driver profile settings.
- Stored radio stations.
- Stored programmable memory buttons.
- Travel and Onboard Computer information.
- Music hard disk.
- Navigation, for instance stored destinations.
- Phone book.
- Online data, for instance Favorites, cookies.
- Office data, for instance voice notes.
- Login accounts.

Altogether, the deletion of the data can take up to 15 minutes.

Functional requirement

Data can only be deleted while stationary.

Deleting data

The personal data in the vehicle will be deleted when the vehicle is reset to the factory settings.

Additional information:

Resetting the vehicle configuration, refer to page 64.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1268

Driver profiles

Concept

Driver profiles can be created to store personal vehicle settings. If the vehicle is used by multiple drivers, each driver can create his personal driver profile. When a driver profile is selected, the vehicle will automatically apply the stored settings in the driver profile.

General information

Three personal driver profiles can be created.

In addition, a guest profile is available that can be selected by any driver. The guest profile is active when a personal driver profile has not been selected.

Changes to the vehicle settings are automatically stored in the active driver profile or in the guest profile.

The recognition via a vehicle key can be assigned to a driver profile so that the vehicle will apply the settings as soon as the driver unlocks the vehicle. As soon as the vehicle recognizes the vehicle key, the corresponding driver profile will be activated.

ConnectedDrive countries: The settings stored in the driver's profile can be synchronized with the personal BMW ConnectedDrive account. It is thereby possible to use these settings in other BMW vehicles as well.

Functional requirements

When switching the driver profile, the vehicle must move at a maximum of walking speed.

Welcome screen

After the Control Display is switched on, the Welcome screen will be displayed.

The following actions can be carried out on the Welcome screen:

- Switching the driver profile.
- Starting the set-up assistant.

  This option is offered in new vehicle for a limited period of time.

As soon as the engine is started or any button is pressed, the Welcome screen will be hidden.

Setup assistant

The setup assistant is offered in new vehicles for a limited period of time on the Welcome screen to configure the most important settings for the vehicle.

"Getting started" Select to start the set-up assistant.

The set-up assistant can be started via iDrive at any time.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Getting started"

The driver is guided step by step through the following functions:

- Setting the system language.
- ConnectedDrive countries:

  If the set-up assistant was opened in the guest profile: create driver profile.
- Pairing mobile devices with the vehicle.
- If the set-up assistant was opened from an already defined driver profile: set up personal assistant.
- Depending on whether the set-up assistant was opened from an already defined driver profile or a guest profile: set up services or confirm the explanation for the transmission of vehicle related data.
- Set up other methods for use.

The selected settings are stored in the active driver's profile.

Guest profile

The guest profile can be activated by any driver. Vehicle settings that are entered when the guest profile is active will be stored in the guest profile.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1269
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

In the following cases the guest profile is automatically active:

- A driver profile has not been created yet.
- No driver profile has been assigned to the vehicle key that was used to unlock the vehicle.

The following limitations apply:

- The guest profile cannot be renamed.
- It is not possible to assign the recognition to the guest profile.
- It is not possible to assign a PIN to the guest profile.
- ConnectedDrive countries: It is not possible to synchronize with a ConnectedDrive account.

The guest profile is selected on the Welcome screen or via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"

   As an alternative for Steps 1 and 2, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
3. "Guest"
4. "OK"

Creating a driver profile

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Add driver profile"

ConnectedDrive countries: An existing ConnectedDrive account must be assigned to a driver profile. If a ConnectedDrive account has not yet been created, the account can be created via a smartphone. A QR code will be displayed on the Control Display for this purpose. The creation of the driver profile can continue with the access data of the created ConnectedDrive account.

Selecting recognition

The settings for the recognition are entered via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Driver recognition"
5. "with vehicle key"

   The vehicle key that was used to unlock the vehicle is assigned to the driver profile.
6. "Activate linkage"

As soon as the vehicle recognizes the vehicle key, the corresponding driver profile will be activated.

Setting up a PIN

After unlocking the vehicle, another driver profile can be selected via iDrive. If a PIN was set up for the selected driver profile, this driver profile can only be activated with the PIN.

Non-ConnectedDrive countries: If the PIN is not known, the driver's profile cannot be activated.

ConnectedDrive countries: If the PIN is not known, the driver's profile can be activated with the access data of the corresponding ConnectedDrive account.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Driver recognition"
5. "using PIN"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1270
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Changing/canceling the recognition function

If another vehicle key is assigned to a driver profile, the current assignment must be canceled first.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Driver recognition"
5. "with vehicle key"
6. "Activate linkage"

When the vehicle and vehicle key will be handed over, such as for maintenance, carry out the following steps first:

- ▷ Setting up PIN.
- ▷ Canceling recognition using the vehicle key.
- ▷ Switching to the guest profile.

The handed over vehicle key can then no longer be used to access the personal driver profile.

Selecting a driver profile

Depending on the recognition setting, the driver profile will be selected automatically.

If the guest profile is active, the driver profile will be selected on the Welcome screen or via iDrive: A PIN may have to be entered.

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"

   As an alternative for Steps 1 and 2, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
3. Select driver profile.
4. "OK"

All settings stored in the selected driver profile are automatically applied.

Switching synchronization with the ConnectedDrive account on/off

ConnectedDrive countries:

The settings stored in the driver's profile are synchronized with the personal ConnectedDrive account. This means that it is possible to use the personal settings in other BMW vehicles with ConnectedDrive access as well, if this function is supported.

The synchronization with the ConnectedDrive account is enabled when a driver profile is created or via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Settings"
5. "Synchronize driver profile"
6. "Synchronize driver profile"

Renaming a driver profile

Countries in which ConnectedDrive is not available:

The name that was assigned when the driver profile was set up can be changed via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"

   As an alternative for Steps 1 and 2, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
3. Select driver profile.
4. "Settings"
5. Enter a profile name.
6. OK Select the symbol.

Selecting a profile picture

Countries in which ConnectedDrive is available:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1271
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

The profile image is transferred from the ConnectedDrive customer portal or the BMW Connected app.

Countries in which ConnectedDrive is not available:

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Avatar"
5. Select the desired profile picture.

Deleting the driver profile

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Settings"
5. "Remove driver profile"
6. Select the desired driver profile.
7. "Delete now"

ConnectedDrive countries: If the driver profile was synchronized with a ConnectedDrive account, the stored data in the ConnectedDrive account will be retained.

System limits

A clear detection of the desired vehicle key may not be possible in the following cases, e.g.:

- The driver unlocks the vehicle via Comfort Access.
- The driver changes, but the vehicle is not locked and unlocked.
- When multiple vehicle keys are located outside on the driver's side of the vehicle.

ConnectedDrive countries:

A driver profile can only be created and synchronized with the ConnectedDrive account when cellular network reception is available.

The use of personal settings that are stored in the ConnectedDrive account in other vehicles is subject to technical limitations. For example, settings may be stored for a system that is not available, or available in a non-compatible version, in other vehicles.

Connections

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle

Concept

Various connection types are available for using mobile devices in the vehicle. The connection type to select depends on the mobile device and the desired function.

General information

The following overview shows possible functions and the suitable connection types for them. The scope of functions depends on the mobile device.

Function	Connection type
Making calls via the hands-free system. Using phone functions via iDrive or touchscreen. Other functions, e.g. Contacts or SMS.	Bluetooth.
Playing music from the smartphone or the audio player.	Bluetooth or USB.
USB storage device: Playing music.	USB.
Playing videos from the smartphone or the USB storage device.	USB.
Using the vehicle Internet access.	WiFi hotspot via WLAN.
Using Apple CarPlay apps via iDrive and voice operation.	Bluetooth and WLAN.
Screen Mirroring: Showing the smartphone display on the Control Display.	WLAN.

The following connection types require one-time pairing with the vehicle:

- Bluetooth.
- WiFi hotspot.
- Apple CarPlay.
- Screen Mirroring.

Paired devices are automatically recognized later on and connected to the vehicle.

Safety information

Warning

Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. As warranted, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1273
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Compatible devices

General information

Information on mobile devices compatible with the vehicle can be found at www.bmwusa.com/bluetooth.

Malfunctions may occur with devices not listed or deviating software versions.

Displaying the vehicle identification number and software part number

When looking for compatible devices, you may have to state the vehicle identification number and the software part number. These numbers can be displayed in the vehicle.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth® info"
6. "System information"

Bluetooth connection

Functional requirements

- Compatible device with Bluetooth interface.

  Compatible devices, refer to page 71.
- The vehicle key or BMW display key is in the vehicle.
- The device is ready for operation.
- Bluetooth is switched on in the vehicle and on the device.
- The pairing readiness is displayed on the Control Display.
- Bluetooth presettings, such as visibility, may be required on the device; refer to the owner's manual of the device.

Switching on Bluetooth

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth®"
6. Select setting.

Activating/deactivating telephone functions

To use all supported functions of a mobile phone, activate the desired functions in the vehicle prior to pairing the mobile phone with the vehicle as needed.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Personalize menu"
3. Select the desired settings, for instance"Text messages".

Pairing the mobile device with the vehicle

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Phone calls and audio"

   The vehicle's Bluetooth name is displayed on the Control Display.
6. On the mobile device, search for Bluetooth devices in the vicinity and select the vehicle.

   A control number is displayed.
7. Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1274
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

on the display of the mobile device, and confirm that the two match.

8. Select Bluetooth connection if necessary: "Use BMW iDrive for phone calls, Bluetooth® audio, and apps."

The mobile device is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Frequently Asked Questions

All requirements are met and all required steps were completed in the specified order. Despite that, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations can help:

Why could the mobile phone not be paired or connected?

- There are too many Bluetooth devices connected to the mobile phone or vehicle.

  In the vehicle, delete Bluetooth connections with other devices.

  Delete the Bluetooth connection from the device list on the mobile phone and start a new device search.

  Too many Bluetooth devices with the same function are paired.

- The mobile phone is in power-save mode or has only a limited remaining battery life.

  Charge the mobile phone and deactivate the power-save mode where required.

Why does the mobile phone no longer react?

- The applications on the mobile phone do not function anymore.

  Switch the mobile phone off and on again.

- Too high or too low ambient temperature for mobile phone operation.

  Do not subject the mobile phone to extreme ambient temperatures.

Why can phone functions not be used via iDrive?

- Phone functions are not configured for the mobile phone.

  Connect the mobile phone with the telephone function.

Why are no or not all phone book entries displayed or why are they incomplete?

- Transmission of the phone book entries is not yet complete.
- It is possible that only the phone book entries of the mobile phone or the SIM card are transmitted.
- It may not be possible to display phone book entries with special characters.
- It may not be possible to transmit contacts from social networks.
- The number of phone book entries to be transmitted is too high.
- Data volume of the contact too large, for instance due to stored information such as notes.

  Reduce the data volume of the contact.

- A mobile phone can only be connected as audio source or as telephone.

  Configure the mobile phone and connect it with the telephone function.

- Contact was created in the contact list of the phone after the last synchronization.

  Synchronize contacts again: "Reload contacts"

How can the phone connection quality be improved?

- Adjust the strength of the Bluetooth signal on the mobile phone, depending on the mobile phone.
- Insert the mobile phone into the wireless charging tray.
- Adjust the volume of the microphone separately in the sound settings.

If all points in this list have been checked and the required function is still not available, contact the hotline, a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1275
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

USB connection

General information

The following mobile devices can be connected to the USB port:

- Mobile phones.
- Audio devices such as MP3 players.
- USB storage devices.

  Common file systems are supported. FAT32 and exFAT are the recommended formats.

A connected USB storage device will be supplied with charge current via the USB port if the device supports this. Follow the maximum charge current of the USB port.

The following uses are possible on USB ports with data transfer:

- Playing music files.
- Playing videos.

Follow the following when connecting:

- Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB port.
- Use a flexible adapter cable.
- Protect the USB storage device against mechanical damage.
- Due to the large number of USB storage devices available on the market, it cannot be guaranteed that every device is operable on the vehicle.
- Do not expose USB storage devices to extreme environmental conditions, such as very high temperatures; refer to the owner's manual of the device.
- Due to the many different compression techniques, proper playback of the media stored on the USB storage device cannot be guaranteed in all cases.
- To ensure proper transmission of the stored data, do not charge a USB storage device via the onboard socket, when it is connected to the USB port.
- Depending on how the USB storage device is being used, settings may be required on the USB storage device, refer to the owner's manual of the device.

Not compatible USB media:

- USB hard drives.
- USB hubs.
- USB memory card readers with multiple slots.
- HFS-formatted USB storage devices.
- Devices such as fans or lamps.

Functional requirement

Compatible device with USB port.

Additional information:

Compatible devices, refer to page 71.

Connecting the device

Connect the USB device using a suitable adapter cable to a USB port.

The USB device is displayed in the device list.

Additional information:

USB port, refer to page 262.

WiFi hotspot

Concept

Compatible devices with WLAN interface can use the Internet connection of the vehicle via the WiFi hotspot.

General information

Up to 10 devices can be connected to the WiFi hotspot simultaneously.

Functional requirements

- Compatible device with activated WLAN interface.

  Compatible devices, refer to page 71.
- WLAN is activated on the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1276
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

- Internet use is activated for the vehicle.
- Registration and data contract with a service provider where required.
- Standby state is switched on.

Connecting a device to the Internet via the WiFi hotspot

Using the Internet for the first time via the WiFi hotspot requires registration and possibly a data volume purchase from a service provider.

Depending on the country version, data volume can be purchased via the connected mobile device or from the ConnectedDrive Store.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Internet, apps"

   Hotspot name and hotspot code are displayed on the Control Display.
6. Activate Internet usage via WLAN if necessary.

   "Open settings"
7. Activate Internet usage.

   "Internet connection"
8. Move the Controller to the left.
9. Search for WLAN networks on the mobile device. Select network name on the device.
10. Enter hotspot code on the device and connect.

The device is displayed in the device list.

Additionally, a QR code will be displayed on the Control Display. Alternatively, this QR code can be used to pair the mobile device with the hotspot.

All devices connected via the hotspot use this data volume.

Deactivating Internet usage via the WiFi hotspot

Internet usage may be deactivated if the data volume is used up, for instance.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Internet connection"
6. Select the desired setting.

Apple CarPlay preparation

Concept

CarPlay allows certain functions of a compatible Apple iPhone to be used via Siri voice operation and iDrive.

Functional requirements

- Compatible iPhone, iPhone 5 or later with iOS 7.1 or later.

  Compatible devices, refer to page 71.
- Corresponding mobile contract.
- Bluetooth, WLAN, and Siri voice operation are activated on the iPhone.
- Booking the ConnectedDrive service: Apple CarPlay preparation.

Switching on Bluetooth and CarPlay

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. Select the following setting:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1277
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

"Apple CarPlay"

6. Activate the function.

Pairing the iPhone with CarPlay

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Phone calls and audio"

   The vehicle's Bluetooth name is displayed on the Control Display.
6. On the mobile device, search for Bluetooth devices in the vicinity and select the vehicle.

   A control number is displayed.
7. Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number on the display of the mobile device, and confirm that the two match.
8. Select CarPlay:

   "Confirm note and connect to Apple CarPlay"

The iPhone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Operation

For more information, refer to the Integrated Owner's Manual or the Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication.

Frequently Asked Questions

All requirements are met and all required steps were completed in the specified order. Despite that, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations can help:

The iPhone has already been paired with Apple CarPlay. When a new connection is established, CarPlay can no longer be selected.

- ▷ Delete the iPhone concerned from the device list.
- ▷ On the iPhone, delete the vehicle concerned from the list of stored connections under Bluetooth and under WLAN.
- ▷ Pair the iPhone as a new device.

If the steps listed have been carried out and the required function is still not available: contact the hotline, a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Screen Mirroring

General information

Screen Mirroring enables mirroring (outputting) of the smartphone display on the Control Display.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Compatible smartphone with Screen Mirroring interface.

  Compatible devices, refer to page 71.
- ▷ Screen Mirroring is switched on on the smartphone.
- ▷ WLAN is switched on in the vehicle.

Activate WLAN in the vehicle

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Wi-Fi®"

Pairing a smartphone with Screen Mirroring

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1278

5. "Screen Mirroring"

   The WLAN name of the vehicle is displayed on the Control Display.

6. Search for WLAN devices in the surroundings of the smartphone.

   The WLAN name of the vehicle appears on the device display. Select the WLAN name of the vehicle.

7. Confirm the connection via iDrive.

The device is connected and displayed in the device list.

Managing mobile devices

General information

- After one-time pairing, the devices are automatically recognized and reconnected when standby state is switched on.
- After stored content on the SIM card or the mobile phone, such as contacts, has been detected, the data is transmitted to the vehicle and can be used via iDrive.
- For some devices, certain settings are necessary, for instance authorization; see the owner's manual of the device.

Displaying the device list

All devices paired with or connected to the vehicle are displayed in the device list.

A maximum of 4 devices can be connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth, and a maximum of 10 devices can be connected to the vehicle via WLAN. A maximum of 20 devices will be detected.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"

A symbol indicates, for which function a device is used. When the icon is displayed in white, this function is actively connected to the vehicle. The icon is displayed in gray when the function of the device is inactive.

Symbol	Meaning
	Telephone.
	Bluetooth audio.
	WiFi hotspot.
	Apple CarPlay.
	Screen Mirroring.

Configuring the device

Functions can be activated or deactivated for paired and connected devices.

If a function is assigned to a device, the function will be deactivated where appropriate for a device that is already connected and the device will be disconnected. Follow the information on the Control Display.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Select the desired device.
4. Select the desired setting:
   - "Disconnect device"

     The device remains paired and can be connected again.
   - "Connect device"

     The functions that were assigned to the device before disconnecting are assigned to the device when it is reconnected. The functions may be deactivated on a device already connected.
   - "Delete device"

     The device is disconnected and removed from the device list.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1279
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Priority of the phones

When two mobile phones are connected to the vehicle, you can specify the priority of the mobile phones for reconnection.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Priorities for telephones"
6. Select the desired device.
7. Turn the controller to select the priority for the selected mobile phone.

   Select the desired priority by sliding.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1280

Opening and closing

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Vehicle key

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the vehicle is delivered with two vehicle keys or one vehicle key and the BMW display key.

Each vehicle key contains a replaceable battery.

Depending on the equipment and country version, various settings can be configured for the button functions.

A driver profile with personal settings can be assigned to a vehicle key.

To provide information on maintenance requirements, the service data is stored in the vehicle key.

To prevent possible locking in of the vehicle key, take the vehicle key with you when exiting the vehicle.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Take the vehicle key with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.

⚠ Warning

For some country versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

⚠ Warning

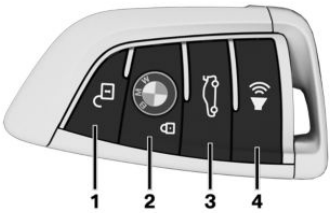
Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1281
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Overview



1 Unlocking

2 Locking

3 Opening the trunk lid

4 Press and hold or press three times in quick succession: panic mode

Press briefly: pathway lighting

Unlocking

General information

The behavior of the vehicle during unlocking using the vehicle key depends on the following settings:

- If only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap or all access to the vehicle will be unlocked.
- If the unlocking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- If the welcome light is switched on when the vehicle is being unlocked.

Unlocking the vehicle

Press the button on the vehicle key.

If, due to the settings, only the driver's door and fuel filler flap were unlocked, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

In addition, the following functions are executed:

- If a driver profile was assigned to the vehicle key, this driver profile will be activated and the settings that are stored in it will be applied.
- The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off.
- Folded in exterior mirrors are folded out.

  If the exterior mirrors were folded in via the button in the car's interior, they will not be folded out when unlocking.
- With anti-theft protection: Anti-theft protection is switched off.
- With alarm system: The alarm system will be switched off.

After opening one of the front doors, the vehicle is ready for operation.

The light functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

Convenient opening

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key after unlocking.

The windows and the glass sunroof with sun protection are opened, as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Locking

General information

The behavior of the vehicle during locking using the vehicle key depends on the following settings:

- If the locking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- If the exterior mirrors are automatically folded in when the vehicle is locked. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.
- If pathway lighting is activated during locking.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Press the button on the vehicle key.

The following functions are executed:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1282
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

- All doors, the trunk lid, and the fuel filler flap are locked.
- With anti-theft protection: Anti-theft protection is switched on. This prevents the doors from being unlocked using the lock buttons or the door openers.
- With alarm system: The alarm system will be switched on.

If the drive-ready state is still switched on when you lock the vehicle, the vehicle horn honks twice. In this case, the drive-ready state must be switched off by means of the Start/Stop button.

With Comfort Access: convenient closing

Safety information

Warning

With convenient closing, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during convenient closing.

Closing

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key in the area close to the vehicle after locking.

The windows and the glass sunroof with sun protection are closed, as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Switching on the interior and exterior lights

Press the button on the vehicle key with the vehicle locked.

The function is not available for the first 10 seconds after locking.

- The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off.

  Interior lights, refer to page 162.
- Depending on the settings, the exterior lighting will be switched on.

  Welcome lights, refer to page 158.

The light functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

Trunk lid

General information

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

You can set up if the doors will be unlocked when the trunk lid is opened with the vehicle key.

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the trunk lid. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the trunk lid is clear during opening and closing.

NOTICE

During opening, the trunk lid pivots back and up. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the trunk lid is clear during opening and closing.

Opening

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

- Press the button on the vehicle key and hold for at least 3 seconds.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1283
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

▷ Briefly press the button on the vehicle key three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Switching pathway lighting on

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

It is possible to adjust the duration of the pathway lighting feature.

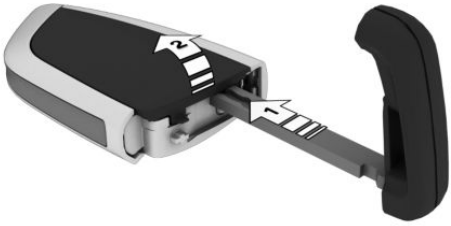
Additional information:

Pathway lighting, refer to page 158.

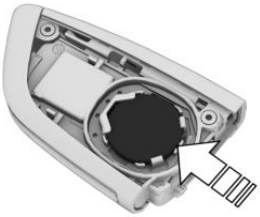
Replacing the battery

1. Remove the integrated key from the vehicle key.

   Integrated key, refer to page 87.
2. Place the integrated key underneath the battery compartment cover, arrow 1, and lift the cover with a lever movement of the integrated key, arrow 2.



3. Push battery in the direction of the arrow using a pointed object and lift it out.



4. Insert a type CR 2032 battery with the positive side facing up.
5. Press the cover closed.
6. Push the integrated key into the vehicle key until the integrated key engages.

Have old batteries disposed of by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take them to a collection point.

Additional vehicle keys

Additional vehicle keys are available from a service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Loss of vehicle keys

A lost vehicle key can be blocked and replaced by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

If the lost vehicle key has an assigned driver profile, the connection to this vehicle key must be deleted. A new vehicle key can then be assigned to the driver profile.

Malfunction

General information

A Check Control message is displayed.

Vehicle key recognition by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

▷ The battery of the vehicle key is discharged.

▷ Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.

▷ Shielding of the vehicle key due to metal objects.

  Do not transport the vehicle key together with metal objects.

▷ Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity to the vehicle key.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1284
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Do not transport the vehicle key together with electronic devices.

- Interference of radio transmission by a charging process of mobile devices, for instance charging of a mobile phone.
- The vehicle key is in direct proximity of the wireless charging tray.

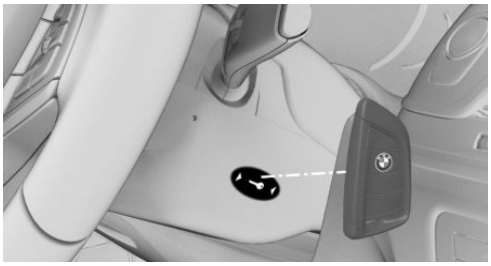
  Place the vehicle key in a different location.

In the case of interference, the vehicle can also be unlocked and locked from the outside with the integrated key.

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 87.

Switching the drive-ready state on via emergency detection of the vehicle key



It is not possible to switch on the drive-ready state if the vehicle key has not been detected.

Proceed as follows in this case:

1. Hold the back of the vehicle key against the marked area on the steering column. Pay attention to the display in the instrument cluster.
2. If the vehicle key is detected:

   Switch on drive-ready state within 10 seconds.

If the vehicle key is not recognized, slightly change the position of the vehicle key and repeat the procedure.

Frequently Asked Questions

What precautions can be taken to be able to open a vehicle with an accidentally locked in vehicle key?

- The options provided by the Remote Services of the BMW Connected app include the ability to lock and unlock a vehicle.

  This requires an active BMW ConnectedDrive contract and the BMW Connected app must be installed on a smartphone.
- Unlocking the vehicle can be requested via the BMW ConnectedDrive Call Center.

  An active BMW ConnectedDrive contract is required.

BMW display key

General information

The BMW display key is supplied with an additional mechanical key. If the display key is used, the mechanical key should be carried with you, for instance in the wallet. The mechanical key is used like the integrated key.

The display key supports all functions of the standard vehicle key.

In addition, the following functions are also available:

- Display status of doors and windows.
- Display status of the anti-theft warning system.
- Display service information.
- Call up range with available fuel.
- With parked-car heating: operate parked-car heating.

  Without parked-car heating: operate parked-car ventilation.
- Remote Control Parking.

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 87.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1285
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Safety information

Warning

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Take the vehicle key with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.

Warning

For some country versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

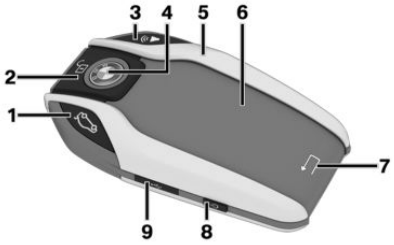
Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Overview



1 Opening the trunk lid
2 Unlocking
3 Press and hold or press three times in quick succession: panic mode

Press briefly: pathway lighting

4 Locking
5 Park button
6 Display
7 Back
8 Switch the display on/off
9 Micro-USB charging socket

Reception range

The number of available display key functions depends on the distance from the vehicle.

- When you are in close proximity to the vehicle, all functions of the display key are available.
- The status information can be called up in the extended reception range.

  With parked-car heating: the parked-car heating can be operated.

  Without parked-car heating: the parked-car ventilation can be operated.
- Outside of the reception range of the vehicle, you can display the last transmitted status information from the vehicle.

The symbol is shown on the display if one of the buttons is pressed outside of the reception range.

Display

General information

The display is divided into the upper status line, the information area, and the lower status line.

Upper status line

The upper status line displays the following information:

- / Vehicle secured/vehicle unsecured.
- Set time in the vehicle.
- Charge state of the display key battery.

Information area

The information area can be used to access information and perform additional functions.

If the information area contains more than one page, then page indicators are shown beneath the information.

○●○ A solid indicator denotes the current page.

Swipe to the right or left with a finger to change between the pages.

If further information is available on a page, tap the appropriate symbol.

To return to the original page: tap on the symbol beneath the display.

Lower status line

The lower status line indicates whether or not the display key is within reception range.

- "Connected": the display key is within reception range.
- "Updated": the display key is not within reception range. It indicates when the last data transfer from the vehicle took place.

Switching on/off

The display will go out automatically after a brief period to conserve battery power.

To hide the display manually:

Press the button on the left side of the display key.

To show the display:

1. Press the button on the left side of the display key.
2. Then, swipe with your finger from bottom to top to unlock the screen lock.

To switch off the display to increase the usable battery life:

1. If necessary, cancel the screen lock.
2. Press and hold the button on the left side of the display key for longer than 4 seconds.
3. "OK"

To switch the display on:

Press the button on the left side of the display key.

Operating concept

Depending on the vehicle equipment, there are up to five main menus providing access to the sub-menus.

Main menu	Information/Function
"Security information"	/
	Door status.
	Alarm system status.
	After alarm triggering: date, time, and reason for triggering the alarm.
	Window status.
	Glass sunroof status.
"Vehicle information"	Maintenance indicators of Condition Based Service CBS.
	Status of the roadside parking lights.
"Mobility info"	Range with available fuel.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1287
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Main menu	Information/Function
"Preconditioning setting"	With parked-car heating: operate parked-car heating. Without parked-car heating: operate parked-car ventilation.
"R/C parking"	Remote Control Parking.

Display key battery

General information

Follow the following information:

- If the charge state of the display key battery declines, the display is switched off automatically. The battery must be recharged so that the display can be switched back on. The operability of the standard buttons is retained until the battery is completely discharged.
- Charge the battery for at least three hours before using the display key for the first time or if the key has not been used for an extended period.
- The display key can be used while it is being charged via the USB port. If the battery is fully discharged, it may take some time before the display key can be used again.
- Due to the large number of USB chargers available on the market, it cannot be guaranteed that every charger will function properly. The charging duration depends on the charger used.
- Charging via the USB port may heat up the charger and the display key.

  Charging in the wireless charging tray may heat up the tray and the display key.

  At higher temperatures, the charge current through the display key may be reduced, and in isolated cases the charge process may be interrupted temporarily.
- When inserting the display key into the wireless charging tray, make sure there are no objects between it and the wireless charging tray.

Safety information

Warning

When charging a device that meets the Qi standard in the wireless charging tray, any metal objects located between the device and the tray can become very hot. Placing storage devices or electronic cards, such as chip cards, cards with magnetic strips or cards for signal transmission, between the device and the tray may impair the card function. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. When charging mobile devices, make sure there are no objects between the device and the tray.

Charging

Via USB

Connect the display key via the micro-USB charging socket to a USB port.

Manual transmission: in the center armrest

1. Open the center armrest.
2. Place the display key into the recess of the wireless charging tray underneath the center armrest.

   Make sure that the display is on the side of the clamp and that the lock button points upward.
3. Close the center armrest.

Steptronic transmission: in the center console

1. Open the tray cover.
2. Place the display key into the middle of the wireless charging tray in front of the cup holders.

   Ensure that the display is facing up.
3. Close the tray cover.

Malfunction

General information

A Check Control message is displayed.

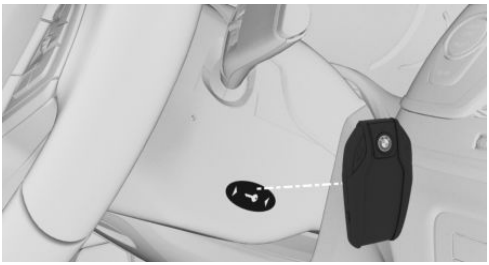
BMW display key detection by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- The battery of the display key is discharged.
- Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- Shielding of the display key due to metal objects.
- Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity.
- Interference of radio transmission by a charging process of mobile devices, for instance charging of a mobile phone.

Do not transport the display key together with metal objects or electronic devices.

In the case of interference, the vehicle can also be unlocked and locked from the outside with the mechanical key.

Switching on drive-ready state via emergency detection of the BMW display key



It is not possible to switch on the drive-ready state if the display key has not been detected.

Proceed as follows in this case:

1. Hold the display key with its back against the marked area on the steering column. Pay attention to the display in the instrument cluster.
2. If the display key is detected:

   Switch on drive-ready state within 10 seconds.

If the display key is not detected, slightly change the position of the display key and repeat the procedure.

Resetting the BMW display key

If the charged display key cannot be switched on anymore or if the display does not respond to entries anymore, the display key can be reset.

Press and hold the following buttons on the display key at the same time for at least 10 seconds until the display is switched off and then on again:

-
-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1289
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Integrated key

General information

The driver's door can be locked and unlocked without the vehicle key using the integrated key.

The integrated key also fits the glove compartment.

Safety information

Warning

For some country versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

NOTICE

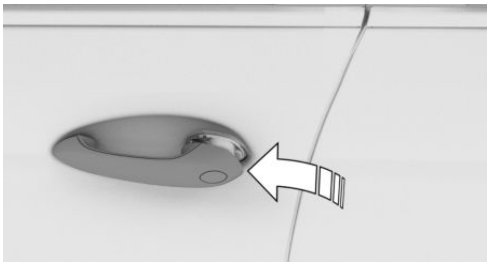
The door lock is permanently joined with the door. The door handle can be moved. When pulling the door handle with the integrated key inserted, paint or the integrated key can be damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Remove the integrated key before pulling the outside door handle.

Removing

Press the button, arrow 1, and pull out the integrated key, arrow 2.

Locking/unlocking via the door lock

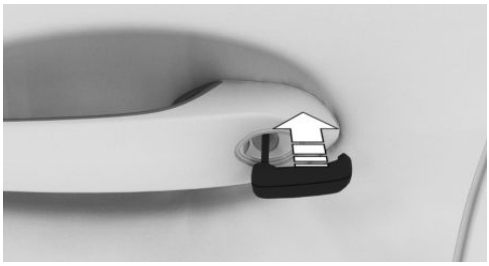
1. Pull and hold the door handle outward with one hand.



2. Guide one finger of your other hand from the back under the cover and push the cover out.

   Use the thumb for counter support to prevent the cover from falling out of the door handle.

3. Remove the cover.
4. Unlock or lock the door lock using the integrated key.



The other doors must be unlocked or locked from the inside.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1290
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Alarm system

The activated alarm system is triggered when the door is opened, if the vehicle has been unlocked via the door lock.

The alarm system is not switched on if the vehicle is locked with the integrated key.

Buttons for the central locking system

General information

In the event of a severe accident, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The hazard warning system and interior lights come on.

Overview

Buttons for the central locking system.

Locking

Press the button with the front doors closed.

- The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.
- The vehicle is not secured against theft when locking.

Unlocking

Press the button.

Opening

- Press the button to unlock all the doors.

  Pull the door opener above the armrest.
- Front doors: pull the door handle on the door to open the door. The other doors remain locked.
- Back doors: pull twice on the door handle on the door to be opened; the first time unlocks the door, the second time opens it. The other doors remain locked.

Comfort Access

Concept

The vehicle can be accessed without operating the vehicle key.

Carrying the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket, is sufficient.

The vehicle automatically detects the vehicle key when it is in close proximity or in the car's interior.

General information

Comfort Access supports the following functions:

- Unlocking and locking the vehicle from the door handle.
- Convenient closing.
- Opening trunk lid.
- Opening and closing the trunk lid with no-touch activation.

Functional requirements

- To lock the vehicle, the vehicle key must be outside of the vehicle near the doors.
- The next unlocking and locking cycle is not possible until after approx. 2 seconds.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1291
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

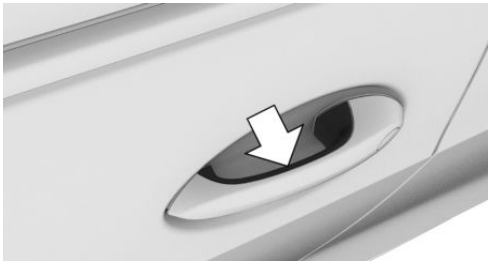
Unlocking

General information

The behavior of the vehicle during unlocking via the Comfort Access depends on the following settings:

- If the unlocking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- If the welcome light is switched on when the vehicle is being unlocked.

Unlocking the vehicle



Grasp the handle of a vehicle door completely.

In addition, the following functions are executed:

- If a driver profile was assigned to the vehicle key, this driver profile will be activated and the settings that are stored in it will be applied.
- The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off.
- Folded in exterior mirrors are folded out.

  If the exterior mirrors were folded in via the button in the car's interior, they will not be folded out when unlocking.
- With anti-theft protection: Anti-theft protection is switched off.
- With alarm system: The alarm system will be switched off.

Locking

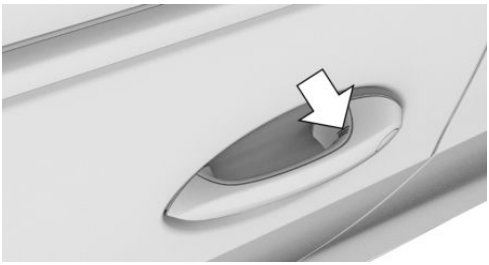
General information

The behavior of the vehicle during locking via the Comfort Access depends on the following settings:

- If the locking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- If the exterior mirrors are automatically folded in when the vehicle is locked. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.
- If pathway lighting is activated during locking.

Locking the vehicle

Close the driver's door.



Touch the grooved surface on the handle of a closed vehicle door with your finger for approx. 1 second without grasping the door handle.

The following functions are executed:

- All doors, the trunk lid, and the fuel filler flap are locked.
- With anti-theft protection: Anti-theft protection is switched on. This prevents the doors from being unlocked using the lock buttons or the door openers.
- With alarm system: The alarm system will be switched on.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1292

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

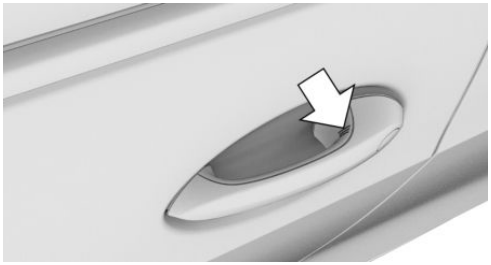
Convenient closing

Safety information

Warning

With convenient closing, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during convenient closing.

Closing



Touch the grooved surface on the handle of a closed vehicle door with your finger and hold it there without grasping the door handle.

In addition to locking, the windows and glass sunroof with sun protection will be closed.

Opening the trunk lid

General information

If you open the trunk lid via Comfort Access, locked doors will not be unlocked.

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

Safety information

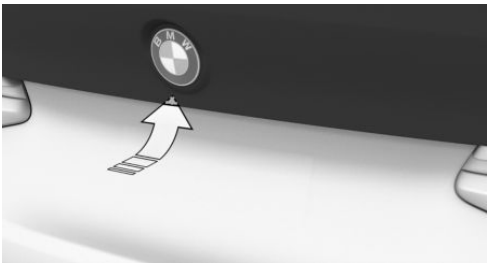
Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the trunk lid. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the trunk lid is clear during opening and closing.

NOTICE

During opening, the trunk lid pivots back and up. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the trunk lid is clear during opening and closing.

Opening



Press the button on the exterior of the trunk lid.

Opening and closing the trunk lid with no-touch activation

Concept

The trunk lid can be opened with no-touch activation using the vehicle key you are carrying. With automatic tailgate operation, it can also be closed with no-touch activation. Two sensors detect a forward-directed foot motion in the central rear area and the trunk lid is opened or closed.

General information

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1293
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

If the vehicle key is in the sensor area, the trunk lid may open or close inadvertently if you unintentionally move your foot or if a foot movement is detected.

The sensor has an approximate range of 5 ft/1.50 m extending from the rear of the vehicle.

If you open the trunk lid with no-touch activation, locked doors will not be unlocked.

Safety information

Warning

During no-touch activation, vehicle parts may be touched, such as the hot exhaust gas system. There is a risk of injury. When moving your foot, make sure you have a firm stance and do not touch the vehicle.

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the trunk lid. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the trunk lid is clear during opening and closing.

NOTICE

During opening, the trunk lid pivots back and up. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the trunk lid is clear during opening and closing.

Performing the foot movement

1. Stand in the middle behind the vehicle at approx. one arm's length away from the rear of the vehicle.
2. Wave a foot under the vehicle in the direction of travel and immediately pull it back. With this movement, the leg must pass through the ranges of both sensors.

Opening

Perform the foot movement described earlier.

Before the trunk lid opens, the hazard warning system flashes.

With automatic tailgate: Moving your foot again will stop the opening motion, and moving it one more time after that will close the trunk lid.

Closing

The trunk lid can only be closed with no-touch activation if automatic tailgate operation is active.

Perform the foot movement described earlier.

The hazard warning system flashes and an acoustic signal sounds.

Moving your foot again will stop the closing motion, and moving it one more time after that will re-open the trunk lid.

Malfunction

Vehicle key recognition by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- The battery of the vehicle key is discharged.

  For replacing the battery, refer to page 81.
- Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- Shielding of the vehicle key due to metal objects.

  Do not transport the vehicle key together with metal objects.

▷ Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity to the vehicle key.

Do not transport the vehicle key together with electronic devices.

Wet or snowy conditions may disrupt the locking request recognition function on the door handles.

In the case of a malfunction, unlock and lock the vehicle using the buttons of the vehicle key or use the integrated key.

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 87.

Trunk lid

General information

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

It may not be possible to open the trunk lid when the vehicle is in valet parking mode.

Additional information:

Safety information

⚠ Warning

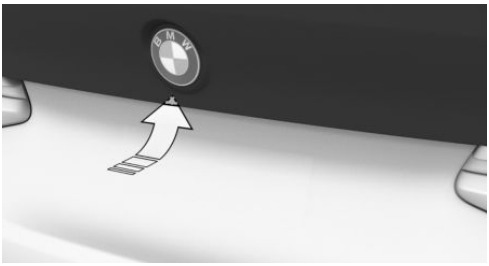
Body parts can be jammed when operating the trunk lid. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the trunk lid is clear during opening and closing.

⚠ NOTICE

During opening, the trunk lid pivots back and up. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the trunk lid is clear during opening and closing.

Without automatic tailgate operation: opening and closing

Opening from the outside



▷ Unlock the vehicle and then press the button on the outside of the trunk lid.

▷ With Comfort Access: carry the vehicle key with you and press the button on the outside of the trunk lid.

▷ Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

When unlocking with the vehicle key, the doors may also be unlocked.

Open from inside

Press the button in the storage compartment of the driver's door.

Closing

Grasp the recess grips and pull the trunk lid down.

With Comfort Access: With the driver's door closed, press the button on the in-

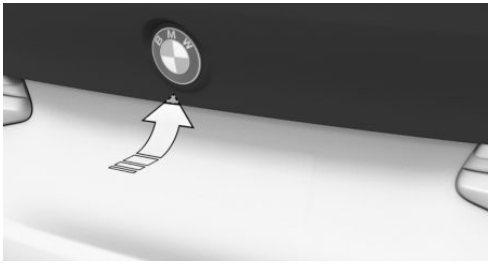
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1295
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

side of the trunk lid to lock an unlocked vehicle before closing the trunk lid.

With automatic tailgate operation: opening and closing

Opening

From the outside



- Unlock the vehicle and then press the button on the outside of the trunk lid.
- With Comfort Access: carry the vehicle key with you and press the button on the outside of the trunk lid.
- Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

  Depending on the setting, the doors may also be unlocked.

From the inside

Press the button in the storage compartment of the driver's door.

Interruption of the opening procedure

The opening operation is interrupted:

- When the vehicle starts moving.
- By pressing the button on the outside of the trunk lid. Pressing again closes the trunk lid.
- By pressing the button on the inside of the trunk lid. Pressing again closes the trunk lid.
- By pressing the button on the vehicle key. Pressing again continues the opening motion.
- By pressing or pulling the button in the driver's door. Pressing again continues the opening motion.

Closing

From the outside

- Press the button on the inside of the trunk lid.

With Comfort Access:

- Press the button on the inside of the trunk lid.

  The vehicle will be locked after closing the trunk lid. The driver's door must be closed for this purpose and the vehicle key must be outside of the vehicle in the area of the trunk lid.

From the inside

Pull and hold the button in the storage compartmenr of the driver's door.

The vehicle key must be located inside the vehicle for this function.

An acoustic signal sounds before the trunk lid is closed.

Interruption of the closing procedure

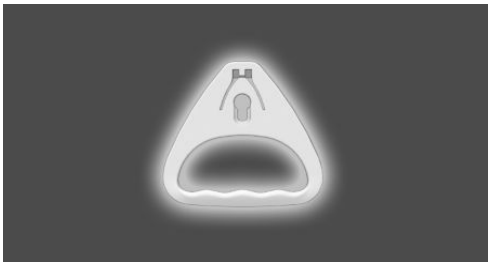
The closing procedure is interrupted in the following situations:

- If the vehicle starts off with a jerky movement.
- By pressing the button on the outside of the trunk lid. Pressing again re-opens the trunk lid.
- By pressing the button on the inside of the trunk lid. Pressing again re-opens the trunk lid.
- By releasing the button in the driver's door. Pulling again and holding continues the closing motion.

Malfunction

In the event of an electrical malfunction, operate the unlocked trunk lid manually with a slow and smooth motion.

Trunk emergency unlocking



Pull the handle inside the cargo area.

The trunk lid unlocks.

Soft-close automatic

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed while operating the doors. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during opening and closing.

Closing

To close the doors, push lightly.

Closing occurs automatically.

Adjusting

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country version, various settings for opening and closing are possible.

These settings are stored for the driver profile currently used.

Unlocking and locking

Doors

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Key button settings"
4. Select the symbol.
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "Driver's door only"

     Only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.
   - "All doors"

     The entire vehicle is unlocked.

Confirmation signals from the vehicle

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Access"
4. Deactivate or activate the desired confirmation signals:
   - "Flash when locking/unlocking"

     Unlocking is signaled by two flashes, locking by one.
   - With alarm system:

     "Sound when locking/unlocking"

     Unlocking is confirmed with two sound signals, locking is confirmed with one sound signal.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1297
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Folding mirrors automatically

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Access"
4. "Fold mirrors in when locked"

   The exterior mirrors are automatically folded in during locking.

Automatic unlocking

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Access"
4. "Unlock at end of trip"

   After drive-ready state is switched off by pressing the Start/Stop button, the locked vehicle is automatically unlocked.

Automatic locking

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Access"
4. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Lock automatically"

     The vehicle locks automatically after a while if no door is opened after unlocking.
   - ▷ "Lock after starting to drive"

     The vehicle locks automatically after you drive off.

Trunk lid

Trunk lid and doors

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country version, this setting may not be offered.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Key button settings"
4. Select the symbol.
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Tailgate"

     The trunk lid is opened.
   - ▷ "Tailgate and door(s)"

     The trunk lid is opened and the doors are unlocked.

Establishing idle state after opening the front doors

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Access"
4. "Turn off vehicle after opening door"

   Opening the front doors establishes the idle state.

   Idle state, refer to page 37.

Alarm system

General information

When the vehicle is locked, the vehicle alarm system reacts to the following changes:

- ▷ Opening a door, the hood or the trunk lid.
- ▷ Movements in the car's interior.
- ▷ Changes in the vehicle tilt, for instance, during attempts at stealing a wheel or when towing the vehicle.
- ▷ Disconnected battery voltage.
- ▷ Improper use of the socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1298

- Locking the vehicle while a device is connected to the socket for the OBD Onboard-Diagnosis.

The alarm system signals these changes visually and acoustically:

- Acoustic alarm:

  Depending on local regulations, the acoustic alarm may be suppressed.
- Visual alarm:

  By flashing of the hazard warning system and headlights, where required.

Do not modify the system to ensure function of the alarm system.

Switching on/off

The alarm system is switched on or off as soon as the vehicle is locked with the vehicle key or unlocked or locked via Comfort Access.

Opening the doors with the alarm system switched on

The alarm system is triggered when a door is opened if the door was unlocked using the integrated key in the door lock.

Opening the trunk lid with the alarm system switched on

The trunk lid can be opened even when the alarm system is switched on.

After the trunk lid is closed, it is locked and monitored again provided the doors are locked. The hazard warning system flashes once.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

- Press the button on the vehicle key and hold for at least 3 seconds.
- Briefly press the button on the vehicle key three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Indicator light on the interior mirror

- The indicator light flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

  The alarm system is switched on.
- Indicator light flashes for approx. 10 seconds, then it flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

  Interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor are not active, as doors, hood, or trunk lid are not correctly closed. Correctly closed access points are secured.

  When the still open access points are closed, the interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor will be switched on.
- The indicator light goes out after unlocking:

  The vehicle has not been tampered with.
- The indicator light flashes after unlocking until drive-ready state is switched on, but no longer than approx. 5 minutes:

  An alarm has been triggered.

Tilt alarm sensor

The tilt of the vehicle is monitored.

The alarm system responds in situations such as attempts to steal a wheel or when the vehicle is towed.

Interior motion sensor

The windows and the glass sunroof must be closed for the system to function properly.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1299
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Avoiding unintentional alarms

General information

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor can trigger an alarm, although no unauthorized action occurred.

Possible situations for an unwanted alarm:

- In automatic vehicle washes.
- In duplex garages.
- During transport on trains carrying vehicles, at sea or on a trailer.
- With animals in the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is locked after start of fueling.

The tilt alarm sensor and the interior motion sensor can be switched off in such situations.

Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor

Press the button on the vehicle key within 10 seconds as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator light lights up for approx. 2 seconds and then continues to flash.

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor are switched off until the vehicle is locked again.

Switching off the alarm

- Unlock the vehicle with the vehicle key.
- Unlock the vehicle with the integrated key and activate the drive-ready state via emergency detection of the vehicle key.

  Malfunction, refer to page 81.
- With Comfort Access: when carrying the vehicle key, grasp the driver's door or front passenger door handle completely.

Power windows

General information

The windows can be opened with the vehicle key from the outside as well as closed with Comfort Access.

With Comfort Access: The windows can be closed from the outside via Comfort Access.

Additional information:

Vehicle key, refer to page 78.

Safety information

Warning

When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the windows is clear during opening and closing.

Overview

Power windows

Safety switch

Functional requirements

The windows can be operated under the following conditions.

- Standby state is switched on.
- Drive-ready state is switched on.

The vehicle key must be in the car's interior.

Opening

▷ Press the switch to the resistance point.

The window opens while the switch is being held.

▷ Press the switch beyond the resistance point.

The window opens automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Closing

▷ Pull the switch to the resistance point.

The window closes while the switch is being held.

▷ Pull the switch beyond the resistance point.

The window closes automatically if the door is closed. Pulling again stops the motion.

Jam protection system

Concept

The jam protection prevents objects or body parts becoming jammed between the door frame and window while a window is being closed.

General information

If resistance or a blockage is detected while a window is being closed, the closing action is interrupted.

The window opens slightly.

Safety information

Warning

Accessories on the windows such as antennas can impact jam protection. There is a risk of injury. Do not install accessories in the area of movement of the windows.

Closing without the jam protection system

In case of danger from the outside or if ice might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it there.

   The window closes with limited jam protection. If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.

2. Pull the switch past the resistance point again within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there.

   The window closes without jam protection.

Safety switch

Concept

The safety switch can be used to prevent children, for instance from opening and closing the rear windows using the switches in the rear.

If an accident of a certain severity occurs, the safety function is switched off automatically.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

The LED lights up if the safety function is switched on.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1301
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Rear window roller sunblind

Safety information

NOTICE

When operating the roller sunblind, objects stored on the shelf may damage the roller sunblind. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the roller sunblind is clear during the operation.

Overview

Button for the roller sunblind.

Operation

Press the button to open the closed roller sunblind or to close the open roller sunblind.

If the button is pressed again during the movement, the roller sunblind is moved in the opposite direction.

System limits

If you are no longer able to move the roller sunblind after having activated it consecutively a number of times, the overheating protection mechanism is active. The system is blocked for a limited time to prevent overheating. Let the system cool.

The roller sunblind cannot be moved at low interior temperatures.

Roller sunblinds, rear side windows

Safety information

Warning

With closed roller sunblinds and open windows, the roller sunblinds may be strained while driving due to the wind. The roller sunblinds may be damaged and vehicle occupants may be harmed. There is a risk of injury. Do not open the windows while driving if the roller sunblinds are closed.

Pull out the roller sunblind at the strap and hook it onto the bracket.

Glass sunroof

General information

The glass sunroof and the sun protection are operated using the same switch.

The glass sunroof can be opened from the outside with the vehicle key and also closed with Comfort Access.

With Comfort Access: The glass sunroof can be closed from the outside via Comfort Access.

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the glass sunroof. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the glass sunroof is clear during opening and closing.

Overview

Opening/closing the glass sunroof.

Functional requirements

The glass sunroof and the sun protection can be operated under the following conditions.

- Standby state is switched on.
- Drive-ready state is switched on.

The vehicle key must be in the car's interior.

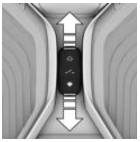
Lifting/closing glass sunroof

Push switch briefly upward.

- The closed glass sunroof tilts and the sun protection opens slightly.
- The opened glass sunroof closes until it is in the tilted position. The sun protection does not move.

- The tilted glass sunroof closes.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sun protection separately



- Press the switch in the desired direction to the resistance point and hold it there.

  Holding down the switch opens the sun protection. If the sun protection is already fully open, the glass sunroof opens.

  The glass sunroof closes while the switch is being held. If the glass sunroof is already closed or in the tilted position, the sun protection closes.

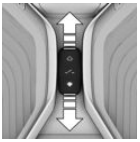
- Push the switch in the desired direction past the resistance point.

  The sun protection opens automatically. If the sun protection is already fully open, the glass sunroof opens automatically.

  The glass sunroof closes automatically. If the glass sunroof is already closed or in the tilted position, the sun protection closes automatically.

  Pressing the switch upward stops the motion.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sun protection together



Briefly press the switch twice in succession in the desired direction past the resistance point.

The glass sunroof and sun protection move together. Pressing the switch upward stops the motion.

Comfort position

In some models, the wind noises in the car's interior are lowest when the glass sunroof is not fully open. In these models, the automatic func-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1303
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

tion initially only opens the glass sunroof up to this comfort position.

Pressing the switch again opens the glass sunroof fully.

Jam protection system

Concept

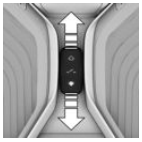
The jam protection prevents objects or body parts from becoming jammed between the roof and glass sunroof while the glass sunroof is closing.

General information

If a resistance or blockage is detected while the glass sunroof is closing, the closing operation is interrupted once the roof reaches the half-open position, or it is stopped when closing from the tilted position.

Closing from the open position without jam protection

In case of danger from the outside or if ice might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

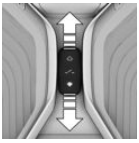


1. Close all doors.
2. Push the switch forward past the resistance point and hold.

   The glass sunroof closes with limited jam protection. If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.
3. Push the switch forward again past the resistance point and hold until the glass sunroof closes without jam protection. Make sure that the closing area is clear.

Closing from the lifted position without jam protection

In case of danger from the outside or if ice might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:



1. Close all doors.
2. Push the switch forward past the resistance point and hold.

Initializing after a power interruption

General information

After a power failure during the opening or closing process, the glass sunroof can only be operated to a limited extent. Initializing the system can help in this case.

The system can be initialized under the following conditions:

- The vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- The drive-ready state is established.
- The external temperature is above 41 °F/5 °C.

During initialization, the glass sunroof closes without jam protection.

Make sure that the closing area is clear.

Initializing the system

Press the switch up and hold it until the initialization is complete:

Initialization begins within 15 seconds.

- If the glass sunroof is closed, it opens then closes again.

▷ If the glass sunroof is open, it first closes, then opens and closes again.

Initialization is complete once the glass sunroof and sun protection have opened then closed again.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1305
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Seats, mirrors, and steering wheel

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Sitting safely

An ideal seating position that meets the needs of the occupants can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving.

In the event of an accident, the correct seating position plays an important role. Follow the information in the following chapters.

Additional information:

- Seats, refer to page 103.
- Safety belts, refer to page 106.
- Head restraints, refer to page 108.
- Airbags, refer to page 164.

Seats

Safety information

Warning

Seat adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected movements of the seat. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. Only adjust the seat on the driver's side when the vehicle is stationary.

Warning

With a backrest inclined too far to the rear, the efficacy of the safety belt can no longer be ensured. There is a risk of sliding under the safety belt in an accident. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Adjust the seat prior to starting the trip. Adjust the backrest so that it is in the most upright position as possible and do not adjust again while driving.

Warning

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

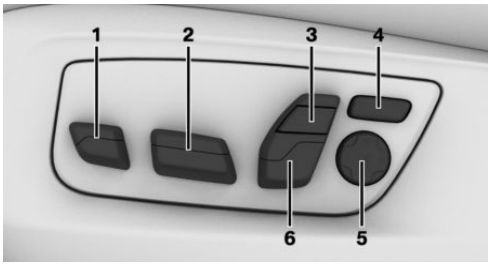
Electrically adjustable seats

General information

The seat adjustment for the driver's seat is stored for the driver profile currently used. When a driver profile is selected, the stored position is called up automatically.

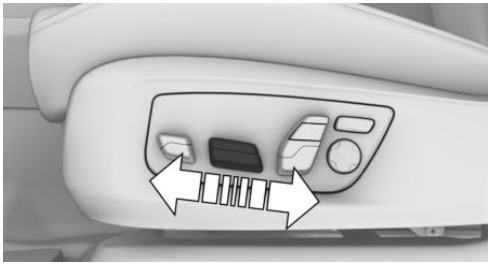
The current seat position can be stored using the memory function.

Overview



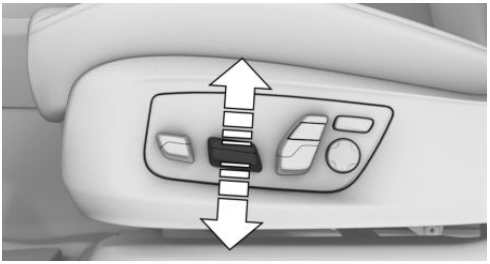
1 Thigh support
2 Forward/backward, height, seat tilt
3 Upper backrest
4 Backrest width
5 Lumbar support
6 Backrest tilt, head restraint

Forward/backward



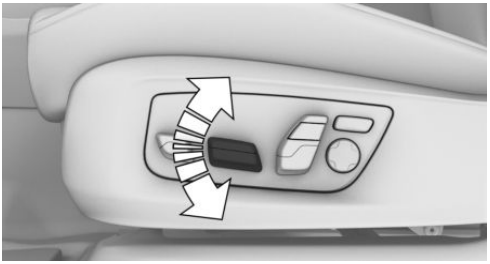
Push switch forward or backward.

Height



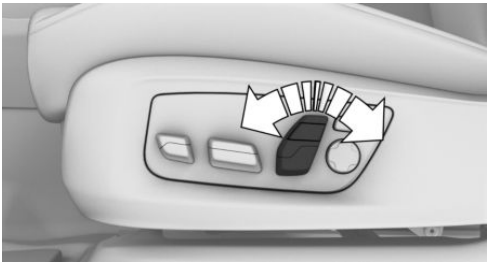
Push switch up or down.

Seat tilt



Move switch up or down.

Backrest tilt

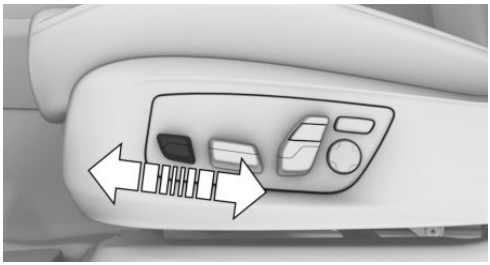


Move switch forward or backward.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1307
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

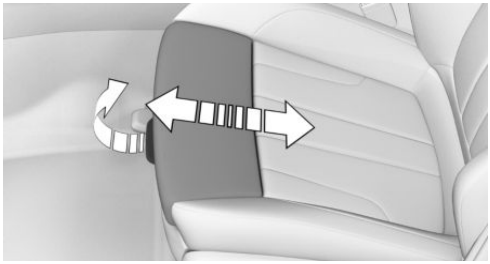
Thigh support

Multifunctional seat



Push the switch in the front or back.

Sport seat



Pull the lever at the front of the seat and push the thigh support forward or back.

Lumbar support

Concept

The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright posture.

Adjusting

- Press the front/rear section of the button:

  The curvature is increased/decreased.
- Press the upper/lower section of the button:

  The curvature is shifted up/down.

Backrest width

Concept

Adjusting the backrest width may improve lateral support when taking corners.

General information

You can change the backrest width by adjusting the side wings of the backrest.

To make it easier to enter and exit the vehicle, the backrest width temporarily opens fully.

Adjusting

- Press the front section of the button:

  The backrest width decreases.
- Press the rear section of the button:

  The backrest width increases.

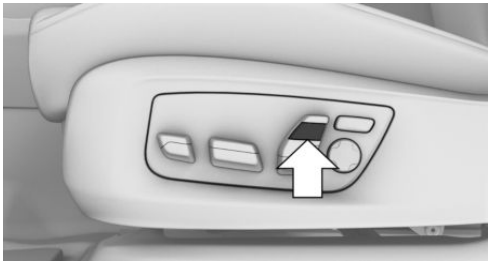
Upper backrest

Concept

The upper backrest supports the back in the shoulder area. A correct setting leads to a relaxed seating position and reduces strain on the shoulder muscles.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1308
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Adjusting



- ▷ Press the front section of the button:
  The upper backrest is inclined forward.
- ▷ Press the rear section of the button:
  The upper backrest is inclined backward.

Safety belts

Number of safety belts and safety belt buckles

The vehicle is fitted with five safety belts to ensure occupant safety. However, they can only offer protection when adjusted correctly.

The two outer safety belt buckles of the rear seats are intended for the persons sitting on the left and right.

The center safety belt buckle of the rear seats is intended for the person sitting in the middle.

General information

Always make sure that safety belts are being worn by the occupants before driving off. The airbags supplement the safety belts as an additional safety device. The airbags are not a substitute for safety belts.

The upper shoulder strap's anchorage point will be correct for adult seat occupants of every build if the seat is correctly adjusted.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

Use of a safety belt to buckle more than one person will potentially defeat the ability of the safety belt to serve its protective function. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Infants and children are not allowed on an occupant's lap, but must be transported and secured in designated child restraint systems.

⚠ Warning

The efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts, can be limited or lost when safety belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened safety belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that all occupants are wearing safety belts correctly.

⚠ Warning

With a rear backrest that is not locked, the protective function of the middle safety belt is not guaranteed. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. If you are using the middle safety belt, lock the wider rear seat backrest.

⚠ Warning

The efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts, may not be fully functional or fail in the following situations:

- ▷ The safety belts or safety belt buckles are damaged, soiled, or changed in any other way.
- ▷ Belt tensioners or belt retractors were modified.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1309
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

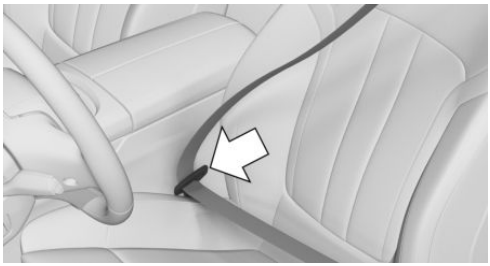
Safety belts can be imperceptibly damaged in the event of an accident. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not modify safety belts, safety belt buckles, belt tensioners, belt retractors or belt anchors and keep them clean. Have the safety belts checked after an accident at the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Correct use of safety belts

- Wear the safety belt twist-free and tight to your body over your lap and shoulders.
- Wear the safety belt deep on your hips over your lap. The safety belt may not press on your stomach.
- Do not rub the safety belt against sharp edges, or guide it or jam it in across hard or fragile objects.
- Avoid thick clothing.
- Re-tighten the safety belt frequently upward around your upper body.

Buckling the safety belt

1. Guide the safety belt slowly over shoulder and hip to put it on.
2. Insert the tongue plate into the safety belt buckle. The safety belt buckle must engage audibly.



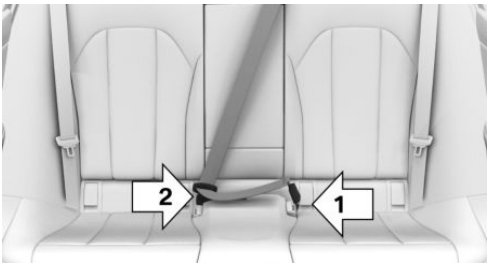
When the safety belt is fastened, the driver's and passenger's belt straps are automatically tightened once after driving away.

Unbuckling the safety belt

1. Hold the safety belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the safety belt buckle.
3. Guide the safety belt back into its roll-up mechanism.

Middle safety belt in the rear

Buckling the safety belt



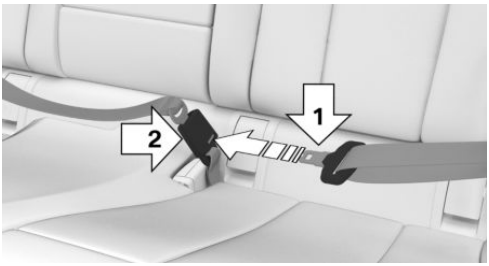
1. Pull the latch plate at the end of the belt out of the fixture on the rear window shelf.
2. Insert the lower buckle tongue in the belt buckle, arrow 1.
3. Insert the upper buckle tongue in the belt buckle, arrow 2.

   Safety belt buckles must audibly click into place.

Unbuckling the safety belt

1. Hold the safety belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the belt buckle.

3. Use the buckle tongue, arrow 1, to open the second safety belt buckle, arrow 2.



4. Guide the safety belt to the fixture on the rear window shelf.

Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat

Display in the instrument cluster

The indicator light lights up and a signal sounds. Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly. The safety belt reminder can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

Safety belt reminder for rear seats

General information

The safety belt reminder is automatically activated each time the engine starts.

The safety belt reminder is also activated when a passenger unbuckles a rear seat safety belt during the trip.

Display in the instrument cluster

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates after the engine is started.

Symbol	Description
	Green: the safety belt is buckled on the corresponding rear seat.
	Red: the safety belt is not buckled on the corresponding rear seat.

Safety mode

In critical situations, for instance during an emergency stop, the front safety belts tighten automatically.

If the situation passes without an accident occurring, the belt tension relaxes.

If the belt tension does not loosen automatically, stop the vehicle and unbuckle the safety belt using the red button in the safety belt buckle. Fasten the safety belt before continuing on your trip.

Front head restraints

General information

The current head restraint position can be stored using the memory function.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

A missing protective effect due to removed or not correctly adjusted head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
- ▷ Adjust the head restraint so its center supports the back of the head at as close to eye level as possible.
- ▷ Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the backrest tilt as needed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1311
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.

Warning

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

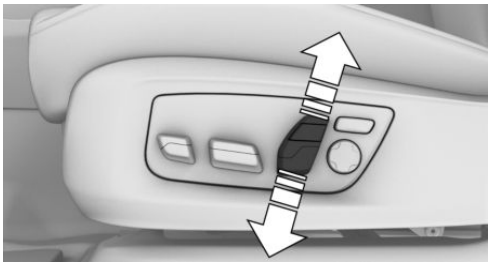
- Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.

Active head restraint

In the event of a rear-end collision with a certain severity, the active head restraint automatically reduces the distance from the head.

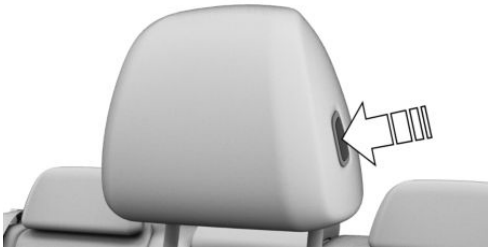
Have the active head restraint checked and if necessary replaced in the case of damage or if it was exposed to an accident.

Adjusting the height: power head restraints



Push switch up or down.

Adjusting the distance: manual head restraints



- Back: press the button and push the head restraint toward the rear.
- Forward: pull the head restraint toward the front.

After setting the distance, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Adjusting the distance: power head restraints

The head restraint is automatically repositioned when the upper backrest is adjusted.

Adjusting the side extensions

Fold the side extensions on the head restraint forward for increased lateral support in the resting position.

Removing

The head restraints cannot be removed.

Rear head restraints

Safety information

Warning

A missing protective effect due to removed or not correctly adjusted head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
- Adjust the head restraint so its center supports the back of the head at as close to eye level as possible.
- Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the backrest tilt as needed.

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.

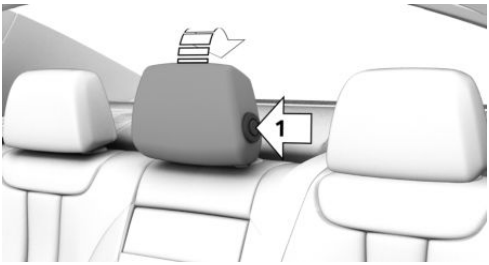
Warning

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.

Folding down the center head restraint

To improve the view to the rear, the center head restraint can be folded to the rear. Only push the head restraint down if no one will be sitting in the center seat.



- To the rear: press the button, arrow 1, and fold the head restraint backward.
- Forward: fold the head restraint toward the front as far as it will go. Make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Adjusting the height

The height of the outer head restraints can be adjusted.

- To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.
- To raise: push the head restraint up.

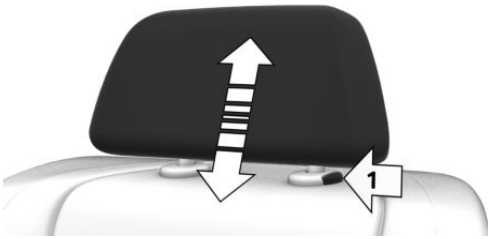
After setting the height, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Removing

With through-loading system:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1313
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

The outer head restraints can be removed. Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.



1. Fold down the rear seat backrest in question.
   Enlarging the cargo area, refer to page 273.
2. Raise the head restraint up against the resistance.
3. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

Installing

Proceed in the reverse order to install the head restraint.

After the installation, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Exterior mirrors

General information

The mirror on the front passenger side is more curved than the driver's side mirror.

The mirror setting is stored for the driver profile currently in use. When a driver profile is selected, the stored position is called up automatically.

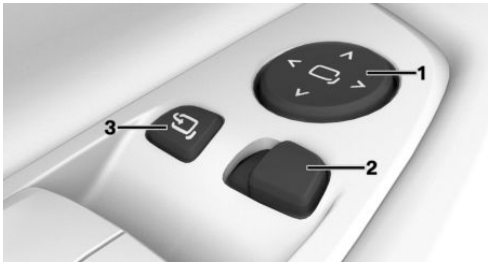
The current exterior mirror position can be stored using the memory function.

Safety information

Warning

Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. The distance to the traffic behind could be incorrectly estimated, for instance while changing lanes. There is a risk of accident. Estimate the distance to the traffic behind by looking over your shoulder.

Overview



1 Adjusting

2 Selecting a mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor

3 Folding in and out

Adjusting electrically

Press the button.

The selected mirror moves along with the button movement.

Selecting a mirror

To change over to the other mirror:

Slide the switch.

Malfunction

In case of an electrical malfunction, adjust the mirror by pressing the edges of the mirror glass.

Folding in and out

NOTICE

Depending on the vehicle width, the vehicle can be damaged in vehicle washes. There is a risk of damage to property. Before washing, fold in the mirrors by hand or with the button.

Press the button.

Folding is only possible up to a speed of approx. 15 mph/20 km/h.

Folding the mirrors in and out is helpful in the following situations:

- In vehicle washes.
- On narrow roads.

Mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Automatic heating

Both exterior mirrors are automatically heated as needed and when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Automatic dimming feature

The exterior mirror on the driver's side is automatically dimmed. Photocells in the interior mirror are used to control this.

Automatic Curb Monitor, exterior mirror

Concept

If reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass on the front passenger side is tilted downward. This improves your view of the curb and other formatting issue - low-lying obstacles when parking, for instance.

Activating

1. slide the switch to the driver's side mirror position.
2. Engage selector lever position R.

Deactivating

Slide the switch to the passenger's side mirror position.

Interior mirror

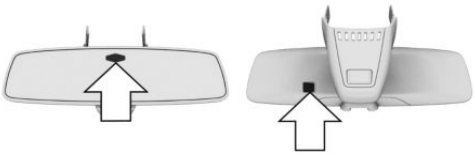
General information

The interior mirror is dimmed automatically.

Photocells are used for control:

- In the mirror glass.
- On the back of the mirror.

Overview



Functional requirements

- Keep the photocells clean.
- Do not cover the area between the interior mirror and the windshield.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1315
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Steering wheel

Safety information

Warning

Steering wheel adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected steering wheel movements. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. Adjustng the steering wheel while the vehicle is stationary only.

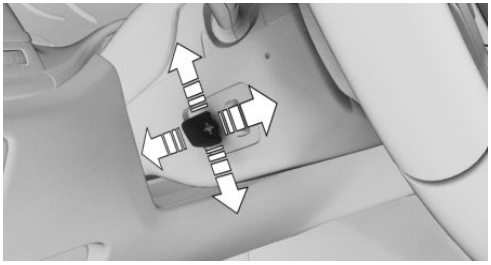
Electric steering wheel adjustment

General information

The steering wheel setting is stored for the driver profile currently in use. When a driver profile is selected, the position is accessed automatically when the drive-ready state is switched on.

The current steering wheel position can be stored using the memory function.

Adjusting



Press the switch to adjust the forward/back position and height of the steering wheel to the seat position.

Assistance getting in and out

The steering wheel temporarily moves into the highest position to make it easier to enter and exit the vehicle.

Heated steering wheel

Overview

Button for heated steering wheel

Switching on/off

Press the button.

A Check Control message is displayed.

If the trip is resumed within approx. 15 minutes after an intermediate stop, the heated steering wheel activates automatically if the function was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Memory function

Concept

The following settings can be stored and, if necessary, retrieved using the memory function:

- Seat position.
- Exterior mirror position.
- Steering wheel position.
- Height of the Head-up Display.

General information

Two memory locations with different settings can be set for each driver profile.

The following settings are not stored:

- Backrest width.
- Lumbar support.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1316

Safety information

Warning

Using the memory function while driving can lead to unexpected seat or steering wheel movements. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. Only retrieve the memory function when the vehicle is stationary.

Warning

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Overview

The memory buttons are located on the front doors.

Storing

1. Set the desired position.
2. SET Press the button. The writing on the button lights up.
3. Press desired button 1 or 2 while the LED is lit. A signal sounds.

Calling up settings

Press the desired button 1 or 2.

The stored position is called up.

The procedure stops when a switch for setting the seat is pressed or one of the memory buttons is pressed again.

Once underway, adjustment of the seat position on the driver's side is disabled after a short while.

Massage function

Concept

Depending on the program, the massage function ensures relaxed muscles and better blood circulation and can avoid fatigue.

General information

Eight different massage programs can be selected:

- Pelvis activation.
- Upper body activation.
- Full body activation.
- Back massage.
- Shoulder massage.
- Lumbar massage.
- Upper body training.
- Full body training.

Overview

Massage function

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1317
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Switching on

Press the button once for each intensity level.

The maximum intensity level is reached when three LEDs are lit.

Switching off

Press and hold the button until the LEDs go out.

Adjusting the massage program

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Seat comfort"
4. Select desired seat.
5. "Seat massage"
6. Select the desired setting.

Seat heating

Overview

Front

Seat heating

Rear

Seat heating

Switching on

Press the button once for each temperature level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

When ECO PRO is activated, the heating output is reduced.

If the trip is continued within approx. 15 minutes after a stop, seat heating is activated automatically with the temperature selected last.

Additional information:

ECO PRO, refer to page 282.

Switching off

Press and hold the button until the bar display on the climate control display goes out.

Seat heating distribution

The heating action in the seat cushion and the seat backrest can be distributed in different ways.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1318
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

4. Select the desired menu item.
5. Select desired seat.
6. Press the Controller and turn it to set the seat heating distribution.

Active seat ventilation

Concept

Integrated fans in the seat and armrest areas provide a comfortable seat temperature.

Overview

Active seat ventilation

Switching on

Press the button once for each ventilation level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

The ventilation switches back by one level after a short time.

Switching off

Press and hold the button until the bar display on the climate control display goes out.

Individual activation

Concept

A number of heating and cooling functions can be automatically activated depending on the external temperature.

General information

The external temperature at which the functions are to be automatically activated can be set via iDrive.

Activation is performed if the external temperature exceeds or falls below the set temperature in the first few minutes after drive-ready state has been switched on. A new alignment is carried out after the settings have been changed.

Depending on the equipment package, the following functions can be automatically activated:

- Seat heating.
- Heated steering wheel.
- Seat ventilation.

If the trip is continued within approx. 15 minutes after a stop, the functions are activated automatically with the levels that were last selected.

Functional requirement

The safety belt of the corresponding seat is buckled.

Activating/deactivating

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. Select the desired menu item.
5. Select desired seat.
6. Select the menu item of the desired function.
7. Set the external temperature at which the function is to be activated.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1319
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Transporting children safely

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

The right place for children

Safety information

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Warning

A heated vehicle may result in death to persons, especially children, or animals. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not leave persons, especially children, or animals unattended in the vehicle.

Warning

Exposure to intense sunlight can cause child restraint systems and their components to become very hot. Persons may sustain burn injuries when touching the hot components. There is a risk of injury. Do not expose the child restraint system to direct sunlight or cover where necessary. If necessary, let the child restraint system cool down before transporting a child. Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle.

Always transport children in the rear seat

General information

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is in the rear seat.

Transport children younger than 13 years of age or shorter than 5 ft/150 cm only in the rear seat in suitable child restraint systems designed for the age, weight and size of the child. Children 13 years of age or older must wear a safety belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system can no longer be used due to their age, weight, or size.

Safety information

Warning

The safety belt cannot be fastened correctly on children shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm without suitable additional child restraint systems. The efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts, can be limited or lost when safety belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened safety belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Secure children shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm using suitable child restraint systems.

Children on the front passenger seat

General information

Before using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, ensure that the front, knee, and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated.

Additional information:

For automatic deactivation of front-seat passenger airbags, refer to page 167.

Safety information

Warning

Active front-seat passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are activated. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front-seat passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light lights up.

Installing child restraint systems

General information

Pay attention to the specifications and the operating and safety information of the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing, and using child restraint systems.

Safety information

Warning

The protective effect of child restraint systems and their fastening systems which have been damaged or exposed to an accident can be limited or lost. A child cannot be properly restrained in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life.

Do not use child restraint systems which have been damaged or exposed to an accident.

If a child restraint system and its fastening system has been damaged or exposed to an accident, have these systems checked and replaced by the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1321
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

On the front passenger seat

Deactivating airbags

Warning

Active front-seat passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are activated. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front-seat passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light lights up.

Before installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, make sure that the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated.

Additional information:

For automatic deactivation of front-seat passenger airbags, refer to page 167.

Seat position and height

Before installing a child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go and, if possible, bring it up to medium height. This seat position and height ensure the best possible position for the belt and offers optimal protection in the event of an accident.

If the upper anchor of the safety belt is located in front of the belt guide of the child seat, move the front passenger seat carefully forward until the best possible belt guide position is reached.

Backrest width

Adjustable backrest width: before installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, open the backrest width completely. Do not change the backrest width again and do not call up a memory position.

Child seat security

The safety belts in the rear and the front passenger safety belt can be permanently locked to fasten child restraint systems.

Locking the safety belt

1. Pull out the belt strap completely.
2. Secure the child restraint system with the safety belt.
3. Allow the belt strap to be pulled in and pull it tight against the child restraint system. The safety belt is locked.

Unlocking the safety belt

1. Unbuckle the safety belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the belt strap to be pulled in completely.

LATCH child restraint fixing system

General information

LATCH: Lower Anchors and Tether for Children.

Pay attention to the specifications and the operating and safety information from the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing, and using LATCH child restraint fixing systems.

Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors

General information

The lower anchors may be used to attach the CRS to the vehicle seat up to a combined child and CRS weight of 65 lbs/30 kg when the child is restrained by the internal harnesses.

Safety information

Warning

If the LATCH child restraint fixing systems are not correctly engaged, the protective effect of the LATCH child restraint fixing system can be limited. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the lower anchors are securely engaged and that the LATCH child restraint fixing system fits securely against the backrest.

Position

Symbol	Meaning
	The corresponding symbol shows the mounts for the lower LATCH anchors. Seats equipped with lower anchors are marked with a pair, (2), of LATCH symbols. For vehicles equipped with a middle seat: It is not recommended to use the inner lower anchors of standard outer LATCH positions to fasten a child restraint system on the middle seat. Use the vehicle safety belt instead for the middle seat.

Before installing LATCH child restraint fixing systems

Pull the safety belt away from the area of the child restraint system.

Assembly of LATCH child restraint fixing systems

1. Install child restraint system, see manufacturer's information.
2. Ensure that both LATCH anchors are properly engaged.

Child restraint systems with tether strap

Safety information

Warning

If the upper retaining strap is incorrectly used for the child restraint system, the protective effect can be reduced. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the upper retaining strap does not run over sharp edges and is not twisted as it passes the upper anchor.

Warning

If the rear backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the child restraint system is limited or there is none. In certain situations, for instance braking maneuvers or in case of an accident, the rear backrest can fold forward. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the rear backrests are locked.

NOTICE

The anchors for the upper retaining straps of child restraint systems are only provided for these retaining straps. When other objects are mounted, the anchors can be damaged. There

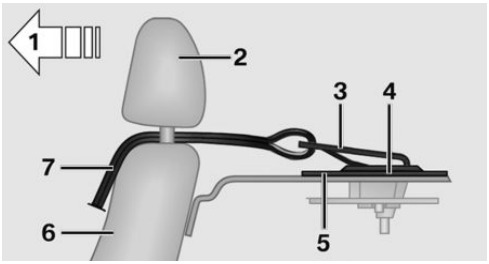
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1323
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

is a risk of damage to property. Only mount child restraint systems to the upper anchors.

Anchors

Symbol	Meaning
	The respective symbol shows the anchor for the upper retaining strap. Seats with an upper top tether are marked with this symbol. It can be found on the rear seat backrest or the rear window shelf.

Routing the retaining strap



1 Direction of travel
2 Head restraint
3 Hook for upper retaining strap
4 Anchor
5 Rear window shelf
6 Seat backrest
7 Upper retaining strap

Attaching the upper retaining strap to the anchor

1. Open the anchor cover.
2. Raise the head restraint.
3. Guide the upper retaining strap between the supports or along both sides of the head restraint to the anchor.

   For the middle seat, guide it over or along both sides of the head restraint to the anchor where applicable.
4. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the anchor.
5. Tighten the retaining strap by pulling it down.
6. Lower and engage head restraints as needed.

Locking the doors and windows in the rear

General information

In certain situations it may be advisable to secure the rear doors and windows, for instance when transporting children.

Doors

Push the locking lever on the rear doors up.

The door can now be opened from the outside only.

Safety switch for the rear

Press the button on the driver's door.

This locks various functions so that they cannot be operated from the rear.

Additional information:

Safety switch, refer to page 98.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1324
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Driving

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Start/Stop button

Concept

Pressing the Start/Stop button switches drive-ready state on or off.

Steptronic transmission: the drive-ready state is switched on when you depress the brake pedal while pressing the Start/Stop button.

Pressing the Start/Stop button again switches the drive-ready state back off and standby state is switched back on.

Additional information:

- Drive-ready state, refer to page 38.
- Standby state, refer to page 38.

Driving away

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. Apply drive mode.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Drive away.

Auto Start/Stop function

Concept

The Auto Start/Stop function helps save fuel. The system switches off the engine during a stop, for instance in traffic congestion or at traffic lights. Drive-ready state remains switched on. The engine starts automatically for driving off.

General information

After each engine start using the Start/Stop button, the Auto Start/Stop function is ready. The function is activated from speeds of approx. 3 mph/5 km/h.

Depending on the selected driving mode, the system is automatically activated or deactivated.

Engine stop

Functional requirements

Steptronic transmission

The engine is switched off automatically during a stop under the following conditions:

- The selector lever is in selector lever position D.
- The brake pedal remains pressed while the vehicle is stationary or the vehicle is held by Automatic Hold.
- The driver's safety belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

Steptronic transmission: manual engine stop

If the engine was not switched off automatically when the vehicle stopped, the engine can be switched off manually:

- Press the brake pedal forcefully again from the current pedal position.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1325
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

▷ Engage selector lever position P.

When all functional preconditions are fulfilled, the engine switches off.

Air conditioner when the engine is switched off

The air flow from the air conditioner is reduced when the engine is switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster

General information

The display in the tachometer indicates that the Auto Start/Stop function is ready for an Automatic engine start.

The display indicates that the conditions for an automatic engine stop have not been met.

Total time with switched-off engine

ECO PRO driving mode: depending on the vehicle equipment, the total time that the engine has been switched off using the Auto Start/Stop function is displayed on an automatic engine stop.

The total time can be reset via the trip data.

Additional information:

ECO PRO, refer to page 282.

Functional limitations

The engine is not switched off automatically in the following situations:

▷ In case of a steep downhill grade.

▷ Brake not engaged strongly enough.

▷ The external temperature is high and automatic climate control is running.

▷ The car's interior has not yet been heated or cooled to the required level.

▷ Where there is a risk of window condensation when the automatic climate control is switched on.

▷ Engine or other parts not at operating temperature.

▷ Engine cooling is required.

▷ The wheels are at a sharp angle or the steering wheel is being turned.

▷ Vehicle battery is heavily discharged.

▷ At higher elevations.

▷ The hood is unlocked.

▷ The parking assistant is activated.

▷ Stop-and-go traffic.

▷ Steptronic transmission: selector lever position in N or R.

▷ After driving in reverse.

▷ Use of fuel with high ethanol content.

Starting the engine

Functional requirements

Steptronic transmission

The engine starts automatically under the following preconditions:

▷ By releasing the brake pedal.

▷ When Automatic Hold is activated: press the accelerator pedal.

Driving off

After the engine starts, accelerate as usual.

Safety mode

After the engine switches off automatically, it will not start again automatically if any one of the following conditions are met:

▷ The driver's safety belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is open.

▷ The hood was unlocked.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1326
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Some indicator lights light up for a varied length of time.

The engine can only be started via the Start/Stop button.

System limits

Even if driving off was not intended, the deactivated engine starts up automatically in the following situations:

- Excessive warming of the car's interior when the air conditioning is switched on.
- Excessive cooling of the car's interior when the heating is switched on.
- Where there is a risk of window condensation when the automatic climate control is switched on.
- When the steering wheel is turned.
- Steptronic transmission:

  Change from selector lever position D to N or R.
- Steptronic transmission:

  Change from selector lever position P to N, D, or R.
- Vehicle battery is heavily discharged.
- Start of an oil level measurement.

Additional functions Auto Start/Stop

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country-specific version, the vehicle features a variety of sensors for assessing the traffic situation. The Auto Start/Stop function uses this information to adapt to various traffic situations in a proactive manner.

For instance, this applies to the following situations:

- When a situation is detected in which the stopping time is expected to be very short, the engine is not switched off automatically. A message appears on the Control Display, depending on the situation.
- When a situation is detected in which the vehicle needs to drive off immediately, the engine is started automatically.

The function may be restricted if the navigation data is invalid, outdated or not available, for example.

Deactivate/activate the system manually

Concept

The engine is not automatically switched off.

The engine is started during an automatic engine stop.

Using the button

Press the button.

Steptronic transmission: via selector lever position

The Auto Start/Stop function is also deactivated in selector lever position M/S.

Via the Driving Dynamics Control

The Auto Start/Stop function is also deactivated in SPORT driving mode of the Driving Dynamics Control.

Display

- LED comes on: auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.
- LED goes out: auto Start/Stop function is activated.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1327
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Switching off the vehicle during an automatic engine stop

General information

During an automatic engine stop, the vehicle can be switched off permanently, for instance when leaving it.

Steptronic transmission

1. Press the Start/Stop button.
   - Drive-ready state is switched off.
   - Standby state is switched on.
   - Selector lever position P is engaged automatically.
2. Set the parking brake.

Automatic deactivation

General information

In certain situations, the Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated automatically for safety reasons, for instance if no driver is detected.

Malfunction

The Auto Start/Stop function no longer switches off the engine automatically. A Check Control message is displayed. It is possible to continue driving. Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Driving Dynamics Control

Concept

The Driving Dynamics Control influences the driving dynamics properties of the vehicle.

The vehicle can be adjusted depending on the situation using various driving modes.

General information

The following systems are affected, for instance:

- Engine characteristics.
- Steptronic transmission.
- Adaptive chassis.
- Adaptive Drive.
- Active roll stabilization.
- Adaptive M chassis.
- Adaptive M Chassis Professional
- Integral Active Steering.
- Display in the instrument cluster.
- Cruise control.
- Backrest width for comfort seats.

When the drive-ready state is switched on, the COMFORT or ECO PRO driving mode is selected automatically, depending on the equipment.

Overview

Displays in the instrument cluster

The selected driving mode is displayed in the instrument cluster.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1328
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Driving modes

Button	Driving mode	Configuration
	SPORT	INDIVIDUAL
	SPORT PLUS	
	COMFORT	
	ECO PRO	INDIVIDUAL
	ADAPTIVE	

When the drive-ready state is switched on, the COMFORT or ECO PRO driving mode is selected automatically, depending on the equipment.

Driving modes in detail

COMFORT

Concept

Balanced tuning between dynamic and efficient driving.

Switching on

COMFORT Press the button repeatedly until COMFORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

SPORT

Concept

Dynamic tuning for higher agility with an optimized chassis and suspension.

Switching on

SPORT Press the button repeatedly until SPORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

SPORT INDIVIDUAL

Concept

Individual settings can be adjusted in the SPORT INDIVIDUAL driving mode.

Configuration

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driving mode"
4. "SPORT INDIVIDUAL"
5. Select the desired setting:

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Reset SPORT INDIVIDUAL to the standard settings:

"Reset to SPORT STANDARD".

SPORT PLUS

Concept

Dynamic tuning for maximum agility with an adjusted drive.

Switching on

SPORT Press the button repeatedly until SPORT PLUS is displayed in the instrument cluster.

ECO PRO

Concept

Efficient driving setting.

Switching on

ECO PRO Press the button repeatedly until ECO PRO is displayed in the instrument cluster.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1329
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL

Concept

Individual settings can be adjusted in the ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL driving mode.

Configuration

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driving mode"
4. "ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Reset ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL to the standard settings:

"Reset to ECO PRO STANDARD".

ADAPTIVE

Concept

Comfort-oriented driving mode, whose tuning is automatically modified to the driving situation and driving style.

If the navigation system is active, upcoming road sections are considered.

Switching on

Press the button. ADAPTIVE is displayed in the instrument cluster.

INDIVIDUAL configuration

General information

The individual configuration of the driving mode is stored for the active driver profile. The last set configuration is activated directly when the driving mode is called up again.

Activating configuration of the driving mode

Press the button for the desired driving mode several times.

Parking brake

Concept

The parking brake is used to prevent the vehicle from rolling when it is parked.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1330

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Overview

Parking brake

Setting

With a stationary vehicle

Pull the switch.

The LED lights up.

PARK

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates red. The parking brake is set.

While driving

General information

To use as emergency brake while driving.

Pull the switch and hold it. The vehicle brakes hard while the switch is being pulled.

PARK

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates red, a signal sounds, and the brake lights illuminate.

A Check Control message is displayed.

The parking brake is engaged when the vehicle is stationary.

Releasing

Releasing manually

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. Steptronic transmission: press the switch while the brake is pressed or selector lever position P is set.

   The LED and indicator light go out.

   The parking brake is released.

Automatic release

The parking brake is released automatically when you drive away.

The LED and indicator light go out.

Steptronic transmission: Automatic Hold

Concept

This system assists the driver by automatically setting and releasing the brake, such as when moving in stop-and-go traffic.

The vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

On uphill grades the system prevents the vehicle from rolling backward when driving off.

General information

Under the following conditions, the parking brake is automatically engaged:

- Drive-ready state is switched off.
- The driver's door is opened while the vehicle is stationary.
- The moving vehicle is brought to a standstill using the parking brake.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1331
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Display

PARK (P) The indicator light changes from green to red.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

NOTICE

If the vehicle is stationary, Automatic Hold engages the parking brake and prevents the vehicle from rolling in a car wash. There is a risk of damage to property. Deactivate Automatic Hold prior to entering the car wash.

Overview

AUTO H Automatic Hold

Establishing function readiness of Automatic Hold

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. AUTO H Press the button.

   The LED lights up.

AUTO H The indicator light lights up green.

Automatic Hold is functional.

After every new vehicle start, the last selected setting is active.

Automatic Hold holding the vehicle

Function readiness is established and the driver's door is closed.

After stepping on the brake pedal, for instance when stopping at a traffic light, the vehicle is automatically secured against rolling.

PARK (P) The indicator light lights up green.

Driving off

Step on the accelerator pedal to drive off.

The brake is released automatically and the indicator light of the parking brake is no longer illuminated.

Activating the parking brake automatically

The parking brake is automatically set if drive-ready state is switched off while the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold or if the vehicle is exited.

PARK (P) The indicator light changes from green to red.

The parking brake is not set automatically, if the drive-ready state is switched off, while the vehicle is coasting to a halt. Automatic Hold is deactivated.

Switching function readiness off

AUTO H Press the button.

The LED goes out.

AUTO H The indicator light goes out.

Automatic Hold is switched off.

If the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold, press additionally on the brake pedal, when switching off.

Malfunction

If the parking brake fails or malfunctions, secure the vehicle against rolling before exiting.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Secure the vehicle against rolling away, for instance with a wheel chock, after exiting the vehicle.

After a power failure

To reestablish parking brake functionality after a power failure:

1. Switch on standby state.
2. (P) Pull the switch while stepping on the brake pedal or selector lever position P is set and then push.

This process may take a few seconds. Some mechanical sounds associated with this process are normal.

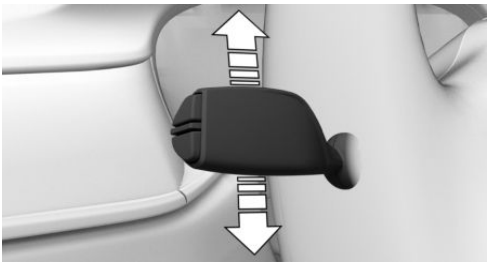
PARK (P) The indicator light is no longer illuminated as soon as the parking brake is ready for operation again.

Turn signal

Turn signal in exterior mirror

When driving and during operation of the turn signals or hazard warning system, do not fold in the exterior mirrors, so that the signal lights on the exterior mirror are easy to see.

Using turn signals



Press the lever past the resistance point.

Triple turn signal activation

Lightly tap the lever up or down.

The triple turn signal duration can be adjusted.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1333
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "One-touch turn signal"
5. Select the desired setting.

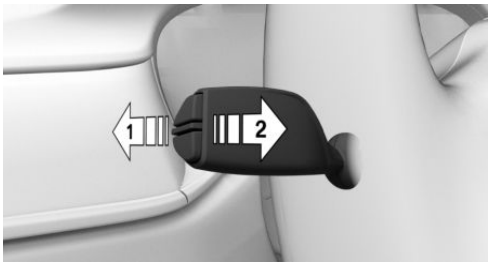
The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Signaling briefly

Press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

High beams, headlight flasher

Push the lever forward or pull it backward.



- ▷ High beams on, arrow 1.

  The high beams light up when the low beams are switched on.
- ▷ High beams off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

Wiper system

General information

Do not use the wipers if the windshield is dry, as this may damage the wiper blades or cause them to become worn more quickly.

Safety information

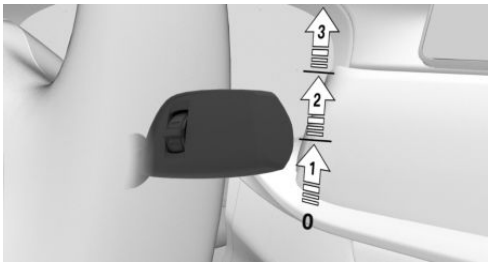
⚠ Warning

If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

⚠ NOTICE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of damage to property. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.

Switching on



Press the lever up until the desired position is reached.

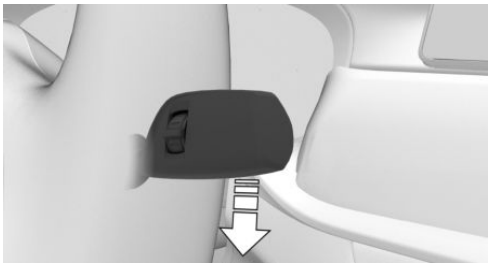
- ▷ Resting position of the wipers, position 0.
- ▷ Rain sensor, position 1.
- ▷ Normal wiper speed, position 2.
- ▷ Fast wiper speed, position 3.

When travel is interrupted with the wiper system switched on: when travel continues, the wipers resume at their previous speed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1334

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Switching off and brief wipe



Press the lever down.

- Switching off: press the lever down until it reaches its standard position.
- Brief wipe: press the lever down from the standard position.

  The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

Rain sensor

Concept

The rain sensor automatically controls the time between wipes depending on the intensity of the rainfall.

General information

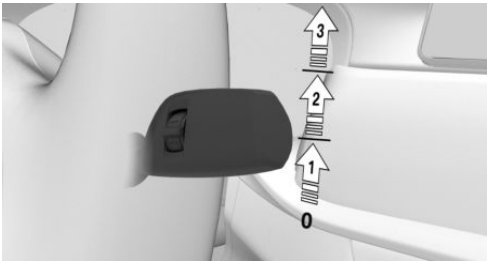
The sensor is located on the windshield, directly in front of the interior mirror.

Safety information

NOTICE

If the rain sensor is activated, the wipers can accidentally start moving in vehicle washes. There is a risk of damage to property. Deactivate the rain sensor in vehicle washes.

Activating



Press the lever up once from its standard position, arrow 1.

Wiping is started.

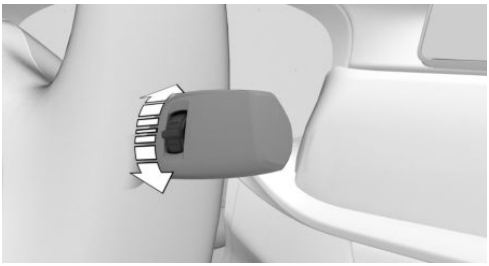
The LED in the wiper lever is illuminated.

In frosty conditions, wiper operation may not start.

Deactivating

Press the lever back into the standard position.

Adjusting the rain sensor sensitivity



Turn the thumbwheel to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Upward: high rain sensor sensitivity.

Downward: low rain sensor sensitivity.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1335
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Windshield washer system

Safety information

Warning

The washer fluid can freeze onto the window at low temperatures and obstruct the view. There is a risk of accident. Only use the washer systems, if the washer fluid cannot freeze. Use washer fluid with antifreeze, if needed.

NOTICE

When the washer fluid reservoir is empty, the wash pump cannot work as intended. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use the washer system when the washer fluid reservoir is empty.

Cleaning the windshield

Pull the lever.

The system sprays washer fluid on the windshield and activates the wipers briefly.

Windshield washer nozzles

The windshield washer nozzles are automatically heated while standby state is switched on.

Fold-away position of the wipers

Concept

The fold-away position enables the wipers to be folded away from the windshield.

General information

Important, for instance when changing the wiper blades or for folding away under frosty conditions.

Safety information

Warning

If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

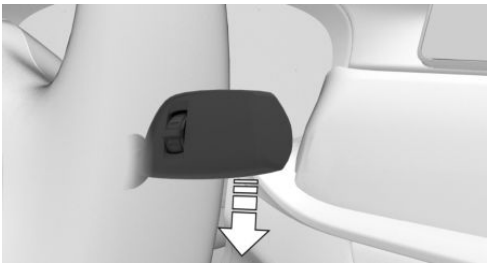
NOTICE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of damage to property. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.

Folding away the wipers

1. Switch on standby state.

2. Press and hold the wiper lever down, until the wipers stop in a close to vertical position.



3. Fold the wipers all the way away from the windshield.

Folding down the wipers

After the wipers are folded back down, the wiper system must be reactivated.

1. Fold the wipers back down onto the windshield.
2. Switch on standby state and press and hold the wiper lever down again.
3. Wipers return to their resting position and are ready again for operation.

Steptronic transmission

Concept

The Steptronic transmission combines the functions of an automatic transmission with the possibility of manual shifting, if needed.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling, for instance with the parking brake.

Selector lever positions

Drive mode D

Selector lever position for normal vehicle operation. All gears for forward travel are activated automatically.

R is reverse

Engage selector lever position R only when the vehicle is stationary.

Neutral N

The vehicle may be pushed or roll without power, for instance in vehicle washes in selector lever position N.

Parking position P

General information

Selector lever position, for instance for parking the vehicle. The transmission blocks the drive wheels in selector lever position P.

Engage selector lever position P only when the vehicle is stationary.

P is engaged automatically

Selector lever position P is engaged automatically in situations such as the following:

- After the drive-ready state is switched off and selector lever position R, D or M/S is engaged.
- After the standby state has been switched off when selector lever position N is engaged.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1337
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

▷ If the driver's safety belt is unbuckled, the driver's door is opened, and the brake pedal is not pressed while the vehicle is stationary and selector lever position D, M/S or R is engaged.

Engaging selector lever positions

General information

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a drive mode, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start.

Functional requirements

Only when the drive-ready state is switched on and the brake pedal is depressed is it possible to change from selector lever position P to another selector lever position.

The selection lever position P cannot be changed until all technical requirements are met.

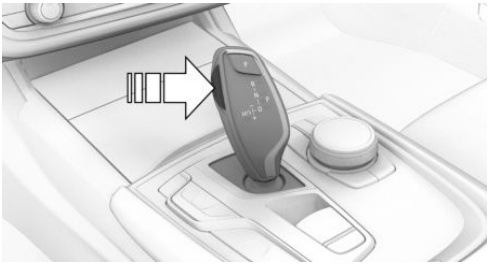
Engaging selector lever position D, N, R

A selector lever lock prevents the following faulty operation:

▷ Unintentional shifting into selector lever position R.

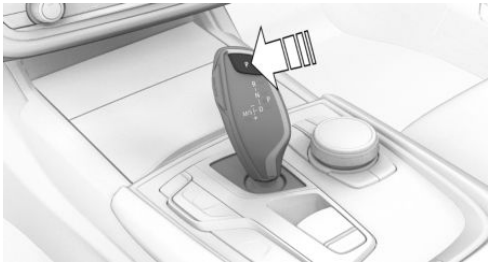
▷ Unintentional shifting from selector lever position P into another selector lever position.

1. Fasten driver's safety belt.
2. Press and hold the button to release the selector lever lock.



3. Push the selector lever in the desired direction, past a resistance point, if needed. The selector lever automatically returns to the center position when released.

Engaging selector lever position P



Press button P.

Rolling or pushing the vehicle

General information

In some situations, the vehicle is to roll without its own power for a short distance, for instance in a car wash, or be pushed.

Engaging selector lever position N

1. Switch on drive-ready state while pressing on the brake pedal.
2. If necessary, release the parking brake.
3. If necessary, switch off Automatic Hold.

   Automatic Hold, refer to page 128.
4. Depress the brake pedal.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1338

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

5. Touch the selector lever lock and engage selector lever position N.
6. Switch off drive-ready state.

   In this way, standby state remains switched on, and a Check Control message is displayed.

   The vehicle can roll.

NOTICE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not switch standby state off in vehicle washes.

Selector lever position P is engaged automatically after approximately 35 minutes.

If there is a malfunction, you may not be able to change the selector lever position.

Electronically unlock the transmission lock, if needed.

Kickdown

Kickdown is used to achieve maximum driving performance.

Step on the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position.

Sport program M/S

Concept

The shifting points and shifting times in the Sport program are designed for a sportier driving style. The transmission, for instance shifts up later and the shifting times are shorter.

Activating the Sport program

Press the selector lever to the left from selector lever position D.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, for instance S1.

The sport program of the transmission is activated.

Ending the Sport program

Push the selector lever to the right.

D is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Manual mode M/S

Concept

Manual gear-shifting is possible in manual mode.

Activating manual mode

1. Press the selector lever to the left from selector lever position D, arrow 1.

2. Push the selector lever forward or pull it backward, arrows 2.

Manual mode becomes active and the gear is changed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1339
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, for instance M1.

Shifting

- To shift down: press the selector lever forward.
- To shift up: pull the selector lever rearwards.

The transmission continues shifting automatically in certain situations, for instance when speed limits are reached.

Steptronic Sport transmission: prevent automatic upshifting in M/S manual mode

Depending on the motorization: if drive mode SPORT is selected, the Steptronic Sport transmission does not automatically upshift in M/S manual mode once the maximum speed is reached.

Depending on the BMW M drive configuration, this function is active independently of the drive mode.

In addition, there is no downshifting for kickdown.

Additional information:

SPORT, refer to page 126.

Ending the manual mode

Push the selector lever to the right.

D is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Shift paddles

Concept

The shift paddles on the steering wheel allow you to shift gears quickly while keeping both hands on the steering wheel.

General information

Shifting

The vehicle only shifts at suitable engine and road speeds.

Short-term manual mode

In selector lever position D, actuating a shift paddle switches into manual mode temporarily.

After conservative driving in manual mode without acceleration or shifting via the shift paddles for a certain amount of time, the transmission switches back to automatic mode.

It is possible to switch into automatic mode as follows:

- Keep the right shift paddle pulled until D is displayed in the instrument cluster.
- In addition to the pulled right shift paddle, pull the left shift paddle.

Continuous manual mode

In selector lever position S, actuating a shift paddle switches into manual mode permanently.

Steptronic Sport transmission

With the appropriate transmission version, the lowest possible gear can be selected by simultaneously activating kickdown and operating the left shift paddles. This is not possible in short-term manual mode.

Shifting

- Shifting up: pull the right shift paddle.
- Shifting down: pull left shift paddle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1340
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

▷ Downshifting to the lowest possible gear: keep the left shift paddle pulled.

The selected gear is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the current gear.

Displays in the instrument cluster

The selector lever position is displayed, for example P.

Electronic unlocking of the transmission lock

General information

Electronically unlock the transmission lock to maneuver vehicle from a danger area.

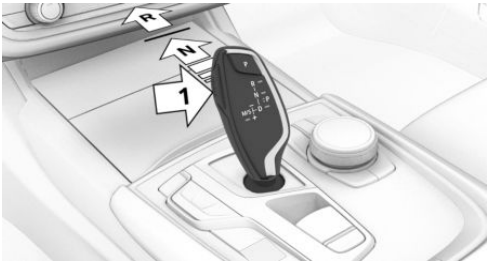
Before unlocking the transmission lock, set the parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

Engage selector lever position N

Unlocking is possible, if the starter can spin the engine.

1. Press and hold down brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button. The starter must audibly start. Hold the Start/Stop button pressed.
3. With your free hand, press the button on the selector lever, arrow 1, and press the selector lever into selector lever position N and hold, arrow N, until selector lever position N is displayed in the instrument cluster.

A Check Control message is displayed.



4. Release Start/Stop button and selector lever.
5. Release brake, as soon as the starter stops.
6. Maneuver the vehicle from the danger area and secure it against moving on its own.

Additional information:

Tow-starting/towing, refer to page 347.

Launch Control

Concept

Launch Control enables optimum acceleration on surfaces with good traction under dry surrounding conditions.

General information

The use of Launch Control causes premature component wear since this function represents a very heavy load for the vehicle.

Do not use Launch Control during the break-in period.

Do not steer the steering wheel when driving off with Launch Control.

Additional information:

Breaking-in period, refer to page 276.

Functional requirement

Launch Control is available when the engine is at operating temperature. The engine is at operating temperature after an uninterrupted trip of at least 6 miles/10 km.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1341
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Start with launch control

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. Press the button.

   TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster and the indicator light for DSC OFF lights up.
3. Engage selector lever position S.
4. With the left foot, forcefully press down on the brake.
5. Press and hold down the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position, kickdown.

   A flag symbol is displayed in the instrument cluster.
6. The starting engine speed adjusts. Wait briefly until the engine speed is constant. Keep accelerator pedal in this position.
7. Release the brake within 3 seconds after the flag symbol illuminates.

   The vehicle accelerates.

   Upshifting occurs automatically as long as the flag symbol is displayed and the accelerator pedal is not released.

Repeated use during a trip

After Launch Control has been used, the transmission must cool down for approx. 5 minutes before Launch Control can be used again. Launch Control adjusts to the surrounding conditions, when used again.

After using Launch Control

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC Dynamic Stability Control again as soon as possible.

System limits

An experienced driver may be able to achieve better acceleration values in DSC OFF mode.

Displays

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Instrument cluster

Concept

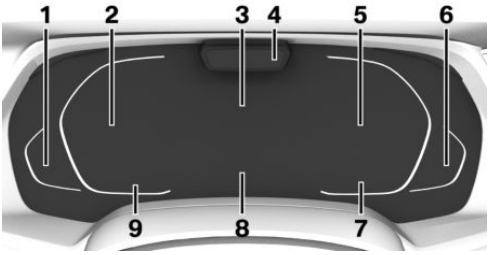
The instrument cluster is a variable display. When you change to a different program via Driving Dynamics Control, the displays in the instrument cluster adapt to the respective driving mode.

General information

The display change in the instrument cluster can be deactivated via iDrive.

Some of the displays in the instrument cluster may differ from the illustrations in the Owner's Manual.

Overview



1 Fuel gauge 147
Range 148

2 Speedometer

3 Central display area 140
Service notifications 149
Navigation display

4 Depending on the equipment: Driver Attention Camera

5 Tachometer 147
Selection lists 151
Widgets in the instrument cluster 141
Trip odometer, see Trip data 152
ECO PRO displays 282
Status, Driving Dynamics Control 125
Transmission display 134

6 Engine temperature 148

7 External temperature 148

8 Check Control 142

9 Speed Limit Info 150
Time 61

Central display area

Depending on the equipment and configuration, the following is displayed in the central display area of the instrument cluster:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1343
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

- Navigation displays such as the map view or, if destination guidance is active, a route preview with destination guidance information.
- Displays showing service notifications.

Some displays in the central display area can be configured individually.

The displays may vary depending on the equipment version and country variant.

Driving mode view

Concept

When the driving mode view is deactivated, the displays in the instrument cluster remain unchanged and do not adapt to the respective driving mode when the program is changed via Driving Dynamics Control.

Activating/deactivating

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Driving mode view"

Adjusting

Individual displays in the instrument cluster can be configured individually.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument panel"
5. Select the desired setting.

Widgets in the instrument cluster

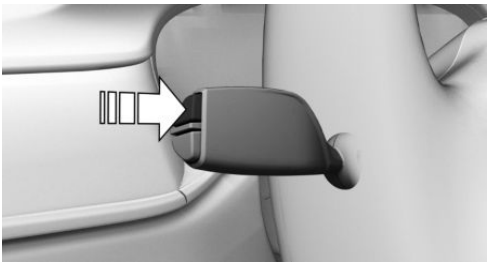
Concept

Displays for specific functions can be displayed in the instrument cluster.

The following displays can be selected:

- Current entertainment source, e.g., radio.
- Torque and power.
- Trip data.
- Efficiency display.

Selecting



Continue to press the button on the turn signal lever until the desired widget is selected.

Display

Efficiency display

Concept

Information about driving style and consumption can be displayed in the form of a consumption

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1344
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

display as a widget in the instrument cluster, for example.

General information

Depending on the activated driving mode, different information will be displayed:

Driving mode	Display
COMFORT SPORT	Average consumption. Current consumption. Energy recovery.
ECO PRO	ECO PRO bonus range. Distance traveled in Coasting mode. Current consumption.

Average consumption

The average consumption indicates the fuel consumption when driving a specific route.

Current consumption

The current consumption displays the current consumption of fuel. Check whether you are currently driving in an efficient and environmentally-friendly manner.

Energy recovery

During energy recovery, the kinetic energy of the vehicle is converted into electric energy during coasting. The vehicle battery is partially charged and fuel consumption can be reduced.

ECO PRO bonus range

In the ECO PRO driving mode, the yielded extension of the range as a result of fuel-efficient driving is displayed as ECO PRO bonus range.

Check Control

Concept

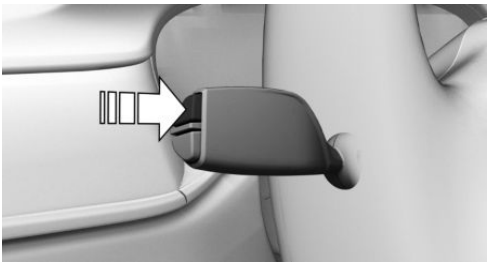
The Check Control system monitors functions in the vehicle and notifies you of malfunctions in the monitored systems.

General information

A Check Control message is displayed as a combination of indicator or warning lights and text messages in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, in the Head-up Display.

In addition, an acoustic signal may sound and a text message may appear on the Control Display.

Hiding Check Control messages



Press the button on the turn signal lever.

Continuous display

Some Check Control messages are displayed continuously and are not cleared until the malfunction is eliminated. If several malfunctions occur at once, the messages are displayed consecutively.

The messages can be hidden for approx. 8 seconds. After this time, they are displayed again automatically.

Temporary display

Some Check Control messages are hidden automatically after approx. 20 seconds. The Check Control messages are stored and can be displayed again later.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1345
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Displaying stored Check Control messages

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. ⚠ "Check Control messages"
4. Select the SMS text message.

Display

Check Control

At least one Check Control message is displayed or stored.

SMS text messages

SMS text messages in combination with a symbol in the instrument cluster explain a Check Control message and the meaning of the indicator/warning lights.

Supplementary SMS text messages

Additional information, such as the reason for an error or malfunction or the required action, can be called up via Check Control.

With urgent messages the added text will be automatically displayed on the Control Display.

Depending on the Check Control message, further help can be selected.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. ⚠ "Check Control messages"
4. Select the desired text message.
5. Select the desired setting.

Messages after trip completion

Certain messages displayed while driving are displayed again after drive-ready state is switched off.

Indicator/warning lights

Concept

Indicator/warning lights in the instrument cluster display the status of some functions in the vehicle and indicate when a malfunction is present in the monitored systems.

General information

The indicator/warning lights can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when drive-ready state is switched on.

Red lights

Safety belt reminder

Indicator light flashes or is illuminated: safety belt on the driver or passenger side is not buckled. The safety belt reminder can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly.

Safety belt reminder for rear seats

The safety belt is not buckled on the corresponding rear seat.

Airbag system

Airbag system and belt tensioner may not be working.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Parking brake

The parking brake is set.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1346
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Additional information:

For releasing the parking brake, refer to page 128.

Brake system

Braking system impaired. Continue to drive moderately.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Front collision mitigation

The indicator light is illuminated: pre-warning. Brake and increase distance.

Indicator light flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Additional information:

Front collision mitigation, refer to page 169.

Person warning with City braking function

Indicator light flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: imminent collision with a detected person or a cyclist.

Intervene immediately by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

Additional information:

Person warning with City braking function, refer to page 176.

Night Vision with pedestrian and animal detection

An infrared camera scans the area in front of the vehicle and issues a warning if it detects pedestrians and animals on the street.

The indicator light is illuminated: pre-warning. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Indicator light flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. Immediate braking or evading maneuver.

Additional information:

Night Vision with pedestrian and animal detection, refer to page 178.

Steering and traffic jam assistant

Indicator light flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: the system will be switched off.

Additional information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, refer to page 210.

Yellow lights

Steering and traffic jam assistant

The indicator light lights up and an acoustic signal may sound: a system interruption is imminent.

The indicator warning light flashes: lane marking driven over.

Additional information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, refer to page 210.

Antilock Braking System ABS

The Brake Assistant function may not activate. Avoid abrupt braking. Take the longer braking distance into account.

Have the system immediately checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control

The indicator light flashes: DSC controls the drive and braking forces. The vehicle is stabilized. Reduce speed and modify your driving style to the driving circumstances.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1347
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

The indicator light lights up: DSC has malfunctioned.

Have the system immediately checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

DSC Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 196.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated or DTC Dynamic Traction Control is activated

DSC is deactivated or DTC is activated.

Additional information:

- DSC Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 196.
- DTC Dynamic Traction Control, refer to page 198.

Flat Tire Monitor FTM

The FTM signals a loss of tire inflation pressure in a tire.

Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

Additional information:

Run-flat tires, refer to page 314.

Tire pressure monitor

The indicator light illuminates: the Tire Pressure Monitor reports a low tire inflation pressure or a flat tire. Follow the information in the Check Control message.

The indicator light flashes and is then illuminated continuously: flat tires or tire pressure losses cannot be detected.

- Interference caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- In the case of tires with special approval: the tire pressure monitor was unable to complete the reset. Reset the system again.
- A wheel without wheel electronics is mounted: have it checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop as needed.
- Malfunction: have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Tire pressure monitor, refer to page 307.

Steering system

Steering system may not be working.

Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Emissions

- The warning light lights up:

  Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.
- The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:

  This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

  Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

Additional information:

Socket for Onboard Diagnosis, refer to page 334.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1348
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Green lights

Safety belt reminder for rear seats

The safety belt is buckled on the corresponding rear seat.

Turn signal

Turn signal switched on.

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator light indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

Additional information:

Turn signal, refer to page 130.

Parking lights

Parking lights are switched on.

Additional information:

Parking lights/low beams, refer to page 158.

Low beams

Low beams are switched on.

Additional information:

Parking lights/low beams, refer to page 158.

Lane departure warning

The indicator light lights up: the system is activated. A lane marking was detected on at least one side of the vehicle and warnings can be issued.

Additional information:

Lane departure warning, refer to page 182.

Front fog lights

Front fog lights are switched on.

Additional information:

Front fog lights, refer to page 161.

High-beam Assistant

High-beam Assistant is switched on.

High beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the traffic situation.

Additional information:

High-beam Assistant, refer to page 160.

Automatic Hold

Automatic Hold is activated. The vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

Additional information:

Automatic Hold, refer to page 128.

Cruise control

Indicator light is illuminated: the system is active.

Additional information:

Cruise control, refer to page 200.

Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go function

The indicator light lights up: the system is switched on.

Additional information:

Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function, refer to page 203.

Steering and traffic jam assistant

Indicator light lights up: the system supports the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1349
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Additional information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, refer to page 210.

Blue lights

High beams

High beams are switched on.

Additional information:

High beams, refer to page 131.

Gray lights

Steering and traffic jam assistant

Indicator light is illuminated: the system is ready.

Additional information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, refer to page 210.

Fuel gauge

Concept

The current fill level of the fuel tank is displayed.

General information

Vehicle tilt position may cause the display to vary.

Additional information:

Refueling, refer to page 288.

Display

An arrow beside the fuel pump symbol shows which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is on.

The current range is displayed as numerical value.

Indicator light in the instrument cluster

The yellow indicator light illuminates, once the fuel reserve is reached.

Tachometer

Always avoid engine speeds in the red warning field. In this range, the fuel supply is reduced to protect the engine.

Shift point indicator

Concept

The shift lights indicate the upshift point at which the best possible acceleration can be achieved.

Functional requirement

Shift lights are shown when the SPORT or SPORT PLUS driving program is activated.

Switching on/off

Steptronic Sport transmission:

1. Select SPORT or SPORT PLUS driving mode.

   Press Driving Dynamics Control.
2. Activate the M manual mode of the transmission.

Display

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1350
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

- Current engine speed is displayed in the tachometer.
- Arrow 1: successive yellow illuminated fields indicate an increase in the speed.
- Arrow 2: successive orange illuminated fields indicate the upcoming shift moment.
- Arrow 3: the field lights up red. Do not wait any further to shift.

When the maximum speed is reached, the entire display flashes red and the supply of fuel is interrupted in order to protect the engine.

Standby state and drive-ready state

The letters OFF in the tachometer indicate that drive-ready state is switched off and standby state is switched on.

The letters READY in the tachometer indicate that the Auto Start/Stop function is ready to start the engine automatically.

Additional information:

Operating state of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Engine oil temperature

Display

- Cold engine: the pointer is at the low temperature end. Drive at moderate engine and vehicle speeds.
- Normal operating temperature: the pointer is in the middle or in the lower half of the temperature display.
- Hot engine: the pointer is at the high end of the temperature range. In addition, a Check Control message is displayed.

Additional information:

Coolant level, refer to page 331.

Indicator light in the instrument cluster

A red indicator light is displayed.

External temperature

General information

If the indicator drops to +37 °F/+3 °C or lower, a signal sounds.

A Check Control message is displayed.

There is an increased risk of ice on roads.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

Even at temperatures above +37 °F/+3 °C there can be a risk of icy roads, for instance on bridges or shady sections of the road. There is a risk of accident. Modify your driving style to the weather conditions at low temperatures.

Range

Concept

The range indicates the distance that can still be covered with the current fuel level.

General information

The estimated range available with the remaining fuel is permanently displayed in the instrument cluster.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1351
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

With a low remaining range, a Check Control message is briefly displayed. With a dynamic driving style, for instance fast cornering, the engine function is not always ensured.

The Check Control message appears continuously below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km.

Safety information

NOTICE

With a driving range of less than 30 miles/50 km the engine may no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of damage to property. Refuel promptly.

Display

The current range is displayed as numerical value next to the fuel gauge.

Service notifications

Concept

The function displays the service notifications and the corresponding maintenance scopes.

General information

After switching on drive-ready state, the instrument cluster briefly displays available driving distance or time to the next scheduled maintenance.

A service advisor can read out the current service notifications from your vehicle key.

Some information on service notifications can also be shown on the BMW display key.

Display

Detailed information on service notifications

More information on the type of service required may be displayed on the Control Display.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service schedule"
   Maintenance and service measures and legally mandated inspections are displayed.
4. Select an entry to call up detailed information.

Symbols

Symbols	Description
OK	No service is currently required.
△	The deadline for scheduled maintenance or a legally mandated inspection is approaching.
!	The service deadline has already passed.

Entering appointment dates

Enter the dates for the mandatory vehicle inspections.

Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service schedule"
4. "Vehicle inspection"
5. "Date:"
6. Select the desired setting.

Gear shift indicator

Concept

The system recommends the most efficient gear for the current driving situation.

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country version, the gear shift indicator is active in the M manual mode of the Steptronic transmission and with manual transmission.

Steptronic transmission: displaying

Suggestions to shift up or down are displayed in the instrument cluster.

On vehicles without a gear shift indicator, the engaged gear is displayed.

Example	Description
	Efficient gear is set.
	Shift into efficient gear.

Speed Limit Info

Speed Limit Info

Concept

Speed Limit Info shows the currently valid speed limit in the instrument cluster and, if necessary, the Head-up Display.

General information

The camera in the area of the interior mirror detects traffic signs at the edge of the road as well as overhead sign posts.

Traffic signs with extra symbols are considered and compared with the vehicle's onboard data.

The traffic sign will then be either displayed or ignored depending on the situation in the instrument cluster and the Head-up Display.

The system takes into account any information that is stored in the navigation system and also displays speed limits present on routes without signs.

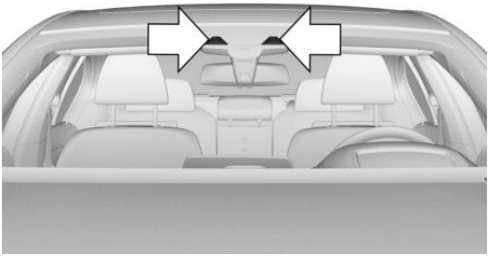
Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Displaying Speed Limit Info

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, Speed Limit Info is displayed permanently in the instrument cluster or via iDrive.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1353
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Activating

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument panel"
5. "Speed limit information"

Display

Speed Limit Info

Current speed limit.

Depending on the equipment, Speed Limit Info not available.

System limits

The system may not be fully functional and may provide incorrect information in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- When traffic signs are fully or partially concealed by objects, stickers or paint.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- When driving toward bright lights or strong reflections.
- When the windshield in front of the interior mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered by a sticker, etc.
- If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- In the event of incorrect detection by the camera.
- If the speed limits or road data stored in the navigation system are incorrect.
- If the speed limits vary with the time of day and the day of the week.
- In areas not covered by the navigation system.
- When roads differ from the navigation, such as due to changes in road routing.
- In case of electronic traffic signs.
- When passing buses or trucks with traffic signs applied to them.
- If the traffic signs are non-conforming.
- When traffic signs that are valid for a parallel road are detected.
- In the presence of country-specific signs and road configurations.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

Selection lists

Concept

Lists can be displayed and, if necessary, used for certain functions in the instrument cluster or the Head-up Display.

- Entertainment source.
- Current audio source.
- List of most recent telephone calls.

If necessary, the corresponding menu will open on the Control Display.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1354

Display

Depending on the equipment version, the list in the instrument cluster may differ from the illustration.

Displaying and using the list

Button	Function
	Change the entertainment source. Pressing the button again will close the currently displayed list.
	Show list of most recent telephone calls.
	Turn the thumbwheel to select the desired setting. Press the thumbwheel to confirm the setting. The currently selected list can be displayed in the instrument cluster by turning the thumbwheel.

Trip data

Concept

Values for the trip, such as the average consumption or trip miles, are displayed.

General information

The trip data can be displayed on the Control Display and in the instrument cluster.

The values can be displayed and reset depending on various intervals, such as after refueling.

Display on the Control Display

Overview

The following information is displayed based on the configured interval:

- Configured interval for displaying trip data.
- Average fuel consumption depending on the configured interval.
- Average speed.
- Total time for shut off engine through the Auto Start/Stop function.
- Distance traveled in Coasting mode.
- Consumption history in form of a chart.

Displays

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Trip data"

Consumption history

The average consumption is shown in the consumption history in form of a chart based on the distance traveled and the driving mode.

Display in the instrument cluster

Information about the route can be displayed as widget in the tachometer. Selecting and setting widgets in the instrument cluster.

The following information is displayed:

- Total mileage.
- Configured interval for displaying trip data.
- Distance traveled depending on the configured interval.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1355
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

▷ Average speed.

Additional information:

Widgets in the instrument cluster, refer to page 141.

Adjusting the display of the trip data

The intervals for the display of the trip data in the instrument cluster and on the Control Display are adjustable.

Via iDrive:

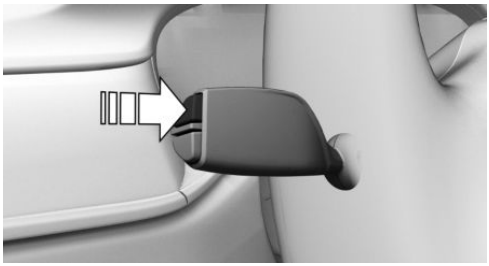
1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Trip data"
4. "Data since"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Start of trip ( )": the values are automatically reset approx. four hours after the vehicle has come to a standstill.
   - ▷ "Refueling ( )": the values are automatically reset after refueling with a larger quantity of fuel.
   - ▷ "Factory": the values since the time of the factory delivery are displayed.
   - ▷ "Individual ( )": the values since the last manual reset are displayed. The values can be reset at any time.

Resetting average values manually

The following interval can be reset manually at any time: "Individual ( )".

With the button on the turn signal lever:

1. Continue to press the button on the turn signal lever until the widget for the trip data is selected.



2. Press and hold the button on the turn signal lever.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Trip data"
4. "Data since"
5. "Reset individual"

The average values and counters are reset. Once the average values and counters have been reset, the following interval is automatically set: "Individual ( )".

Sport displays

Concept

The Sport displays especially support a sporty driving style.

Display on the Control Display

Overview

The following information is displayed:

▷ Torque.

▷ Power.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1356
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Displays

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Sport displays"

Display in the instrument cluster

The Sport displays can be displayed in form of a widget in the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Widgets in the instrument cluster, refer to page 141.

Vehicle status

General information

The status can be displayed and actions performed for several systems.

Opening the vehicle status

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"

Information at a glance

Symbols	Description
(!)	"Flat Tire Monitor": status of the run-flat tires, refer to page 314.
(!)	"Tire Pressure Monitor": status of the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 307.
	"Engine oil level": electronic oil measurement, refer to page 327.
⚠	"Check Control messages": displaying stored Check Control messages, refer to page 142.
	"Service schedule": displaying service notifications, refer to page 149.

Head-up Display

Concept

This system projects important information into the driver's field of vision, for instance the speed.

The driver can get information without averting his or her eyes from the road.

General information

Follow the information on cleaning the Head-up Display.

Overview

Switching on/off

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Head-up display"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1357
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Display

Overview

The following information is displayed on the Head-up Display:

- Vehicle speed.
- Navigation instructions.
- Check Control messages.
- Selection list in the instrument cluster.
- Driver assistance systems.
- Sport displays.

Some of this information is only displayed briefly as needed.

Selecting displays in the Head-up Display

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the brightness

The brightness is automatically adjusted to the ambient brightness.

The basic setting can be adjusted manually.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Brightness"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is set.
7. Press the Controller.

When the low beams are switched on, the brightness of the Head-up Display can be additionally influenced using the instrument lighting.

Adjusting the height

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Height"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired height is reached.
7. Press the Controller.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

The height of the Head-up Display can also be stored using the memory function.

Setting the rotation

The Head-up Display view can be rotated.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Rotation"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is selected.
7. Press the Controller.

Additional settings

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. Select the desired setting:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1358

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

- "Speed Limit Assistance": access the settings for the speed assistant.
- "Display infotainment lists in": set up if the selection lists are displayed in the instrument cluster or the Head-up Display.
- "Sport displays": display tachometer and Shift Lights in the Head-up Display.
  - "Off": the Sport displays are not displayed in the Head-up Display.
  - "In SPORT mode": the Sport displays are only displayed in SPORT driving mode.
  - "Always": the Sport displays are continuously displayed in the Head-up Display.
- "Reduced height": if not all of the information is in the driver's field of vision, the information can be displayed in the lower section of the Head-up Display.

Visibility of the display

The visibility of the displays in the Head-up Display is influenced by the following factors:

- Seat position.
- Objects on the cover of the Head-up Display.
- Sunglasses with certain polarization filters.
- Wet roads.
- Unfavorable light conditions.

If the image is distorted, have the basic settings checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Special windshield

The windshield is part of the system.

The shape of the windshield makes it possible to display a precise image.

A film in the windshield prevents double images from being generated.

For this reason, it is strongly suggested to have the special windshield replaced by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, if necessary.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1359
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

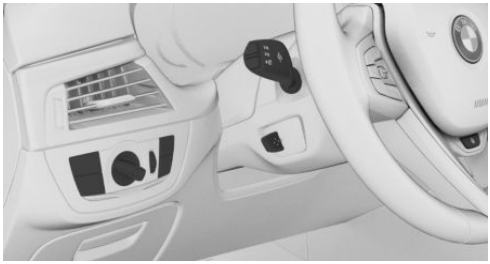
Lights

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Lights and lighting

Switches in the vehicle



The light switch element is located next to the steering wheel.

Symbol	Function
	Front fog lights.
	Night vision.
	Lights off. Daytime running lights.
	Parking lights.
	Automatic headlight control. Adaptive light functions.
	Low beams.
	Instrument lighting.
	Right roadside parking light.
	Left roadside parking light.

Automatic headlight control

Concept

The low beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness, for example in tunnels, in twilight or if there is precipitation.

General information

A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be switched on.

Activating

Position of switch:

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low beams are switched on.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1360
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

System limits

The automatic headlight control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment of lighting conditions.

For example, the sensors are unable to detect fog or hazy weather. In these situations, switch the lights on manually.

Parking lights, low beams and roadside parking lights

General information

Position of switch: 0 , ≡D , ≡D

If the driver's door is opened when the drive-ready state is switched off, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off after a period of time.

Parking lights

Switching on

Position of switch: ≡D

The vehicle is illuminated on all sides.

Do not use the parking lights for extended periods; otherwise, they might drain the battery and it would then be impossible to switch on drive-ready state.

Low beams

Switching on

Position of switch: ≡D

The low beams illuminate when drive-ready state is switched on.

Roadside parking lights

When the vehicle is parked, a one-sided roadside parking light can be switched on.

Button	Function
P≡	Right roadside parking light on/off.
≡P	Left roadside parking light on/off.

Welcome lights

General information

Depending on the equipment, the exterior lighting of the vehicle can be set individually.

Activating/deactivating

Position of switch: ≡D , ≡D

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Welcome and goodbye"

     When unlocking the vehicle, individual light functions are switched on for a limited time.

Pathway lighting

General information

The low beams stay illuminated for a particular time if the high beams are switched on after the drive-ready state is switched off.

Setting the duration

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "Pathway lighting"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1361
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

5. Select the desired setting.
6. "OK"

Daytime running lights

General information

Position of switch: 0 , ≡D , .

The daytime running lights light up when drive-ready state is switched on. After drive-ready state is switched off, the parking lights light up in position ≡D .

Activating/deactivating

In some countries, daytime running lights are mandatory, so it may not be possible to deactivate the daytime running lights in front.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. Depending on country specifications: "Daytime driving lights" or "Daytime driving lights, rear"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Adaptive light functions

Concept

Adaptive light functions enable dynamic illumination of the roadway.

General information

The adaptive light functions may consist of one system or multiple systems, depending on the equipment version:

- Adaptive Light Control.
- Cornering light.

Activating

Position of switch:

The adaptive light functions are active when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Adaptive Light Control

General information

Depending on the steering angle and other parameters, the light from the headlight follows the course of the road.

To avoid blinding oncoming traffic, the Adaptive Light Control does not swivel to the opposite lane when the vehicle is at a standstill.

Cornering light

In tight curves, for instance on mountainous roads or when turning, an additional, cornering light is switched on that lights up the inside of the curve when the vehicle is moving below a certain speed.

The cornering light is automatically switched on depending on the steering angle or, where applicable, the use of turn signals.

When driving in reverse, the cornering lights may be automatically switched on regardless of the steering angle.

Adaptive headlight range control

The adaptive headlight range control feature balances out acceleration and braking processes as well as the vehicle load conditions in order to avoid dazzling oncoming traffic. Illumination of the road is optimized.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1362

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

High-beam Assistant

Concept

The high-beam Assistant detects other traffic participants early on and automatically switches the high beams on or off depending on the traffic situation.

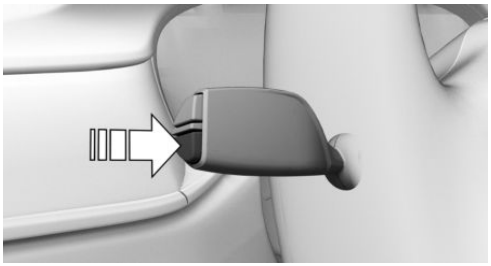
General information

The high-beam Assistant ensures that the high beams are switched on, whenever the traffic situation allows. In the low speed range, the high beams are not switched on by the system.

The system responds to light from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to ambient lighting, for instance in towns and cities.

The high beams can be switched on and off manually at any time.

Activating



Position of switch:

Press the button on the turn signal lever.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low beams are switched on.

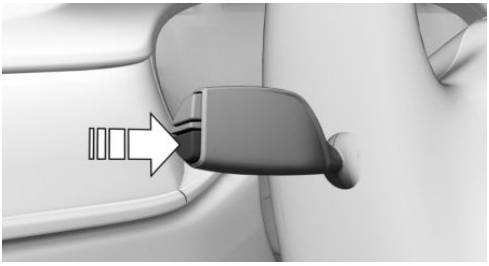
The headlights are automatically switched between low beams and high beams.

The blue indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up when the system switches on the high beams.

The high-beam Assistant is deactivated when manually switching the high beams on and off.

To reactivate the high-beam Assistant, press the button on the turn signal lever.

Deactivating



Press the button on the turn signal lever.

Sensitivity of the high-beam Assistant

General information

The sensitivity of the high-beam Assistant can be adjusted.

Safety information

Warning

If adjustments have been made or the sensitivity has been modified, oncoming traffic may be momentarily blinded. There is a risk of accident. If adjustments have been made and the sensitivity has been modified, make sure that oncoming traffic is not momentarily blinded. Switch off the high beams manually if required.

Adjusting the sensitivity

Pull the turn signal lever for approximately 10 seconds. The system responds more sensitively.

A Check Control message is displayed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1363
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Resetting the sensitivity

Pull the turn signal lever again for approx. 10 seconds.

The sensitivity of the high-beam Assistant is reset to the factory settings.

System limits

The high-beam Assistant cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of when to use the high beams. In situation that require this, therefore switch off manually.

The system is not fully functional in the following situations, and driver intervention may be necessary:

- In very unfavorable weather conditions, such as fog or heavy precipitation.
- When detecting poorly-lit road users such as pedestrians, cyclists, horseback riders and wagons; when driving close to train or ship traffic; or at animal crossings.
- In tight curves, on hilltops or in depressions, in crossing traffic or half-obscured oncoming traffic on highways.
- In poorly-lit towns and cities or in the presence of highly reflective signs.
- When the windshield in front of the interior mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.

Laser high beams

Concept

The range of the high beams is increased and ensures an even better illumination of the road.

General information

When the high beams are switched-on, starting with a speed of approx. 37 mph/60 km/h, the laser high beams in the headlight are automatically switched on in addition to the LED high beams.

Depending on the country variant, further information can be obtained from the laser label on the headlight.

Safety information

The label is in the headlight and is visible from the outside.

Fog lights

Front fog lights

Concept

The front fog lights work alongside the low beams to illuminate a wider area of the roadway.

Functional requirement

The low beams must be switched on before switching on the front fog lights.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

The green indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up if the front fog lights are switched on.

If the automatic headlight control is activated, the low beams will come on automatically when you switch on the front fog lights.

When the high beams or headlight flasher are activated, the front fog lights are not switched on.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1364

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Instrument lighting

Functional requirement

The parking lights or low beams must be switched on to adjust the brightness.

Adjusting

Adjust the brightness with the thumbwheel.

Interior lights

General information

Depending on the equipment version, interior lights, footwell lights, entry lights, ambient lighting, and speaker lighting are automatically controlled.

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

Interior lights

Reading lights

Switching the interior lights on/off

Press the button.

To switch off permanently: press the button and hold for approx. 3 seconds.

The interior lights in the rear of the vehicle can be switched on and off independently. The button is located in the rear roofliner.

Switching the reading lights on/off

Press the button.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the reading lights are located next to the interior lights in the front and rear.

Ambient light

General information

Depending on the equipment version, lighting can be adjusted for some lights in the car's interior.

Switching on/off

The ambient light is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked, and switched off when the vehicle is locked.

If the ambient light was deactivated via iDrive, it will not be switched on when the vehicle is unlocked.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Ambient lighting"

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1365
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Selecting the color scheme

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Color"
5. Select the desired setting.

Setting the brightness

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Brightness"
5. Select the desired setting.

Dimmed while driving

Some lights of the interior lighting are dimmed when the vehicle is driven in the dark.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Dimmed for night driving"

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Bowers & Wilkins Diamond Surround Sound System

General information

Some speakers in the vehicle are illuminated. Brightness can be individually set.

If the speakers are muted, speaker lighting will be switched off.

Switching on/off

The speaker lighting is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked, and switched off when the vehicle is locked.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Bowers & Wilkins"

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the brightness

Via iDrive:

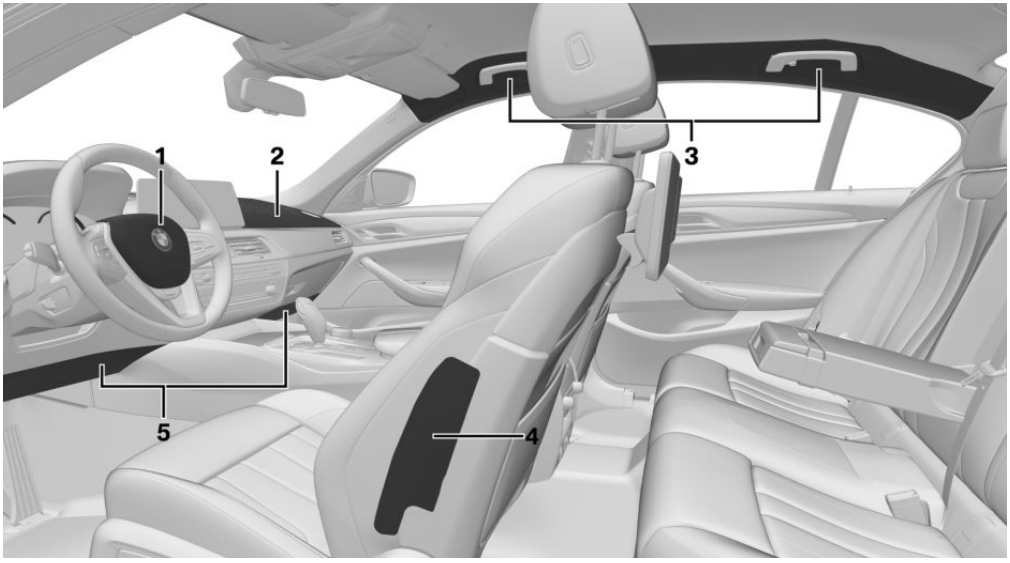
1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Bowers & Wilkins"
5. "Brightness"
6. Select the desired setting.

Safety

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Airbags



1 Front airbag, driver
2 Front airbag, front passenger
3 Head airbag
4 Side airbag
5 Knee airbag

Front airbags

Front airbags help protect the driver and the front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which safety belts alone would not provide adequate protection.

Side airbag

In the event of a side impact, the side airbag protects the side of the body in the chest and lap area.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1367
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Head airbag

In the event of a side impact, the head airbag protects the head.

Ejection Mitigation

The head airbag system is designed as an ejection mitigation countermeasure to reduce the likelihood of ejections of vehicle occupants through side windows during rollovers or side impact events.

Knee airbag

The knee airbag protects the legs in the event of a frontal impact.

Protective effect

General information

Airbags are not triggered in every impact situation, e.g., in less severe accidents.

Information on optimum effect of the airbags

⚠ Warning

If the seat position is incorrect or the deployment area of the airbags is impaired, the airbag system cannot provide protection as intended and may cause additional injuries due to triggering. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Follow the information on achieving the optimum protective effect of the airbag system.

- Keep a distance from the airbags.
- Always grasp the steering wheel on the steering wheel rim. Hold your hands at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions, to keep the risk of injury to your hands or arms as low as possible when the airbag is triggered.
- Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e., keeps his or her feet and legs in the floor area and does not support them on the dashboard.
- Make sure that occupants keep their heads away from the side airbag.
- There should be no additional persons, animals or objects between an airbag and a person.
- Dashboard and windshield on the front passenger side must stay clear - do not attach adhesive labels or coverings and do not attach brackets or cables, for instance for GPS devices or mobile phones.
- Do not apply adhesive materials to the airbag cover panels, do not cover them or modify them in any way.
- Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area.
- Do not attach slip covers, seat cushions or other objects to the front passenger seat that are not specifically suited for seats with integrated side airbags.
- Do not hang pieces of clothing, such as jackets, over the backrests.
- Never modify either the individual components or the wiring in the airbag system. This also applies to steering wheel covers, the dashboard, and the seats.
- Do not remove the airbag system.

Even when you follow all instructions very closely, injury from contact with the airbags cannot be fully ruled out in certain situations.

The ignition and inflation noise may lead to short-term and, in most cases, temporary hearing impairment in sensitive occupants.

Vehicle modifications for a person with disabilities may affect the air bag system; contact BMW Customer Relations for further information.

Warnings and information on the airbags are also found on the sun visors.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1368

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Functional readiness of the airbag system

Safety information

Warning

Individual components can be hot after triggering of the airbag system. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch individual components.

Warning

Improperly executed work can lead to failure, malfunction or unintentional triggering of the airbag system. In the case of a malfunction, the airbag system might not trigger as intended despite the accident severity. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Have the airbag system checked, repaired, dismantled and scrapped by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Display in the instrument cluster

When drive-ready state is switched on, the warning light in the instrument cluster lights up briefly and thereby indicates the function readiness of the entire airbag system and the belt tensioners.

Malfunction

▷ Warning light does not come on when drive-ready state is switched on.

▷ The warning light lights up continuously.

Have the system checked.

Strength of the driver's and front-seat passenger airbag

General information

The explosive power that activates driver's/front-seat passenger airbags very much depends on the positions of the driver's/front passenger seat.

To maintain the accuracy of this function over the long term, calibrate the front seats as soon as a respective message appears on the Control Display.

Calibrating the front seats

Warning

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

A corresponding message appears on the Control Display.

1. Press the switch and move the respective seat all the way forward, until it stops.
2. Press the switch forward again. The seat still moves forward slightly.
3. Readjust the seat to the desired position.

The calibration procedure is completed when the message on the Control Display disappears.

If the message continues to be displayed, repeat the calibration.

If the message does not disappear after a repeat calibration, have the system checked as soon as possible.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1369
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Automatic deactivation of the front-seat passenger airbags

Concept

The system reads if the front passenger seat is occupied by measuring the human body's resistance.

Front, knee, and side airbag on the front passenger's side are activated or deactivated.

General information

Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, refer to the safety information and instructions for children on the front passenger seat, see Children.

Safety information

Warning

To ensure the front-seat passenger airbag function, the system must be able to detect whether a person is sitting in the front passenger seat. The entire seat cushion area must be used for this purpose. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the front passenger keeps his or her feet in the floor area.

Malfunction of the automatic deactivation system

When transporting older children and adults, the front-seat passenger airbags may be deactivated in certain sitting positions. In this case, the indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up.

In this case, change the sitting position so that the front-seat passenger airbags are activated and the indicator light goes out.

If it is not possible to activate the airbags, have the person sit in the rear.

To enable correct recognition of the occupied seat cushion:

- Do not attach covers, cushions, ball mats or other items to the front passenger seat unless they are specifically determined to be safe for use on the front passenger seat.
- Do not place any electronic devices on the front passenger seat if a child restraint system is to be installed on it.
- Do not place objects under the seat that can push against the seat from below.
- No moisture in or on the seat.

Indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbags

The indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbag in the roofliner indicates the operating state of the front-seat passenger airbag.

The light indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.

After drive-ready state is switched on, the light briefly lights up and then indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.

- The indicator light lights up when a child is properly seated in a child restraint system or when the seat is empty. The airbags on the front passenger side are not activated.
- The indicator light does not light up when, for instance a correctly seated person of sufficient size is detected on the seat. The airbags on the front passenger side are activated.

Detected child restraint systems

The system generally detects children seated in a child restraint system, particularly in child restraint systems required by NHTSA at the point in time when the vehicle was manufactured. After installing a child restraint system, make sure

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1370

that the indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up. This indicates that the child restraint system has been detected and the front-seat passenger airbags are not activated.

Intelligent Safety

Concept

Intelligent Safety enables central operation of the driver assistance systems.

General information

Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, Intelligent Safety consists of one or more systems that can help prevent an imminent collision.

- Front collision mitigation.
- Evasion Assistant.
- Person warning with City braking function.
- Night Vision with pedestrian and animal detection.
- Lane departure warning.
- Blind spot collision warning.
- Side collision mitigation.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Switching on/off

Some Intelligent Safety systems are automatically active after every departure. Some Intelligent Safety systems activate according to the last setting.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1371
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly. The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions, for instance setting for warning time.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Front collision mitigation

Concept

The system may prevent some accidents. In the event of an accident, the system may reduce impact speed.

The system sounds a warning before an imminent collision and activates brakes independently, if needed.

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Camera in the area of the interior mirror.
- Radar sensor in the front bumper.

Intersection collision warning when equipped with a radar sensor: in addition, a warning is issued at intersections and junctions if a risk of collision with crossing traffic is detected.

The approach control warning is available even if cruise control has been deactivated.

With the vehicle approaching another vehicle intentionally, the approach control warning and braking are delayed in order to avoid false system reactions.

The system issues a two-phase warning of a possible risk of collision with vehicles at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h. The timing of warnings may vary with the current driving situation.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

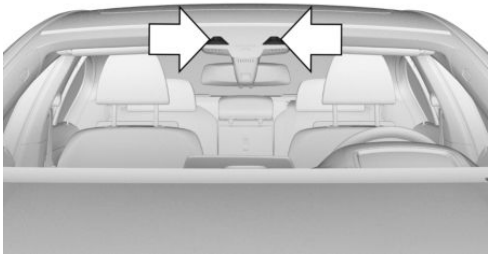
Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

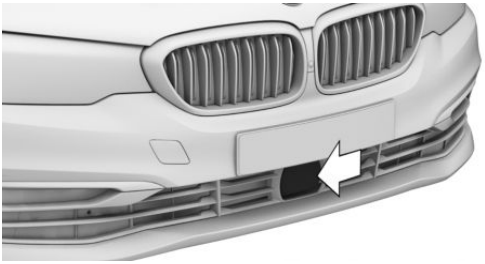
Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

With radar sensor



The radar sensor is located in the lower area of the front bumper.

Always keep radar sensor clean and unobstructed.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is automatically active after every driving off.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1373
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Manual switching off

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and warnings"
5. "Front collision mitigation"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Early"
   - ▷ "Medium"
   - ▷ "Late": only acute warnings are displayed.

The selected time is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Warning with braking function

Display

A warning symbol appears in the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display if a collision with a detected vehicle is imminent.

Symbol	Measure
	Symbol lights up red: prewarning. Brake and increase distance.
	Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.
 	Intersection collision warning: Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning when vehicles cross your direction of travel. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Prewarning

This warning is provided, for instance when there is impending danger of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small.

If a prewarning is provided, respond by braking as warranted.

Acute warning with braking function

An acute warning is displayed in case of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another object at a high differential speed.

Intervene in the case of an acute warning. If an acute warning is provided, the system may provide assistance, such as through braking, when there is risk of collision.

Acute warnings may be provided even when there has been no prior warning.

Brake intervention, City braking function

The warning prompts the driver to intervene. If a warning is active, the maximum braking force is used when the brake is applied. The brake pedal must be applied sufficiently quickly and forcefully.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1374
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

The system may also assist in braking if there is a risk of collision.

When the vehicle is traveling at a low speed, the vehicle may come to a complete stop.

The braking intervention takes place up to approx. 50 mph/80 km/h.

The driver may interrupt the braking intervention function by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

The system's ability to detect objects may be limited in some circumstances. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the limitations of the system and actively intervene as warranted.

With radar sensor: brake intervention

The warning prompts the driver to intervene. If a warning is active, the maximum braking force is used when the brake is applied. The brake pedal must be applied sufficiently quickly and forcefully.

The system may also assist in braking if there is a risk of collision.

The vehicle can be decelerated to a standstill.

The braking intervention occurs only if vehicle stability has not been restricted, for instance by deactivating the DSC Dynamic Stability Control.

At speeds above approx. 130 mph/210 km/h, the braking intervention occurs as a brief braking pressure. No automatic delay occurs.

The driver may interrupt the braking intervention function by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Intersection collision warning: brake intervention is not performed in the event of cross traffic.

The system's ability to detect objects may be limited in some circumstances. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the limitations of the system and actively intervene as warranted.

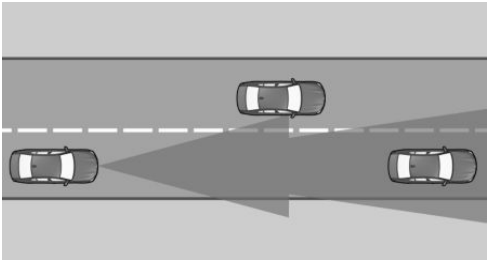
System limits

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Detection range



The system's detection potential is limited.

Only objects that are detected by the system are taken into account.

Thus, a system reaction might not come or might come late.

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- Slow moving vehicles when you approach them at high speed.
- Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or sharply decelerating vehicles.
- Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.
- Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.
- Intersection collision warning: crossing vehicles if their speed is higher than your own speed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1375
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Upper speed limit

If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is deactivated temporarily. When the vehicle slows down to below this speed, the system is reactivated.

Intersection collision warning: the vehicle responds to crossing traffic if its own speed is below approx. 40 mph/65 km/h.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- In tight curves.
- If the driving stability control systems are limited or deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- If the field of view of the camera or the windshield is dirty or covered in the area of the interior mirror.
- If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.
- When it is dark outside.
- Depending on the equipment: if the radar sensors are dirty or covered.
- Depending on the equipment version: after improperly performed work on the vehicle paint in the area of the radar sensors.

Attaching any objects such as stickers or film in the beam area of the radar sensors will also limit the function of the radar sensors and may even cause them to fail.

Warning sensitivity

The more sensitive the warning settings are, for example the warning time, the more warnings are displayed. Therefore, there may also be an excess of premature or unjustified warnings and reactions.

Evasion Assistant

Concept

The system supports the driver in making evasive maneuvers in certain situations, such as when obstacles suddenly appear.

General information

The system issues a warning and intervenes to support the driver if a lateral evasive maneuver is possible. Sensors monitor and detect the clearance around the vehicle. If the system identifies space alongside the vehicle, it supports an evasive maneuver begun by the driver by safely providing targeted steering support.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

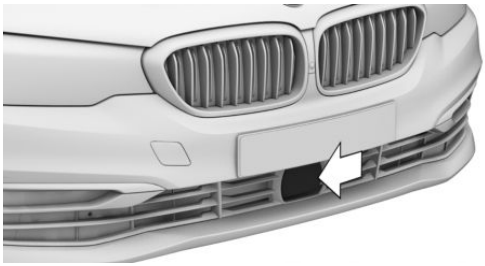
Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving

style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Radar sensors

The radar sensors are located in the bumpers.



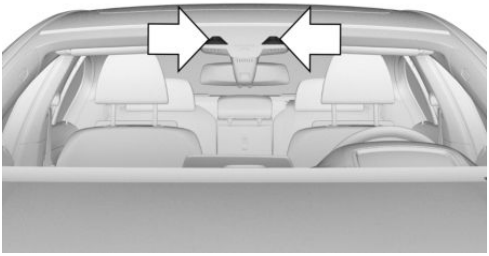
Front center bumper.

Front side bumper.

Rear bumper.

Always keep the bumper in the area of the radar sensors clean and unobstructed.

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Functional requirements

- Front collision mitigation is switched on.

  Front collision mitigation, refer to page 169.
- Sensors detect sufficient clearance around the vehicle.

Switching on/off

The system is automatically active after every driving off.

Warning with evasion support

Display in the instrument cluster

A warning symbol appears in the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display if a collision with a detected vehicle is imminent.

Symbol	Measure
	Symbol lights up red: prewarning. Brake and increase distance.
	Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1377
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Acute warning with evasion support

An acute warning is displayed when there is an imminent danger of collision due to the vehicle approaching another object at a high speed.

Intervene in the case of an acute warning. The system is designed to provide assistance by taking evasive action when there is a risk of collision.

Acute warnings may be provided even when there has been no prior warning.

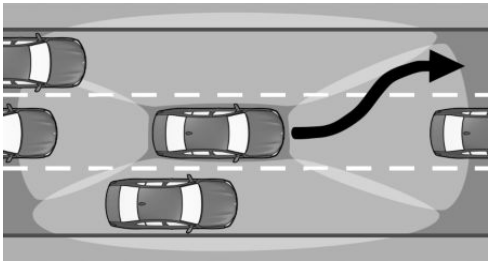
System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Detection range



The system's detection potential is limited.

Only objects that are detected by the system are taken into account.

Thus, a system reaction might not come or might come late.

The following situations may not be detected, for example:

- Slow moving vehicles when you approach them at high speed.
- Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or sharply decelerating vehicles.
- Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.
- Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- In tight curves.
- If the driving stability control systems are limited or deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- If the field of view of the camera or the windshield is dirty or covered in the area of the interior mirror.
- If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.
- When it is dark outside.
- Depending on the equipment: if the radar sensors are dirty or covered.
- Depending on the equipment version: after improperly performed work on the vehicle paint in the area of the radar sensors.

Attaching any objects such as stickers or film in the beam area of the radar sensors will also limit the function of the radar sensors and may even cause them to fail.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1378
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Person warning with City braking function

Concept

The system may prevent some accidents with pedestrians. When driving at city speeds, the system will issue a warning if there is imminent risk of a collision with pedestrians, and support with a braking function.

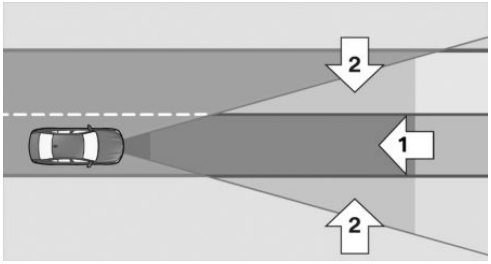
General information

The system is active at speeds of approx. 3 mph/5 km/h up to approx. 40 mph/65 km/h.

The system reacts to people who are within the detection range of the system.

The camera in the area of the interior mirror controls the system.

Detection range



The detection area in front of the vehicle is divided into two areas:

- Central area, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.
- Expanded area, arrows 2, to the right and left of the central area.

A collision is imminent if pedestrians are located within the central area. A warning is issued about pedestrians who are located within the extended area only if they are moving in the direction of the central area.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

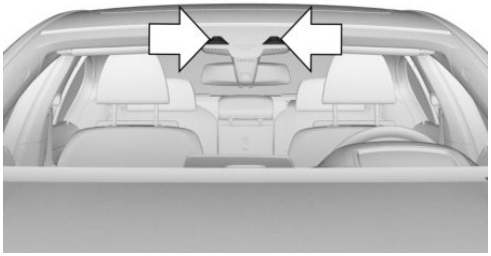
Overview

Button in the vehicle

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1379
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Intelligent Safety

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is automatically active after every driving off.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Manual switching off

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Warning with braking function

Display

If a collision with a detected person is imminent, a warning symbol appears on the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display.

The red symbol is displayed and a signal sounds.

Alternatively, depending on the vehicle equipment, a red warning triangle lights up in the instrument cluster.

Intervene immediately by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

Braking intervention

The warning prompts the driver to intervene. If a warning is active, the maximum braking force is

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1380
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

used when the brake is applied. This requires the brake pedal to be depressed sufficiently quickly and forcefully.

If there is a risk of collision, the system may also assist with braking.

When the vehicle is traveling at a low speed, the vehicle may come to a complete stop.

The driver may interrupt the braking intervention function by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

The system's ability to detect objects may be limited in some circumstances. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the limitations of the system and actively intervene as warranted.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Detection range

The system's detection potential is limited.

Thus, a warning might not be issued or be issued late.

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- Partially covered pedestrians.
- Pedestrians that are not detected as such because of the viewing angle or contour.
- Pedestrians outside of the detection range.
- Pedestrians having a body size less than 32 in/80 cm.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional or may not be available in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- In tight curves.
- If the driving stability control systems are deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- If the field of view of the camera or the windshield is dirty or covered in the area of the interior mirror.
- If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.
- When it is dark outside.

Night Vision with pedestrian and animal detection

Concept

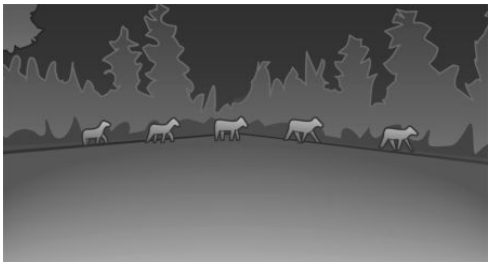
Night Vision with pedestrian and animal detection is a night vision system.

An infrared camera scans the area in front of the vehicle and issues a warning if it detects pedestrians and animals on the street. The system detects warm objects that are similar in shape to human beings or animals. If necessary, the thermal image can be displayed on the Control Display.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1381
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

General information

Thermal image



The image shows the heat radiated by objects in the field of view of the camera.

Warm objects have a light appearance and cold objects a dark appearance.

The ability to detect an object depends on the temperature difference between the object and the background and on the level of heat radiation emitted by the object. Objects that are similar in temperature to the environment or that radiate very little heat are difficult to detect.

For safety reasons, when driving at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h and in low ambient light, the image is only displayed when the low beams are switched on.

A still image is displayed at regular intervals for a fraction of a second.

Pedestrian and animal detection

Object detection and warning only functions in darkness.

Objects whose form is similar to people with sufficient heat radiation are detected.

In addition, the system also detects animals above a certain minimum size, for instance deer.

Display on the Control Display with thermal image activated:

- People detected by the system: in light yellow.
- Animals detected by the system: in dark yellow.

Range of object detection, with good ambient conditions:

- Pedestrian detection: up to approx. 330 ft/100 m.
- Detection of large animals: up to approx. 490 ft/150 m.
- Detection of medium animals: up to approx. 230 ft/70 m.

Environmental influences can limit the availability of object detection.

If the vehicle systems detect that the vehicle is located in a residential area, the animal detection is temporarily switched off.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving

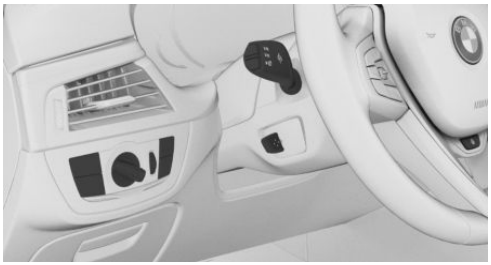
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1382
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

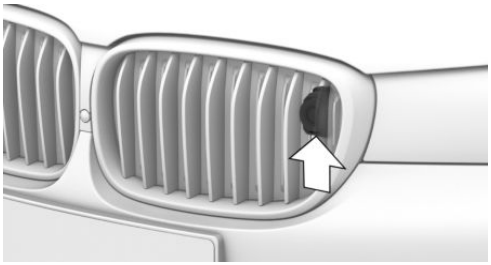
Buttons in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety



Thermal image

Camera



The camera is automatically heated when the external temperatures are low.

When the vehicle lighting is switched on, the camera objective is cleaned at regular intervals when the windshield washer system is activated.

Switching on

Switching on automatically

When it is dark outside, the system is automatically active after every driving off.

Switching on the thermal image

The thermal image from the Night Vision camera can be displayed on the Control Display in addition to the warning function. This function has no effect on object detection.

Press the button.

The image from the camera is displayed on the Control Display.

Adjusting the thermal image

Brightness and contrast can be adjusted, when the thermal image is switched on.

Via iDrive:

1. Select brightness or contrast:
   - ▷ "Brightness".
   - ▷ "Contrast".
2. Set the desired value.

Warning function

Display

Symbol	Meaning
	Person warning.
	Animal warning.
Symbol lights up red.	Prewarning.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1383
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Symbol	Meaning
Symbol flashes red and a signal sounds.	Acute warning.
	Alternatively, depending on the vehicle equipment, a red warning triangle lights up or flashes in the instrument cluster.

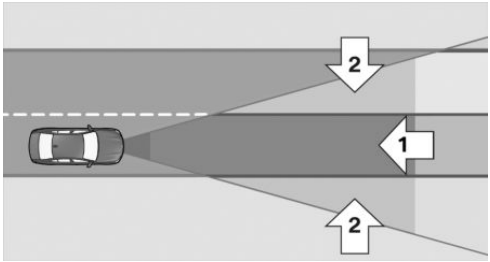
The displayed symbol may vary and shows the side of the road on which the person or animal was detected.

Warning of people or animals in danger

If a collision with a person or an animal detected in this way is imminent, a warning symbol appears on the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display.

Although both the shape and the heat radiation are analyzed, false warnings cannot be ruled out.

Warning area in front of the vehicle



The warning area for the person warning consists of two parts:

- Central area, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.
- Expanded area, arrows 2, to the right and left of the central area.

With animal warnings, no distinction is made between the central or expanded area.

The entire area moves along with the vehicle in the direction of the steering angle and changes with the vehicle speed. As the vehicle speed increases, the area becomes, for instance longer and wider.

Prewarning

Prewarning for persons is displayed when a person is detected in the central area immediately in front of the vehicle as well as on the left or right side in the extended area.

Prewarning for animals is displayed when an animal is detected in the front of the vehicle.

If a prewarning is issued, intervene by braking or making an evasive maneuver.

Acute warning

Acute warning is displayed if a person or an animal is detected in direct proximity in front of the vehicle.

If an acute warning is issued, brake or make an evasive maneuver immediately.

Display in the Head-up Display

The warning is displayed simultaneously in the Head-up Display and on the instrument cluster.

System limits

Basic limits

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- On steep hills, in steep depressions or in tight curves.
- If the camera is soiled or damaged.
- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- At very high external temperatures.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1384

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Limits of pedestrian and animal detection

In some situations, it may occur that pedestrians are detected as animals or animals as pedestrians.

Small animals are not detected by the object detection function, even if they are clearly visible in the image.

Limited detection, for instance in the following circumstances:

- People or animals who are fully or partially covered, especially when their heads are covered.
- People who are not in an upright position, for instance lying down.
- Cyclists on unconventional bicycles (e.g., recumbent bicycles).
- After physical damage to the system, for instance after an accident.

Lane departure warning

Concept

The lane departure warning alerts when the vehicle on roads with lane markings is about to leave the lane.

General information

This camera-based system warns starting at a minimum speed.

The minimum speed is country-specific and is displayed in the menu for the intelligent Safety systems.

Warnings are issued by means of a steering wheel vibration. The severity of the steering wheel vibration can be adjusted.

The time of the warning may vary depending on the current driving situation.

The system does not provide a warning if the turn signal is set before leaving the lane.

Vehicles with side collision mitigation: if in the speed range up to 130 mph/210 km/h a lane marking is crossed, the system intervenes with a brief active steering intervention in addition to vibrating. The system thus helps keep the vehicle in the lane.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing road and traffic safety. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate. Do not jerk the steering wheel in response to a warning.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Functional requirement

The camera must detect the lane markings for the lane departure warning to be active.

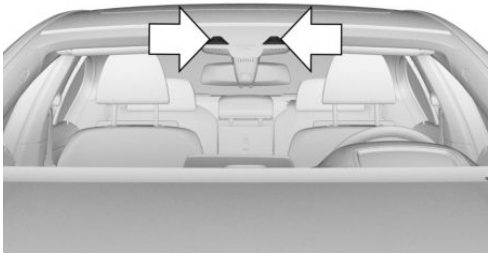
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1385
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The lane departure warning activates automatically after departure if the function was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Manual switching off

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and warnings"

5. "Lane Departure Warning"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Always": the system issues a warning whenever a hazardous situation is detected.
   - ▷ "Reduced": some warnings are suppressed depending on the situation, for instance during passing without a turn signal or when purposely driving over lane markings in curves.
   - ▷ "Off": no warnings are issued.

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Steering wheel feedback"
5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all Intelligent Safety systems and stored for the driver profile currently used.

Vehicles with side collision mitigation: switch steering intervention on/off

The steering intervention can be switched on and off separately for blind spot collision warning and lane departure warning.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and warnings"
5. "Lane Departure Warning"
6. "Steering intervention"

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Display in the instrument cluster

The symbol illuminates green: at least one lane marking was detected and warnings can be issued.

Warning function

If you leave the lane

If you leave the lane and if a lane marking has been detected, the steering wheel vibrates in accordance with the steering wheel vibration setting.

When the turn signal is switched on before a lane charge, a warning is not issued.

With side collision mitigation

If in the speed range up to 130 mph/210 km/h a lane marking is crossed, the system intervenes with a brief active steering intervention in addition to vibrating. The steering intervention helps keep the vehicle in the lane. The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

Warning signal

Depending on the equipment version: in the event of multiple active steering interventions by the system within 3 minutes without the driver's intervention at the steering wheel, an acoustic warning will sound. A short warning signal will sound at the second steering intervention. Beginning with the third steering intervention, an continuous warning will sound.

In addition, a Check Control message is displayed.

The warning signal and Check-Control message are an encouragement to pay closer attention to the lane.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1387
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

End of warning

For instance, the warning will be canceled in the following situations:

- Automatically after approx. 3 seconds.
- When returning to your own lane.
- When braking hard.
- When using the turn signal.
- If DSC Dynamic Stability Control intervenes.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane markings such as in construction areas.
- When lane markings are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
- When lane markings are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.
- If the field of view of the camera or the windshield is dirty or covered in the area of the interior mirror.
- If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

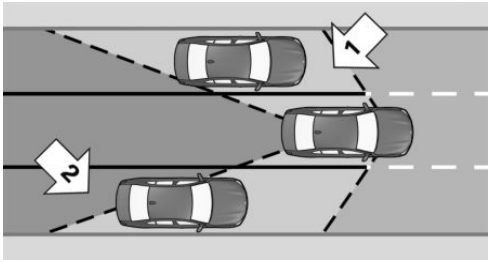
A Check Control message may be displayed when the system is not fully functional.

Blind spot collision warning

Concept

Blind spot collision warning detects vehicles in the blind spot or vehicles approaching from behind in the adjacent lane. A warning is issued in various gradations in these situations.

General information



Two radar sensors in the rear bumper monitor the area behind and next to the vehicle when traveling faster than a minimum speed.

The minimum speed is country-specific and is displayed in the menu for the intelligent Safety systems.

The system indicates whether there are vehicles in the blind spot, arrow 1, or approaching from behind in the adjacent lane, arrow 2.

The light in the exterior mirror lights up dimmed.

Before you change lanes after setting the turn signal, the system issues a warning in the situations described above.

The light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

Vehicles with side collision mitigation: at speeds between 45 mph/70 km/h and 130 mph/210 km/h, the system can intervene with a brief active steering intervention and help to return the vehicle into the lane.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Radar sensors

The radar sensors are located in the rear bumper.

Always keep the bumper in the area of the radar sensors clean and unobstructed.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

Blind spot collision warning is automatically activated after departure if the function was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1389
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Manual switching off

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and warnings"
5. "Active Blind Spot Detection"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Early"
   - ▷ "Medium"
   - ▷ "Late"
   - ▷ "Off": with this setting, no warning is output.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Steering wheel feedback"
5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all Intelligent Safety systems and stored for the driver profile currently used.

Vehicles with side collision mitigation: switching steering intervention on/off

The steering intervention can be switched on and off separately for blind spot collision warning and lane departure warning.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and warnings"
5. "Active Blind Spot Detection"
6. "Steering intervention"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Warning function

Light in the exterior mirror

Prewarning

The dimmed light in the exterior mirror indicates when there are vehicles in the blind spot or approaching from behind.

Acute warning

When the turn signal is switched on while a vehicle is in the critical zone, the steering wheel vibrates briefly and the light in the exterior mirror flashes brightly.

The warning stops when the other vehicle has left the critical area or the turn signal has been deactivated.

Vehicles with side collision mitigation

When at speeds between 45 mph/70 km/h and 130 mph/210 km/h the vibrating steering wheel is ignored and the lane marking crossed, the system intervenes with a brief active steering intervention. The steering intervention helps return the vehicle into the lane. The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

Flashing of the light

A flashing of the light during vehicle unlocking serves as system self-test.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Upper speed limit

If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is deactivated temporarily.

If the vehicle speed falls below approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system once again responds according to the setting.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
- If the bumper is dirty, iced up, or covered, for instance by stickers.
- After improperly performed work on the vehicle paint.
- If cargo protrudes.

Attaching any objects such as stickers or film in the beam area of the radar sensors will also impact the function of the radar sensors and may even cause them to fail.

For vehicles with side collision mitigation, the steering intervention can be limited, for instance in the following situation:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1391
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

- In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane markings such as in construction areas.
- When lane markings are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- When lane markings are not white.
- When lane markings are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.
- If the field of view of the camera or the windshield is dirty or covered in the area of the interior mirror.
- If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

A Check Control message is displayed when the system is not fully functional.

Displaying warnings

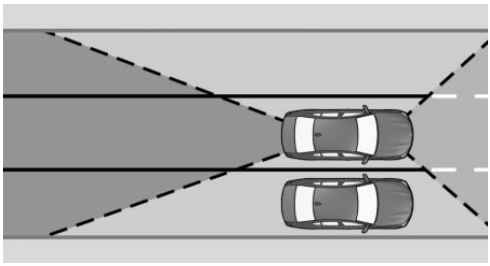
Depending on the selected warning settings, e.g., warning time, more or fewer warnings can be displayed. However, there may also be an excess of premature warnings of critical situations.

Side collision mitigation

Concept

The system helps to avoid imminent side collisions.

General information



Four radar sensors in the bumpers monitor the area next to the vehicle in the speed range from approx. 45 mph/70 km/h to approx. 130 mph/210 km/h.

The front camera determines the lane marking positions.

If, for instance another vehicle is detected next to the vehicle and if there is a risk of collision with this vehicle, the system helps avoid the collision via steering intervention.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Functional requirement

The camera must detect the lane markings for the side collision mitigation with steering intervention to be active.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Radar sensors

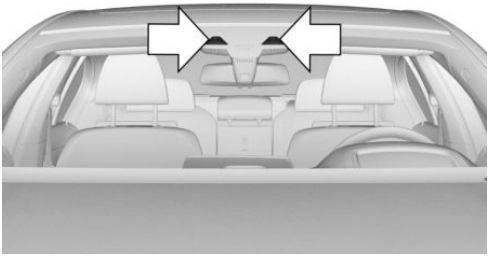
The radar sensors are located in the bumpers.

Front bumper.

Rear bumper.

Always keep the bumper in the area of the radar sensors clean and unobstructed.

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The side collision mitigation activates automatically after departure if the function was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1393
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Manual switching off

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Steering wheel feedback"
5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all Intelligent Safety systems and stored for the driver profile currently used.

Warning function

Light in the exterior mirror

Acute warning

If there is a risk of collision, the light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

If necessary, an active steering intervention then takes place to prevent collisions and maintain the vehicle within its own lane.

The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1394
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

- When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
- If the bumper is dirty, iced up, or covered, for instance by stickers.
- After improperly performed work on the vehicle paint.
- If cargo protrudes.
- In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane markings such as in construction areas.
- When lane markings are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- When lane markings are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.
- If the field of view of the camera or the windshield is dirty or covered in the area of the interior mirror.
- If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

Attaching any objects such as stickers or film in the beam area of the radar sensors will also impact the function of the radar sensors and may even cause them to fail.

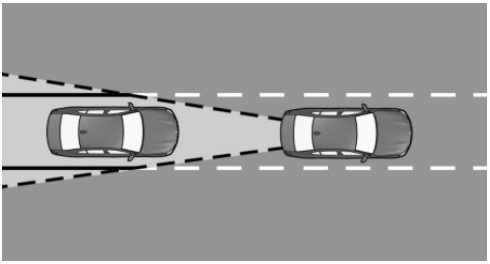
A Check Control message is displayed when the system is not fully functional.

Rear collision preparation

Concept

The system reacts to vehicles approaching from behind.

General information



Two radar sensors in the rear bumper monitor the area behind the vehicle.

When a vehicle approaches from the rear at a certain speed, the system responds as follows:

- Active Protection: when a collision seems to be unavoidable, PreCrash functions are triggered.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

⚠ Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1395
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Radar sensors

The radar sensors are located in the rear bumper.

Always keep the bumper in the area of the radar sensors clean and unobstructed.

Switching on/off

The system is automatically active after every driving off.

The system is deactivated in the following situations:

- When driving in reverse.

System limits

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- When the approaching vehicle approaches slowly.
- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
- If the bumper is dirty, iced up, or covered, for instance by stickers.
- If the field of view of the sensors is covered, e.g., by garage walls, hedges or snow hills.
- If cargo protrudes.

Active Protection

Concept

Active Protection prepares occupants and the vehicle for a possible accident in critical driving or collision situations.

General information

Active Protection consists of various PreCrash functions, which can vary depending on the equipment.

The system is used to detect certain critical driving situations that might lead to an accident. This includes the following critical driving situations:

- Emergency stop.
- Severe understeering.
- Severe oversteering.

Certain functions of several systems can, within the system limits, lead to Active Protection triggering:

- Front collision mitigation: automatic brake intervention.
- Front collision mitigation: Brake Assistant.
- Night Vision with pedestrian and animal detection: Brake Assistant.
- Rear collision preparation: detection of imminent rear collisions.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to the system limits, critical situation could not be detected reliably or in time. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1396

Function

When the safety belt is fastened, the driver's and passenger's belt straps are automatically tightened once after driving away.

In accident-critical situations, the following individual functions become active as needed:

- Automatic pretensioning of the front safety belts.
- Automatic window closing up to a narrow gap.
- Automatic closing of the glass sunroof, including sun protection.
- For vehicles equipped with comfort seats in the front: automatic positioning of the backrest for the front passenger seat.

After a critical driving situation without an accident, the front safety belts are loosened again.

If the belt tension does not loosen automatically, stop the vehicle and unbuckle the safety belt using the red button in the buckle. Fasten the safety belt before continuing on your trip.

All other systems can be restored to the desired setting.

PostCrash – iBrake

Concept

In the event of an accident, the system can bring the vehicle to a halt automatically without intervention by the driver in certain situations. This can reduce the risk of a further collision and the consequences thereof.

At standstill

After coming to a halt, the brake is released automatically.

Harder vehicle braking

In certain situations, it can be necessary to bring the vehicle to a halt more quickly than the Brake Assistant allows.

To do this, quickly apply extra force to the brake. For a brief period, the braking pressure will be higher than the braking pressure that is achieved by the automatic braking function. Automatic braking is interrupted.

Interrupting automatic braking

It can be necessary to interrupt automatic braking in certain situations, for instance for an evasive maneuver.

Interrupt automatic braking:

- By pressing the brake pedal.
- By pressing the accelerator pedal.

Fatigue alert

General information

The system can detect decreasing alertness or fatigue of the driver during long, monotonous trips, for instance on highways. In this situation, it is recommended that the driver takes a break.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing one's physical state. An increasing lack of alertness or fatigue may not be detected or not be detected in time. There is a risk of accident. Make sure that the driver is rested and alert. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions.

Function

The system is switched on each time drive-ready state is switched on.

After travel has begun, the system monitors certain aspects of the driver's behavior, so that decreasing alertness or fatigue can be detected.

This procedure takes the following criteria into account:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1397
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

- Personal driving style, for instance steering behavior.
- Driving conditions, for instance time, length of trip.
- Depending on the equipment: attention of the driver through the Driver Attention Camera.

Starting at approx. 43 mph/70 km/h, the system is active and can also display a recommendation to take a break.

Break recommendation

Adjusting

The fatigue alert is active automatically with each switching on of drive-ready state and can thus display a break recommendation.

The break recommendation can also be switched on or off and adjusted via iDrive.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Fatigue and Focus Alert"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "Standard": the break recommendation is made with a defined value.
   - "Sensitive": the break recommendation is issued earlier.
   - "Off": no break recommendation is made.

Display

If the driver becomes less alert or fatigued, a message is displayed in the Control Display with the recommendation to take a break.

During the display, various settings can be selected.

After a break, another recommendation to take a break cannot be displayed until after approximately 45 minutes.

System limits

The function may be limited in the following situations and may issue an incorrect warning or no warning at all:

- When the clock is set incorrectly.
- When the vehicle speed is mainly below about 43 mph/70 km/h.
- With a sporty driving style, such as during rapid acceleration or when cornering fast.
- In active driving situations, such as when changing lanes frequently.
- When the road surface is poor.
- In the event of strong side winds.

The system is reset approx. 45 minutes after parking the vehicle, for instance in the case of a break during longer trips on highways.

Driving stability control systems

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Antilock Braking System ABS

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during braking.

The vehicle maintains its steering power even during full brake applications, which increases the active safety.

ABS is operational every time you start the engine.

Brake assistant

When you apply the brakes rapidly, this system automatically boosts the vehicle braking capability to the furthest possible extent. It reduces the braking distance to a minimum during an emergency stop. This system utilizes all of the capabilities provided by the Antilock Brake System ABS.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal for the duration of the emergency stop.

Adaptive brake assistant

In combination with Active Cruise Control ACC, this system ensures that the brakes respond even more rapidly when braking in critical situations.

Drive-off assistant

Concept

This system supports driving off on uphill grades.

Driving off

1. Hold the vehicle in place with the foot brake.
2. Release the foot brake and drive off without delay.

After the foot brake is released, the vehicle is held in place for approx. 2 seconds.

Depending on the vehicle loading, the vehicle may roll back slightly.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control

Concept

Within the physical limits, the system helps to keep the vehicle on a steady course by reducing engine speed and by braking the individual wheels.

General information

DSC detects the following unstable driving conditions, for instance:

- Fishtailing, which can lead to oversteering.
- Loss of traction of the front wheels, which can lead to understeering.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1399
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

When driving with a roof load, for instance with roof-mounted luggage rack, the vehicle's center of gravity is higher, which increases the risk of the vehicle tipping in critical driving situations. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Do not deactivate DSC Dynamic Stability Control when driving with roof load.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

DSC OFF

Deactivating/activating DSC

General information

When DSC is deactivated, driving stability is reduced during acceleration and when driving in curves.

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

Deactivating DSC

Hold the button down until DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster and the DSC OFF indicator light is illuminated.

Activating DSC

Press the button.

DSC OFF and the DSC OFF indicator light go out.

Display

In the instrument cluster

When DSC is deactivated, DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Indicator/warning lights

The indicator light lights up: DSC is deactivated.

The indicator light flashes: DSC controls the drive and braking forces.

The indicator light lights up: DSC has malfunctioned.

DTC Dynamic Traction Control

Concept

DTC is a version of the DSC Dynamic Stability Control where forward momentum is optimized.

The system ensures maximum headway on special road conditions or loose road surfaces, for instance unplowed snowy roads, but with somewhat limited driving stability.

General information

When DTC is activated, the vehicle has maximum traction. Driving stability is limited during acceleration and when driving in curves.

You may find it useful to briefly activate DTC in the following situations:

- When driving in slush or on uncleared, snow-covered roads.
- When driving off from deep snow or loose ground.
- When driving with snow chains.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

DSC OFF

Activating/deactivating DTC

Activating DTC

Press the button.

TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster and the indicator light for DSC OFF lights up.

Deactivating DTC

Press the button again.

TRACTION and the DSC OFF indicator light go out.

Display

Display in the instrument cluster

If DTC is activated, TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Indicator/warning lights

The indicator light lights up: DTC is activated.

Automatic program change

In certain situations, the DSC is activated automatically:

- If Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function ACC is activated.
- On a braking intervention by the Intelligent Safety systems.
- The vehicle has a flat tire.

xDrive

Concept

xDrive is the all-wheel-drive system of the vehicle. The interaction of xDrive and other suspension control systems, such as DSC Dynamic Stability Control, further optimizes traction and

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1401
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

driving dynamics. xDrive variably distributes the driving forces to the front and rear axles as demanded by the driving situation and road surface.

M sport differential

The active M differential provides for continuously variable locking of the rear axle differential depending on the driving situation. This prevents spinning of a single rear wheel and thereby provides optimal traction in any driving situation.

The driver is responsible adapting his or her driving style to the situation.

Integral Active Steering

Concept

The Integral Active Steering increases the maneuverability and makes a more direct steering response possible.

General information

Integral Active Steering is a combination of variable steering ratio and rear axle steering.

The steering is more direct because the variable steering ratio amplifies the wheel angle while maneuvering. The rear axle steering acts to increase maneuverability at low speeds by turning the rear wheels slightly in the opposite direction to the front wheels.

At higher speeds, the rear wheels are turned in the same direction as the front wheels. This results in, for instance better directional stability and a more harmonious change of direction.

In critical driving situations, the Integral Active Steering can stabilize the vehicle through purposeful steering of the rear wheels before the driver intervenes, for instance in case of oversteering.

Tuning

The system offers several different tunings.

Driving mode	Integral Active Steering
COMFORT ECO PRO	Comfortable, for optimal travel comfort.
SPORT	Dynamic, for greater agility.

The different tunings are assigned to the different driving modes of the Driving Dynamics Control.

Additional information:

Driving Dynamics Control, refer to page 125.

Using snow chains

In order to guarantee free running of the wheels when operating with snow chains, rear axle steering of the integral active steering must be switched off when snow chains are mounted.

Additional information:

Rear axle steering during operation with snow chains, refer to page 307.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, the steering wheel must be turned further at lower speeds, while the vehicle responds more sensitively to steering wheel movements in the higher speed range.

The stability-enhancing intervention may be deactivated.

Proceed cautiously and drive defensively.

Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1402
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Driver assistance systems

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Cruise control

Concept

Using this system, a desired speed can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel. The system maintains the desired speed. The system accelerates and brakes automatically as needed.

General information

The system can be activated starting at 20 mph/30 km/h.

Depending on the vehicle setting, the cruise control settings may change under certain conditions. For instance, acceleration can change depending on the driving mode.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

⚠ Warning

The use of the system can lead to an increased risk of accidents in the following situations, for instance:

- ▷ On winding roads.
- ▷ In heavy traffic.
- ▷ On slippery roads, in fog, snow, or wet conditions, or on a loose road surface.

There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Only use the system if driving at constant speed is possible.

⚠ Warning

The desired speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Cruise control on/off.
	Pause cruise control. Continue cruise control with the last setting.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1403
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Button	Function
SET	Store speed.
	Rocker switch: Set speed.

Switching cruise control on/off

Switching on

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster light up and the marking on the speedometer is set to the current speed.

Cruise control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

Switching off

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

Pausing cruise control

Interrupting manually

RES CANCEL When active, press the button.

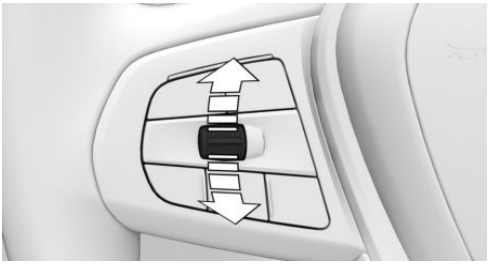
Interrupting automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations, for example:

- When the driver applies the brakes.
- Steptronic transmission: when selector lever position D is disengaged.
- Dynamic Traction Control DTC is activated or DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.
- If DSC Dynamic Stability Control intervenes.
- When SPORT PLUS is activated with Driving Dynamics Control.

Setting the speed

Maintaining and storing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down once while the system is interrupted.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

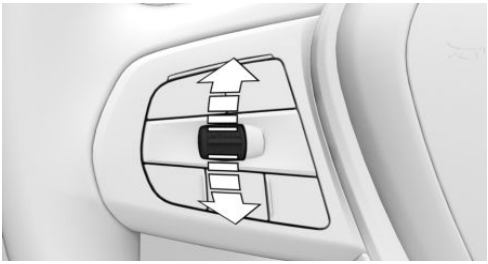
The stored speed is displayed on the speedometer.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

The speed can also be stored by pressing a button.

SET Press the button.

Changing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1404

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

- Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the desired speed increases or decreases by 1 mph/1 km/h.
- Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

  The maximum speed that can be set depends on the vehicle.
- Pressing the rocker switch to the resistance point and holding it: vehicle accelerates or decelerates without pressure on the accelerator pedal.

  After the rocker switch is released, the vehicle maintains its final speed. Pressing the switch beyond the resistance point causes the vehicle to accelerate more rapidly.

Continuing cruise control

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed.

Make sure that the difference between current speed and stored speed is not too large before calling up the stored speed. Otherwise, unintentional braking or accelerating may occur.

Press the button with the system interrupted.

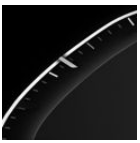
Cruise control is continued with the stored values.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- When the system is switched off.
- When drive-ready state is switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Display in the speedometer



- Green marking: system is active, the marking indicates the desired speed.
- Grey marking: system is interrupted, the marking indicates the stored speed.
- No marking: system is switched off.

Indicator light

- Indicator light green: system is active.
- Gray indicator light: the system has been interrupted.
- No indicator light: system is switched off.

Displays in the Head-up Display

Some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

The symbol is displayed when the set desired speed is reached.

System limits

The desired speed is also maintained downhill. The speed may not be maintained on uphill grades if the engine power is insufficient.

In ECO PRO driving mode, the vehicle may exceed or drop below the set desired speed in some situations, for instance on downhill or uphill grades.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1405
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go function ACC

Concept

Using this system, a desired speed and a distance to a vehicle ahead can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel.

The system maintains the desired speed on clear roads. The vehicle accelerates or brakes automatically.

If a vehicle is driving ahead of you, the system adjusts the speed of your vehicle so that the set distance to the vehicle ahead is maintained. The speed is adjusted as far as the given situation allows.

General information

A radar sensor is located in the front bumper and a camera on the interior mirror to detect vehicles driving ahead of you.

Depending on the vehicle setting, the cruise control settings may change under certain conditions. For instance, acceleration can change depending on the driving mode.

The distance can be adjusted in several steps. For safety reasons, it depends on the respective speed.

If the vehicle ahead of you brakes to a halt, and then proceeds to drive again within a brief period, the system is able to detect this within the given system limits.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

The desired speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Risk of accident due to too high speed differences to other vehicles, for instance in the following situations:

- When fast approaching a slowly moving vehicle.
- Vehicle suddenly swerving into own lane.
- When fast approaching standing vehicles.

There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

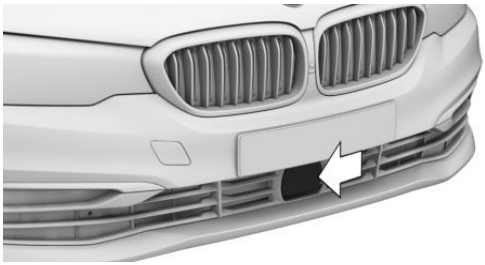
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1406

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Cruise control on/off.
SET	Store/maintain speed.
RES CANCEL	Pause cruise control. Continue cruise control with the last setting.
	Without steering and traffic jam assistant: Reduce distance.
	Without steering and traffic jam assistant: Increase the distance.
	With steering and traffic jam assistant: Adjust distance.
	Rocker switch: Set speed.
	With steering and traffic jam assistant: Steering and traffic jam assistant including Traffic Jam Assist on/off.

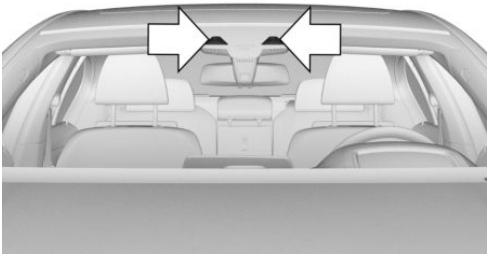
Radar sensor



The radar sensor is located in the front bumper.

Always keep radar sensor clean and unobstructed.

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Area of application

The system is best used on well-constructed roads.

The minimum speed that can be set is 20 mph/30 km/h.

The maximum speed that can be set is limited and, e.g., depends on the vehicle and the vehicle equipment version.

Higher speeds can be selected if the system is switched to cruise control without distance control.

The system can also be activated when stationary.

Switching on/off and interrupting cruise control

Switching on

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster light up and the mark in the speedometer is set to the current speed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1407
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Cruise control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

Switching off

To switch off the system while standing, step on brake pedal at the same time.

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

Interrupting manually

RES CANCEL When active, press the button on the steering wheel.

If interrupting the system while stationary, press on the brake pedal at the same time.

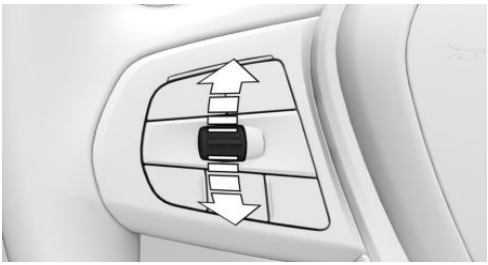
Interrupting automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations:

- When the driver applies the brakes.
- When selector lever position D is disengaged.
- Dynamic Traction Control DTC is activated or DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.
- If DSC Dynamic Stability Control intervenes.
- If the safety belt and the driver's door are opened while the vehicle is standing still.
- If the system has not detected objects for an extended period, for instance on a road with very little traffic without curb or shoulder markings.
- If the detection range of the radar is impaired, for instance by dirt or heavy fog.
- After a longer stationary period when the vehicle has been braked to a stop by the system.

Setting the speed

Maintaining and storing the speed



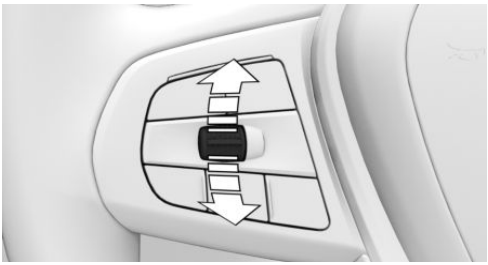
Press the rocker switch up or down once while the system is interrupted. The system will be activated.

The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

The stored speed is displayed on the speedometer.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

Changing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

- Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the desired speed increases or decreases by 1 mph/1 km/h.

▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

Hold the rocker switch in position to repeat the action.

Adjusting the distance

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to the system limits, braking can be late. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Be aware to the traffic situation at all times. Adjust the distance to the traffic and weather conditions and maintain the prescribed safety distance, possibly by braking.

Without steering and traffic jam assistant: reducing distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Instrument cluster will display selected distance.

Without steering and traffic jam assistant: increasing distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Instrument cluster will display selected distance.

With steering and traffic jam assistant: adjusting distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Continuing cruise control

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed.

Make sure that the difference between current speed and stored speed is not too large before calling up the stored speed. Otherwise, unintentional braking or accelerating may occur.

Press the button with the system interrupted.

Cruise control is continued with the stored values.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

▷ When the system is switched off.

▷ When drive-ready state is switched off.

Changing between cruise control with/without distance control

Safety information

Warning

The system does not react to traffic driving ahead of you, but instead maintains the stored speed. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions and brake as needed.

Changing to cruise control without distance control

Distance control can be switched off and on when driving with cruise control activated.

With steering and traffic jam assistant: press and hold this button.

Without steering and traffic jam assistant:

Press and hold this button.

Press and hold this button.

In order to switch back to Cruise control with distance control, press the button again.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1409
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

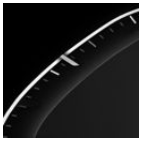
After switching, a Check Control message is displayed.

Displays in the instrument cluster

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the displays in the instrument cluster may vary.

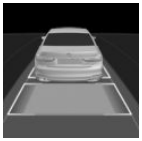
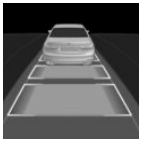
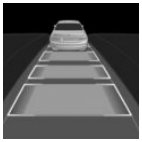
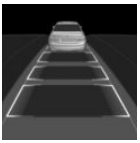
Display in the speedometer



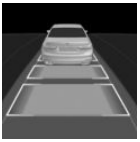
- ▷ Green marking: system is active, the marking indicates the desired speed.
- ▷ Grey marking: system is interrupted, the marking indicates the stored speed.
- ▷ No marking: system is switched off.

Distance to vehicle ahead of you

Selected distance to the vehicle ahead of you is shown.

Symbol	Description
	Distance 1
	Distance 2
	Distance 3
	Distance 4 This value is set automatically after the system is switched on.
	No distance control display, as the accelerator pedal is being pressed.

Detected vehicle

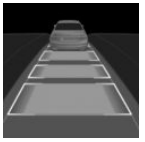
Symbol	Description
	Green symbol: A vehicle has been detected ahead of you.

The system maintains the set distance to the vehicle in front.

As soon as the detected vehicle drives off, the vehicle symbol in the distance indicator will move away.

To accelerate, activate ACC, for instance by briefly stepping on the accelerator pedal or pressing the rocker switch.

Indicator/warning lights

Symbol	Description
	Indicator light green: system is active. No indicator light: system is switched off.
	Vehicle symbol flashes: The conditions are not adequate for the system to work. The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.
	The vehicle symbol and distance bars flash red and an acoustic signal sounds: Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.
	System interrupted.

Displays in the Head-up Display

Desired speed

Some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

The symbol is displayed when the set desired speed is reached.

Distance information

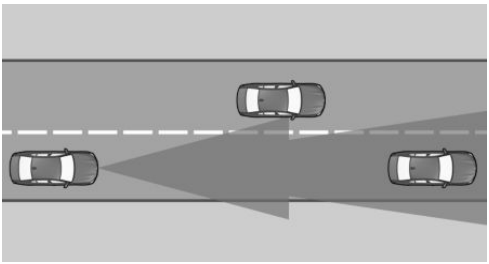
The symbol is displayed when the distance from the vehicle traveling ahead is too short.

The distance information is active in the following situations:

- Active Cruise Control switched off.
- Display in the Head-up Display selected.
  Head-Up Display, refer to page 154.
- Distance too short.
- Speed greater than approx. 40 mph/70 km/h.

System limits

Detection range



The detection capacity of the system and the automatic braking capacity are limited.

Two-wheeled vehicles for instance might not be detected.

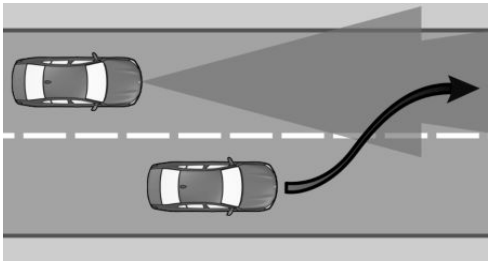
Deceleration

The system does not decelerate in the following situations:

- For pedestrians or similarly slow-moving road users.
- For red traffic lights.
- For cross traffic.
- For oncoming traffic.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1411
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

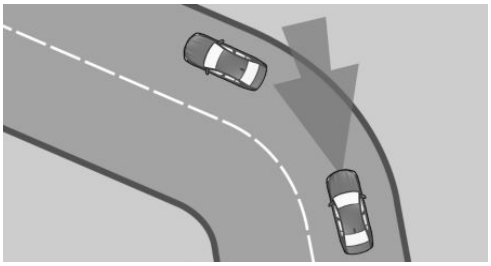
Swerving vehicles



A vehicle driving in front of you is not detected until it is completely within the same lane as your vehicle.

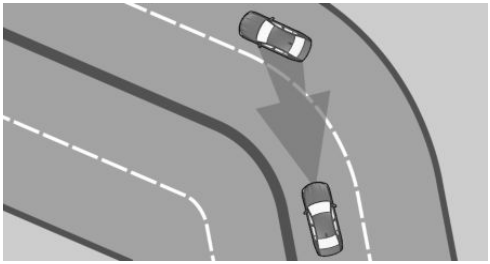
If a vehicle driving ahead of you suddenly swerves into your lane, the system may not be able to automatically restore the selected distance. It may not be possible to restore the selected distance in certain situations, including if you are driving significantly faster than vehicles driving ahead of you, for instance when rapidly approaching a truck. When a vehicle driving ahead of you is reliably detected, the system requests that the driver intervene by braking and carrying out evasive maneuvers, if needed.

Cornering



When the desired speed is too high for a curve, the speed is reduced slightly. Because curves may not be anticipated in advance, drive into a curve at an appropriate speed.

The system has a limited detection range. Situations can arise in tight curves where a vehicle driving ahead will not be detected or will be detected very late.



When you approach a curve the system may briefly report vehicles in the next lane due to the bend of the curve. If the system decelerates you may compensate it by briefly accelerating. After releasing the accelerator pedal the system is reactivated and controls speed independently.

Driving off

In some situations, the vehicle cannot drive off automatically; for example:

- On steep uphill grades.
- In front of bumps in the road.

In these cases, step on the accelerator pedal.

Weather

The following restrictions can occur under unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- Poorer vehicle recognition.
- Short-term interruptions for vehicles that are already recognized.

Examples of unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- Wet conditions.
- Snowfall.
- Slush.
- Fog.
- Glare.

Drive attentively, and react to the current traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for instance by braking, steering or evading.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1412

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Engine power

The desired speed is also maintained downhill. The speed may not be maintained on uphill grades if the engine power is insufficient.

In ECO PRO driving mode, the vehicle may exceed or drop below the set desired speed in some situations, for instance on downhill or uphill grades.

Malfunction

Radar sensor

The system cannot be activated if the radar sensor is not aligned correctly. This may be caused by damage incurred, for instance during parking.

A Check Control message is displayed if the system fails.

Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

The system may be impaired when the detection range of the radar sensor is partially covered such as by the license plate holder.

Camera

The function for detecting and responding when approaching stationary vehicles may be limited in the following situations:

- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- If the camera is malfunctioning or dirty. A Check Control message is displayed.

Steering and traffic jam assistant

Concept

The system assists the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane. For this purpose, the system executes supporting steering movements, for instance when driving in a curve.

General information

The system determines the position of the lane markings and the vehicle driving ahead using five radar sensors and a camera.

Depending on the speed, the system orients itself according to the lane markings or vehicles in front.

Sensors on the steering wheel detect whether the steering wheel is being touched.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

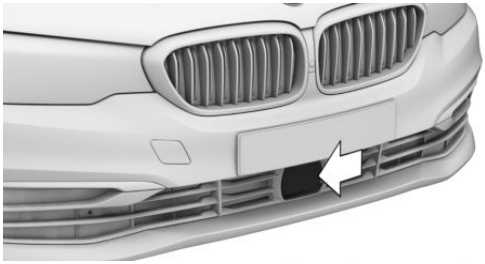
Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Steering and traffic jam assistant on/off.

Radar sensors

The radar sensors are located in the bumpers.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1413
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20



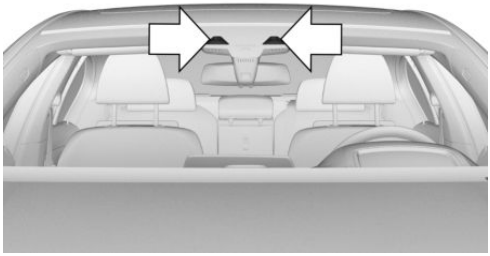
Front center bumper.

Front side bumper.

Rear bumper.

Always keep the bumper in the area of the radar sensors clean and unobstructed.

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Functional requirements

- Speed below 130 mph/210 km/h.
- Sufficient lane width.
- Above approx. 43 mph, 70 km/h: lane marking on both sides is detected.
- Below approx. 43 mph, 70 km/h: lane marking on both sides or a vehicle driving ahead is detected.
- Hands on the steering wheel rim.
- Wide curves.
- Drive in the center of the lane.
- Turn signal switched off.
- The sensor system calibration process is complete.

Switching on/off

Switching on

Press the button on the steering wheel.

Steering wheel symbol lights up gray.

The system is on standby and does not manipulate steering.

System activates automatically as soon as all function conditions are fulfilled.

Steering wheel symbol lights up green.

The system is active.

With the system switched on, the person warning with City braking function and the side collision mitigation are active.

Switching off

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator goes out.

The system does not perform supportive steering wheel movements.

Interrupting automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations, for example:

- At a speed above 130 mph/210 km/h.
- When the steering wheel is released.
- When you manipulate steering.
- When leaving own lane.
- When the turn signal is switched on.
- When the lane is too narrow.
- If for a particular time no lane marking is detected and there is no vehicle driving in front.

Steering wheel symbol lights up gray.

The system is on standby and does not manipulate steering.

System activates automatically as soon as all function conditions are fulfilled.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Description
	Gray steering wheel symbol: The system is on standby.
	Green steering wheel symbol: The system is activated.
	Yellow steering wheel symbol and a signal sounds, if applicable: System interruption is imminent.
	Green steering wheel symbol and lane marking symbol: The system supports the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane.
	Green steering wheel symbol, gray lane marking symbol: No lane marking detected, the vehicle follows the vehicle ahead. The limits of steering support when cornering may have been reached.
	Yellow steering wheel symbol: The hands are not grasping the steering wheel. The system is still active.
	Red steering wheel symbol and a signal sounds: The hands are not grasping the steering wheel. System interruption is imminent. It is possible that the system will not execute any supporting steering movements. With Active Cruise Control, the system may reduce the speed.

Displays in the Head-up Display

All system information can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1415
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

If equipped with Automatic Lane Change Assistant

Concept

The system additionally supports the driver when changing lanes on multilane roads.

Functional requirements

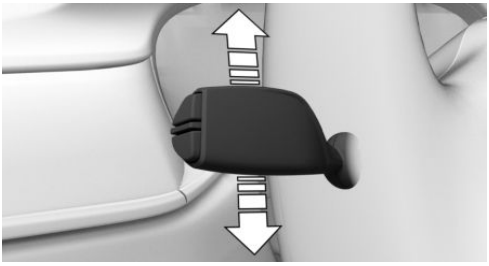
- The functional requirements of the steering and traffic jam assistant are fulfilled.

  Functional requirements, refer to page 211.
- Driving on a road without pedestrians or cyclists and with physical barriers to oncoming traffic, such as crash barriers.
- Lane markings have been detected.
- Sensor system of the system is active and a vehicle approaching from the rear can be detected.
- Blind spot collision warning and steering intervention are switched on.
- Speed between approx. 43 mph, 70 km/h and approx. 110 mph, 180 km/h.

Changing lanes

1. Ensure that the traffic situation permits changing lanes.
2. Press the turn indicator lever in the required direction to the pressure point for signaling briefly.

   Steering support in the required direction can be detected a short time later.



After the lane change, the system helps keep the vehicle in the new lane.

Canceling a lane change

The lane change can be canceled by steering into the opposite direction.

System limits

General information

The system cannot be activated or meaningfully used in certain situations.

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Hands on the steering wheel

The sensors cannot detect hand-steering wheel contact in the following situations:

- Driving with gloves.
- Protective covers on the steering wheel.

Narrow lanes

When driving within narrow lanes, the system cannot be activated or effectively used, for instance in the following situations:

- In construction areas.
- In rescue lanes.
- Within city limits.

Weather

The following restrictions can occur under unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- Poorer recognition of vehicles and lane markings.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1416
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

- Short-term interruptions for vehicles that are already recognized.

Examples of unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- Wet conditions.
- Snowfall.
- Slush.
- Fog.
- Glare.

Drive attentively, and react to the current traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for instance by braking, steering or evading.

PDC Park Distance Control

Concept

PDC is a support when parking. Objects that you are approaching slowly in front of or behind the vehicle are indicated by signal tones and a display on the Control Display.

Depending on the equipment version: obstacles at the side of the vehicle that are detected by the side ultrasonic sensors may also be reported by the side parking aid.

General information

The ultrasound sensors for distance measurements are located in the bumpers and possibly on the sides of the vehicle.

The range, depending on obstacles and environmental conditions, is approx. 6 ft/2 m.

An acoustic warning sounds in case of an impending collision at a distance to the object of approx. 27 in/70 cm.

For objects behind the vehicle, the acoustic warning is already issued at a distance to the object of approx. 5 ft/1.50 m.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Due to high speeds when PDC Park Distance Control is activated, the warning can be delayed due to physical circumstances. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Avoid approaching an object too fast. Avoid driving off fast while PDC Park Distance Control is not yet active.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1417
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Ultrasound sensors

Ultrasound sensors of the PDC, for instance in the bumpers.

Functional requirements

Ensure full functionality:

- Do not cover sensors, for instance with stickers, bicycle racks or similar.
- Keep the sensors clean and free of ice.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system switches on automatically in the following situations:

- If selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.
- Depending on the equipment version: while approaching detected obstacles if the speed is slower than approx. 2.5 mph/4 km/h. The activation distance depends on the situation in question.

You may switch automatic activation when obstacles are detected on and off.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and maneuvering"
5. If necessary, "Automatic PDC activation"
6. "Automatic PDC activation"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Depending on equipment, an additional camera view is also switched on.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on, if needed.

Switching on/off manually

Press the park assistance button.

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

The rearview camera image is displayed if the reverse gear is engaged when pressing the park assistance button.

Depending on the equipment version, the system cannot be switched off manually if the reverse gear is engaged.

Warning

Signal tones

General information

An intermittent tone indicates when the vehicle is approaching an object. E.g., when an object is detected to the left rear of the vehicle, a signal tone sounds from the left rear speaker.

The shorter the distance to the object, the shorter the intervals.

When the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 8 in/20 cm, a continuous tone is sounded.

When there are objects in front of and behind the vehicle at the same time, with a distance smaller than approx. 8 in/20 cm, an alternating constant tone will sound.

Steptronic transmission: the intermittent tone and constant tone are switched off if the selector lever position P is engaged.

The intermittent tone is switched off after a short time when the vehicle is stationary.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1418

Volume

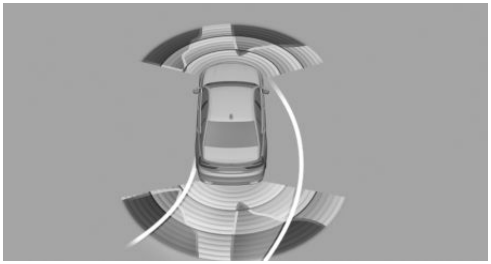
The PDC signal tone volume can be adjusted.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and maneuvering"
5. "Volume PDC signal"
6. Set the desired value.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Visual warning



The approach of the vehicle to an object is shown on the Control Display. Objects that are farther away are already displayed on the Control Display before a signal sounds.

The display appears as soon as PDC is activated.

The range of the sensors is represented in the colors green, yellow and red when obstacles are detected.

Pathway lines are faded in for better estimation of the required space.

When the image of the rearview camera is displayed, the switch can be made to PDC or to a different view with obstacle markings as needed:

1. Press the Controller to the left, if needed.
2. For instance "Park. sensors only"

Cross traffic warning: depending on the equipment, it is warned in the PDC display against vehicles approaching in the front or rear from the side.

Additional information:

Cross traffic warning, refer to page 238.

Depending on the equipment version: emergency brake function, Active PDC

Concept

The emergency braking function of PDC initiates an emergency braking in case of acute risk of collision.

General information

This function may not be available. Contact your authorized dealer's service center or another qualified service center as to whether this additional function is currently in your vehicle or when it can be installed in your vehicle in the future.

Due to system limits, a collision cannot be prevented under all circumstances.

The function is available below walking speed when driving in reverse or rolling backward.

A press of the accelerator pedal interrupts the braking intervention.

After emergency braking to a stop, further creeping toward an obstacle is possible. Proceed with caution. To move forward, lightly press the accelerator pedal and release as needed.

If the accelerator pedal is depressed longer, the vehicle drives off. Manual braking is possible at any time.

The system uses the ultrasound sensors of PDC and parking assistant.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1419
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Adjusting

The system can be activated or deactivated. It is possible to set which areas on the vehicle will be protected by the system.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and maneuvering"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

With Parking Assistant: side parking aid

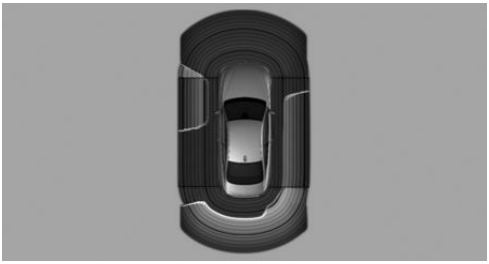
Concept

The system warns of obstacles on the side of the vehicle.

General information

The system uses the ultrasound sensors of PDC and parking assistant.

Display



To protect the sides of the vehicle, obstacle markings are displayed on the sides of the vehicle.

- Color markings: warning against detected obstacles.
- Gray markings, hatched area: no obstacles were detected.
- No markings, black area: the area next to the vehicle was not yet captured.

Limits of the side parking aid

The system only displays stationary obstacles that were previously detected by sensors while passing them.

The system does not detect whether an obstacle moves later on. If the vehicle is stationary, the markings are shown in black after a certain time. The area next to the vehicle must be newly captured.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Own-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1420
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

er's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Limits of ultrasonic measurement

The detection of objects with ultrasonic measurements can run into physical limits, e.g., in the following situations:

- For small children and animals.
- For persons with certain clothing, for instance coats.
- With external interference of the ultrasound, for instance from passing vehicles or loud machines.
- When sensors are dirty, iced over, damaged or out of position.
- Under certain weather conditions such as high relative humidity, wet conditions, snowfall, extreme heat, or strong wind.
- With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.
- With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- With moving objects.
- With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges.
- With objects with corners, edges, and smooth surfaces.
- With objects with a fine surface structure such as fences.
- For objects with porous surfaces.
- With small and low objects, for instance boxes.
- With obstacles and persons at the edge of the lane.
- With soft obstacles or obstacles covered in foam material.
- With plants and bushes.
- Low objects already displayed, for instance curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.
- Cargo that extends beyond the perimeter of the vehicle is not taken into account by the system.

False warnings

The system may issue a warning under the following conditions even though there is no obstacle within the detection range:

- In heavy rain.
- When sensors are very dirty or covered with ice.
- When sensors are covered in snow.
- On rough road surfaces.
- On uneven surfaces, such as speed bumps.
- In large buildings with right angles and smooth walls, for instance in underground garages.
- In automatic vehicle washes.
- Due to heavy exhaust.
- Due to other ultrasound sources, for instance sweeping machines, high pressure steam cleaners or neon lights.

To prevent false alarms, switch off automatic Park Distance Control PDC activation on obstacle detection, for instance in automatic vehicle washes.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

White symbol is displayed, and the range of the sensors is dimmed on the Control Display.

PDC Park Distance Control has failed. Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1421
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Without Surround View: rearview camera

Concept

The rearview camera provides assistance in parking and maneuvering backwards. The area behind the vehicle is shown on the Control Display.

Additionally, assistance functions can be shown in the display, e.g., help lines.

Safety information

Warning

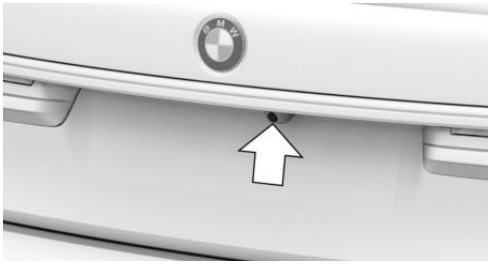
The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Depending on the vehicle equipment: button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Camera



The camera lens is located in the handle of the trunk lid.

The image quality may be impaired by dirt. If necessary, clean the camera lens.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is switched on automatically if selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on, if needed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment: switching on/off manually

Press the park assistance button.

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

The parking assistance functions are shown on the Control Display.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1422
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Switching the view via iDrive

If the rearview camera view is not displayed, change the view via iDrive:

1. If necessary, tilt the controller to the side.
2. "Rear view camera"

The rearview camera image is displayed.

Functional requirements

- The trunk lid is fully closed.
- Keep the recording range of the camera clear. Protruding cargo or roof rack systems can limit the detection range of the camera.

Display on the Control Display

Function bars

The assistance functions can be activated manually via the function bars on the sides of the Control Display.

Via iDrive:

1. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.
2. With corresponding equipment: "Camera image"
3. "Parking aid lines".

   Pathway lines and turning radius lines are displayed.

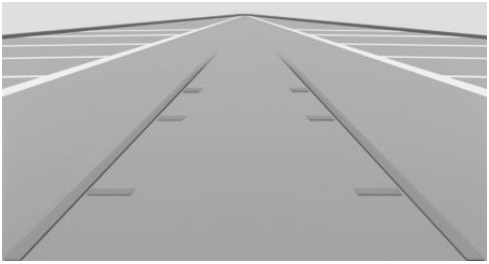
   "Obstacle mark.".

   Depending on the vehicle equipment, the obstacles detected by PDC Park Distance Control are displayed by markings.

More than one assistance function can be active at the same time.

Parking aid lines

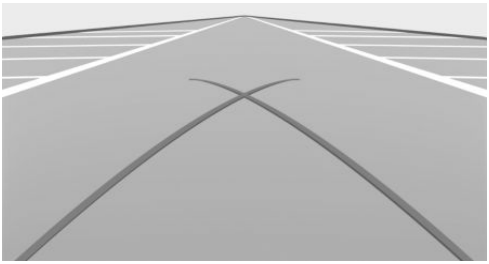
Pathway lines



Pathway lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.

Pathway lines depend on the steering angle and are continuously adjusted to the steering wheel movements.

Turning radius lines



Turning radius lines can only be superimposed on the camera image together with pathway lines.

Turning radius lines show the course of the smallest possible turning radius on a level road.

Only one turning radius line is displayed after the steering wheel is turned past a certain angle.

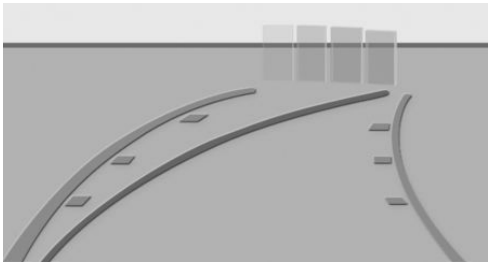
Parking using pathway and turning radius lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the red turning radius line leads to within the limits of the parking space.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1423
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the green pathway line covers the corresponding turning radius line.

Obstacle marking



Depending on the vehicle equipment, obstacles behind the vehicle are detected by the PDC Park Distance Control sensors.

Obstacle markings can be faded into the image of the rearview camera.

The colored thresholds of the obstacle markings match the markings of the PDC Park Distance Control.

Setting brightness and contrast via iDrive

With the rearview camera switched on:

1. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.
2. "Camera image"
3. To perform the desired setting:
   - "Brightness"
   - "Contrast"

System limits

Deactivated camera

When the camera is deactivated, for instance when the trunk lid is open, the camera image is displayed hatched in gray.

Detection of objects

Very low obstacles as well as high, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected by the system.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, some assistance functions also consider data from the PDC Park Distance Control.

Follow the notes in the PDC Park Distance Control chapter.

The objects displayed on the Control Display may be closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance from the objects on the display.

With Parking Assistant Plus: Surround View

Concept

The system provides assistance in parking and maneuvering. The area around the vehicle is shown on the Control Display.

General information

Several cameras capture the area from different selectable perspectives.

The following camera perspectives can be displayed:

- Automatic camera perspective: the system shows the camera perspective suitable for the respective driving situation.
- Rearview camera: for representing the areas behind the vehicle.
- Right-hand and left-hand side view: for representing the areas on the sides of the vehicle.
- Unobstructed camera perspective, movable via iDrive.
- Panorama View: to present cross traffic, for instance at junctions and driveways, depending on the currently engaged gear.

Depending on the view, the environment around the vehicle or a part of it is depicted.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1424
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Additionally, assistance functions are shown in the display, e.g., help lines.

More than one assistance function can be active at the same time.

Some assistance functions can be manually activated.

The following assistance functions are automatically displayed:

- Side parking aid.
- Door opening angle.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

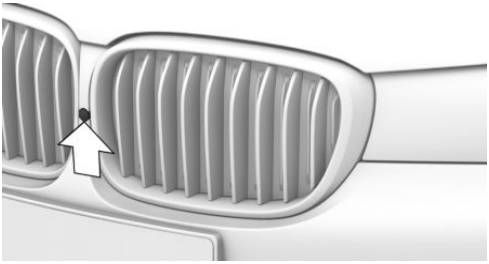
Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

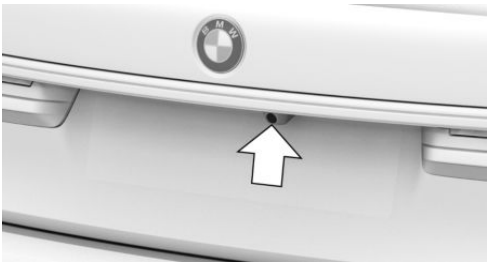
Park assistance button

Panorama View

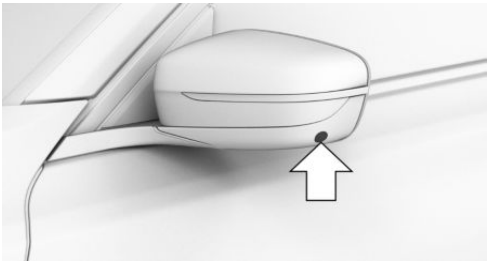
Cameras



Front camera



Rearview camera



One camera is located at the bottom of each exterior mirror housing.

The image quality may be impaired by dirt on the camera lenses. If required, clean the camera lenses.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is switched on automatically if selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1425
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

The camera perspective suitable for the respective driving situation is displayed.

Additional information:

Switching on/off, refer to page 215.

Switching on/off manually

Press the park assistance button.

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

The rearview camera cannot be switched off if the reverse gear is engaged.

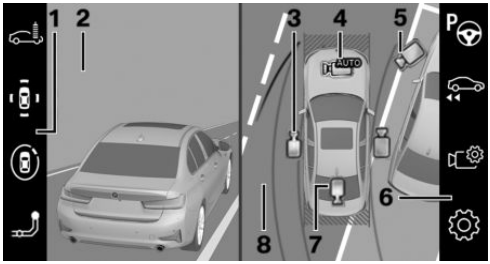
Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on, if needed.

Display on the Control Display

Overview



1 Function bar, left
2 Camera image
3 Side view
4 Automatic camera perspective
5 Movable unobstructed camera perspective
6 Function bar, right
7 Rearview camera
8 Selection window

Function bar on the left

The left function bar can be used for the direct selection of various views via iDrive. Move the Controller to the left, if needed.

- "Car wash".
- "Parking": around the vehicle.
- "3D view": available camera.

Side view

The side view can be selected for the right or left vehicle side.

This view helps when positioning the vehicle at the curb or with other obstacles on the side by displaying the side surroundings.

The side view looks from rear to front and in case of danger, focuses automatically on possible obstacles.

Automatic camera perspective

The automatic camera perspective shows a steering-dependent view in the respective driving direction.

This perspective adapts to the respective driving situation.

As soon as obstacles are detected, the view changes to a fixed display of the area in front or at the rear behind the bumper or, if necessary, changes to a side view.

When reverse gear is engaged, the automatic camera perspective is closed and the system uses a fixed perspective of the rearview camera. If necessary, manually select the automatic camera perspective when reverse gear is engaged. The automatic camera perspective will be retained for the current parking maneuver.

Movable unobstructed camera perspective

With selection of the movable camera perspective, a circle appears on the Control Display.

By turning the Controller or via touch function, specified perspectives on the circle can be selected.

The current perspective is marked with a camera symbol.

To leave the function, move the Controller sideways and select another camera function.

Function bar on the right

Assistance functions can be activated and settings can be entered via the right function bar via iDrive. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.

- "Autom. Parking".
- "Back-up Assistant".
- "Camera image":
  - "Brightness".
  - "Contrast".
  - "Parking aid lines".
  - "Obstacle mark.".
- "Settings": apply settings, for instance to use the activation points for Panorama View.

Rearview camera

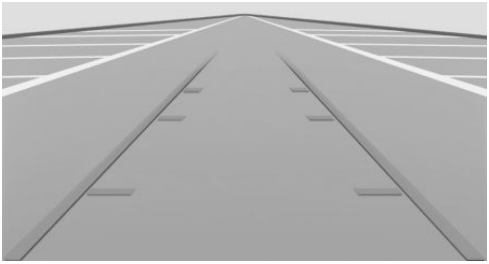
This view shows the picture of the rearview camera.

Selection window

The individual camera perspectives can be selected in the selection window via iDrive.

Parking aid lines

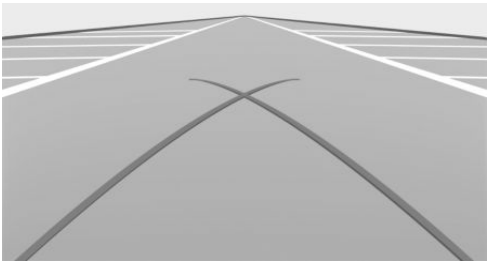
Pathway lines



Pathway lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.

Pathway lines depend on the steering angle and are continuously adjusted to the steering wheel movements.

Turning radius lines



Turning radius lines can only be superimposed on the camera image together with pathway lines.

Turning radius lines show the course of the smallest possible turning radius on a level road.

Only one turning radius line is displayed after the steering wheel is turned past a certain angle.

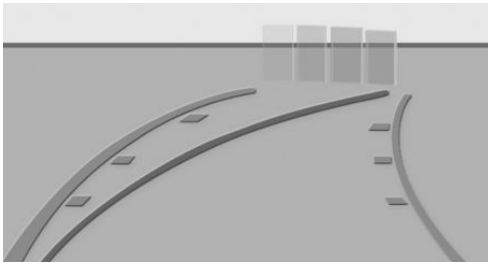
Parking using pathway and turning radius lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the red turning radius line leads to within the limits of the parking space.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1427
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the green pathway line covers the corresponding turning radius line.

Obstacle marking

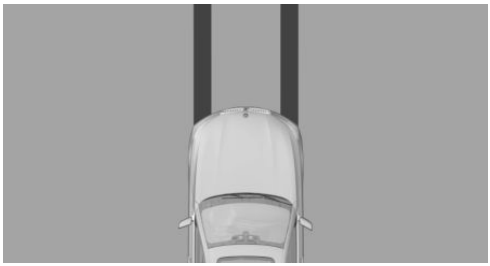


Obstacles behind the vehicle are detected by the PDC Park Distance Control sensors.

Obstacle markings can be shown in the camera image.

The colored thresholds of the obstacle markings match the markings of the PDC Park Distance Control.

Car wash view



The car wash view assists when entering a car wash by displaying the floor and the vehicle's own track.

Side parking aid

Concept

The system warns of obstacles on the side of the vehicle.

Display

To protect the sides of the vehicle, obstacle markings are displayed on the sides of the vehicle.

- No markings: no obstacles were detected.
- Color markings: warning against detected obstacles.

Limits of the side parking aid

The system only displays stationary obstacles that were previously detected by sensors while passing them.

The system does not detect whether an obstacle moves later on. For this reason, at standstill, the markings are not shown anymore in the display after a certain time. The area next to the vehicle must be newly captured.

Door opening angle

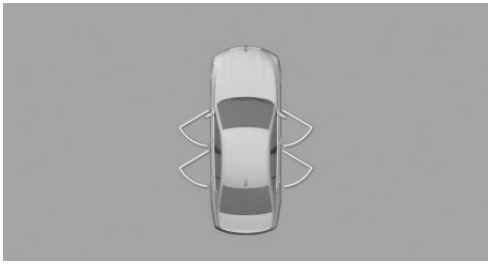
Concept

If obstacle marking is activated, the system indicates fixed obstacles that obstruct the opening angles of the doors.

The system does not provide a warning of approaching traffic.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1428

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20



Steptronic transmission: the maximum opening angles of the doors are displayed in selector lever position P.

As soon as the vehicle begins moving, the opening angles are replaced by parking aid lines.

Limits of the display

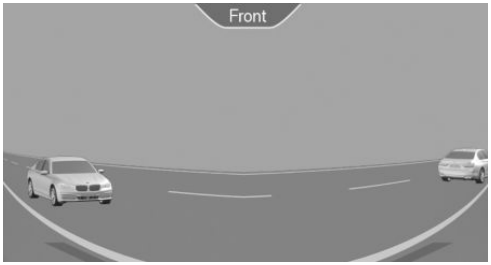
The vehicle surroundings are displayed with distorted image for technical reasons.

Even if the symbols for the door opening angles do not cross other objects on the Control Display, the following needs to be noted when parking next to other objects:

Because of the perspective, higher, protruding objects may be closer than they appear on the Control Display.

Panorama View

Concept



The system provides an early look at cross traffic at blind driveways and intersections.

General information

Road users concealed by obstacles to the left and right of the vehicle can only be detected relatively late from the driver's seat. The cameras in the front and rear capture the sideways traffic area to improve the view.

Yellow lines in the screen display mark the front and rear end of the vehicle.

The camera image shows different levels of distortion in some areas and is thus not suitable for distance estimations.

Depending on the equipment version, the function can only be used when driving forward.

Display on the Control Display

Press the button when the engine is running.

Depending on the driving direction, the image of the respective camera is displayed:

- "Front": front camera image.
- "Rear": rear camera image.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, cross traffic warning can additionally warn of approaching vehicles using radar sensors.

Additional information:

Cross traffic warning, refer to page 238.

With navigation system: activation points

Concept

Positions where Panorama View should switch on automatically can be stored as activation points provided that a GPS signal is received.

General information

Up to ten activation points can be stored.

Activation points can be used when driving forward for the front camera.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1429
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Storing activation points

1. Drive to the position at which the system is to be switched on, and stop.
2. Press the button.
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Activation point"

   The current position is displayed.
5. "Save activation point"

Activation points are, if possible, stored with town/city and street address, or else with the GPS coordinates.

Using activation points

The use of activation points can be switched on and off.

1. Press the button.
2. Move the Controller to the right.
3. "Settings"
4. "Panorama View, GPS-based"
5. "Panorama View is displayed automatically when set activation points are reached."

Displaying activation points

1. Press the button.
2. Move the Controller to the right.
3. "Manage points"

   A list of all activation points is displayed.

Renaming or deleting activation points

1. Press the button.
2. Move the Controller to the right.
3. "Manage points"

   A list of all activation points is displayed.
4. Select an activation point as needed.
5. To perform the desired setting:
   - "Rename"
   - "Delete activation point"
   - "Delete all activation points"

Setting brightness and contrast

Brightness and contrast can be adjusted with Surround View or Panorama View switched on.

Via iDrive:

1. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.
2. "Camera image"
3. To perform the desired setting:
   - "Brightness"
   - "Contrast"

Functional limitations

The system can be used only to a limited extent in the following situations:

- In poor light.
- In case of soiled cameras.
- With a door open.
- With the trunk lid open.
- With exterior mirrors folded in.

Gray hatched areas with symbol, for instance open door, in the camera image mark areas that are currently not displayed.

System limits

Non-visible areas

Because of the camera angle, the areas under the vehicle cannot be viewed by the cameras.

Detection of objects

Very low obstacles as well as high, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected by the system.

Some assistance functions also consider data from the PDC Park Distance Control.

Follow the notes in the PDC Park Distance Control chapter.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1430

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

The objects displayed on the Control Display may be closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance from the objects on the display.

Additional information:

PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 214.

Malfunction

A camera malfunction is displayed on the Control Display.

A yellow symbol is displayed and the recording range of the malfunctioning camera is displayed in black on the Control Display.

With Parking Assistant Plus: Remote 3D View

Concept

With the proper equipment, the BMW Connected App and the camera images from Surround View can be used to display the vehicle surroundings on a mobile device such as a smartphone.

The function displays a momentary view of the situation.

Functional requirements

- Data transmission must be activated.

  Data protection, refer to page 65.
- BMW Connected App must be installed on the mobile device.
- ConnectedDrive countries: An activated driver profile with an existing ConnectedDrive account is required.

  Driver profiles, refer to page 66.

Switching the function on/off

Switching on/off with other functions

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. "all services incl. analysis" or "all vehicle services"

Switching on/off individually

Preset, via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. "Select services individually"
6. "Connected app and cust. portal" and "Remote 3D View"

Switching on/off, via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. "individual selection"

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional or may not be available in the following situations:

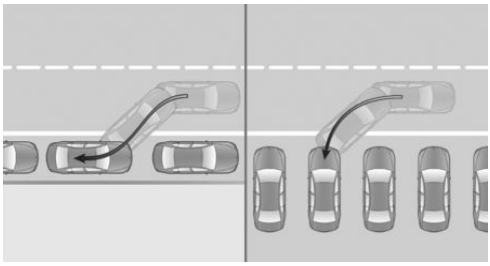
- In poor light.
- In case of soiled cameras.
- With a door or the trunk lid open. Dark fields in the display indicate areas that are not recorded by the system.
- With exterior mirrors folded in.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1431
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

- When other camera functions are being performed in the vehicle.
- When the vehicle moves faster than walking speed.
- It may not be possible to use the function in every country.
- For reasons of data protection, the function can only be used three times within two hours.

With Parking Assistant: Parking Assistant

Concept



The system supports the driver in the following situations:

- When parking parallel to the road, parallel parking.
- When reverse parking diagonally to the road, diagonal parking. The system orients itself with the middle of the parking space during diagonal parking.

General information

Handling

Parking assistant handling is divided into three steps:

- Switching on and activating.
- Parking space search.
- Parking.

System status and instructions on required actions are displayed on the Control Display.

Ultrasound sensors measure parking spaces on both sides of the vehicle.

Steptronic transmission

The parking assistant calculates the best possible parking line and takes control of the following functions during the parking procedure:

- Steering.
- Accelerating and braking.
- Changing the gears.

Press and hold the park assistance button for the duration of the parking procedure.

Parking is automatic.

Remote Control Parking

The vehicle can be remotely parked and driven out in reverse if suitable forward-parking spaces are available.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

NOTICE

The parking assistant can steer the vehicle over or onto curbs. There is a risk of damage to property. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

The safety information of the PDC Park Distance Control applies in addition.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1432
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Additional information:

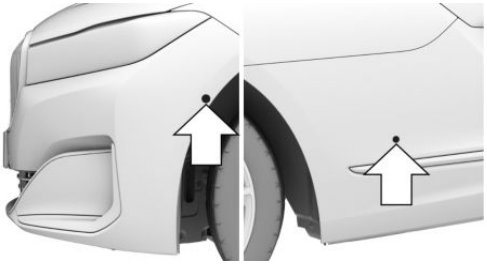
PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 214.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Ultrasound sensors



With the four side ultrasound sensors, arrows, and the ultrasound sensors of PDC Park Distance Control in the bumpers, the parking spaces are measured and the distances to obstacles determined.

Functional requirements

Ultrasound sensors

Ensure full functionality:

- Do not cover sensors, for instance with stickers.
- Keep the sensors clean and unobstructed.

For measuring parking spaces

- Maximum speed while driving forward approx. 22 mph/35 km/h.
- Maximum distance to row of parked vehicles: 5 ft/1.5 m.

Suitable parking space

General information:

- Gap behind an object that has a min. length of 1.7 ft/0.5 m.
- Gap between two objects with a minimum length of approx. 1.7 ft/0.5 m.

Parallel parking to the road:

- Min. length of gap between two objects: your vehicle's length plus approx. 2.6 ft/0.8 m.
- Minimum depth: approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.

Diagonal parking:

- Minimum width of the gap: own vehicle's width plus approx. 2.3 ft/0.7 m.
- Minimum depth: your vehicle's length.

  The depth of diagonal parking spaces must be estimated by the driver. Due to technical limitations, the system is only able to approximate the depth of diagonal parking spaces.

For parking

- Doors and trunk lid are closed.
- The parking brake is released.

Steptronic transmission:

- Driver's safety belt is fastened.

Switching on and activating

Switching on with the button

Press the park assistance button.

The LED lights up.

The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.

Parking assistant is activated automatically.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1433
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Switching on with reverse gear

1. Shift into reverse.

   The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.
2. If necessary, activate: "Autom. Parking"

Switching on via iDrive

Display of the rearview camera or PDC view must be active.

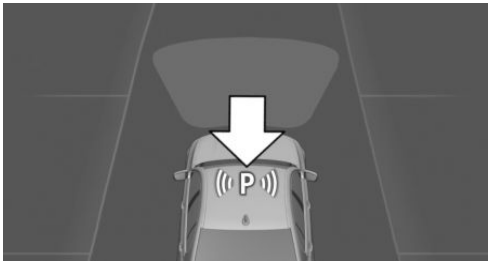
1. Move the Controller to the right.
2. Activate the parking assistant on the Control Display: "Autom. Parking"

Display on the Control Display

System activated/deactivated

Symbol	Meaning
	Gray: the system is not available. White: the system is available but not activated.
	System is activated.
	Parking space search is active.
	The parking procedure is active. The system takes over the steering.

Parking space search and system status



▷ Parking assistant is activated and parking space search is active.

▷ Control Display shows suitable parking spaces at the edge of the road next to the vehicle symbol. When Park Assistant is active, suitable parking spaces are highlighted and an acoustic signal sounds.

▷ If a diagonal or parallel parking space is clearly detected, the system automatically adjusts the suitable parking method. In the case of parking spaces suitable for parallel and diagonal parking, a selection menu is displayed. In this case, the desired parking method must be selected manually.

▷ The parking procedure is active. The system takes over the steering.

▷ Parking space search is always active whenever the vehicle is moving forward slow and straight, even if the system is deactivated. When the system is deactivated, the displays on the Control Display are shown in gray.

Signal tones

Switching signal tone for suitable parking spaces on/off

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and maneuvering"
5. "Automatic Parking"
6. "Alert if parking space detected"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Signal tones of the PDC Park Distance Control

During an automatic parking operation, no intermittent tone will sound from the PDC Park Distance Control.

A continuous tone sounds when the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 8 inches/20 cm.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1434

Parking using the parking assistant

Parking

1. Switching on and activating the parking assistant.

   For this, engage the reverse gear or press the parking assist button and activate the system on the Control Display, if needed.

   Parking assistant is activated.
2. Pass the row of parked vehicles forward at a speed of up to approx. 22 mph/35 km/h and at a distance of maximum 5 ft/1.5 m.

   The status of the parking space search and possible parking spaces are displayed on the Control Display.
3. Confirm the suggested parking space for the parking procedure: switch on the turn signal on the corresponding side.

   The system takes over the steering.
4. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

   Steptronic transmission:

   Press and hold the park assistance button for the duration of the parking procedure. At the end of the parking procedure, the P selector lever position is set.

   The end of the parking procedure is indicated on the Control Display.
5. Adjust the parking position yourself, if needed.

Interrupting manually

The parking assistant can be interrupted at any time:

- Steptronic transmission: release the park assistance button during the parking procedure.
- "Autom. Parking": select the symbol on the Control Display.

Interrupting automatically

The system is interrupted automatically in the following situations:

- When the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes over steering.
- Possibly on snow-covered or slippery road surfaces.
- When there are obstacles that are hard to overcome, such as curbs.
- When there are obstacles that suddenly appear.
- If the PDC Park Distance Control displays clearances that are too small.
- When a maximum number of parking attempts or the time taken for parking is exceeded.
- When switching to another function on the Control Display.

Steptronic transmission:

- When the park assistance button is released.
- If the trunk lid is open.
- If doors are open.
- When setting the parking brake.
- During acceleration.
- When the brake pedal remains pressed for an extended period while the vehicle is stationary.
- When unfastening the driver's safety belt.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Resuming

An interrupted parking procedure can be continued, if needed.

Reactivate the parking assistant and follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Switching off

The system can be switched off manually:

Press the park assistance button.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1435
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

No parking assistance

The parking assistant does not offer assistance in the following situations:

- In tight curves.
- For diagonal parking spaces.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- On bumpy road surfaces such as gravel roads.
- On slippery ground.
- On steep uphill or downhill grades.
- With accumulations of leaves/snow in the parking space.
- With a mounted emergency wheel.
- In case of changes to an already-measured parking space.
- With ditches or edges, for instance an edge of a port.

Limits of ultrasonic measurement

The detection of objects with ultrasonic measurements can run into physical limits, e.g., in the following situations:

- For small children and animals.
- For persons with certain clothing, for instance coats.
- With external interference of the ultrasound, for instance from passing vehicles or loud machines.
- When sensors are dirty, iced over, damaged or out of position.
- Under certain weather conditions such as high relative humidity, wet conditions, snowfall, extreme heat, or strong wind.
- With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.
- With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- With moving objects.
- With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges.
- With objects with corners, edges, and smooth surfaces.
- With objects with a fine surface structure such as fences.
- For objects with porous surfaces.
- With small and low objects, for instance boxes.
- With obstacles and persons at the edge of the lane.
- With soft obstacles or obstacles covered in foam material.
- With plants and bushes.
- Low objects already displayed, for instance curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.
- Cargo that extends beyond the perimeter of the vehicle is not taken into account by the system.
- Parking spaces that are not suitable may be detected or suitable parking spaces may not be detected at all.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

The parking assistant failed. Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Remote Control Parking

Concept

The vehicle can be remotely parked and driven out in reverse in the case of suitable forward-parking spaces, for instance a garage. The driver is not in the vehicle, but controls the parking procedure responsibly from the outside using the BMW display key.

Stop the vehicles manually in the case of obstacles.

Using the BMW display key, the vehicle can be moved by approx. 1.5 times the vehicle length. The speed does not exceed 1.1 mph/1.8 km/h.

General information

The following systems are included in the system:

- Parking assistant.
- BMW display key.
- PDC Park Distance Control.

Button on the BMW display key: the button on the side of the BMW display key must be pressed and held for the duration of the parking procedure so that the vehicle can move. Release the button for obstacles to manually stop the vehicle. The vehicle stops with emergency braking.

If the ultrasound sensors detect obstacles in the parking space or the end of the parking space, the system automatically stops the vehicle as needed.

The headlight is switched on for the duration of the procedure.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing traffic and parking situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all situations. There is a risk of accident. Watch traffic and parking situation closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

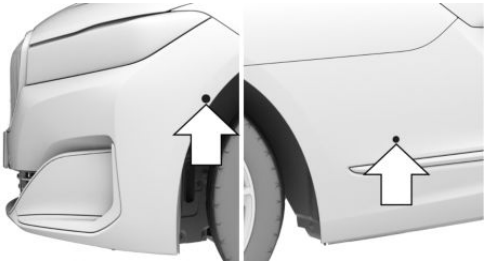
Unauthorized persons, for instance children, can move the vehicle using the BMW display key without anybody in the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Protect the BMW display key against unauthorized use.

NOTICE

The parking assistant can steer the vehicle over or onto curbs. There is a risk of damage to property. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Ultrasound sensors



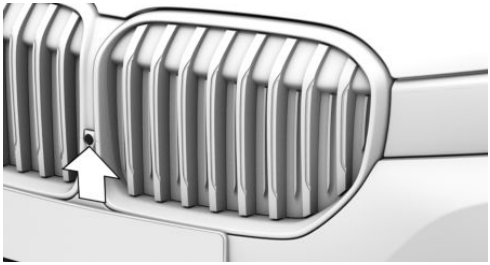
With the four side ultrasound sensors, arrows, and the ultrasound sensors of PDC Park Distance Control in the bumpers, the parking

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1437
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

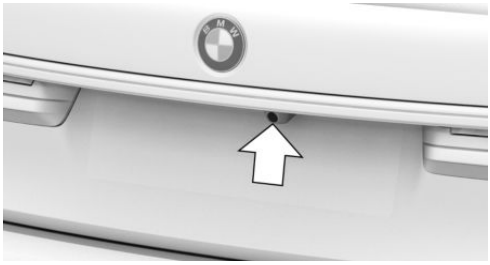
spaces are measured and the distances to obstacles determined.

Cameras

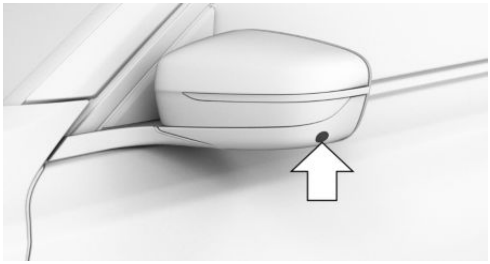
In addition to the ultrasonic sensors, the parking situation during Remote Control Parking is detected using four cameras.



Front camera.



Rearview camera.



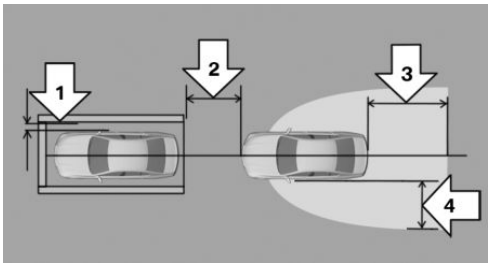
One camera is located at the bottom of each exterior mirror housing.

Functional requirements

Cameras and ultrasound sensors

- Do not cover sensors, for instance with stickers.
- Keep sensors clean and unobstructed. Clean them as needed.
- Keep camera lenses clean and unobstructed. Clean them as needed.

Suitable parking space



- It is possible to forward-park into the parking space in a straight, centered line.
- Width of the parking space: vehicle's own width without exterior mirrors, plus approx. 1.3 ft/0.4 m on each side, arrow 1.
- Distance to parking space, max. 6.5 ft/2 m, arrow 2.
- The driver with the BMW display key is outside the vehicle during Remote Control Parking.

  Maximum distance to the vehicle:

  - Behind the vehicle, approx. 10–13 ft/3–4 m, arrow 3.
  - To the side of the vehicle, approx. 5 ft/1.5 m, arrow 4.
- Uphill or downhill grades max. 5 %.
- No duplex garages.

Forward parking

Parking

While driving forward, the system applies minor steering corrections as needed.

1. Approach the parking space driving forward, centered and in a straight line. Stop at a distance of maximum 6.5 ft/2 m.
2. Apply parking brake and switch drive-ready state off using the Start/Stop button.
3. Have all occupants exit and close the doors.
4. If necessary, switch on the display on the BMW display key and cancel the display lock.

   On the BMW display key, change to the menu: "R/C parking"

   BMW display key, refer to page 82.
5. Press and hold the button on the side of the BMW display key for the duration of the parking procedure.
6. Wait, until function readiness is indicated on the display. Observe possible SMS text messages.
7. "ENGINE START": tap the button. The engine starts.
8. To start the parking procedure: touch the arrow symbol for "drive forward" on the display.

   Press and hold the button: the vehicle moves as long as the button is pressed. Release the button for obstacles within the driving range to stop the vehicle.

   For approach movements: touch the arrow symbol for "drive backward".
9. At the end of the parking procedure, release the button on the side of the BMW display key. The vehicle stops.

   "ENGINE STOP": tap the button. The engine is switched off.

   Lock the vehicle.

   The parking brake is engaged and standby state switched off.

Cancel, pause, continue the parking procedure

To cancel or pause the parking procedure:

Release the button. The vehicle stops with emergency braking.

To continue the parking procedure:

Press the button again within 30 seconds.

Driving out in reverse

Driving out of parking spaces

When driving in reverse, the vehicle drives backward in a straight line without steering.

1. If necessary, switch on the display on the BMW display key and cancel the display lock.

   BMW display key, refer to page 82.
2. Unlock the vehicle.
3. On the BMW display key, change to the menu: "R/C parking"
4. Press and hold the button on the side of the BMW display key for the duration of the parking procedure.
5. Wait, until function readiness is indicated on the display. Observe possible SMS text messages.
6. "ENGINE START": tap the button. The engine starts.
7. To start the reversing out procedure: touch the arrow symbol for "drive backward" on the display.

   Press and hold the button: the vehicle moves as long as the button is pressed. Release the button for obstacles within the driving range to stop the vehicle.
8. At the end of the reversing out procedure, release the button on the side of the BMW display key. The vehicle stops.
9. "ENGINE STOP": tap the button. The engine is switched off.

   The parking brake is engaged and drive-ready state switched off.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1439
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Lock vehicle if it is unlocked.

Cancel, pause, continue the parking procedure

To cancel or pause the parking procedure:

Release the button. The vehicle stops with emergency braking.

To continue the parking procedure:

Press the button again within 30 seconds.

Messages on the BMW display key

The symbol identifies system messages.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

No parking assistance

The parking assistant does not offer assistance in the following situations:

- In tight curves.
- For diagonal parking spaces.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- On bumpy road surfaces such as gravel roads.
- On slippery ground.
- On steep uphill or downhill grades.
- With accumulations of leaves/snow in the parking space.
- With a mounted emergency wheel.
- In case of changes to an already-measured parking space.
- With ditches or edges, for instance an edge of a port.

Functional limitations due to radio interference

In the case of radio interference, functional limitations may occur during Remote Control Parking with the BMW display key.

Additional information:

Malfunction, refer to page 86.

Limits of ultrasonic measurement

The detection of objects with ultrasonic measurements can run into physical limits, e.g., in the following situations:

- For small children and animals.
- For persons with certain clothing, for instance coats.
- With external interference of the ultrasound, for instance from passing vehicles or loud machines.
- When sensors are dirty, iced over, damaged or out of position.
- Under certain weather conditions such as high relative humidity, wet conditions, snowfall, extreme heat, or strong wind.
- With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.
- With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- With moving objects.
- With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges.
- With objects with corners, edges, and smooth surfaces.

- With objects with a fine surface structure such as fences.
- For objects with porous surfaces.
- With small and low objects, for instance boxes.
- With obstacles and persons at the edge of the lane.
- With soft obstacles or obstacles covered in foam material.
- With plants and bushes.
- Low objects already displayed, for instance curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.
- Cargo that extends beyond the perimeter of the vehicle is not taken into account by the system.

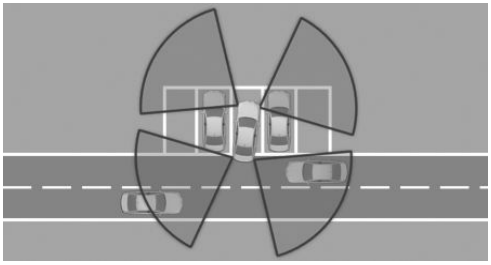
Parking spaces that are not suitable may be detected or suitable parking spaces may not be detected at all.

Cross traffic warning

Concept

At blind driveways or when driving out of diagonal parking spaces, approaching cross traffic is detected sooner by the system than is possible from the driver's seat.

General information



Two radar sensors in the rear bumper monitor the area behind the vehicle.

The system indicates approaching traffic.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the traffic area in front of the vehicle is monitored as well. Two additional radar sensors are located in the front bumpers.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1441
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Radar sensors

The radar sensors are located in the rear bumper.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, two additional radar sensors are located in the front bumpers.

Always keep the bumper in the area of the radar sensors clean and unobstructed.

Switching on/off

Activating/deactivating the system

With the button

1. Press the park assistance button.
2. Move the Controller to the right.
3. "Settings"
4. "Cross traffic warning"
5. "Activate function"

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and maneuvering"
5. "Cross traffic warning"
6. "Activate function"

Switching on automatically

If the system was activated on the Control Display, it is automatically switched on as soon as PDC Park Distance Control or Panorama View is active and a gear is engaged.

If reverse gear is engaged, the rear system is switched on.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the front system is switched on when a forward gear is engaged.

Switching off automatically

The system is automatically switched off in the following situations:

- When the speed exceeds walking speed.
- With the steering and traffic jam assistant active: when a certain driving distance is exceeded.
- With an active parking operation of the parking assistant.

Warning

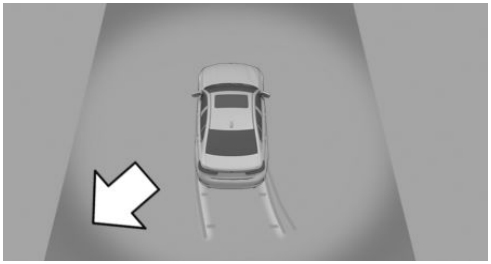
General information

The respective display is called up on the Control Display. A signal tone may sound and the light in the exterior mirror may flash.

Light in the exterior mirror

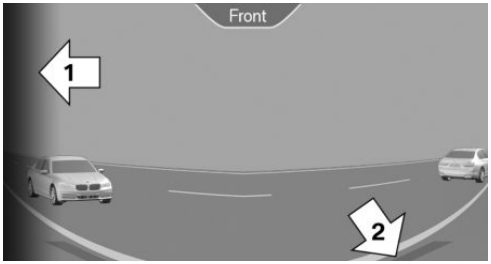
The light in the exterior mirror flashes if vehicles are detected by the rear sensors and your own vehicle is moving backwards.

Display in the PDC Park Distance Control view



In the PDC Park Distance Control view, the respective boundary area flashes red, if vehicles are detected by the sensors.

Display in the camera view



The respective boundary area, arrow 1, in the camera view flashes red, if vehicles are detected by the sensors.

Yellow lines, arrow 2, mark the bumper of your own vehicle.

Acoustic warning

In addition to the optical indicator, a warning signal sounds if your own vehicle moves into the respective direction.

System limits

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- If the speed of the approaching vehicle is very high.
- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- In tight curves.
- If the bumper is dirty, iced up, or covered, for instance by stickers.
- If the field of view of the sensors is covered, e.g., by garage walls, hedges or snow hills.
- If cargo protrudes.
- When crossing objects move at a very slow speed.
- If other objects are in the capture range of the sensors, that hide cross traffic.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1443
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Driving comfort

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Chassis components

The chassis components are optimized for the vehicle and its scope of application and thereby ensure the best possible Driving Dynamics.

Adaptive chassis

Concept

This system reduces undesirable vehicle motion when using a dynamic driving style or traveling on uneven road surfaces.

General information

The driving dynamics and driving comfort are enhanced depending on the road surface condition and driving style.

Tuning

The system offers different shock absorber settings ranging from comfortable travel to dynamic driving.

The damping settings are assigned to the different driving modes of the Driving Dynamics Control.

Additional information:

Driving Dynamics Control, refer to page 125.

Adaptive Drive

Concept

Adaptive Drive is an actively controlled chassis/suspension. The system increases driving comfort and minimizes the lateral tilt when driving around curves.

General information

For active control, this system uses the available information, for instance from the navigation system or the Driving style analysis.

In particular in the ADAPTIVE driving mode, this information is used to influence the adaptive chassis control and the active roll stabilization control. This further increases both the agility of the vehicle as well as the lane stability.

The function may be restricted if the navigation data is invalid, outdated or not available, for example.

Active roll stabilization

Concept

The system reduces the lateral tilt of the vehicle that occurs during rapid driving in curves or during quick evasive maneuvers.

General information

The lateral tilt of the vehicle is balanced out by permanent adjustment on the front and rear axles. The vehicle is thus always stabilized.

Agility and driving comfort are increased under all driving conditions.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1444

Tuning

The system offers different settings ranging from comfortable travel to dynamic driving.

The tunings are assigned to the different driving modes of the Driving Dynamics Control.

Additional information:

Driving Dynamics Control, refer to page 125.

Adaptive M chassis

Concept

The Adaptive M chassis is a controllable sport chassis/suspension. This system reduces undesirable vehicle motion when using a dynamic driving style or traveling on uneven road surfaces.

General information

The driving dynamics and driving comfort are enhanced depending on the road surface condition and driving style.

Tuning

The system offers different shock absorber settings ranging from comfortable travel to dynamic driving.

The damping settings are assigned to the different driving modes of the Driving Dynamics Control.

Additional information:

Driving Dynamics Control, refer to page 125.

Adaptive M Chassis Professional

Concept

The Adaptive M Suspension Professional is an actively controlled sport chassis/suspension. The system increases driving comfort and minimizes the lateral tilt when driving around curves.

The Adaptive M Suspension Professional encompasses the following systems:

- Low-lying sport chassis.
- Adaptive chassis.
- Active roll stabilization.
- Integral Active Steering.

General information

For active control, this system uses the available information, for instance from the navigation system or the Driving style analysis.

This information influences the control of the following systems, especially in ADAPTIVE driving mode:

- Adaptive chassis.
- Active roll stabilization.
- Integral Active Steering.

This further increases the agility and comfort of the vehicle.

The function may be restricted if the navigation data is invalid, outdated or not available, for example.

Engine sound

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, you may be able to change the sound of the engine.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Engine sound"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1445
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Climate control

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Interior air quality

The air quality in the vehicle is improved by the following components:

- Emission tested passenger compartment.
- Microfilter.
- Air conditioning system to control the temperature, air flow and recirculated-air mode.

Depending on the equipment:

- Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter.
- Ionization.
- Fragrancing.
- Automatic recirculated-air control AUC.
- Parked-car ventilation.

Automatic climate control

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

Climate control functions

Button	Function
	Temperature.
A/C	Climate control operation.
MAX A/C	Maximum cooling.
AUTO	AUTO program.
	Recirculated-air mode.
	Air flow, manual. Intensity AUTO program.
	Air distribution, manual.
SYNC	SYNC program.

Button	Function
MAX	Defrost and defog window.
	Rear window defroster.
	Active seat ventilation, refer to page 116.
	Seat heating, refer to page 115.
MENU	Opening the Climate menu. For example, for the following settings: upper body temperature adjustment, parked-car ventilation.

Some of the functions can also be used via voice, e.g., temperature.

Opening the Climate menu

MENU Press the button.

The Climate menu is displayed.

All the climate control functions which can adjusted via iDrive can be called up via the Climate menu, e.g., upper body temperature adjustment, parked-car ventilation.

Switching on/off

Switching on

Press any button except for the following:

- Rear window defroster.
- Left side of air flow button.
- SYNC program.
- Seat heating.
- Seat ventilation.

Switching off

When equipped with automatic climate control with enhanced features:

- Complete system:

  Press and hold the left button on the driver's side until the system switches off.

- On the front passenger side:

  Press and hold the left button on the front passenger side.

Temperature

Concept

The automatic climate control achieves the set temperature as quickly as possible, if needed, by using the maximum cooling or heating capacity, and then keeps it constant.

Adjusting

Turn the wheel to set the desired temperature.

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. Otherwise, the automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

Temperature of the ventilation

General information

The temperature of the ventilation in the upper body region can be adjusted.

The temperature is individually adjusted, e.g. colder toward blue, warmer toward red.

The air flow of the ventilation in the upper body region heats or cools noticeably, depending on the adjusted temperature.

This does not change the set interior temperature for the driver and front passenger.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1447
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Adjusting

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Temperature adjustment"
5. Set the desired temperature:
   - ▷ Toward blue: colder.
   - ▷ Toward red: warmer.

Air conditioning

Concept

The air in the car's interior will be cooled and dehumidified and, depending on the temperature setting, warmed again.

The car's interior can only be cooled with the drive-ready state switched on.

Switching on/off

A/C Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with air conditioning switched on.

Depending on the weather, the windshield and the side windows may fog up briefly when drive-ready state is switched on.

The cooling function is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops and collects underneath the vehicle.

Maximum cooling

Concept

The system is set to the lowest temperature, optimum air flow and recirculated-air mode with the drive-ready state switched on.

General information

The function is available with external temperatures above approx. 32 °F/0 °C and with the drive-ready state switched on.

Switching on/off

MAX A/C Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the system switched on.

Air flows out of the vents to the upper body region. The vents need to be open for this.

Adjust air flow on the driver's side with the program active.

AUTO program

Concept

The AUTO program cools, ventilates or heats the car's interior automatically.

The air distribution and temperature are controlled automatically depending on the temperature in the car's interior and the desired temperature setting including the selected intensity of the air flow.

Switching on/off

AUTO Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the AUTO program switched on.

Depending on the selected temperature, the intensity of the AUTO program, and outside influences, the air is directed to the windshield, side windows, upper body, and into the floor area.

The cooling function is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

Point the side vents toward the side windows.

At the same time, a condensation sensor controls the program so as to prevent window condensation as much as possible.

The AUTO program is switched off automatically, when manual air distribution is set.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1448
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Intensity

With the AUTO program switched on, the intensity can be adjusted. This changes the automatic control for the air flow and air distribution.

Press the left or right side of the button: to decrease or increase intensity.

The selected intensity is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

Automatic recirculated-air control AUC

Concept

The automatic recirculated-air control AUC recognizes odors or pollutants in the outside air. The outside air supply is shut off and the interior air is recirculated.

General information

If the system is activated, a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and controls the shut-off automatically.

If the system is deactivated, outside air continuously flows into the car's interior.

With constant recirculated-air mode, the air quality in the car's interior deteriorates and window fogging increases.

Switching on/off

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. If necessary, "Air quality"
5. "Auto-recirculate"

If there is window condensation, switch off recirculated-air mode or defog the windows.

Recirculated-air mode

Concept

You may react to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air flow within the vehicle.

Operation

Press the button:

The LED is illuminated when recirculated-air mode is switched on. The supply of outside air is shut off.

When recirculated-air mode is switched off, fresh air is directed into the vehicle's interior.

To prevent window fogging, recirculated-air mode switches off automatically after a certain amount of time, depending on the environmental conditions.

With constant recirculated-air mode, the air quality in the car's interior deteriorates and window fogging increases.

If there is window condensation, switch off recirculated-air mode or defog the windows.

Adjusting the air flow manually

Concept

The air flow for climate control can be adjusted manually.

General information

To adjust the air flow manually switch off AUTO program first.

Operation

Press the left or right side of the button: to decrease or increase air flow.

The selected air flow is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1449
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

The air flow of the automatic climate control may be reduced automatically to save battery power.

Adjusting the air distribution manually

Concept

The air distribution for climate control can be adjusted manually.

Operation

Press the button repeatedly to select a program:

- Windows, upper body region, and floor area.
- Upper body region and floor area.
- Floor area.
- Windows and floor area.
- Windows: driver's side only.
- Windows and upper body.
- Upper body region.

The selected air distribution is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

SYNC program

Concept

Depending on the equipment, the following settings of the driver's side can be transferred to the front-passenger side and the rear:

- Temperature.
- Air flow.
- Air distribution.
- AUTO program.

Switching on/off

SYNC Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the SYNC program switched on.

The program is switched off automatically if the settings on the front passenger side or in the rear are changed.

To defrost windows and remove condensation

Concept

Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

Switching on/off

MAX Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the system switched on.

The air flow can be adjusted manually with the system switched on.

AUTO If there is window condensation, press the button on the driver's side or switch on air conditioning to utilize the condensation sensor. Make sure that air can flow to the windshield.

Rear window defroster

Press the button. The LED lights up.

The function is available with the engine running.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter

The microfilter removes dust and pollen from the incoming air.

The activated-charcoal filter also removes gaseous pollutants from the outside air that enters the vehicle.

Have this combined filter changed during vehicle maintenance.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1450
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Ventilation

Concept

The air flow directions can be individually adjusted.

Adjusting the ventilation

General information

The air flow directions can be adjusted for direct or indirect ventilation.

Open the vents and position them to ensure effective climate control.

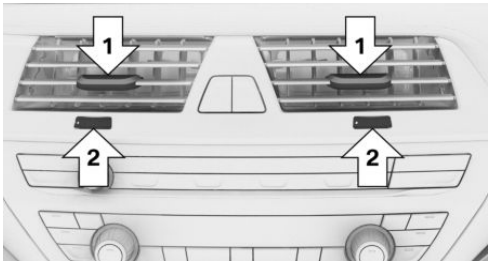
Direct ventilation

The air flow is directed towards the passengers. The air flow heats or cools noticeably, depending on the adjusted temperature.

Indirect ventilation

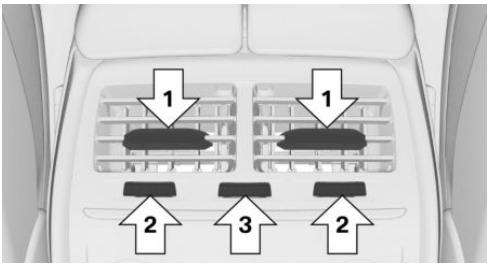
The air flow is not directed towards the passengers. The car's interior is warmed or cooled indirectly, depending on the set temperature.

Front ventilation



- Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 1.
- Thumbwheel for variable opening and closing of the vents, arrow 2.

Ventilation in rear, center

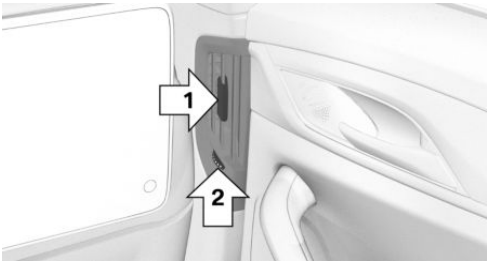


- Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 1.
- Thumbwheel for variable opening and closing of the vents, arrow 2.
- Thumbwheel for varying the temperature, arrow 3.

  Toward blue: colder.

  Toward red: warmer.

Ventilation in the rear, on the side



- Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 1.
- Thumbwheel for variable opening and closing of the vents, arrow 2.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1451
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Rear automatic climate control

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

Climate control functions

Button	Function
	Temperature.
MAX A/C	Maximum cooling.
AUTO	AUTO program.
	Air flow, manual.
	Air distribution, manual.
	Seat heating, refer to page 115.

Switching on/off

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Rear climate control"

The rear automatic climate control is not ready for operation if the automatic climate control is switched off or if the function for defrosting the windows and removing condensation is active.

Using the button: switching on

Press any button except for the following:

- Left side of air flow button.
- Seat heating.

Using the button: switching off

Press and hold the left side of the button.

Temperature

Concept

The automatic climate control achieves the set temperature as quickly as possible, if needed, by using the maximum cooling or heating capacity, and then keeps it constant.

Adjusting

Turn the wheel to set the desired temperature.

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. Otherwise, the automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

Maximum cooling

Concept

The system is set to the lowest temperature, optimum air flow and recirculated-air mode with the drive-ready state switched on.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1452
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

General information

The function is available with external temperatures above approx. 32 °F/0 °C and with the drive-ready state switched on.

Switching on/off

MAX A/C Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the system switched on.

Air flows out of the vents to the upper body region. The vents need to be open for this.

AUTO program

Concept

Air flow, air distribution and temperature are controlled automatically.

Switching on/off

AUTO Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the AUTO program switched on.

Depending on the selected temperature, the AUTO intensity, and outside influences, the air is directed to the upper body and into the floor area.

Intensity

With the AUTO program activated, the automatic intensity control can be changed:

Press the left or right side of the button: to decrease or increase intensity.

The selected intensity is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

Controlling the air flow manually

Concept

The air flow for climate control can be adjusted manually.

General information

To adjust the air flow manually switch off AUTO program first.

Operation

Press the left or right side of the button: to decrease or increase air flow.

The selected air flow is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

Controlling the air distribution manually

Concept

The air distribution for climate control can be adjusted manually.

Operation

Press the button repeatedly to select a program:

- Upper body region.
- Upper body region and floor area.
- Floor area.

Parked-car ventilation

Concept

The car's interior can be cooled or heated before driving off with the parked-car ventilation. Depending on set temperature and ambient temperature, the car's interior is ventilated or possibly heated using the residual engine heat.

General information

The system can be switched on and off directly or via a preset departure time.

The activation time is determined based on the external temperature. The system promptly switches on before the selected departure time.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1453
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Functional requirements

- The vehicle is in idle state or standby state and not in drive-ready state.
- The battery is sufficiently charged.

  If parked-car ventilation is switched on, the vehicle battery will be discharged. Thus, limit the maximum activation time to save the vehicle battery. The system will be available again after the engine is started or after a short trip.
- Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.
- Open the vents to allow air to flow out.

Switching on/off directly

General information

There are different ways to switch the system on or off.

The system switches off automatically after a certain period of time. The system continues to run for some time after being switched off.

Using the button

General information

When the vehicle is in standby state, the parked-car ventilation can be switched on or off via the automatic climate control buttons.

Switching on

Press any button except:

- Rear window defroster.
- Left side of air flow button.
- Seat heating.
- Seat ventilation.
- SYNC program.
- MENU.

Switching off

Press and hold the left side of the button.

The system switches off after leaving and locking the vehicle.

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Pre-heating/ventilation"
5. "Start now"

Via BMW display key

Switching on

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap the symbol or the symbol.
4. "Activate now"
5. "Start"

Switching off

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap the symbol or the symbol.
4. "Stop"

Display

symbol on the automatic climate control indicates the system is switched on.

REST is displayed on the automatic climate control. The residual engine heat is used.

Departure time

Concept

Different departure times can be set to ensure a comfortable interior temperature in the vehicle at the time of departure.

- One-time departure time: the time can be set.

  The system is switched on once.
- Departure time with weekday: time and day of the week can be set.

  On the desired weekdays, the system will be switched on promptly before the set departure time.

The departure time is preselected in two steps:

- Set departure times.
- Activate departure times.

A minimum of 10 minutes should pass between setting/activating the departure time and the planned departure time to allow a sufficient period of time for the climate control.

Setting the departure time

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Pre-heating/ventilation"
5. "Departure schedule"
6. Select the desired departure time.
7. Set the departure time.
8. Select day of the week, if needed.
9. "OK"

Via BMW display key

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap the symbol or the symbol.
4. Select the desired departure time.
5. Set the departure time.
6. Select day of the week, if needed.
7. "OK"

Activating the departure time

Functional requirement

If a departure time is to influence the switching on of parked-car ventilation, the respective departure time must be activated first.

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Pre-heating/ventilation"
5. "Departure schedule"
6. Activate the desired departure time.

Via BMW display key

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap the symbol or the symbol.
4. Tap on the symbol.
5. Activate the desired departure time.

Display

, Symbol on the climate control display signals an activated departure time.

Ambient air package

Concept

The Ambient Air Package can be used to clean and scent the interior air with high-quality fragrances.

Ionization is used to clean the air from suspended particles. Together with the selected fra-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1455
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

grance, ionization contributes to well-being and relaxation while driving.

General information

Two different fragrances can be selected in the vehicle. A variety of other fragrances is possible by replacing the fragrance cartridges.

The following criteria can influence the perception of scents in the car's interior:

- Automatic climate control settings.
- Temperature and air humidity.
- Time of day and season.
- Physical condition of the vehicle occupants, for instance fatigue.

BMW recommends the use of genuine BMW fragrance cartridges.

The genuine BMW fragrance cartridges are not suitable for refilling. When a cartridge is empty, replace it with a new fragrance cartridge.

Safety information

Warning

Refilled genuine BMW fragrance cartridges can cause the emission of harmful substances, malfunctions, and damage to the system. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not refill genuine fragrance cartridges. When a cartridge is empty, replace it with a new fragrance cartridge.

Ionization

Concept

Ionization cleans the car's interior air of suspended particles.

Switching on/off

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Air quality"
5. "Ionization"

Fragrancing

General information

Fragrancing is done at intervals in order to avoid a habituation effect.

Two fragrance cartridges in the vehicle allow switching between the fragrances.

The fragrance cartridges are located in the glove compartment.

To ensure a pleasant fragrance inside of the vehicle when starting the trip, fragrancing can occur prior to the trip. The system is automatically switched on with the parked-car ventilation if fragrancing was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Functional requirements

- The fragrance cartridges are sufficiently filled.
- The interior temperature is between 41 °F/+5 °C and 104 °F/+40 °C.
- Open the vents to allow the fragrance to flow out.

Selecting the fragrance

The car's interior is fragranced depending on the selected fragrance.

Two different fragrances can be selected in the vehicle.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1456
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

4. "Fragrance"
5. Select the desired fragrance.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Switching fragrancing on/off, adjusting intensity

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Fragrance"
5. "Level"
6. Select the desired setting.

Display

The illustrations on the Control Display show the actual filling level of the fragrance cartridges.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Fragrance"

When an empty fragrance cartridge is indicated, the cartridge still contains a fluid carrying the fragrance. However, it is not sufficient for fragrancing.

When the fragrance cartridges are empty, a Check Control message is displayed once.

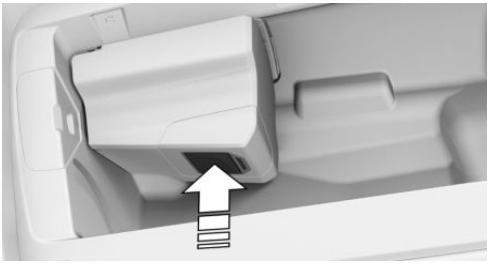
Inserting fragrance cartridges

The fragrance cartridges are located in the glove compartment.

1. Open the glove compartment.

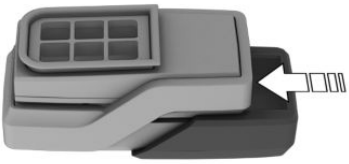
   Front passenger side glove compartment, refer to page 266.
2. Press on the bottom of the cartridge holder.

   The cartridge holder slides down.



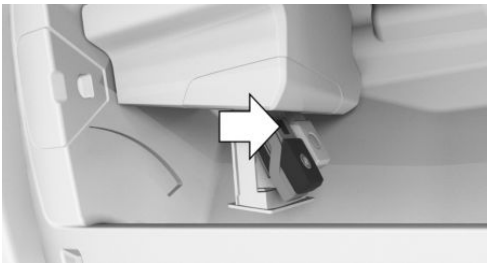
3. Remove the cover of the fragrance cartridge. Hold the cover on the top to slide it from the fragrance cartridge.

4. Insert the removed cover on the back side of the fragrance cartridge.

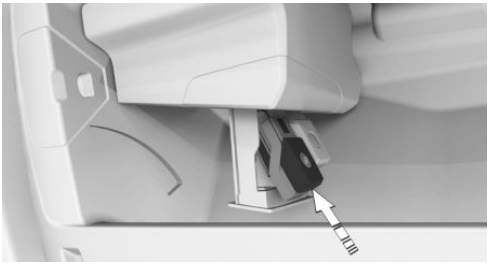


BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1457
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

5. Position fragrance cartridge such that the chip faces away from the cartridge holder.



6. Insert the fragrance cartridge without pressure into the cartridge holder. The cartridge snaps lightly into place.



7. Push the cartridge holder up, until it engages.

   Make sure that no objects press against the cartridge holder from below, otherwise the function of the ambient air package could be impacted.

8. Close the glove compartment.

Removing the fragrance cartridge

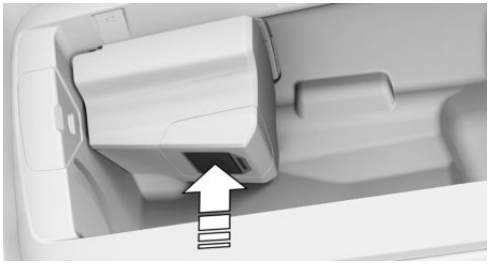
The fragrance cartridges are located in the glove compartment.

1. Open the glove compartment.

   Front passenger side glove compartment, refer to page 266.

2. Press on the bottom of the cartridge holder.

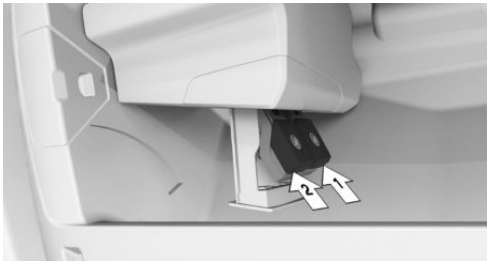
   The cartridge holder slides down.



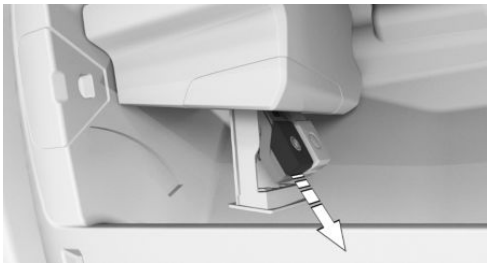
3. Pull desired fragrance cartridge from the holder.

   Fragrance cartridge, arrow 1: first fragrance indicated on the Control Display.

   Fragrance cartridge, arrow 2: second fragrance indicated on the Control Display.



4. Pull desired fragrance cartridge from the holder.



Recycling

Empty fragrance cartridges can be taken to a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop for recycling.

Interior equipment

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Integrated Universal Remote Control

Concept

The integrated Universal Remote Control in the interior mirror can operate up to 3 functions of remote-controlled systems such as garage door drives, barriers, or lighting systems.

General information

The Integrated Universal Remote Control replaces up to 3 different hand-held transmitters. To operate the remote control, the buttons on the interior mirror must be programmed with the desired functions. The hand-held transmitter for the particular system is required in order to program the remote control.

Before selling the vehicle, delete the stored functions for the sake of security.

If possible, do not install the antenna of the remote-controlled system, e.g. the garage door drive, near metal objects to ensure the best possible operation.

Safety information

Warning

The operation of remote-controlled systems with the integrated universal remote control, such as the garage door, may result in injury, for example, body parts becoming jammed in a garage door. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety information of the hand-held transmitter.

Compatibility

If this symbol is printed on the packaging or in the owner's manual of the system to be controlled, the system is generally compatible with the integrated Universal Remote Control.

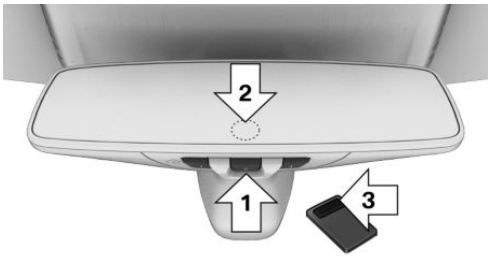
Additional questions are answered by:

- A dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
- www.homelink.com on the Internet.

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1459
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Control elements on the interior mirror



- ▷ Buttons, arrow 1.
- ▷ LED, arrow 2.
- ▷ The hand-held transmitter, arrow 3, is required for programming.

Programming

General information

The battery of the hand-held transmitter must be fully charged at the time of programming to ensure an optimal range of the integrated universal remote control.

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Initial setup:

   Press and hold the two outer buttons on the interior mirror simultaneously for approximately 10 seconds until the LED flashes green rapidly. This erases all programming of the buttons on the interior mirror.
3. Press the interior mirror button to be programmed. The LED on the interior mirror will slowly begin flashing orange.
4. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be used approx. 1 to 12 in/2.5 to 30 cm away from the buttons on the interior mirror. The required distance depends on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter.

   Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.
6. ▷ The LED lights up green: programming completed.

   Release the button.

   ▷ The LED flashes fast: programming is not complete.

   Press the button on the interior mirror for 2 seconds and release. Perform this procedure three times to complete the programming procedure.

   If the integrated universal remote control remains nonoperational, continue with the special features for change code wireless systems.

   ▷ LED does not flash green after 60 seconds: programming not completed.

   Repeat steps 3 to 6.

To program other functions on other buttons, repeat steps 3 to 5.

Special feature of the rolling code wireless system

If you are unable to operate the remote-controlled system after repeated programming, please check if the system to be controlled features a rolling code radio system.

Refer to the owner's manual for the system.

For systems with a rolling code radio system, the integrated Universal Remote Control and the system also have to be synchronized.

Please read the owner's manual to find out how to synchronize the system.

Synchronizing is easier with the aid of a second person.

Synchronizing the universal remote control with the system:

1. Park the vehicle within range of the remote-controlled system.
2. Program the relevant button on the interior mirror as described.
3. Locate and press the synchronizing button on the system being programmed, e.g. at the garage gate. You have approx. 30 seconds for the next step.
4. Hold down the programmed button on the interior mirror for approximately 3 seconds and then release it. If necessary, repeat this step up to three times in order to finish synchronization. Once synchronization is complete, the programmed function will be carried out.

Reprogramming individual buttons

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Press and hold the interior mirror button to be programmed.
3. As soon as the LED on the interior mirror flashes orange after approx. 20 seconds, release the button.
4. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be used approx. 1 to 12 in/2.5 to 30 cm away from the buttons on the interior mirror. The required distance depends on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter.

   Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.
6. The LED can light up in different ways.
   - ▷ The LED lights up green: the programming procedure is completed.

     Release the button.
   - ▷ The LED flashes fast: the hand-held transmitter was detected but programming is not complete.

     Press the button on the interior mirror for 2 seconds and release. Perform this procedure three times to complete the programming procedure.

     If the integrated universal remote control remains nonoperational, continue with the special features for change code wireless systems.
   - ▷ LED does not flash green after 60 seconds: programming not completed.

     Repeat steps 3 to 6.

If the programming procedure is not completed, the previous programming will remain unchanged.

Operation

⚠ Warning

The operation of remote-controlled systems with the integrated universal remote control, such as the garage door, may result in injury, for example, body parts becoming jammed in a garage door. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety information of the hand-held transmitter.

The system, such as the garage door, can be operated using the button on the interior mirror while the drive-ready or standby state is switched on. To do this, hold down the button within receiving range of the system until the function is activated. The interior mirror LED stays lit while the wireless signal is being transmitted.

Deleting stored functions

All stored functions will be deleted. The functions cannot be deleted individually.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1461
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Press and hold the two outer buttons on the interior mirror simultaneously for approximately 10 seconds until the LED on the interior mirror flashes green rapidly.

Sun visor

Glare shield

Fold the sun visor down or up.

Glare shield from the side

Folding out

1. Fold the sun visor down.
2. Unhook it from the holder and swing it to the side.

Folding up

Proceed in the reverse order to close the sun visor.

Vanity mirror

A vanity mirror is located in the sun visor behind a cover. When the cover is opened, the mirror lighting switches on.

Ashtray

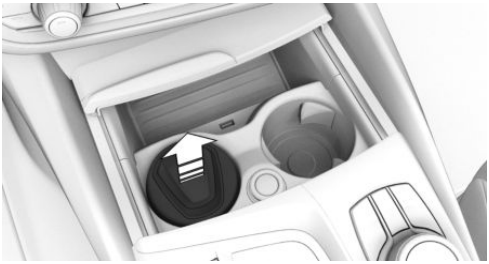
Front center console

Opening

1. Push the cover forward until it engages.

2. The ashtray is located in a cup holder. Fold the ashtray cover upward.

Emptying



Pull the ashtray with the closed cover out of the cup holder.

Cigarette lighter

Safety information

Warning

Contact with the hot heating element or the hot socket of the cigarette lighter can cause burns. Flammable materials can ignite if the cigarette lighter falls down or is held against the objects. There is a risk of fire and injuries. There is a risk of damage to property. Take hold of the cigarette lighter by its handle. Make sure that children do not use the cigarette lighter.

NOTICE

If metal objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of damage to property. Replace the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.

Front center console

Push the cover forward until it engages.

The cigarette lighter is located between the cup holders.

Rear center console

The cigarette lighter is located in the socket.

Operation

Push in the cigarette lighter.

The cigarette lighter can be removed as soon as it pops back out.

Sockets

Concept

The lighter socket can be used as a socket for electrical equipment when standby and drive-ready state are switched on.

General information

The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 watts at 12 volts.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1463
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Do not damage the socket by using non-compatible connectors.

Safety information

Warning

Devices and cables in the unfolding area of the airbags, such as portable navigation devices, can hinder the unfolding of the airbag or be thrown around in the car's interior during unfolding. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that devices and cables are not in the airbag's area of unfolding.

NOTICE

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery can work with high voltages and currents, which means that the 12 volt on-board network can be overloaded or damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.

NOTICE

If metal objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of damage to property. Replace the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.

Front center console

Push the cover forward until it engages.

A socket is located between the cup holders.

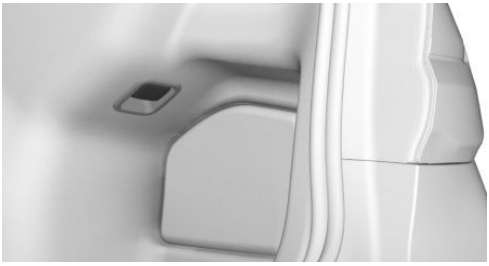
Pull off the cover.

Rear center console

A socket is located in the center console.

Pull off the cover.

In the cargo area



A socket is located on the right side in the cargo area. Unfold the cover.

USB port

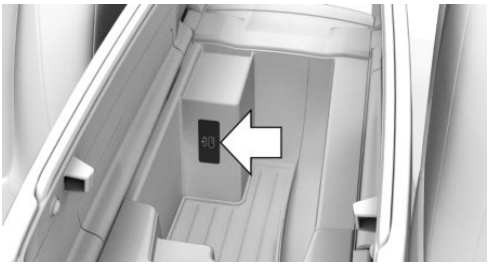
General information

Follow the information regarding the connection of mobile devices to the USB port in the section on USB connections.

Additional information:

USB connections, refer to page 73.

In the center armrest



A USB port is located in the center armrest.

Properties:

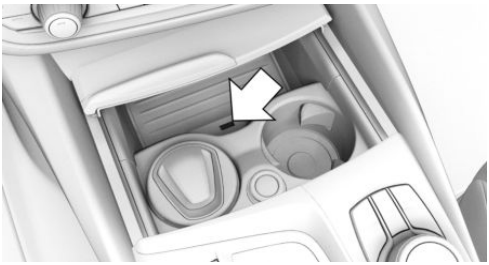
- USB port Type C.
- For charging of mobile devices.
- Charge current: max. 3 A.
- With navigation system: for data transfer.

Steptronic transmission: in the center console

NOTICE

Objects in the storage compartment, e.g., large USB connectors, may block or damage the cover when it is being opened or closed. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the cover is clear while opening and closing it.

Push the cover forward until it engages.



A USB interface is located in the center console.

Properties:

- USB port Type A.
- For charging mobile devices and for data transfer.
- Charge current: max. 1.5 A.

In the rear center console

Two USB ports are located in the center console in the rear passenger compartment.

Properties:

- USB port Type C.
- For charging of mobile devices.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1465
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

- Charge current: maximum 3 A per port.

Wireless charging tray

Concept

The wireless charging tray enables the following functions to be performed without cables:

- Charging the rechargeable battery of a mobile phone with Qi capability and of other mobile devices, which support the Qi standard.
- Charging the BMW Display key.
- Connect the mobile phone to the external antenna.

  Depending on the country, this provides for better network reception and a consistent reproduction quality.

General information

When inserting the mobile phone, make sure there are no objects between it and the wireless charging tray.

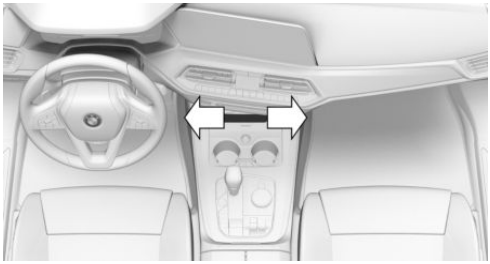
During charging, the surface of the tray and the mobile phone may become warm. Higher temperatures may lead to a reduction in the charge current through the mobile phone, and in isolated cases the charging process is paused temporarily. Follow the relevant instructions in the mobile phone owner's manual.

The charge indicator shows on the Control Display whether a mobile phone with Qi capability is being charged.

NOTE

This device has been tested for human exposure limits and found compliant at a minimum distance of 2 in/5 cm during operation.

Therefore, a distance of 4 in/10 cm must be maintained in every direction when operating the device.



Mounting position of the product.

Safety information

Warning

When charging a device that meets the Qi standard in the wireless charging tray, any metal objects located between the device and the tray can become very hot. Placing storage devices or electronic cards, such as chip cards, cards with magnetic strips or cards for signal transmission, between the device and the tray may impair the card function. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. When charging mobile devices, make sure there are no objects between the device and the tray.

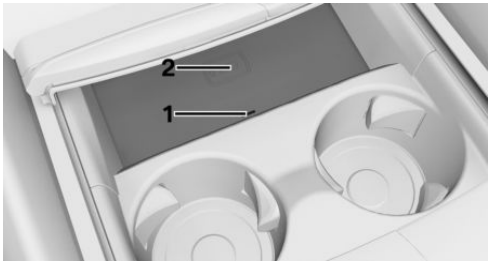
NOTICE

The tray is intended for mobile phones up to a particular size. Forceful inserting of the mobile phone into the tray can damage the tray or the mobile phone. There is a risk of damage to property. Observe the maximum dimensions for mobile phones. Do not force the mobile phone into the tray.

Overview

Tray in the center console:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1466
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20



1 LED

2 Storage area

Functional requirements

- The mobile phone must compatibly support the required Qi standard.

  If the mobile phone does not support the Qi standard, the mobile phone can be charged using a special Qi-compatible charging case.
- Standby state is switched on.
- Observe the maximum dimensions of the mobile phone.
- Use only protective jackets and covers up to a maximum thickness of 0.07 in/2 mm; otherwise, the charging function may be impaired.
- The mobile phone to be charged is located in the center of the tray.

Operation

Inserting the mobile phone

The mobile phone must not exceed the maximum size of approximately 6.0 x 3.1 x 0.7 in/154.5 x 80 x 18 mm.

1. Open the tray cover.
2. Place the mobile phone centered in the tray with the display facing up.
3. Close the tray cover.

Removing the mobile phone

1. Open the tray cover.
2. Remove the mobile phone.

LED displays

Color	Meaning
Blue	The mobile phone is charging. The blue LED stays illuminated once the inserted mobile phone with Qi capability is fully charged.
Orange	The mobile phone is not charging. Temperature on the mobile phone possibly too high or foreign object in charging tray.
Red	The mobile phone is not charging. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Forgotten warning

General information

If the vehicle is equipped with the forgotten warning function, a warning can be output if a mobile phone with Qi capability was forgotten in the wireless charging tray when leaving the vehicle.

The forgotten warning is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Activating

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Wireless charging tray"
5. Activate reminder.

System limits

At high temperatures on the mobile phone or in the vehicle, the charging functions of the mobile phone may be limited and some functions may no longer work.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1467
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

LTE-Compensator - Information and User Manual

Your car is equipped with a wireless charging tray (WCA) to charge your mobile phone and connect it to the mobile network. To ensure the best possible connection a signal booster (LTE-Compensator) is used in conjunction with the WCA. The following paragraphs refer to this booster:

This is a CONSUMER device.

BEFORE USE, you MUST REGISTER THIS DEVICE with your wireless provider and have your provider's consent. Most wireless providers consent to the use of Compensators. Some providers may not consent to the use of this device on their network. If you are unsure, contact your provider. You MUST operate this device with approved antennas and cables as specified by the manufacturer. Antennas MUST be installed at least 20 cm (8 inches) from any person. You MUST cease operating this device immediately if requested by the FCC or a licensed wireless service provider. Warning E911 location information may not be provided or may be inaccurate for calls served by using this device.

Please observe additionally the following information

- Sprint Nextel will allow consumers to register their signal boosters by calling their toll-free number.
- T-Mobile online registration link: (www.T-Mobile.com/BoosterRegistration); (https://saqat.t-mobile.com/sites/SignalBooster#).
- Verizon's online registration link: (http://www.verizonwireless.com/wcms/consumer/register-signal-booster.html).
- AT&T online registration link (https://securec45.securewebsession.com/attsignal-booster.com/).
- U.S.Cellular online registration link (http://www.uscellular.com/uscellular/support/fcc-booster-registration.jsp).

Before use you must register your booster device with your wireless provider.

If you should be requested by the FCC to cease operating your booster you are not allowed to insert your mobile phone in the charging tray anymore unless the booster is permanently deactivated by your local BMW dealer.

You must not remove the booster from the car nor use it with any other than the preinstalled coupling device or antenna. Any modification of the existing antenna or coupling device as well as the use of other antennas or coupling devices will cause the cease of the booster´s operating license.

The booster device fulfills the network protection standards as required by the FCC, such as intermodulation limits, oscillation detection and gain limits.

Booster Manufacturer: Kathrein Automotive

Model Number: LTECOMPB0

Part Number: 6803145-01

FCC-ID: 2ACC7LTECOMPB0

Storage compartments

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Storage compartments

General information

The vehicle interior contains multiple storage compartments for stowing objects.

Safety information

Warning

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, for instance mobile phones, can be thrown about the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the car's interior.

NOTICE

Anti-slip pads such as anti-slip mats can damage the dashboard. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use anti-slip pads.

Front passenger side glove compartment

Safety information

Warning

Folded open, the glove compartment protrudes in the car's interior. Objects in the glove compartment can be thrown into the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Always close the glove compartment immediately after using it.

Opening

Pull the handle.

The light in the glove compartment switches on.

Closing

Fold cover closed.

Locking

The glove compartment can be locked with an integrated key. This prevents access to the glove compartment.

After the glove compartment is locked, the vehicle key can be handed over without the

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1469
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

integrated key, for instance when the vehicle is parked by valet parking.

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 87.

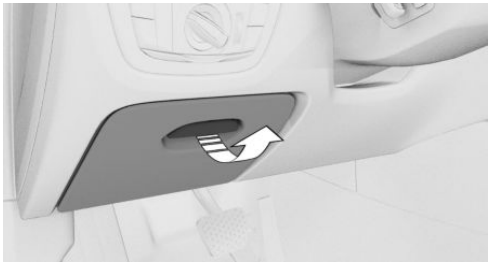
Driver's side glove compartment

Safety information

Warning

Folded open, the glove compartment protrudes in the car's interior. Objects in the glove compartment can be thrown into the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Always close the glove compartment immediately after using it.

Opening



Pull the handle.

Closing

Fold cover closed.

Compartments in the doors

General information

There are storage compartments in the doors.

Safety information

Warning

Breakable objects, such as glass bottles or glasses, can break in the event of an accident or a braking or evasive maneuver. Broken glass can be scattered in the car's interior. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not use any breakable objects while driving. Only stow breakable objects in closed storage compartments.

Storage compartment in the center console

Opening

Push the cover forward until it engages.

Closing

Touch the cover on the handle bar. The cover closes.

Storage compartment in the rear center console

The back of the center console contains one or two storage compartments.

Center armrest, front

General information

A storage compartment is located in the center armrest between the seats.

Opening

Press the button.

Closing

Press cover down until it engages.

Front cup holder

Safety information

Warning

Unsuitable containers in the cup holders may damage the cup holders or be thrown about the car's interior in the event of an accident, an evasive maneuver, or forceful braking. Spilled liquids can distract from the traffic conditions and lead to an accident. Hot drinks can damage the cup holder or lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not force objects into the cup holder. Use lightweight, shatterproof, and sealable containers. Do not transport hot beverages.

Opening

Push the cover forward until it engages.

Two cup holders are located in the center console.

Closing

Touch the cover on the handle bar. The cover closes.

Rear cup holder

Safety information

Warning

Unsuitable containers in the cup holders may damage the cup holders or be thrown about the car's interior in the event of an accident, an evasive maneuver, or forceful braking. Spilled liquids can distract from the traffic conditions and lead to an accident. Hot drinks can damage the cup holder or lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not force objects into the cup holder. Use light-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1471
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

weight, shatterproof, and sealable containers. Do not transport hot beverages.

NOTICE

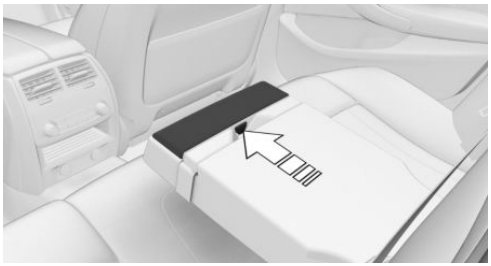
With an open cup holder, the center armrest cannot be folded back up. There is a risk of damage to property. Press back the covers before the center armrest is folded up.

Opening and closing

General information

The cup holder can be adjusted for three different container sizes.

Opening



Fold the center armrest forward.

Press the button and fold out the cup holder fully.

Reducing the size

To make it smaller, the cup holder can be folded in in 2 steps.

Enlarging

To make a smaller cup holder bigger, first fold it in completely. Then fold the cup holder out again fully.

Closing

Fold in the cup holder fully, until it engages.

Clothes hooks

General information

The clothes hooks are located in the grab handles in the rear and on the door pillar in the rear.

Safety information

Warning

Clothing articles on the clothes hooks can obstruct the view while driving. There is a risk of accident. When suspending clothing articles from the clothes hooks, ensure that they will not obstruct the driver's view.

Warning

Improper use of the clothes hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only hang lightweight objects, for instance clothing articles, from the clothes hooks.

Cargo area

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Loading

Safety information

Warning

High gross weight can overheat the tires, damage them internally and cause a sudden drop in tire inflation pressure. Driving characteristics may be negatively impacted, reducing lane stability, lengthening the braking distances and changing the steering response. There is a risk of accident. Pay attention to the permitted load capacity of the tires and never exceed the permitted gross weight.

Warning

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, for instance mobile phones, can be thrown about the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the car's interior.

Warning

Improperly stowed objects can shift and be thrown into the car's interior, for instance in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuver. Vehicle occupants can be hit and injured. There is a risk of injury. Stow and secure objects and cargo properly.

NOTICE

Fluids in the cargo area can cause damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that no fluids leak in the cargo area.

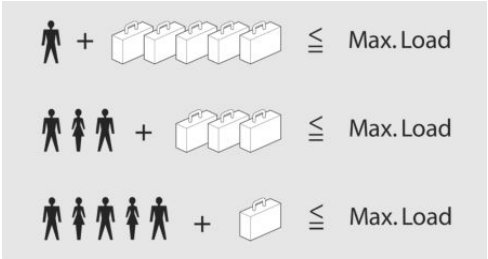
Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs” on your vehicle’s placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1,400 lbs and there will be five 150 lbs passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs (1,400 - 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your ve-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1473
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

hicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Load



The maximum load is the sum of the weight of the occupants and the cargo.

The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo that can be transported.

Stowing and securing cargo

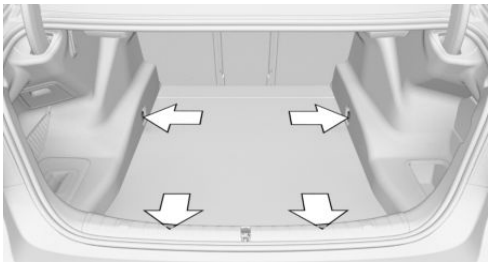
- Cover sharp edges and corners on the cargo.
- Heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear passenger seat backrests.
- Very heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear passenger seat backrests. When the rear seat is not occupied, secure each of the outer safety belts in the opposite buckle.
- If necessary, fold down the rear backrests to stow large cargo.
- Do not stack cargo above the top edge of the backrests.
- Smaller and lighter cargo: secure with ratchet straps or with a cargo net or draw straps.
- Larger and heavy cargo: secure with cargo straps.

Lashing eyes in the cargo area

General information

Attach load securing aids, such as lashing straps, tensioning straps, draw straps or cargo nets, to the lashing eyes in the cargo area.

Lashing eyes



There are four lashing eyes in the cargo area for securing cargo.

Multi-function hook

General information

A multi-function hook is located on the left side in the cargo area.

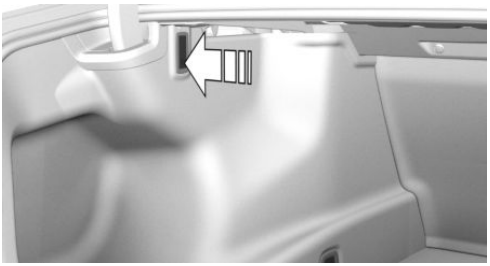
Safety information

Warning

Improper use of the multi-function hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers, for example. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only hang lightweight objects, such as shopping bags, from the multi-function hooks. Only transport heavy luggage in the cargo area if it has been appropriately secured.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1474

Folding down



Press on the multi-function hook and turn until it engages.

Net

Small objects can be stowed in the net on the left side.

Storage compartment on the right side

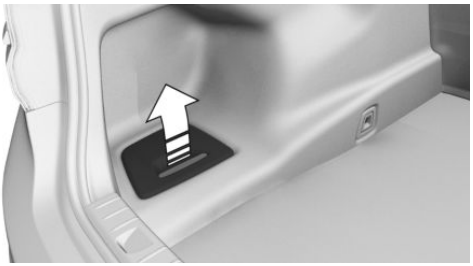
A storage compartment is available on the right side of the cargo area.

Storage compartment on the left side

General information

A storage compartment is located on the left side in the cargo area.

Opening



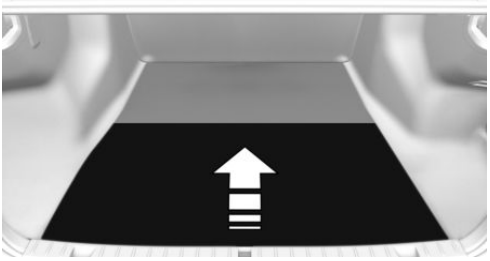
Pull the handle.

With emergency wheel: storage compartment under the cargo floor panel

General information

There is a storage compartment under the cargo floor panel.

Opening



Fold up the cargo floor panel.

Closing

Push the cargo floor panel downward.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1475
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Through-loading system

Concept

The cargo area can be enlarged by folding down the rear seat backrests.

General information

The rear seat backrest is divided at a ratio of 40–20–40. The side rear seat backrests and the center section can be folded down separately.

The rear seat backrests can be folded down from the cargo area. The center section can be separately folded down from the rear.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

Danger of jamming with folding down the backrests. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the rear backrest and the of the head restraint is clear prior to folding down.

⚠ Warning

If a rear seat backrest is not locked, unsecured cargo can be thrown about the car's interior; for instance, in the event of an accident, braking or an evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the rear seat backrest is locked after folding it back.

⚠ Warning

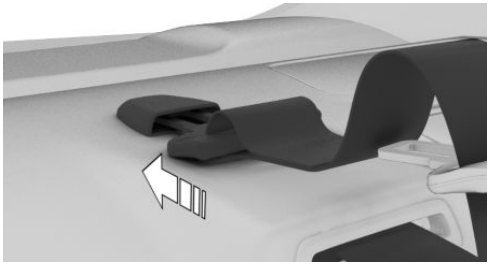
The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

⚠ NOTICE

Vehicle parts can be damaged when folding down the rear backrest. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the rear backrest including head restraint is clear when folding down.

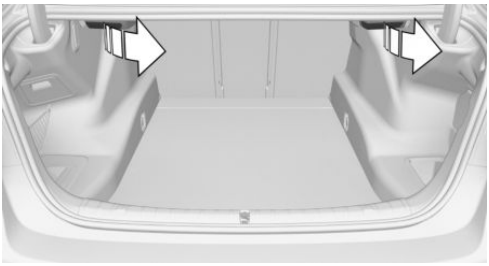
Folding down the rear seat backrest from the cargo area

1. Unlock the belt lock of the center safety belt in the rear using the latch plate of another safety belt.
2. Insert the latch plate at the end of the belt into the specially designated fixture on the rear window shelf.



3. Push the corresponding head restraint down as far as it will go.
4. Pull the corresponding lever in the cargo area to release the rear seat backrest. The un-

locked rear seat backrest moves forward slightly.



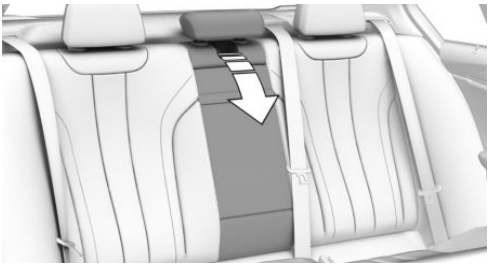
5. Fold the rear seat backrest forward.

Folding back the backrest

1. Return the rear seat backrest to the upright seating position and engage it.
2. Release the belt tongue from the fixture on the rear window shelf.
3. Insert the belt tongue in the belt lock of the center safety belt. Make sure you hear the latch plate engage.

Folding down the center section

1. Fold down the center head restraint.
2. Press the button and fold the center section forward.



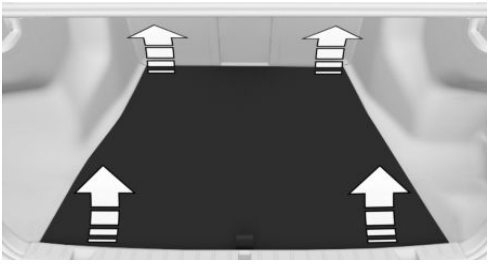
With an emergency wheel: enlarging the cargo area

Concept

The emergency wheel and any related components can be temporarily removed to enlarge the cargo area.

Removing the emergency wheel and the storage compartments

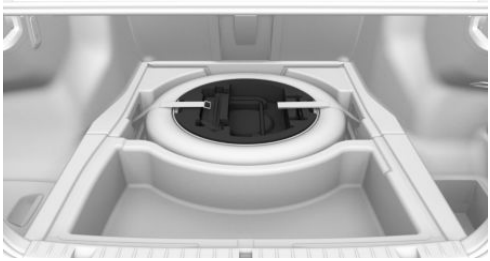
1. To remove the cargo area floor, pull it upward directly behind the rear backrests.



2. Open the ratchet strap.

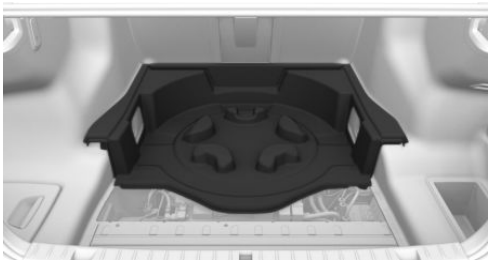
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1477
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

3. Remove the tool holder.



4. Remove the emergency wheel from the storage well.
5. Loosen the ratchet strap from the lashing eyes.
6. Remove the storage compartment.

7. Remove the storage well.



8. Insert the cargo floor panel.

Inserting the emergency wheel and the storage compartments

Proceed in reverse order to insert the emergency wheel and the storage compartments.

Ski and snowboard bag

The ski and snowboard bag is contained in a protective jacket in the cargo area.

Follow the installation and owner's manual included in the protective jacket.

Depending on the vehicle equipment: remove the emergency wheel from the vehicle to mount the ski and snowboard bag.

Things to remember when driving

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Breaking-in period

General information

Moving parts need to begin working together smoothly.

The following instructions will help you to achieve a long vehicle life and good efficiency.

During break-in, do not use the Launch Control.

Safety information

Warning

Due to new parts and components, safety and driver assistance systems can react with a delay. There is a risk of accident. After installing new parts or with a new vehicle, drive conservatively and intervene early if necessary. Observe the break-in procedures of the respective parts and components.

Engine, transmission, and axle drive

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Do not exceed the maximum engine and road speed:

- For gasoline engine 4,500 rpm and 100 mph/160 km/h.

Avoid full load or kickdown under all circumstances.

From 1,200 miles/2,000 km

The engine and vehicle speed can gradually be increased.

Tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new; they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

Brake discs and brake pads only reach their full effectiveness after approx. 300 miles/500 km. Drive moderately during this break-in period.

Following part replacement

Observe the break-in procedures again, if components mentioned above are replaced.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1479
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

General driving notes

Closing the trunk lid

Safety information

Warning

An open trunk lid protrudes from the vehicle and can endanger occupants and other traffic participants or damage the vehicle in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. In addition, exhaust fumes may enter the car's interior. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not drive with the trunk lid open.

Driving with the trunk lid open

If driving with the tailgate open cannot be avoided:

- Close all windows and the glass sunroof.
- Greatly increase the air flow from the vents.
- Drive moderately.

Hot exhaust gas system

Warning

High temperatures can occur underneath the body, for instance caused by the exhaust gas system, while driving. Contact with the exhaust gas system can cause burns. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch the hot exhaust gas system, including the exhaust pipe.

Warning

If combustible materials, such as leaves or grass, come in contact with hot parts of the exhaust gas system, these materials can ignite. There is a risk of fire and injuries. Do not remove the heat shields installed and never apply undercoating to them. Make sure that no combustible materials can come in contact with hot vehicle parts in driving operation, idle or during parking.

Mobile communication devices in the vehicle

Warning

Vehicle electronics and mobile phones can influence one another. There is radiation due to the transmission operations of mobile phones. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. If possible, in the car's interior use only mobile phones with direct connections to an exterior antenna in order to exclude mutual interference and deflect the radiation from the car's interior.

Hydroplaning

On wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water can form between the tires and road surface.

This phenomenon is referred to as hydroplaning. It is characterized by a partial or complete loss of contact between the tires and the road surface, ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle.

Driving through water

General information

When driving through water, follow the following:

- Deactivate Auto Start/Stop function.
- Drive through calm water only.
- Drive through water only if it is not deeper than maximum 9.8 inches/25 cm.
- Drive through water no faster than walking speed, up to 3 mph/5 km/h.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1480

Safety information

NOTICE

When driving too quickly through too deep water, water can enter into the engine compartment, the electrical system or the transmission. There is a risk of damage to property. When driving through water, do not exceed the maximum indicated water level and the maximum speed for driving through water.

Braking safely

General information

The vehicle is equipped with an Antilock Braking System ABS as a standard feature.

Perform an emergency stop in situations that require such.

Steering is still responsive. You can still avoid any obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.

Pulsation of the brake pedal and sounds from the hydraulic circuits indicate that the Antilock Braking System ABS is in its active mode.

In certain braking situations, the perforated brake discs can emit functional noises. However, functional noises have no effect on the performance and operational reliability of the brake.

Objects in the area around the pedals

Warning

Objects in the driver's floor area can limit the pedal distance or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's floor area. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, for instance for cleaning.

Driving in wet conditions

When roads are wet, salted, or in heavy rain, gently press the brake pedal every few miles.

Ensure that this action does not endanger other traffic.

The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

In this way braking efficiency will be available when you need it.

Hills

General information

Drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear that requires least braking effort. Otherwise, the brakes may overheat and reduce brake efficiency.

You can increase the engine's braking effect by shifting down, going all the way to first gear, if needed.

Safety information

Warning

Light but consistent brake pressure can lead to high temperatures, brakes wearing out and possibly even brake failure. There is a risk of accident. Avoid placing excessive stress on the brake system.

Warning

In idle state or with the engine switched off, safety functions, for instance engine braking effect, braking assistance and steering assistance, may not be available. There is a risk of accident. Do not attempt to drive in idle state or with the engine switched off.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1481
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Brake disc corrosion

Corrosion on the brake discs and contamination on the brake pads are increased by the following circumstances:

- Low mileage.
- Extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all.
- Infrequent use of the brakes.
- Aggressive, acidic, or alkaline cleaning agents.

Corrosion buildup on the brake discs will cause a pulsating effect on the brakes in their response - generally this cannot be corrected.

Condensation water under the parked vehicle

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops and collects underneath the vehicle.

Flag bracket

Safety information

NOTICE

At high speeds, a mounted flag can cause damage to the vehicle, the flag bracket, and the flag itself. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph / 130 km/h. Remove flag before trips at high speeds.

Overview

The flag bracket is located on the side of the vehicle.

Mounting

1. Remove the protective cap.
2. Insert flag horizontally.
3. Turn the flag clockwise by 90° to lock the flag.

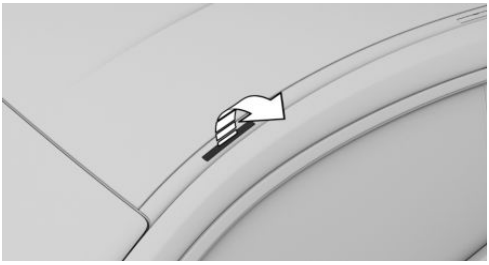
Roof-mounted luggage rack

General information

Roof racks are available as special accessories.

Roof drip rail with flaps

The fixing points are located in the roof drip rail above the doors.



Fold the cover outward.

Mounting

Follow the installation instructions of the roof rack.

Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.

Magnetic roof-mounted luggage racks

Because of the aluminum roof, magnetic roof-mounted luggage racks cannot be used.

Loading

Because roof-mounted luggage racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a major effect on vehicle handling and steering response.

Therefore, note the following when loading and driving:

- Do not exceed the approved roof/axle loads and the approved gross vehicle weight.
- Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.
- Distribute the roof load uniformly.
- The roof load should not extend past the loading area.
- Always place the heaviest pieces on the bottom.
- Secure the roof luggage firmly, for instance using ratchet straps.
- Do not let objects project into the opening path of the trunk lid.
- Drive cautiously and avoid sudden acceleration and braking maneuvers. Take corners gently.

Driving on racetracks

Warning

The vehicle is not designed for use in M Sport or motor sport type competition. There is a risk of accident. Do not use the vehicle for M Sport or motor sport type competitions.

Higher mechanical and thermal loads during racetrack operation lead to increased wear. This wear is not covered by the warranty.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1483
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Saving fuel

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Reducing fuel consumption

General information

The vehicle contains advanced technologies for the reduction of consumption and emission values.

Fuel consumption depends on a number of different factors.

Carrying out certain measures, such as a moderate driving style and regular maintenance, can influence fuel consumption and the environmental impact.

Remove unnecessary cargo

Additional weight increases fuel consumption.

Remove attached parts following use

Remove auxiliary mirrors, roof-mounted or rear luggage racks which are no longer required following use.

Attached parts on the vehicle impair the aerodynamics and increase the fuel consumption.

Close the windows and glass sunroof

Driving with the glass sunroof and windows open results in increased air resistance and raises fuel consumption.

Tires

General information

Tires can affect consumption in various ways, for instance tire size may influence consumption.

Check the tire inflation pressure regularly

Check and, if needed, correct the tire inflation pressure at least twice a month and before starting on a long trip.

Low tire inflation pressure increases rolling resistance and thus raises fuel consumption and tire wear.

Observe the correct tire inflation pressure as well as the ECO tire inflation pressure, where applicable.

Additional information:

Tire inflation pressure specifications, refer to page 290.

Drive away without delay

Do not wait for the engine to warm-up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving right away, but at moderate engine speeds.

This is the quickest way of warming the cold engine up to operating temperature.

Look well ahead when driving

Driving smoothly and proactively reduces fuel consumption.

Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.

By maintaining a suitable distance to the vehicle driving ahead of you.

Avoid high engine speeds

Driving at low engine speeds lowers fuel consumption and reduces wear.

If necessary, observe the vehicle's gear shift indicator.

Use coasting conditions

When approaching a red light, take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle coast to a halt.

For going downhill take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle roll.

The flow of fuel is interrupted while coasting.

Switch off the engine during longer stops

Switching off the engine

Switch off the engine during longer stops, for instance at traffic lights, railroad crossings or in traffic congestion.

Auto Start/Stop function

The Auto Start/Stop function of the vehicle automatically switches off the engine during a stop.

If the engine is switched off and then restarted rather than leaving the engine running constantly, fuel consumption and emissions are reduced. Savings can begin within a few seconds of switching off the engine.

In addition, fuel consumption is also determined by other factors, such as driving style, road conditions, maintenance or environmental factors.

Switch off any functions that are not currently needed

Functions such as seat heating and the rear window defroster require a lot of energy and increase fuel consumption, especially in city and stop-and-go traffic.

Switch off these functions if they are not needed.

The ECO PRO driving mode supports the energy conserving use of comfort features. These functions are automatically deactivated partially or completely.

Have maintenance carried out

Have the vehicle maintained regularly to achieve optimal vehicle efficiency and service life. BMW recommends that maintenance work be performed by a BMW service center.

For information on the BMW Maintenance System.

ECO PRO

Concept

ECO PRO supports a driving style that saves on consumption. For this purpose, the engine control and comfort features, for instance the climate control output, are adjusted.

Steptronic transmission: under certain conditions the engine is automatically decoupled from the transmission in the D selector lever position. The vehicle continues traveling with the engine idling to reduce consumption. The D selector lever position remains engaged.

In addition, context-sensitive information, ECO PRO tips, can be displayed to assist with a fuel-efficient driving style.

The achieved extended range is displayed in the instrument cluster as bonus range.

General information

The system includes the following EfficientDynamics functions and EfficientDynamics displays:

- ECO PRO bonus range.
- ECO PRO seat climate control.
- ECO PRO climate control.
- ECO PRO light and sight.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1485
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

- Coasting driving condition.
- Driving style analysis.

Overview

ECO PRO Button

Activating ECO PRO

ECO PRO Press the button. ECO PRO is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Configuring ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL

Via the Driving Dynamics Control

1. Activate ECO PRO.
2. "ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL"

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driving mode"
4. "ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Activating/deactivating ECO PRO functions

The following ECO PRO functions can be activated/deactivated:

- "ECO PRO speed"
- "ECO PRO seat heating"
- "ECO PRO climate control"
- "ECO PRO light and sight"

Settings are stored for the driver profile currently used.

ECO PRO limit

- "ECO PRO speed": activate ECO PRO speed.

  An ECO PRO tip is displayed if the speed of the set ECO PRO limit is exceeded.
- "Notification at:"

  Set the desired speed for the ECO PRO speed.

Coasting

Efficiency can be optimized by disengaging the engine and coasting with the engine idling.

ECO PRO seat climate control

The output of seat heating and, where applicable, seat ventilation is reduced when ECO PRO is activated.

ECO PRO climate control

Climate control is set to be efficient.

This means, it is possible to deviate slightly from the set temperature or to heat or cool the car's interior more slowly, to economize on consumption.

ECO PRO light and sight

The output of exterior mirror heating and rear window defroster is reduced.

Resetting the settings

Reset ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL to the standard settings:

"Reset to ECO PRO STANDARD"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1486

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Display in the instrument cluster

General information

When ECO PRO driving mode is activated, the display switches to a special configuration.

ECO PRO bonus range

A modified driving style helps you extend your driving range.

The range extension can be displayed as the bonus range in the instrument cluster.

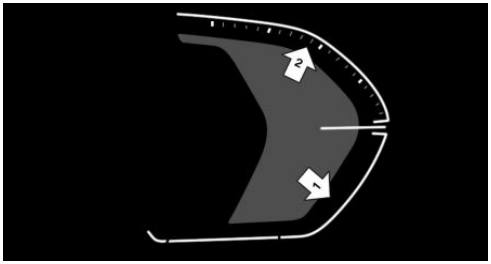
The efficiency display includes the bonus range.

If the bonus range appears in gray, the current driving style is inefficient.

The display turns blue as soon as all conditions for efficient driving are met.

The intervals for resetting the bonus range depend on the settings of the trip data.

Consumption display



A pointer in the consumption display informs about the current driving style:

- The current consumption in relation to the average consumption is displayed.
- Pointer in the area of arrow 1: display of the energy recovered by coasting or when braking.
- Pointer in the area of arrow 2: display when accelerating.

If the acceleration is inefficient, the area between the average consumption and the current consumption is colored red.

In addition, the following information is displayed, depending on the situation:

- Depending on the equipment: the total distance driven while coasting.
- The total time that the engine has been switched off during automatic engine stops.
- A gear shift indicator recommending the use of a more efficient gear.

Indications on the Control Display

General information

Information about the current effectiveness of the ECO PRO functions can be displayed as energy flow.

Displaying energy flow information

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Energy flow"

The following functions are displayed:

- Auto Start/Stop function.
- Energy recovery.
- Coasting.

Coasting

Concept

Under certain conditions the engine is automatically decoupled from the transmission in the D selector lever position. The vehicle continues traveling with the engine idling to reduce consumption. Selector lever position D remains engaged.

This driving condition is referred to as coasting.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1487
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

As soon as you step on the brake or accelerator pedal, the engine is automatically coupled again.

Additional information:

Vehicle battery, refer to page 340.

General information

Coasting is a component of the ECO PRO driving mode.

Coasting is automatically activated when ECO PRO mode is called via the Driving Dynamics Control.

A proactive driving style helps the driver to use the function often and supports the efficient effect of coasting.

Functional requirements

The function is available in the speed range from approx. 16 mph/25 km/h to 100 mph/160 km/h.

The function is active if the following conditions are met:

- The accelerator pedal is not depressed or the accelerator pedal is released.
- Brake pedal not depressed or only slightly depressed.
- The selector lever is in selector lever position D.
- Engine and transmission are at operating temperature.
- Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function, ACC, not activated.

Operation via shift paddles

Concept

The coasting driving condition can be influenced with the shift paddles.

Activating/deactivating coasting via shift paddles

1. Shift to the highest gear by pulling the right shift paddle.
2. To activate coasting mode, actuate the right shift paddle again.

To deactivate, actuate the left shift paddle.

Display

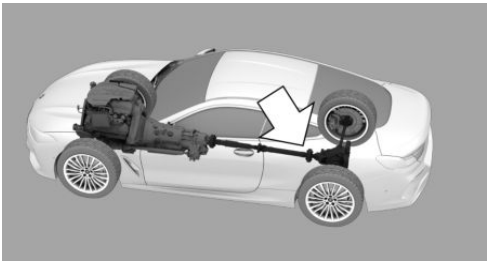
Display in the instrument cluster

The coasting distance traveled is indicated in coasting mode.

Indications on the Control Display

The coasting mode is displayed under energy flow while driving.

The distance traveled in coasting mode is displayed in the trip data.



Color code blue: coasting mode.

Displaying energy flow information

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Energy flow"

System limits

The function is not available under one of the following conditions.

- DSC OFF or TRACTION activated.
- Driving in the dynamic limit range and on steep uphill or downhill grades.
- Battery charge status temporarily too low or vehicle electrical system drawing excessive current.

Driving style analysis

Concept

The function helps develop an especially efficient driving style and to conserve fuel.

For this purpose, the driving style is analyzed. The assessment is done in various categories and is displayed on the Control Display.

This display will help you adjust your driving style and save some fuel.

General information

The current trip is assessed.

To assist with an efficient driving style, ECO PRO tips are displayed during driving.

The range of the vehicle can be extended by adjusting your driving style.

This gain in range is displayed as a bonus range in the instrument cluster and on the Control Display.

Functional requirement

The function is available in ECO PRO driving mode.

Calling up the Driving style analysis

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Driving style analysis"

Display on the Control Display

The display of the Driving style analysis shows the efficiency of the Driving style.

The more efficient the driving style, the more bars are displayed in color and the faster the bonus range increases.

In contrast, a reduced number of bars will be displayed with an inefficient driving style.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1489
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1490

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Refueling

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Follow the following when refueling

General information

Follow the fuel recommendation prior to refueling.

When refueling, insert the filler nozzle completely into the filler pipe. Lifting up the fuel pump nozzle during refueling causes:

- Premature switching off.
- Reduced return of the fuel vapors.

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

Make sure that the fuel cap is closed properly after refueling, otherwise the emissions warning light may light up.

Follow safety regulations posted at the gas station.

Additional information:

Fuel quality, refer to page 326.

Safety information

NOTICE

With a driving range of less than 30 miles/50 km the engine may no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of damage to property. Refuel promptly.

NOTICE

Fuels are toxic and aggressive. Overfilling of the fuel tank can damage the fuel system. Painted surfaces may be damaged by contact with fuel. Escaping fuel can harm the environment. There is a risk of damage to property. Avoid overfilling.

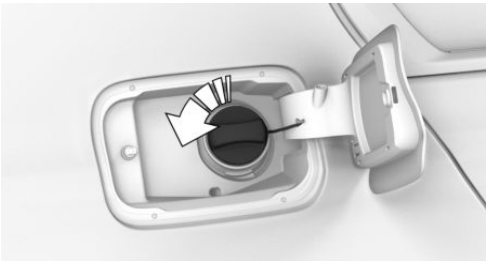
Fuel cap

Opening

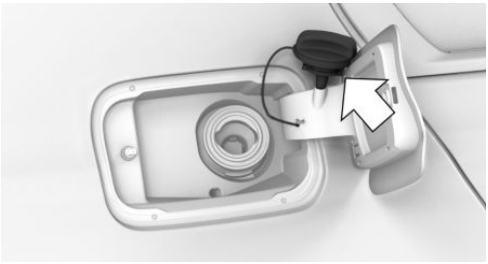
1. To open the fuel filler flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1491
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

2. Turn the fuel cap counterclockwise.



3. Place the fuel cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.



Closing

Warning

The retaining strap of the fuel cap can be jammed and crushed during closing. The cap cannot be correctly closed. Fuel or fuel vapors can escape. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Pay attention that the retaining strap is not jammed or crushed when closing the cap.

1. Fit the cap and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.
2. Press on the fuel filler flap until it engages.

Emergency unlocking

It may be necessary in certain situations to unlock the fuel filler flap manually, for instance with an electrical fault.

Have fuel filler flap unlocked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Wheels and tires

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Tire inflation pressure

General information

The tire characteristics and tire inflation pressure influence the following:

- The service life of the tires.
- Road safety.
- Driving comfort.
- Fuel consumption.

Safety information

Warning

A tire with too little or no tire inflation pressure may heat up significantly and sustain damage. This will have a negative impact on aspects of handling, such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident. Regularly check the tire inflation pressure, and correct it as needed, for instance twice a month and before a long trip.

Tire inflation pressure specifications

In the tire inflation pressure table

The tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 292, contains all tire inflation pressure specifications for the specified tire sizes at the ambient temperature. The tire inflation pressure values apply to tire sizes approved by the manufacturer of the vehicle for the vehicle type.

To identify the correct tire inflation pressure, please note the following:

- Tire sizes of your vehicle.
- Maximum permitted driving speed.

On the Control Display

The current tire inflation pressure values and the intended tire inflation pressure values for the mounted tires can be displayed on the Control Display.

To ensure that they are displayed correctly, the tire sizes must be stored in the system and must have been set for the mounted tires.

The current tire inflation pressure value is located on each tire.

The reference tire inflation pressure value is located in the lower area of the Control Display.

Checking the tire inflation pressure

General information

Tires heat up while driving. The tire inflation pressure increases with the tire temperature.

Tires have a natural, consistent loss of tire inflation pressure.

The displays of inflation devices may under-read by up to 0.1 bar/2 psi.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1493
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Checking using tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire inflation pressure table

1. Determine the intended tire inflation pressure levels for the mounted tires.
2. Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, using a pressure gage, for example.
3. Correct the tire inflation pressure if the actual tire inflation pressure deviates from the intended tire inflation pressure.
4. Check whether all valve caps are screwed onto the tire valves.

The tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire inflation pressure table only relate to cold tires or tires at the same temperature as the ambient temperature.

Only check the tire inflation pressure levels when the tires are cold, i.e.:

- A driving distance of max. 1.25 miles/2 km has not been exceeded.
- If the vehicle has not moved again for at least 2 hours after a trip.

Check the tire inflation pressure of the emergency wheel in the cargo area regularly, and correct it as needed.

Checking using the tire inflation pressure specifications on the Control Display

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor"
4. Check whether the current tire inflation pressure levels deviate from the intended tire pressure value.
5. Correct the tire inflation pressure if the actual tire inflation pressure deviates from the intended tire inflation pressure.

After correcting the tire inflation pressure

With runflat tires:

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

With Tire Pressure Monitor:

The corrected tire inflation pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the correct tire settings have been made.

With tires that cannot be found in the tire pressure values on the Control Display, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM.

Tire inflation pressures up to 100 mph/160 km/h

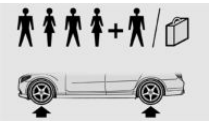
For speeds of up to 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table and adjust as necessary.

These pressure values can also be found on the tire inflation pressure label on the driver's door pillar.

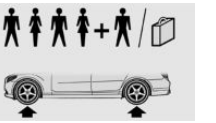
Do not exceed a speed of 100 mph/160 km/h.

Tire inflation pressure values up to 100 mph/160 km/h

530i, 530i xDrive

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
225/55 R 17 97 H A/S 245/45 R 18 100 H XL A/S 225/55 R 17 97 Y 245/45 R 18 100 Y XL 225/55 R 17 97 H M+S 245/45 R 18 100 V XL M+S	2.2 / 32	2.4 / 35
245/40 R 19 98 H XL A/S 245/40 R 19 98 H XL M+S 245/40 R 19 98 V XL M+S	2.2 / 32	2.6 / 38
Front: 245/45 R 18 100 Y XL	2.2 / 32	-
Rear: 275/40 R 18 99 Y	-	2.4 / 35
Front: 245/40 R 19 98 Y XL	2.2 / 32	-
Rear: 275/35 R 19 100 Y XL	-	2.6 / 38
Front: 245/40 R 19 98 V XL M+S	2.2 / 32	-
Rear: 275/35 R 19 100 V XL M+S	-	2.6 / 38
Front: 245/35 R 20 95 Y XL	2.5 / 36	-
Rear: 275/30 R 20 97 Y XL	-	3.0 / 44
Emergency wheel: T 135/80 R 18 104 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

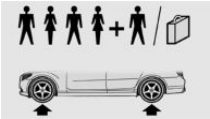
540i, 540i xDrive

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
245/45 R 18 100 H XL A/S 245/45 R 18 100 Y XL 225/55 R 17 97 H M+S 245/45 R 18 100 V XL M+S	2.2 / 32	2.4 / 35
245/40 R 19 98 H XL A/S 245/40 R 19 98 H XL M+S 245/40 R 19 98 V XL M+S	2.4 / 35	2.6 / 38
Front: 245/45 R 18 100 Y XL	2.2 / 32	-
Rear: 275/40 R 18 99 Y	-	2.4 / 35

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1495
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Front: 245/40 R 19 98 Y XL	2.4 / 35	-
Rear: 275/35 R 19 100 Y XL	-	2.6 / 38
Front: 245/40 R 19 98 V XL M+S	2.4 / 35	-
Rear: 275/35 R 19 100 V XL M+S	-	2.6 / 38
Front: 245/35 R 20 95 Y XL	2.6 / 38	-
Rear: 275/30 R 20 97 Y XL	-	3.0 / 44
Emergency wheel: T 135/80 R 18 104 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

M550i xDrive

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
245/45 R 18 100 Y XL	2.3 / 33	2.5 / 36
245/40 R 19 98 H XL A/S 245/45 R 18 100 V XL M+S 245/40 R 19 98 H XL M+S 245/40 R 19 98 V XL M+S	2.5 / 36	2.7 / 39
Front: 245/45 R 18 100 Y XL	2.3 / 33	-
Rear: 275/40 R 18 99 Y	-	2.2 / 32
Front: 245/40 R 19 98 Y XL	2.5 / 36	-
Rear: 275/35 R 19 100 Y XL	-	2.5 / 36
Front: 245/35 R 20 95 Y XL	2.8 / 41	-
Rear: 275/30 R 20 97 Y XL	-	2.8 / 41
Front: 245/40 R 19 98 V XL M+S	2.5 / 36	-
Rear: 275/35 R 19 100 V XL M+S	-	2.5 / 36
Emergency wheel: T 135/80 R 18 104 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

Tire inflation pressures at max. speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h

Warning

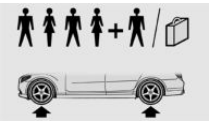
In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph/160 km/h, please observe, and, if necessary, adjust tire pressures for speeds exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h from the relevant table on the following pages. Otherwise, tire damage and accidents could occur.

For speeds over 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table and adjust as necessary.

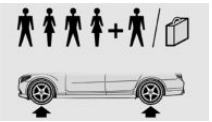
Tire inflation pressure values over 100 mph/160 km/h

530i, 530i xDrive

Without high-speed tuning feature

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
225/55 R 17 97 H A/S 245/45 R 18 100 H XL A/S 225/55 R 17 97 Y 245/45 R 18 100 Y XL 225/55 R 17 97 H M+S 245/45 R 18 100 V XL M+S	2.2 / 32	2.7 / 39
245/40 R 19 98 H XL A/S 245/40 R 19 98 H XL M+S 245/40 R 19 98 V XL M+S	2.4 / 35	2.9 / 42
Front: 245/45 R 18 100 Y XL	2.2 / 32	-
Rear: 275/40 R 18 99 Y	-	2.7 / 39
Front: 245/40 R 19 98 Y XL	2.2 / 32	-
Rear: 275/35 R 19 100 Y XL	-	2.6 / 38
Front: 245/35 R 20 95 Y XL	2.5 / 36	-
Rear: 275/30 R 20 97 Y XL	-	3.0 / 44
Front: 245/40 R 19 98 V XL M+S	2.4 / 35	-
Rear: 275/35 R 19 100 V XL M+S	-	2.9 / 42
Emergency wheel: T 135/80 R 18 104 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

With high-speed tuning feature

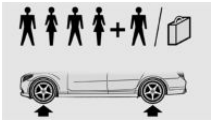
Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
225/55 R 17 97 Y 245/45 R 18 100 Y XL	2.3 / 33	2.7 / 39
Front: 245/45 R 18 100 Y XL	2.3 / 33	-
Rear: 275/40 R 18 99 Y	-	2.7 / 39
Front: 245/40 R 19 98 Y XL	2.4 / 35	-
Rear: 275/35 R 19 100 Y XL	-	2.8 / 41
Front: 245/35 R 20 95 Y XL	2.7 / 39	-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1497
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Rear: 275/30 R 20 97 Y XL	-	3.1 / 45
Emergency wheel: T 135/80 R 18 104 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h	4.2 / 60

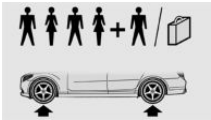
540i, 540i xDrive

Without high-speed tuning feature

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
245/45 R 18 100 H XL A/S 245/45 R 18 100 Y XL 225/55 R 17 97 H M+S 245/45 R 18 100 V XL M+S	2.4 / 35	2.7 / 39
245/40 R 19 98 H XL A/S 245/40 R 19 98 H XL M+S 245/40 R 19 98 V XL M+S	2.6 / 38	2.9 / 42
Front: 245/45 R 18 100 Y XL	2.4 / 35	-
Rear: 275/40 R 18 99 Y	-	2.7 / 39
Front: 245/40 R 19 98 Y XL	2.6 / 38	-
Rear: 275/35 R 19 100 Y XL	-	2.9 / 42

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Front: 245/40 R 19 98 V XL M+S	2.6 / 38	-
Rear: 275/35 R 19 100 V XL M+S	-	2.9 / 42
Front: 245/35 R 20 95 Y XL	2.6 / 38	-
Rear: 275/30 R 20 97 Y XL	-	3.0 / 44
Emergency wheel: T 135/80 R 18 104 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h	4.2 / 60

With high-speed tuning feature

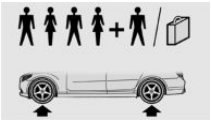
Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
245/45 R 18 100 Y XL	2.4 / 35	2.7 / 39
Front: 245/45 R 18 100 Y XL	2.4 / 35	-
Rear: 275/40 R 18 99 Y	-	2.7 / 39
Front: 245/40 R 19 98 Y XL	2.6 / 38	-
Rear: 275/35 R 19 100 Y XL	-	2.9 / 42
Front: 245/35 R 20 95 Y XL	2.9 / 42	-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1498

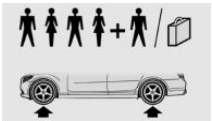
Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Rear: 275/30 R 20 97 Y XL	-	3.1 / 45
Emergency wheel: T 135/80 R 18 104 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

M550i xDrive

Without high-speed tuning feature

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
245/45 R 18 100 Y XL	2.3 / 33	2.5 / 36
245/40 R 19 98 H XL A/S 245/45 R 18 100 V XL M+S 245/40 R 19 98 H XL M+S 245/40 R 19 98 V XL M+S	2.8 / 41	3.0 / 44
Front: 245/45 R 18 100 Y XL	2.3 / 33	-
Rear: 275/40 R 18 99 Y	-	2.2 / 32
Front: 245/40 R 19 98 Y XL	2.5 / 36	-
Rear: 275/35 R 19 100 Y XL	-	2.5 / 36
Front: 245/40 R 19 98 V XL M+S	2.8 / 41	-
Rear: 275/35 R 19 100 V XL M+S	-	2.8 / 41
Front: 245/35 R 20 95 Y XL	2.8 / 41	-
Rear: 275/30 R 20 97 Y XL	-	2.8 / 41
Emergency wheel: T 135/80 R 18 104 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

With high-speed tuning feature

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
245/45 R 18 100 Y XL	2.6 / 38	2.8 / 41
Front: 245/45 R 18 100 Y XL	2.6 / 38	-
Rear: 275/40 R 18 99 Y	-	2.6 / 38
Front: 245/40 R 19 98 Y XL	2.9 / 42	-
Rear: 275/35 R 19 100 Y XL	-	2.8 / 41
Front: 245/35 R 20 95 Y XL	3.2 / 46	-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1499
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI
Rear: 275/30 R 20 97 Y XL	- 3.2 / 46
Emergency wheel: T 135/80 R 18 104 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60

Tire identification marks

Tire size

245/45 R 18 96 Y

245: nominal width in mm

45: aspect ratio in %

R: radial tire code

18: rim diameter in inches

96: load rating, not for ZR tires

Y: speed rating, before the R on ZR tires

Maximum tire load

Maximum tire load is the maximum permissible weight for which the tire is approved.

Locate the maximum tire load on the tire sidewall and the Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR – on the certification label on the driver door B-pillar. Divide the tire load by 1.1. It must be greater than one-half of the vehicle's Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR. Note, front vs. rear GAWR and tire loads, respectively.

Speed letter

Designation	Maximum speed
Q	up to 100 mph/160 km/h
R	up to 106 mph/170 km/h
S	up to 112 mph/180 km/h
T	up to 118 mph/190 km/h
H	up to 131 mph/210 km/h
V	up to 150 mph/240 km/h
W	up to 167 mph/270 km/h
Y	up to 186 mph/300 km/h
(Y)	above 186 mph/300 km/h

Tire Identification Number

DOT-Code: DOT xxxx xxx 0120

xxxx: manufacturer code for the tire brand

xxx: tire size and tire design

0120: tire age

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

Tire age

Recommendation

Regardless of the tire tread, replace tires at least every 6 years.

Manufacture date

You can find the manufacture date of the tire on the tire's sidewall.

Designation	Manufacture date
DOT … 0120	1st week 2020

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

E.g.: Treadwear 200; Traction AA; Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades

Treadwear

Traction AA A B C

Temperature A B C

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. E.g., a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half, 1 g, times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.

Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades Band A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Warning

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

RSC – Run-flat tires

Run-flat tires, refer to page 301, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the sidewall.

M+S

Winter and all-season tires with better cold weather performance than summer tires.

Tire tread

Summer tires

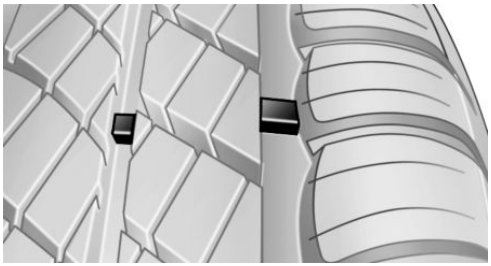
Do not drive with a tire tread of less than 0.12 in/3 mm, otherwise there is an increased risk of hydroplaning.

Winter tires

Do not drive with a tire tread of less than 0.16 in/4 mm, as such tires are less suitable for winter operation.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1501
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Minimum tread depth



Wear indicators are distributed around the tire circumference. They have the legally required minimum height of 0.063 in/1.6 mm.

The positions of the wear indicators are marked on the tire sidewall with TWI, Tread Wear Indicator.

Tire damage

General information

Inspect your tires regularly for damage, foreign objects lodged in the tread, and tread wear.

Driving over rough or damaged road surfaces, as well as debris, curbs and other obstacles can cause serious damage to wheels, tires and suspension parts. This is more likely to occur with low-profile tires, which provide less cushioning between the wheel and the road. Be careful to avoid road hazards and reduce your speed, especially if your vehicle is equipped with low-profile tires.

Indications of tire damage or other vehicle malfunctions:

- Unusual vibrations.
- Unusual tire or running noises.
- Unusual handling such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.

Damage can be caused by the following situations, for instance:

- Driving over curbs.
- Road damage.
- Tire inflation pressure too low.
- Vehicle overloading.
- Incorrect tire storage.

Safety information

Warning

Damaged tires can lose tire inflation pressure, which can lead to loss of vehicle control. There is a risk of accident. If tire damage is suspected while driving, immediately reduce speed and stop. Have wheels and tires checked. For this purpose, drive carefully to the nearest dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Have vehicle towed or transported as needed. Do not repair damaged tires, but have them replaced.

Warning

Tires can become damaged by driving over obstacles, e.g., curbs or road damage, at high speed. Larger wheels have a smaller tire cross-section. The smaller the tire cross-section, the higher the risk of tire damage. There is a danger of accidents and property damage. If possible, avoid driving over objects or road conditions that may damage tires, or drive over them slowly and carefully.

Changing wheels and tires

Mounting and wheel balancing

Have mounting and wheel balancing carried out by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1502
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Wheel and tire combination

General information

You can ask the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop about the correct wheel/tire combination and wheel rim versions for the vehicle.

Safety information

Warning

Wheels and tires which are not suitable for your vehicle can damage parts of the vehicle, for instance due to contact with the body due to tolerances despite the same official size rating. There is a risk of an accident. The manufacturer of your vehicle strongly suggests that you use wheels and tires that have been recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for your vehicle type.

Warning

Mounted steel wheels can cause technical problems, for instance unexpected loosening of the lug bolts and damage to the brake discs. There is a risk of accident. Do not mount steel wheels.

Warning

Incorrect wheel/tire combinations will have a negative impact on the vehicle's handling and on the function of a variety of systems, such as the ABS Antilock Braking System or DSC Dynamic Stability Control. There is a risk of accident. To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires with a single tread configuration from a single manufacturer. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you use wheels and tires that have been recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for your vehicle type. Following tire damage, have the original wheel/tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

Recommended tire brands

For each tire size, the manufacturer of the vehicle recommends certain tire brands. The tire brands can be identified by a star on the tire sidewall.

New tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new; they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Retreaded tires

Warning

Retreaded tires can have different tire casing structures. With advanced age the service life can be limited. There is a risk of an accident. The manufacturer of your vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

The manufacturer of the vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1503
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Winter tires

General information

Winter tires are recommended for operating on winter roads.

Although so-called all-season M+S tires provide better winter traction than summer tires, they usually do not provide the same level of performance as winter tires.

Maximum speed of winter tires

If the maximum speed of the vehicle is higher than the permissible speed for the winter tires, then attach a label showing the permissible maximum speed in the field of view. The label is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

With winter tires mounted, observe and do not exceed the permissible maximum speed.

Changing runflat tires

For your own safety, use only runflat tires. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Rotating wheels between axles

Warning

Rotating tires between the axles on vehicles with different tire sizes or rim sizes on the front and rear axles can cause damage to the tires and the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Do not rotate the tires between the axles on vehicles with different tire sizes or rim sizes on the front and rear axles.

Different wear patterns can occur on the front and rear axles depending on individual driving conditions. The tires can be rotated in pairs between the axles to achieve even wear. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. After rotating, check the tire pressure and correct, if needed.

Storing tires

Tire inflation pressure

Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the side wall of the tire.

Storage

- Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry and dark place.
- Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease, and solvents.
- Do not leave tires in plastic bags.
- Remove dirt from wheels or tires.

Run-flat tires

Concept

Run-flat tires permit continued driving under restricted conditions even in the event of a complete loss of tire inflation pressure.

General information

The wheels consist of tires that are self-supporting, to a limited degree, and possibly special rims.

The support of the sidewall allows the tire to remain drivable to a restricted degree in the event of a tire inflation pressure loss.

Follow the instructions for continued driving with a flat tire.

Safety information

Warning

The vehicle handles differently when a run-flat tire has insufficient or no tire pressure; for instance, reduced lane stability when braking, braking distances are longer and the self-steer-

ing properties will change. There is a risk of accident. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Label

The tires are marked on the tire sidewall with Run-flat System Component RSC.

Repairing a flat tire

Safety measures

- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
- Switch on the hazard warning system.
- Secure the vehicle against rolling away by setting the parking brake.
- Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
- If necessary, set up a warning triangle at an appropriate distance.

Mobility System

Concept

With the Mobility System, minor tire damage can be sealed temporarily to enable continued travel. To accomplish this, sealant is pumped into the tires, which seals the damage from the inside.

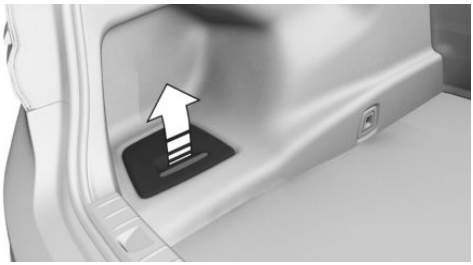
General information

- Follow the instructions on using the Mobility System found on the compressor and sealant container.
- Use of the Mobility System may be ineffective if the tire puncture measures approx. 1/8 inches/4 mm or more.
- Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop if the tire cannot be made drivable.
- Do not remove foreign bodies that have penetrated the tire. Remove foreign objects only when they are visibly protruding from the tire.
- Pull the speed limit sticker off the sealant container and apply it to the steering wheel.
- The use of a sealant can damage the wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics checked and replaced at the next opportunity.
- The compressor can be used to check the tire inflation pressure.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1505
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

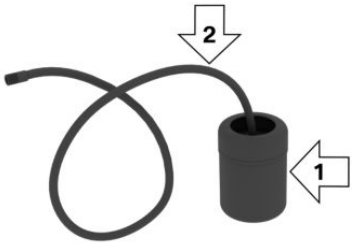
Overview

Storage



The Mobility System is in the left storage compartment of the cargo area.

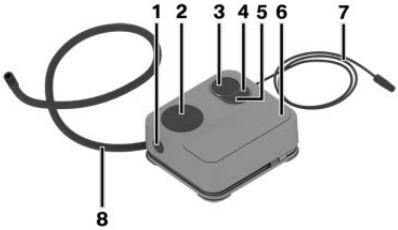
Sealant container



- ▷ Sealant container, arrow 1.
- ▷ Filling hose, arrow 2.

Observe use-by date on the sealant container.

Compressor



1 Sealant container unlocking

2 Sealant container holder

3 Tire pressure gage

4 Reduce tire inflation pressure button

5 On/off switch

6 Compressor

7 Connector/cable for socket

8 Connection hose

Safety measures

- ▷ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
- ▷ Switch on the hazard warning system.
- ▷ Secure the vehicle against rolling away by setting the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- ▷ Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
- ▷ If necessary, set up a warning triangle at an appropriate distance.

Filling the tire with sealant

Safety information

⚠ DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can enter into the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.

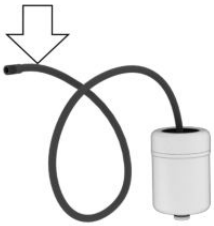
NOTICE

The compressor can overheat during extended operation. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not run the compressor for more than 10 minutes.

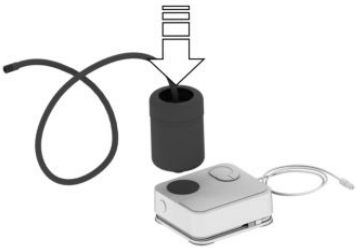
Filling

1. Shake the sealant container.

2. Pull filling hose completely out of the cover of the sealant container. Do not kink the hose.



3. Slide the sealant container into the holder on the compressor housing, ensuring that it engages audibly.



4. Screw the filling hose of the sealant container onto the tire valve of the nonworking wheel.

5. With the compressor switched off, insert the plug into the power socket inside the vehicle.

6. With standby state switched on or the engine running, switch on the compressor.

Let the compressor run for max. 10 minutes to fill the tire with sealant and achieve a tire inflation pressure of approx. 2.0 bar.

While the tire is being filled with sealant, the tire inflation pressure may sporadically reach approx. 5 bar. Do not switch off the compressor at this point.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1507
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Checking and adjusting the tire inflation pressure

Checking

1. Switch off the compressor.
2. Read the tire inflation pressure on the tire pressure gage.

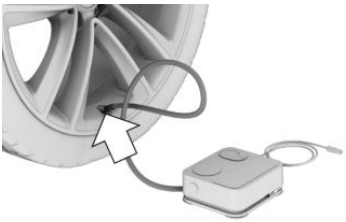
To continue the trip, a tire inflation pressure of at least 2 bar must be reached.

Removing and stowing the sealant container

1. Unscrew the filling hose of the sealant container from the tire valve.
2. Press the red unlocking device.
3. Remove the sealant container from the compressor.
4. Wrap and store the sealant container in suitable material to avoid dirtying the cargo area.

Minimum tire inflation pressure is not reached

1. Pull the connector out of the power socket inside the vehicle.
2. Drive 33 ft/10 m forward and back to distribute the sealant in the tire.
3. Screw the connection hose of the compressor directly onto the tire valve stem.



4. Insert the connector into the power socket inside the vehicle.

5. With standby state switched on or the engine running, switch on the compressor.

   When the tire pressure does not reach at least 2 bar, contact a manufacturer service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

   When a tire pressure of at least 2 bar is reached, see Minimum tire inflation pressure is reached.
6. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
7. Pull the connector out of the power socket inside the vehicle.
8. Stow the Mobility System in the vehicle.

Minimum tire inflation pressure is reached

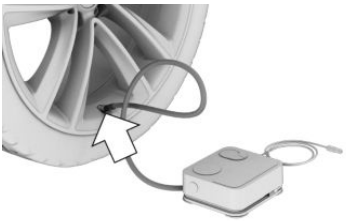
1. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
2. Pull the connector out of the power socket inside the vehicle.
3. Stow the Mobility System in the vehicle.
4. Immediately drive approx. 5 miles/10 km to ensure that the sealant is evenly distributed in the tire.

   Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

   If possible, do not drive at speeds less than 12 mph/20 km/h.

Adjustment

1. Stop at a suitable location.
2. Screw the connection hose of the compressor directly onto the tire valve stem.



3. Insert the connector into the power socket inside the vehicle.

4. Correct the tire inflation pressure to at least 2.0 bar:
   - ▷ Increase tire inflation pressure: with standby state switched on or the engine running, switch on the compressor.
   - ▷ Reduce tire inflation pressure: press the button on the compressor.
5. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
6. Pull the connector out of the power socket inside the vehicle.
7. Stow the Mobility System in the vehicle.

Continuing the trip

Do not exceed the maximum permissible speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor again.

Replace the nonworking tire and the sealant container of the Mobility System promptly.

Additional information:

- ▷ Run-flat tires, refer to page 314.
- ▷ Tire pressure monitor, refer to page 307.

Snow chains

Safety information

⚠ Warning

With the mounting of snow chains on unsuitable tires, the snow chains can come into contact with vehicle parts. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Only mount snow chains on tires that are designated by their manufacturer as suitable for the use of snow chains.

⚠ Warning

Insufficiently tight snow chains may damage tires and vehicle components. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the snow chains are always sufficiently tight. Re-tighten as needed according to the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Fine-link snow chains

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends the use of fine-link snow chains. Certain types of fine-link snow chains have been tested by the manufacturer of the vehicle and recommended as road-safe and suitable.

Information regarding suitable snow chains is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Use

Use only in pairs on the rear wheels, equipped with the tires of the following size:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1509
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

- 225/55 R 17.
- 245/45 R 18.
- 245/40 R 19.

Follow the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Do not initialize the Flat Tire Monitor after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

Do not reset the Tire Pressure Monitor after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

When driving with snow chains, briefly activate Dynamic Traction Control DTC to optimize the forward momentum.

Maximum speed with snow chains

Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h when using snow chains.

Rear axle steering during operation with snow chains

General information

In order to guarantee free running of the wheels when operating with snow chains, rear axle steering of the integral active steering must be switched off when snow chains are mounted.

Safety information

Warning

When rear axle steering is switched on and snow chains are mounted, there can be contact between snow chains and the chassis. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. With mounted snow chains, switch off the rear axle steering.

Switching off rear axle steering

The rear axle steering is switched off by specifying that snow chains are installed.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Tire chains"
5. "Snow chains installed"

Starting with the permissible maximum speed with snow chains of 30 mph/50 km/h the rear axle steering will be switched on again automatically.

Tire pressure monitor

Concept

The system monitors tire inflation pressure in the four mounted tires. The system warns you if there is a loss of pressure in one or more tires.

General information

Sensors in the tire valves measure the tire inflation pressure and tire temperature.

Using the tire settings in iDrive, the system can automatically display the specified target pressures and compare them with the actual tire inflation pressures.

If tires are being used that are not specified on the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle, such as tires with special approval, the system needs to be actively reset. The system will then take over the actual tire inflation pressures as the target pressures.

When operating the system, also note the information found in the Tire inflation pressure chapter.

Additional information:

Tire inflation pressure, refer to page 290.

Safety information

Warning

The display of the target pressures is not a substitute for the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle. Incorrect entries in the tire settings can lead to incorrect target tire inflation pressure values. In this case, it cannot be guaranteed that the notification of a loss of tire inflation pressure will be reliable. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Ensure that the tire sizes of the mounted tires are displayed correctly and match the details on the tires and on the vehicle.

Functional requirements

The following conditions must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable flagging of a loss of tire inflation pressure is not assured:

- Every time a tire or wheel is changed, the correct details on the mounted tires must be entered in the tire settings.
- The Tire Pressure Monitor does not activate until after driving for a few minutes:
  - After a tire or wheel replacement.
  - After a reset, for tires with special approval.
  - After changing the tire setting.
- For tires with special approval:
  - After a tire or wheel replacement, a reset was performed with the correct tire inflation pressure.
  - After the tire inflation pressure was adjusted to a new value, a reset was performed.
- Wheels with wheel electronics.

Tire settings

General information

The tire sizes of the mounted tires can be gathered from the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle or directly on the tires.

The tire details do not need to be re-entered when the tire inflation pressure is corrected.

For summer and winter tires, the tire details entered last are stored. After a tire or wheel replacement, the settings of the tire sets used last can be selected.

Changing settings

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) "Tire Pressure Monitor"
4. "Tire settings"
5. "Tire selection"
6. "Manual"
7. "Tire type"
   - "Summer"
   - "Winter/All-year"
8. Select the tire type that is mounted on the rear axle:
   - Tire size, e.g., 245/45 R18 96 Y.
   - For tires with special approval: "Other tires".

     Observe further proceeding in the perform a reset section.
9. Select the maximum road speed that will be used with the tires.
10. "Save tire settings"

The measurement of the current tire inflation pressure is started. The measurement progress is displayed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1511
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Status display

Current status

The system status can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g., whether or not the system is active.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor"

The current status is displayed.

Current tire inflation pressure

The current tire inflation pressure is displayed for each tire.

The current tire inflation pressures may change during driving operation or depending on the external temperature.

Current tire temperature

Depending on the model, the current tire temperatures are displayed.

The current tire temperatures may change while driving or due to the external temperature.

Target pressure

The target pressure for the tires on the front and rear axles is displayed.

The specified target pressures take the influence of driving operation and external temperature on the tire temperature into account. The appropriate target pressure is always displayed, independent of the weather situation, tire temperatures and driving times.

The displayed target pressure may change and may differ from the tire inflation pressure details on the door pillar of the driver's door. The tire inflation pressure can thus be corrected to the value of the displayed target pressures.

The target pressure is immediately adjusted if the vehicle load is changed in the tire settings.

Tire conditions

General information

Tire and system status are indicated by the color of the wheels and a SMS text message on the Control Display.

Any existing messages may not be deleted if the displayed target pressure is not reached after the tire inflation pressure is corrected.

All wheels green

- The system is active and bases warnings on the displayed target pressures.
- For tires with special approval: the system is active and bases warnings on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

One to four yellow wheels

A flat tire or major drop in the tire inflation pressure has occurred in the indicated tires.

Gray wheels

It may not be possible to identify tire inflation pressure losses.

Possible causes:

- Malfunction.
- During tire inflation pressure measurement, after confirmation of the tire settings.
- For tires with special approval: a reset is performed for the system.

For tires with special approval: perform a reset

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor"
4. Make sure that correct tire settings have been made.

   Tire settings, refer to page 308.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1512
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

5. Switch on drive-ready state and do not drive off.
6. Reset tire inflation pressure: "Perform reset".
7. Drive away.

The wheels are displayed in gray and the following is displayed "Resetting tire pressure…".

After a travel time of several minutes, the set tire inflation pressures are accepted as the target tire inflation pressures. The reset is completed automatically while driving.

After a successfully completed reset, the wheels on the Control Display are shown in green and the following is displayed: "Reset successful."

You may interrupt this trip at any time. When you continue the reset resumes automatically.

Messages: for tires without special approval

General information

A low tire inflation pressure may cause the DSC Dynamic Stability Control to be switched on.

Safety information

Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. Run-flat tires can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is equipped with normal tires. Follow the information on run-flat tires and continued driving with these tires.

If a tire inflation pressure check is required

Message

A symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	Inflation was not carried out according to specifications, for instance when the tire has not been sufficiently inflated or in the case of a natural steady tire pressure loss.

Measure

Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.

If the tire inflation pressure is too low

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a tire inflation pressure loss.

Measure

1. Reduce the vehicle speed. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph/130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, for instance at a gas station, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires and correct if necessary.

If there is a significant loss of tire inflation pressure

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with the affected tire appears in a Check Control message on the Control Display.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1513
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with normal tires or run-flat tires.

   Run-flat tires are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire's sidewall.

   Run-flat tires, refer to page 301.
3. Read the description on What to do in case of a flat tire.

   Actions in the event of a flat tire, refer to page 312.

Messages: for tires with special approval

General information

A low tire inflation pressure may cause the DSC Dynamic Stability Control to be switched on.

Safety information

Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. Run-flat tires can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is equipped with normal tires. Follow the information on run-flat tires and continued driving with these tires.

If a tire inflation pressure check is required

Message

A symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	Inflation was not carried out according to specifications, e.g., the tire has not been sufficiently inflated. The system has detected a wheel change, but no reset was done. The tire inflation pressure has fallen below the level of the last reset. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.
2. Perform a system reset.

If the tire inflation pressure is too low

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a tire inflation pressure loss. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Reduce the vehicle speed. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph/130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, for instance at a gas station, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires and correct if necessary.
3. Reset the system.

If there is a significant loss of tire inflation pressure

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with the affected tire appears in a Check Control message on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with normal tires or run-flat tires.

   Run-flat tires are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire's sidewall.

   Run-flat tires, refer to page 301.
3. Read the description on What to do in case of a flat tire.

   Actions in the event of a flat tire, refer to page 312.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

Normal tires

1. Identify the damaged tire.

   Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure gage of a flat tire kit.

   For tires with special approval: when the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been reset. In this case, perform the reset.

   If tire damage cannot be found, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
2. Repair the flat tire, e.g., with a flat tire kit or by changing the wheel.

Use of sealant, for instance from the flat tire kit, may damage the wheel electronics. Have the electronics replaced at the next opportunity.

Run-flat tires

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The vehicle handles differently when a run-flat tire has insufficient or no tire pressure; for instance, reduced lane stability when braking, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of accident. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Maximum speed

You may continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1515
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Continued driving with a flat tire

Follow the following when continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

Possible driving range with a depressurized tire

The distance for which it may be possible to drive safely varies depending on how the vehicle is loaded and used, e.g., speed, road conditions, external temperature. The driving range may be less but may also be more if an economical driving style is used.

If the vehicle is loaded with an average weight and used under favorable conditions, the distance for which it may be safe to drive may be up to 50 miles/80 km.

Vehicle handling with damaged tires

Vehicles driven with a damaged tire will handle differently, potentially leading to conditions such as the following:

- Greater likelihood of swerving off course.
- Longer braking distances.
- Changed self-steering properties.

Modify your driving style. Avoid abrupt steering maneuvers or driving over obstacles, for instance curbs or potholes.

Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire.

Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident.

Do not continue driving. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

System limits

Temperature

The tire inflation pressure depends on the tire's temperature.

Driving or exposure to the sun will increase the tire's temperature, thus increasing the tire inflation pressure.

The tire inflation pressure is reduced when the tire temperature falls again.

These circumstances may cause a warning when temperatures fall very sharply.

Following a temperature-related warning, the target pressures are displayed on the Control Display again after a short distance.

Sudden tire pressure loss

The system cannot indicate sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances.

Failure performing a reset

Tires with special approval: the system will not function correctly if a reset was not performed, for example a flat tire may be indicated although the tire inflation pressures are correct.

Malfunction

Message

The yellow warning light flashes and is then illuminated continuously. A Check Control message is displayed. It may not be possible to identify tire pressure losses.

Measure

- A wheel without wheel electronics, such as an emergency wheel, is mounted: have the wheels checked, if needed.
- Interference caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1516
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

▷ For tires with special approval: the system was unable to complete the reset. Perform a system reset again.

Malfunction: have the system checked.

Declaration according to NHTSA/ FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Each tire, including the spare (if provided) should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.) As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale. Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Flat Tire Monitor FTM

Concept

The system detects tire inflation pressure loss on the basis of rotation speed differences between the individual wheels while driving.

In the event of a tire inflation pressure loss, the diameter and therefore the rotational speed of the corresponding wheel changes. The difference will be detected and reported as a flat tire.

The system does not measure the actual inflation pressure in the tires.

Functional requirements

The following conditions must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable flagging of a loss of tire inflation pressure is not assured:

▷ After a tire or wheel replacement, an initialization was performed with the correct tire inflation pressure.

▷ After the tire pressure was adjusted to a new value, an initialization was performed.

Status display

The current status of the Flat Tire Monitor FTM can be displayed, for instance whether the FTM is active.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) "Flat Tire Monitor"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1517
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

The status is displayed.

Initialization required

An initialization must be performed in the following situations:

- After the tire inflation pressure has been adjusted.
- After a tire or wheel replacement.

Performing initialization

When initializing, the set tire inflation pressures serve as reference values in order to detect a flat tire. Initialization is started by confirming the tire inflation pressures.

Do not initialize the system when driving with snow chains.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Flat Tire Monitor"
4. Switch on drive-ready state and do not drive off.
5. Start the initialization with: "Perform reset"
6. Drive away.

The initialization is completed while driving, which can be interrupted at any time.

The initialization automatically continues when driving resumes.

Messages

General information

When a flat tire is indicated, DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if needed.

Safety information

Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. Run-flat tires can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is equipped with normal tires. Follow the information on run-flat tires and continued driving with these tires.

Indication of a flat tire

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with normal tires or run-flat tires.

   Run-flat tires are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire's sidewall.

   Run-flat tires, refer to page 301.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

Normal tires

1. Identify the damaged tire.

   To do this, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure gage of a flat tire kit.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1518
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

When the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor FTM may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

If identification of flat tire damage is not possible, please contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

2. Repair the flat tire, e.g., with a flat tire kit or by changing the wheel.

Run-flat tires

Safety information

Warning

The vehicle handles differently when a run-flat tire has insufficient or no tire pressure; for instance, reduced lane stability when braking, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of accident. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Maximum speed

You may continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

Continued driving with a flat tire

Follow the following when continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

   When the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

Possible driving range with a depressurized tire

The distance for which it may be possible to drive safely varies depending on how the vehicle is loaded and used, e.g., speed, road conditions, external temperature. The driving range may be less but may also be more if an economical driving style is used.

If the vehicle is loaded with an average weight and used under favorable conditions, the distance for which it may be safe to drive may be up to 50 miles/80 km.

Vehicle handling with damaged tires

Vehicles driven with a damaged tire will handle differently, potentially leading to conditions such as the following:

- Greater likelihood of swerving off course.
- Longer braking distances.
- Changed self-steering properties.

Modify your driving style. Avoid abrupt steering maneuvers or driving over obstacles, for instance curbs or potholes.

Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire.

Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident.

Do not continue driving. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

System limits

The system could be delayed or malfunction in the following situations:

- A natural, even tire inflation pressure loss in all four tires will not be recognized. Therefore, check the tire inflation pressure regularly.
- Sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances cannot be recognized in advance.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1519
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

- The system has not been initialized.
- When driving on a snowy or slippery road surface.
- Sporty driving style: spinning traction wheels, high lateral acceleration (drifting).
- When driving with snow chains.

Changing wheels/tires

General information

When using run-flat tires or a flat tire kit, a wheel does not always need to be changed immediately when there is a loss of tire inflation pressure due to a flat tire.

If needed, the tools for changing wheels are available as accessories from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

DANGER

The vehicle jack is only provided for short-term lifting of the vehicle for wheel changes. Even if all safety measures are observed, there is a risk of the raised vehicle falling, if the vehicle jack tips over. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. If the vehicle is raised, do not lie under the vehicle and do not start the engine.

DANGER

Supports such as wooden blocks under the vehicle jack reduce the capacity of the vehicle jack to bear weight. They have the potential to exert too much strain on the vehicle jack, causing it to tip over and the vehicle to fall. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not place supports under the vehicle jack.

Warning

The jack, issued by the vehicle manufacturer, is provided in order to perform a wheel change in the event of a breakdown. The jack is not designed for frequent use; for example, changing from summer to winter tires. Using the jack frequently may cause it to become jammed or damaged. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only use the jack to attach an emergency or spare wheel in the event of a breakdown.

Warning

On soft, uneven or slippery ground, for example snow, ice, tiles, etc., the vehicle jack can slip away. There is a risk of injury. If possible, change the wheel on a flat, solid, and slip-resistant surface.

Warning

The vehicle jack is optimized for lifting the vehicle and for the jacking points on the vehicle only. There is a risk of injury. Do not lift any other vehicle or cargo using the vehicle jack.

Warning

When the vehicle jack is not inserted into the jacking point provided for this purpose, the vehicle may be damaged or the vehicle jack may slip when it is being cranked up. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. When cranking up the vehicle jack, ensure that it is inserted in the jacking point next to the wheel housing.

Warning

A vehicle that is raised on a vehicle jack may fall off of the jack if lateral forces are exerted on it. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. While the vehicle is raised, do not exert lateral forces on the vehicle or pull abruptly on the vehicle. Have a stuck wheel removed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Securing the vehicle against rolling

General information

The vehicle manufacturer recommends to additionally secure the vehicle against rolling away when changing a wheel.

On a level surface

Place wheel chocks or other suitable objects in front and behind the wheel that is diagonal to the wheel to be changed.

On a slight downhill gradient

If you need to change a wheel on a slight downhill grade, place chocks and other suitable objects, for instance a rock, under the wheels of both the front and rear axles against the rolling direction.

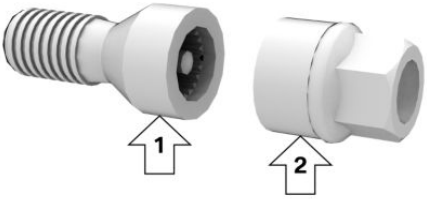
Lug bolt lock

Concept

The wheel lug bolts have a special coding. The lug bolts can only be released with the adapter which matches the coding.

Overview

The adapter of the lug bolt lock is in the onboard vehicle tool kit or in a storage compartment close to the onboard vehicle tool kit.



- ▷ Lug bolt, arrow 1.
- ▷ Adapter, arrow 2.

Unscrewing

1. Attach the adapter to the lug bolt.
2. Unscrew the lug bolt.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1521
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

3. Remove the adapter after unscrewing the lug bolt.

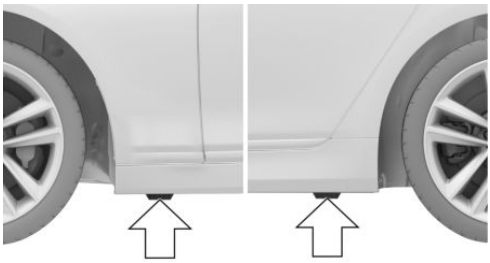
Screwing on

1. Attach the adapter to the lug bolt. If necessary, turn the adapter until it fits on the lug bolt.
2. Screw on the lug bolt. The tightening torque is 140 Nm.
3. Remove the adapter and stow it after screwing on the lug bolt.

Preparing the vehicle

- ▷ Park the vehicle on solid and non-slip ground at a safe distance from traffic.
- ▷ Switch on the hazard warning system.
- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ Engage a gear or move the selector lever to position P.
- ▷ As soon as permitted by the traffic flow, have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
- ▷ Depending on the vehicle equipment, get wheel change tools and, if necessary, the emergency wheel from the vehicle.
- ▷ If necessary, set up a warning triangle or portable hazard warning light at an appropriate distance.
- ▷ Secure the vehicle additionally against rolling.
- ▷ Loosen the lug bolts a half turn.

Jacking points for the vehicle jack



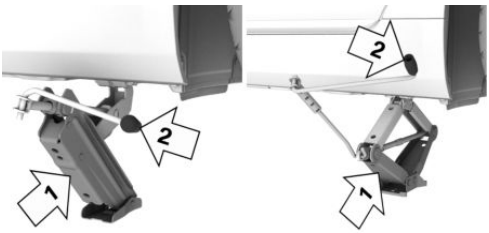
The jacking points for the vehicle jack are located at the indicated positions.

Jacking up the vehicle

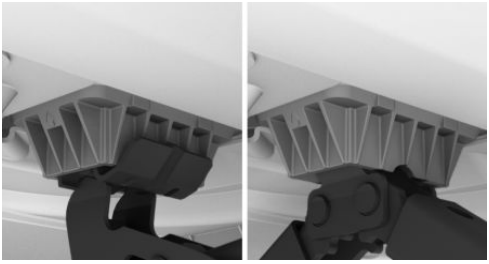
Warning

Hands and fingers can be jammed when using the vehicle jack. There is a risk of injury. Comply with the described hand position and do not change this position while using the vehicle jack.

1. Hold the vehicle jack with one hand, arrow 1, and grasp the vehicle jack crank or lever with your other hand, arrow 2.

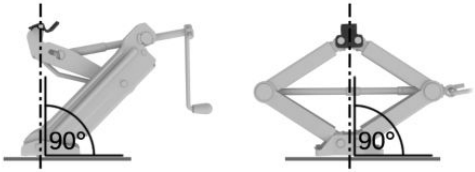


2. Insert the vehicle jack into the rectangular recess of the jacking point closest to the wheel to be changed.

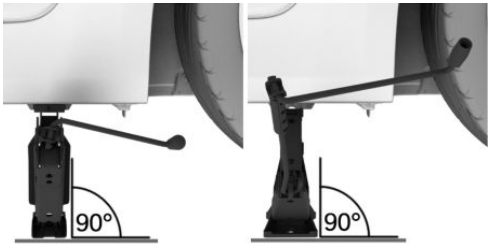


3. Extend the vehicle jack by turning the vehicle jack crank or lever clockwise.

4. Take your hand away from the vehicle jack as soon as the vehicle jack is under load and continue turning the vehicle jack crank or lever with one hand.
5. Make sure that the vehicle jack foot stands vertically and at a right angle beneath the jacking point.



6. Make sure that the vehicle jack foot stands vertically and perpendicularly beneath the jacking point after extending the vehicle jack.



7. Crank the vehicle up, until the vehicle jack is with the entire surface on the ground and the relevant wheel is maximum 1.2 inches/3 cm above ground.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1523
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Mounting a wheel

Mount one emergency wheel only, as required.

1. Unscrew the lug bolts.
2. Remove the wheel.
3. Put the new wheel or emergency wheel on and screw in at least two lug bolts in a crosswise pattern until hand-tight.

   When non-original light-alloy wheels of the vehicle manufacturer are mounted, the accompanying lug bolts may have to be used as well.
4. Hand-tighten the remaining lug bolts and tighten all lug bolts well in a crosswise pattern.
5. Turn the vehicle jack crank counterclockwise to retract the vehicle jack and lower the vehicle.
6. Remove the vehicle jack and stow it securely.

After the wheel change

1. Tighten the lug bolts crosswise. The tightening torque is 101 lbs ft/140 Nm.
2. Stow the nonworking wheel in the cargo area, if necessary.

   The nonworking wheel cannot be stored under the cargo floor panel because of its size.
3. Check tire inflation pressure at the next opportunity and correct as needed.
4. Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

   Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor again.
5. Check to make sure the lug bolts are tight with a calibrated torque wrench.
6. Have the damaged tire replaced at the nearest dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Emergency wheel

Concept

In the event of a flat tire, the emergency wheel can be used in place of the wheel with the defective tire. The emergency wheel is only intended for temporary use until the defective tire/wheel has been replaced.

General information

Mount one emergency wheel only.

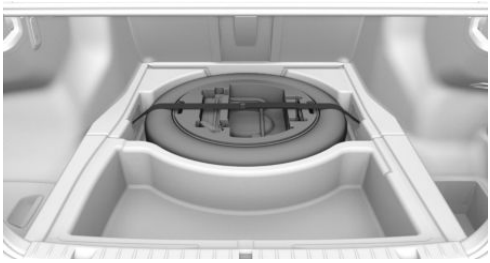
Also check the tire inflation pressure of the emergency wheel in the cargo area regularly, and correct it as needed.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The emergency wheel has particular dimensions. When driving with an emergency wheel, changed driving properties may occur, for instance reduced lane stability when braking, longer braking distance, and changed self-steering properties in the limit area. There is a risk of accident. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Overview



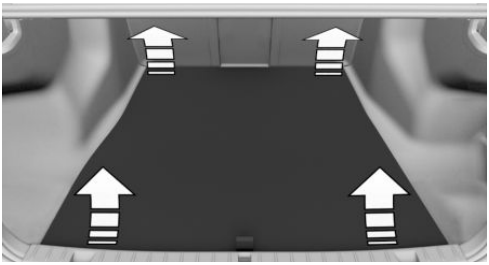
The emergency wheel and the wheel change tools are located in the cargo area under the cargo floor panel.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1524

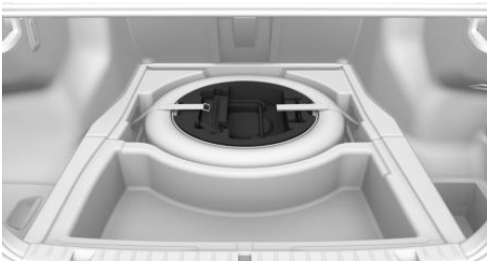
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Removing the emergency wheel

1. Remove the cargo floor panel. To do this, pull the cargo floor panel upward directly behind the rear backrests.



2. Open the ratchet strap.



3. Remove the tool holder.
4. Remove the emergency wheel from the storage well. Do not remove any covers.

Inserting the emergency wheel

1. Place the emergency wheel in the storage well.
2. Insert the tool holder.
3. Tie the ratchet strap. Make sure that it is correctly and firmly seated.
4. Insert the cargo floor panel.

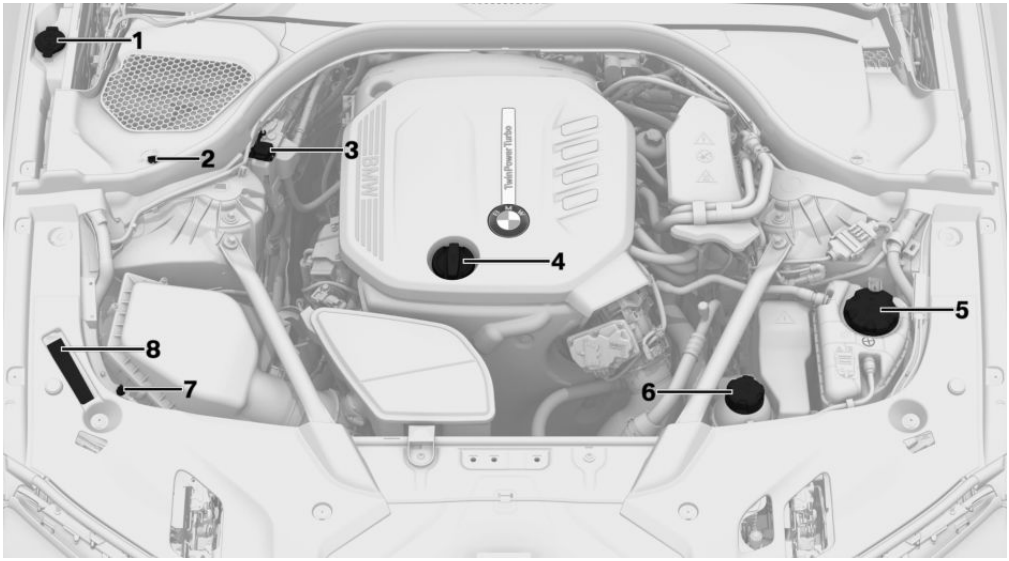
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1525
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Engine compartment

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Overview



1 Filler neck for washer fluid
2 Mild Hybrid technology, lid
3 Jump-starting, positive battery terminal
4 Oil filler neck
5 Coolant reservoir, engine
6 Coolant reservoir, auxiliary cooling
7 Jump-starting, negative battery terminal
8 Vehicle identification number

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1526
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Hood

Safety information

Warning

Improperly executed work in the engine compartment can damage vehicle components and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of an accident and damage to property. Have work in the engine compartment performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

The engine compartment accommodates moving components. Certain components in the engine compartment can also move with the vehicle switched off, for instance the radiator fan. There is a risk of injury. Do not reach into the area of moving parts. Keep articles of clothing and hair away from moving parts.

Warning

There are protruding parts, for instance locking hook, on the inside of the hood. There is a risk of injury. If the hood is open, pay attention to protruding parts and keep clear of these areas.

Warning

An incorrectly locked hood can open while driving and restrict visibility. There is a risk of accident. Stop immediately and correctly close the hood.

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when opening and closing the hood. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the hood is clear during opening and closing.

NOTICE

Folded-away wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.

NOTICE

When the hood is closed, it must engage on both sides. Pressing again can damage the hood. There is a risk of damage to property. Open the hood again and then close it energetically. Avoid pressing again.

Opening

1. Pull lever, arrow 1.

   Hood is unlocked.

2. After the lever is released, pull the lever again, arrow 2.

   Hood can be opened.

3. Be careful of protruding parts on the hood.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1527
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Closing

Energetically close the hood from approx. 20 in/50 cm.

The hood must engage on both sides.

Operating materials

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Fuel recommendation

General information

Depending on the region, many gas stations sell fuel that has been customized to winter or summer conditions. Fuel that is available in winter, for instance helps make a cold start easier.

Gasoline

General information

For the best fuel efficiency, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.

Fuels with a maximum ethanol content of 25 %, i. e. E10 or E25, may be used for refueling.

Ethanol should meet the following quality standards:

US: ASTM 4806–xx

CAN: CGSB-3.511–xx

xx: comply with the current standard in each case.

Safety information

⚠ CAUTION

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in harmful engine deposits or damage. Additionally, problems relating to drivability, starting and stalling, especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude, may occur.

If drivability problems are encountered, we recommend switching to a high quality gasoline brand and a higher octane grade — AKI number — for a few tank fills. To avoid harmful engine deposits, it is highly recommended to purchase gasoline from Top Tier retailers.

Failure to comply with these recommendations may result in the need for unscheduled maintenance.

⚠ NOTICE

Even small quantities of the wrong fuel or wrong fuel additives can damage the fuel system and engine. Furthermore, the catalytic converter is permanently damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not refuel or add the following in the case of gasoline engines:

- Leaded gasoline.
- Metallic additives, for instance manganese or iron.

Do not press the Start/Stop button after refueling with the wrong fuel. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1529
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

NOTICE

Incorrect fuels can damage the fuel system and the engine. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use fuels with a higher percentage of ethanol than recommended. Do not refuel with fuels containing methanol, e.g. M5 to M100.

NOTICE

Fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality can compromise engine function or cause engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not fill with fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality.

Recommended fuel grade

BMW recommends AKI 91.

M Performance model:

BMW recommends AKI 93.

Refuel with this gasoline to achieve the rated performance and consumption values.

Minimum fuel grade

BMW recommends AKI 89.

If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI Rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high external temperatures. This has no effect on the engine life.

BMW recommends Shell Quality Fuels

Engine oil

General information

The engine oil consumption is dependent on your driving style and driving conditions.

Therefore, regularly check the engine oil level after refueling by taking a detailed measurement.

The engine oil consumption can increase in the following situations, for instance:

- Sporty driving style.
- Break-in of the engine.
- Idling of the engine.
- With use of engine oil types that are classified as not suitable.

Different Check Control messages appear on the Control Display depending on the engine oil level.

Safety information

NOTICE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Immediately add engine oil.

NOTICE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add too much engine oil. When too much engine oil is added, have the engine oil level corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Electronic oil measurement

General information

The electronic oil measurement has two measuring principles:

- Monitoring.
- Detailed measurement.

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a dynamic driving style, for instance when taking curves aggressively, regularly perform a detailed measurement.

Monitoring

Concept

The engine oil level is monitored electronically while driving and can be shown on the Control Display.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.

A red indicator light indicates that the engine oil pressure is too low.

Functional requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of normal driving.

Displaying the engine oil level

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"

The engine oil level is displayed.

System limits

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a dynamic driving style, it may not be possible to calculate a measured value. In this case, the measured value for the last, sufficiently long trip is displayed.

Detailed measurement

Concept

The engine oil level is checked when the vehicle is stationary and displayed via a scale.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.

General information

During the measurement, the idle speed is increased somewhat.

Functional requirements

- Vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- Steptronic transmission: selector lever in selector lever position N or P and accelerator pedal not depressed.
- Engine is running and is at operating temperature.

Performing a detailed measurement

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"
4. "Engine oil measurement"
5. "Start measurement"

The engine oil level is checked and displayed via a scale.

Adding engine oil

General information

Only add engine oil when the message is displayed in the instrument cluster. The quantity to be added is indicated in the message shown on the Control Display.

Only add suitable types of engine oil.

Safely park the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before adding engine oil.

Take care not to add too much engine oil.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1531
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Safety information

Warning

Operating materials, for instance oils, greases, coolants, fuels, can contain harmful ingredients. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Follow the instructions on the containers. Avoid the contact of articles of clothing, skin or eyes with operating materials. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.

NOTICE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Immediately add engine oil.

NOTICE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add too much engine oil. When too much engine oil is added, have the engine oil level corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Overview

The oil filler neck is located in the engine compartment.

Additional information:

For an overview, refer to page 323.

Adding engine oil

1. Open the hood.

   Opening, refer to page 324.
2. Open the lid counterclockwise.

3. Add engine oil.
4. Close the lid.

Engine oil types to add

General information

The engine oil quality is critical for the life of the engine.

Only add the types of engine oil which are listed.

Safety information

NOTICE

Oil additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use oil additives.

NOTICE

Incorrect engine oil can cause malfunctions in the engine or damage it. There is a risk of damage to property. When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has the correct oil rating.

Suitable engine oil types

Add engine oils that meet the following oil rating standards:

Gasoline engine
BMW Longlife-01 FE.
BMW Longlife-14 FE+.
BMW Longlife-17 FE+.

Alternative engine oil types

If an engine oil suitable for continuous use is not available, up to 1 US quart/liter of an engine oil with the following oil rating can be added:

Oil rating
API SL.
API SM.
API SN.

Viscosity grades

Viscosity grades
SAE 0W-20.
SAE 0W-30.

More information about suitable oil ratings and viscosity grades of engine oils can be requested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Engine oil change

NOTICE

Engine oil that is not changed in timely fashion can cause increased engine wear and thus engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. It is recommended that you do not exceed the service intervals indicated in the vehicle.

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop change the engine oil.

BMW recommends
Original BMW Engine Oil.

Coolant

General information

Coolant consists of water and additives.

Not all commercially available additives are suitable for the vehicle. Do not mix additives of different colors. Observe the water - additive mixing ratio of 50:50. Information about suitable additives is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Warning

With the engine hot and the cooling system open, coolant can escape and lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury. Only open the cooling system with the engine cooled down.

Warning

Additives are harmful and incorrect additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Do not allow additives to come into contact with skin, eyes or articles of clothing. Use suitable additives only.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1533
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Coolant level

General information

Vehicles with gasoline engine feature two cooling circuits. Always check the coolant levels of both coolant reservoirs and refill as needed.

The coolant level is indicated using minimum and maximum markings in the filler neck of the coolant reservoir.

Depending on the engine installation, the coolant reservoir is located on the right side or the left side of the engine compartment.

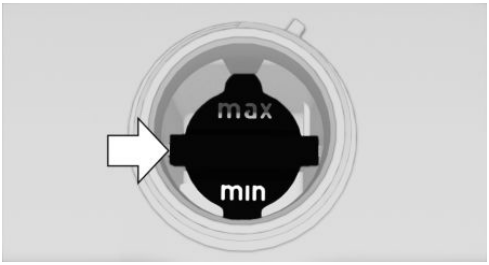
Additional information:

For an overview, refer to page 323.

Checking the coolant level in the filler neck

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Open the hood.

   Opening, refer to page 324.
3. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.
4. Open the coolant reservoir lid.
5. The coolant level is correct if it lies between the minimum and maximum marks in the filler neck.



6. Close the lid.

Adding coolant

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Opening the hood.

   Opening, refer to page 324.
3. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.
4. Open the coolant reservoir lid.
5. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to the specified level; do not overfill.
6. Close the lid.
7. Have the cause of the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.

Disposal

Comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant and coolant additives.

Washer fluid

General information

All washer nozzles are supplied from one reservoir.

Use a mixture of tap water and windshield washer concentrate. If desired, a windshield washer concentrate containing antifreeze can be used.

Recommended minimum fill quantity:
0.2 US gal/1 liter.

Safety information

Warning

Some antifreeze agents can contain harmful substances and are flammable. There is a risk of fire and a risk of injury. Follow the instructions on the containers. Keep antifreeze away from ignition sources. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1534

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

United States: the washer fluid mixture ratio is regulated by the U.S. EPA and many individual states; do not exceed the allowable washer fluid dilution ratio limits that apply. Follow the usage instructions on the washer fluid container.

Use of BMW's Windshield Washer Concentrate or the equivalent is recommended.

Warning

Washer fluid can ignite and catch fire on contact with hot engine parts. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Only add washer fluid when the engine is cooled down. Next, fully close the lid of the washer fluid reservoir.

NOTICE

Silicon-containing additives in the washer fluid for the water-repelling effect on the windows can lead to damage to the washing system. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add silicon-containing additives to the washer fluid.

NOTICE

Mixing different windshield washer concentrates or antifreeze can damage the washing system. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not mix different windshield washer concentrates or antifreeze. Follow the information and mixing ratios provided on the containers.

Overview

The washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment.

Malfunction

The use of undiluted windshield washer concentrate or alcohol-based antifreeze can lead to incorrect readings at temperatures below +5 °F/-15 °C.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1535
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Maintenance

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

BMW maintenance system

The maintenance system provides service notifications and thereby provides support in maintaining road safety and the operational reliability of the vehicle.

In some cases, scopes and intervals of the maintenance system may vary according to the country version. Replacement work, spare parts, fuels and lubricants, and wear materials are calculated separately. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Condition Based Service CBS

Concept

Sensors and special algorithms take into account the driving conditions of the vehicle. CBS uses these to calculate the need for maintenance.

The system makes it possible to adapt the amount of maintenance corresponding to your user profile.

General information

Information on service notifications can be displayed on the Control Display.

Additional information:

Service notifications, refer to page 149.

Service data in the vehicle key

Information on the service notifications is continuously stored in the vehicle key. The service center can read this data out and suggest a maintenance scope for the vehicle.

Therefore, hand the service advisor the vehicle key with which the vehicle was driven most recently.

Storage periods

Storage periods during which the vehicle battery was disconnected are not taken into account.

If this occurs, have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop update the time-dependent maintenance procedures, such as checking brake fluid and, if necessary, changing the engine oil and the microfilter/activated-charcoal filter.

Maintenance Manual and Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

Please consult your Maintenance Manual and Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1536

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

the performance of service and maintenance work.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that maintenance and repair be performed by a service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Records of regular maintenance and repair work should be retained.

Socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis

General information

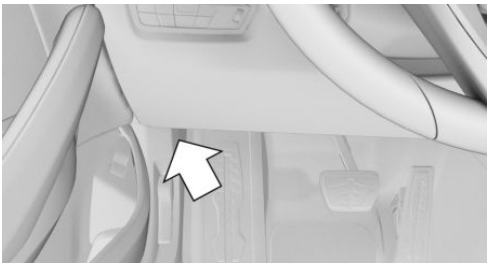
Devices connected to the OBD socket trigger the alarm system when the vehicle is locked. Remove any devices connected at the OBD socket before locking the vehicle.

Safety information

NOTICE

The socket for Onboard Diagnosis is an intricate component intended to be used in conjunction with specialized equipment to check the vehicle's primary emissions system. Improper use of the socket for Onboard Diagnosis, or contact with the socket for Onboard Diagnosis for other than its intended purpose, can cause vehicle malfunctions and creates risks of personal and property damage. Given the foregoing, the manufacture of your vehicle strongly recommends that access to the socket for Onboard Diagnosis be limited to a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or other persons that have the specialized training and equipment for purposes of properly utilizing the socket for Onboard Diagnosis.

Position



There is an OBD socket on the driver's side for checking the primary components in the vehicle's emissions.

Emissions

- The warning light lights up:

  Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

- The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:

  This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

  Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

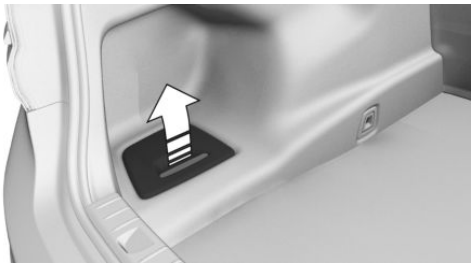
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1537
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Replacing components

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Vehicle tool kit



The onboard vehicle tool kit is located in the left storage compartment of the cargo area.

Wiper blades

Safety information

NOTICE

The window may sustain damage if the wiper falls onto it without the wiper blade installed. There is a risk of damage to property. Hold the wiper firmly when changing the wiper blade. Do not fold or switch on the wiper without a wiper blade installed.

NOTICE

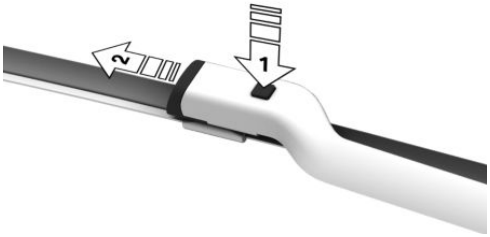
Folded-away wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.

Replacing

1. To change the wiper blades, fold up the wiper arms.

   Fold-away position of the wipers, refer to page 133.
2. Lift the wiper off of the windshield and hold.

3. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull out the wiper blade, arrow 2.



4. Insert the new wiper blade and press it on until it you hear it snap into the holder.
5. Fold down the wipers.

Lights and bulbs

General information

Lights and bulbs make an essential contribution to vehicle safety.

Some items of equipment use light-emitting diodes installed behind a cover as a light source. These light-emitting diodes are related to conventional lasers and are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you let a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop perform the work in case of a malfunction.

A spare light box is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Warning

Bulbs can get hot during operation. Contact with the bulbs can cause burns. There is a risk of injury. Only change bulbs after they have cooled off.

Warning

Work on switched-on lighting systems can cause short circuits. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. When working on the lighting system, switch off the lights in question. If necessary, heed the bulb manufacturer's instructions.

Warning

Focused laser light can irritate or permanently damage the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that the work on the lighting system including bulb replacement be performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

Intensive brightness can irritate or damage the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. Do not look directly into the headlights or other light sources. Do not remove the LED covers.

NOTICE

Dirty bulbs have a reduced service life. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not hold new bulbs with your bare hands. Use a clean cloth or something similar, or hold the bulb by its base.

Headlight glass

Condensation can form on the inside of the headlight glass in cool or humid weather. When driving with the lights switched on, the condensation evaporates after a short time. The headlight glass does not need to be changed.

If despite driving with the headlights switched on, increasing humidity forms, for instance water droplets in the light, have the headlights checked.

Front lights

Adaptive LED headlights

All lights feature LED technology.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1539
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

In the case of a malfunction, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

LED headlights

General information

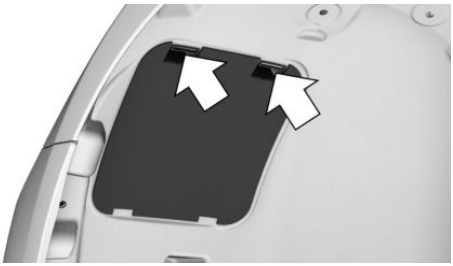
All front lights are designed with LED technology, with the exception of the two turn signals.

In the case of a malfunction, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

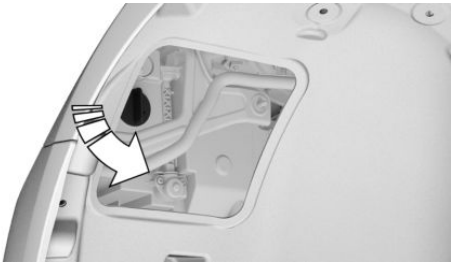
Turn signal, bulb replacement

21-watt bulb, PY21W.

1. In the wheel house, press the two retainer tabs and fold down the cover.



2. Unscrew and remove the bulb holder.



3. Press the bulb gently into the bulb holder, turn counterclockwise and remove it.
4. Insert the new bulb.
5. Mount the bulb holder.
6. Mount the lid.

LED front fog lights

LED front fog lights are made using LED technology.

In the case of a malfunction, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Tail lights

General information

All tail lights are designed with LED technology, with the exception of the two reversing lights in the trunk lid.

In the case of a malfunction, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Reversing light, bulb replacement

General information

21-watt bulb, H21W.

Without a warning triangle: removing the panel

1. Opening trunk lid.
2. Press the latch, arrow 1, and remove the panel, arrow 2.

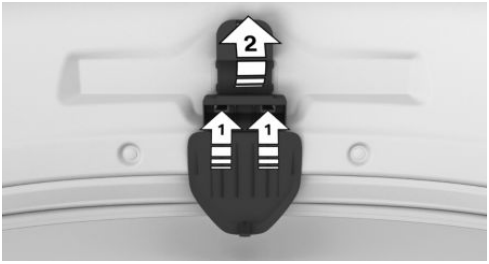
With a warning triangle: removing the holder

1. Opening trunk lid.
2. Remove the warning triangle.

   Warning triangle, refer to page 343.

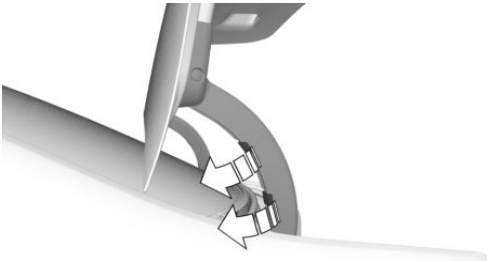
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1540
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

3. Press both retainer tabs in the direction of the arrows, arrows 1, using the screwdriver from the onboard vehicle tool kit and remove the holder of the warning triangle, arrow 2.

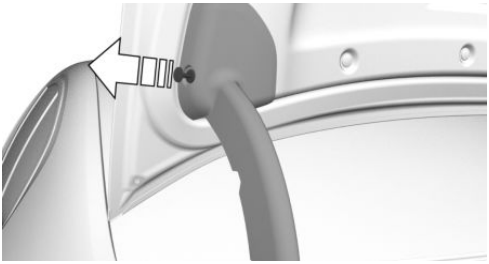


Removing the hinge covers

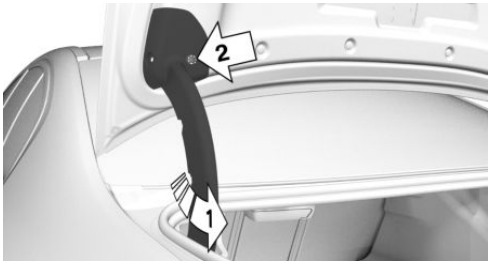
1. Open the two clamps on the hinge cover.



2. On the expanding rivet, carefully pry out the inside pin by a small distance using a screwdriver. Then carefully pry out the expanding rivet all the way using the screwdriver.



3. Carefully lift off the hinge cover from the hinge arm, arrow 1, until the holding pin, arrow 2, behind the trim panel is released.

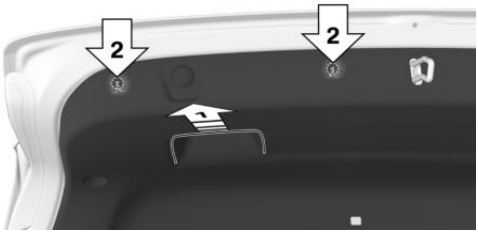


4. Pull the hinge cover downward and remove.
5. Remove the second hinge cover in the same way.

Removing the interior trim

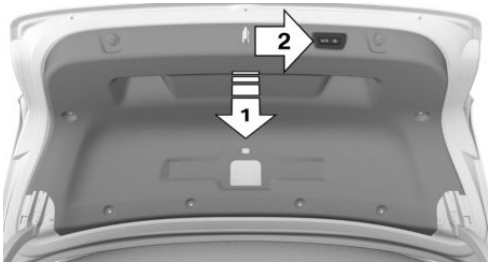
1. Carefully pry out all eight expanding rivets using the screwdriver. Remove the expanding rivets as described above.

2. Reach into the handle recess on one side and carefully pull the interior trim downward, arrow 1, to the point where the two holding pins, arrows 2, behind the interior trim are released.



BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1541
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

3. Proceed accordingly on the other side.
4. Carefully release the interior trim from the trunk lid, arrow 1, and, if necessary, pull the cable with the plug from the switch unit, arrow 2.



5. Remove the interior trim.

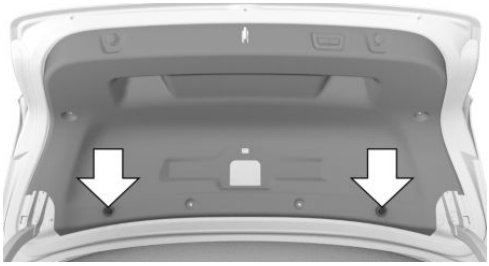
Replacing the reversing light

1. Turn the bulb holder in the direction indicated on the reflector and remove it.

2. Press the bulb gently into the bulb holder, turn counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Mount the bulb holder.

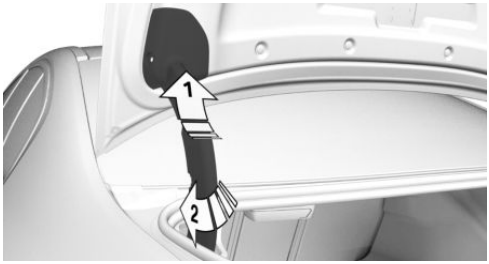
Installing the interior trim

1. Connect the cable to the switch unit, if necessary. Make sure that the plug engages.
2. Position the interior trim on the trunk lid and secure it with two expanding rivets.



3. Press against the interior trim, arrows, so that the four holding pins engage in the trunk lid.

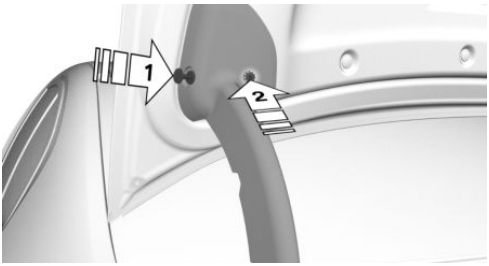
4. Fasten the interior trim using the remaining expanding rivets and press the pins into the expanding rivets.
5. Attach one side of the hinge cover on the interior trim, arrow 1, and fold the hinge cover onto the hinge arm, arrow 2.



6. Fasten the hinge cover using the expanding rivet, arrow 1, and press onto the hinge cover

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1542
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

so that the holding pin engages in the trunk lid, arrow 2.



7. Close the clamps on the hinge cover.
8. Attach the other hinge cover accordingly.
9. Fasten the holder for the warning triangle and attach the warning triangle or mount the panel.

Vehicle battery

General information

The battery is maintenance-free.

More information about the battery can be requested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Warning

Vehicle batteries that are not compatible can damage vehicle systems and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of an accident and damage to property. Only vehicle batteries that are compatible with your vehicle type should be installed in your vehicle. Information on compatible vehicle batteries is available at your dealer's service center.

Register the battery to the vehicle

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you have a service center or another qualified service center or repair shop register the vehicle battery to the vehicle after the battery has been replaced. Once the battery has been registered again, all comfort features will be available without restriction and any Check Control messages displayed which relate to comfort features will disappear.

Charging the battery

General information

Make sure that the battery is always sufficiently charged to guarantee that the battery remains usable for its full service life.

A discharged battery is indicated by a red indicator light.

Charge the battery in the following situations:

- When the inspection glass on the top of the battery is black.
- When the take-off performance is insufficient.

The following circumstances can have a negative effect on the performance of the battery:

- Frequent short-distance drives.
- The vehicle is not used for more than a month.

Safety information

NOTICE

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery can work with high voltages and currents, which means that the 12 volt on-board network can be overloaded or damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.

Charging the battery

Charge the battery only when the engine is off and via the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1543
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Additional information:

Starting aid terminals, refer to page 346.

Power failure

After a power loss, some equipment needs to be newly initialized or individual settings updated, for example:

- With Memory function: store the positions again.
- Time: update.
- Date: update.
- Glass sunroof: initialize the system.

Disposing of old batteries

Have old batteries disposed of by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take them to a collection point.

Maintain the filled battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Secure the battery so that it does not tip over during transport.

Fuses

General information

The fuses are located at different places in the vehicle.

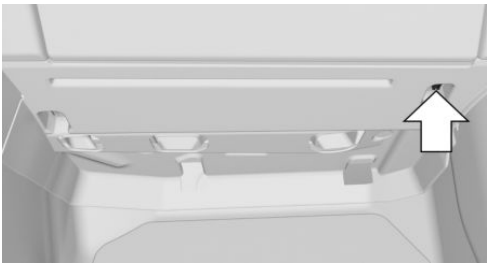
Safety information

Warning

Incorrect and repaired fuses can overload electrical lines and components. There is a risk of fire. Never attempt to repair a blown fuse. Do not replace a nonworking fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating.

In the car's interior

The fuses are located in the car's interior in the front passenger floor area behind a cover.



Release mounting, arrow, and carefully bend the trim panel down on the right side.

The fuse box is located on the front right.

In the cargo area

The fuses are located in the cargo area on the right side behind a cover.

Remove the cover on the right side trim.

The fuse box may be located behind the sound insulation.

Information on the fuse types and locations, as well as the positions of any other fuse boxes, is available on the Internet: www.bmw.com/fusecard.

Where applicable, information on the fuse types and locations is also found on a separate sheet in the fuse box.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1544
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Additional fuse boxes

Additional fuse boxes are located in the vehicle. In the case of a malfunction, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Replacing fuses

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop replace the fuses.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1545
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Breakdown assistance

Vehicle features and options

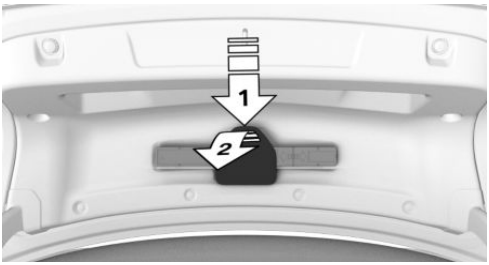
This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Hazard warning flashers

The button is located in the center console.

The red light in the button flashes when the hazard warning flashers are activated.

Warning triangle



The warning triangle is located on the inside of the trunk lid.

Press on the release, arrow 1, and swivel the cover down, arrow 2.

First-aid kit

General information

Some of the articles have a limited service life.

Check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace any expired items promptly.

Storage

The first-aid kit is located in the net on the left side of the cargo area.

BMW Roadside Assistance

Concept

Contact the BMW Group Roadside Assistance if assistance is needed in the event of a breakdown.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1546
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

General information

In the event of a breakdown, data on the vehicle's condition is transmitted to the BMW Roadside Assistance.

There are various ways of contacting BMW Roadside Assistance.

- Via a Check Control message.

  Supplementary SMS text messages, refer to page 143.
- Calling with a mobile phone.
- Via the BMW Connected app.

Functional requirements

- Active ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- Cellular network reception.
- Standby state is switched on.

Starting manually

If the vehicle is equipped with Teleservices, support is offered through Teleservice Diagnosis.

Via iDrive:

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "BMW Assist"
4. If necessary, "BMW Roadside Assistance"

   A voice connection is established.

Teleservice Diagnosis

Teleservice Diagnosis enables the wireless transmission of detailed vehicle data that is important for vehicle diagnosis. This data is transmitted automatically. It may be necessary to approve this on the Control Display.

Teleservice Help

Depending on the country, Teleservice Help enables an in-depth diagnosis of the vehicle by BMW Roadside Assistance via wireless transmission.

You can launch Teleservice Help by requesting it through BMW Roadside Assistance.

1. Park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Set the parking brake.
3. Control Display is switched on.
4. Confirm Teleservice Help.

BMW Accident Assistance

Concept

BMW Group Accident Assistance can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of an accident.

General information

If the vehicle sensors detect a minor to moderately severe accident, which did not trigger any airbags, a Check Control message appears on the instrument cluster. In addition, a text message appears on the Control Display.

When BMW Accident Assistance is activated, data on the vehicle's condition is sent to BMW.

Functional requirements

- Active ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- Cellular network reception.
- Standby state is switched on.

Starting BMW Accident Assistance

If an accident is detected automatically

A text message relating to BMW Accident Assistance appears on the Control Display.

The connection can be established directly:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1547
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

"Call BMW Accident Assistance"

The Check Control message for BMW Accident Assistance can also be called up from the stored Check Control messages for a certain length of time.

Additional information:

Check Control, refer to page 142.

Starting manually

BMW Accident Assistance can also be contacted independently of the automatic accident detection function.

Via iDrive:

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "BMW Assist"
4. "BMW Accident Assistance"

   Follow the displays on the Control Display. A voice connection is established.

Emergency Request

Intelligent emergency call

Concept

In case of an emergency, an Emergency Request can be triggered automatically by the system or manually.

General information

Only press the SOS button in an emergency.

The Intelligent Assist system establishes a connection with the BMW Response Center.

For technical reasons, the Emergency Request cannot be guaranteed under unfavorable conditions.

Overview

SOS button.

Functional requirements

- Standby state is switched on.
- The Assist system is functional.
- If the vehicle is equipped with intelligent emergency call: the SIM card integrated in the vehicle has been activated.

Automatic triggering

Under certain conditions, for instance if the airbags trigger, an Emergency Request is automatically initiated immediately after an accident of corresponding severity. Automatic Collision Notification is not affected by pressing the SOS button.

Manual triggering

1. Tap the cover.
2. Press and hold the SOS button until the LED in the area of the button illuminates green.

- The LED is illuminated green when an Emergency Request has been initiated.

  If a cancel prompt appears on the Control Display, the Emergency Request can be aborted.

  If the situation allows, wait in your vehicle until the voice connection has been established.

- The LED flashes green when a connection to the BMW Response Center has been established.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1548
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

The BMW Response Center then makes contact with the occupants of the vehicle and initiates further steps to help.

Even if you are unable to respond, the BMW Response Center can take further steps to help you under certain circumstances.

For this purpose, data that serves to determine the necessary rescue measures, for instance the current position of the vehicle when it can be determined, is transmitted to the BMW Response Center.

Even if the BMW Response Center is no longer heard through the loudspeakers, the BMW Response Center may still be able to hear the occupants of the vehicle.

The BMW Response Center ends the Emergency Request.

Jump-starting

General information

If the battery is discharged, the engine can be started using the battery of another vehicle and two jumper cables. Only use jumper cables with fully insulated clamp handles.

Safety information

⚠ DANGER

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.

⚠ Warning

If the jumper cables are connected in the incorrect order, sparking may occur. There is a risk of injury. Pay attention to the correct order during connection.

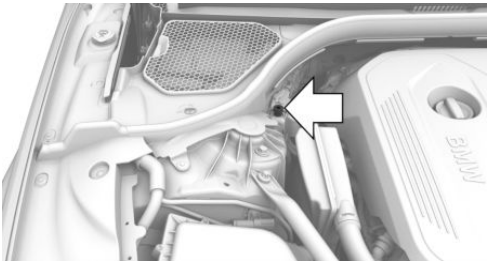
⚠ NOTICE

In the case of body contact between the two vehicles, a short circuit can occur during jump-starting. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that no body contact occurs.

Preparation

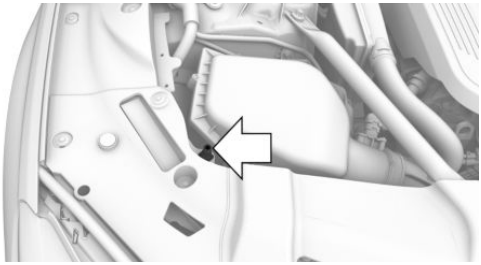
1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts. The voltage information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any electronic systems/power consumers in both vehicles.

Starting aid terminals



The starting aid terminal in the engine compartment acts as the battery's positive terminal.

Open the cover of the starting aid terminal.



A special nut serves as the negative terminal of the battery.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1549
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Connecting the cables

Before you begin, switch off all unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers, such as the radio, on the assisting and receiving vehicle.

1. Open the cover of the starting aid terminal.
2. Attach one terminal clamp of the positive jumper cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the terminal clamp on the other end of the cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one terminal clamp of the negative jumper cable to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of assisting vehicle.
5. Attach the second terminal clamp to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

Starting the engine

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.

1. Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run for several minutes at an increased idle speed.
2. Start the engine of the vehicle that is to be started in the usual way.

   If the first starting attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before making another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.
3. Let both engines run for several minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables in the reverse order.

Check the battery and recharge, if needed.

Tow-starting and towing

Safety information

Warning

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

Steptronic transmission: transporting the vehicle

General information

The vehicle is not permitted to be towed.

Safety information

NOTICE

The vehicle can be damaged when towing the vehicle with a single lifted axle. There is a risk of damage to property. The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.

NOTICE

The vehicle can become damaged when lifting and securing it.

There is a risk of damage to property.

- ▷ Lift the vehicle using suitable means.
- ▷ Do not lift or secure the vehicle by its tow fitting, body parts, or suspension parts.

Pushing the vehicle

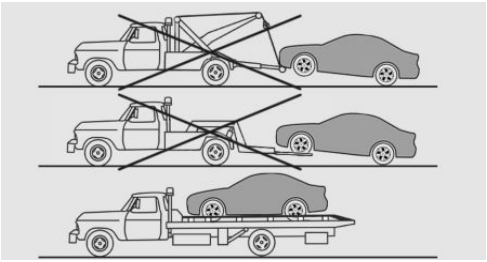
To remove a broken-down vehicle from the danger area, it can be pushed for a short distance.

Additional information:

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 135.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1550
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Tow truck



The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.

Towing other vehicles

General information

Switch on the hazard warning system, depending on local regulations.

If the electrical system has failed, clearly identify the vehicle being towed by placing a sign or a warning triangle in the rear window.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

If the approved gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is lighter than the vehicle to be towed, the tow fitting can tear off or it will not be possible to control the vehicle's response. There is a risk of accident. Make sure that the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is heavier than the vehicle to be towed.

⚠ NOTICE

If the tow bar or tow rope is attached incorrectly, damage to other vehicle parts can occur. There is a risk of damage to property. Correctly attach the tow bar or tow rope to the tow fitting.

Tow bar

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles.

Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an offset angle, please follow the following:

- Maneuvering capability is limited going around corners.
- The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is secured with an offset.

Tow rope

Observe the following notes when using the tow rope:

- Use nylon ropes or straps, which will enable the vehicle to be towed without jerking.
- Make sure the tow rope is not twisted when fastening.
- Check the fastening of the tow fitting and tow rope in regular intervals.
- Do not exceed a towing speed of 30 mph/50 km/h.
- Do not exceed a towing distance of 3 miles/5 km.
- When starting to tow the vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

Tow fitting

General information

The screw-in tow fitting should always be carried in the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1551
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

The tow fitting can be screwed in at the front or rear of the vehicle.

The tow fitting is found in the onboard vehicle tool kit.

- Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle and screw it all the way in.
- Use the tow fitting for towing on paved roads only.
- Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, for instance do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting.
- Check the fastening of the tow fitting in regular intervals.

Additional information:

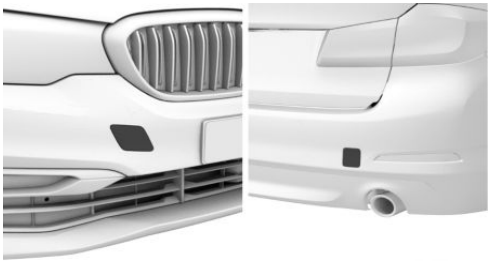
Onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 335.

Safety information

NOTICE

If the tow fitting is not used as intended, there may be damage to the vehicle or to the tow fitting. There is a risk of damage to property. Follow the notes on using the tow fitting.

Screw thread for tow fitting



Press on the mark on the edge of the cover to push it out.

Tow-starting

Do not tow-start the vehicle.

Start the engine by jump-starting, if possible.

Have the reasons for the starting difficulties corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Jump-starting, refer to page 346.

Care

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Washing the vehicle

General information

Regularly remove foreign objects such as leaves in the area below the windshield when the hood is raised.

Wash your vehicle frequently, particularly in winter. Intense soiling and road salt can damage the vehicle.

Steam blaster and high-pressure washer

Safety information

NOTICE

When cleaning with high-pressure washers, components can be damaged due to the pressure or temperatures being too high. There is a risk of damage to property. Maintain sufficient distance and do not spray too long continuously. Follow the operating instructions for the high-pressure washer.

Distances and temperature

- Maximum temperature: 140 °F/60 °C.
- Minimum distance from sensors, cameras, seals: 12 inches/30 cm.
- Minimum distance from glass sunroof: 31.5 in/80 cm.

Automatic vehicle washes

Safety information

NOTICE

Improper use of automatic washing systems or car washes can cause damage to the vehicle. There is a risk of damage to property. Follow the following instructions:

- Give preference to cloth car washes or those that use soft brushes in order to avoid paint damage.
- Do not drive through a car wash with guide rails higher than 4 in/10 cm to avoid damage to the chassis.
- Observe the tire width of the guide rail to avoid damage to tires and rims.
- Fold in exterior mirrors to avoid damage to the exterior mirrors.
- Deactivate the wiper and, if necessary, rain sensor to avoid damage to the wiper system.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1553
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Driving into a car wash with a Steptronic transmission

Safety information

NOTICE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not switch standby state off in vehicle washes.

General information

In a car wash, the vehicle must be able to roll freely.

Some car washes do not permit persons in the vehicle. The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside when in selector lever position N. A signal sounds when an attempt is made to lock the vehicle.

Additional information:

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 135.

Driving out of a car wash

Ensure that the vehicle key is in the car.

Switch on drive-ready state.

Additional information:

Drive-ready state, refer to page 38.

Headlights

Do not rub wet headlights dry and do not use abrasive or acidic cleaning agents.

Soak areas that have been dirtied, for instance from insects, with shampoo and wash off with water.

Thaw ice with de-icing spray; do not use an ice scraper.

After washing the vehicle

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them; otherwise, braking action can be reduced. The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Completely remove all residues on the windows, to minimize loss of visibility due to smearing and to reduce wiper noises and wiper blade wear.

Vehicle care

Vehicle care products

General information

BMW recommends using vehicle care and cleaning products from BMW. Suitable care products are available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Warning

Cleansers can contain substances that are dangerous and harmful to your health. There is a risk of injury. When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows. Only use products intended for cleaning vehicles. Follow the instructions on the container.

Vehicle paint

General information

Regular care contributes to driving safety and value retention. Environmental influences in areas with elevated air pollution or natural contaminants, such as tree resin or pollen can affect the vehicle's paintwork. Tailor the frequency and extent of your vehicle care to these influences.

Aggressive substances such as spilled fuel, oil, grease or bird droppings, must be removed immediately to prevent the finish from being altered or discolored.

Matte finish

Only use cleaning and care products suitable for vehicles with matte finish.

Leather care

Remove dust from the leather regularly, using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Otherwise, particles of dust and road grime chafe in pores and folds, and lead to increased wear and premature degradation of the leather surface.

To guard against discoloration, such as from clothing, clean leather and provide leather care roughly every two months.

Clean light-colored leather more frequently because soiling on such surfaces is substantially more visible.

Use leather care products; otherwise, dirt and grease will gradually break down the protective layer of the leather surface.

Upholstery material care

General information

Vacuum the upholstery regularly with a vacuum cleaner.

If upholstery is very dirty, for instance with beverage stains, use a soft sponge or microfiber cloth with a suitable interior cleaner.

Clean the upholstery down to the seams using large sweeping motions. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.

Safety information

NOTICE

Open Velcro® fasteners on articles of clothing can damage the seat covers. There is a risk of damage to property. Ensure that any Velcro® fasteners are closed.

Caring for special components

Light-alloy wheels

When cleaning the vehicle, use only neutral wheel cleaners having a pH value from 5 to 9. Do not use abrasive cleaning agents or steam jets above 140 °F/60 °C. Follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Aggressive, acidic or alkaline cleaning agents can destroy the protective layer of adjacent components, such as the brake disc.

After cleaning, apply the brakes briefly to dry them. The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Chrome surfaces

Carefully clean Chrome surfaces, especially in case of exposure to road salt, with plenty of water and added cleanser as needed.

Rubber components

Environmental influences can cause surface soiling of rubber parts and a loss of gloss. Use only water and suitable cleaning agents for cleaning.

Treat especially worn rubber parts with rubber care agents at regular intervals. When cleaning rubber seals, do not use any silicon-containing vehicle care products in order to avoid damage or noises.

Fine wood parts

Clean fine wood facing and fine wood components only with a moist rag. Then dry with a soft cloth.

Kenaf

Only treat parts made of Kenaf fibers using suitable care products.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1555
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Plastic components

NOTICE

Cleansers that contain alcohol or solvents, such as lacquer thinners, heavy-duty grease removers, fuel, or such, can damage plastic parts. There is a risk of damage to property. Clean with a microfiber cloth. Dampen the cloth lightly with water, if needed.

Clean with a microfiber cloth.

Dampen the cloth lightly with water, if needed.

Do not soak the roofliner.

Safety belts

Warning

Chemical cleansers can destroy the safety belt webbing. Missing protective effect of the safety belts. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Use only a mild soapy solution for cleaning the safety belts.

Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus have a negative impact on safety.

Use only a mild soapy solution for cleaning the installed belt straps.

Safety belts should only be allowed to retract if they are dry.

Carpets and floor mats

Warning

Objects in the driver's floor area can limit the pedal distance or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's floor area. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, for instance for cleaning.

The floor mats can be removed from the car's interior for cleaning.

If the floor carpets are very dirty, clean with a microfiber cloth and water or a textile cleaner. To prevent matting of the carpet, rub back and forth in the direction of travel only.

Sensors and camera lenses

To clean sensors and camera lenses, use a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass detergent.

Displays, screens, and protective glass of the Head-up Display

NOTICE

Chemical cleansers, moisture or fluids of any kind can damage the surface of displays and screens. There is a risk of damage to property. Clean with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth.

NOTICE

The surface of displays can be damaged with improper cleaning. There is a risk of damage to property. Avoid pressure that is too high and do not use any scratching materials.

Clean with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth.

Clean the protective glass of the Head-up Display using a microfiber cloth and commercially available dish-washing soap.

Long-term vehicle storage

When the vehicle is shut down for longer than three months, special measures must be taken. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1556
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Technical data

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

General information

The technical data and specifications in the Owner's Manual are used as guidance values. The vehicle-specific data can deviate from this, for instance due to the selected special equipment, country version or country-specific measurement method. Detailed values can be found in the approval documents, on labels on the vehicle or can be obtained from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Dimensions

The dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment or country-specific measurement method.

The specified heights do not take into account attached parts, for instance a roof antenna, roof racks or spoiler. The heights can deviate, for instance due to the selected special equipment, tires, load and chassis version.

BMW 5 Series Sedan		
Width with mirrors	in/mm	83.7/2,126
Width without mirrors	in/mm	73.5/1,868
Height	in/mm	57.8-58.2/1,467-1,479
Length	in/mm	194.6-195.4/4,943-4,962
Wheelbase	in/mm	117.1/2,975
Smallest turning radius diam.	ft/m	39.4-40.7/12.0-12.4

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1557
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Weights

530i		
Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs/kg	4,850/2,200
Load	lbs/kg	822/373
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	2,315/1,050
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	2,745/1,245

540i		
Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs/kg	5,060/2,295
Load	lbs/kg	825/374
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	2,480/1,125
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	2,736/1,241

530i xDrive		
Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs/kg	4,976/2,257
Load	lbs/kg	838/380
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	2,425/1,100
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	2,756/1,250

540i xDrive		
Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs/kg	5,181/2,350
Load	lbs/kg	825/374
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	2,590/1,175
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	2,756/1,250

M550i xDrive powered by BMW M		
Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs/kg	5,534/2,510
Load	lbs/kg	785/356

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1558
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

M550i xDrive powered by BMW M		
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	2,789/1,265
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	2,811/1,275

Capacities

BMW 5 Series Sedan		
Fuel tank, approx.	US gal/liters	18.0/68.0

Observe further information on fuel quality, refer to page 326.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1559
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Appendix

General information

Any updates to the Owner's Manual of the vehicle are listed here.

Updates made after the editorial deadline

The following chapters were updated in the printed version of the Owner's Manual after the editorial deadline for the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle had closed:

- Notes: notes: own safety: maintenance.
- Quick Reference Guide: on the road: intermediate stop: topping up the engine oil.
- Operation: driving: Steptronic transmission: manual mode M/S.
- Driving tips: observe when driving: driving on a race track.
- Mobility: operating fluids: engine oil: topping up the engine oil.
- Mobility: operating fluids: coolant: topping up the coolant level.
- Mobility: preventive maintenance: BMW maintenance system.
- Mobility: preventive maintenance: Condition Based Service CBS.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1560

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Everything from A to Z

Index

0-9

3D View, see Surround View 221

A

ABS Antilock Braking System 196
Acceleration Assistant, see Launch Control 138
Accessories and parts 8
Accident Assistance 344
Accident prevention, see Active Protection 193
ACC, see Active Cruise Control 203
Activated charcoal filter 247
Active comfort suspension, see Adaptive Drive 241
Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function ACC 203
Active damping control, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension 242
Active damping control, see Adaptive suspension 241
Active Guard Plus, see Intelligent Safety 168
Active Guard, see Intelligent Safety 168
Active M Sport differential 199
Active PDC, see Emergency brake function 216
Active Protection 193
Active roll stabilization 241
Active seat ventilation 116
Active Steering, integral 199
Active Voice Recognition 48
Adaptive brake assistant 196
Adaptive Drive 241
Adaptive Light Control 159
Adaptive M chassis/suspension 242
Adaptive M suspension Professional 242
ADAPTIVE, see Driving Dynamics Control 127
Adaptive suspension 241
Additives, engine oil types 329
Adjusting engine sound 242
Adjusting menu contents, iDrive 45
Adjusting sound of the engine 242
Adjustments, steering wheel 113
Airbags 164
Airbags, indicator and warning light 166
Air circulation, see Recirculated-air mode 246
Air conditioning, climate 245
Air distribution, manual 247
Air drying, see Air conditioning 245
Air flow, automatic climate control 246
Air outlets, see Ventilation 248
Air pressure, tires 290
Air quality 243
Alarm system 95
Alarm, unintentional 97
All-season tires, see Winter tires 301
All-wheel-drive, see xDrive 198
Amazon Alexa Car Integration 51
Ambient air package 252
Ambient light 162
Animal detection, see Night Vision 178
Antifreeze, see Washer fluid 331
Antilock Braking System ABS 196
Anti-slip control, see DSC 196
Anti-theft protection, locking 79
Anti-theft protection, lug bolt lock 318
Apple CarPlay preparation, connection to the vehicle 74
Approach control warning with City braking function 169
Approved axle load 355
Apps, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Ashtray 259
Assistance when driving off, see Drive-off assistant 196
Assistance with breakdown 343
AUC Automatic Recirculating Air Control 246
Audio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
AUTO H button, see Parking brake 127

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1561
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Automatic activation, see Individual activation 116
Automatic climate control 243
Automatic Curb Monitor, exterior mirror 112
Automatic deactivation, front-seat passenger airbags 167
Automatic headlight control 157
Automatic Hold, see Parking brake 127
Automatic locking 95
Automatic Recirculating Air Control AUC 246
Automatic transmission, see Steptronic transmission 134
Automatic unlocking 95
Automating routines, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 53
AUTO program, automatic climate control 245
AUTO program, intensity 246
Auto Start/Stop function 122
Average consumption, see Trip data 152
Axle loads, weights 355

B

Backrest curvature, see Lumbar support 105
Backrest, seats 103
Backrest tilt 104
Backrest, width 105
Bandages, see First-aid kit 343
Bar for tow-starting/towing 348
Battery, disposing of 341
Battery, vehicle 340
Being towed, see Tow-starting and towing 347
Belts, see Safety belts 106
Beverage holder, see Cup holders 268
Blind spot collision warning 185
Blocking, power window, see Safety switch 98
Bluetooth connection 71
Blu-ray, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
BMW Assist, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
BMW display key 82
BMW display key, malfunction 86
BMW Gesture Control 53
BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 52
BMW maintenance system 333
BMW Roadside Assistance 343
Bonus range, ECO PRO 284
Bottle holder, see Cup holders 268
Bracket, flag 279
Brake assistant 196
Brake assistant, adaptive 196
Brake discs, see Brake system 276
Brake pads, see Brake system 276
Brake system 276
Braking, information 278
Breakdown assistance 343
Breaking in 276
Break recommendation, see Fatigue alert 194
Brightness, Control Display 63
Buttons on the steering wheel 32
Button, SOS, see Intelligent emergency call 345
Button, Start/Stop 122
Bypassing, see Jump-starting 346

C

Cable for tow-starting/towing 348
California Proposition 65 Warning 8
Call, gesture control 54
Camera-based assistance systems, see Intelligent Safety 168
Camera lenses, care 353
Camera, rearview camera, without Surround View 219
Camera, see Surround View 221
CANCEL button, Active Cruise Control 203
CANCEL button, Cruise control 200
Can holder, see Cup holders 268
Care, Head-up Display 353
Care, light-alloy wheels 352
Care of displays, screens 353
Care, see Vehicle washing 350
Care, vehicle 351
Cargo area 270
Cargo area, enlarging 273
Cargo area with emergency wheel, enlarging 274
Cargo, stowing and securing 271
Cargo straps, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 271

Caring Car, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 53
Car key, see Vehicle key 78
Carpet, care 353
CarPlay, connection to the vehicle 74
Car seats, see Transporting children safely 117
Cartridge replacement, see Ambient air package 252
Car wash lines 350
Car wash systems 350
Catalytic converter, see Hot exhaust gas system 277
CBS Condition Based Service 333
Cell phone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Center armrest, front 268
Center console 34
Central Information Display (CID), see Control Display 43
Central locking system 88
Central screen, see Control Display 43
Changes, technical, see For Your Own Safety 8
Changing parts 335
Changing wheels 317
Changing, wheels and tires 299
Charging smartphone, see Wireless charging tray 263
Charging tray for smartphones, see Wireless charging tray 263
Chassis/suspension, electronic, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension 242
Chassis number, see Vehicle identification number 12
Check Control 142
Checking the engine oil level electronically 327
Children, seating position 117
Children, transporting safely 117
Child restraint system LATCH 119
Child restraint systems, mounting 118
Child restraint systems, see Transporting children safely 117
Child safety locks 121
Child seat, mounting 118
Child seats, see Transporting children safely 117
Chrome-plated surfaces, care 352
Chrome surfaces, care 352
Cigarette lighter 260
Cigarette lighter, front 260
Cigarette lighter, rear 260
Cleaning displays, screens 353
Cleaning, Head-up Display 353
Clearance, water 277
Climate control 243
Clothes hooks 269
Coasting 284
Coasting with engine decoupled, see Coasting 284
Coasting with idling engine 284
Combination switch, see Turn signals 130
Combination switch, see Washer/wiper system 131
Comfort Access 88
COMFORT, see Driving Dynamics Control 125
Communication, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Compact wheel, see Emergency wheel 321
Comparison of entries, see Entry comparison 41
Compartments, doors 267
Compatible devices, see Suitable devices 71
Compressor 303
Concierge Service, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Condensation water under the parked vehicle 279
Condensation, windshield 247
Condition Based Service CBS 333
Confirmation signal from the vehicle 94
Connected Command, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 53
ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Connecting device 70
Connecting electrical devices, see Sockets 260
Connecting, mobile devices 70
Connections, Screen Mirroring 75
Consumption display, ECO PRO 284
Consumption display, widget in the instrument cluster 141
Consumption, see Current consumption 141
Consumption, see Trip data 152

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1563
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Contacts, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Container for washer fluid 331
Continued driving with a flat tire 313, 316
Control Display 43
Control Display, brightness 63
Controller 43
Control systems, driving stability 196
Convenient closing, vehicle key 80
Convenient opening, vehicle key 79
Coolant 330
Coolant level 331
Coolant temperature, see Engine temperature 148
Cooling, maximum 245
Cooling system 330
Cornering light 159
Corrosion on brake discs 279
Cosmetic mirror 259
Cross traffic warning 238
Cruise control 200
Cruise control, active with Stop&Go function 203
Cruise control, see Active Cruise Control 203
Cruise control with distance control, see Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function 203
Cruise control without distance control, see Cruise control 200
Cruising range 148
Cup holder 268
Cup holder, front 268
Cup holder, rear 268
Current consumption 141
Customer service, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

D

Damage, tires 299
Damping control active, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension 242
Damping control, active, see Adaptive suspension 241
Data memory 10
Data protection, settings 65
Data, see Deleting personal data 65
Data, technical 354
Date 61
Daytime running lights 159
DCC, see Cruise control 200
Defrosting, see Defrosting windshield 247
Defrosting, windshield 247
Deleting personal data 65
Departure schedule, see Parked-car ventilation 250
Departure time, parked-car ventilation 252
Device list 76
Diagnosis connection 334
Differential lock 199
Dimensions 354
Dimensions, see Technical data 354
Dimmable exterior mirrors 112
Dimmable interior mirror 112
Direct dial buttons, see Programmable memory buttons 42
Direction indicator, see Turn signals 130
Display, iDrive 40
Display in the windshield, see Head-up Display 154
Display key 82
Display key, malfunction 86
Display key, see BMW display key 82
Display lighting, see Instrument lighting 162
Displays 140
Displays and symbols 7
Displays, ECO PRO 284
Disposal, coolant 331
Disposal, vehicle battery 341
Distance control, see PDC 214
Door opening angle, Surround View 223
Drive-off assistant 196
Drive-off assistant, see DSC 196
Driver activity, see Driver Attention Camera 63
Driver assistance, driving, see Intelligent Safety 168
Driver assistance, see Intelligent Safety 168
Driver Attention Camera 63
Drive-ready state, engine start 38
Drive-ready state, idle state, and standby state 37
Driver profiles 66
Driver profile, setup 66

Driver profiles, welcome screen 66
Driving 122
Driving Assistant, see Intelligent Safety 168
Driving comfort 241
Driving Dynamics Control 125
Driving instructions, breaking in 276
Driving mode, ECO PRO 282
Driving mode, see Driving Dynamics Control 125
Driving notes, general 277
Driving stability control systems 196
Driving style analysis, ECO PRO 286
Driving through water 277
Driving tips 277
DSC Dynamic Stability Control 196
DTC Dynamic Traction Control 198
Dynamic damping, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension 242
Dynamic damping, see Adaptive suspension 241
Dynamic Stability Control DSC 196
Dynamic Traction Control DTC 198

E

ECO PRO 282
ECO PRO, bonus range 284
ECO PRO, Driving style analysis 286
ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL, see Driving Dynamics Control 125
ECO PRO, see Driving Dynamics Control 125
Efficiency display, widget in the instrument cluster 141
Electronic oil measurement 327
Electronic Stability Program ESP, see DSC 196
E-mail, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Emergency brake function when parking, Active PDC 216
Emergency braking, see PostCrash - iBrake 194
Emergency Request 345
Emergency service, see Accident Assistance 344
Emergency service, see BMW Roadside Assistance 343
Emergency unlocking, fuel filler flap 289
Emergency unlocking, transmission lock 138
Emergency unlocking, trunk lid 94
Emergency wheel 321
Energy recovery 141
Energy savings, see Gear shift indicator 150
Engine, automatic Start/Stop function 122
Engine compartment 323
Engine coolant 330
Engine idling when driving, see Coasting 284
Engine oil, adding 328
Engine oil change 330
Engine oil filler neck 328
Engine oil temperature 148
Engine oil types to add 329
Engine start, see Drive-ready state 38
Engine start, see Jump-starting 346
Engine temperature 148
Entering a destination, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Entering an address, navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Entertainment, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Entry comparison 41
Equipment, interior 256
Error indicators, see Check Control 142
ESP Electronic Stability Program, see DSC 196
Evasion Assistant 173
Exchanging, wheels and tires 299
Exhaust gas system 277
Exhaustion warner 194
Exhaust, see Exhaust gas system 277
Exterior lighting during unlocking 79
Exterior lighting with the vehicle locked 80
Exterior mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor 112
Exterior mirror, automatic dimming feature 112
Exterior mirrors 111
Exterior mirrors, malfunction 111
External start, see Jump-starting 346
External temperature 148
Eyelet for towing 348
Eyes, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 271

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1565
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

F

Factory settings, see Reset vehicle configuration 64
Failure message, see Check Control 142
False alarm, see Avoiding unintentional alarms 97
Fan, see Air flow 246
Fastening safety belts, see Safety belts 106
Fatigue alert 194
Fault indicators, see Check Control 142
Filler neck for engine oil 328
Fine wood parts, care 352
First-aid kit 343
First Steps, see Setup Wizard 66
Flag bracket 279
Flat tire, changing wheels 317
Flat tire, continued driving 313, 316
Flat tire, Flat Tire Monitor TPM 314
Flat tire message, FTM 315
Flat tire message, Tire Pressure Monitor 310
Flat Tire Monitor TPM 314
Flat tire, repairing 302
Flat tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor 307
Flat tire warning light, FTM 315
Flat tire warning light, see Tire Pressure Monitor 310
Flooding, driving through 277
Floor carpet, care 353
Floor mats, care 353
Fold-away position of the wipers 133
Foot brake 278
Forward collision mitigation, see Intelligent Safety 168
For Your Own Safety 8
Fragrance cartridge, see Ambient air package 252
Fragrance, see Ambient air package 252
Fragrancing, see Ambient air package 252
Front airbags 164
Front collision mitigation 169
Front collision mitigation, see Approach Control Warning 169
Front collision mitigation, see Pedestrian Warning 176
Front fog lights 161
Front fog lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 336
Front lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 336
Front-seat passenger airbags, automatic deactivation 167
Front-seat passenger airbags, indicator light 167
Front seats 103
Fuel 326
Fuel cap 288
Fuel filler flap 288
Fuel filler flap, unlocking manually 289
Fuel gauge 147
Fuel quality 326
Fuel recommendation 326
Fuel, tank capacity 356
Fuel, tank capacity, see Technical data 354
Fuses 341

G

Garage door opener, see Integrated Universal Remote Control 256
Gasoline 326
Gear change, Steptronic transmission 134
Gear shift indicator 150
General driving notes 277
General settings 60
Gesture Control 53
Gestures, see BMW Gesture Control 53
Glare shield, see Sun visor 259
Glass sunroof, electric 99
Glass sunroof, initialize the system 101
Glove compartment 266
GPS, navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Gross vehicle weight, approved 355

H

Handbrake, see Parking brake 127
Hand-held transmitter, alternating code 257
Hands-free device, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Hazard warning flashers 343
Head airbags 165
Headlight control, automatic 157

Headlight flasher 131
Headlight glass 336
Headlights, care 351
Headlights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 336
Head restraints and seats 103
Head restraints, front 108
Head restraints, rear 110
Head-up Display 154
Head-up Display, care 353
Head-up Display, store position, see Memory function 113
Heated steering wheel 113
Heated steering wheel, individual activation 116
Heavy cargo, stowing 271
High-beam Assistant 160
High beams 131
High beams/low beams, see High-beam Assistant 160
Hills 278
Hill start assistant, see Drive-off assistant 196
Holder for beverages, see Cup holders 268
HomeLink, see Integrated Universal Remote Control 256
Homepage, see Internet 6
Hood 324
Horn 32
Hot exhaust gas system 277
Humidity in the headlight, see Headlight glass 336
Hydroplaning 277

I

iBrake - PostCrash 194
Ice warning, see External temperature 148
Icy roads, see External temperature 148
Identification marks, tires 297
Identification number, see Vehicle identification number 12
Idle state, standby state, and drive-ready state 37
iDrive 40
ID transmitter, see Vehicle key 78
Ignition key, see Vehicle key 78
Indicator/warning lights 143
Individual activation 116
Individual air distribution 247
Individual settings, see Driver profiles 66
Inductive charging, smartphone, see Wireless charging tray 263
Inflation pressure, tires 290
Inflation pressure warning TPM, tires 314
Information 6
Information window, Control Display 63
Initialization, Flat Tire Monitor FTM 315
Initialization, Tire Pressure Monitor 309
Input, iDrive 40
Instrument cluster 140
Instrument lighting 162
Integral Active Steering 199
Integrated key 87
Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle 14
Integrated Universal Remote Control 256
Intelligent emergency call 345
Intelligent Personal Assistant 52
Intelligent Safety 168
Intended use 8
Intensity, AUTO program 246
Interior camera, see Driver Attention Camera 63
Interior equipment 256
Interior lights 162
Interior lights during unlocking 79
Interior lights with the vehicle locked 80
Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature 112
Interior mirrors 112
Interior motion sensor 96
Internet connection 73
Internet hotspot 73
Internet page 6
Interval display, see Service notifications 149
Ionization, see Ambient air package 252

J

Jacking points for the vehicle jack 319
Jam protection system, glass sunroof 101
Jam protection system, windows 98
Joystick, Steptronic transmission 134
Jump-starting 346
Jump-starting terminals 346

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1567

K

Kenaf, care 352
Keyless Go, see Comfort Access 88
Key, mechanical 87
Key, see BMW display key 82
Key, see Vehicle key 78
Kickdown, Steptronic transmission 134
Knee airbag 165

L

Label on recommended tires 300
Lane control assistant 210
Lane control assistant with active side collision protection, see Side collision mitigation 189
Lane departure warning 182
Lane lines, Surround View 223
Lane threshold, warning 182
Language, set on Control Display 62
Laser headlights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 336
Laser high beams 161
Lashing eyes in the cargo area 271
LATCH child restraint fixing system 119
Launch Control 138
Leather care 352
LED front fog lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 336
LED headlights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 336
Letters and numbers, entering 41
Light-alloy wheels, care 352
Light control, adaptive 159
Lighter, cigarettes 260
Lighting 157
Lighting, loudspeaker, see Bowers & Wilkins 163
Light in the exterior mirror, see Blind spot collision warning 185
Light in the exterior mirror, see Cross traffic warning 238
Light replacement, see Lights and bulbs 336
Lights 157
Lights and bulbs 336
Light switch 157
List of all messages 60
Load 271
Loading 270
Loading the cargo area, see Stowing cargo 271
Locking, automatic 95
Locking, see Opening and Closing 78
Locking, settings 94
Locking, vehicle key 79
Lock, lug bolts 318
Loudspeaker lighting, see Bowers & Wilkins 163
Low beams 158
Low beams, automatic, see High-beam Assistant 160
Lower back support 105
Lug bolt lock 318
Luggage rack, see Roof-mounted luggage rack 279
Lumbar support 105

M

Maintenance 333
Maintenance requirements, see Condition Based Service CBS 333
Maintenance, see Service notifications 149
Maintenance system, BMW 333
Make-up mirror 259
Malfunction, BMW display key 86
Malfunction, vehicle key 81
Managing devices 76
Manual brake, see Parking brake 127
Manual control, air distribution 247
Manual control, air flow 246
Manual mode, Steptronic transmission 134
Manual operation, fuel filler flap 289
Map update, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Marking, run-flat tire 301
Massage seat, front 114
Matt paint, care 352
Maximum cooling 245
Maximum speed display, see Speed Limit Info 150
Maximum speed of winter tires 301
M chassis/suspension, adaptive, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension 242

Measuring units 62
Media of the Owner's Manual 14
Medical supplies, see First-aid kit 343
Memory function 113
Menu, instrument cluster, see Selection lists 151
Menus, operating, iDrive 40
Messages 60
Messages, see Check Control 142
Microfilter 247
Minimum tread depth, tires 299
Mobile communication devices in the vehicle 277
Mobile devices, managing 76
Mobile phone, connecting 70
Mobile phone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Mobile Service, see BMW Roadside Assistance 343
Mobility System 302
MODE button, see Active Cruise Control 203
Mode, ECO PRO 282
Modifications, technical, see For Your Own Safety 8
Monitor, see Control Display 43
Mounting of child restraint systems 118
MP3 player, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
M Sport differential, active 199
Multi-function hook 271
Multifunction steering wheel, buttons 32
Multimedia, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Music hard disk, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Music track, gesture control 54

N

Navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Neck restraints, front, see Head restraints front 108
Neck restraints, rear, see Head restraints rear 110
Net, cargo area 272
Neutral cleaner, see Light-alloy wheels 352
New wheels and tires 299
Night Vision device, see Night Vision 178
Night Vision with pedestrian and animal detection 178
No-touch opening and closing of the trunk lid 90
Nylon rope for tow-starting/towing 348

O

OBD Onboard Diagnosis 334
Object detection, see Night Vision 178
Obstacle marking, rearview camera 220
Obstacle marking, Surround View 223
Octane rating, see Recommended fuel grade 327
Odometer, see Trip data 152
Oil, adding 328
Oil change 330
Oil filler neck 328
Oil level, checking electronically 327
Oil service interval, see Service notifications 149
Oil types to add, engine 329
Onboard Computer, see Trip data 152
Onboard Diagnosis OBD 334
Onboard literature, printed 14
Onboard vehicle tool kit 335
On-call service, see Accident Assistance 344
On-call service, see BMW Roadside Assistance 343
Opening and closing 78
Operating concept, iDrive 40
Operation, app 53
Outside air, see AUC 246
Overheating of the engine, see Engine temperature 148
Overwintering, see Long-term vehicle storage 353
Owner's Manual, printed 14
Owner's Manual via voice operation, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 53

P

Paint, car care 351
Pairing, mobile devices, see Connections 70

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1569
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Panic alarm, see Panic mode 96
Panic mode 96
Panorama View, see Surround View 221
Park Distance Control PDC 214
Parked-car ventilation 250
Parking aid, see PDC 214
Parking assistant 229
Parking assistant Plus, see Surround View 221
Parking, Automatic Hold, see Parking brake 127
Parking brake 127
Parking lights 158
Parts and accessories 8
Passenger's side exterior mirror, tilt down, see Automatic Curb Monitor 112
Pathway lighting 158
Pathway lighting, switching on 81
Pathway lines, rearview camera 220
PDC Park Distance Control 214
Pedestrian detection, see Night Vision 178
Performance display, see Sport displays 153
Personal data, deleting 65
Personal profile, see Driver profiles 66
Personal settings 65
Person warning with braking function 176
Phone, connecting 70
Plastic parts, care 353
Possible gestures, gesture control 54
PostCrash - iBrake 194
Power failure 341
Power windows 97
Pressure test tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor 307
Pressure, tires 290
Printed onboard literature 14
Profiles, see Driver profiles 66
Programmable memory buttons, iDrive 42
Protective function, glass sunroof, see Jam protection system 101
Protective function, windows, see Jam protection system 98
Push-and-turn reel, see Controller 43

Q

Queuing Assistant, see Steering and traffic jam assistant 210

R

Racing track 280
Radiator fluid 330
Radio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Rain sensor 132
Rear automatic climate control 249
Rear axle steering, see Integral Active Steering 199
Rear collision preparation 192
Rear collision warning, see Rear collision preparation 192
Rear lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 336
Rear seat backrests, folding down 273
Rear Traffic Alert 229
Rearview camera, see Surround View 221
Rearview camera, without Surround View 219
Rear-view mirrors, exterior 111
Rear-view mirrors, interior 112
Rear window defroster 247
Recirculated-air filter, see Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter 247
Recirculated-air mode 246
Recommended fuel grade 327
Recommended tire brands 300
Refueling 288
Remote 3D View 228
Remote control for audio, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Remote Control Parking 234
Remote control, see Vehicle key 78
Remote control, universal 256
Remote services, app, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Remote Software Upgrade 57
Replacing bulbs, see Lights and bulbs 336
Replacing light diodes, see Lights and bulbs 336
Replacing parts 335
Replacing the battery, vehicle key 81
Replacing, wheels and tires 299
Reporting safety malfunctions 13
RES CNCL button, Active Cruise Control ACC 203

RES CNCL button, Cruise Control 200
Reserve warning, see Range 148
Reset settings, vehicle 64
Reset, Tire Pressure Monitor 309
Reset, vehicle configuration 64
Reset, vehicle settings 64
RESUME button, Active Cruise Control 203
RESUME button, Cruise control 200
Retreaded tires 300
Roadside Assistance, see Accident Assistance 344
Roadside parking lights 158
Roller sunblind, rear window 99
Roller sunblinds, rear side windows 99
Rolling code hand-held transmitter 257
RON recommended fuel grade 327
Roofliner 36
Roof-mounted luggage rack 279
Rope for tow-starting/towing 348
Route, navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
RSC Runflat System, see Runflat tire 301
RTTI, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Rubber components, care 352
Run-flat tire 301

S

Safe braking 278
Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat 108
Safety belt reminder for the rear seats 108
Safety belts 106
Safety belts, care 353
Safety locks, doors and windows 121
Safety package, see Active Protection 193
Safety switch, windows 98
Safety systems, see Airbags 164
Safety systems, see Intelligent Safety 168
Saving fuel 281
Screen Mirroring, connection 75
Screen, see Control Display 43
Screwdriver, see Onboard vehicle tool kit 335
Sealant, see Mobility System 302
Seat heating 115
Seat heating, individual activation 116
Seating position for children 117
Seats and head restraints 103
Seats, front 103
Seat ventilation, individual activation 116
Securing, cargo 271
Selection list in instrument cluster 151
Selector lever, Steptronic transmission 134
Self-supporting tires, see Run-flat tires 301
Sensors, care 353
Service and warranty 9
Service Center, see Accident Assistance 344
Service Center, see BMW Roadside Assistance 343
Service notifications 149
Service requirements, see Condition Based Service CBS 333
Services, ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
SET button, Active Cruise Control 203
SET button, Cruise Control 200
Set speed, see Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function 203
Setting, Control Display 63
Settings, general 60
Settings, locking/unlocking 94
Settings, seats and head restraints 103
Setup Wizard 66
Shift paddles on the steering wheel 134
Shift point indicator, tachometer 147
Side airbag 164
Side collision mitigation 189
Side parking aid, Surround View 223
Side parking aid, Surround View, see Side parking aid 223
Side parking aid without Surround View 217
Side parking aid without Surround View, see Side parking aid 217
Signaling, horn 32
Signals when unlocking, see Confirmation signals from the vehicle 94
Sitting safely 103
Situational adjustment, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 52
Size 354

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1571
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Sizes, see Technical data 354
Ski and snowboard bag 275
Slide/tilt glass roof, see Glass sunroof 99
Smartphone, connecting 70
Smartphone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Smartphone, using via voice activation 51
Smoker's package 259
SMS, see Short messages, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Snow chains 306
Socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis 334
Sockets, electrical devices 260
Soft-close automatic, doors 94
Software Update, see Remote Software Upgrade 57
Software Upgrade, see Remote Software Upgrade 57
SOS button, see Intelligent emergency call 345
Sound output, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Spare tire, see Emergency wheel 321
Special equipment, see Vehicle features and options 7
Speed limit display, see Speed Limit Info 150
Speed Limit Info 150
Speed warning 62
Sport chassis/suspension, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension 242
Sport displays 153
SPORT INDIVIDUAL, see Driving Dynamics Control 125
SPORT PLUS, see Driving Dynamics Control 125
Sport program, Steptronic transmission 134
SPORT, see Driving Dynamics Control 125
Sport suspension, see Adaptive M suspension Professional 242
Stability control systems 196
Standard equipment, see Vehicle features and options 7
Standby state, idle state and drive-ready state 37
Start/stop, automatic function 122
Start/Stop button 122
Starting aid terminals 346
Starting, see Drive-ready state 38
Starting the engine, see Drive-ready state 38
Stations, AM/FM, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Status control display, tires 309
Status information, iDrive 41
Status of Owner's Manual 7
Status, vehicle 154
Steering and traffic jam assistant 210
Steering column adjustment 113
Steering, see Integral Active Steering 199
Steering wheel, adjusting 113
Steering wheel, buttons 32
Steptronic Sport transmission, see Steptronic transmission 134
Steptronic transmission 134
Storage compartment, cargo area 272
Storage compartment, center console 267
Storage compartments 266
Storage compartments, locations 266
Storage, tires 301
Store Mirror position, see Memory function 113
Store seat position, see Memory function 113
Store steering wheel position, see Memory function 113
Storing the vehicle 353
Stowing, cargo 271
Straps for cargo, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 271
Suitable devices 71
Suitable mobile phones 71
Summer tires, tread 298
Sun visor 259
Supplementary Owner's Manuals 14
Supplementary text message 143
Surround View 221
Surround View, gesture control 54
Suspension settings, see Driving Dynamics Control 125
Switches, see Cockpit 32
Switch for driving dynamics, see Driving Dynamics Control 125
Switching off the engine, see Drive-ready state 38
Symbols and displays 7

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1572

SYNC program, automatic climate control 247

T

Tachometer 147
Tail lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 336
Technical changes, see For Your Own Safety 8
Technical data 354
Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Teleservices, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Temperature, automatic climate control 244
Temperature display, see External temperature 148
Temperature, engine oil 148
Text message, see Check Control messages 143
Theft alarm system, see Alarm system 95
Thermal camera, see Night Vision 178
Thigh support 105
Through-loading system 273
Tilt alarm sensor 96
Tilt, backrest 104
Tilt down, passenger's side exterior mirror, see Automatic Curb Monitor 112
Time 61
Tire brands, recommended 300
Tire damage 299
Tire identification marks 297
Tire inflation pressure 290
Tire inflation pressure monitoring, see TPM 314
Tire inflation pressure monitor TPM 314
Tire pressure 290
Tire Pressure Monitor 307
Tire Pressure Monitor, reset 309
Tire repair kit, see Mobility System 302
Tires and wheels 290
Tires, changing 299
Tire sealant, see Mobility System 302
Tire settings 308
Tires, run-flat 301
Tire tread 298
Tone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Tool 335
Top View, see Surround View 221
Torque display, see Sport displays 153
Total vehicle weight 355
Touchpad, Controller 46
Tow bar 348
Tow fitting 348
Towing 347
Tow rope 348
Tow-starting 347
TPM Flat Tire Monitor 314
Traction control 198
TRACTION, driving dynamics 198
Traffic bulletins, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Traffic Jam Assist, see Steering and traffic jam assistant 210
Transmission lock, electronic unlocking 138
Transmission, see Steptronic transmission 134
Transporting children safely 117
Tread, tires 298
Trip data 152
Triple turn signal activation 130
Trip odometer, see Trip data 152
Trunk, emergency unlocking 94
Trunk lid 92
Trunk lid, emergency unlocking 94
Trunk lid, opening and closing with no-touch activation 90
Trunk lid, see Trunk lid 92
Trunk lid, vehicle key 80
Trunk, see Cargo area 270
Turning circle line, Surround View 223
Turning radius lines, rearview camera 220
Turn signal, indicator light 146
Turn signal, replacing bulbs, see Lights and bulbs 336
Turn signals, high beams, headlight flasher 130

U

Unintentional alarm, avoiding 97
Units, see Measuring units 62
Universal remote control 256
Unlock button, Steptronic transmission 134
Unlocking, automatic 95
Unlocking, see Opening and Closing 78

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1573
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

Unlocking, settings 94
Unlocking, vehicle key 79
Updates made after the editorial deadline 7
Upgrade, see Remote Software Upgrade 57
Upholstery material care 352
Upper backrest, front 105
USB connection 73
USB port, position in vehicle 262
Used battery, disposing of 341
Use, intended 8

V

Vanity mirror 259
Variable steering, see Integral Active Steering 199
Vehicle battery 340
Vehicle breakdown, see Breakdown assistance 343
Vehicle, breaking in 276
Vehicle care 351
Vehicle care products 351
Vehicle configuration, reset 64
Vehicle features and options 7
Vehicle identification number 12
Vehicle key 78
Vehicle key, additional 81
Vehicle key, integrated key 87
Vehicle key, loss 81
Vehicle key, malfunction 81
Vehicle key, replacing the battery 81
Vehicle key with display, malfunction 86
Vehicle key with display, see BMW display key 82
Vehicle paint, care 351
Vehicle status 154
Vehicle storage 353
Vehicle washing 350
Ventilation 248
Ventilation, see Parked-car ventilation 250
Venting, see Ventilation 248
Vent, see Ventilation 248
Version Software, see Remote Software Upgrade 57
Video, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
VIN, see Vehicle identification number 12
Voice activation 48
Voice activation, gesture control 54
Voice activation, see BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 52
Voice command response 48
Voice recognition, see Active Voice Recognition 48
Volume, gesture control 54

W

Wake word 48
Warning/indicator lights 143
Warning against cross traffic 238
Warning light in the exterior mirror, see Blind spot collision warning 185
Warning light in the exterior mirror, see Cross traffic warning 238
Warning messages, see Check Control 142
Warning triangle 343
Warranty 8
Washer fluid 331
Washer nozzles, windshield 133
Washer system 131
Washing systems, automatic 350
Washing, vehicle 350
Wash view, Surround View 223
Water on roads 277
Water, see Condensation water under the parked vehicle 279
Website, see Internet 6
Weights 355
Weights, see Technical data 354
Welcome light during unlocking 79
Welcome lights 158
Welcome screen, driver profiles 66
Wheels and tires 290
Wheels, changing 299
Widgets, iDrive 41
WiFi connection 73
WiFi connection, see WLAN connection 73
WiFi hotspot, see Internet connection 73
Window, defrosting 247
Windows, powered 97
Windshield, defrosting 247

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1574

Windshield washer fluid, see Washer fluid 331
Windshield washer nozzles 133
Windshield washer system, see Washer/wiper system 131
Windshield wiper, see Wiper system 131
Winter storage, see Long-term vehicle storage 353
Winter tires 301
Winter tires, tread 298
Wiper blades, replacing 335
Wiper fluid, see Washer fluid 331
Wiper, fold-away position 133
Wiper, see Washer/wiper system 131
Wiper system 131
Wireless charging, smartphone, see Wireless charging tray 263
Wireless charging tray for smartphones 263
WLAN connection 73
Wood parts, care 352
Wordmatch principle, see Entry comparison 41
Working in, engine compartment 324
Wrench, see Onboard vehicle tool kit 335

X

xDrive 198

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1575
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

01405A04227 ue

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1576

California Proposition 65 Warning

For vehicles sold in California:

California Proposition 65 Warning

WARNING

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

The Ultimate Driving Machine®

BMW DRIVER'S GUIDE APP.

Your customized information about the vehicle in an app.
Optimized for smartphones & tablets. Can be used offline.

Download on the App Store

GET IT ON Google Play

01405A04227 de

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1579
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04227 - II/20

LINK:
CONTENT & A-Z

The Ultimate Driving Machine®

OWNER'S MANUAL.

THE BMW 6 SERIES GRAN TURISMO.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1580
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 5A0 43C1 - II/20

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1581
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

WELCOME TO BMW.

Owner's Manual.

BMW 6 Series Gran Turismo.

Thank you for choosing a BMW.

The more familiar you are with your vehicle, the better control you will have on the road. We therefore strongly suggest:

Read this Owner's Manual before starting off in your new BMW. Also use the Integrated Owner's Manual in your vehicle. It contains important information on vehicle operation that will help you make full use of the technical features available in your BMW. The manual also contains information designed to enhance operating reliability and road safety, and to contribute to maintaining the value of your BMW.

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

You can find supplementary information in the additional brochures in the onboard literature.

We wish you a safe and enjoyable ride.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1582
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

TABLE OF CONTENTS

After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

NOTES

Information 6
Owner's Manual media 14

QUICK REFERENCE

Entering 16
Set-up and use 20
On the road 24

CONTROLS

Cockpit 32
Operating state of the vehicle 37
iDrive 40
BMW Remote Software Upgrade 57
General settings 60
Personal settings 65
Connections 70
Opening and closing 78
Seats, mirrors, and steering wheel 103
Transporting children safely 117
Driving 122
Displays 139
Lights 156
Safety 163
Driving stability control systems 195
Driver assistance systems 201
Driving comfort 242
Climate control 245

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1583
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Interior equipment 258
Storage compartments 268
Cargo area 273

DRIVING TIPS

Things to remember when driving 280
Saving fuel 285

MOBILITY

Refueling 292
Wheels and tires 294
Engine compartment 322
Operating materials 325
Maintenance 332
Replacing components 334
Breakdown assistance 338
Care 345

REFERENCE

Technical data 350
Appendix 352
Everything from A to Z 354

© 2020 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Reprinting, including excerpts, only with the written consent of BMW AG, Munich.
US English ID7 II/20, 03 20 490
Printed on environmentally friendly paper, bleached without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1584
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Information

Using this Owner's Manual

Orientation

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic is by using the index.

An initial overview of the vehicle is provided in the first chapter.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication

The Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can be obtained as a printed book from the service center.

The topics are also discussed in the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Additional sources of information

Service center

A service center will be glad to answer questions at any time.

Internet

Vehicle information and general information on BMW, for instance, on technology, are available on the Internet: www.bmwusa.com.

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

The Integrated Owner's Manual specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle. The Integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the Control Display.

BMW Driver's Guide app

The BMW Driver's Guide app specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle. The app can be displayed on smartphones and tablets.

BMW Driver's Guide Web

Driver's Guide Web shows the most suitable information for the selected vehicle. If possible, only equipment and functions that are actually installed in the vehicle will be explained. Driver's Guide Web can be displayed in any current browser.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1585

Symbols and displays

Symbols in the Owner's Manual

Symbol	Meaning
	Precautions that must be followed in order to avoid the possibility of injury to yourself and to others as well as serious damage to the vehicle.
	Measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.
"..."	Texts in vehicle used to select individual functions.
›...‹	Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.
»...«	Responses generated by the voice activation system.

Action steps

Action steps to be carried out are presented as a numbered list. The steps must be carried out in the defined order.

1. First action step.
2. Second action step.

Enumerations

Enumerations without mandatory order or alternative possibilities are presented as a list with bullet points.

- First possibility.
- Second possibility.

Symbols on vehicle components

This symbol on a vehicle component indicates that further information on the component is available in the Owner's Manual.

Vehicle features and options

This Owner's Manual describes all models and all standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series. Therefore, this Owner's Manual also describes and illustrates features and functions that are not available in a vehicle, for example because of the selected optional features or the country-specific version.

This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

For any options and equipment not described in this Owner's Manual, refer to the Supplementary Owner's Manuals.

Your BMW service center is happy to answer any questions that you may have about the features and options applicable to your vehicle.

Status of the Owner's Manual

Basic information

The manufacturer of your vehicle pursues a policy of constant development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards. In rare cases, therefore, the features described in this Owner's Manual may differ from those in your vehicle.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's

Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

For Your Own Safety

Intended use

Heed the following when using the vehicle:

- Owner's Manual.
- Information on the vehicle. Do not remove stickers.
- Technical vehicle data.
- The traffic, speed, and safety laws where the vehicle is driven.
- Vehicle documents and statutory documents.

Warranty

Your vehicle is technically configured for the operating conditions and registration requirements applying in the country of first delivery, also known as homologation. If your vehicle is to be operated in a different country it might be necessary to adapt your vehicle to potentially differing operating conditions and registration requirements. If your vehicle does not comply with the homologation requirements in a certain country you may not be able to lodge warranty claims for your vehicle there. Further information on warranty is available from a service center.

Maintenance and repairs

Advanced technology, for instance the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires suitable maintenance and repair work.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you entrust corresponding procedures to a BMW center. If you choose to use another service facility, BMW recommends use of a facility that performs work, e.g., maintenance and repair, according to BMW specifications with properly trained personnel, referred to in the Owner's Manual as "another qualified service center or repair shop".

If work is performed improperly, for instance maintenance and repair, there is a risk of subsequent damage and related safety risks.

Improperly performed work on the vehicle paint can lead to a failure or malfunction of components, e.g., the radar sensors, and thereby result in a safety risk.

Parts and accessories

BMW recommends the use of parts and accessory products approved by BMW.

Approved parts and accessories, and advice on their use and installation are available from a BMW center.

BMW parts and accessories have been tested by BMW for their safety and suitability in BMW vehicles.

BMW warrants genuine BMW parts and accessories.

BMW does not evaluate whether each individual product from another manufacturer can be used with BMW vehicles without presenting a safety hazard, even if a country-specific official approval was issued. BMW does not evaluate whether these products are suitable for BMW vehicles under all usage conditions.

California Proposition 65 Warning

For vehicles sold in California, the law requires vehicle manufacturers to provide the following warning:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1587

Warning

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of Automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Batteries also contain other chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer. Wash your hands after handling. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

Warning

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly. Your vehicle is covered by the following warranties:

- New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- Rust Perforation Limited Warranty.
- Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty.
- Federal Emissions Performance Warranty.
- California Emission Control System Limited Warranty.

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

Your vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating conditions and homologation requirements in your country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish to operate your vehicle in another country or region, you may be required to adapt your vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and homologation requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

Maintenance

Maintain the vehicle regularly to sustain the road safety, operational reliability and the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Specifications for maintenance measures:

- BMW Maintenance system.
- Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models.
- Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

If the vehicle is not maintained or is improperly maintained, this could result in serious damage to the vehicle. Such damage is not covered by the BMW New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Refer to chapter engine oil change regarding recommended service intervals for oil changes.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1588

Data memory

General information

Electronic control devices are installed in the vehicle. Electronic control units process data they receive from vehicle sensors, self-generate or exchange with each other. Some control units are necessary for the vehicle to function safely or provide assistance during driving, for instance driver assistance systems. Furthermore, control units facilitate comfort or infotainment functions.

Information about stored or exchanged data can be requested from the manufacturer of the vehicle, in a separate booklet, for example.

Personal reference

Each vehicle is marked with a unique vehicle identification number. Depending on the country, the vehicle owner can be identified with the vehicle identification number, license plate and corresponding authorities. In addition, there are other options to track data collected in the vehicle to the driver or vehicle owner, for instance, via the ConnectedDrive account that is used.

Operating data in the vehicle

Control units process data to operate the vehicle.

For example, this includes:

- Status messages for the vehicle and its individual components, e.g., wheel rotational speed, wheel speed, deceleration, transverse acceleration, engaged safety belt indicator.
- Ambient conditions, e.g., temperature, rain sensor signals.

The processed data is only processed in the vehicle itself and generally volatile. The data is not stored beyond the operating period.

Electronic components, e.g. control units and ignition keys, contain components for storing technical information. Information about the vehicle condition, component usage, maintenance requirements events or faults can be stored temporarily or permanently.

This information generally records the state of a component, a module, a system, or the environment, for instance:

- Operating states of system components, for instance, fill levels, tire inflation pressure, battery status.
- Malfunctions and faults in important system components, for instance lights and brakes.
- Responses by the vehicle to special situations such as airbag deployment or engagement of the driving stability control systems.
- Information on vehicle-damaging events.

The data is required to perform the control unit functions. Furthermore, it also serves to recognize and correct malfunctions, and helps the vehicle manufacturer to optimize vehicle functions.

The majority of this data is volatile and is only processed within the vehicle itself. Only a small share of the data is stored event-related in event or fault memories.

When servicing, for instance during repairs, service processes, warranty cases, and quality assurance measures, this technical information can be read out from the vehicle together with the vehicle identification number.

A dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop can read out the information. The socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis required by law in the vehicle is used to read out the data.

The data is collected, processed, and used by the relevant organizations in the service network. The data documents technical conditions of the vehicle, helps with the identification of the fault, compliance with warranty obligations and quality improvement.

Furthermore, the manufacturer has product monitoring duties to meet in line with product liability law. To fulfill these duties, the vehicle manufacturer needs technical data from the vehicle. The data from the vehicle can also be used to check customer claims for warranty and guaranty.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1589
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Fault and event memories in the vehicle can be reset when a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop performs repair or servicing work.

Data entry and data transfer into the vehicle

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, comfort and individual settings can be stored in the vehicle and modified or reset at any time.

For example, this includes:

- Settings for the seat and steering wheel positions.
- Suspension and climate control settings.

If necessary, data can be transferred to the entertainment and communication system of the vehicle, for instance via smartphone.

This includes the following depending on the respective equipment:

- Multimedia data such as music, films or photos for playback in an integrated multimedia system.
- Address book data for use in conjunction with an integrated hands-free system or an integrated navigation system.
- Entered navigation destinations.
- Data on the use of Internet services.

This data can be stored locally in the vehicle or is found on a device that has been connected to the vehicle, e.g., a smartphone, USB stick or MP3 player. If this data is stored in the vehicle, it can be deleted at any time.

This data is only transmitted to third parties upon personal request as part of the use of online services. The transmission depends on the selected settings for the use of the services.

Incorporation of mobile devices

Depending on the vehicle equipment, mobile devices connected to the vehicle, for instance smartphones, can be controlled via the vehicle control elements.

The sound and picture from the mobile device can be played back and displayed through the multimedia system. Certain information is transferred to the mobile device at the same time. Depending on the type of incorporation, this includes, for instance position data and other general vehicle information. This optimizes the way in which selected apps, for instance navigation or music playback, work.

There is no further interaction between the mobile device and the vehicle, such as active access to vehicle data.

How the data will be processed further is determined by the provider of the particular app being used. The extent of the possible settings depends on the respective app and the operating system of the mobile device.

Services

General information

If the vehicle has a wireless network connection, this enables data to be exchanged between the vehicle and other systems. The wireless network connection is realized via an in-vehicle transmitter and receiver unit or via personal mobile devices brought into the vehicle, for instance smartphones. This wireless network connection enables 'online functions' to be used. These include online services and apps supplied by the vehicle manufacturer or by other providers.

Services from the vehicle manufacturer

Where online services from the vehicle manufacturer are concerned, the corresponding functions are described in the appropriate place, for instance the Owner's Manual or manufacturer's website. The relevant legal information pertaining to data protection is provided there too. Personal data may be used to perform online services. Data is exchanged over a secure connection,

for instance with the IT systems of the vehicle manufacturer intended for this purpose.

Any collection, processing, and use of personal data above and beyond that needed to provide the services must always be based on a legal permission, contractual arrangement or consent. It is also possible to activate or deactivate the data connection as a whole. That is, with the exception of functions and services required by law such as Assist systems.

Services from other providers

When using online services from other providers, these services are the responsibility of the relevant provider and subject to their data privacy conditions and terms of use. The vehicle manufacturer has no influence on the content exchanged during this process. Information on the way in which personal data is collected and used in relation to services from third parties, the scope of such data, and its purpose, can be obtained from the relevant service provider.

Event Data Recorder EDR

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder EDR. The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were fastened.
- How far, if at all, the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

EDR data is recorded by your vehicle only if a nontrivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data, for instance name, gender, age, and crash location, are recorded.

However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Vehicle identification number

Engine compartment

The vehicle identification number can be found in the engine compartment, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1591
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Windshield

The vehicle identification number can also be found behind the windshield.

iDrive

It is also possible to display the vehicle identification number via iDrive.

Additional information:

Displaying the vehicle identification number and software part number, refer to page 71.

Reporting safety defects

For US customers

The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration NHTSA, in addition to notifying BMW of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or BMW of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may call the toll-free hotline 1-800-333-0510. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety.

Owner's Manual media

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

General information

Media at a glance

You can use various media formats to call up the content in the Owner's Manual. The following Owner's Manual media formats are available:

- Printed Owner's Manual.
- Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

Printed Owner's Manual

Concept

The printed Owner's Manual describes all standard, country-specific, and optional features offered with the series.

General information

The Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can be obtained as a printed book from the service center.

Supplementary Owner's Manuals

Also follow the Supplementary Owner's Manuals, which are included in addition to the onboard literature.

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

Concept

The Integrated Owner's Manual specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle.

The Integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the Control Display.

Selecting the Owner's Manual

1. HOME Press the button.
2. "CAR"
3. "Owner's Manual"
4. Select the desired method of accessing the contents.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1593
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Scrolling through the Owner's Manual

Turn the Controller, until the next or previous contents are displayed.

Context help

General information

The Integrated Owner's Manual can be accessed from any menu. Depending on the selected function, either the associated description or the main menu of the Integrated Owner's Manual will be displayed.

Opening via iDrive

Change directly to the Options menu from the function on the Control Display:

1. OPTION Press the button.
2. "Help"

Opening when a Check Control message is displayed

Directly from the Check Control message on the Control Display:

"Owner's Manual"

Programmable memory buttons

General information

The entry points into the Owner's Manual can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly.

Storing

1. Select the desired entry point via iDrive:
   - ▷ "Keyword search"
   - ▷ "Picture search"
   - ▷ "Operating tips"
   - ▷ "Quick reference"
   - ▷ "Topics"
   - ▷ "Quick link"
2. 1 ... 7 Press and hold the desired button until the displayed bar on the Control Display has loaded completely.

Executing

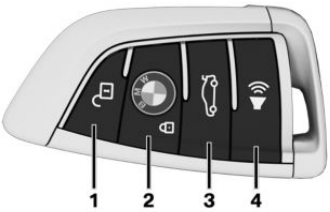
1 ... 7 Press the corresponding button.

The owner's manual is directly displayed at the selected entry point.

Entering

Opening and closing

Buttons on the vehicle key



1 Unlocking

2 Locking

3 To open the tailgate

4 Press and hold or press three times in quick succession: panic mode

Press briefly: pathway lighting

Unlocking the vehicle

Press the button on the vehicle key.

Depending on the settings, either only the driver's door or all vehicle access points are unlocked.

If only the driver's door is unlocked, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key after unlocking.

The windows and the glass sunroof are opened, as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Press the button on the vehicle key.

All vehicle access points are locked.

Buttons for the central locking system

Overview

Buttons for the central locking system.

Locking

Press the button with the front doors closed.

The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

Unlocking

Press the button.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

- ▷ Press the button on the vehicle key and hold for at least 3 seconds.
- ▷ Briefly press the button on the vehicle key three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1595
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Comfort Access

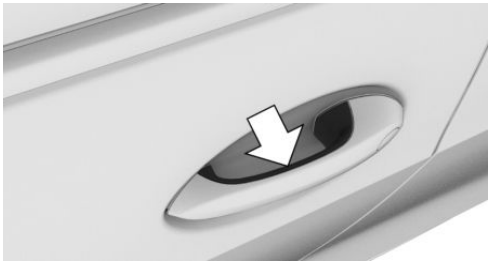
Concept

The vehicle can be accessed without operating the vehicle key.

Carrying the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket, is sufficient.

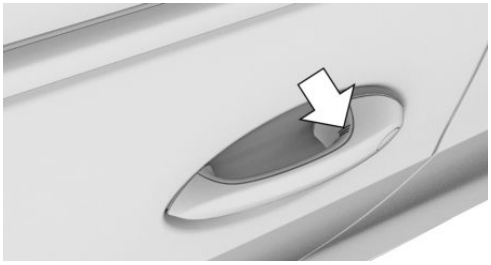
The vehicle automatically detects the vehicle key when it is in close proximity or in the car's interior.

Unlocking the vehicle



Grasp the handle of a vehicle door completely.

Locking the vehicle



Touch the grooved surface on the handle of a closed vehicle door with your finger for approx. 1 second without grasping the door handle.

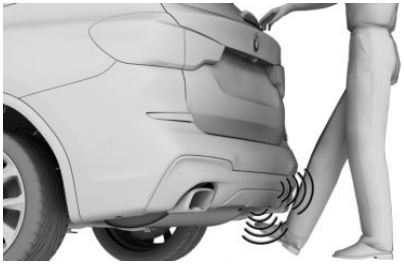
Opening and closing the tailgate with no-touch activation

Concept

The tailgate can be opened and closed with no-touch activation using the vehicle key you are carrying.

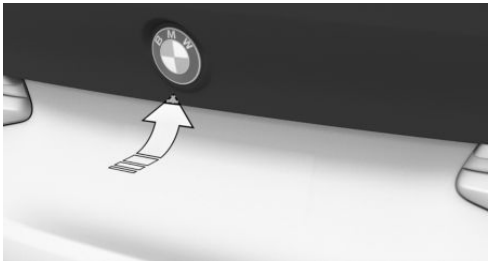
Performing the foot movement

1. Stand in the middle behind the vehicle at approx. one arm's length away from the rear of the vehicle.
2. Wave a foot under the vehicle in the direction of travel and immediately pull it back. With this movement, the leg must pass through the ranges of both sensors.



Tailgate

Opening



▷ Unlock the vehicle and then press the button on the outside of the tailgate.

▷ Press the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

Depending on the setting, the doors may be unlocked.

Closing

Press the button on the inside of the upper tailgate.

Displays, control elements

In the vicinity of the steering wheel

1 Light switch element
2 Turn signal indicator, high beams
3 Instrument cluster
4 Wipers
5 Start/Stop button

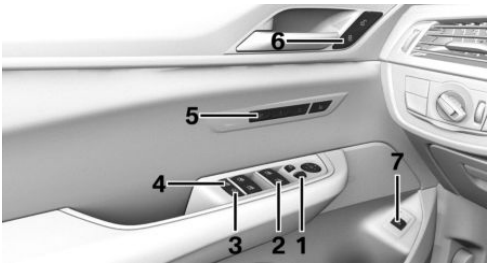
Indicator/warning lights

Instrument cluster

The indicator/warning lights can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

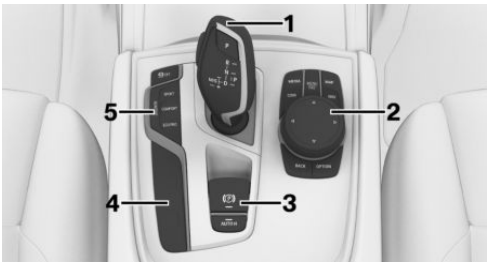
Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when the engine is started or standby state is switched on.

Driver's door



1 Exterior mirrors
2 Power windows
3 Rear roller sunblinds
4 Safety switch
5 Seats, comfort features
6 Central locking system
7 To open the tailgate

Switch console



1 Selector lever
2 Controller
3 Parking brake, Automatic Hold
4 ▷ Parking assistance systems
▷ Two-axle ride level control
▷ Active rear spoiler
5 Driving Dynamics Control

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1597
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

iDrive

Concept

The iDrive combines the functions of many switches. These functions can be operated via the Controller.

Buttons on the Controller

Button	Function
MENU	Opens the main menu.
MEDIA	Opens the Media/Radio menu.
COM	Opens the Communication menu.
MAP	Opens navigation map.
NAV	Opens destination input menu for navigation.
BACK	Opens the previous display.
OPTION	Opens the Options menu.

Voice activation

Activating the voice activation system

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the signal.
3. Say the command.

This symbol indicates that the voice activation system is active.

No other commands may be available. In this case, operate the function via iDrive.

Terminating the voice activation system

Press the button on the steering wheel or ›Cancel‹.

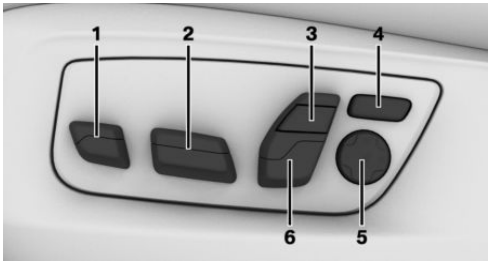
This symbol indicates that the voice activation system is deactivated.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1598
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Set-up and use

Seats, mirrors, and steering wheel

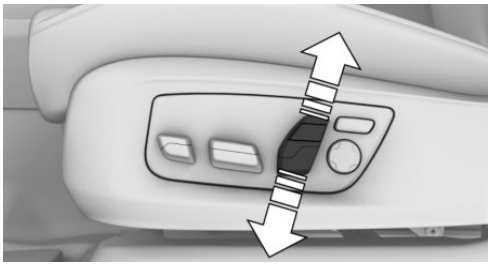
Electrically adjustable seats



1 Thigh support
2 Forward/backward, height, seat tilt
3 Upper backrest
4 Backrest width
5 Lumbar support
6 Backrest tilt, head restraint

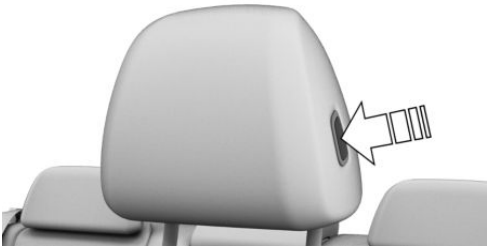
Adjusting the head restraint

Adjusting the height: power head restraints



Push switch up or down.

Adjust distance: manual head restraints



- Back: press the button and push the head restraint toward the rear.
- Forward: pull the head restraint toward the front.

Adjusting the distance: power head restraints

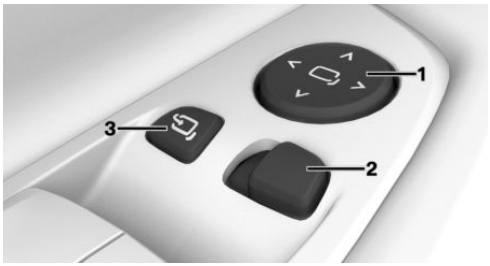
The head restraint is automatically repositioned when the upper backrest is adjusted.

Side extensions

Fold the side extensions forward to increase lateral support.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1599
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

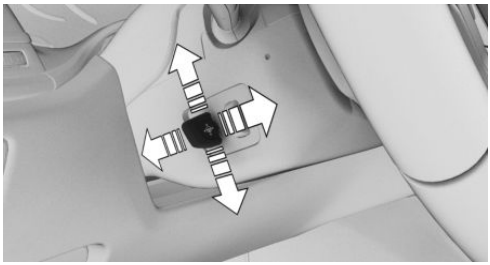
Adjusting the exterior mirrors



1 Adjusting
2 Selecting a mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor
3 Folding in and out

Adjusting the steering wheel

Electrical steering wheel adjustment



Press the switch to adjust the forward/back position and height of the steering wheel to the seat position.

Memory function

Concept

The following settings can be stored and, if necessary, retrieved using the memory function:

- Seat position.
- Exterior mirror position.
- Steering wheel position.
- Height of the Head-up Display.

Storing

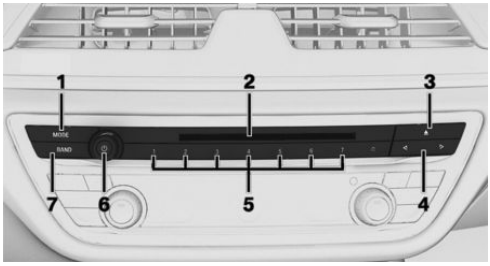
1. Set the desired position.
2. SET Press button on the door. The writing on the button lights up.
3. Press the desired button 1 or 2 at the door while the writing is lit. A signal sounds.

Calling up settings

Press the desired button 1 or 2.

Infotainment

Radio



1 Changing the entertainment source
2 CD/DVD drive
3 Eject CD/DVD
4 Changing the station/track
5 Programmable memory buttons
6 Sound output on/off, volume
7 Changing the waveband
Waveband/satellite radio

Navigation destination entry

Entering a destination via quick search

1. NAV Press the button on the Controller.
2. "Where to?"
3. Enter at least two letters or characters.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1600

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

The search term may be completed automatically in gray print.

Press or move the controller up to apply the suggested search term.

4. OK Select the symbol, if needed.

   Results are displayed in a list.
5. "Search location": select search location.
6. Move the Controller to the right.
7. Select desired destination.

Connecting a mobile phone

General information

After the mobile phone is connected once to the vehicle, the mobile phone can be operated using iDrive and the steering wheel buttons.

Connecting the mobile phone via Bluetooth

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. If necessary, select the following setting: "Telephone"
3. "Connect new phone"
4. To perform additional steps on the mobile phone, refer to the mobile phone owner's manual: e.g., search for or connect the Bluetooth device or a new device.

   The Bluetooth name of the vehicle appears on the mobile phone display. Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle.
5. Depending on the mobile device, a control number is displayed or the control number must be entered.
   - ▷ Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number on the display of the device.

     Confirm the control number on the device and on the Control Display.
   - ▷ Enter and confirm the same control number on the device and via iDrive.

   The device is connected and displayed in the device list.

Using the phone

Accepting a call

Depending on the equipment, incoming calls can be answered in several ways.

- ▷ Via iDrive:

  "Accept"
- ▷ /

  Press the corresponding button on the steering wheel.
- ▷ Via the selection list in the instrument cluster:

  Use the thumbwheel on the steering wheel to select: "Accept"
- ▷ Via touch screen: tap on the corresponding entry on the Control Display.
- ▷ Via gestures: point the index finger into the direction of the Control Display.

Dialing a number

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. If necessary, "Telephone"
3. "Dial number:"
4. Enter the numbers.
5. Select the symbol. The connection is established via the mobile phone to which this function has been assigned.

Establish the connection via the additional phone:

1.

Press the button.
2. "Call via"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1601
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Apple CarPlay preparation

Concept

CarPlay allows certain functions of a compatible Apple iPhone to be used via Siri voice operation and iDrive.

Functional requirements

- Compatible iPhone.
  iPhone 5 or later with iOS 7.1 or later.
- Corresponding mobile contract.
- Bluetooth, WLAN, and Siri voice operation are activated on the iPhone.

Switching on Bluetooth and CarPlay

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. Select the following setting:
   "Apple CarPlay"
6. Activate the function.

Pairing the iPhone with CarPlay

Pair iPhone via Bluetooth with the vehicle.

Select CarPlay as the function:

"Apple CarPlay"

The iPhone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1602

On the road

Driving

Drive-ready state

Switching on drive-ready state

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

Switching off drive-ready state

Steptronic transmission:

1. Engage selector lever position P with the vehicle stopped.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

   The engine is switched off.
3. Set the parking brake.

Auto Start/Stop function

The Auto Start/Stop function switches the engine off automatically while stationary to save fuel. The engine starts automatically under the following preconditions:

Steptronic transmission:

- By releasing the brake pedal.
- When Automatic Hold is activated: step on the accelerator pedal.

Parking brake

Setting

Pull the switch.

The LED on the switch and the indicator light in the instrument cluster are illuminated.

Releasing

With drive-ready state switched on:

Press the switch while stepping on the brake pedal or selector lever position P is set.

The LED and indicator light go out.

The parking brake is released.

Parking

The parking brake is automatically set if the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold and the drive-ready state is switched off or the vehicle is exited.

Steptronic transmission

Engaging selector lever position D, N, R

- Drive mode D.
- Neutral N.
- R is reverse.

With the driver's safety belt fastened, briefly push the selector lever in the desired direction, past a resistance point, if needed. The selector lever returns to the center position in each case.

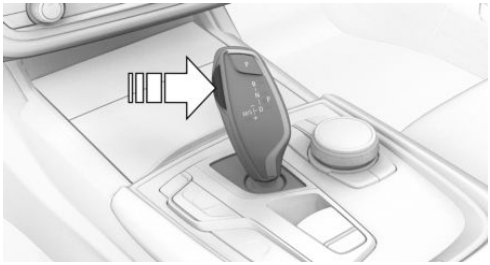
To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a drive mode or reverse, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1603
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

A selector lever lock prevents the inadvertent shifting to selector lever position R or the inadvertent shifting from selector lever position P.

Engage selector lever position R only when the vehicle is stationary.

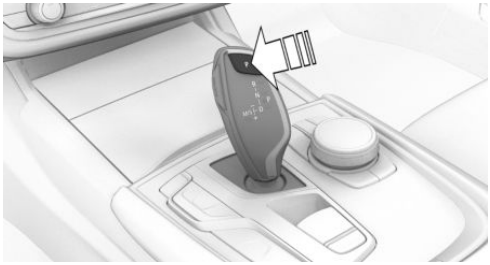
Releasing the selector lever lock



Press the button.

Engaging P

Engage selector lever position P only when the vehicle is stationary.



Press button P.

Steptronic transmission, Sport program and manual mode

Activate the Sport program/manual mode:

Press the selector lever to the left from selector lever position D.

Manual mode:

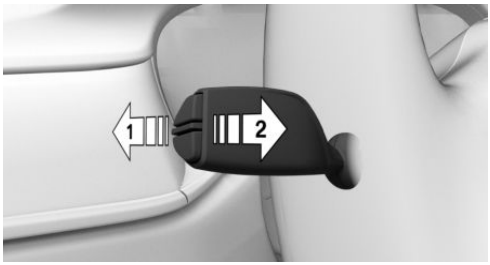
- To shift down: press the selector lever forward.
- To shift up: pull the selector lever rearwards.

End the sport program/manual mode:

Push the selector lever to the right.

High beams, headlight flasher, turn signal

High beams, headlight flasher



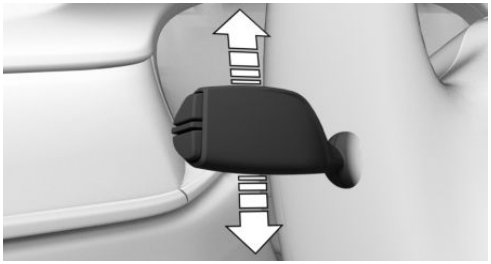
Push the lever forward or pull it backward.

- High beams on, arrow 1.

  The high beams light up when the low beams are switched on.
- High beams off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1604

Turn signal



- On: press the lever past the resistance point.
- Off: press the lever past the resistance point in the opposite direction.
- Triple turn signal activation: lightly tap the lever up or down.
- Brief signaling: press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

Lights and lighting

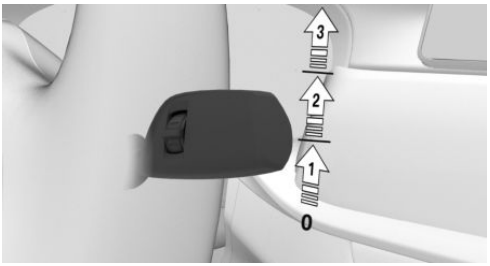
Light functions

Symbol	Function
	Front fog lights.
	Night vision.
	Lights off. Daytime running lights.
	Parking lights.
	Automatic headlight control. Adaptive light functions.
	Low beams.
	Instrument lighting.
	Right roadside parking light.
	Left roadside parking light.

Wiper system

Switching the wipers on/off and brief wipe

Switching on

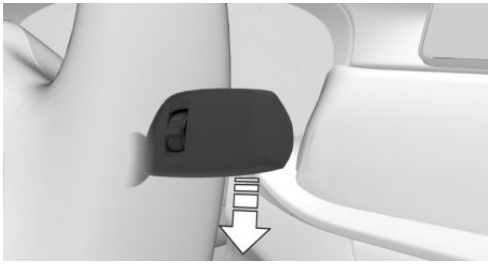


Press the lever up until the desired position is reached.

- Resting position of the wipers: position 0.
- Rain sensor: position 1.
- Normal wiper speed: position 2.
- Fast wiper speed: position 3.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1605
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Brief wipe and switching off

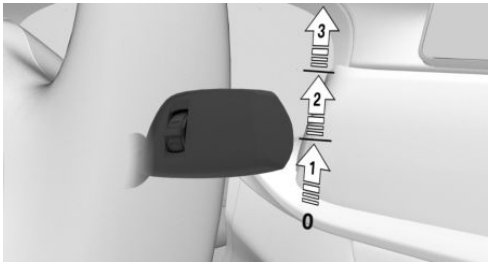


Press the lever down.

- Switching off: press the lever down until it reaches its standard position.
- Brief wipe: press the lever down from the standard position.

Rain sensor

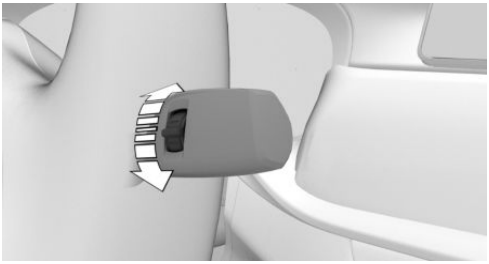
Activating/deactivating



To activate: press the lever up once from its standard position, arrow 1.

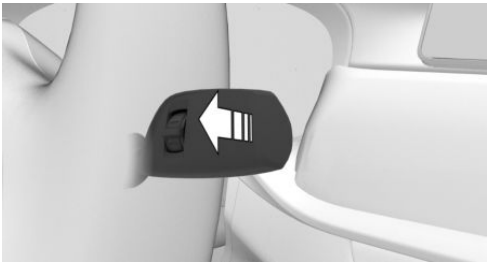
To deactivate: press the lever back into the standard position.

Adjusting the sensitivity



Turn the thumbwheel on the wiper lever.

Cleaning the windshield



Pull the wiper lever towards you.

Climate control

Automatic climate control

Button	Function
	Temperature.
A/C	Climate control operation.
MAX A/C	Maximum cooling.
AUTO	AUTO program.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1606

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

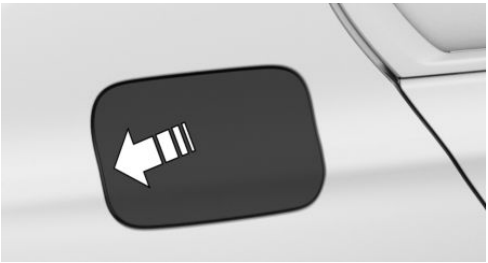
Button	Function
	Recirculated-air mode.
	Air flow, manual.
	Air distribution, manual.
SYNC	SYNC program.
MAX	Defrost and defog window.
	Rear window defroster.
	Active seat ventilation.
	Seat heating.
MENU	Opening the Climate menu. For example, for the following settings: upper body temperature adjustment, parked-car ventilation.

Refueling

Refueling

Fuel cap

1. To open the fuel filler flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.



2. Turn the fuel cap counterclockwise.
3. Place the fuel cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.

Gasoline

For the best fuel efficiency, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.

Wheels and tires

Tire inflation pressure specifications

The tire inflation pressure specifications can be found in the tire inflation pressure table in the printed Owner's Manual.

After correcting the tire inflation pressure

With runflat tires:

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

With Tire Pressure Monitor:

The corrected tire inflation pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the correct tire settings have been made.

With tires that cannot be found in the tire pressure values on the Control Display, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM.

Checking the tire inflation pressure

Regularly check the tire inflation pressure and correct it as needed:

- ▷ At least twice a month.
- ▷ Before embarking on an extended trip.

Cleaning the wheels

The friction during hard braking may produce brake dust and make the rims dirty. Brake dust can be removed by cleaning the rims. BMW recommends using vehicle care and cleaning products from BMW.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1607
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Electronic oil measurement

Functional requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of normal driving with the combustion engine running.

Displaying the engine oil level

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"

Different messages appear on the Control Display depending on the engine oil level. Pay attention to these messages.

Adding engine oil

General information

Safely park the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before adding engine oil.

Adding engine oil

Only add engine oil when the message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Observe the quantity to be added in the message.

Take care not to add too much engine oil.

Observe recommended engine oil types.

Providing assistance

Hazard warning flashers

The button is located in the center console.

Breakdown assistance

BMW Roadside Assistance

Via iDrive:

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "BMW Assist"
4. If necessary, "BMW Roadside Assistance"

   A voice connection is established.

ConnectedDrive

Concierge service

The BMW Assist Concierge service offers information on events, gas stations or hotels, and provides phone numbers and addresses. Many hotels can be booked directly by the BMW Concierge service. The Concierge service is part of the optional BMW Assist Response Center.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "BMW Assist"
3. If necessary, select the entry for the Concierge Service.

A voice connection to the Concierge service is established.

Teleservices

Teleservices are services that help to maintain vehicle mobility.

Teleservices can comprise the following services:

- BMW Roadside Assistance.
- BMW Accident Assistance.
- Service Request.
- Teleservice Report.
- Teleservice Battery Guard.
- Your dealer's service center.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1609
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

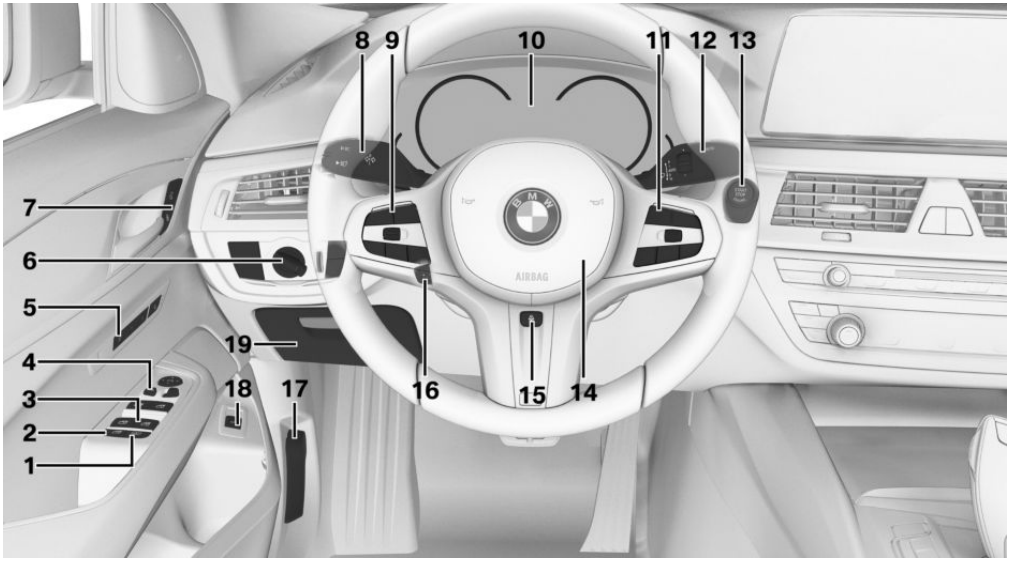
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1610

Cockpit

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

In the vicinity of the steering wheel



1 Roller sunblinds, rear side windows 99

2 Safety switch 98

3 Power windows 97

4 Exterior mirror operation 111

5 Seating comfort features

SET Memory function 113

Massage function 114

6 Lights

Front fog lights 160

Night Vision 177

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1611
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Light switch 156

Lights off

Daytime running lights 158

Parking lights 157

Automatic headlight control 156

Adaptive light functions 158

High-beam Assistant 159

Low beams 157

Instrument lighting 161

Right roadside parking light 157

Left roadside parking light 157

7 Central locking system

Unlocking 88

Locking 88

8 Steering column stalk, left

Turn signal 130

High beams, headlight flasher 131

High-beam Assistant 159

Widgets in the instrument cluster 140

Trip data 151

9 Steering wheel buttons, left

Cruise control on/off 201

Active Cruise Control on/off 203

Steering and traffic jam assistant on/off 211

Cruise control: to store the speed

Pause or continue cruise control

Active Cruise Control: increase distance

Active Cruise Control: reduce distance

With steering and traffic jam assistant: adjust distance

Cruise control rocker switch

10 Instrument cluster 139

11 Steering wheel buttons, right

Selection lists 150

Volume, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6

Voice activation system 48

Changing the station/track, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6

Thumbwheel for selection lists 150

12 Steering column stalk, right

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1612

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Wipers 131

Rain sensor 132

Cleaning the windshield and headlights 132

13 Switching drive-ready state on/off 122

Auto Start/Stop function 122

14 Horn, entire surface

15 Heated steering wheel 113

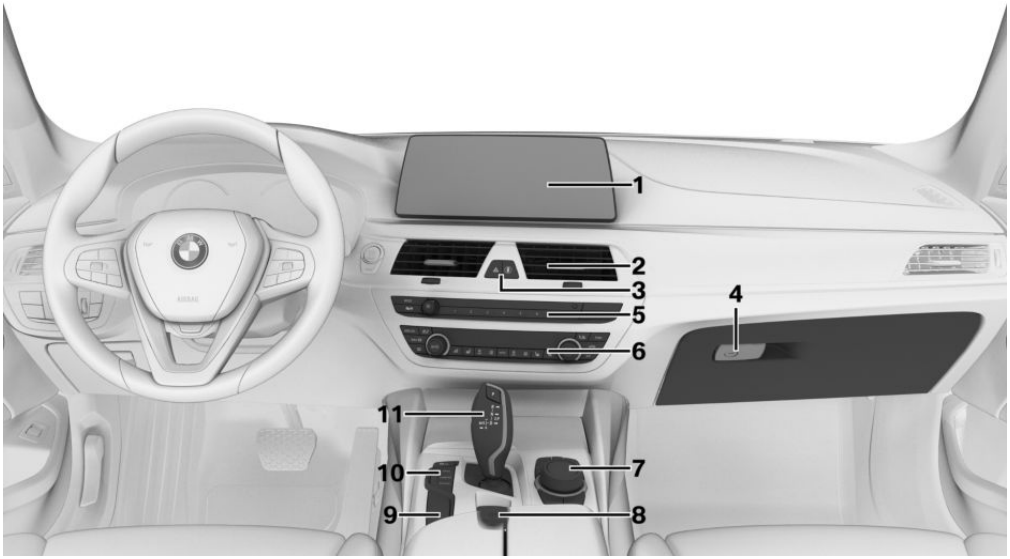
16 Adjusting the steering wheel 113

17 Unlocking the hood 323

18 Opening and closing the tailgate 92

19 Glove compartment 269

In the vicinity of the center console



1 Control Display 43

2 Ventilation 250

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1613
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

3 Hazard warning system 338

Intelligent Safety 167

4 Glove compartment 268

5 Radio/multimedia, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication 6

6 Automatic climate control 245

7 Controller with buttons 43

8 Parking brake 127

Automatic Hold 128

9 PDC Park Distance Control 215

Without Surround View: rearview camera 220

Surround View 222

Cross traffic warning 239

Parking assistant 230

Remote Control Parking 235

Surround View: Panorama View 222

Level adjustment 242

Active rear spoiler 198

10

Driving Dynamics Control 125

SPORT driving mode

COMFORT driving mode

ECO PRO driving mode

ADAPTIVE driving mode

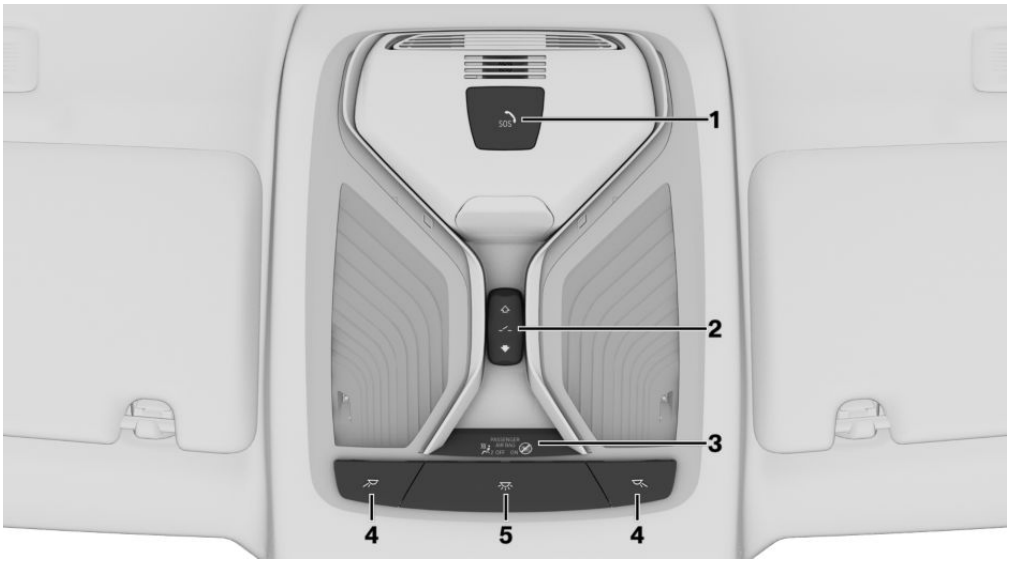
DSC Dynamic Stability Control 195

11 Steptronic transmission: selector lever 134

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1614

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

In the vicinity of the roofliner



1 SOS Emergency Request, SOS 340

2 Operating the glass sunroof 99

3 PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON Indicator light, front-seat passenger airbag 166

4 Reading lights 161

5 Interior lights 161

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1615
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Operating state of the vehicle

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

General information

Depending on the situation, the vehicle is in one of the three states:

- Idle state.
- Standby state.
- Drive-ready state.

Idle state

Concept

When the vehicle is in idle state, it is switched off. All power consumers are deactivated.

General information

The vehicle is in idle state prior to opening from the outside and after exiting and locking.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Automatic idle state

The idle state is automatically established under the following conditions:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1616
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

- After several minutes, if no operation takes place on the vehicle.
- If the charge state of the vehicle battery is low.
- Depending on the setting via iDrive, if one of the front doors is opened when exiting the vehicle.

The idle state is not automatically established while a phone call is active.

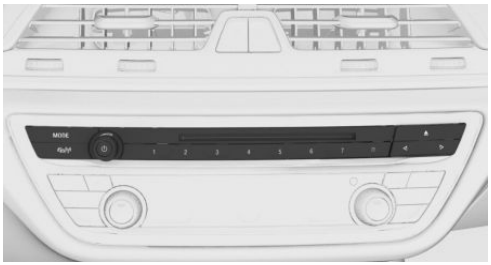
Establishing idle state when opening the front doors

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Access"
4. "Turn off vehicle after opening door"

Manual idle state

To establish idle state in the vehicle after end of trip:



Press and hold the button until the OFF indicator on the instrument cluster goes out.

Standby state

Concept

When standby state is switched on, most functions can be used while the vehicle is stationary. Desired settings can be adjusted.

General information

The vehicle is in the standby state after the front doors are opened from the outside.

Display in the instrument cluster

OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster. The drivetrain is switched off and standby state switched on.

Drive-ready state

Concept

Switching on drive-ready state corresponds to starting the engine.

General information

Some functions, such as DSC Dynamic Stability Control, can only be used with drive-ready state switched on.

Safety information

⚠ DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can enter into the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1617
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

NOTICE

In the case of repeated starting attempts or repeated starting in quick succession, the fuel is not burned or is inadequately burned. The catalytic converter can overheat. There is a risk of damage to property. Avoid repeated starting in quick succession.

Switching on drive-ready state

Concept

Drive-ready state is switched on via the Start/Stop button.

Steptronic transmission

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

The ignition is activated automatically for a brief time and is stopped as soon as the engine starts.

Most of the indicator/warning lights in the instrument cluster light up for a varied length of time.

Gasoline engine

Depending on the motorization, the full drive power may not be available for approximately 30 seconds after starting the engine. In this case, the vehicle will not accelerate as usual.

Display in the instrument cluster

When drive-ready state is switched on, the tachometer shows the current engine speed.

Switching off drive-ready state

Steptronic transmission

1. Engage selector lever position P with the vehicle stopped.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

   The engine is switched off. The vehicle switches into standby state.
3. Set the parking brake.

iDrive

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Operating concept

Concept

iDrive includes a large number of functions. These functions can be operated via the Controller and, depending on the equipment version, via touchscreen, voice activation system or gesture control.

Safety information

Warning

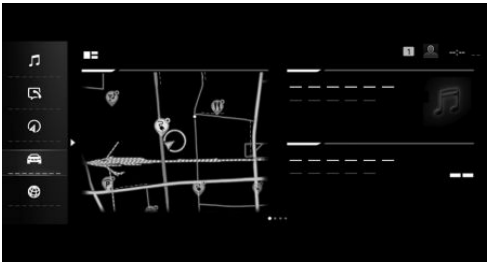
Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. As warranted, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.

Input and display

Main menu

General information

The main menu is divided into two areas. The left area contains menu items that can be used to call up all the iDrive functions. The right area contains widgets that provide quick access to certain functions.



Media/Radio

All functions of the entertainment system, e.g., radio stations or connection with external devices.

Communication

Phone and message functions, e-mail and calendar, and also the connection and management of mobile devices, such as smartphones.

Navigation

Access to the navigation system, destination input and traffic bulletins. Configurable map views and other functions, such as Points of Interest and areas to be avoided.

My Car

Information about vehicle status and trips. Access to the Integrated Owner's Manual and also administration of driver profiles and range of adjustments for vehicle and iDrive.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1619
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Apps

Management of apps, access to apps and vehicle functions. Additional apps can be purchased from the BMW Store.

Widgets

Widgets provide quick access to frequently used functions. The configured widgets display dynamic contents such as the navigation map, and serve as interfaces at the same time.

Letters and numbers

Letters and numbers can be selected when the destination is entered, for example.

Letters and numbers can be entered using the Controller and, depending on the equipment version, via touchscreen or voice activation system. The keyboard's display changes automatically.

Symbol	Function
abc ABC	Change between capital and lower-case letters.
␣	Enter a blank space.
EN	Switching between languages.
	Use voice activation.
OK	Confirm entry.
← →	Slide the input area to the left or right.

Entry comparison

When entering names and addresses, the choice is narrowed down with every letter and number and added automatically as needed.

Entries are continuously compared with data stored in the vehicle.

- Only those letters and numbers are offered during entry for which data is available.
- Destination search: place names can be entered in all languages that are available in iDrive.

Activating/deactivating the functions

Several menu items are preceded by a checkbox. The checkbox indicates whether the function is activated or deactivated. Selecting the menu item activates or deactivates the function.

☑ Function is activated.

☐ Function is deactivated.

Status information

General information

The status field can be found in the upper area of the Control Display. Status information is displayed in the form of symbols.

Radio symbols

Symbol	Meaning
HD	HD Radio station is being received.
SXM	Satellite radio is switched on.

Telephone symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Incoming or outgoing call.
	Missed call.
	Signal strength of cellular network.
	Network search.
	Cellular network is not available.
	The critical charge state of the mobile phone has been reached.
R	Roaming is active.
	Locating is active.
	SMS text message received.
	Message received.

Symbol	Meaning
	Reminder.
	Sending not possible.

Entertainment symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Music hard disk.
	Bluetooth audio.
	USB storage device.
	WLAN.

Other symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Check Control message.
	Sound output active.
	Sound output deactivated.
	Voice activation system active.
	Request for the current vehicle position.
	Checking the current vehicle position.
	Driver profile.
1	Messages.
	Service notifications.
i	Information.
STOP	Stop.
	Data protection.

Programmable memory buttons

General information

The iDrive functions can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly, for instance radio stations, navigation destinations, phone numbers and menu entries or pages in the Integrated Owner's Manual.

Settings are stored for the driver profile currently used.

Overview

1 ... 7 Programmable memory buttons

Storing a function

A function can be stored on a programmable memory button. A button with a stored function can be overwritten with another function.

1. Select function via iDrive, for instance radio station.
2. 1 ... 7 Press and hold the desired button until the displayed bar on the Control Display has loaded completely.

Executing a function

1 ... 7 Press the button.

The function will work immediately. This means, for instance that the number is dialed when a phone number is selected.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1621
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Displaying the key assignment

Touch buttons with finger. Do not wear gloves or use objects.

The assignment of the buttons is displayed in the upper area of the Control Display.

Deleting all button assignments

All button assignments can be deleted.

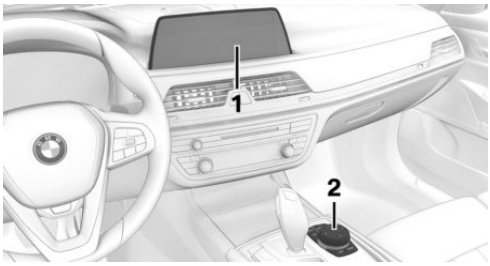
1. Press and hold buttons 1 and simultaneously for approx. 5 seconds.
2. "OK"

Control Display and Controller

Concept

The iDrive functions are displayed on the Control Display. The Control Display can be operated using the Controller, touchpad, and touch screen.

Overview



1 Control Display with touchscreen

2 Controller with buttons and touchpad

Control Display

Safety information

NOTICE

Objects in the area in the front of the Control Display can shift and damage the Control Display. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not place objects in the area in front of the Control Display.

Switching on/off automatically

The Control Display is switched on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked or as soon as the Control Display is needed for operation.

In certain situations, the Control Display is switched off automatically, for instance if no operation is performed on the vehicle for several minutes.

Switching on/off manually

The Control Display can also be switched off manually.

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Screen off"

Press the Controller or any button on the Controller to switch it back on again.

System limits

In the case of very high temperatures on the Control Display, for instance due to intense solar radiation, the brightness may be reduced down to complete deactivation. Once the temperature is reduced, for instance through shade or air conditioning, the normal functions are restored.

Controller

General information

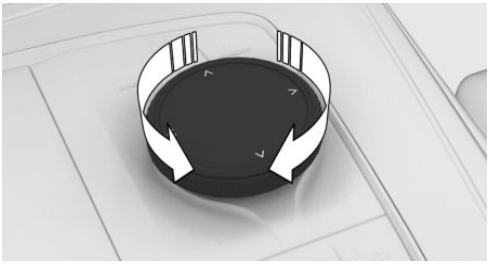
The buttons can be used to open the menus directly. The Controller can be used to select menu items and enter the settings.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1622
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

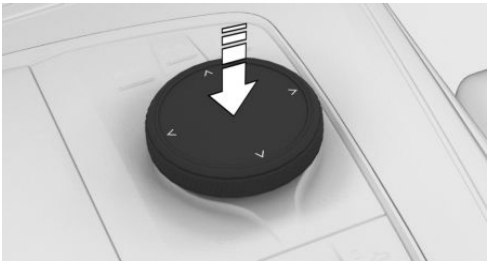
Some iDrive functions can be operated using the touchpad on the Controller.

Operation

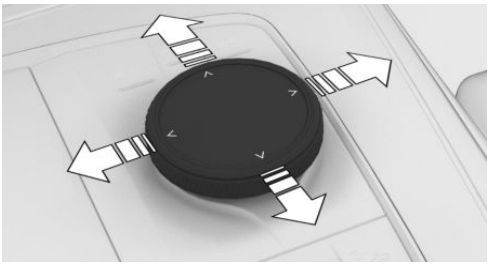
▷ Turn to switch between menu items, for example.



▷ Press to select a menu item, for example.



▷ Tilt in four directions to switch between displays, for example.



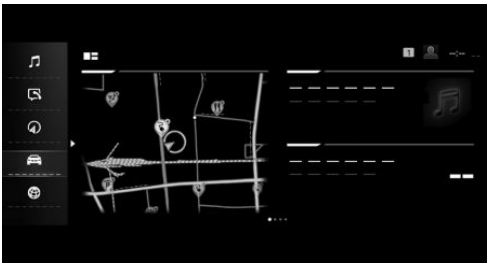
Buttons on the Controller

Button	Function
MENU	Opens the main menu.
MEDIA	Opens the Media/Radio menu.
COM	Opens the Communication menu.
MAP	Opens navigation map.
NAV	Opens destination input menu for navigation.
BACK	Opens the previous display.
OPTION	Opens the Options menu.

Operating via the Controller

Opening the main menu

MENU Press the button.



The main menu is displayed.

Selecting a menu

Selecting menu items

1. Turn the Controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.
2. Press the Controller.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1623
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Select a widget

1. Move the Controller in the main menu to the right.
2. Turn the Controller until the desired widget is selected.
3. Press the Controller.

It is also possible to select widgets in the instrument cluster.

Adjusting the menu

Adjusting widgets

The widgets can be adjusted in the main menu. It is possible to create multiple pages with widgets and switch between pages. The adjustments can only be performed when the vehicle is stationary.

Via iDrive:

1. Select the desired page in the main menu. Only the currently selected page can be adjusted.
2. Tip the Controller up.
3. "Adjust main menu"
4. Select the desired adjustment:
   - ▷ + Symbol and select desired widget: add new widget.

     The requested widget will be inserted in the relevant position. A maximum of four widgets can be displayed per page.
   - ▷ ✕ Select symbol: delete selected widget.
   - ▷ Add new page: "Add page".
   - ▷ Delete selected page: "Delete page".
   - ▷ Adjust the content of the widget: select widget.
5. "Done"

Adjusting menu contents

The display of menus "MEDIA", "COM" and "NAV" can be adjusted, for instance to remove the entries of functions that are not used from the menu.

Via iDrive:

1. Select the menu.
2. "Personalize menu"
3. Select menu items that should not be displayed.

Changing between displays

After a menu item is selected, for instance "Settings", a new display appears.

- ▷ Move the Controller to the left.

  The current display closes and the previous display is shown.
- ▷

  Press the button.

  The previous display re-opens.
- ▷ Move the Controller to the right.

  The new display opens.

An arrow indicates that additional displays can be opened.

Opening the Options menu

Press the button.

The "Options" menu is displayed.

The menu consists of various areas, for instance:

- ▷ "MEDIA": control options for the selected main menu.
- ▷ "Help": help for the selected menu.
- ▷ "Display off": system settings.

Entering letters and numbers

Input

1. Turn the Controller: select letter or number.
2. OK : confirm entry.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1624

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Deleting

Symbol	Function
⌫	Press the Controller: delete letter or number.
⌫	Hold the Controller down: delete all letters or numbers.

Using alphabetical lists

For alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries, the letters for which an entry exists can be displayed in a text box.

1. Turn the Controller to the left or right quickly.
2. Select the first letter of the desired entry.

   The first entry of the selected letter is displayed in the list.

Operation via touchpad

General information

Some iDrive functions can be operated using the touchpad on the Controller.

Selecting functions

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Touchpad"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Character input": enter letters and numbers.
   - ▷ "Map": use the map.
   - ▷ "Search fields": to write letters without selecting the list field.
   - ▷ "Audio confirmation": pronounces entered letters and numbers.

Entering letters and numbers

- ▷ Enter characters as they are displayed on the Control Display.
- ▷ Always enter associated characters, such as accents or periods so that the letter can be clearly recognized.
- ▷ The set language determines what input is possible. Where necessary, enter special characters via the Controller.

Entering special characters

Input	Operation
Delete a character.	Swipe to the left on the touchpad.
Enter a blank space.	Swipe to the right in the center of the touchpad.
Enter a hyphen.	Swipe to the right in the upper area of the touchpad.
Enter an underscore.	Swipe to the right in the lower area of the touchpad.

Using the map

The map in the navigation system can be moved via the touchpad.

Function	Operation
Move map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Enlarge/shrink map.	Drag in or out on the touchpad with fingers.
Display menu.	Tap once.

Operation via touchscreen

General information

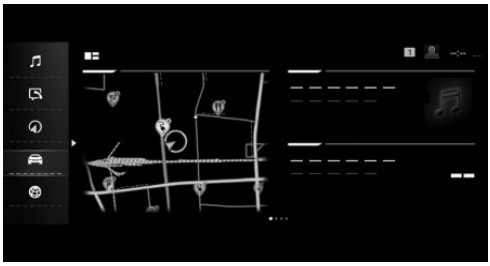
The Control Display is equipped with a touchscreen.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1625
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

You can tap on menu items and widgets. Touch the screen with your fingers. Do not use any objects.

Opening the main menu

Tap on the symbol.



The main menu is displayed.

Adjusting widgets

The widgets can be adjusted in the main menu. It is possible to create multiple pages with widgets and switch between pages. The adjustments can only be performed when the vehicle is stationary.

Via iDrive:

1. Select the desired page in the main menu. Only the currently selected page can be adjusted.
2. Tap the symbol in the main menu.
3. Select the desired adjustment:
   - ▷ + Tap symbol and select desired widget: add new widget.

     The requested widget will be inserted in the relevant position. A maximum of four widgets can be displayed per page.
   - ▷ × Tap symbol: delete selected widget.
   - ▷ Add new page: tap "Add page".
   - ▷ Delete selected page: tap "Delete page".
   - ▷ Adjust content of the widget: tap center of widget.
4. Tap "Done".

Showing/hiding the display bar

In the upper area of the Control Display, it is possible to show or hide a display bar with additional functions.

- ▷ To show the display bar, pull down the display bar at the top edge of the screen.
- ▷ To hide the display bar, pull up the display bar at the top edge of the screen.

Changing between displays

After a menu item is selected, a new display opens.

An arrow indicates that additional displays can be opened.

- ▷ Swipe to the left.
- ▷ Tap arrow.

The new display opens.

Entering letters and numbers

Input

1. Depending on the equipment version, tap the symbol on the touchscreen or a keyboard is displayed on the Control Display when the touchscreen is approached.
2. Enter desired letters and numbers.

Deleting

Symbol	Function
⌫	Tapping the symbol: deletes the letter or number.
⌫	Tapping and holding the symbol all letters: deletes all letters or numbers.

Using the map

The navigation map can be moved using the touchscreen.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1626

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Function	Operation
Move map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Enlarge/shrink map.	Drag in or out with the fingers.
Display menu.	Tap once.

Voice activation system

Concept

The voice activation system can be used to operate functions with spoken commands. The system supports you with announcements during input.

The voice control system and the feedback it provides are not a substitute for the printed or Integrated Owner's Manual.

General information

- Functions that can only be used when the vehicle is stationary can only be operated via the voice activation system to a limited extent.
- The system includes special microphones on the driver side and the front passenger side.
- ›...‹ denotes commands to use with the voice activation system.

Functional requirements

- A language must be set via iDrive that is supported by the voice activation system.

  To set the language, refer to page 62.
- Always say commands in the language of the voice activation system.

Activating the voice activation system

General information

There are various methods for activating the voice activation feature:

- Press the button on the steering wheel.
- Say the wake word ›Hello BMW‹ or a personal wake word.

This symbol indicates that the voice activation system is active.

Then say the command. No other commands may be available. In this case, operate the function via iDrive.

The voice activation can be terminated:

- Press the button on the steering wheel again.
- ›Cancel‹

This symbol indicates that the voice activation system is deactivated.

Button on the steering wheel

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the signal.
3. Say the command.

Wake word

General information

Speaking the wake word ›Hello BMW‹ or the personal wake word will start the system.

Preset wake word

The preset wake word ›Hello BMW‹ can be activated and deactivated.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1627
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

›Hello BMW‹ activates the preset and personal wake word.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. "Activation with "Hello BMW""

Personal wake word

In addition to a preset wake word ›Hello BMW‹, a personal wake word can be set up.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. "Personal wake word"
6. "Start recording"

   For "Start recording", online speech processing must be available and activated. Alternatively, the personal wake word can be entered using the Controller.
7. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Possible commands

General information

Most contents on the Control Display can be spoken as commands, e.g. menu items or list entries. Speak these list entries out loud exactly as they are shown in the list.

Say the commands and numbers with normal volume, emphasis, and speed.

The status of the voice recognition is displayed in the upper area of the Control Display.

Function examples

Menu items

The commands of the menu items are spoken just as they are selected via the Controller.

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. ›MEDIA‹
3. ›Presets‹

The stored stations are displayed on the Control Display.

Navigation

Destinations can be entered in the navigation system using the voice activation system. It is also possible to say Points of Interest or have traffic reports announced.

- ›Drive me to 300 Chestnut Ridge Road, Woodcliff Lake in New Jersey‹
- ›Take me home‹
- ›Are there any traffic messages‹

Communication

For example, when a mobile phone is connected, the voice activation system can be used to start calls or send SMS.

- ›Call John Doe on cell phone‹
- ›Dial the number 1 8 0 0 8 3 1 1 1 1 7‹
- ›New text message to John Doe: I'll be right there‹

Media and Radio

Most radio functions can be used via the Active Voice Recognition.

- ›Turn on music‹
- ›Music off‹
- ›Next title‹

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1628

Climate control

Most climate control functions can be used via voice.

- ›Activate climate control‹
- ›Deactivate air recirculation‹
- ›Temperature [...] at ...‹

Help on the voice activation system

- ›Voice commands‹: to have the available spoken commands announced.
- ›General information on voice control‹: have information on the operating principle of the voice activation system read out loud.
- ›Help‹: have help for the current menu read out loud.

Information for Emergency Requests

Do not use the voice activation system to initiate an Emergency Request. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change. This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a phone connection.

Instead, use the SOS button close to the interior mirror.

Additional information:

Emergency Request, refer to page 340.

Adjusting

Setting the language

The language to be used for voice activation and system announcements can be set.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. "System language"
6. Select the desired language.

Setting the voice dialog

You can set the system to use standard dialog or a short version.

The short version of the voice dialog plays back short messages in abbreviated form.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. "Response length"
6. Select the desired setting.

Speaking during voice output

It is possible to answer during inquiries of the voice activation system. The function can be deactivated if inquiries are often undesirably interrupted, for instance due to background noise or conversations in the vehicle.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. "Speaking during voice output"

Online speech processing

Online speech processing provides a dictation function, a natural method of entering destinations and improves the quality of voice recognition. To use the functions, data is transmitted to a service provider via an encrypted connection and stored locally there.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. "Online speech processing"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1629
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Adjusting the volume

Turn the volume button during the spoken instructions until the desired volume is set.

- The volume remains constant even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.
- The volume is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Using the voice activation system of the smartphone

A smartphone connected to the vehicle can be used via voice activation.

Activate voice command response on the smartphone for this purpose.

1. Press and hold the button on the steering wheel for approx. 3 seconds.

   Voice command response is activated on the smartphone.

2. Release the button.

   If activation is successful, a confirmation appears on the Control Display.

If it was not possible to activate voice command response, the list of Bluetooth devices appears on the Control Display.

Amazon Alexa Car Integration

Concept

Alexa is a digital voice-controlled assistant by Amazon. With Amazon Alexa Car Integration, Alexa can be used in the vehicle.

General information

Some of the Alexa functions are limited in the vehicle to prevent any impairment of safety while driving.

Functional requirements

- Connected Voice Services purchased via ConnectedDrive Store.
- Same ConnectedDrive account used in the vehicle and in the BMW Connected app.
- Vehicle added in the BMW Connected app.
- Amazon account and BMW account are linked in the BMW Connected app.
- Smartphone connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth or USB.

Activation in the BMW Connected app

The Amazon Alexa Car Integration is activated in the BMW Connected app.

Follow the instructions in the app.

Activation in the vehicle

An authorization for the use of Amazon Alexa Car Integration is required every time before starting a trip.

1. Authorizing Amazon Alexa Car Integration:
   - Connect the smartphone to the vehicle via Bluetooth.
   - Selects appropriate driver profile.

     Driver profiles, refer to page 66.

2. If necessary, press the button on the steering wheel and wait for signal tone.
3. Say activation word ›Alexa‹ and desired command.

   Information about the active function is displayed on the Control Display.

Malfunction

In case of a malfunction, switch off the engine and start the engine again.

System limits

- Certain noises can be detected and may lead to problems. Keep the doors, windows, and glass sunroof closed.
- Noises from the front passenger or the rear seat bench can impair the system. Avoid

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1630

making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.

- Major language dialects can cause problems with the voice recognition feature. Speak loud and clear.

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant

Concept

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is the personal assistant that expands the voice activation system with intelligent functions and improves the interaction in the vehicle.

General information

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is available depending on the national-market version. The use of the personal assistant is based on voice operation. The voice operation is enhanced with personal recommendations and messages as well as the automation of routines.

The personal assistant is connected to other digital services such as the Concierge service and is continually being developed. The full scope requires an active driver profile.

The BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is available in two variants:

- In the Guest profile: the variant is linked to a vehicle and cannot be personalized. Not all described functions are available to the full extent.
- With active Driver profile: the variant can be used and personalized in different vehicles. All described functions are available to the full extent.

Functional requirements

Enter the following settings to access the full range of functions:

- The Driver profile is activated.
- Relevant ConnectedDrive Services have been purchased via ConnectedDrive Store.
- Registered in the ConnectedDrive Store.
- "Online speech processing" is activated.
- "Synchronize driver profile" under "Personalization" is activated.

  "Data privacy", refer to page 65.
- All settings under "BMW ConnectedDrive" activated.

  "Data privacy", refer to page 65.

Example for function

1. Say the wake word ›Hello BMW‹ or a personal wake word.
2. ›Is my engine oil level still OK?‹

   The personal assistant provides information about the engine oil level.

Adjusting

Situational adaptation

General information

Depending on the situation, different conditions can be activated.

Condition	Description
"Do not disturb"	Incoming calls and some messages are not displayed.
"Do not learn"	Routines are no longer learned.
"Passenger on board"	Personalized variant only: private contents, e.g., e-mails, are not displayed.

Activating/deactivating

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "Personal assistant"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1631
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

4. "Situational adjustment"
5. Select the desired setting.

Automating routines

General information

The personal assistant can learn routines, e.g., the automatic activation of the seat heating from a specific external temperature. Rules are created for this purpose, which can be activated and deactivated at any time.

Creating a rule

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "Personal assistant"
4. "Automate habits"
5. Select the desired setting.

Functions

Caring Car

General information

Different vehicle functions in the car's interior are harmonized for the driver in a short-term program. A program takes 3 minutes.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Caring Car"
3. Select the desired channel.

The program can be stopped prematurely:

"End program"

Connected Command

General information

Connected Command enables passengers to control different functions in the vehicle via smartphone and the BMW Connected App and receive information about the trip.

Functional requirements

- The smartphone is connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth and WLAN.
- The BMW Connected app is installed on the smartphone.

Managing rights

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Select the desired setting for the respective device.

Owner's Manual via voice operation

Concept

You can ask simple questions about vehicle functions and the operation of the vehicle.

General information

The voice control system and the feedback it provides are not a substitute for the printed or Integrated Owner's Manual. The voice recognition and quality of the feedback may vary.

The system supports questions that begin with How or What.

Example for function

1. ›Hello BMW‹
2. ›How can the passenger airbag be deactivated‹

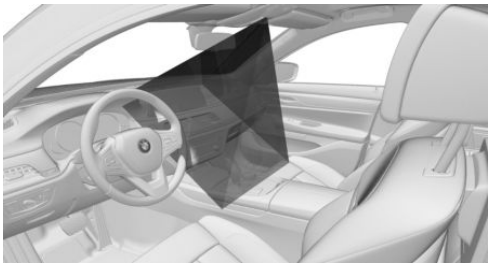
The voice activation system returns a feedback. When stationary, the section of the integrated Owner's Manual is displayed on the Control Display.

BMW Gesture Control

Concept

Several iDrive functions can be operated by hand motion using BMW Gesture Control.

Overview



The camera in the roofliner detects gestures that are carried out in the area of the center console at the height of the Control Display.

Activating/deactivating

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Gesture control"
5. "Gesture control"

Adjusting

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Gesture control"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Operating tips display": the possible gesture is shown on the Control Display.
   - ▷ "Audio confirmation": an acoustic signal is emitted once the gesture is recognized.

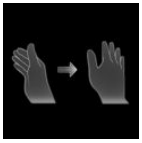
Carrying out gestures

Perform gestures underneath the interior mirror and next to the steering wheel.

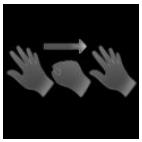
Execute gestures clearly.

The gestures can also be executed from the front-passenger side.

Possible gestures

Gesture	Operation	Function
	Move index finger forward and backward in the direction of the screen.	Accept call. Select a highlighted entry in a list during voice activation. Confirm pop-up.
	Move hand across the width of the Control Display in the direction of the front-passenger side.	Reject call. Close pop-up. Terminate voice activation.
	Slowly move hand clockwise in a circular pattern with the index finger stretched out forward. Gesture is detected after one circular motion.	Increase the volume.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1633
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Gesture	Operation	Function
	Slowly move hand counterclockwise with the index finger stretched out forward. Gesture is detected after one circular motion.	Reduce the volume.
	Pinch with thumb and index finger and move hand horizontally to the right or left.	Surround View: turn camera view. This gesture can only be executed while the vehicle is stationary.
	Move stretched out index and middle finger forward.	Individually assignable gesture.
	Move fist with thumb extended to the left back and forth.	Reverse Skip function. The previous music track is played.
	Move fist with thumb extended to right left back and forth.	Forward Skip function. The next music track is played.
	Stretch out five fingers, form a fist and stretch five fingers out again.	Individually assignable gesture.

Assigning gesture individually

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the following functions can be assigned to gestures that allow individual assignments:

- Destination guidance to home address.
- Voice command response.
- Mute/Playback
- Last calls.
- Control Display on/off
- Notifications.
- Music recognition
- NightVision on/off
- No function.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1634

Select function

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Gesture control"
5. "Function assignment gesture 1" or "Function assignment gesture 2"
6. Select the desired setting.

System limits

Gesture recognition by the camera in the roof-liner can be disturbed by the following circumstances:

- The camera lens is covered.
- Objects are located on the interior mirror.
- The camera lens is dirty, clean camera lenses.

  Sensors and camera lenses, refer to page 348.
- The gesture is executed outside of the detection range.
- Wearing of gloves or jewelry.
- Smoking in the car's interior.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1635
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

BMW Remote Software Upgrade

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

BMW Remote Software Upgrade

Concept

Remote Software Upgrade can be used to update the software of the vehicle. Remote Software Upgrade makes new functions, functional enhancements or quality improvements available.

General information

BMW recommends performing the Remote Software Upgrade as soon as it becomes available.

The available data for Remote Software Upgrade is automatically loaded into the vehicle.

For reasons of safety, the loaded upgrade can only be installed when the vehicle is stationary. The installation is not installed until it was confirmed on the vehicle.

- The installation may take around 20 minutes.
- The installation cannot be terminated.
- The vehicle cannot be used during the installation.
- The vehicle can be exited during the installation.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

Functional requirement

The use of the Remote Software Upgrade requires an active ConnectedDrive contract.

Information about the version

General information

The information about the version contains a description of the updates that are included in the Remote Software Upgrade. During the download and after the installation has been completed successfully, the information about the version can be displayed on the Control Display. The information is available in the ConnectedDrive customer portal at any time.

Logging on to the ConnectedDrive customer portal on the Internet under:

www.bmw-connecteddrive.com.

Displaying information about the version

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. "Installed version:"

Safety information

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Search for and download of an upgrade

General information

There are various options to search for and download an upgrade:

- Automatic.
- Via iDrive.
- Via BMW Connected app.

Automatic download

The available data for Remote Software Upgrade is automatically loaded into the vehicle. The download does not require an approval.

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. "Search for upgrades"
6. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Via BMW Connected app

1. Download the available upgrade to the smartphone in the BMW Connected app.
2. Follow the instructions in the BMW Connected app.
3. Establish a simultaneous WiFi and Bluetooth connection between the smartphone and the vehicle.

   The data transfer of the upgrade from the smartphone to the vehicle occurs only while driving.
4. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Install the upgrade immediately

General information

After successful download completion, installation is offered once the vehicle is parked. The installation can be carried out immediately following the download.

Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

After the successful completion of the upgrade, booked services, for example RTTI, will be reactivated automatically while driving.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1637
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Functional requirements

- The battery is sufficiently charged.
- The external temperature is above 14 °F/-10 °C.
- Vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- Hazard warning system is switched off.
- Selector lever position P is engaged.
- Engine is sufficiently cooled down.

Preparing the vehicle

- Park the vehicle safely away from the public road.
- Cellular network reception must be ensured so that an error message can be sent, for instance if the installation is terminated.
- Close the windows.
- Close the glass sunroof.
- Close the tailgate.
- Remove energy consuming devices, such as a mobile phone.
- The vehicle key is in the vehicle at the start of the installation.
- Switch off the exterior lighting.

Additional vehicle related functional requirements are shown on the Control Display.

Install the upgrade later

The installation of the upgrade can be carried out at a later time.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. "Start upgrade now"

   Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Functional limitations

During the upgrade, the majority of functions is temporarily unavailable, for instance:

- Hazard warning system.
- Central locking system.
- Parking lights.
- Horn.
- Alarm system.
- Emergency Request.
- Power windows.
- Glass sunroof.
- Checking the fuel filler flap lock.

The driver's door can be locked and unlocked from the outside using the integrated key.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, follow the instructions on the Control Display or in the BMW Connected app.

If the malfunction cannot be remedied, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

General settings

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Messages

Concept

The menu centrally displays all messages arriving in the vehicle in list form.

General information

The following messages can be displayed:

- Traffic messages.
- Check Control messages.
- Messages on service notifications.
- Communication messages, for example e-mails, SMS text messages or reminders.
- Messages from, e.g., the Concierge service or the BMW Connected app.
- Messages from the vehicle manufacturer.

The number of messages is additionally displayed in the status field.

The Messages menu can also be created as Widget.

Retrieving messages

Via iDrive:

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Select the desired message.

Deleting messages

All messages, except Check Control messages or messages from the vehicle manufacturer, can be deleted from the list.

Check Control messages or messages from the vehicle manufacturer are displayed as long as they are relevant.

Via iDrive:

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Select desired message, for instance. SMS.
4.

Press the button.
5. ▷ "Delete this notification"
   ▷ "Delete all notifications"

Adjusting

The following settings can be adjusted:

- Select the applications, from which messages will be permitted.
- All messages or a limited time period for received messages.

Via iDrive:

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. Select the desired setting.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1639
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Time

Setting the time zone

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time zone:"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the time

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time:"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired hours are displayed.
7. Press the Controller.
8. Turn the Controller until the desired minutes are displayed.
9. "OK"

Setting the time format

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time format:"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Automatic time setting

Depending on your vehicle's optional features, the time, date and, if needed, the time zone are updated automatically.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Automatic time setting"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Date

Setting the date

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Date:"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired day is displayed.
7. Press the Controller.
8. Make the settings for the month and year.
9. "OK"

Setting the date format

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Date format:"
6. Select the desired setting.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1640

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Language

Setting the language

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language:"
5. "System language"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the voice dialog

Set the voice dialog for the voice activation system.

Additional information:

Setting the voice dialog, refer to page 50.

Setting the units of measurement

Depending on the country version, you can set the units of measurement for some values, for instance consumption, distances, and temperature.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Units"
5. Select the desired menu item.
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Trip data settings

Concept

The intervals in which the trip data will be reset can be configured.

Resetting trip data

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Reset trip data"
5. Select the desired setting.

Speed warning

Concept

A speed limit can be set that when reached will cause a warning to be issued.

General information

The warning is repeated if the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed limit again, after it has dropped below it by 3 mph/5 km/h.

Adjusting

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Warning at:"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired speed is displayed.
7. Press the Controller.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1641
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Activating/deactivating

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Speed warning"

Setting your current speed as the speed warning

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Select current speed"

Driver Attention Camera

Concept

A camera that monitors driver activity is located in the instrument cluster. The camera evaluates the head position and eye opening and uses the data to analyze the attention of the driver. This system supports various vehicle assistance systems, e.g.:

- Fatigue alert.

Activating/deactivating

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Driver Attention Camera"
5. Select the desired setting.

System limits

The Driver Attention Camera may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- When the Driver Attention Camera is covered by the steering wheel rim.
- When the driver is wearing infrared impermeable sunglasses.

Activating/deactivating popup windows

For some functions, popup windows are displayed automatically on the Control Display. Some of these popup windows can be activated or deactivated.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Pop-ups"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Control Display

Brightness

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Control display"
5. "Brightness at night"
6. Press the Controller.
7. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is set.
8. Press the Controller.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Depending on the light conditions, the brightness settings may not be clearly visible.

Resetting the vehicle configuration

All individual settings can be reset to the factory settings when the drive-ready state is switched off.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Reset vehicle data"
5. "Reset vehicle data"

When the stored settings in a driver profile are synchronized with the ConnectedDrive account, these settings will remain in the ConnectedDrive account.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1643
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Personal settings

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Data protection

Data transfer

Concept

The vehicle offers different services, whose use requires a data transfer to BMW or a service provider. The data transfer can be deactivated for some services.

General information

When the data transfer is deactivated, the respective service cannot be used.

Only make these settings while stationary.

Adjusting

The data transfer can be configured in different stages or individually for separate services.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. Select the desired setting.

Deleting personal data in the vehicle

Concept

Depending on the usage, the vehicle stores personal data, such as stored radio stations. This personal data can be permanently deleted using iDrive.

General information

Depending on the equipment package, the following data can be deleted:

- Driver profile settings.
- Stored radio stations.
- Stored programmable memory buttons.
- Travel and Onboard Computer information.
- Music hard disk.
- Navigation, for instance stored destinations.
- Phone book.
- Online data, for instance Favorites, cookies.
- Office data, for instance voice notes.
- Login accounts.

Altogether, the deletion of the data can take up to 15 minutes.

Functional requirement

Data can only be deleted while stationary.

Deleting data

The personal data in the vehicle will be deleted when the vehicle is reset to the factory settings.

Additional information:

Resetting the vehicle configuration, refer to page 64.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1644

Driver profiles

Concept

Driver profiles can be created to store personal vehicle settings. If the vehicle is used by multiple drivers, each driver can create his personal driver profile. When a driver profile is selected, the vehicle will automatically apply the stored settings in the driver profile.

General information

Three personal driver profiles can be created.

In addition, a guest profile is available that can be selected by any driver. The guest profile is active when a personal driver profile has not been selected.

Changes to the vehicle settings are automatically stored in the active driver profile or in the guest profile.

The recognition via a vehicle key can be assigned to a driver profile so that the vehicle will apply the settings as soon as the driver unlocks the vehicle. As soon as the vehicle recognizes the vehicle key, the corresponding driver profile will be activated.

ConnectedDrive countries: The settings stored in the driver's profile can be synchronized with the personal BMW ConnectedDrive account. It is thereby possible to use these settings in other BMW vehicles as well.

Functional requirements

When switching the driver profile, the vehicle must move at a maximum of walking speed.

Welcome screen

After the Control Display is switched on, the Welcome screen will be displayed.

The following actions can be carried out on the Welcome screen:

- Switching the driver profile.
- Starting the set-up assistant.

  This option is offered in new vehicle for a limited period of time.

As soon as the engine is started or any button is pressed, the Welcome screen will be hidden.

Setup assistant

The setup assistant is offered in new vehicles for a limited period of time on the Welcome screen to configure the most important settings for the vehicle.

"Getting started" Select to start the set-up assistant.

The set-up assistant can be started via iDrive at any time.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Getting started"

The driver is guided step by step through the following functions:

- Setting the system language.
- ConnectedDrive countries:

  If the set-up assistant was opened in the guest profile: create driver profile.
- Pairing mobile devices with the vehicle.
- If the set-up assistant was opened from an already defined driver profile: set up personal assistant.
- Depending on whether the set-up assistant was opened from an already defined driver profile or a guest profile: set up services or confirm the explanation for the transmission of vehicle related data.
- Set up other methods for use.

The selected settings are stored in the active driver's profile.

Guest profile

The guest profile can be activated by any driver. Vehicle settings that are entered when the guest profile is active will be stored in the guest profile.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1645
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

In the following cases the guest profile is automatically active:

- A driver profile has not been created yet.
- No driver profile has been assigned to the vehicle key that was used to unlock the vehicle.

The following limitations apply:

- The guest profile cannot be renamed.
- It is not possible to assign the recognition to the guest profile.
- It is not possible to assign a PIN to the guest profile.
- ConnectedDrive countries: It is not possible to synchronize with a ConnectedDrive account.

The guest profile is selected on the Welcome screen or via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"

   As an alternative for Steps 1 and 2, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
3. "Guest"
4. "OK"

Creating a driver profile

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Add driver profile"

ConnectedDrive countries: An existing ConnectedDrive account must be assigned to a driver profile. If a ConnectedDrive account has not yet been created, the account can be created via a smartphone. A QR code will be displayed on the Control Display for this purpose. The creation of the driver profile can continue with the access data of the created ConnectedDrive account.

Selecting recognition

The settings for the recognition are entered via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Driver recognition"
5. "with vehicle key"

   The vehicle key that was used to unlock the vehicle is assigned to the driver profile.
6. "Activate linkage"

As soon as the vehicle recognizes the vehicle key, the corresponding driver profile will be activated.

Setting up a PIN

After unlocking the vehicle, another driver profile can be selected via iDrive. If a PIN was set up for the selected driver profile, this driver profile can only be activated with the PIN.

Non-ConnectedDrive countries: If the PIN is not known, the driver's profile cannot be activated.

ConnectedDrive countries: If the PIN is not known, the driver's profile can be activated with the access data of the corresponding ConnectedDrive account.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Driver recognition"
5. "using PIN"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1646

Changing/canceling the recognition function

If another vehicle key is assigned to a driver profile, the current assignment must be canceled first.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Driver recognition"
5. "with vehicle key"
6. "Activate linkage"

When the vehicle and vehicle key will be handed over, such as for maintenance, carry out the following steps first:

- ▷ Setting up PIN.
- ▷ Canceling recognition using the vehicle key.
- ▷ Switching to the guest profile.

The handed over vehicle key can then no longer be used to access the personal driver profile.

Selecting a driver profile

Depending on the recognition setting, the driver profile will be selected automatically.

If the guest profile is active, the driver profile will be selected on the Welcome screen or via iDrive: A PIN may have to be entered.

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"

   As an alternative for Steps 1 and 2, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
3. Select driver profile.
4. "OK"

All settings stored in the selected driver profile are automatically applied.

Switching synchronization with the ConnectedDrive account on/off

ConnectedDrive countries:

The settings stored in the driver's profile are synchronized with the personal ConnectedDrive account. This means that it is possible to use the personal settings in other BMW vehicles with ConnectedDrive access as well, if this function is supported.

The synchronization with the ConnectedDrive account is enabled when a driver profile is created or via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Settings"
5. "Synchronize driver profile"
6. "Synchronize driver profile"

Renaming a driver profile

Countries in which ConnectedDrive is not available:

The name that was assigned when the driver profile was set up can be changed via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"

   As an alternative for Steps 1 and 2, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
3. Select driver profile.
4. "Settings"
5. Enter a profile name.
6. OK Select the symbol.

Selecting a profile picture

Countries in which ConnectedDrive is available:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1647
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

The profile image is transferred from the ConnectedDrive customer portal or the BMW Connected app.

Countries in which ConnectedDrive is not available:

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Avatar"
5. Select the desired profile picture.

Deleting the driver profile

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Settings"
5. "Remove driver profile"
6. Select the desired driver profile.
7. "Delete now"

ConnectedDrive countries: If the driver profile was synchronized with a ConnectedDrive account, the stored data in the ConnectedDrive account will be retained.

System limits

A clear detection of the desired vehicle key may not be possible in the following cases, e.g.:

- The driver unlocks the vehicle via Comfort Access.
- The driver changes, but the vehicle is not locked and unlocked.
- When multiple vehicle keys are located outside on the driver's side of the vehicle.

ConnectedDrive countries:

A driver profile can only be created and synchronized with the ConnectedDrive account when cellular network reception is available.

The use of personal settings that are stored in the ConnectedDrive account in other vehicles is subject to technical limitations. For example, settings may be stored for a system that is not available, or available in a non-compatible version, in other vehicles.

Connections

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle

Concept

Various connection types are available for using mobile devices in the vehicle. The connection type to select depends on the mobile device and the desired function.

General information

The following overview shows possible functions and the suitable connection types for them. The scope of functions depends on the mobile device.

Function	Connection type
Making calls via the hands-free system. Using phone functions via iDrive or touchscreen. Other functions, e.g. Contacts or SMS.	Bluetooth.
Playing music from the smartphone or the audio player.	Bluetooth or USB.
USB storage device: Playing music.	USB.
Playing videos from the smartphone or the USB storage device.	USB.
Using the vehicle Internet access.	WiFi hotspot via WLAN.
Using Apple CarPlay apps via iDrive and voice operation.	Bluetooth and WLAN.
Screen Mirroring: Showing the smartphone display on the Control Display.	WLAN.

The following connection types require one-time pairing with the vehicle:

- Bluetooth.
- WiFi hotspot.
- Apple CarPlay.
- Screen Mirroring.

Paired devices are automatically recognized later on and connected to the vehicle.

Safety information

Warning

Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. As warranted, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1649
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Compatible devices

General information

Information on mobile devices compatible with the vehicle can be found at www.bmwusa.com/bluetooth.

Malfunctions may occur with devices not listed or deviating software versions.

Displaying the vehicle identification number and software part number

When looking for compatible devices, you may have to state the vehicle identification number and the software part number. These numbers can be displayed in the vehicle.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth® info"
6. "System information"

Bluetooth connection

Functional requirements

- Compatible device with Bluetooth interface.

  Compatible devices, refer to page 71.
- The vehicle key or BMW display key is in the vehicle.
- The device is ready for operation.
- Bluetooth is switched on in the vehicle and on the device.
- The pairing readiness is displayed on the Control Display.
- Bluetooth presettings, such as visibility, may be required on the device; refer to the owner's manual of the device.

Switching on Bluetooth

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth®"
6. Select setting.

Activating/deactivating telephone functions

To use all supported functions of a mobile phone, activate the desired functions in the vehicle prior to pairing the mobile phone with the vehicle as needed.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Personalize menu"
3. Select the desired settings, for instance"Text messages".

Pairing the mobile device with the vehicle

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Phone calls and audio"

   The vehicle's Bluetooth name is displayed on the Control Display.
6. On the mobile device, search for Bluetooth devices in the vicinity and select the vehicle.

   A control number is displayed.
7. Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number

on the display of the mobile device, and confirm that the two match.

8. Select Bluetooth connection if necessary: "Use BMW iDrive for phone calls, Bluetooth® audio, and apps."

The mobile device is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Frequently Asked Questions

All requirements are met and all required steps were completed in the specified order. Despite that, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations can help:

Why could the mobile phone not be paired or connected?

- There are too many Bluetooth devices connected to the mobile phone or vehicle.

  In the vehicle, delete Bluetooth connections with other devices.

  Delete the Bluetooth connection from the device list on the mobile phone and start a new device search.

  Too many Bluetooth devices with the same function are paired.

- The mobile phone is in power-save mode or has only a limited remaining battery life.

  Charge the mobile phone and deactivate the power-save mode where required.

Why does the mobile phone no longer react?

- The applications on the mobile phone do not function anymore.

  Switch the mobile phone off and on again.

- Too high or too low ambient temperature for mobile phone operation.

  Do not subject the mobile phone to extreme ambient temperatures.

Why can phone functions not be used via iDrive?

- Phone functions are not configured for the mobile phone.

  Connect the mobile phone with the telephone function.

Why are no or not all phone book entries displayed or why are they incomplete?

- Transmission of the phone book entries is not yet complete.
- It is possible that only the phone book entries of the mobile phone or the SIM card are transmitted.
- It may not be possible to display phone book entries with special characters.
- It may not be possible to transmit contacts from social networks.
- The number of phone book entries to be transmitted is too high.
- Data volume of the contact too large, for instance due to stored information such as notes.

  Reduce the data volume of the contact.

- A mobile phone can only be connected as audio source or as telephone.

  Configure the mobile phone and connect it with the telephone function.

- Contact was created in the contact list of the phone after the last synchronization.

  Synchronize contacts again: "Reload contacts"

How can the phone connection quality be improved?

- Adjust the strength of the Bluetooth signal on the mobile phone, depending on the mobile phone.
- Insert the mobile phone into the wireless charging tray.
- Adjust the volume of the microphone separately in the sound settings.

If all points in this list have been checked and the required function is still not available, contact the hotline, a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1651
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

USB connection

General information

The following mobile devices can be connected to the USB port:

- Mobile phones.
- Audio devices such as MP3 players.
- USB storage devices.

  Common file systems are supported. FAT32 and exFAT are the recommended formats.

A connected USB storage device will be supplied with charge current via the USB port if the device supports this. Follow the maximum charge current of the USB port.

The following uses are possible on USB ports with data transfer:

- Playing music files.
- Playing videos.

Follow the following when connecting:

- Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB port.
- Use a flexible adapter cable.
- Protect the USB storage device against mechanical damage.
- Due to the large number of USB storage devices available on the market, it cannot be guaranteed that every device is operable on the vehicle.
- Do not expose USB storage devices to extreme environmental conditions, such as very high temperatures; refer to the owner's manual of the device.
- Due to the many different compression techniques, proper playback of the media stored on the USB storage device cannot be guaranteed in all cases.
- To ensure proper transmission of the stored data, do not charge a USB storage device via the onboard socket, when it is connected to the USB port.
- Depending on how the USB storage device is being used, settings may be required on the USB storage device, refer to the owner's manual of the device.

Not compatible USB media:

- USB hard drives.
- USB hubs.
- USB memory card readers with multiple slots.
- HFS-formatted USB storage devices.
- Devices such as fans or lamps.

Functional requirement

Compatible device with USB port.

Additional information:

Compatible devices, refer to page 71.

Connecting the device

Connect the USB device using a suitable adapter cable to a USB port.

The USB device is displayed in the device list.

Additional information:

USB port, refer to page 264.

WiFi hotspot

Concept

Compatible devices with WLAN interface can use the Internet connection of the vehicle via the WiFi hotspot.

General information

Up to 10 devices can be connected to the WiFi hotspot simultaneously.

Functional requirements

- Compatible device with activated WLAN interface.

  Compatible devices, refer to page 71.
- WLAN is activated on the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1652
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

- Internet use is activated for the vehicle.
- Registration and data contract with a service provider where required.
- Standby state is switched on.

Connecting a device to the Internet via the WiFi hotspot

Using the Internet for the first time via the WiFi hotspot requires registration and possibly a data volume purchase from a service provider.

Depending on the country version, data volume can be purchased via the connected mobile device or from the ConnectedDrive Store.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Internet, apps"

   Hotspot name and hotspot code are displayed on the Control Display.
6. Activate Internet usage via WLAN if necessary.

   "Open settings"
7. Activate Internet usage.

   "Internet connection"
8. Move the Controller to the left.
9. Search for WLAN networks on the mobile device. Select network name on the device.
10. Enter hotspot code on the device and connect.

The device is displayed in the device list.

Additionally, a QR code will be displayed on the Control Display. Alternatively, this QR code can be used to pair the mobile device with the hotspot.

All devices connected via the hotspot use this data volume.

Deactivating Internet usage via the WiFi hotspot

Internet usage may be deactivated if the data volume is used up, for instance.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Internet connection"
6. Select the desired setting.

Apple CarPlay preparation

Concept

CarPlay allows certain functions of a compatible Apple iPhone to be used via Siri voice operation and iDrive.

Functional requirements

- Compatible iPhone, iPhone 5 or later with iOS 7.1 or later.

  Compatible devices, refer to page 71.
- Corresponding mobile contract.
- Bluetooth, WLAN, and Siri voice operation are activated on the iPhone.
- Booking the ConnectedDrive service: Apple CarPlay preparation.

Switching on Bluetooth and CarPlay

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. Select the following setting:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1653
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

"Apple CarPlay"

6. Activate the function.

Pairing the iPhone with CarPlay

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Phone calls and audio"

   The vehicle's Bluetooth name is displayed on the Control Display.
6. On the mobile device, search for Bluetooth devices in the vicinity and select the vehicle.

   A control number is displayed.
7. Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number on the display of the mobile device, and confirm that the two match.
8. Select CarPlay:

   "Confirm note and connect to Apple CarPlay"

The iPhone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Operation

For more information, refer to the Integrated Owner's Manual or the Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication.

Frequently Asked Questions

All requirements are met and all required steps were completed in the specified order. Despite that, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations can help:

The iPhone has already been paired with Apple CarPlay. When a new connection is established, CarPlay can no longer be selected.

- ▷ Delete the iPhone concerned from the device list.
- ▷ On the iPhone, delete the vehicle concerned from the list of stored connections under Bluetooth and under WLAN.
- ▷ Pair the iPhone as a new device.

If the steps listed have been carried out and the required function is still not available: contact the hotline, a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Screen Mirroring

General information

Screen Mirroring enables mirroring (outputting) of the smartphone display on the Control Display.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Compatible smartphone with Screen Mirroring interface.

  Compatible devices, refer to page 71.
- ▷ Screen Mirroring is switched on on the smartphone.
- ▷ WLAN is switched on in the vehicle.

Activate WLAN in the vehicle

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Wi-Fi®"

Pairing a smartphone with Screen Mirroring

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1654

5. "Screen Mirroring"

   The WLAN name of the vehicle is displayed on the Control Display.

6. Search for WLAN devices in the surroundings of the smartphone.

   The WLAN name of the vehicle appears on the device display. Select the WLAN name of the vehicle.

7. Confirm the connection via iDrive.

The device is connected and displayed in the device list.

Managing mobile devices

General information

- After one-time pairing, the devices are automatically recognized and reconnected when standby state is switched on.
- After stored content on the SIM card or the mobile phone, such as contacts, has been detected, the data is transmitted to the vehicle and can be used via iDrive.
- For some devices, certain settings are necessary, for instance authorization; see the owner's manual of the device.

Displaying the device list

All devices paired with or connected to the vehicle are displayed in the device list.

A maximum of 4 devices can be connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth, and a maximum of 10 devices can be connected to the vehicle via WLAN. A maximum of 20 devices will be detected.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"

A symbol indicates, for which function a device is used. When the icon is displayed in white, this function is actively connected to the vehicle. The icon is displayed in gray when the function of the device is inactive.

Symbol	Meaning
	Telephone.
	Bluetooth audio.
	WiFi hotspot.
	Apple CarPlay.
	Screen Mirroring.

Configuring the device

Functions can be activated or deactivated for paired and connected devices.

If a function is assigned to a device, the function will be deactivated where appropriate for a device that is already connected and the device will be disconnected. Follow the information on the Control Display.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Select the desired device.
4. Select the desired setting:
   - "Disconnect device"

     The device remains paired and can be connected again.
   - "Connect device"

     The functions that were assigned to the device before disconnecting are assigned to the device when it is reconnected. The functions may be deactivated on a device already connected.
   - "Delete device"

     The device is disconnected and removed from the device list.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1655
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Priority of the phones

When two mobile phones are connected to the vehicle, you can specify the priority of the mobile phones for reconnection.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Priorities for telephones"
6. Select the desired device.
7. Turn the controller to select the priority for the selected mobile phone.

   Select the desired priority by sliding.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1656

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Opening and closing

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Vehicle key

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the vehicle is delivered with two vehicle keys or one vehicle key and the BMW display key.

Each vehicle key contains a replaceable battery.

Depending on the equipment and country version, various settings can be configured for the button functions.

A driver profile with personal settings can be assigned to a vehicle key.

To provide information on maintenance requirements, the service data is stored in the vehicle key.

To prevent possible locking in of the vehicle key, take the vehicle key with you when exiting the vehicle.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Take the vehicle key with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.

⚠ Warning

For some country versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

⚠ Warning

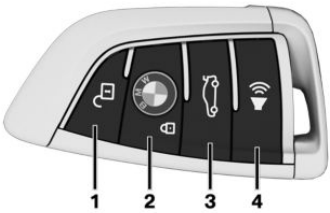
Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1657
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Overview



1 Unlocking

2 Locking

3 To open the tailgate

4 Press and hold or press three times in quick succession: panic mode

Press briefly: pathway lighting

Unlocking

General information

The behavior of the vehicle during unlocking using the vehicle key depends on the following settings:

- If only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap or all access to the vehicle will be unlocked.
- If the unlocking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- If the welcome light is switched on when the vehicle is being unlocked.

Unlocking the vehicle

Press the button on the vehicle key.

If, due to the settings, only the driver's door and fuel filler flap were unlocked, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

In addition, the following functions are executed:

- If a driver profile was assigned to the vehicle key, this driver profile will be activated and the settings that are stored in it will be applied.
- The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off.
- Folded in exterior mirrors are folded out.

  If the exterior mirrors were folded in via the button in the car's interior, they will not be folded out when unlocking.
- With anti-theft protection: Anti-theft protection is switched off.
- With alarm system: The alarm system will be switched off.

After opening one of the front doors, the vehicle is ready for operation.

The light functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

Convenient opening

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key after unlocking.

The windows and the glass sunroof with sun protection are opened, as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Locking

General information

The behavior of the vehicle during locking using the vehicle key depends on the following settings:

- If the locking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- If the exterior mirrors are automatically folded in when the vehicle is locked. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.
- If pathway lighting is activated during locking.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Press the button on the vehicle key.

The following functions are executed:

- All doors, the tailgate, and the fuel filler flap are locked.
- With anti-theft protection: Anti-theft protection is switched on. This prevents the doors from being unlocked using the lock buttons or the door openers.
- With alarm system: The alarm system will be switched on.

If the drive-ready state is still switched on when you lock the vehicle, the vehicle horn honks twice. In this case, the drive-ready state must be switched off by means of the Start/Stop button.

With Comfort Access: convenient closing

Safety information

Warning

With convenient closing, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during convenient closing.

Closing

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key in the area close to the vehicle after locking.

The windows and the glass sunroof with sun protection are closed, as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Switching on the interior and exterior lights

Press the button on the vehicle key with the vehicle locked.

The function is not available for the first 10 seconds after locking.

- The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off.

  Interior lights, refer to page 161.
- Depending on the settings, the exterior lighting will be switched on.

  Welcome lights, refer to page 157.

The light functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

Tailgate

General information

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

You can set up if the doors will be unlocked when the tailgate is opened with the vehicle key.

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

Warning

The tailgate pivots out when it opens. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

NOTICE

Sharp-edged or pointed objects can hit the windows and heat conductors while driving. There is a risk of damage to property. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects do not hit the windows.

Opening

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1659
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

▷ Press the button on the vehicle key and hold for at least 3 seconds.

▷ Briefly press the button on the vehicle key three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Switching pathway lighting on

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

It is possible to adjust the duration of the pathway lighting feature.

Additional information:

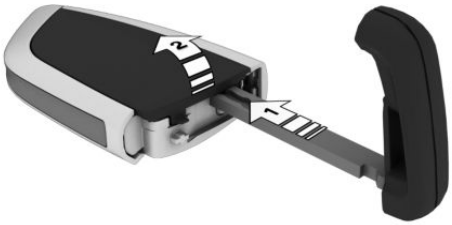
Pathway lighting, refer to page 158.

Replacing the battery

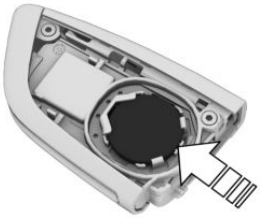
1. Remove the integrated key from the vehicle key.

   Integrated key, refer to page 86.

2. Place the integrated key underneath the battery compartment cover, arrow 1, and lift the cover with a lever movement of the integrated key, arrow 2.



3. Push battery in the direction of the arrow using a pointed object and lift it out.



4. Insert a type CR 2032 battery with the positive side facing up.
5. Press the cover closed.
6. Push the integrated key into the vehicle key until the integrated key engages.

Have old batteries disposed of by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take them to a collection point.

Additional vehicle keys

Additional vehicle keys are available from a service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Loss of vehicle keys

A lost vehicle key can be blocked and replaced by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

If the lost vehicle key has an assigned driver profile, the connection to this vehicle key must be deleted. A new vehicle key can then be assigned to the driver profile.

Malfunction

General information

A Check Control message is displayed.

Vehicle key recognition by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

▷ The battery of the vehicle key is discharged.

- Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- Shielding of the vehicle key due to metal objects.

  Do not transport the vehicle key together with metal objects.
- Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity to the vehicle key.

  Do not transport the vehicle key together with electronic devices.
- Interference of radio transmission by a charging process of mobile devices, for instance charging of a mobile phone.
- The vehicle key is in direct proximity of the wireless charging tray.

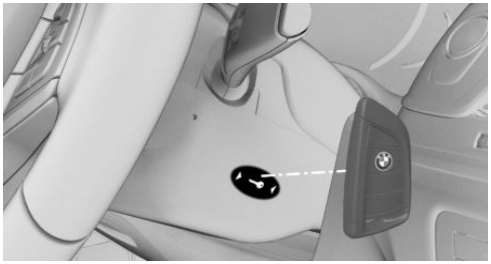
  Place the vehicle key in a different location.

In the case of interference, the vehicle can also be unlocked and locked from the outside with the integrated key.

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 86.

Switching the drive-ready state on via emergency detection of the vehicle key



It is not possible to switch on the drive-ready state if the vehicle key has not been detected.

Proceed as follows in this case:

1. Hold the back of the vehicle key against the marked area on the steering column. Pay attention to the display in the instrument cluster.
2. If the vehicle key is detected:

   Switch on drive-ready state within 10 seconds.

If the vehicle key is not recognized, slightly change the position of the vehicle key and repeat the procedure.

Frequently Asked Questions

What precautions can be taken to be able to open a vehicle with an accidentally locked in vehicle key?

- The options provided by the Remote Services of the BMW Connected app include the ability to lock and unlock a vehicle.

  This requires an active BMW ConnectedDrive contract and the BMW Connected app must be installed on a smartphone.
- Unlocking the vehicle can be requested via the BMW ConnectedDrive Call Center.

  An active BMW ConnectedDrive contract is required.

BMW display key

General information

The BMW display key is supplied with an additional mechanical key. If the display key is used, the mechanical key should be carried with you, for instance in the wallet. The mechanical key is used like the integrated key.

The display key supports all functions of the standard vehicle key.

In addition, the following functions are also available:

- Display status of doors and windows.
- Display status of the anti-theft warning system.
- Display service information.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1661
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

- Call up range with available fuel.
- With parked-car heating: operate parked-car heating.

  Without parked-car heating: operate parked-car ventilation.
- Remote Control Parking.

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 86.

Safety information

Warning

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Take the vehicle key with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.

Warning

For some country versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

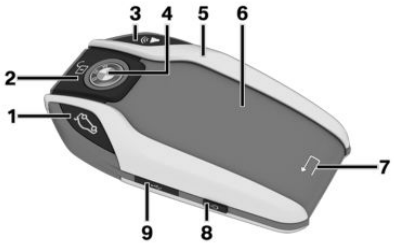
Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Overview



1 To open the tailgate

2 Unlocking

3 Press and hold or press three times in quick succession: panic mode

Press briefly: pathway lighting

4 Locking

5 Park button

6 Display

7 Back

8 Switch the display on/off

9 Micro-USB charging socket

Reception range

The number of available display key functions depends on the distance from the vehicle.

- When you are in close proximity to the vehicle, all functions of the display key are available.
- The status information can be called up in the extended reception range.

  With parked-car heating: the parked-car heating can be operated.

  Without parked-car heating: the parked-car ventilation can be operated.

- Outside of the reception range of the vehicle, you can display the last transmitted status information from the vehicle.

The symbol is shown on the display if one of the buttons is pressed outside of the reception range.

Display

General information

The display is divided into the upper status line, the information area, and the lower status line.

Upper status line

The upper status line displays the following information:

- / Vehicle secured/vehicle unsecured.
- Set time in the vehicle.
- Charge state of the display key battery.

Information area

The information area can be used to access information and perform additional functions.

If the information area contains more than one page, then page indicators are shown beneath the information.

A solid indicator denotes the current page.

Swipe to the right or left with a finger to change between the pages.

If further information is available on a page, tap the appropriate symbol.

To return to the original page: tap on the symbol beneath the display.

Lower status line

The lower status line indicates whether or not the display key is within reception range.

- "Connected": the display key is within reception range.
- "Updated": the display key is not within reception range. It indicates when the last data transfer from the vehicle took place.

Switching on/off

The display will go out automatically after a brief period to conserve battery power.

To hide the display manually:

Press the button on the left side of the display key.

To show the display:

1. Press the button on the left side of the display key.
2. Then, swipe with your finger from bottom to top to unlock the screen lock.

To switch off the display to increase the usable battery life:

1. If necessary, cancel the screen lock.
2. Press and hold the button on the left side of the display key for longer than 4 seconds.
3. "OK"

To switch the display on:

Press the button on the left side of the display key.

Operating concept

Depending on the vehicle equipment, there are up to five main menus providing access to the sub-menus.

Main menu	Information/Function
"Security information"	/ Door status. Alarm system status. After alarm triggering: date, time, and reason for triggering the alarm.
	Window status. Glass sunroof status.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1663
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Main menu	Information/Function
"Vehicle information"	Maintenance indicators of Condition Based Service CBS. Status of the roadside parking lights.
"Mobility info"	Range with available fuel.
"Preconditioning setting"	With parked-car heating: operate parked-car heating. Without parked-car heating: operate parked-car ventilation.
"R/C parking"	Remote Control Parking.

Display key battery

General information

Follow the following information:

- If the charge state of the display key battery declines, the display is switched off automatically. The battery must be recharged so that the display can be switched back on. The operability of the standard buttons is retained until the battery is completely discharged.
- Charge the battery for at least three hours before using the display key for the first time or if the key has not been used for an extended period.
- The display key can be used while it is being charged via the USB port. If the battery is fully discharged, it may take some time before the display key can be used again.
- Due to the large number of USB chargers available on the market, it cannot be guaranteed that every charger will function properly. The charging duration depends on the charger used.
- Charging via the USB port may heat up the charger and the display key.
- Charging in the wireless charging tray may heat up the tray and the display key.

  At higher temperatures, the charge current through the display key may be reduced, and in isolated cases the charge process may be interrupted temporarily.
- When inserting the display key into the wireless charging tray, make sure there are no objects between it and the wireless charging tray.

Safety information

Warning

When charging a device that meets the Qi standard in the wireless charging tray, any metal objects located between the device and the tray can become very hot. Placing storage devices or electronic cards, such as chip cards, cards with magnetic strips or cards for signal transmission, between the device and the tray may impair the card function. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. When charging mobile devices, make sure there are no objects between the device and the tray.

Charging

Via USB

Connect the display key via the micro-USB charging socket to a USB port.

In the center console

1. Open the tray cover.

2. Place the display key into the middle of the wireless charging tray in front of the cup holders.

   Ensure that the display is facing up.

3. Close the tray cover.

Malfunction

General information

A Check Control message is displayed.

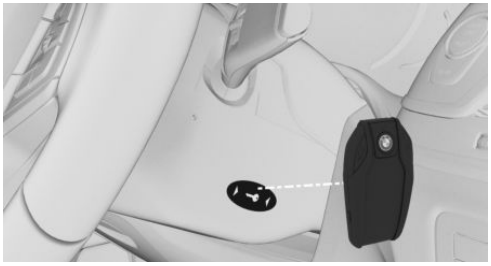
BMW display key detection by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- The battery of the display key is discharged.
- Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- Shielding of the display key due to metal objects.
- Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity.
- Interference of radio transmission by a charging process of mobile devices, for instance charging of a mobile phone.

Do not transport the display key together with metal objects or electronic devices.

In the case of interference, the vehicle can also be unlocked and locked from the outside with the mechanical key.

Switching on drive-ready state via emergency detection of the BMW display key



It is not possible to switch on the drive-ready state if the display key has not been detected.

Proceed as follows in this case:

1. Hold the display key with its back against the marked area on the steering column. Pay attention to the display in the instrument cluster.
2. If the display key is detected:

   Switch on drive-ready state within 10 seconds.

If the display key is not detected, slightly change the position of the display key and repeat the procedure.

Resetting the BMW display key

If the charged display key cannot be switched on anymore or if the display does not respond to entries anymore, the display key can be reset.

Press and hold the following buttons on the display key at the same time for at least 10 seconds until the display is switched off and then on again:

-
-

Integrated key

General information

The driver's door can be locked and unlocked without the vehicle key using the integrated key.

The integrated key also fits the glove compartment.

Safety information

Warning

For some country versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1665
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

NOTICE

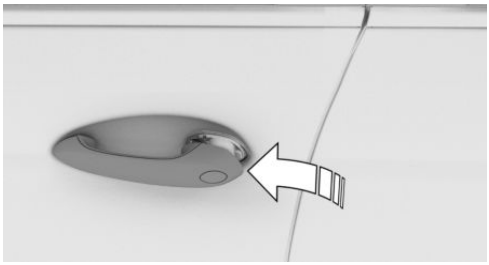
The door lock is permanently joined with the door. The door handle can be moved. When pulling the door handle with the integrated key inserted, paint or the integrated key can be damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Remove the integrated key before pulling the outside door handle.

Removing

Press the button, arrow 1, and pull out the integrated key, arrow 2.

Locking/unlocking via the door lock

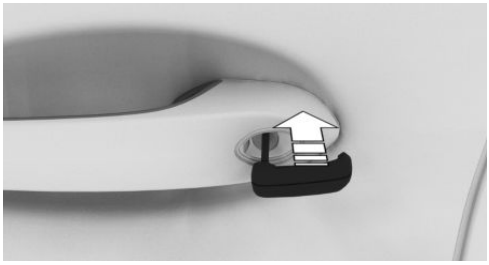
1. Pull and hold the door handle outward with one hand.



2. Guide one finger of your other hand from the back under the cover and push the cover out.

   Use the thumb for counter support to prevent the cover from falling out of the door handle.

3. Remove the cover.
4. Unlock or lock the door lock using the integrated key.



The other doors must be unlocked or locked from the inside.

Alarm system

The activated alarm system is triggered when the door is opened, if the vehicle has been unlocked via the door lock.

The alarm system is not switched on if the vehicle is locked with the integrated key.

Buttons for the central locking system

General information

In the event of a severe accident, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The hazard warning system and interior lights come on.

Overview

Buttons for the central locking system.

Locking

Press the button with the front doors closed.

- The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.
- The vehicle is not secured against theft when locking.

Unlocking

Press the button.

Opening

- Press the button to unlock all the doors.

  Pull the door opener above the armrest.
- Front doors: pull the door handle on the door to open the door. The other doors remain locked.
- Back doors: pull twice on the door handle on the door to be opened; the first time unlocks the door, the second time opens it. The other doors remain locked.

Comfort Access

Concept

The vehicle can be accessed without operating the vehicle key.

Carrying the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket, is sufficient.

The vehicle automatically detects the vehicle key when it is in close proximity or in the car's interior.

General information

Comfort Access supports the following functions:

- Unlocking and locking the vehicle from the door handle.
- Convenient closing.
- Open the tailgate.
- Open and close the tailgate with no-touch activation.

Functional requirements

- To lock the vehicle, the vehicle key must be outside of the vehicle near the doors.
- The next unlocking and locking cycle is not possible until after approx. 2 seconds.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1667
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

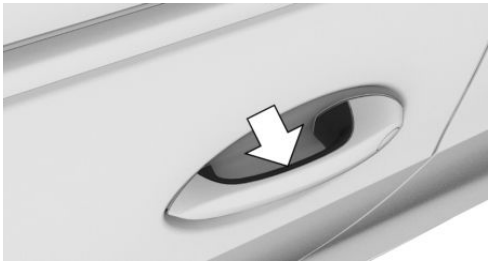
Unlocking

General information

The behavior of the vehicle during unlocking via the Comfort Access depends on the following settings:

- If the unlocking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- If the welcome light is switched on when the vehicle is being unlocked.

Unlocking the vehicle



Grasp the handle of a vehicle door completely.

In addition, the following functions are executed:

- If a driver profile was assigned to the vehicle key, this driver profile will be activated and the settings that are stored in it will be applied.
- The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off.
- Folded in exterior mirrors are folded out.

  If the exterior mirrors were folded in via the button in the car's interior, they will not be folded out when unlocking.
- With anti-theft protection: Anti-theft protection is switched off.
- With alarm system: The alarm system will be switched off.

Locking

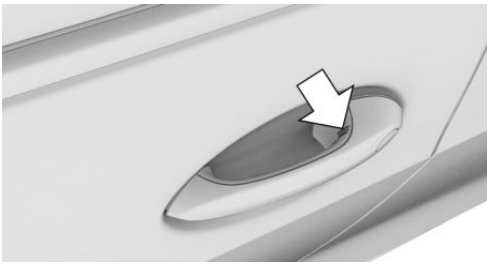
General information

The behavior of the vehicle during locking via the Comfort Access depends on the following settings:

- If the locking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- If the exterior mirrors are automatically folded in when the vehicle is locked. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.
- If pathway lighting is activated during locking.

Locking the vehicle

Close the driver's door.



Touch the grooved surface on the handle of a closed vehicle door with your finger for approx. 1 second without grasping the door handle.

The following functions are executed:

- All doors, the tailgate, and the fuel filler flap are locked.
- With anti-theft protection: Anti-theft protection is switched on. This prevents the doors from being unlocked using the lock buttons or the door openers.
- With alarm system: The alarm system will be switched on.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1668

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

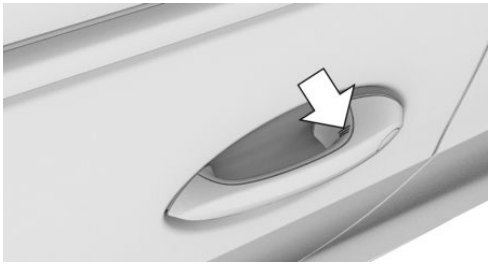
Convenient closing

Safety information

Warning

With convenient closing, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during convenient closing.

Closing



Touch the grooved surface on the handle of a closed vehicle door with your finger and hold it there without grasping the door handle.

In addition to locking, the windows and glass sunroof with sun protection will be closed.

Opening the tailgate

General information

If the tailgate is opened via Comfort Access, locked doors are not unlocked.

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

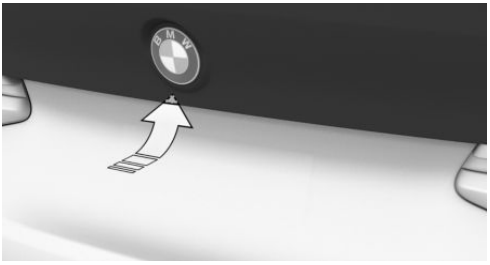
Warning

The tailgate pivots out when it opens. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

NOTICE

Sharp-edged or pointed objects can hit the windows and heat conductors while driving. There is a risk of damage to property. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects do not hit the windows.

Opening



Press the button on tailgate's exterior.

Opening and closing the tailgate with no-touch activation

Concept

The tailgate can be opened and closed with no-touch activation using the vehicle key you are

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1669
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

carrying. Two sensors detect a forward-directed foot motion in the central rear area and the tailgate is opened and closed.

General information

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

If the vehicle key is in the sensor area, the tailgate may open or close inadvertently if you unintentionally move your foot or if a foot movement is detected.

The sensor has an approximate range of 5 ft/1.50 m extending from the rear of the vehicle.

If the tailgate is opened with no-touch activation, locked doors are not unlocked.

Safety information

Warning

During no-touch activation, vehicle parts may be touched, such as the hot exhaust gas system. There is a risk of injury. When moving your foot, make sure you have a firm stance and do not touch the vehicle.

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

Warning

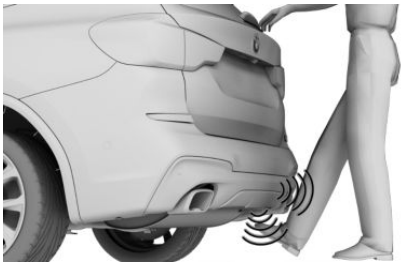
The tailgate pivots out when it opens. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

NOTICE

Sharp-edged or pointed objects can hit the windows and heat conductors while driving. There is a risk of damage to property. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects do not hit the windows.

Performing the foot movement

1. Stand in the middle behind the vehicle at approx. one arm's length away from the rear of the vehicle.
2. Wave a foot under the vehicle in the direction of travel and immediately pull it back. With this movement, the leg must pass through the ranges of both sensors.



Opening

Perform the foot movement described earlier.

Before the tailgate opens, the hazard warning system flashes.

Moving your foot again will stop the opening motion, and moving it one more time after that will close the tailgate.

Closing

Perform the foot movement described earlier.

The hazard warning system flashes and an acoustic signal sounds.

Moving your foot again will stop the closing motion, and moving it one more time after that will re-open the tailgate.

Malfunction

Vehicle key recognition by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- The battery of the vehicle key is discharged.

  For replacing the battery, refer to page 81.
- Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- Shielding of the vehicle key due to metal objects.

  Do not transport the vehicle key together with metal objects.
- Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity to the vehicle key.

  Do not transport the vehicle key together with electronic devices.

Wet or snowy conditions may disrupt the locking request recognition function on the door handles.

In the case of a malfunction, unlock and lock the vehicle using the buttons of the vehicle key or use the integrated key.

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 86.

Tailgate

General information

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country versions, it is possible to specify whether the doors are also unlocked when unlocking using the vehicle key.

Additional information:

Settings, refer to page 94.

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

Warning

The tailgate pivots out when it opens. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

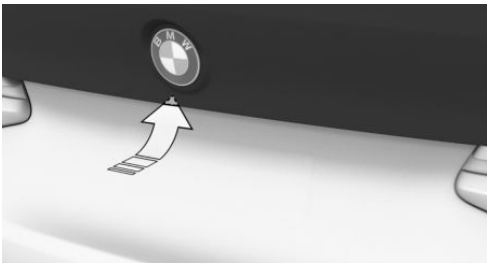
NOTICE

Sharp-edged or pointed objects can hit the windows and heat conductors while driving. There is a risk of damage to property. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects do not hit the windows.

Tailgate

Opening

From the outside



- Unlock the vehicle and then press the button on the outside of the tailgate.
- With Comfort Access: carry the vehicle key with you and press the button on the outside of the tailgate.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1671
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

▷ Press the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

Depending on the setting, the doors may also be unlocked.

If the vehicle is stationary, the tailgate opens automatically to the adjusted opening height.

From the inside

Press the button in the driver's door downward.

If the vehicle is locked, selector lever position P must be engaged first.

The tailgate will be opened to the configured opening height.

Interruption of the opening procedure

The opening procedure is interrupted in the following situations:

- ▷ When the vehicle starts moving.
- ▷ By pressing the button on the outside of the tailgate. Pressing again closes the tailgate.
- ▷ By pressing the button on the inside of the tailgate. Pressing again closes the tailgate.
- ▷ By pressing the button on the vehicle key. Pressing again continues the opening motion.
- ▷ By pressing or pulling the button in the driver's door. Pressing again continues the opening motion.

Closing

From the outside

▷ Press the button on the inside of the tailgate.

With Comfort Access:

▷ Press the button on the inside of the tailgate.

The vehicle will be locked after closing the tailgate. The driver's door must be closed for this purpose and the vehicle key must be outside of the vehicle in the area of the tailgate.

From the inside

Pull and hold the button in the driver door.

The vehicle key must be located in the car's interior for this function.

An acoustic signal sounds before the tailgate is closed.

Interruption of the closing procedure

The closing procedure is interrupted in the following situations:

- ▷ If the vehicle starts off with a jerky movement.
- ▷ By pressing the button on the outside of the tailgate. Pressing again re-opens the tailgate.
- ▷ By pressing the button on the inside of the tailgate. Pressing again re-opens the tailgate.
- ▷ By releasing the button in the driver's door. Pulling again and holding continues the closing motion.

Malfunction

Safety information

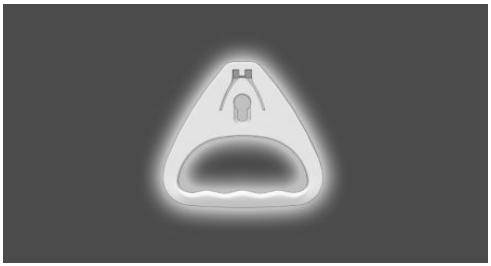
⚠ Warning

With manual operation of a blocked tailgate, it can release itself unexpectedly from the blockage. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not operate the tailgate manually if it is blocked. Have it checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

In the event of an electrical malfunction, operate the unlocked tailgate manually with a slow and smooth motion.

To close the tailgate fully, press down lightly only. Closing occurs automatically.

Trunk emergency unlocking



Pull the handle inside the cargo area.

The tailgate is unlocked.

Soft-close automatic

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed while operating the doors. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during opening and closing.

Closing

To close the doors, push lightly.

Closing occurs automatically.

Adjusting

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country version, various settings for opening and closing are possible.

These settings are stored for the driver profile currently used.

Unlocking and locking

Doors

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Key button settings"
4. Select the symbol.
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "Driver's door only"

     Only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.
   - "All doors"

     The entire vehicle is unlocked.

Confirmation signals from the vehicle

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Access"
4. Deactivate or activate the desired confirmation signals:
   - "Flash when locking/unlocking"

     Unlocking is signaled by two flashes, locking by one.
   - With alarm system:

     "Sound when locking/unlocking"

     Unlocking is confirmed with two sound signals, locking is confirmed with one sound signal.

Folding mirrors automatically

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1673
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

3. "Doors/Access"
4. "Fold mirrors in when locked"

   The exterior mirrors are automatically folded in during locking.

Automatic unlocking

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Access"
4. "Unlock at end of trip"

   After drive-ready state is switched off by pressing the Start/Stop button, the locked vehicle is automatically unlocked.

Automatic locking

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Access"
4. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Lock automatically"

     The vehicle locks automatically after a while if no door is opened after unlocking.
   - ▷ "Lock after starting to drive"

     The vehicle locks automatically after you drive off.

Tailgate

Tailgate and doors

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country version, this setting may not be offered.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Key button settings"
4. Select the symbol.
   - ▷ "Tailgate"

     The tailgate is opened.
   - ▷ "Tailgate and door(s)"

     The tailgate is opened and the doors unlocked.

Adjusting the opening height

You can set how far the tailgate can be opened.

When adjusting the opening height, make sure the clearance above the tailgate is at least 4 in/10 cm.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Access"
4. "Tailgate"
5. "Opening height"
6. Monitor the tailgate and set the desired opening height.

Establishing idle state after opening the front doors

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Access"
4. "Turn off vehicle after opening door"

   Opening the front doors establishes the idle state.

   Idle state, refer to page 37.

Alarm system

General information

When the vehicle is locked, the vehicle alarm system reacts to the following changes:

- ▷ Opening a door, the hood, or the tailgate.
- ▷ Movements in the car's interior.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1674

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

- Changes in the vehicle tilt, for instance, during attempts at stealing a wheel or when towing the vehicle.
- Disconnected battery voltage.
- Improper use of the socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis.
- Locking the vehicle while a device is connected to the socket for the OBD Onboard-Diagnosis.

The alarm system signals these changes visually and acoustically:

- Acoustic alarm:

  Depending on local regulations, the acoustic alarm may be suppressed.
- Visual alarm:

  By flashing of the hazard warning system and headlights, where required.

Do not modify the system to ensure function of the alarm system.

Switching on/off

The alarm system is switched on or off as soon as the vehicle is locked with the vehicle key or unlocked or locked via Comfort Access.

Opening the doors with the alarm system switched on

The alarm system is triggered when a door is opened if the door was unlocked using the integrated key in the door lock.

Opening the tailgate with the alarm system switched on

The tailgate can be opened even when the alarm system is switched on.

After the tailgate is closed, it is locked and monitored again provided the doors are locked. The hazard warning system flashes once.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

- Press the button on the vehicle key and hold for at least 3 seconds.
- Briefly press the button on the vehicle key three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Indicator light on the interior mirror

- The indicator light flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

  The alarm system is switched on.
- Indicator light flashes for approx. 10 seconds, then it flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

  Interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor are not active, as doors, hood, or tailgate are not correctly closed. Correctly closed access points are secured.

  When the still open access points are closed, the interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor will be switched on.
- The indicator light goes out after unlocking:

  The vehicle has not been tampered with.
- The indicator light flashes after unlocking until drive-ready state is switched on, but no longer than approx. 5 minutes:

  An alarm has been triggered.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1675
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Tilt alarm sensor

The tilt of the vehicle is monitored.

The alarm system responds in situations such as attempts to steal a wheel or when the vehicle is towed.

Interior motion sensor

The windows and the glass sunroof must be closed for the system to function properly.

Avoiding unintentional alarms

General information

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor can trigger an alarm, although no unauthorized action occurred.

Possible situations for an unwanted alarm:

- In automatic vehicle washes.
- In duplex garages.
- During transport on trains carrying vehicles, at sea or on a trailer.
- With animals in the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is locked after start of fueling.

The tilt alarm sensor and the interior motion sensor can be switched off in such situations.

Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor

Press the button on the vehicle key within 10 seconds as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator light lights up for approx. 2 seconds and then continues to flash.

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor are switched off until the vehicle is locked again.

Switching off the alarm

- Unlock the vehicle with the vehicle key.
- Unlock the vehicle with the integrated key and activate the drive-ready state via emergency detection of the vehicle key.

  Malfunction, refer to page 81.
- With Comfort Access: when carrying the vehicle key, grasp the driver's door or front passenger door handle completely.

Power windows

General information

The windows can be opened with the vehicle key from the outside as well as closed with Comfort Access.

With Comfort Access: The windows can be closed from the outside via Comfort Access.

Additional information:

Vehicle key, refer to page 78.

Safety information

Warning

When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the windows is clear during opening and closing.

Overview

Power windows

Safety switch

Functional requirements

The windows can be operated under the following conditions.

- Standby state is switched on.
- Drive-ready state is switched on.

The vehicle key must be in the car's interior.

Opening

- Press the switch to the resistance point.

  The window opens while the switch is being held.

- Press the switch beyond the resistance point.

  The window opens automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Closing

- Pull the switch to the resistance point.

  The window closes while the switch is being held.

- Pull the switch beyond the resistance point.

  The window closes automatically if the door is closed. Pulling again stops the motion.

Jam protection system

Concept

The jam protection prevents objects or body parts becoming jammed between the door frame and window while a window is being closed.

General information

If resistance or a blockage is detected while a window is being closed, the closing action is interrupted.

The window opens slightly.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

Accessories on the windows such as antennas can impact jam protection. There is a risk of injury. Do not install accessories in the area of movement of the windows.

Closing without the jam protection system

In case of danger from the outside or if ice might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it there.

   The window closes with limited jam protection. If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.

2. Pull the switch past the resistance point again within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there.

   The window closes without jam protection.

Safety switch

Concept

The safety switch can be used to prevent children, for instance from opening and closing the rear windows using the switches in the rear.

If an accident of a certain severity occurs, the safety function is switched off automatically.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

The LED lights up if the safety function is switched on.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1677
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Roller sunblinds, rear side windows

General information

The safety switch in the driver's door can be used to prevent children, for instance from operating the roller sunblinds using the switches in the rear.

Additional information:

Safety switch, refer to page 98.

Overview of driver's door

Button for the roller sunblinds.

Overview of rear doors

Button for raising or lowering the roller sunblinds together.

Buttons for the roller sunblinds.

Operation

Driver's door

Press the button to open the closed roller sunblinds or to close the open roller sunblinds.

If the button is pressed again during the movement, the roller sunblinds are moved in the opposite direction.

Rear doors

Press the button to open the closed roller sunblinds or to close the open roller sunblinds.

If the button is pressed again during the movement, the roller sunblinds are moved in the opposite direction.

Press the button to open the closed roller sunblind or to close the open roller sunblind.

If the button is pressed again during the movement, the roller sunblind is moved in the opposite direction.

System limits

If you are no longer able to move the roller sunblinds after having activated them consecutively a number of times, the overheating protection mechanism is active. The system is blocked for a limited time to prevent overheating. Let the system cool.

The roller sunblinds cannot be moved at low interior temperatures.

Glass sunroof

General information

The glass sunroof and the sun protection are operated using the same switch.

The glass sunroof can be opened from the outside with the vehicle key and also closed with Comfort Access.

With Comfort Access: The glass sunroof can be closed from the outside via Comfort Access.

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the glass sunroof. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the glass sunroof is clear during opening and closing.

Overview

Opening/closing the glass sunroof.

Functional requirements

The glass sunroof and the sun protection can be operated under the following conditions.

- Standby state is switched on.
- Drive-ready state is switched on.

The vehicle key must be in the car's interior.

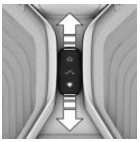
Lifting/closing glass sunroof

Push switch briefly upward.

- The closed glass sunroof tilts and the sun protection opens slightly.
- The opened glass sunroof closes until it is in the tilted position. The sun protection does not move.

- The tilted glass sunroof closes.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sun protection separately



- Press the switch in the desired direction to the resistance point and hold it there.

  Holding down the switch opens the sun protection. If the sun protection is already fully open, the glass sunroof opens.

  The glass sunroof closes while the switch is being held. If the glass sunroof is already closed or in the tilted position, the sun protection closes.

- Push the switch in the desired direction past the resistance point.

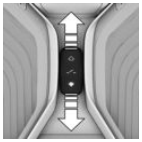
  The sun protection opens automatically. If the sun protection is already fully open, the glass sunroof opens automatically.

  The glass sunroof closes automatically. If the glass sunroof is already closed or in the tilted position, the sun protection closes automatically.

  Pressing the switch upward stops the motion.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1679
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sun protection together



Briefly press the switch twice in succession in the desired direction past the resistance point.

The glass sunroof and sun protection move together. Pressing the switch upward stops the motion.

Comfort position

In some models, the wind noises in the car's interior are lowest when the glass sunroof is not fully open. In these models, the automatic function initially only opens the glass sunroof up to this comfort position.

Pressing the switch again opens the glass sunroof fully.

Jam protection system

Concept

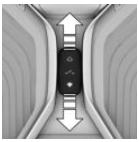
The jam protection prevents objects or body parts from becoming jammed between the roof and glass sunroof while the glass sunroof is closing.

General information

If a resistance or blockage is detected while the glass sunroof is closing, the closing operation is interrupted once the roof reaches the half-open position, or it is stopped when closing from the tilted position.

Closing from the open position without jam protection

In case of danger from the outside or if ice might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

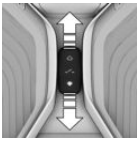


1. Close all doors.
2. Push the switch forward past the resistance point and hold.

   The glass sunroof closes with limited jam protection. If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.
3. Push the switch forward again past the resistance point and hold until the glass sunroof closes without jam protection. Make sure that the closing area is clear.

Closing from the lifted position without jam protection

In case of danger from the outside or if ice might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:



1. Close all doors.
2. Push the switch forward past the resistance point and hold.

Initializing after a power interruption

General information

After a power failure during the opening or closing process, the glass sunroof can only be operated to a limited extent. Initializing the system can help in this case.

The system can be initialized under the following conditions:

- The vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- The drive-ready state is established.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1680
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

▷ The external temperature is above 41 °F/5 °C.

During initialization, the glass sunroof closes without jam protection.

Make sure that the closing area is clear.

Initializing the system

Press the switch up and hold it until the initialization is complete:

Initialization begins within 15 seconds.

▷ If the glass sunroof is closed, it opens then closes again.

▷ If the glass sunroof is open, it first closes, then opens and closes again.

Initialization is complete once the glass sunroof and sun protection have opened then closed again.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1681
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Seats, mirrors, and steering wheel

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Sitting safely

An ideal seating position that meets the needs of the occupants can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving.

In the event of an accident, the correct seating position plays an important role. Follow the information in the following chapters.

Additional information:

- Seats, refer to page 103.
- Safety belts, refer to page 106.
- Head restraints, refer to page 108.
- Airbags, refer to page 163.

Seats, front

Safety information

Warning

Seat adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected movements of the seat. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. Only adjust the seat on the driver's side when the vehicle is stationary.

Warning

With a backrest inclined too far to the rear, the efficacy of the safety belt can no longer be ensured. There is a risk of sliding under the safety belt in an accident. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Adjust the seat prior to starting the trip. Adjust the backrest so that it is in the most upright position as possible and do not adjust again while driving.

Warning

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

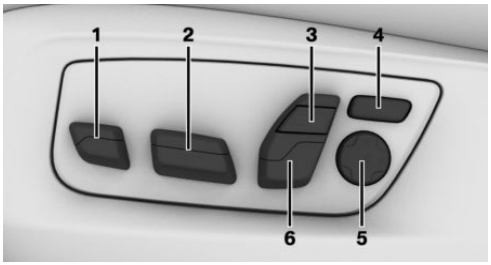
Electrically adjustable seats

General information

The seat adjustment for the driver's seat is stored for the driver profile currently used. When a driver profile is selected, the stored position is called up automatically.

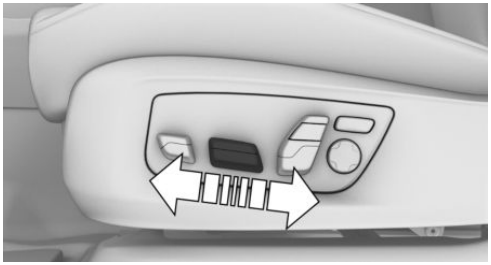
The current seat position can be stored using the memory function.

Overview



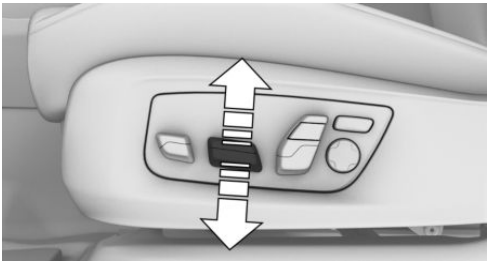
1 Thigh support
2 Forward/backward, height, seat tilt
3 Upper backrest
4 Backrest width
5 Lumbar support
6 Backrest tilt, head restraint

Forward/backward



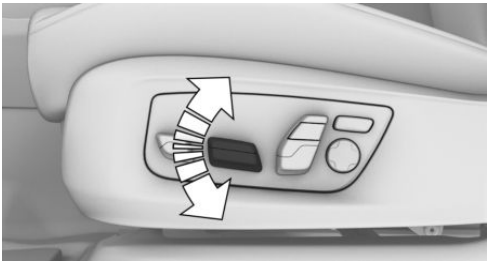
Push switch forward or backward.

Height



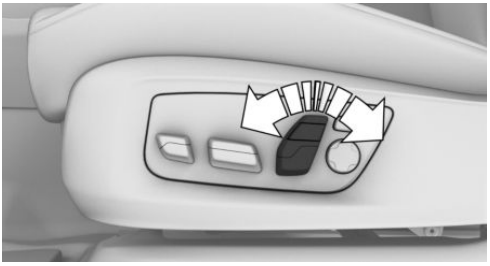
Push switch up or down.

Seat tilt



Move switch up or down.

Backrest tilt

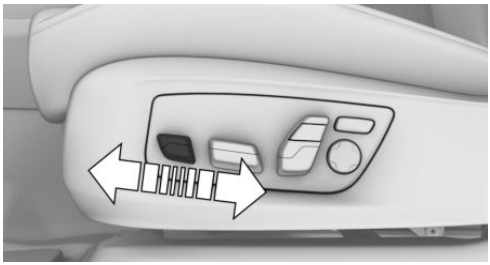


Move switch forward or backward.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1683
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

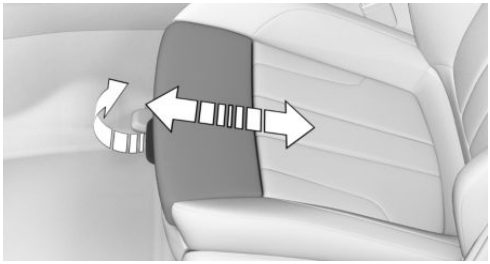
Thigh support

Multifunctional seat



Push the switch in the front or back.

Sport seat



Pull the lever at the front of the seat and push the thigh support forward or back.

Lumbar support

Concept

The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright posture.

Adjusting

- Press the front/rear section of the button:

  The curvature is increased/decreased.
- Press the upper/lower section of the button:

  The curvature is shifted up/down.

Backrest width

Concept

Adjusting the backrest width may improve lateral support when taking corners.

General information

You can change the backrest width by adjusting the side wings of the backrest.

To make it easier to enter and exit the vehicle, the backrest width temporarily opens fully.

Adjusting

- Press the front section of the button:

  The backrest width decreases.
- Press the rear section of the button:

  The backrest width increases.

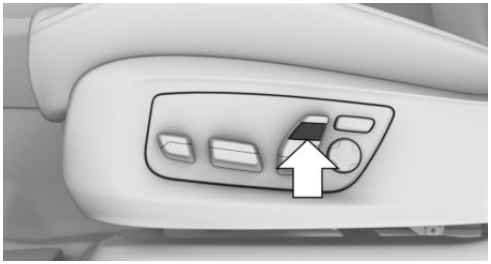
Upper backrest

Concept

The upper backrest supports the back in the shoulder area. A correct setting leads to a relaxed seating position and reduces strain on the shoulder muscles.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1684
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Adjusting



- ▷ Press the front section of the button:
  The upper backrest is inclined forward.
- ▷ Press the rear section of the button:
  The upper backrest is inclined backward.

Rear seats

General information

The backrest tilt can be adjusted for the rear seats. The backrest tilt for the center section is adjusted together with the left rear seat backrest.

Backrest tilt

Move switch forward or backward.

Safety belts

Number of safety belts and safety belt buckles

The vehicle is fitted with five safety belts to ensure occupant safety. However, they can only offer protection when adjusted correctly.

The two outer safety belt buckles of the rear seats are intended for the persons sitting on the left and right.

The center safety belt buckle of the rear seats is intended for the person sitting in the middle.

General information

Always make sure that safety belts are being worn by the occupants before driving off. The airbags supplement the safety belts as an additional safety device. The airbags are not a substitute for safety belts.

The upper shoulder strap's anchorage point will be correct for adult seat occupants of every build if the seat is correctly adjusted.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

Use of a safety belt to buckle more than one person will potentially defeat the ability of the safety belt to serve its protective function. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Infants and children are not allowed on an occupant's lap, but must be transported and secured in designated child restraint systems.

⚠ Warning

The efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts, can be limited or lost when safety belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened safety belt can cause additional injuries, for in-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1685
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

stance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that all occupants are wearing safety belts correctly.

Warning

With a rear backrest that is not locked, the protective function of the middle safety belt is not guaranteed. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. If you are using the middle safety belt, lock the wider rear seat backrest.

Warning

The efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts, may not be fully functional or fail in the following situations:

- The safety belts or safety belt buckles are damaged, soiled, or changed in any other way.
- Belt tensioners or belt retractors were modified.

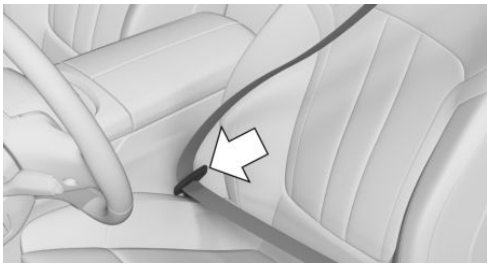
Safety belts can be imperceptibly damaged in the event of an accident. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not modify safety belts, safety belt buckles, belt tensioners, belt retractors or belt anchors and keep them clean. Have the safety belts checked after an accident at the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Correct use of safety belts

- Wear the safety belt twist-free and tight to your body over your lap and shoulders.
- Wear the safety belt deep on your hips over your lap. The safety belt may not press on your stomach.
- Do not rub the safety belt against sharp edges, or guide it or jam it in across hard or fragile objects.
- Avoid thick clothing.
- Re-tighten the safety belt frequently upward around your upper body.

Buckling the safety belt

1. Guide the safety belt slowly over shoulder and hip to put it on.
2. Insert the tongue plate into the safety belt buckle. The safety belt buckle must engage audibly.



When the safety belt is fastened, the driver's and passenger's belt straps are automatically tightened once after driving away.

Unbuckling the safety belt

1. Hold the safety belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the safety belt buckle.
3. Guide the safety belt back into its roll-up mechanism.

Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat

Display in the instrument cluster

The indicator light lights up and a signal sounds. Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly. The safety belt reminder can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

Safety belt reminder for rear seats

General information

The safety belt reminder is automatically activated each time the engine starts.

The safety belt reminder is also activated when a passenger unbuckles a rear seat safety belt during the trip.

Display in the instrument cluster

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates after the engine is started.

Symbol	Description
	Green: the safety belt is buckled on the corresponding rear seat.
	Red: the safety belt is not buckled on the corresponding rear seat.

Safety mode

In critical situations, for instance during an emergency stop, the front safety belts tighten automatically.

If the situation passes without an accident occurring, the belt tension relaxes.

If the belt tension does not loosen automatically, stop the vehicle and unbuckle the safety belt using the red button in the safety belt buckle. Fasten the safety belt before continuing on your trip.

Front head restraints

General information

The current head restraint position can be stored using the memory function.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

A missing protective effect due to removed or not correctly adjusted head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
- ▷ Adjust the head restraint so its center supports the back of the head at as close to eye level as possible.
- ▷ Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the backrest tilt as needed.

⚠ Warning

Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.

⚠ Warning

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- ▷ Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- ▷ Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- ▷ Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.

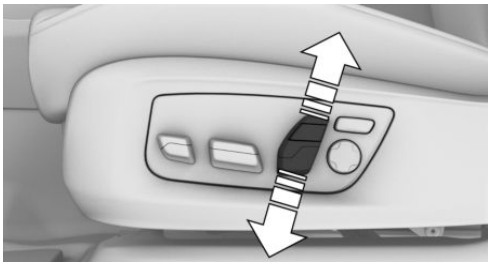
Active head restraint

In the event of a rear-end collision with a certain severity, the active head restraint automatically reduces the distance from the head.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1687
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

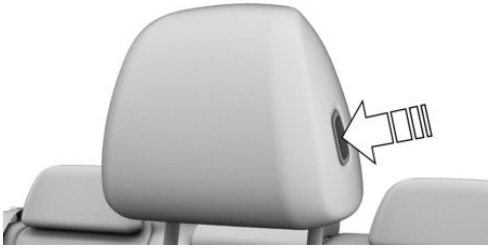
Have the active head restraint checked and if necessary replaced in the case of damage or if it was exposed to an accident.

Adjusting the height: power head restraints



Push switch up or down.

Adjusting the distance: manual head restraints



- Back: press the button and push the head restraint toward the rear.
- Forward: pull the head restraint toward the front.

After setting the distance, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Adjusting the distance: power head restraints

The head restraint is automatically repositioned when the upper backrest is adjusted.

Adjusting the side extensions

Fold the side extensions on the head restraint forward for increased lateral support in the resting position.

Removing

The head restraints cannot be removed.

Rear head restraints

Safety information

Warning

A missing protective effect due to removed or not correctly adjusted head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
- Adjust the head restraint so its center supports the back of the head at as close to eye level as possible.
- Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the backrest tilt as needed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1688
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.

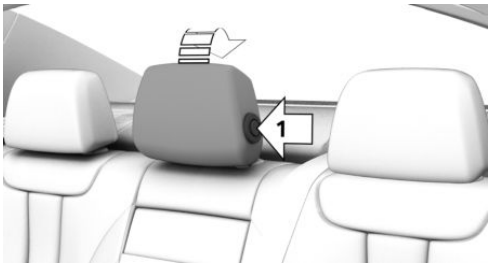
Warning

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.

Folding down the center head restraint

To improve the view to the rear, the center head restraint can be folded to the rear. Only push the head restraint down if no one will be sitting in the center seat.



- To the rear: press the button, arrow 1, and fold the head restraint backward.
- Forward: fold the head restraint toward the front as far as it will go. Make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Adjusting the height

The height of the outer head restraints can be adjusted.

- To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.
- To raise: push the head restraint up.

After setting the height, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Removing

The outer head restraints can be removed. Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.

1. Fold down the rear seat backrest in question.
   Enlarging the cargo area, refer to page 275.
2. Raise the head restraint up against the resistance.
3. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

Installing

Proceed in the reverse order to install the head restraint.

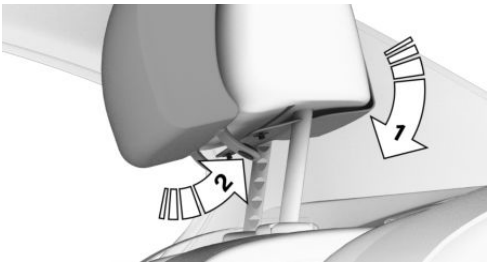
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1689
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

After the installation, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Cushions for head restraints in the rear

Only use the pillow when the vehicle is switched off.

1. Bring the head restraint to a sufficiently high position.
2. Attach the pillow and place the pillow band around the back of the head restraint, arrow 1.



3. Close pushbuttons, arrow 2.

Exterior mirrors

General information

The mirror on the front passenger side is more curved than the driver's side mirror.

The mirror setting is stored for the driver profile currently in use. When a driver profile is selected, the stored position is called up automatically.

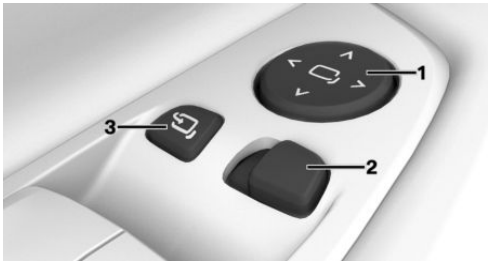
The current exterior mirror position can be stored using the memory function.

Safety information

Warning

Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. The distance to the traffic behind could be incorrectly estimated, for instance while changing lanes. There is a risk of accident. Estimate the distance to the traffic behind by looking over your shoulder.

Overview



1 Adjusting
2 Selecting a mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor
3 Folding in and out

Adjusting electrically

Press the button.

The selected mirror moves along with the button movement.

Selecting a mirror

To change over to the other mirror:

Slide the switch.

Malfunction

In case of an electrical malfunction, adjust the mirror by pressing the edges of the mirror glass.

Folding in and out

NOTICE

Depending on the vehicle width, the vehicle can be damaged in vehicle washes. There is a risk of damage to property. Before washing, fold in the mirrors by hand or with the button.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1690

Press the button.

Folding is only possible up to a speed of approx. 15 mph/20 km/h.

Folding the mirrors in and out is helpful in the following situations:

- In vehicle washes.
- On narrow roads.

Mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Automatic heating

Both exterior mirrors are automatically heated as needed and when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Automatic dimming feature

The exterior mirror on the driver's side is automatically dimmed. Photocells in the interior mirror are used to control this.

Automatic Curb Monitor, exterior mirror

Concept

If reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass on the front passenger side is tilted downward. This improves your view of the curb and other formatting issue - low-lying obstacles when parking, for instance.

Activating

1. slide the switch to the driver's side mirror position.
2. Engage selector lever position R.

Deactivating

Slide the switch to the passenger's side mirror position.

Interior mirror

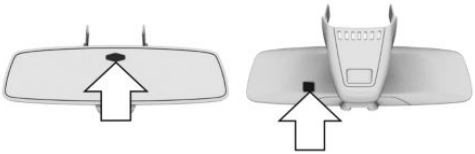
General information

The interior mirror is dimmed automatically.

Photocells are used for control:

- In the mirror glass.
- On the back of the mirror.

Overview



Functional requirements

- Keep the photocells clean.
- Do not cover the area between the interior mirror and the windshield.

Steering wheel

Safety information

Warning

Steering wheel adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected steering wheel movements. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. Adjustng the steering wheel while the vehicle is stationary only.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1691
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

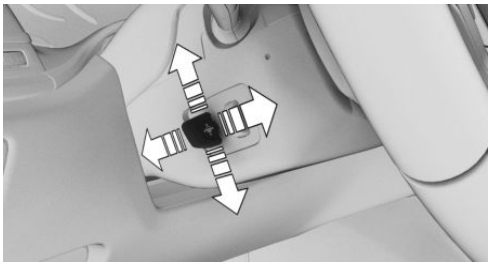
Electric steering wheel adjustment

General information

The steering wheel setting is stored for the driver profile currently in use. When a driver profile is selected, the position is accessed automatically when the drive-ready state is switched on.

The current steering wheel position can be stored using the memory function.

Adjusting



Press the switch to adjust the forward/back position and height of the steering wheel to the seat position.

Assistance getting in and out

The steering wheel temporarily moves into the highest position to make it easier to enter and exit the vehicle.

Heated steering wheel

Overview

Button for heated steering wheel

Switching on/off

Press the button.

A Check Control message is displayed.

If the trip is resumed within approx. 15 minutes after an intermediate stop, the heated steering wheel activates automatically if the function was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Memory function

Concept

The following settings can be stored and, if necessary, retrieved using the memory function:

- Seat position.
- Exterior mirror position.
- Steering wheel position.
- Height of the Head-up Display.

General information

Two memory locations with different settings can be set for each driver profile.

The following settings are not stored:

- Backrest width.
- Lumbar support.

Safety information

Warning

Using the memory function while driving can lead to unexpected seat or steering wheel movements. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. Only retrieve the memory function when the vehicle is stationary.

Warning

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Overview

The memory buttons are located on the front doors.

Storing

1. Set the desired position.
2. SET Press the button. The writing on the button lights up.
3. Press desired button 1 or 2 while the LED is lit. A signal sounds.

Calling up settings

Press the desired button 1 or 2.

The stored position is called up.

The procedure stops when a switch for setting the seat is pressed or one of the memory buttons is pressed again.

Once underway, adjustment of the seat position on the driver's side is disabled after a short while.

Massage function

Concept

Depending on the program, the massage function ensures relaxed muscles and better blood circulation and can avoid fatigue.

General information

Eight different massage programs can be selected:

- Pelvis activation.
- Upper body activation.
- Full body activation.
- Back massage.
- Shoulder massage.
- Lumbar massage.
- Upper body training.
- Full body training.

Overview

Massage function

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1693
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Switching on

Press the button once for each intensity level.

The maximum intensity level is reached when three LEDs are lit.

Switching off

Press and hold the button until the LEDs go out.

Adjusting the massage program

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Seat comfort"
4. Select desired seat.
5. "Seat massage"
6. Select the desired setting.

Seat heating

Overview

Front

Seat heating

Rear

Seat heating

Switching on

Press the button once for each temperature level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

When ECO PRO is activated, the heating output is reduced.

If the trip is continued within approx. 15 minutes after a stop, seat heating is activated automatically with the temperature selected last.

Additional information:

ECO PRO, refer to page 286.

Switching off

Press and hold the button until the bar display on the climate control display goes out.

Seat heating distribution

The heating action in the seat cushion and the seat backrest can be distributed in different ways.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1694
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

4. Select the desired menu item.
5. Select desired seat.
6. Press the Controller and turn it to set the seat heating distribution.

Active seat ventilation

Concept

Integrated fans in the seat and armrest areas provide a comfortable seat temperature.

Overview

Active seat ventilation

Switching on

Press the button once for each ventilation level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

The ventilation switches back by one level after a short time.

Switching off

Press and hold the button until the bar display on the climate control display goes out.

Individual activation

Concept

A number of heating and cooling functions can be automatically activated depending on the external temperature.

General information

The external temperature at which the functions are to be automatically activated can be set via iDrive.

Activation is performed if the external temperature exceeds or falls below the set temperature in the first few minutes after drive-ready state has been switched on. A new alignment is carried out after the settings have been changed.

Depending on the equipment package, the following functions can be automatically activated:

- Seat heating.
- Heated steering wheel.
- Seat ventilation.

If the trip is continued within approx. 15 minutes after a stop, the functions are activated automatically with the levels that were last selected.

Functional requirement

The safety belt of the corresponding seat is buckled.

Activating/deactivating

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. Select the desired menu item.
5. Select desired seat.
6. Select the menu item of the desired function.
7. Set the external temperature at which the function is to be activated.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1695
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Transporting children safely

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

The right place for children

Safety information

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Warning

A heated vehicle may result in death to persons, especially children, or animals. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not leave persons, especially children, or animals unattended in the vehicle.

Warning

Exposure to intense sunlight can cause child restraint systems and their components to become very hot. Persons may sustain burn injuries when touching the hot components. There is a risk of injury. Do not expose the child restraint system to direct sunlight or cover where necessary. If necessary, let the child restraint system cool down before transporting a child. Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle.

Always transport children in the rear seat

General information

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is in the rear seat.

Transport children younger than 13 years of age or shorter than 5 ft/150 cm only in the rear seat in suitable child restraint systems designed for the age, weight and size of the child. Children 13 years of age or older must wear a safety belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system can no longer be used due to their age, weight, or size.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1696

Safety information

Warning

The safety belt cannot be fastened correctly on children shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm without suitable additional child restraint systems. The efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts, can be limited or lost when safety belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened safety belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Secure children shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm using suitable child restraint systems.

Children on the front passenger seat

General information

Before using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, ensure that the front, knee, and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated.

Additional information:

For automatic deactivation of front-seat passenger airbags, refer to page 166.

Safety information

Warning

Active front-seat passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are activated. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front-seat passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light lights up.

Installing child restraint systems

General information

Pay attention to the specifications and the operating and safety information of the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing, and using child restraint systems.

Safety information

Warning

The protective effect of child restraint systems and their fastening systems which have been damaged or exposed to an accident can be limited or lost. A child cannot be properly restrained in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life.

Do not use child restraint systems which have been damaged or exposed to an accident.

If a child restraint system and its fastening system has been damaged or exposed to an accident, have these systems checked and replaced by the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1697
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

On the front passenger seat

Deactivating airbags

Warning

Active front-seat passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are activated. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front-seat passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light lights up.

Before installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, make sure that the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated.

Additional information:

For automatic deactivation of front-seat passenger airbags, refer to page 166.

Seat position and height

Before installing a child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go and, if possible, bring it up to medium height. This seat position and height ensure the best possible position for the belt and offers optimal protection in the event of an accident.

If the upper anchor of the safety belt is located in front of the belt guide of the child seat, move the front passenger seat carefully forward until the best possible belt guide position is reached.

Backrest width

Adjustable backrest width: before installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, open the backrest width completely. Do not change the backrest width again and do not call up a memory position.

Child seat security

The safety belts in the rear and the front passenger safety belt can be permanently locked to fasten child restraint systems.

Locking the safety belt

1. Pull out the belt strap completely.
2. Secure the child restraint system with the safety belt.
3. Allow the belt strap to be pulled in and pull it tight against the child restraint system. The safety belt is locked.

Unlocking the safety belt

1. Unbuckle the safety belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the belt strap to be pulled in completely.

LATCH child restraint fixing system

General information

LATCH: Lower Anchors and Tether for Children.

Pay attention to the specifications and the operating and safety information from the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing, and using LATCH child restraint fixing systems.

Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors

General information

The lower anchors may be used to attach the CRS to the vehicle seat up to a combined child and CRS weight of 65 lbs/30 kg when the child is restrained by the internal harnesses.

Safety information

Warning

If the LATCH child restraint fixing systems are not correctly engaged, the protective effect of the LATCH child restraint fixing system can be limited. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the lower anchors are securely engaged and that the LATCH child restraint fixing system fits securely against the backrest.

Position

Symbol	Meaning
	The corresponding symbol shows the mounts for the lower LATCH anchors. Seats equipped with lower anchors are marked with a pair, (2), of LATCH symbols. For vehicles equipped with a middle seat: It is not recommended to use the inner lower anchors of standard outer LATCH positions to fasten a child restraint system on the middle seat. Use the vehicle safety belt instead for the middle seat.

Before installing LATCH child restraint fixing systems

Pull the safety belt away from the area of the child restraint system.

Assembly of LATCH child restraint fixing systems

1. Install child restraint system, see manufacturer's information.
2. Ensure that both LATCH anchors are properly engaged.

Child restraint systems with tether strap

Safety information

Warning

If the upper retaining strap is incorrectly used for the child restraint system, the protective effect can be reduced. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the upper retaining strap does not run over sharp edges and is not twisted as it passes the upper anchor.

Warning

If the rear backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the child restraint system is limited or there is none. In certain situations, for instance braking maneuvers or in case of an accident, the rear backrest can fold forward. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the rear backrests are locked.

NOTICE

The anchors for the upper retaining straps of child restraint systems are only provided for these retaining straps. When other objects are mounted, the anchors can be damaged. There

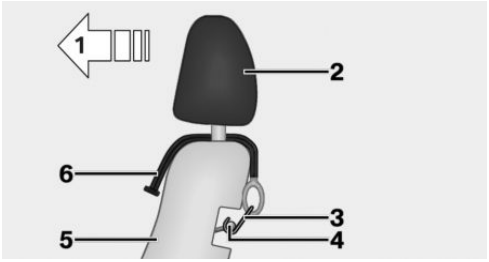
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1699
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

is a risk of damage to property. Only mount child restraint systems to the upper anchors.

Anchors

Symbol	Meaning
	The respective symbol shows the anchor for the upper retaining strap. Seats with an upper top tether are marked with this symbol. It can be found on the rear seat backrest or the rear window shelf.

Routing the retaining strap



1 Direction of travel
2 Head restraint
3 Hook for upper retaining strap
4 Anchor
5 Seat backrest
6 Upper retaining strap

Attaching the upper retaining strap to the anchor

1. Raise the head restraint, if needed.
2. Guide the upper retaining strap between or along both sides of the supports for the head restraint to the anchor.

   For the middle seat, guide it over or along both sides of the head restraint to the anchor where applicable.
3. If there is a retaining strap, run it between the backrest and the cargo cover.
4. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the anchor.
5. Tighten the retaining strap by pulling it down.
6. Lower and engage head restraint as needed.

Locking the doors and windows in the rear

General information

In certain situations it may be advisable to secure the rear doors and windows, for instance when transporting children.

Doors

Push the locking lever on the rear doors up.

The door can now be opened from the outside only.

Safety switch for the rear

Press the button on the driver's door.

This locks various functions so that they cannot be operated from the rear.

Additional information:

Safety switch, refer to page 98.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1700
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Driving

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Start/Stop button

Concept

Pressing the Start/Stop button switches drive-ready state on or off.

Drive-ready state is switched on when you depress the brake pedal while pressing the Start/Stop button.

Pressing the Start/Stop button again switches the drive-ready state back off and standby state is switched back on.

Additional information:

- Drive-ready state, refer to page 38.
- Standby state, refer to page 38.

Driving away

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. Apply drive mode.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Drive away.

Auto Start/Stop function

Concept

The Auto Start/Stop function helps save fuel. The system switches off the engine during a stop, for instance in traffic congestion or at traffic lights. Drive-ready state remains switched on. The engine starts automatically for driving off.

General information

After each engine start using the Start/Stop button, the Auto Start/Stop function is ready. The function is activated from speeds of approx. 3 mph/5 km/h.

Depending on the selected driving mode, the system is automatically activated or deactivated.

Engine stop

Functional requirements

Steptronic transmission

The engine is switched off automatically during a stop under the following conditions:

- The selector lever is in selector lever position D.
- The brake pedal remains pressed while the vehicle is stationary or the vehicle is held by Automatic Hold.
- The driver's safety belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

Manual engine stop

If the engine was not switched off automatically when the vehicle stopped, the engine can be switched off manually:

- Press the brake pedal forcefully again from the current pedal position.
- Engage selector lever position P.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1701
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

When all functional preconditions are fulfilled, the engine switches off.

Air conditioner when the engine is switched off

The air flow from the air conditioner is reduced when the engine is switched off.

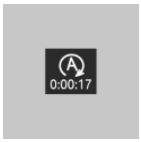
Displays in the instrument cluster

General information

The display in the tachometer indicates that the Auto Start/Stop function is ready for an Automatic engine start.

The display indicates that the conditions for an automatic engine stop have not been met.

Total time with switched-off engine



ECO PRO driving mode: depending on the vehicle equipment, the total time that the engine has been switched off using the Auto Start/Stop function is displayed on an automatic engine stop.

The total time can be reset via the trip data.

Additional information:

ECO PRO, refer to page 286.

Functional limitations

The engine is not switched off automatically in the following situations:

- In case of a steep downhill grade.
- Brake not engaged strongly enough.
- The external temperature is high and automatic climate control is running.
- The car's interior has not yet been heated or cooled to the required level.
- Where there is a risk of window condensation when the automatic climate control is switched on.
- Engine or other parts not at operating temperature.
- Engine cooling is required.
- The wheels are at a sharp angle or the steering wheel is being turned.
- Vehicle battery is heavily discharged.
- At higher elevations.
- The hood is unlocked.
- The parking assistant is activated.
- Stop-and-go traffic.
- Selector lever position in N or R.
- After driving in reverse.
- Use of fuel with high ethanol content.

Starting the engine

Functional requirements

Steptronic transmission

The engine starts automatically under the following preconditions:

- By releasing the brake pedal.
- When Automatic Hold is activated: press the accelerator pedal.

Driving off

After the engine starts, accelerate as usual.

Safety mode

After the engine switches off automatically, it will not start again automatically if any one of the following conditions are met:

- The driver's safety belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is open.
- The hood was unlocked.

Some indicator lights light up for a varied length of time.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1702
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

The engine can only be started via the Start/Stop button.

System limits

Even if driving off was not intended, the deactivated engine starts up automatically in the following situations:

- Excessive warming of the car's interior when the air conditioning is switched on.
- Excessive cooling of the car's interior when the heating is switched on.
- Where there is a risk of window condensation when the automatic climate control is switched on.
- When the steering wheel is turned.
- Change from selector lever position D to N or R.
- Change from selector lever position P to N, D, or R.
- Vehicle battery is heavily discharged.
- Start of an oil level measurement.

Additional functions Auto Start/Stop

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country-specific version, the vehicle features a variety of sensors for assessing the traffic situation. The Auto Start/Stop function uses this information to adapt to various traffic situations in a proactive manner.

For instance, this applies to the following situations:

- When a situation is detected in which the stopping time is expected to be very short, the engine is not switched off automatically. A message appears on the Control Display, depending on the situation.
- When a situation is detected in which the vehicle needs to drive off immediately, the engine is started automatically.

The function may be restricted if the navigation data is invalid, outdated or not available, for example.

Deactivate/activate the system manually

Concept

The engine is not automatically switched off.

The engine is started during an automatic engine stop.

Using the button

Press the button.

Via selector lever position or Driving Dynamics Control

The Auto Start/Stop function is also deactivated in selector lever position M/S or in SPORT driving mode of the Driving Dynamics Control.

Display

- LED comes on: auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.
- LED goes out: auto Start/Stop function is activated.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1703
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Switching off the vehicle during an automatic engine stop

General information

During an automatic engine stop, the vehicle can be switched off permanently, for instance when leaving it.

Steptronic transmission

1. Press the Start/Stop button.
   - ▷ Drive-ready state is switched off.
   - ▷ Standby state is switched on.
   - ▷ Selector lever position P is engaged automatically.
2. Set the parking brake.

Automatic deactivation

General information

In certain situations, the Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated automatically for safety reasons, for instance if no driver is detected.

Malfunction

The Auto Start/Stop function no longer switches off the engine automatically. A Check Control message is displayed. It is possible to continue driving. Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Driving Dynamics Control

Concept

The Driving Dynamics Control influences the driving dynamics properties of the vehicle.

The vehicle can be adjusted depending on the situation using various driving modes.

General information

The following systems are affected, for instance:

- ▷ Engine characteristics.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission.
- ▷ Adaptive chassis.
- ▷ Air suspension.
- ▷ Active roll stabilization.
- ▷ Integral Active Steering.
- ▷ Display in the instrument cluster.
- ▷ Cruise control.
- ▷ Backrest width for comfort seats.

Overview

Displays in the instrument cluster

The selected driving mode is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Driving modes

Button	Driving mode	Configuration
	SPORT	INDIVIDUAL
	COMFORT COMFORT PLUS	
	ECO PRO	INDIVIDUAL
	ADAPTIVE	

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1704
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

When drive-ready state is switched on, the COMFORT driving mode is selected automatically.

Driving modes in detail

COMFORT

Concept

Balanced tuning between dynamic and efficient driving.

Switching on

Press the button repeatedly until COMFORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

COMFORT PLUS

Concept

Particularly comfortable tuning for optimum traveling comfort.

Switching on

Press the button repeatedly until COMFORT PLUS is displayed in the instrument cluster.

SPORT

Concept

Dynamic tuning for higher agility with an optimized chassis and suspension.

Switching on

Press the button repeatedly until SPORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

SPORT INDIVIDUAL

Concept

Individual settings can be adjusted in the SPORT INDIVIDUAL driving mode.

Configuration

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driving mode"
4. "SPORT INDIVIDUAL"
5. Select the desired setting:

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Reset SPORT INDIVIDUAL to the standard settings:

"Reset to SPORT STANDARD".

ECO PRO

Concept

Efficient driving setting.

Switching on

Press the button repeatedly until ECO PRO is displayed in the instrument cluster.

ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL

Concept

Individual settings can be adjusted in the ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL driving mode.

Configuration

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driving mode"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1705
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

4. "ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Reset ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL to the standard settings:

"Reset to ECO PRO STANDARD".

ADAPTIVE

Concept

Comfort-oriented driving mode, whose tuning is automatically modified to the driving situation and driving style.

If the navigation system is active, upcoming road sections are considered.

Switching on

ADAPTIVE Press the button. ADAPTIVE is displayed in the instrument cluster.

INDIVIDUAL configuration

General information

The individual configuration of the driving mode is stored for the active driver profile. The last set configuration is activated directly when the driving mode is called up again.

Activating configuration of the driving mode

Press the button for the desired driving mode several times.

Parking brake

Concept

The parking brake is used to prevent the vehicle from rolling when it is parked.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1706

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Overview

Parking brake

Setting

With a stationary vehicle

Pull the switch.

The LED lights up.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates red. The parking brake is set.

While driving

General information

To use as emergency brake while driving.

Pull the switch and hold it. The vehicle brakes hard while the switch is being pulled.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates red, a signal sounds, and the brake lights illuminate.

A Check Control message is displayed.

The parking brake is engaged when the vehicle is stationary.

Releasing

Releasing manually

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. Press the switch while stepping on the brake pedal or selector lever position P is set.

   The LED and indicator light go out.

   The parking brake is released.

Automatic release

The parking brake is released automatically when you drive away.

The LED and indicator light go out.

Automatic Hold

Concept

This system assists the driver by automatically setting and releasing the brake, such as when moving in stop-and-go traffic.

The vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

On uphill grades the system prevents the vehicle from rolling backward when driving off.

General information

Under the following conditions, the parking brake is automatically engaged:

- Drive-ready state is switched off.
- The driver's door is opened while the vehicle is stationary.
- The moving vehicle is brought to a standstill using the parking brake.

Display

The indicator light changes from green to red.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1707
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

NOTICE

If the vehicle is stationary, Automatic Hold engages the parking brake and prevents the vehicle from rolling in a car wash. There is a risk of damage to property. Deactivate Automatic Hold prior to entering the car wash.

Overview

AUTO H Automatic Hold

Establishing function readiness of Automatic Hold

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. AUTO H Press the button.

   The LED lights up.

AUTO H The indicator light lights up green.

Automatic Hold is functional.

After every new vehicle start, the last selected setting is active.

Automatic Hold holding the vehicle

Function readiness is established and the driver's door is closed.

After stepping on the brake pedal, for instance when stopping at a traffic light, the vehicle is automatically secured against rolling.

PARK (P) The indicator light lights up green.

Driving off

Step on the accelerator pedal to drive off.

The brake is released automatically and the indicator light of the parking brake is no longer illuminated.

Activating the parking brake automatically

The parking brake is automatically set if drive-ready state is switched off while the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold or if the vehicle is exited.

PARK (P) The indicator light changes from green to red.

The parking brake is not set automatically, if the drive-ready state is switched off, while the vehicle is coasting to a halt. Automatic Hold is deactivated.

Switching function readiness off

AUTO H Press the button.

The LED goes out.

AUTO H The indicator light goes out.

Automatic Hold is switched off.

If the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold, press additionally on the brake pedal, when switching off.

Malfunction

If the parking brake fails or malfunctions, secure the vehicle against rolling before exiting.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Secure the vehicle against rolling away, for instance with a wheel chock, after exiting the vehicle.

After a power failure

To reestablish parking brake functionality after a power failure:

1. Switch on standby state.
2. (P) Pull the switch while stepping on the brake pedal or selector lever position P is set and then push.

This process may take a few seconds. Some mechanical sounds associated with this process are normal.

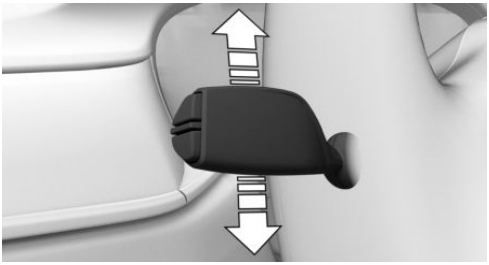
PARK (P) The indicator light is no longer illuminated as soon as the parking brake is ready for operation again.

Turn signal

Turn signal in exterior mirror

When driving and during operation of the turn signals or hazard warning system, do not fold in the exterior mirrors, so that the signal lights on the exterior mirror are easy to see.

Using turn signals



Press the lever past the resistance point.

Triple turn signal activation

Lightly tap the lever up or down.

The triple turn signal duration can be adjusted.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "One-touch turn signal"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

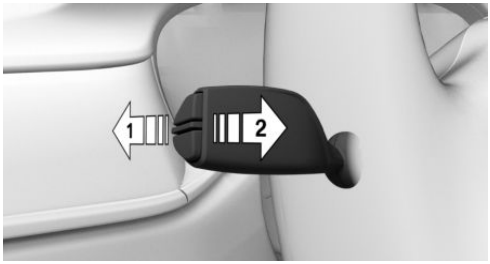
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1709
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Signaling briefly

Press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

High beams, headlight flasher

Push the lever forward or pull it backward.



- ▷ High beams on, arrow 1.

  The high beams light up when the low beams are switched on.
- ▷ High beams off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

Wiper system

General information

Do not use the wipers if the windshield is dry, as this may damage the wiper blades or cause them to become worn more quickly.

Safety information

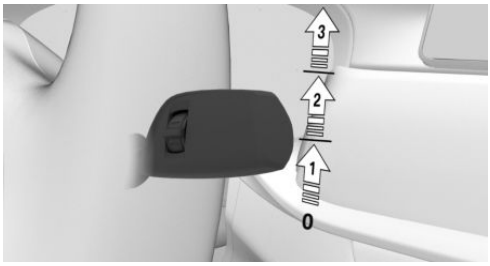
⚠ Warning

If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

⚠ NOTICE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of damage to property. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.

Switching on

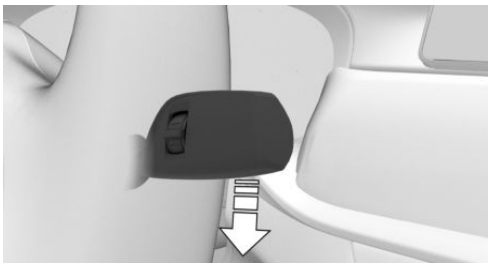


Press the lever up until the desired position is reached.

- ▷ Resting position of the wipers, position 0.
- ▷ Rain sensor, position 1.
- ▷ Normal wiper speed, position 2.
- ▷ Fast wiper speed, position 3.

When travel is interrupted with the wiper system switched on: when travel continues, the wipers resume at their previous speed.

Switching off and brief wipe



Press the lever down.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1710
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

- Switching off: press the lever down until it reaches its standard position.
- Brief wipe: press the lever down from the standard position.

  The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

Rain sensor

Concept

The rain sensor automatically controls the time between wipes depending on the intensity of the rainfall.

General information

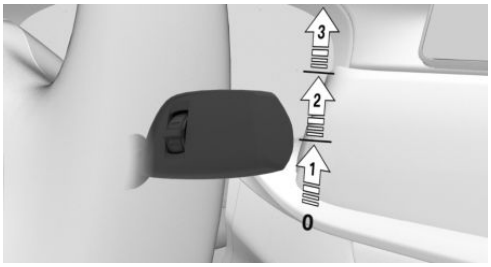
The sensor is located on the windshield, directly in front of the interior mirror.

Safety information

NOTICE

If the rain sensor is activated, the wipers can accidentally start moving in vehicle washes. There is a risk of damage to property. Deactivate the rain sensor in vehicle washes.

Activating



Press the lever up once from its standard position, arrow 1.

Wiping is started.

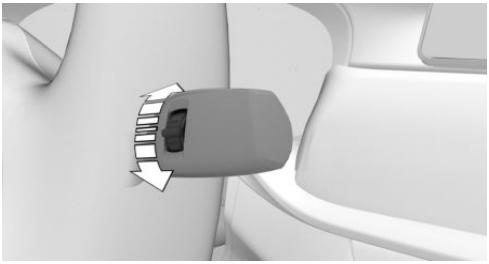
The LED in the wiper lever is illuminated.

In frosty conditions, wiper operation may not start.

Deactivating

Press the lever back into the standard position.

Adjusting the rain sensor sensitivity



Turn the thumbwheel to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Upward: high rain sensor sensitivity.

Downward: low rain sensor sensitivity.

Windshield washer system

Safety information

Warning

The washer fluid can freeze onto the window at low temperatures and obstruct the view. There is a risk of accident. Only use the washer systems, if the washer fluid cannot freeze. Use washer fluid with antifreeze, if needed.

NOTICE

When the washer fluid reservoir is empty, the wash pump cannot work as intended. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use the washer system when the washer fluid reservoir is empty.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1711
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Cleaning the windshield

Pull the lever.

The system sprays washer fluid on the windshield and activates the wipers briefly.

Windshield washer nozzles

The windshield washer nozzles are automatically heated while standby state is switched on.

Fold-away position of the wipers

Concept

The fold-away position enables the wipers to be folded away from the windshield.

General information

Important, for instance when changing the wiper blades or for folding away under frosty conditions.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

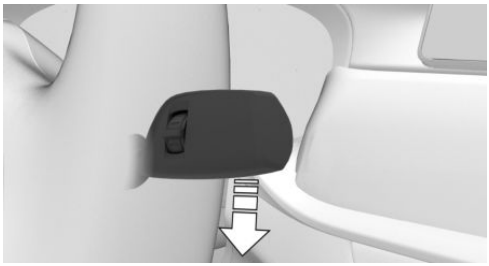
If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

⚠ NOTICE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of damage to property. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.

Folding away the wipers

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Press and hold the wiper lever down, until the wipers stop in a close to vertical position.



3. Fold the wipers all the way away from the windshield.

Folding down the wipers

After the wipers are folded back down, the wiper system must be reactivated.

1. Fold the wipers back down onto the windshield.
2. Switch on standby state and press and hold the wiper lever down again.
3. Wipers return to their resting position and are ready again for operation.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1712
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Steptronic transmission

Concept

The Steptronic transmission combines the functions of an automatic transmission with the possibility of manual shifting, if needed.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling, for instance with the parking brake.

Selector lever positions

Drive mode D

Selector lever position for normal vehicle operation. All gears for forward travel are activated automatically.

R is reverse

Engage selector lever position R only when the vehicle is stationary.

Neutral N

The vehicle may be pushed or roll without power, for instance in vehicle washes in selector lever position N.

Parking position P

General information

Selector lever position, for instance for parking the vehicle. The transmission blocks the drive wheels in selector lever position P.

Engage selector lever position P only when the vehicle is stationary.

P is engaged automatically

Selector lever position P is engaged automatically in situations such as the following:

- After the drive-ready state is switched off and selector lever position R, D or M/S is engaged.
- After the standby state has been switched off when selector lever position N is engaged.
- If the driver's safety belt is unbuckled, the driver's door is opened, and the brake pedal is not pressed while the vehicle is stationary and selector lever position D, M/S or R is engaged.

Engaging selector lever positions

General information

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a drive mode, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start.

Functional requirements

Only when the drive-ready state is switched on and the brake pedal is depressed is it possible to change from selector lever position P to another selector lever position.

The selection lever position P cannot be changed until all technical requirements are met.

Engaging selector lever position D, N, R

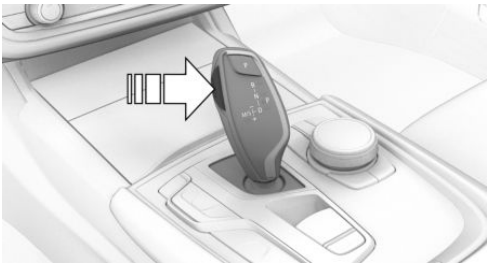
A selector lever lock prevents the following faulty operation:

- Unintentional shifting into selector lever position R.
- Unintentional shifting from selector lever position P into another selector lever position.

1. Fasten driver's safety belt.

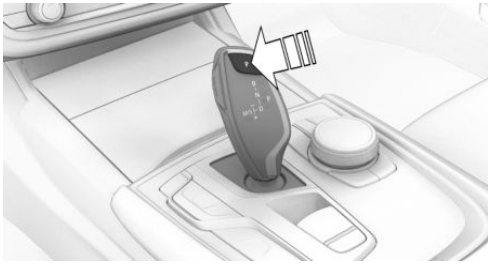
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1713
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

2. Press and hold the button to release the selector lever lock.



3. Push the selector lever in the desired direction, past a resistance point, if needed. The selector lever automatically returns to the center position when released.

Engaging selector lever position P



Press button P.

Rolling or pushing the vehicle

General information

In some situations, the vehicle is to roll without its own power for a short distance, for instance in a car wash, or be pushed.

Engaging selector lever position N

1. Switch on drive-ready state while pressing on the brake pedal.
2. If necessary, release the parking brake.
3. If necessary, switch off Automatic Hold.

   Automatic Hold, refer to page 128.
4. Depress the brake pedal.
5. Touch the selector lever lock and engage selector lever position N.
6. Switch off drive-ready state.

   In this way, standby state remains switched on, and a Check Control message is displayed.

   The vehicle can roll.

NOTICE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not switch standby state off in vehicle washes.

Selector lever position P is engaged automatically after approximately 35 minutes.

If there is a malfunction, you may not be able to change the selector lever position.

Electronically unlock the transmission lock, if needed.

Kickdown

Kickdown is used to achieve maximum driving performance.

Step on the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position.

Sport program M/S

Concept

The shifting points and shifting times in the Sport program are designed for a sportier driving style. The transmission, for instance shifts up later and the shifting times are shorter.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1714
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Activating the Sport program

Press the selector lever to the left from selector lever position D.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, for instance S1.

The sport program of the transmission is activated.

Ending the Sport program

Push the selector lever to the right.

D is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Manual mode M/S

Concept

Manual gear-shifting is possible in manual mode.

Activating manual mode

1. Press the selector lever to the left from selector lever position D, arrow 1.

2. Push the selector lever forward or pull it backward, arrows 2.

Manual mode becomes active and the gear is changed.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, for instance M1.

Shifting

- To shift down: press the selector lever forward.
- To shift up: pull the selector lever rearwards.

The transmission continues shifting automatically in certain situations, for instance when speed limits are reached.

Steptronic Sport transmission: prevent automatic upshifting in M/S manual mode

Depending on the motorization: if drive mode SPORT is selected, the Steptronic Sport transmission does not automatically upshift in M/S manual mode once the maximum speed is reached.

Depending on the BMW M drive configuration, this function is active independently of the drive mode.

In addition, there is no downshifting for kick-down.

Additional information:

SPORT, refer to page 126.

Ending the manual mode

Push the selector lever to the right.

D is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Shift paddles

Concept

The shift paddles on the steering wheel allow you to shift gears quickly while keeping both hands on the steering wheel.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1715
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

General information

Shifting

The vehicle only shifts at suitable engine and road speeds.

Short-term manual mode

In selector lever position D, actuating a shift paddle switches into manual mode temporarily.

After conservative driving in manual mode without acceleration or shifting via the shift paddles for a certain amount of time, the transmission switches back to automatic mode.

It is possible to switch into automatic mode as follows:

- Keep the right shift paddle pulled until D is displayed in the instrument cluster.
- In addition to the pulled right shift paddle, pull the left shift paddle.

Continuous manual mode

In selector lever position S, actuating a shift paddle switches into manual mode permanently.

Steptronic Sport transmission

With the appropriate transmission version, the lowest possible gear can be selected by simultaneously activating kickdown and operating the left shift paddles. This is not possible in short-term manual mode.

Shifting

- Shifting up: pull the right shift paddle.
- Shifting down: pull left shift paddle.
- Downshifting to the lowest possible gear: keep the left shift paddle pulled.

The selected gear is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the current gear.

Displays in the instrument cluster

The selector lever position is displayed, for example P.

Electronic unlocking of the transmission lock

General information

Electronically unlock the transmission lock to maneuver vehicle from a danger area.

Before unlocking the transmission lock, set the parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

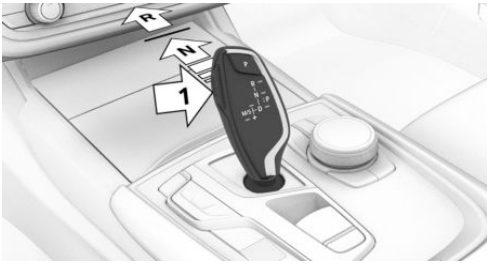
Engage selector lever position N

Unlocking is possible, if the starter can spin the engine.

1. Press and hold down brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button. The starter must audibly start. Hold the Start/Stop button pressed.
3. With your free hand, press the button on the selector lever, arrow 1, and press the selector lever into selector lever position N and hold, arrow N, until selector lever position N is displayed in the instrument cluster.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1716
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

A Check Control message is displayed.



4. Release Start/Stop button and selector lever.
5. Release brake, as soon as the starter stops.
6. Maneuver the vehicle from the danger area and secure it against moving on its own.

Additional information:

Tow-starting/towing, refer to page 342.

Launch Control

Concept

Launch Control enables optimum acceleration on surfaces with good traction under dry surrounding conditions.

General information

The use of Launch Control causes premature component wear since this function represents a very heavy load for the vehicle.

Do not use Launch Control during the break-in period.

Do not steer the steering wheel when driving off with Launch Control.

Additional information:

Breaking-in period, refer to page 280.

Functional requirement

Launch Control is available when the engine is at operating temperature. The engine is at operating temperature after an uninterrupted trip of at least 6 miles/10 km.

Start with launch control

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2.

Press the button.

   TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster and the indicator light for DSC OFF lights up.
3. Engage selector lever position S.
4. With the left foot, forcefully press down on the brake.
5. Press and hold down the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position, kickdown.

   A flag symbol is displayed in the instrument cluster.
6. The starting engine speed adjusts. Wait briefly until the engine speed is constant. Keep accelerator pedal in this position.
7. Release the brake within 3 seconds after the flag symbol illuminates.

   The vehicle accelerates.

   Upshifting occurs automatically as long as the flag symbol is displayed and the accelerator pedal is not released.

Repeated use during a trip

After Launch Control has been used, the transmission must cool down for approx. 5 minutes before Launch Control can be used again. Launch Control adjusts to the surrounding conditions, when used again.

After using Launch Control

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC Dynamic Stability Control again as soon as possible.

System limits

An experienced driver may be able to achieve better acceleration values in DSC OFF mode.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1717
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Displays

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Instrument cluster

Concept

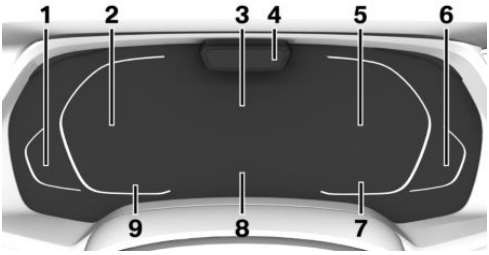
The instrument cluster is a variable display. When you change to a different program via Driving Dynamics Control, the displays in the instrument cluster adapt to the respective driving mode.

General information

The display change in the instrument cluster can be deactivated via iDrive.

Some of the displays in the instrument cluster may differ from the illustrations in the Owner's Manual.

Overview



1 Fuel gauge 146
Range 147

2 Speedometer

3 Central display area 139
Service notifications 148
Navigation display

4 Depending on the equipment: Driver Attention Camera

5 Tachometer 146
Selection lists 150
Widgets in the instrument cluster 140
Trip odometer, see Trip data 151
ECO PRO displays 286
Status, Driving Dynamics Control 125
Transmission display 134

6 Engine temperature 147

7 External temperature 147

8 Check Control 141

9 Speed Limit Info 149
Time 61

Central display area

Depending on the equipment and configuration, the following is displayed in the central display area of the instrument cluster:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1718
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

- Navigation displays such as the map view or, if destination guidance is active, a route preview with destination guidance information.
- Displays showing service notifications.

Some displays in the central display area can be configured individually.

The displays may vary depending on the equipment version and country variant.

Driving mode view

Concept

When the driving mode view is deactivated, the displays in the instrument cluster remain unchanged and do not adapt to the respective driving mode when the program is changed via Driving Dynamics Control.

Activating/deactivating

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Driving mode view"

Adjusting

Individual displays in the instrument cluster can be configured individually.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument panel"
5. Select the desired setting.

Widgets in the instrument cluster

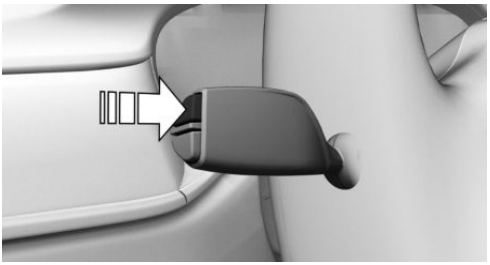
Concept

Displays for specific functions can be displayed in the instrument cluster.

The following displays can be selected:

- Current entertainment source, e.g., radio.
- Torque and power.
- Trip data.
- Efficiency display.

Selecting



Continue to press the button on the turn signal lever until the desired widget is selected.

Display

Efficiency display

Concept

Information about driving style and consumption can be displayed in the form of a consumption

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1719
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

display as a widget in the instrument cluster, for example.

General information

Depending on the activated driving mode, different information will be displayed:

Driving mode	Display
COMFORT	Average consumption.
SPORT	Current consumption.
	Energy recovery.
ECO PRO	ECO PRO bonus range.
	Distance traveled in Coasting mode.
	Current consumption.

Average consumption

The average consumption indicates the fuel consumption when driving a specific route.

Current consumption

The current consumption displays the current consumption of fuel. Check whether you are currently driving in an efficient and environmentally-friendly manner.

Energy recovery

During energy recovery, the kinetic energy of the vehicle is converted into electric energy during coasting. The vehicle battery is partially charged and fuel consumption can be reduced.

ECO PRO bonus range

In the ECO PRO driving mode, the yielded extension of the range as a result of fuel-efficient driving is displayed as ECO PRO bonus range.

Check Control

Concept

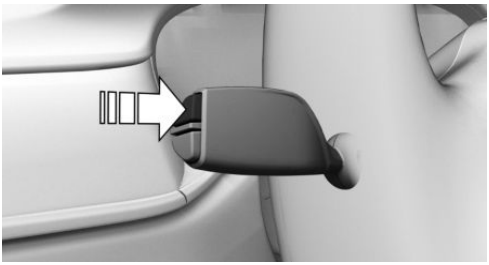
The Check Control system monitors functions in the vehicle and notifies you of malfunctions in the monitored systems.

General information

A Check Control message is displayed as a combination of indicator or warning lights and text messages in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, in the Head-up Display.

In addition, an acoustic signal may sound and a text message may appear on the Control Display.

Hiding Check Control messages



Press the button on the turn signal lever.

Continuous display

Some Check Control messages are displayed continuously and are not cleared until the malfunction is eliminated. If several malfunctions occur at once, the messages are displayed consecutively.

The messages can be hidden for approx. 8 seconds. After this time, they are displayed again automatically.

Temporary display

Some Check Control messages are hidden automatically after approx. 20 seconds. The Check Control messages are stored and can be displayed again later.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1720

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Displaying stored Check Control messages

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. ⚠ "Check Control messages"
4. Select the SMS text message.

Display

Check Control

At least one Check Control message is displayed or stored.

SMS text messages

SMS text messages in combination with a symbol in the instrument cluster explain a Check Control message and the meaning of the indicator/warning lights.

Supplementary SMS text messages

Additional information, such as the reason for an error or malfunction or the required action, can be called up via Check Control.

With urgent messages the added text will be automatically displayed on the Control Display.

Depending on the Check Control message, further help can be selected.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. ⚠ "Check Control messages"
4. Select the desired text message.
5. Select the desired setting.

Messages after trip completion

Certain messages displayed while driving are displayed again after drive-ready state is switched off.

Indicator/warning lights

Concept

Indicator/warning lights in the instrument cluster display the status of some functions in the vehicle and indicate when a malfunction is present in the monitored systems.

General information

The indicator/warning lights can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when drive-ready state is switched on.

Red lights

Safety belt reminder

Indicator light flashes or is illuminated: safety belt on the driver or passenger side is not buckled. The safety belt reminder can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly.

Safety belt reminder for rear seats

The safety belt is not buckled on the corresponding rear seat.

Airbag system

Airbag system and belt tensioner may not be working.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Parking brake

The parking brake is set.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1721
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Additional information:

For releasing the parking brake, refer to page 128.

Brake system

Braking system impaired. Continue to drive moderately.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Front collision mitigation

The indicator light is illuminated: pre-warning. Brake and increase distance.

Indicator light flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Additional information:

Front collision mitigation, refer to page 168.

Person warning with City braking function

Indicator light flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: imminent collision with a detected person or a cyclist.

Intervene immediately by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

Additional information:

Person warning with City braking function, refer to page 175.

Night Vision with pedestrian and animal detection

An infrared camera scans the area in front of the vehicle and issues a warning if it detects pedestrians and animals on the street.

The indicator light is illuminated: pre-warning. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Indicator light flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. Immediate braking or evading maneuver.

Additional information:

Night Vision with pedestrian and animal detection, refer to page 177.

Steering and traffic jam assistant

Indicator light flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: the system will be switched off.

Additional information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, refer to page 211.

Yellow lights

Steering and traffic jam assistant

The indicator light lights up and an acoustic signal may sound: a system interruption is imminent.

The indicator warning light flashes: lane marking driven over.

Additional information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, refer to page 211.

Antilock Braking System ABS

The Brake Assistant function may not activate. Avoid abrupt braking. Take the longer braking distance into account.

Have the system immediately checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control

The indicator light flashes: DSC controls the drive and braking forces. The vehicle is stabilized. Reduce speed and modify your driving style to the driving circumstances.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1722
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

The indicator light lights up: DSC has malfunctioned.

Have the system immediately checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

DSC Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 195.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated or DTC Dynamic Traction Control is activated

DSC is deactivated or DTC is activated.

Additional information:

- DSC Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 195.
- DTC Dynamic Traction Control, refer to page 197.

Flat Tire Monitor FTM

The FTM signals a loss of tire inflation pressure in a tire.

Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

Additional information:

Run-flat tires, refer to page 315.

Tire pressure monitor

The indicator light illuminates: the Tire Pressure Monitor reports a low tire inflation pressure or a flat tire. Follow the information in the Check Control message.

The indicator light flashes and is then illuminated continuously: flat tires or tire pressure losses cannot be detected.

- Interference caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- In the case of tires with special approval: the tire pressure monitor was unable to complete the reset. Reset the system again.
- A wheel without wheel electronics is mounted: have it checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop as needed.
- Malfunction: have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Tire pressure monitor, refer to page 308.

Steering system

Steering system may not be working.

Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Emissions

- The warning light lights up:

  Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.
- The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:

  This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

  Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

Additional information:

Socket for Onboard Diagnosis, refer to page 333.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1723
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Green lights

Safety belt reminder for rear seats

The safety belt is buckled on the corresponding rear seat.

Turn signal

Turn signal switched on.

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator light indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

Additional information:

Turn signal, refer to page 130.

Parking lights

Parking lights are switched on.

Additional information:

Parking lights/low beams, refer to page 157.

Low beams

Low beams are switched on.

Additional information:

Parking lights/low beams, refer to page 157.

Lane departure warning

The indicator light lights up: the system is activated. A lane marking was detected on at least one side of the vehicle and warnings can be issued.

Additional information:

Lane departure warning, refer to page 181.

Front fog lights

Front fog lights are switched on.

Additional information:

Front fog lights, refer to page 160.

High-beam Assistant

High-beam Assistant is switched on.

High beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the traffic situation.

Additional information:

High-beam Assistant, refer to page 159.

Automatic Hold

Automatic Hold is activated. The vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

Additional information:

Automatic Hold, refer to page 128.

Cruise control

Indicator light is illuminated: the system is active.

Additional information:

Cruise control, refer to page 201.

Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go function

The indicator light lights up: the system is switched on.

Additional information:

Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function, refer to page 203.

Steering and traffic jam assistant

Indicator light lights up: the system supports the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1724
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Additional information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, refer to page 211.

Blue lights

High beams

High beams are switched on.

Additional information:

High beams, refer to page 131.

Gray lights

Steering and traffic jam assistant

Indicator light is illuminated: the system is ready.

Additional information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, refer to page 211.

Fuel gauge

Concept

The current fill level of the fuel tank is displayed.

General information

Vehicle tilt position may cause the display to vary.

Additional information:

Refueling, refer to page 292.

Display

An arrow beside the fuel pump symbol shows which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is on.

The current range is displayed as numerical value.

Indicator light in the instrument cluster

The yellow indicator light illuminates, once the fuel reserve is reached.

Tachometer

Always avoid engine speeds in the red warning field. In this range, the fuel supply is reduced to protect the engine.

Shift point indicator

Concept

The shift lights indicate the upshift point at which the best possible acceleration can be achieved.

Functional requirement

Shift lights are shown when the SPORT or SPORT PLUS driving program is activated.

Switching on/off

1. Select SPORT or SPORT PLUS driving mode.

   Press Driving Dynamics Control.
2. Activate the M manual mode of the transmission.

Display

▷ Current engine speed is displayed in the tachometer.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1725
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

- Arrow 1: successive yellow illuminated fields indicate an increase in the speed.
- Arrow 2: successive orange illuminated fields indicate the upcoming shift moment.
- Arrow 3: the field lights up red. Do not wait any further to shift.

When the maximum speed is reached, the entire display flashes red and the supply of fuel is interrupted in order to protect the engine.

Standby state and drive-ready state

The letters OFF in the tachometer indicate that drive-ready state is switched off and standby state is switched on.

The letters READY in the tachometer indicate that the Auto Start/Stop function is ready to start the engine automatically.

Additional information:

Operating state of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Engine oil temperature

Display

- Cold engine: the pointer is at the low temperature end. Drive at moderate engine and vehicle speeds.
- Normal operating temperature: the pointer is in the middle or in the lower half of the temperature display.
- Hot engine: the pointer is at the high end of the temperature range. In addition, a Check Control message is displayed.

Additional information:

Coolant level, refer to page 330.

Indicator light in the instrument cluster

A red indicator light is displayed.

External temperature

General information

If the indicator drops to +37 °F/+3 °C or lower, a signal sounds.

A Check Control message is displayed.

There is an increased risk of ice on roads.

Safety information

Warning

Even at temperatures above +37 °F/+3 °C there can be a risk of icy roads, for instance on bridges or shady sections of the road. There is a risk of accident. Modify your driving style to the weather conditions at low temperatures.

Range

Concept

The range indicates the distance that can still be covered with the current fuel level.

General information

The estimated range available with the remaining fuel is permanently displayed in the instrument cluster.

With a low remaining range, a Check Control message is briefly displayed. With a dynamic

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1726
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

driving style, for instance fast cornering, the engine function is not always ensured.

The Check Control message appears continuously below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km.

Safety information

NOTICE

With a driving range of less than 30 miles/50 km the engine may no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of damage to property. Refuel promptly.

Display

The current range is displayed as numerical value next to the fuel gauge.

Service notifications

Concept

The function displays the service notifications and the corresponding maintenance scopes.

General information

After switching on drive-ready state, the instrument cluster briefly displays available driving distance or time to the next scheduled maintenance.

A service advisor can read out the current service notifications from your vehicle key.

Some information on service notifications can also be shown on the BMW display key.

Display

Detailed information on service notifications

More information on the type of service required may be displayed on the Control Display.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service schedule"
   Maintenance and service measures and legally mandated inspections are displayed.
4. Select an entry to call up detailed information.

Symbols

Symbols	Description
OK	No service is currently required.
△	The deadline for scheduled maintenance or a legally mandated inspection is approaching.
!	The service deadline has already passed.

Entering appointment dates

Enter the dates for the mandatory vehicle inspections.

Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service schedule"
4. "Vehicle inspection"
5. "Date:"
6. Select the desired setting.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1727
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Gear shift indicator

Concept

The system recommends the most efficient gear for the current driving situation.

General information

Depending on the design and country version, the gear shift indicator may be active in the M manual mode of the Steptronic transmission.

Steptronic transmission: displaying

Suggestions to shift up or down are displayed in the instrument cluster.

On vehicles without a gear shift indicator, the engaged gear is displayed.

Example	Description
	Efficient gear is set.
	Shift into efficient gear.

Speed Limit Info

Speed Limit Info

Concept

Speed Limit Info shows the currently valid speed limit in the instrument cluster and, if necessary, the Head-up Display.

General information

The camera in the area of the interior mirror detects traffic signs at the edge of the road as well as overhead sign posts.

Traffic signs with extra symbols are considered and compared with the vehicle's onboard data. The traffic sign will then be either displayed or ignored depending on the situation in the instrument cluster and the Head-up Display.

The system takes into account any information that is stored in the navigation system and also displays speed limits present on routes without signs.

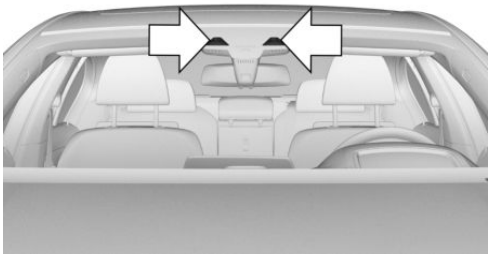
Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Displaying Speed Limit Info

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, Speed Limit Info is displayed permanently in the instrument cluster or via iDrive.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1728
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Activating

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument panel"
5. "Speed limit information"

Display

Speed Limit Info

Current speed limit.

Depending on the equipment, Speed Limit Info not available.

System limits

The system may not be fully functional and may provide incorrect information in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- When traffic signs are fully or partially concealed by objects, stickers or paint.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- When driving toward bright lights or strong reflections.
- When the windshield in front of the interior mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered by a sticker, etc.
- If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- In the event of incorrect detection by the camera.
- If the speed limits or road data stored in the navigation system are incorrect.
- If the speed limits vary with the time of day and the day of the week.
- In areas not covered by the navigation system.
- When roads differ from the navigation, such as due to changes in road routing.
- In case of electronic traffic signs.
- When passing buses or trucks with traffic signs applied to them.
- If the traffic signs are non-conforming.
- When traffic signs that are valid for a parallel road are detected.
- In the presence of country-specific signs and road configurations.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

Selection lists

Concept

Lists can be displayed and, if necessary, used for certain functions in the instrument cluster or the Head-up Display.

- Entertainment source.
- Current audio source.
- List of most recent telephone calls.

If necessary, the corresponding menu will open on the Control Display.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1729
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Display

Depending on the equipment version, the list in the instrument cluster may differ from the illustration.

Displaying and using the list

Button	Function
	Change the entertainment source. Pressing the button again will close the currently displayed list.
	Show list of most recent telephone calls.
	Turn the thumbwheel to select the desired setting. Press the thumbwheel to confirm the setting. The currently selected list can be displayed in the instrument cluster by turning the thumbwheel.

Trip data

Concept

Values for the trip, such as the average consumption or trip miles, are displayed.

General information

The trip data can be displayed on the Control Display and in the instrument cluster.

The values can be displayed and reset depending on various intervals, such as after refueling.

Display on the Control Display

Overview

The following information is displayed based on the configured interval:

- Configured interval for displaying trip data.
- Average fuel consumption depending on the configured interval.
- Average speed.
- Total time for shut off engine through the Auto Start/Stop function.
- Distance traveled in Coasting mode.
- Consumption history in form of a chart.

Displays

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Trip data"

Consumption history

The average consumption is shown in the consumption history in form of a chart based on the distance traveled and the driving mode.

Display in the instrument cluster

Information about the route can be displayed as widget in the tachometer. Selecting and setting widgets in the instrument cluster.

The following information is displayed:

- Total mileage.
- Configured interval for displaying trip data.
- Distance traveled depending on the configured interval.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1730

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

▷ Average speed.

Additional information:

Widgets in the instrument cluster, refer to page 140.

Adjusting the display of the trip data

The intervals for the display of the trip data in the instrument cluster and on the Control Display are adjustable.

Via iDrive:

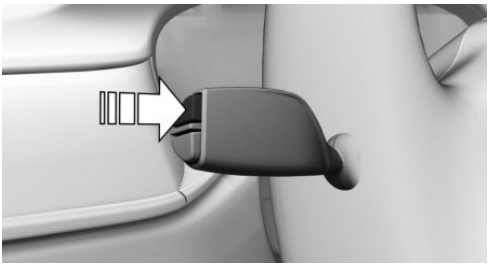
1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Trip data"
4. "Data since"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Start of trip ( )": the values are automatically reset approx. four hours after the vehicle has come to a standstill.
   - ▷ "Refueling ( )": the values are automatically reset after refueling with a larger quantity of fuel.
   - ▷ "Factory": the values since the time of the factory delivery are displayed.
   - ▷ "Individual ( )": the values since the last manual reset are displayed. The values can be reset at any time.

Resetting average values manually

The following interval can be reset manually at any time: "Individual ( )".

With the button on the turn signal lever:

1. Continue to press the button on the turn signal lever until the widget for the trip data is selected.



2. Press and hold the button on the turn signal lever.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Trip data"
4. "Data since"
5. "Reset individual"

The average values and counters are reset. Once the average values and counters have been reset, the following interval is automatically set: "Individual ( )".

Sport displays

Concept

The Sport displays especially support a sporty driving style.

Display on the Control Display

Overview

The following information is displayed:

▷ Torque.

▷ Power.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1731
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Displays

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Sport displays"

Display in the instrument cluster

The Sport displays can be displayed in form of a widget in the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Widgets in the instrument cluster, refer to page 140.

Vehicle status

General information

The status can be displayed and actions performed for several systems.

Opening the vehicle status

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"

Information at a glance

Symbols	Description
(!)	"Flat Tire Monitor": status of the run-flat tires, refer to page 315.
(!)	"Tire Pressure Monitor": status of the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 308.
	"Engine oil level": electronic oil measurement, refer to page 326.
⚠	"Check Control messages": displaying stored Check Control messages, refer to page 141.
	"Service schedule": displaying service notifications, refer to page 148.

Head-up Display

Concept

This system projects important information into the driver's field of vision, for instance the speed.

The driver can get information without averting his or her eyes from the road.

General information

Follow the information on cleaning the Head-up Display.

Overview

Switching on/off

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Head-up display"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1732

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Display

Overview

The following information is displayed on the Head-up Display:

- Vehicle speed.
- Navigation instructions.
- Check Control messages.
- Selection list in the instrument cluster.
- Driver assistance systems.
- Sport displays.

Some of this information is only displayed briefly as needed.

Selecting displays in the Head-up Display

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the brightness

The brightness is automatically adjusted to the ambient brightness.

The basic setting can be adjusted manually.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Brightness"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is set.
7. Press the Controller.

When the low beams are switched on, the brightness of the Head-up Display can be additionally influenced using the instrument lighting.

Adjusting the height

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Height"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired height is reached.
7. Press the Controller.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

The height of the Head-up Display can also be stored using the memory function.

Setting the rotation

The Head-up Display view can be rotated.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Rotation"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is selected.
7. Press the Controller.

Additional settings

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. Select the desired setting:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1733
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

- "Speed Limit Assistance": access the settings for the speed assistant.
- "Display infotainment lists in": set up if the selection lists are displayed in the instrument cluster or the Head-up Display.
- "Sport displays": display tachometer and Shift Lights in the Head-up Display.
  - "Off": the Sport displays are not displayed in the Head-up Display.
  - "In SPORT mode": the Sport displays are only displayed in SPORT driving mode.
  - "Always": the Sport displays are continuously displayed in the Head-up Display.
- "Reduced height": if not all of the information is in the driver's field of vision, the information can be displayed in the lower section of the Head-up Display.

Visibility of the display

The visibility of the displays in the Head-up Display is influenced by the following factors:

- Seat position.
- Objects on the cover of the Head-up Display.
- Sunglasses with certain polarization filters.
- Wet roads.
- Unfavorable light conditions.

If the image is distorted, have the basic settings checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Special windshield

The windshield is part of the system.

The shape of the windshield makes it possible to display a precise image.

A film in the windshield prevents double images from being generated.

For this reason, it is strongly suggested to have the special windshield replaced by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, if necessary.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1734

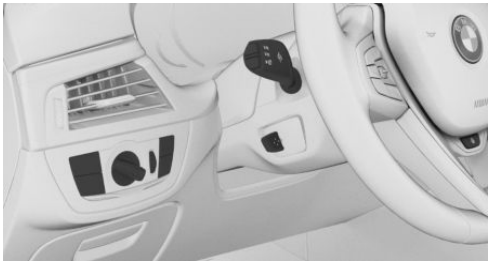
Lights

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Lights and lighting

Switches in the vehicle



The light switch element is located next to the steering wheel.

Symbol	Function
	Front fog lights.
	Night vision.
0	Lights off. Daytime running lights.
	Parking lights.
A	Automatic headlight control. Adaptive light functions.
	Low beams.
	Instrument lighting.
P	Right roadside parking light.
P	Left roadside parking light.

Automatic headlight control

Concept

The low beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness, for example in tunnels, in twilight or if there is precipitation.

General information

A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be switched on.

Activating

Position of switch:

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low beams are switched on.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1735
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

System limits

The automatic headlight control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment of lighting conditions.

For example, the sensors are unable to detect fog or hazy weather. In these situations, switch the lights on manually.

Parking lights, low beams and roadside parking lights

General information

Position of switch: 0 , ≡D , ≡D

If the driver's door is opened when the drive-ready state is switched off, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off after a period of time.

Parking lights

Switching on

Position of switch: ≡D

The vehicle is illuminated on all sides.

Do not use the parking lights for extended periods; otherwise, they might drain the battery and it would then be impossible to switch on drive-ready state.

Low beams

Switching on

Position of switch: ≡D

The low beams illuminate when drive-ready state is switched on.

Roadside parking lights

When the vehicle is parked, a one-sided roadside parking light can be switched on.

Button	Function
P≡	Right roadside parking light on/off.
≡P	Left roadside parking light on/off.

Welcome lights

General information

Depending on the equipment, the exterior lighting of the vehicle can be set individually.

Activating/deactivating

Position of switch: ≡D , ≡D

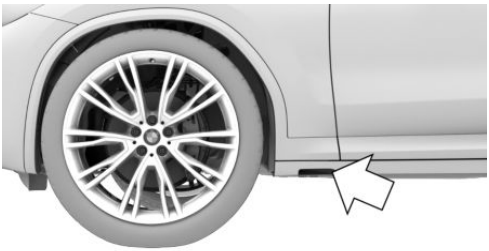
Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Welcome and goodbye"

     When unlocking the vehicle, individual light functions are switched on for a limited time.
   - ▷ "Welcome Light Carpet"

     The area next to the vehicle is illuminated for a limited time.

LED light carpet



The light source is located in the position indicated.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1736
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Keep the light source clean and unobstructed.

Pathway lighting

General information

The low beams stay illuminated for a particular time if the high beams are switched on after the drive-ready state is switched off.

Setting the duration

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "Pathway lighting"
5. Select the desired setting.
6. "OK"

Daytime running lights

General information

Position of switch: 0 , , .

The daytime running lights light up when drive-ready state is switched on. After drive-ready state is switched off, the parking lights light up in position .

Activating/deactivating

In some countries, daytime running lights are mandatory, so it may not be possible to deactivate the daytime running lights in front.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. Depending on country specifications: "Daytime driving lights" or "Daytime driving lights, rear"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Adaptive light functions

Concept

Adaptive light functions enable dynamic illumination of the roadway.

General information

The adaptive light functions may consist of one system or multiple systems, depending on the equipment version:

- Adaptive Light Control.
- Cornering light.

Activating

Position of switch:

The adaptive light functions are active when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Adaptive Light Control

General information

Depending on the steering angle and other parameters, the light from the headlight follows the course of the road.

To avoid blinding oncoming traffic, the Adaptive Light Control does not swivel to the opposite lane when the vehicle is at a standstill.

Cornering light

In tight curves, for instance on mountainous roads or when turning, an additional, cornering light is switched on that lights up the inside of the curve when the vehicle is moving below a certain speed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1737
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

The cornering light is automatically switched on depending on the steering angle or, where applicable, the use of turn signals.

When driving in reverse, the cornering lights may be automatically switched on regardless of the steering angle.

Adaptive headlight range control

The adaptive headlight range control feature balances out acceleration and braking processes as well as the vehicle load conditions in order to avoid dazzling oncoming traffic. Illumination of the road is optimized.

High-beam Assistant

Concept

The high-beam Assistant detects other traffic participants early on and automatically switches the high beams on or off depending on the traffic situation.

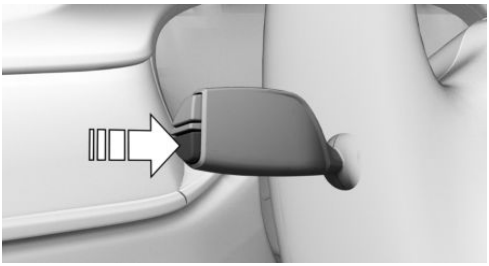
General information

The high-beam Assistant ensures that the high beams are switched on, whenever the traffic situation allows. In the low speed range, the high beams are not switched on by the system.

The system responds to light from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to ambient lighting, for instance in towns and cities.

The high beams can be switched on and off manually at any time.

Activating



Position of switch:

Press the button on the turn signal lever.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low beams are switched on.

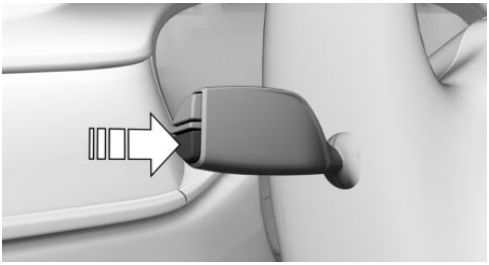
The headlights are automatically switched between low beams and high beams.

The blue indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up when the system switches on the high beams.

The high-beam Assistant is deactivated when manually switching the high beams on and off.

To reactivate the high-beam Assistant, press the button on the turn signal lever.

Deactivating



Press the button on the turn signal lever.

Sensitivity of the high-beam Assistant

General information

The sensitivity of the high-beam Assistant can be adjusted.

Safety information

Warning

If adjustments have been made or the sensitivity has been modified, oncoming traffic may be momentarily blinded. There is a risk of accident. If adjustments have been made and the sensitivity has been modified, make sure that oncoming traffic is not momentarily blinded. Switch off the high beams manually if required.

Adjusting the sensitivity

Pull the turn signal lever for approximately 10 seconds. The system responds more sensitively.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Resetting the sensitivity

Pull the turn signal lever again for approx. 10 seconds.

The sensitivity of the high-beam Assistant is reset to the factory settings.

System limits

The high-beam Assistant cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of when to use the high beams. In situation that require this, therefore switch off manually.

The system is not fully functional in the following situations, and driver intervention may be necessary:

- In very unfavorable weather conditions, such as fog or heavy precipitation.
- When detecting poorly-lit road users such as pedestrians, cyclists, horseback riders and wagons; when driving close to train or ship traffic; or at animal crossings.
- In tight curves, on hilltops or in depressions, in crossing traffic or half-obscured oncoming traffic on highways.
- In poorly-lit towns and cities or in the presence of highly reflective signs.
- When the windshield in front of the interior mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.

Fog lights

Front fog lights

Concept

The front fog lights work alongside the low beams to illuminate a wider area of the roadway.

Functional requirement

The low beams must be switched on before switching on the front fog lights.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

The green indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up if the front fog lights are switched on.

If the automatic headlight control is activated, the low beams will come on automatically when you switch on the front fog lights.

When the high beams or headlight flasher are activated, the front fog lights are not switched on.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1739
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Instrument lighting

Functional requirement

The parking lights or low beams must be switched on to adjust the brightness.

Adjusting

Adjust the brightness with the thumbwheel.

Interior lights

General information

Depending on the equipment version, interior lights, footwell lights, entry lights, ambient lighting, and speaker lighting are automatically controlled.

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

Interior lights

Reading lights

Switching the interior lights on/off

Press the button.

To switch off permanently: press the button and hold for approx. 3 seconds.

The interior lights in the rear of the vehicle can be switched on and off independently. The button is located in the rear roofliner.

Switching the reading lights on/off

Press the button.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the reading lights are located next to the interior lights in the front and rear.

Ambient light

General information

Depending on the equipment version, lighting can be adjusted for some lights in the car's interior.

Switching on/off

The ambient light is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked, and switched off when the vehicle is locked.

If the ambient light was deactivated via iDrive, it will not be switched on when the vehicle is unlocked.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Ambient lighting"

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Selecting the color scheme

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Color"
5. Select the desired setting.

Setting the brightness

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Brightness"
5. Select the desired setting.

Dimmed while driving

Some lights of the interior lighting are dimmed when the vehicle is driven in the dark.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Dimmed for night driving"

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Bowers & Wilkins Diamond Surround Sound System

General information

Some speakers in the vehicle are illuminated. Brightness can be individually set.

If the speakers are muted, speaker lighting will be switched off.

Switching on/off

The speaker lighting is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked, and switched off when the vehicle is locked.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Bowers & Wilkins"

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the brightness

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Bowers & Wilkins"
5. "Brightness"
6. Select the desired setting.

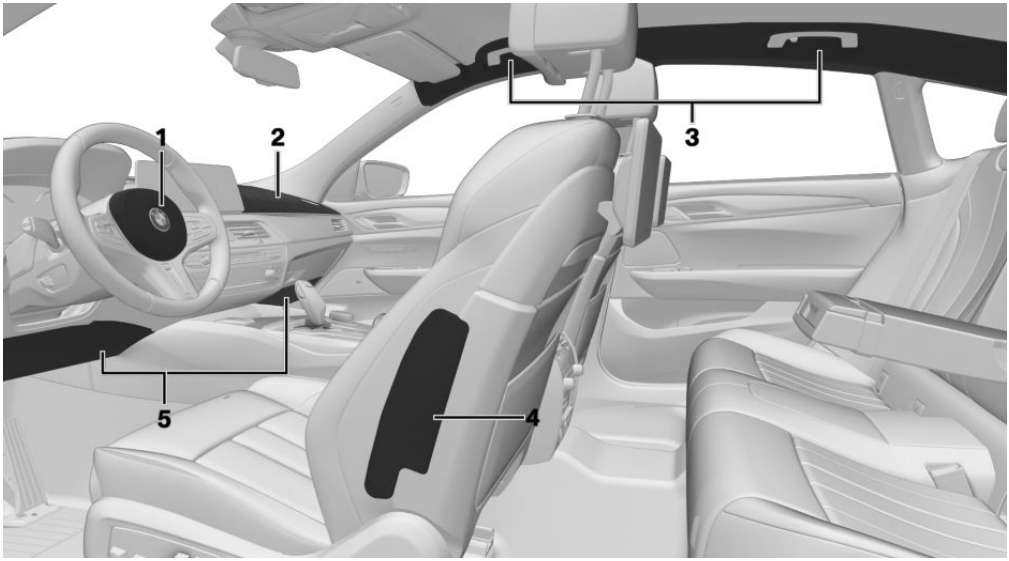
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1741
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Safety

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Airbags



1 Front airbag, driver
2 Front airbag, front passenger
3 Head airbag
4 Side airbag
5 Knee airbag

Front airbags

Front airbags help protect the driver and the front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which safety belts alone would not provide adequate protection.

Side airbag

In the event of a side impact, the side airbag protects the side of the body in the chest and lap area.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1742
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Head airbag

In the event of a side impact, the head airbag protects the head.

Ejection Mitigation

The head airbag system is designed as an ejection mitigation countermeasure to reduce the likelihood of ejections of vehicle occupants through side windows during rollovers or side impact events.

Knee airbag

The knee airbag protects the legs in the event of a frontal impact.

Protective effect

General information

Airbags are not triggered in every impact situation, e.g., in less severe accidents.

Information on optimum effect of the airbags

Warning

If the seat position is incorrect or the deployment area of the airbags is impaired, the airbag system cannot provide protection as intended and may cause additional injuries due to triggering. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Follow the information on achieving the optimum protective effect of the airbag system.

- Keep a distance from the airbags.
- Always grasp the steering wheel on the steering wheel rim. Hold your hands at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions, to keep the risk of injury to your hands or arms as low as possible when the airbag is triggered.
- Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e., keeps his or her feet and legs in the floor area and does not support them on the dashboard.
- Make sure that occupants keep their heads away from the side airbag.
- There should be no additional persons, animals or objects between an airbag and a person.
- Dashboard and windshield on the front passenger side must stay clear - do not attach adhesive labels or coverings and do not attach brackets or cables, for instance for GPS devices or mobile phones.
- Do not apply adhesive materials to the airbag cover panels, do not cover them or modify them in any way.
- Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area.
- Do not attach slip covers, seat cushions or other objects to the front passenger seat that are not specifically suited for seats with integrated side airbags.
- Do not hang pieces of clothing, such as jackets, over the backrests.
- Never modify either the individual components or the wiring in the airbag system. This also applies to steering wheel covers, the dashboard, and the seats.
- Do not remove the airbag system.

Even when you follow all instructions very closely, injury from contact with the airbags cannot be fully ruled out in certain situations.

The ignition and inflation noise may lead to short-term and, in most cases, temporary hearing impairment in sensitive occupants.

Vehicle modifications for a person with disabilities may affect the air bag system; contact BMW Customer Relations for further information.

Warnings and information on the airbags are also found on the sun visors.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1743
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Functional readiness of the airbag system

Safety information

Warning

Individual components can be hot after triggering of the airbag system. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch individual components.

Warning

Improperly executed work can lead to failure, malfunction or unintentional triggering of the airbag system. In the case of a malfunction, the airbag system might not trigger as intended despite the accident severity. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Have the airbag system checked, repaired, dismantled and scrapped by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Display in the instrument cluster

When drive-ready state is switched on, the warning light in the instrument cluster lights up briefly and thereby indicates the function readiness of the entire airbag system and the belt tensioners.

Malfunction

▷ Warning light does not come on when drive-ready state is switched on.

▷ The warning light lights up continuously.

Have the system checked.

Strength of the driver's and front-seat passenger airbag

General information

The explosive power that activates driver's/front-seat passenger airbags very much depends on the positions of the driver's/front passenger seat.

To maintain the accuracy of this function over the long term, calibrate the front seats as soon as a respective message appears on the Control Display.

Calibrating the front seats

Warning

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

A corresponding message appears on the Control Display.

1. Press the switch and move the respective seat all the way forward, until it stops.
2. Press the switch forward again. The seat still moves forward slightly.
3. Readjust the seat to the desired position.

The calibration procedure is completed when the message on the Control Display disappears.

If the message continues to be displayed, repeat the calibration.

If the message does not disappear after a repeat calibration, have the system checked as soon as possible.

Automatic deactivation of the front-seat passenger airbags

Concept

The system reads if the front passenger seat is occupied by measuring the human body's resistance.

Front, knee, and side airbag on the front passenger's side are activated or deactivated.

General information

Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, refer to the safety information and instructions for children on the front passenger seat, see Children.

Safety information

Warning

To ensure the front-seat passenger airbag function, the system must be able to detect whether a person is sitting in the front passenger seat. The entire seat cushion area must be used for this purpose. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the front passenger keeps his or her feet in the floor area.

Malfunction of the automatic deactivation system

When transporting older children and adults, the front-seat passenger airbags may be deactivated in certain sitting positions. In this case, the indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up.

In this case, change the sitting position so that the front-seat passenger airbags are activated and the indicator light goes out.

If it is not possible to activate the airbags, have the person sit in the rear.

To enable correct recognition of the occupied seat cushion:

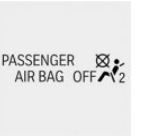
- Do not attach covers, cushions, ball mats or other items to the front passenger seat unless they are specifically determined to be safe for use on the front passenger seat.
- Do not place any electronic devices on the front passenger seat if a child restraint system is to be installed on it.
- Do not place objects under the seat that can push against the seat from below.
- No moisture in or on the seat.

Indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbags

The indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbag in the roofliner indicates the operating state of the front-seat passenger airbag.

The light indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.

After drive-ready state is switched on, the light briefly lights up and then indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.



- The indicator light lights up when a child is properly seated in a child restraint system or when the seat is empty. The airbags on the front passenger side are not activated.
- The indicator light does not light up when, for instance a correctly seated person of sufficient size is detected on the seat. The airbags on the front passenger side are activated.

Detected child restraint systems

The system generally detects children seated in a child restraint system, particularly in child restraint systems required by NHTSA at the point in time when the vehicle was manufactured. After installing a child restraint system, make sure

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1745
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

that the indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up. This indicates that the child restraint system has been detected and the front-seat passenger airbags are not activated.

Intelligent Safety

Concept

Intelligent Safety enables central operation of the driver assistance systems.

General information

Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, Intelligent Safety consists of one or more systems that can help prevent an imminent collision.

- Front collision mitigation.
- Evasion Assistant.
- Person warning with City braking function.
- Night Vision with pedestrian and animal detection.
- Lane departure warning.
- Blind spot collision warning.
- Side collision mitigation.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Switching on/off

Some Intelligent Safety systems are automatically active after every departure. Some Intelligent Safety systems activate according to the last setting.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly. The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions, for instance setting for warning time.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Front collision mitigation

Concept

The system may prevent some accidents. In the event of an accident, the system may reduce impact speed.

The system sounds a warning before an imminent collision and activates brakes independently, if needed.

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Camera in the area of the interior mirror.
- Radar sensor in the front bumper.

Intersection collision warning when equipped with a radar sensor: in addition, a warning is issued at intersections and junctions if a risk of collision with crossing traffic is detected.

The approach control warning is available even if cruise control has been deactivated.

With the vehicle approaching another vehicle intentionally, the approach control warning and braking are delayed in order to avoid false system reactions.

The system issues a two-phase warning of a possible risk of collision with vehicles at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h. The timing of warnings may vary with the current driving situation.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1747
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Warning

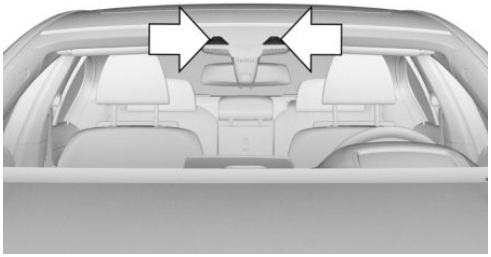
Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

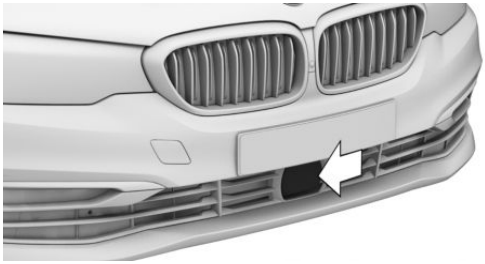
Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

With radar sensor



The radar sensor is located in the lower area of the front bumper.

Always keep radar sensor clean and unobstructed.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is automatically active after every driving off.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1748
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Manual switching off

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and warnings"
5. "Front collision mitigation"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Early"
   - ▷ "Medium"
   - ▷ "Late": only acute warnings are displayed.

The selected time is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Warning with braking function

Display

A warning symbol appears in the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display if a collision with a detected vehicle is imminent.

Symbol	Measure
	Symbol lights up red: prewarning. Brake and increase distance.
	Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.
 	Intersection collision warning: Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning when vehicles cross your direction of travel. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Prewarning

This warning is provided, for instance when there is impending danger of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small.

If a prewarning is provided, respond by braking as warranted.

Acute warning with braking function

An acute warning is displayed in case of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another object at a high differential speed.

Intervene in the case of an acute warning. If an acute warning is provided, the system may provide assistance, such as through braking, when there is risk of collision.

Acute warnings may be provided even when there has been no prior warning.

Brake intervention, City braking function

The warning prompts the driver to intervene. If a warning is active, the maximum braking force is used when the brake is applied. The brake pedal must be applied sufficiently quickly and forcefully.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1749
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

The system may also assist in braking if there is a risk of collision.

When the vehicle is traveling at a low speed, the vehicle may come to a complete stop.

The braking intervention takes place up to approx. 50 mph/80 km/h.

The driver may interrupt the braking intervention function by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

The system's ability to detect objects may be limited in some circumstances. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the limitations of the system and actively intervene as warranted.

With radar sensor: brake intervention

The warning prompts the driver to intervene. If a warning is active, the maximum braking force is used when the brake is applied. The brake pedal must be applied sufficiently quickly and forcefully.

The system may also assist in braking if there is a risk of collision.

The vehicle can be decelerated to a standstill.

The braking intervention occurs only if vehicle stability has not been restricted, for instance by deactivating the DSC Dynamic Stability Control.

At speeds above approx. 130 mph/210 km/h, the braking intervention occurs as a brief braking pressure. No automatic delay occurs.

The driver may interrupt the braking intervention function by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Intersection collision warning: brake intervention is not performed in the event of cross traffic.

The system's ability to detect objects may be limited in some circumstances. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the limitations of the system and actively intervene as warranted.

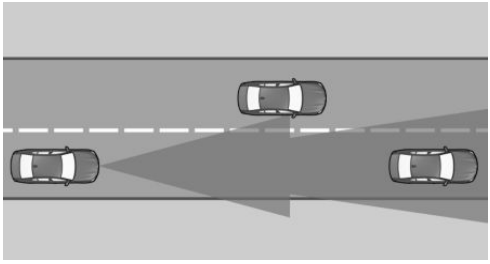
System limits

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Detection range



The system's detection potential is limited.

Only objects that are detected by the system are taken into account.

Thus, a system reaction might not come or might come late.

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- Slow moving vehicles when you approach them at high speed.
- Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or sharply decelerating vehicles.
- Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.
- Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.
- Intersection collision warning: crossing vehicles if their speed is higher than your own speed.

Upper speed limit

If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is deactivated temporarily. When the vehicle slows down to below this speed, the system is reactivated.

Intersection collision warning: the vehicle responds to crossing traffic if its own speed is below approx. 40 mph/65 km/h.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- In tight curves.
- If the driving stability control systems are limited or deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- If the field of view of the camera or the windshield is dirty or covered in the area of the interior mirror.
- If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.
- When it is dark outside.
- Depending on the equipment: if the radar sensors are dirty or covered.
- Depending on the equipment version: after improperly performed work on the vehicle paint in the area of the radar sensors.

Attaching any objects such as stickers or film in the beam area of the radar sensors will also limit the function of the radar sensors and may even cause them to fail.

Warning sensitivity

The more sensitive the warning settings are, for example the warning time, the more warnings are displayed. Therefore, there may also be an excess of premature or unjustified warnings and reactions.

Evasion Assistant

Concept

The system supports the driver in making evasive maneuvers in certain situations, such as when obstacles suddenly appear.

General information

The system issues a warning and intervenes to support the driver if a lateral evasive maneuver is possible. Sensors monitor and detect the clearance around the vehicle. If the system identifies space alongside the vehicle, it supports an evasive maneuver begun by the driver by safely providing targeted steering support.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

⚠ Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving

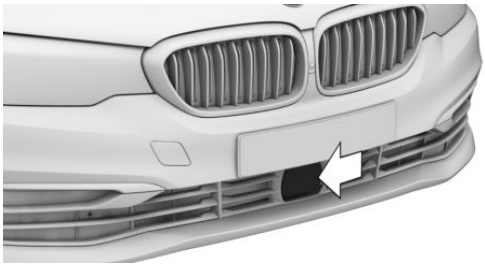
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1751
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Radar sensors

The radar sensors are located in the bumpers.



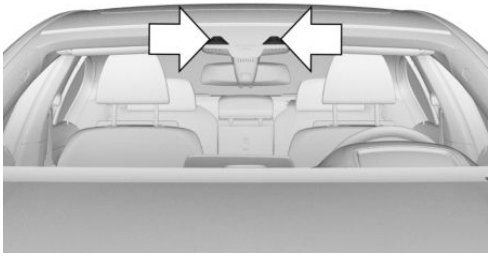
Front center bumper.

Front side bumper.

Rear bumper.

Always keep the bumper in the area of the radar sensors clean and unobstructed.

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Functional requirements

- Front collision mitigation is switched on.

  Front collision mitigation, refer to page 168.
- Sensors detect sufficient clearance around the vehicle.

Switching on/off

The system is automatically active after every driving off.

Warning with evasion support

Display in the instrument cluster

A warning symbol appears in the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display if a collision with a detected vehicle is imminent.

Symbol	Measure
	Symbol lights up red: prewarning. Brake and increase distance.
	Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Acute warning with evasion support

An acute warning is displayed when there is an imminent danger of collision due to the vehicle approaching another object at a high speed.

Intervene in the case of an acute warning. The system is designed to provide assistance by taking evasive action when there is a risk of collision.

Acute warnings may be provided even when there has been no prior warning.

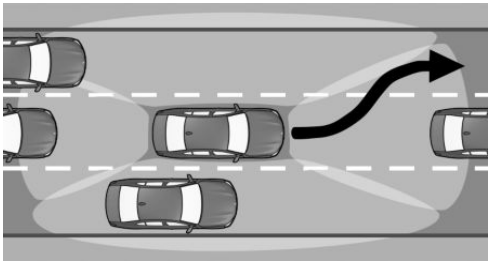
System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Detection range



The system's detection potential is limited.

Only objects that are detected by the system are taken into account.

Thus, a system reaction might not come or might come late.

The following situations may not be detected, for example:

- Slow moving vehicles when you approach them at high speed.
- Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or sharply decelerating vehicles.
- Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.
- Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- In tight curves.
- If the driving stability control systems are limited or deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- If the field of view of the camera or the windshield is dirty or covered in the area of the interior mirror.
- If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.
- When it is dark outside.
- Depending on the equipment: if the radar sensors are dirty or covered.
- Depending on the equipment version: after improperly performed work on the vehicle paint in the area of the radar sensors.

Attaching any objects such as stickers or film in the beam area of the radar sensors will also limit the function of the radar sensors and may even cause them to fail.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1753
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Person warning with City braking function

Concept

The system may prevent some accidents with pedestrians. When driving at city speeds, the system will issue a warning if there is imminent risk of a collision with pedestrians, and support with a braking function.

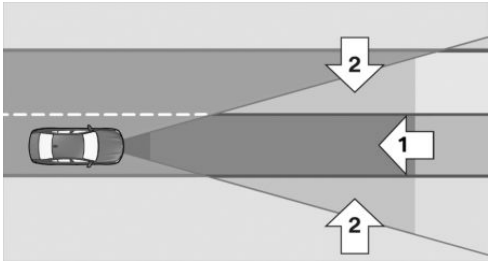
General information

The system is active at speeds of approx. 3 mph/5 km/h up to approx. 40 mph/65 km/h.

The system reacts to people who are within the detection range of the system.

The camera in the area of the interior mirror controls the system.

Detection range



The detection area in front of the vehicle is divided into two areas:

- Central area, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.
- Expanded area, arrows 2, to the right and left of the central area.

A collision is imminent if pedestrians are located within the central area. A warning is issued about pedestrians who are located within the extended area only if they are moving in the direction of the central area.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

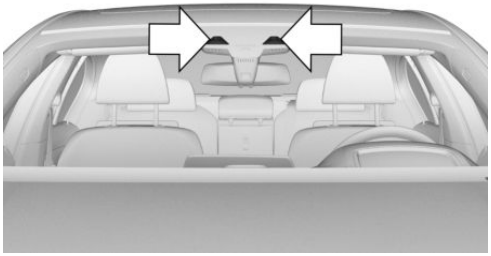
Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is automatically active after every driving off.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Manual switching off

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Warning with braking function

Display

If a collision with a detected person is imminent, a warning symbol appears on the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display.

The red symbol is displayed and a signal sounds.

Alternatively, depending on the vehicle equipment, a red warning triangle lights up in the instrument cluster.

Intervene immediately by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

Braking intervention

The warning prompts the driver to intervene. If a warning is active, the maximum braking force is

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1755
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

used when the brake is applied. This requires the brake pedal to be depressed sufficiently quickly and forcefully.

If there is a risk of collision, the system may also assist with braking.

When the vehicle is traveling at a low speed, the vehicle may come to a complete stop.

The driver may interrupt the braking intervention function by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

The system's ability to detect objects may be limited in some circumstances. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the limitations of the system and actively intervene as warranted.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Detection range

The system's detection potential is limited.

Thus, a warning might not be issued or be issued late.

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- Partially covered pedestrians.
- Pedestrians that are not detected as such because of the viewing angle or contour.
- Pedestrians outside of the detection range.
- Pedestrians having a body size less than 32 in/80 cm.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional or may not be available in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- In tight curves.
- If the driving stability control systems are deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- If the field of view of the camera or the windshield is dirty or covered in the area of the interior mirror.
- If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.
- When it is dark outside.

Night Vision with pedestrian and animal detection

Concept

Night Vision with pedestrian and animal detection is a night vision system.

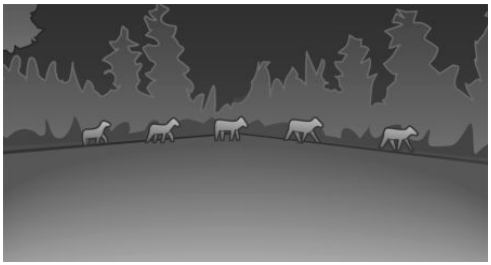
An infrared camera scans the area in front of the vehicle and issues a warning if it detects pedestrians and animals on the street. The system detects warm objects that are similar in shape to human beings or animals. If necessary, the thermal image can be displayed on the Control Display.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1756

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

General information

Thermal image



The image shows the heat radiated by objects in the field of view of the camera.

Warm objects have a light appearance and cold objects a dark appearance.

The ability to detect an object depends on the temperature difference between the object and the background and on the level of heat radiation emitted by the object. Objects that are similar in temperature to the environment or that radiate very little heat are difficult to detect.

For safety reasons, when driving at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h and in low ambient light, the image is only displayed when the low beams are switched on.

A still image is displayed at regular intervals for a fraction of a second.

Pedestrian and animal detection

Object detection and warning only functions in darkness.

Objects whose form is similar to people with sufficient heat radiation are detected.

In addition, the system also detects animals above a certain minimum size, for instance deer.

Display on the Control Display with thermal image activated:

- People detected by the system: in light yellow.
- Animals detected by the system: in dark yellow.

Range of object detection, with good ambient conditions:

- Pedestrian detection: up to approx. 330 ft/100 m.
- Detection of large animals: up to approx. 490 ft/150 m.
- Detection of medium animals: up to approx. 230 ft/70 m.

Environmental influences can limit the availability of object detection.

If the vehicle systems detect that the vehicle is located in a residential area, the animal detection is temporarily switched off.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving

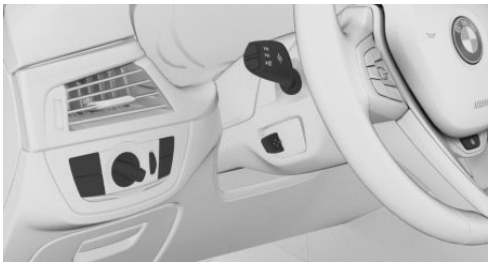
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1757
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

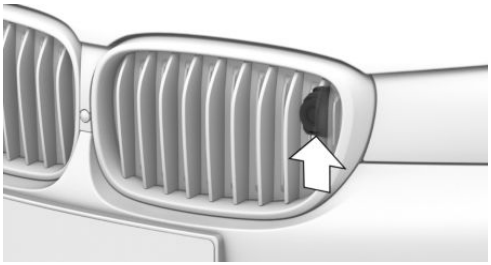
Buttons in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety



Thermal image

Camera



The camera is automatically heated when the external temperatures are low.

When the vehicle lighting is switched on, the camera objective is cleaned at regular intervals when the windshield washer system is activated.

Switching on

Switching on automatically

When it is dark outside, the system is automatically active after every driving off.

Switching on the thermal image

The thermal image from the Night Vision camera can be displayed on the Control Display in addition to the warning function. This function has no effect on object detection.

Press the button.

The image from the camera is displayed on the Control Display.

Adjusting the thermal image

Brightness and contrast can be adjusted, when the thermal image is switched on.

Via iDrive:

1. Select brightness or contrast:
   - ▷ "Brightness".
   - ▷ "Contrast".
2. Set the desired value.

Warning function

Display

Symbol	Meaning
	Person warning.
	Animal warning.
Symbol lights up red.	Prewarning.

Symbol	Meaning
Symbol flashes red and a signal sounds.	Acute warning.
	Alternatively, depending on the vehicle equipment, a red warning triangle lights up or flashes in the instrument cluster.

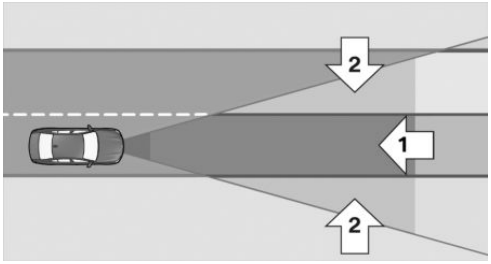
The displayed symbol may vary and shows the side of the road on which the person or animal was detected.

Warning of people or animals in danger

If a collision with a person or an animal detected in this way is imminent, a warning symbol appears on the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display.

Although both the shape and the heat radiation are analyzed, false warnings cannot be ruled out.

Warning area in front of the vehicle



The warning area for the person warning consists of two parts:

- Central area, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.
- Expanded area, arrows 2, to the right and left of the central area.

With animal warnings, no distinction is made between the central or expanded area.

The entire area moves along with the vehicle in the direction of the steering angle and changes with the vehicle speed. As the vehicle speed increases, the area becomes, for instance longer and wider.

Prewarning

Prewarning for persons is displayed when a person is detected in the central area immediately in front of the vehicle as well as on the left or right side in the extended area.

Prewarning for animals is displayed when an animal is detected in the front of the vehicle.

If a prewarning is issued, intervene by braking or making an evasive maneuver.

Acute warning

Acute warning is displayed if a person or an animal is detected in direct proximity in front of the vehicle.

If an acute warning is issued, brake or make an evasive maneuver immediately.

Display in the Head-up Display

The warning is displayed simultaneously in the Head-up Display and on the instrument cluster.

System limits

Basic limits

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- On steep hills, in steep depressions or in tight curves.
- If the camera is soiled or damaged.
- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- At very high external temperatures.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1759
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Limits of pedestrian and animal detection

In some situations, it may occur that pedestrians are detected as animals or animals as pedestrians.

Small animals are not detected by the object detection function, even if they are clearly visible in the image.

Limited detection, for instance in the following circumstances:

- People or animals who are fully or partially covered, especially when their heads are covered.
- People who are not in an upright position, for instance lying down.
- Cyclists on unconventional bicycles (e.g., recumbent bicycles).
- After physical damage to the system, for instance after an accident.

Lane departure warning

Concept

The lane departure warning alerts when the vehicle on roads with lane markings is about to leave the lane.

General information

This camera-based system warns starting at a minimum speed.

The minimum speed is country-specific and is displayed in the menu for the intelligent Safety systems.

Warnings are issued by means of a steering wheel vibration. The severity of the steering wheel vibration can be adjusted.

The time of the warning may vary depending on the current driving situation.

The system does not provide a warning if the turn signal is set before leaving the lane.

Vehicles with side collision mitigation: if in the speed range up to 130 mph/210 km/h a lane marking is crossed, the system intervenes with a brief active steering intervention in addition to vibrating. The system thus helps keep the vehicle in the lane.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing road and traffic safety. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate. Do not jerk the steering wheel in response to a warning.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Functional requirement

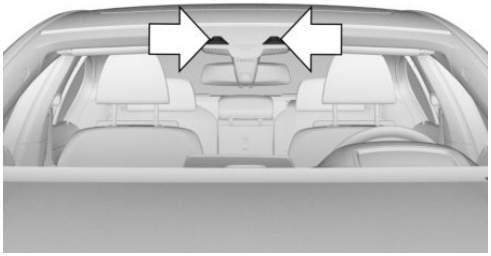
The camera must detect the lane markings for the lane departure warning to be active.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The lane departure warning activates automatically after departure if the function was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Manual switching off

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and warnings"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1761
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

5. "Lane Departure Warning"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Always": the system issues a warning whenever a hazardous situation is detected.
   - ▷ "Reduced": some warnings are suppressed depending on the situation, for instance during passing without a turn signal or when purposely driving over lane markings in curves.
   - ▷ "Off": no warnings are issued.

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Steering wheel feedback"
5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all Intelligent Safety systems and stored for the driver profile currently used.

Vehicles with side collision mitigation: switch steering intervention on/off

The steering intervention can be switched on and off separately for blind spot collision warning and lane departure warning.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and warnings"
5. "Lane Departure Warning"
6. "Steering intervention"

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Display in the instrument cluster

The symbol illuminates green: at least one lane marking was detected and warnings can be issued.

Warning function

If you leave the lane

If you leave the lane and if a lane marking has been detected, the steering wheel vibrates in accordance with the steering wheel vibration setting.

When the turn signal is switched on before a lane charge, a warning is not issued.

With side collision mitigation

If in the speed range up to 130 mph/210 km/h a lane marking is crossed, the system intervenes with a brief active steering intervention in addition to vibrating. The steering intervention helps keep the vehicle in the lane. The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

Warning signal

Depending on the equipment version: in the event of multiple active steering interventions by the system within 3 minutes without the driver's intervention at the steering wheel, an acoustic warning will sound. A short warning signal will sound at the second steering intervention. Beginning with the third steering intervention, an continuous warning will sound.

In addition, a Check Control message is displayed.

The warning signal and Check-Control message are an encouragement to pay closer attention to the lane.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1762
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

End of warning

For instance, the warning will be canceled in the following situations:

- Automatically after approx. 3 seconds.
- When returning to your own lane.
- When braking hard.
- When using the turn signal.
- If DSC Dynamic Stability Control intervenes.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane markings such as in construction areas.
- When lane markings are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
- When lane markings are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.
- If the field of view of the camera or the windshield is dirty or covered in the area of the interior mirror.
- If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

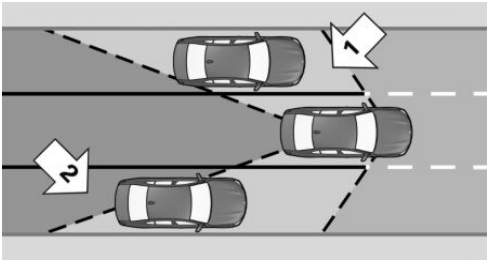
A Check Control message may be displayed when the system is not fully functional.

Blind spot collision warning

Concept

Blind spot collision warning detects vehicles in the blind spot or vehicles approaching from behind in the adjacent lane. A warning is issued in various gradations in these situations.

General information



Two radar sensors in the rear bumper monitor the area behind and next to the vehicle when traveling faster than a minimum speed.

The minimum speed is country-specific and is displayed in the menu for the intelligent Safety systems.

The system indicates whether there are vehicles in the blind spot, arrow 1, or approaching from behind in the adjacent lane, arrow 2.

The light in the exterior mirror lights up dimmed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1763
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Before you change lanes after setting the turn signal, the system issues a warning in the situations described above.

The light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

Vehicles with side collision mitigation: at speeds between 45 mph/70 km/h and 130 mph/210 km/h, the system can intervene with a brief active steering intervention and help to return the vehicle into the lane.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Radar sensors

The radar sensors are located in the rear bumper.

Always keep the bumper in the area of the radar sensors clean and unobstructed.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

Blind spot collision warning is automatically activated after departure if the function was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1764
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Manual switching off

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and warnings"
5. "Active Blind Spot Detection"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Early"
   - ▷ "Medium"
   - ▷ "Late"
   - ▷ "Off": with this setting, no warning is output.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Steering wheel feedback"
5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all Intelligent Safety systems and stored for the driver profile currently used.

Vehicles with side collision mitigation: switching steering intervention on/off

The steering intervention can be switched on and off separately for blind spot collision warning and lane departure warning.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and warnings"
5. "Active Blind Spot Detection"
6. "Steering intervention"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1765
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Warning function

Light in the exterior mirror

Prewarning

The dimmed light in the exterior mirror indicates when there are vehicles in the blind spot or approaching from behind.

Acute warning

When the turn signal is switched on while a vehicle is in the critical zone, the steering wheel vibrates briefly and the light in the exterior mirror flashes brightly.

The warning stops when the other vehicle has left the critical area or the turn signal has been deactivated.

Vehicles with side collision mitigation

When at speeds between 45 mph/70 km/h and 130 mph/210 km/h the vibrating steering wheel is ignored and the lane marking crossed, the system intervenes with a brief active steering intervention. The steering intervention helps return the vehicle into the lane. The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

Flashing of the light

A flashing of the light during vehicle unlocking serves as system self-test.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Upper speed limit

If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is deactivated temporarily.

If the vehicle speed falls below approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system once again responds according to the setting.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
- If the bumper is dirty, iced up, or covered, for instance by stickers.
- After improperly performed work on the vehicle paint.
- If cargo protrudes.

Attaching any objects such as stickers or film in the beam area of the radar sensors will also impact the function of the radar sensors and may even cause them to fail.

For vehicles with side collision mitigation, the steering intervention can be limited, for instance in the following situation:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1766
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

- In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane markings such as in construction areas.
- When lane markings are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- When lane markings are not white.
- When lane markings are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.
- If the field of view of the camera or the windshield is dirty or covered in the area of the interior mirror.
- If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

A Check Control message is displayed when the system is not fully functional.

Displaying warnings

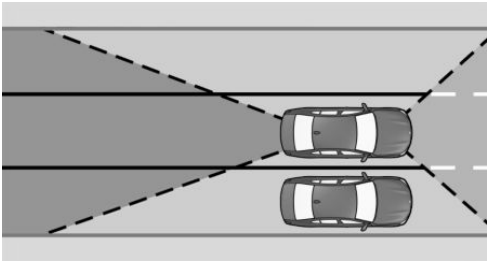
Depending on the selected warning settings, e.g., warning time, more or fewer warnings can be displayed. However, there may also be an excess of premature warnings of critical situations.

Side collision mitigation

Concept

The system helps to avoid imminent side collisions.

General information



Four radar sensors in the bumpers monitor the area next to the vehicle in the speed range from approx. 45 mph/70 km/h to approx. 130 mph/210 km/h.

The front camera determines the lane marking positions.

If, for instance another vehicle is detected next to the vehicle and if there is a risk of collision with this vehicle, the system helps avoid the collision via steering intervention.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1767
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Functional requirement

The camera must detect the lane markings for the side collision mitigation with steering intervention to be active.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Radar sensors

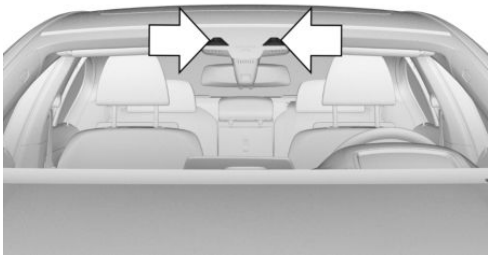
The radar sensors are located in the bumpers.

Front bumper.

Rear bumper.

Always keep the bumper in the area of the radar sensors clean and unobstructed.

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The side collision mitigation activates automatically after departure if the function was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Manual switching off

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Steering wheel feedback"
5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all Intelligent Safety systems and stored for the driver profile currently used.

Warning function

Light in the exterior mirror

Acute warning

If there is a risk of collision, the light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

If necessary, an active steering intervention then takes place to prevent collisions and maintain the vehicle within its own lane.

The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1769
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

- When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
- If the bumper is dirty, iced up, or covered, for instance by stickers.
- After improperly performed work on the vehicle paint.
- If cargo protrudes.
- In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane markings such as in construction areas.
- When lane markings are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- When lane markings are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.
- If the field of view of the camera or the windshield is dirty or covered in the area of the interior mirror.
- If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

Attaching any objects such as stickers or film in the beam area of the radar sensors will also impact the function of the radar sensors and may even cause them to fail.

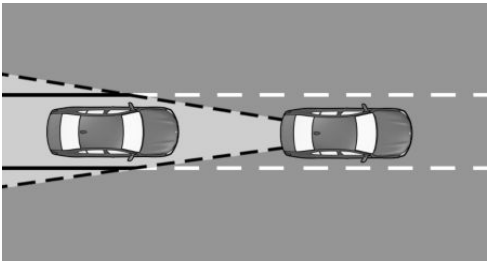
A Check Control message is displayed when the system is not fully functional.

Rear collision preparation

Concept

The system reacts to vehicles approaching from behind.

General information



Two radar sensors in the rear bumper monitor the area behind the vehicle.

When a vehicle approaches from the rear at a certain speed, the system responds as follows:

- Active Protection: when a collision seems to be unavoidable, PreCrash functions are triggered.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

⚠ Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1770
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Radar sensors

The radar sensors are located in the rear bumper.

Always keep the bumper in the area of the radar sensors clean and unobstructed.

Switching on/off

The system is automatically active after every driving off.

The system is deactivated in the following situations:

- When driving in reverse.

System limits

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- When the approaching vehicle approaches slowly.
- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
- If the bumper is dirty, iced up, or covered, for instance by stickers.
- If the field of view of the sensors is covered, e.g., by garage walls, hedges or snow hills.
- If cargo protrudes.

Active Protection

Concept

Active Protection prepares occupants and the vehicle for a possible accident in critical driving or collision situations.

General information

Active Protection consists of various PreCrash functions, which can vary depending on the equipment.

The system is used to detect certain critical driving situations that might lead to an accident. This includes the following critical driving situations:

- Emergency stop.
- Severe understeering.
- Severe oversteering.

Certain functions of several systems can, within the system limits, lead to Active Protection triggering:

- Front collision mitigation: automatic brake intervention.
- Front collision mitigation: Brake Assistant.
- Night Vision with pedestrian and animal detection: Brake Assistant.
- Rear collision preparation: detection of imminent rear collisions.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to the system limits, critical situation could not be detected reliably or in time. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1771
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Function

When the safety belt is fastened, the driver's and passenger's belt straps are automatically tightened once after driving away.

In accident-critical situations, the following individual functions become active as needed:

- Automatic pretensioning of the front safety belts.
- Automatic window closing up to a narrow gap.
- Automatic closing of the panoramic glass sunroof, including sun protection.
- For vehicles equipped with comfort seats in the front: automatic positioning of the backrest for the front passenger seat.

After a critical driving situation without an accident, the front safety belts are loosened again.

If the belt tension does not loosen automatically, stop the vehicle and unbuckle the safety belt using the red button in the buckle. Fasten the safety belt before continuing on your trip.

All other systems can be restored to the desired setting.

PostCrash – iBrake

Concept

In the event of an accident, the system can bring the vehicle to a halt automatically without intervention by the driver in certain situations. This can reduce the risk of a further collision and the consequences thereof.

At standstill

After coming to a halt, the brake is released automatically.

Harder vehicle braking

In certain situations, it can be necessary to bring the vehicle to a halt more quickly than the Brake Assistant allows.

To do this, quickly apply extra force to the brake. For a brief period, the braking pressure will be higher than the braking pressure that is achieved by the automatic braking function. Automatic braking is interrupted.

Interrupting automatic braking

It can be necessary to interrupt automatic braking in certain situations, for instance for an evasive maneuver.

Interrupt automatic braking:

- By pressing the brake pedal.
- By pressing the accelerator pedal.

Fatigue alert

General information

The system can detect decreasing alertness or fatigue of the driver during long, monotonous trips, for instance on highways. In this situation, it is recommended that the driver takes a break.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing one's physical state. An increasing lack of alertness or fatigue may not be detected or not be detected in time. There is a risk of accident. Make sure that the driver is rested and alert. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions.

Function

The system is switched on each time drive-ready state is switched on.

After travel has begun, the system monitors certain aspects of the driver's behavior, so that decreasing alertness or fatigue can be detected.

This procedure takes the following criteria into account:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1772
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

- Personal driving style, for instance steering behavior.
- Driving conditions, for instance time, length of trip.
- Depending on the equipment: attention of the driver through the Driver Attention Camera.

Starting at approx. 43 mph/70 km/h, the system is active and can also display a recommendation to take a break.

Break recommendation

Adjusting

The fatigue alert is active automatically with each switching on of drive-ready state and can thus display a break recommendation.

The break recommendation can also be switched on or off and adjusted via iDrive.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Fatigue and Focus Alert"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "Standard": the break recommendation is made with a defined value.
   - "Sensitive": the break recommendation is issued earlier.
   - "Off": no break recommendation is made.

Display

If the driver becomes less alert or fatigued, a message is displayed in the Control Display with the recommendation to take a break.

During the display, various settings can be selected.

After a break, another recommendation to take a break cannot be displayed until after approximately 45 minutes.

System limits

The function may be limited in the following situations and may issue an incorrect warning or no warning at all:

- When the clock is set incorrectly.
- When the vehicle speed is mainly below about 43 mph/70 km/h.
- With a sporty driving style, such as during rapid acceleration or when cornering fast.
- In active driving situations, such as when changing lanes frequently.
- When the road surface is poor.
- In the event of strong side winds.

The system is reset approx. 45 minutes after parking the vehicle, for instance in the case of a break during longer trips on highways.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1773
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Driving stability control systems

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Antilock Braking System ABS

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during braking.

The vehicle maintains its steering power even during full brake applications, which increases the active safety.

ABS is operational every time you start the engine.

Brake assistant

When you apply the brakes rapidly, this system automatically boosts the vehicle braking capability to the furthest possible extent. It reduces the braking distance to a minimum during an emergency stop. This system utilizes all of the capabilities provided by the Antilock Brake System ABS.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal for the duration of the emergency stop.

Adaptive brake assistant

In combination with Active Cruise Control ACC, this system ensures that the brakes respond even more rapidly when braking in critical situations.

Drive-off assistant

Concept

This system supports driving off on uphill grades.

Driving off

1. Hold the vehicle in place with the foot brake.
2. Release the foot brake and drive off without delay.

After the foot brake is released, the vehicle is held in place for approx. 2 seconds.

Depending on the vehicle loading, the vehicle may roll back slightly.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control

Concept

Within the physical limits, the system helps to keep the vehicle on a steady course by reducing engine speed and by braking the individual wheels.

General information

DSC detects the following unstable driving conditions, for instance:

- Fishtailing, which can lead to oversteering.
- Loss of traction of the front wheels, which can lead to understeering.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1774

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

When driving with a roof load, for instance with roof-mounted luggage rack, the vehicle's center of gravity is higher, which increases the risk of the vehicle tipping in critical driving situations. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Do not deactivate DSC Dynamic Stability Control when driving with roof load.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

DSC OFF

Deactivating/activating DSC

General information

When DSC is deactivated, driving stability is reduced during acceleration and when driving in curves.

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

Deactivating DSC

Hold the button down until DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster and the DSC OFF indicator light is illuminated.

Activating DSC

Press the button.

DSC OFF and the DSC OFF indicator light go out.

Display

In the instrument cluster

When DSC is deactivated, DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Indicator/warning lights

The indicator light lights up: DSC is deactivated.

The indicator light flashes: DSC controls the drive and braking forces.

The indicator light lights up: DSC has malfunctioned.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1775
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

DTC Dynamic Traction Control

Concept

DTC is a version of the DSC Dynamic Stability Control where forward momentum is optimized.

The system ensures maximum headway on special road conditions or loose road surfaces, for instance unplowed snowy roads, but with somewhat limited driving stability.

General information

When DTC is activated, the vehicle has maximum traction. Driving stability is limited during acceleration and when driving in curves.

You may find it useful to briefly activate DTC in the following situations:

- When driving in slush or on uncleared, snow-covered roads.
- When driving off from deep snow or loose ground.
- When driving with snow chains.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

DSC OFF

Activating/deactivating DTC

Activating DTC

Press the button.

TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster and the indicator light for DSC OFF lights up.

Deactivating DTC

Press the button again.

TRACTION and the DSC OFF indicator light go out.

Display

Display in the instrument cluster

If DTC is activated, TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Indicator/warning lights

The indicator light lights up: DTC is activated.

Automatic program change

In certain situations, the DSC is activated automatically:

- If Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function ACC is activated.
- On a braking intervention by the Intelligent Safety systems.
- The vehicle has a flat tire.

xDrive

Concept

xDrive is the all-wheel-drive system of the vehicle. The interaction of xDrive and other suspension control systems, such as DSC Dynamic Stability Control, further optimizes traction and

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1776
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

driving dynamics. xDrive variably distributes the driving forces to the front and rear axles as demanded by the driving situation and road surface.

Integral Active Steering

Concept

The Integral Active Steering increases the maneuverability and makes a more direct steering response possible.

General information

Integral Active Steering is a combination of variable steering ratio and rear axle steering.

The steering is more direct because the variable steering ratio amplifies the wheel angle while maneuvering. The rear axle steering acts to increase maneuverability at low speeds by turning the rear wheels slightly in the opposite direction to the front wheels.

At higher speeds, the rear wheels are turned in the same direction as the front wheels. This results in, for instance better directional stability and a more harmonious change of direction.

In critical driving situations, the Integral Active Steering can stabilize the vehicle through purposeful steering of the rear wheels before the driver intervenes, for instance in case of oversteering.

Tuning

The system offers several different tunings.

Driving mode	Integral Active Steering
COMFORT ECO PRO	Comfortable, for optimal travel comfort.
SPORT	Dynamic, for greater agility.

The different tunings are assigned to the different driving modes of the Driving Dynamics Control.

Additional information:

Driving Dynamics Control, refer to page 125.

Using snow chains

In order to guarantee free running of the wheels when operating with snow chains, rear axle steering of the integral active steering must be switched off when snow chains are mounted.

Additional information:

Rear axle steering during operation with snow chains, refer to page 308.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, the steering wheel must be turned further at lower speeds, while the vehicle responds more sensitively to steering wheel movements in the higher speed range.

The stability-enhancing intervention may be deactivated.

Proceed cautiously and drive defensively.

Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Active rear spoiler

Concept

The active rear spoiler increases driving stability. The rear spoiler extends and retracts automatically depending on the driving speed.

General information

When using automatic vehicle washes, ensure that the rear spoiler is retracted.

Clean the rear spoiler compartment regularly.

Observe information on automatic washing systems or vehicle washes, refer to page 345, and caring for special components, refer to page 347.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1777
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Safety information

NOTICE

If the rear spoiler is hindered when extending and retracting, it can be damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the rear spoiler can move freely, for instance keep it free of ice.

Warning

With external, mechanical influence on the rear spoiler, it can be damaged. With an extended rear spoiler, mechanical components are exposed. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not lean on the rear spoiler and do not use it to push. Do not reach into the mechanical components.

Overview

Button for manual/automatic mode.

Activate manual/ automatic mode

Press the button.

- LED on: manual mode.
- LED off: automatic mode.

The selected operating mode is retained even after standby state has been switched off.

Automatic mode

General information

A retracted rear spoiler is in automatic mode when the engine is started.

Automatic extension

When traveling faster than 65 mph/110 km/h, the rear spoiler is extended automatically.

Automatic retraction

When slowing to a speed below 45 mph/70 km/h, the rear spoiler is retracted automatically.

Manual mode

Concept

Manual mode can be used when cleaning the rear spoiler, for example.

Safety information

Warning

When extending and retracting the rear spoiler, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the rear spoiler is clear during extension and retraction.

Manual extension

Press the button with standby state or drive-ready state switched on.

The LED lights up. The rear spoiler is extended.

Manual retraction

The rear spoiler can be retracted manually when traveling at speeds below 65 mph/110 km/h.

Press the button.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1778
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

The rear spoiler is retracted and the LED goes out.

The system is in automatic mode.

At vehicle speeds below 10 mph/20 km/h:

Press and hold the button until the rear spoiler is fully retracted and the LED goes out.

The system is in automatic mode.

Releasing the button early will cause the rear spoiler to extend again.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed. The rear spoiler can no longer be retracted, extended, or adjusted, for instance due to temporary icing.

If there is a malfunction, DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on.

In case of a temporary or an ongoing malfunction, continue to drive at a maximum of 80 mph/130 km/h.

In case of an ongoing malfunction, have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1779
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Driver assistance systems

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Cruise control

Concept

Using this system, a desired speed can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel. The system maintains the desired speed. The system accelerates and brakes automatically as needed.

General information

The system can be activated starting at 20 mph/30 km/h.

Depending on the vehicle setting, the cruise control settings may change under certain conditions. For instance, acceleration can change depending on the driving mode.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

The use of the system can lead to an increased risk of accidents in the following situations, for instance:

- On winding roads.
- In heavy traffic.
- On slippery roads, in fog, snow, or wet conditions, or on a loose road surface.

There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Only use the system if driving at constant speed is possible.

Warning

The desired speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Cruise control on/off.
	Pause cruise control. Continue cruise control with the last setting.

Button	Function
SET	Store speed.
	Rocker switch: Set speed.

Switching cruise control on/off

Switching on

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster light up and the marking on the speedometer is set to the current speed.

Cruise control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

Switching off

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

Pausing cruise control

Interrupting manually

When active, press the button.

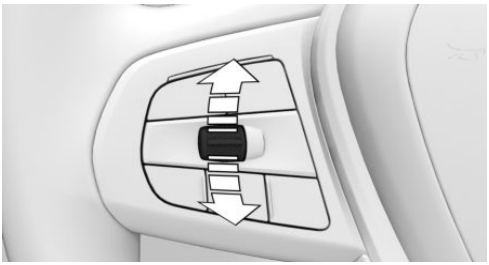
Interrupting automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations, for example:

- When the driver applies the brakes.
- When selector lever position D is disengaged.
- Dynamic Traction Control DTC is activated or DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.
- If DSC Dynamic Stability Control intervenes.

Setting the speed

Maintaining and storing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down once while the system is interrupted.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

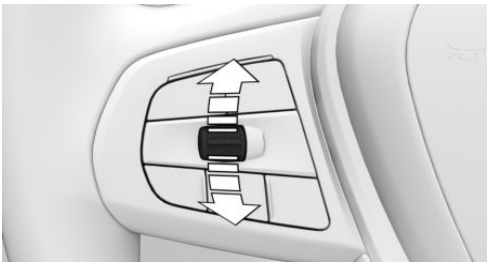
The stored speed is displayed on the speedometer.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

The speed can also be stored by pressing a button.

Press the button.

Changing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1781
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

- Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the desired speed increases or decreases by 1 mph/1 km/h.
- Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

  The maximum speed that can be set depends on the vehicle.
- Pressing the rocker switch to the resistance point and holding it: vehicle accelerates or decelerates without pressure on the accelerator pedal.

  After the rocker switch is released, the vehicle maintains its final speed. Pressing the switch beyond the resistance point causes the vehicle to accelerate more rapidly.

Continuing cruise control

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed.

Make sure that the difference between current speed and stored speed is not too large before calling up the stored speed. Otherwise, unintentional braking or accelerating may occur.

Press the button with the system interrupted.

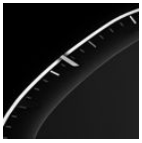
Cruise control is continued with the stored values.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- When the system is switched off.
- When drive-ready state is switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Display in the speedometer



- Green marking: system is active, the marking indicates the desired speed.
- Grey marking: system is interrupted, the marking indicates the stored speed.
- No marking: system is switched off.

Indicator light

- Indicator light green: system is active.
- Gray indicator light: the system has been interrupted.
- No indicator light: system is switched off.

Displays in the Head-up Display

Some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

The symbol is displayed when the set desired speed is reached.

System limits

The desired speed is also maintained downhill. The speed may not be maintained on uphill grades if the engine power is insufficient.

In ECO PRO driving mode, the vehicle may exceed or drop below the set desired speed in some situations, for instance on downhill or uphill grades.

Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go function ACC

Concept

Using this system, a desired speed and a distance to a vehicle ahead can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel.

The system maintains the desired speed on clear roads. The vehicle accelerates or brakes automatically.

If a vehicle is driving ahead of you, the system adjusts the speed of your vehicle so that the set distance to the vehicle ahead is maintained. The

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1782

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

speed is adjusted as far as the given situation allows.

General information

A radar sensor is located in the front bumper and a camera on the interior mirror to detect vehicles driving ahead of you.

Depending on the vehicle setting, the cruise control settings may change under certain conditions. For instance, acceleration can change depending on the driving mode.

The distance can be adjusted in several steps. For safety reasons, it depends on the respective speed.

If the vehicle ahead of you brakes to a halt, and then proceeds to drive again within a brief period, the system is able to detect this within the given system limits.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

The desired speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Risk of accident due to too high speed differences to other vehicles, for instance in the following situations:

- When fast approaching a slowly moving vehicle.
- Vehicle suddenly swerving into own lane.
- When fast approaching standing vehicles.

There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

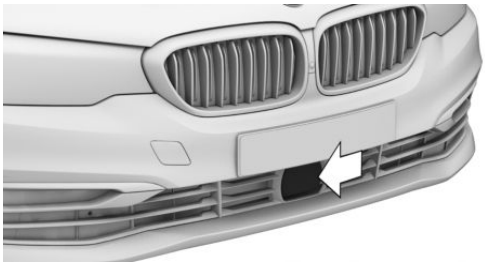
Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Cruise control on/off.
	Store/maintain speed.
	Pause cruise control. Continue cruise control with the last setting.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1783
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Button	Function
	Without steering and traffic jam assistant: Reduce distance.
	Without steering and traffic jam assistant: Increase the distance.
	With steering and traffic jam assistant: Adjust distance.
	Rocker switch: Set speed.
	With steering and traffic jam assistant: Steering and traffic jam assistant including Traffic Jam Assist on/off.

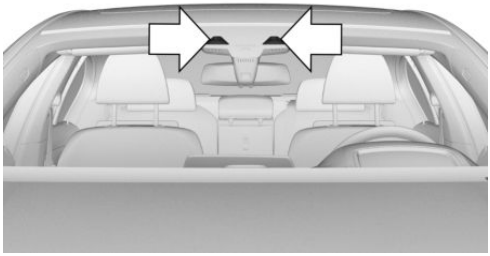
Radar sensor



The radar sensor is located in the front bumper.

Always keep radar sensor clean and unobstructed.

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Area of application

The system is best used on well-constructed roads.

The minimum speed that can be set is 20 mph/30 km/h.

The maximum speed that can be set is limited and, e.g., depends on the vehicle and the vehicle equipment version.

Higher speeds can be selected if the system is switched to cruise control without distance control.

The system can also be activated when stationary.

Switching on/off and interrupting cruise control

Switching on

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster light up and the mark in the speedometer is set to the current speed.

Cruise control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1784
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Switching off

To switch off the system while standing, step on brake pedal at the same time.

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

Interrupting manually

RES CANCEL When active, press the button on the steering wheel.

If interrupting the system while stationary, press on the brake pedal at the same time.

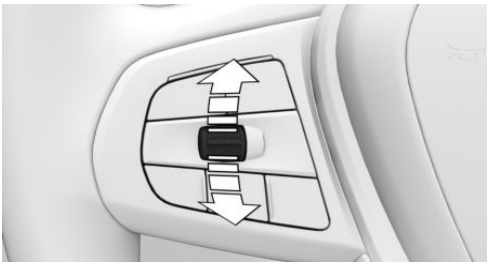
Interrupting automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations:

- When the driver applies the brakes.
- When selector lever position D is disengaged.
- Dynamic Traction Control DTC is activated or DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.
- If DSC Dynamic Stability Control intervenes.
- If the safety belt and the driver's door are opened while the vehicle is standing still.
- If the system has not detected objects for an extended period, for instance on a road with very little traffic without curb or shoulder markings.
- If the detection range of the radar is impaired, for instance by dirt or heavy fog.
- After a longer stationary period when the vehicle has been braked to a stop by the system.

Setting the speed

Maintaining and storing the speed



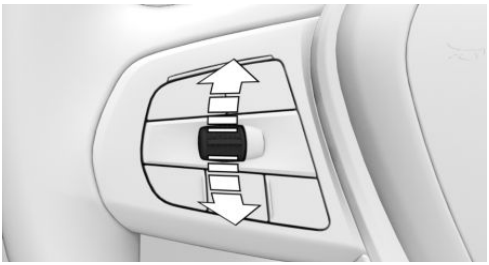
Press the rocker switch up or down once while the system is interrupted. The system will be activated.

The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

The stored speed is displayed on the speedometer.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

Changing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

- Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the desired speed increases or decreases by 1 mph/1 km/h.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1785
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

- Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

Hold the rocker switch in position to repeat the action.

Adjusting the distance

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to the system limits, braking can be late. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Be aware to the traffic situation at all times. Adjust the distance to the traffic and weather conditions and maintain the prescribed safety distance, possibly by braking.

Without steering and traffic jam assistant: reducing distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Instrument cluster will display selected distance.

Without steering and traffic jam assistant: increasing distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Instrument cluster will display selected distance.

With steering and traffic jam assistant: adjusting distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Continuing cruise control

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed.

Make sure that the difference between current speed and stored speed is not too large before calling up the stored speed. Otherwise, unintentional braking or accelerating may occur.

Press the button with the system interrupted.

Cruise control is continued with the stored values.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- When the system is switched off.
- When drive-ready state is switched off.

Changing between cruise control with/without distance control

Safety information

Warning

The system does not react to traffic driving ahead of you, but instead maintains the stored speed. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions and brake as needed.

Changing to cruise control without distance control

Distance control can be switched off and on when driving with cruise control activated.

With steering and traffic jam assistant: press and hold this button.

Without steering and traffic jam assistant:

Press and hold this button.

Press and hold this button.

In order to switch back to Cruise control with distance control, press the button again.

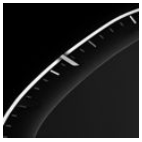
After switching, a Check Control message is displayed.

Displays in the instrument cluster

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the displays in the instrument cluster may vary.

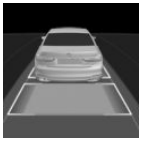
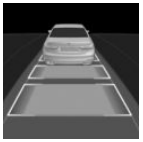
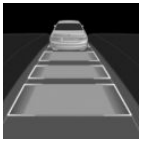
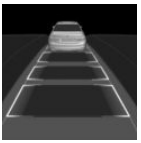
Display in the speedometer



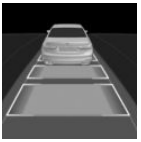
- Green marking: system is active, the marking indicates the desired speed.
- Grey marking: system is interrupted, the marking indicates the stored speed.
- No marking: system is switched off.

Distance to vehicle ahead of you

Selected distance to the vehicle ahead of you is shown.

Symbol	Description
	Distance 1
	Distance 2
	Distance 3
	Distance 4 This value is set automatically after the system is switched on.
	No distance control display, as the accelerator pedal is being pressed.

Detected vehicle

Symbol	Description
	Green symbol: A vehicle has been detected ahead of you.

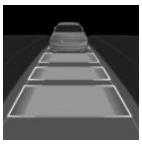
The system maintains the set distance to the vehicle in front.

As soon as the detected vehicle drives off, the vehicle symbol in the distance indicator will move away.

To accelerate, activate ACC, for instance by briefly stepping on the accelerator pedal or pressing the rocker switch.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1787
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Indicator/warning lights

Symbol	Description
	Indicator light green: system is active. No indicator light: system is switched off.
	Vehicle symbol flashes: The conditions are not adequate for the system to work. The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.
	The vehicle symbol and distance bars flash red and an acoustic signal sounds: Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.
	System interrupted.

Displays in the Head-up Display

Desired speed

Some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

The symbol is displayed when the set desired speed is reached.

Distance information

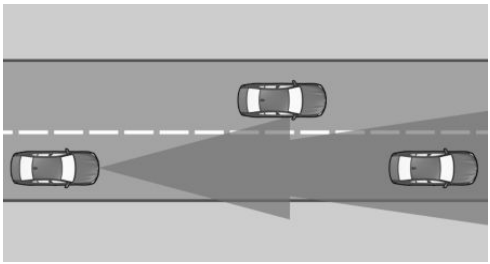
The symbol is displayed when the distance from the vehicle traveling ahead is too short.

The distance information is active in the following situations:

- Active Cruise Control switched off.
- Display in the Head-up Display selected.
  Head-Up Display, refer to page 153.
- Distance too short.
- Speed greater than approx. 40 mph/70 km/h.

System limits

Detection range



The detection capacity of the system and the automatic braking capacity are limited.

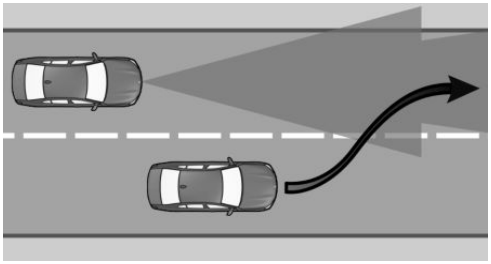
Two-wheeled vehicles for instance might not be detected.

Deceleration

The system does not decelerate in the following situations:

- For pedestrians or similarly slow-moving road users.
- For red traffic lights.
- For cross traffic.
- For oncoming traffic.

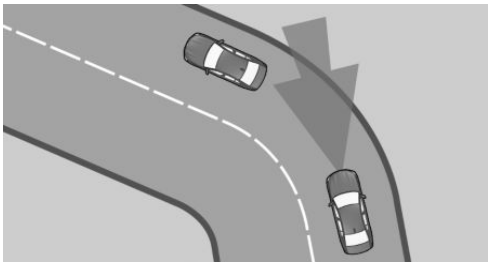
Swerving vehicles



A vehicle driving in front of you is not detected until it is completely within the same lane as your vehicle.

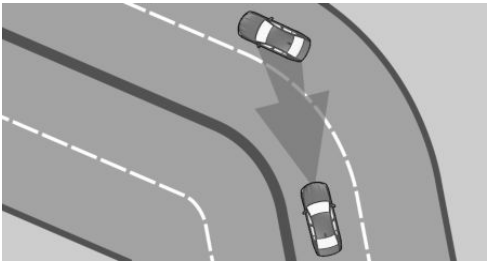
If a vehicle driving ahead of you suddenly swerves into your lane, the system may not be able to automatically restore the selected distance. It may not be possible to restore the selected distance in certain situations, including if you are driving significantly faster than vehicles driving ahead of you, for instance when rapidly approaching a truck. When a vehicle driving ahead of you is reliably detected, the system requests that the driver intervene by braking and carrying out evasive maneuvers, if needed.

Cornering



When the desired speed is too high for a curve, the speed is reduced slightly. Because curves may not be anticipated in advance, drive into a curve at an appropriate speed.

The system has a limited detection range. Situations can arise in tight curves where a vehicle driving ahead will not be detected or will be detected very late.



When you approach a curve the system may briefly report vehicles in the next lane due to the bend of the curve. If the system decelerates you may compensate it by briefly accelerating. After releasing the accelerator pedal the system is reactivated and controls speed independently.

Driving off

In some situations, the vehicle cannot drive off automatically; for example:

- On steep uphill grades.
- In front of bumps in the road.

In these cases, step on the accelerator pedal.

Weather

The following restrictions can occur under unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- Poorer vehicle recognition.
- Short-term interruptions for vehicles that are already recognized.

Examples of unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- Wet conditions.
- Snowfall.
- Slush.
- Fog.
- Glare.

Drive attentively, and react to the current traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for instance by braking, steering or evading.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1789
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Engine power

The desired speed is also maintained downhill. The speed may not be maintained on uphill grades if the engine power is insufficient.

In ECO PRO driving mode, the vehicle may exceed or drop below the set desired speed in some situations, for instance on downhill or uphill grades.

Malfunction

Radar sensor

The system cannot be activated if the radar sensor is not aligned correctly. This may be caused by damage incurred, for instance during parking.

A Check Control message is displayed if the system fails.

Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

The system may be impaired when the detection range of the radar sensor is partially covered such as by the license plate holder.

Camera

The function for detecting and responding when approaching stationary vehicles may be limited in the following situations:

- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- If the camera is malfunctioning or dirty. A Check Control message is displayed.

Steering and traffic jam assistant

Concept

The system assists the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane. For this purpose, the system executes supporting steering movements, for instance when driving in a curve.

General information

The system determines the position of the lane markings and the vehicle driving ahead using five radar sensors and a camera.

Depending on the speed, the system orients itself according to the lane markings or vehicles in front.

Sensors on the steering wheel detect whether the steering wheel is being touched.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

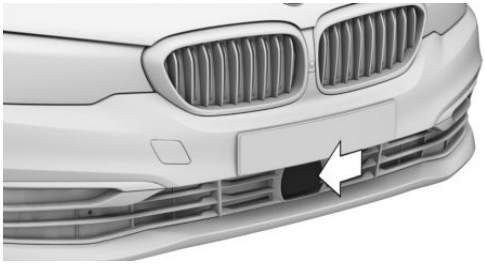
Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Steering and traffic jam assistant on/off.

Radar sensors

The radar sensors are located in the bumpers.



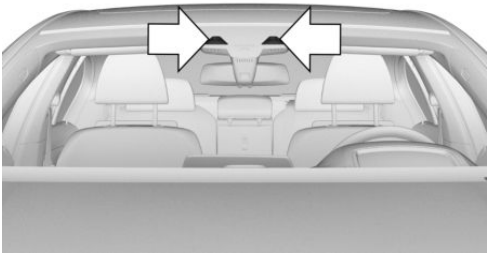
Front center bumper.

Front side bumper.

Rear bumper.

Always keep the bumper in the area of the radar sensors clean and unobstructed.

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Functional requirements

- Speed below 130 mph/210 km/h.
- Sufficient lane width.
- Above approx. 43 mph, 70 km/h: lane marking on both sides is detected.
- Below approx. 43 mph, 70 km/h: lane marking on both sides or a vehicle driving ahead is detected.
- Hands on the steering wheel rim.
- Wide curves.
- Drive in the center of the lane.
- Turn signal switched off.
- The sensor system calibration process is complete.

Switching on/off

Switching on

Press the button on the steering wheel.

Steering wheel symbol lights up gray.

The system is on standby and does not manipulate steering.

System activates automatically as soon as all function conditions are fulfilled.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1791
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Steering wheel symbol lights up green.

The system is active.

With the system switched on, the person warning with City braking function and the side collision mitigation are active.

Switching off

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator goes out.

The system does not perform supportive steering wheel movements.

Interrupting automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations, for example:

- At a speed above 130 mph/210 km/h.
- When the steering wheel is released.
- When you manipulate steering.
- When leaving own lane.
- When the turn signal is switched on.
- When the lane is too narrow.
- If for a particular time no lane marking is detected and there is no vehicle driving in front.

Steering wheel symbol lights up gray.

The system is on standby and does not manipulate steering.

System activates automatically as soon as all function conditions are fulfilled.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Description
	Gray steering wheel symbol: The system is on standby.
	Green steering wheel symbol: The system is activated.
	Yellow steering wheel symbol and a signal sounds, if applicable: System interruption is imminent.
	Green steering wheel symbol and lane marking symbol: The system supports the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane.
	Green steering wheel symbol, gray lane marking symbol: No lane marking detected, the vehicle follows the vehicle ahead. The limits of steering support when cornering may have been reached.
	Yellow steering wheel symbol: The hands are not grasping the steering wheel. The system is still active.
	Red steering wheel symbol and a signal sounds: The hands are not grasping the steering wheel. System interruption is imminent. It is possible that the system will not execute any supporting steering movements. With Active Cruise Control, the system may reduce the speed.

Displays in the Head-up Display

All system information can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1792

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

If equipped with Automatic Lane Change Assistant

Concept

The system additionally supports the driver when changing lanes on multilane roads.

Functional requirements

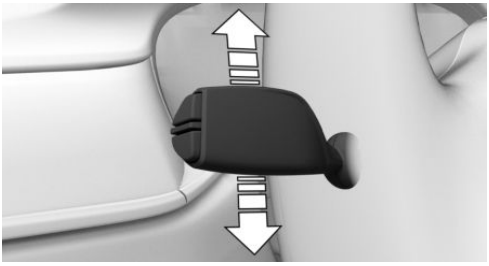
- The functional requirements of the steering and traffic jam assistant are fulfilled.

  Functional requirements, refer to page 212.
- Driving on a road without pedestrians or cyclists and with physical barriers to oncoming traffic, such as crash barriers.
- Lane markings have been detected.
- Sensor system of the system is active and a vehicle approaching from the rear can be detected.
- Blind spot collision warning and steering intervention are switched on.
- Speed between approx. 43 mph, 70 km/h and approx. 110 mph, 180 km/h.

Changing lanes

1. Ensure that the traffic situation permits changing lanes.
2. Press the turn indicator lever in the required direction to the pressure point for signaling briefly.

   Steering support in the required direction can be detected a short time later.



After the lane change, the system helps keep the vehicle in the new lane.

Canceling a lane change

The lane change can be canceled by steering into the opposite direction.

System limits

General information

The system cannot be activated or meaningfully used in certain situations.

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Hands on the steering wheel

The sensors cannot detect hand-steering wheel contact in the following situations:

- Driving with gloves.
- Protective covers on the steering wheel.

Narrow lanes

When driving within narrow lanes, the system cannot be activated or effectively used, for instance in the following situations:

- In construction areas.
- In rescue lanes.
- Within city limits.

Weather

The following restrictions can occur under unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- Poorer recognition of vehicles and lane markings.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1793
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

- Short-term interruptions for vehicles that are already recognized.

Examples of unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- Wet conditions.
- Snowfall.
- Slush.
- Fog.
- Glare.

Drive attentively, and react to the current traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for instance by braking, steering or evading.

PDC Park Distance Control

Concept

PDC is a support when parking. Objects that you are approaching slowly in front of or behind the vehicle are indicated by signal tones and a display on the Control Display.

Depending on the equipment version: obstacles at the side of the vehicle that are detected by the side ultrasonic sensors may also be reported by the side parking aid.

General information

The ultrasound sensors for distance measurements are located in the bumpers and possibly on the sides of the vehicle.

The range, depending on obstacles and environmental conditions, is approx. 6 ft/2 m.

An acoustic warning sounds in case of an impending collision at a distance to the object of approx. 27 in/70 cm.

For objects behind the vehicle, the acoustic warning is already issued at a distance to the object of approx. 5 ft/1.50 m.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

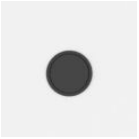
Due to high speeds when PDC Park Distance Control is activated, the warning can be delayed due to physical circumstances. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Avoid approaching an object too fast. Avoid driving off fast while PDC Park Distance Control is not yet active.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Ultrasound sensors



Ultrasound sensors of the PDC, for instance in the bumpers.

Functional requirements

Ensure full functionality:

- Do not cover sensors, for instance with stickers, bicycle racks or similar.
- Keep the sensors clean and free of ice.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system switches on automatically in the following situations:

- If selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.
- Depending on the equipment version: while approaching detected obstacles if the speed is slower than approx. 2.5 mph/4 km/h. The activation distance depends on the situation in question.

You may switch automatic activation when obstacles are detected on and off.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and maneuvering"
5. If necessary, "Automatic PDC activation"
6. "Automatic PDC activation"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Depending on equipment, an additional camera view is also switched on.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on, if needed.

Switching on/off manually

Press the park assistance button.

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

The rearview camera image is displayed if the reverse gear is engaged when pressing the park assistance button.

Depending on the equipment version, the system cannot be switched off manually if the reverse gear is engaged.

Warning

Signal tones

General information

An intermittent tone indicates when the vehicle is approaching an object. E.g., when an object is detected to the left rear of the vehicle, a signal tone sounds from the left rear speaker.

The shorter the distance to the object, the shorter the intervals.

When the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 8 in/20 cm, a continuous tone is sounded.

When there are objects in front of and behind the vehicle at the same time, with a distance smaller than approx. 8 in/20 cm, an alternating constant tone will sound.

The intermittent tone and constant tone are switched off if the selector lever position P is engaged.

The intermittent tone is switched off after a short time when the vehicle is stationary.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1795
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Volume

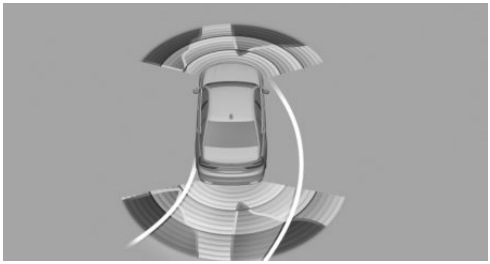
The PDC signal tone volume can be adjusted.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and maneuvering"
5. "Volume PDC signal"
6. Set the desired value.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Visual warning



The approach of the vehicle to an object is shown on the Control Display. Objects that are farther away are already displayed on the Control Display before a signal sounds.

The display appears as soon as PDC is activated.

The range of the sensors is represented in the colors green, yellow and red when obstacles are detected.

Pathway lines are faded in for better estimation of the required space.

When the image of the rearview camera is displayed, the switch can be made to PDC or to a different view with obstacle markings as needed:

1. Press the Controller to the left, if needed.
2. For instance "Park. sensors only"

Cross traffic warning: depending on the equipment, it is warned in the PDC display against vehicles approaching in the front or rear from the side.

Additional information:

Cross traffic warning, refer to page 239.

Depending on the equipment version: emergency brake function, Active PDC

Concept

The emergency braking function of PDC initiates an emergency braking in case of acute risk of collision.

General information

This function may not be available. Contact your authorized dealer's service center or another qualified service center as to whether this additional function is currently in your vehicle or when it can be installed in your vehicle in the future.

Due to system limits, a collision cannot be prevented under all circumstances.

The function is available below walking speed when driving in reverse or rolling backward.

A press of the accelerator pedal interrupts the braking intervention.

After emergency braking to a stop, further creeping toward an obstacle is possible. Proceed with caution. To move forward, lightly press the accelerator pedal and release as needed.

If the accelerator pedal is depressed longer, the vehicle drives off. Manual braking is possible at any time.

The system uses the ultrasound sensors of PDC and parking assistant.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1796
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Adjusting

The system can be activated or deactivated. It is possible to set which areas on the vehicle will be protected by the system.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and maneuvering"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

With Parking Assistant: side parking aid

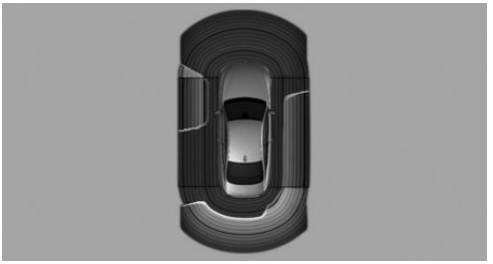
Concept

The system warns of obstacles on the side of the vehicle.

General information

The system uses the ultrasound sensors of PDC and parking assistant.

Display



To protect the sides of the vehicle, obstacle markings are displayed on the sides of the vehicle.

- Color markings: warning against detected obstacles.
- Gray markings, hatched area: no obstacles were detected.
- No markings, black area: the area next to the vehicle was not yet captured.

Limits of the side parking aid

The system only displays stationary obstacles that were previously detected by sensors while passing them.

The system does not detect whether an obstacle moves later on. If the vehicle is stationary, the markings are shown in black after a certain time. The area next to the vehicle must be newly captured.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Own-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1797
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

er's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Limits of ultrasonic measurement

The detection of objects with ultrasonic measurements can run into physical limits, e.g., in the following situations:

- For small children and animals.
- For persons with certain clothing, for instance coats.
- With external interference of the ultrasound, for instance from passing vehicles or loud machines.
- When sensors are dirty, iced over, damaged or out of position.
- Under certain weather conditions such as high relative humidity, wet conditions, snowfall, extreme heat, or strong wind.
- With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.
- With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- With moving objects.
- With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges.
- With objects with corners, edges, and smooth surfaces.
- With objects with a fine surface structure such as fences.
- For objects with porous surfaces.
- With small and low objects, for instance boxes.
- With obstacles and persons at the edge of the lane.
- With soft obstacles or obstacles covered in foam material.
- With plants and bushes.
- Low objects already displayed, for instance curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.
- Cargo that extends beyond the perimeter of the vehicle is not taken into account by the system.

False warnings

The system may issue a warning under the following conditions even though there is no obstacle within the detection range:

- In heavy rain.
- When sensors are very dirty or covered with ice.
- When sensors are covered in snow.
- On rough road surfaces.
- On uneven surfaces, such as speed bumps.
- In large buildings with right angles and smooth walls, for instance in underground garages.
- In automatic vehicle washes.
- Due to heavy exhaust.
- Due to other ultrasound sources, for instance sweeping machines, high pressure steam cleaners or neon lights.

To prevent false alarms, switch off automatic Park Distance Control PDC activation on obstacle detection, for instance in automatic vehicle washes.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

White symbol is displayed, and the range of the sensors is dimmed on the Control Display.

PDC Park Distance Control has failed. Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1798

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Without Surround View: rearview camera

Concept

The rearview camera provides assistance in parking and maneuvering backwards. The area behind the vehicle is shown on the Control Display.

Additionally, assistance functions can be shown in the display, e.g., help lines.

Safety information

Warning

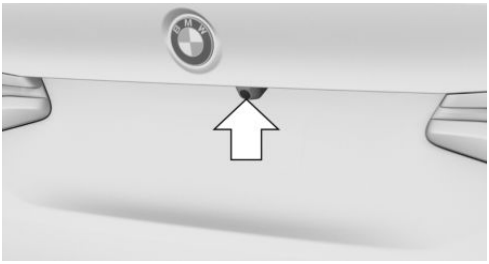
The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Depending on the vehicle equipment: button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Camera



The camera lens is located in the handle of the tailgate.

The image quality may be impaired by dirt. If necessary, clean the camera lens.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is switched on automatically if selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on, if needed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment: switching on/off manually

Press the park assistance button.

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

The parking assistance functions are shown on the Control Display.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1799
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Switching the view via iDrive

If the rearview camera view is not displayed, change the view via iDrive:

1. If necessary, tilt the controller to the side.
2. "Rear view camera"

The rearview camera image is displayed.

Functional requirements

- The tailgate is fully closed.
- Keep the recording range of the camera clear. Protruding cargo or roof rack systems can limit the detection range of the camera.

Display on the Control Display

Function bars

The assistance functions can be activated manually via the function bars on the sides of the Control Display.

Via iDrive:

1. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.
2. With corresponding equipment: "Camera image"
3. "Parking aid lines".

   Pathway lines and turning radius lines are displayed.

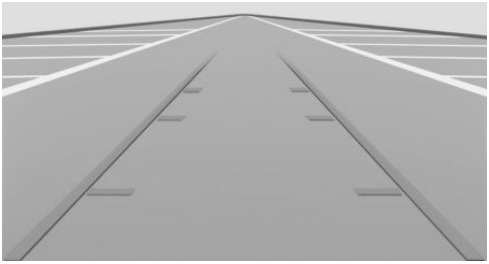
   "Obstacle mark.".

   Depending on the vehicle equipment, the obstacles detected by PDC Park Distance Control are displayed by markings.

More than one assistance function can be active at the same time.

Parking aid lines

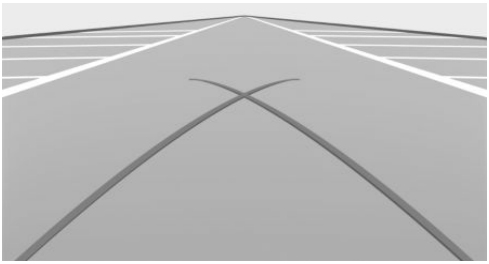
Pathway lines



Pathway lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.

Pathway lines depend on the steering angle and are continuously adjusted to the steering wheel movements.

Turning radius lines



Turning radius lines can only be superimposed on the camera image together with pathway lines.

Turning radius lines show the course of the smallest possible turning radius on a level road.

Only one turning radius line is displayed after the steering wheel is turned past a certain angle.

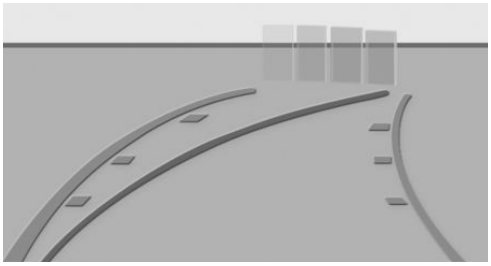
Parking using pathway and turning radius lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the red turning radius line leads to within the limits of the parking space.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1800

2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the green pathway line covers the corresponding turning radius line.

Obstacle marking



Depending on the vehicle equipment, obstacles behind the vehicle are detected by the PDC Park Distance Control sensors.

Obstacle markings can be faded into the image of the rearview camera.

The colored thresholds of the obstacle markings match the markings of the PDC Park Distance Control.

Setting brightness and contrast via iDrive

With the rearview camera switched on:

1. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.
2. "Camera image"
3. To perform the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Brightness"
   - ▷ "Contrast"

System limits

Deactivated camera

When the camera is deactivated, for instance when the tailgate is open, the camera image is displayed hatched in gray.

Detection of objects

Very low obstacles as well as high, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected by the system.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, some assistance functions also consider data from the PDC Park Distance Control.

Follow the notes in the PDC Park Distance Control chapter.

The objects displayed on the Control Display may be closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance from the objects on the display.

With Parking Assistant Plus: Surround View

Concept

The system provides assistance in parking and maneuvering. The area around the vehicle is shown on the Control Display.

General information

Several cameras capture the area from different selectable perspectives.

The following camera perspectives can be displayed:

- ▷ Automatic camera perspective: the system shows the camera perspective suitable for the respective driving situation.
- ▷ Rearview camera: for representing the areas behind the vehicle.
- ▷ Right-hand and left-hand side view: for representing the areas on the sides of the vehicle.
- ▷ Unobstructed camera perspective, movable via iDrive.
- ▷ Panorama View: to present cross traffic, for instance at junctions and driveways, depending on the currently engaged gear.

Depending on the view, the environment around the vehicle or a part of it is depicted.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1801
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Additionally, assistance functions are shown in the display, e.g., help lines.

More than one assistance function can be active at the same time.

Some assistance functions can be manually activated.

The following assistance functions are automatically displayed:

- Side parking aid.
- Door opening angle.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

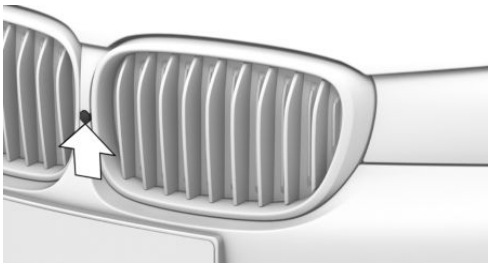
Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

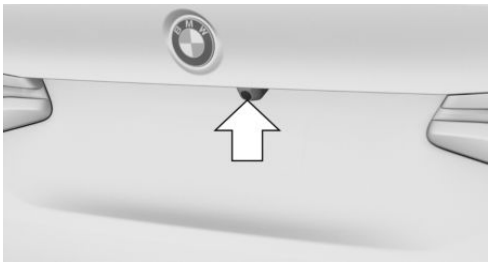
Park assistance button

Panorama View

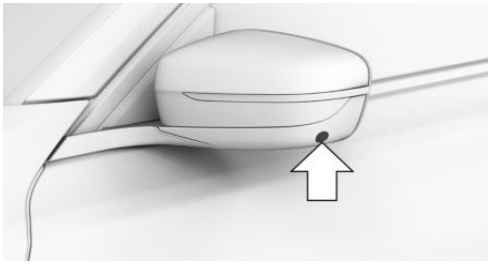
Cameras



Front camera



Rearview camera



One camera is located at the bottom of each exterior mirror housing.

The image quality may be impaired by dirt on the camera lenses. If required, clean the camera lenses.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is switched on automatically if selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.

The camera perspective suitable for the respective driving situation is displayed.

Additional information:

Switching on/off, refer to page 216.

Switching on/off manually

Press the park assistance button.

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

The rearview camera cannot be switched off if the reverse gear is engaged.

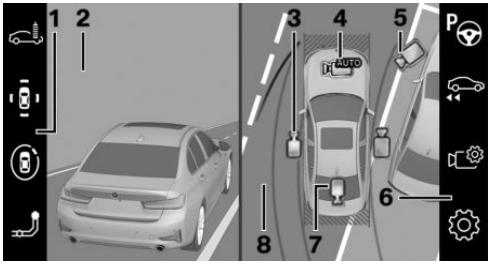
Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on, if needed.

Display on the Control Display

Overview



1 Function bar, left
2 Camera image
3 Side view
4 Automatic camera perspective
5 Movable unobstructed camera perspective
6 Function bar, right
7 Rearview camera
8 Selection window

Function bar on the left

The left function bar can be used for the direct selection of various views via iDrive. Move the Controller to the left, if needed.

- "Car wash".
- "Parking": around the vehicle.
- "3D view": available camera.

Side view

The side view can be selected for the right or left vehicle side.

This view helps when positioning the vehicle at the curb or with other obstacles on the side by displaying the side surroundings.

The side view looks from rear to front and in case of danger, focuses automatically on possible obstacles.

Automatic camera perspective

The automatic camera perspective shows a steering-dependent view in the respective driving direction.

This perspective adapts to the respective driving situation.

As soon as obstacles are detected, the view changes to a fixed display of the area in front or at the rear behind the bumper or, if necessary, changes to a side view.

When reverse gear is engaged, the automatic camera perspective is closed and the system uses a fixed perspective of the rearview camera. If necessary, manually select the automatic camera perspective when reverse gear is engaged. The automatic camera perspective will be retained for the current parking maneuver.

Movable unobstructed camera perspective

With selection of the movable camera perspective, a circle appears on the Control Display.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1803
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

By turning the Controller or via touch function, specified perspectives on the circle can be selected.

The current perspective is marked with a camera symbol.

To leave the function, move the Controller sideways and select another camera function.

Function bar on the right

Assistance functions can be activated and settings can be entered via the right function bar via iDrive. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.

- "Autom. Parking".
- "Back-up Assistant".
- "Camera image":
  - "Brightness".
  - "Contrast".
  - "Parking aid lines".
  - "Obstacle mark.".
- "Settings": apply settings, for instance to use the activation points for Panorama View.

Rearview camera

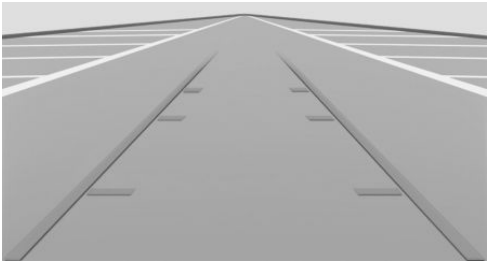
This view shows the picture of the rearview camera.

Selection window

The individual camera perspectives can be selected in the selection window via iDrive.

Parking aid lines

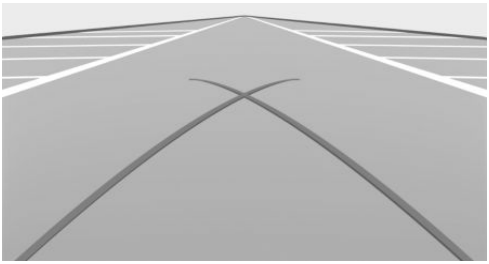
Pathway lines



Pathway lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.

Pathway lines depend on the steering angle and are continuously adjusted to the steering wheel movements.

Turning radius lines



Turning radius lines can only be superimposed on the camera image together with pathway lines.

Turning radius lines show the course of the smallest possible turning radius on a level road.

Only one turning radius line is displayed after the steering wheel is turned past a certain angle.

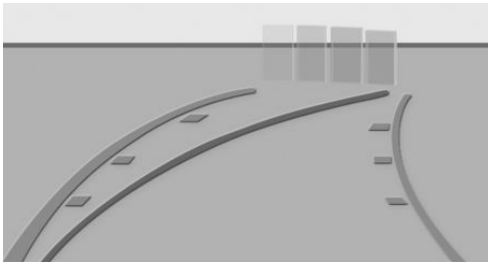
Parking using pathway and turning radius lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the red turning radius line leads to within the limits of the parking space.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1804
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the green pathway line covers the corresponding turning radius line.

Obstacle marking

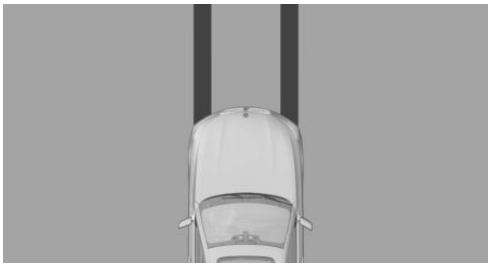


Obstacles behind the vehicle are detected by the PDC Park Distance Control sensors.

Obstacle markings can be shown in the camera image.

The colored thresholds of the obstacle markings match the markings of the PDC Park Distance Control.

Car wash view



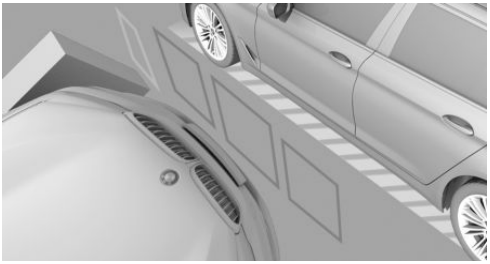
The car wash view assists when entering a car wash by displaying the floor and the vehicle's own track.

Side parking aid

Concept

The system warns of obstacles on the side of the vehicle.

Display



To protect the sides of the vehicle, obstacle markings are displayed on the sides of the vehicle.

- No markings: no obstacles were detected.
- Color markings: warning against detected obstacles.

Limits of the side parking aid

The system only displays stationary obstacles that were previously detected by sensors while passing them.

The system does not detect whether an obstacle moves later on. For this reason, at standstill, the markings are not shown anymore in the display after a certain time. The area next to the vehicle must be newly captured.

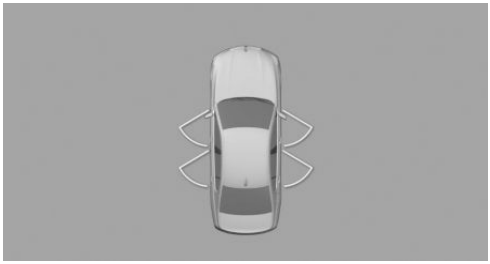
Door opening angle

Concept

If obstacle marking is activated, the system indicates fixed obstacles that obstruct the opening angles of the doors.

The system does not provide a warning of approaching traffic.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1805
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20



The maximum opening angle of the doors is displayed in selector lever position P.

As soon as the vehicle begins moving, the opening angles are replaced by parking aid lines.

Limits of the display

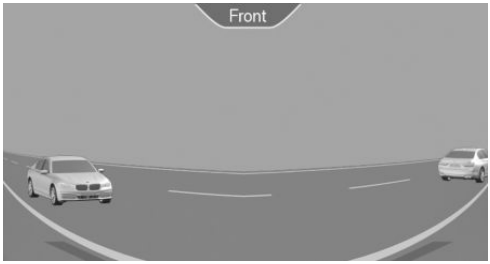
The vehicle surroundings are displayed with distorted image for technical reasons.

Even if the symbols for the door opening angles do not cross other objects on the Control Display, the following needs to be noted when parking next to other objects:

Because of the perspective, higher, protruding objects may be closer than they appear on the Control Display.

Panorama View

Concept



The system provides an early look at cross traffic at blind driveways and intersections.

General information

Road users concealed by obstacles to the left and right of the vehicle can only be detected relatively late from the driver's seat. The cameras in the front and rear capture the sideways traffic area to improve the view.

Yellow lines in the screen display mark the front and rear end of the vehicle.

The camera image shows different levels of distortion in some areas and is thus not suitable for distance estimations.

Depending on the equipment version, the function can only be used when driving forward.

Display on the Control Display

Press the button when the engine is running.

Depending on the driving direction, the image of the respective camera is displayed:

- "Front": front camera image.
- "Rear": rear camera image.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, cross traffic warning can additionally warn of approaching vehicles using radar sensors.

Additional information:

Cross traffic warning, refer to page 239.

With navigation system: activation points

Concept

Positions where Panorama View should switch on automatically can be stored as activation points provided that a GPS signal is received.

General information

Up to ten activation points can be stored.

Activation points can be used when driving forward for the front camera.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1806
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Storing activation points

1. Drive to the position at which the system is to be switched on, and stop.
2. Press the button.
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Activation point"

   The current position is displayed.
5. "Save activation point"

Activation points are, if possible, stored with town/city and street address, or else with the GPS coordinates.

Using activation points

The use of activation points can be switched on and off.

1. Press the button.
2. Move the Controller to the right.
3. "Settings"
4. "Panorama View, GPS-based"
5. "Panorama View is displayed automatically when set activation points are reached."

Displaying activation points

1. Press the button.
2. Move the Controller to the right.
3. "Manage points"

   A list of all activation points is displayed.

Renaming or deleting activation points

1. Press the button.
2. Move the Controller to the right.
3. "Manage points"

   A list of all activation points is displayed.
4. Select an activation point as needed.
5. To perform the desired setting:
   - "Rename"
   - "Delete activation point"
   - "Delete all activation points"

Setting brightness and contrast

Brightness and contrast can be adjusted with Surround View or Panorama View switched on.

Via iDrive:

1. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.
2. "Camera image"
3. To perform the desired setting:
   - "Brightness"
   - "Contrast"

Functional limitations

The system can be used only to a limited extent in the following situations:

- In poor light.
- In case of soiled cameras.
- With a door open.
- With the tailgate open.
- With exterior mirrors folded in.

Gray hatched areas with symbol, for instance open door, in the camera image mark areas that are currently not displayed.

System limits

Non-visible areas

Because of the camera angle, the areas under the vehicle cannot be viewed by the cameras.

Detection of objects

Very low obstacles as well as high, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected by the system.

Some assistance functions also consider data from the PDC Park Distance Control.

Follow the notes in the PDC Park Distance Control chapter.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1807
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

The objects displayed on the Control Display may be closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance from the objects on the display.

Additional information:

PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 215.

Malfunction

A camera malfunction is displayed on the Control Display.

A yellow symbol is displayed and the recording range of the malfunctioning camera is displayed in black on the Control Display.

With Parking Assistant Plus: Remote 3D View

Concept

With the proper equipment, the BMW Connected App and the camera images from Surround View can be used to display the vehicle surroundings on a mobile device such as a smartphone.

The function displays a momentary view of the situation.

Functional requirements

- Data transmission must be activated.

  Data protection, refer to page 65.
- BMW Connected App must be installed on the mobile device.
- ConnectedDrive countries: An activated driver profile with an existing ConnectedDrive account is required.

  Driver profiles, refer to page 66.

Switching the function on/off

Switching on/off with other functions

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. "all services incl. analysis" or "all vehicle services"

Switching on/off individually

Preset, via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. "Select services individually"
6. "Connected app and cust. portal" and "Remote 3D View"

Switching on/off, via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. "individual selection"

Functional limitations

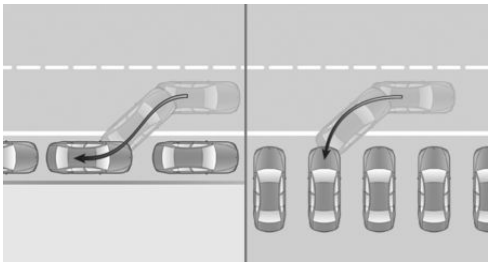
The system may not be fully functional or may not be available in the following situations:

- In poor light.
- In case of soiled cameras.
- With a door or the tailgate open. Dark fields in the display indicate areas that are not recorded by the system.
- With exterior mirrors folded in.

- When other camera functions are being performed in the vehicle.
- When the vehicle moves faster than walking speed.
- It may not be possible to use the function in every country.
- For reasons of data protection, the function can only be used three times within two hours.

With Parking Assistant: Parking Assistant

Concept



The system supports the driver in the following situations:

- When parking parallel to the road, parallel parking.
- When reverse parking diagonally to the road, diagonal parking. The system orients itself with the middle of the parking space during diagonal parking.

General information

Handling

Parking assistant handling is divided into three steps:

- Switching on and activating.
- Parking space search.
- Parking.

System status and instructions on required actions are displayed on the Control Display.

Ultrasound sensors measure parking spaces on both sides of the vehicle.

Steptronic transmission

The parking assistant calculates the best possible parking line and takes control of the following functions during the parking procedure:

- Steering.
- Accelerating and braking.
- Changing the gears.

Press and hold the park assistance button for the duration of the parking procedure.

Parking is automatic.

Remote Control Parking

The vehicle can be remotely parked and driven out in reverse if suitable forward-parking spaces are available.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

⚠ NOTICE

The parking assistant can steer the vehicle over or onto curbs. There is a risk of damage to property. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

The safety information of the PDC Park Distance Control applies in addition.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1809
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Additional information:

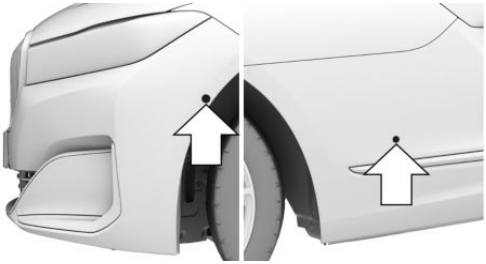
PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 215.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Ultrasound sensors



With the four side ultrasound sensors, arrows, and the ultrasound sensors of PDC Park Distance Control in the bumpers, the parking spaces are measured and the distances to obstacles determined.

Functional requirements

Ultrasound sensors

Ensure full functionality:

- Do not cover sensors, for instance with stickers.
- Keep the sensors clean and unobstructed.

For measuring parking spaces

- Maximum speed while driving forward approx. 22 mph/35 km/h.
- Maximum distance to row of parked vehicles: 5 ft/1.5 m.

Suitable parking space

General information:

- Gap behind an object that has a min. length of 1.7 ft/0.5 m.
- Gap between two objects with a minimum length of approx. 1.7 ft/0.5 m.

Parallel parking to the road:

- Min. length of gap between two objects: your vehicle's length plus approx. 2.6 ft/0.8 m.
- Minimum depth: approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.

Diagonal parking:

- Minimum width of the gap: own vehicle's width plus approx. 2.3 ft/0.7 m.
- Minimum depth: your vehicle's length.

  The depth of diagonal parking spaces must be estimated by the driver. Due to technical limitations, the system is only able to approximate the depth of diagonal parking spaces.

For parking

- Doors and tailgate are closed.
- The parking brake is released.
- Driver's safety belt is fastened.

Switching on and activating

Switching on with the button

Press the park assistance button.

The LED lights up.

The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.

Parking assistant is activated automatically.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1810
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Switching on with reverse gear

1. Shift into reverse.

   The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.
2. If necessary, activate: "Autom. Parking"

Switching on via iDrive

Display of the rearview camera or PDC view must be active.

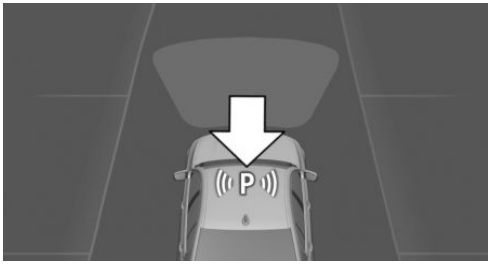
1. Move the Controller to the right.
2. Activate the parking assistant on the Control Display: "Autom. Parking"

Display on the Control Display

System activated/deactivated

Symbol	Meaning
	Gray: the system is not available. White: the system is available but not activated.
	System is activated.
	Parking space search is active.
	The parking procedure is active. The system takes over the steering.

Parking space search and system status



▷ Parking assistant is activated and parking space search is active.

▷ Control Display shows suitable parking spaces at the edge of the road next to the vehicle symbol. When Park Assistant is active, suitable parking spaces are highlighted and an acoustic signal sounds.

▷ If a diagonal or parallel parking space is clearly detected, the system automatically adjusts the suitable parking method. In the case of parking spaces suitable for parallel and diagonal parking, a selection menu is displayed. In this case, the desired parking method must be selected manually.

▷ The parking procedure is active. The system takes over the steering.

▷ Parking space search is always active whenever the vehicle is moving forward slow and straight, even if the system is deactivated. When the system is deactivated, the displays on the Control Display are shown in gray.

Signal tones

Switching signal tone for suitable parking spaces on/off

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and maneuvering"
5. "Automatic Parking"
6. "Alert if parking space detected"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Signal tones of the PDC Park Distance Control

During an automatic parking operation, no intermittent tone will sound from the PDC Park Distance Control.

A continuous tone sounds when the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 8 inches/20 cm.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1811
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Parking using the parking assistant

Parking

1. Switching on and activating the parking assistant.

   For this, engage the reverse gear or press the parking assist button and activate the system on the Control Display, if needed.

   Parking assistant is activated.
2. Pass the row of parked vehicles forward at a speed of up to approx. 22 mph/35 km/h and at a distance of maximum 5 ft/1.5 m.

   The status of the parking space search and possible parking spaces are displayed on the Control Display.
3. Confirm the suggested parking space for the parking procedure: switch on the turn signal on the corresponding side.

   The system takes over the steering.
4. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

   Press and hold the park assistance button for the duration of the parking procedure. At the end of the parking procedure, the P selector lever position is set.

   The end of the parking procedure is indicated on the Control Display.
5. Adjust the parking position yourself, if needed.

Interrupting manually

The parking assistant can be interrupted at any time:

- Steptronic transmission: release the park assistance button during the parking procedure.
- "Autom. Parking": select the symbol on the Control Display.

Interrupting automatically

The system is interrupted automatically in the following situations:

- When the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes over steering.
- Possibly on snow-covered or slippery road surfaces.
- When there are obstacles that are hard to overcome, such as curbs.
- When there are obstacles that suddenly appear.
- If the PDC Park Distance Control displays clearances that are too small.
- When a maximum number of parking attempts or the time taken for parking is exceeded.
- When switching to another function on the Control Display.
- When the park assistance button is released.
- If the tailgate is open.
- If doors are open.
- When setting the parking brake.
- During acceleration.
- When the brake pedal remains pressed for an extended period while the vehicle is stationary.
- When unfastening the driver's safety belt.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Resuming

An interrupted parking procedure can be continued, if needed.

Reactivate the parking assistant and follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Switching off

The system can be switched off manually:

Press the park assistance button.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

No parking assistance

The parking assistant does not offer assistance in the following situations:

- In tight curves.
- For diagonal parking spaces.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- On bumpy road surfaces such as gravel roads.
- On slippery ground.
- On steep uphill or downhill grades.
- With accumulations of leaves/snow in the parking space.
- In case of changes to an already-measured parking space.
- With ditches or edges, for instance an edge of a port.

Limits of ultrasonic measurement

The detection of objects with ultrasonic measurements can run into physical limits, e.g., in the following situations:

- For small children and animals.
- For persons with certain clothing, for instance coats.
- With external interference of the ultrasound, for instance from passing vehicles or loud machines.
- When sensors are dirty, iced over, damaged or out of position.
- Under certain weather conditions such as high relative humidity, wet conditions, snowfall, extreme heat, or strong wind.
- With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.
- With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- With moving objects.
- With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges.
- With objects with corners, edges, and smooth surfaces.
- With objects with a fine surface structure such as fences.
- For objects with porous surfaces.
- With small and low objects, for instance boxes.
- With obstacles and persons at the edge of the lane.
- With soft obstacles or obstacles covered in foam material.
- With plants and bushes.
- Low objects already displayed, for instance curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.
- Cargo that extends beyond the perimeter of the vehicle is not taken into account by the system.
- Parking spaces that are not suitable may be detected or suitable parking spaces may not be detected at all.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1813
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

The parking assistant failed. Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Remote Control Parking

Concept

The vehicle can be remotely parked and driven out in reverse in the case of suitable forward-parking spaces, for instance a garage. The driver is not in the vehicle, but controls the parking procedure responsibly from the outside using the BMW display key.

Stop the vehicles manually in the case of obstacles.

Using the BMW display key, the vehicle can be moved by approx. 1.5 times the vehicle length. The speed does not exceed 1.1 mph/1.8 km/h.

General information

The following systems are included in the system:

- Parking assistant.
- BMW display key.
- PDC Park Distance Control.

Button on the BMW display key: the button on the side of the BMW display key must be pressed and held for the duration of the parking procedure so that the vehicle can move. Release the button for obstacles to manually stop the vehicle. The vehicle stops with emergency braking.

If the ultrasound sensors detect obstacles in the parking space or the end of the parking space, the system automatically stops the vehicle as needed.

The headlight is switched on for the duration of the procedure.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing traffic and parking situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all situations. There is a risk of accident. Watch traffic and parking situation closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

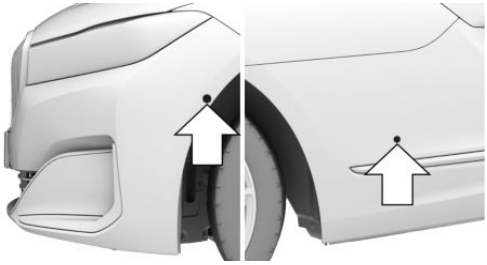
Unauthorized persons, for instance children, can move the vehicle using the BMW display key without anybody in the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Protect the BMW display key against unauthorized use.

NOTICE

The parking assistant can steer the vehicle over or onto curbs. There is a risk of damage to property. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Ultrasound sensors

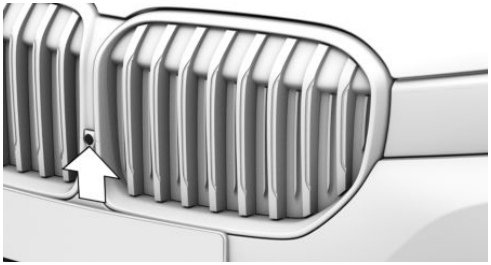


With the four side ultrasound sensors, arrows, and the ultrasound sensors of PDC Park Distance Control in the bumpers, the parking

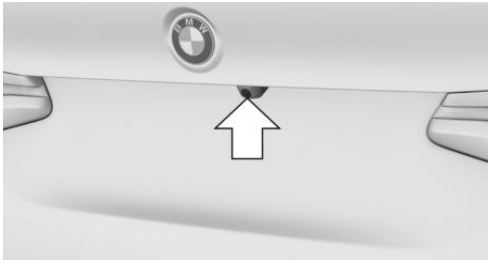
spaces are measured and the distances to obstacles determined.

Cameras

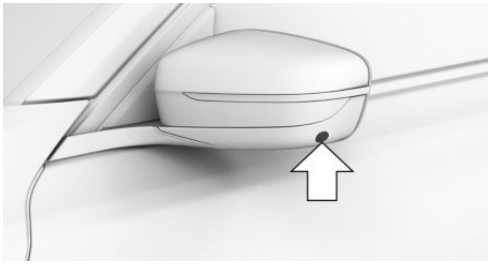
In addition to the ultrasonic sensors, the parking situation during Remote Control Parking is detected using four cameras.



Front camera.



Rearview camera.



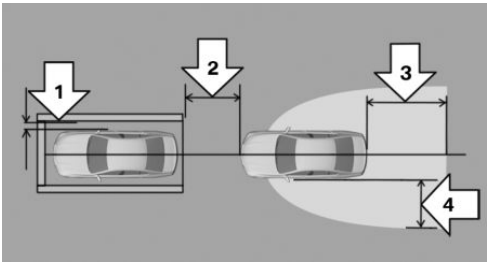
One camera is located at the bottom of each exterior mirror housing.

Functional requirements

Cameras and ultrasound sensors

- Do not cover sensors, for instance with stickers.
- Keep sensors clean and unobstructed. Clean them as needed.
- Keep camera lenses clean and unobstructed. Clean them as needed.

Suitable parking space



- It is possible to forward-park into the parking space in a straight, centered line.
- Width of the parking space: vehicle's own width without exterior mirrors, plus approx. 1.3 ft/0.4 m on each side, arrow 1.
- Distance to parking space, max. 6.5 ft/2 m, arrow 2.
- The driver with the BMW display key is outside the vehicle during Remote Control Parking.

  Maximum distance to the vehicle:

  - Behind the vehicle, approx. 10–13 ft/3–4 m, arrow 3.
  - To the side of the vehicle, approx. 5 ft/1.5 m, arrow 4.
- Uphill or downhill grades max. 5 %.
- No duplex garages.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1815
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Forward parking

Parking

While driving forward, the system applies minor steering corrections as needed.

1. Approach the parking space driving forward, centered and in a straight line. Stop at a distance of maximum 6.5 ft/2 m.
2. Apply parking brake and switch drive-ready state off using the Start/Stop button.
3. Have all occupants exit and close the doors.
4. If necessary, switch on the display on the BMW display key and cancel the display lock.

   On the BMW display key, change to the menu: "R/C parking"

   BMW display key, refer to page 82.
5. Press and hold the button on the side of the BMW display key for the duration of the parking procedure.
6. Wait, until function readiness is indicated on the display. Observe possible SMS text messages.
7. "ENGINE START": tap the button. The engine starts.
8. To start the parking procedure: touch the arrow symbol for "drive forward" on the display.

   Press and hold the button: the vehicle moves as long as the button is pressed. Release the button for obstacles within the driving range to stop the vehicle.

   For approach movements: touch the arrow symbol for "drive backward".
9. At the end of the parking procedure, release the button on the side of the BMW display key. The vehicle stops.

   "ENGINE STOP": tap the button. The engine is switched off.

   Lock the vehicle.

   The parking brake is engaged and standby state switched off.

Cancel, pause, continue the parking procedure

To cancel or pause the parking procedure:

Release the button. The vehicle stops with emergency braking.

To continue the parking procedure:

Press the button again within 30 seconds.

Driving out in reverse

Driving out of parking spaces

When driving in reverse, the vehicle drives backward in a straight line without steering.

1. If necessary, switch on the display on the BMW display key and cancel the display lock.

   BMW display key, refer to page 82.
2. Unlock the vehicle.
3. On the BMW display key, change to the menu: "R/C parking"
4. Press and hold the button on the side of the BMW display key for the duration of the parking procedure.
5. Wait, until function readiness is indicated on the display. Observe possible SMS text messages.
6. "ENGINE START": tap the button. The engine starts.
7. To start the reversing out procedure: touch the arrow symbol for "drive backward" on the display.

   Press and hold the button: the vehicle moves as long as the button is pressed. Release the button for obstacles within the driving range to stop the vehicle.
8. At the end of the reversing out procedure, release the button on the side of the BMW display key. The vehicle stops.
9. "ENGINE STOP": tap the button. The engine is switched off.

   The parking brake is engaged and drive-ready state switched off.

Lock vehicle if it is unlocked.

Cancel, pause, continue the parking procedure

To cancel or pause the parking procedure:

Release the button. The vehicle stops with emergency braking.

To continue the parking procedure:

Press the button again within 30 seconds.

Messages on the BMW display key

The symbol identifies system messages.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

No parking assistance

The parking assistant does not offer assistance in the following situations:

- In tight curves.
- For diagonal parking spaces.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- On bumpy road surfaces such as gravel roads.
- On slippery ground.
- On steep uphill or downhill grades.
- With accumulations of leaves/snow in the parking space.
- In case of changes to an already-measured parking space.
- With ditches or edges, for instance an edge of a port.

Functional limitations due to radio interference

In the case of radio interference, functional limitations may occur during Remote Control Parking with the BMW display key.

Additional information:

Malfunction, refer to page 86.

Limits of ultrasonic measurement

The detection of objects with ultrasonic measurements can run into physical limits, e.g., in the following situations:

- For small children and animals.
- For persons with certain clothing, for instance coats.
- With external interference of the ultrasound, for instance from passing vehicles or loud machines.
- When sensors are dirty, iced over, damaged or out of position.
- Under certain weather conditions such as high relative humidity, wet conditions, snowfall, extreme heat, or strong wind.
- With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.
- With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- With moving objects.
- With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges.
- With objects with corners, edges, and smooth surfaces.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1817
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

- With objects with a fine surface structure such as fences.
- For objects with porous surfaces.
- With small and low objects, for instance boxes.
- With obstacles and persons at the edge of the lane.
- With soft obstacles or obstacles covered in foam material.
- With plants and bushes.
- Low objects already displayed, for instance curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.
- Cargo that extends beyond the perimeter of the vehicle is not taken into account by the system.

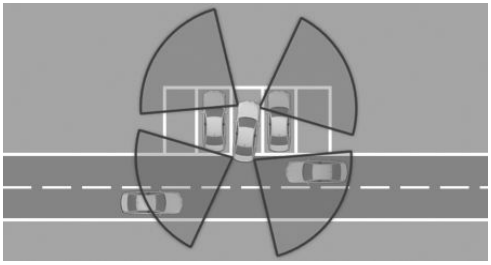
Parking spaces that are not suitable may be detected or suitable parking spaces may not be detected at all.

Cross traffic warning

Concept

At blind driveways or when driving out of diagonal parking spaces, approaching cross traffic is detected sooner by the system than is possible from the driver's seat.

General information



Two radar sensors in the rear bumper monitor the area behind the vehicle.

The system indicates approaching traffic.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the traffic area in front of the vehicle is monitored as well. Two additional radar sensors are located in the front bumpers.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Radar sensors

The radar sensors are located in the rear bumper.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, two additional radar sensors are located in the front bumpers.

Always keep the bumper in the area of the radar sensors clean and unobstructed.

Switching on/off

Activating/deactivating the system

With the button

1. Press the park assistance button.
2. Move the Controller to the right.
3. ⚙ "Settings"
4. "Cross traffic warning"
5. "Activate function"

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and maneuvering"
5. "Cross traffic warning"
6. "Activate function"

Switching on automatically

If the system was activated on the Control Display, it is automatically switched on as soon as PDC Park Distance Control or Panorama View is active and a gear is engaged.

If reverse gear is engaged, the rear system is switched on.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the front system is switched on when a forward gear is engaged.

Switching off automatically

The system is automatically switched off in the following situations:

- When the speed exceeds walking speed.
- With the steering and traffic jam assistant active: when a certain driving distance is exceeded.
- With an active parking operation of the parking assistant.

Warning

General information

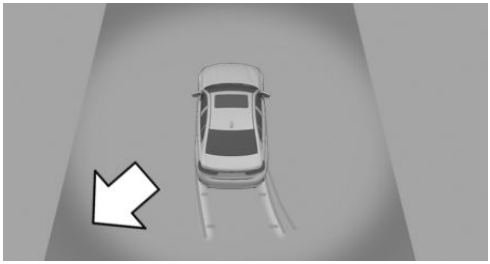
The respective display is called up on the Control Display. A signal tone may sound and the light in the exterior mirror may flash.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1819
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Light in the exterior mirror

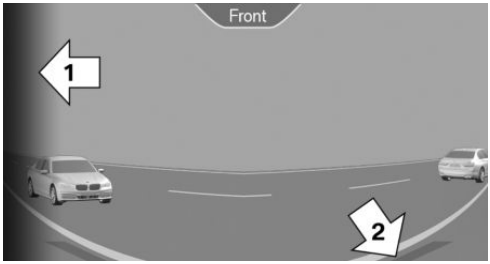
The light in the exterior mirror flashes if vehicles are detected by the rear sensors and your own vehicle is moving backwards.

Display in the PDC Park Distance Control view



In the PDC Park Distance Control view, the respective boundary area flashes red, if vehicles are detected by the sensors.

Display in the camera view



The respective boundary area, arrow 1, in the camera view flashes red, if vehicles are detected by the sensors.

Yellow lines, arrow 2, mark the bumper of your own vehicle.

Acoustic warning

In addition to the optical indicator, a warning signal sounds if your own vehicle moves into the respective direction.

System limits

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- If the speed of the approaching vehicle is very high.
- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- In tight curves.
- If the bumper is dirty, iced up, or covered, for instance by stickers.
- If the field of view of the sensors is covered, e.g., by garage walls, hedges or snow hills.
- If cargo protrudes.
- When crossing objects move at a very slow speed.
- If other objects are in the capture range of the sensors, that hide cross traffic.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1820
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Driving comfort

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Chassis components

The chassis components are optimized for the vehicle and its scope of application and thereby ensure the best possible Driving Dynamics.

Two-axle ride level control

Concept

Air suspension ensures best possible driving comfort under all load conditions. Due to a variable adjustment of the front and rear axles, the damping is adjusted to the vehicle state.

General information

In the case of an uneven road surface, the vehicle level can be elevated to increase ground clearance.

- Normal level, for normal road surface.
- Raised level, when the road surface is poor.

In the SPORT driving mode or at higher speeds, the vehicle lowers itself.

Safety information

Warning

Adjusting the vehicle height may result in trapped body parts or damaged vehicle parts. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. When adjusting the vehicle height, make sure that the areas of movement around the vehicle and at the wheel housing are free.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Level adjustment

Adjusting the level manually

Press the button.

In the low speed range, the vehicle is raised to the raised level with a press of the button.

Starting at a speed of approx. 20 mph/35 km/h the vehicle lowers itself automatically to the normal level.

Display

- LED off: normal level.
- LED flashes: level is being adjusted.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1821
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

- LED lit: raised level.
- LED flashes rapidly: level adjustment not possible.

System limits

- It may not be possible to change the level during dynamic driving.
- It may only be possible to lift the vehicle level while the engine is running.
- If the state of charge of the vehicle battery is too low, a level change may not be possible.
- If level adjustment is activated frequently in quick succession, the system switches off to prevent overheating and is temporarily unavailable or operates with a delay. Let the system cool, if needed.

  The rapidly flashing LED on the button indicates that the system is unavailable.
- If the load is increased, the highest driving level may be locked or automatically exited in order to protect the system.

Wheel change

Before a wheel change, deactivate the system:

Press the button and hold for approx. 7 seconds, until the LED flashes rapidly.

To activate system:

The system is activated again automatically when you drive away.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed. The system is impaired. Vehicle handling may be altered and driving comfort may be noticeably reduced. Visit the nearest dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Long periods when vehicle is parked

During long periods when the vehicle is parked, it can lower itself. This is not a malfunction.

When the drive-ready state is switched on with the doors closed, the vehicle is raised to the normal level automatically.

Adaptive chassis

Concept

This system reduces undesirable vehicle motion when using a dynamic driving style or traveling on uneven road surfaces.

General information

The driving dynamics and driving comfort are enhanced depending on the road surface condition and driving style.

Tuning

The system offers different shock absorber settings ranging from comfortable travel to dynamic driving.

The damping settings are assigned to the different driving modes of the Driving Dynamics Control.

Additional information:

Driving Dynamics Control, refer to page 125.

Executive Drive

Concept

Executive Drive is an actively controlled chassis. Executive Drive includes 2-axle air suspension and Integral Active Steering. The system increases driving comfort and minimizes the lateral tilt when driving around curves.

General information

For active control, this system uses the available information, for instance from the navigation system or the Driving style analysis.

In particular in the ADAPTIVE driving mode, this information is used to influence the adaptive

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1822
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

chassis control and the active roll stabilization control. This further increases both the agility of the vehicle as well as the lane stability.

The function may be restricted if the navigation data is invalid, outdated or not available, for example.

Active roll stabilization

Concept

The system reduces the lateral tilt of the vehicle that occurs during rapid driving in curves or during quick evasive maneuvers.

General information

The lateral tilt of the vehicle is balanced out by permanent adjustment on the front and rear axles. The vehicle is thus always stabilized.

Agility and driving comfort are increased under all driving conditions.

Tuning

The system offers different settings ranging from comfortable travel to dynamic driving.

The tunings are assigned to the different driving modes of the Driving Dynamics Control.

Additional information:

Driving Dynamics Control, refer to page 125.

Self-leveling suspension

Concept

The air suspension on the rear axle helps the self-leveling suspension keep the vehicle height and ground clearance constant. Irrespective of loading, the system maintains the height of the vehicle at the rear axle at a predefined level.

The system ensures consistent driving comfort by keeping spring travel constant in all driving situations.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed. The system is impaired. Vehicle handling may be altered and driving comfort may be noticeably reduced. Visit the nearest dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Long periods when vehicle is parked

During long periods when the vehicle is parked, it can lower itself. This is not a malfunction.

When the drive-ready state is switched on with the doors closed, the vehicle is raised to the normal level automatically.

Engine sound

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, you may be able to change the sound of the engine.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Engine sound"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1823
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Climate control

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Interior air quality

The air quality in the vehicle is improved by the following components:

- Emission tested passenger compartment.
- Microfilter.
- Air conditioning system to control the temperature, air flow and recirculated-air mode.

Depending on the equipment:

- Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter.
- Ionization.
- Fragrancing.
- Automatic recirculated-air control AUC.
- Parked-car ventilation.

Automatic climate control

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

Climate control functions

Button	Function
	Temperature.
A/C	Climate control operation.
MAX A/C	Maximum cooling.
AUTO	AUTO program.
	Recirculated-air mode.
	Air flow, manual. Intensity AUTO program.
	Air distribution, manual.
SYNC	SYNC program.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1824
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Button	Function
MAX	Defrost and defog window.
	Rear window defroster.
	Active seat ventilation, refer to page 116.
	Seat heating, refer to page 115.
MENU	Opening the Climate menu. For example, for the following settings: upper body temperature adjustment, parked-car ventilation.

Some of the functions can also be used via voice, e.g., temperature.

Opening the Climate menu

MENU Press the button.

The Climate menu is displayed.

All the climate control functions which can adjusted via iDrive can be called up via the Climate menu, e.g., upper body temperature adjustment, parked-car ventilation.

Switching on/off

Switching on

Press any button except for the following:

- Rear window defroster.
- Left side of air flow button.
- SYNC program.
- Seat heating.
- Seat ventilation.

Switching off

When equipped with automatic climate control with enhanced features:

- Complete system:

  Press and hold the left button on the driver's side until the system switches off.

- On the front passenger side:

  Press and hold the left button on the front passenger side.

Temperature

Concept

The automatic climate control achieves the set temperature as quickly as possible, if needed, by using the maximum cooling or heating capacity, and then keeps it constant.

Adjusting

Turn the wheel to set the desired temperature.

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. Otherwise, the automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

Temperature of the ventilation

General information

The temperature of the ventilation in the upper body region can be adjusted.

The temperature is individually adjusted, e.g. colder toward blue, warmer toward red.

The air flow of the ventilation in the upper body region heats or cools noticeably, depending on the adjusted temperature.

This does not change the set interior temperature for the driver and front passenger.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1825
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Adjusting

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Temperature adjustment"
5. Set the desired temperature:
   - ▷ Toward blue: colder.
   - ▷ Toward red: warmer.

Air conditioning

Concept

The air in the car's interior will be cooled and dehumidified and, depending on the temperature setting, warmed again.

The car's interior can only be cooled with the drive-ready state switched on.

Switching on/off

A/C Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with air conditioning switched on.

Depending on the weather, the windshield and the side windows may fog up briefly when drive-ready state is switched on.

The cooling function is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops and collects underneath the vehicle.

Maximum cooling

Concept

The system is set to the lowest temperature, optimum air flow and recirculated-air mode with the drive-ready state switched on.

General information

The function is available with external temperatures above approx. 32 °F/0 °C and with the drive-ready state switched on.

Switching on/off

MAX A/C Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the system switched on.

Air flows out of the vents to the upper body region. The vents need to be open for this.

Adjust air flow on the driver's side with the program active.

AUTO program

Concept

The AUTO program cools, ventilates or heats the car's interior automatically.

The air distribution and temperature are controlled automatically depending on the temperature in the car's interior and the desired temperature setting including the selected intensity of the air flow.

Switching on/off

AUTO Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the AUTO program switched on.

Depending on the selected temperature, the intensity of the AUTO program, and outside influences, the air is directed to the windshield, side windows, upper body, and into the floor area.

The cooling function is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

Point the side vents toward the side windows.

At the same time, a condensation sensor controls the program so as to prevent window condensation as much as possible.

The AUTO program is switched off automatically, when manual air distribution is set.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1826
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Intensity

With the AUTO program switched on, the intensity can be adjusted. This changes the automatic control for the air flow and air distribution.

Press the left or right side of the button: to decrease or increase intensity.

The selected intensity is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

Automatic recirculated-air control AUC

Concept

The automatic recirculated-air control AUC recognizes odors or pollutants in the outside air. The outside air supply is shut off and the interior air is recirculated.

General information

If the system is activated, a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and controls the shut-off automatically.

If the system is deactivated, outside air continuously flows into the car's interior.

With constant recirculated-air mode, the air quality in the car's interior deteriorates and window fogging increases.

Switching on/off

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. If necessary, "Air quality"
5. "Auto-recirculate"

If there is window condensation, switch off recirculated-air mode or defog the windows.

Recirculated-air mode

Concept

You may react to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air flow within the vehicle.

Operation

Press the button:

The LED is illuminated when recirculated-air mode is switched on. The supply of outside air is shut off.

When recirculated-air mode is switched off, fresh air is directed into the vehicle's interior.

To prevent window fogging, recirculated-air mode switches off automatically after a certain amount of time, depending on the environmental conditions.

With constant recirculated-air mode, the air quality in the car's interior deteriorates and window fogging increases.

If there is window condensation, switch off recirculated-air mode or defog the windows.

Adjusting the air flow manually

Concept

The air flow for climate control can be adjusted manually.

General information

To adjust the air flow manually switch off AUTO program first.

Operation

Press the left or right side of the button: to decrease or increase air flow.

The selected air flow is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1827
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

The air flow of the automatic climate control may be reduced automatically to save battery power.

Adjusting the air distribution manually

Concept

The air distribution for climate control can be adjusted manually.

Operation

Press the button repeatedly to select a program:

- Windows, upper body region, and floor area.
- Upper body region and floor area.
- Floor area.
- Windows and floor area.
- Windows: driver's side only.
- Windows and upper body.
- Upper body region.

The selected air distribution is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

SYNC program

Concept

Depending on the equipment, the following settings of the driver's side can be transferred to the front-passenger side and the rear:

- Temperature.
- Air flow.
- Air distribution.
- AUTO program.

Switching on/off

SYNC Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the SYNC program switched on.

The program is switched off automatically if the settings on the front passenger side or in the rear are changed.

To defrost windows and remove condensation

Concept

Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

Switching on/off

MAX Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the system switched on.

The air flow can be adjusted manually with the system switched on.

AUTO If there is window condensation, press the button on the driver's side or switch on air conditioning to utilize the condensation sensor. Make sure that air can flow to the windshield.

Rear window defroster

Press the button. The LED lights up.

The function is available with the engine running.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter

The microfilter removes dust and pollen from the incoming air.

The activated-charcoal filter also removes gaseous pollutants from the outside air that enters the vehicle.

Have this combined filter changed during vehicle maintenance.

Ventilation

Concept

The air flow directions can be individually adjusted.

Adjusting the ventilation

General information

The air flow directions can be adjusted for direct or indirect ventilation.

Open the vents and position them to ensure effective climate control.

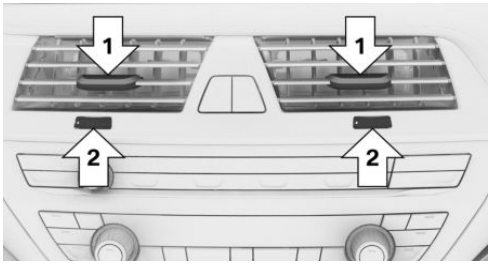
Direct ventilation

The air flow is directed towards the passengers. The air flow heats or cools noticeably, depending on the adjusted temperature.

Indirect ventilation

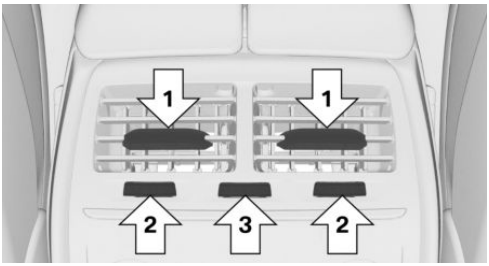
The air flow is not directed towards the passengers. The car's interior is warmed or cooled indirectly, depending on the set temperature.

Front ventilation



- Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 1.
- Thumbwheel for variable opening and closing of the vents, arrow 2.

Ventilation in rear, center

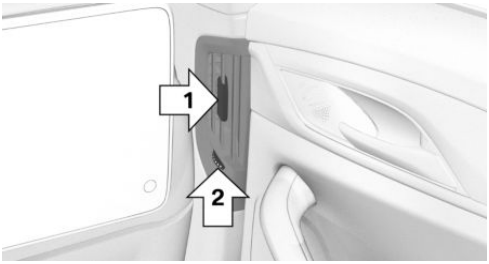


- Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 1.
- Thumbwheel for variable opening and closing of the vents, arrow 2.
- Thumbwheel for varying the temperature, arrow 3.

  Toward blue: colder.

  Toward red: warmer.

Ventilation in the rear, on the side



- Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 1.
- Thumbwheel for variable opening and closing of the vents, arrow 2.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1829
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Rear automatic climate control

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

Climate control functions

Button	Function
	Temperature.
MAX A/C	Maximum cooling.
AUTO	AUTO program.
	Air flow, manual.
	Air distribution, manual.
	Seat heating, refer to page 115.

Switching on/off

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Rear climate control"

The rear automatic climate control is not ready for operation if the automatic climate control is switched off or if the function for defrosting the windows and removing condensation is active.

Using the button: switching on

Press any button except for the following:

- Left side of air flow button.
- Seat heating.

Using the button: switching off

Press and hold the left side of the button.

Temperature

Concept

The automatic climate control achieves the set temperature as quickly as possible, if needed, by using the maximum cooling or heating capacity, and then keeps it constant.

Adjusting

Turn the wheel to set the desired temperature.

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. Otherwise, the automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

Maximum cooling

Concept

The system is set to the lowest temperature, optimum air flow and recirculated-air mode with the drive-ready state switched on.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1830
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

General information

The function is available with external temperatures above approx. 32 °F/0 °C and with the drive-ready state switched on.

Switching on/off

MAX A/C Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the system switched on.

Air flows out of the vents to the upper body region. The vents need to be open for this.

AUTO program

Concept

Air flow, air distribution and temperature are controlled automatically.

Switching on/off

AUTO Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the AUTO program switched on.

Depending on the selected temperature, the AUTO intensity, and outside influences, the air is directed to the upper body and into the floor area.

Intensity

With the AUTO program activated, the automatic intensity control can be changed:

Press the left or right side of the button: to decrease or increase intensity.

The selected intensity is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

Controlling the air flow manually

Concept

The air flow for climate control can be adjusted manually.

General information

To adjust the air flow manually switch off AUTO program first.

Operation

Press the left or right side of the button: to decrease or increase air flow.

The selected air flow is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

Controlling the air distribution manually

Concept

The air distribution for climate control can be adjusted manually.

Operation

Press the button repeatedly to select a program:

- Upper body region.
- Upper body region and floor area.
- Floor area.

Parked-car ventilation

Concept

The car's interior can be cooled or heated before driving off with the parked-car ventilation. Depending on set temperature and ambient temperature, the car's interior is ventilated or possibly heated using the residual engine heat.

General information

The system can be switched on and off directly or via a preset departure time.

The activation time is determined based on the external temperature. The system promptly switches on before the selected departure time.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1831
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Functional requirements

- The vehicle is in idle state or standby state and not in drive-ready state.
- The battery is sufficiently charged.

  If parked-car ventilation is switched on, the vehicle battery will be discharged. Thus, limit the maximum activation time to save the vehicle battery. The system will be available again after the engine is started or after a short trip.
- Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.
- Open the vents to allow air to flow out.

Switching on/off directly

General information

There are different ways to switch the system on or off.

The system switches off automatically after a certain period of time. The system continues to run for some time after being switched off.

Using the button

General information

When the vehicle is in standby state, the parked-car ventilation can be switched on or off via the automatic climate control buttons.

Switching on

Press any button except:

- Rear window defroster.
- Left side of air flow button.
- Seat heating.
- Seat ventilation.
- SYNC program.
- MENU.

Switching off

Press and hold the left side of the button.

The system switches off after leaving and locking the vehicle.

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Pre-heating/ventilation"
5. "Start now"

Via BMW display key

Switching on

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap the symbol or the symbol.
4. "Activate now"
5. "Start"

Switching off

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap the symbol or the symbol.
4. "Stop"

Display

symbol on the automatic climate control indicates the system is switched on.

REST is displayed on the automatic climate control. The residual engine heat is used.

Departure time

Concept

Different departure times can be set to ensure a comfortable interior temperature in the vehicle at the time of departure.

- One-time departure time: the time can be set.

  The system is switched on once.
- Departure time with weekday: time and day of the week can be set.

  On the desired weekdays, the system will be switched on promptly before the set departure time.

The departure time is preselected in two steps:

- Set departure times.
- Activate departure times.

A minimum of 10 minutes should pass between setting/activating the departure time and the planned departure time to allow a sufficient period of time for the climate control.

Setting the departure time

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Pre-heating/ventilation"
5. "Departure schedule"
6. Select the desired departure time.
7. Set the departure time.
8. Select day of the week, if needed.
9. "OK"

Via BMW display key

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap the symbol or the symbol.
4. Select the desired departure time.
5. Set the departure time.
6. Select day of the week, if needed.
7. "OK"

Activating the departure time

Functional requirement

If a departure time is to influence the switching on of parked-car ventilation, the respective departure time must be activated first.

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Pre-heating/ventilation"
5. "Departure schedule"
6. Activate the desired departure time.

Via BMW display key

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap the symbol or the symbol.
4. Tap on the symbol.
5. Activate the desired departure time.

Display

, Symbol on the climate control display signals an activated departure time.

Ambient air package

Concept

The Ambient Air Package can be used to clean and scent the interior air with high-quality fragrances.

Ionization is used to clean the air from suspended particles. Together with the selected fra-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1833
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

grance, ionization contributes to well-being and relaxation while driving.

General information

Two different fragrances can be selected in the vehicle. A variety of other fragrances is possible by replacing the fragrance cartridges.

The following criteria can influence the perception of scents in the car's interior:

- Automatic climate control settings.
- Temperature and air humidity.
- Time of day and season.
- Physical condition of the vehicle occupants, for instance fatigue.

BMW recommends the use of genuine BMW fragrance cartridges.

The genuine BMW fragrance cartridges are not suitable for refilling. When a cartridge is empty, replace it with a new fragrance cartridge.

Safety information

Warning

Refilled genuine BMW fragrance cartridges can cause the emission of harmful substances, malfunctions, and damage to the system. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not refill genuine fragrance cartridges. When a cartridge is empty, replace it with a new fragrance cartridge.

Ionization

Concept

Ionization cleans the car's interior air of suspended particles.

Switching on/off

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Air quality"
5. "Ionization"

Fragrancing

General information

Fragrancing is done at intervals in order to avoid a habituation effect.

Two fragrance cartridges in the vehicle allow switching between the fragrances.

The fragrance cartridges are located in the glove compartment.

To ensure a pleasant fragrance inside of the vehicle when starting the trip, fragrancing can occur prior to the trip. The system is automatically switched on with the parked-car ventilation if fragrancing was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Functional requirements

- The fragrance cartridges are sufficiently filled.
- The interior temperature is between 41 °F/+5 °C and 104 °F/+40 °C.
- Open the vents to allow the fragrance to flow out.

Selecting the fragrance

The car's interior is fragranced depending on the selected fragrance.

Two different fragrances can be selected in the vehicle.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1834
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

4. "Fragrance"
5. Select the desired fragrance.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Switching fragrancing on/off, adjusting intensity

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Fragrance"
5. "Level"
6. Select the desired setting.

Display

The illustrations on the Control Display show the actual filling level of the fragrance cartridges.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Fragrance"

When an empty fragrance cartridge is indicated, the cartridge still contains a fluid carrying the fragrance. However, it is not sufficient for fragrancing.

When the fragrance cartridges are empty, a Check Control message is displayed once.

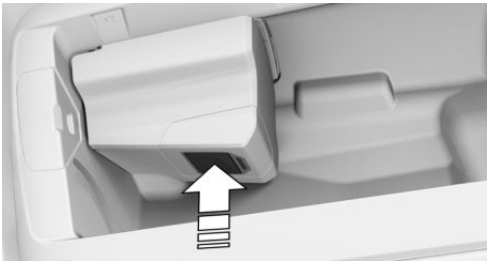
Inserting fragrance cartridges

The fragrance cartridges are located in the glove compartment.

1. Open the glove compartment.

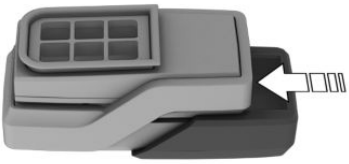
   Front passenger side glove compartment, refer to page 268.
2. Press on the bottom of the cartridge holder.

   The cartridge holder slides down.



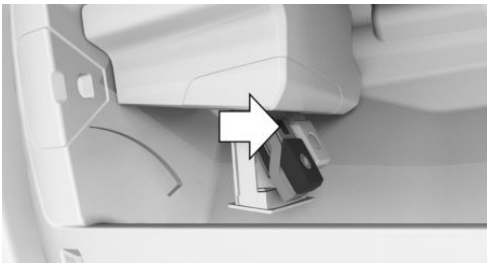
3. Remove the cover of the fragrance cartridge. Hold the cover on the top to slide it from the fragrance cartridge.

4. Insert the removed cover on the back side of the fragrance cartridge.

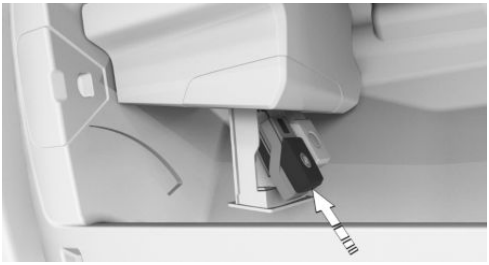


BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1835
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

5. Position fragrance cartridge such that the chip faces away from the cartridge holder.



6. Insert the fragrance cartridge without pressure into the cartridge holder. The cartridge snaps lightly into place.



7. Push the cartridge holder up, until it engages.

   Make sure that no objects press against the cartridge holder from below, otherwise the function of the ambient air package could be impacted.

8. Close the glove compartment.

Removing the fragrance cartridge

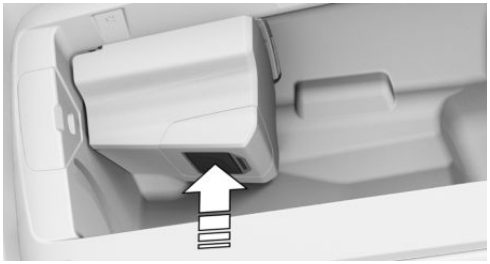
The fragrance cartridges are located in the glove compartment.

1. Open the glove compartment.

   Front passenger side glove compartment, refer to page 268.

2. Press on the bottom of the cartridge holder.

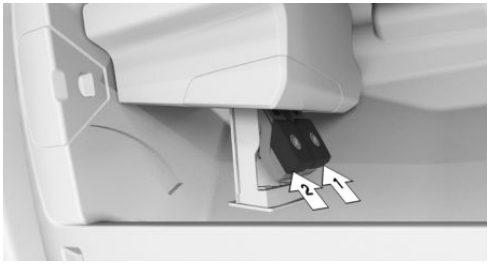
   The cartridge holder slides down.



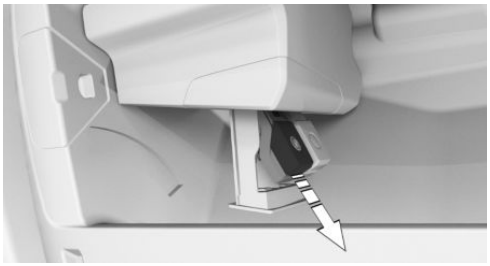
3. Pull desired fragrance cartridge from the holder.

   Fragrance cartridge, arrow 1: first fragrance indicated on the Control Display.

   Fragrance cartridge, arrow 2: second fragrance indicated on the Control Display.



4. Pull desired fragrance cartridge from the holder.



Recycling

Empty fragrance cartridges can be taken to a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop for recycling.

Interior equipment

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Integrated Universal Remote Control

Concept

The integrated Universal Remote Control in the interior mirror can operate up to 3 functions of remote-controlled systems such as garage door drives, barriers, or lighting systems.

General information

The Integrated Universal Remote Control replaces up to 3 different hand-held transmitters. To operate the remote control, the buttons on the interior mirror must be programmed with the desired functions. The hand-held transmitter for the particular system is required in order to program the remote control.

Before selling the vehicle, delete the stored functions for the sake of security.

If possible, do not install the antenna of the remote-controlled system, e.g. the garage door drive, near metal objects to ensure the best possible operation.

Safety information

Warning

The operation of remote-controlled systems with the integrated universal remote control, such as the garage door, may result in injury, for example, body parts becoming jammed in a garage door. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety information of the hand-held transmitter.

Compatibility

If this symbol is printed on the packaging or in the owner's manual of the system to be controlled, the system is generally compatible with the integrated Universal Remote Control.

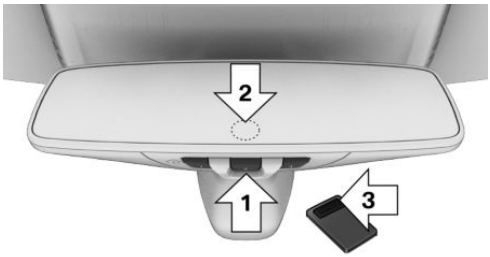
Additional questions are answered by:

- A dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
- www.homelink.com on the Internet.

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1837
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Control elements on the interior mirror



- ▷ Buttons, arrow 1.
- ▷ LED, arrow 2.
- ▷ The hand-held transmitter, arrow 3, is required for programming.

Programming

General information

The battery of the hand-held transmitter must be fully charged at the time of programming to ensure an optimal range of the integrated universal remote control.

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Initial setup:

   Press and hold the two outer buttons on the interior mirror simultaneously for approximately 10 seconds until the LED flashes green rapidly. This erases all programming of the buttons on the interior mirror.
3. Press the interior mirror button to be programmed. The LED on the interior mirror will slowly begin flashing orange.
4. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be used approx. 1 to 12 in/2.5 to 30 cm away from the buttons on the interior mirror. The required distance depends on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter.

   Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.
6. ▷ The LED lights up green: programming completed.

   Release the button.

   ▷ The LED flashes fast: programming is not complete.

   Press the button on the interior mirror for 2 seconds and release. Perform this procedure three times to complete the programming procedure.

   If the integrated universal remote control remains nonoperational, continue with the special features for change code wireless systems.

   ▷ LED does not flash green after 60 seconds: programming not completed.

   Repeat steps 3 to 6.

To program other functions on other buttons, repeat steps 3 to 5.

Special feature of the rolling code wireless system

If you are unable to operate the remote-controlled system after repeated programming, please check if the system to be controlled features a rolling code radio system.

Refer to the owner's manual for the system.

For systems with a rolling code radio system, the integrated Universal Remote Control and the system also have to be synchronized.

Please read the owner's manual to find out how to synchronize the system.

Synchronizing is easier with the aid of a second person.

Synchronizing the universal remote control with the system:

1. Park the vehicle within range of the remote-controlled system.
2. Program the relevant button on the interior mirror as described.
3. Locate and press the synchronizing button on the system being programmed, e.g. at the garage gate. You have approx. 30 seconds for the next step.
4. Hold down the programmed button on the interior mirror for approximately 3 seconds and then release it. If necessary, repeat this step up to three times in order to finish synchronization. Once synchronization is complete, the programmed function will be carried out.

Reprogramming individual buttons

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Press and hold the interior mirror button to be programmed.
3. As soon as the LED on the interior mirror flashes orange after approx. 20 seconds, release the button.
4. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be used approx. 1 to 12 in/2.5 to 30 cm away from the buttons on the interior mirror. The required distance depends on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter.

   Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.
6. The LED can light up in different ways.
   - ▷ The LED lights up green: the programming procedure is completed.

     Release the button.
   - ▷ The LED flashes fast: the hand-held transmitter was detected but programming is not complete.

     Press the button on the interior mirror for 2 seconds and release. Perform this procedure three times to complete the programming procedure.

     If the integrated universal remote control remains nonoperational, continue with the special features for change code wireless systems.
   - ▷ LED does not flash green after 60 seconds: programming not completed.

     Repeat steps 3 to 6.

If the programming procedure is not completed, the previous programming will remain unchanged.

Operation

⚠ Warning

The operation of remote-controlled systems with the integrated universal remote control, such as the garage door, may result in injury, for example, body parts becoming jammed in a garage door. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety information of the hand-held transmitter.

The system, such as the garage door, can be operated using the button on the interior mirror while the drive-ready or standby state is switched on. To do this, hold down the button within receiving range of the system until the function is activated. The interior mirror LED stays lit while the wireless signal is being transmitted.

Deleting stored functions

All stored functions will be deleted. The functions cannot be deleted individually.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1839
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Press and hold the two outer buttons on the interior mirror simultaneously for approximately 10 seconds until the LED on the interior mirror flashes green rapidly.

Sun visor

Glare shield

Fold the sun visor down or up.

Glare shield from the side

Folding out

1. Fold the sun visor down.
2. Unhook it from the holder and swing it to the side.
3. Move it back to the desired position.

Folding up

Proceed in the reverse order to close the sun visor.

Vanity mirror

A vanity mirror is located in the sun visor behind a cover. When the cover is opened, the mirror lighting switches on.

Ashtray

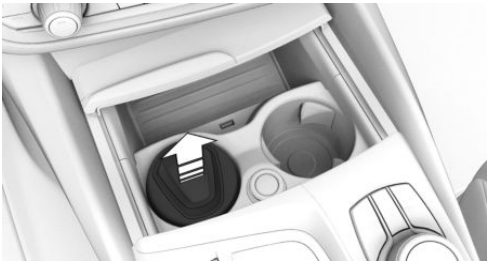
Front center console

Opening

1. Push the cover forward until it engages.

2. The ashtray is located in a cup holder. Fold the ashtray cover upward.

Emptying



Pull the ashtray with the closed cover out of the cup holder.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1840
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Cigarette lighter

Safety information

Warning

Contact with the hot heating element or the hot socket of the cigarette lighter can cause burns. Flammable materials can ignite if the cigarette lighter falls down or is held against the objects. There is a risk of fire and injuries. There is a risk of damage to property. Take hold of the cigarette lighter by its handle. Make sure that children do not use the cigarette lighter.

NOTICE

If metal objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of damage to property. Replace the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.

Front center console

Push the cover forward until it engages.

The cigarette lighter is located between the cup holders.

Rear center console

The cigarette lighter is located in the socket.

Operation

Push in the cigarette lighter.

The cigarette lighter can be removed as soon as it pops back out.

Sockets

Concept

The lighter socket can be used as a socket for electrical equipment when standby and drive-ready state are switched on.

General information

The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 watts at 12 volts.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1841
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Do not damage the socket by using non-compatible connectors.

Safety information

Warning

Devices and cables in the unfolding area of the airbags, such as portable navigation devices, can hinder the unfolding of the airbag or be thrown around in the car's interior during unfolding. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that devices and cables are not in the airbag's area of unfolding.

NOTICE

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery can work with high voltages and currents, which means that the 12 volt on-board network can be overloaded or damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.

NOTICE

If metal objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of damage to property. Replace the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.

Front center console

Push the cover forward until it engages.

A socket is located between the cup holders.

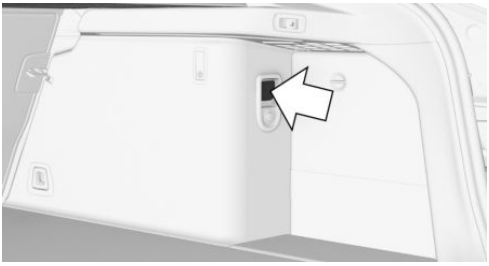
Pull off the cover.

Rear center console

A socket is located in the center console.

Pull off the cover.

In the cargo area



A socket is located on the right side in the cargo area. Unfold the cover.

USB port

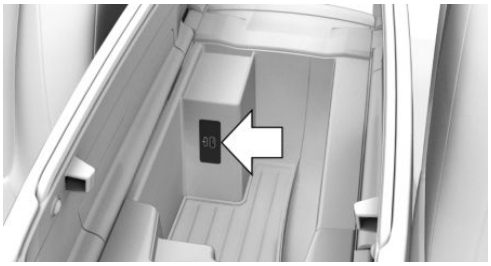
General information

Follow the information regarding the connection of mobile devices to the USB port in the section on USB connections.

Additional information:

USB connections, refer to page 73.

In the center armrest



A USB port is located in the center armrest.

Properties:

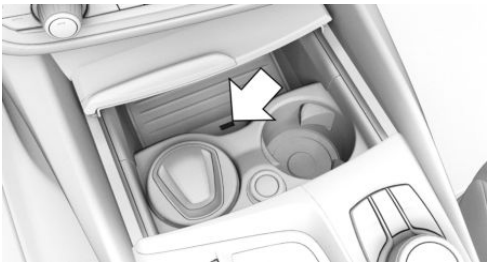
- USB port Type C.
- For charging of mobile devices.
- Charge current: max. 3 A.
- With navigation system: for data transfer.

In the center console

NOTICE

Objects in the storage compartment, e.g., large USB connectors, may block or damage the cover when it is being opened or closed. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the cover is clear while opening and closing it.

Push the cover forward until it engages.



A USB interface is located in the center console.

Properties:

- USB port Type A.
- For charging mobile devices and for data transfer.
- Charge current: max. 1.5 A.

In the rear center console

Two USB ports are located in the center console in the rear passenger compartment.

Properties:

- USB port Type C.
- For charging of mobile devices.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1843
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

▷ Charge current: maximum 3 A per port.

Wireless charging tray

Concept

The wireless charging tray enables the following functions to be performed without cables:

▷ Charging the rechargeable battery of a mobile phone with Qi capability and of other mobile devices, which support the Qi standard.

▷ Charging the BMW Display key.

▷ Connect the mobile phone to the external antenna.

Depending on the country, this provides for better network reception and a consistent reproduction quality.

General information

When inserting the mobile phone, make sure there are no objects between it and the wireless charging tray.

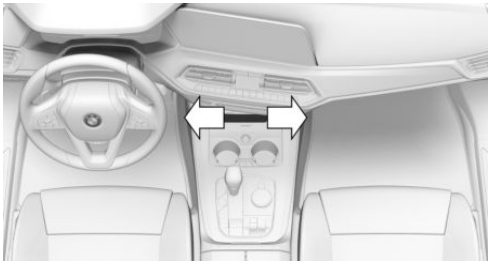
During charging, the surface of the tray and the mobile phone may become warm. Higher temperatures may lead to a reduction in the charge current through the mobile phone, and in isolated cases the charging process is paused temporarily. Follow the relevant instructions in the mobile phone owner's manual.

The charge indicator shows on the Control Display whether a mobile phone with Qi capability is being charged.

NOTE

This device has been tested for human exposure limits and found compliant at a minimum distance of 2 in/5 cm during operation.

Therefore, a distance of 4 in/10 cm must be maintained in every direction when operating the device.



Mounting position of the product.

Safety information

Warning

When charging a device that meets the Qi standard in the wireless charging tray, any metal objects located between the device and the tray can become very hot. Placing storage devices or electronic cards, such as chip cards, cards with magnetic strips or cards for signal transmission, between the device and the tray may impair the card function. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. When charging mobile devices, make sure there are no objects between the device and the tray.

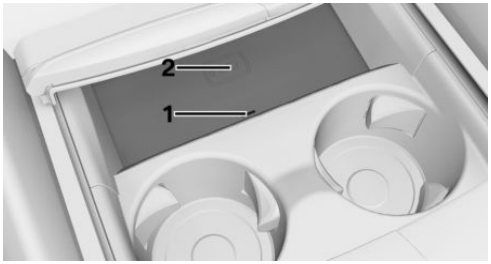
NOTICE

The tray is intended for mobile phones up to a particular size. Forceful inserting of the mobile phone into the tray can damage the tray or the mobile phone. There is a risk of damage to property. Observe the maximum dimensions for mobile phones. Do not force the mobile phone into the tray.

Overview

Tray in the center console:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1844
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20



1 LED

2 Storage area

Functional requirements

- The mobile phone must compatibly support the required Qi standard.

  If the mobile phone does not support the Qi standard, the mobile phone can be charged using a special Qi-compatible charging case.
- Standby state is switched on.
- Observe the maximum dimensions of the mobile phone.
- Use only protective jackets and covers up to a maximum thickness of 0.07 in/2 mm; otherwise, the charging function may be impaired.
- The mobile phone to be charged is located in the center of the tray.

Operation

Inserting the mobile phone

The mobile phone must not exceed the maximum size of approximately 6.0 x 3.1 x 0.7 in/154.5 x 80 x 18 mm.

1. Open the tray cover.
2. Place the mobile phone centered in the tray with the display facing up.
3. Close the tray cover.

Removing the mobile phone

1. Open the tray cover.
2. Remove the mobile phone.

LED displays

Color	Meaning
Blue	The mobile phone is charging. The blue LED stays illuminated once the inserted mobile phone with Qi capability is fully charged.
Orange	The mobile phone is not charging. Temperature on the mobile phone possibly too high or foreign object in charging tray.
Red	The mobile phone is not charging. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Forgotten warning

General information

If the vehicle is equipped with the forgotten warning function, a warning can be output if a mobile phone with Qi capability was forgotten in the wireless charging tray when leaving the vehicle.

The forgotten warning is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Activating

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Wireless charging tray"
5. Activate reminder.

System limits

At high temperatures on the mobile phone or in the vehicle, the charging functions of the mobile phone may be limited and some functions may no longer work.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1845
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

LTE-Compensator - Information and User Manual

Your car is equipped with a wireless charging tray (WCA) to charge your mobile phone and connect it to the mobile network. To ensure the best possible connection a signal booster (LTE-Compensator) is used in conjunction with the WCA. The following paragraphs refer to this booster:

This is a CONSUMER device.

BEFORE USE, you MUST REGISTER THIS DEVICE with your wireless provider and have your provider's consent. Most wireless providers consent to the use of Compensators. Some providers may not consent to the use of this device on their network. If you are unsure, contact your provider. You MUST operate this device with approved antennas and cables as specified by the manufacturer. Antennas MUST be installed at least 20 cm (8 inches) from any person. You MUST cease operating this device immediately if requested by the FCC or a licensed wireless service provider. Warning E911 location information may not be provided or may be inaccurate for calls served by using this device.

Please observe additionally the following information

- Sprint Nextel will allow consumers to register their signal boosters by calling their toll-free number.
- T-Mobile online registration link: (www.T-Mobile.com/BoosterRegistration); (https://saqat.t-mobile.com/sites/SignalBooster#).
- Verizon's online registration link: (http://www.verizonwireless.com/wcms/consumer/register-signal-booster.html).
- AT&T online registration link (https://securec45.securewebsession.com/attsignal-booster.com/).
- U.S.Cellular online registration link (http://www.uscellular.com/uscellular/support/fcc-booster-registration.jsp).

Before use you must register your booster device with your wireless provider.

If you should be requested by the FCC to cease operating your booster you are not allowed to insert your mobile phone in the charging tray anymore unless the booster is permanently deactivated by your local BMW dealer.

You must not remove the booster from the car nor use it with any other than the preinstalled coupling device or antenna. Any modification of the existing antenna or coupling device as well as the use of other antennas or coupling devices will cause the cease of the booster´s operating license.

The booster device fulfills the network protection standards as required by the FCC, such as intermodulation limits, oscillation detection and gain limits.

Booster Manufacturer: Kathrein Automotive

Model Number: LTECOMPB0

Part Number: 6803145-01

FCC-ID: 2ACC7LTECOMPB0

Storage compartments

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Storage compartments

General information

The vehicle interior contains multiple storage compartments for stowing objects.

Safety information

Warning

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, for instance mobile phones, can be thrown about the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the car's interior.

NOTICE

Anti-slip pads such as anti-slip mats can damage the dashboard. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use anti-slip pads.

Front passenger side glove compartment

Safety information

Warning

Folded open, the glove compartment protrudes in the car's interior. Objects in the glove compartment can be thrown into the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Always close the glove compartment immediately after using it.

Opening

Pull the handle.

The light in the glove compartment switches on.

Closing

Fold cover closed.

Locking

The glove compartment can be locked with an integrated key. This prevents access to the glove compartment.

After the glove compartment is locked, the vehicle key can be handed over without the

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1847
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

integrated key, for instance when the vehicle is parked by valet parking.

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 86.

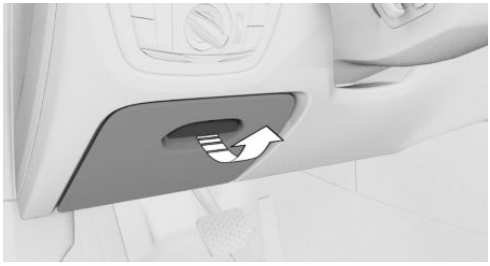
Driver's side glove compartment

Safety information

Warning

Folded open, the glove compartment protrudes in the car's interior. Objects in the glove compartment can be thrown into the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Always close the glove compartment immediately after using it.

Opening



Pull the handle.

Closing

Fold cover closed.

Compartments in the doors

General information

There are storage compartments in the doors.

Safety information

Warning

Breakable objects, such as glass bottles or glasses, can break in the event of an accident or a braking or evasive maneuver. Broken glass can be scattered in the car's interior. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not use any breakable objects while driving. Only stow breakable objects in closed storage compartments.

Storage compartment in the center console

Opening

Push the cover forward until it engages.

Closing

Touch the cover on the handle bar. The cover closes.

Storage compartment in the rear center console

The back of the center console contains one or two storage compartments.

Center armrest, front

General information

A storage compartment is located in the center armrest between the seats.

Opening

Press the button.

Closing

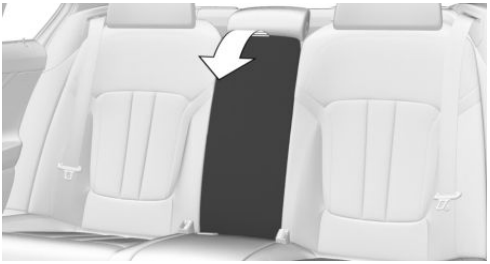
Press cover down until it engages.

Rear center armrest

General information

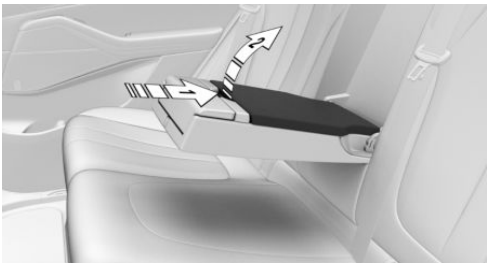
A storage compartment is located in the center armrest between the seats.

Folding down



Fold the center armrest forward.

Opening



Press the button, arrow 1, and fold the cover up, arrow 2.

Closing

Press cover down until it engages.

Front cup holder

Safety information

⚠ Warning

Unsuitable containers in the cup holders may damage the cup holders or be thrown about the car's interior in the event of an accident, an evasive maneuver, or forceful braking. Spilled liquids can distract from the traffic conditions and lead to an accident. Hot drinks can damage the cup holder or lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not force objects into the cup holder. Use lightweight, shatterproof, and sealable containers. Do not transport hot beverages.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1849
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Opening

Push the cover forward until it engages.

Two cup holders are located in the center console.

Closing

Touch the cover on the handle bar. The cover closes.

Rear cup holder

Safety information

Warning

Unsuitable containers in the cup holders may damage the cup holders or be thrown about the car's interior in the event of an accident, an evasive maneuver, or forceful braking. Spilled liquids can distract from the traffic conditions and lead to an accident. Hot drinks can damage the cup holder or lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not force objects into the cup holder. Use lightweight, shatterproof, and sealable containers. Do not transport hot beverages.

NOTICE

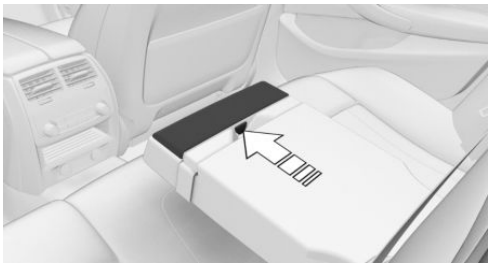
With an open cup holder, the center armrest cannot be folded back up. There is a risk of damage to property. Press back the covers before the center armrest is folded up.

Opening and closing

General information

The cup holder can be adjusted for three different container sizes.

Opening



Fold the center armrest forward.

Press the button and fold out the cup holder fully.

Reducing the size

To make it smaller, the cup holder can be folded in in 2 steps.

Enlarging

To make a smaller cup holder bigger, first fold it in completely. Then fold the cup holder out again fully.

Closing

Fold in the cup holder fully, until it engages.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1850
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Clothes hooks

General information

The clothes hooks are located in the grab handles in the rear and on the door pillar in the rear.

Safety information

Warning

Clothing articles on the clothes hooks can obstruct the view while driving. There is a risk of accident. When suspending clothing articles from the clothes hooks, ensure that they will not obstruct the driver's view.

Warning

Improper use of the clothes hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only hang lightweight objects, for instance clothing articles, from the clothes hooks.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1851
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Cargo area

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Loading

Safety information

Warning

High gross weight can overheat the tires, damage them internally and cause a sudden drop in tire inflation pressure. Driving characteristics may be negatively impacted, reducing lane stability, lengthening the braking distances and changing the steering response. There is a risk of accident. Pay attention to the permitted load capacity of the tires and never exceed the permitted gross weight.

Warning

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, for instance mobile phones, can be thrown about the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the car's interior.

Warning

Improperly stowed objects can shift and be thrown into the car's interior, for instance in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuver. Vehicle occupants can be hit and injured. There is a risk of injury. Stow and secure objects and cargo properly.

NOTICE

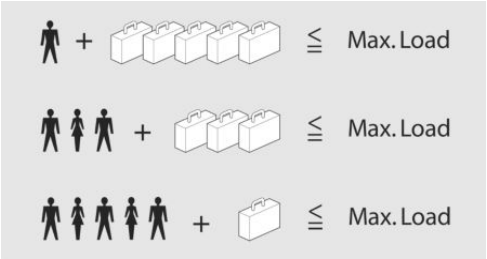
Fluids in the cargo area can cause damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that no fluids leak in the cargo area.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs” on your vehicle’s placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1,400 lbs and there will be five 150 lbs passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs (1,400 - 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your ve-

hicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Load



The maximum load is the sum of the weight of the occupants and the cargo.

The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo that can be transported.

Stowing and securing cargo

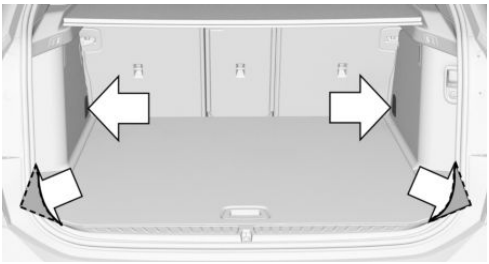
- Cover sharp edges and corners on the cargo.
- Heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear passenger seat backrests.
- Very heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear passenger seat backrests. When the rear seat is not occupied, secure each of the outer safety belts in the opposite buckle.
- If necessary, fold down the rear backrests to stow large cargo.
- Do not stack cargo above the top edge of the backrests.
- Smaller and lighter cargo: secure with ratchet straps or with a cargo net or draw straps.
- Larger and heavy cargo: secure with cargo straps.

Lashing eyes in the cargo area

General information

Attach load securing aids, such as lashing straps, tensioning straps, draw straps or cargo nets, to the lashing eyes in the cargo area.

Lashing eyes



There are four lashing eyes in the cargo area for securing cargo.

Multi-function hook

General information

A multi-function hook is located on the left and right side in the cargo area.

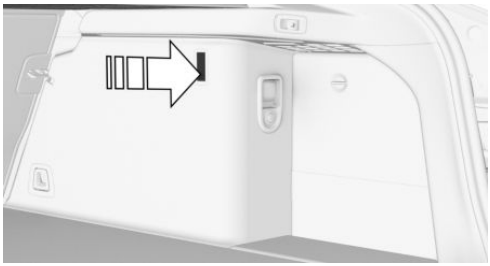
Safety information

Warning

Improper use of the multi-function hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers, for example. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only hang lightweight objects, such as shopping bags, from the multi-function hooks. Only transport heavy luggage in the cargo area if it has been appropriately secured.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1853
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Folding down



Press on the multi-function hook and turn until it engages.

Tensioning strap

A tensioning strap is available on the left and right side trim for fastening small objects.

Net

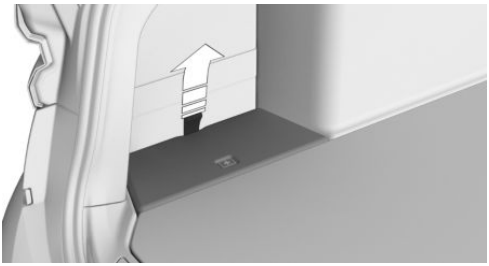
Small objects can be stowed in the net on the left side.

Storage compartment on the left side

General information

A storage compartment is located on the left side in the cargo area.

Opening



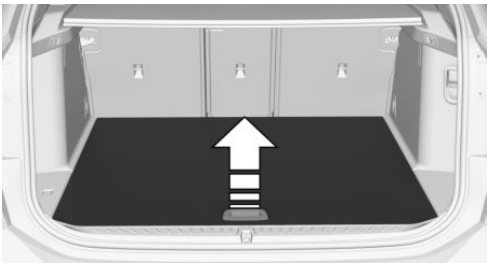
Pull the cover.

Storage compartments under the cargo floor panel

General information

There are storage compartments beneath the cargo floor panel.

Opening



Fold up the cargo floor panel.

Closing

Push the cargo floor panel downward.

Enlarging the cargo area

Concept

The cargo area can be enlarged by folding down the rear seat backrests.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1854
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

General information

The rear seat backrest is divided at a ratio of 40–20–40. The side rear seat backrests and the center section can be folded down separately.

The rear seat backrests can be folded down from the rear or from the cargo area.

Safety information

Warning

Danger of jamming with folding down the backrests. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the rear backrest and the of the head restraint is clear prior to folding down.

Warning

If a rear seat backrest is not locked, unsecured cargo can be thrown about the car's interior; for instance, in the event of an accident, braking or an evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the rear seat backrest is locked after folding it back.

Warning

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

Warning

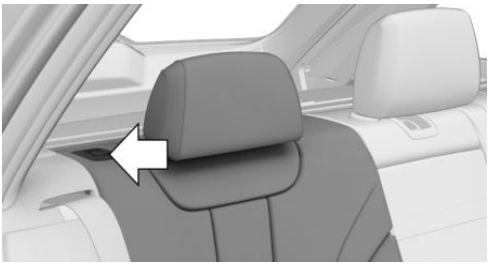
Once the rear seat backrest has been folded down, the locking bracket protrudes into the car's interior. There is a risk of damage to property. When the rear seat backrest is folded down, pay attention to the protruding locking bracket and keep this area unobstructed.

NOTICE

Vehicle parts can be damaged when folding down the rear backrest. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the rear backrest including head restraint is clear when folding down.

Electric reclining of the backrest

From the rear



Pull the switch and fold the rear seat backrest forward.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1855
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

From the cargo area

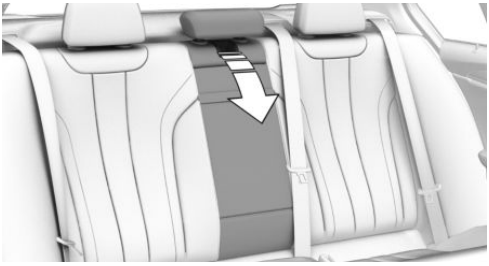
Pull the switch inside the cargo area.

Left switch: the left and center rear seat backrests fold forward.

Right switch: the right rear seat backrest folds forward.

Folding down the center section

1. Fold down the center head restraint.
2. Press the button and fold the center section forward.



Cargo cover

Safety information

Warning

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, for instance mobile phones, can be thrown about the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the car's interior.

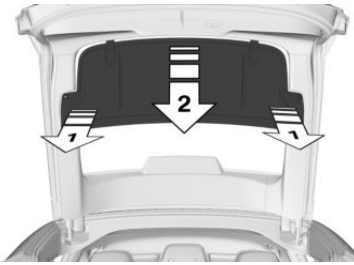
Warning

An incorrectly inserted cargo cover can be thrown about the car's interior, such as in the event of an accident or a braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Make sure the cargo cover is securely engaged in the brackets.

Removing

Cargo cover in the tailgate

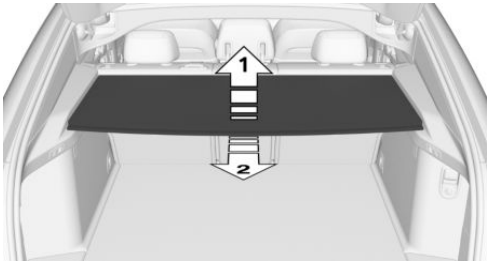
1. Pull the cargo cover with both hands by the outer edges, arrows 1, to disengage it from the brackets.



2. Remove the cargo cover from below, arrow 2.

Cargo cover in the cargo area

1. Push the back edge of the cargo cover up and out of the side brackets, arrow 1.

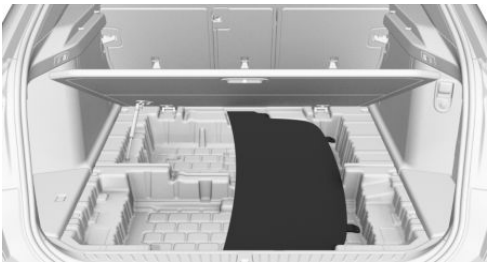


2. Remove cargo cover, arrow 2.

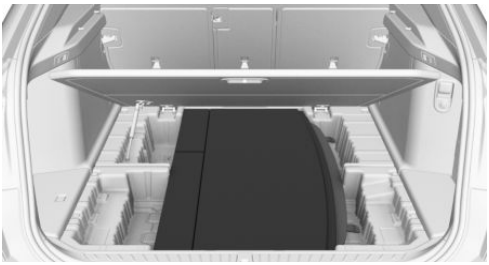
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1856
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Stowing

1. Fold up the cargo floor panel.
2. Place the cargo cover from the tailgate into the bottom recess in the storage compartment, with the top facing up.



3. Place the cargo cover from the cargo area into the top recess in the storage compartment, with the top facing up, slightly offset to the left.



4. Close the cargo floor panel completely.

Installing

Proceed in the reverse order to reinstall. Make sure that the cargo covers are positioned correctly in the brackets and that they clearly engage.

Ski and snowboard bag

The ski and snowboard bag is contained in a protective jacket in the cargo area.

Follow the installation and owner's manual included in the protective jacket.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1857
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Things to remember when driving

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Breaking-in period

General information

Moving parts need to begin working together smoothly.

The following instructions will help you to achieve a long vehicle life and good efficiency.

During break-in, do not use the Launch Control.

Safety information

Warning

Due to new parts and components, safety and driver assistance systems can react with a delay. There is a risk of accident. After installing new parts or with a new vehicle, drive conservatively and intervene early if necessary. Observe the break-in procedures of the respective parts and components.

Engine, transmission, and axle drive

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Do not exceed the maximum engine and road speed:

- For gasoline engine 4,500 rpm and 100 mph/160 km/h.

Avoid full load or kickdown under all circumstances.

From 1,200 miles/2,000 km

The engine and vehicle speed can gradually be increased.

Tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new; they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

Brake discs and brake pads only reach their full effectiveness after approx. 300 miles/500 km. Drive moderately during this break-in period.

Following part replacement

Observe the break-in procedures again, if components mentioned above are replaced.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1859
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

General driving notes

Closing the tailgate

Safety information

Warning

An open tailgate protrudes from the vehicle and can endanger occupants and other traffic participants or damage the vehicle in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. In addition, exhaust fumes may enter the car's interior. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not drive with the tailgate open.

Driving with the tailgate open

If driving with the tailgate open cannot be avoided:

- Close all windows and the glass sunroof.
- Greatly increase the air flow from the vents.
- Drive moderately.

Ice on window glass

NOTICE

The window will be lowered slightly when pulling on the door handle. In the event of frost, the window may freeze up and not be lowered. There is a risk of damage to property. When pulling on the door handle, make sure that the window is lowered. If necessary, remove snow and ice from the window. Do not open the door with force.

Hot exhaust gas system

Warning

High temperatures can occur underneath the body, for instance caused by the exhaust gas system, while driving. Contact with the exhaust gas system can cause burns. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch the hot exhaust gas system, including the exhaust pipe.

Warning

If combustible materials, such as leaves or grass, come in contact with hot parts of the exhaust gas system, these materials can ignite. There is a risk of fire and injuries. Do not remove the heat shields installed and never apply undercoating to them. Make sure that no combustible materials can come in contact with hot vehicle parts in driving operation, idle or during parking.

Mobile communication devices in the vehicle

Warning

Vehicle electronics and mobile phones can influence one another. There is radiation due to the transmission operations of mobile phones. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. If possible, in the car's interior use only mobile phones with direct connections to an exterior antenna in order to exclude mutual interference and deflect the radiation from the car's interior.

Hydroplaning

On wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water can form between the tires and road surface.

This phenomenon is referred to as hydroplaning. It is characterized by a partial or complete loss of

contact between the tires and the road surface, ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle.

Driving through water

General information

When driving through water, follow the following:

- Deactivate Auto Start/Stop function.
- Drive through calm water only.
- Drive through water only if it is not deeper than maximum 9.8 inches/25 cm.
- Drive through water no faster than walking speed, up to 3 mph/5 km/h.

Safety information

NOTICE

When driving too quickly through too deep water, water can enter into the engine compartment, the electrical system or the transmission. There is a risk of damage to property. When driving through water, do not exceed the maximum indicated water level and the maximum speed for driving through water.

Braking safely

General information

The vehicle is equipped with an Antilock Braking System ABS as a standard feature.

Perform an emergency stop in situations that require such.

Steering is still responsive. You can still avoid any obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.

Pulsation of the brake pedal and sounds from the hydraulic circuits indicate that the Antilock Braking System ABS is in its active mode.

In certain braking situations, the perforated brake discs can emit functional noises. However, functional noises have no effect on the performance and operational reliability of the brake.

Objects in the area around the pedals

Warning

Objects in the driver's floor area can limit the pedal distance or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's floor area. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, for instance for cleaning.

Driving in wet conditions

When roads are wet, salted, or in heavy rain, gently press the brake pedal every few miles.

Ensure that this action does not endanger other traffic.

The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

In this way braking efficiency will be available when you need it.

Hills

General information

Drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear that requires least braking effort. Otherwise, the brakes may overheat and reduce brake efficiency.

You can increase the engine's braking effect by shifting down, going all the way to first gear, if needed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1861
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Safety information

Warning

Light but consistent brake pressure can lead to high temperatures, brakes wearing out and possibly even brake failure. There is a risk of accident. Avoid placing excessive stress on the brake system.

Warning

In idle state or with the engine switched off, safety functions, for instance engine braking effect, braking assistance and steering assistance, may not be available. There is a risk of accident. Do not attempt to drive in idle state or with the engine switched off.

Brake disc corrosion

Corrosion on the brake discs and contamination on the brake pads are increased by the following circumstances:

- Low mileage.
- Extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all.
- Infrequent use of the brakes.
- Aggressive, acidic, or alkaline cleaning agents.

Corrosion buildup on the brake discs will cause a pulsating effect on the brakes in their response - generally this cannot be corrected.

Condensation water under the parked vehicle

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops and collects underneath the vehicle.

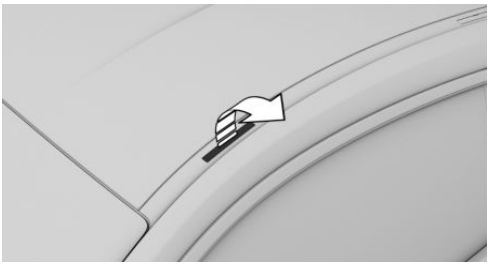
Roof-mounted luggage rack

General information

Roof racks are available as special accessories.

Roof drip rail with flaps

The fixing points are located in the roof drip rail above the doors.



Fold the cover outward.

Mounting

Follow the installation instructions of the roof rack.

Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.

Loading

Because roof-mounted luggage racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a major effect on vehicle handling and steering response.

Therefore, note the following when loading and driving:

- Do not exceed the approved roof/axle loads and the approved gross vehicle weight.
- Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.
- Distribute the roof load uniformly.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1862
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

- The roof load should not extend past the loading area.
- Always place the heaviest pieces on the bottom.
- Secure the roof luggage firmly, for instance using ratchet straps.
- Do not let objects project into the opening path of the tailgate.
- Drive cautiously and avoid sudden acceleration and braking maneuvers. Take corners gently.

Driving on racetracks

Warning

The vehicle is not designed for use in M Sport or motor sport type competition. There is a risk of accident. Do not use the vehicle for M Sport or motor sport type competitions.

Higher mechanical and thermal loads during racetrack operation lead to increased wear. This wear is not covered by the warranty.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1863
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Saving fuel

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Reducing fuel consumption

General information

The vehicle contains advanced technologies for the reduction of consumption and emission values.

Fuel consumption depends on a number of different factors.

Carrying out certain measures, such as a moderate driving style and regular maintenance, can influence fuel consumption and the environmental impact.

Remove unnecessary cargo

Additional weight increases fuel consumption.

Remove attached parts following use

Remove auxiliary mirrors, roof-mounted or rear luggage racks which are no longer required following use.

Attached parts on the vehicle impair the aerodynamics and increase the fuel consumption.

Close the windows and glass sunroof

Driving with the glass sunroof and windows open results in increased air resistance and raises fuel consumption.

Tires

General information

Tires can affect consumption in various ways, for instance tire size may influence consumption.

Check the tire inflation pressure regularly

Check and, if needed, correct the tire inflation pressure at least twice a month and before starting on a long trip.

Low tire inflation pressure increases rolling resistance and thus raises fuel consumption and tire wear.

Observe the correct tire inflation pressure as well as the ECO tire inflation pressure, where applicable.

Additional information:

Tire inflation pressure specifications, refer to page 294.

Drive away without delay

Do not wait for the engine to warm-up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving right away, but at moderate engine speeds.

This is the quickest way of warming the cold engine up to operating temperature.

Look well ahead when driving

Driving smoothly and proactively reduces fuel consumption.

Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1864
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

By maintaining a suitable distance to the vehicle driving ahead of you.

Avoid high engine speeds

Driving at low engine speeds lowers fuel consumption and reduces wear.

If necessary, observe the vehicle's gear shift indicator.

Use coasting conditions

When approaching a red light, take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle coast to a halt.

For going downhill take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle roll.

The flow of fuel is interrupted while coasting.

Switch off the engine during longer stops

Switching off the engine

Switch off the engine during longer stops, for instance at traffic lights, railroad crossings or in traffic congestion.

Auto Start/Stop function

The Auto Start/Stop function of the vehicle automatically switches off the engine during a stop.

If the engine is switched off and then restarted rather than leaving the engine running constantly, fuel consumption and emissions are reduced. Savings can begin within a few seconds of switching off the engine.

In addition, fuel consumption is also determined by other factors, such as driving style, road conditions, maintenance or environmental factors.

Switch off any functions that are not currently needed

Functions such as seat heating and the rear window defroster require a lot of energy and increase fuel consumption, especially in city and stop-and-go traffic.

Switch off these functions if they are not needed.

The ECO PRO driving mode supports the energy conserving use of comfort features. These functions are automatically deactivated partially or completely.

Have maintenance carried out

Have the vehicle maintained regularly to achieve optimal vehicle efficiency and service life. BMW recommends that maintenance work be performed by a BMW service center.

For information on the BMW Maintenance System.

ECO PRO

Concept

ECO PRO supports a driving style that saves on consumption. For this purpose, the engine control and comfort features, for instance the climate control output, are adjusted.

Steptronic transmission: under certain conditions the engine is automatically decoupled from the transmission in the D selector lever position. The vehicle continues traveling with the engine idling to reduce consumption. The D selector lever position remains engaged.

In addition, context-sensitive information, ECO PRO tips, can be displayed to assist with a fuel-efficient driving style.

The achieved extended range is displayed in the instrument cluster as bonus range.

General information

The system includes the following EfficientDynamics functions and EfficientDynamics displays:

- ECO PRO bonus range.
- ECO PRO seat climate control.
- ECO PRO climate control.
- ECO PRO light and sight.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1865
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

- Coasting driving condition.
- Driving style analysis.

Overview

ECO PRO Button

Activating ECO PRO

ECO PRO Press the button. ECO PRO is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Configuring ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL

Via the Driving Dynamics Control

1. Activate ECO PRO.
2. "ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL"

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driving mode"
4. "ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Activating/deactivating ECO PRO functions

The following ECO PRO functions can be activated/deactivated:

- "ECO PRO speed"
- "ECO PRO seat heating"
- "ECO PRO climate control"
- "ECO PRO light and sight"

Settings are stored for the driver profile currently used.

ECO PRO limit

- "ECO PRO speed": activate ECO PRO speed.

  An ECO PRO tip is displayed if the speed of the set ECO PRO limit is exceeded.
- "Notification at:"

  Set the desired speed for the ECO PRO speed.

Coasting

Efficiency can be optimized by disengaging the engine and coasting with the engine idling.

ECO PRO seat climate control

The output of seat heating and, where applicable, seat ventilation is reduced when ECO PRO is activated.

ECO PRO climate control

Climate control is set to be efficient.

This means, it is possible to deviate slightly from the set temperature or to heat or cool the car's interior more slowly, to economize on consumption.

ECO PRO light and sight

The output of exterior mirror heating and rear window defroster is reduced.

Resetting the settings

Reset ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL to the standard settings:

"Reset to ECO PRO STANDARD"

Display in the instrument cluster

General information

When ECO PRO driving mode is activated, the display switches to a special configuration.

ECO PRO bonus range

A modified driving style helps you extend your driving range.

The range extension can be displayed as the bonus range in the instrument cluster.

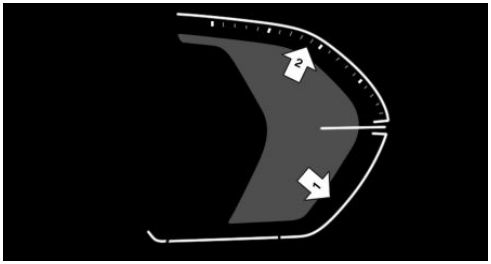
The efficiency display includes the bonus range.

If the bonus range appears in gray, the current driving style is inefficient.

The display turns blue as soon as all conditions for efficient driving are met.

The intervals for resetting the bonus range depend on the settings of the trip data.

Consumption display



A pointer in the consumption display informs about the current driving style:

- The current consumption in relation to the average consumption is displayed.
- Pointer in the area of arrow 1: display of the energy recovered by coasting or when braking.
- Pointer in the area of arrow 2: display when accelerating.

If the acceleration is inefficient, the area between the average consumption and the current consumption is colored red.

In addition, the following information is displayed, depending on the situation:

- Depending on the equipment: the total distance driven while coasting.
- The total time that the engine has been switched off during automatic engine stops.
- A gear shift indicator recommending the use of a more efficient gear.

Indications on the Control Display

General information

Information about the current effectiveness of the ECO PRO functions can be displayed as energy flow.

Displaying energy flow information

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Energy flow"

The following functions are displayed:

- Auto Start/Stop function.
- Energy recovery.
- Coasting.

Coasting

Concept

Under certain conditions the engine is automatically decoupled from the transmission in the D selector lever position. The vehicle continues traveling with the engine idling to reduce consumption. Selector lever position D remains engaged.

This driving condition is referred to as coasting.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1867
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

As soon as you step on the brake or accelerator pedal, the engine is automatically coupled again.

Additional information:

Vehicle battery, refer to page 335.

General information

Coasting is a component of the ECO PRO driving mode.

Coasting is automatically activated when ECO PRO mode is called via the Driving Dynamics Control.

A proactive driving style helps the driver to use the function often and supports the efficient effect of coasting.

Functional requirements

The function is available in the speed range from approx. 16 mph/25 km/h to 100 mph/160 km/h.

The function is active if the following conditions are met:

- The accelerator pedal is not depressed or the accelerator pedal is released.
- Brake pedal not depressed or only slightly depressed.
- The selector lever is in selector lever position D.
- Engine and transmission are at operating temperature.
- Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function, ACC, not activated.

Operation via shift paddles

Concept

The coasting driving condition can be influenced with the shift paddles.

Activating/deactivating coasting via shift paddles

1. Shift to the highest gear by pulling the right shift paddle.
2. To activate coasting mode, actuate the right shift paddle again.

To deactivate, actuate the left shift paddle.

Display

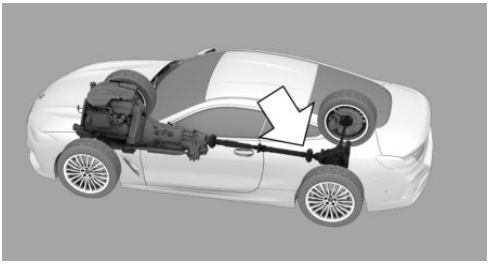
Display in the instrument cluster

The coasting distance traveled is indicated in coasting mode.

Indications on the Control Display

The coasting mode is displayed under energy flow while driving.

The distance traveled in coasting mode is displayed in the trip data.



Color code blue: coasting mode.

Displaying energy flow information

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Energy flow"

System limits

The function is not available under one of the following conditions.

- DSC OFF or TRACTION activated.
- Driving in the dynamic limit range and on steep uphill or downhill grades.
- Battery charge status temporarily too low or vehicle electrical system drawing excessive current.

Driving style analysis

Concept

The function helps develop an especially efficient driving style and to conserve fuel.

For this purpose, the driving style is analyzed. The assessment is done in various categories and is displayed on the Control Display.

This display will help you adjust your driving style and save some fuel.

General information

The current trip is assessed.

To assist with an efficient driving style, ECO PRO tips are displayed during driving.

The range of the vehicle can be extended by adjusting your driving style.

This gain in range is displayed as a bonus range in the instrument cluster and on the Control Display.

Functional requirement

The function is available in ECO PRO driving mode.

Calling up the Driving style analysis

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Driving style analysis"

Display on the Control Display

The display of the Driving style analysis shows the efficiency of the Driving style.

The more efficient the driving style, the more bars are displayed in color and the faster the bonus range increases.

In contrast, a reduced number of bars will be displayed with an inefficient driving style.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1869
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1870

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Refueling

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Follow the following when refueling

General information

Follow the fuel recommendation prior to refueling.

When refueling, insert the filler nozzle completely into the filler pipe. Lifting up the fuel pump nozzle during refueling causes:

- Premature switching off.
- Reduced return of the fuel vapors.

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

Make sure that the fuel cap is closed properly after refueling, otherwise the emissions warning light may light up.

Follow safety regulations posted at the gas station.

Additional information:

Fuel quality, refer to page 325.

Safety information

NOTICE

With a driving range of less than 30 miles/50 km the engine may no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of damage to property. Refuel promptly.

NOTICE

Fuels are toxic and aggressive. Overfilling of the fuel tank can damage the fuel system. Painted surfaces may be damaged by contact with fuel. Escaping fuel can harm the environment. There is a risk of damage to property. Avoid overfilling.

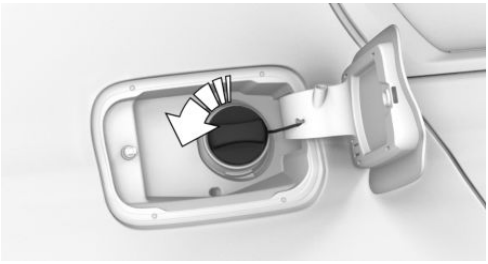
Fuel cap

Opening

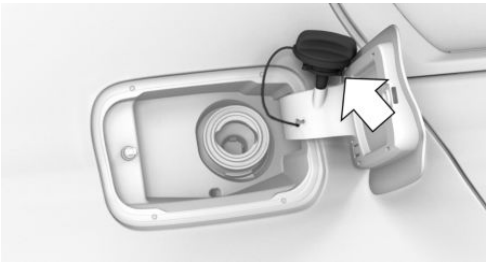
1. To open the fuel filler flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1871
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

2. Turn the fuel cap counterclockwise.



3. Place the fuel cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.



Closing

Warning

The retaining strap of the fuel cap can be jammed and crushed during closing. The cap cannot be correctly closed. Fuel or fuel vapors can escape. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Pay attention that the retaining strap is not jammed or crushed when closing the cap.

1. Fit the cap and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.
2. Press on the fuel filler flap until it engages.

Emergency unlocking

It may be necessary in certain situations to unlock the fuel filler flap manually, for instance with an electrical fault.

Have fuel filler flap unlocked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Wheels and tires

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Tire inflation pressure

General information

The tire characteristics and tire inflation pressure influence the following:

- The service life of the tires.
- Road safety.
- Driving comfort.
- Fuel consumption.

Safety information

Warning

A tire with too little or no tire inflation pressure may heat up significantly and sustain damage. This will have a negative impact on aspects of handling, such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident. Regularly check the tire inflation pressure, and correct it as needed, for instance twice a month and before a long trip.

Tire inflation pressure specifications

In the tire inflation pressure table

The tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 296, contains all tire inflation pressure specifications for the specified tire sizes at the ambient temperature. The tire inflation pressure values apply to tire sizes approved by the manufacturer of the vehicle for the vehicle type.

To identify the correct tire inflation pressure, please note the following:

- Tire sizes of your vehicle.
- Maximum permitted driving speed.

On the Control Display

The current tire inflation pressure values and the intended tire inflation pressure values for the mounted tires can be displayed on the Control Display.

To ensure that they are displayed correctly, the tire sizes must be stored in the system and must have been set for the mounted tires.

The current tire inflation pressure value is located on each tire.

The reference tire inflation pressure value is located in the lower area of the Control Display.

Checking the tire inflation pressure

General information

Tires heat up while driving. The tire inflation pressure increases with the tire temperature.

Tires have a natural, consistent loss of tire inflation pressure.

The displays of inflation devices may under-read by up to 0.1 bar/2 psi.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1873
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Checking using tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire inflation pressure table

1. Determine the intended tire inflation pressure levels for the mounted tires.
2. Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, using a pressure gage, for example.
3. Correct the tire inflation pressure if the actual tire inflation pressure deviates from the intended tire inflation pressure.
4. Check whether all valve caps are screwed onto the tire valves.

The tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire inflation pressure table only relate to cold tires or tires at the same temperature as the ambient temperature.

Only check the tire inflation pressure levels when the tires are cold, i.e.:

- ▷ A driving distance of max. 1.25 miles/2 km has not been exceeded.
- ▷ If the vehicle has not moved again for at least 2 hours after a trip.

Checking using the tire inflation pressure specifications on the Control Display

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) "Tire Pressure Monitor"
4. Check whether the current tire inflation pressure levels deviate from the intended tire pressure value.
5. Correct the tire inflation pressure if the actual tire inflation pressure deviates from the intended tire inflation pressure.

After correcting the tire inflation pressure

With runflat tires:

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

With Tire Pressure Monitor:

The corrected tire inflation pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the correct tire settings have been made.

With tires that cannot be found in the tire pressure values on the Control Display, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM.

Tire inflation pressures up to 100 mph/160 km/h

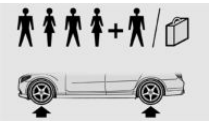
For speeds of up to 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table and adjust as necessary.

These pressure values can also be found on the tire inflation pressure label on the driver's door pillar.

Do not exceed a speed of 100 mph/160 km/h.

Tire inflation pressure values up to 100 mph/160 km/h

640i xDrive

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
245/50 R 18 100 V A/S 245/50 R 18 100 H M+S	2.2 / 32	2.2 / 32
245/45 R 19 102 V XL A/S 245/45 R 19 102 V XL M+S	2.2 / 32	2.4 / 35
F: 245/45 R 19 98 Y	2.2 / 32	-
Rear: 275/40 R 19 101 Y	-	2.2 / 32
F: 245/40 R 20 99 Y XL	2.5 / 36	-
R: 275/35 R 20 102 Y XL	-	2.6 / 38
F: 245/40 R 20 99 V XL M+S	2.2 / 32	-
R: 275/35 R 20 102 V XL M+S	-	2.4 / 35
F: 245/35 R 21 96 Y XL	2.5 / 36	-
R: 275/30 R 21 98 Y XL	-	2.8 / 41
Emergency wheel: T 135/80 R 18 104 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

Tire inflation pressures at max. speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h

Warning

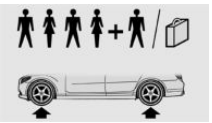
In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph/160 km/h, please observe, and, if necessary, adjust tire pressures for speeds exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h from the relevant table on the following pages. Otherwise, tire damage and accidents could occur.

For speeds over 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table and adjust as necessary.

Tire inflation pressure values over 100 mph/160 km/h

640i xDrive

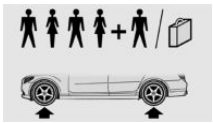
Without high-speed tuning feature

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
245/50 R 18 100 V A/S 245/50 R 18 100 H M+S	2.2 / 32	2.5 / 36

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1875
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
245/45 R 19 102 V XL A/S 245/45 R 19 102 V XL M+S	2.2 / 32	2.6 / 38
F: 245/45 R 19 98 Y	2.2 / 32	-
Rear: 275/40 R 19 101 Y	-	2.2 / 32
F: 245/40 R 20 99 Y XL	2.5 / 36	-
R: 275/35 R 20 102 Y XL	-	2.6 / 38
F: 245/40 R 20 99 V XL M+S	2.4 / 35	-
R: 275/35 R 20 102 V XL M+S	-	2.6 / 38
F: 245/35 R 21 96 Y XL	2.5 / 36	-
R: 275/30 R 21 98 Y XL	-	2.8 / 41
Emergency wheel: T 135/80 R 18 104 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

With high-speed tuning feature

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
245/50 R 18 100 H M+S	2.2 / 32	2.5 / 36

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
245/45 R 19 102 V XL M+S	2.4 / 35	2.9 / 42
F: 245/45 R 19 98 Y	2.3 / 33	-
Rear: 275/40 R 19 101 Y	-	2.4 / 35
F: 245/40 R 20 99 Y XL	2.5 / 36	-
R: 275/35 R 20 102 Y XL	-	2.7 / 39
F: 245/40 R 20 99 V XL M+S	2.7 / 39	-
R: 275/35 R 20 102 V XL M+S	-	2.9 / 42
F: 245/35 R 21 96 Y XL	2.8 / 41	-
R: 275/30 R 21 98 Y XL	-	3.1 / 45
Emergency wheel: T 135/80 R 18 104 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

Tire identification marks

Tire size

245/45 R 18 96 Y

245: nominal width in mm

45: aspect ratio in %

R: radial tire code

18: rim diameter in inches

96: load rating, not for ZR tires

Y: speed rating, before the R on ZR tires

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1876

Maximum tire load

Maximum tire load is the maximum permissible weight for which the tire is approved.

Locate the maximum tire load on the tire sidewall and the Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR – on the certification label on the driver door B-pillar. Divide the tire load by 1.1. It must be greater than one-half of the vehicle's Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR. Note, front vs. rear GAWR and tire loads, respectively.

Speed letter

Designation	Maximum speed
Q	up to 100 mph/160 km/h
R	up to 106 mph/170 km/h
S	up to 112 mph/180 km/h
T	up to 118 mph/190 km/h
H	up to 131 mph/210 km/h
V	up to 150 mph/240 km/h
W	up to 167 mph/270 km/h
Y	up to 186 mph/300 km/h
(Y)	above 186 mph/300 km/h

Tire Identification Number

DOT-Code: DOT xxxx xxx 0120

xxxx: manufacturer code for the tire brand

xxx: tire size and tire design

0120: tire age

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

Tire age

Recommendation

Regardless of the tire tread, replace tires at least every 6 years.

Manufacture date

You can find the manufacture date of the tire on the tire's sidewall.

Designation	Manufacture date
DOT … 0120	1st week 2020

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

E.g.: Treadwear 200; Traction AA; Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades

Treadwear

Traction AA A B C

Temperature A B C

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. E.g., a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half, 1 g, times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.

Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfa-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1877
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

ces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades Band A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

⚠ Warning

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

RSC – Run-flat tires

Run-flat tires, refer to page 302, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the sidewall.

M+S

Winter and all-season tires with better cold weather performance than summer tires.

Tire tread

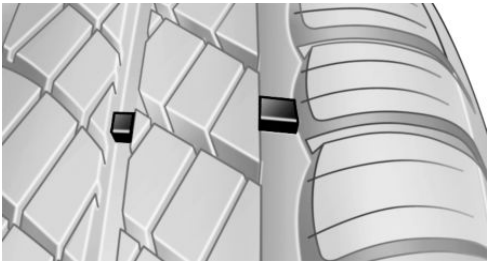
Summer tires

Do not drive with a tire tread of less than 0.12 in/3 mm, otherwise there is an increased risk of hydroplaning.

Winter tires

Do not drive with a tire tread of less than 0.16 in/4 mm, as such tires are less suitable for winter operation.

Minimum tread depth



Wear indicators are distributed around the tire circumference. They have the legally required minimum height of 0.063 in/1.6 mm.

The positions of the wear indicators are marked on the tire sidewall with TWI, Tread Wear Indicator.

Tire damage

General information

Inspect your tires regularly for damage, foreign objects lodged in the tread, and tread wear.

Driving over rough or damaged road surfaces, as well as debris, curbs and other obstacles can cause serious damage to wheels, tires and suspension parts. This is more likely to occur with low-profile tires, which provide less cushioning between the wheel and the road. Be careful to avoid road hazards and reduce your speed, es-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1878
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

pecially if your vehicle is equipped with low-profile tires.

Indications of tire damage or other vehicle malfunctions:

- Unusual vibrations.
- Unusual tire or running noises.
- Unusual handling such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.

Damage can be caused by the following situations, for instance:

- Driving over curbs.
- Road damage.
- Tire inflation pressure too low.
- Vehicle overloading.
- Incorrect tire storage.

Safety information

Warning

Damaged tires can lose tire inflation pressure, which can lead to loss of vehicle control. There is a risk of accident. If tire damage is suspected while driving, immediately reduce speed and stop. Have wheels and tires checked. For this purpose, drive carefully to the nearest dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Have vehicle towed or transported as needed. Do not repair damaged tires, but have them replaced.

Warning

Tires can become damaged by driving over obstacles, e.g., curbs or road damage, at high speed. Larger wheels have a smaller tire cross-section. The smaller the tire cross-section, the higher the risk of tire damage. There is a danger of accidents and property damage. If possible, avoid driving over objects or road conditions that may damage tires, or drive over them slowly and carefully.

Changing wheels and tires

Mounting and wheel balancing

Have mounting and wheel balancing carried out by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Wheel and tire combination

General information

You can ask the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop about the correct wheel/tire combination and wheel rim versions for the vehicle.

Safety information

Warning

Wheels and tires which are not suitable for your vehicle can damage parts of the vehicle, for instance due to contact with the body due to tolerances despite the same official size rating. There is a risk of an accident. The manufacturer of your vehicle strongly suggests that you use wheels and tires that have been recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for your vehicle type.

Warning

Mounted steel wheels can cause technical problems, for instance unexpected loosening of the lug bolts and damage to the brake discs. There is a risk of accident. Do not mount steel wheels.

Warning

Incorrect wheel/tire combinations will have a negative impact on the vehicle's handling and on the function of a variety of systems, such as the ABS Antilock Braking System or DSC Dynamic Stability Control. There is a risk of acci-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1879
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

dent. To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires with a single tread configuration from a single manufacturer. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you use wheels and tires that have been recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for your vehicle type. Following tire damage, have the original wheel/tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

Recommended tire brands

For each tire size, the manufacturer of the vehicle recommends certain tire brands. The tire brands can be identified by a star on the tire sidewall.

New tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new; they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Retreaded tires

Warning

Retreaded tires can have different tire casing structures. With advanced age the service life can be limited. There is a risk of an accident. The manufacturer of your vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

The manufacturer of the vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

Winter tires

General information

Winter tires are recommended for operating on winter roads.

Although so-called all-season M+S tires provide better winter traction than summer tires, they usually do not provide the same level of performance as winter tires.

Maximum speed of winter tires

If the maximum speed of the vehicle is higher than the permissible speed for the winter tires, then attach a label showing the permissible maximum speed in the field of view. The label is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

With winter tires mounted, observe and do not exceed the permissible maximum speed.

Changing runflat tires

For your own safety, use only runflat tires. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Rotating wheels between axles

Warning

Rotating tires between the axles on vehicles with different tire sizes or rim sizes on the front and rear axles can cause damage to the tires and the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Do not rotate the tires between the axles on vehicles with different tire sizes or rim sizes on the front and rear axles.

Different wear patterns can occur on the front and rear axles depending on individual driving conditions. The tires can be rotated in pairs be-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1880
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

tween the axles to achieve even wear. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. After rotating, check the tire pressure and correct, if needed.

Storing tires

Tire inflation pressure

Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the side wall of the tire.

Storage

- Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry and dark place.
- Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease, and solvents.
- Do not leave tires in plastic bags.
- Remove dirt from wheels or tires.

Run-flat tires

Concept

Run-flat tires permit continued driving under restricted conditions even in the event of a complete loss of tire inflation pressure.

General information

The wheels consist of tires that are self-supporting, to a limited degree, and possibly special rims.

The support of the sidewall allows the tire to remain drivable to a restricted degree in the event of a tire inflation pressure loss.

Follow the instructions for continued driving with a flat tire.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The vehicle handles differently when a run-flat tire has insufficient or no tire pressure; for instance, reduced lane stability when braking, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of accident. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Label

The tires are marked on the tire sidewall with Run-flat System Component RSC.

Repairing a flat tire

Safety measures

- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
- Switch on the hazard warning system.
- Secure the vehicle against rolling away by setting the parking brake.
- Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1881
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

▷ If necessary, set up a warning triangle at an appropriate distance.

Mobility System

Concept

With the Mobility System, minor tire damage can be sealed temporarily to enable continued travel. To accomplish this, sealant is pumped into the tires, which seals the damage from the inside.

General information

▷ Follow the instructions on using the Mobility System found on the compressor and sealant container.

▷ Use of the Mobility System may be ineffective if the tire puncture measures approx. 1/8 inches/4 mm or more.

▷ Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop if the tire cannot be made drivable.

▷ Do not remove foreign bodies that have penetrated the tire. Remove foreign objects only when they are visibly protruding from the tire.

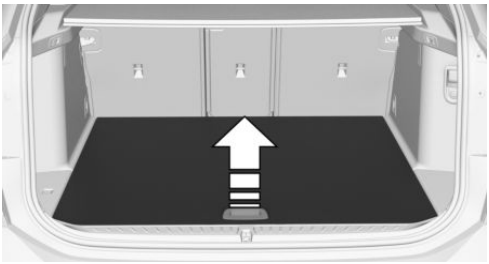
▷ Pull the speed limit sticker off the sealant container and apply it to the steering wheel.

▷ The use of a sealant can damage the wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics checked and replaced at the next opportunity.

▷ The compressor can be used to check the tire inflation pressure.

Overview

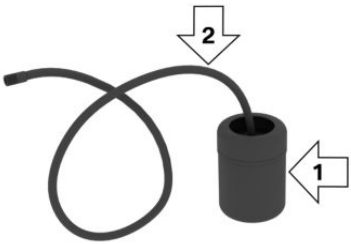
Storage



The Mobility System is located in the compartment under the cargo floor panel.

Fold up the cargo floor panel.

Sealant container

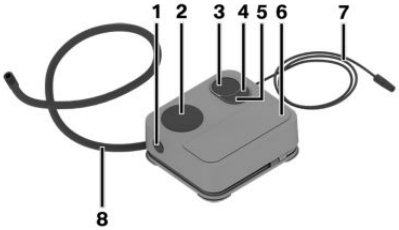


▷ Sealant container, arrow 1.

▷ Filling hose, arrow 2.

Observe use-by date on the sealant container.

Compressor



1 Sealant container unlocking
2 Sealant container holder
3 Tire pressure gage
4 Reduce tire inflation pressure button
5 On/off switch
6 Compressor
7 Connector/cable for socket
8 Connection hose

Safety measures

- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
- Switch on the hazard warning system.
- Secure the vehicle against rolling away by setting the parking brake.
- Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
- If necessary, set up a warning triangle at an appropriate distance.

Filling the tire with sealant

Safety information

⚠ DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can enter into the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.

⚠ NOTICE

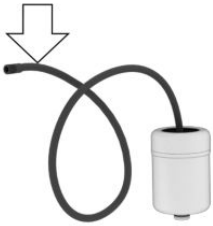
The compressor can overheat during extended operation. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not run the compressor for more than 10 minutes.

Filling

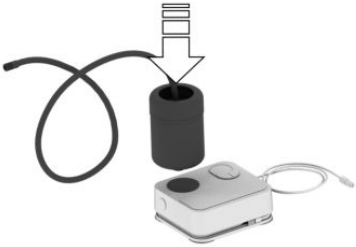
1. Shake the sealant container.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1883
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

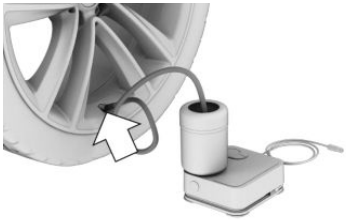
2. Pull filling hose completely out of the cover of the sealant container. Do not kink the hose.



3. Slide the sealant container into the holder on the compressor housing, ensuring that it engages audibly.



4. Screw the filling hose of the sealant container onto the tire valve of the nonworking wheel.



5. With the compressor switched off, insert the plug into the power socket inside the vehicle.

6. With standby state switched on or the engine running, switch on the compressor.

Let the compressor run for max. 10 minutes to fill the tire with sealant and achieve a tire inflation pressure of approx. 2.0 bar.

While the tire is being filled with sealant, the tire inflation pressure may sporadically reach approx. 5 bar. Do not switch off the compressor at this point.

Checking and adjusting the tire inflation pressure

Checking

1. Switch off the compressor.
2. Read the tire inflation pressure on the tire pressure gage.

To continue the trip, a tire inflation pressure of at least 2 bar must be reached.

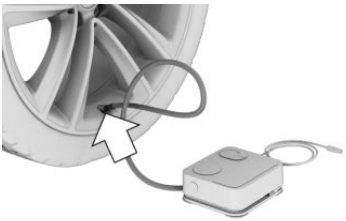
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1884
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Removing and stowing the sealant container

1. Unscrew the filling hose of the sealant container from the tire valve.
2. Press the red unlocking device.
3. Remove the sealant container from the compressor.
4. Wrap and store the sealant container in suitable material to avoid dirtying the cargo area.

Minimum tire inflation pressure is not reached

1. Pull the connector out of the power socket inside the vehicle.
2. Drive 33 ft/10 m forward and back to distribute the sealant in the tire.
3. Screw the connection hose of the compressor directly onto the tire valve stem.



4. Insert the connector into the power socket inside the vehicle.

5. With standby state switched on or the engine running, switch on the compressor.

   When the tire pressure does not reach at least 2 bar, contact a manufacturer service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

   When a tire pressure of at least 2 bar is reached, see Minimum tire inflation pressure is reached.
6. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
7. Pull the connector out of the power socket inside the vehicle.
8. Stow the Mobility System in the vehicle.

Minimum tire inflation pressure is reached

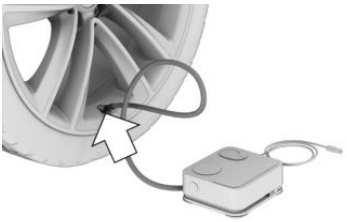
1. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
2. Pull the connector out of the power socket inside the vehicle.
3. Stow the Mobility System in the vehicle.
4. Immediately drive approx. 5 miles/10 km to ensure that the sealant is evenly distributed in the tire.

   Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

   If possible, do not drive at speeds less than 12 mph/20 km/h.

Adjustment

1. Stop at a suitable location.
2. Screw the connection hose of the compressor directly onto the tire valve stem.



BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1885
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

3. Insert the connector into the power socket inside the vehicle.

4. Correct the tire inflation pressure to at least 2.0 bar:
   - ▷ Increase tire inflation pressure: with standby state switched on or the engine running, switch on the compressor.
   - ▷ Reduce tire inflation pressure: press the button on the compressor.
5. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
6. Pull the connector out of the power socket inside the vehicle.
7. Stow the Mobility System in the vehicle.

Continuing the trip

Do not exceed the maximum permissible speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor again.

Replace the nonworking tire and the sealant container of the Mobility System promptly.

Additional information:

- ▷ Run-flat tires, refer to page 315.
- ▷ Tire pressure monitor, refer to page 308.

Snow chains

Safety information

Warning

With the mounting of snow chains on unsuitable tires, the snow chains can come into contact with vehicle parts. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Only mount snow chains on tires that are designated by their manufacturer as suitable for the use of snow chains.

Warning

Insufficiently tight snow chains may damage tires and vehicle components. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the snow chains are always sufficiently tight. Re-tighten as needed according to the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Fine-link snow chains

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends the use of fine-link snow chains. Certain types of fine-link snow chains have been tested by the manufacturer of the vehicle and recommended as road-safe and suitable.

Information regarding suitable snow chains is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Use

Use only in pairs on the rear wheels, equipped with the tires of the following size:

- ▷ 245/50 R 18.
- ▷ 245/45 R 19.

Follow the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1886

Do not initialize the Flat Tire Monitor after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

Do not reset the Tire Pressure Monitor after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

When driving with snow chains, briefly activate Dynamic Traction Control DTC to optimize the forward momentum.

Maximum speed with snow chains

Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h when using snow chains.

Rear axle steering during operation with snow chains

General information

In order to guarantee free running of the wheels when operating with snow chains, rear axle steering of the integral active steering must be switched off when snow chains are mounted.

Safety information

Warning

When rear axle steering is switched on and snow chains are mounted, there can be contact between snow chains and the chassis. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. With mounted snow chains, switch off the rear axle steering.

Switching off rear axle steering

The rear axle steering is switched off by specifying that snow chains are installed.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Tire chains"
5. "Snow chains installed"

Starting with the permissible maximum speed with snow chains of 30 mph/50 km/h the rear axle steering will be switched on again automatically.

Tire pressure monitor

Concept

The system monitors tire inflation pressure in the four mounted tires. The system warns you if there is a loss of pressure in one or more tires.

General information

Sensors in the tire valves measure the tire inflation pressure and tire temperature.

Using the tire settings in iDrive, the system can automatically display the specified target pressures and compare them with the actual tire inflation pressures.

If tires are being used that are not specified on the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle, such as tires with special approval, the system needs to be actively reset. The system will then take over the actual tire inflation pressures as the target pressures.

When operating the system, also note the information found in the Tire inflation pressure chapter.

Additional information:

Tire inflation pressure, refer to page 294.

Safety information

Warning

The display of the target pressures is not a substitute for the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle. Incorrect entries in the tire settings can lead to incorrect target tire inflation pressure values. In this case, it cannot be guar-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1887
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

anteed that the notification of a loss of tire inflation pressure will be reliable. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Ensure that the tire sizes of the mounted tires are displayed correctly and match the details on the tires and on the vehicle.

Functional requirements

The following conditions must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable flagging of a loss of tire inflation pressure is not assured:

- Every time a tire or wheel is changed, the correct details on the mounted tires must be entered in the tire settings.
- The Tire Pressure Monitor does not activate until after driving for a few minutes:
  - After a tire or wheel replacement.
  - After a reset, for tires with special approval.
  - After changing the tire setting.
- For tires with special approval:
  - After a tire or wheel replacement, a reset was performed with the correct tire inflation pressure.
  - After the tire inflation pressure was adjusted to a new value, a reset was performed.
- Wheels with wheel electronics.

Tire settings

General information

The tire sizes of the mounted tires can be gathered from the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle or directly on the tires.

The tire details do not need to be re-entered when the tire inflation pressure is corrected.

For summer and winter tires, the tire details entered last are stored. After a tire or wheel replacement, the settings of the tire sets used last can be selected.

Changing settings

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor"
4. "Tire settings"
5. "Tire selection"
6. "Manual"
7. "Tire type"
   - "Summer"
   - "Winter/All-year"
8. Select the tire type that is mounted on the rear axle:
   - Tire size, e.g., 245/45 R18 96 Y.
   - For tires with special approval: "Other tires".

   Observe further proceeding in the perform a reset section.
9. Select the maximum road speed that will be used with the tires.
10. "Save tire settings"

The measurement of the current tire inflation pressure is started. The measurement progress is displayed.

Status display

Current status

The system status can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g., whether or not the system is active.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor"

The current status is displayed.

Current tire inflation pressure

The current tire inflation pressure is displayed for each tire.

The current tire inflation pressures may change during driving operation or depending on the external temperature.

Target pressure

The target pressure for the tires on the front and rear axles is displayed.

The specified target pressures take the influence of driving operation and external temperature on the tire temperature into account. The appropriate target pressure is always displayed, independent of the weather situation, tire temperatures and driving times.

The displayed target pressure may change and may differ from the tire inflation pressure details on the door pillar of the driver's door. The tire inflation pressure can thus be corrected to the value of the displayed target pressures.

The target pressure is immediately adjusted if the vehicle load is changed in the tire settings.

Tire conditions

General information

Tire and system status are indicated by the color of the wheels and a SMS text message on the Control Display.

Any existing messages may not be deleted if the displayed target pressure is not reached after the tire inflation pressure is corrected.

All wheels green

- The system is active and bases warnings on the displayed target pressures.
- For tires with special approval: the system is active and bases warnings on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

One to four yellow wheels

A flat tire or major drop in the tire inflation pressure has occurred in the indicated tires.

Gray wheels

It may not be possible to identify tire inflation pressure losses.

Possible causes:

- Malfunction.
- During tire inflation pressure measurement, after confirmation of the tire settings.
- For tires with special approval: a reset is performed for the system.

For tires with special approval: perform a reset

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor"
4. Make sure that correct tire settings have been made.

   Tire settings, refer to page 309.
5. Switch on drive-ready state and do not drive off.
6. Reset tire inflation pressure: "Perform reset".
7. Drive away.

The wheels are displayed in gray and the following is displayed "Resetting tire pressure…".

After a travel time of several minutes, the set tire inflation pressures are accepted as the target tire inflation pressures. The reset is completed automatically while driving.

After a successfully completed reset, the wheels on the Control Display are shown in green and the following is displayed: "Reset successful."

You may interrupt this trip at any time. When you continue the reset resumes automatically.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1889
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Messages: for tires without special approval

General information

A low tire inflation pressure may cause the DSC Dynamic Stability Control to be switched on.

Safety information

Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. Run-flat tires can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is equipped with normal tires. Follow the information on run-flat tires and continued driving with these tires.

If a tire inflation pressure check is required

Message

A symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	Inflation was not carried out according to specifications, for instance when the tire has not been sufficiently inflated or in the case of a natural steady tire pressure loss.

Measure

Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.

If the tire inflation pressure is too low

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a tire inflation pressure loss.

Measure

1. Reduce the vehicle speed. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph/130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, for instance at a gas station, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires and correct if necessary.

If there is a significant loss of tire inflation pressure

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with the affected tire appears in a Check Control message on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with normal tires or run-flat tires.

   Run-flat tires are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire's sidewall.

   Run-flat tires, refer to page 302.
3. Read the description on What to do in case of a flat tire.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1890
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Actions in the event of a flat tire, refer to page 313.

Messages: for tires with special approval

General information

A low tire inflation pressure may cause the DSC Dynamic Stability Control to be switched on.

Safety information

Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. Run-flat tires can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is equipped with normal tires. Follow the information on run-flat tires and continued driving with these tires.

If a tire inflation pressure check is required

Message

A symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	Inflation was not carried out according to specifications, e.g., the tire has not been sufficiently inflated. The system has detected a wheel change, but no reset was done. The tire inflation pressure has fallen below the level of the last reset. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.
2. Perform a system reset.

If the tire inflation pressure is too low

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a tire inflation pressure loss. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Reduce the vehicle speed. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph/130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, for instance at a gas station, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires and correct if necessary.
3. Reset the system.

If there is a significant loss of tire inflation pressure

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with the affected tire appears in a Check Control message on the Control Display.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1891
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with normal tires or run-flat tires.

   Run-flat tires are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire's sidewall.

   Run-flat tires, refer to page 302.
3. Read the description on What to do in case of a flat tire.

   Actions in the event of a flat tire, refer to page 313.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

Normal tires

1. Identify the damaged tire.

   Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure gage of a flat tire kit.

   For tires with special approval: when the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been reset. In this case, perform the reset.

   If tire damage cannot be found, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
2. Repair the flat tire, e.g., with a flat tire kit or by changing the wheel.

Use of sealant, for instance from the flat tire kit, may damage the wheel electronics. Have the electronics replaced at the next opportunity.

Run-flat tires

Safety information

Warning

The vehicle handles differently when a run-flat tire has insufficient or no tire pressure; for instance, reduced lane stability when braking, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of accident. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Maximum speed

You may continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

Continued driving with a flat tire

Follow the following when continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

Possible driving range with a depressurized tire

The distance for which it may be possible to drive safely varies depending on how the vehicle is loaded and used, e.g., speed, road conditions, external temperature. The driving range may be less but may also be more if an economical driving style is used.

If the vehicle is loaded with an average weight and used under favorable conditions, the distance for which it may be safe to drive may be up to 50 miles/80 km.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1892
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Vehicle handling with damaged tires

Vehicles driven with a damaged tire will handle differently, potentially leading to conditions such as the following:

- Greater likelihood of swerving off course.
- Longer braking distances.
- Changed self-steering properties.

Modify your driving style. Avoid abrupt steering maneuvers or driving over obstacles, for instance curbs or potholes.

Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire.

Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident.

Do not continue driving. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

System limits

Temperature

The tire inflation pressure depends on the tire's temperature.

Driving or exposure to the sun will increase the tire's temperature, thus increasing the tire inflation pressure.

The tire inflation pressure is reduced when the tire temperature falls again.

These circumstances may cause a warning when temperatures fall very sharply.

Following a temperature-related warning, the target pressures are displayed on the Control Display again after a short distance.

Sudden tire pressure loss

The system cannot indicate sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances.

Failure performing a reset

Tires with special approval: the system will not function correctly if a reset was not performed, for example a flat tire may be indicated although the tire inflation pressures are correct.

Malfunction

Message

The yellow warning light flashes and is then illuminated continuously. A Check Control message is displayed. It may not be possible to identify tire pressure losses.

Measure

- A wheel without wheel electronics is mounted: have the wheels checked, if needed.
- Interference caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- For tires with special approval: the system was unable to complete the reset. Perform a system reset again.

Malfunction: have the system checked.

Declaration according to NHTSA/ FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Each tire, including the spare (if provided) should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.) As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accord-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1893
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

ingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale. Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Flat Tire Monitor FTM

Concept

The system detects tire inflation pressure loss on the basis of rotation speed differences between the individual wheels while driving.

In the event of a tire inflation pressure loss, the diameter and therefore the rotational speed of the corresponding wheel changes. The difference will be detected and reported as a flat tire.

The system does not measure the actual inflation pressure in the tires.

Functional requirements

The following conditions must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable flagging of a loss of tire inflation pressure is not assured:

- After a tire or wheel replacement, an initialization was performed with the correct tire inflation pressure.
- After the tire pressure was adjusted to a new value, an initialization was performed.

Status display

The current status of the Flat Tire Monitor FTM can be displayed, for instance whether the FTM is active.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Flat Tire Monitor"

The status is displayed.

Initialization required

An initialization must be performed in the following situations:

- After the tire inflation pressure has been adjusted.
- After a tire or wheel replacement.

Performing initialization

When initializing, the set tire inflation pressures serve as reference values in order to detect a flat tire. Initialization is started by confirming the tire inflation pressures.

Do not initialize the system when driving with snow chains.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1894

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Flat Tire Monitor"
4. Switch on drive-ready state and do not drive off.
5. Start the initialization with: "Perform reset"
6. Drive away.

The initialization is completed while driving, which can be interrupted at any time.

The initialization automatically continues when driving resumes.

Messages

General information

When a flat tire is indicated, DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if needed.

Safety information

Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. Run-flat tires can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is equipped with normal tires. Follow the information on run-flat tires and continued driving with these tires.

Indication of a flat tire

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with normal tires or run-flat tires.

   Run-flat tires are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire's sidewall.

   Run-flat tires, refer to page 302.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

Normal tires

1. Identify the damaged tire.

   To do this, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure gage of a flat tire kit.

   When the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor FTM may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

   If identification of flat tire damage is not possible, please contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
2. Repair the flat tire, e.g., with a flat tire kit or by changing the wheel.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1895
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Run-flat tires

Safety information

Warning

The vehicle handles differently when a run-flat tire has insufficient or no tire pressure; for instance, reduced lane stability when braking, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of accident. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Maximum speed

You may continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

Continued driving with a flat tire

Follow the following when continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

   When the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

Possible driving range with a depressurized tire

The distance for which it may be possible to drive safely varies depending on how the vehicle is loaded and used, e.g., speed, road conditions, external temperature. The driving range may be less but may also be more if an economical driving style is used.

If the vehicle is loaded with an average weight and used under favorable conditions, the distance for which it may be safe to drive may be up to 50 miles/80 km.

Vehicle handling with damaged tires

Vehicles driven with a damaged tire will handle differently, potentially leading to conditions such as the following:

- Greater likelihood of swerving off course.
- Longer braking distances.
- Changed self-steering properties.

Modify your driving style. Avoid abrupt steering maneuvers or driving over obstacles, for instance curbs or potholes.

Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire.

Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident.

Do not continue driving. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

System limits

The system could be delayed or malfunction in the following situations:

- A natural, even tire inflation pressure loss in all four tires will not be recognized. Therefore, check the tire inflation pressure regularly.
- Sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances cannot be recognized in advance.
- The system has not been initialized.
- When driving on a snowy or slippery road surface.
- Sporty driving style: spinning traction wheels, high lateral acceleration (drifting).
- When driving with snow chains.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1896
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Changing wheels/tires

General information

When using run-flat tires or a flat tire kit, a wheel does not always need to be changed immediately when there is a loss of tire inflation pressure due to a flat tire.

If needed, the tools for changing wheels are available as accessories from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

⚠ DANGER

The vehicle jack is only provided for short-term lifting of the vehicle for wheel changes. Even if all safety measures are observed, there is a risk of the raised vehicle falling, if the vehicle jack tips over. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. If the vehicle is raised, do not lie under the vehicle and do not start the engine.

⚠ DANGER

Supports such as wooden blocks under the vehicle jack reduce the capacity of the vehicle jack to bear weight. They have the potential to exert too much strain on the vehicle jack, causing it to tip over and the vehicle to fall. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not place supports under the vehicle jack.

⚠ Warning

The jack, issued by the vehicle manufacturer, is provided in order to perform a wheel change in the event of a breakdown. The jack is not designed for frequent use; for example, changing from summer to winter tires. Using the jack frequently may cause it to become jammed or damaged. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only use the jack to attach an emergency or spare wheel in the event of a breakdown.

⚠ Warning

On soft, uneven or slippery ground, for example snow, ice, tiles, etc., the vehicle jack can slip away. There is a risk of injury. If possible, change the wheel on a flat, solid, and slip-resistant surface.

⚠ Warning

The vehicle jack is optimized for lifting the vehicle and for the jacking points on the vehicle only. There is a risk of injury. Do not lift any other vehicle or cargo using the vehicle jack.

⚠ Warning

When the vehicle jack is not inserted into the jacking point provided for this purpose, the vehicle may be damaged or the vehicle jack may slip when it is being cranked up. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. When cranking up the vehicle jack, ensure that it is inserted in the jacking point next to the wheel housing.

⚠ Warning

A vehicle that is raised on a vehicle jack may fall off of the jack if lateral forces are exerted on it. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. While the vehicle is raised, do not exert lateral forces on the vehicle or pull abruptly on the vehicle. Have a stuck wheel removed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1897
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Securing the vehicle against rolling

General information

The vehicle manufacturer recommends to additionally secure the vehicle against rolling away when changing a wheel.

On a level surface

Place wheel chocks or other suitable objects in front and behind the wheel that is diagonal to the wheel to be changed.

On a slight downhill gradient

If you need to change a wheel on a slight downhill grade, place chocks and other suitable objects, for instance a rock, under the wheels of both the front and rear axles against the rolling direction.

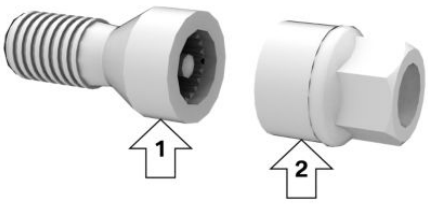
Lug bolt lock

Concept

The wheel lug bolts have a special coding. The lug bolts can only be released with the adapter which matches the coding.

Overview

The adapter of the lug bolt lock is in the onboard vehicle tool kit or in a storage compartment close to the onboard vehicle tool kit.



- ▷ Lug bolt, arrow 1.
- ▷ Adapter, arrow 2.

Unscrewing

1. Attach the adapter to the lug bolt.
2. Unscrew the lug bolt.
3. Remove the adapter after unscrewing the lug bolt.

Screwing on

1. Attach the adapter to the lug bolt. If necessary, turn the adapter until it fits on the lug bolt.
2. Screw on the lug bolt. The tightening torque is 140 Nm.
3. Remove the adapter and stow it after screwing on the lug bolt.

Preparing the vehicle

- ▷ Park the vehicle on solid and non-slip ground at a safe distance from traffic.

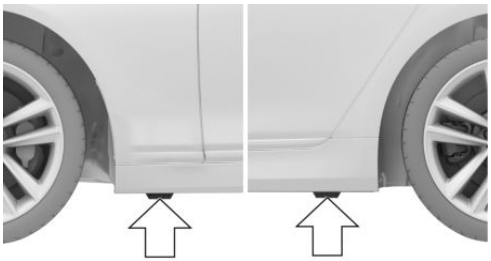
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1898

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

- Switch on the hazard warning system.
- Set the parking brake.
- Engage a gear or move the selector lever to position P.
- As soon as permitted by the traffic flow, have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
- Depending on the vehicle equipment, get wheel change tools and, if necessary, the emergency wheel from the vehicle.
- If necessary, set up a warning triangle or portable hazard warning light at an appropriate distance.
- Secure the vehicle additionally against rolling.
- Loosen the lug bolts a half turn.
- Deactivate the air suspension level adjustment.

  Two axle self-leveling suspension, refer to page 242.

Jacking points for the vehicle jack



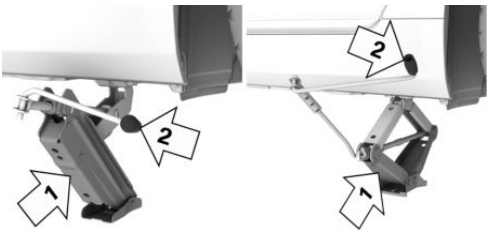
The jacking points for the vehicle jack are located at the indicated positions.

Jacking up the vehicle

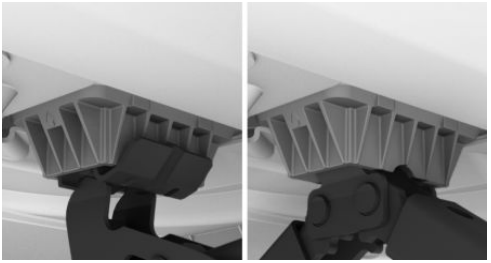
Warning

Hands and fingers can be jammed when using the vehicle jack. There is a risk of injury. Comply with the described hand position and do not change this position while using the vehicle jack.

1. Hold the vehicle jack with one hand, arrow 1, and grasp the vehicle jack crank or lever with your other hand, arrow 2.



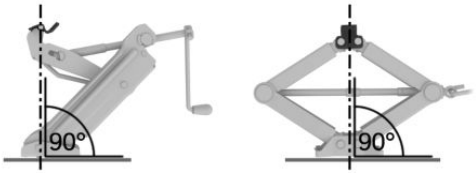
2. Insert the vehicle jack into the rectangular recess of the jacking point closest to the wheel to be changed.



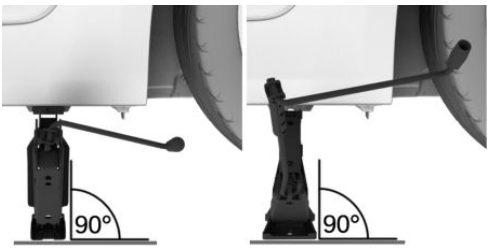
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1899
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

3. Extend the vehicle jack by turning the vehicle jack crank or lever clockwise.

4. Take your hand away from the vehicle jack as soon as the vehicle jack is under load and continue turning the vehicle jack crank or lever with one hand.
5. Make sure that the vehicle jack foot stands vertically and at a right angle beneath the jacking point.



6. Make sure that the vehicle jack foot stands vertically and perpendicularly beneath the jacking point after extending the vehicle jack.



7. Crank the vehicle up, until the vehicle jack is with the entire surface on the ground and the relevant wheel is maximum 1.2 inches/3 cm above ground.

Mounting a wheel

Mount one emergency wheel only, as required.

1. Unscrew the lug bolts.
2. Remove the wheel.
3. Put the new wheel or emergency wheel on and screw in at least two lug bolts in a crosswise pattern until hand-tight.

   When non-original light-alloy wheels of the vehicle manufacturer are mounted, the accompanying lug bolts may have to be used as well.
4. Hand-tighten the remaining lug bolts and tighten all lug bolts well in a crosswise pattern.
5. Turn the vehicle jack crank counterclockwise to retract the vehicle jack and lower the vehicle.
6. Remove the vehicle jack and stow it securely.

After the wheel change

1. Tighten the lug bolts crosswise. The tightening torque is 101 lbs ft/140 Nm.
2. Stow the nonworking wheel in the cargo area, if necessary.

   The nonworking wheel cannot be stored under the cargo floor panel because of its size.
3. Check tire inflation pressure at the next opportunity and correct as needed.
4. Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

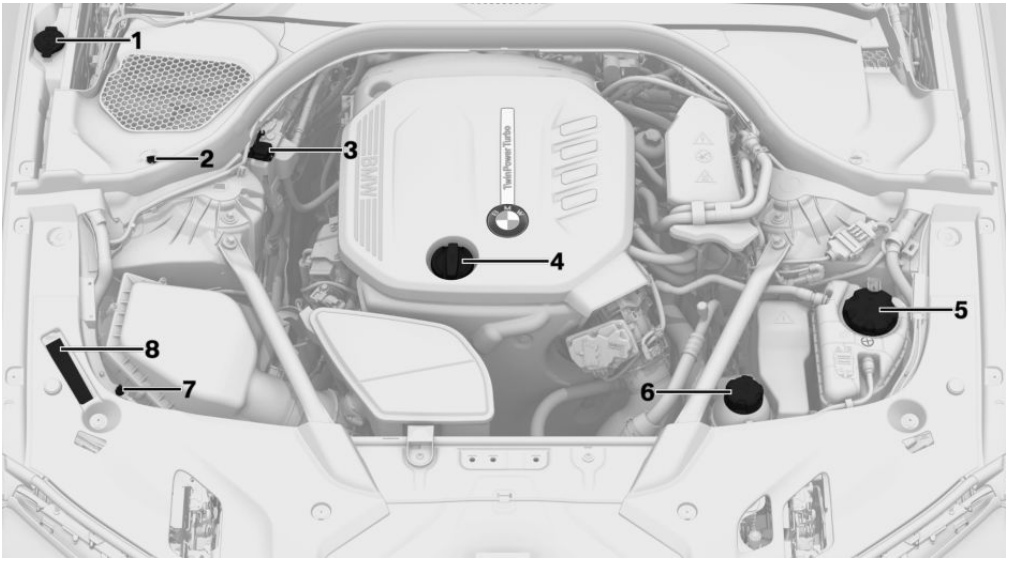
   Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor again.
5. Check to make sure the lug bolts are tight with a calibrated torque wrench.
6. Have the damaged tire replaced at the nearest dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Engine compartment

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Overview



1 Filler neck for washer fluid
2 Mild Hybrid technology, lid
3 Jump-starting, positive battery terminal
4 Oil filler neck
5 Coolant reservoir, engine
6 Coolant reservoir, auxiliary cooling
7 Jump-starting, negative battery terminal
8 Vehicle identification number

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1901
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Hood

Safety information

Warning

Improperly executed work in the engine compartment can damage vehicle components and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of an accident and damage to property. Have work in the engine compartment performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

The engine compartment accommodates moving components. Certain components in the engine compartment can also move with the vehicle switched off, for instance the radiator fan. There is a risk of injury. Do not reach into the area of moving parts. Keep articles of clothing and hair away from moving parts.

Warning

There are protruding parts, for instance locking hook, on the inside of the hood. There is a risk of injury. If the hood is open, pay attention to protruding parts and keep clear of these areas.

Warning

An incorrectly locked hood can open while driving and restrict visibility. There is a risk of accident. Stop immediately and correctly close the hood.

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when opening and closing the hood. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the hood is clear during opening and closing.

NOTICE

Folded-away wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.

NOTICE

When the hood is closed, it must engage on both sides. Pressing again can damage the hood. There is a risk of damage to property. Open the hood again and then close it energetically. Avoid pressing again.

Opening

1. Pull lever, arrow 1.

   Hood is unlocked.

2. After the lever is released, pull the lever again, arrow 2.

   Hood can be opened.

3. Be careful of protruding parts on the hood.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1902
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Closing

Energetically close the hood from approx. 20 in/50 cm.

The hood must engage on both sides.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1903
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Operating materials

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Fuel recommendation

General information

Depending on the region, many gas stations sell fuel that has been customized to winter or summer conditions. Fuel that is available in winter, for instance helps make a cold start easier.

Gasoline

General information

For the best fuel efficiency, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.

Fuels with a maximum ethanol content of 25 %, i. e. E10 or E25, may be used for refueling.

Ethanol should meet the following quality standards:

US: ASTM 4806–xx

CAN: CGSB-3.511–xx

xx: comply with the current standard in each case.

Safety information

⚠ CAUTION

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in harmful engine deposits or damage. Additionally, problems relating to drivability, starting and stalling, especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude, may occur.

If drivability problems are encountered, we recommend switching to a high quality gasoline brand and a higher octane grade — AKI number — for a few tank fills. To avoid harmful engine deposits, it is highly recommended to purchase gasoline from Top Tier retailers.

Failure to comply with these recommendations may result in the need for unscheduled maintenance.

⚠ NOTICE

Even small quantities of the wrong fuel or wrong fuel additives can damage the fuel system and engine. Furthermore, the catalytic converter is permanently damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not refuel or add the following in the case of gasoline engines:

- Leaded gasoline.
- Metallic additives, for instance manganese or iron.

Do not press the Start/Stop button after refueling with the wrong fuel. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

NOTICE

Incorrect fuels can damage the fuel system and the engine. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use fuels with a higher percentage of ethanol than recommended. Do not refuel with fuels containing methanol, e.g. M5 to M100.

NOTICE

Fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality can compromise engine function or cause engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not fill with fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality.

Recommended fuel grade

BMW recommends AKI 91.

Refuel with this gasoline to achieve the rated performance and consumption values.

Minimum fuel grade

BMW recommends AKI 89.

If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI Rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high external temperatures. This has no effect on the engine life.

BMW recommends Shell Quality Fuels

Engine oil

General information

The engine oil consumption is dependent on your driving style and driving conditions.

Therefore, regularly check the engine oil level after refueling by taking a detailed measurement.

The engine oil consumption can increase in the following situations, for instance:

- Sporty driving style.
- Break-in of the engine.
- Idling of the engine.
- With use of engine oil types that are classified as not suitable.

Different Check Control messages appear on the Control Display depending on the engine oil level.

Safety information

NOTICE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Immediately add engine oil.

NOTICE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add too much engine oil. When too much engine oil is added, have the engine oil level corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Electronic oil measurement

General information

The electronic oil measurement has two measuring principles:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1905
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

- Monitoring.
- Detailed measurement.

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a dynamic driving style, for instance when taking curves aggressively, regularly perform a detailed measurement.

Monitoring

Concept

The engine oil level is monitored electronically while driving and can be shown on the Control Display.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.

A red indicator light indicates that the engine oil pressure is too low.

Functional requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of normal driving.

Displaying the engine oil level

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"

The engine oil level is displayed.

System limits

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a dynamic driving style, it may not be possible to calculate a measured value. In this case, the measured value for the last, sufficiently long trip is displayed.

Detailed measurement

Concept

The engine oil level is checked when the vehicle is stationary and displayed via a scale.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.

General information

During the measurement, the idle speed is increased somewhat.

Functional requirements

- Vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- Selector lever in selector lever position N or P and accelerator pedal not depressed.
- Engine is running and is at operating temperature.

Performing a detailed measurement

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"
4. "Engine oil measurement"
5. "Start measurement"

The engine oil level is checked and displayed via a scale.

Adding engine oil

General information

Only add engine oil when the message is displayed in the instrument cluster. The quantity to be added is indicated in the message shown on the Control Display.

Only add suitable types of engine oil.

Safely park the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before adding engine oil.

Take care not to add too much engine oil.

Safety information

Warning

Operating materials, for instance oils, greases, coolants, fuels, can contain harmful ingredients. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Follow the instructions on the containers. Avoid the contact of articles of clothing, skin or eyes with operating materials. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.

NOTICE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Immediately add engine oil.

NOTICE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add too much engine oil. When too much engine oil is added, have the engine oil level corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Overview

The oil filler neck is located in the engine compartment.

Additional information:

For an overview, refer to page 322.

Adding engine oil

1. Open the hood.

   Opening, refer to page 323.
2. Open the lid counterclockwise.

3. Add engine oil.
4. Close the lid.

Engine oil types to add

General information

The engine oil quality is critical for the life of the engine.

Only add the types of engine oil which are listed.

Safety information

NOTICE

Oil additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use oil additives.

NOTICE

Incorrect engine oil can cause malfunctions in the engine or damage it. There is a risk of damage to property. When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has the correct oil rating.

Suitable engine oil types

Add engine oils that meet the following oil rating standards:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1907
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Gasoline engine
BMW Longlife-01 FE.
BMW Longlife-14 FE+.
BMW Longlife-17 FE+.

Alternative engine oil types

If an engine oil suitable for continuous use is not available, up to 1 US quart/liter of an engine oil with the following oil rating can be added:

Oil rating
API SL.
API SM.
API SN.

Viscosity grades

Viscosity grades
SAE 0W-20.
SAE 0W-30.

More information about suitable oil ratings and viscosity grades of engine oils can be requested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Engine oil change

NOTICE

Engine oil that is not changed in timely fashion can cause increased engine wear and thus engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. It is recommended that you do not exceed the service intervals indicated in the vehicle.

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop change the engine oil.

BMW recommends
Original BMW Engine Oil.

Coolant

General information

Coolant consists of water and additives.

Not all commercially available additives are suitable for the vehicle. Do not mix additives of different colors. Observe the water - additive mixing ratio of 50:50. Information about suitable additives is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Warning

With the engine hot and the cooling system open, coolant can escape and lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury. Only open the cooling system with the engine cooled down.

Warning

Additives are harmful and incorrect additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Do not allow additives to come into contact with skin, eyes or articles of clothing. Use suitable additives only.

Coolant level

General information

Vehicles with gasoline engine feature two cooling circuits. Always check the coolant levels of both coolant reservoirs and refill as needed.

The coolant level is indicated using minimum and maximum markings in the filler neck of the coolant reservoir.

Depending on the engine installation, the coolant reservoir is located on the right side or the left side of the engine compartment.

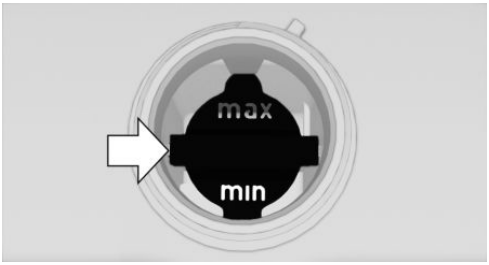
Additional information:

For an overview, refer to page 322.

Checking the coolant level in the filler neck

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Open the hood.

   Opening, refer to page 323.
3. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.
4. Open the coolant reservoir lid.
5. The coolant level is correct if it lies between the minimum and maximum marks in the filler neck.



6. Close the lid.

Adding coolant

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Opening the hood.

   Opening, refer to page 323.
3. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.
4. Open the coolant reservoir lid.
5. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to the specified level; do not overfill.
6. Close the lid.
7. Have the cause of the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.

Disposal

Comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant and coolant additives.

Washer fluid

General information

All washer nozzles are supplied from one reservoir.

Use a mixture of tap water and windshield washer concentrate. If desired, a windshield washer concentrate containing antifreeze can be used.

Recommended minimum fill quantity:
0.2 US gal/1 liter.

Safety information

Warning

Some antifreeze agents can contain harmful substances and are flammable. There is a risk of fire and a risk of injury. Follow the instructions on the containers. Keep antifreeze away from ignition sources. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1909
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

United States: the washer fluid mixture ratio is regulated by the U.S. EPA and many individual states; do not exceed the allowable washer fluid dilution ratio limits that apply. Follow the usage instructions on the washer fluid container.

Use of BMW's Windshield Washer Concentrate or the equivalent is recommended.

Warning

Washer fluid can ignite and catch fire on contact with hot engine parts. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Only add washer fluid when the engine is cooled down. Next, fully close the lid of the washer fluid reservoir.

NOTICE

Silicon-containing additives in the washer fluid for the water-repelling effect on the windows can lead to damage to the washing system. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add silicon-containing additives to the washer fluid.

NOTICE

Mixing different windshield washer concentrates or antifreeze can damage the washing system. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not mix different windshield washer concentrates or antifreeze. Follow the information and mixing ratios provided on the containers.

Overview

The washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment.

Malfunction

The use of undiluted windshield washer concentrate or alcohol-based antifreeze can lead to incorrect readings at temperatures below +5 °F/-15 °C.

Maintenance

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

BMW maintenance system

The maintenance system provides service notifications and thereby provides support in maintaining road safety and the operational reliability of the vehicle.

In some cases, scopes and intervals of the maintenance system may vary according to the country version. Replacement work, spare parts, fuels and lubricants, and wear materials are calculated separately. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Condition Based Service CBS

Concept

Sensors and special algorithms take into account the driving conditions of the vehicle. CBS uses these to calculate the need for maintenance.

The system makes it possible to adapt the amount of maintenance corresponding to your user profile.

General information

Information on service notifications can be displayed on the Control Display.

Additional information:

Service notifications, refer to page 148.

Service data in the vehicle key

Information on the service notifications is continuously stored in the vehicle key. The service center can read this data out and suggest a maintenance scope for the vehicle.

Therefore, hand the service advisor the vehicle key with which the vehicle was driven most recently.

Storage periods

Storage periods during which the vehicle battery was disconnected are not taken into account.

If this occurs, have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop update the time-dependent maintenance procedures, such as checking brake fluid and, if necessary, changing the engine oil and the microfilter/activated-charcoal filter.

Maintenance Manual and Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

Please consult your Maintenance Manual and Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1911
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

the performance of service and maintenance work.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that maintenance and repair be performed by a service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Records of regular maintenance and repair work should be retained.

Socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis

General information

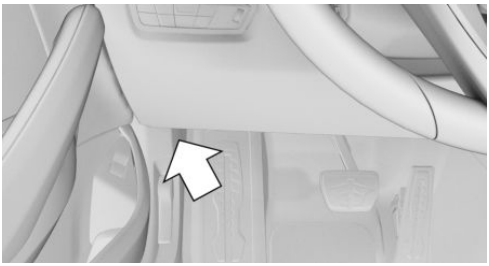
Devices connected to the OBD socket trigger the alarm system when the vehicle is locked. Remove any devices connected at the OBD socket before locking the vehicle.

Safety information

NOTICE

The socket for Onboard Diagnosis is an intricate component intended to be used in conjunction with specialized equipment to check the vehicle's primary emissions system. Improper use of the socket for Onboard Diagnosis, or contact with the socket for Onboard Diagnosis for other than its intended purpose, can cause vehicle malfunctions and creates risks of personal and property damage. Given the foregoing, the manufacture of your vehicle strongly recommends that access to the socket for Onboard Diagnosis be limited to a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or other persons that have the specialized training and equipment for purposes of properly utilizing the socket for Onboard Diagnosis.

Position



There is an OBD socket on the driver's side for checking the primary components in the vehicle's emissions.

Emissions

- The warning light lights up:

  Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

- The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:

  This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

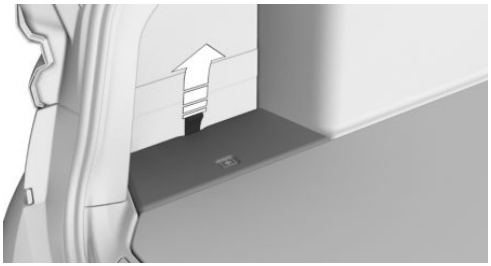
  Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

Replacing components

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Vehicle tool kit



The onboard vehicle tool kit is located in the left storage compartment of the cargo area.

Wiper blades

Safety information

NOTICE

The window may sustain damage if the wiper falls onto it without the wiper blade installed. There is a risk of damage to property. Hold the wiper firmly when changing the wiper blade. Do not fold or switch on the wiper without a wiper blade installed.

NOTICE

Folded-away wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.

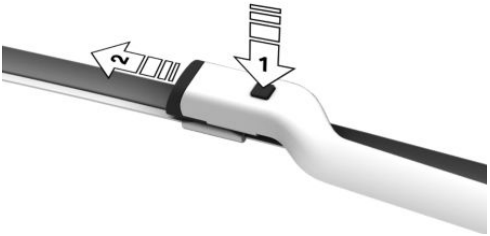
Replacing

1. To change the wiper blades, fold up the wiper arms.

   Fold-away position of the wipers, refer to page 133.

2. Lift the wiper off of the windshield and hold.

3. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull out the wiper blade, arrow 2.



BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1913
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

4. Insert the new wiper blade and press it on until it you hear it snap into the holder.
5. Fold down the wipers.

Lights and bulbs

General information

Lights and bulbs make an essential contribution to vehicle safety.

All headlights and lights are made using LED technology.

Some items of equipment use light-emitting diodes installed behind a cover as a light source. These light-emitting diodes are related to conventional lasers and are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you let a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop perform the work in case of a malfunction.

Safety information

Warning

Focused laser light can irritate or permanently damage the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that the work on the lighting system including bulb replacement be performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

Intensive brightness can irritate or damage the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. Do not look directly into the headlights or other light sources. Do not remove the LED covers.

Headlight glass

Condensation can form on the inside of the headlight glass in cool or humid weather. When driving with the lights switched on, the condensation evaporates after a short time. The headlight glass does not need to be changed.

If despite driving with the headlights switched on, increasing humidity forms, for instance water droplets in the light, have the headlights checked.

Vehicle battery

General information

The battery is maintenance-free.

More information about the battery can be requested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Warning

Vehicle batteries that are not compatible can damage vehicle systems and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of an accident and damage to property. Only vehicle batteries that are compatible with your vehicle type should be installed in your vehicle. Information on compatible vehicle batteries is available at your dealer's service center.

Register the battery to the vehicle

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you have a service center or another qualified service center or repair shop register the vehicle battery to the vehicle after the battery has been replaced. Once the battery has been registered again, all comfort features will be available without restriction and any Check Control mes-

sages displayed which relate to comfort features will disappear.

Charging the battery

General information

Make sure that the battery is always sufficiently charged to guarantee that the battery remains usable for its full service life.

A discharged battery is indicated by a red indicator light.

Charge the battery in the following situations:

- When the inspection glass on the top of the battery is black.
- When the take-off performance is insufficient.

The following circumstances can have a negative effect on the performance of the battery:

- Frequent short-distance drives.
- The vehicle is not used for more than a month.

Safety information

NOTICE

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery can work with high voltages and currents, which means that the 12 volt on-board network can be overloaded or damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.

Charging the battery

Charge the battery only when the engine is off and via the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.

Additional information:

Starting aid terminals, refer to page 342.

Power failure

After a power loss, some equipment needs to be newly initialized or individual settings updated, for example:

- With Memory function: store the positions again.
- Time: update.
- Date: update.
- Glass sunroof: initialize the system.

Disposing of old batteries

Have old batteries disposed of by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take them to a collection point.

Maintain the filled battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Secure the battery so that it does not tip over during transport.

Fuses

General information

The fuses are located at different places in the vehicle.

Safety information

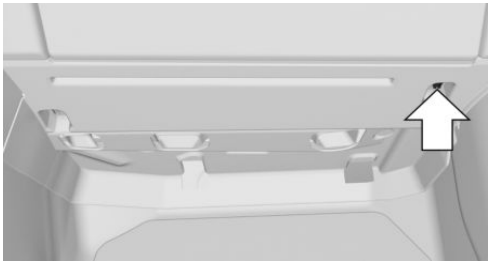
Warning

Incorrect and repaired fuses can overload electrical lines and components. There is a risk of fire. Never attempt to repair a blown fuse. Do not replace a nonworking fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating.

In the car's interior

The fuses are located in the car's interior in the front passenger floor area behind a cover.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1915
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

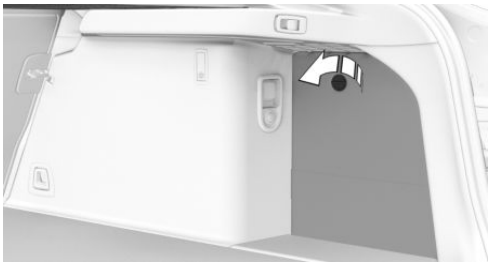


Release mounting, arrow, and carefully bend the trim panel down on the right side.

The fuse box is located on the front right.

In the cargo area

The fuses are located in the cargo area on the right side behind a cover.



Turn the handle and open the cover on the right side trim.

The fuse box may be located behind the sound insulation.

Information on the fuse types and locations, as well as the positions of any other fuse boxes, is available on the Internet: www.bmw.com/fusecard.

Where applicable, information on the fuse types and locations is also found on a separate sheet in the fuse box.

Additional fuse boxes

Additional fuse boxes are located in the vehicle. In the case of a malfunction, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Replacing fuses

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop replace the fuses.

Breakdown assistance

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Hazard warning flashers

The button is located in the center console.

The red light in the button flashes when the hazard warning flashers are activated.

Warning triangle

The warning triangle is located in the tailgate.

1. Turn the twist locks in the tailgate by 90° and fold down the trim.

2. Take the warning triangle out of the holder.

First-aid kit

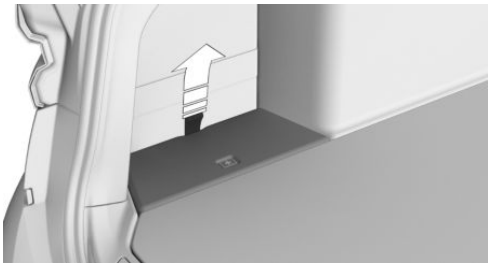
General information

Some of the articles have a limited service life.

Check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace any expired items promptly.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1917
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Storage



The first-aid kit is located under a cover on the left in the cargo area.

BMW Roadside Assistance

Concept

Contact the BMW Group Roadside Assistance if assistance is needed in the event of a breakdown.

General information

In the event of a breakdown, data on the vehicle's condition is transmitted to the BMW Roadside Assistance.

There are various ways of contacting BMW Roadside Assistance.

- Via a Check Control message.

  Supplementary SMS text messages, refer to page 142.
- Calling with a mobile phone.
- Via the BMW Connected app.

Functional requirements

- Active ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- Cellular network reception.
- Standby state is switched on.

Starting manually

If the vehicle is equipped with Teleservices, support is offered through Teleservice Diagnosis.

Via iDrive:

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "BMW Assist"
4. If necessary, "BMW Roadside Assistance"

   A voice connection is established.

Teleservice Diagnosis

Teleservice Diagnosis enables the wireless transmission of detailed vehicle data that is important for vehicle diagnosis. This data is transmitted automatically. It may be necessary to approve this on the Control Display.

Teleservice Help

Depending on the country, Teleservice Help enables an in-depth diagnosis of the vehicle by BMW Roadside Assistance via wireless transmission.

You can launch Teleservice Help by requesting it through BMW Roadside Assistance.

1. Park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Set the parking brake.
3. Control Display is switched on.
4. Confirm Teleservice Help.

BMW Accident Assistance

Concept

BMW Group Accident Assistance can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of an accident.

General information

If the vehicle sensors detect a minor to moderately severe accident, which did not trigger any

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1918
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

airbags, a Check Control message appears on the instrument cluster. In addition, a text message appears on the Control Display.

When BMW Accident Assistance is activated, data on the vehicle's condition is sent to BMW.

Functional requirements

- Active ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- Cellular network reception.
- Standby state is switched on.

Starting BMW Accident Assistance

If an accident is detected automatically

A text message relating to BMW Accident Assistance appears on the Control Display.

The connection can be established directly:

"Call BMW Accident Assistance"

The Check Control message for BMW Accident Assistance can also be called up from the stored Check Control messages for a certain length of time.

Additional information:

Check Control, refer to page 141.

Starting manually

BMW Accident Assistance can also be contacted independently of the automatic accident detection function.

Via iDrive:

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "BMW Assist"
4. "BMW Accident Assistance"

   Follow the displays on the Control Display. A voice connection is established.

Emergency Request

Intelligent emergency call

Concept

In case of an emergency, an Emergency Request can be triggered automatically by the system or manually.

General information

Only press the SOS button in an emergency.

The Intelligent Assist system establishes a connection with the BMW Response Center.

For technical reasons, the Emergency Request cannot be guaranteed under unfavorable conditions.

Overview

SOS button.

Functional requirements

- Standby state is switched on.
- The Assist system is functional.
- If the vehicle is equipped with intelligent emergency call: the SIM card integrated in the vehicle has been activated.

Automatic triggering

Under certain conditions, for instance if the airbags trigger, an Emergency Request is automatically initiated immediately after an accident of corresponding severity. Automatic Collision Noti-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1919
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

fication is not affected by pressing the SOS button.

Manual triggering

1. Tap the cover.
2. Press and hold the SOS button until the LED in the area of the button illuminates green.

▷ The LED is illuminated green when an Emergency Request has been initiated.

If a cancel prompt appears on the Control Display, the Emergency Request can be aborted.

If the situation allows, wait in your vehicle until the voice connection has been established.

▷ The LED flashes green when a connection to the BMW Response Center has been established.

The BMW Response Center then makes contact with the occupants of the vehicle and initiates further steps to help.

Even if you are unable to respond, the BMW Response Center can take further steps to help you under certain circumstances.

For this purpose, data that serves to determine the necessary rescue measures, for instance the current position of the vehicle when it can be determined, is transmitted to the BMW Response Center.

Even if the BMW Response Center is no longer heard through the loudspeakers, the BMW Response Center may still be able to hear the occupants of the vehicle.

The BMW Response Center ends the Emergency Request.

Jump-starting

General information

If the battery is discharged, the engine can be started using the battery of another vehicle and two jumper cables. Only use jumper cables with fully insulated clamp handles.

Safety information

⚠ DANGER

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.

⚠ Warning

If the jumper cables are connected in the incorrect order, sparking may occur. There is a risk of injury. Pay attention to the correct order during connection.

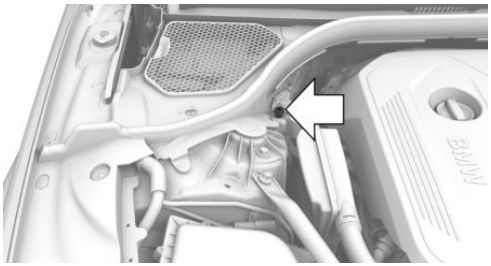
⚠ NOTICE

In the case of body contact between the two vehicles, a short circuit can occur during jump-starting. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that no body contact occurs.

Preparation

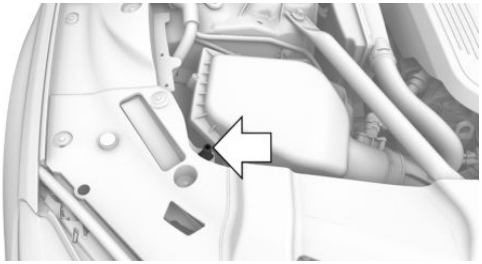
1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts. The voltage information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any electronic systems/power consumers in both vehicles.

Starting aid terminals



The starting aid terminal in the engine compartment acts as the battery's positive terminal.

Open the cover of the starting aid terminal.



A special nut serves as the negative terminal of the battery.

Connecting the cables

Before you begin, switch off all unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers, such as the radio, on the assisting and receiving vehicle.

1. Open the cover of the starting aid terminal.
2. Attach one terminal clamp of the positive jumper cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the terminal clamp on the other end of the cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one terminal clamp of the negative jumper cable to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of assisting vehicle.
5. Attach the second terminal clamp to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

Starting the engine

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.

1. Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run for several minutes at an increased idle speed.
2. Start the engine of the vehicle that is to be started in the usual way.

   If the first starting attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before making another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.
3. Let both engines run for several minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables in the reverse order.

Check the battery and recharge, if needed.

Tow-starting and towing

Safety information

Warning

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

Transporting the vehicle

General information

The vehicle is not permitted to be towed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1921
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Safety information

NOTICE

The vehicle can be damaged when towing the vehicle with a single lifted axle. There is a risk of damage to property. The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.

NOTICE

The vehicle can become damaged when lifting and securing it.

There is a risk of damage to property.

- ▷ Lift the vehicle using suitable means.
- ▷ Do not lift or secure the vehicle by its tow fitting, body parts, or suspension parts.

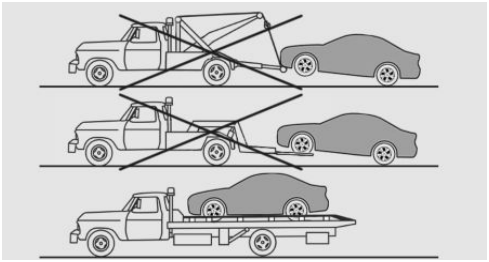
Pushing the vehicle

To remove a broken-down vehicle from the danger area, it can be pushed for a short distance.

Additional information:

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 135.

Tow truck



The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.

Towing other vehicles

General information

Switch on the hazard warning system, depending on local regulations.

If the electrical system has failed, clearly identify the vehicle being towed by placing a sign or a warning triangle in the rear window.

Safety information

Warning

If the approved gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is lighter than the vehicle to be towed, the tow fitting can tear off or it will not be possible to control the vehicle's response. There is a risk of accident. Make sure that the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is heavier than the vehicle to be towed.

NOTICE

If the tow bar or tow rope is attached incorrectly, damage to other vehicle parts can occur. There is a risk of damage to property. Correctly attach the tow bar or tow rope to the tow fitting.

Tow bar

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles.

Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an offset angle, please follow the following:

- ▷ Maneuvering capability is limited going around corners.
- ▷ The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is secured with an offset.

Tow rope

Observe the following notes when using the tow rope:

- ▷ Use nylon ropes or straps, which will enable the vehicle to be towed without jerking.
- ▷ Make sure the tow rope is not twisted when fastening.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1922
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

- Check the fastening of the tow fitting and tow rope in regular intervals.
- Do not exceed a towing speed of 30 mph/50 km/h.
- Do not exceed a towing distance of 3 miles/5 km.
- When starting to tow the vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

Tow fitting

General information

The screw-in tow fitting should always be carried in the vehicle.

The tow fitting can be screwed in at the front or rear of the vehicle.

The tow fitting is found in the onboard vehicle tool kit.

- Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle and screw it all the way in.
- Use the tow fitting for towing on paved roads only.
- Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, for instance do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting.
- Check the fastening of the tow fitting in regular intervals.

Additional information:

Onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 334.

Safety information

NOTICE

If the tow fitting is not used as intended, there may be damage to the vehicle or to the tow fitting. There is a risk of damage to property. Follow the notes on using the tow fitting.

Screw thread for tow fitting

Press on the mark on the edge of the cover to push it out.

Tow-starting

Do not tow-start the vehicle.

Start the engine by jump-starting, if possible.

Have the reasons for the starting difficulties corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Jump-starting, refer to page 341.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1923
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Care

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Washing the vehicle

General information

Regularly remove foreign objects such as leaves in the area below the windshield when the hood is raised.

Wash your vehicle frequently, particularly in winter. Intense soiling and road salt can damage the vehicle.

Steam blaster and high-pressure washer

Safety information

NOTICE

When cleaning with high-pressure washers, components can be damaged due to the pressure or temperatures being too high. There is a risk of damage to property. Maintain sufficient distance and do not spray too long continuously. Follow the operating instructions for the high-pressure washer.

Distances and temperature

- Maximum temperature: 140 °F/60 °C.
- Minimum distance from sensors, cameras, seals: 12 inches/30 cm.
- Minimum distance from glass sunroof: 31.5 in/80 cm.

Automatic vehicle washes

Safety information

NOTICE

Water can penetrate in the windshield area due to high-pressure washers. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not drive into high-pressure car wash systems.

NOTICE

Improper use of automatic washing systems or car washes can cause damage to the vehicle. There is a risk of damage to property. Follow the following instructions:

- Give preference to cloth car washes or those that use soft brushes in order to avoid paint damage.
- Do not drive through a car wash with guide rails higher than 4 in/10 cm to avoid damage to the chassis.
- Observe the tire width of the guide rail to avoid damage to tires and rims.
- Fold in exterior mirrors to avoid damage to the exterior mirrors.
- Deactivate the wiper and, if necessary, rain sensor to avoid damage to the wiper system.

Driving into a car wash with a Steptronic transmission

Safety information

NOTICE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not switch standby state off in vehicle washes.

General information

In a car wash, the vehicle must be able to roll freely.

Some car washes do not permit persons in the vehicle. The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside when in selector lever position N. A signal sounds when an attempt is made to lock the vehicle.

Additional information:

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 135.

Driving out of a car wash

Ensure that the vehicle key is in the car.

Switch on drive-ready state.

Additional information:

Drive-ready state, refer to page 38.

Headlights

Do not rub wet headlights dry and do not use abrasive or acidic cleaning agents.

Soak areas that have been dirtied, for instance from insects, with shampoo and wash off with water.

Thaw ice with de-icing spray; do not use an ice scraper.

After washing the vehicle

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them; otherwise, braking action can be reduced. The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Completely remove all residues on the windows, to minimize loss of visibility due to smearing and to reduce wiper noises and wiper blade wear.

Vehicle care

Vehicle care products

General information

BMW recommends using vehicle care and cleaning products from BMW. Suitable care products are available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Warning

Cleansers can contain substances that are dangerous and harmful to your health. There is a risk of injury. When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows. Only use products intended for cleaning vehicles. Follow the instructions on the container.

Vehicle paint

General information

Regular care contributes to driving safety and value retention. Environmental influences in areas with elevated air pollution or natural contaminants, such as tree resin or pollen can affect the vehicle's paintwork. Tailor the frequency and extent of your vehicle care to these influences.

Aggressive substances such as spilled fuel, oil, grease or bird droppings, must be removed immediately to prevent the finish from being altered or discolored.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1925
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Matte finish

Only use cleaning and care products suitable for vehicles with matte finish.

Leather care

Remove dust from the leather regularly, using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Otherwise, particles of dust and road grime chafe in pores and folds, and lead to increased wear and premature degradation of the leather surface.

To guard against discoloration, such as from clothing, clean leather and provide leather care roughly every two months.

Clean light-colored leather more frequently because soiling on such surfaces is substantially more visible.

Use leather care products; otherwise, dirt and grease will gradually break down the protective layer of the leather surface.

Upholstery material care

General information

Vacuum the upholstery regularly with a vacuum cleaner.

If upholstery is very dirty, for instance with beverage stains, use a soft sponge or microfiber cloth with a suitable interior cleaner.

Clean the upholstery down to the seams using large sweeping motions. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.

Safety information

NOTICE

Open Velcro® fasteners on articles of clothing can damage the seat covers. There is a risk of damage to property. Ensure that any Velcro® fasteners are closed.

Caring for special components

Light-alloy wheels

When cleaning the vehicle, use only neutral wheel cleaners having a pH value from 5 to 9. Do not use abrasive cleaning agents or steam jets above 140 °F/60 °C. Follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Aggressive, acidic or alkaline cleaning agents can destroy the protective layer of adjacent components, such as the brake disc.

After cleaning, apply the brakes briefly to dry them. The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Chrome surfaces

Carefully clean Chrome surfaces, especially in case of exposure to road salt, with plenty of water and added cleanser as needed.

Rear spoiler compartment

To ensure that the function of the rear spoiler is not impaired, by leaves, snow or ice, for instance the compartment that accommodates the rear spoiler should be cleaned regularly.

Rubber components

Environmental influences can cause surface soiling of rubber parts and a loss of gloss. Use only water and suitable cleaning agents for cleaning.

Treat especially worn rubber parts with rubber care agents at regular intervals. When cleaning rubber seals, do not use any silicon-containing vehicle care products in order to avoid damage or noises.

Fine wood parts

Clean fine wood facing and fine wood components only with a moist rag. Then dry with a soft cloth.

Kenaf

Only treat parts made of Kenaf fibers using suitable care products.

Plastic components

NOTICE

Cleansers that contain alcohol or solvents, such as lacquer thinners, heavy-duty grease removers, fuel, or such, can damage plastic parts. There is a risk of damage to property. Clean with a microfiber cloth. Dampen the cloth lightly with water, if needed.

Clean with a microfiber cloth.

Dampen the cloth lightly with water, if needed.

Do not soak the roofliner.

Safety belts

Warning

Chemical cleansers can destroy the safety belt webbing. Missing protective effect of the safety belts. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Use only a mild soapy solution for cleaning the safety belts.

Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus have a negative impact on safety.

Use only a mild soapy solution for cleaning the installed belt straps.

Safety belts should only be allowed to retract if they are dry.

Carpets and floor mats

Warning

Objects in the driver's floor area can limit the pedal distance or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's floor area. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, for instance for cleaning.

The floor mats can be removed from the car's interior for cleaning.

If the floor carpets are very dirty, clean with a microfiber cloth and water or a textile cleaner. To prevent matting of the carpet, rub back and forth in the direction of travel only.

Sensors and camera lenses

To clean sensors and camera lenses, use a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass detergent.

Displays, screens, and protective glass of the Head-up Display

NOTICE

Chemical cleansers, moisture or fluids of any kind can damage the surface of displays and screens. There is a risk of damage to property. Clean with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth.

NOTICE

The surface of displays can be damaged with improper cleaning. There is a risk of damage to property. Avoid pressure that is too high and do not use any scratching materials.

Clean with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth.

Clean the protective glass of the Head-up Display using a microfiber cloth and commercially available dish-washing soap.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1927
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Long-term vehicle storage

When the vehicle is shut down for longer than three months, special measures must be taken. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Technical data

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

General information

The technical data and specifications in the Owner's Manual are used as guidance values. The vehicle-specific data can deviate from this, for instance due to the selected special equipment, country version or country-specific measurement method. Detailed values can be found in the approval documents, on labels on the vehicle or can be obtained from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Dimensions

The dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment or country-specific measurement method.

The specified heights do not take into account attached parts, for instance a roof antenna, roof racks or spoiler. The heights can deviate, for instance due to the selected special equipment, tires, load and chassis version.

BMW 6 Series Gran Turismo		
Width with mirrors	in/mm	85/2,158
Width without mirrors	in/mm	74.9/1,902
Height	in/mm	60.6/1,540
Length	in/mm	200.9/5,103
Wheelbase	in/mm	120.9/3,070
Smallest turning radius diam.	ft/m	41.0/12.5

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1929
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Weights

640i xDrive		
Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs/kg	5,545/2,515
Load	lbs/kg	871/395
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	2,690/1,220
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	3,109/1,410

Capacities

BMW 6 Series Gran Turismo		
Fuel tank, approx.	US gal/liters	18.0/68.0

Observe further information on fuel quality, refer to page 325.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1930

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Appendix

General information

Any updates to the Owner's Manual of the vehicle are listed here.

Updates made after the editorial deadline

The following chapters were updated in the printed version of the Owner's Manual after the editorial deadline for the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle had closed:

- Notes: notes: own safety: maintenance.
- Quick Reference Guide: on the road: intermediate stop: topping up the engine oil.
- Operation: driving: Steptronic transmission: manual mode M/S.
- Driving tips: observe when driving: driving on a race track.
- Mobility: operating fluids: engine oil: topping up the engine oil.
- Mobility: operating fluids: coolant: topping up the coolant level.
- Mobility: preventive maintenance: BMW maintenance system.
- Mobility: preventive maintenance: Condition Based Service CBS.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1931
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1932

Everything from A to Z

Index

0-9

3D View, see Surround View 222

A

ABS Antilock Braking System 195
Acceleration Assistant, see Launch Control 138
Accessories and parts 8
Accident Assistance 339
Accident prevention, see Active Protection 192
ACC, see Active Cruise Control 203
Activated charcoal filter 249
Active comfort chassis, see Executive Drive 243
Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function ACC 203
Active damping control, see Adaptive suspension 243
Active Guard Plus, see Intelligent Safety 167
Active Guard, see Intelligent Safety 167
Active PDC, see Emergency brake function 217
Active Protection 192
Active rear spoiler 198
Active roll stabilization 244
Active seat ventilation 116
Active Steering, integral 198
Active Voice Recognition 48
Adaptive brake assistant 195
Adaptive Light Control 158
ADAPTIVE, see Driving Dynamics Control 127
Adaptive suspension 243
Additives, engine oil types 328
Adjusting engine sound 244
Adjusting menu contents, iDrive 45
Adjusting sound of the engine 244
Adjustments, steering wheel 112
Airbags 163
Airbags, indicator and warning light 165
Air circulation, see Recirculated-air mode 248
Air conditioning, climate 247
Air distribution, manual 249
Air drying, see Air conditioning 247
Air flow, automatic climate control 248
Air outlets, see Ventilation 250
Air pressure, tires 294
Air quality 245
Air suspension 242
Air suspension, see Self-leveling suspension 244
Alarm system 95
Alarm, unintentional 97
All-season tires, see Winter tires 301
All-wheel-drive, see xDrive 197
Amazon Alexa Car Integration 51
Ambient air package 254
Ambient light 161
Animal detection, see Night Vision 177
Antifreeze, see Washer fluid 330
Antilock Braking System ABS 195
Anti-slip control, see DSC 195
Anti-theft protection, locking 79
Anti-theft protection, lug bolt lock 319
Apple CarPlay preparation, connection to the vehicle 74
Approach control warning with City braking function 168
Approved axle load 351
Apps, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Ashtray 261
Assistance when driving off, see Drive-off assistant 195
Assistance with breakdown 338
AUC Automatic Recirculating Air Control 248
Audio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
AUTO H button, see Parking brake 127
Automatic activation, see Individual activation 116
Automatic climate control 245

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1933
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Automatic Curb Monitor, exterior mirror 112
Automatic deactivation, front-seat passenger airbags 166
Automatic headlight control 156
Automatic Hold, see Parking brake 127
Automatic locking 95
Automatic Recirculating Air Control AUC 248
Automatic transmission, see Steptronic transmission 134
Automatic unlocking 95
Automating routines, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 53
AUTO program, automatic climate control 247
AUTO program, intensity 248
Auto Start/Stop function 122
Average consumption, see Trip data 151
Axle loads, weights 351

B

Backrest curvature, see Lumbar support 105
Backrest, seats 103
Backrest tilt 104
Backrest, width 105
Bandages, see First-aid kit 338
Bar for tow-starting/towing 343
Battery, disposing of 336
Battery, vehicle 335
Being towed, see Tow-starting and towing 342
Belts, see Safety belts 106
Beverage holder, see Cup holders 270
Blind spot collision warning 184
Blocking, power window, see Safety switch 98
Bluetooth connection 71
Blu-ray, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
BMW Assist, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
BMW display key 82
BMW display key, malfunction 86
BMW Gesture Control 53
BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 52
BMW maintenance system 332
BMW Roadside Assistance 339
Bonus range, ECO PRO 288
Bottle holder, see Cup holders 270
Brake assistant 195
Brake assistant, adaptive 195
Brake discs, see Brake system 280
Brake pads, see Brake system 280
Brake system 280
Braking, information 282
Breakdown assistance 338
Breaking in 280
Break recommendation, see Fatigue alert 193
Brightness, Control Display 63
Buttons on the steering wheel 32
Button, SOS, see Intelligent emergency call 340
Button, Start/Stop 122
Bypassing, see Jump-starting 341

C

Cable for tow-starting/towing 343
California Proposition 65 Warning 8
Call, gesture control 54
Camera-based assistance systems, see Intelligent Safety 167
Camera lenses, care 348
Camera, rearview camera, without Surround View 220
Camera, see Surround View 222
CANCEL button, Active Cruise Control 203
CANCEL button, Cruise control 201
Can holder, see Cup holders 270
Care, Head-up Display 348
Care, light-alloy wheels 347
Care of displays, screens 348
Care, see Vehicle washing 345
Care, vehicle 346
Cargo area 273
Cargo area, enlarging 275
Cargo cover 277
Cargo, stowing and securing 274
Cargo straps, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 274
Caring Car, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 53
Car key, see Vehicle key 78
Carpet, care 348
CarPlay, connection to the vehicle 74
Car seats, see Transporting children safely 117

Cartridge replacement, see Ambient air package 254
Car wash lines 345
Car wash systems 345
Catalytic converter, see Hot exhaust gas system 281
CBS Condition Based Service 332
Cell phone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Center armrest, front 270
Center armrest, rear 270
Center console 34
Central Information Display (CID), see Control Display 43
Central locking system 88
Central screen, see Control Display 43
Changes, technical, see For Your Own Safety 8
Changing parts 334
Changing wheels 318
Changing, wheels and tires 300
Charging smartphone, see Wireless charging tray 265
Charging tray for smartphones, see Wireless charging tray 265
Chassis number, see Vehicle identification number 12
Check Control 141
Checking the engine oil level electronically 326
Children, seating position 117
Children, transporting safely 117
Child restraint system LATCH 119
Child restraint systems, mounting 118
Child restraint systems, see Transporting children safely 117
Child safety locks 121
Child seat, mounting 118
Child seats, see Transporting children safely 117
Chrome-plated surfaces, care 347
Chrome surfaces, care 347
Cigarette lighter 262
Cigarette lighter, front 262
Cigarette lighter, rear 262
Cleaning displays, screens 348
Cleaning, Head-up Display 348
Clearance, water 282
Climate control 245
Clothes hooks 272
Coasting 288
Coasting with engine decoupled, see Coasting 288
Coasting with idling engine 288
Combination switch, see Turn signals 130
Combination switch, see Washer/wiper system 131
Comfort Access 88
COMFORT PLUS, see Driving Dynamics Control 125
COMFORT, see Driving Dynamics Control 125
Communication, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Comparison of entries, see Entry comparison 41
Compartments, doors 269
Compatible devices, see Suitable devices 71
Compressor 304
Concierge Service, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Condensation water under the parked vehicle 283
Condensation, windshield 249
Condition Based Service CBS 332
Confirmation signal from the vehicle 94
Connected Command, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 53
ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Connecting device 70
Connecting electrical devices, see Sockets 262
Connecting, mobile devices 70
Connections, Screen Mirroring 75
Consumption display, ECO PRO 288
Consumption display, widget in the instrument cluster 140
Consumption, see Current consumption 140
Consumption, see Trip data 151
Contacts, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Container for washer fluid 330
Continued driving with a flat tire 313, 317
Control Display 43
Control Display, brightness 63
Controller 43

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1935

Control systems, driving stability 195
Convenient closing, vehicle key 80
Convenient opening, vehicle key 79
Coolant 329
Coolant level 330
Coolant temperature, see Engine temperature 147
Cooling, maximum 247
Cooling system 329
Cornering light 158
Corrosion on brake discs 283
Cosmetic mirror 261
Cross traffic warning 239
Cruise control 201
Cruise control, active with Stop&Go function 203
Cruise control, see Active Cruise Control 203
Cruise control with distance control, see Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function 203
Cruise control without distance control, see Cruise control 201
Cruising range 147
Cup holder 270
Cup holder, front 270
Cup holder, rear 271
Current consumption 140
Customer service, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

D

Damage, tires 299
Damping control, active, see Adaptive suspension 243
Data memory 10
Data protection, settings 65
Data, see Deleting personal data 65
Data, technical 350
Date 61
Daytime running lights 158
DCC, see Cruise control 201
Defrosting, see Defrosting windshield 249
Defrosting, windshield 249
Deleting personal data 65
Departure schedule, see Parked-car ventilation 252
Departure time, parked-car ventilation 254
Device list 76
Diagnosis connection 333
Dimensions 350
Dimensions, see Technical data 350
Dimmable exterior mirrors 112
Dimmable interior mirror 112
Direct dial buttons, see Programmable memory buttons 42
Direction indicator, see Turn signals 130
Display, iDrive 40
Display in the windshield, see Head-up Display 153
Display key 82
Display key, malfunction 86
Display key, see BMW display key 82
Display lighting, see Instrument lighting 161
Displays 139
Displays and symbols 7
Displays, ECO PRO 288
Disposal, coolant 330
Disposal, vehicle battery 336
Distance control, see PDC 215
Door opening angle, Surround View 224
Drive-off assistant 195
Drive-off assistant, see DSC 195
Driver activity, see Driver Attention Camera 63
Driver assistance, driving, see Intelligent Safety 167
Driver assistance, see Intelligent Safety 167
Driver Attention Camera 63
Drive-ready state, engine start 38
Drive-ready state, idle state, and standby state 37
Driver profiles 66
Driver profile, setup 66
Driver profiles, welcome screen 66
Driving 122
Driving Assistant, see Intelligent Safety 167
Driving comfort 242, 243
Driving Dynamics Control 125
Driving instructions, breaking in 280
Driving mode, ECO PRO 286
Driving mode, see Driving Dynamics Control 125
Driving notes, general 281

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1936

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Driving stability control systems 195
Driving style analysis, ECO PRO 290
Driving through water 282
Driving tips 281
DSC Dynamic Stability Control 195
DTC Dynamic Traction Control 197
Dynamic damping, see Adaptive suspension 243
Dynamic Stability Control DSC 195
Dynamic Traction Control DTC 197

E

ECO PRO 286
ECO PRO, bonus range 288
ECO PRO, Driving style analysis 290
ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL, see Driving Dynamics Control 125
ECO PRO, see Driving Dynamics Control 125
Efficiency display, widget in the instrument cluster 140
Electronic oil measurement 326
Electronic Stability Program ESP, see DSC 195
E-mail, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Emergency brake function when parking, Active PDC 217
Emergency braking, see PostCrash - iBrake 193
Emergency Request 340
Emergency service, see Accident Assistance 339
Emergency service, see BMW Roadside Assistance 339
Emergency unlocking, fuel filler flap 293
Emergency unlocking, tailgate 94
Emergency unlocking, transmission lock 137
Energy recovery 140
Energy savings, see Gear shift indicator 149
Engine, automatic Start/Stop function 122
Engine compartment 322
Engine coolant 329
Engine idling when driving, see Coasting 288
Engine oil, adding 327
Engine oil change 329
Engine oil filler neck 327
Engine oil temperature 147
Engine oil types to add 328
Engine start, see Drive-ready state 38
Engine start, see Jump-starting 341
Engine temperature 147
Entering a destination, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Entering an address, navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Entertainment, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Entry comparison 41
Equipment, interior 258
Error indicators, see Check Control 141
ESP Electronic Stability Program, see DSC 195
Evasion Assistant 172
Exchanging, wheels and tires 300
Executive Drive 243
Exhaust gas system 281
Exhaustion warner 193
Exhaust, see Exhaust gas system 281
Exterior lighting during unlocking 79
Exterior lighting with the vehicle locked 80
Exterior mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor 112
Exterior mirror, automatic dimming feature 112
Exterior mirrors 111
Exterior mirrors, malfunction 111
External start, see Jump-starting 341
External temperature 147
Eyelet for towing 344
Eyes, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 274

F

Factory settings, see Reset vehicle configuration 64
Failure message, see Check Control 141
False alarm, see Avoiding unintentional alarms 97
Fan, see Air flow 248
Fastening safety belts, see Safety belts 106
Fatigue alert 193
Fault indicators, see Check Control 141
Filler neck for engine oil 327
Fine wood parts, care 347

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1937
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

First-aid kit 338
First Steps, see Setup Wizard 66
Flat tire, changing wheels 318
Flat tire, continued driving 313, 317
Flat tire, Flat Tire Monitor TPM 315
Flat tire message, FTM 316
Flat tire message, Tire Pressure Monitor 311
Flat Tire Monitor TPM 315
Flat tire, repairing 302
Flat tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor 308
Flat tire warning light, FTM 316
Flat tire warning light, see Tire Pressure Monitor 311
Flooding, driving through 282
Floor carpet, care 348
Floor mats, care 348
Fold-away position of the wipers 133
Foot brake 282
Forward collision mitigation, see Intelligent Safety 167
For Your Own Safety 8
Fragrance cartridge, see Ambient air package 254
Fragrance, see Ambient air package 254
Fragrancing, see Ambient air package 254
Front airbags 163
Front collision mitigation 168
Front collision mitigation, see Approach Control Warning 168
Front collision mitigation, see Pedestrian Warning 175
Front fog lights 160
Front fog lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 335
Front lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 335
Front-seat passenger airbags, automatic deactivation 166
Front-seat passenger airbags, indicator light 166
Front seats 103
Fuel 325
Fuel cap 292
Fuel filler flap 292
Fuel filler flap, unlocking manually 293
Fuel gauge 146
Fuel quality 325
Fuel recommendation 325
Fuel, tank capacity 351
Fuel, tank capacity, see Technical data 350
Fuses 336

G

Garage door opener, see Integrated Universal Remote Control 258
Gasoline 325
Gear change, Steptronic transmission 134
Gear shift indicator 149
General driving notes 281
General settings 60
Gesture Control 53
Gestures, see BMW Gesture Control 53
Glare shield, see Sun visor 261
Glass sunroof, electric 99
Glass sunroof, initialize the system 101
Glove compartment 268
GPS, navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Gross vehicle weight, approved 351

H

Handbrake, see Parking brake 127
Hand-held transmitter, alternating code 259
Hands-free device, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Hazard warning flashers 338
Head airbags 164
Headlight control, automatic 156
Headlight flasher 131
Headlight glass 335
Headlights, care 346
Headlights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 335
Head restraint pillow 111
Head restraints and seats 103
Head restraints, front 108
Head restraints, rear 109
Head-up Display 153
Head-up Display, care 348
Head-up Display, store position, see Memory function 113
Heated steering wheel 113
Heated steering wheel, individual activation 116

Heavy cargo, stowing 274
High-beam Assistant 159
High beams 131
High beams/low beams, see High-beam Assistant 159
Hills 282
Hill start assistant, see Drive-off assistant 195
Holder for beverages, see Cup holders 270
HomeLink, see Integrated Universal Remote Control 258
Homepage, see Internet 6
Hood 323
Horn 32
Hot exhaust gas system 281
Humidity in the headlight, see Headlight glass 335
Hydroplaning 281

I

iBrake - PostCrash 193
Ice warning, see External temperature 147
Icy roads, see External temperature 147
Identification marks, tires 297
Identification number, see Vehicle identification number 12
Idle state, standby state, and drive-ready state 37
iDrive 40
ID transmitter, see Vehicle key 78
Ignition key, see Vehicle key 78
Indicator/warning lights 142
Individual activation 116
Individual air distribution 249
Individual settings, see Driver profiles 66
Inductive charging, smartphone, see Wireless charging tray 265
Inflation pressure, tires 294
Inflation pressure warning TPM, tires 315
Information 6
Information window, Control Display 63
Initialization, Flat Tire Monitor FTM 315
Initialization, Tire Pressure Monitor 310
Input, iDrive 40
Instrument cluster 139
Instrument lighting 161
Integral Active Steering 198
Integrated key 86
Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle 14
Integrated Universal Remote Control 258
Intelligent emergency call 340
Intelligent Personal Assistant 52
Intelligent Safety 167
Intended use 8
Intensity, AUTO program 248
Interior camera, see Driver Attention Camera 63
Interior equipment 258
Interior lights 161
Interior lights during unlocking 79
Interior lights with the vehicle locked 80
Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature 112
Interior mirrors 112
Interior motion sensor 97
Internet connection 73
Internet hotspot 73
Internet page 6
Interval display, see Service notifications 148
Ionization, see Ambient air package 254

J

Jacking points for the vehicle jack 320
Jam protection system, glass sunroof 101
Jam protection system, windows 98
Joystick, Steptronic transmission 134
Jump-starting 341
Jump-starting terminals 342

K

Kenaf, care 348
Keyless Go, see Comfort Access 88
Key, mechanical 86
Key, see BMW display key 82
Key, see Vehicle key 78
Kickdown, Steptronic transmission 134
Knee airbag 164

L

Label on recommended tires 301
Lane control assistant 211

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1939
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

Lane control assistant with active side collision protection, see Side collision mitigation 188
Lane departure warning 181
Lane lines, Surround View 224
Lane threshold, warning 181
Language, set on Control Display 62
Lashing eyes in the cargo area 274
LATCH child restraint fixing system 119
Launch Control 138
Leather care 347
LED front fog lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 335
LED headlights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 335
LED light carpet, see Welcome light 157
Letters and numbers, entering 41
Light-alloy wheels, care 347
Light control, adaptive 158
Lighter, cigarettes 262
Lighting 156
Lighting, loudspeaker, see Bowers & Wilkins 162
Light in the exterior mirror, see Blind spot collision warning 184
Light in the exterior mirror, see Cross traffic warning 239
Light replacement, see Lights and bulbs 335
Lights 156
Lights and bulbs 335
Light switch 156
List of all messages 60
Load 274
Loading 273
Loading the cargo area, see Stowing cargo 274
Locking, automatic 95
Locking, see Opening and Closing 78
Locking, settings 94
Locking, vehicle key 79
Lock, lug bolts 319
Loudspeaker lighting, see Bowers & Wilkins 162
Low beams 157
Low beams, automatic, see High-beam Assistant 159
Lower back support 105
Lug bolt lock 319
Luggage rack, see Roof-mounted luggage rack 283
Lumbar support 105

M

Maintenance 332
Maintenance requirements, see Condition Based Service CBS 332
Maintenance, see Service notifications 148
Maintenance system, BMW 332
Make-up mirror 261
Malfunction, BMW display key 86
Malfunction, vehicle key 81
Managing devices 76
Manual brake, see Parking brake 127
Manual control, air distribution 249
Manual control, air flow 248
Manual mode, Steptronic transmission 134
Manual operation, fuel filler flap 293
Map update, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Marking, run-flat tire 302
Massage seat, front 114
Matt paint, care 347
Maximum cooling 247
Maximum speed display, see Speed Limit Info 149
Maximum speed of winter tires 301
Measuring units 62
Media of the Owner's Manual 14
Medical supplies, see First-aid kit 338
Memory function 113
Menu, instrument cluster, see Selection lists 150
Menus, operating, iDrive 40
Messages 60
Messages, see Check Control 141
Microfilter 249
Minimum tread depth, tires 299
Mobile communication devices in the vehicle 281
Mobile devices, managing 76
Mobile phone, connecting 70
Mobile phone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6

Mobile Service, see BMW Roadside Assistance 339
Mobility System 303
MODE button, see Active Cruise Control 203
Mode, ECO PRO 286
Modifications, technical, see For Your Own Safety 8
Monitor, see Control Display 43
Mounting of child restraint systems 118
MP3 player, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Multi-function hook 274
Multifunction steering wheel, buttons 32
Multimedia, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Music hard disk, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Music track, gesture control 54

N

Navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Neck restraints, front, see Head restraints front 108
Neck restraints, rear, see Head restraints rear 109
Net, cargo area 275
Neutral cleaner, see Light-alloy wheels 347
New wheels and tires 300
Night Vision device, see Night Vision 177
Night Vision with pedestrian and animal detection 177
No-touch opening and closing of the tailgate 90
Nylon rope for tow-starting/towing 343

O

OBD Onboard Diagnosis 333
Object detection, see Night Vision 177
Obstacle marking, rearview camera 221
Obstacle marking, Surround View 224
Octane rating, see Recommended fuel grade 326
Odometer, see Trip data 151
Oil, adding 327
Oil change 329
Oil filler neck 327
Oil level, checking electronically 326
Oil service interval, see Service notifications 148
Oil types to add, engine 328
Onboard Computer, see Trip data 151
Onboard Diagnosis OBD 333
Onboard literature, printed 14
Onboard vehicle tool kit 334
On-call service, see Accident Assistance 339
On-call service, see BMW Roadside Assistance 339
Opening and closing 78
Operating concept, iDrive 40
Operation, app 53
Outside air, see AUC 248
Overheating of the engine, see Engine temperature 147
Overwintering, see Long-term vehicle storage 349
Owner's Manual, printed 14
Owner's Manual via voice operation, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 53

P

Paint, car care 346
Pairing, mobile devices, see Connections 70
Panic alarm, see Panic mode 96
Panic mode 96
Panorama View, see Surround View 222
Panoramic glass sunroof, see Glass sunroof 99
Park Distance Control PDC 215
Parked-car ventilation 252
Parking aid, see PDC 215
Parking assistant 230
Parking assistant Plus, see Surround View 222
Parking, Automatic Hold, see Parking brake 127
Parking brake 127
Parking lights 157
Parts and accessories 8
Passenger's side exterior mirror, tilt down, see Automatic Curb Monitor 112
Pathway lighting 158
Pathway lighting, switching on 81
Pathway lines, rearview camera 221

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1941

PDC Park Distance Control 215
Pedestrian detection, see Night Vision 177
Performance display, see Sport displays 152
Personal data, deleting 65
Personal profile, see Driver profiles 66
Personal settings 65
Person warning with braking function 175
Phone, connecting 70
Pillow for head restraints in the rear 111
Plastic parts, care 348
Possible gestures, gesture control 54
PostCrash - iBrake 193
Power failure 336
Power windows 97
Pressure test tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor 308
Pressure, tires 294
Printed onboard literature 14
Profiles, see Driver profiles 66
Programmable memory buttons, iDrive 42
Protective function, glass sunroof, see Jam protection system 101
Protective function, windows, see Jam protection system 98
Push-and-turn reel, see Controller 43

Q

Queuing Assistant, see Steering and traffic jam assistant 211

R

Racing track 284
Radiator fluid 329
Radio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Rain sensor 132
Rear automatic climate control 251
Rear axle steering, see Integral Active Steering 198
Rear collision preparation 191
Rear collision warning, see Rear collision preparation 191
Rear lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 335
Rear seat backrests, folding down 275
Rear seats 106
Rear spoiler, active 198
Rear Traffic Alert 230
Rearview camera, see Surround View 222
Rearview camera, without Surround View 220
Rear-view mirrors, exterior 111
Rear-view mirrors, interior 112
Rear window defroster 249
Recirculated-air filter, see Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter 249
Recirculated-air mode 248
Recommended fuel grade 326
Recommended tire brands 301
Refueling 292
Remote 3D View 229
Remote control for audio, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Remote Control Parking 235
Remote control, see Vehicle key 78
Remote control, universal 258
Remote services, app, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Remote Software Upgrade 57
Replacing bulbs, see Lights and bulbs 335
Replacing light diodes, see Lights and bulbs 335
Replacing parts 334
Replacing the battery, vehicle key 81
Replacing, wheels and tires 300
Reporting safety malfunctions 13
RES CNCL button, Active Cruise Control ACC 203
RES CNCL button, Cruise Control 201
Reserve warning, see Range 147
Reset settings, vehicle 64
Reset, Tire Pressure Monitor 310
Reset, vehicle configuration 64
Reset, vehicle settings 64
RESUME button, Active Cruise Control 203
RESUME button, Cruise control 201
Retreaded tires 301
Roadside Assistance, see Accident Assistance 339
Roadside parking lights 157
Roller sunblinds, rear side windows 99

Rolling code hand-held transmitter 259
RON recommended fuel grade 326
Roofliner 36
Roof-mounted luggage rack 283
Rope for tow-starting/towing 343
Route, navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
RSC Runflat System, see Runflat tire 302
RTTI, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Rubber components, care 347
Run-flat tire 302

S

Safe braking 282
Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat 107
Safety belt reminder for the rear seats 108
Safety belts 106
Safety belts, care 348
Safety locks, doors and windows 121
Safety package, see Active Protection 192
Safety switch, windows 98
Safety systems, see Airbags 163
Safety systems, see Intelligent Safety 167
Saving fuel 285
Screen Mirroring, connection 75
Screen, see Control Display 43
Screwdriver, see Onboard vehicle tool kit 334
Sealant, see Mobility System 303
Seat heating 115
Seat heating, individual activation 116
Seating position for children 117
Seats and head restraints 103
Seats, front 103
Seats, rear 106
Seat ventilation, individual activation 116
Securing, cargo 274
Selection list in instrument cluster 150
Selector lever, Steptronic transmission 134
Self-leveling suspension, air suspension 244
Self-leveling suspension, see Two-axle ride level control 242
Self-supporting tires, see Run-flat tires 302
Sensors, care 348
Service and warranty 9
Service Center, see Accident Assistance 339
Service Center, see BMW Roadside Assistance 339
Service notifications 148
Service requirements, see Condition Based Service CBS 332
Services, ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
SET button, Active Cruise Control 203
SET button, Cruise Control 201
Set speed, see Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function 203
Setting, Control Display 63
Settings, general 60
Settings, locking/unlocking 94
Settings, seats and head restraints 103
Setup Wizard 66
Shift paddles on the steering wheel 134
Shift point indicator, tachometer 146
Side airbag 163
Side collision mitigation 188
Side parking aid, Surround View 224
Side parking aid, Surround View, see Side parking aid 224
Side parking aid without Surround View 218
Side parking aid without Surround View, see Side parking aid 218
Signaling, horn 32
Signals when unlocking, see Confirmation signals from the vehicle 94
Sitting safely 103
Situational adjustment, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 52
Size 350
Sizes, see Technical data 350
Ski and snowboard bag 278
Slide/tilt glass roof, see Glass sunroof 99
Smartphone, connecting 70
Smartphone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Smartphone, using via voice activation 51
Smoker's package 261

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1943
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

SMS, see Short messages, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Snow chains 307
Socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis 333
Sockets, electrical devices 262
Soft-close automatic, doors 94
Software Update, see Remote Software Upgrade 57
Software Upgrade, see Remote Software Upgrade 57
SOS button, see Intelligent emergency call 340
Sound output, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Special equipment, see Vehicle features and options 7
Speed limit display, see Speed Limit Info 149
Speed Limit Info 149
Speed warning 62
Sport displays 152
SPORT INDIVIDUAL, see Driving Dynamics Control 125
Sport program, Steptronic transmission 134
SPORT, see Driving Dynamics Control 125
Stability control systems 195
Standard equipment, see Vehicle features and options 7
Standby state, idle state and drive-ready state 37
Start/stop, automatic function 122
Start/Stop button 122
Starting aid terminals 342
Starting, see Drive-ready state 38
Starting the engine, see Drive-ready state 38
Stations, AM/FM, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Status control display, tires 310
Status information, iDrive 41
Status of Owner's Manual 7
Status, vehicle 153
Steering and traffic jam assistant 211
Steering column adjustment 112
Steering, see Integral Active Steering 198
Steering wheel, adjusting 112
Steering wheel, buttons 32
Steptronic Sport transmission, see Steptronic transmission 134
Steptronic transmission 134
Storage compartment, cargo area 275
Storage compartment, center console 269
Storage compartments 268
Storage compartments, locations 268
Storage, tires 302
Store Mirror position, see Memory function 113
Store seat position, see Memory function 113
Store steering wheel position, see Memory function 113
Storing the vehicle 349
Stowing, cargo 274
Straps for cargo, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 274
Suitable devices 71
Suitable mobile phones 71
Summer tires, tread 299
Sun visor 261
Sun visor, sliding 261
Supplementary Owner's Manuals 14
Supplementary text message 142
Surround View 222
Surround View, gesture control 54
Suspension settings, see Driving Dynamics Control 125
Switches, see Cockpit 32
Switch for driving dynamics, see Driving Dynamics Control 125
Switching off the engine, see Drive-ready state 38
Symbols and displays 7
SYNC program, automatic climate control 249

T

Tachometer 146
Tailgate, emergency unlocking 94
Tailgate, opening and closing with no-touch activation 90
Tailgate, vehicle key 80
Tail lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 335
Technical changes, see For Your Own Safety 8
Technical data 350

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1944

Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Teleservices, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Temperature, automatic climate control 246
Temperature display, see External temperature 147
Temperature, engine oil 147
Tensioning straps, cargo area 275
Text message, see Check Control messages 142
Theft alarm system, see Alarm system 95
Thermal camera, see Night Vision 177
Thigh support 105
Tilt alarm sensor 97
Tilt, backrest 104
Tilt down, passenger's side exterior mirror, see Automatic Curb Monitor 112
Time 61
Tire brands, recommended 301
Tire damage 299
Tire identification marks 297
Tire inflation pressure 294
Tire inflation pressure monitoring, see TPM 315
Tire inflation pressure monitor TPM 315
Tire pressure 294
Tire Pressure Monitor 308
Tire Pressure Monitor, reset 310
Tire repair kit, see Mobility System 303
Tires and wheels 294
Tires, changing 300
Tire sealant, see Mobility System 303
Tire settings 309
Tires, run-flat 302
Tire tread 299
Tone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Tool 334
Top View, see Surround View 222
Torque display, see Sport displays 152
Total vehicle weight 351
Touchpad, Controller 46
Tow bar 343
Tow fitting 344
Towing 342
Tow rope 343
Tow-starting 342
TPM Flat Tire Monitor 315
Traction control 197
TRACTION, driving dynamics 197
Traffic bulletins, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Traffic Jam Assist, see Steering and traffic jam assistant 211
Transmission lock, electronic unlocking 137
Transmission, see Steptronic transmission 134
Transporting children safely 117
Tread, tires 299
Trip data 151
Triple turn signal activation 130
Trip odometer, see Trip data 151
Trunk emergency unlocking 94
Trunk, see Cargo area 273
Turning circle line, Surround View 224
Turning radius lines, rearview camera 221
Turn signal, indicator light 145
Turn signal, replacing bulbs, see Lights and bulbs 335
Turn signals, high beams, headlight flasher 130
Two-axle ride level control 242

U

Unintentional alarm, avoiding 97
Units, see Measuring units 62
Universal remote control 258
Unlock button, Steptronic transmission 134
Unlocking, automatic 95
Unlocking, see Opening and Closing 78
Unlocking, settings 94
Unlocking, vehicle key 79
Updates made after the editorial deadline 7
Upgrade, see Remote Software Upgrade 57
Upholstery material care 347
Upper backrest, front 105
USB connection 73
USB port, position in vehicle 264
Used battery, disposing of 336
Use, intended 8

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1945
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

V

Vanity mirror 261
Variable steering, see Integral Active Steering 198
Vehicle battery 335
Vehicle breakdown, see Breakdown assistance 338
Vehicle, breaking in 280
Vehicle care 346
Vehicle care products 346
Vehicle configuration, reset 64
Vehicle features and options 7
Vehicle identification number 12
Vehicle key 78
Vehicle key, additional 81
Vehicle key, integrated key 86
Vehicle key, loss 81
Vehicle key, malfunction 81
Vehicle key, replacing the battery 81
Vehicle key with display, malfunction 86
Vehicle key with display, see BMW display key 82
Vehicle paint, care 346
Vehicle status 153
Vehicle storage 349
Vehicle washing 345
Ventilation 250
Ventilation, see Parked-car ventilation 252
Venting, see Ventilation 250
Vent, see Ventilation 250
Version Software, see Remote Software Upgrade 57
Video, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
VIN, see Vehicle identification number 12
Voice activation 48
Voice activation, gesture control 54
Voice activation, see BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 52
Voice command response 48
Voice recognition, see Active Voice Recognition 48
Volume, gesture control 54

W

Wake word 48
Warning/indicator lights 142
Warning against cross traffic 239
Warning light in the exterior mirror, see Blind spot collision warning 184
Warning light in the exterior mirror, see Cross traffic warning 239
Warning messages, see Check Control 141
Warning triangle 338
Warranty 8
Washer fluid 330
Washer nozzles, windshield 133
Washer system 131
Washing systems, automatic 345
Washing, vehicle 345
Wash view, Surround View 224
Water on roads 282
Water, see Condensation water under the parked vehicle 283
Website, see Internet 6
Weights 351
Weights, see Technical data 350
Welcome light during unlocking 79
Welcome lights 157
Welcome screen, driver profiles 66
Wheels and tires 294
Wheels, changing 300
Widgets, iDrive 41
WiFi connection 73
WiFi connection, see WLAN connection 73
WiFi hotspot, see Internet connection 73
Window, defrosting 249
Windows, powered 97
Windshield, defrosting 249
Windshield washer fluid, see Washer fluid 330
Windshield washer nozzles 133
Windshield washer system, see Washer/wiper system 131
Windshield wiper, see Wiper system 131
Winter storage, see Long-term vehicle storage 349
Winter tires 301
Winter tires, tread 299
Wiper blades, replacing 334

Wiper fluid, see Washer fluid 330
Wiper, fold-away position 133
Wiper, see Washer/wiper system 131
Wiper system 131
Wireless charging, smartphone, see Wireless charging tray 265
Wireless charging tray for smartphones 265
WLAN connection 73
Wood parts, care 347
Wordmatch principle, see Entry comparison 41
Working in, engine compartment 323
Wrench, see Onboard vehicle tool kit 334

X

xDrive 197

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1947
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

01405A04321 ue

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1948

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1949

California Proposition 65 Warning

For vehicles sold in California:

California Proposition 65 Warning

WARNING

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

The Ultimate Driving Machine®

BMW DRIVER'S GUIDE APP.

Your customized information about the vehicle in an app.
Optimized for smartphones & tablets. Can be used offline.

Download on the App Store

GET IT ON Google Play

01405A04321 de

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1951
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A04321 - II/20

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1952
Online Edition for Part no. 01402229932 - 9

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1953
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

WELCOME TO BMW.

Owner's Manual.

BMW 7 Series.

Thank you for choosing a BMW.

The more familiar you are with your vehicle, the better control you will have on the road. We therefore strongly suggest:

Read this Owner's Manual before starting off in your new BMW. Also use the Integrated Owner's Manual in your vehicle. It contains important information on vehicle operation that will help you make full use of the technical features available in your BMW. The manual also contains information designed to enhance operating reliability and road safety, and to contribute to maintaining the value of your BMW.

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

You can find supplementary information in the additional brochures in the onboard literature.

We wish you a safe and enjoyable ride.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1954
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

TABLE OF CONTENTS

After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

NOTES

Information ... 8
Owner's Manual media ... 16

QUICK REFERENCE

Entering ... 20
Set-up and use ... 24
On the road ... 28

CONTROLS

Cockpit ... 38
Operating state of the vehicle ... 43
iDrive ... 46
BMW Remote Software Upgrade ... 62
General settings ... 65
Opening and closing ... 78
Seats, mirrors, and steering wheel ... 109
Transporting children safely ... 127
Driving ... 132
Displays ... 150
Lights ... 166
Safety ... 174
Driving stability control systems ... 212
Driver assistance systems ... 216
Driving comfort ... 265
Climate control ... 268
Interior equipment ... 286
Storage compartments ... 298
Cargo area ... 304

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1955
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

DRIVING TIPS

Things to remember when driving 312
Saving fuel 317

MOBILITY

Refueling 326
Wheels and tires 328
Engine compartment 358
Operating materials 361
Maintenance 368
Replacing components 370
Breakdown assistance 373
Care 380

REFERENCE

Technical data 388
Appendix 391
Everything from A to Z 392

© 2019 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Reprinting, including excerpts, only with the written consent of BMW AG, Munich.
US English ID7 II/19, 03 19 490
Printed on environmentally friendly paper, bleached without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1956
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1957
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932

! NOTES

Information 8
Owner's Manual media 16

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1958
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Information

Using this Owner's Manual

Orientation

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic is by using the index.

An initial overview of the vehicle is provided in the first chapter.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication

The Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can be obtained as a printed book from the service center.

The topics are also discussed in the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Additional sources of information

Service center

A service center will be glad to answer questions at any time.

Internet

Vehicle information and general information on BMW, for instance. on technology, are available on the Internet: www.bmwusa.com.

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

The Integrated Owner's Manual specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle. The Integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the Control Display. Additional information, refer to page 16.

BMW Driver’s Guide app

The BMW Driver's Guide app specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle. The app can be displayed on smartphones and tablets.

BMW Driver’s Guide Web

Driver’s Guide Web shows the most suitable information for the selected vehicle. If possible, only equipment and functions that are actually installed in the vehicle will be explained. Driver’s Guide Web can be displayed in any current browser.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1959
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Symbols and displays

Symbols in the Owner's Manual

Symbol	Meaning
	Precautions that must be followed in order to avoid the possibility of injury to yourself and to others as well as serious damage to the vehicle.
	Measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.
"..."	Texts in vehicle used to select individual functions.
›...‹	Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.
»...«	Responses generated by the voice activation system.

Action steps

Action steps to be carried out are presented as a numbered list. The steps must be carried out in the defined order.

1. First action step.
2. Second action step.

Enumerations

Enumerations without mandatory order or alternative possibilities are presented as a list with bullet points.

- First possibility.
- Second possibility.

Symbols on vehicle components

This symbol on a vehicle component indicates that further information on the component is available in the Owner's Manual.

Vehicle features and options

This Owner's Manual describes all models and all standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series. Therefore, this Owner's Manual also describes and illustrates features and functions that are not available in a vehicle, for example because of the selected optional features or the country-specific version.

This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

For any options and equipment not described in this Owner's Manual, refer to the Supplementary Owner's Manuals.

Your BMW service center is happy to answer any questions that you may have about the features and options applicable to your vehicle.

Status of the Owner's Manual

Basic information

The manufacturer of your vehicle pursues a policy of constant development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards. In rare cases, therefore, the features described in this Owner's Manual may differ from those in your vehicle.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1960

Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

For Your Own Safety

Intended use

Heed the following when using the vehicle:

- Owner's Manual.
- Information on the vehicle. Do not remove stickers.
- Technical vehicle data.
- The traffic, speed, and safety laws where the vehicle is driven.
- Vehicle documents and statutory documents.

Warranty

Your vehicle is technically configured for the operating conditions and registration requirements applying in the country of first delivery, also known as homologation. If your vehicle is to be operated in a different country it might be necessary to adapt your vehicle to potentially differing operating conditions and registration requirements. If your vehicle does not comply with the homologation requirements in a certain country you may not be able to lodge warranty claims for your vehicle there. Further information on warranty is available from a service center.

Maintenance and repairs

⚠ Warning

Improperly performed work on the vehicle paint can lead to a failure or malfunction of the radar sensors and thereby result in a safety risk. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Have paintwork or paintwork repairs on bumpers of vehicles with radar sensors performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop only.

Advanced technology, for instance the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires suitable maintenance and repair work.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you entrust corresponding procedures to a BMW center. If you choose to use another service facility, BMW recommends use of a facility that performs work, e.g., maintenance and repair, according to BMW specifications with properly trained personnel, referred to in the Owner's Manual as "another qualified service center or repair shop".

If work is performed improperly, for instance maintenance and repair, there is a risk of subsequent damage and related safety risks.

Parts and accessories

BMW recommends the use of parts and accessory products approved by BMW.

Approved parts and accessories, and advice on their use and installation are available from a BMW center.

BMW parts and accessories have been tested by BMW for their safety and suitability in BMW vehicles.

BMW warrants genuine BMW parts and accessories.

BMW does not evaluate whether each individual product from another manufacturer can be used

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1961
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

with BMW vehicles without presenting a safety hazard, even if a country-specific official approval was issued. BMW does not evaluate whether these products are suitable for BMW vehicles under all usage conditions.

California Proposition 65 Warning

For vehicles sold in California, the law requires vehicle manufacturers to provide the following warning:

⚠ Warning

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of Automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Batteries also contain other chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer. Wash your hands after handling. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly. Your vehicle is covered by the following warranties:

- New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- Rust Perforation Limited Warranty.
- Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty.
- Federal Emissions Performance Warranty.
- California Emission Control System Limited Warranty.

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

Your vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating conditions and homologation requirements in your country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish to operate your vehicle in another country or region, you may be required to adapt your vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and homologation requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

Maintenance

Maintain the vehicle regularly to sustain the road safety, operational reliability and the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Specifications for required maintenance measures:

- BMW Maintenance system.

- Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models.
- Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

If the vehicle is not maintained according to these specifications, this could result in damaging the vehicle. Such damage is not covered by the BMW New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Data memory

General information

Electronic control devices are installed in the vehicle. Electronic control units process data they receive from vehicle sensors, self-generate or exchange with each other. Some control units are necessary for the vehicle to function safely or provide assistance during driving, for instance driver assistance systems. Furthermore, control units facilitate comfort or infotainment functions.

Information about stored or exchanged data can be requested from the manufacturer of the vehicle, in a separate booklet, for example.

Personal reference

Each vehicle is marked with a unique vehicle identification number. Depending on the country, the vehicle owner can be identified with the vehicle identification number, license plate and corresponding authorities. In addition, there are other options to track data collected in the vehicle to the driver or vehicle owner, for instance, via the ConnectedDrive account that is used.

Operating data in the vehicle

Control units process data to operate the vehicle.

For example, this includes:

- Status messages for the vehicle and its individual components, e.g., wheel rotational speed, wheel speed, deceleration, transverse acceleration, engaged safety belt indicator.
- Ambient conditions, e.g., temperature, rain sensor signals.

The processed data is only processed in the vehicle itself and generally volatile. The data is not stored beyond the operating period.

Electronic components, e.g. control units and ignition keys, contain components for storing technical information. Information about the vehicle condition, component usage, maintenance requirements events or faults can be stored temporarily or permanently.

This information generally records the state of a component, a module, a system, or the environment, for instance:

- Operating states of system components, for instance, fill levels, tire inflation pressure, battery status.
- Malfunctions and faults in important system components, for instance lights and brakes.
- Responses by the vehicle to special situations such as airbag deployment or engagement of the driving stability control systems.
- Information on vehicle-damaging events.

The data is required to perform the control unit functions. Furthermore, it also serves to recognize and correct malfunctions, and helps the vehicle manufacturer to optimize vehicle functions.

The majority of this data is volatile and is only processed within the vehicle itself. Only a small share of the data is stored event-related in event or fault memories.

When servicing, for instance during repairs, service processes, warranty cases, and quality assurance measures, this technical information can be read out from the vehicle together with the vehicle identification number.

A dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop can read out the information. The socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis required by law in the vehicle is used to read out the data.

The data is collected, processed, and used by the relevant organizations in the service network.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1963

The data documents technical conditions of the vehicle, helps with the identification of the fault, compliance with warranty obligations and quality improvement.

Furthermore, the manufacturer has product monitoring duties to meet in line with product liability law. To fulfill these duties, the vehicle manufacturer needs technical data from the vehicle. The data from the vehicle can also be used to check customer claims for warranty and guaranty.

Fault and event memories in the vehicle can be reset when a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop performs repair or servicing work.

Data entry and data transfer into the vehicle

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, comfort and individual settings can be stored in the vehicle and modified or reset at any time.

For example, this includes:

- Settings for the seat and steering wheel positions.
- Suspension and climate control settings.

If necessary, data can be transferred to the entertainment and communication system of the vehicle, for instance via smartphone.

This includes the following depending on the respective equipment:

- Multimedia data such as music, films or photos for playback in an integrated multimedia system.
- Address book data for use in conjunction with an integrated hands-free system or an integrated navigation system.
- Entered navigation destinations.
- Data on the use of Internet services.

This data can be stored locally in the vehicle or is found on a device that has been connected to the vehicle, e.g., a smartphone, USB stick or MP3 player. If this data is stored in the vehicle, it can be deleted at any time.

This data is only transmitted to third parties upon personal request as part of the use of online services. The transmission depends on the selected settings for the use of the services.

Incorporation of mobile devices

Depending on the vehicle equipment, mobile devices connected to the vehicle, for instance smartphones, can be controlled via the vehicle control elements.

The sound and picture from the mobile device can be played back and displayed through the multimedia system. Certain information is transferred to the mobile device at the same time. Depending on the type of incorporation, this includes, for instance position data and other general vehicle information. This optimizes the way in which selected apps, for instance navigation or music playback, work.

There is no further interaction between the mobile device and the vehicle, such as active access to vehicle data.

How the data will be processed further is determined by the provider of the particular app being used. The extent of the possible settings depends on the respective app and the operating system of the mobile device.

Services

General information

If the vehicle has a wireless network connection, this enables data to be exchanged between the vehicle and other systems. The wireless network connection is realized via an in-vehicle transmitter and receiver unit or via personal mobile devices brought into the vehicle, for instance smartphones. This wireless network connection enables 'online functions' to be used. These include online services and apps supplied by the vehicle manufacturer or by other providers.

Services from the vehicle manufacturer

Where online services from the vehicle manufacturer are concerned, the corresponding functions are described in the appropriate place, for instance the Owner's Manual or manufacturer's website. The relevant legal information pertaining to data protection is provided there too. Personal data may be used to perform online services. Data is exchanged over a secure connection, for instance with the IT systems of the vehicle manufacturer intended for this purpose.

Any collection, processing, and use of personal data above and beyond that needed to provide the services must always be based on a legal permission, contractual arrangement or consent. It is also possible to activate or deactivate the data connection as a whole. That is, with the exception of functions and services required by law such as Assist systems.

Services from other providers

When using online services from other providers, these services are the responsibility of the relevant provider and subject to their data privacy conditions and terms of use. The vehicle manufacturer has no influence on the content exchanged during this process. Information on the way in which personal data is collected and used in relation to services from third parties, the scope of such data, and its purpose, can be obtained from the relevant service provider.

Event Data Recorder EDR

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder EDR. The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were fastened.
- How far, if at all, the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

EDR data is recorded by your vehicle only if a nontrivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data, for instance name, gender, age, and crash location, are recorded.

However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1965
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Vehicle identification number

Engine compartment

The vehicle identification number can be found in the engine compartment, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

Windshield

The vehicle identification number can also be found behind the windshield.

iDrive

It is also possible to display the vehicle identification number via iDrive, refer to page 71.

Reporting safety defects

For US customers

The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration NHTSA, in addition to notifying BMW of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or BMW of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may call the toll-free hotline 1-800-333-0510. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety.

Owner's Manual media

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

General information

Media at a glance

You can use various media formats to call up the content in the Owner's Manual. The following Owner's Manual media formats are available:

- Printed Owner's Manual, refer to page 16.
- Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle, refer to page 16.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

Printed Owner's Manual

Concept

The printed Owner's Manual describes all standard, country-specific, and optional features offered with the series.

General information

The Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can be obtained as a printed book from the service center.

Supplementary Owner's Manuals

Also follow the instructions of the Supplementary Owner's Manuals, which are included in addition to the onboard literature.

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

Concept

The Integrated Owner's Manual specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle.

The Integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the Control Display.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1967
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Selecting the Owner's Manual

1. HOME Press the button.
2. "CAR"
3. "Owner's Manual"
4. Select the desired method of accessing the contents.

Scrolling through the Owner's Manual

Turn the Controller, until the next or previous contents are displayed.

Context help

General information

The section of the Owner's Manual relating to the function that is currently selected can be displayed directly.

Opening via iDrive

Change directly to the Options menu from the function on the Control Display:

1. OPTION Press the button.
2. "Owner's Manual"

Opening when a Check Control message is displayed

Directly from the Check Control message on the Control Display:

"Owner's Manual"

Changing between a function and the Owner's Manual

To switch from a function, for instance radio, to the Owner's Manual on the Control Display and to alternate between the two displays:

1. OPTION Press the button.
2. "Owner's Manual"
3. Select the desired page in the Owner's Manual.
4. OPTION Press the button again to return to the last displayed function.
5. BACK Press the button to return to the page of the Owner's Manual displayed last.

To alternate continuously between the last displayed function and the last displayed page of the Owner's Manual, repeat steps 4 & 5. Opens a new display every time.

Programmable memory buttons

General information

The entry points into the Owner's Manual can be stored on the programmable memory buttons, refer to page 48, and called up directly.

Storing

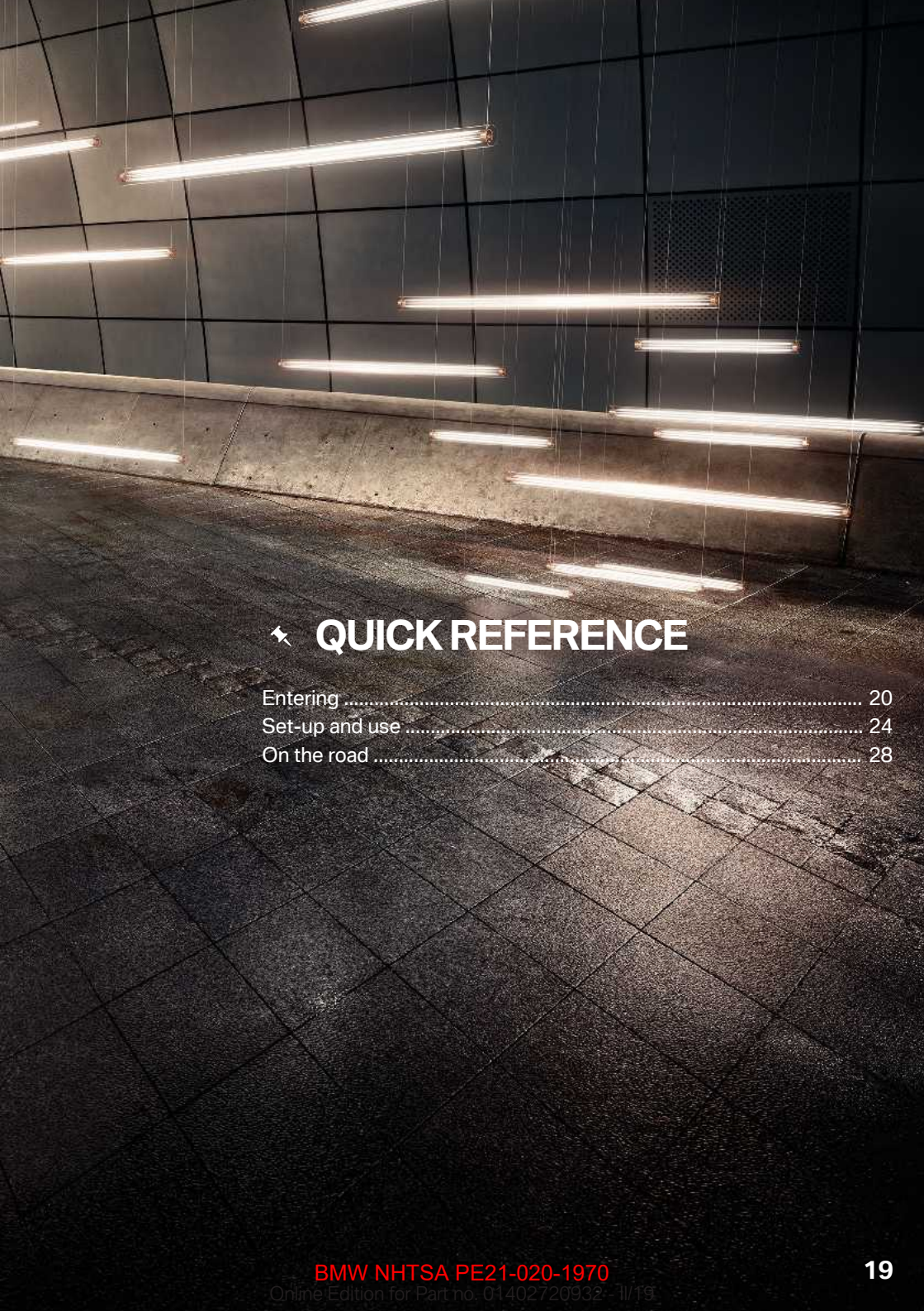
1. Select the desired entry point via iDrive:
   - ▷ "Keyword search"
   - ▷ "Picture search"
   - ▷ "Quick reference"
   - ▷ "User help"
   - ▷ "Topics"
   - ▷ "Quick link"
2. 1 ... 7 Press the desired programmable memory button and hold for more than 2 seconds.

Executing

1 ... 7 Press the corresponding button.

The owner's manual is directly displayed at the selected entry point.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1969
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19



QUICK REFERENCE

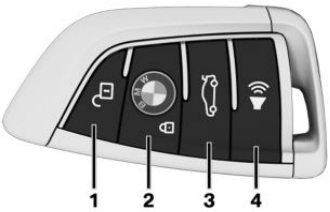
Entering 20
Set-up and use 24
On the road 28

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1970
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Entering

Opening and closing

Buttons on the remote control



1 Unlocking

2 Locking

3 Opening the trunk lid

4 Press and hold or press three times in quick succession: panic mode

Press briefly: headlight courtesy delay feature

Unlocking the vehicle

Press the button on the remote control.

Depending on the settings, either only the driver's door or all vehicle access points are unlocked.

If only the driver's door is unlocked, press the button on the remote control again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

Press and hold the button on the remote control after unlocking.

The windows and the glass sunroof are opened, as long as the button on the remote control is pressed.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Press the button on the remote control.

All vehicle access points are locked.

Buttons for the central locking system

Overview

Buttons for the central locking system.

Locking

Pressing the button locks the vehicle if the front doors are closed.

The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

Unlocking

Pressing the button unlocks the vehicle.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

- ▷ Press the button on the remote control and hold for at least 3 seconds.
- ▷ Briefly press the button on the remote control three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1971
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Comfort Access

Concept

The vehicle can be accessed without activating the remote control.

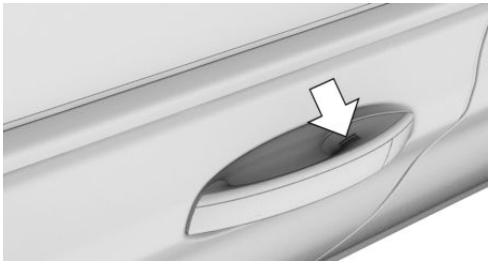
All you need to do is to have the remote control with you, such as in your pants pocket.

The vehicle automatically detects the remote control when it is in close proximity or in the car's interior.

Unlocking the vehicle

Grasp the handle of a vehicle door completely.

Locking the vehicle



Touch the grooved surface on the handle of a closed vehicle door with your finger for approx. 1 second without grasping the door handle.

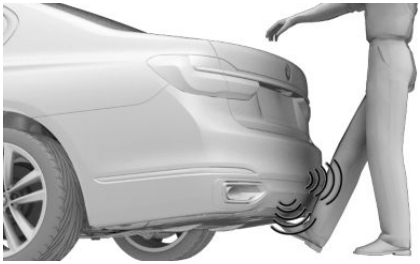
Opening and closing the trunk lid with no-touch activation

Concept

The trunk lid can be opened and closed with no-touch activation using the remote control you are carrying.

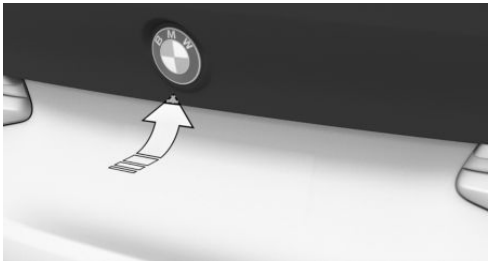
Performing the foot movement

1. Stand in the middle behind the vehicle at approx. one arm's length away from the rear of the vehicle.
2. Wave a foot under the vehicle in the direction of travel and immediately pull it back. With this movement, the leg must pass through the ranges of both sensors.



Trunk lid

Opening



▷ Unlock the vehicle and then press the button on the outside of the trunk lid.

▷ Press and hold the button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1972
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

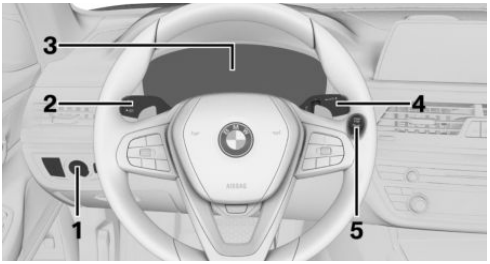
Depending on the setting, the doors may also be unlocked.

Closing

Press the button on the inside of the trunk lid.

Displays and control elements

In the vicinity of the steering wheel



1 Light switch element
2 Turn signal indicator, high beams
3 Instrument cluster
4 Wipers
5 Start/Stop button

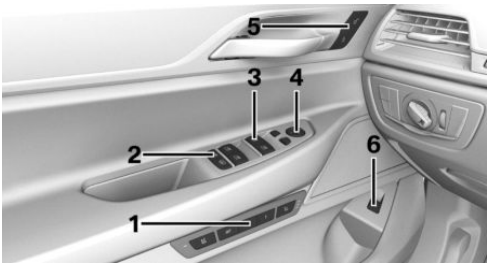
Indicator/warning lights

Instrument cluster

The indicator/warning lights can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

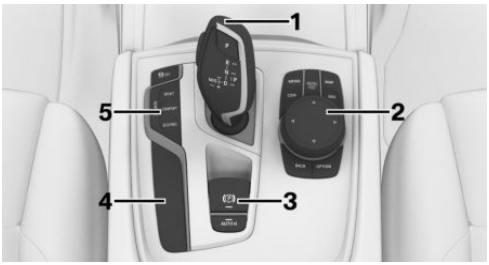
Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when the engine is started or standby state is switched on.

Driver's door



1 Seats, comfort features
2 Safety switch
3 Power windows
4 Exterior mirrors
5 Central locking system
6 Opening/closing trunk lid

Switch console



1 Selector lever
2 Controller
3 Parking brake, Automatic Hold
4 Parking assistance systems
5 Driving Dynamics Control

iDrive

Concept

iDrive includes a large number of functions. These functions can be operated via the Controller and, depending on the equipment version, via

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1973
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

touchscreen, voice activation system or gesture control.

Buttons on the Controller

Button	Function
HOME	Opens the main menu.
COM	Opens the Communication menu.
MEDIA	Opens the Media/Radio menu.
NAV	Opens destination input menu for navigation.
MAP	Opens navigation map.
BACK	Opens the previous display.
OPTION	Opens the Options menu.

Voice activation

Activating the voice activation system

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the signal.
3. Say the command.

The symbol on the Control Display indicates that the voice activation system is active.

If no other commands are possible, operate the function via iDrive.

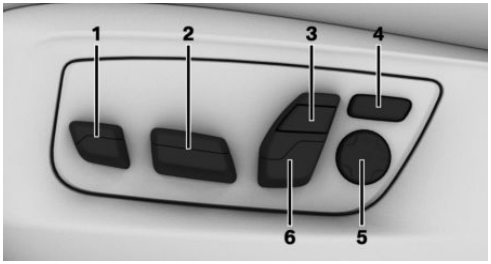
Terminating the voice activation system

Press the button on the steering wheel or ›Cancel‹.

Set-up and use

Seats, mirrors, and steering wheel

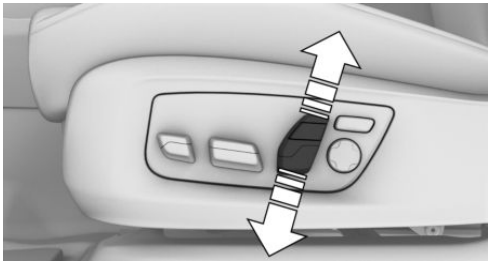
Electrically adjustable seats



1 Thigh support
2 Forward/backward, height, seat tilt
3 Upper backrest
4 Backrest width
5 Lumbar support
6 Backrest tilt, head restraint

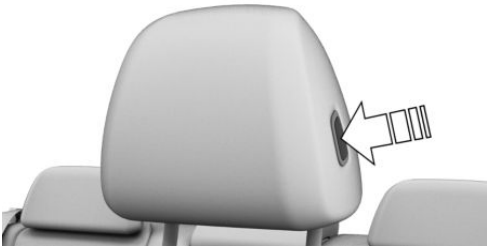
Adjusting the head restraint

Height



Push switch up or down.

Adjusting the distance: manual head restraints



- Back: press the button and push the head restraint toward the rear.
- Forward: pull the head restraint toward the front.

Adjusting the distance: power head restraints

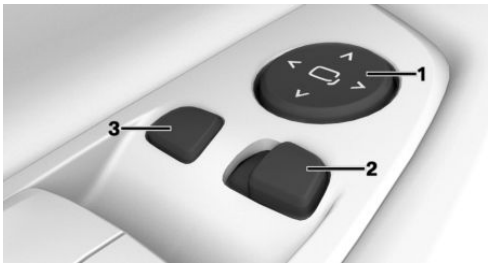
The head restraint is automatically repositioned when the upper backrest is adjusted.

Side extensions

Fold the side extensions forward to increase lateral support.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1975
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

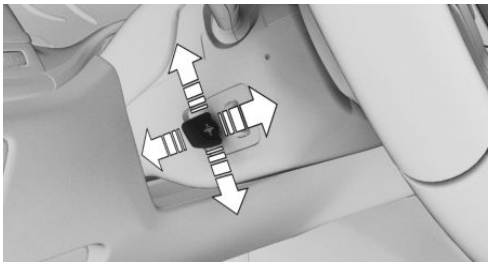
Adjusting the exterior mirrors



1 Adjusting
2 Selecting a mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor
3 Folding in and out

Adjusting the steering wheel

Electrical steering wheel adjustment



Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seating position by pressing the switch.

Memory function

Concept

The following settings can be stored and, if necessary, retrieved using the memory function:

- Seat position.
- Exterior mirror position.
- Steering wheel position.
- Height of the Head-up Display.

Storing

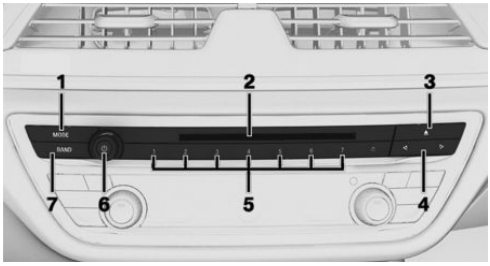
1. Set the desired position.
2. SET Press button on the door. The writing on the button lights up.
3. Press the desired button 1 or 2 at the door while the writing is lit. A signal sounds.

Calling up settings

Press the desired button 1 or 2.

Infotainment

Radio



1 Changing the entertainment source
2 CD/DVD drive
3 Eject CD/DVD
4 Changing the station/track
5 Programmable memory buttons
6 Sound output on/off, volume
7 Waveband/satellite radio

Navigation destination entry

Entering a destination via quick search

1. NAV Press the button on the Controller.
2. "Where to?"
3. Enter at least two letters or characters.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1976

The search term may be completed automatically in gray print.

Press or move the controller up to apply the suggested search term.

4. OK Select the symbol, if needed.

   Results are displayed in a list.
5. "Search location": select search location.
6. Move the Controller to the right.
7. Select desired destination.

Connecting a mobile phone

General information

After the mobile phone is connected once to the vehicle, the mobile phone can be operated using iDrive, the steering wheel buttons, voice activation, and gestures.

Connecting the mobile phone via Bluetooth

Connect entirely on the front or rear Control Display.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. If necessary, select the following setting: "Telephone"
3. "Connect new phone"
4. To perform additional steps on the mobile phone, refer to the mobile phone owner's manual: e.g., search for or connect the Bluetooth device or a new device.

   The Bluetooth name of the vehicle appears on the mobile phone display. Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle.
5. Depending on the mobile device, a control number is displayed or the control number must be entered.
   - ▷ Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number on the display of the device.

     Confirm the control number on the device and on the Control Display.
   - ▷ Enter and confirm the same control number on the device and via iDrive.

   The device is connected and displayed in the device list.

Using the phone

Accepting a call

Depending on the equipment, incoming calls can be answered in several ways.

- ▷ Via iDrive:

  "Accept"
- ▷ Press the button on the steering wheel.
- ▷ Via the selection list in the instrument cluster:

  Use the thumbwheel on the steering wheel to select: "Accept"
- ▷ Via touch screen: tap on the corresponding entry on the Control Display.
- ▷ Via gestures: point the index finger into the direction of the Control Display.

Dialing a number

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. If necessary, "Telephone"
3. "Dial number"
4. Enter the numbers.
5. Select the symbol. The connection is established via the mobile phone to which this function has been assigned.

If connection is to be set up via the additional phone:

1.

Press the button.
2. "Call via"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1977
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Apple CarPlay preparation

Concept

CarPlay allows certain functions of a compatible Apple iPhone to be used via Siri voice operation and iDrive.

Functional requirements

- Compatible iPhone.
  iPhone 5 or later with iOS 7.1 or later.
- Corresponding mobile contract.
- Bluetooth, WiFi, and Siri voice operation are activated on the iPhone.

Switching on Bluetooth and CarPlay

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. Select the following setting:
   "Apple CarPlay"
6. Activate the function.

Pairing the iPhone with CarPlay

Pair iPhone via Bluetooth with the vehicle.

Select CarPlay as the function:

"Apple CarPlay"

The iPhone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1978

On the road

Driving

Drive-ready state

Switching on drive-ready state

- Depress the brake pedal.
- Press the Start/Stop button.

Switching off drive-ready state

Steptronic transmission:

1. Engage selector lever position P with the vehicle stopped.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

   The engine is switched off.
3. Set the parking brake.

Auto Start/Stop function

The Auto Start/Stop function switches the engine off automatically while stationary to save fuel. The engine starts automatically under the following preconditions:

Steptronic transmission:

- By releasing the brake pedal.
- When Automatic Hold is activated: step on the accelerator pedal.

Parking brake

Setting

Pull the switch.

The LED and indicator light light up.

Releasing

With drive-ready state switched on:

Press the switch while stepping on the brake pedal or selector lever position P is set.

The LED and indicator light go out.

The parking brake is released.

Parking

The parking brake is automatically set if the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold and the drive-ready state is switched off or the vehicle is exited.

Steptronic transmission

Engaging selector lever position D, N, R

- Drive mode D.
- Neutral N.
- R is reverse.

With the driver's safety belt fastened, briefly push the selector lever in the desired direction, past a resistance point, if needed. The selector lever returns to the center position in each case.

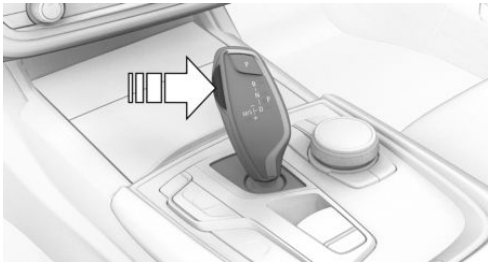
To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a drive mode or reverse, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1979

A selector lever lock prevents the inadvertent shifting to selector lever position R or the inadvertent shifting from selector lever position P.

Engage selector lever position R only when the vehicle is stationary.

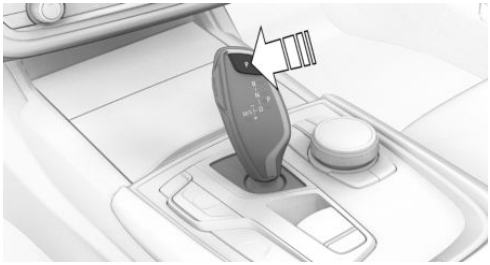
Releasing the selector lever lock



Press the button.

Engaging P

Engage selector lever position P only when the vehicle is stationary.



Press button P.

Steptronic transmission, Sport program and manual mode

Activate the Sport program/manual mode:

Press the selector lever to the left from selector lever position D.

Manual mode:

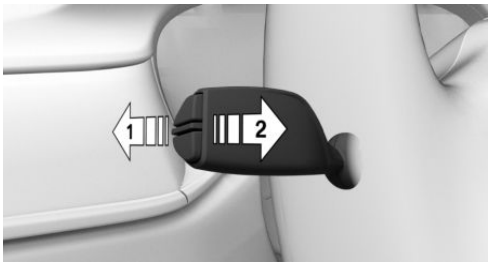
- To shift down: press the selector lever forward.
- To shift up: pull the selector lever rearwards.

End the sport program/manual mode:

Push the selector lever to the right.

High beams, headlight flasher, turn signal

High beams, headlight flasher



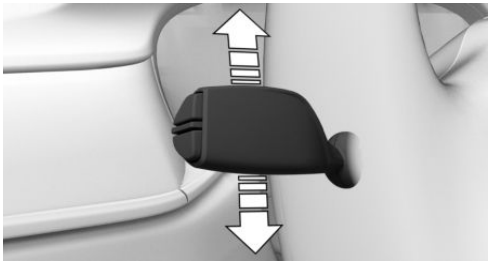
Push the lever forward or pull it backward.

- High beams on, arrow 1.

  The high beams light up when the low beams are switched on.
- High beams off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1980
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Turn signal



- On: press the lever past the resistance point.
- Off: press the lever past the resistance point in the opposite direction.
- Triple turn signal activation: lightly tap the lever up or down.
- Brief signaling: press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

Lights and lighting

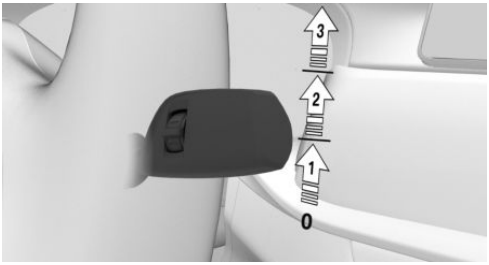
Light functions

Symbol	Function
	Night vision.
	Lights off. Daytime running lights.
	Parking lights.
	Automatic headlight control. Adaptive light functions.
	Low beams.
	Instrument lighting.
	Right roadside parking light.
	Left roadside parking light.

Wiper system

Switching the wipers on/off and brief wipe

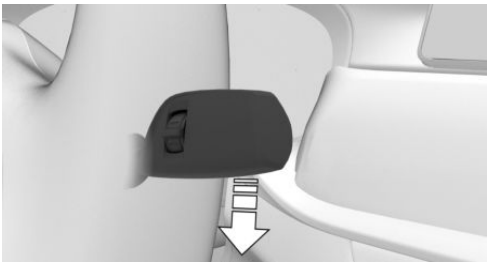
Switching on



Press the lever up until the desired position is reached.

- Resting position of the wipers: position 0.
- Rain sensor: position 1.
- Normal wiper speed: position 2.
- Fast wiper speed: position 3.

Brief wipe and switching off



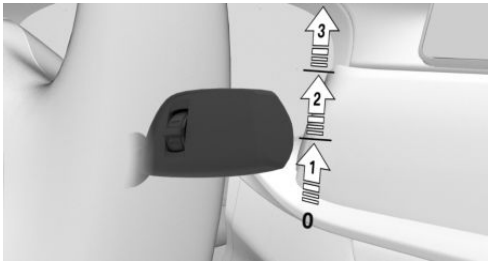
Press the lever down.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1981
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

- Switching off: press the lever down until it reaches its standard position.
- Brief wipe: press the lever down from the standard position.

Rain sensor

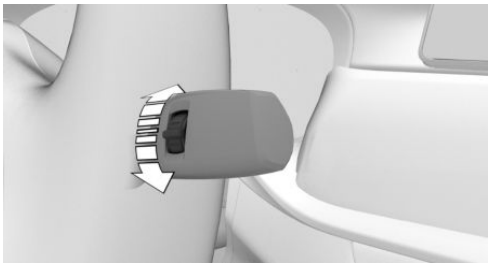
Activating/deactivating



To activate: press the lever up once from its standard position, arrow 1.

To deactivate: press the lever back into the standard position.

Adjusting the sensitivity



Turn the thumbwheel on the wiper lever.

Cleaning the windshield

Pull the wiper lever towards you.

Climate control

Automatic climate control

Symbol	Function
	Temperature.
	Air conditioning.
	Maximum cooling.
	AUTO program.
	Recirculated-air mode.
	Air flow, manual.
	Air distribution, manual.
	SYNC program.
	Defrost and defog window.
	Rear window defroster.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1982

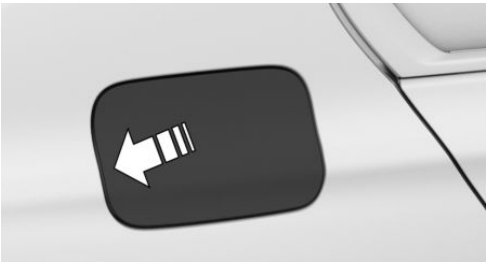
Symbol	Function
	Active seat ventilation.
	Seat heating.
	Seat and armrest heating.
	Ambient air package.

Refueling

Refueling

Fuel cap

1. To open the fuel filler flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.



2. Turn the fuel cap counterclockwise.
3. Place the fuel cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.

Gasoline

For the best fuel efficiency, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.

Wheels and tires

Tire inflation pressure specifications

The tire inflation pressure specifications can be found in the tire inflation pressure table in the printed Owner's Manual.

After correcting the tire inflation pressure

With runflat tires:

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

With Tire Pressure Monitor TPM:

The corrected tire inflation pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the correct tire settings have been made.

With tires that cannot be found in the tire pressure values on the Control Display, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM.

Checking the tire inflation pressure

Regularly check the tire inflation pressure and correct it as needed:

- At least twice a month.
- Before embarking on an extended trip.

Cleaning the wheels

The friction during hard braking may produce brake dust and make the rims dirty. Brake dust can be removed by cleaning the rims. BMW recommends using vehicle care and cleaning products from BMW.

Electronic oil measurement

Functional requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of normal driving.

Displaying the engine oil level

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1983
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"

Different messages appear on the Control Display depending on the engine oil level. Pay attention to these messages.

Adding engine oil

General information

Safely park the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before adding engine oil.

Adding

Only add engine oil when the message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Observe the quantity to be added in the message.

Take care not to add too much engine oil.

Observe recommended engine oil types.

Providing assistance

Hazard warning flashers

The button is located in the center console.

Breakdown assistance

BMW Roadside Assistance

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "BMW Assist"
3. If necessary, "BMW Roadside Assistance"
   A voice connection is established.

ConnectedDrive

Concierge service

The BMW Assist Concierge service offers information on events, gas stations or hotels, and provides phone numbers and addresses. Many hotels can be booked directly by the BMW Concierge service. The Concierge service is part of the optional BMW Assist Response Center.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "BMW Assist"
3. If necessary, "Concierge"

A voice connection to the Concierge service is established.

Teleservices

Teleservices are services that help to maintain vehicle mobility.

Teleservices can comprise the following services:

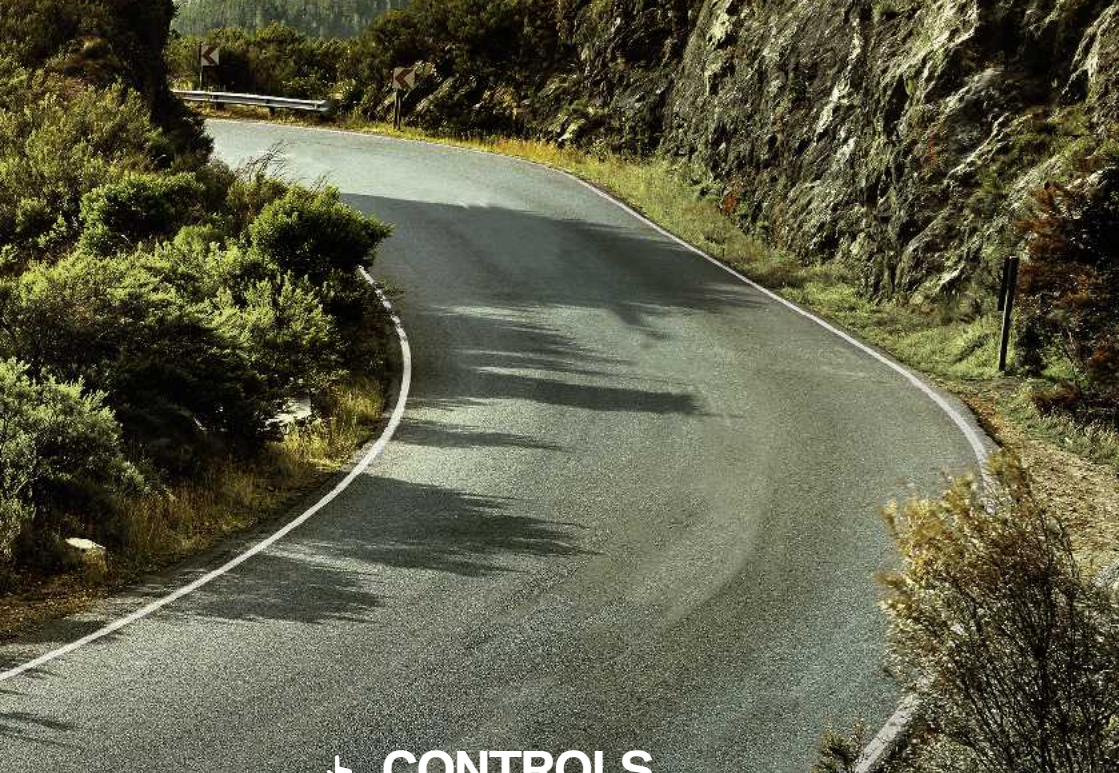
- BMW Roadside Assistance.
- BMW Accident Assistance.
- Service Request.
- Teleservice Report.
- Teleservice Battery Guard.
- Your dealer's service center.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1985
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1986

Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1987



CONTROLS

Cockpit 38
Operating state of the vehicle 43
iDrive 46
BMW Remote Software Upgrade 62
General settings 65
Opening and closing 78
Seats, mirrors, and steering wheel 109
Transporting children safely 127
Driving 132
Displays 150
Lights 166
Safety 174
Driving stability control systems 212
Driver assistance systems 216
Driving comfort 265
Climate control 268
Interior equipment 286
Storage compartments 298
Cargo area 304

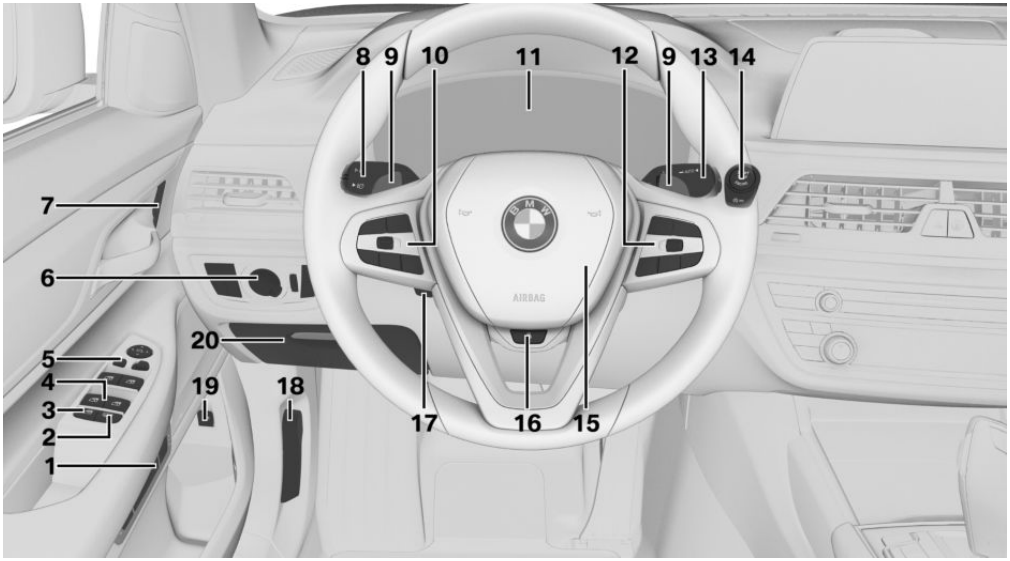
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1988

Cockpit

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

In the vicinity of the steering wheel



1 Seating comfort features

- Gentleman function 111
- Memory function 122
- Massage function 124

2 Roller sunblind in the rear window 104

3 Safety switch for the windows and roller sunblinds 104

4 Power windows 103

5 Exterior mirror operation 119

6 Lights

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1989
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Night Vision 192

Light switch 166

Lights off
Automatic headlight control 166
Daytime running lights 168

Parking lights 167

Automatic headlight control 166
Adaptive light functions 168
High-beam Assistant 169

Low beams 167

Instrument lighting 171

Right roadside parking light 167

Left roadside parking light 167

7 Central locking system

Unlocking 88

Locking 88

8 Steering column stalk, left

Turn signal 140

High beams, headlight flasher 141

High-beam Assistant 169

Widgets in the instrument cluster 151
Trip data 161

9 Shift paddles 147

10 Steering wheel buttons, left

Manual Speed Limiter 216

Depending on the equipment:
Cruise control on/off 218
Active Cruise Control on/off 220

Depending on the equipment:
Active Cruise Control on/off 220

With steering and traffic jam assistant 230:

Cruise control, distance control and lane guidance on/off

Cruise control: to store the speed

Pause or continue cruise control

Active Cruise Control: increase distance

Active Cruise Control: reduce distance

Cruise control rocker switch

11 Instrument cluster 150

12 Steering wheel buttons, right

Selection lists 161

Volume, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 8

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1990

Voice activation system 54

Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 8

Thumbwheel for selection lists 161

13 Steering column stalk, right

Wipers 141

Rain sensor 142

Cleaning the windshield 143

14

Switching drive-ready state on/off 132

Auto Start/Stop function 132

15

Horn, entire surface

16

Heated steering wheel 122

17

Adjusting the steering wheel 121

18

Unlocking the hood 359

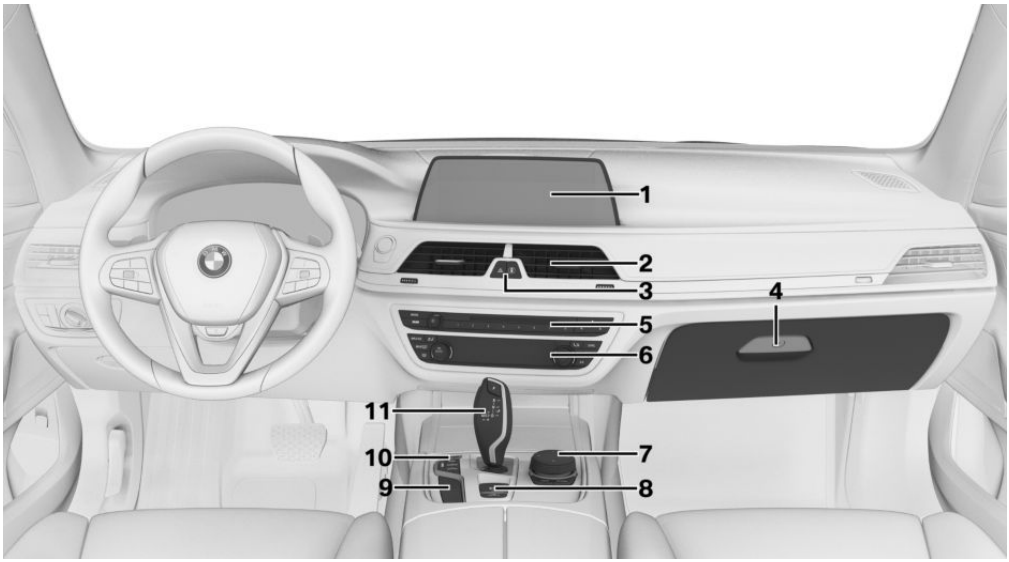
19

Opening and closing the trunk lid 93

20 Glove compartment 299

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1991
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

In the vicinity of the center console



1 Control Display 49

2 Ventilation 273

3 Hazard warning system 373

Intelligent Safety 177

4 Glove compartment 298

5 Radio/multimedia, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication 8

6 Automatic climate control 268

7 Controller with buttons 49

8 Parking brake 137

AUTO H Automatic Hold 138

9 PDC Park Distance Control 236

Without Surround View: rearview camera 241

Surround View 243

Cross traffic warning 261

Parking Assistant 250

Remote Control Parking 257

Surround View: Panorama View 243

Air suspension level adjustment 265

10 SPORT Driving Dynamics Control 135

SPORT driving mode

COMFORT COMFORT driving mode

ECO PRO ECO PRO driving mode

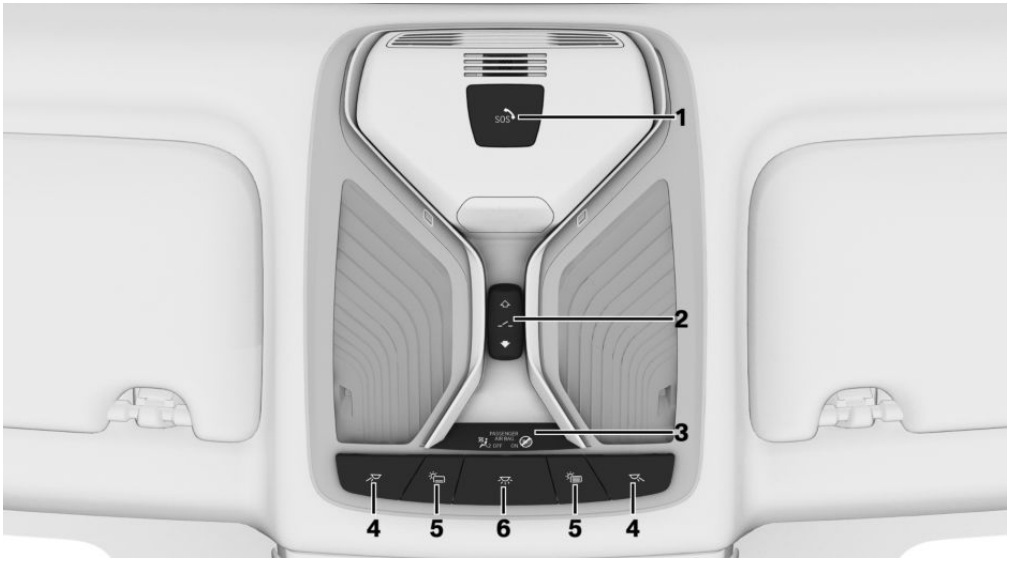
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1992

ADAPTIVE driving mode

DSC Dynamic Stability Control 212

11 Steptronic transmission selector lever 144

In the vicinity of the roofliner



1 Emergency Request, SOS 375

2 Glass sunroof 105

3 Indicator light, front-seat passenger airbag 177

4 Reading lights 171

5 Depending on the vehicle equipment: opening the rear sun protection 107

Depending on the vehicle equipment: closing the rear sun protection 107

6 Interior lights 171

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1993
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Operating state of the vehicle

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

General information

Depending on the situation, the vehicle is in one of the three states:

- Idle state.
- Standby state.
- Drive-ready state.

Idle state

Concept

If the vehicle is in idle state, it is switched off. All power consumers are deactivated.

General information

The vehicle is in idle state prior to opening from the outside and after exiting and locking.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Automatic idle state

The idle state is automatically established under the following conditions:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1994
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

- After several minutes, if no operation takes place on the vehicle.
- If the charge state of the vehicle battery is low.
- Depending on the setting via iDrive, if one of the front doors is opened when exiting the vehicle.

The idle state is not automatically established while a phone call is active.

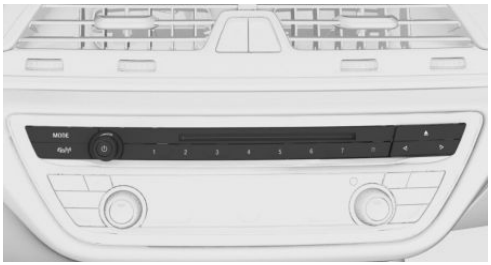
Establishing idle state when opening the front doors

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Access"
4. "Turn off vehicle after opening door"

Manual idle state

To establish idle state in the vehicle after end of trip:



Press and hold the button until the OFF indicator on the instrument cluster goes out.

Standby state

Concept

When standby state is switched on, most functions can be used while the vehicle is stationary. Desired settings can be adjusted.

General information

The vehicle is in the standby state after the front doors are opened from the outside.

Display in the instrument cluster

OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster. The drivetrain is switched off and standby state switched on.

Drive-ready state

Concept

Switching on drive-ready state corresponds to starting the engine.

General information

Some functions, such as DSC Dynamic Stability Control, can only be used with drive-ready state switched on.

Safety information

⚠ DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can enter into the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1995
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

NOTICE

In the case of repeated starting attempts or repeated starting in quick succession, the fuel is not burned or is inadequately burned. The catalytic converter can overheat. There is a risk of damage to property. Avoid repeated starting in quick succession.

Switching on drive-ready state

Concept

Drive-ready state is switched on via the Start/Stop button:

Steptronic transmission

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

The ignition is activated automatically for a brief time and is stopped as soon as the engine starts.

Most of the indicator/warning lights in the instrument cluster light up for a varied length of time.

Gasoline engine

Depending on the motorization, the full drive power may not be available for approximately 30 seconds after starting the engine. In this case, the vehicle will not accelerate as usual.

Display in the instrument cluster

When drive-ready state is switched on, the tachometer shows the current engine speed.

Switching off drive-ready state

Steptronic transmission

1. Engage selector lever position P with the vehicle stopped.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

   The engine is switched off. The vehicle switches into standby state.
3. Set the parking brake.

iDrive

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Operating concept

Concept

iDrive includes a large number of functions. These functions can be operated via the Controller and, depending on the equipment version, via touchscreen, voice activation system or gesture control.

Safety information

Warning

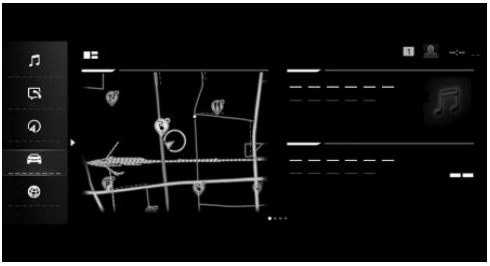
Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. As warranted, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.

Input and display

Main menu

General information

The main menu is divided into two areas. The left area contains menu items that can be used to call up all the iDrive functions. The right area contains widgets that provide quick access to certain functions.



Media/Radio

All functions of the entertainment system, e.g., radio and TV stations, connection with external devices and music collection.

Communication

Phone and message functions, e-mail and calendar, and also the connection and management of mobile devices, such as smartphones.

Navigation

Access to the navigation system, destination input and traffic bulletins. Configurable map views and other functions, such as Points of Interest and areas to be avoided.

My Car

Information about vehicle status and trips. Access to the Integrated Owner's Manual and also administration of driver profiles and range of adjustments for vehicle and iDrive.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1997
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Apps

Management and access to apps and vehicle functions. Additional apps can be purchased from the BMW Store.

Widgets

Widgets provide quick access to frequently used functions. The configured widgets display dynamic contents such as the navigation map, and serve as interfaces at the same time.

Letters and numbers

Letters and numbers can be selected when the destination is entered, for example.

Letters and numbers can be entered using the Controller, touchscreen or the voice activation system. The keyboard's display changes automatically.

Symbol	Function
abc or ABC	Change between capital and lower-case letters.
	Enter a blank space.
	Use voice activation.
OK	Confirm entry.
	Slide the input area to the left or right.

Entry comparison

When entering names and addresses, the choice is narrowed down with every letter and number and added automatically as needed.

Entries are continuously compared with data stored in the vehicle.

- Only those letters and numbers are offered during entry for which data is available.
- Destination search: place names can be entered in all languages that are available in iDrive.

Activating/deactivating the functions

Several menu items are preceded by a checkbox. The checkbox indicates whether the function is activated or deactivated. Selecting the menu item activates or deactivates the function.

Function is activated.

Function is deactivated.

Status information

General information

The status field can be found in the upper area of the Control Display. Status information is displayed in the form of symbols.

Radio symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	HD Radio station is being received.
sxm	Satellite radio is switched on.

Telephone symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Incoming or outgoing call.
	Missed call.
	Signal strength of cellular network.
	Network search.
	Cellular network is not available.
	The critical charge state of the mobile phone has been reached.
R	Roaming is active.
	Locating is active.
	SMS text message received.
	Message received.

Symbol	Meaning
	Reminder.
	Sending not possible.

Entertainment symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Bluetooth audio.
	USB audio interface.
	WiFi.

Other symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Check Control message.
	The sound output has been switched off.
	Request for the current vehicle position.
	Checking the current vehicle position.
	Driver profile.
1	Messages.
	Service requirements.
i	Information.
STOP	Stop.
	New data protection-related service available.

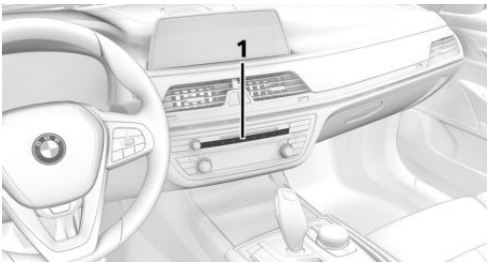
Programmable memory buttons

General information

The iDrive functions can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly, for instance radio stations, navigation destinations, phone numbers and menu entries or pages in the Integrated Owner's Manual.

Settings are stored for the driver profile currently used.

Overview



1 Programmable memory buttons

Storing a function

A function can be stored on a programmable memory button. A button with a stored function can be overwritten with another function.

1. Select function via iDrive.
2. 1 ... 7 Press and hold the desired button until the displayed bar on the Control Display has loaded completely.

Executing a function

1 ... 7 Press the button.

The function will work immediately. This means, for instance that the number is dialed when a phone number is selected.

Displaying the key assignment

Touch buttons with finger. Do not wear gloves or use objects.

The button assignment is displayed at the top edge of screen.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-1999
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Deleting all button assignments

All button assignments can be deleted.

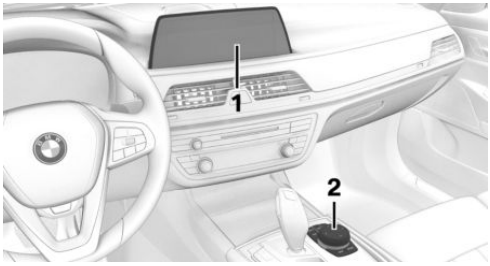
1. Press and hold buttons 1 and 8 at the same time.
2. "OK"

Control Display and Controller

Concept

The iDrive functions are displayed on the Control Display. The Control Display can be operated using the Controller, touchpad, and touch screen.

Overview



1 Control Display with touchscreen

2 Controller with buttons and touchpad

Control Display

General information

To clean the Control Display, follow the care instructions, refer to page 383.

Safety information

NOTICE

Objects in the area in the front of the Control Display can shift and damage the Control Display. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not place objects in the area in front of the Control Display.

Switching on/off automatically

The Control Display is switched on automatically after unlocking.

In certain situations, the Control Display is switched off automatically, for instance if no operation is performed on the vehicle for several minutes.

Switching on/off manually

The Control Display can also be switched off manually.

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Screen off"

Press the Controller or any button on the Controller to switch it back on again.

System limits

In the case of very high temperatures on the Control Display, for instance due to intense solar radiation, the brightness may be reduced down to complete deactivation. Once the temperature is reduced, for instance through shade or air conditioning, the normal functions are restored.

Controller

General information

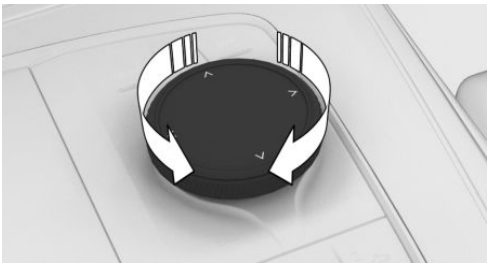
The buttons can be used to open the menus directly. The Controller can be used to select menu items and enter the settings.

Some iDrive functions can be operated using the touchpad on the Controller, refer to page 52.

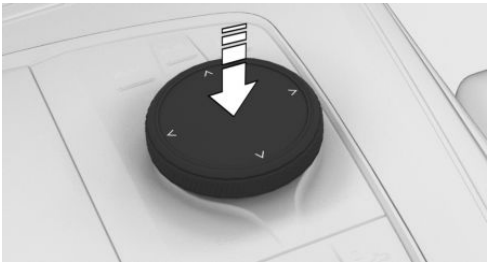
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2000
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Operation

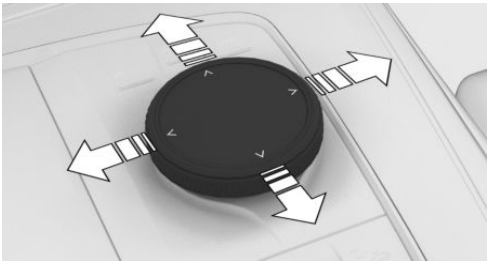
▷ Turn to switch between menu items, for example.



▷ Press to select a menu item, for example.



▷ Tilt in four directions to switch between displays, for example.



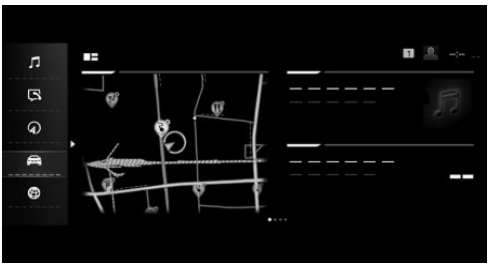
Buttons on the Controller

Button	Function
HOME	Opens the main menu.
COM	Opens the Communication menu.
MEDIA	Opens the Media/Radio menu.
NAV	Opens destination input menu for navigation.
MAP	Opens navigation map.
BACK	Opens the previous display.
OPTION	Opens the Options menu.

Operating via the Controller

Opening the main menu

HOME Press the button.



The main menu is displayed.

Selecting a menu

Selecting menu items

1. Turn the Controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.
2. Press the Controller.

Select a widget

1. Move the Controller to the right.
2. Select a widget.
3. Press the Controller.

It is also possible to select widgets in the instrument cluster, refer to page 151.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2001
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Adjusting the menu

Adjusting widgets

The widgets can be adjusted in the main menu. It is possible to create multiple pages with widgets and switch between pages. The adjustments can only be performed when the vehicle is stationary.

Via iDrive:

1. Select the desired page in the main menu. Only the currently selected page can be adjusted.
2. Tip the Controller up.
3. "Adjust main menu"
4. Select the desired adjustment:
   - ▷ Add new widget: "Add widget".
     A maximum of four widgets can be displayed per page.
   - ▷ Add new page: "Add page".
   - ▷ Delete selected page: "Delete page".
   - ▷ Adjust the content of the widget: select widget.
5. "Done"

Adjusting menu contents

The display of the menus of "MEDIA", "COM" and "NAV" can be adjusted, for instance to remove the entries of functions that are not used from the menu.

Via iDrive:

1. Select the menu.
2. "Personalize menu"
3. Select desired menu contents to be displayed.

Changing between displays

After a menu item is selected, for instance "Settings", a new display appears.

▷ Move the Controller to the left.

The current display closes and the previous display is shown.

▷ BACK Press the button.

The previous display re-opens.

▷ Move the Controller to the right.

The new display opens.

An arrow indicates that additional displays can be opened.

Opening the Options menu

OPTION Press the button.

The "Options" menu is displayed.

The menu consists of various areas:

- ▷ Help for the selected menu, for instance "Help".
- ▷ System settings, for instance "Control display off".
- ▷ Control options for the selected main menu, for instance for "Media/Radio".

Changing settings

Settings, such as brightness, can be entered.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Control display"
5. "Brightness at night"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is displayed.
7. Press the Controller.

Entering letters and numbers

Input

1. Turn the Controller: select letters or numbers.
2. OK : confirm entry.

Deleting

Symbol	Function
⌫	Press the Controller: delete letters or number.
⌫	Hold the Controller down: delete all letters or numbers.

Using alphabetical lists

For alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries, the letters for which an entry exists can be displayed in a text box.

1. Turn the Controller to the left or right quickly.
2. Select the first letter of the desired entry.

   The first entry of the selected letter is displayed in the list.

Operation via touchpad

General information

Some iDrive functions can be operated using the touchpad on the Controller.

Selecting functions

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Touchpad"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "Character input": enter letters and numbers.
   - "Map": use the map.
   - "Search fields": to write letters without selecting the list field.
   - "Audio confirmation": pronounces entered letters and numbers.

Entering letters and numbers

- The system distinguishes between upper and lower-case letters and numbers. The entry may require switching between letters and numbers, refer to page 46.
- Enter characters as they are displayed on the Control Display.
- Always enter associated characters, such as accents or periods so that the letter can be clearly recognized.
- The set language determines what input is possible. Where necessary, enter special characters via the Controller.

Entering special characters

Input	Operation
Delete a character.	Swipe to the left on the touchpad.
Enter a blank space.	Swipe to the right in the center of the touchpad.
Enter a hyphen.	Swipe to the right in the upper area of the touchpad.
Enter an underscore.	Swipe to the right in the lower area of the touchpad.

Using the map

The map in the navigation system can be moved via the touchpad.

Function	Operation
Move map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Enlarge/shrink map.	Drag in or out on the touchpad with fingers.
Display menu.	Tap once.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2003
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Operation via touchscreen

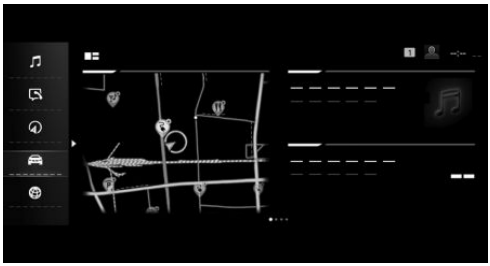
General information

The Control Display is equipped with a touchscreen.

You can tap on menu items and widgets. Touch the screen with your fingers. Do not use any objects.

Opening the main menu

Tap on the symbol.



The main menu is displayed.

Adjusting widgets

The widgets can be adjusted in the main menu. It is possible to create multiple pages with widgets and switch between pages. The adjustments can only be performed when the vehicle is stationary.

Via iDrive:

1. Select the desired page in the main menu. Only the currently selected page can be adjusted.
2. Tap the symbol in the main menu.
3. Select the desired adjustment:
   - Add new widget: + Tap symbol and select desired widget.

     The requested widget will be inserted in the relevant position. A maximum of four widgets can be displayed per page.
   - Delete selected widget: ✕ Tap symbol.
   - Add new page: tap "Add page".
   - Delete selected page: tap "Delete page".
   - Adjust content of the widget: tap center of widget.
4. Tap "Done".

Showing/hiding the display bar

At the top edge of the screen, it is possible to show or hide a display bar with additional functions.

- To show the display bar, pull down the display bar at the top edge of the screen.
- To hide the display bar, pull up the display bar at the top edge of the screen.

Changing between displays

After a menu item is selected, a new display opens.

An arrow indicates that additional displays can be opened.

- Swipe to the left.
- Tap arrow.

The new display opens.

Changing settings

Settings such as brightness can be changed via the touchscreen.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Control display"
5. "Brightness at night"
6. To perform the desired setting:
   - Slide in the selected field to the right or left, until the desired setting is displayed.
   - − , + Tap on the symbol.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2004

Entering letters and numbers

Input

1. Tap the symbol on the touchscreen.
   A keyboard appears in the Control Display.
2. Enter letters and numbers.

Deleting

Symbol	Function
⌫	Tapping the symbol: deletes the letter or number.
⌫	Tapping and holding the symbol all letters: deletes all letters or numbers.

Using the map

The navigation map can be moved using the touchscreen.

Function	Operation
Move map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Enlarge/shrink map.	Drag in or out with the fingers.
Display menu.	Tap once.

Voice activation system

Concept

The voice activation system can be used to operate functions with spoken commands. The system supports you with announcements during input.

The voice control system and the feedback it provides are not a substitute for the printed or Integrated Owner's Manual.

General information

- Functions that can only be used when the vehicle is stationary can only be operated via the voice activation system to a limited extent.
- The system includes special microphones on the driver side and the front passenger side.
- ›...‹ denotes commands to use with the voice activation system.

Functional requirements

- A language must be set via iDrive that is supported by the voice activation system. To set the language, refer to page 67.
- Always say commands in the language of the voice activation system.

Activating the voice activation system

General information

There are various methods for activating the voice activation feature:

- Press the button on the steering wheel.
- Say the wake word ›Hello BMW‹ or a personal wake word.
- Active voice processing.

Then say the command. No other commands may be available. In this case, operate the function via iDrive.

The voice activation can be terminated:

Press the button on the steering wheel again or press ›Cancel‹.

Button on the steering wheel

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the signal.
3. Say the command.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2005
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

The symbol on the Control Display indicates that the voice activation system is active.

Wake word

General information

Speaking the wake word ›Hello BMW‹ will start the system. Immediately following, the voice activation can be continued with voice commands.

1. Say the wake word ›Hello BMW‹.
2. Say the command.

Preset wake word

The preset wake word ›Hello BMW‹ can be activated and deactivated. The ›Hello BMW‹ option activates the preset and personal wake word.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. "Activation with "Hello BMW""

Personal wake word

In addition to a preset wake word ›Hello BMW‹, a personal wake word can be set up.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. "Personal keyword"
6. "Start recording"

   For the "Start recording" option, online speech processing must be available and activated. Alternatively, the personal wake word can be entered using the Controller.
7. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Active voice processing

General information

Active voice processing recognizes keywords that are spoken in the car's interior. For instance, if the name of a city is named, information for the navigation will be displayed on the Control Display.

Activating/deactivating

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. "Active speech processing"

Possible commands

General information

Most contents on the Control Display can be spoken as commands, e.g. menu items or list entries. Speak these list entries out loud exactly as they are shown in the list.

Say the commands, numbers, and letters smoothly and with normal volume, emphasis, and speed.

The status of the voice recognition is displayed in the upper area of the Control Display.

Example for function

The commands of the menu items are spoken just as they are selected via the Controller.

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. ›Media and radio‹
3. ›Presets‹

The stored stations are displayed on the Control Display.

The voice activation system can also be used to operate most climate control functions, refer to page 285.

The voice activation system can be used to enter the destination, refer to Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication.

Help on the voice activation system

- To have the available spoken instructions read out loud: ›Voice commands‹.
- To have information on the operating principle of the voice activation system read out loud: ›General information on voice control‹.
- To have help for the current menu read out loud: ›Help‹.

Information for Emergency Requests

Do not use the voice activation system to initiate an Emergency Request. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change. This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a phone connection.

Instead, use the SOS button, refer to page 375, close to the interior mirror.

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant

Concept

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant expands the voice activation function to include additional functions that improve interaction in the vehicle. It is possible to ask questions about the current state of the vehicle, for instance.

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is connected to other digital services such as the Concierge service and is continually being developed.

Functional requirement

The driver's profile is activated.

Activate the following settings to access the full range of functions:

- "Online speech processing".
- "Synchronize driver profile" under "Personalization" in the data protection menu.
- All settings under "BMW ConnectedDrive" in the data protection menu.

Example for function

1. Say the wake word ›Hello BMW‹ or a personal wake word.
2. ›How high is the outside temperature‹

   BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant provides information about the external temperature.

Adjusting

Setting the language

The language to be used for voice activation and system announcements can be set.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. "System language"
6. Select the desired language.

Setting the voice dialog

You can set the system to use standard dialog or a short version.

The short version of the voice dialog plays back short messages in abbreviated form.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. "Speech mode"
6. Select the desired setting.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2007
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Speaking during voice output

It is possible to answer during inquiries of the voice activation system. The function can be deactivated if inquiries are often undesirably interrupted, for instance due to background noise or talking.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. "Speaking during voice output"

Online speech processing

Online speech processing provides a dictation function, a natural method of entering destinations and improves the quality of voice recognition. To use the functions, data is transmitted to a service provider via an encrypted connection and stored locally there.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. "Online speech processing"

Adjusting the volume

Turn the volume button during the spoken instructions until the desired volume is set.

- The volume remains constant even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.
- The volume is stored for the driver profile currently used.

System limits

- Certain noises can be detected and may lead to problems. Keep the doors, windows, and glass sunroof closed.
- Noises from the front passenger or the rear seat bench can impair the system. Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.
- Major language dialects can cause problems with the voice recognition feature. Speak loud and clear.

Using the voice activation system of the smartphone

A smartphone connected to the vehicle can be used via voice activation.

Activate voice command response on the smartphone for this purpose.

1. Press and hold the button on the steering wheel for approx. 3 seconds.

   Voice command response is activated on the smartphone.

2. Release the button.

   If activation is successful, a confirmation appears on the Control Display.

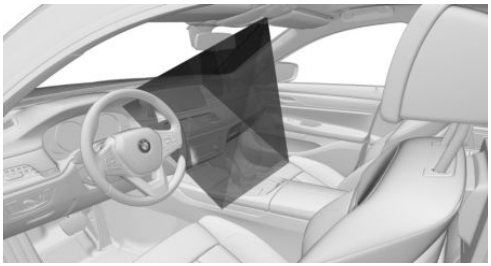
If it was not possible to activate voice command response, the list of Bluetooth devices appears on the Control Display.

BMW Gesture Control

Concept

Several iDrive functions can be operated by hand motion using BMW Gesture Control.

Overview



The gestures that are performed underneath the interior mirror are captured by a camera in the roofliner.

Activating/deactivating

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Gesture control"
5. "Gesture control"

Adjusting

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Gesture control"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "User help display": the possible gesture is shown on the Control Display.
   - ▷ "Audio confirmation": an acoustic signal is emitted once the gesture is recognized.

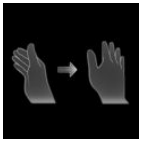
Carrying out gestures

Perform gestures underneath the interior mirror and next to the steering wheel.

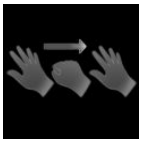
Execute gestures clearly.

The gestures can also be executed from the front-passenger side.

Possible gestures

Gesture	Operation	Function
	Move index finger forward and backward in the direction of the screen.	Accept call. Select a highlighted entry in a list during voice activation. Confirm pop-up.
	Move hand across the width of the Control Display in the direction of the front-passenger side.	Reject call. Close pop-up. Terminate voice activation.
	Slowly move hand clockwise in a circular pattern with the index finger stretched out forward. Gesture is detected after one circular motion.	The volume is increased.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2009
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Gesture	Operation	Function
	Slowly move hand counterclockwise with the index finger stretched out forward. Gesture is detected after one circular motion.	The volume is reduced.
	Pinch with thumb and index finger and move hand horizontally to the right or left.	Surround View: turn camera view. This gesture can only be executed while the vehicle is stationary.
	Move stretched out index and middle finger forward.	Individually assignable gesture.
	Hold your stretched out thumb to the left.	Reverse Skip function.
	Hold your stretched out thumb to the right.	Forward Skip function.
	Stretch out five fingers, form a fist and stretch five fingers out again.	Individually assignable gesture.

Assigning gesture individually

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Gesture control"
5. "Function assignment gesture 1" or "Function assignment gesture 2"
6. Select the desired setting.

System limits

Gesture recognition by the camera can be disturbed by the following circumstances:

- The camera lens is covered.
- Objects are located on the interior mirror.
- The camera lens is dirty. Clean the camera lenses, refer to page 383.
- The gesture is executed outside of the detection range.

- Wearing of gloves or jewelry.
- Smoking in the car's interior.

BMW Touch Command

Concept

BMW Touch Command is a tablet that can be used to operate important vehicle functions.

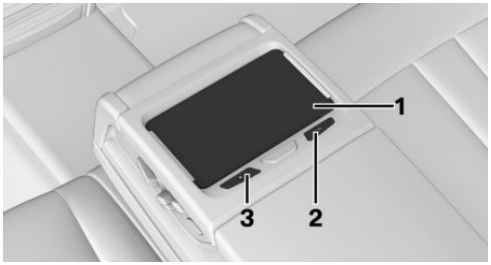
General information

Depending on the equipment version, BMW Touch Command is located in the rear console or in the center armrest in the rear.

The following functions can be used:

- Audio sources in the front.
- Interior lighting.
- Seat adjustments for front passenger seat and seats in the rear.
- Sun protection.
- Climate control in the rear.
- Rear entertainment.

Overview



1 BMW Touch Command
2 Switching on/off
3 Ejecting

Operation

Buttons on BMW Touch Command

Button	Function
⌂ or ▭	Display the main menu.
▭	Display the application being used.
⮌	Back.

Connecting BMW Touch Command

Switch on BMW Touch Command.

The connection is established automatically.

If the connection is not established automatically, follow the instructions on BMW Touch Command.

Charging the rechargeable battery

BMW Touch Command can be charged in the rear center armrest.

Insert BMW Touch Command into the tray with the screen facing upward. To charge the rechargeable battery, insert BMW Touch Command with the charging socket to the left.

Selecting menu items

1. ⌂ Tap on the symbol.
   The main menu is displayed.
2. Select the desired menu item.
3. Select the desired setting.

Adjusting

Displays

Settings, such as brightness, can be entered.

1. ⌂ Tap on the symbol.
2. ⚙ Tap the symbol in the status field.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2011
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

3. "Brightness"
4. Slide the bar to the right or left until the desired setting is displayed.

Language setting

Regardless of the set language on the Control Display, a different language can be selected for BMW Touch Command.

1. Tap on the symbol.
2. Tap the symbol in the status field.
3. "Language"
4. Select the desired setting.

Device information

Information about the device can be displayed in the settings:

- License information.
- Version.
- Data protection statement.

BMW Remote Software Upgrade

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

BMW Remote Software Upgrade

Concept

Remote Software Upgrade can be used to update the software of the vehicle. Remote Software Upgrade makes new functions, functional enhancements or quality improvements available.

General information

BMW recommends performing the Remote Software Upgrade as soon as it becomes available.

The upgrade will not be installed until it was confirmed on the vehicle.

- The installation may take around 20 minutes.
- The installation cannot be terminated.
- The vehicle cannot be used during the installation.
- The vehicle can be exited during the installation.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

Functional requirement

The use of the Remote Software Upgrade requires an active ConnectedDrive contract.

Information about the version

General information

The information about the version contains a description of the updates that are included in the Remote Software Upgrade. During the download and after the installation has been completed successfully, the information about the version can be displayed on the Control Display. The information is available in the ConnectedDrive customer portal at any time.

Displaying information about the version

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. "Installed version:"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2013
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Safety information

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Search for and download of an upgrade

General information

There are various options to search for and download an upgrade:

- Automatic.
- Via iDrive.
- Via BMW Connected app.

Automatic

The available data for Remote Software Upgrade is automatically loaded into the vehicle.

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. "Search for upgrades"
6. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Via BMW Connected app

1. Download the available upgrade to the smartphone in the BMW Connected app.
2. Follow the instructions in the BMW Connected app.
3. Establish a WiFi and Bluetooth connection between the smartphone and the vehicle.

   The data transfer of the upgrade from the smartphone to the vehicle occurs while driving.
4. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Install the upgrade

General information

After successful download completion, installation is offered once the vehicle is parked.

Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

After the successful completion of the upgrade, booked services, for example RTTI, will be reactivated automatically while driving.

Functional requirements

- The battery is sufficiently charged.
- The external temperature is above 14 °F/-10 °C.
- Vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- Hazard warning system is switched off.
- Transmission position P is engaged.

Preparing the vehicle

- Park the vehicle safely away from the public road.
- Ensure cellular network reception so that an error message can be sent, for example if the installation is terminated.

- Close the windows.
- Close the glass sunroof.
- Remove energy consuming devices, such as a mobile phone.
- The remote control is in the vehicle at the start of the installation.
- Switch off the exterior lighting.

Additional vehicle related functional requirements are shown on the Control Display.

Install the upgrade later

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. "Start upgrade now"

   Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Functional limitations

During the upgrade, the majority of functions is temporarily unavailable, for instance:

- Hazard warning system.
- Central locking system.
- Parking lights.
- Horn.
- Alarm system.
- Emergency Request.
- Power windows.
- Glass sunroof.

The driver's door can be locked and unlocked from the outside using the integrated key.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, follow the instructions on the Control Display or in the BMW Connected app.

If the malfunction cannot be remedied, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2015
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

General settings

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Messages

Concept

The menu centrally displays all messages arriving in the vehicle in list form.

General information

The following messages can be displayed:

- Traffic messages.
- Check Control messages.
- Service requirements messages.
- Communication messages, for example e-mails, SMS text messages or reminders.
- Messages from, e.g., the Concierge service or the BMW Connected app.
- Messages from the vehicle manufacturer.

The number of messages is additionally displayed in the status field.

The Messages menu can also be created as Widget, refer to page 50.

Retrieving messages

Via iDrive:

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Select the desired message.

Deleting messages

All messages, except Check Control messages or messages from the vehicle manufacturer, can be deleted from the list.

Check Control messages or messages from the vehicle manufacturer are displayed as long as they are relevant.

Via iDrive:

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Select desired message, for instance. SMS.
4.

Press the button.
5. "Delete"

Adjusting

The following settings can be adjusted:

- Select the applications, from which messages will be permitted.
- All messages or a limited time period for received messages.

Via iDrive:

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. "Settings"
4. Move the Controller to the right.
5. Select the desired setting.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2016
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Time

Setting the time zone

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time zone:"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the time

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired hours are displayed.
7. Press the Controller.
8. Turn the Controller until the desired minutes are displayed.
9. "OK"

Setting the time format

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time format:"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Automatic time setting

Depending on your vehicle's optional features, the time, date and, if needed, the time zone are updated automatically.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Automatic time setting"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Date

Setting the date

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Date:"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired day is displayed.
7. Press the Controller.
8. Make the settings for the month and year.
9. "OK"

Setting the date format

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Date format:"
6. Select the desired setting.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2017
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Language

Setting the language

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language:"
5. "System language"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the voice dialog

For voice dialog for the voice activation system, refer to page 56.

Setting the units of measurement

Depending on the country version, you can set the units of measurement for some values, for instance consumption, distances, and temperature.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Units"
5. Select the desired menu item.
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Trip data settings

Concept

The intervals in which the trip data, refer to page 161, will be reset can be configured.

Resetting trip data

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Reset trip data"
5. Select the desired setting.

Speed warning

Concept

A speed limit can be set that when reached will cause a warning to be issued.

General information

The warning is repeated if the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed limit again, after it has dropped below it by 3 mph/5 km/h.

Adjusting

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Warning at:"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired speed is displayed.
7. Press the Controller.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2018

Activating/deactivating

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Speed warning"

Setting your current speed as the speed warning

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Select current speed"

Driver Attention Camera

Concept

A camera that monitors driver activity is located in the instrument cluster. The camera evaluates the head position and eye opening and uses the data to analyze the attention of the driver. This system supports various vehicle assistance systems, e.g.:

- Fatigue alert, refer to page 210.
- Steering and traffic jam assistant with Assisted Driving Plus, refer to page 230.

For the position in the instrument cluster, refer to page 150.

Activating/deactivating

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Driver Attention Camera"
5. Select the desired setting.

System limits

The Driver Attention Camera may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- When the Driver Attention Camera is covered by the steering wheel rim.
- When the driver is wearing infrared impermeable sunglasses.

Activating/deactivating popup windows

For some functions, popup windows are displayed automatically on the Control Display. Some of these popup windows can be activated or deactivated.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Pop-ups"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Activating/deactivating the display of the current vehicle position

Concept

If vehicle tracking has been activated, the current vehicle position can be displayed in the BMW Connected app or in the ConnectedDrive customer portal.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2019
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Activating/deactivating

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Vehicle tracking"
5. Select the desired setting.

Control Display

Brightness

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Control display"
5. "Brightness at night"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is set.
7. Press the Controller.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Depending on the light conditions, the brightness settings may not be clearly visible.

Data protection

Data transfer

Concept

The vehicle offers different services, whose use requires a data transfer to BMW or a service provider. The data transfer can be deactivated for some services.

General information

When the data transfer is deactivated, the respective service cannot be used.

Only make these settings while stationary.

Activating/deactivating

Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. "Agree and activate all"

   All services and functions that are relevant for data protection will be activated or deactivated.

Configuring the data transfer

The data transfer can be configured individually for separate services.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. "Configure services"
6. Select the desired setting.

Deleting personal data in the vehicle

Concept

Depending on the usage, the vehicle stores personal data, such as stored radio stations. This personal data can be permanently deleted using iDrive.

General information

Depending on the equipment package, the following data can be deleted:

- Driver profile settings.
- Stored radio stations.

- Stored programmable memory buttons.
- Travel and Onboard Computer information.
- Music hard disk.
- Navigation, for instance stored destinations.
- Phone book.
- Online data, for instance Favorites, cookies.
- Office data, for instance voice notes.
- Login accounts.

Altogether, the deletion of the data can take up to 15 minutes.

Functional requirement

Data can only be deleted while stationary.

Deleting data

The personal data in the vehicle will be deleted when the vehicle is reset to the factory settings.

For resetting the vehicle to factory settings, refer to page 77.

Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle

Concept

Various connection types are available for using mobile devices in the vehicle. The connection type to select depends on the mobile device and the desired function.

General information

The following overview shows possible functions and the suitable connection types for them. The scope of functions depends on the mobile device.

Function	Connection type
Making calls via the hands-free system. Using phone functions via iDrive or touchscreen. Other functions, e.g. Contacts or SMS.	Bluetooth.
Playing music from the smartphone or the audio player.	Bluetooth or USB.
USB storage device: Playing music.	USB.
Playing videos from the smartphone or the USB storage device.	USB.
Using the vehicle Internet access.	WiFi hotspot via WiFi.
Using Apple CarPlay apps via iDrive and voice operation.	Bluetooth and WiFi.
Screen Mirroring: Showing the smartphone display on the Control Display.	WiFi.

The following connection types require one-time pairing with the vehicle:

- Bluetooth.
- WiFi hotspot.
- Apple CarPlay.
- Screen Mirroring.

Paired devices are automatically recognized later on and connected to the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2021
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Safety information

Warning

Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. As warranted, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.

Compatible devices

General information

Information on mobile devices compatible with the vehicle can be found at www.bmwusa.com/bluetooth.

Malfunctions may occur with devices not listed or deviating software versions.

Displaying the vehicle identification number and software part number

When looking for compatible devices, you may have to state the vehicle identification number and the software part number. These numbers can be displayed in the vehicle.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth® info"
6. "System information"

Bluetooth connection

Functional requirements

- Compatible device, refer to page 71, with Bluetooth interface.
- The remote control or BMW display key is in the vehicle.
- The device is ready for operation.
- Bluetooth is switched on in the vehicle, refer to page 71, and on the device.
- The pairing readiness is displayed on the Control Display.
- Bluetooth presettings, such as visibility, may be required on the device; refer to the owner's manual of the device.

Switching on Bluetooth

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth®"
6. Select setting.

Activating/deactivating telephone functions

To use all supported functions of a mobile phone, activate the desired functions in the vehicle prior to pairing the mobile phone with the vehicle as needed.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Personalize menu"
3. Select the desired settings, for instance"Text messages".

Pairing the mobile device with the vehicle

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. Select the desired function:
   - ▷ "Phone calls and Bluetooth® audio"
   - ▷ "Audio"

   The vehicle's Bluetooth name is displayed on the Control Display.
6. On the mobile device, search for Bluetooth devices in the vicinity and select the vehicle.

   A control number is displayed.
7. Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number on the display of the mobile device, and confirm that the two match.
8. Select Bluetooth connection if necessary: "Use BMW iDrive for phone calls, Bluetooth® audio, and apps."

The mobile device is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list, refer to page 76.

Frequently Asked Questions

All requirements are met and all required steps were completed in the specified order. Despite that, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations can help:

Why could the mobile phone not be paired or connected?

- ▷ There are too many Bluetooth devices connected to the mobile phone or vehicle.

  In the vehicle, delete Bluetooth connections with other devices.

  Delete the Bluetooth connection from the device list on the mobile phone and start a new device search.

  Too many Bluetooth devices with the same function are paired.
- ▷ The mobile phone is in power-save mode or has only a limited remaining battery life.

  Charge the mobile phone and deactivate the power-save mode where required.

Why does the mobile phone no longer react?

- ▷ The applications on the mobile phone do not function anymore.

  Switch the mobile phone off and on again.
- ▷ Too high or too low ambient temperature for mobile phone operation.

  Do not subject the mobile phone to extreme ambient temperatures.

Why can phone functions not be used via iDrive?

- ▷ Phone functions are not configured for the mobile phone.

  Connect the mobile phone with the telephone function.

Why are no or not all phone book entries displayed or why are they incomplete?

- ▷ Transmission of the phone book entries is not yet complete.
- ▷ It is possible that only the phone book entries of the mobile phone or the SIM card are transmitted.
- ▷ It may not be possible to display phone book entries with special characters.
- ▷ It may not be possible to transmit contacts from social networks.
- ▷ The number of phone book entries to be transmitted is too high.
- ▷ Data volume of the contact too large, for instance due to stored information such as notes.

  Reduce the data volume of the contact.
- ▷ A mobile phone can only be connected as audio source or as telephone.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2023
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Configure the mobile phone and connect it with the telephone function.

- Contact was created in the contact list of the phone after the last synchronization.

  Synchronize contacts again: "Reload contacts"

How can the phone connection quality be improved?

- Adjust the strength of the Bluetooth signal on the mobile phone, depending on the mobile phone.
- Insert the mobile phone into the wireless charging tray.
- Adjust the volume of the microphone separately in the sound settings.

If all points in this list have been checked and the required function is still not available, contact the hotline, a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

USB connection

General information

Mobile devices with a USB port are connected to the USB interface.

- Mobile phones.
- Audio devices such as MP3 players.
- USB storage devices.

  Common file systems are supported. FAT32 and exFAT are the recommended formats.

A connected USB storage device will be supplied with charge current via the USB interface if the device supports this. Follow the maximum charge current of the USB interface.

The following uses are possible on USB interfaces with data transfer:

- Playing music files.
- Playing videos.

Follow the following when connecting:

- Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB interface.
- Use a flexible adapter cable.
- Protect the USB storage device against mechanical damage.
- Due to the large number of USB storage devices available on the market, it cannot be guaranteed that every device is operable on the vehicle.
- Do not expose USB storage devices to extreme environmental conditions, such as very high temperatures; refer to the owner's manual of the device.
- Due to the many different compression techniques, proper playback of the media stored on the USB storage device cannot be guaranteed in all cases.
- To ensure proper transmission of the stored data, do not charge a USB storage device via the onboard socket, when it is connected to the USB interface.
- Depending on how the USB storage device is being used, settings may be required on the USB storage device, refer to the owner's manual of the device.

Not compatible USB media:

- USB hard drives.
- USB hubs.
- USB memory card readers with multiple slots.
- HFS-formatted USB storage devices.
- Devices such as fans or lamps.

Functional requirement

Compatible device, refer to page 71, with USB interface.

Connecting the device

Connect the USB storage device using a suitable adapter cable to a USB interface, refer to page 293.

The USB storage device is displayed in the device list, refer to page 76.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2024

Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

WiFi hotspot

Concept

Compatible devices with WiFi interface can use the Internet connection of the vehicle via the WiFi hotspot.

General information

Up to 10 devices can be connected to the WiFi hotspot simultaneously.

Functional requirements

- Compatible device, refer to page 71, with activated WiFi interface.
- WiFi is activated on the vehicle.
- Internet use is activated for the vehicle.
- Registration and data contract with a service provider where required.
- Standby state is switched on.

Connecting a device to the Internet via the WiFi hotspot

Using the Internet for the first time via the WiFi hotspot requires registration and possibly a data volume purchase from a service provider.

Depending on the country version, data volume can be purchased via the connected mobile device or from the ConnectedDrive Store.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Internet"

   Hotspot name and hotspot code are displayed on the Control Display.
6. Activate Internet usage via WiFi if necessary.

   "Open settings"
7. Activate Internet usage.

   "Internet connection"
8. Move the Controller to the left.
9. Search for WiFi networks on the mobile device. Select network name on the device.
10. Enter hotspot code on the device and connect.

The device is displayed in the device list, refer to page 76.

Additionally, a QR code will be displayed on the Control Display. Alternatively, this QR code can be used to pair the mobile device with the hotspot.

All devices connected via the hotspot use this data volume.

Deactivating Internet usage via the WiFi hotspot

Internet usage may be deactivated if the data volume is used up, for instance.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Internet connection"
6. Select the required setting.

Apple CarPlay preparation

Concept

CarPlay allows certain functions of a compatible Apple iPhone to be used via Siri voice operation and iDrive.

Functional requirements

- Compatible iPhone, refer to page 71.

  iPhone 5 or later with iOS 7.1 or later.
- Corresponding mobile contract.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2025
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

- Bluetooth, WiFi, and Siri voice operation are activated on the iPhone.
- Booking the ConnectedDrive service: Apple CarPlay preparation.

Switching on Bluetooth and CarPlay

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. Select the following setting:
   "Apple CarPlay"
6. Activate the function.

Pairing the iPhone with CarPlay

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Phone calls and Bluetooth® audio"
   The vehicle's Bluetooth name is displayed on the Control Display.
6. On the mobile device, search for Bluetooth devices in the vicinity and select the vehicle.
   A control number is displayed.
7. Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number on the display of the mobile device, and confirm that the two match.
8. Select CarPlay:
   "Confirm note and connect to Apple CarPlay"

The iPhone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list, refer to page 76.

Operation

For more information, refer to the Integrated Owner's Manual or the Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication.

Frequently Asked Questions

All requirements are met and all required steps were completed in the specified order. Despite that, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations can help:

The iPhone has already been paired with Apple CarPlay. When a new connection is established, CarPlay can no longer be selected.

- Delete the iPhone concerned from the device list.
- On the iPhone, delete the vehicle concerned from the list of stored connections under Bluetooth and under WiFi.
- Pair the iPhone as a new device.

If the steps listed have been carried out and the required function is still not available: contact the hotline, a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Screen Mirroring

General information

Screen Mirroring enables mirroring (outputting) of the smartphone display on the Control Display.

Functional requirements

- Compatible smartphone, refer to page 71, with Screen Mirroring interface.
- Screen Mirroring is switched on on the smartphone.
- WiFi is switched on in the vehicle.

Activate WiFi in the vehicle

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Wi-Fi®"

Pairing a smartphone with Screen Mirroring

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Screen Mirroring"

   The WiFi name of the vehicle is displayed on the Control Display.
6. Search for WiFi devices in the surroundings of the smartphone.

   The WiFi name of the vehicle appears on the device display. Select the WiFi name of the vehicle.
7. Confirm the connection via iDrive.

The device is connected and displayed in the device list, refer to page 76.

Managing mobile devices

General information

- After one-time pairing, the devices are automatically recognized and reconnected when standby state is switched on.
- After stored content on the SIM card or the mobile phone, such as contacts, has been detected, the data is transmitted to the vehicle and can be used via iDrive.
- For some devices, certain settings are necessary, for instance authorization; see the owner's manual of the device.

Displaying the device list

All devices paired with or connected to the vehicle are displayed in the device list.

A maximum of 4 devices can be connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth, and a maximum of 10 devices can be connected to the vehicle via WiFi. A maximum of 20 devices will be detected.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"

A symbol indicates, for which function a device is used. When the icon is displayed in white, this function is actively connected to the vehicle. The icon is displayed in gray when the function of the device is inactive.

Symbol	Meaning
	Telephone.
	Bluetooth audio.
	WiFi hotspot.
	Apple CarPlay.
	Screen Mirroring.

Configuring the device

Functions can be activated or deactivated for paired and connected devices.

If a function is assigned to a device, the function will be deactivated where appropriate for a device that is already connected and the device will be disconnected. Follow the information on the Control Display.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2027
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

3. Select the desired device.
4. Select the desired setting.
   ▷ "Disconnect device"
   The device remains paired and can be connected again.
   ▷ "Connect device"
   The functions that were assigned to the device before disconnecting are assigned to the device when it is reconnected. The functions may be deactivated on a device already connected.
   ▷ "Delete device"
   The device is disconnected and removed from the device list.

Priority of the phones

When two mobile phones are connected to the vehicle, you can specify the priority of the mobile phones for reconnection.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Priorities for telephones"
6. Select the desired device.
7. Turn the controller to select the priority for the selected mobile phone.
   Select the desired priority by sliding.

Resetting the vehicle configuration

All individual settings can be reset to the factory settings when the drive-ready state is switched off.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Reset vehicle data"
5. "Reset vehicle data"

When the stored settings in a driver profile are synchronized with the ConnectedDrive account, these settings will remain in the ConnectedDrive account.

Opening and closing

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Remote control

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the vehicle is delivered with two remote controls or one remote control and the BMW display key, refer to page 83.

Each remote control contains a replaceable battery, refer to page 81.

Depending on the equipment and country version, various settings, refer to page 99, can be configured for the button functions.

A driver profile, refer to page 94, with personal settings can be assigned to a remote control.

To provide information on maintenance requirements, the service data is stored in the remote control, refer to page 368.

To prevent possible locking in of the remote control, take the remote control with you when exiting the vehicle.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Take the remote control with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.

⚠ Warning

For some country versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

⚠ Warning

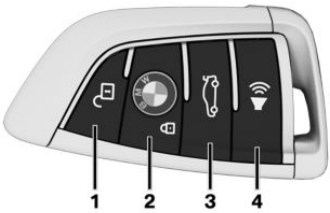
Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2029
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Overview



1 Unlocking

2 Locking

Stationary climate control through Remote Engine Start 278

3 Opening the trunk lid

4 Press and hold or press three times in quick succession: panic mode

Press briefly: headlight courtesy delay feature

Unlocking

General information

The behavior of the vehicle when unlocking with the remote control depends on the following settings, refer to page 99, for unlocking and locking:

- If only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap or all access to the vehicle will be unlocked.
- If the unlocking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- If the welcome light, refer to page 167, is switched on when the vehicle is being unlocked.
- If the exterior mirrors are automatically folded out and in when the vehicle is unlocked and locked.

Unlocking the vehicle

Press the button on the remote control.

If, due to the settings, only the driver's door and fuel filler flap were unlocked, press the button on the remote control again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

In addition, the following functions are executed:

- If a driver profile, refer to page 94, was assigned to the remote control, this driver profile will be activated and the settings that are stored in it will be applied.
- The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off. For switching the interior lights on/off manually, refer to page 171.
- The rear sun protection of the glass sunroof is moved into the position where it was prior to locking.
- With anti-theft protection: Anti-theft protection is switched off.
- With alarm system: The alarm system, refer to page 101, will be switched off.

After opening one of the front doors, the vehicle is ready for operation, refer to page 44.

The light functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

Convenient opening

Press and hold the button on the remote control after unlocking.

The windows and the glass sunroof are opened, as long as the button on the remote control is pressed.

Locking

General information

The behavior of the vehicle during locking with the remote control depends on the following settings, refer to page 99:

- If the locking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2030

- If the exterior mirrors are automatically folded in and out when the vehicle is locked and unlocked.
- If the headlight courtesy delay feature, refer to page 168, is activated during locking.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Press the button on the remote control.

The following functions are executed:

- All doors, the trunk lid, and the fuel filler flap are locked.
- The rear sun visor of the glass sunroof is closed.
- With anti-theft protection: Anti-theft protection is switched on. This prevents the doors from being unlocked using the lock buttons or the door openers.
- With alarm system: The alarm system, refer to page 101, will be switched on.

If the drive-ready state is still switched on when you lock the vehicle, the vehicle horn honks twice. In this case, the drive-ready state must be switched off by means of the Start/Stop button.

With Comfort Access: convenient closing

Safety information

Warning

With convenient closing, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during convenient closing.

Closing

Press and hold the button on the remote control in the area close to the vehicle after locking.

The windows, glass sunroof, and front sun protection are closed as long as the button on the remote control is pressed.

Switching on the interior and exterior lights

Press the button on the remote control with the vehicle locked.

The function is not available for the first 10 seconds after locking.

- The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off. For switching the interior lights on/off manually, refer to page 171.
- Depending on the settings, the exterior lighting, refer to page 167, will be switched on.

The light functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

Trunk lid

General information

To avoid locking it in the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.

You can set up if the doors will be unlocked when the trunk lid is opened with the remote control. Settings, refer to page 99.

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the trunk lid. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the trunk lid is clear during opening and closing.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2031
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

NOTICE

During opening, the trunk lid pivots back and up. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the trunk lid is clear during opening and closing.

Opening

Press and hold the button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

- ▷ Press the button on the remote control and hold for at least 3 seconds.
- ▷ Briefly press the button on the remote control three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

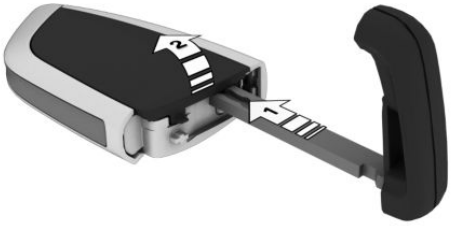
Headlight courtesy delay feature on

Press and hold the button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

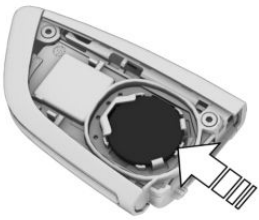
It is possible to adjust the duration of the headlight courtesy delay feature, refer to page 168.

Replacing the battery

1. Remove the integrated key from the remote control, refer to page 87.
2. Place the integrated key underneath the battery compartment cover, arrow 1, and lift the cover with a lever movement of the integrated key, arrow 2.



3. Push battery in the direction of the arrow using a pointed object and lift it out.



4. Insert a type CR 2032 battery with the positive side facing up.
5. Press the cover closed.

Have old batteries disposed of by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take them to a collection point.

Additional remote controls

Additional remote controls are available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Loss of the remote controls

A lost remote control can be blocked and replaced by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

If the lost remote control has an assigned driver profile, refer to page 94, the connection to this

remote control must be deleted. A new remote control can then be assigned to the driver profile.

Malfunction

General information

A Check Control message, refer to page 152, is displayed.

Remote control detection by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- The battery of the remote control is discharged. For replacing the battery, refer to page 81.
- Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- Shielding of the remote control due to metal objects.

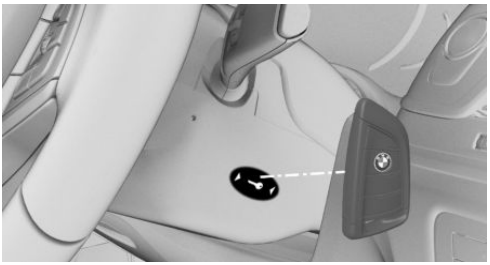
  Do not transport the remote control together with metal objects.
- Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity to the remote control.

  Do not transport the remote control together with electronic devices.
- Interference of radio transmission by a charging process of mobile devices, for instance charging of a mobile phone.
- The remote control is in direct proximity of the wireless charging tray.

  Place the remote control down at a different location.

In the case of interference, the vehicle can be unlocked and locked from the outside with the integrated key, refer to page 87.

Switching the drive-ready state on via emergency detection of the remote control



It is not possible to switch on the drive-ready state if the remote control has not been detected.

Proceed as follows in this case:

1. Hold the remote control with its back against the marked area on the steering column. Pay attention to the display in the instrument cluster.
2. If the remote control is detected:

   Switch on drive-ready state within 10 seconds.

If the remote control is not detected, slightly change the position of the remote control and repeat the procedure.

Frequently Asked Questions

What precautions can be taken to be able to open a vehicle with an accidentally locked in remote control?

- The options provided by the Remote Services of the BMW Connected app include the ability to lock and unlock a vehicle.

  This requires an active BMW ConnectedDrive contract and the BMW Connected app must be installed on a smartphone.
- Unlocking the vehicle can be requested via the BMW ConnectedDrive Call Center.

  An active BMW ConnectedDrive contract is required.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2033
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

BMW display key

General information

The BMW display key is supplied with an additional mechanical key. If the display key is used, the mechanical key should be carried with you, for instance in the wallet. The mechanical key is used like the integrated key, refer to page 87.

The display key supports all functions of the standard remote control.

In addition, the following functions are also available:

- Display status of doors and windows.
- Display status of the anti-theft warning system.
- Display service information.
- Call up range with available fuel.
- Stationary climate control through Remote Engine Start
- Remote Control Parking.

Safety information

Warning

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Take the remote control with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.

Warning

For some country versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

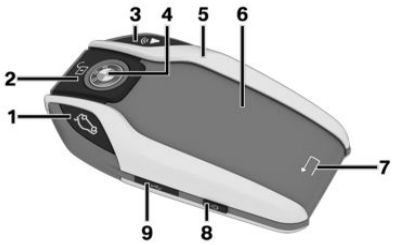
Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Overview



1 Opening the trunk lid

2 Unlocking

3 Press and hold or press three times in quick succession: panic mode

Press briefly: headlight courtesy delay feature

4 Locking

5 Park button

6 Display

7 Back

8 Switch the display on/off

9 Micro-USB charging socket

Reception range

The number of available display key functions depends on the distance from the vehicle.

- When you are in close proximity to the vehicle, all functions of the display key are available.
- The status information can be called up in the extended reception range.

  With parked-car heating: the parked-car heating can be operated.

  Without parked-car heating: the parked-car ventilation can be operated.
- Outside of the reception range of the vehicle, you can display the last transmitted status information from the vehicle.

The symbol is shown on the display if one of the buttons is pressed outside of the reception range.

Display

General information

The display is divided into the upper status line, the information area, and the lower status line.

Upper status line

The upper status line displays the following information:

- Vehicle secured.

  Vehicle not secured.
- Set time in the vehicle.
- Charge state of the display key battery.

Information area

The information area can be used to access information and perform additional functions.

If the information area contains more than one page, then page indicators are shown beneath the information.

A solid indicator denotes the current page.

Swipe to the right or left with a finger to change between the pages.

If further information is available on a page, tap the appropriate symbol.

To return to the original page: tap on the symbol beneath the display.

Lower status line

The lower status line indicates whether or not the display key is within reception range, refer to page 84.

- "Connected": the display key is within reception range.
- "Updated": the display key is not within reception range. It indicates when the last data transfer from the vehicle took place.

Switching on/off

The display will go out automatically after a brief period to conserve battery power.

To hide the display manually:

Press the button on the left side of the display key. For an overview, refer to page 83.

To show the display:

1. Press the button on the left side of the display key.
2. Then, swipe with your finger from bottom to top to unlock the screen lock.

To switch off the display to increase the usable battery life:

1. If necessary, cancel the screen lock.
2. Press and hold the button on the left side of the display key for longer than 4 seconds.
3. "OK"

To switch the display on:

Press the button on the left side of the display key.

Operating concept

The relevant submenus can be accessed from the following main menus:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2035
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Main menu	Information/Function
"Security information"	/ Door status. Alarm system status. After alarm triggering: date, time, and reason for triggering the alarm.
	 Window status. Glass sunroof status.
"Vehicle information"	Maintenance indicators of Condition Based Service CBS, refer to page 368. Status of the roadside parking lights.
"Mobility info"	Range with available fuel.
"Precondit. setting"	With parked-car heating: operate parked-car heating, refer to page 276. Without parked-car heating: operate parked-car ventilation, refer to page 276. Stationary climate control through Remote Engine Start, refer to page 278
"R/C parking"	Remote Control Parking, refer to page 257.

Display key battery

General information

Follow the following information:

- If the charge state of the display key battery declines, the display is switched off automatically. The battery must be recharged so that the display can be switched back on. The operability of the standard buttons is retained until the battery is completely discharged.
- Charge the battery for at least three hours before using the display key for the first time or if the key has not been used for an extended period.
- The display key can be used while it is being charged via the USB port. If the battery is fully discharged, it may take some time before the display key can be used again.
- Due to the large number of USB chargers available on the market, it cannot be guaranteed that every charger will function properly. The charging duration depends on the charger used.
- Charging via the USB port may heat up the charger and the display key.

  Charging in the wireless charging tray may heat up the tray and the display key.

  At higher temperatures, the charge current through the display key may be reduced, and in isolated cases the charge process may be interrupted temporarily.
- When inserting the display key into the wireless charging tray, make sure there are no objects between it and the wireless charging tray.

Safety information

Warning

When charging a device that meets the Qi standard in the wireless charging tray, any metal objects located between the device and the tray can become very hot. If smart cards, memory cards or cards with magnetic strips are placed between the device and the tray, this may impair card function. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. When charging mobile devices, make sure there are no objects between the device and the tray.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2036

Charging

Via USB

Connect the display key via the micro-USB charging socket to a USB port.

In the wireless charging tray

1. Open the tray cover.
2. Place the display key into the middle of the wireless charging tray in front of the cup holder.

   Ensure that the display is facing up.
3. Close the tray cover.

Malfunction

General information

A Check Control message is displayed.

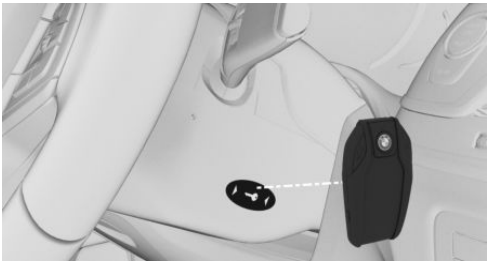
BMW display key detection by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- The battery of the display key is discharged. Charge the battery, refer to page 85.
- Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- Shielding of the display key due to metal objects.
- Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity.
- Interference of radio transmission by a charging process of mobile devices, for instance charging of a mobile phone.

Do not transport the display key together with metal objects or electronic devices.

In the case of interference, the vehicle can also be unlocked and locked from the outside with the mechanical key.

Switching on drive-ready state via emergency detection of the BMW display key



It is not possible to switch on the drive-ready state if the display key has not been detected.

Proceed as follows in this case:

1. Hold the display key with its back against the marked area on the steering column. Pay attention to the display in the instrument cluster.
2. If the display key is detected:

   Switch on drive-ready state within 10 seconds.

If the display key is not detected, slightly change the position of the display key and repeat the procedure.

Resetting the BMW display key

If the charged display key cannot be switched on anymore or if the display does not respond to entries anymore, the display key can be reset.

Press and hold the button on the left side of the display key for at least 20 seconds, until something appears on the display.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2037
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Integrated key

General information

The driver's door can be locked and unlocked without the remote control using the integrated key.

The integrated key also fits the glove compartment.

Safety information

Warning

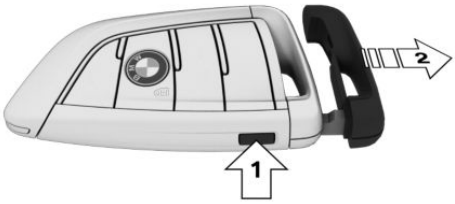
For some country versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

NOTICE

The door lock is permanently joined with the door. The door handle can be moved. When pulling the door handle with the integrated key inserted, paint or the integrated key can be damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Remove the integrated key before pulling the outside door handle.

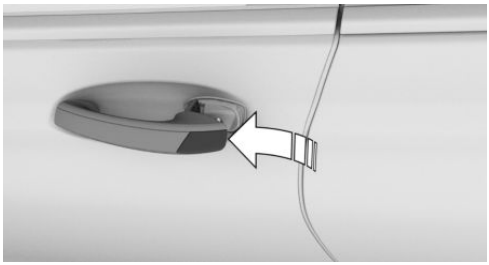
Removing



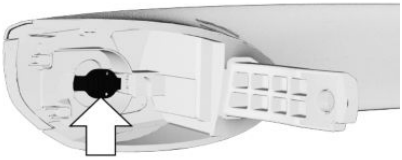
Press the button, arrow 1, and pull out the integrated key, arrow 2.

Locking/unlocking via the door lock

1. Pull and hold the door handle outward with one hand.



2. Guide one finger of your other hand from the back under the cover and push the cover out.



3. Use the thumb of the hand on the door handle to push the cover toward the rear of the vehicle.

4. Remove the cover.
5. Unlock or lock the door lock using the integrated key.

The other doors must be unlocked or locked from the inside.

Alarm system

The alarm system is not switched on if the vehicle is locked with the integrated key.

The alarm system is triggered when the door is opened, if the vehicle has been unlocked via the door lock.

In order to stop the alarm, unlock the vehicle with the remote control, if necessary through emergency detection of the remote control, refer to page 82.

Buttons for the central locking system

General information

In the event of a severe accident, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The hazard warning system and interior lights come on.

Overview

Buttons for the central locking system.

Locking

Press the button with the front doors closed.

- The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.
- The vehicle is not secured against theft when locking.

Unlocking

Press the button.

Opening

- Press the button to unlock all the doors.

  Pull the door opener above the armrest.
- Front doors: pull the door handle on the door to open the door. The other doors remain locked.
- Back doors: pull twice on the door handle on the door to be opened; the first time unlocks the door, the second time opens it. The other doors remain locked.

Comfort Access

Concept

The vehicle can be accessed without activating the remote control.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2039
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

All you need to do is to have the remote control with you, such as in your pants pocket.

The vehicle automatically detects the remote control when it is in close proximity or in the car's interior.

General information

Comfort Access supports the following functions:

- Unlocking and locking the vehicle from the door handle.
- Convenient closing.
- Touchless unlocking and locking of the vehicle.
- Opening trunk lid.
- Opening and closing the trunk lid with no-touch activation.

Functional requirements

- To lock the vehicle, the remote control must be located outside of the vehicle near the doors.
- The next unlocking and locking cycle is not possible until after approx. 2 seconds.

Unlocking

General information

The behavior of the vehicle during unlocking via the Comfort Access depends on the following settings, refer to page 99:

- If the unlocking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- If the welcome light, refer to page 167, is switched on when the vehicle is being unlocked.
- If the exterior mirrors are automatically folded out and in when the vehicle is unlocked and locked.

Unlocking the vehicle

Grasp the handle of a vehicle door completely.

Locking

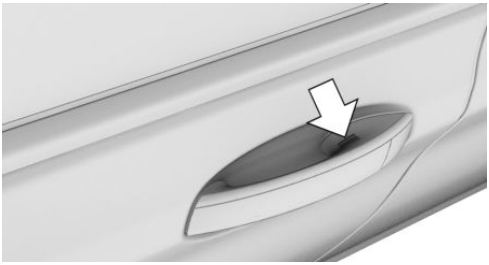
General information

The behavior of the vehicle during locking via the Comfort Access depends on the following settings, refer to page 99:

- If the locking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- If the exterior mirrors are automatically folded out and in when the vehicle is unlocked and locked.
- If the headlight courtesy delay feature, refer to page 168, is activated during locking.

Locking the vehicle

Close the driver's door.



Touch the grooved surface on the handle of a closed vehicle door with your finger for approx. 1 second without grasping the door handle.

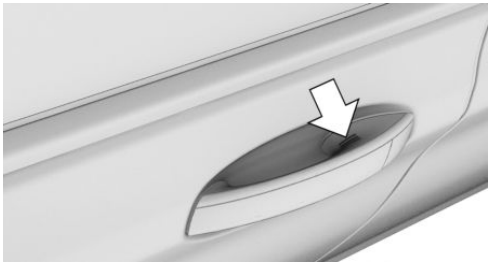
Convenient closing

Safety information

Warning

With convenient closing, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during convenient closing.

Closing



Touch the grooved surface on the handle of a closed vehicle door with your finger and hold it there without grasping the door handle.

In addition to locking, the windows and glass sunroof will be closed.

Opening the trunk lid

General information

If you open the trunk lid via Comfort Access, locked doors will not be unlocked.

To avoid locking it in the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.

Safety information

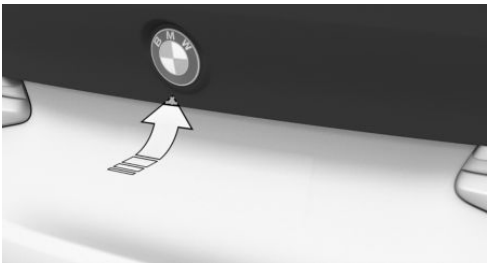
Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the trunk lid. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the trunk lid is clear during opening and closing.

NOTICE

During opening, the trunk lid pivots back and up. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the trunk lid is clear during opening and closing.

Opening



Press the button on the exterior of the trunk lid.

Opening and closing the trunk lid with no-touch activation

Concept

The trunk lid can be opened and closed with no-touch activation using the remote control you are carrying. Two sensors detect a forward-directed foot motion in the central rear area and the trunk lid is opened or closed.

General information

To avoid locking it in the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2041
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

If the remote control is in the sensor area, the trunk lid may open or close inadvertently if you unintentionally move your foot or if a foot movement is detected.

The sensor has an approximate range of 5 ft/1.50 m extending from the rear of the vehicle.

If you open the trunk lid with no-touch activation, locked doors will not be unlocked.

Safety information

Warning

During no-touch activation, vehicle parts may be touched, such as the hot exhaust gas system. There is a risk of injury. When moving your foot, make sure you have a firm stance and do not touch the vehicle.

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the trunk lid. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the trunk lid is clear during opening and closing.

NOTICE

During opening, the trunk lid pivots back and up. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the trunk lid is clear during opening and closing.

Performing the foot movement

1. Stand in the middle behind the vehicle at approx. one arm's length away from the rear of the vehicle.
2. Wave a foot under the vehicle in the direction of travel and immediately pull it back. With this movement, the leg must pass through the ranges of both sensors.

Opening

Perform the foot movement described earlier.

Before the trunk lid opens, the hazard warning system flashes.

Moving your foot again will stop the opening motion, and moving it one more time after that will close the trunk lid.

Closing

Perform the foot movement described earlier.

The hazard warning system flashes and an acoustic signal sounds.

Moving your foot again will stop the closing motion, and moving it one more time after that will re-open the trunk lid.

Touchless vehicle unlocking and locking

Concept

The vehicle will be unlocked when the driver approaches the locked vehicle with the remote control.

When the driver walks away from the unlocked vehicle with the remote control, the vehicle will be locked.

General information

The vehicle will be unlocked when an authorized remote control is detected in the unlocking zone.

The unlocking zone is located within a radius of approx. 3 ft/1 m around the door handles.

The vehicle will be locked when the remote control leaves the locking zone.

The locking zone is located within a radius of approx. 7 ft/2 m around the door handles.

If the remote control is located in the unlocking zone for an extended period of time without movement, the vehicle will be locked automatically.

If a passenger is detected in the front passenger seat during locking and the safety belt of the front passenger is engaged in the safety belt buckle during locking:

- The vehicle will be locked but not secured against theft.
- The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

The behavior of the vehicle during touchless unlocking and locking depends on the following settings, refer to page 99:

- If the automatic unlocking is active.
- If the automatic locking is active.
- If only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap or all access to the vehicle will be unlocked.

  Only driver's door and fuel filler flap: the driver's door and fuel filler flap will only be unlocked when the driver approaches the vehicle on the driver's side.

  All vehicle entry points: the vehicle will be unlocked regardless of the side on which the driver approaches the vehicle.
- If the unlocking and locking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- If the welcome light, refer to page 167, is switched on when the vehicle is being unlocked.
- If the headlight courtesy delay feature, refer to page 168, is activated during locking.
- If the exterior mirrors are automatically folded out and in when the vehicle is unlocked and locked.

Functional requirements

- The drive-ready state must be turned off.
- Unlocking: when entering the unlocking zone, the doors and trunk lid must be closed.
- Locking: when leaving the locking zone, the doors and trunk lid must be closed.
- If the vehicle was locked with the remote control, it cannot be unlocked touchless. In this case, unlock the vehicle using the outside door handle.
- If the vehicle was unlocked with the remote control, it cannot be locked touchless without driving the vehicle first. In this case, lock the vehicle using the outside door handle.
- For touchless locking of the vehicle, no second remote control can be located in the locking zone.
- If the vehicle has been in the idle state for several days, touchless unlocking and locking is not possible until after the vehicle has been driven.

Malfunction

Remote control detection by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- The battery of the remote control is discharged. For replacing the battery, refer to page 81.
- Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- Shielding of the remote control due to metal objects.

  Do not transport the remote control together with metal objects.
- Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity to the remote control.

  Do not transport the remote control together with electronic devices.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2043
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Wet or snowy conditions may disrupt the locking request recognition function on the door handles.

In the case of a malfunction, unlock and lock the vehicle using the buttons of the remote control or using the integrated key, refer to page 87.

Trunk lid

General information

To avoid locking it in the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country version, it is also possible to have the doors unlocked. To perform settings, refer to page 99.

The trunk lid cannot be opened when the vehicle is in valet parking mode, refer to page 98.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the trunk lid. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the trunk lid is clear during opening and closing.

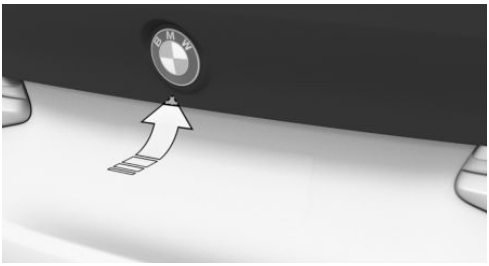
⚠ NOTICE

During opening, the trunk lid pivots back and up. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the trunk lid is clear during opening and closing.

Opening and Closing

Opening

From the outside



- Without Comfort Access: unlock the vehicle, then press the button on the outside of the trunk lid.

  With Comfort Access: unlock the vehicle or carry the remote control with you and then press the button on the outside of the trunk lid.

- Press and hold the button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

  Depending on the setting, the doors may also be unlocked. Opening with the remote control, refer to page 80.

From the inside

Press the button in the storage compartment of the driver's door.

Interruption of the opening procedure

The opening operation is interrupted:

- When the vehicle starts moving.
- By pressing the button on the outside of the trunk lid. Pressing again closes the trunk lid.
- By pressing the button on the inside of the trunk lid. Pressing again closes the trunk lid.
- By pressing the button on the remote control. Pressing again continues the opening motion.

▷ By pressing or pulling the button in the driver's door. Pressing again continues the opening motion.

Closing

From the outside

▷ Press the button on the inside of the trunk lid.

With Comfort Access:

▷ Press the button on the inside of the trunk lid.

The vehicle will be locked after closing the trunk lid. The driver's door must be closed for this purpose and the remote control must be outside of the vehicle in the area of the trunk lid.

From the inside

Pull and hold the button in the storage compartmenr of the driver's door.

The remote control must be located inside the vehicle for this function.

An acoustic signal sounds before the trunk lid is closed.

Interruption of the closing procedure

The closing procedure is interrupted in the following situations:

▷ If the vehicle starts off with a jerky movement.

▷ By pressing the button on the outside of the trunk lid. Pressing again re-opens the trunk lid.

▷ By pressing the button on the inside of the trunk lid. Pressing again re-opens the trunk lid.

▷ By releasing the button in the driver's door. Pulling again and holding continues the closing motion.

Malfunction

In the event of an electrical malfunction, operate the unlocked trunk lid manually with a slow and smooth motion.

Trunk emergency unlocking

Pull the handle inside the cargo area.

The trunk lid unlocks.

Automatic Soft Closing

Safety information

⚠ Warning

Body parts can be jammed while operating the doors. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during opening and closing.

Closing

To close the doors, push lightly.

Closing occurs automatically.

Driver profiles

Concept

Driver profiles can be created to store personal vehicle settings. If the vehicle is used by multiple drivers, each driver can create his personal driver profile. When a driver profile is selected, the vehi-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2045
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

cle will automatically apply the stored settings in the driver profile.

General information

Three personal driver profiles can be created. Each driver profile can be protected with a PIN to prevent other drivers from viewing and modifying the stored settings.

In addition, a guest profile is available that can be selected by any driver. The guest profile is active when a personal driver profile has not been selected.

Changes to the vehicle settings are automatically stored in the active driver profile or in the guest profile.

A remote control can be assigned to a driver profile so that the vehicle will apply the settings as soon as the driver unlocks the vehicle. As soon as the vehicle detects the remote control, the corresponding driver profile will be activated.

ConnectedDrive countries: The settings stored in the driver's profile can be synchronized with the personal BMW ConnectedDrive account. It is thereby possible to use these settings in other BMW vehicles as well.

Functional requirements

When switching the driver profile, the vehicle must move at a maximum of walking speed.

Welcome screen

After the Control Display is switched on, the Welcome screen will be displayed.

The following actions can be carried out on the Welcome screen:

- Selecting a driver profile.
- Starting the set-up assistant.

  This option is offered in new vehicle for a limited period of time.

As soon as the engine is started or any button is pressed, the Welcome screen will be hidden.

Setup assistant

The setup assistant is offered in new vehicles for a limited period of time on the Welcome screen to configure the most important settings for the vehicle.

The driver is guided step by step through the following functions:

- Setting the system language.
- Pairing mobile devices with the vehicle.
- Non-ConnectedDrive countries: Assign profile name.
- ConnectedDrive countries:

  Enable continuous synchronization between the ConnectedDrive account and the driver profile.

  Stored settings in the ConnectedDrive account are transferred to the vehicle. If a ConnectedDrive account has not yet been created, it must be created in the ConnectedDrive portal.
- Confirm the consent for the transmission of vehicle related data.
- Configure the voice command to start the voice command response.
- Switch on the gesture control.

The selected settings are stored in the active driver's profile.

Guest profile

The guest profile can be activated by any driver. Vehicle settings that are entered when the guest profile is active will be stored in the guest profile.

In the following cases the guest profile is automatically active:

- A driver profile has not been created yet.
- No driver profile has been assigned to the remote control that was used to unlock the vehicle.
- No driver profile has been assigned to the digital key that was used to unlock the vehicle.

- It is not clear which driver profile must be activated.

The following limitations apply:

- The guest profile cannot be renamed.
- It is not possible to assign the recognition to the guest profile.
- PIN protection is not possible.
- ConnectedDrive countries: It is not possible to synchronize with a ConnectedDrive account.

The guest profile is selected on the Welcome screen or via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. "Guest"
4. "Log in"

Creating a driver profile

A driver profile is created on the Welcome screen or via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Create driver profile"

ConnectedDrive countries: A ConnectedDrive account must be assigned to a driver profile. An existing account can be used or a new account must be created.

Selecting recognition

The settings for the recognition are entered on the Welcome screen or via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Driver recognition"
5. "with vehicle key"

   A remote control is assigned to the driver profile. As soon as the vehicle detects the remote control, the corresponding driver profile will be activated.

   If the remote control is not carried with you or the remote control is not recognized, the driver profile can only be selected on the Welcome screen when the PIN protection has been set up.
6. "Activate linkage"

Setting up PIN protection

A driver profile without recognition and without PIN protection can be activated and changed by any driver.

A driver profile with recognition cannot be activated without remote control and without digital key if the PIN protection was not set up.

Non-ConnectedDrive countries: If PIN protection was not set up or the PIN is not known, the driver's profile cannot be activated.

ConnectedDrive countries: If PIN protection was not set up or the PIN is not known, the driver's profile can be activated with the access data of the corresponding ConnectedDrive account.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. "Driver recognition"
4. "using PIN"

Changing/canceling the recognition function

If the vehicle and remote control will be handed over for maintenance, for instance, the recognition function should be canceled with the remote control. The handed over remote control can then no longer be used to access the personal driver profile. If the driver profile was protected with a PIN, undesired access will no longer be possible.

If another remote control is assigned to a driver profile, the current assignment must be canceled first.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2047
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. "Driver recognition"
4. "with vehicle key"
5. "Activate linkage"

Selecting a driver profile

Depending on the recognition setting, the driver profile will be selected automatically.

If the guest profile is active, the driver profile will be selected on the Welcome screen or via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Select driver profile.
4. "Log in"

All settings stored in the selected driver profile are automatically applied.

Switching synchronization with the ConnectedDrive account on/off

ConnectedDrive countries:

The settings stored in the driver's profile are synchronized with the personal ConnectedDrive account. This means that it is possible to use the personal settings in other BMW vehicles with ConnectedDrive access as well.

The synchronization with the ConnectedDrive account is enabled in the setup assistant or via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. "Settings"
4. "Synchronize driver profile"
5. "Synchronize driver profile"

Renaming a driver profile

Non-ConnectedDrive countries:

The name that was assigned when the driver profile was set up can be changed via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Select driver profile.
4. "Settings"
5. Enter a profile name.
6. OK Select the symbol.

Selecting a profile picture

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. "Avatar"
4. Select the desired profile picture.

Deleting the driver profile

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. "Settings"
4. "Remove driver profile"
5. Select the desired driver profile.
6. "Delete now"

ConnectedDrive countries: If the driver profile was synchronized with a ConnectedDrive account, the stored data in the ConnectedDrive account will be retained.

System limits

A clear detection of the desired remote control may not be possible in the following cases, for instance:

- The driver unlocks the vehicle via Comfort Access and has multiple remote controls with him or her.
- The driver changes, but the vehicle is not locked and unlocked.

▷ When multiple remote controls are located outside on the driver's side of the vehicle.

If the remote control was not detected clearly, unlock the vehicle by pressing button for the desired remote control.

ConnectedDrive countries:

A driver profile can only be created and synchronized with the ConnectedDrive account when cellular network reception is available.

The use of personal settings that are stored in the ConnectedDrive account in other vehicles is subject to technical limitations. For example, settings may be stored for a system that is not available, or available in a non-compatible version, in other vehicles.

Valet parking mode

Concept

In the valet parking mode, the Control Display is locked and operation via iDrive is no longer possible.

For example, this mode can be used when the vehicle is handed over for valet parking.

General information

In the valet parking mode, it is not possible to change vehicle settings via iDrive. Personal settings cannot be changed and personal data cannot be displayed.

Additionally, the following actions are carried out:

▷ The volume of the audio system is limited.

▷ The integrated remote control is deactivated.

▷ DSC cannot be switched off.

▷ The trunk lid can be locked and disconnected from the central locking system.

Functional requirements

▷ At least one driver profile has been created.

▷ A driver profile or the guest profile is active.

▷ At least one driver profile has an assigned ConnectedDrive account.

Accessing the menu for the valet parking mode

Via the switch-off screen

After switching off drive-ready state the switch-off screen will be displayed. Select the entry for the valet parking mode on the switch-off screen.

Via the display bar at the upper edge of the Control Display

1. Tip the Controller up
2. "Valet parking mode"

Via the vehicle settings

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Valet parking mode"

Activating the valet parking mode

General information

Before activating the valet parking mode, a PIN must be set up to be able to deactivate the valet parking mode at a future time.

The procedure for entering the PIN varies depending on the active driver profile.

Driver profile with PIN

A PIN has been stored for the active driver profile.

It is not necessary to enter another PIN.

1. Select the desired setting:
   "Lock tailgate as well"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2049
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

The trunk lid will be locked and disconnected from the central locking system.

2. "Activate now"

Driver profile without PIN

A PIN must be assigned to the driver profile.

1. "PIN"
2. Enter PIN.
3. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Lock tailgate as well"

     The trunk lid will be locked and disconnected from the central locking system.
   - ▷ "Activate linkage"

     This PIN will be stored for the active driver profile.
4. "Activate now"

Guest profile

The guest profile is the active driver profile.

A PIN must be entered.

1. "PIN"
2. Enter PIN.
3. Select the desired setting:

   "Lock tailgate as well"

   The trunk lid will be locked and disconnected from the central locking system.
4. "Activate now"

   This PIN can be used once to deactivate the valet parking mode for the active guest profile.

Deactivating valet parking mode

General information

The lock screen of the valet parking mode is displayed on the Control Display.

The deactivation of the valet parking mode depends on which driver profile is selected on the lock screen.

Driver profile with PIN

Regardless of which driver activated the valet parking mode, a driver can deactivate the valet parking mode by entering his/her PIN.

1. Select driver profile.
2. Enter the assigned PIN for the driver profile.

If you forgot the PIN, the valet parking mode must be deactivated by entering the assigned ConnectedDrive access data.

Driver profile without PIN

The valet parking mode was activated by another person. To deactivate the valet parking mode, a driver without a PIN has to enter the access data for his ConnectedDrive account.

1. Select driver profile.
2. Enter the ConnectedDrive access data assigned to the driver profile.

Guest profile

In the guest profile, the valet parking mode can only be deactivated if the valet parking mode was activated in the guest profile.

1. Select guest profile.
2. Enter the PIN that was specified during activation.

If the PIN has been forgotten, the valet parking mode must be deactivated via a personal driver profile.

Adjusting

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country version, various settings for opening and closing are possible.

These settings are stored for the driver profile currently used.

Unlocking and locking

Doors

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Key button settings"
4. Select the symbol.
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "Driver's door only"

     Only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.
   - "All doors"

     The entire vehicle is unlocked.

Confirmation signals from the vehicle

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Access"
4. Deactivate or activate the desired confirmation signals:
   - "Flash when locking/unlocking"

     Unlocking is signaled by two flashes, locking by one.
   - With alarm system:

     "Sound when locking/unlocking"

     Unlocking is confirmed with two sound signals, locking is confirmed with one sound signal.

Folding mirrors automatically

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Access"
4. "Fold mirrors in when locked"

   Locking the vehicle folds in the exterior mirrors automatically. Unlocking the vehicle automatically folds out the exterior mirrors.

Automatic unlocking

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Access"
4. "Unlock at end of trip"

   After drive-ready state is switched off by pressing the Start/Stop button, the locked vehicle is automatically unlocked.

Automatic locking

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Access"
4. Select the desired setting:
   - "Lock automatically"

     The vehicle locks automatically after a while if no door is opened after unlocking.
   - "Lock after starting to drive"

     The vehicle locks automatically after you drive off.

Trunk lid

Trunk lid and doors

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country version, this setting may not be offered.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Key button settings"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2051
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

4. Select the symbol.
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "Tailgate"
     The trunk lid is opened.
   - "Tailgate and door(s)"
     The trunk lid is opened and the doors are unlocked.

Comfort Access

Touchless locking/unlocking

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Access"
4. "Comfort Access"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "Unlock when approaching"
   - "Lock when walking away"

Establishing idle state after opening the front doors

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Access"
4. "Turn off vehicle after opening door"
   Opening the front doors establishes the idle state, refer to page 43.

Alarm system

General information

When the vehicle is locked, the vehicle alarm system reacts to the following changes:

- Opening a door, the hood or the trunk lid.
- Movements in the car's interior.
- Changes in the vehicle tilt, for instance, during attempts at stealing a wheel or when towing the vehicle.
- Disconnected battery voltage.
- Improper use of the socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis.

The alarm system signals these changes visually and acoustically:

- Acoustic alarm:
  Depending on local regulations, the acoustic alarm may be suppressed.
- Visual alarm:
  By flashing the exterior lighting.

Switching on/off

When you unlock and lock the vehicle, either with the remote control or with Comfort Access, the alarm system is switched off and on at the same time.

Opening the doors with the alarm system switched on

The alarm system is triggered when a door is opened if the door was unlocked using the integrated key in the door lock.

Switching off the alarm, refer to page 102.

Opening the trunk lid with the alarm system switched on

The trunk lid can be opened even when the alarm system is switched on.

After the trunk lid is closed, it is locked and monitored again provided the doors are locked. The hazard warning system flashes once.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

- Press the button on the remote control and hold for at least 3 seconds.

▷ Briefly press the button on the remote control three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Indicator light on the interior mirror

▷ The indicator light flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

The alarm system is switched on.

▷ Indicator light flashes for approx. 10 seconds, then it flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

Interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor are not active, as doors, hood, or trunk lid are not correctly closed. Correctly closed access points are secured.

When the still open access points are closed, the interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor will be switched on.

▷ The indicator light goes out after unlocking:

The vehicle has not been tampered with.

▷ The indicator light flashes after unlocking until drive-ready state is switched on, but no longer than approx. 5 minutes:

An alarm has been triggered.

Tilt alarm sensor

The tilt of the vehicle is monitored.

The alarm system responds in situations such as attempts to steal a wheel or when the vehicle is towed.

Interior motion sensor

The windows and the glass sunroof must be closed for the system to function properly.

Avoiding unintentional alarms

General information

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor can trigger an alarm, although no unauthorized action occurred.

Possible situations for an unwanted alarm:

▷ In automatic vehicle washes.

▷ In duplex garages.

▷ During transport on trains carrying vehicles, at sea or on a trailer.

▷ With animals in the vehicle.

▷ When the vehicle is locked after start of fueling.

The tilt alarm sensor and the interior motion sensor can be switched off in such situations.

Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor

Press the button on the remote control within 10 seconds as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator light lights up for approx. 2 seconds and then continues to flash.

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor are switched off until the vehicle is locked again.

Switching off the alarm

▷ Unlock the vehicle using the remote control, if needed, through emergency detection of the remote control, refer to page 82.

▷ With Comfort Access: if you are carrying the remote control on your person, grasp the driver side or front passenger side door handle completely.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2053
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Power windows

Safety information

Warning

When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the windows is clear during opening and closing.

Overview

Power windows

Safety switch

Functional requirements

The windows can be operated under the following conditions.

- Standby state is switched on.
- Drive-ready state is switched on.
- The remote control is in the car's interior.

Opening

- Press the switch to the resistance point.

  The window opens while the switch is being held.

- Press the switch beyond the resistance point.

  The window opens automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

For convenient opening via the remote control, refer to page 78.

Closing

- Pull the switch to the resistance point.

  The window closes while the switch is being held.

- Pull the switch beyond the resistance point.

  The window closes automatically if the door is closed. Pulling again stops the motion.

Convenient closing via the remote control, refer to page 78.

Closing via Comfort Access, refer to page 88.

Jam protection system

Concept

The jam protection prevents objects or body parts becoming jammed between the door frame and window while a window is being closed.

General information

If resistance or a blockage is detected while a window is being closed, the closing action is interrupted and the window opens slightly.

Safety information

Warning

Accessories on the windows such as antennas can impact jam protection. There is a risk of injury. Do not install accessories in the area of movement of the windows.

Closing without the jam protection system

In case of danger from the outside or if ice might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it there.

   The window closes with limited jam protection. If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.

2. Pull the switch past the resistance point again within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there.

   The window closes without jam protection.

Safety switch

Concept

With the safety switch, it is possible to block particular functions in the rear. This makes sense, for instance if children or animals are carried in the rear.

If an accident of a certain severity occurs, the safety function is switched off automatically.

General information

The following functions can be locked by pressing the safety switch:

- Seat adjustments in the rear.
- Opening and closing of the rear windows using the switches in the rear.
- Operation of the roller sunblind in the rear window using the switches in the rear.
- Operation of the roller sunblinds in the side windows using the switches in the rear.
- Operation of the rear sun protection using the switches in the rear.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

The LED lights up if the safety function is switched on.

Rear window roller sunblind

General information

The safety switch, refer to page 104, in the driver's door can be used to prevent children from operating the roller sunblind using the switches in the rear, for instance.

Overview

Driver's door

Button for the roller sunblind.

Rear doors

Button for the roller sunblind.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2055
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Operation

Press the button to open the closed roller sunblind or to close the open roller sunblind.

If the button is pressed again during the movement, the roller sunblind is moved in the opposite direction.

Hold the button down to operate the roller sunblinds on the rear window and on the side windows at the same time.

BMW Touch Command

The roller sunblind can also be operated using BMW Touch Command.

System limits

If you are no longer able to move the roller sunblind after having activated it consecutively a number of times, the overheating protection mechanism is active. The system is blocked for a limited time to prevent overheating. Let the system cool.

The roller sunblind cannot be moved at low interior temperatures.

Roller sunblinds, rear side windows

General information

The safety switch, refer to page 104, in the driver's door can be used to prevent children, for instance from operating the roller sunblinds using the switches in the rear.

Overview

Buttons for the roller sunblinds.

Operation

Press the button to open the closed roller sunblind or to close the open roller sunblind.

If the button is pressed again during the movement, the roller sunblind is moved in the opposite direction.

BMW Touch Command

The roller sunblinds can also be operated using BMW Touch Command.

System limits

If you are no longer able to move the roller sunblinds after having activated them consecutively a number of times, the overheating protection mechanism is active. The system is blocked for a limited time to prevent overheating. Let the system cool.

The roller sunblinds cannot be moved at low interior temperatures.

Glass sunroof

General information

The glass sunroof and the sun protection are operated using the same switch.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2056
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

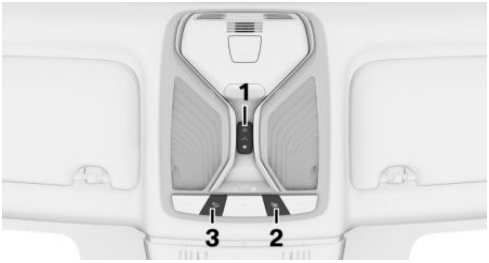
Depending on equipment: The rear sun protection is operated using separate buttons.

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the glass sunroof. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the glass sunroof is clear during opening and closing.

Overview



1 Opening/closing the glass sunroof/ front sun protection.

2 Depending on the vehicle equipment: close the rear sun protection.

3 Depending on the vehicle equipment: open the rear sun protection.

Functional requirements

The glass sunroof and the sun protection can be operated under the following conditions.

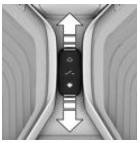
- Standby state is switched on.
- Drive-ready state is switched on.
- The remote control is in the car's interior.

Lifting/closing glass sunroof

Push switch briefly upward.

- The closed glass sunroof tilts and the sun protection opens slightly.
- The opened glass sunroof closes until it is in the tilted position. The sun protection does not move.
- The tilted glass sunroof closes.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sun protection separately



- Press the switch in the desired direction to the resistance point and hold it there.

  Holding down the switch opens the sun protection. If the sun protection is already fully open, the glass sunroof opens.

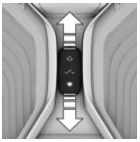
  The glass sunroof closes while the switch is being held. If the glass sunroof is already closed or in the tilted position, the sun protection closes.
- Press the switch in the desired direction past the resistance point.

  The sun protection opens automatically. If the sun protection is already fully open, the glass sunroof opens automatically.

  The glass sunroof closes automatically. If the glass sunroof is already closed or in the tilted position, the sun protection closes automatically.

  Pressing the switch upward stops the motion.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sun protection together



Briefly press the switch twice in succession in the desired direction past the resistance point.

The glass sunroof and sun protection move together. Pressing the switch upward stops the motion.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2057
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Convenient opening and convenient closing via the remote control, refer to page 78.

Closing via Comfort Access, refer to page 88.

Comfort position

In some models, the wind noises in the car's interior are lowest when the glass sunroof is not fully open. In these models, the automatic function initially only opens the glass sunroof up to this comfort position.

Pressing the switch again opens the glass sunroof fully.

Depending on equipment: opening/closing the rear sun protection

On the roofliner control panel

Press the button to open the rear sun protection.

Press button again to stop the movement.

Press the button to close the rear sun protection.

Press button again to stop the movement.

On the control panel in the rear doors

It is not possible to operate the rear sun protection via the switches in the rear if the safety function, refer to page 104, is switched on.

Press the button to open the closed sun protection or to close the open sun protection.

Press button again to stop the movement.

When the button is pressed again, the sun protection will move in the opposite direction.

BMW Touch Command

The front and rear sun protection can also be operated using BMW Touch Command.

Actions during unlocking/locking

If the vehicle is locked from the outside, the rear sun protection is automatically closed.

When the vehicle is unlocked, the sun protection automatically moves into the position where it was prior to locking.

Jam protection system

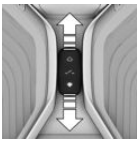
General information

If the closing force exceeds a certain value when closing the glass sunroof, the closing operation is interrupted once the roof reaches the half-open position, or it is stopped when closing from the tilted position.

The glass sunroof opens slightly.

Closing from the open position without jam protection

If there is an external danger, proceed as follows:



1. Close all doors.
2. Push the switch forward past the resistance point and hold.

   The glass sunroof closes with limited jam protection. If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.
3. Push the switch forward again past the resistance point and hold until the glass sunroof closes without jam protection. Make sure that the closing area is clear.

Closing from the lifted position without jam protection

In the event of danger, proceed as follows:

1. Close all doors.
2. Push the switch forward past the resistance point and hold.

The glass sunroof closes without jam protection.

Initializing after a power interruption

General information

After a power failure during the opening or closing process, the glass sunroof can only be operated to a limited extent.

The system can be initialized under the following conditions.

- The vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- The drive-ready state is established.
- The external temperature is above 41 °F/5 °C.

During initialization, the glass sunroof closes without jam protection.

Make sure that the closing area is clear.

Initializing the system

Press the switch up and hold it until the initialization is complete:

Initialization begins within 15 seconds.

- If the glass sunroof is closed, it opens then closes again.
- If the glass sunroof is open, it first closes, then opens and closes again.

Initialization is complete once the glass sunroof and sun protection have opened then closed again.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2059
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Seats, mirrors, and steering wheel

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Sitting safely

An ideal seating position that meets the needs of the occupants can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving.

In the event of an accident, the correct seating position plays an important role. Follow the information in the following chapters:

- Seats, refer to page 109.
- Safety belts, refer to page 114.
- Head restraints, refer to page 116.
- Airbags, refer to page 174.

Front seats

General information

The seat adjustment for the driver's seat is stored for the driver profile, refer to page 94, currently used. When a driver profile is selected, the stored position is called up automatically.

The current seat position can be stored using the memory function, refer to page 122.

Safety information

Warning

Seat adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected movements of the seat. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. Only adjust the seat on the driver's side when the vehicle is stationary.

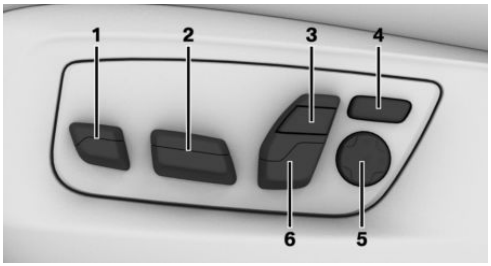
Warning

With a backrest inclined too far to the rear, the efficacy of the safety belt can no longer be ensured. There is a risk of sliding under the safety belt in an accident. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Adjust the seat prior to starting the trip. Adjust the backrest so that it is in the most upright position as possible and do not adjust again while driving.

Warning

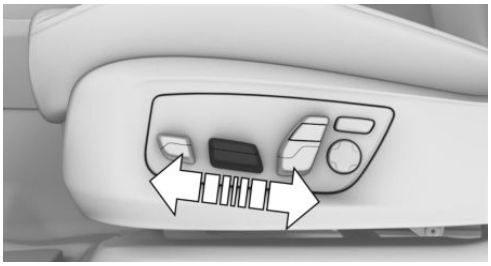
There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Overview



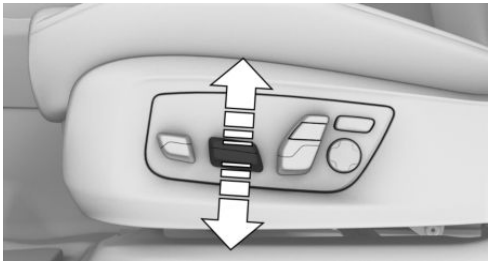
1 Thigh support
2 Forward/backward, height, seat tilt
3 Upper backrest
4 Backrest width
5 Lumbar support
6 Backrest tilt, head restraint

Forward/backward



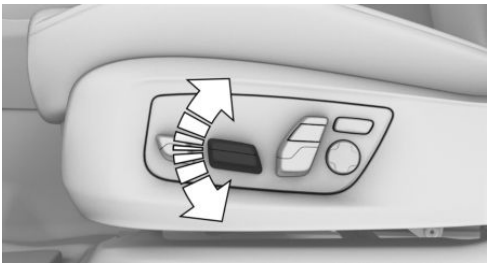
Push switch forward or backward.

Height



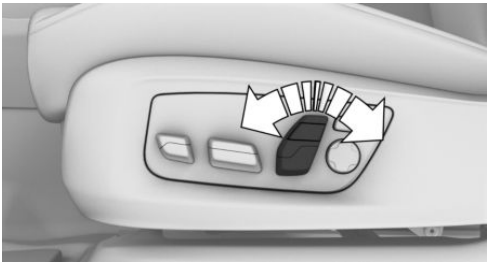
Push switch up or down.

Seat tilt



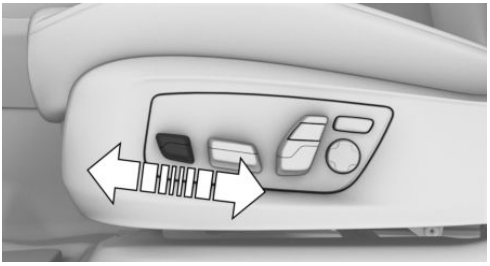
Move switch up or down.

Backrest tilt



Move switch forward or backward.

Thigh support



Push switch forward or backward.

Lumbar support

Concept

The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in a way that it supports the lumbar region

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2061
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright posture.

Adjusting

- Press the front/rear section of the button:
  The curvature is increased/decreased.
- Press the upper/lower section of the button:
  The curvature is shifted up/down.

Backrest width

Concept

Adjusting the backrest width may improve lateral support when taking corners.

General information

You can change the backrest width by adjusting the side wings of the backrest.

To make it easier to enter and exit the vehicle, the backrest width temporarily opens fully.

Adjusting

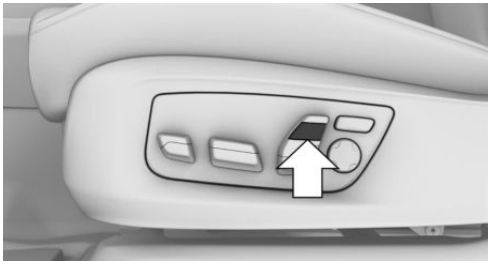
- Press the front section of the button:
  The backrest width decreases.
- Press the rear section of the button:
  The backrest width increases.

Upper backrest

Concept

The upper backrest supports the back in the shoulder area. A correct setting leads to a relaxed seating position and reduces strain on the shoulder muscles.

Adjusting



- Press the front section of the button:
  The upper backrest is inclined forward.
- Press the rear section of the button:
  The upper backrest is inclined backward.

Gentleman function

Concept

The front passenger seat can be adjusted with the switches of the driver's seat, for instance to increase the legroom in the rear.

Overview

Gentleman function

Switching on

1. Press the button. The LED lights up.
2. Adjust the front passenger seat on the driver's seat.
   If needed, store the memory position, refer to page 122, for the front passenger seat.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2062
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Switching off

Press and hold the button until the LED goes out.

The function deactivates itself automatically after some time.

BMW Touch Command

The front passenger seat can also be operated using BMW Touch Command.

Rear seats

General information

The seat adjustment switches are located on the center armrest of the rear seats.

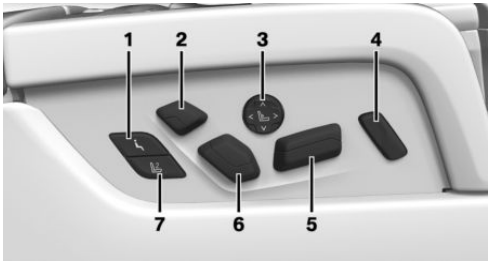
If the safety switch, refer to page 104, is pressed, the seats cannot be adjusted.

Safety information

Warning

There is a risk of jamming when folding down the center armrest in the rear. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the center armrest is clear during folding down.

Overview



1 Resetting to standard position
2 Head restraint, upper backrest
3 Lumbar support
4 Folding the footrest out/in
5 Forward/backward, seat tilt
6 Backrest tilt
7 Adjust front passenger seat

Resetting to standard position

Press the button to reset to standard position.

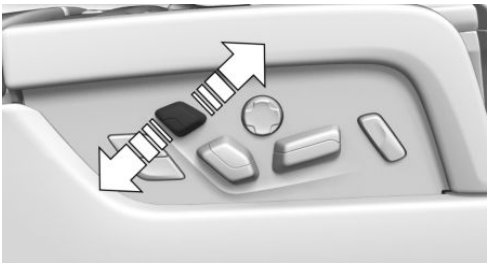
The process is canceled if the button is pressed again.

Upper backrest

Concept

The upper backrest supports the back in the shoulder area. A correct setting leads to a relaxed seating position and reduces strain on the shoulder muscles.

Adjusting



Push switch forward or backward.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2063
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Lumbar support

Concept

The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright posture.

Adjusting

- ▷ Press the front/rear section of the button:

  The curvature is increased/decreased.
- ▷ Press the upper/lower section of the button:

  The curvature is shifted up/down.

Folding the footrest out/in

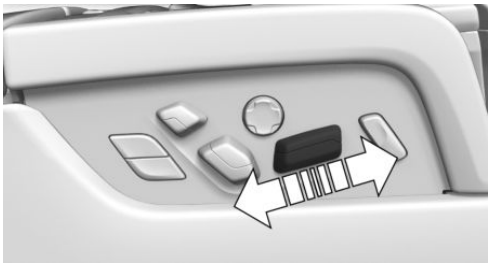
General information

The distance between the front passenger seat and the rear seat must be sufficiently large to unfold the footrest on the backrest of the front passenger seat.

Adjusting

Press the upper or lower section of the button.

Forward/backward



Push switch forward or backward.

Seat tilt

Move switch up or down.

Backrest tilt

Move switch forward or backward.

Adjusting the front passenger seat from the rear

Concept

The front passenger seat can be operated from the rear, for instance to increase the legroom in the rear.

General information

The switch for adjusting the upper backrest, refer to page 112, can be used to set the angle of the screen in the rear on the passenger side.

Adjusting

1. Press the button.
2. Adjust the front passenger seat, for instance forward/back.
3. Press the button to deactivate the function.

The function deactivates itself automatically after some time.

BMW Touch Command

The rear seats can also be operated via BMW Touch Command.

Safety belts

Number of safety belts and safety belt buckles

The vehicle is fitted with four or five safety belts to ensure occupants' safety. However, they can only offer protection when adjusted correctly.

The two outer safety belt buckles of the rear seats are intended for the persons sitting on the left and right.

The center safety belt buckle of the rear seats is intended for the person sitting in the middle.

General information

Always make sure that safety belts are being worn by the occupants before driving off. The airbags supplement the safety belts as an additional safety device. The airbags are not a substitute for safety belts.

The upper shoulder strap's anchorage point will be correct for adult seat occupants of every build if the seat is correctly adjusted.

Safety information

Warning

Use of a safety belt to buckle more than one person will potentially defeat the ability of the safety belt to serve its protective function. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Infants and children are not allowed on an occupant's lap, but must be transported and secured in designated child restraint systems.

Warning

The efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts, can be limited or lost when safety belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened safety belt can cause additional injuries, for in-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2065
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

stance in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that all occupants are wearing safety belts correctly.

Warning

The efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts, may not be fully functional or fail in the following situations:

- The safety belts or safety belt buckles are damaged, soiled, or changed in any other way.
- Belt tensioners or belt retractors were modified.

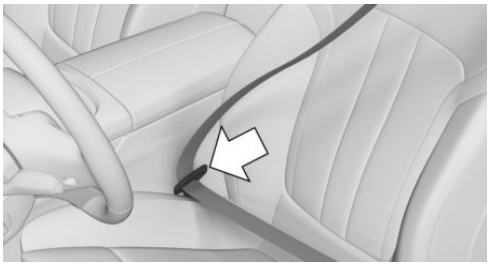
Safety belts can be imperceptibly damaged in the event of an accident. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not modify safety belts, safety belt buckles, belt tensioners, belt retractors or belt anchors and keep them clean. Have the safety belts checked after an accident at the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Correct use of safety belts

- Wear the safety belt twist-free and tight to your body over your lap and shoulders.
- Wear the safety belt deep on your hips over your lap. The safety belt may not press on your stomach.
- Do not rub the safety belt against sharp edges, or guide it or jam it in across hard or fragile objects.
- Avoid thick clothing.
- Re-tighten the safety belt frequently upward around your upper body.

Buckling the safety belt

1. Guide the safety belt slowly over shoulder and hip to put it on.
2. Insert the tongue plate into the safety belt buckle. The safety belt buckle must engage audibly.

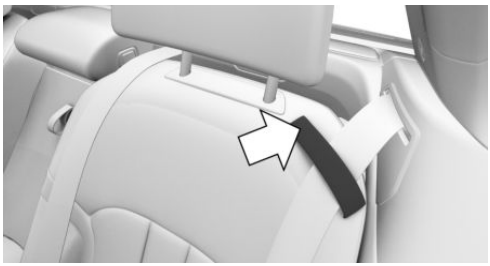


When the safety belt is fastened, the driver's and passenger's belt straps are automatically tightened once after driving away.

Unbuckling the safety belt

1. Hold the safety belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the safety belt buckle.
3. Guide the safety belt back into its roll-up mechanism.

Belt loop



When fastening the safety belts on the rear seats, make sure that the belt loop is closed.

Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat

Display in the instrument cluster

The indicator light lights up and a signal sounds. Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly. The safety belt

reminder can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

Safety belt reminder for rear seats

General information

The safety belt reminder is automatically activated each time the engine starts.

The safety belt reminder is also activated when a passenger unbuckles a rear seat safety belt during the trip.

Display in the instrument cluster

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates after the engine is started.

Symbol	Description
	Green: the safety belt is buckled on the corresponding rear seat.
	Red: the safety belt is not buckled on the corresponding rear seat.

Safety mode

In critical situations, for instance during an emergency stop, the front safety belts tighten automatically.

If the situation passes without an accident occurring, the belt tension relaxes.

If the belt tension does not loosen automatically, stop the vehicle and unbuckle the safety belt using the red button in the safety belt buckle. Fasten the safety belt before continuing on your trip.

Front head restraints

General information

The current head restraint position can be stored using the memory function, refer to page 122.

Safety information

Warning

A missing protective effect due to removed or not correctly adjusted head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
- Adjust the head restraint so its center supports the back of the head at as close to eye level as possible.
- Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the backrest tilt as needed.

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.

Warning

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.

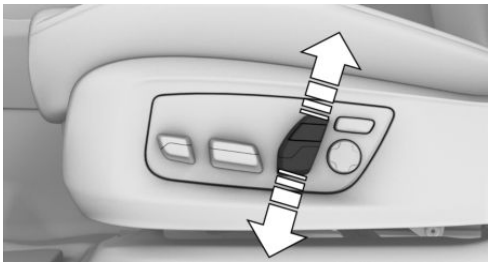
Active head restraint

In the event of a rear-end collision with a certain severity, the active head restraint automatically reduces the distance from the head.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2067
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Have the active head restraint checked and if necessary replaced in the case of damage or if it was exposed to an accident.

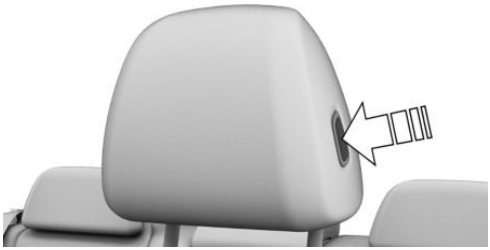
Adjusting the height



Push switch up or down.

If the vehicle is equipped with Executive Lounge Seating: the height of the head restraint on the front passenger side cannot be adjusted.

Adjusting the distance: manual head restraints



- ▷ Back: press the button and push the head restraint toward the rear.
- ▷ Forward: pull the head restraint toward the front.

After setting the distance, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Adjusting the distance: power head restraints

The head restraint is automatically repositioned when the upper backrest is adjusted.

Adjusting the side extensions

Fold the side extensions on the head restraint forward for increased lateral support in the resting position.

Removing

The head restraints cannot be removed.

Rear head restraints

Safety information

⚠ Warning

A missing protective effect due to removed or not correctly adjusted head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
- ▷ Adjust the head restraint so its center supports the back of the head at as close to eye level as possible.
- ▷ Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the backrest tilt as needed.

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.

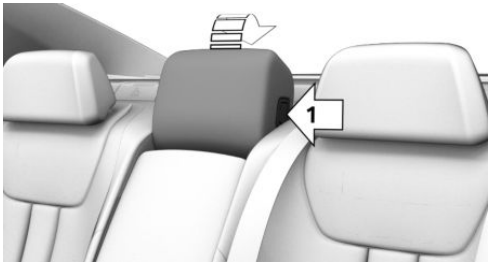
Warning

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.

Folding down the center head restraint

To improve the view to the rear, the center head restraint can be folded to the rear. Only push the head restraint down if no one will be sitting in the center seat.



- To the rear: press the button, arrow 1, and fold the head restraint backward.
- Forward: fold the head restraint toward the front as far as it will go. Make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Adjusting the height: manual head restraints

The height of the outer head restraints can be adjusted.

- To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.
- To raise: push the head restraint up.

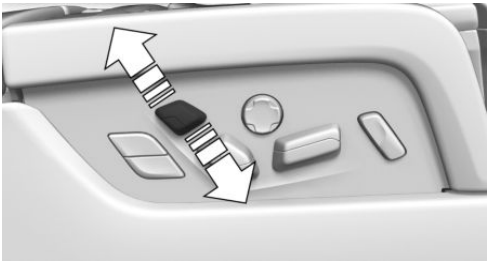
After setting the height, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Adjusting the height: power head restraints

General information

The height adjustment of the head restraint is deactivated when the safety switch for the rear windows, refer to page 104, has been pressed.

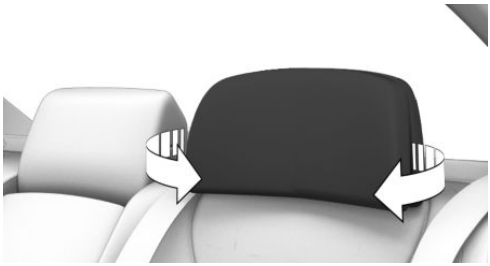
Switches in the vehicle



Push the switch in the center armrest up or down.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2069
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Adjusting the side extensions



Fold the side extensions on the head restraint forward for increased lateral support in the resting position.

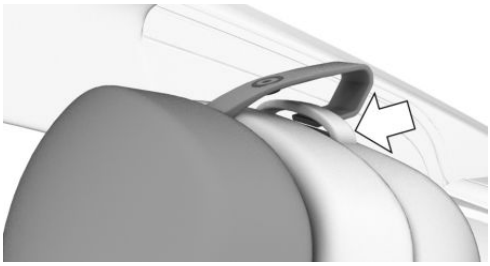
Removing

The head restraints cannot be removed.

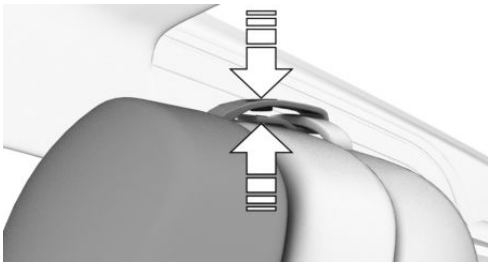
Cushions for head restraints in the rear

Only use the pillow when the vehicle is switched off.

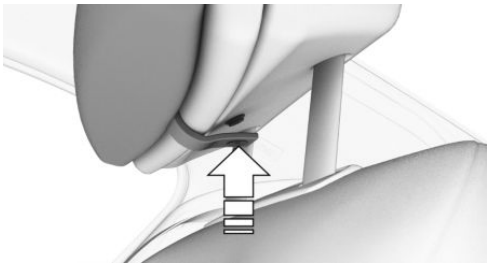
1. Pull the upper tab through the loop on the top of the head restraint.



2. Close both pushbuttons.



3. Move the head restraint into the topmost position.
4. Close the pushbutton on the lower tab and the pushbutton on the bottom of the head restraint.



Exterior mirrors

General information

The mirror on the front passenger side is more curved than the driver's side mirror.

The mirror setting is stored for the driver profile, refer to page 94, currently in use. When a driver profile is selected, the stored position is called up automatically.

The current exterior mirror position can be stored using the memory function, refer to page 122.

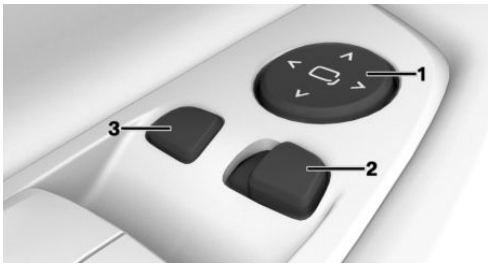
Safety information

Warning

Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. The distance to the traffic behind could be incorrectly estimated, for instance while changing lanes. There is a risk of accident. Estimate the distance to the traffic behind by looking over your shoulder.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2070
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Overview



1 Adjusting
2 Selecting a mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor
3 Folding in and out

Adjusting electrically

Press the button.

The selected mirror moves along with the button movement.

Selecting a mirror

To change over to the other mirror:

Slide the switch.

Malfunction

In case of an electrical malfunction, adjust the mirror by pressing the edges of the mirror glass.

Folding in and out

NOTICE

Depending on the vehicle width, the vehicle can be damaged in vehicle washes. There is a risk of damage to property. Before washing, fold in the mirrors by hand or with the button.

Press the button.

Folding is only possible up to a speed of approx. 15 mph/20 km/h.

Folding the mirrors in and out is helpful in the following situations:

- In vehicle washes.
- On narrow roads.

Mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Automatic heating

Both exterior mirrors are automatically heated as needed and when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Automatic dimming feature

The exterior mirror on the driver's side is automatically dimmed. Photocells in the car's interior mirror, refer to page 121, are used to control this.

Automatic Curb Monitor, exterior mirror

Concept

If reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass on the front passenger side is tilted downward. This improves your view of the curb and other formatting issue - low-lying obstacles when parking, for instance.

Activating

1. slide the switch to the driver's side mirror position.
2. Engage selector lever position R.

Deactivating

Slide the switch to the passenger's side mirror position.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2071
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Interior mirror

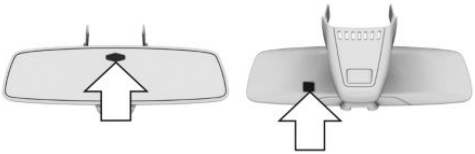
General information

The interior mirror is dimmed automatically.

Photocells are used for control:

- In the mirror glass.
- On the back of the mirror.

Overview

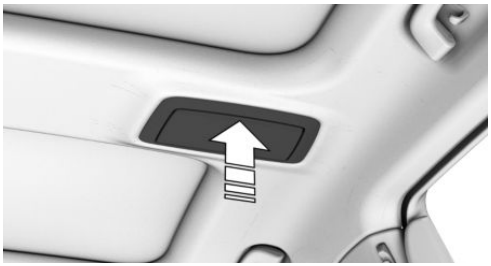


Functional requirements

- Keep the photocells clean.
- Do not cover the area between the interior mirror and the windshield.

Rear vanity mirror

Folding down



Press the vanity mirror.

The vanity mirror folds down. The angle can be adjusted by hand.

Folding up

Press the vanity mirror up.

Steering wheel

Safety information

Warning

Steering wheel adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected steering wheel movements. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. Adjustng the steering wheel while the vehicle is stationary only.

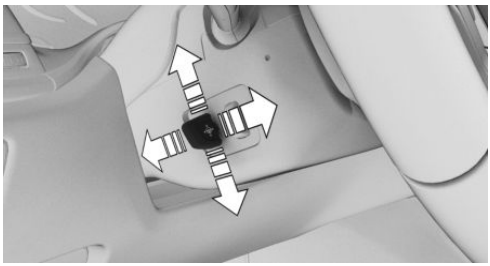
Electric steering wheel adjustment

General information

The steering wheel setting is stored for the driver profile, refer to page 94, currently in use. When a driver profile is selected, the position is accessed automatically when the drive-ready state is switched on.

The current steering wheel position can be stored using the memory function, refer to page 122.

Adjusting



Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seating position by pressing the switch.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2072
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Assistance getting in and out

The steering wheel temporarily moves into the highest position to make it easier to enter and exit the vehicle.

Heated steering wheel

Overview

Button for heated steering wheel

Switching on/off

Press the button.

A Check Control message is displayed.

If the trip is resumed within approx. 15 minutes after an intermediate stop, the heated steering wheel activates automatically if the function was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Memory function

Concept

The following settings can be stored and, if necessary, retrieved using the memory function:

- Seat position.
- Exterior mirror position.
- Steering wheel position.
- Height of the Head-up Display.

General information

Two memory locations with different settings can be set for each driver profile, refer to page 94.

The following settings are not stored:

- Backrest width.
- Lumbar support.
- Footrest.

Safety information

Warning

Using the memory function while driving can lead to unexpected seat or steering wheel movements. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. Only retrieve the memory function when the vehicle is stationary.

Warning

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Overview

Front

The memory buttons are located on the front doors.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2073
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Rear

The memory buttons are located on the rear doors.

Storing

1. Set the desired position.
2. SET Press the button. The writing on the button lights up.
3. Press desired button 1 or 2 while the LED is lit. A signal sounds.

Calling up settings

Press the desired button 1 or 2.

The stored position is called up.

The procedure stops when a switch for setting the seat is pressed or one of the memory buttons is pressed again.

Once underway, adjustment of the seat position on the driver's side is disabled after a short while.

BMW Touch Command

The memory function can also be operated on the front passenger seat and in the rear via BMW Touch Command.

Executive Lounge Seating

Concept

The Executive Lounge Seating function offers maximum legroom and increased traveling comfort to the rear passenger on the passenger's side.

General information

The following settings are applied automatically on system activation:

- The front passenger seat moves forward and adjusts the height, if necessary.
- The backrest and head restraint of the front passenger seat are inclined forward.
- The tilt of the screen in the rear is adjusted to the backrest incline of the front passenger seat.
- The footrest on the backrest of the front passenger seat folds out.
- The backrest reclines to the back.

The adjusted end position can be manually adjusted, refer to page 112, and if required stored using the memory function, refer to page 122.

Safety information

Warning

If the front passenger seat is set too far forward, the view of the exterior mirror on the front passenger side may be limited. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the front passenger seat such that the view on the exterior mirror is not obstructed.

Overview

Executive Lounge Seating

Switching on

Press the button.

Resetting to standard position

Press the button to reset to standard position.

The process is canceled if the button is pressed again.

Massage function

Concept

Depending on the program, the massage function ensures relaxed muscles and better blood circulation and can avoid fatigue.

General information

Eight different massage programs can be selected:

- Pelvis activation.
- Upper body activation.
- Full body activation.
- Back massage.
- Shoulder massage.
- Lumbar massage.
- Upper body training.
- Full body training.

Overview

Front

Massage function

Rear

Massage function

Switching on

Press the button once for each intensity level.

The maximum intensity level is reached when three LEDs are lit.

Switching off

Press and hold the button until the LEDs go out.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2075
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Adjusting the massage program

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Seat comfort"
4. Select desired seat.
5. "Seat massage"
6. Select the desired setting.

Seat and armrest heating

Concept

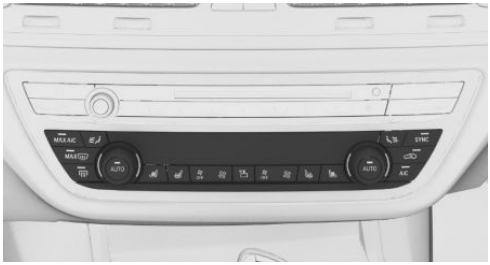
The system heats seats and armrests as needed.

General information

Seat heating can also be used without armrest heating. Deactivate the armrest heating as needed.

Overview

Front



Seat and armrest heating

Rear

Seat and armrest heating

Switching on

Press the button once for each temperature level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

When ECO PRO is activated, refer to page 318, the heating output is reduced.

If the trip is continued within approx. 15 minutes after a stop, seat and armrest heating is activated automatically with the temperature selected last.

Switching off

Press and hold the button until the bar display on the climate control display goes out.

Seat heating distribution

The heating action in the seat cushion and the seat backrest can be distributed in different ways.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. Select a menu item:
   ▷ "Seat heating distribution"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2076
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

- "Seat heating"
- "Seat and armrest heating"
- "Seat and surface heating"
- "Seat/steering wheel heating"
- "Seat climate control"
- "Seat and surfaces climate control"
- "Seat climate/steer. wheel heating"

5. Select desired seat.
6. Press the Controller and turn it to set the seat heating distribution.

Switching armrest heating on/off

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Seat and armrest heating"
5. Select desired seat.
6. "Heat armrests together with seat"

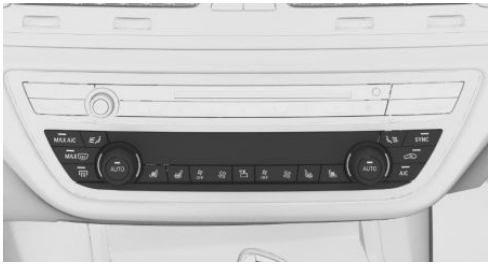
Active seat ventilation

Concept

Integrated fans in the seat and armrest areas provide a comfortable seat temperature.

Overview

Front



Active seat ventilation

Rear

Active seat ventilation

Switching on

Press the button once for each ventilation level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

The ventilation switches back by one level after a short time.

Switching off

Press and hold the button until the bar display on the climate control display goes out.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2077
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Transporting children safely

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

The right place for children

Safety information

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Always transport children in the rear seat

General information

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is in the rear seat.

Transport children younger than 13 years of age or shorter than 5 ft/150 cm only in the rear seat in suitable child restraint systems designed for the age, weight and size of the child. Children 13 years of age or older must wear a safety belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system can no longer be used due to their age, weight, or size.

Safety information

Warning

The safety belt cannot be fastened correctly on children shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm without suitable additional child restraint systems. The efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts, can be limited or lost when safety belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened safety belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Secure children shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm using suitable child restraint systems.

Children on the front passenger seat

General information

Before using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, ensure that the front, knee, and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated. For automatic deactivation of front-seat passenger airbags, refer to page 176.

Safety information

Warning

Active front-seat passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are activated. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front-seat passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light lights up.

Installing child restraint systems

General information

Pay attention to the specifications and the operating and safety information of the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing, and using child restraint systems.

Safety information

Warning

The protective effect of child restraint systems and their fastening systems which have been damaged or exposed to an accident can be limited or lost. For instance, a child can may not be sufficiently restrained in the event of an accident or braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life.

Do not use damaged child restraint systems or child restraint systems that have been exposed to an accident, and replace them instead.

Have damaged child restraint systems or child restraint systems exposed to an accident and their fastening systems checked and, where applicable, replaced by the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

On the front passenger seat

Deactivating airbags

Warning

Active front-seat passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are activated. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front-seat passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light lights up.

Before installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, make sure that the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated.

Deactivate the front-seat passenger airbags automatically, refer to page 176.

Seat position and height

Before installing a child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go and, if possible, bring it up to medium height. This seat position and height ensure the best possible position for the belt and offers optimal protection in the event of an accident.

If the upper anchor of the safety belt is located in front of the belt guide of the child seat, move the

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2079
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

front passenger seat carefully forward until the best possible belt guide position is reached.

Backrest width

Adjustable backrest width: before installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, open the backrest width completely. Do not change the backrest width again and do not call up a memory position.

Child seat security

The safety belts in the rear and the front passenger safety belt can be permanently locked to fasten child restraint systems.

Locking the safety belt

1. Pull out the belt strap completely.
2. Secure the child restraint system with the safety belt.
3. Allow the belt strap to be pulled in and pull it tight against the child restraint system. The safety belt is locked.

Unlocking the safety belt

1. Unbuckle the safety belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the belt strap to be pulled in completely.

LATCH child restraint fixing system

General information

LATCH: Lower Anchors and Tether for Children.

Pay attention to the specifications and the operating and safety information from the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing, and using LATCH child restraint fixing systems.

Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors

General information

The lower anchors may be used to attach the CRS to the vehicle seat up to a combined child and CRS weight of 65 lbs/30 kg when the child is restrained by the internal harnesses.

Safety information

Warning

If the LATCH child restraint fixing systems are not correctly engaged, the protective effect of the LATCH child restraint fixing system can be limited. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the lower anchors are securely engaged and that the LATCH child restraint fixing system fits securely against the backrest.

Position

Symbol	Meaning
	The corresponding symbol shows the mounts for the lower LATCH anchors. Seats equipped with lower anchors are marked with a pair, (2), of LATCH symbols. For vehicles equipped with a middle seat: It is not recommended to use the inner lower anchors of standard outer LATCH positions to fasten a child restraint system on the middle seat. Use the vehicle safety belt instead for the middle seat.

Before installing LATCH child restraint fixing systems

Pull the safety belt away from the area of the child restraint system.

Without comfort rear seats: assembly of LATCH child restraint fixing systems

1. Install child restraint system, see manufacturer's information.
2. Ensure that both LATCH anchors are properly connected.

With comfort rear seats: assembly of LATCH child restraint fixing systems

1. Before mounting, adjust the seats to their basic position, refer to page 112.
2. For better accessibility, tilt the backrest back slightly.
3. Install child restraint system, see manufacturer's information.
4. Ensure that both LATCH anchors are properly connected.
5. After mounting, move the backrest back up slightly so that the child restraint system rests lightly against the backrest.

Child restraint systems with tether strap

Safety information

Warning

If the upper retaining strap is incorrectly used for the child restraint system, the protective effect can be reduced. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the upper retaining strap does not run over sharp edges and is not twisted as it passes the upper anchor.

Warning

If the rear backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the child restraint system is limited or there is none. In certain situations, for instance braking maneuvers or in case of an accident, the rear backrest can fold forward. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the rear backrests are locked.

NOTICE

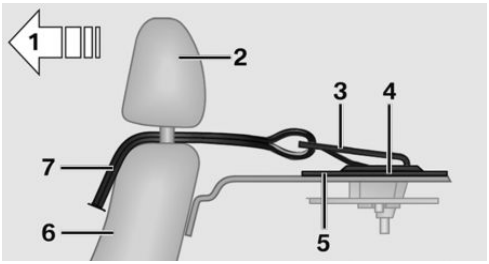
The anchors for the upper retaining straps of child restraint systems are only provided for these retaining straps. When other objects are mounted, the anchors can be damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Only mount child restraint systems to the upper anchors.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2081
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Anchors

Symbol	Meaning
	The respective symbol shows the anchor for the upper retaining strap. Seats with an upper top tether are marked with this symbol. It can be found on the rear seat backrest or the rear window shelf.

Routing the retaining strap



1 Direction of travel
2 Head restraint
3 Hook for upper retaining strap
4 Anchor
5 Rear window shelf
6 Seat backrest
7 Upper retaining strap

Attaching the upper retaining strap to the anchor

1. Open the anchor cover.
2. Raise the head restraint.
3. Guide the upper retaining strap between the supports or along both sides of the head restraint to the anchor.

   For the middle seat, guide it over or along both sides of the head restraint to the anchor where applicable.
4. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the anchor.
5. Tighten the retaining strap by pulling it down.
6. Lower and lock head restraints as needed.

Locking the doors and windows in the rear

General information

In certain situations it may be advisable to secure the rear doors and windows, for instance when transporting children.

Doors

Push the locking lever on the rear doors up.

The door can now be opened from the outside only.

Safety switch for the rear

Press the button on the driver's door.

This locks various functions so that they cannot be operated from the rear. Safety switch, refer to page 104.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2082
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Driving

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Start/Stop button

Concept

Pressing the Start/Stop button switches drive-ready state on or off, refer to page 43.

Drive-ready state is switched on when you depress the brake pedal while pressing the Start/Stop button.

Pressing the Start/Stop button again switches drive-ready state back off and standby state, refer to page 43, is switched back on.

Driving away

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. Apply drive mode.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Drive away.

Auto Start/Stop function

Concept

The Auto Start/Stop function helps save fuel. The system switches off the engine during a stop, for instance in traffic congestion or at traffic lights. Drive-ready state remains switched on. The engine starts automatically for driving off.

General information

After each engine start using the Start/Stop button, the Auto Start/Stop function is ready. The function is activated from speeds of approx. 3 mph/5 km/h.

Depending on the selected driving mode, refer to page 135, the system is automatically activated or deactivated.

Engine stop

Functional requirements

Steptronic transmission

The engine is switched off automatically during a stop under the following conditions:

- The selector lever is in selector lever position D.
- The brake pedal remains pressed while the vehicle is stationary or the vehicle is held by Automatic Hold.
- The driver's safety belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

Manual engine stop

If the engine was not switched off automatically when the vehicle stopped, the engine can be switched off manually:

- Press the brake pedal forcefully again from the current pedal position.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2083
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

▷ Engage selector lever position P.

If all functional preconditions are fulfilled, the engine switches off.

Air conditioner when the engine is switched off

The air flow from the air conditioner is reduced when the engine is switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster

General information

The display in the tachometer indicates that the Auto Start/Stop function is ready for an Automatic engine start.

The display indicates that the conditions for an automatic engine stop have not been met.

Total time with switched-off engine

ECO PRO, refer to page 318, driving mode: depending on the vehicle equipment, the total time that the engine has been switched off using the Auto Start/Stop function is displayed on an automatic engine stop.

The total time is automatically reset every time the vehicle is refueled.

Functional limitations

The engine is not switched off automatically in the following situations:

▷ In case of a steep downhill grade.

▷ Brake not engaged strongly enough.

▷ The external temperature is high and automatic climate control is running.

▷ The car's interior has not yet been heated or cooled to the required level.

▷ Where there is a risk of window condensation when the automatic climate control is switched on.

▷ Engine or other parts not at operating temperature.

▷ Engine cooling is required.

▷ The wheels are at a sharp angle or the steering wheel is being turned.

▷ Vehicle battery is heavily discharged.

▷ At higher elevations.

▷ The hood is unlocked.

▷ The parking assistant is activated.

▷ Stop-and-go traffic.

▷ Selector lever position in N or R.

▷ After driving in reverse.

▷ Use of fuel with high ethanol content.

Starting the engine

Functional requirements

Steptronic transmission

The engine starts automatically under the following preconditions:

▷ By releasing the brake pedal.

▷ When Automatic Hold is activated: press the accelerator pedal.

Driving off

After the engine starts, accelerate as usual.

Safety mode

After the engine switches off automatically, it will not start again automatically if any one of the following conditions are met:

▷ The driver's safety belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is open.

▷ The hood was unlocked.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2084

Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Some indicator lights light up for a varied length of time.

The engine can only be started via the Start/Stop button.

System limits

Even if driving off was not intended, the deactivated engine starts up automatically in the following situations:

- Excessive warming of the car's interior when the air conditioning is switched on.
- Excessive cooling of the car's interior when the heating is switched on.
- Where there is a risk of window condensation when the automatic climate control is switched on.
- The steering wheel is turned.
- Change from selector lever position D to N or R.
- Change from selector lever position P to N, D, or R.
- Vehicle battery is heavily discharged.
- Start of an oil level measurement.

Intelligent Auto Start/Stop function

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country-specific version, the vehicle features a variety of sensors for assessing the traffic situation. The Intelligent Auto Start/Stop function uses this information to adapt to various traffic situations in a proactive manner.

For instance, this applies to the following situations:

- If a situation is detected in which the stopping time is expected to be very short, the engine is not switched off automatically. A message appears on the Control Display, depending on the situation.
- If a situation is detected in which the vehicle needs to drive off immediately, the engine is started automatically.

The function may be restricted if the navigation data is invalid, outdated or not available, for example.

Activating/deactivating the system manually

Concept

The engine is not automatically switched off.

The engine is started during an automatic engine stop.

Using the button

Press the button.

Via selector lever position or Driving Dynamics Control

The Auto Start/Stop function is also deactivated in selector lever position M/S or in SPORT driving mode of the Driving Dynamics Control.

Display

- LED comes on: auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.
- LED goes out: auto Start/Stop function is activated.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2085
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Switching off the vehicle during an automatic engine stop

General information

During an automatic engine stop, the vehicle can be switched off permanently, for instance when leaving it.

Steptronic transmission

1. Press the Start/Stop button.
   - Drive-ready state is switched off.
   - Standby state is switched on.
   - Selector lever position P is engaged automatically.
2. Set the parking brake.

Automatic deactivation

General information

In certain situations, the Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated automatically for safety reasons, for instance if no driver is detected.

Malfunction

The Auto Start/Stop function no longer switches off the engine automatically. A Check Control message is displayed. It is possible to continue driving. Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Driving Dynamics Control

Concept

The Driving Dynamics Control influences the driving dynamics properties of the vehicle.

The vehicle can be adjusted depending on the situation using various driving modes.

General information

The following systems are affected, for instance:

- Engine characteristics.
- Steptronic transmission.
- Adaptive chassis.
- Air suspension.
- Active roll stabilization.
- Integral Active Steering.
- Display in the instrument cluster.
- Cruise control.
- Backrest width for comfort seats.

Overview

Displays in the instrument cluster

The selected driving mode is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Driving modes

Buttons in the vehicle

Button	Driving mode	Configuration
SPORT	SPORT	INDIVIDUAL
SPORT	SPORT PLUS	
COMFORT	COMFORT	

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2086
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Button	Driving mode	Configuration
COMFORT	COMFORT PLUS	
ECO PRO		INDIVIDUAL
ADAPTIVE		

When drive-ready state is switched on, the COMFORT driving mode is selected automatically.

Driving modes in detail

COMFORT

Concept

Balanced tuning between dynamic and efficient driving.

Switching on

COMFORT Press the button repeatedly until COMFORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

COMFORT PLUS

Concept

Particularly comfortable tuning for optimum traveling comfort.

Switching on

COMFORT Press the button repeatedly until COMFORT PLUS is displayed in the instrument cluster.

SPORT

Concept

Dynamic tuning for higher agility with an optimized chassis and suspension.

Switching on

SPORT Press the button repeatedly until SPORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

SPORT INDIVIDUAL

Concept

Individual settings can be adjusted in the SPORT INDIVIDUAL driving mode.

Configuration

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driving mode"
4. "SPORT INDIVIDUAL"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Reset SPORT INDIVIDUAL to the standard settings:

"Reset to SPORT STANDARD".

SPORT PLUS

Concept

Dynamic tuning for maximum agility with an adjusted drive.

Switching on

SPORT Press the button repeatedly until SPORT PLUS is displayed in the instrument cluster.

ECO PRO

Concept

Efficient driving setting.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2087
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Switching on

Press the button repeatedly until ECO PRO is displayed in the instrument cluster.

ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL

Concept

Individual settings can be adjusted in the ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL driving mode.

Configuration

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driving mode"
4. "ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Reset ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL to the standard settings:

"Reset to ECO PRO STANDARD".

ADAPTIVE

Concept

Comfort-oriented driving mode, whose tuning is automatically modified to the driving situation and driving style.

If the navigation system is active, upcoming road sections are considered.

Switching on

Press the button. ADAPTIVE is displayed in the instrument cluster.

INDIVIDUAL configuration

General information

The individual configuration of the driving mode is stored for the active driver profile. The last set configuration is activated directly when the driving mode is called up again.

Activating configuration of the driving mode

Press the button for the desired driving mode several times.

Parking brake

Concept

The parking brake is used to prevent the vehicle from rolling when it is parked.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2088

Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Overview

Parking brake

Setting

With a stationary vehicle

Pull the switch.

The LED lights up.

PARK

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates red. The parking brake is set.

While driving

General information

To use as emergency brake while driving.

Pull the switch and hold it. The vehicle brakes hard while the switch is being pulled.

PARK

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates red, a signal sounds, and the brake lights illuminate.

A Check Control message is displayed.

The parking brake is engaged when the vehicle is stationary.

With Emergency Stop Assistant

Pull the switch for the parking brake briefly to activate the emergency stop function, refer to page 207.

Releasing

Releasing manually

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. Press the switch while stepping on the brake pedal or selector lever position P is set.

   The LED and indicator light go out.

   The parking brake is released.

Automatic release

The parking brake is released automatically when you drive away.

The LED and indicator light go out.

Automatic Hold

Concept

This system assists the driver by automatically setting and releasing the brake, such as when moving in stop-and-go traffic.

The vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2089
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

On uphill grades the system prevents the vehicle from rolling backward when driving off.

General information

Under the following conditions, the parking brake is automatically engaged:

- Drive-ready state is switched off.
- The driver's door is opened while the vehicle is stationary.
- The moving vehicle is brought to a standstill using the parking brake.

Display

PARK (P) The indicator light changes from green to red.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

NOTICE

If the vehicle is stationary, Automatic Hold engages the parking brake and prevents the vehicle from rolling in a vehicle wash. There is a risk of damage to property. Deactivate Automatic Hold prior to entering the vehicle wash.

Overview

AUTO H Automatic Hold

Establishing function readiness of Automatic Hold

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. AUTO H Press the button.

   The LED lights up.

   AUTO H The indicator light lights up green.

   Automatic Hold is functional.

   After every new vehicle start, the last selected setting is active.

Automatic Hold holding the vehicle

Function readiness is established and the driver's door is closed.

After stepping on the brake pedal, for instance when stopping at a traffic light, the vehicle is automatically secured against rolling.

The indicator light lights up green.

Driving off

Step on the accelerator pedal to drive off.

The brake is released automatically and the indicator light is no longer illuminated.

Activating the parking brake automatically

The parking brake is automatically set if drive-ready state is switched off while the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold or if the vehicle is exited.

The indicator light changes from green to red.

The parking brake is not set automatically, if the drive-ready state is switched off, while the vehicle is coasting to a halt. Automatic Hold is deactivated.

Switching function readiness off

Press the button.

The LED goes out.

The indicator light goes out.

Automatic Hold is switched off.

If the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold, press additionally on the brake pedal, when switching off.

Malfunction

In the event of a failure or malfunction of the parking brake:

Secure the vehicle against rolling away, for instance with a wheel chock, after existing the vehicle.

After a power failure

To reestablish parking brake functionality after a power failure:

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Pull the switch while stepping on the brake pedal or selector lever position P is set and then push.

This process may take a few seconds. Some mechanical sounds associated with this process are normal.

The indicator light is no longer illuminated as soon as the parking brake is ready for operation again.

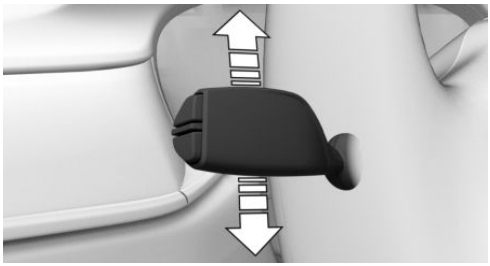
Turn signal

Turn signal in exterior mirror

When driving and during operation of the turn signals or hazard warning system, do not fold in the exterior mirrors, so that the signal lights on the exterior mirror are easy to see.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2091
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Using turn signals



Press the lever past the resistance point.

Triple turn signal activation

Lightly tap the lever up or down.

The triple turn signal duration can be adjusted.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "One-touch turn signal"
5. Select the desired setting.

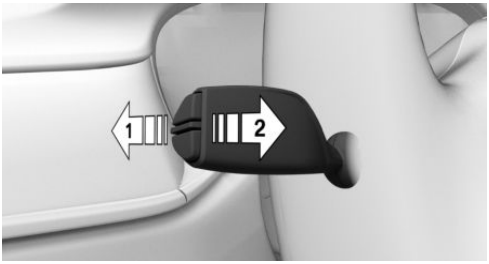
The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Signaling briefly

Press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

High beams, headlight flasher

Push the lever forward or pull it backward.



- ▷ High beams on, arrow 1.

  The high beams light up when the low beams are switched on.
- ▷ High beams off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

Wiper system

General information

Do not use the wipers if the windshield is dry, as this may damage the wiper blades or cause them to become worn more quickly.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

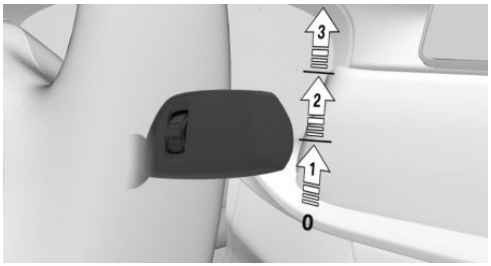
If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

⚠ NOTICE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of damage to property. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2092
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Switching on

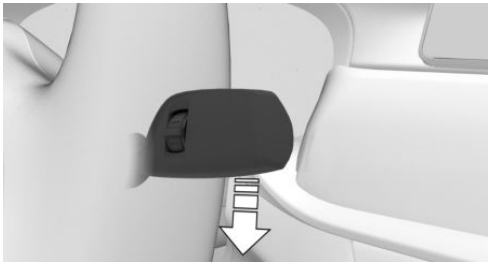


Press the lever up until the desired position is reached.

- ▷ Resting position of the wipers, position 0.
- ▷ Rain sensor, position 1.
- ▷ Normal wiper speed, position 2.
- ▷ Fast wiper speed, position 3.

When travel is interrupted with the wiper system switched on: when travel continues, the wipers resume at their previous speed.

Switching off and brief wipe



Press the lever down.

- ▷ Switching off: press the lever down until it reaches its standard position.
- ▷ Brief wipe: press the lever down from the standard position.

  The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

Rain sensor

Concept

The rain sensor automatically controls the time between wipes depending on the intensity of the rainfall.

General information

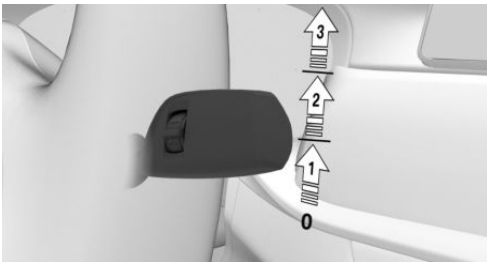
The sensor is located on the windshield, directly in front of the interior mirror.

Safety information

⚠ NOTICE

If the rain sensor is activated, the wipers can accidentally start moving in vehicle washes. There is a risk of damage to property. Deactivate the rain sensor in vehicle washes.

Activating



Press the lever up once from its standard position, arrow 1.

Wiping is started.

The LED in the wiper lever is illuminated.

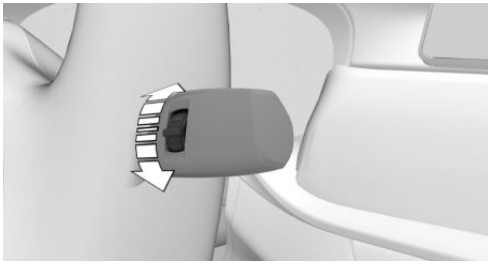
In frosty conditions, wiper operation may not start.

Deactivating

Press the lever back into the standard position.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2093
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Adjusting the rain sensor sensitivity



Turn the thumbwheel to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Upward: high rain sensor sensitivity.

Downward: low rain sensor sensitivity.

Windshield washer system

Safety information

Warning

The washer fluid can freeze onto the window at low temperatures and obstruct the view. There is a risk of accident. Only use the washer systems, if the washer fluid cannot freeze. Use washer fluid with antifreeze, if needed.

NOTICE

When the washer fluid reservoir is empty, the wash pump cannot work as intended. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use the washer system when the washer fluid reservoir is empty.

Cleaning the windshield

Pull the lever.

The system sprays washer fluid on the windshield and activates the wipers briefly.

Windshield washer nozzles

The windshield washer nozzles are automatically heated while standby state is switched on.

Fold-away position of the wipers

Concept

The fold-away position enables the wipers to be folded away from the windshield.

General information

Important, for instance when changing the wiper blades or for folding away under frosty conditions.

Safety information

Warning

If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

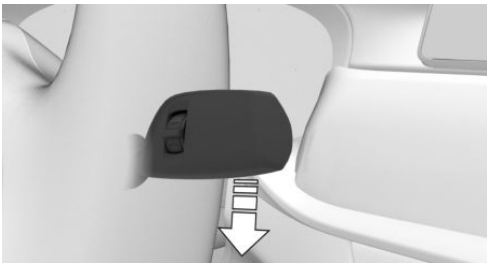
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2094
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

NOTICE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of damage to property. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.

Folding away the wipers

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Press and hold the wiper lever down, until the wipers stop in a close to vertical position.



3. Fold the wipers all the way away from the windshield.

Folding down the wipers

After the wipers are folded back down, the wiper system must be reactivated.

1. Fold the wipers back down onto the windshield.
2. Switch on standby state and press and hold the wiper lever down again.
3. Wipers return to their resting position and are ready again for operation.

Steptronic transmission

Concept

The Steptronic transmission combines the functions of an automatic transmission with the possibility of manual shifting, if needed.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling, for instance with the parking brake.

Selector lever positions

Drive mode D

Selector lever position for normal vehicle operation. All gears for forward travel are activated automatically.

R is reverse

Engage selector lever position R only when the vehicle is stationary.

Neutral N

The vehicle may be pushed or roll without power, for instance in vehicle washes, refer to page 145, in selector lever position N.

Parking position P

Selector lever position, for instance for parking the vehicle. The transmission blocks the drive wheels in selector lever position P.

Engage selector lever position P only when the vehicle is stationary.

P is engaged automatically

Selector lever position P is engaged automatically in situations such as the following:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2095
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

- After the drive-ready state is switched off and selector lever position R, D or M/S is engaged.
- After the standby state has been switched off when selector lever position N is engaged.
- If the driver's safety belt is unbuckled, the driver's door is opened, and the brake pedal is not pressed while the vehicle is stationary and selector lever position D, M/S or R is engaged.

Engaging selector lever positions

General information

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a drive mode, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start.

Functional requirements

Only when the drive-ready state is switched on and the brake pedal is depressed is it possible to change from selector lever position P to another selector lever position.

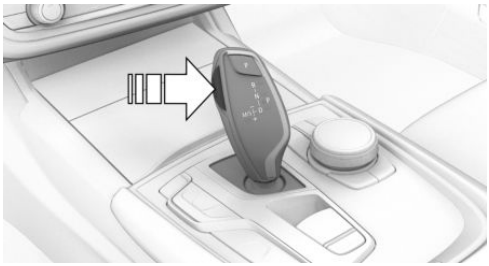
The selection lever position P cannot be changed until all technical requirements are met.

Engaging selector lever position D, N, R

A selector lever lock prevents the following faulty operation:

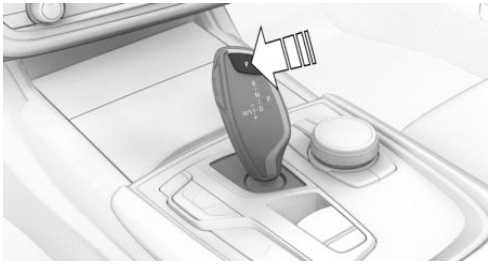
- Unintentional shifting into selector lever position R.
- Unintentional shifting from selector lever position P into another selector lever position.

1. Fasten driver's safety belt.
2. Press and hold the button to release the selector lever lock.



3. Push the selector lever in the desired direction, past a resistance point, if needed. The selector lever automatically returns to the center position when released.

Engaging selector lever position P



Press button P.

Rolling or pushing the vehicle

General information

In some situations, the vehicle is to roll without its own power for a short distance, for instance in a vehicle wash, or be pushed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2096
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Engaging selector lever position N

1. Switch on drive-ready state while pressing on the brake pedal.
2. If necessary, release the parking brake.
3. If necessary, switch off Automatic Hold, refer to page 138.
4. Depress the brake pedal.
5. Touch the selector lever lock and engage selector lever position N.
6. Switch off drive-ready state.

   In this way, standby state remains switched on, and a Check Control message is displayed.

   The vehicle can roll.

NOTICE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not switch standby state off in vehicle washes.

Irrespective of standby state, the selector lever position P is automatically engaged after approx. 35 minutes.

If there is a malfunction, you may not be able to change the selector lever position.

Electronically unlock the transmission lock, if needed, refer to page 148.

Kickdown

Kickdown is used to achieve maximum driving performance.

Step on the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position.

Sport program M/S

Concept

The shifting points and shifting times in the Sport program are designed for a sportier driving style. The transmission, for instance shifts up later and the shifting times are shorter.

Activating the Sport program

Press the selector lever to the left from selector lever position D.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, for instance S1.

The sport program of the transmission is activated.

Ending the Sport program

Push the selector lever to the right.

D is displayed in the instrument cluster.

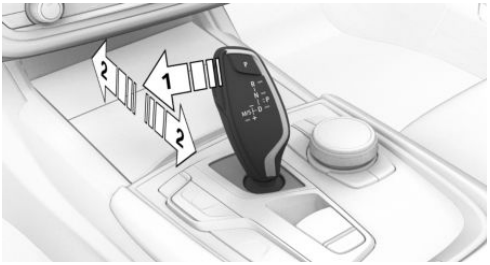
Manual mode M/S

Concept

Manual gear-shifting is possible in manual mode.

Activating manual mode

1. Press the selector lever to the left from selector lever position D, arrow 1.



BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2097
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

2. Push the selector lever forward or pull it backward, arrows 2.

Manual mode becomes active and the gear is changed.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, for instance M1.

Shifting

- To shift down: press the selector lever forward.
- To shift up: pull the selector lever rearwards.

The transmission continues shifting automatically in certain situations, for instance when speed limits are reached.

Steptronic Sport transmission: prevent automatic upshifting in M/S manual mode

If driving mode SPORT, refer to page 136, is selected, the Steptronic Sport transmission does not automatically upshift in M/S manual mode once the maximum speed is reached.

Depending on the BMW M drive configuration, this function is active independently of the driving mode.

In addition, there is no downshifting for kickdown.

Ending the manual mode

Push the selector lever to the right.

D is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Shift paddles

Concept

The shift paddles on the steering wheel allow you to shift gears quickly while keeping both hands on the steering wheel.

General information

Shifting

The vehicle only shifts at suitable engine and road speeds.

Short-term manual mode

In selector lever position D, actuating a shift paddle switches into manual mode temporarily.

After conservative driving in manual mode without acceleration or shifting via the shift paddles for a certain amount of time, the transmission switches back to automatic mode.

It is possible to switch into automatic mode as follows:

- Pull and hold right shift paddle.
- In addition to the briefly pulled right shift paddle, briefly pull the left shift paddle.

Continuous manual mode

In selector lever position S, actuating a shift paddle switches into manual mode permanently.

Steptronic Sport transmission

With the appropriate transmission version, the lowest possible gear can be selected by simultaneously activating kickdown and operating the left shift paddles. This is not possible in short-term manual mode.

Shifting

- To shift up: briefly pull right shift paddle.
- To shift down: briefly pull left shift paddle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2098
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

▷ The lowest possible gear can be selected by pulling and holding the left shift paddle.

The selected gear is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the current gear.

Displays in the instrument cluster

The selector lever position is displayed, for example P.

Electronic unlocking of the transmission lock

General information

Electronically unlock the transmission lock to maneuver vehicle from a danger area.

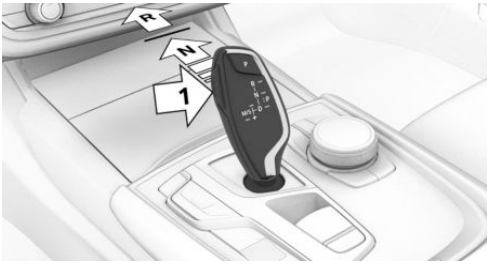
Unlocking is possible, if the starter can spin the engine.

Before unlocking the transmission lock, set the parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

Engaging selector lever position N

1. Press and hold down brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button. The starter must audibly start. Hold the Start/Stop button pressed.
3. With your free hand, press the button on the selector lever, arrow 1, and press the selector lever into selector lever position N and hold, arrow N, until selector lever position N is displayed in the instrument cluster.

A Check Control message is displayed.



4. Release Start/Stop button and selector lever.
5. Release brake, as soon as the starter stops.
6. Maneuver the vehicle from the danger area and secure it against moving on its own.

For additional information, see the chapter on tow-starting and towing, refer to page 377.

Launch Control

Concept

Launch Control enables optimum acceleration on surfaces with good traction under dry surrounding conditions.

General information

The use of Launch Control causes premature component wear since this function represents a very heavy load for the vehicle.

Do not use Launch Control during the break-in, refer to page 312, period.

Do not steer the steering wheel when driving off with Launch Control.

Functional requirements

Launch Control is available when the engine is at operating temperature. The engine is at operating temperature after an uninterrupted trip of at least 6 miles/10 km.

Start with launch control

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2.

Press the button.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2099
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster and the indicator light for DSC OFF lights up.

3. Engage selector lever position S.
4. With the left foot, forcefully press down on the brake.
5. Press and hold down the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position, kickdown.

   A flag symbol is displayed in the instrument cluster.
6. The starting engine speed adjusts. Within 3 seconds, release the brake.

Repeated use during a trip

After Launch Control has been used, the transmission must cool down for approx. 5 minutes before Launch Control can be used again. Launch Control adjusts to the surrounding conditions, when used again.

After using Launch Control

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC Dynamic Stability Control again as soon as possible.

System limits

An experienced driver may be able to achieve better acceleration values in DSC OFF mode.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2100

Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Displays

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Instrument cluster

Concept

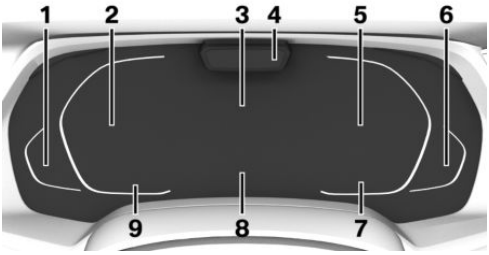
The instrument cluster is a variable display. When you change to a different program via Driving Dynamics Control, the displays in the instrument cluster adapt to the respective driving mode.

General information

The display change in the instrument cluster can be deactivated via iDrive.

Some of the displays in the instrument cluster may differ from the illustrations in the Owner's Manual.

Overview



1 Fuel gauge 155
Range 157

2 Speedometer

3 Central display area 150
Service requirements 157
Navigation display

4 Depending on the equipment: Driver Attention Camera

5 Tachometer 156
Selection lists 161
Widgets in the instrument cluster 151
Trip odometer, see Trip data 161
ECO PRO displays 318
Status, Driving Dynamics Control 135
Transmission display 144

6 Engine temperature 157

7 External temperature 157

8 Check Control 152

9 Speed Limit Assist 228
Speed Limit Info 159
Time 66

Central display area

Depending on the equipment, the following is displayed in the central display area of the instrument cluster:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2101
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

- Navigation displays such as the map view or, if destination guidance is active, a route preview with destination guidance information.
- Displays showing service requirements.

Some displays in the central display area can be configured individually. Setting the displays in the central display area, refer to page 151.

The displays may vary depending on the equipment version and country variant.

Driving mode view

Concept

When the driving mode view is deactivated, the displays in the instrument cluster remain unchanged and do not adapt to the respective driving mode when the program is changed via Driving Dynamics Control.

Activating/deactivating

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Driving mode view"

Adjusting

Individual displays in the instrument cluster can be configured individually.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument panel"
5. Select the desired setting.

Widgets in the instrument cluster

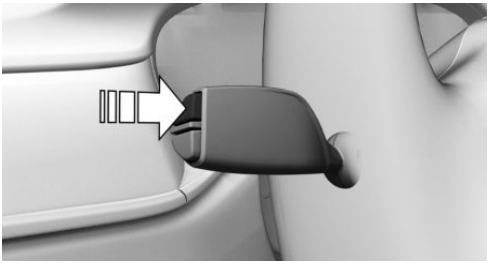
Concept

Displays for specific functions can be displayed in the tachometer in the instrument cluster.

The following displays can be selected:

- Trip data, refer to page 161.
- Torque and power, refer to page 163.
- Acceleration power, refer to page 163.
- Current entertainment source, for instance, radio, refer to Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication.
- Efficiency display, refer to page 152.

Selecting



Continue to press the button on the turn signal lever until the desired widget is selected.

Display

Efficiency display

Concept

Information about driving style and consumption can be displayed in the form of a consumption display as a widget in the instrument cluster, for example.

General information

Depending on the activated driving mode, different information will be displayed:

Driving mode	Display
COMFORT SPORT	Current consumption. Average consumption. Energy recovery.
ECO PRO	ECO PRO bonus range. Distance traveled in Coasting mode. Current consumption.

Average consumption

The average consumption indicates the fuel consumption when driving a specific route.

Current consumption

The current consumption displays the current consumption of fuel. Check whether you are currently driving in an efficient and environmentally-friendly manner.

Energy recovery

During energy recovery, the kinetic energy of the vehicle is converted into electric energy during coasting. The vehicle battery is partially charged and fuel consumption can be reduced.

ECO PRO bonus range

In the ECO PRO driving mode, the yielded extension of the range as a result of fuel-efficient driving is displayed as ECO PRO bonus range, refer to page 318.

Check Control

Concept

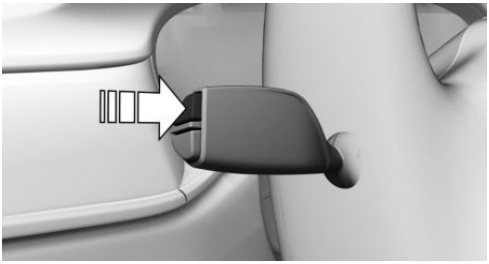
The Check Control system monitors functions in the vehicle and notifies you of malfunctions in the monitored systems.

General information

A Check Control message is displayed as a combination of indicator or warning lights and text messages in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, in the Head-up Display.

In addition, an acoustic signal may sound and a text message may appear on the Control Display.

Hiding Check Control messages



Press the button on the turn signal lever.

Continuous display

Some Check Control messages are displayed continuously and are not cleared until the malfunction is eliminated. If several malfunctions occur at once, the messages are displayed consecutively.

The messages can be hidden for approx. 8 seconds. After this time, they are displayed again automatically.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2103
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Temporary display

Some Check Control messages are hidden automatically after approx. 20 seconds. The Check Control messages are stored and can be displayed again later.

Displaying stored Check Control messages

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. ⚠ "Check Control"
4. Select the SMS text message.

Display

Check Control

At least one Check Control message is displayed or stored.

SMS text messages

SMS text messages in combination with a symbol in the instrument cluster explain a Check Control message and the meaning of the indicator/warning lights.

Supplementary SMS text messages

Additional information, such as the reason for an error or malfunction or the required action, can be called up via Check Control.

With urgent messages the added text will be automatically displayed on the Control Display.

Depending on the Check Control message, further help can be selected.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. ⚠ "Check Control"
4. Select the desired text message.
5. Select the desired setting.

Messages after trip completion

Certain messages displayed while driving are displayed again after drive-ready state is switched off.

Indicator/warning lights

Concept

Indicator/warning lights in the instrument cluster display the status of some functions in the vehicle and indicate when a malfunction is present in the monitored systems.

General information

The indicator/warning lights can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when drive-ready state is switched on.

Red lights

Safety belt reminder

Indicator light flashes or is illuminated: safety belt on the driver or passenger side is not buckled. The safety belt reminder can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly.

Safety belt reminder for rear seats

The safety belt is not buckled on the corresponding rear seat.

Airbag system

Airbag system and belt tensioner may not be working.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2104

Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Have the vehicle checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Parking brake

The parking brake is set.

For releasing the parking brake, refer to page 138.

Brake system

Braking system impaired. Continue to drive moderately.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Yellow lights

Anti-lock Braking System ABS

The Brake Assistant function may not activate. Avoid abrupt braking. Take the longer braking distance into account.

Have the system immediately checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control

The indicator light flashes: DSC controls the drive and braking forces. The vehicle is stabilized. Reduce speed and modify your driving style to the driving circumstances.

The indicator light lights up: DSC has malfunctioned.

Have the system immediately checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

DSC, refer to page 212.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated or DTC Dynamic Traction Control is activated

DSC is deactivated or DTC is activated.

DSC, refer to page 212, and DTC, refer to page 214.

Flat Tire Monitor FTM

The Flat Tire Monitor signals a loss of tire inflation pressure in a tire.

Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 350.

Tire Pressure Monitor TPM

The indicator light lights up: the Tire Pressure Monitor reports a low tire inflation pressure or a flat tire. Follow the information in the Check Control message.

The indicator light flashes and then continuously lights up: no flat tire or loss of tire inflation pressure can be detected.

- Interference caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- TPM was unable to complete the reset. Reset the system again.
- A wheel without TPM wheel electronics is mounted: have it checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop as needed.
- Malfunction: have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 343.

Steering system

Steering system may not be working.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2105
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Emissions

- The warning light lights up:

  Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.
- The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:

  This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

  Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

Socket for Onboard Diagnosis, refer to page 369.

Green lights

Safety belt reminder for rear seats

The safety belt is buckled on the corresponding rear seat.

Turn signal

Turn signal switched on.

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator light indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

Turn signal, refer to page 140.

Parking lights

Parking lights are switched on.

Parking lights/low beams, refer to page 167.

Low beams

Low beams are switched on.

Parking lights/low beams, refer to page 167.

Lane departure warning

The indicator light lights up: the system is activated. A lane marking was detected on at least one side of the vehicle and warnings can be issued.

Lane departure warning, refer to page 196.

High-beam Assistant

High-beam Assistant is switched on.

High beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the traffic situation.

High-beam Assistant, refer to page 169.

Automatic Hold

Automatic Hold is activated. The vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

Automatic Hold, refer to page 138.

Blue lights

High beams

High beams are switched on.

High beams, refer to page 141.

Fuel gauge

Concept

The current fill level of the fuel tank is displayed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2106
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

General information

Vehicle tilt position may cause the display to vary.

Information on refueling, refer to page 326.

Display

An arrow beside the fuel pump symbol shows which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is on.

The current range is displayed as numerical value.

Indicator light in the instrument cluster

The yellow indicator light illuminates, once the fuel reserve is reached.

Tachometer

Always avoid engine speeds in the red warning field. In this range, the fuel supply is reduced to protect the engine.

Shift point indicator

Concept

The shift lights indicate the upshift point at which the best possible acceleration can be achieved.

Functional requirement

Shift lights are shown when the SPORT driving program is activated.

Switching on/off

1. Select SPORT driving mode.

   Press Driving Dynamics Control.
2. Activate the M/S manual mode of the transmission.

Display

- Current engine speed is displayed in the tachometer.
- Arrow 1: successive yellow illuminated fields indicate an increase in the speed.
- Arrow 2: successive orange illuminated fields indicate the upcoming shift moment.
- Arrow 3: the field lights up red. Do not wait any further to shift.

When the maximum speed is reached, the entire display flashes red and the supply of fuel is interrupted in order to protect the engine.

Standby state and drive-ready state

The letters OFF in the tachometer indicate that drive-ready state is switched off and standby state is switched on.

The letters READY in the tachometer indicate that the Auto Start/Stop function is ready to start the engine automatically.

For further information, see Idle state, standby state, and drive-ready state, refer to page 43.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2107
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Engine temperature

Display

- Cold engine: the pointer is at the low temperature end. Drive at moderate engine and vehicle speeds.
- Normal operating temperature: the pointer is in the middle or in the lower half of the temperature display.
- Hot engine: the pointer is at the high end of the temperature range. In addition, a Check Control message is displayed.

To check the coolant level, refer to page 366.

Indicator light in the instrument cluster

A red indicator light is displayed.

External temperature

General information

If the indicator drops to +37 °F/+3 °C or lower, a signal sounds.

A Check Control message is displayed.

There is an increased risk of ice on roads.

Safety information

Warning

Even at temperatures above +37 °F/+3 °C there can be a risk of icy roads, for instance on bridges or shady sections of the road. There is a risk of accident. Modify your driving style to the weather conditions at low temperatures.

Range

Concept

The range indicates the distance that can still be covered with the current fuel level.

General information

The estimated range available with the remaining fuel is permanently displayed in the instrument cluster.

With a low remaining range, a Check Control message is briefly displayed. With a dynamic driving style, for instance fast cornering, the engine function is not always ensured.

The Check Control message appears continuously below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km.

Safety information

NOTICE

With a driving range of less than 30 miles/50 km the engine may no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of damage to property. Refuel promptly.

Display

The current range is displayed as numerical value next to the fuel gauge.

Service requirements

Concept

The function displays the service requirements and the corresponding maintenance scopes.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2108
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

General information

After switching on drive-ready state, the instrument cluster briefly displays available driving distance or time to the next scheduled maintenance.

A service advisor can read out the current service requirements from your remote control.

Some information on service requirements can also be shown on the BMW display key.

Display

Detailed information on service requirements

More information on the type of service required may be displayed on the Control Display.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service schedule"
   Required maintenance procedures and legally mandated inspections are displayed.
4. Select an entry to call up detailed information.

Symbols

Symbols	Description
OK	No service is currently required.
△	The deadline for scheduled maintenance or a legally mandated inspection is approaching.
!	The service deadline has already passed.

Entering appointment dates

Enter the dates for the mandatory vehicle inspections.

Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service schedule"
4. "BMW Service"
5. "Date:"
6. Select the desired setting.

Automatic Service Request

Data regarding the service status or legally mandated vehicle inspections is automatically transmitted to your dealer's service center before your vehicle is due for service.

You can check when your dealer's service center was notified.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. Move the Controller to the left.
4. "TeleService Call"

Gear shift indicator

Concept

The system recommends the most efficient gear for the current driving situation.

General information

Depending on the design and country version, the gear shift indicator may be active in the manual mode of the Steptronic transmission.

Steptronic transmission: displaying

Suggestions to shift up or down are displayed in the instrument cluster.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2109
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

On vehicles without a gear shift indicator, the engaged gear is displayed.

Example	Description
M3	Efficient gear is set.
2▸3	Shift into efficient gear.

Speed Limit Info

Speed Limit Info

Concept

Speed Limit Info shows the currently valid speed limit in the instrument cluster and, if necessary, the Head-up Display.

General information

The camera in the area of the interior mirror detects traffic signs at the edge of the road as well as variable overhead sign posts.

Traffic signs with extra symbols are considered and compared with the vehicle's onboard data. The traffic sign will then be either displayed or ignored depending on the situation in the instrument cluster and the Head-up Display.

The system takes into account any information that is stored in the navigation system and also displays speed limits present on routes without signs.

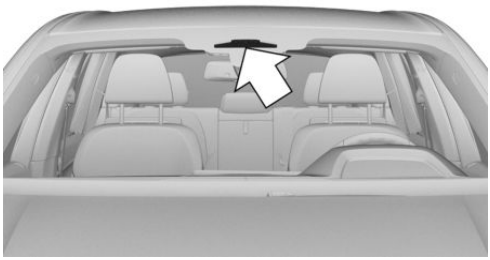
Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Displaying Speed Limit Info

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, Speed Limit Info is displayed permanently in the instrument cluster or via iDrive.

Activating/deactivating

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Driving"
5. "Speed Limit Assistant"
6. "Info on speed limits"
7. "Show current limit"

Display

Speed Limit Info

Current speed limit.

Depending on the equipment, Speed Limit Info not available.

If the detected speed limit has been exceeded, the indicator light will flash.

Adjusting

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Driving"
5. "Speed Limit Assistance"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - "Warn when speeding": activate/deactivate the flashing of the Speed Limit Info display in the instrument cluster and, where applicable, the Head-up Display when the currently valid speed limit is exceeded. The warning that is issued when a speed limit is exceeded may depend on the Speed Limit Assist settings.
   - "Excess speed display": the speed limit that is detected by the Speed Limit Info is displayed with a marking in the speedometer in the instrument cluster.

System limits

The system may not be fully functional and may provide incorrect information in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- When signs are fully or partially concealed by objects, stickers or paint.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- When driving toward bright lights or strong reflections.
- When the windshield in front of the interior mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered by a sticker, etc.
- If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- In the event of incorrect detection by the camera.
- If the speed limits or road data stored in the navigation system are incorrect.
- If the speed limits vary with the time of day and the day of the week.
- In areas not covered by the navigation system.
- When roads differ from the navigation, such as due to changes in road routing.
- In case of electronic traffic signs.
- When passing buses or trucks with traffic signs applied to them.
- If the traffic signs are non-conforming.
- When signs that are valid for a parallel road are detected.
- In the presence of country-specific signs and road configurations.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2111
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Selection lists

Concept

Lists can be displayed and, if necessary, used for certain functions in the instrument cluster or the Head-up Display.

- Entertainment source.
- Current audio source.
- List of most recent telephone calls.

If necessary, the corresponding menu will open on the Control Display.

Display

Depending on the equipment version, the list in the instrument cluster may differ from the illustration.

Displaying and using the list

Button	Function
	Change the entertainment source. Pressing the button again will close the currently displayed list.
	Show list of most recent telephone calls.
	Turn the thumbwheel to select the desired setting. Press the thumbwheel to confirm the setting. The currently selected list can be displayed again in the instrument cluster by turning the thumbwheel.

Trip data

Concept

Values for the trip, such as the average consumption or trip miles, are displayed.

General information

The trip data can be displayed on the Control Display and in the instrument cluster.

The values can be displayed and reset depending on various intervals, such as after refueling.

Display on the Control Display

Overview

The following information is displayed:

- Configured interval for resetting the trip data.
- Average consumption, fuel.
- Average speed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2112

- Total time for shut off engine through the Auto Start/Stop function.
- Distance traveled in Coasting mode.
- Consumption history in form of a chart.

Displays

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Trip data"

Consumption history

The average consumption is shown in the consumption history in form of a chart based on the distance travelled and the driving mode.

Display in the instrument cluster

Information about the route can be displayed as widget in the tachometer. Selecting and setting widgets in the instrument cluster, refer to page 151.

The following information is displayed:

- Total mileage.
- Configured interval for resetting the trip data.
- Distance travelled depending on the configured interval.
- Average speed.

Resetting trip data

The intervals in which the values must be reset can be configured.

Via iDrive:

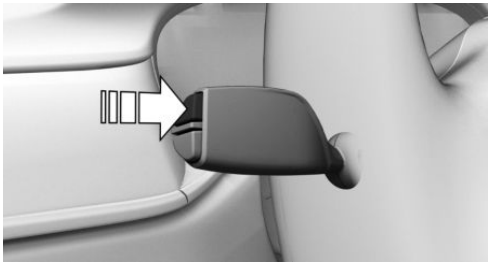
1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Trip data"
4. "Data since"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "Start of trip ( )": the values are automatically reset approx. four hours after the vehicle has come to a standstill.
   - "Refueling ( )": the values are automatically reset after refueling with a larger quantity of fuel.
   - "Factory ( )": the values since the time of the factory delivery are displayed.
   - "Individual ( )": the values since the last manual reset are displayed. The values can be reset at any time.

Resetting average values manually

The following interval can be reset manually at any time: "Individual ( )".

With the button on the turn signal lever:

1. Continue to press the button on the turn signal lever until the widget for the trip data is selected.



2. Press and hold the button on the turn signal lever.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Trip data"
4. "Data since"
5. "Reset individual"

The average values and counters are reset. Once the average values and counters have been reset, the following interval is automatically set: "Individual ( )".

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2113
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Sport displays

Concept

The Sport displays especially support a sporty driving style.

Display on the Control Display

Overview

The following information is displayed:

- Boost pressure.
- Engine oil temperature.
- Acceleration power.
- Torque.
- Power.

Displays

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Sport displays"

Display in the instrument cluster

The Sport displays can be displayed in form of two widgets in the instrument cluster, refer to page 151.

The following widgets can be selected:

- Widget for torque and power.
- Widget for acceleration power.

Vehicle status

General information

The status can be displayed and actions performed for several systems.

Opening the vehicle status

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"

Information at a glance

Symbols	Description
	"Flat Tire Monitor": status of the Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 350.
	"Tire Pressure Monitor": status of the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 343.
	"Engine oil level": electronic oil measurement, refer to page 362.
	"Check Control": displaying stored Check Control messages, refer to page 153.
	"Service schedule": displaying service requirements, refer to page 157.
	"TeleService Call": Service Request.

Head-up Display

Concept

This system projects important information into the driver's field of vision, for instance the speed.

The driver can get information without averting his or her eyes from the road.

General information

Follow the information on cleaning the Head-up Display, refer to page 383.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2114
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Overview

Switching on/off

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Head-up display"

Display

Overview

The following information is displayed on the Head-up Display:

- Vehicle speed.
- Navigation instructions.
- Check Control messages.
- Selection list in the instrument cluster.
- Driver assistance systems.
- Sport displays.

Some of this information is only displayed briefly as needed.

Selecting displays in the Head-up Display

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the brightness

The brightness is automatically adjusted to the ambient brightness.

The basic setting can be adjusted manually.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Brightness"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is set.
7. Press the Controller.

When the low beams are switched on, the brightness of the Head-up Display can be additionally influenced using the instrument lighting.

Adjusting the height

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Height"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired height is reached.
7. Press the Controller.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

The height of the Head-up Display can also be stored using the memory function, refer to page 122.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2115
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Setting the rotation

The Head-up Display view can be rotated.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Rotation"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is selected.
7. Press the Controller.

Additional settings

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "Speed Limit Assistant": access the settings for the speed assistant.
   - "Display infotainment lists in": set up if the selection lists are displayed in the instrument cluster or the Head-up Display.
   - "Sport displays": display tachometer and Shift Lights in the Head-up Display.
     - "Off": the Sport displays are not displayed in the Head-up Display.
     - "In SPORT mode": the Sport displays are only displayed in SPORT driving mode.
     - "Always": the Sport displays are continuously displayed in the Head-up Display.
   - "Reduced height": if not all of the information is in the driver's field of vision, the information can be displayed in the lower section of the Head-up Display.

Visibility of the display

The visibility of the displays in the Head-up Display is influenced by the following factors:

- Seat position.
- Objects on the cover of the Head-up Display.
- Sunglasses with certain polarization filters.
- Wet roads.
- Unfavorable light conditions.

If the image is distorted, have the basic settings checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Special windshield

The windshield is part of the system.

The shape of the windshield makes it possible to display a precise image.

A film in the windshield prevents double images from being generated.

For this reason, it is strongly suggested to have the special windshield replaced by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, if necessary.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2116

Lights

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Lights and lighting

Switches in the vehicle

The light switch element is located next to the steering wheel.

Symbol	Function
	Night Vision, refer to page 192.
0	Lights off. Daytime running lights.
	Parking lights.
	Automatic headlight control. Adaptive light functions.
	Low beams.
	Instrument lighting.
P	Right roadside parking light.
P	Left roadside parking light.

Automatic headlight control

Concept

The low beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness, for example in tunnels, in twilight or if there is precipitation.

General information

A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be switched on.

Activating

Position of switch:

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low beams are switched on.

System limits

The automatic headlight control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment of lighting conditions.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2117
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

For example, the sensors are unable to detect fog or hazy weather. In these situations, switch the lights on manually.

Parking lights, low beams and roadside parking lights

General information

Position of switch: 0 , ,

If the driver's door is opened when the drive-ready state is switched off, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off.

Parking lights

Switching on

Position of switch:

The indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up.

The vehicle is illuminated on all sides.

Do not use the parking lights for extended periods; otherwise, they might drain the battery and it would then be impossible to switch on drive-ready state.

Low beams

Switching on

Position of switch:

The low beams illuminate when drive-ready state is switched on.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up.

Roadside parking lights

When the vehicle is parked, a one-sided roadside parking light can be switched on.

Button	Function
P	Right roadside parking light on/off.
P	Left roadside parking light on/off.

Welcome lights

General information

Depending on the equipment, the exterior lighting of the vehicle can be set individually.

Activating/deactivating

Position of switch: ,

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "MGU-416756"

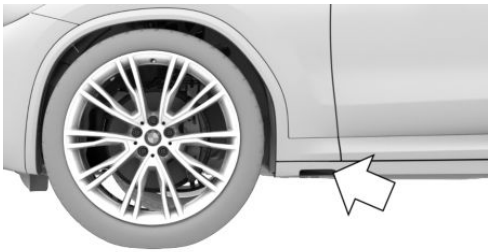
     When unlocking the vehicle, individual light functions are switched on for a limited time.
   - ▷ "Door handle lights"

     Door handles and the ground in front of the doors are illuminated for a limited time.
   - ▷ "Welcome Light Carpet"

     The area next to the vehicle is illuminated for a limited time.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2118

LED light carpet



The light source is located in the position indicated.

Keep the light source clean and unobstructed.

Headlight courtesy delay feature

General information

The low beams stay lit for a certain time if the high beams are switched on after standby state is switched on.

Setting the duration

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "Pathway lighting"
5. Select the desired setting.

Daytime running lights

General information

Position of switch: 0 , ≡D◐≡ ,

The daytime running lights light up when drive-ready state is switched on. After drive-ready state is switched off, the parking lights light up in position ≡D◐≡ .

Activating/deactivating

In some countries, daytime running lights are mandatory, so it may not be possible to deactivate the daytime running lights.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "Daytime driving lights"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Adaptive light functions

Concept

Adaptive light functions enable dynamic illumination of the roadway.

General information

The adaptive light functions may consist of one system or multiple systems, depending on the equipment version:

- ▷ Adaptive Light Control, refer to page 168.
- ▷ Cornering light, refer to page 169.

Activating

Position of switch:

The adaptive light functions are active when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Adaptive Light Control

General information

Depending on the steering angle and other parameters, the light from the headlight follows the course of the road.

To avoid blinding oncoming traffic, the Adaptive Light Control does not swivel to the opposite lane when the vehicle is at a standstill.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2119
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Cornering light

In tight curves, for instance on mountainous roads or when turning, an additional, cornering light is switched on that lights up the inside of the curve when the vehicle is moving below a certain speed.

The cornering light is automatically switched on depending on the steering angle or, where applicable, the use of turn signals.

When driving in reverse, the cornering lights may be automatically switched on regardless of the steering angle.

Adaptive headlight range control

The adaptive headlight range control feature balances out acceleration and braking processes as well as the vehicle load conditions in order to avoid dazzling oncoming traffic. Illumination of the road is optimized.

High-beam Assistant

Concept

The high-beam Assistant detects other traffic participants early on and automatically switches the high beams on or off depending on the traffic situation.

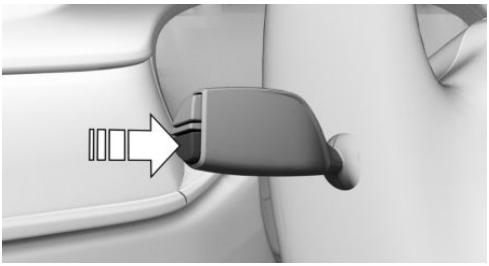
General information

The high-beam Assistant ensures that the high beams are switched on, whenever the traffic situation allows. In the low speed range, the high beams are not switched on by the system.

The system responds to light from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to ambient lighting, for instance in towns and cities.

The high beams can be switched on and off manually at any time.

Activating



Position of switch:

Press the button on the turn signal lever.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low beams are switched on.

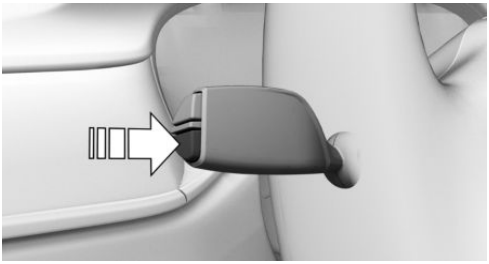
The headlights are automatically switched between low beams and high beams.

The blue indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up when the system switches on the high beams.

The high-beam Assistant is deactivated when manually switching the high beams on and off, refer to page 141.

To reactivate the high-beam Assistant, press the button on the turn signal lever.

Deactivating



Press the button on the turn signal lever.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2120
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Sensitivity of the high-beam Assistant

General information

The sensitivity of the high-beam Assistant can be adjusted.

Safety information

Warning

If adjustments have been made or the sensitivity has been modified, oncoming traffic may be momentarily blinded. There is a risk of accident. If adjustments have been made and the sensitivity has been modified, make sure that oncoming traffic is not momentarily blinded. Switch off the high beams manually if required.

Adjusting the sensitivity

Pull the turn signal lever for approximately 10 seconds. The system responds more sensitively.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Resetting the sensitivity

Pull the turn signal lever again for approx. 10 seconds. The sensitivity of the high-beam Assistant is reset to the factory settings.

System limits

The high-beam Assistant cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of when to use the high beams. In situation that require this, therefore switch off manually.

The system is not fully functional in the following situations, and driver intervention may be necessary:

- In very unfavorable weather conditions, such as fog or heavy precipitation.
- When detecting poorly-lit road users such as pedestrians, cyclists, horseback riders and wagons; when driving close to train or ship traffic; or at animal crossings.
- In tight curves, on hilltops or in depressions, in crossing traffic or half-obscured oncoming traffic on highways.
- In poorly-lit towns and cities or in the presence of highly reflective signs.
- When the windshield in front of the interior mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.

Laser high beams

Concept

The range of the high beams is increased and ensures an even better illumination of the road.

General information

When the high beams are switched-on, starting with a speed of approx. 37 mph/60 km/h, the laser high beams in the headlight are automatically switched on in addition to the LED high beams.

Depending on the country variant, further information can be obtained from the laser label on the headlight.

Safety information

The label is in the headlight and is visible from the outside.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2121
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Instrument lighting

Functional requirement

The parking lights or low beams must be switched on to adjust the brightness.

Adjusting

Adjust the brightness with the thumbwheel.

Interior lights

General information

Depending on the equipment version, interior lights, footwell lights, entry lights, ambient lighting, and speaker lighting are automatically controlled.

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

Interior lights

Reading lights

Switching the interior lights on/off

Press the button.

To switch off permanently: press the button and hold for approx. 3 seconds.

The interior lights in the rear of the vehicle can be switched on and off independently. The button is located in the rear roofliner.

Switching the reading lights on/off

Press the button.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the reading lights are located next to the interior lights in the front and rear.

Ambient light

General information

Depending on the equipment version, lighting can be adjusted for some lights in the car's interior.

Switching on/off

The ambient light is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked, and switched off when the vehicle is locked.

If the ambient light was deactivated via iDrive, it will not be switched on when the vehicle is unlocked.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Ambient lighting"

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2122
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Selecting the color scheme

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Color"
5. Select the desired setting.

Setting the brightness

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Brightness"
5. Select the desired setting.

Dimmed while driving

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Dimmed for night driving"

Some lights of the interior lighting are dimmed when the vehicle is driven in the dark.

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Panoramic glass sunroof, lighting

If the panoramic glass sunroof is opened or the sun protection is closed, the lighting in the area concerned is switched off.

BMW Touch Command

The ambient light can also be operated using BMW Touch Command.

Bowers & Wilkins Diamond Surround Sound System

General information

Some speakers in the vehicle are illuminated. Brightness can be individually set.

If the speakers are muted, speaker lighting will be switched off.

Switching on/off

The speaker lighting is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked, and switched off when the vehicle is locked.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Bowers & Wilkins"

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the brightness

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Bowers & Wilkins"
5. "Brightness"
6. Select the desired setting.

BMW Touch Command

The operation of the Bowers & Wilkins Diamond Surround Sound System is also possible using BMW Touch Command.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2123
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Ambient highlight

General information

The ambient highlight illuminates the door pillars in the rear.

When opening a rear door, the brightness of the ambient highlight of the respective door pillar is reduced. After the rear door is closed, the ambient highlight is illuminated again in the previously adjusted brightness.

Switching on/off automatically

The ambient highlight is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked, and switched off when the vehicle is locked.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Ambient accent lighting"

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Switching on/off manually

The ambient highlight is fitted with a touch sensor. The ambient highlight is switched on or off with a brief touch of the chrome bar.

Adjusting the brightness via iDrive

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Ambient accent lighting"
5. "Brightness"

   The last brightness set is displayed.
6. Select the desired setting.

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Adjusting the brightness via touch sensor

The ambient highlight is fitted with a touch sensor. The brightness is changed with a long touch of the chrome bar.

BMW Touch Command

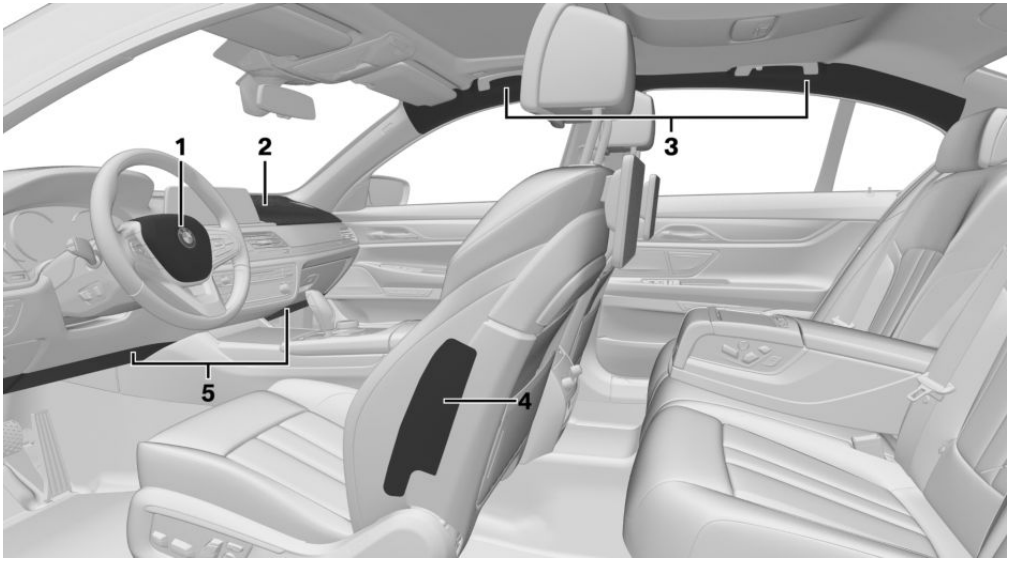
The ambient highlight can also be operated using BMW Touch Command.

Safety

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Airbags



1 Front airbag, driver
2 Front airbag, front passenger
3 Head airbag
4 Side airbag
5 Knee airbag

Front airbags

Front airbags help protect the driver and the front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which safety belts alone would not provide adequate protection.

Side airbag

In the event of a side impact, the side airbag protects the side of the body in the chest and lap area.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2125
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Head airbag

In the event of a side impact, the head airbag protects the head.

Ejection Mitigation

The head airbag system is designed as an ejection mitigation countermeasure to reduce the likelihood of ejections of vehicle occupants through side windows during rollovers or side impact events.

Knee airbag

The knee airbag protects the legs in the event of a frontal impact.

Protective effect

General information

Airbags are not triggered in every impact situation, e.g., in less severe accidents.

Information on optimum effect of the airbags

⚠ Warning

If the seat position is incorrect or the deployment area of the airbags is impaired, the airbag system cannot provide protection as intended and may cause additional injuries due to triggering. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Follow the information on achieving the optimum protective effect of the airbag system.

- Keep a distance from the airbags.
- Always grasp the steering wheel on the steering wheel rim. Hold your hands at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions, to keep the risk of injury to your hands or arms as low as possible when the airbag is triggered.
- Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e., keeps his or her feet and legs in the floor area and does not support them on the dashboard.
- Make sure that occupants keep their heads away from the side airbag.
- There should be no additional persons, animals or objects between an airbag and a person.
- Dashboard and windshield on the front passenger side must stay clear - do not attach adhesive labels or coverings and do not attach brackets or cables, for instance for GPS devices or mobile phones.
- Do not apply adhesive materials to the airbag cover panels, do not cover them or modify them in any way.
- Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area.
- Do not attach slip covers, seat cushions or other objects to the front passenger seat that are not specifically suited for seats with integrated side airbags.
- Do not hang pieces of clothing, such as jackets, over the backrests.
- Never modify either the individual components or the wiring in the airbag system. This also applies to steering wheel covers, the dashboard, and the seats.
- Do not remove the airbag system.

Even when you follow all instructions very closely, injury from contact with the airbags cannot be fully ruled out in certain situations.

The ignition and inflation noise may lead to short-term and, in most cases, temporary hearing impairment in sensitive occupants.

Vehicle modifications for a person with disabilities may affect the air bag system; contact BMW Customer Relations for further information.

Warnings and information on the airbags are also found on the sun visors.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2126

Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Functional readiness of the airbag system

Safety information

Warning

Individual components can be hot after triggering of the airbag system. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch individual components.

Warning

Improperly executed work can lead to failure, malfunction or unintentional triggering of the airbag system. In the case of a malfunction, the airbag system might not trigger as intended despite the accident severity. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Have the airbag system checked, repaired, dismantled and scrapped by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Display in the instrument cluster

When drive-ready state is switched on, the warning light in the instrument cluster lights up briefly and thereby indicates the function readiness of the entire airbag system and the belt tensioners.

Malfunction

▷ Warning light does not come on when drive-ready state is switched on.

▷ The warning light lights up continuously.

Have the system checked.

Strength of the driver's and front-seat passenger airbag

The explosive power that activates driver's/front-seat passenger airbags very much depends on the positions of the driver's/front passenger seat.

To maintain the accuracy of this function over the long term, calibrate the front seats as soon as a respective message appears on the Control Display.

Calibrating the front seats

Warning

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

A corresponding message appears on the Control Display.

1. Press the switch and move the respective seat all the way forward, until it stops.
2. Press the switch forward again. The seat still moves forward slightly.
3. Readjust the seat to the desired position.

The calibration procedure is completed when the message on the Control Display disappears.

If the message continues to be displayed, repeat the calibration.

If the message does not disappear after a repeat calibration, have the system checked as soon as possible.

Automatic deactivation of the front-seat passenger airbags

Concept

The system reads if the front passenger seat is occupied by measuring the human body's resistance.

Front, knee, and side airbag on the front passenger's side are activated or deactivated.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2127
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

General information

Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, refer to the safety information and instructions for children on the front passenger seat, see Children.

Safety information

Warning

To ensure the front-seat passenger airbag function, the system must be able to detect whether a person is sitting in the front passenger seat. The entire seat cushion area must be used for this purpose. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the front passenger keeps his or her feet in the floor area.

Malfunction of the automatic deactivation system

When transporting older children and adults, the front-seat passenger airbags may be deactivated in certain sitting positions. In this case, the indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up.

In this case, change the sitting position so that the front-seat passenger airbags are activated and the indicator light goes out.

If it is not possible to activate the airbags, have the person sit in the rear.

To enable correct recognition of the occupied seat cushion.

- Do not attach covers, cushions, ball mats or other items to the front passenger seat unless they are specifically determined to be safe for use on the front passenger seat.
- Do not place any electronic devices on the front passenger seat if a child restraint system is to be installed on it.
- Do not place objects under the seat that could press against the seat from below.
- No moisture in or on the seat.

Indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbags

The indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbag in the roofliner indicates the operating state of the front-seat passenger airbag.

The light indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.

After drive-ready state is switched on, the light briefly lights up and then indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.

- The indicator light lights up when a child is properly seated in a child restraint system or when the seat is empty. The airbags on the front passenger side are not activated.
- The indicator light does not light up when, for instance a correctly seated person of sufficient size is detected on the seat. The airbags on the front passenger side are activated.

Detected child restraint systems

The system generally detects children seated in a child restraint system, particularly in child restraint systems required by NHTSA at the point in time when the vehicle was manufactured. After installing a child restraint system, make sure that the indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up. This indicates that the child restraint system has been detected and the front-seat passenger airbags are not activated.

Intelligent Safety

Concept

Intelligent Safety enables central operation of the driver assistance systems.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2128
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

General information

Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, Intelligent Safety consists of one or more systems that can help prevent an imminent collision.

- Front collision mitigation, refer to page 179.
- Evasion assistance, refer to page 183.
- Intersection collision warning, refer to page 185.
- Person warning with City braking function, refer to page 189.
- Night Vision with pedestrian and animal detection, refer to page 192.
- Lane departure warning, refer to page 196.
- Blind spot collision warning, refer to page 199.
- Side collision mitigation, refer to page 203.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Switching on/off

Some Intelligent Safety systems are automatically active after every departure. Some Intelligent Safety systems activate according to the last setting.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Press the button:

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2129
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly. The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions, for instance setting for warning time.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Press and hold this button:

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Front collision mitigation

Concept

The system may prevent some accidents. In the event of an accident, the system may reduce impact speed.

The system sounds a warning before an imminent collision and activates brakes independently, if needed.

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Camera in the area of the interior mirror.
- Radar sensor in the front bumper.

The system issues a two-phase warning of a possible risk of collision with vehicles at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h. The timing of warnings may vary with the current driving situation.

With the vehicle approaching another vehicle intentionally, the approach control warning and braking are delayed in order to avoid false system reactions.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the Driver Attention Camera in the instrument cluster captures the driver's field of vision. Additionally, the system checks for visual impairments. Field of vision and visibility also affect the timing of the warnings.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

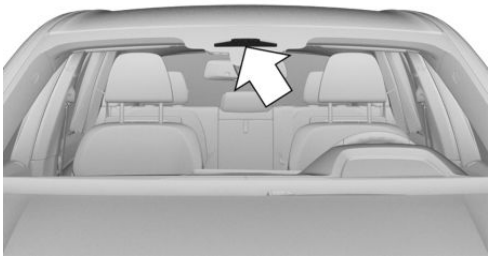
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2130
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

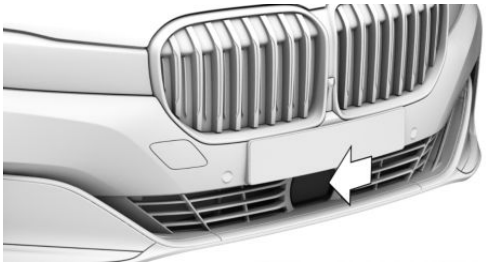
Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

With radar sensor



The radar sensor is located in the lower area of the front bumper.

Always keep radar sensor clean and unobstructed.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is automatically active after every driving off.

Switching on/off manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2131
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and warnings"
5. "Front collision mitigation"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Early"
   - ▷ "Medium"
   - ▷ "Late": only acute warnings are displayed.

The selected time is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Warning with braking function

Display

A warning symbol appears in the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display, where available, if a collision with a detected vehicle is imminent.

Symbol	Measure
	Symbol lights up red: prewarning. Brake and increase distance.
	Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Prewarning

This warning is provided, for instance when there is impending danger of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small.

If a prewarning is provided, respond by braking as warranted.

Acute warning with braking function

An acute warning is displayed in case of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another object at a high differential speed.

Intervene in the case of an acute warning. Depending on the driving situation, the acute warning may be accompanied by a brief activation of the braking system.

With the warning time setting "Late" the brief activation of the braking system is omitted.

If an acute warning is provided, the system may also provide assistance, such as through braking, when there is risk of collision.

Acute warnings may be provided even when there has been no prior warning.

Braking intervention

The warning prompts the driver to intervene. If a warning is active, the maximum braking force is used when the brake is applied. The brake pedal must be applied sufficiently quickly and forcefully.

The system may also assist in braking if there is a risk of collision.

When the vehicle is traveling at a low speed, the vehicle may come to a complete stop.

City brake function: the braking intervention occurs to up to approx. 50 mph/80 km/h.

With radar sensor: the braking intervention occurs to up to approx. 155 mph/250 km/h.

At speeds above approx. 130 mph/210 km/h, the braking intervention occurs as a brief braking pressure. No automatic delay occurs.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2132

Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

The braking intervention occurs only if vehicle stability has not been restricted, for instance by deactivating the DSC Dynamic Stability Control.

The driver may interrupt the braking intervention function by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

The system's ability to detect objects may be limited in some circumstances. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the limitations of the system and actively intervene as warranted.

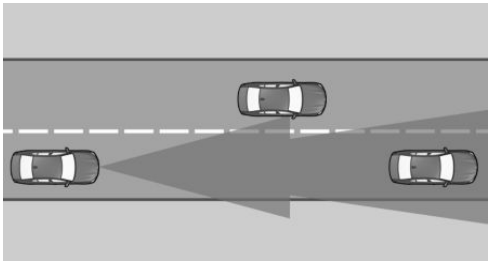
System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Detection range



The system's detection potential is limited.

Only objects that are detected by the system are taken into account.

Thus, a system reaction might not come or might come late.

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- Slow moving vehicles when you approach them at high speed.
- Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or sharply decelerating vehicles.
- Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.
- Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.

Upper speed limit

If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is deactivated temporarily. When the vehicle slows down to below this speed, the system is reactivated.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- In tight curves.
- If the driving stability control systems are limited or deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- If the field of view of the camera or the windshield is dirty or covered in the area of the interior mirror.
- If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- Depending on the equipment: if the radar sensors are dirty or covered.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.

Attaching any objects such as stickers or film in the beam area of the radar sensors will also impact the function of the radar sensors and may even cause them to fail.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2133
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Warning sensitivity

The more sensitive the warning settings are, for example the warning time, the more warnings are displayed. Therefore, there may also be an excess of premature or unjustified warnings and reactions.

Evasion assistance

Concept

The system supports the driver in making evasive maneuvers in certain situations, such as when obstacles or persons suddenly appear.

General information

The system issues a warning and intervenes to support the driver if a lateral evasive maneuver is possible. Sensors monitor and detect the clearance around the vehicle. If the system identifies space alongside the vehicle, it supports an evasive maneuver begun by the driver by safely providing targeted steering support.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

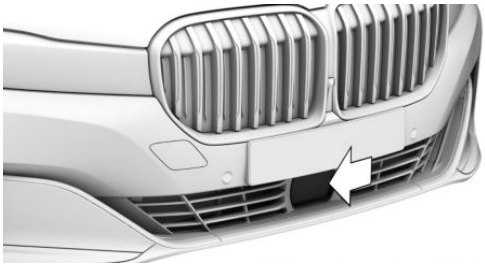
Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Radar sensors

The radar sensors are located in the bumpers.



Front center bumper.

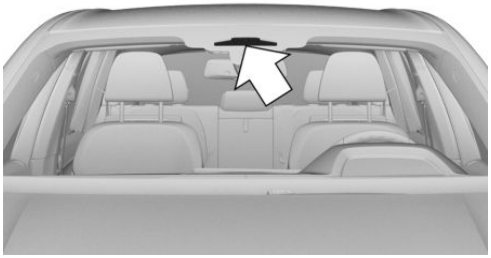
Front side bumper.

Rear bumper.

Always keep the bumper in the area of the radar sensors clean and unobstructed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2134
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Functional requirements

- Pedestrian warning with braking function, refer to page 189, is switched on.
- Front collision mitigation, refer to page 179, is switched on.
- Sensors detect sufficient clearance around the vehicle.

Switching on/off

The system is automatically active after every driving off.

Warning with evasion support

Display in the instrument cluster

A warning symbol appears in the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display if a collision with a detected vehicle is imminent.

Symbol	Measure
	Symbol lights up red: prewarning. Brake and increase distance.
	Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning for obstacles. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.
	Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning for pedestrians. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Acute warning with evasion support

An acute warning is displayed when there is an imminent danger of collision due to the vehicle approaching another object at a high speed.

Intervene in the case of an acute warning. The system is designed to provide assistance by taking evasive action when there is a risk of collision.

Acute warnings may be provided even when there has been no prior warning.

System limits

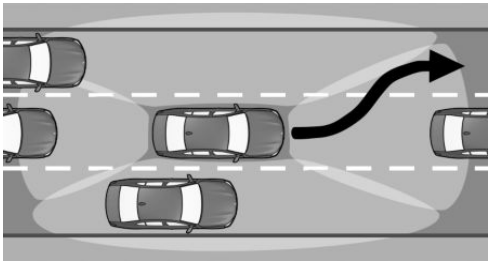
Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2135
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Detection range



The system's detection potential is limited.

Only objects that are detected by the system are taken into account.

Thus, a system reaction might not come or might come late.

The following situations may not be detected, for example:

- Slow moving vehicles when you approach them at high speed.
- Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or sharply decelerating vehicles.
- Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.
- Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- In tight curves.
- If the driving stability control systems are limited or deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- If the field of view of the camera or the windshield is dirty or covered in the area of the interior mirror.
- If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- Depending on the equipment: if the radar sensors are dirty or covered.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.

Intersection collision warning

Concept

The system may prevent some accidents with cross traffic at intersections and junctions. In the event of an accident, the system may reduce impact speed.

The system sounds a warning in the city speed range before an imminent collision and activates brakes independently, if needed.

General information

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Camera in the area of the interior mirror.
- Radar sensors on the side in the front bumper.
- Radar sensor in the center in the front bumper

At intersections and junctions, a warning is issued when a danger of collision with crossing traffic is detected.

The system issues a two-phase warning of a possible risk of collision with vehicles at speeds above approx. 6 mph/10 km/h. The timing of warnings may vary with the current driving situation.

The Driver Attention Camera in the instrument cluster captures the driver's field of vision. Additionally, the system checks for visual impairments. Field of vision and visibility also affect the timing of the warnings.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2136

Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Detection range

Vehicles that cross your direction of travel can be detected by the system as soon as these vehicles enter into the detection range of the system.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

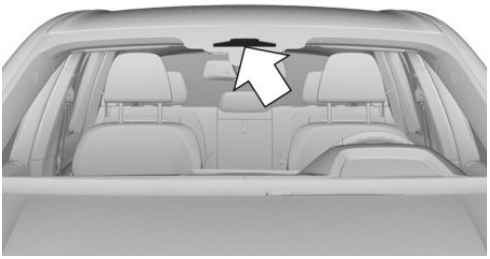
Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

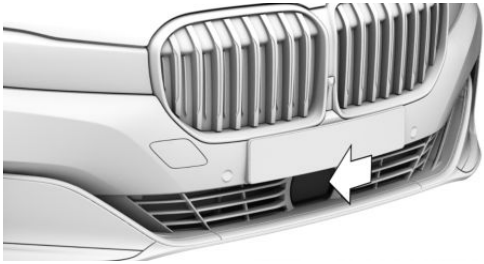
Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Radar sensors

The radar sensors are located in the front bumper.

Front side bumper.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2137
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19



Front center bumper.

Keep the radar sensors clean and unobstructed.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is automatically active after every driving off.

Switching on/off manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and warnings"
5. "Front collision mitigation"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Early"
   - ▷ "Medium"
   - ▷ "Late": only acute warnings are displayed.

The selected time is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Warning with braking function

Display

A warning symbol appears in the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display, where available, if a collision with a detected vehicle is imminent.

Symbol	Measure
	Danger of collision with vehicle crossing from the right.
	Danger of collision with vehicle crossing from the left.
	Danger of collision with vehicle for which the direction of travel cannot be determined.
	Prewarning: Symbol lights up red: prewarning for vehicles that cross your direction of travel. Intervene yourself, for instance by braking.
	Acute warning: Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning when vehicles cross your direction of travel. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Prewarning

For example, a prewarning is displayed when a danger of collision with a crossing vehicle is detected.

If a prewarning is provided, respond by braking as warranted.

Acute warning with braking function

An acute warning is displayed in the event of an immediate danger of collision with a crossing vehicle.

Intervene in the case of an acute warning. If an acute warning is provided, the system may provide assistance, such as through braking, when there is risk of collision.

Acute warnings may be provided even when there has been no prior warning.

Braking intervention

The warning prompts the driver to intervene.

The system may also assist in braking if there is a risk of collision.

The vehicle can be decelerated to a standstill.

The braking intervention occurs only if vehicle stability has not been restricted, for instance by deactivating the DSC Dynamic Stability Control.

The driver may interrupt the braking intervention function by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

The system's ability to detect objects may be limited in some circumstances. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the limitations of the system and actively intervene as warranted.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

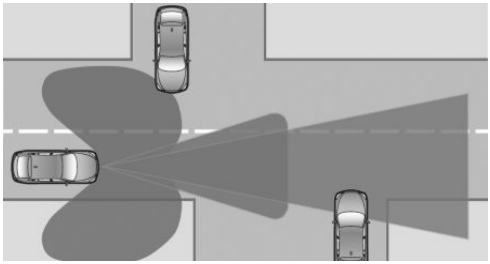
The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Upper speed limit

The system responds to crossing vehicles when your own speed is below approx.
50 mph/80 km/h.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2139
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Detection range



The system's detection potential is limited.

Thus, a system reaction might not come or might come late.

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- Crossing vehicles when they are hidden by buildings, for instance.
- Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or sharply decelerating vehicles.
- Crossing bicycles.
- Vehicles with an unusual side appearance.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- In tight curves.
- If the driving stability control systems are limited or deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- If the field of view of the camera or the windshield is dirty or covered in the area of the interior mirror.
- If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- If the radar sensors are dirty or covered.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.

Attaching any objects such as stickers or film in the beam area of the radar sensors will also impact the function of the radar sensors and may even cause them to fail.

Warning sensitivity

The more sensitive the warning settings are, for example the warning time, the more warnings are displayed. Therefore, there may also be an excess of premature or unjustified warnings and reactions.

Person warning with City braking function

Concept

The system may prevent some accidents involving pedestrians and cyclists. In the event of an accident, the system may reduce impact speed.

The system sounds a warning in the city speed range before an imminent collision and activates brakes independently, if needed.

General information

The system issues a warning of a possible risk of collision with pedestrians and cyclists at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h.

The system reacts to pedestrians and cyclists who are within the detection range of the system.

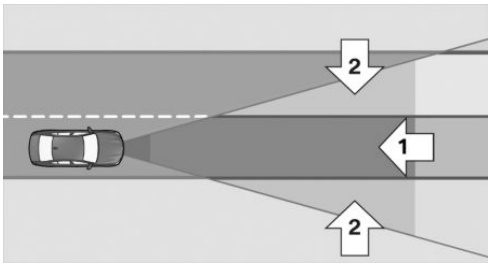
Depending on the equipment version, the system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Camera in the area of the interior mirror.
- Radar sensor in the front bumper.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2140

Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Detection range



The detection area in front of the vehicle is divided into two areas:

- Central area, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.
- Expanded area, arrow 2, to the right and left of the central area.

A collision is imminent if pedestrians are located within the central area. A warning is issued about pedestrians who are located within the extended area only if they are moving in the direction of the central area.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

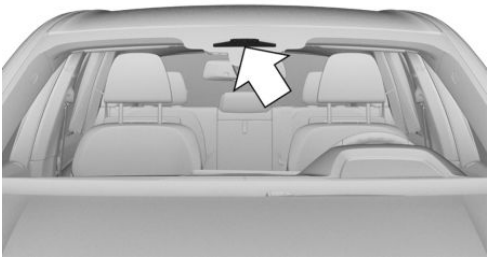
Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Camera

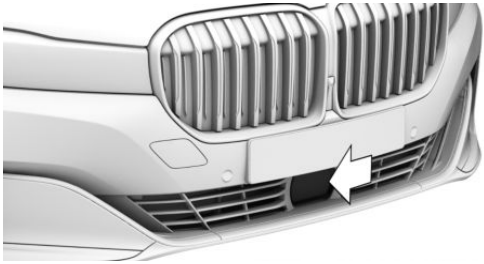


The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2141
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

With radar sensor



The radar sensor is located in the lower area of the front bumper.

Always keep radar sensor clean and unobstructed.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is automatically active after every driving off.

Switching on/off manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Warning with braking function

Display

If a collision with a pedestrian or a cyclist is imminent, a warning symbol appears on the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display.

The red symbol is displayed and a signal sounds.

Intervene immediately by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

Braking intervention

The warning prompts the driver to intervene. If a warning is active, the maximum braking force is used when the brake is applied. This requires the brake pedal to be depressed sufficiently quickly and forcefully.

If there is a risk of collision, the system may also assist with braking.

When the vehicle is traveling at a low speed, the vehicle may come to a complete stop.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2142
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

The braking intervention occurs only if vehicle stability has not been restricted, for instance by deactivating the DSC Dynamic Stability Control.

The driver may interrupt the braking intervention function by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

The system's ability to detect objects may be limited in some circumstances. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the limitations of the system and actively intervene as warranted.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Upper speed limit

The system responds to pedestrians and cyclists when the speed of the vehicle is below approx. 50 mph/80 km/h.

Detection range

The system's detection potential is limited.

Thus, a warning might not be issued or be issued late.

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- Partially covered pedestrians.
- Pedestrians that are not detected as such because of the viewing angle or contour.
- Pedestrians outside of the detection range.
- Pedestrians having a body size less than 32 in/80 cm.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional or may not be available in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- In tight curves.
- If the driving stability control systems are deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- If the field of view of the camera or the windshield is dirty or covered in the area of the interior mirror.
- If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- Depending on the equipment: if the radar sensors are dirty or covered.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.
- When it is dark outside.

Attaching any objects such as stickers or film in the beam area of the radar sensors will also impact the function of the radar sensors and may even cause them to fail.

Night Vision with pedestrian and animal detection

Concept

Night Vision with pedestrian and animal detection is a night vision system.

An infrared camera scans the area in front of the vehicle and issues a warning if it detects pedes-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2143
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

trians and animals on the street. The system detects warm objects that are similar in shape to human beings or animals. If necessary, the thermal image can be displayed on the Control Display.

General information

Thermal image

The image shows the heat radiated by objects in the field of view of the camera.

Warm objects have a light appearance and cold objects a dark appearance.

The ability to detect an object depends on the temperature difference between the object and the background and on the level of heat radiation emitted by the object. Objects that are similar in temperature to the environment or that radiate very little heat are difficult to detect.

For safety reasons, when driving at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h and in low ambient light, the image is only displayed when the low beams are switched on.

A still image is displayed at regular intervals for a fraction of a second.

Pedestrian and animal detection

Object detection and warning only functions in darkness.

Objects whose form is similar to people with sufficient heat radiation are detected.

In addition, the system also detects animals above a certain minimum size, for instance deer.

Display on the Control Display with thermal image activated:

- People detected by the system: in light yellow.
- Animals detected by the system: in dark yellow.

Range of object detection, with good ambient conditions:

- Pedestrian detection: up to approx. 330 ft/100 m.
- Detection of large animals: up to approx. 490 ft/150 m.
- Detection of medium animals: up to approx. 230 ft/70 m.

Environmental influences can limit the availability of object detection.

If the vehicle systems detect that the vehicle is located in a residential area, the animal detection is temporarily switched off.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

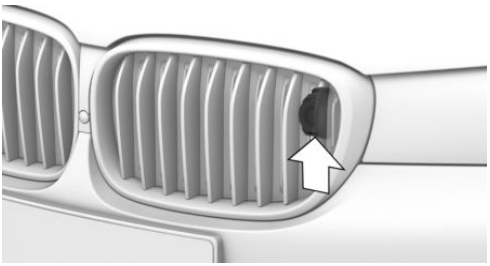
Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Thermal image

Camera



The camera is automatically heated when the external temperatures are low.

When the vehicle lighting is switched on, the camera objective is cleaned at regular intervals when the windshield washer system, refer to page 143, is activated.

Switching on

Switching on automatically

When it is dark outside, the system is automatically active after every driving off.

Switching on the thermal image

The thermal image from the Night Vision camera can be displayed on the Control Display in addition to the warning function. This function has no effect on object detection.

Press the button.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2145
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

The image from the camera is displayed on the Control Display.

Adjusting the thermal image

Brightness and contrast can be adjusted, when the thermal image is switched on.

Via iDrive:

1. Select brightness or contrast:
   - ▷ ☼ "Brightness".
   - ▷ ◐ "Contrast".
2. Set the desired value.

Warning function

Display

Symbol	Meaning
	Person warning.
	Animal warning.
Symbol lights up red.	Prewarning.
Symbol flashes red and a signal sounds.	Acute warning.

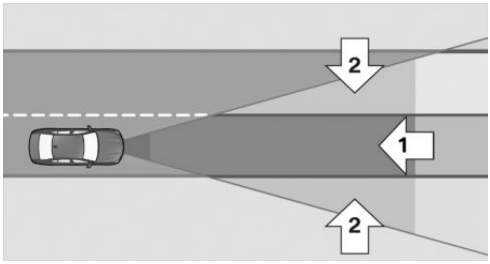
The displayed symbol may vary and shows the side of the road on which the person or animal was detected.

Warning of people or animals in danger

If a collision with a person or an animal detected in this way is imminent, a warning symbol appears on the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display.

Although both the shape and the heat radiation are analyzed, false warnings cannot be ruled out.

Warning area in front of the vehicle



The warning area for the person warning consists of two parts:

- ▷ Central area, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.
- ▷ Expanded area, arrows 2, to the right and left of the central area.

With animal warnings, no distinction is made between the central or expanded area.

The entire area moves along with the vehicle in the direction of the steering angle and changes with the vehicle speed. As the vehicle speed increases, the area becomes, for instance longer and wider.

Prewarning

Prewarning for persons is displayed when a person is detected in the central area immediately in front of the vehicle as well as on the left or right side in the extended area.

Prewarning for animals is displayed when an animal is detected in the front of the vehicle.

If a prewarning is issued, intervene by braking or making an evasive maneuver.

Acute warning

Acute warning is displayed if a person or an animal is detected in direct proximity in front of the vehicle.

If an acute warning is issued, brake or make an evasive maneuver immediately.

Display in the Head-up Display

The warning is displayed simultaneously in the Head-up Display and on the instrument cluster.

System limits

Basic limits

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- On steep hills, in steep depressions or in tight curves.
- If the camera is soiled or damaged.
- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- At very high external temperatures.

Limits of pedestrian and animal detection

In some situations, it may occur that pedestrians are detected as animals or animals as pedestrians.

Small animals are not detected by the object detection function, even if they are clearly visible in the image.

Limited detection, for instance in the following circumstances:

- People or animals who are fully or partially covered, especially when their heads are covered.
- People who are not in an upright position, for instance lying down.
- Cyclists on unconventional bicycles (e.g., recumbent bicycles).
- After physical damage to the system, for instance after an accident.

No display on the rear screen

The image from Night Vision cannot be displayed on the rear screen.

Lane departure warning

Concept

The lane departure warning alerts when the vehicle is about to run off the road or exit the lane.

General information

This camera-based system warns starting at a minimum speed.

The minimum speed is country-specific and is displayed in the menu for the intelligent Safety systems.

Warnings are issued by means of a steering wheel vibration. The severity of the steering wheel vibration can be adjusted.

The system does not provide a warning if the turn signal is set before leaving the lane.

If in the speed range up to 130 mph/210 km/h a lane marking is crossed, the system intervenes with a brief active steering intervention in addition to vibrating. The system thus helps keep the vehicle in the lane.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing road and traffic safety. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate. Do not jerk the steering wheel in response to a warning.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2147
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Functional requirements

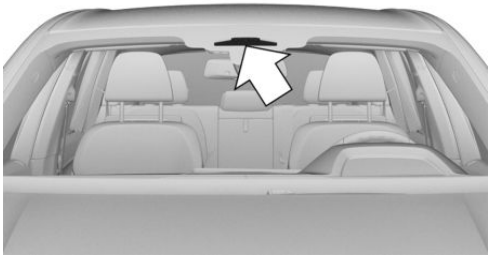
The camera must detect the lane markings for the lane departure warning to be active.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The lane departure warning activates automatically after departure if the function was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Switching on/off manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and warnings"
5. "Lane Departure Warning"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Early"
   - ▷ "Medium"
   - ▷ "Reduced": some warnings are suppressed depending on the situation, for instance during passing without a turn signal or when purposely driving over lane markings in curves.
   - ▷ "Off": no warnings are issued.

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Feedback on the steering wheel"
5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all Intelligent Safety systems and stored for the driver profile currently used.

Switching steering intervention on/off

The steering intervention can be switched on and off separately for blind spot collision warning and lane departure warning.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and warnings"
5. "Lane Departure Warning"
6. "Steering intervention"

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Display in the instrument cluster

The symbol illuminates green: at lane marking was detected on at least one side of the vehicle and warnings can be issued.

Warning function

If you leave the lane

If you leave the lane and if a lane marking has been detected, the steering wheel vibrates in accordance with the steering wheel vibration setting.

If the turn signal is switched on before a lane change, a warning is not issued.

Steering intervention

If in the speed range up to 130 mph/210 km/h a lane marking is crossed, the system intervenes with a brief active steering intervention in addition to vibrating. The steering intervention helps keep the vehicle in the lane. The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time. During an active steering intervention, the display in the instrument cluster will blink.

Warning signal

In the event of multiple active steering interventions by the system within 3 minutes without the driver's intervention at the steering wheel, an acoustic warning will sound. A short warning sig-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2149
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

nal will sound at the second steering intervention. Beginning with the third steering intervention, an continuous warning will sound.

In addition, a Check Control message is displayed.

The warning signal and Check-Control message are an encouragement to pay closer attention to the lane.

End of warning

The warning is canceled in the following situations:

- Automatically after approx. 3 seconds.
- When returning to your own lane.
- When braking hard.
- When using the turn signal.
- If DSC Dynamic Stability Control intervenes.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane markings such as in construction areas.
- When lane markings are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
- When lane markings are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.
- If the field of view of the camera or the windshield is dirty or covered in the area of the interior mirror.
- If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

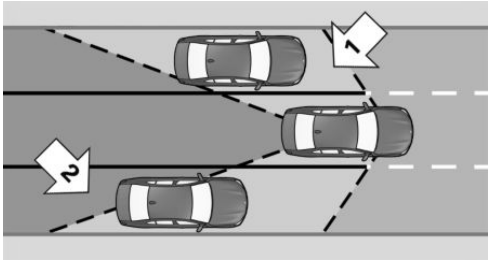
A Check Control message may be displayed when the system is not fully functional.

Blind spot collision warning

Concept

Blind spot collision warning detects vehicles in the blind spot or vehicles approaching from behind in the adjacent lane. A warning is issued in various gradations in these situations.

General information



Two radar sensors in the rear bumper monitor the area behind and next to the vehicle when traveling faster than a minimum speed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2150
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

The minimum speed is shown in the menu for the intelligent Safety systems.

The system indicates whether there are vehicles in the blind spot, arrow 1, or approaching from behind in the adjacent lane, arrow 2.

The light in the exterior mirror lights up dimmed.

Before you change lanes after setting the turn signal, the system issues a warning in the situations described above.

The light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

Vehicles with side collision mitigation: at speeds of up to 130 mph/210 km/h, the system can intervene with a brief active steering intervention and help guide the vehicle back into the lane. The steering intervention occurs when a minimum speed is reached. This minimum speed is displayed on the Control Display in the menu for the steering intervention, refer to page 201.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Radar sensors

The radar sensors are located in the rear bumper.

Always keep the bumper in the area of the radar sensors clean and unobstructed.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

Blind spot collision warning is automatically activated after departure if the function was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Switching on/off manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2151
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and warnings"
5. "Blind spot collision warning"
6. Select the desired setting.
   - ▷ "Early"
   - ▷ "Medium"
   - ▷ "Late"
   - ▷ "Off": with this setting, no warning is output.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Feedback on the steering wheel"
5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all Intelligent Safety systems and stored for the driver profile currently used.

Vehicles with side collision mitigation: switching steering intervention on/off

The steering intervention can be switched on and off separately for blind spot collision warning and lane departure warning.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and warnings"
5. "Blind spot collision warning"
6. "Steering intervention"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Warning function

Light in the exterior mirror

Prewarning

The dimmed light in the exterior mirror indicates when there are vehicles in the blind spot or approaching from behind.

Acute warning

If the turn signal is switched on while a vehicle is in the critical zone, the steering wheel vibrates briefly and the light in the exterior mirror flashes brightly.

The warning stops when the other vehicle has left the critical area or after deactivation of the turn signal.

Vehicles with side collision mitigation

If there is no response to the vibration of the steering wheel at speeds of up to 130 mph/210 km/h and the lane marking is crossed, the system intervenes with a brief active steering intervention. The steering intervention helps return the vehicle into the lane. The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

Flashing of the light

A flashing of the light during vehicle unlocking serves as system self-test.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Upper speed limit

If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is deactivated temporarily.

If the vehicle speed falls below approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system once again responds according to the setting.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
- If the bumper is dirty, iced up, or covered, for instance by stickers.
- If cargo protrudes.

Attaching any objects such as stickers or film in the beam area of the radar sensors will also impact the function of the radar sensors and may even cause them to fail.

For vehicles with side collision mitigation, the steering intervention can be limited, for instance in the following situation:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2153
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

- In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane markings such as in construction areas.
- When lane markings are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- When lane markings are not white.
- When lane markings are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.
- If the field of view of the camera or the windshield is dirty or covered in the area of the interior mirror.
- If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

A Check Control message is displayed when the system is not fully functional.

Displaying warnings

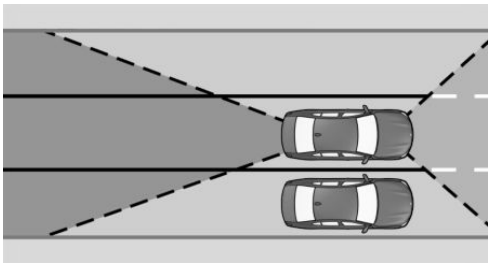
Depending on the selected warning settings, for instance warning time, more warnings can be displayed. However, there may also be an excess of premature warnings of critical situations.

Side collision mitigation

Concept

The system helps to avoid imminent side collisions.

General information



Four radar sensors in the bumpers monitor the space next to the vehicle from a minimum speed of up to approx. 130 mph/210 km/h.

The minimum speed is country-specific and is displayed in the menu for the intelligent Safety systems.

The front camera determines the lane marking positions.

If, for instance another vehicle is detected next to the vehicle and if there is a risk of collision with this vehicle, the system helps avoid the collision. For this purpose, the system issues a warning with a flashing LED in the exterior mirror and a vibrating steering wheel. If necessary, the system will carry out an active steering intervention.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal

use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Functional requirements

The camera must detect the lane markings for the side collision mitigation with steering intervention to be active.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Radar sensors

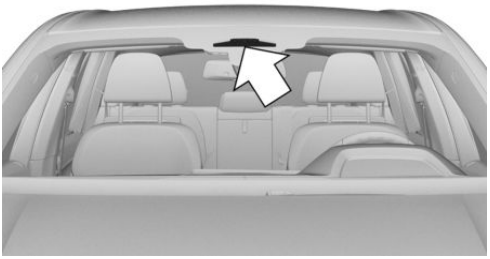
The radar sensors are located in the bumpers.

Front bumper.

Rear bumper.

Always keep the bumper in the area of the radar sensors clean and unobstructed.

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The side collision mitigation activates automatically after departure if the function was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Switching on/off manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety sys-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2155
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

tems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Feedback on the steering wheel"
5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all Intelligent Safety systems and stored for the driver profile currently used.

Warning function

Light in the exterior mirror

Acute warning

If there is a risk of collision, the light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates. A Check Control message is displayed at the same time.

If necessary, an active steering intervention then takes place to prevent collisions and maintain the vehicle within its own lane.

The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
- If the bumper is dirty, iced up, or covered, for instance by stickers.
- If cargo protrudes.
- In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane markings such as in construction areas.
- When lane markings are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- When lane markings are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.
- If the field of view of the camera or the windshield is dirty or covered in the area of the interior mirror.
- If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

Attaching any objects such as stickers or film in the beam area of the radar sensors will also impact the function of the radar sensors and may even cause them to fail.

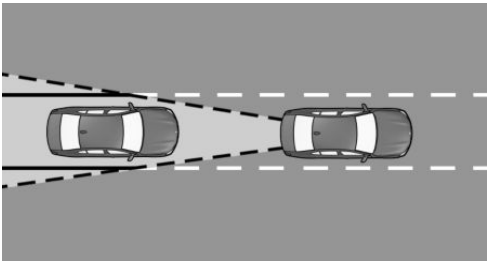
A Check Control message is displayed when the system is not fully functional.

Rear collision preparation

Concept

The system reacts to vehicles approaching from behind.

General information



Two radar sensors in the rear bumper monitor the area behind the vehicle.

If a vehicle approaches from the rear at a certain speed, the system responds as follows:

- Active Protection, refer to page 208: if a collision seems to be unavoidable, PreCrash functions are triggered.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2157
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Radar sensors

The radar sensors are located in the rear bumper.

Always keep the bumper in the area of the radar sensors clean and unobstructed.

Switching on/off

The system is automatically active after every driving off.

The system is deactivated in the following situations:

- When driving in reverse.

System limits

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- When the approaching vehicle approaches slowly.
- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
- If the bumper is dirty, iced up, or covered, for instance by stickers.
- If cargo protrudes.

Emergency Stop Assistant

Concept

If the driver is no longer fit to drive, the system helps to safely bring the vehicle to a standstill.

General information

The emergency stop function is not triggered automatically. The emergency stop function can only be triggered manually by the occupants.

When the system is activated, the vehicle is brought to a standstill in its own lane by use of lane guidance.

Depending on the equipment version and national market version, the system includes a lane change function.

With lane change function: On motorways or motorway-like roads, the system steers the vehicle to the side of the road or shoulder where possible. On other roads or under high traffic conditions, the vehicle is brought to a standstill on the actual road.

Overview

Parking brake

Functional requirements

- The function can be activated at speeds of approx. 6 mph/10 km/h up to approx. 155 mph/250 km/h.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2158

Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

- Lane changes are executed at speeds of approx. 43 mph/70 km/h up to approx. 62 mph/100 km/h.

Activating the emergency stop function

Pull the switch for the parking brake briefly to activate the emergency stop function.

- With lane change function: Releasing the switch may trigger an automatic lane change.
- The system will take control of the vehicle for a maximum of 2 minutes.
- The hazard warning system is switched on.
- An Emergency Request is triggered.

Canceling the emergency stop function

The driver can cancel the emergency stop function by actively taking control of the vehicle throughout the entire process.

For instance, the emergency stop function will be canceled in the following situations:

- When steering.
- When using the turn signal.
- During acceleration.
- When switching off the hazard warning system.
- When canceling the Emergency Request.
- When switching the selector lever position at standstill.
- When the driver's foot remains on the accelerator pedal after the function has been triggered.
- When the switch of the parking brake is pressed.

At standstill

As soon as the vehicle is stationary, the system will carry out the following settings:

- Selector lever position P is engaged.
- Parking brake is set.
- Interior lights are switched on.
- Central locking system is unlocked.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Status
	Emergency Stop function active.

System limits

Use the system only in the event of a driver failure.

The system cannot replace the driving performance of a driver who is fit to drive.

Active Protection

Concept

Active Protection prepares occupants and the vehicle for a possible accident in critical driving or collision situations.

General information

Active Protection consists of various PreCrash functions, which can vary depending on the equipment.

The system is used to detect certain critical driving situations that might lead to an accident. This includes the following critical driving situations:

- Emergency stop.
- Severe understeering.
- Severe oversteering.

Certain functions of several systems can - within the system limits - lead to Active Protection triggering:

- Front collision mitigation: automatic brake intervention.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2159
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

- Front collision mitigation: Brake Assistant.
- Night Vision with pedestrian and animal detection: Brake Assistant.
- Rear collision preparation: detection of imminent rear collisions.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to the system limits, critical situation could not be detected reliably or in time. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Function

When the safety belt is fastened, the driver's and passenger's belt straps are automatically tightened once after driving away.

In accident-critical situations, the following individual functions become active as needed:

- Automatic pretensioning of the front safety belts.
- Automatic window closing up to a narrow gap.
- Automatic closing of the glass sunroof, including sun protection.
- Automatic closing of the panoramic glass sunroof, including sun protection.
- For vehicles equipped with comfort seats in the front: automatic positioning of the backrest for the front passenger seat.
- For vehicles equipped with comfort rear seats: automatic positioning of the backrests for the rear passenger seats.

After a critical driving situation without an accident, the front safety belts are loosened again.

If the belt tension does not loosen automatically, stop the vehicle and unbuckle the safety belt using the red button in the buckle. Fasten the safety belt before continuing on your trip.

All other systems can be restored to the desired setting.

PostCrash – iBrake

Concept

In the event of an accident, the system can bring the vehicle to a halt automatically without intervention by the driver in certain situations. This can reduce the risk of a further collision and the consequences thereof.

At standstill

After coming to a halt, the brake is released automatically.

Harder vehicle braking

In certain situations, it can be necessary to bring the vehicle to a halt more quickly than the Brake Assistant allows.

To do this, quickly apply extra force to the brake. For a brief period, the braking pressure will be higher than the braking pressure that is achieved by the automatic braking function. Automatic braking is interrupted.

Interrupting automatic braking

It can be necessary to interrupt automatic braking in certain situations, for instance for an evasive maneuver.

Interrupt automatic braking:

- By pressing the brake pedal.
- By pressing the accelerator pedal.

Fatigue alert

General information

The system can detect decreasing alertness or fatigue of the driver during long, monotonous trips, for instance on highways. In this situation, it is recommended that the driver takes a break.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing one's physical state. An increasing lack of alertness or fatigue may not be detected or not be detected in time. There is a risk of accident. Make sure that the driver is rested and alert. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions.

Function

The system is switched on each time drive-ready state is switched on.

After travel has begun, the system monitors certain aspects of the driver's behavior, so that decreasing alertness or fatigue can be detected.

This procedure takes the following criteria into account:

- Personal driving style, for instance steering behavior.
- Driving conditions, for instance time, length of trip.
- Depending on the equipment: attention of the driver through the Driver Attention Camera.

Starting at approx. 43 mph/70 km/h, the system is active and can also display a recommendation to take a break.

Break recommendation

Adjusting

The fatigue alert is active automatically with each switching on of drive-ready state and can thus display a break recommendation.

The break recommendation can also be switched on or off and adjusted via iDrive.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Fatigue and Focus Alert"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "Standard": the break recommendation is made with a defined value.
   - "Sensitive": the break recommendation is issued earlier.
   - "Off": no break recommendation is made.

Display

If the driver becomes less alert or fatigued, a message is displayed in the Control Display with the recommendation to take a break.

During the display, various settings can be selected.

After a break, another recommendation to take a break cannot be displayed until after approximately 45 minutes.

System limits

The function may be limited in the following situations and may issue an incorrect warning or no warning at all:

- When the clock is set incorrectly.
- When the vehicle speed is mainly below about 43 mph/70 km/h.
- With a sporty driving style, such as during rapid acceleration or when cornering fast.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2161
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

- In active driving situations, such as when changing lanes frequently.
- When the road surface is poor.
- In the event of strong side winds.

The system is reset approx. 45 minutes after parking the vehicle, for instance in the case of a break during longer trips on highways.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2162

Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Driving stability control systems

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Anti-lock Braking System ABS

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during braking.

The vehicle maintains its steering power even during full brake applications, thus increasing active safety.

ABS is operational every time you start the engine.

Brake assistant

When you apply the brakes rapidly, this system automatically boosts the vehicle braking capability to the furthest possible extent. It reduces the braking distance to a minimum during an emergency stop. This system utilizes all of the capabilities provided by the Antilock Brake System ABS.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal for the duration of the emergency stop.

Adaptive brake assistant

In combination with Active Cruise Control, this system ensures that the brakes respond even more rapidly when braking in critical situations.

Drive-off assistant

Concept

This system supports driving off on uphill grades.

Driving off

1. Hold the vehicle in place with the foot brake.
2. Release the foot brake and drive off without delay.

After the foot brake is released, the vehicle is held in place for approx. 2 seconds.

Depending on the vehicle loading or when a trailer is used, the vehicle may roll back slightly.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control

Concept

Within the physical limits, the system helps to keep the vehicle on a steady course by reducing engine speed and by braking the individual wheels.

General information

DSC detects the following unstable driving conditions, for instance:

- Fishtailing, which can lead to oversteering.
- Loss of traction of the front wheels, which can lead to understeering.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2163
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

When driving with a roof load, for instance with roof-mounted luggage rack, the vehicle's center of gravity is higher, which increases the risk of the vehicle tipping in critical driving situations. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Do not deactivate DSC Dynamic Stability Control when driving with roof load.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

DSC OFF

Deactivating/activating DSC

General information

When DSC is deactivated, driving stability is reduced during acceleration and when driving in curves.

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

Deactivating DSC

Hold the button down until DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster and the DSC OFF indicator light is illuminated.

Activating DSC

Press the button.

DSC OFF and the DSC OFF indicator light go out.

Display

In the instrument cluster

When DSC is deactivated, DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Indicator/warning lights

The indicator light lights up: DSC is deactivated.

The indicator light flashes: DSC controls the drive and braking forces.

The indicator light lights up: DSC has malfunctioned.

DTC Dynamic Traction Control

Concept

DTC is a version of the DSC Dynamic Stability Control where forward momentum is optimized.

The system ensures maximum headway on special road conditions or loose road surfaces, for instance unplowed snowy roads, but with somewhat limited driving stability.

General information

When DTC is activated, the vehicle has maximum traction. Driving stability is limited during acceleration and when driving in curves.

You may find it useful to briefly activate DTC in the following situations:

- When driving in slush or on uncleared, snow-covered roads.
- When driving off from deep snow or loose ground.
- When driving with snow chains.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

DSC OFF

Activating/deactivating DTC

Activating DTC

Press the button.

TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster and the indicator light for DSC OFF lights up.

Deactivating DTC

Press the button again.

TRACTION and the DSC OFF indicator light go out.

Display

Display in the instrument cluster

If DTC is activated, TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Indicator/warning lights

The indicator light lights up: DTC is activated.

Automatic program change

In certain situations, the DSC is activated automatically:

- If Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function ACC is activated.
- On a braking intervention by the Intelligent Safety systems.
- The vehicle has a flat tire.

xDrive

Concept

xDrive is the all-wheel-drive system of the vehicle. The interaction of xDrive and other suspension control systems, such as DSC Dynamic Stability Control, further optimizes traction and

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2165
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

driving dynamics. xDrive variably distributes the driving forces to the front and rear axles as demanded by the driving situation and road surface.

Integral Active Steering

Concept

The Integral Active Steering increases the maneuverability and makes a more direct steering response possible.

General information

Integral Active Steering is a combination of variable steering ratio and rear axle steering.

The variable steering ratio amplifies the steering angle when maneuvering, thus making the steering more direct. The rear axle steering acts to increase maneuverability at low speeds by turning the rear wheels slightly in the opposite direction to the front wheels.

At higher speeds, the rear wheels are turned in the same direction as the front wheels. This results in, for instance better directional stability and a more harmonious change of direction.

In critical driving situations, the Integral Active Steering can stabilize the vehicle through purposeful steering of the rear wheels before the driver intervenes, for instance in case of oversteering.

Tuning

The system offers several different tunings.

Driving mode	Integral Active Steering
COMFORT ECO PRO	comfortable, for optimal travel comfort
SPORT	dynamic, for greater agility

The different tunings are assigned to the different driving modes of the Driving Dynamics Control, refer to page 135.

Using snow chains

In order to guarantee free running of the wheels when operating with snow chains, rear axle steering of the integral active steering must be switched off when snow chains are mounted.

Set operation with snow chains, refer to page 343.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, the steering wheel must be turned further, while the vehicle responds more sensitively to steering wheel movements in the higher speed range.

The stability-enhancing intervention may be deactivated.

Proceed cautiously and drive defensively.

Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2166
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Driver assistance systems

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Manual Speed Limiter

Concept

The system can be used to set a speed limit, for instance to prevent the vehicle from exceeding speed limits.

General information

The system can limit the speed, starting at a value of 20 mph/30 km/h. The vehicle can be driven at any speed below the set speed limit.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	System on/off, refer to page 216.
	Store current speed. Speed Limit Assist, refer to page 228: take over suggested speed manually.
	Rocker switch: Changing the speed limit, refer to page 217.

Operation

Switching on

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The current speed is accepted as the speed limit.

If the system is switched on while the vehicle is stationary or driving at low speeds, 20 mph/30 km/h is set as the speed limit.

The marking in the speedometer is set to the respective speed.

When the speed limit is switched on, DSC Dynamic Stability Control and COMFORT driving mode may be switched on as well.

Switching off

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The system switches off automatically in the following situations, for example:

- When the engine is switched off.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2167
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

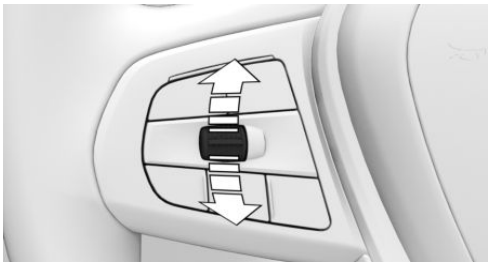
- When cruise control is switched on.
- When certain programs are activated via the Driving Dynamics Control.

The displays go out.

Interrupting

If the reverse gear is engaged or idle, the system is interrupted.

Changing the speed limit



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed limit is set.

- Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the speed limit increases or decreases by 1 mph/1 km/h.
- Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

If the set speed limit is reached or unintentionally exceeded, such as when driving downhill, the vehicle is not actively braked.

If the speed limit is set during a trip to a value below the current speed, the vehicle coasts until it drops to the set speed limit.

The current speed can also be stored by pressing a button:

SET Press the button on the steering wheel.

Exceeding the speed limit

If the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed limit, a warning is issued.

The speed limit can be exceeded intentionally. There is no warning in this case.

Press the accelerator pedal all the way down to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit, the limit is automatically reactivated.

Warning when the speed limit is exceeded

Visual warning

LIM If the speed limit is exceeded: the indicator light in the instrument cluster flashes while the vehicle speed is greater than the set speed limit.

Acoustic warning

- If the speed limit is exceeded unintentionally, a signal sounds.
- If the speed limit is reduced to below the vehicle speed while driving, the signal sounds after some time.
- If the speed limit is intentionally exceeded by stepping on the accelerator pedal all the way down, there is no signal.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Display in the speedometer

- Green marking: system is active.
- Grey marking: system is interrupted.
- No marking: system is switched off.

Indicator light

LIM
- The indicator light lights up: the system is switched on.

- The indicator light flashes: the set speed limit has been exceeded.
- Gray indicator light: the system has been interrupted.

Cruise control

Concept

Using this system, a desired speed can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel. The system maintains the desired speed. The system accelerates and brakes automatically as needed.

General information

Depending on the vehicle setting, the cruise control settings may change under certain conditions. For instance, acceleration can change depending on the driving mode.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

The use of the system can lead to an increased risk of accidents in the following situations, for instance:

- On winding roads.
- In heavy traffic.
- On slippery roads, in fog, snow, or wet conditions, or on a loose road surface.

There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Only use the system if driving at constant speed is possible.

Warning

The desired speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Cruise control on/off, refer to page 218.
	Continue cruise control with the last setting, refer to page 220.
	Pause cruise control, refer to page 219.
	Store current speed. Speed Limit Assist, refer to page 228: take over suggested speed manually.
	Rocker switch: Set speed, refer to page 219.

Switching cruise control on/off

Switching on

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster light up and the mark in the speedometer is set to the current speed.

Cruise control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2169
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

Switching off

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

Pausing cruise control

Interrupting manually

CANCEL When active, press the button.

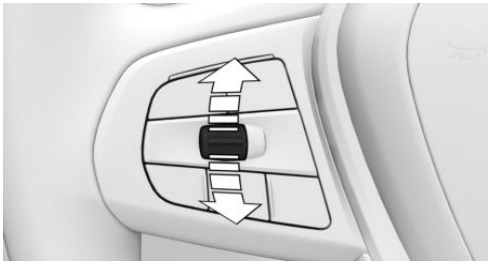
Interrupting automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations, for example:

- When the driver applies the brakes.
- When selector lever position D is disengaged.
- Dynamic Traction Control DTC is activated or DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.
- If DSC Dynamic Stability Control intervenes.
- When SPORT PLUS is activated with Driving Dynamics Control.

Setting the speed

Maintaining and storing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down once while the system is interrupted.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

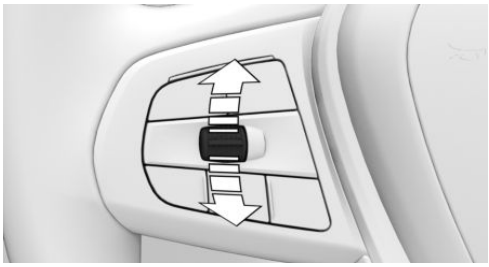
The stored speed is displayed, refer to page 220, on the speedometer.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

The speed can also be stored by pressing a button.

SET Press the button.

Changing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

- Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the desired speed increases or decreases by 1 mph/1 km/h.
- Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

  The maximum speed that can be set depends on the vehicle.
- Pressing the rocker switch to the resistance point and holding it accelerates or decelerates the vehicle without requiring pressure on the accelerator pedal.

  After the rocker switch is released, the vehicle maintains its final speed. Pressing the switch beyond the resistance point causes the vehicle to accelerate more rapidly.

Continuing cruise control

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed.

Make sure that the difference between current speed and stored speed is not too large before calling up the stored speed. Otherwise, unintentional braking or accelerating may occur.

RESUME Press the button with the system interrupted.

Cruise control is continued with the stored values.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- When the system is switched off.
- When drive-ready state is switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Display in the speedometer

- Green marking: system is active, the marking indicates the desired speed.
- Grey marking: system is interrupted, the marking indicates the stored speed.
- No marking: system is switched off.

Indicator light

- Indicator light green: system is active.
- Gray indicator light: the system has been interrupted.
- No indicator light: system is switched off.

Displays in the Head-up Display

Some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

The symbol is displayed when the set desired speed is reached.

System limits

The desired speed is also maintained downhill. The speed may not be maintained on uphill grades if the engine power is insufficient.

In ECO PRO driving mode, the vehicle may exceed or drop below the set desired speed in some situations, for instance on downhill or uphill grades.

Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go function ACC

Concept

Using this system, a desired speed and a distance to a vehicle ahead can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel.

The system maintains the desired speed on clear roads. For this purpose, the vehicle accelerates or brakes automatically.

If a vehicle is driving ahead of you, the system adjusts the speed of your vehicle so that the set distance to the vehicle ahead is maintained. The speed is adjusted as far as the given situation allows.

General information

A radar sensor is located in the front bumper and a camera on the interior mirror to detect vehicles driving ahead of you.

Depending on the vehicle setting, the cruise control settings may change under certain conditions. For instance, acceleration can change depending on the driving mode.

The distance can be adjusted in several steps. For safety reasons, it depends on the respective speed.

If the vehicle ahead of you brakes to a halt, and then proceeds to drive again within a brief period, the system is able to detect this within the given system limits.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2171
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

The desired speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Risk of accident due to too high speed differences to other vehicles, for instance in the following situations:

- ▷ When fast approaching a slowly moving vehicle.
- ▷ Vehicle suddenly swerving into own lane.
- ▷ When fast approaching standing vehicles.

There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

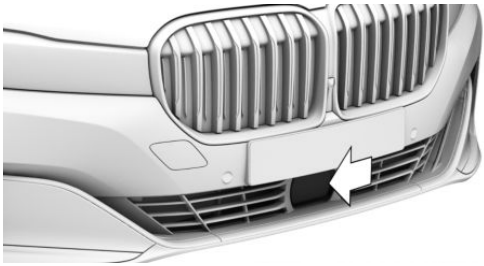
Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	With steering and traffic jam assistant: Cruise control on/off, refer to page 222.
	With steering and traffic jam assistant: Select function.
 or 	Without steering and traffic jam assistant: Cruise control on/off, refer to page 222.
	Store current speed. Speed Limit Assist, refer to page 228: take over suggested speed manually.
	With steering and traffic jam assistant: Pause cruise control, refer to page 223. Continue cruise control with the last setting, refer to page 224.
	Without steering and traffic jam assistant: Continue cruise control with the last setting, refer to page 224.

Button	Function
CANCEL	Without steering and traffic jam assistant: Pause cruise control, refer to page 223.
	Increase the distance, refer to page 224. Switch distance control on/off.
	Reduce distance, refer to page 224. Switch distance control on/off.
	Rocker switch: Set speed, refer to page 224.

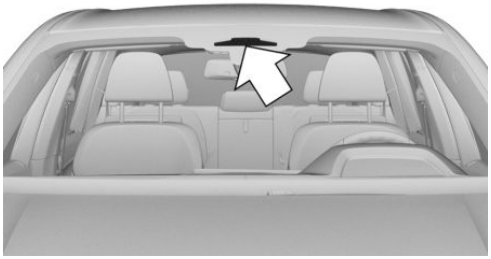
Radar sensor



The radar sensor is located in the front bumper.

Always keep radar sensor clean and unobstructed.

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Area of application

The system is best used on well-constructed roads.

The minimum speed that can be set is 20 mph/30 km/h.

The maximum speed that can be set is 115 mph/180 km/h.

The system can also be activated when stationary.

Switching on/off and interrupting cruise control

With steering and traffic jam assistant: Assisted Driving

General information

This button is used to switch the configured function on and off.

MODE The button can be used to set the primarily used function.

Set function

1. MODE When the system is active, press the button repeatedly until the desired function is selected in the function bar. The function bar for Assisted Driving is displayed at the bottom of the instrument cluster.
   - ▷ Cruise control with distance control.
   - ▷ Cruise control with distance control and steering and traffic jam assistant.

   The selected function is shown in green.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2173
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Switching on

With steering and traffic jam assistant:

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. If necessary, set the cruise control.

Without steering and traffic jam assistant:

Depending on the equipment, press the relevant button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster light up and the mark in the speedometer is set to the current speed.

Cruise control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

Switching off

To switch off the system while standing, step on brake pedal at the same time.

Press the following button on the steering wheel again:

Without steering and traffic jam assistant. Depending on the equipment, press the relevant button.

With steering and traffic jam assistant.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

Interrupting manually

When active, press the following button on the steering wheel:

Without steering and traffic jam assistant.

With steering and traffic jam assistant.

If interrupting the system while stationary, press on the brake pedal at the same time.

Interrupting automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations:

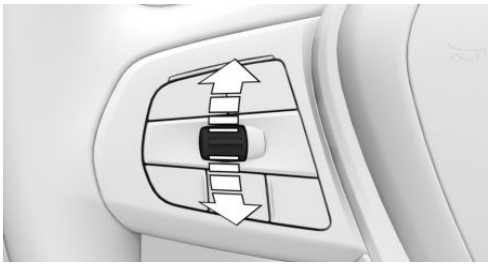
- When the driver applies the brakes.
- When selector lever position D is disengaged.
- Dynamic Traction Control DTC is activated or DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.
- If DSC Dynamic Stability Control intervenes.
- If the safety belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is opened while the vehicle is standing still.
- If the system has not detected objects for an extended period, for instance on a road with very little traffic without curb or shoulder markings.
- If the detection range of the radar is impaired, for instance by dirt or heavy fog.
- After a longer stationary period when the vehicle has been braked to a stop by the system.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2174

Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Setting the speed

Maintaining and storing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down once while the system is interrupted. The system will be activated.

The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

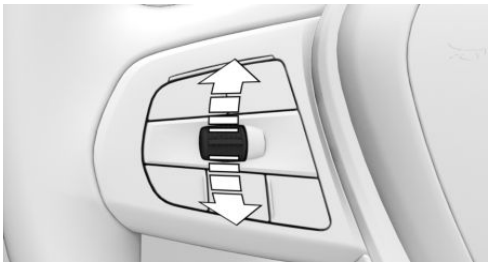
The stored speed is displayed on the speedometer.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

The speed can also be stored by pressing a button.

SET Press the button.

Changing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

- Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the desired speed increases or decreases by 1 mph/1 km/h.
- Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

Hold the rocker switch in position to repeat the action.

Adjusting the distance

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to the system limits, braking can be late. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Be aware to the traffic situation at all times. Adjust the distance to the traffic and weather conditions and maintain the prescribed safety distance, possibly by braking.

Reduce distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Instrument cluster will display selected distance, refer to page 225.

Increase the distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Instrument cluster will display selected distance, refer to page 225.

Continuing cruise control

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed.

Make sure that the difference between current speed and stored speed is not too large before

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2175
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

calling up the stored speed. Otherwise, unintentional braking or accelerating may occur.

Press the following button on the steering wheel with the system interrupted:

RESUME Without steering and traffic jam assistant.

RES CANCEL With steering and traffic jam assistant.

Cruise control is continued with the stored values.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- When the system is switched off.
- When drive-ready state is switched off.

Changing between cruise control with/without distance control

Safety information

Warning

The system does not react to traffic driving ahead of you, but instead maintains the stored speed. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions and brake as needed.

Switch mode of the cruise control

Switching cruise control without distance control off and on:

- Press and hold this button.
- Press and hold this button.

Without steering and traffic jam assistant: switch on distance control:

- Press the button.
- Press the button.

With steering and traffic jam assistant: switch on distance control:

Press the button.

After switching, a Check Control message is displayed.

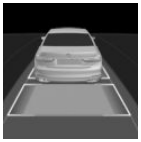
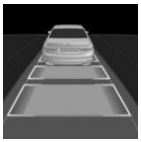
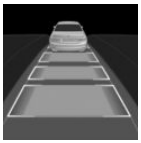
Displays in the instrument cluster

Display in the speedometer

- Green marking: system is active, the marking indicates the desired speed.
- Grey marking: system is interrupted, the marking indicates the stored speed.
- No marking: system is switched off.

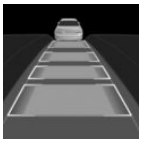
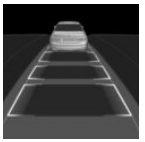
Distance to vehicle ahead of you

Selected distance to the vehicle ahead of you is shown.

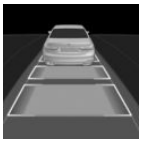
Symbol	Description
	Distance 1
	Distance 2
	Distance 3

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2176

Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Symbol	Description
	Distance 4 This value is set automatically after the system is switched on.
	System interrupted.
	No distance control display, as the accelerator pedal is being pressed.

Detected vehicle

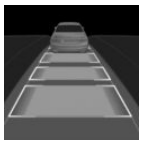
Symbol	Description
	Green symbol: A vehicle has been detected ahead of you.

The system maintains the set distance to the vehicle in front.

As soon as the detected vehicle drives off, the vehicle symbol in the distance indicator will move away.

To accelerate, activate ACC, for instance by briefly stepping on the accelerator pedal or pressing the rocker switch.

Indicator/warning lights

Symbol	Description
	Indicator light green: system is active. No indicator light: system is switched off.
	Vehicle symbol flashes: The conditions are not adequate for the system to work. The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.
	The vehicle symbol and distance bars flash red and an acoustic signal sounds: Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Displays in the Head-up Display

Desired speed

Some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

The symbol is displayed when the set desired speed is reached.

Distance information

The symbol is displayed when the distance from the vehicle traveling ahead is too short.

The distance information is active in the following situations:

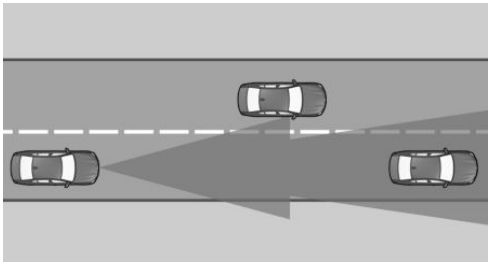
- Active Cruise Control switched off.
- Display in the Head-up Display selected, refer to page 163.
- Distance too short.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2177
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

▷ Speed greater than approx. 40 mph/70 km/h.

System limits

Detection range



The detection capacity of the system and the automatic braking capacity are limited.

Two-wheeled vehicles for instance might not be detected.

Deceleration

The system does not decelerate in the following situations:

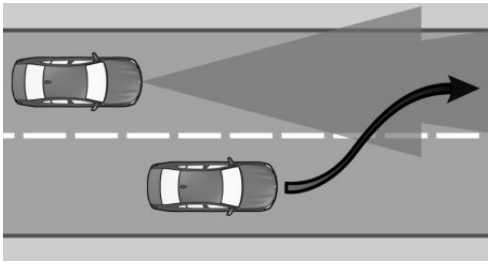
▷ For pedestrians or similarly slow-moving road users.

▷ For red traffic lights.

▷ For cross traffic.

▷ For oncoming traffic.

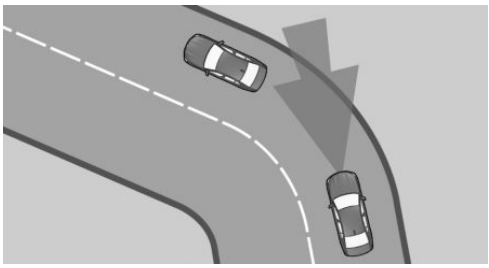
Swerving vehicles



A vehicle driving in front of you is not detected until it is completely within the same lane as your vehicle.

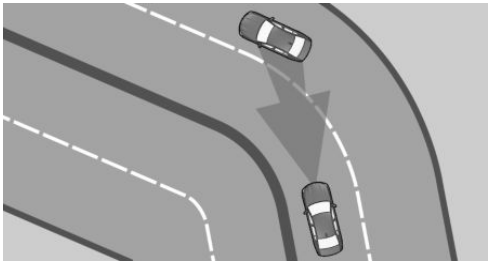
If a vehicle driving ahead of you suddenly swerves into your lane, the system may not be able to automatically restore the selected distance. It may not be possible to restore the selected distance in certain situations, including if you are driving significantly faster than vehicles driving ahead of you, for instance when rapidly approaching a truck. When a vehicle driving ahead of you is reliably detected, the system requests that the driver intervene by braking and carrying out evasive maneuvers, if needed.

Cornering



If the desired speed is too high for a curve, the speed is reduced slightly, although curves cannot be anticipated in advance. Therefore, drive into a curve at an appropriate speed.

The system has a limited detection range. Situations can arise in tight curves where a vehicle driving ahead will not be detected or will be detected very late.



When you approach a curve the system may briefly report vehicles in the next lane due to the bend of the curve. If the system decelerates you may compensate it by briefly accelerating. After

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2178
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

releasing the accelerator pedal the system is reactivated and controls speed independently.

Driving off

In some situations, the vehicle cannot drive off automatically; for example:

- On steep uphill grades.
- In front of bumps in the road.

In these cases, step on the accelerator pedal.

Weather

The following restrictions can occur under unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- Poorer vehicle recognition.
- Short-term interruptions for vehicles that are already recognized.

Examples of unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- Wet conditions.
- Snowfall.
- Slush.
- Fog.
- Glare.

Drive attentively, and react to the current traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for instance by braking, steering or evading.

Engine power

The desired speed is also maintained downhill. The speed may not be maintained on uphill grades if the engine power is insufficient.

In ECO PRO driving mode, the vehicle may exceed or drop below the set desired speed in some situations, for instance on downhill or uphill grades.

Malfunction

Radar sensor

The system cannot be activated if the radar sensor is not aligned correctly. This may be caused by damage incurred, for instance during parking.

A Check Control message is displayed if the system fails.

Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

The system may be impaired when the detection range of the radar sensor is partially covered such as by the license plate holder.

Camera

The function for detecting and responding when approaching stationary vehicles may be limited in the following situations:

- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- If the camera is malfunctioning or dirty. A Check Control message is displayed.

Speed Limit Assist

Concept

When the systems in the vehicle, e.g., Speed Limit Info, detect a change of the speed limit along the route, this new speed value can be applied for the following systems:

- Manual Speed Limiter.
- Cruise control.
- Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function.

The speed value is suggested as the new desired speed to be applied. To apply the speed value, the corresponding system must be activated.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2179
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

The desired speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
SET	Apply suggested speed manually.
	Rocker switch: Set speed, refer to Cruise Control.

Switching on/off and adjusting

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Driving"
5. "Speed Limit Assistant"
6. "Info on speed limits"

   Select the desired setting:

- ▷ "Adjust manually": detected speed limit can be applied manually.
- ▷ "Show anticipation": detected speed limits are displayed in the instrument cluster without being applied.
- ▷ "Off": Speed Limit Assist will be switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster

A message is indicated in the instrument cluster when the system and cruise control are activated.

Symbol	Function
ASSIST	Indicator light illuminates green, together with the symbol for a cruise control system: Speed Limit Assist is active and detected speed limits can be applied manually for the displayed system.
	Detected change of a speed limit with immediate effect.
SET	Indicator light illuminates green: the detected speed limit can be applied with the SET button. As soon as the speed limit has been applied, a green checkmark is displayed.

Apply detected speed limit manually

A detected speed limit can be applied to cruise control manually.

SET As soon as the SET icon lights up, press the button.

System limits

Speed Limit Assist is based on the Speed Limit Info system.

Consider the system limits of Speed Limit Info, refer to page 160.

Upcoming speed limits can only be applied for the Active Cruise Control.

The system may not respond to top speed limitations when the navigation system is unable to clearly identify the position of the vehicle.

Steering and traffic jam assistant

Concept

The system assists the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane. For this purpose, the system executes supporting steering movements, for instance when driving in a curve.

General information

The system determines the position of the lane markings and the vehicle driving ahead using five radar sensors and a camera.

Depending on the speed, the system orients itself according to the lane markings or vehicles in front.

Sensors on the steering wheel detect whether the steering wheel is being touched.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

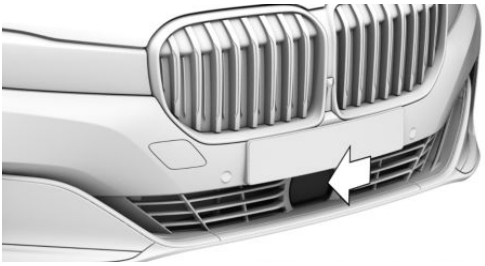
Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Steering and traffic jam assistant on/off, refer to page 231.
	Switch function on, refer to page 231.

Radar sensors

The radar sensors are located in the bumpers.



Front center bumper.

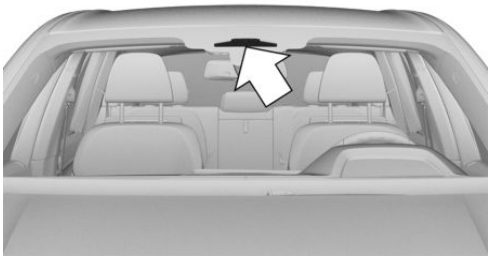
Front side bumper.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2181
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Rear bumper.

Always keep the bumper in the area of the radar sensors clean and unobstructed.

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Functional requirements

- Speed below 130 mph/210 km/h.
- Sufficient lane width.
- Above approx. 43 mph, 70 km/h: lane marking is detected.
- Below approx. 43 mph, 70 km/h: lane marking or a vehicle driving ahead is detected.
- Hands on the steering wheel rim.
- Wide curves.
- Drive in the center of the lane.
- Turn signal switched off.
- The sensor system calibration process is complete.
- Cruise control with distance control is active.
- Safety belt on the driver's side fastened.

Additionally, the following systems must be active:

- Approach control warning.
- Person warning.
- Side collision mitigation.

Switching on/off

Assisted Driving

General information

This button is used to switch the configured function on and off.

MODE The button can be used to set the primarily used function.

Set function

1. MODE When the system is active, press the button repeatedly until the desired function is selected in the function bar. The function bar for Assisted Driving is displayed at the bottom of the instrument cluster.
   - Cruise control with distance control.
   - Cruise control with distance control and steering and traffic jam assistant.

   The selected function is shown in green.

   The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Switching on

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. MODE Adjust the steering and traffic jam assistant if necessary.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2182
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Steering wheel symbol lights up gray.

The system is on standby and does not manipulate steering.

System activates automatically as soon as all function conditions are fulfilled, refer to page 231.

Steering wheel symbol lights up green.

The system is active.

With the system switched on, the person warning with City braking function and the side collision mitigation are active.

Switching off

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator goes out.

The system does not perform supportive steering wheel movements.

Interrupting automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations, for example:

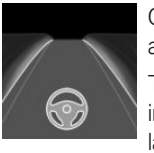
- At a speed above 130 mph/210 km/h.
- When the steering wheel is released.
- When the driver applies the brakes.
- When you manipulate steering.
- When you leave your own lane.
- When the turn signal is switched on.
- When the lane is too narrow.
- If for a particular time no lane marking is detected and there is no vehicle driving in front.
- If Active Cruise Control is interrupted.
- If the safety belt on the driver's side is unfastened.

Steering wheel symbol lights up gray.

The system is on standby and does not manipulate steering.

System activates automatically as soon as all function conditions are fulfilled, refer to page 231.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Description
	Gray steering wheel symbol: The system is on standby.
	Green steering wheel symbol: The system is activated.
	Yellow flashing steering wheel symbol: Lane marking driven over. The steering wheel vibrates where applicable.
	Yellow steering wheel symbol and a signal sounds, if applicable: System interruption is imminent.
	Steering wheel symbol flashes red, signal sounds: System is switching off.
	Green steering wheel symbol and lane marking symbol: The system supports the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2183
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Symbol	Description
	Yellow steering wheel symbol: The hands are not grasping the steering wheel. The system is still active.
	Red steering wheel symbol and a signal sounds: The hands are not grasping the steering wheel. System interruption is imminent. The system reduces the speed to a standstill if applicable. It is possible that the system will not execute any supporting steering movements.

Indicator light	Description
	Cruise control with distance control and steering and traffic jam assistant: Indicator light green: system is active. No indicator light: system is switched off.

Displays on the steering wheel

The two LED lights above the buttons illuminate analogously to the displays in the instrument cluster:

- Yellow: system interruption is imminent.
- Red: system will be deactivated.

The steering wheel displays can be switched on/off if required.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Feedback on the steering wheel"
5. "Light elements"
6. Make the desired setting.

Displays in the Head-up Display

All system information can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

Lane change assistant

Concept

The system additionally supports the driver when changing lanes on multilane roads.

Functional requirements

- The functional requirements of the steering and traffic jam assistant are fulfilled, refer to page 231.
- Depending on country specifications: driving on a road without pedestrians or cyclists and with physical barriers to oncoming traffic, such as crash barriers.
- Lane markings have been detected.
- Maximum speed approx. 110 mph, 180 km/h.
- The minimum speed is country-specific.

Switching the function on/off

The lane change assistant can be switched on/off.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"

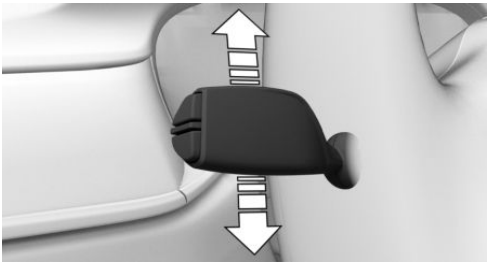
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2184
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Driving"
5. "Steering Assistant"
6. "Automatic Lane Change"

Changing lanes

1. Ensure that the traffic situation permits changing lanes.
2. Press the turn indicator lever, refer to page 140, in the required direction to the pressure point for signaling briefly and hold it there.

   Steering support in the required direction can be detected a short time later.



After the lane change, the system helps keep the vehicle in the new lane.

Canceling a lane change

If the turn signal lever is released too soon, the system helps the driver keep to the original lane.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Description
	Green steering wheel symbol. Gray line for lane marking on the appropriate side. Green arrow symbol for lane-changing. The system carries out a lane change.
	Green steering wheel symbol. Gray line for lane marking on the appropriate side. No arrow symbol for lane-changing on the display. The system detected the lane change request. Lane change not currently possible.
	Depending on country specifications: Green steering wheel symbol. Gray line for lane marking on the appropriate side. Gray arrow symbol for lane-changing. Lane change not possible; functional requirements not met.

Assisted Driving Plus

Concept

Assisted Driving Plus supports the driver with vehicle control in traffic jam situations.

Steering support takes place without the driver actively steering.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2185
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

State laws differ and the use of this function may violate the law. Before use, check your state and local laws.

Functional requirements

- The functional requirements of the steering and traffic jam assistant are fulfilled, refer to page 231.
- The steering and traffic jam assistant is active.
- The function is only available on certain street types, e.g. freeways.
- Driving on a road without pedestrians or cyclists.
- Sufficient lane width.
- Lane markings and a vehicle driving ahead are detected.
- Speed less than approx. 40 mph/60 km/h.
- The Driver Attention Camera in the instrument cluster detects that the driver is paying attention to the traffic.

Switching on

As soon as all functional requirements are met, Assisted Driving Plus will be displayed as an additional symbol in the function bar. The toolbar is displayed at the bottom of the instrument cluster.

Select Assistant Driving Plus with the button on the steering wheel.

The symbol for Assisted Driving Plus is shown in green.

Two green LED lights, refer to page 235, are illuminated on the steering wheel.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is shown in green.

The system begins to assist the driver with vehicle control.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Indicator light	Description
	Indicator light green: system is active.

Displays on the steering wheel

The two LED lights above the buttons illuminate analogously to the displays in the instrument cluster:

- Green: the system is active.
- Red: system will be deactivated.

System limits

General information

The system cannot be activated or meaningfully used in certain situations.

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Hands on the steering wheel

The sensors cannot detect hand-steering wheel contact in the following situations:

- Driving with gloves.
- Protective covers on the steering wheel.

Narrow lanes

When driving within narrow lanes, the system cannot be activated or effectively used, for instance in the following situations:

- In construction areas.
- In rescue lanes.
- Within city limits.

Weather

The following restrictions can occur under unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- Poorer recognition of vehicles and lane markings.
- Short-term interruptions for vehicles that are already recognized.

Examples of unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- Wet conditions.
- Snowfall.
- Slush.
- Fog.
- Glare.

Drive attentively, and react to the current traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for instance by braking, steering or evading.

Driver Attention Camera

Always monitor the traffic conditions.

The Driver Attention Camera detects whether or not the driver is paying attention to the traffic conditions.

The Driver Attention Camera may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- When the Driver Attention Camera is covered by the steering wheel rim.
- When the driver is wearing infrared impermeable sunglasses.

PDC Park Distance Control

Concept

PDC is a support when parking. Objects that you are approaching slowly in front of or behind the vehicle are indicated by signal tones and a display on the Control Display.

Depending on the equipment version: obstacles at the side of the vehicle that are detected by the side ultrasonic sensors may also be reported by the side protection, refer to page 239, function.

General information

The ultrasound sensors for distance measurements are located in the bumpers and possibly on the sides of the vehicle.

The range, depending on obstacles and environmental conditions, is approx. 6 ft/2 m.

An acoustic warning sounds in case of an impending collision at a distance to the object of approx. 27 in/70 cm.

For objects behind the vehicle, the acoustic warning is already issued at a distance to the object of approx. 5 ft/1.50 m.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2187
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

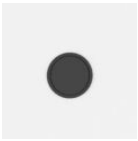
Due to high speeds when PDC Park Distance Control is activated, the warning can be delayed due to physical circumstances. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Avoid approaching an object too fast. Avoid driving off fast while PDC Park Distance Control is not yet active.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Ultrasound sensors



Ultrasound sensors of the PDC, for instance in the bumpers.

Functional requirements

Ensure full functionality:

- Do not cover sensors, for instance with stickers, bicycle racks.
- Keep the sensors clean and unobstructed.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system switches on automatically in the following situations:

- If selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.
- Depending on the equipment version: while approaching detected obstacles if the speed is slower than approx. 2.5 mph/4 km/h. The activation distance depends on the situation in question.

You may switch automatic activation when obstacles are detected on and off.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. Where applicable: "Automatic PDC activation"
6. "Automatic PDC activation"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Depending on equipment, an additional camera view is also switched on.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on, if needed.

Switching on/off manually

Press the park assistance button.

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

The rearview camera image is displayed if the reverse gear is engaged when pressing the park assistance button.

Warning

Signal tones

General information

An intermittent tone indicates when the vehicle is approaching an object. For instance, if an object is detected to the left rear of the vehicle, a signal tone sounds from the left rear speaker.

The shorter the distance to the object, the shorter the intervals.

If the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 10 inches/25 cm, a continuous tone is sounded.

If there are objects in front of and behind the vehicle at the same time, with a distance smaller than approx. 10 in/25 cm, an alternating constant tone will sound.

The intermittent tone and constant tone are switched off if the selector lever position P is engaged.

The intermittent tone is switched off after a short time when the vehicle is stationary.

Volume

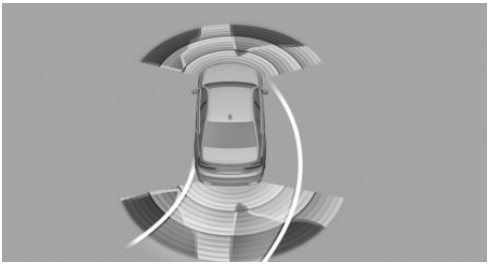
The PDC signal tone volume can be adjusted.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. "Volume PDC signal"
6. Set the desired value.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Visual warning



The approach of the vehicle to an object is shown on the Control Display. Objects that are farther away are already displayed on the Control Display before a signal sounds.

The display appears as soon as PDC is activated.

The range of the sensors is represented in the colors green, yellow and red when obstacles are detected.

Pathway lines are faded in for better estimation of the required space.

When the image of the rearview camera is displayed, the switch can be made to PDC or to a different view with obstacle markings as needed:

1. Press the Controller to the left, if needed.
2. For instance "Park. sensors only"

Cross traffic warning, refer to page 261: depending on the equipment, it is warned in the PDC display against vehicles approaching in the front or rear from the side.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2189
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Depending on the equipment version: emergency brake function, Active PDC

Concept

The emergency braking function of PDC initiates an emergency braking in case of acute risk of collision.

General information

This function may not be available. Contact your authorized dealer's service center or another qualified service center as to whether this additional function is currently in your vehicle or when it can be installed in your vehicle in the future.

Due to system limits, a collision cannot be prevented under all circumstances.

The function is available below walking speed when driving in reverse or rolling backward.

A press of the accelerator pedal interrupts the braking intervention.

After emergency braking to a stop, further creeping toward an obstacle is possible. To creep toward the obstacle, lightly press the accelerator pedal and release it again.

If the accelerator pedal is heavily depressed, the vehicle drives off as usual. Manual braking is possible at any time.

The system uses the ultrasound sensors of PDC and parking assistant.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Activating/deactivating the system

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. If necessary, "Active PDC with braking interv."
6. "Active PDC with braking interv."

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Depending on the equipment version: side protection

Concept

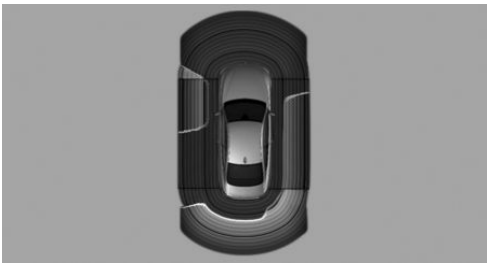
The system warns of obstacles on the side of the vehicle.

General information

This function may not be available. Contact your authorized dealer's service center or another qualified service center as to whether this additional function is currently in your vehicle or when it can be installed in your vehicle in the future.

In addition to the front and rear ultrasonic sensors, the system uses the side ultrasonic sensors.

Display



To protect the sides of the vehicle, obstacle markings are displayed on the sides of the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2190
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

- Color markings: warning against detected obstacles.
- Gray markings, hatched area: no obstacles were detected.
- No markings, black area: the area next to the vehicle was not yet captured.

Limits of side protection

The system only displays stationary obstacles that were previously detected by sensors while passing them.

The system does not detect whether an obstacle moves later on. If the vehicle is stationary, the markings are shown in black after a certain time. The area next to the vehicle must be newly captured.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Limits of ultrasonic measurement

Ultrasonic measurements might not function in the following situations:

- For small children and animals.
- For persons with certain clothing, for instance coats.
- With external interference of the ultrasound, for instance from passing vehicles or loud machines.
- When sensors are dirty, iced over, damaged or out of position.
- Under certain weather conditions, e.g., high relative humidity, wet conditions, snowfall, cold, extreme heat, or strong wind.
- With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.
- With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- With moving objects.
- With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges.
- With objects with corners, edges, and smooth surfaces.
- With objects with a fine surface structure such as fences.
- For objects with porous surfaces.
- With small and low objects, for instance boxes.
- With obstacles and persons at the edge of the lane.
- With soft obstacles or obstacles covered in foam material.
- With plants and bushes.
- Low objects already displayed, for instance curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.
- Cargo that extends beyond the perimeter of the vehicle is not taken into account by the system.

False warnings

The system may issue a warning under the following conditions even though there is no obstacle within the detection range:

- In heavy rain.
- When sensors are very dirty or covered with ice.
- When sensors are covered in snow.
- On rough road surfaces.
- On uneven surfaces, such as speed bumps.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2191
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

- In large buildings with right angles and smooth walls, for instance in underground garages.
- In automatic vehicle washes.
- Due to heavy exhaust.
- Due to other ultrasound sources, for instance sweeping machines, high pressure steam cleaners or neon lights.

To prevent false alarms, switch off automatic PDC activation on obstacle detection, refer to page 237, for instance in automatic vehicle washes.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

White symbol is displayed, and the range of the sensors is dimmed on the Control Display.

PDC has failed. Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Without Surround View: rearview camera

Concept

The rearview camera provides assistance in parking and maneuvering backwards. The area behind the vehicle is shown on the Control Display.

Safety information

Warning

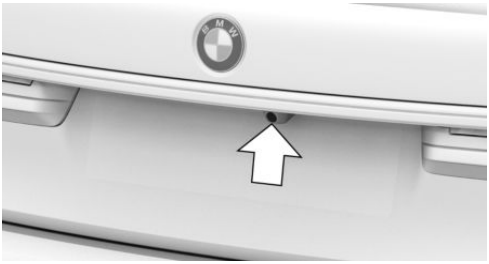
The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Depending on the vehicle equipment: button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Camera



The camera lens is located in the handle of the trunk lid.

The image quality may be impaired by dirt. If necessary, clean the camera lens.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is switched on automatically if selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2192
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Switch the system back on, if needed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment: switching on/off manually

Press the park assistance button.

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

The parking assistance functions are shown on the Control Display.

Switching the view via iDrive

If the rearview camera view is not displayed, change the view via iDrive:

1. If necessary, tilt the controller to the side.
2. "Rear view camera"

The rearview camera image is displayed.

Functional requirements

- The rearview camera is switched on.
- The trunk lid is fully closed.
- Keep the recording range of the camera clear. Protruding cargo or carrier systems and trailers that are not connected to a trailer power socket can restrict the visibility range of the camera.

Assistance functions

General information

More than one assistance function can be active at the same time.

The assistance functions can be manually activated.

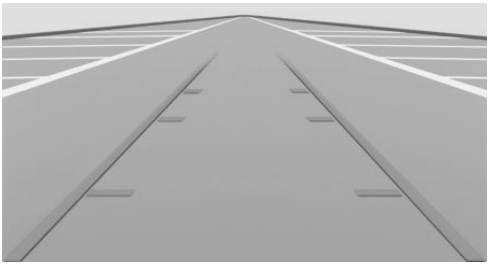
1. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.
2. With corresponding equipment: "Camera image"
3. "Parking aid lines".

   Pathway lines and turning radius lines are displayed, refer to page 242.
   - "Obstacle mark.".

     Depending on the vehicle equipment, the obstacles detected by PDC Park Distance Control are displayed, refer to page 243, by markings.

Parking aid lines

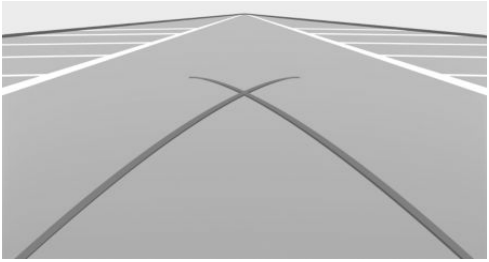
Pathway lines



Pathway lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.

Pathway lines depend on the steering angle and are continuously adjusted to the steering wheel movements.

Turning radius lines



Turning radius lines can only be superimposed on the camera image together with pathway lines.

Turning radius lines show the course of the smallest possible turning radius on a level road.

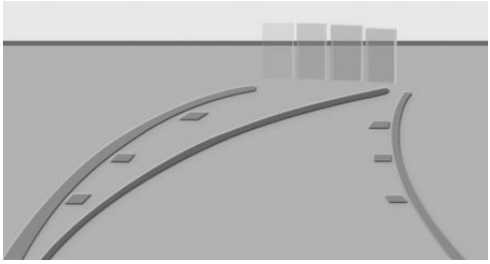
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2193
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Only one turning radius line is displayed after the steering wheel is turned past a certain angle.

Parking using pathway and turning radius lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the red turning radius line leads to within the limits of the parking space.
2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the green pathway line covers the corresponding turning radius line.

Obstacle marking



Depending on the vehicle equipment, obstacles behind the vehicle are detected by the PDC Park Distance Control sensors.

Obstacle markings can be faded into the image of the rearview camera.

The colored thresholds of the obstacle markings match the markings of the PDC Park Distance Control.

Setting brightness and contrast via iDrive

With the rearview camera switched on:

1. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.
2. "Camera image"
3. ▷ "Brightness"
   ▷ "Contrast"
4. Set the desired value.

System limits

Deactivated camera

If the camera is deactivated, for instance if the trunk lid is open, the camera image is displayed hatched in gray.

Detection of objects

Very low obstacles as well as high, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected by the system.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, some assistance functions also consider data from the PDC Park Distance Control.

Follow the notes in the PDC Park Distance Control chapter.

The objects displayed on the Control Display may be closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance from the objects on the display.

Surround View with Parking Assistant Plus

Concept

The system provides assistance in parking and maneuvering. The area around the vehicle is shown on the Control Display.

General information

Several cameras capture the area from different selectable perspectives. In addition, assistance functions, for instance guidelines, can be faded into the display.

The following camera perspectives can be displayed:

- ▷ Automatic camera perspective, refer to page 245: the system shows the camera perspective suitable for the respective driving situation.
- ▷ Rearview camera, refer to page 245: for representing the areas behind the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2194

Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

- Right-hand and left-hand side view, refer to page 247: for representing the areas on the sides of the vehicle.
- Camera perspective movable via iDrive. available camera, refer to page 245.
- Panorama View, refer to page 248: to present cross traffic, for instance at junctions and driveways, depending on the currently engaged gear.

Depending on the view, the environment around the vehicle or a part of it is depicted.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

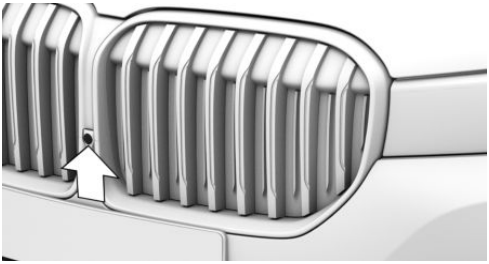
Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

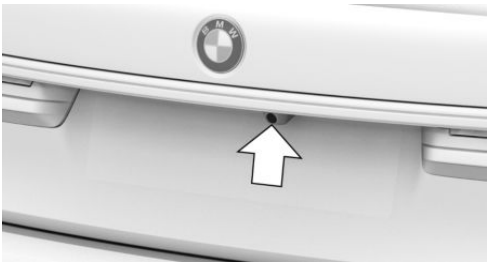
Park assistance button

Panorama View

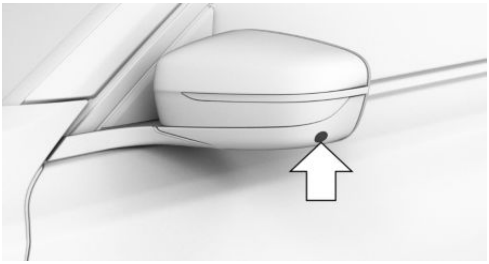
Cameras



Front camera



Rearview camera



One camera is located at the bottom of each exterior mirror housing.

The image quality may be impaired by dirt on the camera lenses. If required, clean the camera lenses.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is switched on automatically, refer to page 237, if selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2195
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

The camera perspective suitable for the respective driving situation is displayed.

Switching on/off manually

Press the park assistance button.

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

The rearview camera cannot be switched off if the reverse gear is engaged.

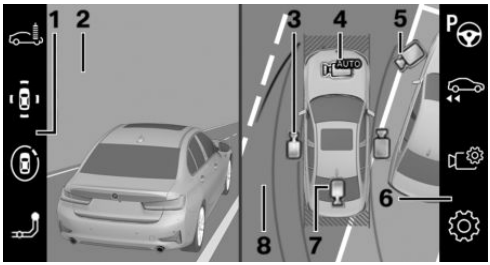
Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on, if needed.

Camera perspective

Overview



1 Function bar, left
2 Camera image
3 Side view
4 Automatic camera perspective
5 Movable unobstructed camera perspective
6 Function bar, right
7 Rearview camera
8 Selection window

Selection window

The individual camera perspectives can be selected in the selection window via iDrive.

Side view

The side view can be selected for the right or left vehicle side.

This view helps when positioning the vehicle at the curb or with other obstacles on the side by displaying the side surroundings.

The side view looks from rear to front and in case of danger, focuses automatically on possible obstacles.

Automatic camera perspective

The automatic camera perspective shows a steering-dependent view in the respective driving direction.

This perspective adapts to the respective driving situation.

As soon as obstacles are detected, the view changes to a fixed display of the area in front or at the rear behind the bumper or, if necessary, changes to a side view.

When reverse gear is engaged, the automatic camera perspective is closed and the system uses a fixed perspective of the rearview camera. If necessary, manually select the automatic camera perspective when reverse gear is engaged. The automatic camera perspective will be retained for the current parking maneuver.

Movable unobstructed camera perspective

With selection of the movable camera perspective, a circle appears on the Control Display.

By turning the Controller or via touch function, specified perspectives on the circle can be selected.

The current perspective is marked with a camera symbol.

With BMW Gesture Control: the movable camera perspective can be moved around the circle using BMW Gesture Control, refer to page 57.

To leave the function, move the Controller sideways and select another camera function.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2196
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Rearview camera

This view shows the picture of the rearview camera.

Function bars

Function bar on the right

Assistance functions, refer to page 246, can be activated via the right function bar and settings can be entered. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.

- "Autom. Parking", refer to page 250.
- "Back-up Assistant", refer to page 255.
- "Camera image"
  - "Brightness", refer to page 249.
  - "Contrast", refer to page 249.
  - "Parking aid lines", refer to page 246.
  - "Obstacle mark.", refer to page 247.
- "Settings": apply settings, for instance to use the activation points for Panorama View.

Function bar on the left

The left function bar can be used for the direct selection of various views. Move the Controller to the left, if needed.

- "Car wash", refer to page 247.
- "Parking": around the vehicle.
- "3D view": available camera, refer to page 245.

Assistance functions

General information

More than one assistance function can be active at the same time.

The following assistance functions can be manually activated:

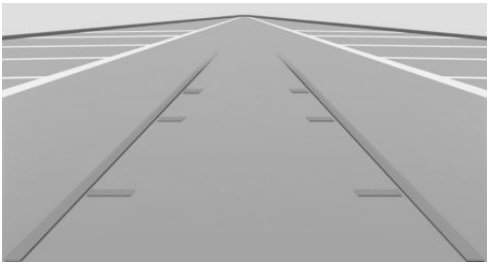
- "Parking aid lines".
- "Obstacle mark.".
- "Car wash".

The following assistance functions are automatically displayed:

- Side protection, refer to page 247.
- Door opening angle, refer to page 247.

Parking aid lines

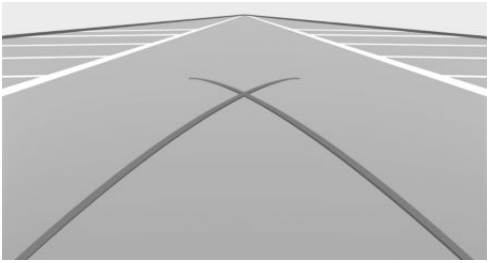
Pathway lines



Pathway lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.

Pathway lines depend on the steering angle and are continuously adjusted to the steering wheel movements.

Turning radius lines



Turning radius lines can only be superimposed on the camera image together with pathway lines.

Turning radius lines show the course of the smallest possible turning radius on a level road.

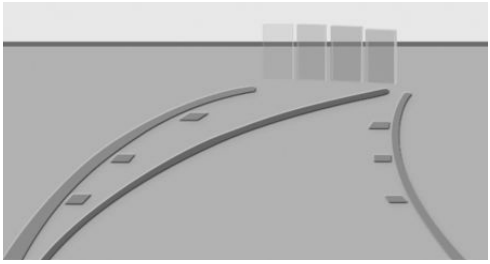
Only one turning radius line is displayed after the steering wheel is turned past a certain angle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2197
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Parking using pathway and turning radius lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the red turning radius line leads to within the limits of the parking space.
2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the green pathway line covers the corresponding turning radius line.

Obstacle marking

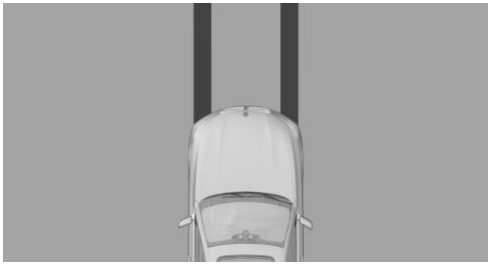


Obstacles behind the vehicle are detected by the PDC Park Distance Control sensors.

Obstacle markings can be shown in the camera image.

The colored thresholds of the obstacle markings match the markings of the PDC Park Distance Control.

Vehicle wash view



The vehicle wash view assists when entering a vehicle wash by displaying the floor and the vehicle's own track.

Side protection

Concept

The system warns of obstacles on the side of the vehicle.

Display

To protect the sides of the vehicle, obstacle markings are displayed on the sides of the vehicle.

- No markings: no obstacles were detected.
- Color markings: warning against detected obstacles.

Limits of side protection

The system only displays stationary obstacles that were previously detected by sensors while passing them.

The system does not detect whether an obstacle moves later on. For this reason, at standstill, the markings are not shown anymore in the display after a certain time. The area next to the vehicle must be newly captured.

Door opening angle

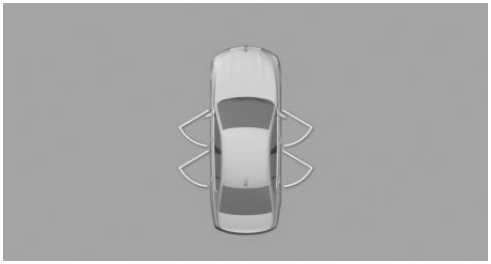
Concept

If obstacle marking is activated, the system indicates fixed obstacles that obstruct the opening angles of the doors.

The system does not provide a warning of approaching traffic.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2198

Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19



The maximum opening angle of the doors is displayed in selector lever position P.

As soon as the vehicle begins moving, the opening angles are replaced by parking aid lines.

Limits of the display

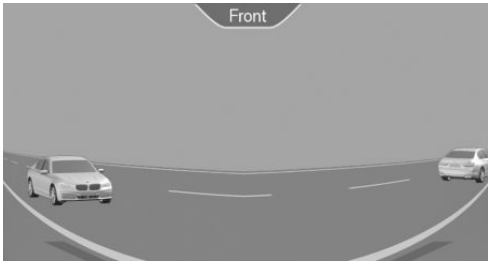
The vehicle surroundings are displayed with distorted image for technical reasons.

Even if the symbols for the door opening angles do not cross other objects on the Control Display, the following needs to be noted when parking next to other objects:

Because of the perspective, higher, protruding objects may be closer than they appear on the Control Display.

Panorama View

Concept



The system provides an early look at cross traffic at blind driveways and intersections.

General information

Road users concealed by obstacles to the left and right of the vehicle can only be detected relatively late from the driver's seat. The cameras in the front and rear capture the sideways traffic area to improve the view.

Yellow lines in the screen display mark the front and rear end of the vehicle.

The camera image shows different levels of distortion in some areas and is thus not suitable for distance estimations.

Display on the Control Display

Press the button when the engine is running.

Depending on the driving direction, the image of the respective camera is displayed:

- "front": front camera image.
- "rear": rear camera image.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, cross traffic warning, refer to page 261, can additionally warn against oncoming vehicles using radar sensors.

With navigation system: activation points

Concept

Positions where Panorama View should switch on automatically can be stored as activation points provided that a GPS signal is received.

General information

Up to ten activation points can be stored.

Activation points can be used when driving forward for the front camera.

Storing activation points

1. Drive to the position at which the system is to be switched on, and stop.
2. Press the button.
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Add activation point"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2199
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

The current position is displayed.

5. "Activation point"

Activation points are, if possible, stored with town/city and street address, or else with the GPS coordinates.

Using activation points

The use of activation points can be switched on and off.

1. Press the button.
2. Move the Controller to the right.
3. "Settings"
4. "Panorama View, GPS-based"
5. "Panorama View is displayed automatically when set activation points are reached."

Displaying activation points

1. Press the button.
2. Move the Controller to the right.
3. "Manage points"

   A list of all activation points is displayed.

Renaming or deleting activation points

1. Press the button.
2. Move the Controller to the right.
3. "Manage points"

   A list of all activation points is displayed.
4. Select an activation point as needed.
5. ▷ "Rename"
   ▷ "Delete activation point"
   ▷ "Delete all activation points"

Setting brightness and contrast

Brightness and contrast can be adjusted with Surround View or Panorama View switched on.

Via iDrive:

1. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.
2. "Camera image"
3. ▷ "Brightness"
   ▷ "Contrast"
4. Set the desired value.

Functional limitations

The system can be used only to a limited extent in the following situations:

- ▷ In poor light.
- ▷ In case of soiled cameras.
- ▷ With a door open.
- ▷ With the trunk lid open.
- ▷ With exterior mirrors folded in.

Gray hatched areas with symbol, for instance open door, in the camera image mark areas that are currently not displayed.

System limits

Non-visible areas

Because of the camera angle, the areas under the vehicle cannot be viewed by the cameras.

Detection of objects

Very low obstacles as well as high, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected by the system.

Some assistance functions also consider data from the PDC Park Distance Control.

Follow, refer to page 236, the notes in the PDC Park Distance Control chapter.

The objects displayed on the Control Display may be closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance from the objects on the display.

Malfunction

A camera malfunction is displayed on the Control Display.

A yellow symbol is displayed and the recording range of the malfunctioning camera is displayed in black on the Control Display.

Remote 3D View

Concept

With the proper equipment, the BMW Connected App and the camera images from Surround View can be used to display the vehicle surroundings on a mobile device such as a smartphone.

The function displays a momentary view of the situation.

Functional requirements

- Data transmission must be activated, refer to page 69.
- BMW Connected App must be installed on the mobile device.

Switching the function on/off

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. "Configure services"
6. "BMW ConnectedDrive"
7. "Remote 3D View"

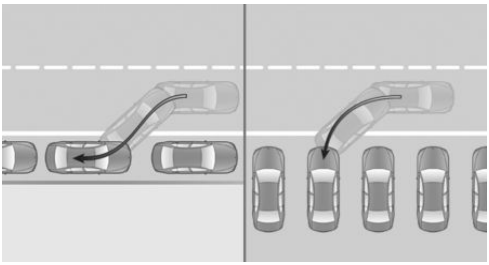
Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional or may not be available in the following situations:

- In poor light.
- In case of soiled cameras.
- With a door or the trunk lid open. Dark fields in the display indicate areas that are not recorded by the system.
- With exterior mirrors folded in.
- When other camera functions are being performed in the vehicle.
- When the vehicle moves faster than walking speed.
- It may not be possible to use the function in every country.
- For reasons of data protection, the function can only be used three times within two hours.

Parking Assistant

Concept



The system supports the driver in the following situations:

- When parking parallel to the road, parallel parking.
- Depending on the equipment version: when reverse parking diagonally to the road, diagonal parking. The system orients itself with the middle of the parking space during diagonal parking.
- Depending on the equipment version: when driving out of parallel parking spaces, refer to page 254.
- Depending on the equipment version: when exiting tight parking or street situations in reverse, see Back-up assistant, refer to page 255.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2201
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

General information

The functions for parking diagonally to the road, driving out of parallel parking spaces, and driving out in reverse may not be available. Contact your authorized dealer's service center or another qualified service center as to whether this additional function is currently in your vehicle or when it can be installed in your vehicle in the future.

Handling

Parking assistant handling is divided into three steps:

- Switching on and activating.
- Parking space search.
- Parking.

System status and instructions on required actions are displayed on the Control Display.

Ultrasound sensors measure parking spaces on both sides of the vehicle.

Steptronic transmission

The parking assistant calculates the best possible parking line and takes control of the following functions during the parking procedure:

- Steering.
- Accelerating and braking.
- Changing the gears.

Parking is automatic.

Remote Control Parking

The vehicle can be remotely parked and driven out, refer to page 257, in reverse if suitable forward-parking spaces are available.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

NOTICE

The parking assistant can steer the vehicle over or onto curbs. There is a risk of damage to property. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

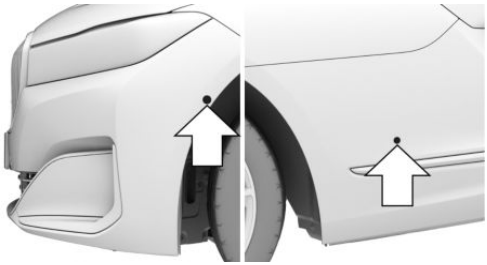
The safety information of the PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 236, applies in addition.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Ultrasound sensors



With the four side ultrasound sensors, arrows, and the ultrasound sensors in the bumpers, the

parking spaces are measured and the distances to obstacles determined.

Functional requirements

Ultrasound sensors

Ensure full functionality:

- Do not cover sensors, for instance with stickers.
- Keep the sensors clean and unobstructed.

For measuring parking spaces

- Maximum speed while driving forward approx. 22 mph/35 km/h.
- Maximum distance to row of parked vehicles: 5 ft/1.5 m.

Suitable parking space

General information:

- Gap behind an object that has a min. length of 1.7 ft/0.5 m.
- Gap between two objects with a minimum length of approx. 1.7 ft/0.5 m.

Parallel parking to the road:

- Min. length of gap between two objects: your vehicle's length plus approx. 2.6 ft/0.8 m.
- Minimum depth: approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.

Depending on the equipment version: diagonal parking:

- Minimum width of the gap: own vehicle's width plus approx. 2.3 ft/0.7 m.
- Minimum depth: your vehicle's length.

  The depth of diagonal parking spaces must be estimated by the driver. Due to technical limitations, the system is only able to approximate the depth of diagonal parking spaces.

For parking

- Doors and trunk lid are closed.
- Driver's safety belt is fastened.

Switching on and activating

Switching on with the button

Press the park assistance button.

The LED lights up.

The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.

Parking assistant is activated automatically.

Switching on with reverse gear

Shift into reverse.

The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.

To activate: "Autom. Parking"

Switching on via iDrive

Display of the rearview camera or PDC view must be active.

1. Move the Controller to the right.
2. Activate the parking assistant on the Control Display: "Autom. Parking"

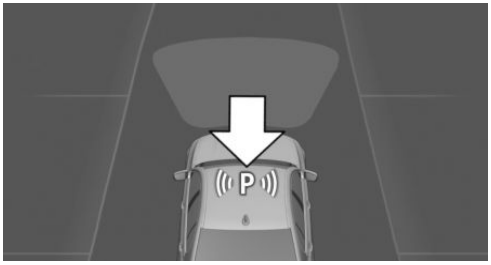
Display on the Control Display

System activated/deactivated

Symbol	Meaning
	Gray: the system is not available. White: the system is available but not activated.
	The system is activated.
	Parking space search is active.
	The parking procedure is active. Steering control has been taken over by system.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2203
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Parking space search and system status



- Parking assistant is activated and parking space search is active.
- Control Display shows suitable parking spaces at the edge of the road next to the vehicle symbol. When Park Assistant is active, suitable parking spaces are highlighted and an acoustic signal sounds. Switch signal tone on/off, refer to page 254.
- If a diagonal or parallel parking space is clearly detected, the system automatically adjusts the suitable parking method. In the case of parking spaces suitable for parallel and diagonal parking, a selection menu is displayed. In this case, the desired parking method must be selected manually.
- The parking procedure is active. Steering control has been taken over by system.
- Parking space search is always active whenever the vehicle is moving forward slow and straight, even if the system is deactivated. When the system is deactivated, the displays on the Control Display are shown in gray.

Parking using the parking assistant

Parking

1. Switching on and activating the parking assistant.

   Engage the reverse gear and activate the system or press the parking assistance button, refer to page 252, on the Control Display.

   Parking assistant is activated.
2. Pass the row of parked vehicles at a speed of up to approx. 22 mph/35 km/h and at a distance of maximum 5 ft/1.5 m.

   The status of the parking space search and possible parking spaces are displayed on the Control Display, refer to page 253.
3. Confirm the suggested parking space for the parking process: select the parking space on the Control Display.

   The system takes over the steering.
4. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

   At the end of the parking procedure, the P selector lever position is set.

   The end of the parking procedure is indicated on the Control Display.
5. Adjust the parking position yourself, if needed.

Interrupting manually

The parking assistant can be interrupted at any time:

- Press the park assistance button.
- "Autom. Parking" Select the symbol on the Control Display.

Interrupting automatically

The system is interrupted automatically in the following situations:

- If the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes over steering.
- Possibly on snow-covered or slippery road surfaces.
- When there are obstacles that are hard to overcome, such as curbs.
- When there are obstacles that suddenly appear.
- If the PDC Park Distance Control displays clearances that are too small.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2204

Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

- If a maximum number of parking attempts or the time taken for parking is exceeded.
- When switching to another function on the Control Display.
- If the trunk lid is open.
- If doors are open.
- When setting the parking brake.
- During acceleration.
- When the brake pedal remains pressed for an extended period while the vehicle is stationary.
- When unfastening the driver's safety belt.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Resuming

An interrupted parking procedure can be continued, if needed.

Reactivate the parking assistant, refer to page 252, and follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Switching off

The system can be switched off manually:

Press the park assistance button.

Switching signal tone for suitable parking spaces on/off

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. "Automatic Parking"
6. "Alert if parking space detected"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Depending on the equipment version: driving out of a parking space using the parking assistant

Concept

The system makes driving out of parallel parking spaces easier.

General information

This function may not be available. Contact your authorized dealer's service center or another qualified service center as to whether this additional function is currently in your vehicle or when it can be installed in your vehicle in the future.

Steptronic transmission

The parking assistant calculates an optimal line for pulling out of a parking space and takes control of the following functions during the maneuver:

- Steering.
- Accelerating and braking.
- Changing the gears.

The vehicle maneuvers automatically until the vehicle reaches a position in which the driver can drive out of the parking space without further steering movements.

Functional requirement

- The vehicle has been parked using the parking assistant.
- An obstacle has been detected in front of the vehicle.
- The parking space is at least 2.6 ft/0.8 m longer than your vehicle.

Driving out of parking spaces

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. Steptronic transmission:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2205
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Press the park assistance button or shift into reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary to switch on the parking assistant.

3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. Activate the parking assistant on the Control Display: "Autom. Parking"
5. On the Control Display, confirm the required direction for driving out of the parking space if necessary.
6. Steptronic transmission:

   The system takes control of the maneuver. A message will be displayed at the end of the maneuver.
7. Make sure that the traffic situation permits driving out of the parking space and drive off as usual.

   The parking assistant is switched off automatically.

Depending on the equipment version: back-up assistant

Concept

The system supports the driver when driving in reverse, for instance when driving out of tight parking or street situations.

The vehicle stores the driving movements of the last route before the vehicle is switched off. This stored route can be driven back with automated steering.

General information

This function may not be available. Contact your authorized dealer's service center or another qualified service center as to whether this additional function is currently in your vehicle or when it can be installed in your vehicle in the future.

The system takes control of the steering when driving in reverse along the stored route.

The driver controls driving the vehicle via accelerator pedal and brake.

Functional requirement

- Drive forward without interruption to store the route.
- A maximum of 165 ft/50 m will be stored.
- To store the route, do not exceed a driving speed of 22 mph/36 km/h.
- The return route must be at least 12 in./30 cm wider than your vehicle.

Driving back with automated steering

1. Press the park assistance button or shift into reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary and the drive-ready state is switched on.
2. Move the Controller to the right.
3. "Back-up Assistant"

   The system takes over the steering.

   The possible route is shown on the Control Display.
4. Take your hands off the steering wheel and carefully drive off with the accelerator pedal and the brake.

   When driving in reverse, pay attention to the vehicle's surroundings, and if you suddenly encounter an obstacle, stop immediately and take over control of the vehicle. Pay attention to the information from the PDC.
5. Follow the instructions on the Control Display where required.
6. Stop no later than when normal traffic is reached and take control of the vehicle, such as by shifting to a forward gear.

   At the end of the stored route, a signal will sound and a request will be displayed, also with the instruction to take control of the vehicle.

Terminating the system

The system automatically cancels in situations such as the following:

- If the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes over steering.
- When engaging a forward gear.
- After a few minutes when the vehicle is stationary.
- If the vehicle leaves the stored lane during reversing; for example, at the maximum steering angle.

Limits of the back-up assistant

- When you reach normal road traffic or if you suddenly encounter an obstacle, stop immediately and take over control of the vehicle.
- The maximum speed for driving in reverse is limited to approximately 6 mph/9 km/h.

  If the maximum speed is exceeded, a warning is issued and the function may be canceled.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

No parking assistance

The parking assistant does not offer assistance in the following situations:

- In tight curves.
- For diagonal parking spaces.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- On bumpy road surfaces such as gravel roads.
- On slippery ground.
- On steep uphill or downhill grades.
- With accumulations of leaves/snow in the parking space.
- With a mounted emergency wheel.
- In case of changes to an already-measured parking space.
- With ditches or edges, for instance an edge of a port.

Limits of ultrasonic measurement

Ultrasonic measurements might not function in the following situations:

- For small children and animals.
- For persons with certain clothing, for instance coats.
- With external interference of the ultrasound, for instance from passing vehicles or loud machines.
- When sensors are dirty, iced over, damaged or out of position.
- Under certain weather conditions, e.g., high relative humidity, wet conditions, snowfall, cold, extreme heat, or strong wind.
- With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.
- With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- With moving objects.
- With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges.
- With objects with corners, edges, and smooth surfaces.
- With objects with a fine surface structure such as fences.
- For objects with porous surfaces.
- With small and low objects, for instance boxes.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2207
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

- With obstacles and persons at the edge of the lane.
- With soft obstacles or obstacles covered in foam material.
- With plants and bushes.
- Low objects already displayed, for instance curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.
- Cargo that extends beyond the perimeter of the vehicle is not taken into account by the system.

Parking spaces that are not suitable may be detected or suitable parking spaces may not be detected at all.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

The parking assistant failed. Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Remote Control Parking

Concept

The vehicle can be remotely parked and driven out in reverse in the case of suitable forward-parking spaces, for instance a garage. The driver is not in the vehicle, but controls the parking procedure responsibly from the outside using the BMW display key, refer to page 83.

Stop the vehicles manually in the case of obstacles.

Using the BMW display key, the vehicle can be moved by approx. 2 times the vehicle length. The speed is approx. 1.1 mph/1.8 km/h.

General information

The following systems are included in the system:

- Parking assistant, refer to page 250.
- BMW display key, refer to page 83.
- PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 236.

Button on the BMW display key: the button on the side of the BMW display key must be pressed and held for the duration of the parking procedure so that the vehicle can move. Release the button for obstacles to manually stop the vehicle. The vehicle stops with emergency braking.

If the ultrasound sensors detect obstacles in the parking space or the end of the parking space, the system automatically stops the vehicle as needed.

The headlight is switched on for the duration of the procedure.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing traffic and parking situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all situations. There is a risk of accident. Watch traffic and parking situation closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

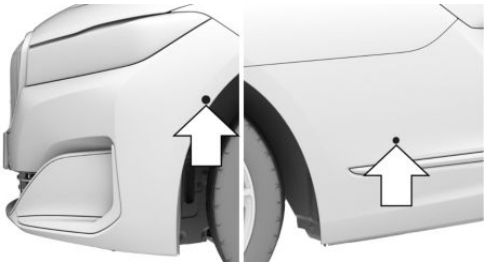
Unauthorized persons, for instance children, can move the vehicle using the BMW display key without anybody in the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Protect the BMW display key against unauthorized use.

NOTICE

The parking assistant can steer the vehicle over or onto curbs. There is a risk of damage to property. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

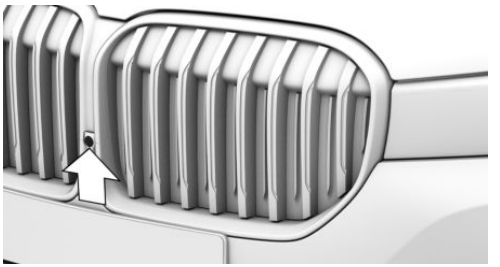
Ultrasound sensors



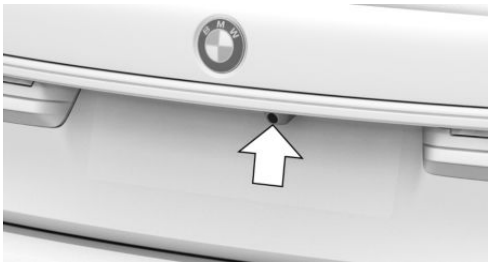
With the four side ultrasound sensors, arrows, and the ultrasound sensors in the bumpers, the parking spaces are measured and the distances to obstacles determined.

Cameras

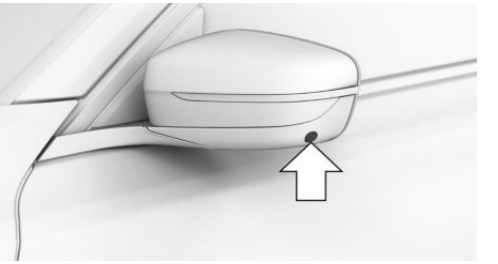
In addition to the ultrasonic sensors, the parking situation during Remote Control Parking is detected using four cameras.



Front camera.



Rearview camera.



One camera is located at the bottom of each exterior mirror housing.

Functional requirements

General information

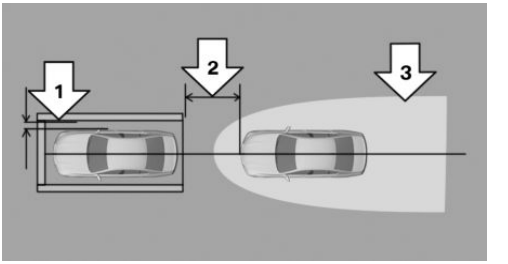
There are no occupants in the vehicle during the parking procedure.

Driver interventions in the vehicle's interior, such as steering, will cancel the function.

Cameras and ultrasound sensors

- Do not cover sensors, for instance with stickers.
- Keep sensors clean and unobstructed. Clean them as needed.
- Keep camera lenses clean and unobstructed. Clean them as needed.

Suitable parking space



- It is possible to forward-park into the parking space in a straight, centered line.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2209
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

- Width of the parking space: vehicle's own width without exterior mirrors, plus approx. 1.3 ft/0.4 m on each side, arrow 1.
- Distance to parking space, max. 6.5 ft/2 m, arrow 2.
- To move the vehicle with remote control, the driver must hold the BMW display key within the wireless range, arrow 3, outside the vehicle.

  Maximum distance from vehicle approx. 5 ft/1.5 m to approx. 13 ft/4 m.
- Uphill or downhill grades max. 5 %.
- No duplex garages.

Forward parking

Parking

While driving forward, the system applies minor steering corrections as needed.

1. Approach the parking space driving forward, centered and in a straight line. Stop at a distance of maximum 6.5 ft/2 m.
2. Engage selector lever position P and set the parking brake. Switch off the drive-ready state and engine using the Start/Stop button. Alternatively, the engine can continue to run.
3. All the occupants leave the vehicle. Closing the doors.
4. If necessary, switch on the display on the BMW display key, refer to page 83, and cancel the display block.

   On the BMW display key, change to the menu: "R/C parking"
5. Press and hold the button on the side of the BMW display key for the duration of the parking procedure.
6. Wait, until function readiness is indicated on the display. Observe possible SMS text messages.
7. "ENGINE START": tap the button to start the engine if necessary.
8. To start the parking procedure: touch the arrow symbol for "drive forward" on the display.

   Press and hold the button: the vehicle moves as long as the button is pressed. Release the button for obstacles within the driving range to stop the vehicle.

   For approach movements: touch the arrow symbol for "drive backward".
9. At the end of the parking procedure, release the button on the side of the BMW display key. The vehicle stops.

   "ENGINE STOP": tap the button.
   - The parking brake is set.
   - The engine is switched off.

   Lock the vehicle.

Cancel, pause, continue the parking procedure

To cancel or pause the parking procedure:

Release the button. The vehicle stops with emergency braking.

To continue the parking procedure:

Press the button again within 30 seconds.

Driving out in reverse

Driving out of parking spaces

When driving in reverse, the vehicle drives backward in a straight line without steering.

1. If necessary, switch on the display on the BMW display key, refer to page 83, and cancel the display block.
2. Unlock the vehicle.
3. On the BMW display key, change to the menu: "R/C parking"
4. Press and hold the button on the side of the BMW display key for the duration of the parking procedure.
5. Wait, until function readiness is indicated on the display. Observe possible SMS text messages.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2210

6. "ENGINE START": tap the button. The engine starts.
7. To start the reversing out procedure: touch the arrow symbol for "drive backward" on the display.

   Press and hold the button: the vehicle moves as long as the button is pressed. Release the button for obstacles within the driving range to stop the vehicle.
8. At the end of the reversing out procedure, release the button on the side of the BMW display key. The vehicle stops.
9. Enter using the BMW display key and drive off as normal.

   Alternatively, the vehicle can be switched off using the BMW display key:

   "ENGINE STOP": tap the button.

   ▷ The parking brake is set.

   ▷ The engine is switched off.

   Lock vehicle if it is unlocked.

Cancel, pause, continue the parking procedure

To cancel or pause the parking procedure:

Release the button. The vehicle stops with emergency braking.

To continue the parking procedure:

Press the button again within 30 seconds.

Messages on the BMW display key

The symbol identifies system messages.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

No parking assistance

The parking assistant does not offer assistance in the following situations:

- ▷ In tight curves.
- ▷ For diagonal parking spaces.
- ▷ At very high or very low external temperatures.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- ▷ On bumpy road surfaces such as gravel roads.
- ▷ On slippery ground.
- ▷ On steep uphill or downhill grades.
- ▷ With accumulations of leaves/snow in the parking space.
- ▷ With a mounted emergency wheel.
- ▷ In case of changes to an already-measured parking space.
- ▷ With ditches or edges, for instance an edge of a port.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2211
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Functional limitations due to radio interference

In the case of radio interference, functional limitations may occur, refer to page 86, during Remote Control Parking with the BMW display key.

Limits of ultrasonic measurement

Ultrasonic measurements might not function in the following situations:

- For small children and animals.
- For persons with certain clothing, for instance coats.
- With external interference of the ultrasound, for instance from passing vehicles or loud machines.
- When sensors are dirty, iced over, damaged or out of position.
- Under certain weather conditions, e.g., high relative humidity, wet conditions, snowfall, cold, extreme heat, or strong wind.
- With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.
- With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- With moving objects.
- With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges.
- With objects with corners, edges, and smooth surfaces.
- With objects with a fine surface structure such as fences.
- For objects with porous surfaces.
- With small and low objects, for instance boxes.
- With obstacles and persons at the edge of the lane.
- With soft obstacles or obstacles covered in foam material.
- With plants and bushes.
- Low objects already displayed, for instance curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.
- Cargo that extends beyond the perimeter of the vehicle is not taken into account by the system.

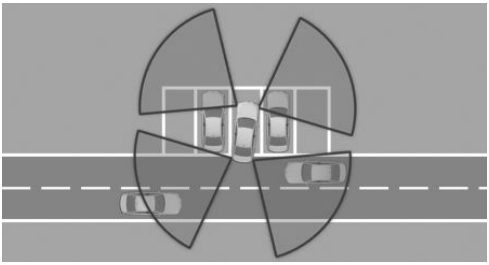
Parking spaces that are not suitable may be detected or suitable parking spaces may not be detected at all.

Cross traffic warning

Concept

At blind driveways or when driving out of diagonal parking spaces, approaching cross traffic is detected sooner by the system than is possible from the driver's seat.

General information



Two radar sensors in the rear bumper monitor the area behind the vehicle.

The system indicates approaching traffic.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the traffic area in front of the vehicle is monitored as well. Two additional radar sensors are located in the front bumpers.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Radar sensors

The radar sensors are located in the rear bumper.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, two additional radar sensors are located in the front bumpers.

Always keep the bumper in the area of the radar sensors clean and unobstructed.

Switching on/off

Activating/deactivating the system

1. Press the park assistance button.
2. Move the Controller to the right.
3. "Settings"
4. "Cross traffic warning"
5. "Cross traffic warning"

Or via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. "Cross traffic warning"
6. "Cross traffic warning"

Switching on automatically

If the system was activated on the Control Display, it is automatically switched on as soon as PDC Park Distance Control or Panorama View is active and a gear is engaged.

If reverse gear is engaged, the rear system is switched on.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2213
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the front system is switched on when a forward gear is engaged.

Switching off automatically

The system is automatically switched off in the following situations:

- When the speed exceeds walking speed.
- When a certain driving distance is exceeded.
- With an active parking operation of the parking assistant.

Warning

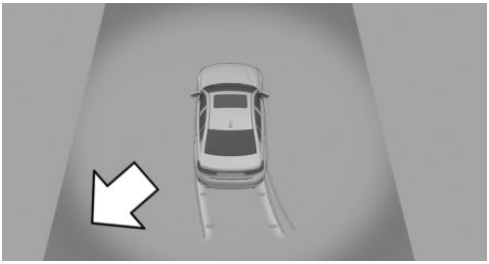
General information

The respective display is called up on the Control Display. A signal tone may sound and the light in the exterior mirror may flash.

Light in the exterior mirror

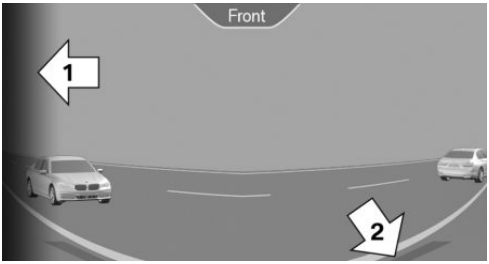
The light in the exterior mirror flashes if vehicles are detected by the rear sensors and your own vehicle is moving backwards.

Display in the PDC Park Distance Control view



In the PDC Park Distance Control view, the respective boundary area flashes red, if vehicles are detected by the sensors.

Display in the camera view



The respective boundary area, arrow 1, in the camera view flashes red, if vehicles are detected by the sensors.

Yellow lines, arrow 2, mark the bumper of your own vehicle.

Acoustic warning

In addition to the optical indicator, a warning signal sounds if your own vehicle moves into the respective direction.

System limits

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- If the speed of the approaching vehicle is very high.
- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2214
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

- In tight curves.
- If the bumper is dirty, iced up, or covered, for instance by stickers.
- If cargo protrudes.
- If crossing objects move at a very slow speed.
- If other objects are in the capture range of the sensors, that hide cross traffic.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2215
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Driving comfort

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Air suspension

Concept

Air suspension ensures best possible driving comfort under all load conditions. Due to a variable adjustment of the front and rear axles, the damping is adjusted to the vehicle state.

General information

In the case of an uneven road surface, the vehicle level can be elevated to increase ground clearance.

- Normal level, for normal road surface.
- Raised level, when the road surface is poor.

In the SPORT driving mode, refer to page 135, or at higher speeds, the vehicle lowers itself.

Safety information

Warning

Adjusting the vehicle height may result in trapped body parts or damaged vehicle parts. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. When adjusting the vehicle height, make sure that the areas of movement around the vehicle and at the wheel housing are free.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Level adjustment

Adjusting the level manually

Press the button.

In the low speed range, the vehicle is raised to the raised level with a press of the button.

Starting at a speed of approx. 20 mph/35 km/h the vehicle lowers itself automatically to the normal level.

Display

- LED off: normal level.
- LED flashes: level is being adjusted.
- LED lit: raised level.
- LED flashes rapidly: level adjustment not possible.

System limits

- It may not be possible to change the level during dynamic driving.

- It may only be possible to lift the vehicle level while the engine is running.
- If the state of charge of the vehicle battery is too low, a level change may not be possible.
- If level adjustment is activated frequently in quick succession, the system switches off to prevent overheating and is temporarily unavailable or operates with a delay. Let the system cool, if needed.

  The rapidly flashing LED on the button indicates that the system is unavailable.
- If the load is increased, the highest driving level may be locked or automatically exited in order to protect the system

Wheel change

Before a wheel change, deactivate the system:

Press the button and hold for approx. 7 seconds, until the LED flashes rapidly.

To activate system:

The system is activated again automatically when you drive away.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed. The system is impaired. Vehicle handling may be altered and driving comfort may be noticeably reduced. Visit the nearest dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Long periods when vehicle is parked

During long periods when the vehicle is parked, it can lower itself. This is not a malfunction.

If drive-ready state is switched on with the doors closed, the vehicle is raised to the normal level automatically.

Adaptive chassis

Concept

This system reduces undesirable vehicle motion when using a dynamic driving style or traveling on uneven road surfaces.

General information

This enhances the driving dynamics and driving comfort depending on the road surface condition and driving style.

Tuning

The system offers several different damping settings.

The damping settings are assigned to the different driving modes of the Driving Dynamics Control, refer to page 135.

Driving mode	Damper tuning
COMFORT ECO PRO	Balanced out
COMFORT PLUS	Comfortable
SPORT SPORT PLUS	Firm

Executive Drive Pro

Concept

Executive Drive Pro is an actively controlled chassis. The system increases driving comfort and minimizes the lateral tilt when driving around curves.

General information

For active control, this system uses the available information, for instance from the navigation system, the Driving style analysis and the camera-based look-ahead data.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2217
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

This information influences the control of the following systems, especially in ADAPTIVE driving mode, refer to page 137:

- Adaptive chassis, refer to page 266.
- Active roll stabilization, refer to page 267.

This further increases the agility and comfort of the vehicle.

The function may be restricted if the navigation data is invalid, outdated or not available, for example.

Active roll stabilization

Concept

The system reduces the lateral tilt of the vehicle that occurs during rapid driving in curves or during quick evasive maneuvers.

General information

The lateral tilt of the vehicle is balanced out by permanent adjustment on the front and rear axles. The vehicle is thus always stabilized.

Agility and driving comfort are increased under all driving conditions.

Tuning

The system offers several different tunings.

The tunings are assigned to the different driving modes of the Driving Dynamics Control, refer to page 135.

Driving mode	Tuning
COMFORT COMFORT PLUS ECO PRO	Comfortable
SPORT SPORT PLUS	Firm

Climate control

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Interior air quality

The air quality in the vehicle is improved by the following components:

- Emission tested passenger compartment.
- Microfilter.
- Air conditioning system to control the temperature, air flow and recirculated-air mode.

Depending on the equipment specification:

- Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter.
- Ionization.
- Fragrancing.
- Automatic recirculated-air control AUC.
- Parked-car ventilation.

Automatic climate control

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

Climate control functions

Button	Function
	Temperature, refer to page 269.
A/C	Climate control operation, refer to page 270.
MAX A/C	Maximum cooling, refer to page 270.
AUTO	AUTO program, refer to page 270.
	Recirculated-air mode, refer to page 271.
	Air flow, manual, refer to page 272.
	Air distribution, manual, refer to page 272.
SYNC	SYNC program, refer to page 272.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2219
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Button	Function
MAX	Defrost and defog window, refer to page 273.
	Rear window defroster, refer to page 273.
	Active seat ventilation, refer to page 126.
	Seat heating, refer to page 125.
	Seat and armrest heating, refer to page 125.
	Ambient air package, refer to page 281.

Switching on/off

Switching on

Press any button except for the following:

- Rear window defroster.
- Left side of air flow button.
- SYNC program.
- Seat heating.
- Seat ventilation.

Switching off

- Complete system:

  Press and hold the left button on the driver's side until the control panel switches off.
- On the front passenger side:

  Press and hold the left button on the front passenger side.

Temperature

Concept

The automatic climate control achieves the set temperature as quickly as possible, if needed, by using the maximum cooling or heating capacity, and then keeps it constant.

Adjusting

Turn the wheel to set the desired temperature.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Driver" or "Front passenger"
6. "Temperature:"
7. Set the desired temperature.
8. "OK"

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. Otherwise, the automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

Temperature of the ventilation

General information

The temperature of the ventilation in the upper body region can be adjusted.

The temperature is individually adjusted, e.g. colder toward blue, warmer toward red.

The air flow of the ventilation in the upper body region heats or cools noticeably, depending on the adjusted temperature.

This does not change the set interior temperature for the driver and front passenger.

Adjusting

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"

3. "Climate control"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Driver" or "Front passenger"
6. "Temp. adjustment upper body"
7. Set the desired temperature:
   - ▷ Toward blue: colder.
   - ▷ Toward red: warmer.

Air conditioning

Concept

The air in the car's interior will be cooled and dehumidified and, depending on the temperature setting, warmed again.

The car's interior can only be cooled with the drive-ready state switched on.

Switching on/off

A/C Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with air conditioning switched on.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "A/C"

Air conditioning is switched on with the engine running.

Depending on the weather, the windshield and side windows may fog up briefly when drive-ready state is switched on.

The cooling function is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops and collects underneath the vehicle.

Maximum cooling

Concept

The system is set to the lowest temperature, optimum air flow and recirculated-air mode with the drive-ready state switched on.

General information

The function is available with external temperatures above approx. 32 °F/0 °C and with the drive-ready state switched on.

Switching on/off

MAX A/C Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the system switched on.

Air flows out of the vents to the upper body region. The vents need to be open for this.

Adjust air flow on the driver's side with the program active.

AUTO program

Concept

The AUTO program cools, ventilates or heats the car's interior automatically.

The air distribution and temperature are controlled automatically depending on the temperature in the car's interior and the desired temperature setting including the selected intensity of the air flow.

Switching on/off

AUTO Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the AUTO program switched on.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2221
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Driver" or "Front passenger"
6. "Automatic"

Depending on the selected temperature, the intensity of the AUTO program, and outside influences, the air is directed to the windshield, side windows, upper body, and into the floor area.

The air conditioning, refer to page 270, is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

Point the side vents toward the side windows.

At the same time, a condensation sensor controls the program so as to prevent window condensation as much as possible.

The AUTO program is switched off automatically, when manual air distribution is set.

Intensity

With the AUTO program switched on, the intensity can be adjusted. This changes the automatic control for the air flow and air distribution.

Press the left or right side of the button: to decrease or increase intensity.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Driver" or "Front passenger"
6. "Level"
7. Set the desired intensity.

The selected intensity is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

Automatic recirculated-air control AUC

Concept

The automatic recirculated-air control AUC recognizes odors or pollutants in the outside air.

The outside air supply is shut off and the interior air is recirculated.

General information

If the system is activated, a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and controls the shut-off automatically.

If the system is deactivated, outside air continuously flows into the car's interior.

With constant recirculated-air mode, the air quality in the car's interior deteriorates and window fogging increases.

Switching on/off

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. If necessary, "Air quality"
5. "Auto-recirculate"

If there is window condensation, switch off recirculated-air mode or defog the windows, refer to page 273.

Recirculated-air mode

Concept

You may react to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air flow within the vehicle.

Operation

Press the button:

The LED is illuminated when recirculated-air mode is switched on. The supply of outside air is shut off.

When recirculated-air mode is switched off, fresh air is directed into the vehicle's interior.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2222

Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Air quality"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "Fresh air"
   - "Air recirculation"
   - "Auto-recirculate"

To prevent window fogging, recirculated-air mode switches off automatically after a certain amount of time, depending on the environmental conditions.

With constant recirculated-air mode, the air quality in the car's interior deteriorates and window fogging increases.

If there is window condensation, switch off recirculated-air mode or defog the windows, refer to page 273.

Adjusting the air flow manually

Concept

The air flow for climate control can be adjusted manually.

General information

To adjust the air flow manually switch off AUTO program first.

Operation

Press the left or right side of the button: to decrease or increase air flow.

The selected air flow is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

The air flow of the automatic climate control may be reduced automatically to save battery power.

Adjusting the air distribution manually

Concept

The air distribution for climate control can be adjusted manually.

Operation

Press the button repeatedly to select a program:

- Windows, upper body region, and floor area.
- Upper body region and floor area.
- Floor area.
- Windows and floor area.
- Windows: driver's side only.
- Windows and upper body.
- Upper body region.

The selected air distribution is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

If there is window condensation, defog the windows, refer to page 273.

SYNC program

Concept

Depending on the equipment, the following settings of the driver's side can be transferred to the front-passenger side and the rear:

- Temperature.
- Air flow.
- Air distribution.
- AUTO program.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the SYNC program switched on.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2223
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Synchronize"

The program is switched off automatically if the settings on the front passenger side or in the rear are changed.

To defrost windows and remove condensation

Concept

Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

Switching on/off

MAX Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the system switched on.

The air flow can be adjusted manually with the system switched on.

AUTO If there is window condensation, press the button on the driver's side or switch on air conditioning to utilize the condensation sensor. Make sure that air can flow to the windshield.

Rear window defroster

Press the button. The LED lights up.

The function is available with the engine running.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter

The microfilter removes dust and pollen from the incoming air.

The activated-charcoal filter also removes gaseous pollutants from the outside air that enters the vehicle.

Have this combined filter changed during vehicle maintenance, refer to page 368.

Ventilation

Concept

The air flow directions can be individually adjusted.

Adjusting the ventilation

General information

The air flow directions can be adjusted for direct or indirect ventilation.

Open the vents and position them in a way that ensures effective climate control.

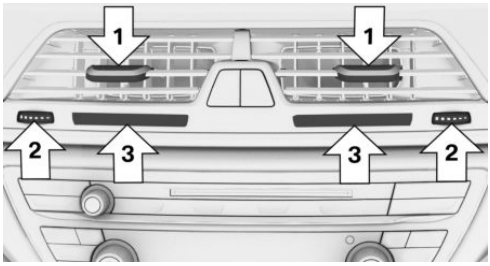
Direct ventilation

The air flow is directed towards the passengers. The air flow heats or cools noticeably, depending on the adjusted temperature.

Indirect ventilation

The air flow is not directed towards the passengers. The car's interior is warmed or cooled indirectly, depending on the set temperature.

Front ventilation



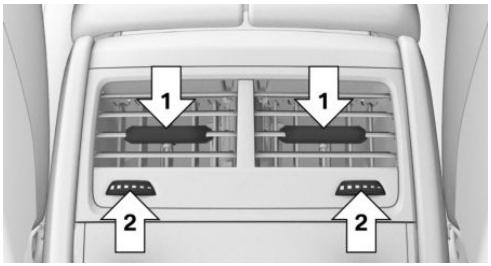
▷ Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 1.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2224
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

- Thumbwheel for variable opening and closing of the vents, arrow 2.
- Touch sensor or thumbwheel to vary the ventilation temperature, arrow 3.

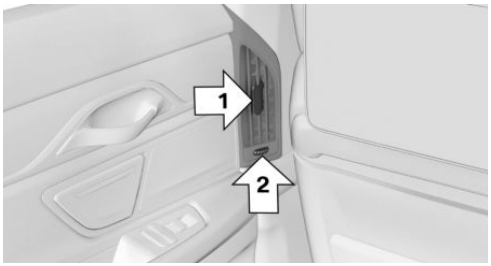
  With touch sensor, push the marking in the desired direction:

Ventilation in rear, center



- Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 1.
- Thumbwheel for variable opening and closing of the vents, arrow 2.

Ventilation in the rear, on the side



- Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 1.
- Thumbwheel for variable opening and closing of the vents, arrow 2.

Rear automatic climate control

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

Climate control functions

Button	Function
	Temperature, refer to page 275
	Maximum cooling, refer to page 275.
	AUTO program, refer to page 275.
	Air flow, manual, refer to page 276.
	Air distribution, manual, refer to page 276.
	Active seat ventilation, refer to page 126.
	Seat heating, refer to page 125.
	Seat and armrest heating, refer to page 125.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2225
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Switching on/off

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Second row of seats"
6. "Activate heating/cooling"

The rear automatic climate control is not ready for operation if the automatic climate control is switched off or if the function for defrosting the windows and removing condensation is active.

Using the button: switching on

Press any button except for the following:

- ▷ Left side of air flow button.
- ▷ Seat heating.
- ▷ Seat ventilation.

Using the button: switching off

Press and hold the left side of the button.

Temperature

Concept

The automatic climate control achieves the set temperature as quickly as possible, if needed, by using the maximum cooling or heating capacity, and then keeps it constant.

Adjusting

Turn the wheel to set the desired temperature.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Second row of seats"
6. "Driver" or "Front passenger"
7. "Temperature"
8. Set the desired temperature.

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. Otherwise, the automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

Maximum cooling

Concept

The system is set to the lowest temperature, optimum air flow and recirculated-air mode with the drive-ready state switched on.

General information

The function is available with external temperatures above approx. 32 °F/0 °C and with the drive-ready state switched on.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the system switched on.

Air flows out of the vents to the upper body region. The vents need to be open for this.

AUTO program

Concept

Air flow, air distribution and temperature are controlled automatically.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2226

Switching on/off

AUTO Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the AUTO program switched on.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Second row of seats"
6. "Automatic"

Depending on the selected temperature, the AUTO intensity, and outside influences, the air is directed to the upper body and into the floor area.

Intensity

With the AUTO program activated, the automatic intensity control can be changed:

Press the left or right side of the button: to decrease or increase intensity.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Heating/ventilation"
5. "Second row of seats"
6. "Level"
7. Set the desired intensity.

The air flow and air distribution are controlled automatically depending on the selected intensity.

The selected intensity is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

Controlling the air flow manually

Concept

The air flow for climate control can be adjusted manually.

General information

To adjust the air flow manually switch off AUTO program first.

Operation

Press the left or right side of the button: to decrease or increase air flow.

The selected air flow is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

Controlling the air distribution manually

Concept

The air distribution for climate control can be adjusted manually.

Operation

Press the button repeatedly to select a program:

- Upper body region.
- Upper body region and floor area.
- Floor area.

BMW Touch Command

Operation of the rear automatic climate control is also possible via BMW Touch Command.

Parked-car ventilation

Concept

The car's interior can be cooled or heated before driving off with the parked-car ventilation. Depending on set temperature and ambient tem-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2227
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

perature, the car's interior is ventilated or possibly heated using the residual engine heat.

General information

The system can be switched on and off directly or via a preset departure time.

The activation time is determined based on the external temperature. The system promptly switches on before the selected departure time.

Functional requirements

- The vehicle is in idle state or standby state and not in drive-ready state.
- Battery is sufficiently charged.

  If parked-car ventilation is switched on, the vehicle battery will be discharged. Thus, limit the maximum activation time to save the vehicle battery. The system will be available again after the engine is started or after a short trip.
- Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.
- Open the vents to allow air to flow out.

Switching on/off directly

General information

There are different ways to switch the system on or off.

The system switches off automatically after a certain period of time. The system continues to run for some time after being switched off.

Using the button

When the vehicle is in standby state, the parked-car ventilation can be switched on or off via the automatic climate control buttons.

Press any button except:

- Rear window defroster.
- Left side of air flow button.
- Seat heating.
- Seat ventilation.
- SYNC program.

The system switches off after leaving and locking the vehicle.

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Pre-ventilation" or "Pre-heating/ventilation"
5. "Start now"

Via BMW display key

Switching on

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Precondit. setting"
3. Tap the symbol or the symbol.
4. "Activate now"
5. "Start"

Switching off

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Precondit. setting"
3. Tap the symbol or the symbol.
4. "Stop"

Display

symbol on the automatic climate control indicates the system is switched on.

REST is displayed on the automatic climate control. The residual engine heat is used.

Departure time

Concept

Different departure times can be set to ensure a comfortable interior temperature in the vehicle at the time of departure.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2228
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

- One-time departure time: the time can be set.

  The system is switched on once.
- Departure time with weekday: time and day of the week can be set.

  On the desired weekdays, the system will be switched on promptly before the set departure time.

The departure time is preselected in two steps:

- Set departure times.
- Activate departure times.

Setting the departure time

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Pre-ventilation" or "Pre-heating/ventilation"
5. "Departure schedule"
6. Select the desired departure time.
7. Set the departure time.
8. Select day of the week, if needed.

Via BMW display key

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Precondit. setting"
3. Tap the symbol or the symbol.
4. Select the desired departure time.
5. Set the departure time.
6. Select day of the week, if needed.
7. "OK"

Activating the departure time

Functional requirement

If a departure time is to influence the switching on of parked-car ventilation, the respective departure time must be activated first.

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Pre-ventilation" or "Pre-heating/ventilation"
5. "Preconditioning for departure"
6. "Departure schedule"
7. Activate the desired departure time.

Via BMW display key

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Precondit. setting"
3. Tap the symbol or the symbol.
4. Tap on the symbol.
5. Activate the desired departure time.

Display

, Symbol on the climate control display signals an activated departure time.

Stationary climate control through Remote Engine Start

Concept

Stationary climate control cools or heats the car's interior prior to departure to a comfortable temperature. The system automatically cools, vents, and heats depending on the interior, external, and set temperature. Snow and ice may be removed more easily.

The system starts the engine automatically and allows it to run for a limited period of time.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2229
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Safety information

DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can pollute the area in and around the vehicle or enter into the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas or areas with insufficient ventilation, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation. Do not switch on stationary climate control in enclosed areas or areas with insufficient ventilation, e.g. in enclosed garages.

Warning

When stationary climate control is in operation, high temperatures can occur underneath the body, for instance caused by the exhaust gas system. If combustible materials, such as leaves or grass, come in contact with hot parts of the exhaust gas system, these materials can ignite. There is a risk of fire. Make sure that no combustible materials can come in contact with hot vehicle parts during stationary climate control operation, e.g. leaves, grass, gas, gasoline, oil or other combustible objects.

Functional requirements

- The vehicle is in idle state or standby state and not in drive-ready state.
- Battery is sufficiently charged.
- For reasons of safety, the system can only be switched on twice consecutively. The system will be available again as soon as the drive-ready state is activated and deactivated again.
- The fuel tank capacity is sufficient.
- Hood is closed.
- Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.
- Open the vents to allow air to flow out.

Enabling the automatic engine start function

The automatic engine start must be enabled before using the system.

Otherwise, the engine cannot switch on automatically to climatize the car's interior.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Preconditioning/ventilation"
5. If necessary, "Remote Engine Start"
6. "Starting engine for clim. control"
7. Confirm the disclaimer.

Confirmation signals from the vehicle

The activation of the system is confirmed by flashing twice.

The parking lights are switched on as long as the system is switched on.

Switching on/off directly

General information

There are different ways to switch the system on or off:

- Via iDrive.
- Via remote control.
- Via BMW display key.

The system switches off automatically after approx. 15 minutes.

For reasons of safety, the system can only be switched on twice consecutively. The system will be available again as soon as the drive-ready state is activated and deactivated again.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2230
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Preconditioning/ventilation"
5. "Start now"

Via remote control

The system can be switched on and off using the remote control.

Press the button on the remote control three times within 1 second.

After operating the remote control, it will take approximately 3 seconds until the engine is switched on.

To switch off the system, press the button again three times.

Via BMW display key

Switching on:

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Precondit. setting"
3. Tap on the symbol.
4. "Activate now"
5. "Start"

Switching off:

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Precondit. setting"
3. Tap on the symbol.
4. "Stop"

Display

Symbol	Description
	Symbol on the BMW display key for automatic climate control. The symbol flashes while Remote Engine Start is running.

Climatization for the requested departure time

General information

Scheduled departure times can be set up in the system to ensure a comfortable interior temperature in the vehicle at the time of departure.

- One-time departure time: the time of the scheduled departure can be set.

  The system is switched on once.
- Departure time with weekday: time and day of the week of the scheduled departure can be set.

  On the desired weekdays, the system will be switched on 10 minutes before the set departure time.

The departure time is preselected in two steps:

- Set departure times.
- Activate departure times.

The climate control function will start approximately 10 minutes before the set departure time and continue for 5 more minutes after the departure time.

For reasons of safety, the system can only be switched on twice consecutively. The system will be available again as soon as the drive-ready state is activated and deactivated again.

Observe the information about the intended use of the vehicle, refer to page 10.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2231
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Setting the departure time

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Preconditioning/ventilation"
5. Select the desired departure time.
6. Set the departure time.
7. Select day of the week, if needed.

Via BMW display key

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Precondit. setting"
3. Tap on the symbol.
4. Select the desired departure time.
5. Set the departure time.
6. Select day of the week, if needed.
7. "OK"

Activating the departure time

Functional requirement

If a requested departure time is to influence the switching on of the system, the respective departure time must be activated first.

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Preconditioning/ventilation"
5. Activate the desired departure time.

, The symbol on the automatic climate control signals an activated departure time

Via BMW display key

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Precondit. setting"
3. Tap on the symbol.
4. Activating the desired departure time:
   Tap on the symbol.

The symbol on the automatic climate control signals an activated departure time.

Display in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Description
READY	The engine runs for the purpose of operating the stationary climate control. The vehicle is not ready to drive.

Ambient air package

Concept

The Ambient Air Package can be used to clean and scent the interior air with high-quality fragrances.

Ionization is used to clean the air from suspended particles. Together with the selected fragrance, ionization contributes to well-being and relaxation while driving.

General information

Two different fragrances can be selected in the vehicle. A variety of other fragrances is possible by replacing the fragrance cartridges.

The following criteria can influence the perception of scents in the car's interior:

- Automatic climate control settings.
- Temperature and air humidity.
- Time of day and season.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2232

- Physical condition of the vehicle occupants, for instance fatigue.

BMW recommends the use of genuine BMW fragrance cartridges.

The genuine BMW fragrance cartridges are not suitable for refilling. When a cartridge is empty, replace it with a new fragrance cartridge.

Safety information

Warning

Refilled genuine BMW fragrance cartridges can cause the emission of harmful substances, malfunctions, and damage to the system. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not refill genuine fragrance cartridges. When a cartridge is empty, replace it with a new fragrance cartridge.

Ionization

Concept

Ionization cleans the car's interior air of suspended particles.

Switching on/off

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Air quality"
5. "Ionization"

Fragrancing

General information

Fragrancing is done at intervals in order to avoid a habituation effect.

Two fragrance cartridges in the vehicle allow switching between the fragrances.

The fragrance cartridges are located in the glove compartment.

To ensure a pleasant fragrance inside of the vehicle when starting the trip, fragrancing can occur prior to the trip. The system is automatically switched on with the parked-car ventilation if fragrancing was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Overview

Button in the center console

Fragrancing

Functional requirements

- Fragrance cartridges are sufficiently filled.
- Interior temperature between 41 °F/+5 °C and 104 °F/+40 °C.
- Open the vents to allow the fragrance to flow out.

Selecting the fragrance

The car's interior is fragranced depending on the selected fragrance.

Two different fragrances can be selected in the vehicle.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Fragrance"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2233
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

5. "Fragrance"
6. Select the desired fragrance.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Switching fragrancing on/off, adjusting intensity

Using the button

Press the button once for each intensity level.

Highest intensity if three bars are shown on the climate control display.

Fragrancing is switched off if no bars are displayed.

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Fragrance"
5. "Fragrance"

   Fragrancing is switched on or off.
6. "Level"
7. Select the desired setting.

Display

General information

With operation via button, the menu of the Ambient Air Package can be displayed on the Control Display automatically.

Adjusting

Further settings can be adjusted.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Fragrance"
5. "Show fragrance setting"

The menu is shown on the Control Display.

Fragrance cartridge filling level

The illustrations on the Control Display show the actual filling level of the fragrance cartridges.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Fragrance"

   The fill level of the current fragrance is displayed.
5. Select the desired setting.

When an empty fragrance cartridge is indicated, the cartridge still contains a fluid carrying the fragrance. However, it is not sufficient for fragrancing.

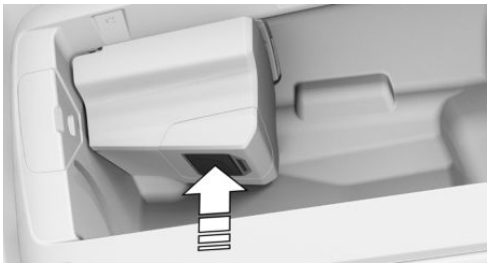
When a fragrance cartridge requires replacement, a Check Control message is displayed

Inserting fragrance cartridges

The fragrance cartridges are located in the glove compartment.

1. Open the glove compartment, refer to page 298.
2. Press on the bottom of the cartridge holder.

   The cartridge holder slides down.

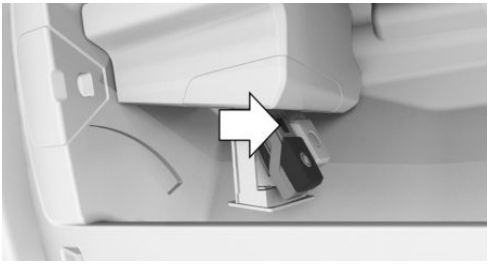


BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2234

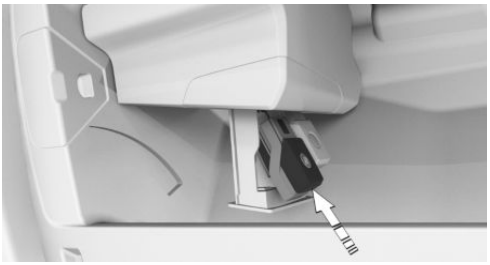
3. Remove the cover of the fragrance cartridge. Hold the cover on the top to slide it from the fragrance cartridge.

4. Insert the removed cover on the back side of the fragrance cartridge.

5. Position fragrance cartridge such that the chip faces away from the cartridge holder.



6. Insert the fragrance cartridge without pressure into the cartridge holder. The cartridge snaps lightly into place.



7. Push the cartridge holder up, until it engages.

   Make sure that no objects press against the cartridge holder from below, otherwise the function of the ambient air package could be impacted.

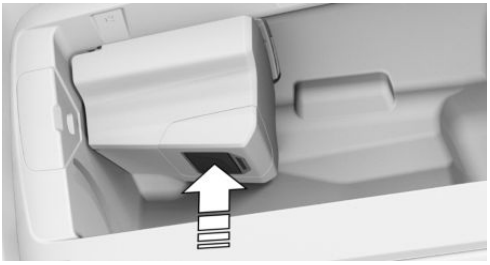
8. Close the glove compartment.

Removing the fragrance cartridge

The fragrance cartridges are located in the glove compartment.

1. Open the glove compartment, refer to page 298.
2. Press on the bottom of the cartridge holder.

   The cartridge holder slides down.

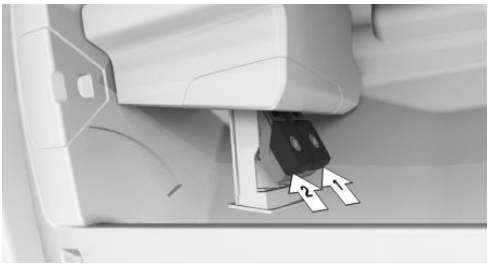


3. Pull desired fragrance cartridge from the holder.

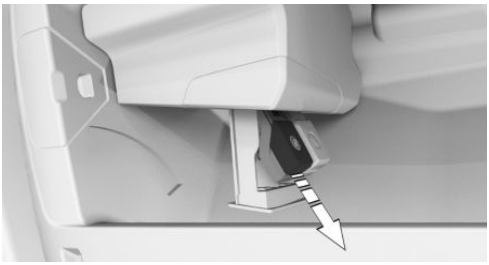
   Fragrance cartridge, arrow 1: first fragrance indicated on the Control Display.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2235
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Fragrance cartridge, arrow 2: second fragrance indicated on the Control Display.



4. Pull desired fragrance cartridge from the holder.



Recycling

Empty fragrance cartridges can be taken to a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop for recycling.

BMW Touch Command

The Ambient Air Package can also be operated using BMW Touch Command.

Using climate control functions via voice

General information

- Instructions for the voice activation system, refer to page 54.
- With voice operation, you can change between voice operation, iDrive and buttons.
- To have the available voice commands read out loud: ›Voice commands‹ or ›Help‹.

Using the voice activation system

Most climate control functions can be used via voice in the car's interior, e.g.:

- Activation of the air conditioner: ›Activate climate control‹.
- Deactivation of the automatic recirculated-air function: ›Deactivate ... air recirculation‹.
- Configuration of a specific temperature: ›Temperature [...] at ...‹.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2236

Interior equipment

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Integrated Universal Remote Control

Concept

The integrated Universal Remote Control in the interior mirror can operate up to 3 functions of remote-controlled systems such as garage door drives, barriers, or lighting systems.

General information

The Integrated Universal Remote Control replaces up to 3 different hand-held transmitters. To operate the remote control, the buttons on the interior mirror must be programmed with the desired functions. The hand-held transmitter for the particular system is required in order to program the remote control.

Before selling the vehicle, delete the stored functions for the sake of security.

If possible, do not install the antenna of the remote-controlled system, e.g. the garage door drive, near metal objects to ensure the best possible operation.

Safety information

Warning

The operation of remote-controlled systems with the integrated universal remote control, such as the garage door, may result in injury, for example, body parts becoming jammed in a garage door. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety information of the hand-held transmitter.

Compatibility

If this symbol is printed on the packaging or in the owner's manual of the system to be controlled, the system is generally compatible with the integrated Universal Remote Control.

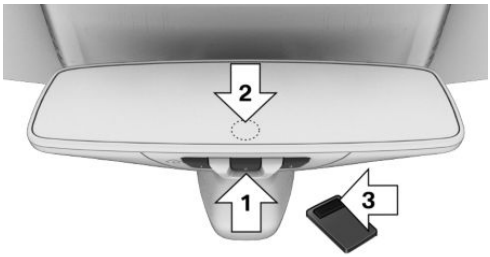
Additional questions are answered by:

- A dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
- www.homelink.com on the Internet.

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2237
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Control elements on the interior mirror



- ▷ Buttons, arrow 1.
- ▷ LED, arrow 2.
- ▷ The hand-held transmitter, arrow 3, is required for programming.

Programming

General information

The battery of the hand-held transmitter must be fully charged at the time of programming to ensure an optimal range of the integrated universal remote control.

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Initial setup:

   Press and hold the two outer buttons on the interior mirror simultaneously for approximately 10 seconds until the LED flashes green rapidly. This erases all programming of the buttons on the interior mirror.
3. Press the interior mirror button to be programmed. The LED on the interior mirror will slowly begin flashing orange.
4. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be used approx. 1 to 12 in/2.5 to 30 cm away from the buttons on the interior mirror. The required distance depends on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter.

   Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.
6. ▷ The LED lights up green: programming completed.

   Release the button.

   ▷ The LED flashes fast: programming is not complete.

   Press the button on the interior mirror for 2 seconds and release. Perform this procedure three times to complete the programming procedure.

   If the integrated universal remote control remains nonoperational, continue with the special features for change code wireless systems.

   ▷ LED does not flash green after 60 seconds: programming not completed.

   Repeat steps 3 to 6.

To program other functions on other buttons, repeat steps 3 to 5.

Special feature of the rolling code wireless system

If you are unable to operate the remote-controlled system after repeated programming, please check if the system to be controlled features a rolling code radio system.

Refer to the owner's manual for the system.

For systems with a rolling code radio system, the integrated Universal Remote Control and the system also have to be synchronized.

Please read the owner's manual to find out how to synchronize the system.

Synchronizing is easier with the aid of a second person.

Synchronizing the universal remote control with the system:

1. Park the vehicle within range of the remote-controlled system.
2. Program the relevant button on the interior mirror as described.
3. Locate and press the synchronizing button on the system being programmed, e.g. at the garage gate. You have approx. 30 seconds for the next step.
4. Hold down the programmed button on the interior mirror for approximately 3 seconds and then release it. If necessary, repeat this step up to three times in order to finish synchronization. Once synchronization is complete, the programmed function will be carried out.

Reprogramming individual buttons

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Press and hold the interior mirror button to be programmed.
3. As soon as the LED on the interior mirror flashes orange after approx. 20 seconds, release the button.
4. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be used approx. 1 to 12 in/2.5 to 30 cm away from the buttons on the interior mirror. The required distance depends on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter.

   Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.
6. The LED can light up in different ways.
   - ▷ The LED lights up green: the programming procedure is completed.

     Release the button.
   - ▷ The LED flashes fast: the hand-held transmitter was detected but programming is not complete.

     Press the button on the interior mirror for 2 seconds and release. Perform this procedure three times to complete the programming procedure.

     If the integrated universal remote control remains nonoperational, continue with the special features for change code wireless systems.
   - ▷ LED does not flash green after 60 seconds: programming not completed.

     Repeat steps 3 to 6.

If the programming procedure is not completed, the previous programming will remain unchanged.

Operation

Warning

The operation of remote-controlled systems with the integrated universal remote control, such as the garage door, may result in injury, for example, body parts becoming jammed in a garage door. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety information of the hand-held transmitter.

The system, such as the garage door, can be operated using the button on the interior mirror while the drive-ready or standby state is switched on. To do this, hold down the button within receiving range of the system until the function is activated. The interior mirror LED stays lit while the wireless signal is being transmitted.

Deleting stored functions

All stored functions will be deleted. The functions cannot be deleted individually.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2239
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Press and hold the two outer buttons on the interior mirror simultaneously for approximately 10 seconds until the LED on the interior mirror flashes green rapidly.

Sun visor

Glare shield

Fold the sun visor down or up.

Glare shield from the side

Folding out

1. Fold the sun visor down.
2. Unhook it from the holder and swing it to the side.
3. Move it back to the desired position.

Folding up

Proceed in the reverse order to close the sun visor.

Vanity mirror

A vanity mirror is located in the sun visor behind a cover. When the cover is opened, the mirror lighting switches on.

Ashtray

Front center console

Opening

1. Push the cover forward until it engages behind the cup holders.

2. Push the cover forward again until it engages behind the storage compartment.
3. Fold the cover upward.

Emptying

1. Pull the ashtray with the closed cover out of the cup holder.

2. Turn the lid counterclockwise to open it.

3. Empty the container.

   Always empty the ashtray with the container open to prevent contamination of the lid.

Rear door

Opening

Press on the cover.

Emptying

Grasp the insert on the side and remove it.

Cigarette lighter

Safety information

Warning

Contact with the hot heating element or the hot socket of the cigarette lighter can cause burns. Flammable materials can ignite if the cigarette lighter falls down or is held against the respective objects. There is a risk of fire and injuries. Take hold of the cigarette lighter by its handle. Make sure that children do not use the cigarette lighter and burn themselves.

NOTICE

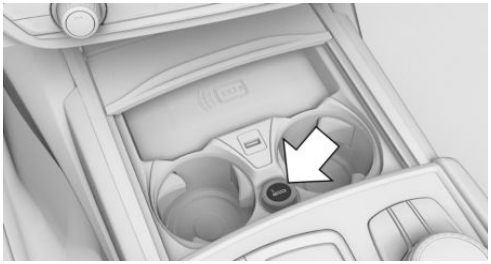
If metal objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of damage to property. Replace the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.

Front center console

1. Push the cover forward until it engages behind the cup holders.

2. Push the cover forward again until it engages behind the storage compartment.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2241
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19



The cigarette lighter is located between the cup holders.

Rear center console

Without rear console: opening and closing

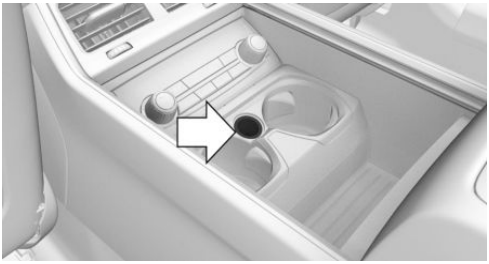
The cigarette lighter is on the left side.

Open: press on the cover.

To close: press the cover closed again.

With rear console: opening and closing

Push the cover backward until it engages.



The cigarette lighter is located between the cup holders.

Tap the cover on the handle bar to close it.

Operation

Push in the cigarette lighter.

The cigarette lighter can be removed as soon as it pops back out.

Sockets

Concept

The lighter socket can be used as a socket for electrical equipment when standby and drive-ready state are switched on.

General information

The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 watts at 12 volts.

Do not damage the socket by using non-compatible connectors.

Safety information

Warning

Devices and cables in the unfolding area of the airbags, such as portable navigation devices, can hinder the unfolding of the airbag or be thrown around in the car's interior during unfolding. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that

devices and cables are not in the airbag's area of unfolding.

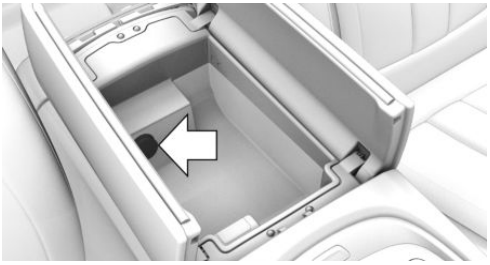
NOTICE

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery can work with high voltages and currents, which means that the 12 volt on-board network can be overloaded or damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.

NOTICE

If metal objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of damage to property. Replace the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.

Front center armrest



The center armrest contains a socket.

Front center console

Push the cover forward until it engages.

A socket is located between the cup holders.

Rear center console

Without rear console: opening and closing

One socket is located in the rear center console.

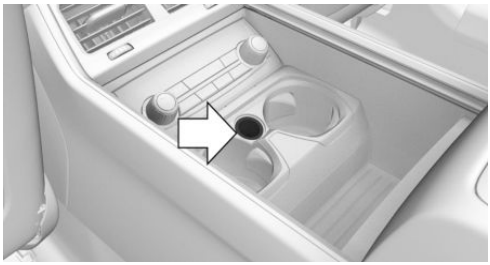
Open: press on the cover.

To close: press the cover closed again.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2243
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

With rear console: opening and closing

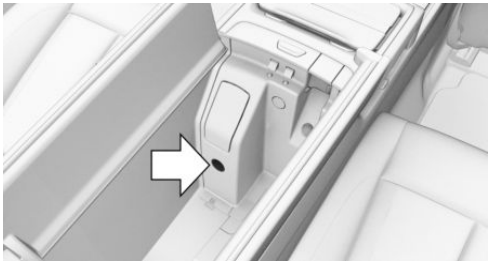
Push the cover backward until it engages.



A socket is located between the cup holders.

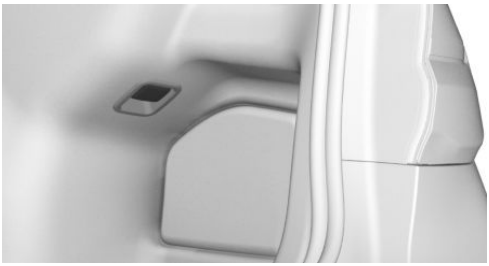
Tap the cover on the handle bar to close it.

With rear console: rear center armrest



The center armrest contains a socket.

In the cargo area



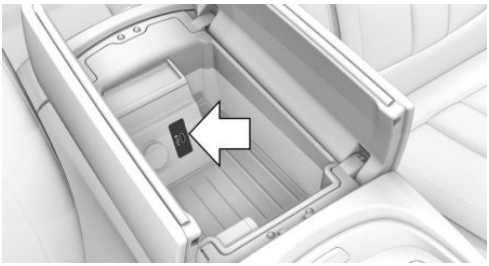
A socket is located on the right side in the cargo area. Unfold the cover.

USB interface

General information

Follow the information regarding the connection of mobile devices to the USB interface in the section on USB connections, refer to page 73.

In the center armrest



A USB interface is located in the center armrest.

Properties:

- USB port Type C.
- For charging mobile devices and for data transfer.
- Charge current: max. 3 A.

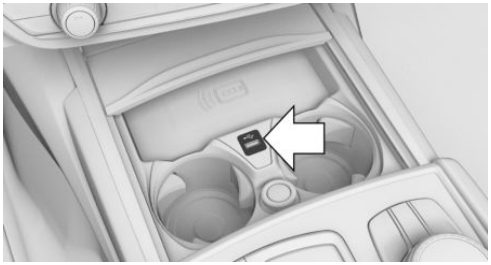
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2244
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

In the front center console

NOTICE

Objects in the storage compartment, e.g., large USB connectors, may block or damage the cover when it is being opened or closed. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the cover is clear while opening and closing it.

1. Push the cover forward until it engages behind the cup holders.
2. Push the cover forward again until it engages behind the storage compartment.



A USB interface is located in the center console.

Properties:

- USB port Type A.
- For charging mobile devices and for data transfer.
- Charge current: max. 1.5 A.

In the rear center console

A USB interface with two USB ports is located in the center console in the rear.

Properties:

- USB port Type C.
- For charging of mobile devices.
- Charge current: max. 3 A per connection.

Folding table in the rear

General information

There is a folding table in the center armrest of the rear console.

Safety information

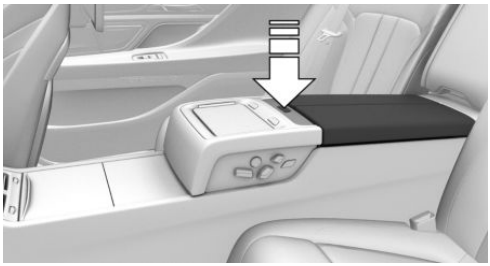
Warning

A folded-out folding table protrudes into the car's interior and, in case of accident, braking or evasive maneuvers can cause injuries. Objects on the table can be thrown around the car's interior while driving. There is a risk of injury. Do not unfold or use folding table while driving.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2245
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Folding open the folding table

1. Open the center armrest. Press the button for this purpose.



2. Grasp the folding table at the rear and fold forward in the center armrest.

3. Pull the folding table from the center armrest.
4. Close the cover of the center armrest.
5. Fold the folding table down and adjust as needed.

Folding in the folding table

Proceed in reverse order to fold in the folding table.

Rear cooler

Safety information

Warning

The cover of the opened cooler protrudes into the car's interior. Injuries can occur in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuver. The content of the cooler can be thrown into the car's interior and injure occupants. There is a risk of injury. Close the cooler after use when driving.

NOTICE

If the cooler is lying down, the oil from the compressor will spread through the cooling circuit. There is a risk of damage to property. Place the cooler vertically for at least one hour prior to operation so that the oil can return into the compressor.

Opening

1. Fold down the center armrest, refer to page 300.
2. Opening the through-loading system, refer to page 306.
3. Pull on the handle and fold the cover forward.

Switching on

The cooler can be operated at two levels.

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Press the button once for each cooling level.

   The highest cooling power is active when two LEDs are lit.

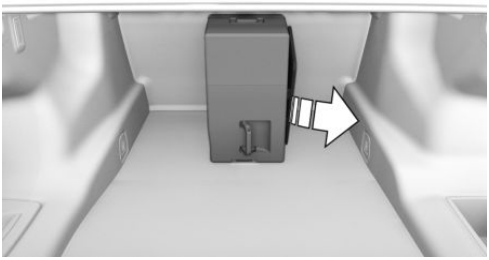
If the cooler was switched on the last time standby state was switched off, it will be switched on automatically the next time standby state is switched on.

Switching off

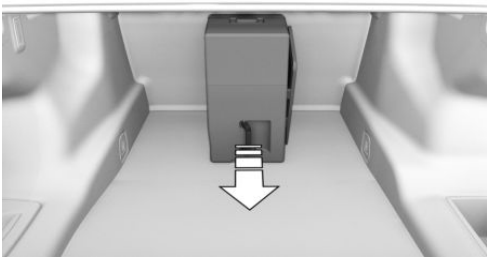
Press the button repeatedly until the LEDs go out.

Ejecting

1. Fold the cover away to the side.



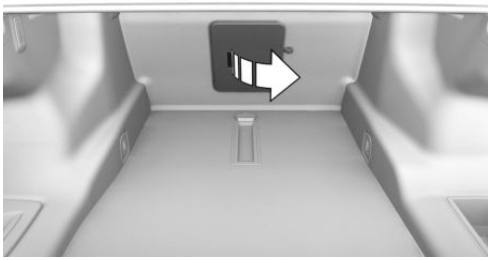
2. Pull on the rear handle.



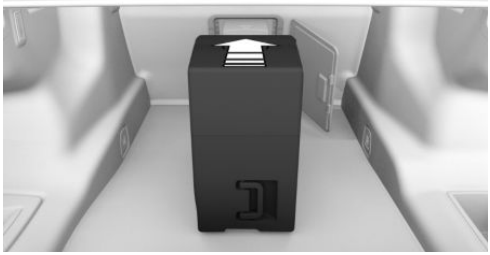
3. Pull cooler backward and remove it.
4. Fold the cover back.

Installing

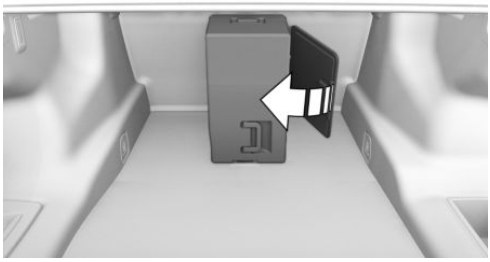
1. Open the cover.



2. Slide the cooler into the guide rail, until it stops.



3. Fold the cover back and secure to cooler.



Malfunction

Message

One of the LEDs flashes.

The cooler cannot be switched on or switches off, for instance when the cooling system overheats or if the battery voltage is low.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2247
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Rectifying the problem

1. If necessary, allow the refrigerator cooling system to cool down.
2. Start the engine.
3. Switch on cooler.

If the LED flashes even after a short time, have the cooler checked.

Storage compartments

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Storage compartments

General information

The vehicle interior contains multiple storage compartments for stowing objects.

Safety information

Warning

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, for instance mobile phones, can be thrown into the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the car's interior.

NOTICE

Anti-slip pads such as anti-slip mats can damage the dashboard. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use anti-slip pads.

Front passenger side glove compartment

Safety information

Warning

Folded open, the glove compartment protrudes in the car's interior. Objects in the glove compartment can be thrown into the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Always close the glove compartment immediately after using it.

Opening

Pull the handle.

The light in the glove compartment switches on.

Closing

Fold cover closed.

Locking

The glove compartment can be locked with an integrated key. This prevents access to the glove compartment.

After the glove compartment is locked, the remote control can be handed over without the

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2249
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

integrated key, for instance when the vehicle is parked by valet parking.

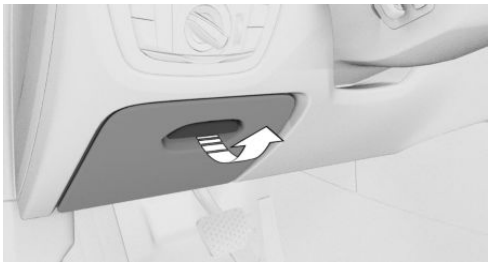
Driver's side glove compartment

Safety information

Warning

Folded open, the glove compartment protrudes in the car's interior. Objects in the glove compartment can be thrown into the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Always close the glove compartment immediately after using it.

Opening



Pull the handle.

Closing

Fold cover closed.

Compartments in the doors

General information

There are storage compartments in the doors.

Safety information

Warning

Breakable objects, such as glass bottles or glasses, can break in the event of an accident or a braking or evasive maneuver. Broken glass can be scattered in the car's interior. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not use any breakable objects while driving. Only stow breakable objects in closed storage compartments.

Storage compartment in the center console

Opening

1. Push the cover forward until it engages behind the cup holders.
2. Push the cover forward again until it engages behind the storage compartment.

Closing

1. Touch the cover on the handle bar. The cover closes up to the cup holders.
2. Tap the cover again. The cover closes fully.

Storage compartment in the rear center console

The rear center console contains a storage compartment.

Storage compartment between the rear seats

General information

A storage compartment is located behind the cover between the backrests.

Opening

Push the cover up until it engages.

Closing

Push the cover up again.

The cover slides down.

Center armrest, front

General information

A storage compartment is located in the center armrest between the seats.

Opening

Press the button.

Closing

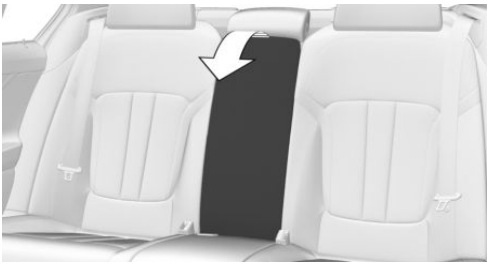
Press cover down until it engages.

Rear center armrest

General information

A storage compartment is located in the center armrest between the seats.

Folding down

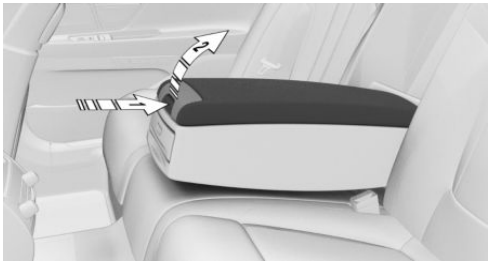


Reach into the recess and fold the center armrest forward.

Opening

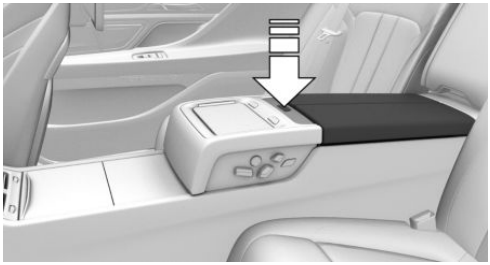
Depending on the equipment, proceed as follows:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2251
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19



Press the button, arrow 1, and fold the cover up, arrow 2.

Press the button, arrow 1, and fold the cover up, arrow 2.



Press the button.

Closing

Press cover down until it engages.

Front cup holder

Safety information

Warning

Unsuitable containers in the cup holders may damage the cup holders or be thrown about the car's interior in the event of an accident, an evasive maneuver, or forceful braking. Spilled liquids can distract from the traffic conditions and lead to an accident. Hot drinks can damage the cup holder or lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not force objects into the cup holder. Use lightweight, shatterproof, and sealable containers. Do not transport hot beverages.

Opening

Push the cover forward until it engages.

Two cup holders are located in the center console.

Closing

Touch the cover on the handle bar. The cover closes.

Rear cup holder

Safety information

Warning

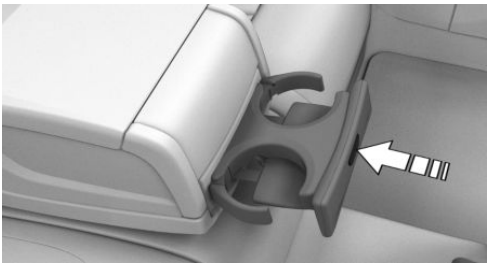
Unsuitable containers in the cup holders may damage the cup holders or be thrown about the car's interior in the event of an accident, an evasive maneuver, or forceful braking. Spilled liquids can distract from the traffic conditions and lead to an accident. Hot drinks can damage the cup holder or lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not force objects into the cup holder. Use lightweight, shatterproof, and sealable containers. Do not transport hot beverages.

NOTICE

With an open cup holder, the center armrest cannot be folded back up. There is a risk of damage to property. Press back the covers before the center armrest is folded up.

Without rear console: opening and closing

Opening



Fold the center armrest forward.

Press the button.

Closing

Push back the cup holder.

With rear console: opening and closing

Opening

Push the cover backward until it engages.

Closing

Touch the cover on the handle bar. The cover closes.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2253
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Clothes hooks

Safety information

Warning

Clothing articles on the clothes hooks can obstruct the view while driving. There is a risk of accident. When suspending clothing articles from the clothes hooks, ensure that they will not obstruct the driver's view.

Warning

Improper use of the clothes hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only hang lightweight objects, for instance clothing articles, from the clothes hooks.

General information

The clothes hooks are located in the grab handles in the rear and on the door pillar in the rear.

Cargo area

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Loading

Safety information

Warning

High gross weight can overheat the tires, damage them internally and cause a sudden drop in tire inflation pressure. Driving characteristics may be negatively impacted, reducing lane stability, lengthening the braking distances and changing the steering response. There is a risk of accident. Pay attention to the permitted load capacity of the tires and never exceed the permitted gross weight.

Warning

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, for instance mobile phones, can be thrown into the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the car's interior.

Warning

Improperly stowed objects can shift and be thrown into the car's interior, for instance in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. Vehicle occupants can be hit and injured. There is a risk of injury. Stow and secure objects and cargo properly.

NOTICE

Fluids in the cargo area can cause damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that no fluids leak in the cargo area.

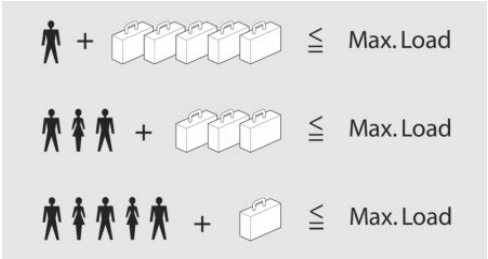
Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs” on your vehicle’s placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1,400 lbs and there will be five 150 lbs passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs (1,400 - 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your ve-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2255
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

hicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Load



The maximum load is the sum of the weight of the occupants and the cargo.

The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo that can be transported.

Stowing and securing cargo

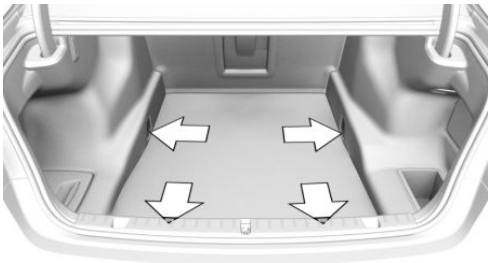
- Cover sharp edges and corners on the cargo.
- Heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear passenger seat backrests.
- Very heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear passenger seat backrests. When the rear seat is not occupied, secure each of the outer safety belts in the opposite buckle.
- Smaller and lighter cargo: secure with ratchet straps or with a cargo net or draw straps.
- Larger and heavy cargo: secure with cargo straps.

Lashing eyes in the cargo area

General information

Attach load securing aids, such as lashing straps, tensioning straps, draw straps or cargo nets, to the lashing eyes in the cargo area.

Lashing eyes



There are four lashing eyes in the cargo area for securing cargo.

Multi-function hook

General information

A multi-function hook is located on the left side in the cargo area.

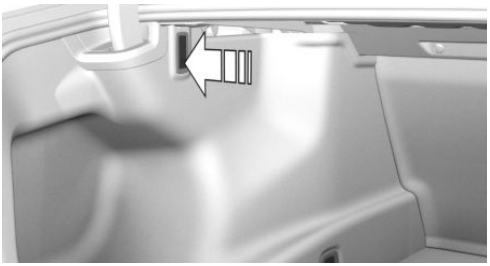
Safety information

Warning

Improper use of the multi-function hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers, for example. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only hang lightweight objects, such as shopping bags, from the multi-function hooks. Only transport heavy luggage in the cargo area if it has been appropriately secured.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2256
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Folding down



Press on the multi-function hook and turn until it engages.

Net

Small objects can be stowed in the net on the left side.

Storage compartment on the right side

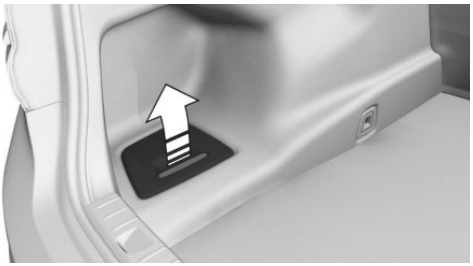
A storage compartment is available on the right side of the cargo area.

Storage compartment on the left side

General information

A storage compartment is located on the left side in the cargo area.

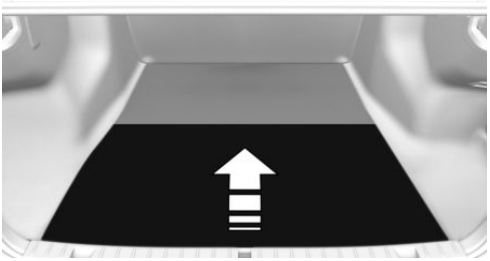
Opening



Pull the handle.

With an emergency wheel: storage compartment under the cargo area floor

There is a storage compartment under the cargo floor panel.



Fold up the cargo floor panel.

Through-loading system

Concept

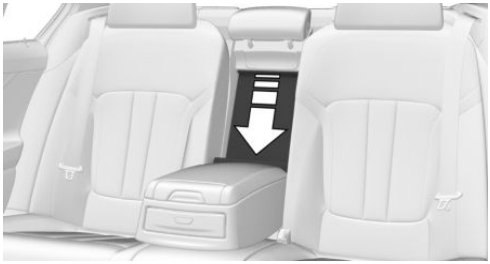
The through-loading system allows the transport of long objects, such as skies.

Without comfort seats: opening through-loading

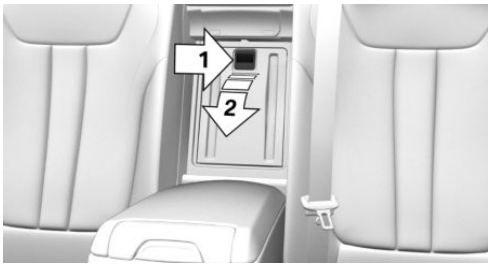
1. Fold down the center armrest.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2257
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

2. Remove flap.



3. Pull handle, arrow 1, down and fold panel forward, arrow 2.



With comfort seats: opening through-loading

Without rear console

1. Fold down the center armrest.
2. Pull on the loop.

With rear console

1. Push the cover up until it engages.

2. Pull on the loop.

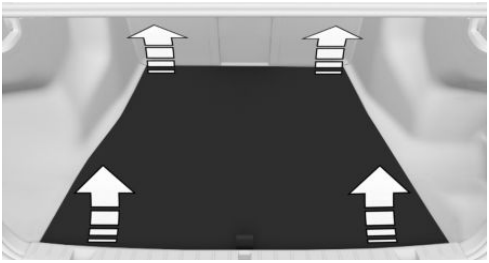
With an emergency wheel: enlarging the cargo area

Concept

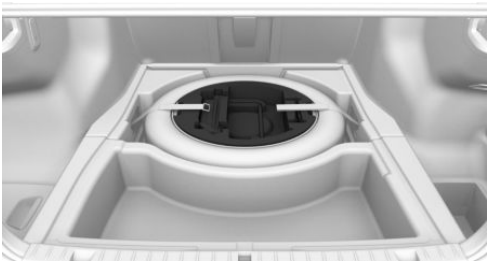
The emergency wheel and any related components can be temporarily removed to enlarge the cargo area.

Removing the emergency wheel and the storage compartments

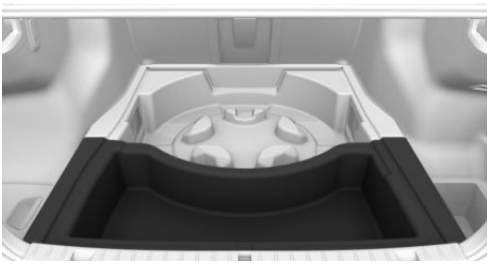
1. To remove the cargo area floor, pull it upward directly behind the rear backrests.



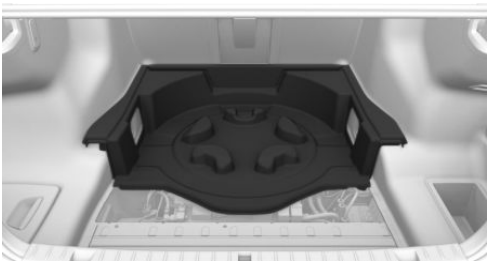
2. Open the ratchet strap.
3. Remove the tool holder.



4. Remove the emergency wheel from the storage well.
5. Loosen the ratchet strap from the lashing eyes.
6. Remove the storage compartment.



7. Remove the storage well.



8. Insert the cargo floor panel.

Inserting the emergency wheel and the storage compartments

Proceed in reverse order to insert the emergency wheel and the storage compartments.

Ski and snowboard bag

The ski and snowboard bag is contained in a protective jacket in the cargo area.

Follow the installation and owner's manual included in the protective jacket.

Depending on the vehicle equipment: remove the emergency wheel from the vehicle to mount the ski and snowboard bag.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2259
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2261

ⓘ DRIVING TIPS

Things to remember when driving 312
Saving fuel 317

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2262

Things to remember when driving

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Breaking-in period

General information

Moving parts need to begin working together smoothly.

The following instructions will help you to achieve a long vehicle life and good efficiency.

During break-in, do not use the Launch Control, refer to page 148.

Safety information

Warning

Due to new parts and components, safety and driver assistance systems can react with a delay. There is a risk of accident. After installing new parts or with a new vehicle, drive conservatively and intervene early if necessary. Observe the break-in procedures of the respective parts and components.

Engine, transmission, and axle drive

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Do not exceed the maximum engine and road speed:

- For gasoline engine 4,500 rpm and 100 mph/160 km/h.

Avoid full load or kickdown under all circumstances.

From 1,200 miles/2,000 km

The engine and vehicle speed can gradually be increased.

Tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new; they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

Brake discs and brake pads only reach their full effectiveness after approx. 300 miles/500 km. Drive moderately during this break-in period.

Following part replacement

Observe the break-in procedures again, if components mentioned above are replaced.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2263
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

General driving notes

Closing the trunk lid

Safety information

Warning

An open trunk lid protrudes from the vehicle and can endanger occupants and other traffic participants or damage the vehicle in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. In addition, exhaust fumes may enter the car's interior. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not drive with the trunk lid open.

Driving with the trunk lid open

If driving with the tailgate open cannot be avoided:

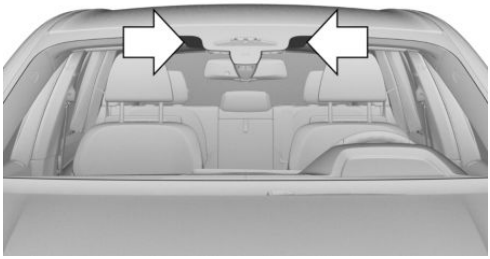
- Close all windows and the glass sunroof.
- Greatly increase the air flow from the vents.
- Drive moderately.

Hot exhaust gas system

Warning

During driving operation, high temperatures can occur underneath the vehicle body, for instance caused by the exhaust gas system. If combustible materials, such as leaves or grass, come in contact with hot parts of the exhaust gas system, these materials can ignite. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not remove the heat shields installed and never apply undercoating to them. Make sure that no combustible materials can come in contact with hot vehicle parts in driving operation, idle or during parking. Do not touch the hot exhaust gas system.

Climate comfort windshield



The marked area is not covered with heat reflective coating.

Use the marked area for garage door openers, devices for electronic toll collection, payment systems, etc.

Climate comfort laminated safety glass

The vehicle glass provides full protection against the harmful effects of UV radiation on the skin.

Mobile communication devices in the vehicle

Warning

Vehicle electronics and mobile phones can influence one another. There is radiation due to the transmission operations of mobile phones. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. If possible, in the car's interior use only mobile phones with direct connections to an exterior antenna in order to exclude mutual interference and deflect the radiation from the car's interior.

Hydroplaning

On wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water can form between the tires and road surface.

This phenomenon is referred to as hydroplaning. It is characterized by a partial or complete loss of contact between the tires and the road surface,

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2264
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle.

Driving through water

General information

When driving through water, follow the following:

- Drive through calm water only.
- Drive through water only if it is not deeper than maximum 9.8 inches/25 cm.
- Drive through water no faster than walking speed, up to 3 mph/5 km/h.

Safety information

NOTICE

When driving too quickly through too deep water, water can enter into the engine compartment, the electrical system or the transmission. There is a risk of damage to property. When driving through water, do not exceed the maximum indicated water level and the maximum speed for driving through water.

Braking safely

General information

The vehicle is equipped with the Antilock Brake System ABS as a standard feature.

Perform an emergency stop in situations that require such.

Steering is still responsive. You can still avoid any obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.

Pulsation of the brake pedal and sounds from the hydraulic circuits indicate that the Antilock Brake System ABS is in its active mode.

In certain braking situations, the perforated brake discs can emit functional noises. However, functional noises have no effect on the performance and operational reliability of the brake.

Objects in the area around the pedals

Warning

Objects in the driver's floor area can limit the pedal distance or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's floor area. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, for instance for cleaning.

Driving in wet conditions

When roads are wet, salted, or in heavy rain, gently press the brake pedal every few miles.

Ensure that this action does not endanger other traffic.

The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

In this way braking efficiency will be available when you need it.

Hills

General information

Drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear that requires least braking effort. Otherwise, the brakes may overheat and reduce brake efficiency.

You can increase the engine's braking effect by shifting down, going all the way to first gear, if needed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2265

Safety information

Warning

Light but consistent brake pressure can lead to high temperatures, brakes wearing out and possibly even brake failure. There is a risk of accident. Avoid placing excessive stress on the brake system.

Warning

In idle state or with the engine switched off, safety functions, for instance engine braking effect, braking assistance and steering assistance, may not be available. There is a risk of accident. Do not attempt to drive in idle state or with the engine switched off.

Brake disc corrosion

Corrosion on the brake discs and contamination on the brake pads are increased by the following circumstances:

- Low mileage.
- Extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all.
- Infrequent use of the brakes.
- Aggressive, acidic, or alkaline cleaning agents.

Corrosion buildup on the brake discs will cause a pulsating effect on the brakes in their response - generally this cannot be corrected.

Condensation water under the parked vehicle

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops and collects underneath the vehicle.

Flag bracket

Safety information

NOTICE

At high speeds, a mounted flag can cause damage to the vehicle, the flag bracket, and the flag itself. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph / 130 km/h. Remove flag before trips at high speeds.

Overview

The flag bracket is located on the side of the vehicle.

Mounting

1. Remove the protective cap.
2. Insert flag horizontally.
3. Turn the flag clockwise by 90° to lock the flag.

M Driver's Package: driving in the higher speed range

Warning

Damage to vehicle components can negatively impact the driving performance at high speeds. This includes, among other things, tires, undercarriage and parts for improving aerodynamics. There is a risk of accident. Have damage corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Do not

drive at high speeds until the damage is corrected.

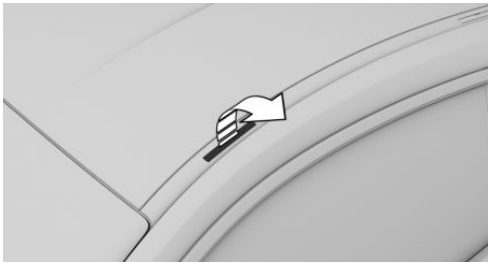
Roof-mounted luggage rack

General information

Installation only possible in roof drip rail with flaps. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Roof racks are available as special accessories.

Roof drip rail with flaps



The fixing points are located in the roof drip rail above the doors.

Fold the cover outward.

Mounting

Follow the installation instructions of the roof rack.

Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.

Magnetic roof-mounted luggage racks

Because of the aluminum roof, magnetic roof-mounted luggage racks cannot be used.

Loading

Because roof-mounted luggage racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a major effect on vehicle handling and steering response.

Therefore, note the following when loading and driving:

- Do not exceed the approved roof/axle loads and the approved gross vehicle weight.
- Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.
- Distribute the roof load uniformly.
- The roof load should not extend past the loading area.
- Always place the heaviest pieces on the bottom.
- Secure the roof luggage firmly, for instance using ratchet straps.
- Do not let objects project into the opening path of the trunk lid.
- Drive cautiously and avoid sudden acceleration and braking maneuvers. Take corners gently.

Driving on racetracks

Higher mechanical and thermal loads during racetrack operation lead to increased wear. This wear is not covered by the warranty. The vehicle is not designed for use in motor sports competition.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2267
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Saving fuel

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Reducing fuel consumption

General information

The vehicle contains advanced technologies for the reduction of consumption and emission values.

Fuel consumption depends on a number of different factors.

Carrying out certain measures, such as a moderate driving style and regular maintenance, can influence fuel consumption and the environmental impact.

Remove unnecessary cargo

Additional weight increases fuel consumption.

Remove attached parts following use

Remove auxiliary mirrors, roof-mounted or rear luggage racks which are no longer required following use.

Attached parts on the vehicle impair the aerodynamics and increase the fuel consumption.

Close the windows and glass sunroof

Driving with the glass sunroof and windows open results in increased air resistance and raises fuel consumption.

Tires

General information

Tires can affect consumption in various ways, for instance tire size may influence consumption.

Check the tire inflation pressure regularly

Check and, if needed, correct the tire inflation pressure at least twice a month and before starting on a long trip.

Low tire inflation pressure increases rolling resistance and thus raises fuel consumption and tire wear.

Drive away without delay

Do not wait for the engine to warm-up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving right away, but at moderate engine speeds.

This is the quickest way of warming the cold engine up to operating temperature.

Look well ahead when driving

Driving smoothly and proactively reduces fuel consumption.

Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.

By maintaining a suitable distance to the vehicle driving ahead of you.

Avoid high engine speeds

Driving at low engine speeds lowers fuel consumption and reduces wear.

If necessary, observe the vehicle's gear shift indicator, refer to page 158.

Use coasting conditions

When approaching a red light, take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle coast to a halt.

For going downhill take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle roll.

The flow of fuel is interrupted while coasting.

Switch off the engine during longer stops

Switching off the engine

Switch off the engine during longer stops, for instance at traffic lights, railroad crossings or in traffic congestion.

Auto Start/Stop function

The Auto Start/Stop function of the vehicle automatically switches off the engine during a stop.

If the engine is switched off and then restarted rather than leaving the engine running constantly, fuel consumption and emissions are reduced. Savings can begin within a few seconds of switching off the engine.

In addition, fuel consumption is also determined by other factors, such as driving style, road conditions, maintenance or environmental factors.

Switch off any functions that are not currently needed

Functions such as seat heating and the rear window defroster require a lot of energy and increase fuel consumption, especially in city and stop-and-go traffic.

Switch off these functions if they are not needed.

The ECO PRO driving mode supports the energy conserving use of comfort features. These functions are automatically deactivated partially or completely.

Have maintenance carried out

Have the vehicle maintained regularly to achieve optimal vehicle efficiency and service life. BMW recommends that maintenance work be performed by a BMW service center.

For information on the BMW Maintenance System, refer to page 368.

ECO PRO

Concept

ECO PRO supports a driving style that saves on consumption. For this purpose, the engine control and comfort features, for instance the climate control output, are adjusted.

Under certain conditions the engine is automatically decoupled from the transmission in the D selector lever position. The vehicle continues traveling with the engine idling to reduce consumption. The D selector lever position remains engaged.

In addition, context-sensitive information, ECO PRO tips, can be displayed to assist with a fuel-efficient driving style.

The achieved extended range is displayed in the instrument cluster as bonus range.

General information

The system includes the following EfficientDynamics functions and EfficientDynamics displays:

- ECO PRO bonus range, refer to page 320.
- ECO PRO seat climate control, refer to page 319.
- ECO PRO climate control, refer to page 319.
- ECO PRO light and sight, refer to page 319.
- Coasting driving condition, refer to page 320.
- Driving style analysis, refer to page 322.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2269
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Overview

ECO PRO Button

Activating ECO PRO

ECO PRO Press the button. ECO PRO is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Configuring ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL

Via the Driving Dynamics Control

1. Activate ECO PRO.
2. "ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL"

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driving mode"
4. "ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Activating/deactivating ECO PRO functions

The following ECO PRO functions can be activated/deactivated:

- "ECO PRO speed"
- "Coasting"
- "ECO PRO seat climate control"
- "ECO PRO climate control"
- "ECO PRO light and sight"

Settings are stored for the driver profile currently used.

ECO PRO limit

- Activate the ECO PRO limit:

  "ECO PRO speed"

  An ECO PRO tip is displayed if the speed of the set ECO PRO limit is exceeded.
- Adjust the ECO PRO limit speed:

  "Notification at:"

  Select the desired speed.

Coasting

Efficiency can be optimized by disengaging the engine and coasting with the engine idling.

ECO PRO seat climate control

The output of seat heating and, where applicable, seat ventilation is reduced when ECO PRO is activated.

ECO PRO climate control

Climate control is set to be efficient.

This means, it is possible to deviate slightly from the set temperature or to heat or cool the car's interior more slowly, to economize on consumption.

ECO PRO light and sight

The output of exterior mirror heating and rear window defroster is reduced.

Resetting the settings

Reset ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL to the standard settings:

"Reset to ECO PRO STANDARD"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2270

Display in the instrument cluster

General information

When ECO PRO driving mode is activated, the display switches to a special configuration.

ECO PRO bonus range

A modified driving style helps you extend your driving range.

The range extension can be displayed as the bonus range in the instrument cluster.

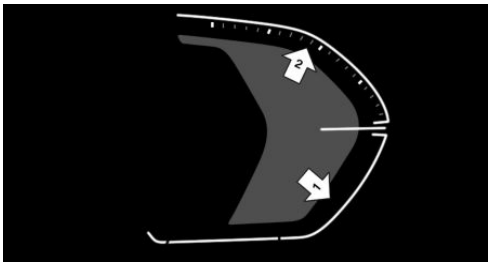
The efficiency display includes the bonus range, refer to page 152.

If the bonus range appears in gray, the current driving style is inefficient.

The display turns blue as soon as all conditions for efficient driving are met.

The intervals for resetting the bonus range depend on the settings of the trip data, refer to page 161.

Consumption display



A pointer in the consumption display informs about the current driving style:

- The current consumption in relation to the average consumption is displayed.
- Pointer in the area of arrow 1: display of the energy recovered by coasting or when braking.
- Pointer in the area of arrow 2: display when accelerating.

If the acceleration is inefficient, the area between the average consumption and the current consumption is colored red.

In addition, the following information is displayed, depending on the situation:

- Depending on the equipment: the total distance driven while coasting, refer to page 321.
- The total time that the engine has been switched off, refer to page 133, during automatic engine stops.
- A gear shift indicator, refer to page 158, recommending the use of a more efficient gear.

Indications on the Control Display

General information

Information about the current effectiveness of the ECO PRO functions can be displayed as energy flow.

Displaying energy flow information

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Energy flow"

The following functions are displayed:

- Auto Start/Stop function.
- Energy recovery.
- Coasting.

Coasting

Concept

Under certain conditions the engine is automatically decoupled from the transmission in the D selector lever position. The vehicle continues traveling with the engine idling to reduce con-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2271
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

sumption. Selector lever position D remains engaged.

This driving condition is referred to as coasting.

As soon as you step on the brake or accelerator pedal, the engine is automatically coupled again.

General information

Coasting is a component of the ECO PRO driving mode.

Coasting is automatically activated when ECO PRO mode is called via the Driving Dynamics Control.

A proactive driving style helps the driver to use the function often and supports the efficient effect of coasting.

Functional requirements

The function is available in the speed range from approx. 16 mph/25 km/h to 100 mph/160 km/h.

The function is active if the following conditions are met:

- Accelerator pedal not depressed.
- Brake pedal not depressed or only slightly depressed.
- The selector lever is in selector lever position D.
- Engine and transmission are at operating temperature.
- Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function, ACC, not activated.

Operation via shift paddles

Concept

The coasting driving condition can be influenced with the shift paddles.

Activating/deactivating coasting via shift paddles

1. Shift to the highest gear by pulling the right shift paddle.
2. To activate coasting mode, actuate the right shift paddle again.

To deactivate, actuate the left shift paddle.

Display

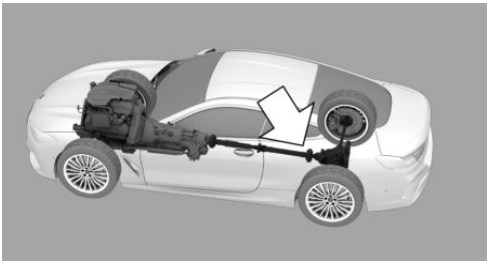
Display in the instrument cluster

The coasting distance traveled is indicated in coasting mode.

Indications on the Control Display

The coasting mode is displayed under energy flow while driving.

The distance traveled in coasting mode is displayed in the trip data.



Color code blue: coasting mode.

Displaying energy flow information

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Energy flow"

System limits

The function is not available under one of the following conditions.

- DSC OFF or TRACTION activated.
- Driving in the dynamic limit range and on steep uphill or downhill grades.
- Battery charge status temporarily too low or vehicle electrical system drawing excessive current.

Driving style analysis

Concept

The function helps develop an especially efficient driving style and to conserve fuel.

For this purpose, the driving style is analyzed. The assessment is done in various categories and is displayed on the Control Display.

This display will help you adjust your driving style and save some fuel.

General information

The current trip is assessed.

To assist with an efficient driving style, ECO PRO tips are displayed during driving.

The range of the vehicle can be extended by adjusting your driving style.

This gain in range is displayed as a bonus range in the instrument cluster and on the Control Display.

Functional requirement

The function is available in ECO PRO driving mode.

Calling up the Driving style analysis

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Driving style analysis"

Display on the Control Display

The display of the Driving style analysis shows the efficiency of the Driving style.

The more efficient the driving style, the more bars are displayed in color and the faster the bonus range increases.

In contrast, a reduced number of bars will be displayed with an inefficient driving style.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2273
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2275
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

MOBILITY

Refueling 326
Wheels and tires 328
Engine compartment 358
Operating materials 361
Maintenance 368
Replacing components 370
Breakdown assistance 373
Care 380

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2276
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Refueling

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Follow the following when refueling

General information

Follow the fuel recommendation, refer to page 361, prior to refueling.

When refueling, insert the filler nozzle completely into the filler pipe. Lifting up the fuel pump nozzle during refueling causes:

- Premature switching off.
- Reduced return of the fuel vapors.

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

Make sure that the fuel cap is closed properly after refueling, otherwise the emissions warning light may light up.

Follow safety regulations posted at the gas station.

Safety information

NOTICE

With a driving range of less than 30 miles/50 km the engine may no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of damage to property. Refuel promptly.

NOTICE

Fuels are toxic and aggressive. Overfilling of the fuel tank can damage the fuel system. Painted surfaces may be damaged by contact with fuel. Escaping fuel can harm the environment. There is a risk of damage to property. Avoid overfilling.

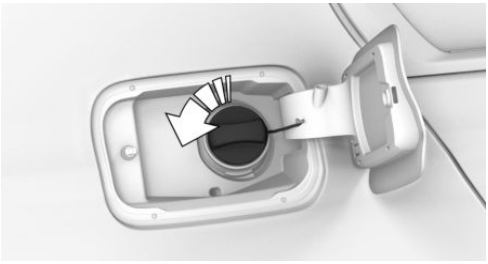
Fuel cap

Opening

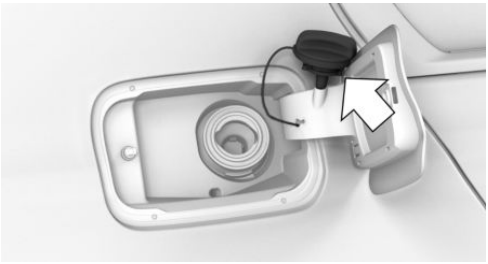
1. To open the fuel filler flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2277
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

2. Turn the fuel cap counterclockwise.



3. Place the fuel cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.



Closing

Warning

The retaining strap of the fuel cap can be jammed and crushed during closing. The cap cannot be correctly closed. Fuel or fuel vapors can escape. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Pay attention that the retaining strap is not jammed or crushed when closing the cap.

1. Fit the cap and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.
2. Press on the fuel filler flap until it engages.

Emergency unlocking

It may be necessary in certain situations to unlock the fuel filler flap manually, for instance with an electrical fault.

Have fuel filler flap unlocked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Wheels and tires

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Tire inflation pressure

General information

The tire characteristics and tire inflation pressure influence the following:

- The service life of the tires.
- Road safety.
- Driving comfort.
- Fuel consumption.

Safety information

Warning

A tire with too little or no tire inflation pressure may heat up significantly and sustain damage. This will have a negative impact on aspects of handling, such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident. Regularly check the tire inflation pressure, and correct it as needed, for instance twice a month and before a long trip.

Tire inflation pressure specifications

In the tire inflation pressure table

The tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 330, contains all tire inflation pressure specifications for the specified tire sizes at the ambient temperature. The tire inflation pressure values apply to tire sizes approved by the manufacturer of the vehicle for the vehicle type.

To identify the correct tire inflation pressure, please note the following:

- Tire sizes of your vehicle.
- Maximum permitted driving speed.

On the Control Display

The current tire inflation pressure values and the intended tire inflation pressure values for the mounted tires can be displayed on the Control Display.

To ensure that they are displayed correctly, the tire sizes must be stored in the system and must have been set, refer to page 343, for the mounted tires.

The current tire inflation pressure value is located on each tire.

The reference tire inflation pressure value is located in the lower area of the Control Display.

Checking the tire inflation pressure

General information

Tires heat up while driving. The tire inflation pressure increases with the tire temperature.

Tires have a natural, consistent loss of tire inflation pressure.

The displays of inflation devices may under-read by up to 0.1 bar/2 psi.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2279
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Checking using tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire inflation pressure table

The tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire inflation pressure table only relate to cold tires or tires at the same temperature as the ambient temperature.

Only check the tire inflation pressure levels when the tires are cold, i.e.:

- Driving range of max. 1.25 miles/2 km has not been exceeded.
- If the vehicle has not moved again for at least 2 hours after a trip.

Check the tire inflation pressure of the emergency wheel in the cargo area regularly, and correct it as needed.

1. Determine, refer to page 328, the intended tire inflation pressure levels for the mounted tires.
2. Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, using a pressure gage, for example.
3. Correct the tire inflation pressure if the current tire inflation pressure value deviates from the specified value.
4. Check whether all valve caps are screwed onto the tire valves.

Checking using the tire inflation pressure specifications on the Control Display

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor"
4. Check whether the current tire inflation pressure levels deviate from the intended tire pressure value.
5. Correct the tire inflation pressure if the current tire inflation pressure value deviates from the intended value.

After correcting the tire inflation pressure

With runflat tires:

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

With Tire Pressure Monitor TPM:

The corrected tire inflation pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the correct tire settings have been made.

With tires that cannot be found in the tire pressure values on the Control Display, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM.

Tire inflation pressures up to 100 mph/160 km/h

For speeds of up to 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 330, and adjust as necessary.

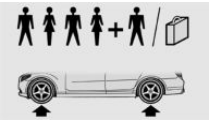
These pressure values can also be found on the tire inflation pressure label on the driver's door pillar.

Do not exceed a speed of 100 mph/160 km/h.

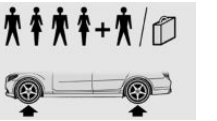
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2280
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Tire inflation pressure values up to 100 mph/160 km/h

740Li, 740Li xDrive, 750i xDrive, 750Li xDrive

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
245/50 R 18 100 V M+S A/S RSC 245/50 R 18 100 H M+S RSC	2.2 / 32	2.4 / 35
245/45 R 19 102 V M+S XL A/S RSC 245/45 R 19 102 V M+S XL RSC	2.4 / 35	2.6 / 38
Front: 245/45 R 19 98 Y RSC	2.5 / 36	-
Rear: 275/40 R 19 101 Y RSC	-	2.5 / 36
Front: 245/40 R 20 99 Y XL RSC	2.9 / 42	-
Rear: 275/35 R 20 102 Y XL RSC	-	3.1 / 45
Front: 245/40 R 20 99 V M+S XL RSC	2.7 / 39	-
Rear: 275/35 R 20 102 V M+S XL RSC	-	2.7 / 39
Front: 245/35 R 21 96 Y XL RSC	3.0 / 44	-
Rear: 275/30 R 21 98 Y XL RSC	-	3.0 / 44
Emergency wheel: T 135/80 R 18 104 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

M760Li xDrive

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
245/45 R 19 102 V M+S XL A/S RSC 245/45 R 19 102 V M+S XL RSC	2.4 / 35	2.6 / 38
Front: 245/40 R 20 99 Y XL RSC	2.7 / 39	-
Rear: 275/35 R 20 102 Y XL RSC	-	2.7 / 39
Front: 245/40 R 20 99 V M+S XL RSC	2.7 / 39	-
Rear: 275/35 R 20 102 V M+S XL RSC	-	2.7 / 39
Front: 245/40 ZR 20 99 Y XL Std	2.7 / 39	-
Rear: 275/35 ZR 20 102 Y XL Std	-	2.7 / 39

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2281
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Tire inflation pressures at max. speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h

Warning

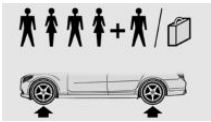
In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph/160 km/h, please observe, and, if necessary, adjust tire pressures for speeds exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h from the relevant table on the following pages. Otherwise, tire damage and accidents could occur.

For speeds over 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 331, and adjust as necessary.

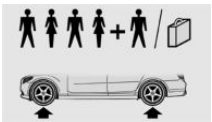
Tire inflation pressure values over 100 mph/160 km/h

740Li, 740Li xDrive, 750i xDrive, 750Li xDrive

Without high-speed tuning feature

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
245/50 R 18 100 V M+S A/S RSC 245/50 R 18 100 H M+S RSC	2.5 / 36	2.7 / 39
245/45 R 19 102 V M+S XL A/S RSC 245/45 R 19 102 V M+S XL RSC	2.7 / 39	2.9 / 42
Front: 245/45 R 19 98 Y RSC	2.5 / 36	-
Rear: 275/40 R 19 101 Y RSC	-	2.5 / 36
Front: 245/40 R 20 99 Y XL RSC	2.9 / 42	-
Rear: 275/35 R 20 102 Y XL RSC	-	3.1 / 45
Front: 245/40 R 20 99 V M+S XL RSC	3.0 / 44	-
Rear: 275/35 R 20 102 V M+S XL RSC	-	3.0 / 44
Front: 245/35 R 21 96 Y XL RSC	3.0 / 44	-
Rear: 275/30 R 21 98 Y XL RSC	-	3.0 / 44
Emergency wheel: T 135/80 R 18 104 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

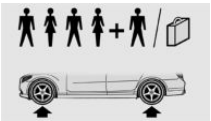
With high-speed tuning feature

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
245/50 R 18 100 H M+S RSC	2.5 / 36	2.7 / 39
245/45 R 19 102 V M+S XL RSC	2.9 / 42	3.1 / 45
Front: 245/45 R 19 98 Y RSC	2.7 / 39	-
Rear: 275/40 R 19 101 Y RSC	-	2.7 / 39

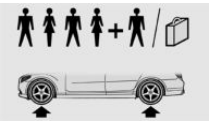
Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Front: 245/40 R 20 99 Y XL RSC	2.9 / 42	-
Rear: 275/35 R 20 102 Y XL RSC	-	3.1 / 45
Front: 245/40 R 20 99 V M+S XL RSC	3.3 / 48	-
Rear: 275/35 R 20 102 V M+S XL RSC	-	3.3 / 48
Front: 245/35 R 21 96 Y XL RSC	3.3 / 48	-
Rear: 275/30 R 21 98 Y XL RSC	-	3.3 / 48
Emergency wheel: T 135/80 R 18 104 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

M760Li xDrive

Without high-speed tuning feature

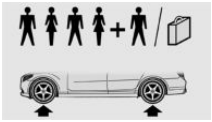
Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
245/45 R 19 102 V M+S XL A/S RSC 245/45 R 19 102 V M+S XL RSC	2.7 / 39	2.9 / 42
Front: 245/40 R 20 99 Y XL RSC	2.7 / 39	-
Rear: 275/35 R 20 102 Y XL RSC	-	2.7 / 39
Front: 245/40 R 20 99 V M+S XL RSC	3.0 / 44	-
Rear: 275/35 R 20 102 V M+S XL RSC	-	3.0 / 44
Front: 245/40 ZR 20 99 Y XL Std	2.7 / 39	-
Rear: 275/35 ZR 20 102 Y XL Std	-	2.7 / 39

With high-speed tuning feature

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
245/45 R 19 102 V M+S XL RSC	2.9 / 42	3.1 / 45
Front: 245/40 R 20 99 Y XL RSC	3.0 / 44	-
Rear: 275/35 R 20 102 Y XL RSC	-	3.0 / 44
Front: 245/40 R 20 99 V M+S XL RSC	3.3 / 48	-
Rear: 275/35 R 20 102 V M+S XL RSC	-	3.3 / 48
Front: 245/40 ZR 20 99 Y XL Std	3.0 / 44	-
Rear: 275/35 ZR 20 102 Y XL Std	-	3.0 / 44

With M Driver's Package

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2283
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
245/45 R 19 102 V M+S XL RSC	2.9 / 42	3.1 / 45
Front: 245/40 R 20 99 V M+S XL RSC	3.3 / 48	-
Rear: 275/35 R 20 102 V M+S XL RSC	-	3.3 / 48
Front: 245/40 ZR 20 99 Y XL Std	3.4 / 49	-
Rear: 275/35 ZR 20 102 Y XL Std	-	3.4 / 49

Tire identification marks

Tire size

245/45 R 18 96 Y

245: nominal width in mm

45: aspect ratio in %

R: radial tire code

18: rim diameter in inches

96: load rating, not for ZR tires

Y: speed rating, before the R on ZR tires

Maximum tire load

Maximum tire load is the maximum permissible weight for which the tire is approved.

Locate the maximum tire load on the tire sidewall and the Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR – on the certification label on the driver door B-pillar. Divide the tire load by 1.1. It must be greater than one-half of the vehicle's Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR. Note, front vs. rear GAWR and tire loads, respectively.

Speed letter

Q = up to 100 mph/160 km/h

R = up to 106 mph/170 km/h

S = up to 112 mph/180 km/h

T = up to 118 mph/190 km/h

H = up to 131 mph/210 km/h

V = up to 150 mph/240 km/h

W = up to 167 mph/270 km/h

Y = up to 186 mph/300 km/h

Tire Identification Number

DOT code: DOT xxxx xxx 0119

xxxx: manufacturer code for the tire brand

xxx: tire size and tire design

0119: tire age

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

Tire age

Recommendation

Regardless of the tire tread, replace tires at least every 6 years.

Manufacture date

You can find the manufacture date of the tire on the tire's sidewall.

Designation	Manufacture date
DOT ... 0119	1st week, 2019

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2284

E.g.: Treadwear 200; Traction AA; Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades

Treadwear

Traction AA A B C

Temperature A B C

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. E.g., a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half, 1 g, times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.

Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades Band A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Warning

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

RSC – Run-flat tires

Run-flat tires, refer to page 337, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the sidewall.

M+S

Winter and all-season tires with better cold weather performance than summer tires.

Tire tread

Summer tires

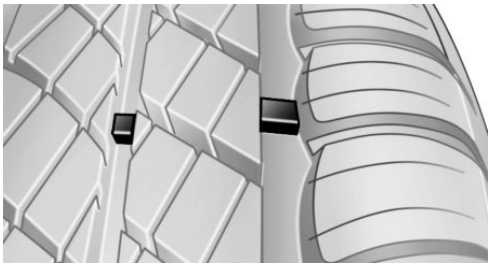
Do not drive with a tire tread of less than 0.12 in/3 mm, otherwise there is an increased risk of hydroplaning.

Winter tires

Do not drive with a tire tread of less than 0.16 in/4 mm, as such tires are less suitable for winter operation.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2285
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Minimum tread depth



Wear indicators are distributed around the tire's circumference and have the legally required minimum height of 0.063 inches/1.6 mm.

The positions of the wear indicators are marked on the tire sidewall with TWI, Tread Wear Indicator.

Tire damage

General information

Inspect your tires regularly for damage, foreign objects lodged in the tread, and tread wear.

Driving over rough or damaged road surfaces, as well as debris, curbs and other obstacles can cause serious damage to wheels, tires and suspension parts. This is more likely to occur with low-profile tires, which provide less cushioning between the wheel and the road. Be careful to avoid road hazards and reduce your speed, especially if your vehicle is equipped with low-profile tires.

Indications of tire damage or other vehicle malfunctions:

- Unusual vibrations.
- Unusual tire or running noises.
- Unusual handling such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.

Damage can be caused by the following situations, for instance:

- Driving over curbs.
- Road damage.
- Tire inflation pressure too low.
- Vehicle overloading.
- Incorrect tire storage.

Safety information

Warning

Damaged tires can lose tire inflation pressure, which can lead to loss of vehicle control. There is a risk of accident. If tire damage is suspected while driving, immediately reduce speed and stop. Have wheels and tires checked. For this purpose, drive carefully to the nearest dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Have vehicle towed or transported as needed. Do not repair damaged tires, but have them replaced.

Warning

Tires can become damaged by driving over obstacles, e.g., curbs or road damage, at high speed. Larger wheels have a smaller tire cross-section. The smaller the tire cross-section, the higher the risk of tire damage. There is a danger of accidents and property damage. If possible, avoid driving over objects or road conditions that may damage tires, or drive over them slowly and carefully.

Changing wheels and tires

Mounting and wheel balancing

Have mounting and wheel balancing carried out by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2286
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Wheel and tire combination

General information

You can ask the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop about the correct wheel/tire combination and wheel rim versions for the vehicle.

Safety information

Warning

Wheels and tires which are not suitable for your vehicle can damage parts of the vehicle, for instance due to contact with the body due to tolerances despite the same official size rating. There is a risk of an accident. The manufacturer of your vehicle strongly suggests that you use wheels and tires that have been recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for your vehicle type.

Warning

Mounted steel wheels can cause technical problems, for instance independent loosening of the lug bolts, damage to the brake discs. There is a risk of accident. Do not mount steel wheels.

Warning

Incorrect wheel/tire combinations will have a negative impact on the vehicle's handling and on the function of a variety of systems, such as the Anti-lock Brake System or Dynamic Stability Control. There is a risk of accident. To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires with a single tread configuration from a single manufacturer. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you use wheels and tires that have been recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for your vehicle type. Following tire damage, have the original wheel/tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

Recommended tire brands

For each tire size, the manufacturer of the vehicle recommends certain tire brands. The tire brands can be identified by a star on the tire sidewall.

New tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new; they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Retreaded tires

Warning

Retreaded tires can have different tire casing structures. With advanced age the service life can be limited. There is a risk of an accident. The manufacturer of your vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

The manufacturer of the vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2287
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Winter tires

General information

Winter tires are recommended for operating on winter roads.

Although so-called all-season M+S tires provide better winter traction than summer tires, they usually do not provide the same level of performance as winter tires.

Maximum speed of winter tires

If the maximum speed of the vehicle is higher than the permissible speed for the winter tires, then attach a label showing the permissible maximum speed in the field of view. The label is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

With winter tires mounted, observe and do not exceed the permissible maximum speed.

Changing runflat tires

For your own safety, use only runflat tires. No spare tire is available in the case of a flat tire. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Rotating wheels between axles

Different wear patterns can occur on the front and rear axles depending on individual driving conditions. The tires can be rotated in pairs between the axles to achieve even wear. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. After rotating, check the tire pressure and correct, if needed.

Rotating the tires is not permissible on vehicles with different tire sizes or rim sizes on the front and rear axles.

Storing tires

Tire inflation pressure

Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the side wall of the tire.

Storage

Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry and dark place.

Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease, and solvents.

Do not leave tires in plastic bags.

Remove dirt from wheels or tires.

Run-flat tires

Concept

Run-flat tires permit continued driving under restricted conditions even in the event of a complete loss of tire inflation pressure.

General information

The wheels consist of tires that are self-supporting, to a limited degree, and possibly special rims.

The support of the sidewall allows the tire to remain drivable to a restricted degree in the event of a tire inflation pressure loss.

Follow the instructions for continued driving with a flat tire.

Safety information

Warning

Your vehicle handles differently with a run-flat tire with no or low inflation pressure; for instance, your lane stability when braking is reduced, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2288
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

risk of accident. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Label

The tires are marked on the tire sidewall with RSC Run-flat System Component.

Repairing a flat tire

Safety measures

- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
- Switch on the hazard warning system.
- Secure the vehicle against rolling away by setting the parking brake.
- Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
- If necessary, set up a warning triangle at an appropriate distance.

Mobility System

Concept

With the Mobility System, minor tire damage can be sealed temporarily to enable continued travel.

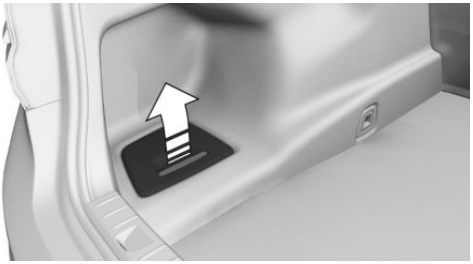
To accomplish this, sealant is pumped into the tires, which seals the damage from the inside.

General information

- Follow the instructions on using the Mobility System found on the compressor and sealant container.
- Use of the Mobility System may be ineffective if the tire puncture measures approx. 1/8 inches/4 mm or more.
- Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop if the tire cannot be made drivable.
- If possible, do not remove foreign bodies that have penetrated the tire. Only remove foreign objects if they are visibly protruding from the tire.
- Pull the speed limit sticker off the sealant container and apply it to the steering wheel.
- The use of a sealant can damage the TPM wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics checked and replaced at the next opportunity.
- The compressor can be used to check the tire inflation pressure.

Overview

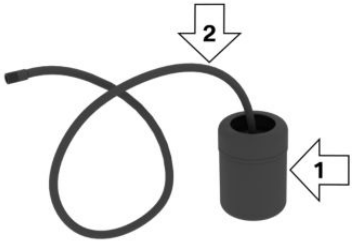
Storage



The Mobility System is in the left storage compartment of the cargo area.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2289
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

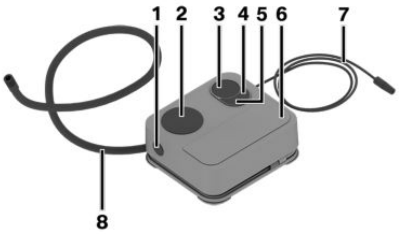
Sealant container



- ▷ Sealant container, arrow 1.
- ▷ Filling hose, arrow 2.

Observe use-by date on the sealant container.

Compressor



1 Sealant container unlocking
2 Sealant container holder
3 Tire pressure gage
4 Reduce tire inflation pressure button
5 On/off switch
6 Compressor
7 Connector/cable for socket
8 Connection hose

Safety measures

- ▷ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
- ▷ Switch on the hazard warning system.
- ▷ Secure the vehicle against rolling away by setting the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- ▷ Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
- ▷ If necessary, set up a warning triangle at an appropriate distance.

Filling the tire with sealant

Safety information

⚠ DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can enter into the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.

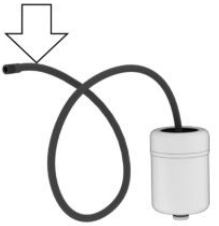
⚠ NOTICE

The compressor can overheat during extended operation. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not run the compressor for more than 10 minutes.

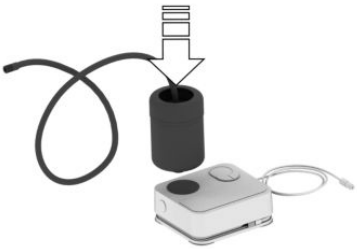
Filling

1. Shake the sealant container.

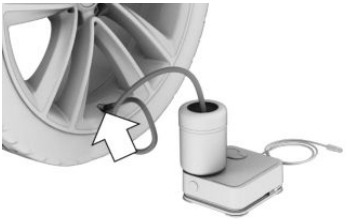
2. Pull filling hose completely out of the cover of the sealant container. Do not kink the hose.



3. Slide the sealant container into the holder on the compressor housing, ensuring that it engages audibly.



4. Screw the filling hose of the sealant container onto the tire valve of the nonworking wheel.



5. With the compressor switched off, insert the plug into the power socket inside the vehicle.

6. With standby state switched on or the engine running, switch on the compressor.

Let the compressor run for max. 10 minutes to fill the tire with sealant and achieve a tire inflation pressure of approx. 2.0 bar.

While the tire is being filled with sealant, the tire inflation pressure may sporadically reach approx. 5 bar. Do not switch off the compressor at this point.

Checking and adjusting the tire inflation pressure

Checking

1. Switch off the compressor.
2. Read the tire inflation pressure on the tire pressure gage.

To continue the trip, a tire inflation pressure of at least 2 bar must be reached.

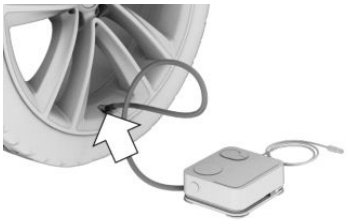
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2291
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Removing and stowing the sealant container

1. Unscrew the filling hose of the sealant container from the tire valve.
2. Press the red unlocking device.
3. Remove the sealant container from the compressor.
4. Wrap and store the sealant container in suitable material to avoid dirtying the cargo area.

Minimum tire inflation pressure is not reached

1. Pull the connector out of the power socket inside the vehicle.
2. Drive 33 ft/10 m forward and back to distribute the sealant in the tire.
3. Screw the connection hose of the compressor directly onto the tire valve stem.



4. Insert the connector into the power socket inside the vehicle.

5. With standby state switched on or the engine running, switch on the compressor.

   If a tire inflation pressure of at least 2 bar cannot be reached, contact your dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

   If a tire inflation pressure of at least 2 bar is reached, see Minimum tire inflation pressure is reached.
6. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
7. Pull the connector out of the power socket inside the vehicle.
8. Stow the Mobility System in the vehicle.

Minimum tire inflation pressure is reached

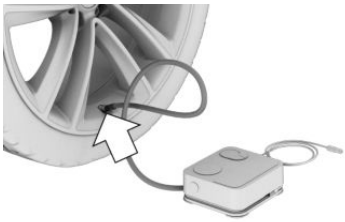
1. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
2. Pull the connector out of the power socket inside the vehicle.
3. Stow the Mobility System in the vehicle.
4. Immediately drive approx. 5 miles/10 km to ensure that the sealant is evenly distributed in the tire.

   Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

   If possible, do not drive at speeds less than 12 mph/20 km/h.

Adjustment

1. Stop at a suitable location.
2. Screw the connection hose of the compressor directly onto the tire valve stem.



3. Insert the connector into the power socket inside the vehicle.

4. Correct the tire inflation pressure to at least 2.0 bar.
   - ▷ Increase tire inflation pressure: with standby state switched on or the engine running, switch on the compressor.
   - ▷ Reduce tire inflation pressure: press the button on the compressor.
5. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
6. Pull the connector out of the power socket inside the vehicle.
7. Stow the Mobility System in the vehicle.

Continuing the trip

Do not exceed the maximum permissible speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Reinitialize the run-flat tires, refer to page 350.

Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM, refer to page 343.

Replace the nonworking tire and the sealant container of the Mobility System promptly.

Snow chains

Safety information

⚠ Warning

With the mounting of snow chains on unsuitable tires, the snow chains can come into contact with vehicle parts. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Only mount snow chains on tires that are designated by their manufacturer as suitable for the use of snow chains.

⚠ Warning

Insufficiently tight snow chains may damage tires and vehicle components. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the snow chains are always sufficiently tight. Re-tighten as needed according to the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Fine-link snow chains

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends the use of fine-link snow chains. Certain types of fine-link snow chains have been tested by the manufacturer of the vehicle and recommended as road-safe and suitable.

Information regarding suitable snow chains is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Use

Use only in pairs on the rear wheels, equipped with the tires of the following size:

- ▷ 245/50 R 18.
- ▷ 245/45 R 19.

Follow the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2293
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Do not initialize the Flat Tire Monitor after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

Do not reset the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

When driving with snow chains, briefly activate Dynamic Traction Control DTC to optimize the forward momentum.

Maximum speed with snow chains

Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h when using snow chains.

Rear axle steering during operation with snow chains

General information

In order to guarantee free running of the wheels when operating with snow chains, rear axle steering of the integral active steering must be switched off when snow chains are mounted.

Safety information

Warning

When rear axle steering is switched on and snow chains are mounted, there can be contact between snow chains and the chassis. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. With mounted snow chains, switch off the rear axle steering.

Switching off rear axle steering

The rear axle steering is switched off by specifying that snow chains are installed.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Tire chains"
5. "Snow chains installed"

Starting with the permissible maximum speed with snow chains of 30 mph/50 km/h the rear axle steering will be switched on again automatically.

Tire Pressure Monitor TPM

Concept

The system monitors tire inflation pressure in the four mounted tires. The system warns you if there is a loss of pressure in one or more tires.

General information

Sensors in the tire valves measure the tire inflation pressure and tire temperature.

Using the tire settings in iDrive, the system can automatically display the specified target pressures and compare them with the actual tire inflation pressures.

If tires are being used that are not specified on the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle, refer to page 328, such as tires with special approval, the system needs to be actively reset. The system will then take over the actual tire inflation pressures as the target pressures.

When operating the system, also note the additional information found in the Tire inflation pressure, refer to page 328, chapter.

Safety information

Warning

The display of the target pressures is not a substitute for the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle. Incorrect entries in the tire settings can lead to incorrect target tire inflation pressure values. In this case, it cannot be guaranteed that the notification of a loss of tire inflation pressure will be reliable. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Ensure

that the tire sizes of the mounted tires are displayed correctly and match the details on the tires and on the vehicle.

Functional requirements

The following conditions must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable flagging of a loss of tire inflation pressure is not assured:

- Every time a tire or wheel is changed, the correct details on the mounted tires must be entered in the tire settings, refer to page 344.
- For tires with special approval:
  - After a tire or wheel replacement, a reset was performed with the correct tire inflation pressure.
  - After the tire inflation pressure was adjusted to a new value, a reset was performed.
- Wheels with TPM wheel electronics.

Tire settings

General information

The tire sizes of the mounted tires can be gathered from the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle, refer to page 328, or directly on the tires.

The tire details do not need to be re-entered when the tire inflation pressure is corrected.

For summer and winter tires, the tire details entered last are stored. After a tire or wheel replacement, the settings of the tire sets used last can be selected.

Opening the menu

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor"

Changing settings

Via iDrive:

1. "Tire settings"
2. "Tire selection"
3. "Manual"
4. "Summer tires"
   "Winter/all-year"
5. Select the tire type that is mounted on the rear axle:
   - Tire size, e.g., 245/45 R18 96 Y.
   - For tires with special approval: "Other tire"
6. Select the maximum road speed that will be used with the tires.
7. "Save tire settings"

The measurement of the current tire inflation pressure is started. The measurement progress is displayed.

Status display

Current status

The system status can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g., whether or not the system is active.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor"

The current status is displayed.

Current tire inflation pressure

The current tire inflation pressure is displayed for each tire.

The current tire inflation pressures may change during driving operation or depending on the external temperature.

Current tire temperature

Depending on the model, the current tire temperatures are displayed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2295
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

The current tire temperatures may change while driving or due to the external temperature.

Target pressure

The target pressure for the tires on the front and rear axles is displayed.

The target pressures are values stored in the vehicle.

The specified target pressures take the influence of driving operation and external temperature on the tire temperature into account. The appropriate target pressure is always displayed, independent of the weather situation, tire temperatures and driving times.

The displayed target pressure may change and may differ from the tire inflation pressure details on the door pillar of the driver's door. The tire inflation pressure can thus be corrected to the value of the displayed target pressures.

The target pressure is immediately adjusted if the vehicle load is changed in the tire settings.

Tire conditions

General information

Tire and system status are indicated by the color of the wheels and a SMS text message on the Control Display.

Any existing messages may not be deleted if the displayed target pressure is not reached after the tire inflation pressure is corrected.

All wheels green

- The system is active and bases warnings on the displayed target pressures.
- For tires with special approval: the system is active and bases warnings on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

One to four yellow wheels

A flat tire or major drop in the tire inflation pressure has occurred in the indicated tires.

Gray wheels

It may not be possible to identify tire inflation pressure losses.

Possible causes:

- Malfunction.
- During tire inflation pressure measurement, after confirmation of the tire settings.
- For tires with special approval: the system is being reset.

For tires with special approval: perform a reset

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor"
4. Switch on drive-ready state and do not drive off.
5. Reset tire inflation pressure: "Perform reset".
6. Drive away.

The wheels are displayed in gray and the following is displayed "Resetting Tire Pressure Monitor…".

After a travel time of several minutes, the set tire inflation pressures are accepted as the target tire inflation pressures. The reset is completed automatically while driving.

After a successfully completed reset, the wheels on the Control Display are shown in green and the following is displayed: "Tire Pressure Monitor active. See label for recommended pressure.".

You may interrupt this trip at any time. When you continue the reset resumes automatically.

Messages: for tires without special approval

General information

A low tire inflation pressure may cause the DSC Dynamic Stability Control to be switched on.

Safety information

Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. Run-flat tires can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is equipped with normal tires. Follow the information on run-flat tires and continued driving with these tires.

If a tire inflation pressure check is required

Message

A symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	Inflation was not carried out according to specifications, e.g., when the tire has not been sufficiently inflated or in the case of a natural steady tire pressure loss.

Measure

Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.

If the tire inflation pressure is too low

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a tire inflation pressure loss.

Measure

1. Reduce the vehicle speed. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph/130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, for instance at a gas station, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires and correct if necessary.

If there is a significant loss of tire inflation pressure

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with the affected tire appears in a Check Control message on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with normal tires or run-flat tires.

   Run-flat tires, refer to page 337, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire's sidewall.

Messages: for tires with special approval

General information

A low tire inflation pressure may cause the DSC Dynamic Stability Control to be switched on.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2297
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Safety information

Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. Run-flat tires can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is equipped with normal tires. Follow the information on run-flat tires and continued driving with these tires.

If a tire inflation pressure check is required

Message

A symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	Inflation was not carried out according to specifications, e.g., the tire has not been sufficiently inflated. The system has detected a wheel change, but no reset was done. The tire inflation pressure has fallen below the level of the last reset. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.
2. Perform a system reset.

If the tire inflation pressure is too low

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a tire inflation pressure loss. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Reduce the vehicle speed. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph/130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, for instance at a gas station, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires and correct if necessary.
3. Reset the system.

If there is a significant loss of tire inflation pressure

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with the affected tire appears in a Check Control message on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with normal tires or run-flat tires.

   Run-flat tires, refer to page 337, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire's sidewall.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

Normal tires

1. Identify the damaged tire.

   Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure gage of a flat tire kit.

   For tires with special approval: if the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the TPM may not have been reset. In this case, perform the reset.

   If tire damage cannot be found, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
2. Repair the flat tire, e.g., with a flat tire kit or by changing the wheel.

Use of sealant, for instance from the flat tire kit, may damage the TPM wheel electronics. Have the electronics replaced at the next opportunity.

Run-flat tires

Safety information

Warning

Your vehicle handles differently with a run-flat tire with no or low inflation pressure; for instance, your lane stability when braking is reduced, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of accident. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Maximum speed

You may continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

Continued driving with a flat tire

Follow the following when continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

   For tires with special approval: if the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been reset. In this case, perform the reset.

Possible driving range with a depressurized tire

The distance for which it may be possible to drive safely varies depending on how the vehicle is loaded and used, e.g., speed, road conditions, external temperature. The driving range may be less but may also be more if an economical driving style is used.

If the vehicle is loaded with an average weight and used under favorable conditions, the distance for which it may be safe to drive may be up to 50 miles/80 km.

Vehicle handling with damaged tires

Vehicles driven with a damaged tire will handle differently, potentially leading to conditions such as the following:

- Greater likelihood of swerving off course.
- Longer braking distances.
- Changed self-steering properties.

Modify your driving style. Avoid abrupt steering maneuvers or driving over obstacles, for instance curbs or potholes.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2299
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire.

Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident.

Do not continue driving. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

System limits

Temperature

The tire inflation pressure depends on the tire's temperature.

Driving or exposure to the sun will increase the tire's temperature, thus increasing the tire inflation pressure.

The tire inflation pressure is reduced when the tire temperature falls again.

These circumstances may cause a warning when temperatures fall very sharply.

Following a temperature-related warning, the target pressures are displayed on the Control Display again after a short distance.

Sudden tire pressure loss

The system cannot indicate sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances.

Failure performing a reset

Tires with special approval: the system will not function correctly if a reset was not performed, for example a flat tire may be indicated although the tire inflation pressures are correct.

Malfunction

Message

The yellow warning light flashes and is then illuminated continuously. A Check Control message is displayed. It may not be possible to identify tire pressure losses.

Measure

- A wheel without TPM wheel electronics, such as an emergency wheel, is mounted: have the wheels checked, if needed.
- Malfunction: have the system checked.
- Interference caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- For tires with special approval: the system was unable to complete the reset. Perform a system reset again.

Declaration according to NHTSA/ FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Each tire, including the spare (if provided) should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.) As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale. Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS

malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Flat Tire Monitor FTM

Concept

The system detects tire inflation pressure loss on the basis of rotation speed differences between the individual wheels while driving.

In the event of a tire inflation pressure loss, the diameter and therefore the rotational speed of the corresponding wheel changes. The difference will be detected and reported as a flat tire.

The system does not measure the actual inflation pressure in the tires.

Functional requirements

The following conditions must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable flagging of a loss of tire inflation pressure is not assured:

- After a tire or wheel replacement, an initialization was performed with the correct tire inflation pressure.
- After the tire pressure was adjusted to a new value, an initialization was performed.

Status display

The current status of the flat tire monitor can be displayed, for instance whether the RPA is active.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Flat Tire Monitor"

The status is displayed.

Initialization required

An initialization must be performed in the following situations:

- After the tire inflation pressure has been adjusted.
- After a tire or wheel replacement.

Performing initialization

When initializing, the set tire inflation pressures serve as reference values in order to detect a flat tire. Initialization is started by confirming the tire inflation pressures.

Do not initialize the system when driving with snow chains.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Flat Tire Monitor"
4. Switch on drive-ready state and do not drive off.
5. Start the initialization with: "Perform reset"
6. Drive away.

The initialization is completed while driving, which can be interrupted at any time.

The initialization automatically continues when driving resumes.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2301
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Messages

General information

When a flat tire is indicated, DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if needed.

Safety information

Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. Run-flat tires can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is equipped with normal tires. Follow the information on run-flat tires and continued driving with these tires.

Indication of a flat tire

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with normal tires or run-flat tires.

   Run-flat tires, refer to page 337, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire's sidewall.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

Normal tires

1. Identify the damaged tire.

   To do this, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure gage of a flat tire kit.

   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

   If identification of flat tire damage is not possible, please contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
2. Repair the flat tire, e.g., with a flat tire kit or by changing the wheel.

Run-flat tires

Safety information

Warning

Your vehicle handles differently with a run-flat tire with no or low inflation pressure; for instance, your lane stability when braking is reduced, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of accident. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Maximum speed

You may continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

Continued driving with a flat tire

Follow the following when continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

3. Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

Possible driving range with a depressurized tire

The distance for which it may be possible to drive safely varies depending on how the vehicle is loaded and used, e.g., speed, road conditions, external temperature. The driving range may be less but may also be more if an economical driving style is used.

If the vehicle is loaded with an average weight and used under favorable conditions, the distance for which it may be safe to drive may be up to 50 miles/80 km.

Vehicle handling with damaged tires

Vehicles driven with a damaged tire will handle differently, potentially leading to conditions such as the following:

- Greater likelihood of swerving off course.
- Longer braking distances.
- Changed self-steering properties.

Modify your driving style. Avoid abrupt steering maneuvers or driving over obstacles, for instance curbs or potholes.

Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire.

Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident.

Do not continue driving. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

System limits

The system could be delayed or malfunction in the following situations:

- A natural, even tire inflation pressure loss in all four tires will not be recognized. Therefore, check the tire inflation pressure regularly.
- Sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances cannot be recognized in advance.
- When the system has not been initialized.
- When driving on a snowy or slippery road surface.
- Sporty driving style: spinning traction wheels, high lateral acceleration (drifting).
- When driving with snow chains.

Changing wheels/tires

General information

When using run-flat tires or a flat tire kit, a wheel does not always need to be changed immediately when there is a loss of tire inflation pressure due to a flat tire.

If needed, the tools for changing wheels are available as accessories from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

⚠ DANGER

The vehicle jack is only provided for short-term lifting of the vehicle for wheel changes. Even if all safety measures are observed, there is a risk of the raised vehicle falling, if the vehicle jack tips over. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. If the vehicle is raised, do not lie under the vehicle and do not start the engine.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2303
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

DANGER

Supports such as wooden blocks under the vehicle jack reduce the capacity of the vehicle jack to bear weight. They have the potential to exert too much strain on the vehicle jack, causing it to tip over and the vehicle to fall. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not place supports under the vehicle jack.

Warning

The jack, issued by the vehicle manufacturer, is provided in order to perform a wheel change in the event of a breakdown. The jack is not designed for frequent use; for example, changing from summer to winter tires. Using the jack frequently may cause it to become jammed or damaged. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only use the jack to attach an emergency or spare wheel in the event of a breakdown.

Warning

On soft, uneven or slippery ground, for example snow, ice, tiles, etc., the vehicle jack can slip away. There is a risk of injury. If possible, change the wheel on a flat, solid, and slip-resistant surface.

Warning

The vehicle jack is optimized for lifting the vehicle and for the jacking points on the vehicle only. There is a risk of injury. Do not lift any other vehicle or cargo using the vehicle jack.

Warning

If the vehicle jack is not inserted into the jacking point provided for this purpose, the vehicle may be damaged or the vehicle jack may slip when it is being cranked up. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. When cranking up the vehicle jack, ensure that it is inserted in the jacking point next to the wheel housing.

Warning

A vehicle that is raised on a vehicle jack may fall off of the jack if lateral forces are exerted on it. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. While the vehicle is raised, do not exert lateral forces on the vehicle or pull abruptly on the vehicle. Have a stuck wheel removed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Securing the vehicle against rolling

General information

The vehicle manufacturer recommends to additionally secure the vehicle against rolling away when changing a wheel.

On a level surface

Place wheel chocks or other suitable objects in front and behind the wheel that is diagonal to the wheel to be changed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2304
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

On a slight downhill gradient

If you need to change a wheel on a slight downhill grade, place chocks and other suitable objects, for instance a rock, under the wheels of both the front and rear axles against the rolling direction.

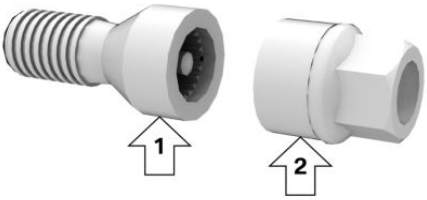
Lug bolt lock

Concept

The wheel lug bolts have a special coding. The lug bolts can only be released with the adapter which matches the coding.

Overview

The adapter of the lug bolt lock is in the onboard vehicle tool kit or in a storage compartment close to the onboard vehicle tool kit.



- Lug bolt, arrow 1.
- Adapter, arrow 2.

Unscrewing

1. Attach the adapter to the lug bolt.
2. Unscrew the lug bolt.
3. Remove the adapter after unscrewing the lug bolt.

Screwing on

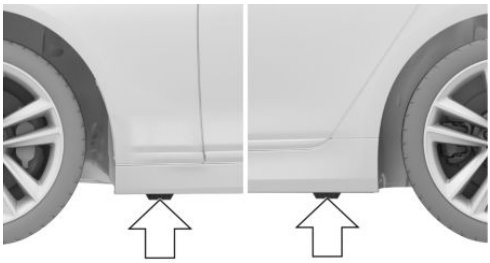
1. Attach the adapter to the lug bolt. If necessary, turn the adapter until it fits on the lug bolt.
2. Screw on the lug bolt. The tightening torque is 140 Nm.
3. Remove the adapter and stow it after screwing on the lug bolt.

Preparing the vehicle

- Park the vehicle on solid and non-slip ground at a safe distance from traffic.
- Switch on the hazard warning system.
- Set the parking brake.
- Engage a gear or move the selector lever to position P.
- As soon as permitted by the traffic flow, have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
- Depending on the vehicle equipment, get wheel change tools and, if necessary, the emergency wheel from the vehicle.
- If necessary, set up a warning triangle or portable hazard warning light at an appropriate distance.
- Secure the vehicle additionally against rolling.
- Loosen the lug bolts a half turn.
- Deactivate the air suspension level adjustment, refer to page 265.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2305
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Jacking points for the vehicle jack



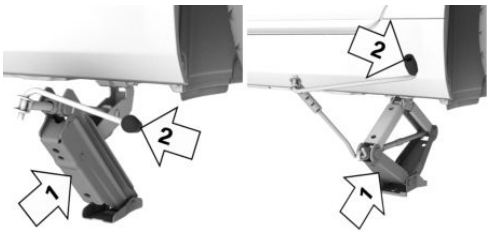
The jacking points for the vehicle jack are located at the indicated positions.

Jacking up the vehicle

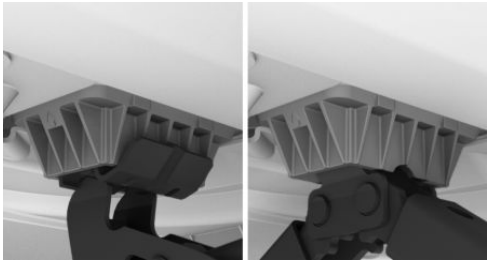
Warning

Hands and fingers can be jammed when using the vehicle jack. There is a risk of injury. Comply with the described hand position and do not change this position while using the vehicle jack.

1. Hold the vehicle jack with one hand, arrow 1, and grasp the vehicle jack crank or lever with your other hand, arrow 2.

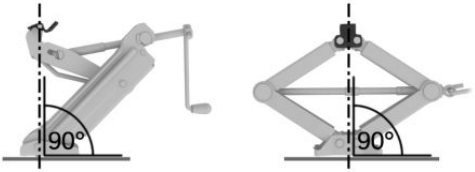


2. Insert the vehicle jack into the rectangular recess of the jacking point closest to the wheel to be changed.

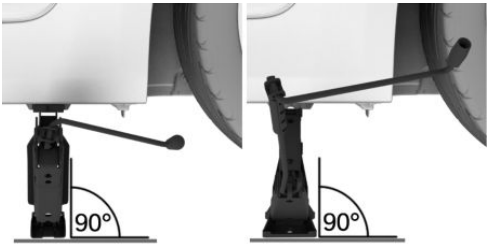


3. Extend the vehicle jack by turning the vehicle jack crank or lever clockwise.

4. Take your hand away from the vehicle jack as soon as the vehicle jack is under load and continue turning the vehicle jack crank or lever with one hand.
5. Make sure that the vehicle jack foot stands vertically and at a right angle beneath the jacking point.



6. Make sure that the vehicle jack foot stands vertically and perpendicularly beneath the jacking point after extending the vehicle jack.



7. Crank the vehicle up, until the vehicle jack is with the entire surface on the ground and the relevant wheel is maximum 1.2 inches/3 cm above ground.

Mounting a wheel

Mount one emergency wheel only, as required.

1. Unscrew the lug bolts.
2. Remove the wheel.
3. Put the new wheel or emergency wheel on and screw in at least two lug bolts in a crosswise pattern until hand-tight.

   If non-original light-alloy wheels of the vehicle manufacturer are mounted, the accompanying lug bolts may have to be used as well.
4. Hand-tighten the remaining lug bolts and tighten all lug bolts well in a crosswise pattern.
5. Turn the vehicle jack crank counterclockwise to retract the vehicle jack and lower the vehicle.
6. Remove the vehicle jack and stow it securely.

After the wheel change

1. Tighten the lug bolts crosswise. The tightening torque is 101 lbs ft/140 Nm.
2. Stow the nonworking wheel in the cargo area, if necessary.

   The nonworking wheel cannot be stored under the cargo floor panel because of its size.
3. Check tire inflation pressure at the next opportunity and correct as needed.
4. Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

   Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM.
5. Check to make sure the lug bolts are tight with a calibrated torque wrench.
6. Have the damaged tire replaced at the nearest dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Emergency wheel

Concept

In the event of a flat tire, the emergency wheel can be used in place of the wheel with the defec-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2307
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

tive tire. The emergency wheel is only intended for temporary use until the defective tire/wheel has been replaced.

General information

Mount one emergency wheel only.

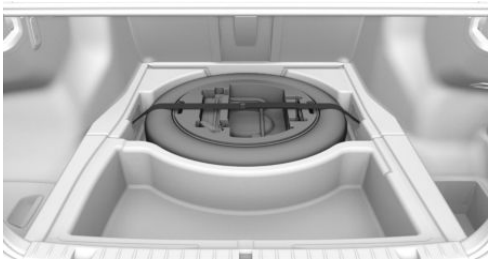
Also check the tire inflation pressure of the emergency wheel in the cargo area regularly, and correct it as needed.

Safety information

Warning

The emergency wheel has particular dimensions. When driving with an emergency wheel, changed driving properties may occur, for instance reduced lane stability when braking, longer braking distance, and changed self-steering properties in the limit area. There is a risk of accident. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

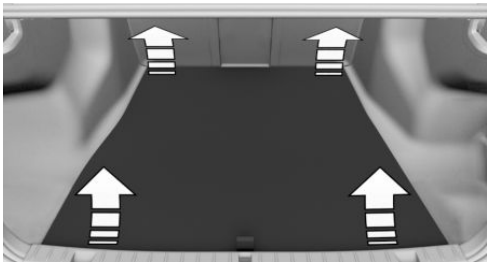
Overview



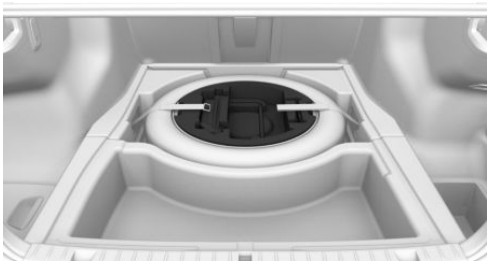
The emergency wheel and the wheel change tools are located in the cargo area under the cargo floor panel.

Removing the emergency wheel

1. Remove the cargo floor panel. To do this, pull the cargo floor panel upward directly behind the rear backrests.



2. Open the ratchet strap.



3. Remove the tool holder.
4. Remove the emergency wheel from the storage well. Do not remove any covers.

Inserting the emergency wheel

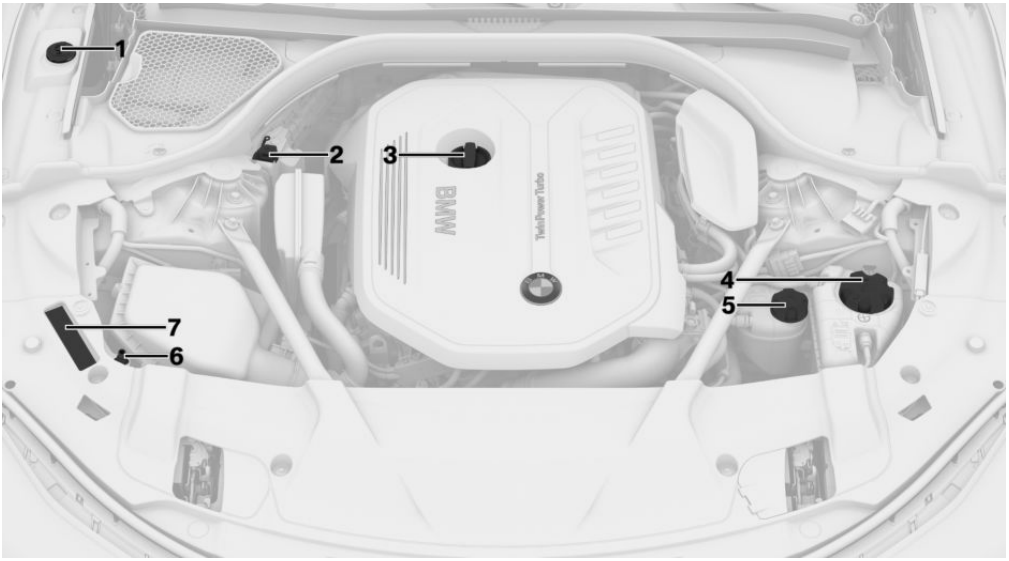
1. Place the emergency wheel in the storage well.
2. Insert the tool holder.
3. Tie the ratchet strap. Make sure that it is correctly and firmly seated.
4. Insert the cargo floor panel.

Engine compartment

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Overview



1 Filler neck for washer fluid
2 Jump-starting, positive battery terminal
3 Oil filler neck
4 Coolant reservoir, engine
5 Gasoline engine only: coolant reservoir, auxiliary cooling
6 Jump-starting, negative battery terminal
7 Vehicle identification number

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2309
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Hood

Safety information

Warning

Improperly executed work in the engine compartment can damage vehicle components and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of an accident and damage to property. Have work in the engine compartment performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

The engine compartment accommodates moving components. Certain components in the engine compartment can also move with the vehicle switched off, for instance the radiator fan. There is a risk of injury. Do not reach into the area of moving parts. Keep articles of clothing and hair away from moving parts.

Warning

There are protruding parts, for instance locking hook, on the inside of the hood. There is a risk of injury. If the hood is open, pay attention to protruding parts and keep clear of these areas.

Warning

An incorrectly locked hood can open while driving and restrict visibility. There is a risk of accident. Stop immediately and correctly close the hood.

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when opening and closing the hood. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the hood is clear during opening and closing.

NOTICE

Folded-away wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.

NOTICE

When the hood is closed, it must engage on both sides. Pressing again can damage the hood. There is a risk of damage to property. Open the hood again and then close it energetically. Avoid pressing again.

Opening

1. Pull lever, arrow 1.

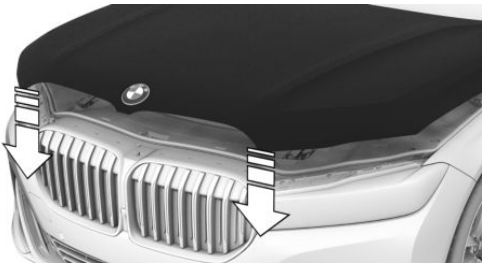
   Hood is unlocked.

2. After the lever is released, pull the lever again, arrow 2.

   Hood can be opened.

3. Be careful of protruding parts on the hood.

Closing



Energetically close the hood from approx. 20 in/50 cm.

The hood must engage on both sides.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2311
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Operating materials

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Fuel recommendation

General information

Depending on the region, many gas stations sell fuel that has been customized to winter or summer conditions. Fuel that is available in winter, for instance helps make a cold start easier.

Gasoline

General information

For the best fuel efficiency, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.

Fuels with a maximum ethanol content of 25 %, i. e. E10 or E25, may be used for refueling.

Ethanol should meet the following quality standards:

US: ASTM 4806–xx

CAN: CGSB-3.511–xx

xx: comply with the current standard in each case.

Safety information

⚠ CAUTION

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in harmful engine deposits or damage. Additionally, problems relating to drivability, starting and stalling, especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude, may occur.

If drivability problems are encountered, we recommend switching to a high quality gasoline brand and a higher octane grade — AKI number — for a few tank fills. To avoid harmful engine deposits, it is highly recommended to purchase gasoline from Top Tier retailers.

Failure to comply with these recommendations may result in the need for unscheduled maintenance.

⚠ NOTICE

Even small quantities of the wrong fuel or wrong fuel additives can damage the fuel system and engine. Furthermore, the catalytic converter is permanently damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not refuel or add the following in the case of gasoline engines:

- Leaded gasoline.
- Metallic additives, for instance manganese or iron.

Do not press the Start/Stop button after refueling with the wrong fuel. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

NOTICE

Incorrect fuels can damage the fuel system and the engine. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use fuels with a higher percentage of ethanol than recommended. Do not refuel with fuels containing methanol, e.g. M5 to M100.

NOTICE

Fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality can compromise engine function or cause engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not fill with fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality.

Recommended fuel grade

BMW recommends AKI 91.

M760Li:

BMW recommends AKI 93.

Refuel with this gasoline to achieve the rated performance and consumption values.

Minimum fuel grade

BMW recommends AKI 89.

If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI Rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high external temperatures. This has no effect on the engine life.

BMW recommends Shell Quality Fuels

Engine oil

General information

The engine oil consumption is dependent on your driving style and driving conditions.

Therefore, regularly check the engine oil level after refueling by taking a detailed measurement.

The engine oil consumption can increase in the following situations, for instance:

- Sporty driving style.
- Break-in of the engine.
- Idling of the engine.
- With use of engine oil types that are classified as not suitable.

Different Check Control messages appear on the Control Display depending on the engine oil level.

Safety information

NOTICE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Immediately add engine oil.

NOTICE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add too much engine oil. When too much engine oil is added, have the engine oil level corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Electronic oil measurement

General information

The electronic oil measurement has two measuring principles:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2313
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

- Monitoring.
- Detailed measurement.

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a dynamic driving style, for instance when taking curves aggressively, regularly perform a detailed measurement.

Monitoring

Concept

The engine oil level is monitored electronically while driving and can be shown on the Control Display.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.

A red indicator light indicates that the engine oil pressure is too low.

Functional requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of normal driving.

Displaying the engine oil level

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"

The engine oil level is displayed.

System limits

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a dynamic driving style, it may not be possible to calculate a measured value. In this case, the measured value for the last, sufficiently long trip is displayed.

Detailed measurement

Concept

The engine oil level is checked when the vehicle is stationary and displayed via a scale.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.

General information

During the measurement, the idle speed is increased somewhat.

Functional requirements

- Vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- Selector lever in selector lever position N or P and accelerator pedal not depressed.
- Engine is running and is at operating temperature.

Performing a detailed measurement

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"
4. "Engine oil measurement"
5. "Start measurement"

The engine oil level is checked and displayed via a scale.

Adding engine oil

General information

Only add engine oil when the message is displayed in the instrument cluster. The quantity to be added is indicated in the message shown on the Control Display.

Only add suitable types of engine oil, refer to page 365.

Safely park the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before adding engine oil.

Take care not to add too much engine oil.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2314
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Safety information

Warning

Operating materials, for instance oils, greases, coolants, fuels, can contain harmful ingredients. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Follow the instructions on the containers. Avoid the contact of articles of clothing, skin or eyes with operating materials. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.

NOTICE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Immediately add engine oil.

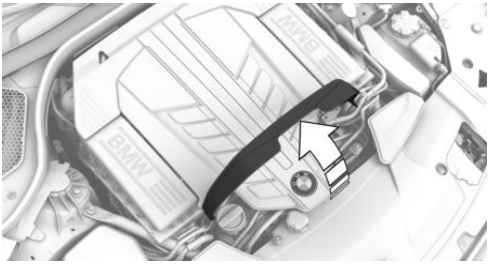
NOTICE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add too much engine oil. When too much engine oil is added, have the engine oil level corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Overview

The oil filler neck is located in the engine compartment, refer to page 358.

M760Li: Opening/closing the flap



When the flap is closed, it must latch.

Adding engine oil

1. Open the hood, refer to page 359.
2. Open the lid counterclockwise.

3. Add engine oil.
4. Close the lid.

Engine oil types to add

General information

The engine oil quality is critical for the life of the engine.

Only add the types of engine oil which are listed.

Safety information

NOTICE

Oil additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use oil additives.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2315
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

NOTICE

Incorrect engine oil can cause malfunctions in the engine or damage it. There is a risk of damage to property. When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has the correct oil rating.

Suitable engine oil types

Add engine oils that meet the following oil rating standards:

Gasoline engine
BMW Longlife-01 FE.
BMW Longlife-14 FE+.
BMW Longlife-17 FE+.

Oil ratings BMW Longlife-14 FE+ and BMW Longlife-17 FE+ are not suitable for gasoline engines 50i and 60i.

Alternative engine oil types

If an engine oil suitable for continuous use is not available, up to 1 US quart/liter of an engine oil with the following oil rating can be added:

Oil rating
API SL.
API SM.
API SN.

Viscosity grades

Viscosity grades
SAE 0W-20.
SAE 0W-30.

The viscosity grade SAE 0W-20 is not suitable for gasoline engines 50i and 60i.

More information about suitable oil ratings and viscosity grades of engine oils can be requested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Engine oil change

NOTICE

Engine oil that is not changed in timely fashion can cause increased engine wear and thus engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not exceed the service data indicated in the vehicle.

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop change the engine oil.

BMW recommends
Original BMW Engine Oil.

Coolant

General information

Coolant consists of water and additives.

Not all commercially available additives are suitable for the vehicle. Information about suitable additives is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2316
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Safety information

Warning

With the engine hot and the cooling system open, coolant can escape and lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury. Only open the cooling system with the engine cooled down.

Warning

Additives are harmful and incorrect additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Do not allow additives to come into contact with skin, eyes or articles of clothing. Use suitable additives only.

Coolant level

General information

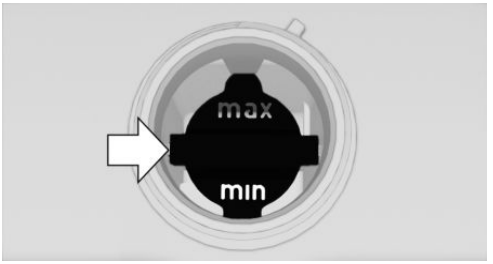
Vehicles with gasoline engine feature two cooling circuits. Always check the coolant levels of both coolant reservoirs and refill as needed.

The coolant level is indicated using minimum and maximum markings in the filler neck of the coolant reservoir.

Depending on the engine installation, the coolant reservoir is located on the right side or the left side of the engine compartment, refer to page 358.

Checking the coolant level

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Open the hood, refer to page 359.
3. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.
4. Open the coolant reservoir lid.
5. The coolant level is correct if it lies between the minimum and maximum marks in the filler neck.



6. Close the lid.

Adding

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Open the hood, refer to page 359.
3. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.
4. Open the coolant reservoir lid.
5. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to the specified level; do not overfill.
6. Close the lid.
7. Have the cause of the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.

Disposal

Comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant and coolant additives.

Washer fluid

General information

All washer nozzles are supplied from one reservoir.

Use a mixture of tap water and windshield washer concentrate. If desired, a windshield

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2317
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

washer concentrate containing antifreeze can be used.

Recommended minimum fill quantity:
0.2 US gal/1 liter.

Safety information

Warning

Some antifreeze agents can contain harmful substances and are flammable. There is a risk of fire and a risk of injury. Follow the instructions on the containers. Keep antifreeze away from ignition sources. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.

United States: the washer fluid mixture ratio is regulated by the U.S. EPA and many individual states; do not exceed the allowable washer fluid dilution ratio limits that apply. Follow the usage instructions on the washer fluid container.

Use of BMW's Windshield Washer Concentrate or the equivalent is recommended.

Warning

Washer fluid can ignite and catch fire on contact with hot engine parts. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Only add washer fluid when the engine is cooled down. Next, fully close the lid of the washer fluid reservoir.

NOTICE

Silicon-containing additives in the washer fluid for the water-repelling effect on the windows can lead to damage to the washing system. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add silicon-containing additives to the washer fluid.

NOTICE

Mixing different windshield washer concentrates or antifreeze can damage the washing system. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not mix different windshield washer concentrates or antifreeze. Follow the information and mixing ratios provided on the containers.

Overview

The washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment.

Malfunction

The use of undiluted windshield washer concentrate or alcohol-based antifreeze can lead to incorrect readings at temperatures below +5 °F/-15 °C.

Maintenance

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

BMW maintenance system

The maintenance system indicates required maintenance measures, and thereby provides support in maintaining road safety and the operational reliability of the vehicle.

In some cases, scopes and intervals of the maintenance system may vary according to the country version. Replacement work, spare parts, fuels and lubricants, and wear materials are calculated separately. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Condition Based Service CBS

Concept

Sensors and special algorithms take into account the driving conditions of the vehicle. CBS uses these to calculate the need for maintenance.

The system makes it possible to adapt the amount of maintenance corresponding to your user profile.

General information

Information on service requirements, refer to page 157, can be displayed on the Control Display.

Service data in the remote control

Information on the required maintenance is continuously stored in the remote control. The service center can read this data out and suggest a maintenance scope for the vehicle.

Therefore, hand the service advisor the remote control with which the vehicle was driven most recently.

Storage periods

Storage periods during which the vehicle battery was disconnected are not taken into account.

If this occurs, have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop update the time-dependent maintenance procedures, such as checking brake fluid and, if necessary, changing the engine oil and the microfilter/activated-charcoal filter.

Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

Please consult your Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on service requirements.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that maintenance and repair be performed by a service center or another qualified service center

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2319
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

or repair shop. Records of regular maintenance and repair work should be retained.

Socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis

General information

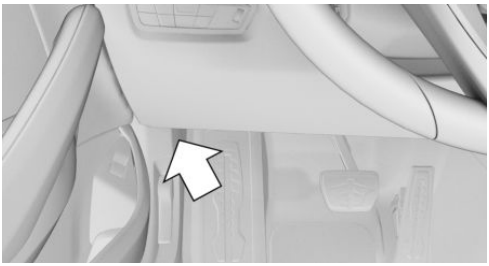
Devices connected to the OBD socket trigger the alarm system when the vehicle is locked. Remove any devices connected at the OBD socket before locking the vehicle.

Safety information

NOTICE

The socket for Onboard Diagnosis is an intricate component intended to be used in conjunction with specialized equipment to check the vehicle's primary emissions system. Improper use of the socket for Onboard Diagnosis, or contact with the socket for Onboard Diagnosis for other than its intended purpose, can cause vehicle malfunctions and creates risks of personal and property damage. Given the foregoing, the manufacture of your vehicle strongly recommends that access to the socket for Onboard Diagnosis be limited to a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or other persons that have the specialized training and equipment for purposes of properly utilizing the socket for Onboard Diagnosis.

Position



There is an OBD socket on the driver's side for checking the primary components in the vehicle's emissions.

Emissions

- The warning light lights up:

  Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

- The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:

  This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

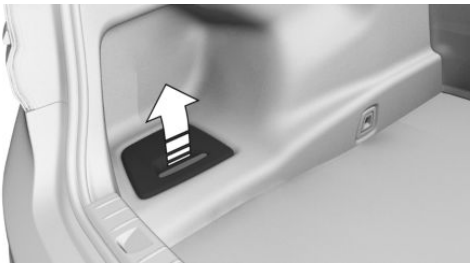
  Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

Replacing components

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Vehicle tool kit



The onboard vehicle tool kit is located in the left storage compartment of the cargo area.

Wiper blades

Safety information

NOTICE

The window may sustain damage if the wiper falls onto it without the wiper blade installed. There is a risk of damage to property. Hold the wiper firmly when changing the wiper blade. Do not fold or switch on the wiper without a wiper blade installed.

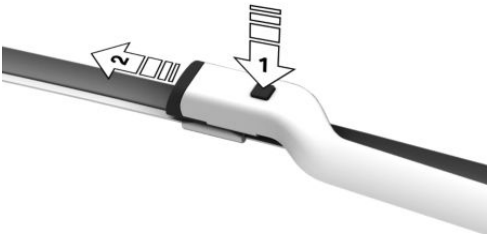
NOTICE

Folded-away wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.

Replacing the front wiper blades

1. To change the wiper blades, fold up the wiper arms, refer to page 143.
2. Lift the wiper all the way off of the windshield.

3. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull out the wiper blade, arrow 2.



4. Insert the new wiper blade and press it on until it you hear it snap into the holder.
5. Fold down the wipers.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2321
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Lights and bulbs

General information

Lights and bulbs make an essential contribution to vehicle safety.

All headlights and lights are made using LED or laser technology.

Some items of equipment use light-emitting diodes installed behind a cover as a light source. These light-emitting diodes are related to conventional lasers and are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you let a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop perform the work in case of a malfunction.

Safety information

Warning

Focused laser light can irritate or permanently damage the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that the work on the lighting system including bulb replacement be performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

Intensive brightness can irritate or damage the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. Do not look directly into the headlights or other light sources. Do not remove the LED covers.

Headlight glass

Condensation can form on the inside of the headlight glass in cool or humid weather. When driving with the lights switched on, the condensation evaporates after a short time. The headlight glass does not need to be changed.

If despite driving with the headlights switched on, increasing humidity forms, for instance water droplets in the light, have the headlights checked.

Vehicle battery

General information

The battery is maintenance-free.

More information about the battery can be requested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Register the battery to the vehicle

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you have a service center or another qualified service center or repair shop register the vehicle battery to the vehicle after the battery has been replaced. Once the battery has been registered again, all comfort features will be available without restriction and any Check Control messages displayed which relate to comfort features will disappear.

Charging the battery

General information

Make sure that the battery is always sufficiently charged to guarantee that the battery remains usable for its full service life.

A discharged battery is indicated by a red indicator light.

Charge the battery in the following situations:

- When the inspection glass on the top of the battery is black.
- When the take-off performance is insufficient.

The following circumstances can have a negative effect on the performance of the battery:

- Frequent short-distance drives.
- The vehicle is not used for more than a month.

Safety information

Charging the battery

Charge the battery only when the engine is off and via the starting aid terminals, refer to page 376, in the engine compartment.

Power failure

After a power loss, some equipment needs to be newly initialized or individual settings updated, for example:

- Memory function: store the positions again.
- Time: update.
- Date: update.
- Glass sunroof: initialize the system.

Disposing of old batteries

Have old batteries disposed of by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take them to a collection point.

Maintain the filled battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Secure the battery so that it does not tip over during transport.

Fuses

Safety information

Warning

Incorrect and repaired fuses can overload electrical lines and components. There is a risk of fire. Never attempt to repair a blown fuse. Do not replace a nonworking fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating.

Accessing the fuses

The fuses are located in the cargo area on the right side behind a cover.

Remove the cover on the right side trim.

Information on the fuse types and locations, as well as the positions of any other fuse boxes, is available on the Internet: www.bmw.com/fusecard.

Where applicable, information on the fuse types and locations is also found on a separate sheet in the fuse box.

Replacing fuses

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop replace the fuses.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2323
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Breakdown assistance

Vehicle features and options

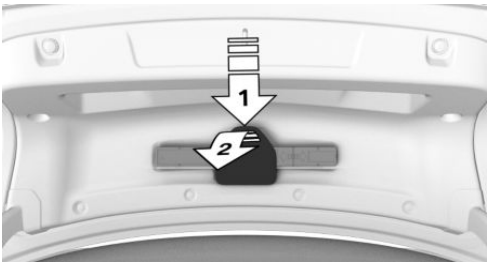
This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Hazard warning flashers

The button is located in the center console.

The red light in the button flashes when the hazard warning flashers are activated.

Warning triangle



The warning triangle is located on the inside of the trunk lid.

Press on the release, arrow 1, and swivel the cover down, arrow 2.

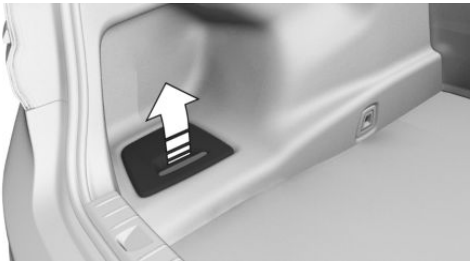
First-aid kit

General information

Some of the articles have a limited service life.

Check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace any expired items promptly.

Storage



The first-aid kit is located in the left storage compartment of the cargo area.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2324
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

BMW Roadside Assistance

Concept

Contact the BMW Group Roadside Assistance if assistance is needed in the event of a breakdown.

General information

In the event of a breakdown, data on the vehicle's condition is transmitted to the BMW Roadside Assistance.

There are various ways of contacting BMW Roadside Assistance.

- Via a Check Control message, refer to page 153.
- Calling with a mobile phone.
- Via the BMW Connected app.

Functional requirements

- Active ConnectedDrive contract, equipment version with Intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- Cellular network reception.
- Standby state is switched on.

Starting

If the vehicle is equipped with Teleservices, support is offered through Teleservice Diagnosis.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "BMW Assist"
3. If necessary, "BMW Roadside Assistance"

   A voice connection is established.

Teleservice Diagnosis

Teleservice Diagnosis enables the wireless transmission of detailed vehicle data that is important for vehicle diagnosis. This data is transmitted automatically. It may be necessary to approve this on the Control Display.

Teleservice Help

Depending on the country, Teleservice Help enables an in-depth diagnosis of the vehicle by BMW Roadside Assistance via wireless transmission.

You can launch Teleservice Help by requesting it through BMW Roadside Assistance.

1. Park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Set the parking brake.
3. Control Display is switched on.
4. Confirm Teleservice Help.

BMW Accident Assistance

Concept

BMW Group Accident Assistance can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of an accident.

General information

If the vehicle sensors detect a minor to moderately severe accident, which did not trigger any airbags, a Check Control message appears on the instrument cluster. In addition, a text message appears on the Control Display.

When BMW Accident Assistance is activated, data on the vehicle's condition is sent to BMW.

Functional requirements

- Active ConnectedDrive contract, equipment version with Intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- Cellular network reception.
- Standby state is switched on.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2325
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Starting BMW Accident Assistance

If an accident is detected automatically

A text message relating to BMW Accident Assistance appears on the Control Display.

The connection can be established directly:

"Call BMW Accident Assistance"

The Check Control message for BMW Accident Assistance can also be called up from the stored Check Control messages, refer to page 153, for a certain length of time.

Starting manually

BMW Accident Assistance can also be contacted independently of the automatic accident detection function.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "BMW Assist"
3. "Call BMW Accident Assistance"

   Follow the displays on the Control Display. A voice connection is established.

Emergency Request

Intelligent emergency call

Concept

In case of an emergency, an Emergency Request can be triggered automatically by the system or manually.

General information

Only press the SOS button in an emergency.

The Intelligent Assist system establishes a connection with the BMW Response Center.

For technical reasons, the Emergency Request cannot be guaranteed under unfavorable conditions.

Overview

SOS button.

Functional requirements

- Standby state is switched on.
- The Assist system is functional.
- If the vehicle is equipped with intelligent emergency call: the SIM card integrated in the vehicle has been activated.

Automatic triggering

Under certain conditions, for instance if the airbags trigger, an Emergency Request is automatically initiated immediately after an accident of corresponding severity. Automatic Collision Notification is not affected by pressing the SOS button.

Manual triggering

1. Tap the cover.
2. Press and hold the SOS button until the LED in the area of the button illuminates green.

- The LED is illuminated green when an Emergency Request has been initiated.

  If a cancel prompt appears on the Control Display, the Emergency Request can be aborted.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2326
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

If the situation allows, wait in your vehicle until the voice connection has been established.

▷ The LED flashes green when a connection to the BMW Response Center has been established.

The BMW Response Center then makes contact with you and takes further steps to help you.

Even if you are unable to respond, the BMW Response Center can take further steps to help you under certain circumstances.

For this, data is transmitted to the BMW Response Center which serves to determine the necessary rescue measures. For instance, the current position of the vehicle, if it can be established.

Even if you can no longer hear the BMW Response Center through the loudspeakers, the BMW Response Center may still be able to hear you.

The BMW Response Center ends the Emergency Request.

Jump-starting

General information

If the battery is discharged, the engine can be started using the battery of another vehicle and two jumper cables. Only use jumper cables with fully insulated clamp handles.

Safety information

⚠ DANGER

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.

⚠ Warning

If the jumper cables are connected in the incorrect order, sparking may occur. There is a risk of injury. Pay attention to the correct order during connection.

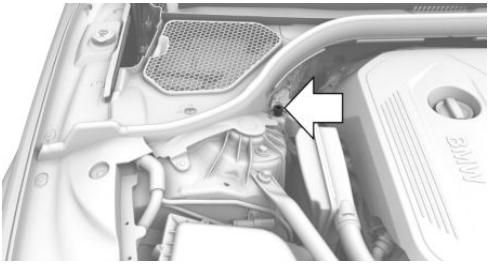
⚠ NOTICE

In the case of body contact between the two vehicles, a short circuit can occur during jump-starting. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that no body contact occurs.

Preparation

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts. The voltage information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any electronic systems/power consumers in both vehicles.

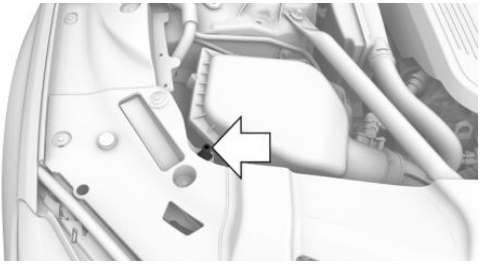
Starting aid terminals



The starting aid terminal in the engine compartment acts as the battery's positive terminal.

Open the cover of the starting aid terminal.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2327
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19



A special nut serves as the negative terminal of the battery.

Connecting the cables

Before you begin, switch off all unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers, such as the radio, on the assisting and receiving vehicle.

1. Open the cover of the starting aid terminal.
2. Attach one terminal clamp of the positive jumper cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the terminal clamp on the other end of the cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one terminal clamp of the negative jumper cable to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of assisting vehicle.
5. Attach the second terminal clamp to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

Starting the engine

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.

1. Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run for several minutes at an increased idle speed.
2. Start the engine of the vehicle that is to be started in the usual way.

   If the first starting attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before making another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.
3. Let both engines run for several minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables in the reverse order.

Check the battery and recharge, if needed.

Tow-starting and towing

Safety information

Warning

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

Transporting the vehicle

General information

The vehicle is not permitted to be towed.

Safety information

NOTICE

The vehicle can be damaged when towing the vehicle with a single lifted axle. There is a risk of damage to property. The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.

NOTICE

The vehicle can become damaged when lifting and securing it.

There is a risk of damage to property.

▷ Lift the vehicle using suitable means.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2328

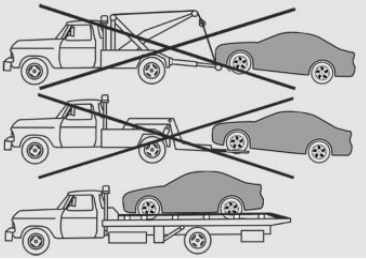
▷ Do not lift or secure the vehicle by its tow fitting, body parts, or suspension parts.

Pushing the vehicle

To remove a broken-down vehicle from the danger area, it can be pushed for a short distance.

For rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 145.

Tow truck



The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.

Towing other vehicles

General information

Switch on the hazard warning system, depending on local regulations.

If the electrical system has failed, clearly identify the vehicle being towed by placing a sign or a warning triangle in the rear window.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

If the approved gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is lighter than the vehicle to be towed, the tow fitting can tear off or it will not be possible to control the vehicle's response. There is a risk of accident. Make sure that the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is heavier than the vehicle to be towed.

⚠ NOTICE

If the tow bar or tow rope is attached incorrectly, damage to other vehicle parts can occur. There is a risk of damage to property. Correctly attach the tow bar or tow rope to the tow fitting.

Tow bar

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles.

Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an offset angle, please follow the following:

▷ Maneuvering capability is limited going around corners.

▷ The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is secured with an offset.

Tow rope

When starting to tow the vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

Use nylon ropes or straps, which will enable the vehicle to be towed without jerking.

Tow fitting

General information

The screw-in tow fitting should always be carried in the vehicle.

The tow fitting can be screwed in at the front or rear of the vehicle.

The tow fitting is found in the onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 370.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2329
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

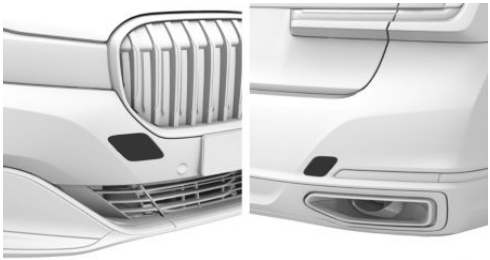
- Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle and screw it all the way in.
- Use the tow fitting for towing on paved roads only.
- Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, for instance do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting.

Safety information

NOTICE

If the tow fitting is not used as intended, there may be damage to the vehicle or to the tow fitting. There is a risk of damage to property. Follow the notes on using the tow fitting.

Screw thread for tow fitting



Press on the mark on the edge of the cover to push it out.

For covers which have an opening instead of a marking, pull the cover out by the opening.

Tow-starting

Do not tow-start the vehicle.

Start the engine by jump-starting, refer to page 376, if possible.

Have the reasons for the starting difficulties corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2330
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Care

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Washing the vehicle

General information

Regularly remove foreign objects such as leaves in the area below the windshield when the hood is raised.

Wash your vehicle frequently, particularly in winter. Intense soiling and road salt can damage the vehicle.

Steam blaster and high-pressure washer

Safety information

NOTICE

When cleaning with high-pressure washers, components can be damaged due to the pressure or temperatures being too high. There is a risk of damage to property. Maintain sufficient distance and do not spray too long continuously. Follow the operating instructions for the high-pressure washer.

Distances and temperature

- Maximum temperature: 140 °F/60 °C.
- Minimum distance from sensors, cameras, seals: 12 inches/30 cm.
- Minimum distance from glass sunroof: 31.5 in/80 cm.

Automatic vehicle washes

Safety information

NOTICE

Improper use of automatic vehicle washes can cause damage to the vehicle. There is a risk of damage to property. Follow the following instructions:

- Give preference to cloth vehicle washes or those that use soft brushes in order to avoid paint damage.
- Avoid vehicle washes with guide rails higher than 4 in/10 cm to avoid damage to the chassis.
- Observe the tire width of the guide rail to avoid damage to tires and rims.
- Fold in exterior mirrors to avoid damage to the exterior mirrors.
- Deactivate the wiper and, if necessary, rain sensor to avoid damage to the wiper system.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2331
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Driving into a vehicle wash with a Steptronic transmission

Safety information

NOTICE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not switch standby state off in vehicle washes.

General information

In a vehicle wash, the vehicle must be able to roll freely.

To roll or push the vehicle, refer to page 145.

Some vehicle washes do not permit persons in the vehicle. The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside when in selector lever position N. A signal sounds when an attempt is made to lock the vehicle.

Driving out of a vehicle wash

Make sure that the remote control is in the vehicle.

Switch on drive-ready state, refer to page 44.

Headlights

Do not rub wet headlights dry and do not use abrasive or acidic cleaning agents.

Soak areas that have been dirtied, for instance from insects, with shampoo and wash off with water.

Thaw ice with de-icing spray; do not use an ice scraper.

After washing the vehicle

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them; otherwise, braking action can be reduced. The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Completely remove all residues on the windows, to minimize loss of visibility due to smearing and to reduce wiper noises and wiper blade wear.

Vehicle care

Vehicle care products

General information

BMW recommends using vehicle care and cleaning products from BMW. Suitable care products are available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Warning

Cleansers can contain substances that are dangerous and harmful to your health. There is a risk of injury. When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows. Only use products intended for cleaning vehicles. Follow the instructions on the container.

Vehicle paint

General information

Regular care contributes to driving safety and value retention. Environmental influences in areas with elevated air pollution or natural contaminants, such as tree resin or pollen can affect the vehicle's paintwork. Tailor the frequency and extent of your vehicle care to these influences.

Aggressive substances such as spilled fuel, oil, grease or bird droppings, must be removed immediately to prevent the finish from being altered or discolored.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2332
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Safety information

Warning

Improperly performed work on the vehicle paint can lead to a failure or malfunction of the radar sensors and thereby result in a safety risk. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Have paintwork or paintwork repairs on bumpers of vehicles with radar sensors performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop only.

Matte finish

Only use cleaning and care products suitable for vehicles with matte finish.

Leather care

Remove dust from the leather regularly, using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Otherwise, particles of dust and road grime chafe in pores and folds, and lead to increased wear and premature degradation of the leather surface.

To guard against discoloration, such as from clothing, clean leather and provide leather care roughly every two months.

Clean light-colored leather more frequently because soiling on such surfaces is substantially more visible.

Use leather care products; otherwise, dirt and grease will gradually break down the protective layer of the leather surface.

Upholstery material care

General information

Vacuum the upholstery regularly with a vacuum cleaner.

If upholstery is very dirty, for instance with beverage stains, use a soft sponge or microfiber cloth with a suitable interior cleaner.

Clean the upholstery down to the seams using large sweeping motions. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.

Safety information

NOTICE

Open Velcro® fasteners on articles of clothing can damage the seat covers. There is a risk of damage to property. Ensure that any Velcro® fasteners are closed.

Caring for special components

Light-alloy wheels

When cleaning the vehicle, use only neutral wheel cleaners having a pH value from 5 to 9. Do not use abrasive cleaning agents or steam jets above 140 °F/60 °C. Follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Aggressive, acidic or alkaline cleaning agents can destroy the protective layer of adjacent components, such as the brake disc.

After cleaning, apply the brakes briefly to dry them. The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Chrome surfaces

Carefully clean Chrome surfaces, especially in case of exposure to road salt, with plenty of water and added cleanser as needed.

Rubber components

Environmental influences can cause surface soiling of rubber parts and a loss of gloss. Use only water and suitable cleaning agents for cleaning.

Treat especially worn rubber parts with rubber care agents at regular intervals. When cleaning rubber seals, do not use any silicon-containing vehicle care products in order to avoid damage or noises.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2333
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Fine wood parts

Clean fine wood facing and fine wood components only with a moist rag. Then dry with a soft cloth.

Plastic components

NOTICE

Cleansers that contain alcohol or solvents, such as lacquer thinners, heavy-duty grease removers, fuel, or such, can damage plastic parts. There is a risk of damage to property. Clean with a microfiber cloth. Dampen the cloth lightly with water, if needed.

Plastic components are e.g.:

- Imitation leather surfaces.
- Roofliner.
- Light lenses.
- Matt black spray-coated components.
- Painted parts in the car's interior.

Clean with a microfiber cloth.

Dampen the cloth lightly with water, if needed.

Do not soak the roofliner.

Safety belts

Warning

Chemical cleansers can destroy the safety belt webbing. Missing protective effect of the safety belts. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Use only a mild soapy solution for cleaning the safety belts.

Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus have a negative impact on safety.

Use only a mild soapy solution for cleaning the installed belt straps.

Safety belts should only be allowed to retract if they are dry.

Carpets and floor mats

Warning

Objects in the driver's floor area can limit the pedal distance or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's floor area. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, for instance for cleaning.

The floor mats can be removed from the car's interior for cleaning.

If the floor carpets are very dirty, clean with a microfiber cloth and water or a textile cleaner. To prevent matting of the carpet, rub back and forth in the direction of travel only.

Sensor/camera lenses

To clean sensors and camera lenses, use a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass detergent.

Displays, screens, and protective glass of the Head-up Display

NOTICE

Chemical cleansers, moisture or fluids of any kind can damage the surface of displays and screens. There is a risk of damage to property. Clean with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth.

NOTICE

The surface of displays can be damaged with improper cleaning. There is a risk of damage to property. Avoid pressure that is too high and do not use any scratching materials.

Clean with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth.

Clean the protective glass of the Head-up Display, refer to page 163, using a microfiber cloth and commercially available dish-washing soap.

Long-term vehicle storage

When the vehicle is shut down for longer than three months, special measures must be taken. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2335
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2337
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

REFERENCE

Technical data 388
Appendix 391
Everything from A to Z 392

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2338
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720938

Technical data

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

General information

The technical data and specifications in the Owner's Manual are used as guidance values. The vehicle-specific data can deviate from this, for instance due to the selected special equipment, country version or country-specific measurement method. Detailed values can be found in the approval documents, on labels on the vehicle or can be obtained from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Dimensions

The dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment or country-specific measurement method.

The specified heights do not take into account attached parts, for instance a roof antenna, roof racks or spoiler. The heights can deviate, for instance due to the selected special equipment, tires, load and chassis version.

BMW 7 Series Sedan		
Width with mirrors	in/mm	85.4/2,169
Width without mirrors	in/mm	74.9/1,902
Height	in/mm	57.8/1,467
Height L-models	in/mm	58.2/1,479
Length	in/mm	201.8/5,127
Length L-models	in/mm	207.4/5,267
Wheelbase	in/mm	120.9/3,070
Wheelbase L-models	in/mm	126.4/3,210

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2339
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

BMW 7 Series Sedan		
Smallest turning radius diam.	ft/m	41.3/12.6
Smallest turning radius diam. L-models	ft/m	42.0-43.0/12.8-13.1

Weights

Canada only: 750i xDrive		
Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs/kg	5,820/2,640
Load	lbs/kg	970/440
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	2,932/1,330
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	3,042/1,380
Approved roof load capacity	lbs/kg	220/100

740Li		
Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs/kg	5,512/2,500
Load	lbs/kg	915/415
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	2,657/1,205
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	3,020/1,370
Approved roof load capacity	lbs/kg	220/100

740Li xDrive		
Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs/kg	5,633/2,555
Load	lbs/kg	899/408
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	2,767/1,255
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	3,020/1,370
Approved roof load capacity	lbs/kg	220/100

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2340

Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

750Li xDrive		
Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs/kg	5,897/2,675
Load	lbs/kg	860/390
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	2,972/1,348
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	3,075/1,395
Approved roof load capacity	lbs/kg	220/100

M760Li xDrive powered by BMW M		
Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs/kg	6,261/2,840
Load	lbs/kg	1,016/461
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	3,109/1,410
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	3,285/1,490
Approved roof load capacity	lbs/kg	165/75

Capacities

BMW 7 Series Sedan		
Fuel tank, approx.	US gal/liters	20.6/78.0

Observe further information on fuel quality, refer to page 361.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2341
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Appendix

General information

Any updates to the Owner's Manual of the vehicle are listed here.

Updates made after the editorial deadline

The following chapters were updated in the printed version of the Owner's Manual after the editorial deadline for the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle had closed:

- Safe transport of children: Receptacles for lower LATCH anchors: Position, refer to page 130.
- Safety: Emergency stop assistant, refer to page 207.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2342

Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Everything from A to Z

Index

A

A/C button, see Air conditioning 270
ABS, Antilock Brake System 212
Acceleration Assistant, see Launch Control 148
Accessories and parts 10
Accident Assistance 374
Accident prevention, see Active Protection 208
ACC, see Active Cruise Control 220
Activated charcoal filter 273
Active comfort chassis, see Executive Drive Pro 266
Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function ACC 220
Active damping control, see Adaptive suspension 266
Active Guard Plus, see Intelligent Safety 177
Active Guard, see Intelligent Safety 177
Active PDC, see Emergency brake function 239
Active Protection 208
Active roll stabilization 267
Active seat ventilation 126
Active Steering, integral 215
Adaptive brake assistant 212
Adaptive Light Control 168
ADAPTIVE, see Driving Dynamics Control 137
Adaptive suspension 266
Additives, engine oil types 364
Airbags 174
Airbags, indicator and warning light 176
Air circulation, see Recirculated-air mode 271
Air conditioning 270
Air distribution, manual 272
Air flow, automatic climate control 272
Air outlets, see Ventilation 273
Air pressure, tires 328
Air suspension 265
Alarm system 101
Alarm, unintentional 102
All-season tires, see Winter tires 337
All-wheel-drive, see xDrive 214
Ambient air package 281
Ambient highlight 173
Ambient light 171
Animal detection, see Night Vision 192
Antifreeze, see Washer fluid 366
Antilock Brake System, ABS 212
Anti-slip control, see DSC 212
Anti-theft protection, locking 79
Anti-theft protection, see Lug bolt lock 354
Apple CarPlay preparation, connection to the vehicle 74
Approach control warning with City braking function 179
Approved axle load 389
Apps, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 8
Armrest heating 125
Ashtray 289
Ashtray, rear 290
Assistance when driving off, see Drive-off assistant 212
Assistance with breakdown 373
AUC Automatic Recirculating Air Control 271
Audio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 8
AUTO H button, see Parking brake 137
Automatic climate control 268
Automatic Curb Monitor, exterior mirror 120
Automatic deactivation, front-seat passenger airbags 176
Automatic headlight control 166
Automatic Hold, see Parking brake 137
Automatic locking 100
Automatic Recirculating Air Control AUC 271
Automatic Soft Closing 94
Automatic transmission, see Steptronic transmission 144
Automatic unlocking 100
Automatic vehicle wash 380

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2343
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

AUTO program, automatic climate control 270
AUTO program, intensity 271
Auto Start/Stop function 132
Average consumption, see Trip data 161
Axle loads, weights 389

B

Backrest curvature, see Lumbar support 110
Backrest, seats 109
Backrest tilt 110
Backrest tilt, rear seats 113
Backrest, width 111
Back-up assistant, see Parking Assistant 250
Bandages, see First-aid kit 373
Bar for tow-starting/towing 378
Basic position, rear seats 112
Battery changing, remote control of the vehicle 81
Battery, disposing of 372
Battery, vehicle 371
Being towed, see Tow-starting and towing 377
Belts, see Safety belts 114
Beverage holder, see Cup holders 301
Blind spot collision warning 199
Blocking, power window, see Safety switch 104
Bluetooth connection 71
Blu-ray, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 8
BMW Assist, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 8
BMW display key 83
BMW display key, malfunction 86
BMW Gesture Control 57
BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 56
BMW maintenance system 368
BMW Touch Command 60
Bonus range, ECO PRO 320
Bottle holder, see Cup holders 301
Bracket, flag 315
Brake assistant 212
Brake assistant, adaptive 212
Brake discs, see Brake system 312
Brake pads, see Brake system 312
Brake system 312
Braking, information 314
Breakdown assistance 373, 374
Breakdown, see FTM Flat Tire Monitor 350
Breaking in 312
Break recommendation, see Fatigue alert 210
Brightness, Control Display 69
Buttons on the steering wheel 38
Button, SOS, see Intelligent emergency call 375
Button, Start/Stop 132
Bypassing, see Jump-starting 376

C

Cable for tow-starting/towing 378
Calendar, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 8
California Proposition 65 Warning 11
Camera-based assistance systems, see Intelligent Safety 177
Camera lenses, care 383
Camera, rearview camera, without Surround View 241
Camera, see Surround View 243
CANCEL button, see Active Cruise Control 220
CANCEL button, see Cruise control 218
Can holder, see Cup holders 301
Captain's Chair, see Executive Lounge Seating 123
Care, Head-up Display 383
Care of displays, screens 383
Care, see Washing the vehicle 380
Care, vehicle 381
Cargo area 304
Cargo area with emergency wheel, enlarging 307
Cargo, stowing and securing 305
Cargo straps, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 305
Carpet, care 383
CarPlay, connection to the vehicle 74
Car seats, see Transporting children safely 127
Cartridge replacement, see Ambient air package 281
Car washing 380
Catalytic converter, see Hot exhaust gas system 313
CBS Condition Based Service 368

Cell phone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 8
Center armrest 300
Center armrest, front 300
Center armrest, rear 300
Center console 41
Central Information Display (CID), see Control Display 49
Central locking system 88
Central screen, see Control Display 49
Changes, technical, see For Your Own Safety 10
Changing parts 370
Changing wheels 352
Changing wheels/tires 335
Chassis number, see Vehicle identification number 15
Check Control 152
Checking the engine oil level electronically 362
Children, seating position 127
Children, transporting safely 127
Child restraint system LATCH 129
Child restraint systems, mounting 128
Child restraint systems, see Transporting children safely 127
Child safety locks 131
Child seat, mounting 128
Child seats, see Transporting children safely 127
Chrome-plated surfaces, care 382
Chrome surfaces, care 382
Cigarette lighter 290
Cigarette lighter, front 290
Cigarette lighter, rear 291
Cleaning displays, screens 383
Cleaning, Head-up Display 383
Climate comfort laminated safety glass 313
Climate comfort windshield 313
Climate control 268
Clothes hooks 303
Coasting 320
Coasting with engine decoupled, see Coasting 320
Coasting with idling engine 320
Combination switch, see Turn signals 140
Combination switch, see Washer/wiper system 141
Comfort Access 88
COMFORT PLUS, see Driving Dynamics Control 135
COMFORT, see Driving Dynamics Control 135
Communication, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 8
Compact wheel, see Emergency wheel 356
Comparison of entries, see Entry comparison 47
Compartments, doors 299
Compatible devices, see Suitable devices 71
Compressor 339
Concierge Service, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 8
Condensation water under the parked vehicle 315
Condensation, windshield 273
Condition Based Service CBS 368
Confirmation signal from the vehicle 100
ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 8
Connecting a mobile phone 70
Connecting device 70
Connecting, electrical devices, see Sockets 291
Connecting, mobile devices 70
Connections, Screen Mirroring 75
Consumption display, ECO PRO 320
Consumption display, widget in the instrument cluster 152
Consumption, see Current consumption 152
Consumption, see Trip data 161
Contacts, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 8
Container for washer fluid 366
Continued driving with a flat tire 348, 351
Control Display 49
Control Display, settings 65
Controller 49
Control systems, driving stability 212
Convenient closing, remote control 80
Convenient opening, remote control 79
Coolant 365
Coolant level 366
Coolant temperature 157
Cooler, rear 295

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2345
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Cooling, maximum 270
Cooling system 365
Cornering light 169
Corrosion on brake discs 315
Cosmetic mirror 289
Cross traffic warning 261
Cruise control 218
Cruise control, active with Stop&Go function 220
Cruise control, see Active Cruise Control 220
Cruise control with distance control, see Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function 220
Cruise control without distance control, see Cruise control 218
Cruising range 157
Cup holder 301
Cup holder, front 301
Cup holder, rear 302
Current consumption 152
Cushions for the electric head restraints 119

D

Damage, tires 335
Damping control, active, see Adaptive suspension 266
Data memory 12
Data protection, settings 69
Data, see Deleting personal data 69
Data, technical 388
Date 66
Daytime running lights 168
DCC, see Cruise control 218
Defrosting, see Defrosting windshield 273
Defrosting, windshield 273
Deleting personal data 69
Departure time, parked-car ventilation 277
Departure time, stationary climate control 280
Device list 76
Diagnosis connection 369
Dimensions 388
Dimensions, see Technical data 388
Dimmable exterior mirrors 120
Dimmable interior mirror 121
Direct dial buttons, see Programmable memory buttons 48
Direction indicator, see Turn signals 140
Display and input 46
Display in the windshield, see Head-up Display 163
Display key, malfunction 86
Display key, see BMW display key 83
Display lighting, see Instrument lighting 171
Displays 150
Displays and symbols 9
Displays, ECO PRO 320
Displays, screens 383
Disposal, coolant 366
Disposal, vehicle battery 372
Distance control, see PDC 236
Door handle lighting, see Welcome lights 167
Door lock, see Remote control 78
Door opening angle, Surround View 246
Drive-off assistant 212
Drive-off assistant, see DSC 212
Driver activity, see Driver Attention Camera 68
Driver assistance, driving, see Intelligent Safety 177
Driver assistance, see Intelligent Safety 177
Driver Attention Camera 68
Drive-ready state, idle state, and standby state 43
Drive-ready state, see Starting the engine 44
Driver profiles 94
Driver profile, setting up 95
Driver profiles, welcome screen 95
Driving 132
Driving Assistant, see Intelligent Safety 177
Driving comfort 265, 266
Driving Dynamics Control 135
Driving instructions, breaking in 312
Driving mode, ECO PRO 318
Driving mode, see Driving Dynamics Control 135
Driving notes, general 313
Driving stability control systems 212
Driving style analysis, ECO PRO 322
Driving tips 313
Drying air, see Air conditioning 270
DSC Dynamic Stability Control 212
DTC Dynamic Traction Control 214

DVD, video, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 8
Dynamic damping, see Adaptive suspension 266
Dynamic Stability Control DSC 212
Dynamic Traction Control DTC 214

E

ECO PRO 318
ECO PRO, bonus range 320
ECO PRO, Driving style analysis 322
ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL, see Driving Dynamics Control 135
ECO PRO, see Driving Dynamics Control 135
Efficiency display, widget in the instrument cluster 152
Electronic oil measurement 362
Electronic Stability Program ESP, see DSC 212
E-mail, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 8
Emergency brake 207
Emergency brake function when parking, Active PDC 239
Emergency service, see Accident Assistance 374
Emergency service, see Breakdown assistance 374
Emergency stop assistant 207
Emergency unlocking, fuel filler flap 327
Emergency unlocking, transmission lock 148
Emergency unlocking, trunk lid 94
Emergency wheel 356
Energy recovery 152
Energy savings, see Gear shift indicator 158
Engine, automatic Start/Stop function 132
Engine compartment 358
Engine coolant 365
Engine idling when driving, see Coasting 320
Engine oil, adding 363
Engine oil change 365
Engine oil filler neck 363
Engine oil temperature 157
Engine oil types to add 364
Engine start, jump-starting 376
Engine start, see Drive-ready state 44
Engine temperature 157
Entering a destination, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 8
Entering an address, navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 8
Entertainment, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 8
Entry comparison, navigation 47
Equipment, interior 286
Error indicators, see Check Control 152
ESP Electronic Stability Program, see DSC 212
Evasion assistance 183
Exchanging wheels and tires 335
Executive Drive Pro 266
Executive Lounge Seating 123
Exhaust gas system 313
Exhaustion warner 210
Exhaust, see Exhaust gas system 313
Exterior lighting during unlocking 79
Exterior lighting with the vehicle locked 80
Exterior mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor 120
Exterior mirror, automatic dimming feature 120
Exterior mirrors 119
Exterior mirrors, malfunction 120
External start 376
External temperature 157
Eyelet for towing 378
Eyes, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 305

F

Factory settings 77
Failure message, see Check Control 152
False alarm, see Avoiding unintentional alarms 102
Fan, see Air flow 272
Fastening safety belts, see Safety belts 114
Fatigue alert 210
Fault indicators, see Check Control 152
Filler neck for engine oil 363
Finding charging stations, see Charging stations and points of interest, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 8

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2347

Fine wood parts, care 383
First-aid kit 373
Flag bracket 315
Flat tire, changing wheels 352
Flat tire, continued driving 348, 351
Flat tire message, FTM 351
Flat tire message, TPM 346
Flat Tire Monitor FTM 350
Flat tire, repairing 338
Flat tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 343
Flat tire warning light, FTM 351
Flat tire warning light, TPM 346
Flooding 314
Floor carpet, care 383
Floor mats, care 383
Fold-away position of the wipers 143
Folding table, rear 294
Folding table, see Folding table, rear 294
Foot brake 314
For Your Own Safety 10
Fragrance cartridge, see Ambient air package 281
Fragrance, see Ambient air package 281
Fragrancing, see Ambient air package 281
Front airbags 174
Front collision mitigation 179
Front collision warning, see Intelligent Safety 177
Front fog lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 371
Front lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 371
Front passenger seat, adjusting from the rear 114
Front passenger seat function, see Gentleman function 111
Front-seat passenger airbags, automatic deactivation 176
Front-seat passenger airbags, indicator light 177
Front seats 109
FTM Flat Tire Monitor 350
Fuel 361
Fuel cap 326
Fuel filler flap 326
Fuel filler flap, unlocking manually 327
Fuel gauge 155
Fuel quality 361
Fuel recommendation 361
Fuel, tank capacity 390
Fuel, tank capacity, see Technical data 388
Fuses 372

G

Garage door opener, see Integrated Universal Remote Control 286
Gasoline 361
Gear change, Steptronic transmission 144
Gear shift indicator 158
General driving notes 313
General settings 65
Gentleman function 111
Gesture Control 57
Gestures, see BMW Gesture Control 57
Glare shield, see Sun visor 289
Glass sunroof, electric 105
Glass sunroof, initialize the system 108
Glove compartment 298
GPS geolocation, vehicle position 68
GPS, navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 8
Gross vehicle weight, approved 389

H

Handbrake, see Parking brake 137
Hand-held transmitter, alternating code 287
Hands-free device, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 8
Hazard warning flashers 373
Head airbags 175
Headlight control, automatic 166
Headlight courtesy delay feature 168
Headlight courtesy delay feature, switching on 81
Headlight flasher 141
Headlight glass 371
Headlights, care 381
Headlights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 371
Head restraints and seats 109
Head restraints, front 116
Head restraints, rear 117
Head-up Display 163

Head-up Display, care 383
Head-up Display, see Memory function 122
Heated steering wheel 122
Heavy cargo, stowing 305
High-beam Assistant 169
High beams 141
High beams/low beams, see High-beam Assistant 169
Higher speed range 315
Hills 314
Hill start assistant, see Drive-off assistant 212
Holder for beverages, see Cup holders 301
HomeLink, see Integrated Universal Remote Control 286
Homepage 8
Hood 359
Horn 38
Hotel function, see Valet parking mode 98
Hot exhaust gas system 313
Hotline, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 8
Humidity in the headlight, see Headlight glass 371
Hydroplaning 313

I

iBrake – PostCrash 209
Ice warning, see External temperature 157
Icy roads, see External temperature 157
Identification marks, tires 333
Identification number, see Vehicle identification number 15
Idle state, standby state, and drive-ready state 43
iDrive 46
Ignition key, see Remote control 78
Indicator/warning lights 153
Individual air distribution 272
Individual settings, see Driver profiles 94
Inductive charging of a smartphone, see Wireless charging tray, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 8
Inflation pressure monitor, see Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 343
Inflation pressure, tires 328
Inflation pressure warning FTM, tires 350
Information 8
Information window, Control Display 68
Initialization, Flat Tire Monitor FTM 350
Initialization, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 345
Input and display 46
Instrument cluster 150
Instrument lighting 171
Integral Active Steering 215
Integrated key 87
Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle 16
Integrated Universal Remote Control 286
Intelligent Auto Start/Stop function 134
Intelligent emergency call 375
Intelligent Personal Assistant 56
Intelligent Safety 177
Intended use 10
Intensity, AUTO program 271
Interior camera, see Driver Attention Camera 68
Interior equipment 286
Interior lights 171
Interior lights during unlocking 79
Interior lights with the vehicle locked 80
Interior mirror 119
Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature 121
Interior motion sensor 102
Internet connection 74
Internet page 8
Intersection collision warning 185
Interval display, see Service requirements 157
Ionization, see Ambient air package 281

J

Jacking points for the vehicle jack 355
Jam protection system, glass sunroof 107
Jam protection system, windows 103
Joystick, Steptronic transmission 144
Jump-starting 376
Jump-starting terminals 376

K

Keyless Go, see Comfort Access 88
Key, mechanical 87
Key, see BMW display key 83

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2349
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Kickdown, Steptronic transmission 144
Knee airbag 175

L

Label on recommended tires 336
Lane control assistant 230
Lane control assistant with active side collision protection, see Side collision mitigation 203
Lane departure warning 196
Lane lines, Surround View 246
Lane threshold, warning 196
Language, set on Control Display 67
Laser headlights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 371
Laser high beams 170
Lashing eyes in the cargo area 305
LATCH child restraint fixing system 129
Launch Control 148
Leather care 382
LED headlights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 371
LED light carpet, see Welcome light 167
LEDs, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 371
Letters and numbers, entering 51
Light-alloy wheels, care 382
Light control, adaptive 168
Light-emitting diodes, replacing LEDs, see Lights and bulbs 371
Lighter, cigarettes 290
Lighting 166
Lighting, speakers 172
Light in the exterior mirror, see Blind spot collision warning 199
Light in the exterior mirror, see Cross traffic warning 261
Light replacement, see Lights and bulbs 371
Lights 166
Lights and bulbs 371
Light switch 166
LIM button, see Manual Speed Limiter 216
List of all messages 65
Load 305
Loading 304
Loading the cargo area, see Stowing cargo 305
Location, vehicle position 68
Locking, automatic 100
Locking, remote control 79
Locking, see Opening and Closing 78
Locking, settings 99
Locking the trunk lid, see Valet parking mode 98
Lock, lug bolts 354
Low beams 167
Low beams, automatic, see High-beam Assistant 169
Lower back support 110
Lug bolt lock 354
Luggage rack, see Roof-mounted luggage rack 316
Lumbar support 110

M

Maintenance 368
Maintenance requirements, see Condition Based Service CBS 368
Maintenance, see Service requirements 157
Maintenance system, BMW 368
Make-up mirror 289
Malfunction, BMW display key 86
Malfunction, remote control 82
Managing devices 76
Manual air distribution 272
Manual air flow 272
Manual brake, see Parking brake 137
Manual mode, Steptronic transmission 144
Manual operation, fuel filler flap 327
Map update, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 8
Marking, run-flat tire 337
Massage seat, front 124
Massage seat, rear 124
Master key, see Remote control 78
Matte finish 382
Maximum cooling 270
Maximum speed display, see Speed Limit Info 159
Maximum speed of winter tires 337
M Driver's Package, driving instructions 315
Measurement, units of 67
Media of the Owner's Manual 16
Medical supplies, see First-aid kit 373

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2350

Memory function 122
Menu, instrument cluster, see Selection lists 161
Menus, operating, see iDrive 46
Messages 65
Messages, see Check Control 152
Microfilter 273
Minimum tread depth, tires 335
Mirror 119
Mirror, see Memory function 122
Mobile communication devices in the vehicle 313
Mobile devices, managing 76
Mobile phone, connecting 70
Mobile phone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 8
Mobility System 338
MODE button, see Active Cruise Control 220
Mode, ECO PRO 318
Modifications, technical, see For Your Own Safety 10
Monitor, see Control Display 49
Mounting of child restraint systems 128
MP3 player, see Audio, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 8
Multi-function hook 305
Multifunction steering wheel, buttons 38
Multimedia, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 8
Music hard disk, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 8

N

Navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 8
Neck restraints, front, see Head restraints 116
Neck restraints, rear, see Head restraints 117
Net, cargo area 306
Neutral cleaner, see Light-alloy wheels 382
New wheels and tires 335
Night Vision device, see Night Vision 192
Night Vision with pedestrian and animal detection 192
Notes, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 8
No-touch opening and closing of the trunk lid 90
Nylon rope for tow-starting/towing 378

O

OBD Onboard Diagnosis 369
Object detection, see Night Vision 192
Obstacle marking, rearview camera 242
Obstacle marking, Surround View 246
Octane rating, see Recommended fuel grade 362
Odometer, see Trip data 161
Oil, adding 363
Oil change 365
Oil change interval, see Service requirements 157
Oil filler neck 363
Oil level, checking electronically 362
Oil types to add, engine 364
Onboard Computer, see Trip data 161
Onboard Diagnosis OBD 369
Onboard literature, printed 16
Onboard vehicle tool kit 370
On-call service, see Accident Assistance 374
On-call service, see Breakdown assistance 374
Online Entertainment, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 8
Opening and closing 78
Operating concept, iDrive 46
Outside air, see AUC 271
Overheating of engine, see Coolant temperature 157
Overwintering, see Long-term vehicle storage 384
Owner's Manual, printed 16

P

Paint, vehicle 381
Pairing, mobile devices, see Connections 70
Panic alarm, see Panic mode 101
Panic mode 101
Panorama View, see Surround View 243

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2351

Panoramic glass sunroof, see Glass sunroof 105
Park Distance Control PDC 236
Parked-car ventilation 276
Parking aid, see PDC 236
Parking Assistant 250
Parking assistant Plus, see Surround View 243
Parking, Automatic Hold, see Parking brake 137
Parking brake 137
Parking lights 167
Parts and accessories 10
Passenger's side mirror, tilting, see Automatic Curb Monitor 120
Pathway lines, rearview camera 242
PDC Park Distance Control 236
Pedestrian detection, see Night Vision 192
Performance display, see Sport displays 163
Personal data, deleting 69
Personal profile, see Driver profiles 94
Person warning with braking function 189
Phone, connecting 70
Plastic parts, care 383
PostCrash – iBrake 209
Power failure 372
Power windows 103
Pressure monitor, see Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 343
Pressure, tires 328
Pressure warning FTM, tires 350
Printed onboard literature 16
Profiles, see Driver profiles 94
Programmable memory buttons, iDrive 48
Protective function, glass sunroof, see Jam protection system 107
Protective function, windows, see Jam protection system 103
Push-and-turn reel, see Controller 49

Q

Queuing Assistant, see Steering and traffic jam assistant 230

R

Racing track 316
Radiator fluid 365
Radio-operated key, see Remote control 78
Radio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 8
Rain sensor 142
Rear automatic climate control 274
Rear axle steering, see Integral Active Steering 215
Rear collision preparation 206
Rear collision warning, see Rear collision preparation 206
Rear cooler 295
Rear lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 371
Rear seat backrest tilt 113
Rear seats 112
Rear storage 300
Rear vanity mirror 121
Rearview camera, see Surround View 243
Rearview camera, without Surround View 241
Rear window defroster 273
Recirculated-air filter, see Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter 273
Recirculated-air mode 271
Recommended fuel grade 362
Recommended tire brands 336
Refueling 326
Remote 3D View 250
Remote control 78
Remote control, additional 81
Remote control for audio, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 8
Remote control, integrated key 87
Remote control, loss 81
Remote control, malfunction 82
Remote control of the vehicle, changing the battery 81
Remote Control Parking 257
Remote control, universal 286
Remote control with display, malfunction 86
Remote control with display, see BMW display key 83
Remote Engine Start, see Stationary climate control 278
Remote services, app, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 8

Remote Software Upgrade 62
Replacing bulbs, see Lights and bulbs 371
Replacing parts 370
Replacing wheels and tires 335
Reporting safety malfunctions 15
Reserve warning, see Range 157
Resetting, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 345
Resetting vehicle settings 77
RESUME button, see Active Cruise Control 220
RESUME button, see Cruise control 218
Retreaded tires 336
Roadside Assistance, see Accident Assistance 374
Roadside Assistance, see Breakdown assistance 374
Roadside parking lights 167
Roller sunblind, rear window 104
Roller sunblinds, rear side windows 105
Rolling code hand-held transmitter 287
RON recommended fuel grade 362
Roofliner 42
Roof load capacity 389
Roof-mounted luggage rack 316
Rope for tow-starting/towing 378
Route, navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 8
RSC Runflat System, see Runflat tire 337
RSU, see Remote Software Upgrade 62
RTTI, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 8
Rubber components, care 382
Run-flat tire 337

S

Safe braking 314
Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat 115
Safety belt reminder for the rear seats 116
Safety belts 114
Safety belts, care 383
Safety belts, rear 115
Safety locks, doors and windows 131
Safety package, see Active Protection 208
Safety switch, windows 104
Safety systems, see Airbags 174
Safety systems, see Intelligent Safety 177
Saving fuel 317
Screen Mirroring, connection 75
Screen, see Control Display 49
Screen tilt, adjusting 114
Screwdriver, see Onboard vehicle tool kit 370
Sealant, see Mobility System 338
Seat and armrest heating 125
Seat heating 125
Seating position for children 127
Seats and head restraints 109
Seat, see Memory function 122
Seats, front 109
Seats, rear 112
Seat ventilation, active 126
Securing, cargo 305
Selection list in instrument cluster 161
Selector lever, Steptronic transmission 144
Self-leveling suspension, see Air suspension 265
Self-supporting tires, see Run-flat tires 337
Sensors, care 383
Service and warranty 11
Service Center, see Accident Assistance 374
Service requirements 157
Service requirements, see Condition Based Service CBS 368
Services, ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 8
SET button, see Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function 220
SET button, see Cruise control 218
Set speed, see Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function 220
Settings, Control Display 65
Settings, locking/unlocking 99
Settings, resetting 77
Settings, seats and head restraints 109
Setup assistant 95
Shift paddles on the steering wheel 144
Shift point indicator, tachometer 156
Side airbag 174
Side collision mitigation 203
Side protection, Surround View 246
Side protection without Surround View 239

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2353
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Signaling, horn 38
Signals when unlocking, see Confirmation signals from the vehicle 100
Sitting safely 109
Size 388
Sizes, see Technical data 388
Ski and snowboard bag 308
Slide/tilt glass roof, see Glass sunroof 105
Smartphone, connecting 70
Smartphone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 8
Smartphone, using via voice activation 57
Smoker's package 289
SMS, see Short messages, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 8
SMS text message, supplementary 153
Snow chains 342
Socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis 369
Sockets 291
Software Upgrade, see Remote Software Upgrade 62
SOS button, see Intelligent emergency call 375
Sound output, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 8
Spare tire, see Emergency wheel 356
Speaker lighting 172
Special equipment, see Vehicle features and options 9
Speed Limit Assist 228
Speed Limit Device, Manual Speed Limiter 216
Speed limit display, see Speed Limit Info 159
Speed Limiter, manual 216
Speed Limit Info 159
Speed warning 67
Sport displays 163
SPORT INDIVIDUAL, see Driving Dynamics Control 135
Sport program, Steptronic transmission 144
SPORT, see Driving Dynamics Control 135
Stability control systems 212
Standard equipment, see Vehicle features and options 9
Standby state, idle state and drive-ready state 43
Start/stop, automatic function 132
Start/Stop button 132
Starting aid terminals 376
Starting, see Drive-ready state 44
Starting the engine, see Drive-ready state 44
Stationary climate control via Remote Engine Start 278
Stations, AM/FM, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 8
Status control display, tires 345
Status information, iDrive 47
Status of Owner's Manual 9
Status, vehicle 163
Steering and traffic jam assistant 230
Steering, see Integral Active Steering 215
Steering wheel, adjusting 121
Steering wheel, buttons 38
Steering wheel, see Memory function 122
Steptronic Sport transmission, see Steptronic transmission 144
Steptronic transmission 144
Storage compartment, cargo area 306
Storage compartment, center console 299
Storage compartment, rear seats 300
Storage compartments 298
Storage compartments, locations 298
Storage, tires 337
Storing the vehicle 384
Stowing, cargo 305
Straps for cargo, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 305
Suitable devices 71
Suitable mobile phones 71
Summer tires, tread 334
Sun visor 289
Sun visor, sliding 289
Supplementary Owner's Manuals 16
Supplementary SMS text message 153
Surface heating, see Seat and armrest heating 125
Surround View 243
Suspension settings, see Driving Dynamics Control 135
Switches, see Cockpit 38
Switch for driving dynamics, see Driving Dynamics Control 135

Switching off the engine, see Drive-ready state 44
Symbols and displays 9
SYNC program, automatic climate control 272

T

Table, see Folding table, rear 294
Tablet 60
Tachometer 156
Tail lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 371
Technical changes, see For Your Own Safety 10
Technical data 388
Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 8
Teleservices, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 8
Television, TV, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 8
Temperature, automatic climate control 269
Temperature display, see External temperature 157
Temperature, engine oil 157
Theft alarm system, see Alarm system 101
Thermal camera, see Night Vision 192
Thigh support 110
Through-loading system 306
Tilt alarm sensor 102
Tilt, backrest 110
Tilting, passenger's side mirror, see Automatic Curb Monitor 120
Time 66
Tire brands, recommended 336
Tire damage 335
Tire identification marks 333
Tire inflation pressure 328
Tire inflation pressure monitor, see FTM Flat Tire Monitor 350
Tire pressure 328
Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 343
Tire repair kit, see Mobility System 338
Tires and wheels 328
Tires, changing 335
Tire sealant, see Mobility System 338
Tire settings 344
Tires, run-flat 337
Tire tread 334
Tone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 8
Tool 370
Torque display, see Sport displays 163
Total vehicle weight 389
Touch Command 60
Tow bar 378
Tow fitting 378
Towing 377
Tow rope 378
Tow-starting 377
TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 343
Traction control 214
TRACTION, driving dynamics 214
Traffic bulletins, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 8
Traffic Jam Assist, see Steering and traffic jam assistant 230
Transmission lock, electronic unlocking 148
Transmission, see Steptronic transmission 144
Transporting children safely 127
Tread, tires 334
Trip data 161
Triple turn signal activation 141
Trip odometer, see Trip data 161
Trunk, emergency unlocking 94
Trunk lid 93
Trunk lid, emergency unlocking 94
Trunk lid, opening and closing with no-touch activation 90
Trunk lid, remote control 80
Trunk lid, see Trunk lid 93
Turning circle line, Surround View 246
Turning radius lines, rearview camera 242
Turn signal, indicator light 155
Turn signal, replacing bulbs, see Lights and bulbs 371
Turn signals, high beams, headlight flasher 140
TV, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 8

U

Unintentional alarm, avoiding 102
Units of measurement 67

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2355
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

Universal remote control 286
Unlock button, Steptronic transmission 144
Unlocking, automatic 100
Unlocking, remote control 79
Unlocking, see Opening and Closing 78
Unlocking, settings 99
Updates made after the editorial deadline 9
Upgrade, see Remote Software Upgrade 62
Upholstery material care 382
Upper backrest, front 111
Upper backrest, rear 112
USB connection 73
USB interface, position in vehicle 293
Used battery, disposing of 372
Use, intended 10

V

Valet parking mode 98
Vanity mirror 289
Variable steering, see Integral Active Steering 215
Vehicle battery 371
Vehicle breakdown, see Breakdown assistance 373
Vehicle, breaking in 312
Vehicle care 381
Vehicle care products 381
Vehicle configuration, resetting 77
Vehicle features and options 9
Vehicle identification number 15
Vehicle key, see Remote control 78
Vehicle paint 381
Vehicle position, vehicle location 68
Vehicle status 163
Vehicle storage 384
Vehicle wash 380
Vehicle wash, automatic 380
Vehicle, washing 380
Ventilation 273
Ventilation, see Parked-car ventilation 276
Venting, see Ventilation 273
Vent, see Ventilation 273
Version, see Remote Software Upgrade 62
Video, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 8
VIN, see Vehicle identification number 15
Voice activation, see BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 56
Voice activation system 54
Voice command response, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 8

W

Warning/indicator lights 153
Warning against cross traffic 261
Warning light in the exterior mirror, see Blind spot collision warning 199
Warning light in the exterior mirror, see Cross traffic warning 261
Warning messages, see Check Control 152
Warning triangle 373
Warranty 10
Washer fluid 366
Washer nozzles, windshield 143
Washer system 141
Washing the vehicle 380
Wash view, Surround View 246
Water on roads 314
Water, see Condensation water under the parked vehicle 315
Website 8
Weights 389
Weights, see Technical data 388
Welcome light during unlocking 79
Welcome lights 167
Welcome screen, driver profiles 95
Wheel cleaner, light-alloy wheels 382
Wheels and tires 328
Wheels and tires, replacing 335
Wheels, changing 335
Wheels, see FTM Flat Tire Monitor 350
WiFi connection 74
WiFi hotspot 74
WiFi hotspot, see Internet connection 74
Window, defrosting 273
Windows, powered 103
Windshield, climate comfort 313
Windshield, defrosting 273
Windshield washer fluid, see Washer fluid 366

Windshield washer nozzles 143
Windshield washer system, see Washer/wiper system 141
Windshield wiper, see Wiper system 141
Winter storage, see Long-term vehicle storage 384
Winter tires 337
Winter tires, tread 334
Wiper blades, replacing 370
Wiper fluid, see Washer fluid 366
Wiper, fold-away position 143
Wiper, see Washer/wiper system 141
Wiper system 141
Wireless charging of a smartphone, see Wireless charging tray, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 8
Wireless charging tray, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 8
Wood parts, care 383
Wordmatch principle, see Entry comparison 47
Working in, engine compartment 359
Wrench, see Onboard vehicle tool kit 370

X

xDrive 214

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2357
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

01402720932 ue

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2358

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2359

California Proposition 65 Warning

For vehicles sold in California:

California Proposition 65 Warning

WARNING

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

The Ultimate Driving Machine®

BMW DRIVER'S GUIDE APP.

Your customized information about the vehicle in an app.
Optimized for smartphones & tablets. Can be used offline.

Download on the App Store

GET IT ON Google Play

01402720932 de

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2361
Online Edition for Part no. 01402720932 - II/19

LINK:
CONTENT & A-Z

The Ultimate Driving Machine®

OWNER'S MANUAL.

THE BMW M5 SEDAN.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2362
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2363
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

WELCOME TO BMW.

Owner's Manual.

Thank you for choosing a BMW.

The more familiar you are with your vehicle, the better control you will have on the road. We therefore strongly suggest:

Read this Owner's Manual before starting off in your new BMW. Also use the Integrated Owner's Manual in your vehicle. It contains important information on vehicle operation that will help you make full use of the technical features available in your BMW. The manual also contains information designed to enhance operating reliability and road safety, and to contribute to maintaining the value of your BMW.

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

You can find supplementary information in the additional brochures in the onboard literature.

We wish you a safe and enjoyable ride.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2364
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

TABLE OF CONTENTS

After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

NOTES

Information 6
Owner's Manual media 14

QUICK REFERENCE

Entering 16
Set-up and use 20
On the road 24

CONTROLS

Cockpit 30
Operating state of the vehicle 35
iDrive 38
BMW Remote Software Upgrade 55
General settings 58
Personal settings 62
Connections 67
Opening and closing 76
Seats, mirrors and steering wheel 108
Transporting children safely 122
Driving 127
Displays 145
Lights 165
Safety 172
Driving stability control systems 209
Driver assistance systems 218
Driving comfort 267
Climate control 269

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2365
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Interior equipment 285
Storage compartments 294
Cargo area 298

DRIVING TIPS

BMW M5 Technology 304
Things to remember when driving 306
Saving fuel 311

MOBILITY

Refueling 314
Wheels and tires 316
Engine compartment 340
Operating materials 343
Maintenance 350
Replacing components 352
Breakdown assistance 356
Care 363

REFERENCE

Technical data 368
Appendix 370
Everything from A to Z 372

© 2020 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Reprinting, including excerpts, only with the written consent of BMW AG, Munich.
US English ID7 VI/20, 07 20 490
Printed on environmentally friendly paper, bleached without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2366

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Information

Using this Owner's Manual

Orientation

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic is by using the index.

An initial overview of the vehicle is provided in the first chapter.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication

The Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can be obtained as a printed book from the service center.

The topics are also discussed in the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Additional sources of information

Service center

A service center will be glad to answer questions at any time.

Internet

Vehicle information and general information on BMW, for instance, on technology, are available on the Internet: www.bmwusa.com.

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

The Integrated Owner's Manual specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle. The Integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the Control Display.

BMW Driver's Guide app

The BMW Driver's Guide app specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle. The app can be displayed on smartphones and tablets.

BMW Driver's Guide Web

Driver's Guide Web shows the most suitable information for the selected vehicle. If possible, only equipment and functions that are actually installed in the vehicle will be explained. Driver's Guide Web can be displayed in any current browser.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2367
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Symbols and displays

Symbols in the Owner's Manual

Symbol	Meaning
	Precautions that must be followed in order to avoid the possibility of injury to yourself and to others as well as serious damage to the vehicle.
	Measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.
"..."	Texts in vehicle used to select individual functions.
›...‹	Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.
»...«	Responses generated by the voice activation system.

Action steps

Action steps to be carried out are presented as a numbered list. The steps must be carried out in the defined order.

1. First action step.
2. Second action step.

Enumerations

Enumerations without mandatory order or alternative possibilities are presented as a list with bullet points.

- First possibility.
- Second possibility.

Symbols on vehicle components

This symbol on a vehicle component indicates that further information on the component is available in the Owner's Manual.

Vehicle features and options

This Owner's Manual describes all models and all standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series. Therefore, this Owner's Manual also describes and illustrates features and functions that are not available in a vehicle, for example because of the selected optional features or the country-specific version.

This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

For any options and equipment not described in this Owner's Manual, refer to the Supplementary Owner's Manuals.

Your BMW service center is happy to answer any questions that you may have about the features and options applicable to your vehicle.

Status of the Owner's Manual

Basic information

The manufacturer of your vehicle pursues a policy of constant development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards. In rare cases, therefore, the features described in this Owner's Manual may differ from those in your vehicle.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's

Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

For Your Own Safety

Intended use

Heed the following when using the vehicle:

- Owner's Manual.
- Information on the vehicle. Do not remove stickers.
- Technical vehicle data.
- The traffic, speed, and safety laws where the vehicle is driven.
- Vehicle documents and statutory documents.

Warranty

Your vehicle is technically configured for the operating conditions and registration requirements applying in the country of first delivery, also known as homologation. If your vehicle is to be operated in a different country it might be necessary to adapt your vehicle to potentially differing operating conditions and registration requirements. If your vehicle does not comply with the homologation requirements in a certain country you may not be able to lodge warranty claims for your vehicle there. Further information on warranty is available from a service center.

Maintenance and repairs

Advanced technology, for instance the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires suitable maintenance and repair work.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you entrust corresponding procedures to a BMW center. If you choose to use another service facility, BMW recommends use of a facility that performs work, e.g., maintenance and repair, according to BMW specifications with properly trained personnel, referred to in the Owner's Manual as "another qualified service center or repair shop".

If work is performed improperly, for instance maintenance and repair, there is a risk of subsequent damage and related safety risks.

Improperly performed work on the vehicle paint can lead to a failure or malfunction of components, e.g., the radar sensors, and thereby result in a safety risk.

Parts and accessories

BMW recommends the use of parts and accessory products approved by BMW.

Approved parts and accessories, and advice on their use and installation are available from a BMW center.

BMW parts and accessories have been tested by BMW for their safety and suitability in BMW vehicles.

BMW warrants genuine BMW parts and accessories.

BMW does not evaluate whether each individual product from another manufacturer can be used with BMW vehicles without presenting a safety hazard, even if a country-specific official approval was issued. BMW does not evaluate whether these products are suitable for BMW vehicles under all usage conditions.

California Proposition 65 Warning

For vehicles sold in California, the law requires vehicle manufacturers to provide the following warning:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2369
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Warning

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of Automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Batteries also contain other chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer. Wash your hands after handling. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

Warning

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly. Your vehicle is covered by the following warranties:

- New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- Rust Perforation Limited Warranty.
- Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty.
- Federal Emissions Performance Warranty.
- California Emission Control System Limited Warranty.

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

Your vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating conditions and homologation requirements in your country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish to operate your vehicle in another country or region, you may be required to adapt your vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and homologation requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

Maintenance

Maintain the vehicle regularly to sustain the road safety, operational reliability and the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Specifications for maintenance measures:

- BMW Maintenance system.
- Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models.
- Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

If the vehicle is not maintained or is improperly maintained, this could result in serious damage to the vehicle. Such damage is not covered by the BMW New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Refer to chapter engine oil change regarding recommended service intervals for oil changes.

Data memory

General information

Electronic control devices are installed in the vehicle. Electronic control units process data they receive from vehicle sensors, self-generate or exchange with each other. Some control units are necessary for the vehicle to function safely or provide assistance during driving, for instance driver assistance systems. Furthermore, control units facilitate comfort or infotainment functions.

Information about stored or exchanged data can be requested from the manufacturer of the vehicle, in a separate booklet, for example.

Personal reference

Each vehicle is marked with a unique vehicle identification number. Depending on the country, the vehicle owner can be identified with the vehicle identification number, license plate and corresponding authorities. In addition, there are other options to track data collected in the vehicle to the driver or vehicle owner, for instance, via the ConnectedDrive account that is used.

Operating data in the vehicle

Control units process data to operate the vehicle.

For example, this includes:

- Status messages for the vehicle and its individual components, e.g., wheel rotational speed, wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration, engaged safety belt indicator.
- Ambient conditions, e.g., temperature, rain sensor signals.

The processed data is only processed in the vehicle itself and generally volatile. The data is not stored beyond the operating period.

Electronic components, e.g. control units and ignition keys, contain components for storing technical information. Information about the vehicle condition, component usage, maintenance recommendations, events or faults can be stored temporarily or permanently.

This information generally records the state of a component, a module, a system, or the environment, for instance:

- Operating states of system components, for instance, fill levels, tire inflation pressure, battery status.
- Malfunctions and faults in important system components, for instance lights and brakes.
- Responses by the vehicle to special situations such as airbag deployment or engagement of the driving stability control systems.
- Information on vehicle-damaging events.

The data is required to perform the control unit functions. Furthermore, it also serves to recognize and correct malfunctions, and helps the vehicle manufacturer to optimize vehicle functions.

The majority of this data is stored temporarily and is only processed within the vehicle itself. In some circumstances the vehicle may store some data for an additional but limited period of time.

When servicing, for instance during repairs, service processes, warranty cases, and quality assurance measures, this technical information can be read out from the vehicle together with the vehicle identification number.

A dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop can read out the information. The socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis required by law in the vehicle is used to read out the data.

The data is collected, processed, and used by the relevant organizations in the service network. The data documents technical conditions of the vehicle, which can be used to determine vehicle maintenance status, and facilitate quality improvement.

Fault and event memories in the vehicle can be reset when a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop performs repair or servicing work.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2371
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Data entry and data transfer into the vehicle

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, comfort and individual settings can be stored in the vehicle and modified or reset at any time.

For example, this includes:

- Settings for the seat and steering wheel positions.
- Suspension and climate control settings.

If necessary, data can be transferred to the entertainment and communication system of the vehicle, for instance via smartphone.

This includes the following depending on the respective equipment:

- Multimedia data such as music, films or photos for playback in an integrated multimedia system.
- Address book data for use in conjunction with an integrated hands-free system or an integrated navigation system.
- Entered navigation destinations.
- Data on the use of Internet services.

This data can be stored locally in the vehicle or is found on a device that has been connected to the vehicle, e.g., a smartphone, USB stick or MP3 player. If this data is stored in the vehicle, it can be deleted at any time.

This data is only transmitted to third parties upon personal request as part of the use of online services. The transmission depends on the selected settings for the use of the services.

Incorporation of mobile devices

Depending on the vehicle equipment, mobile devices connected to the vehicle, for instance smartphones, can be controlled via the vehicle control elements.

The sound and picture from the mobile device can be played back and displayed through the multimedia system. Certain information is transferred to the mobile device at the same time. Depending on the type of incorporation, this includes, for instance position data and other general vehicle information. This optimizes the way in which selected apps, for instance navigation or music playback, work.

There is no further interaction between the mobile device and the vehicle, such as active access to vehicle data.

How the data will be processed further is determined by the provider of the particular app being used. The extent of the possible settings depends on the respective app and the operating system of the mobile device.

Services

General information

If the vehicle has a wireless network connection, this enables data to be exchanged between the vehicle and other systems. The wireless network connection is realized via an in-vehicle transmitter and receiver unit or via personal mobile devices brought into the vehicle, for instance smartphones. This wireless network connection enables 'online functions' to be used. These include online services and apps supplied by the vehicle manufacturer or by other providers.

Services from the vehicle manufacturer

Where online services from the vehicle manufacturer are concerned, the corresponding functions are described in the appropriate place, for instance the Owner's Manual or manufacturer's website. The relevant legal information pertaining to data protection may also be found on the manufacturer's website. Personal data may be used to perform online services. Data is exchanged over a secure connection, for instance with the IT systems of the vehicle manufacturer intended for this purpose.

Any collection, processing, and use of personal data above and beyond that needed to provide the services must always be based on a legal

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2372

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

permission, contractual arrangement or consent. It is also possible to activate or deactivate the data connection as a whole. That is, with the exception of functions and services required by law such as Assist systems.

Services from other providers

When using online services from other providers, these services are the responsibility of the relevant provider and subject to their data privacy conditions and terms of use. The vehicle manufacturer has no influence on the content exchanged during this process. Information on the way in which personal data is collected and used in relation to services from third parties, the scope of such data, and its purpose, can be obtained from the relevant service provider.

Event Data Recorder EDR

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder EDR. The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were fastened.
- How far, if at all, the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

EDR data is recorded by your vehicle only if a nontrivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data, for instance name, gender, age, and crash location, are recorded.

However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Vehicle identification number

General information

Depending on the national-market version, the vehicle identification number is located in different positions in the vehicle. This chapter describes all positions that are possible for the series.

Engine compartment

The engraved vehicle identification number can be found in the engine compartment, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2373
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Right nameplate

The vehicle identification number can be found on the nameplate, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

Left nameplate

The vehicle identification number can be found on the nameplate, on the left-hand side of the vehicle.

Windshield

The vehicle identification number can also be found behind the windshield.

iDrive

It is also possible to display the vehicle identification number via iDrive.

Additional information:

Displaying the vehicle identification number and software part number, refer to page 68.

Reporting safety defects

For US customers

The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration NHTSA, in addition to notifying BMW of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or BMW of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may call the toll-free hotline 1-800-333-0510. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety.

Owner's Manual media

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

General information

Media at a glance

You can use various media formats to call up the content in the Owner's Manual. The following Owner's Manual media formats are available:

- Printed Owner's Manual.
- Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

Printed Owner's Manual

Concept

The printed Owner's Manual describes all standard, country-specific, and optional features offered with the series.

General information

The Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can be obtained as a printed book from the service center.

Supplementary Owner's Manuals

Also follow the Supplementary Owner's Manuals, which are included in addition to the onboard literature.

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

Concept

The Integrated Owner's Manual specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle.

The Integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the Control Display.

Selecting the Owner's Manual

1. HOME Press the button.
2. "CAR"
3. "Owner's Manual"
4. Select the desired method of accessing the contents.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2375
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Scrolling through the Owner's Manual

Turn the Controller, until the next or previous contents are displayed.

Context help

General information

The Integrated Owner's Manual can be accessed from any menu. Depending on the selected function, either the associated description or the main menu of the Integrated Owner's Manual will be displayed.

Opening via iDrive

Change directly to the Options menu from the function on the Control Display:

1. OPTION Press the button.
2. "Help"

Opening when a Check Control message is displayed

Directly from the Check Control message on the Control Display:

"Owner's Manual"

Programmable memory buttons

General information

The entry points into the Owner's Manual can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly.

Storing

1. Select the desired entry point via iDrive:
   - ▷ "Keyword search"
   - ▷ "Picture search"
   - ▷ "Operating tips"
   - ▷ "Quick reference"
   - ▷ "Topics"
   - ▷ "Quick link"
2. 1 ... 7 Press and hold the desired button until the displayed bar on the Control Display has loaded completely.

Executing

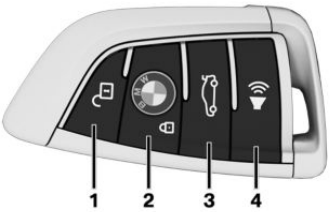
1 ... 7 Press the corresponding button.

The owner's manual is directly displayed at the selected entry point.

Entering

Opening and closing

Buttons on the vehicle key



1 Unlocking

2 Locking

3 Opening the trunk lid

4 Press and hold or press three times in quick succession: panic mode

Press briefly: pathway lighting

Unlocking the vehicle

Press the button on the vehicle key.

Depending on the settings, either only the driver's door or all vehicle access points are unlocked.

If only the driver's door is unlocked, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key after unlocking.

The windows and the glass sunroof are opened, as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Press the button on the vehicle key.

All vehicle access points are locked.

Buttons for the central locking system

Overview

Buttons for the central locking system.

Locking

Press the button with the front doors closed.

The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

Unlocking

Press the button.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

- ▷ Press the button on the vehicle key and hold for at least 3 seconds.
- ▷ Briefly press the button on the vehicle key three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2377
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Comfort Access

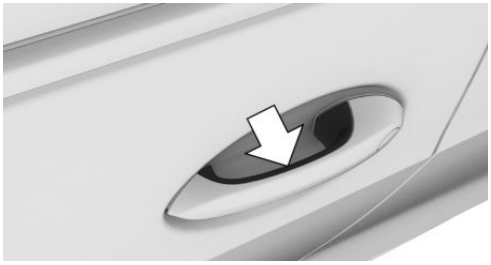
Concept

The vehicle can be accessed without operating the vehicle key.

Carrying the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket, is sufficient.

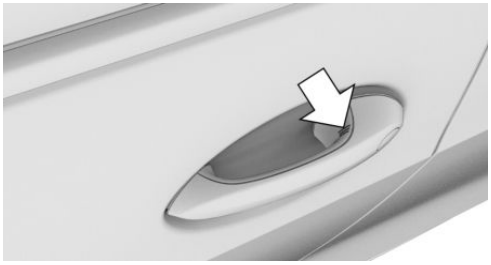
The vehicle automatically detects the vehicle key when it is in close proximity or in the car's interior.

Unlocking the vehicle



Grasp the handle of a vehicle door completely.

Locking the vehicle



Touch the grooved surface on the handle of a closed vehicle door with your finger for approx. 1 second without grasping the door handle.

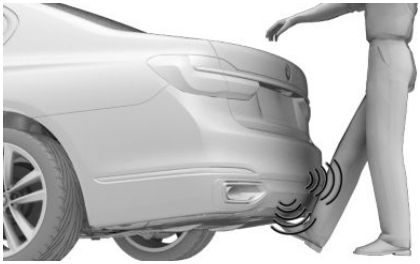
Opening and closing the trunk lid with no-touch activation

Concept

The trunk lid can be opened and closed with no-touch activation using the vehicle key you are carrying.

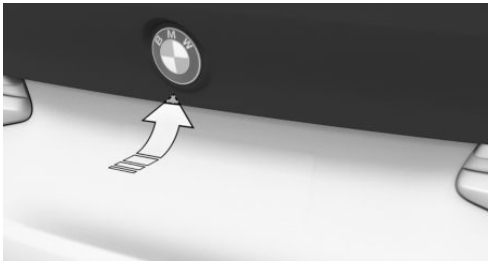
Performing the foot movement

1. Stand in the middle behind the vehicle at approx. one arm's length away from the rear of the vehicle.
2. Wave a foot under the vehicle in the direction of travel and immediately pull it back. With this movement, the leg must pass through the ranges of both sensors.



Trunk lid

Opening



▷ Unlock the vehicle and then press the button on the outside of the trunk lid.

▷ Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2378
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Depending on the setting, the doors may also be unlocked.

Without automatic tailgate operation: closing

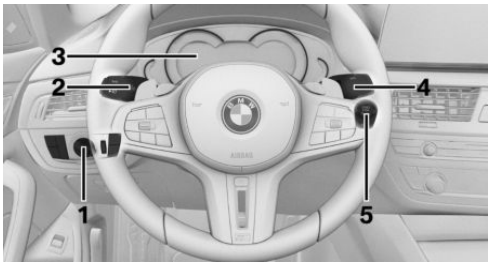
Close the trunk lid manually.

With automatic tailgate operation: closing

Press the button on the inside of the trunk lid.

Displays, control elements

In the vicinity of the steering wheel



1 Light switch element
2 Turn signal indicator, high beams
3 Instrument cluster
4 Wipers
5 Start/Stop button

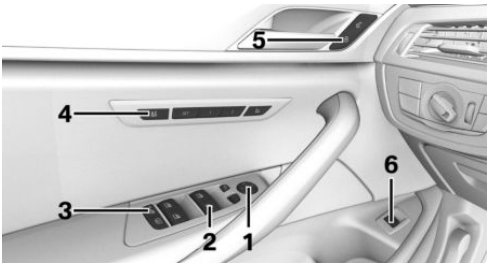
Indicator/warning lights

Instrument cluster

The indicator/warning lights can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

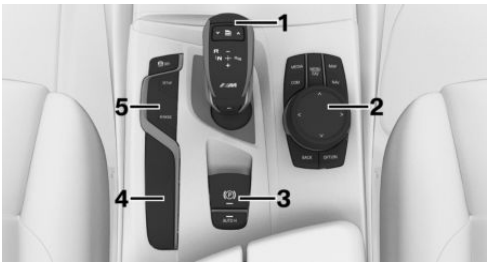
Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when drive-ready state is switched on.

Driver's door



1 Exterior mirrors
2 Power windows
3 Safety switch
4 Seats, comfort features
5 Central locking system
6 Opening the trunk lid

Switch console



1 Selector lever
2 Controller
3 Parking brake, Automatic Hold
4 ▷ Sound control
▷ Parking assistance systems
5 SETUP, M MODE

iDrive

Concept

The iDrive combines the functions of many switches. These functions can be operated via the Controller.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2379
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Buttons on the Controller

Button	Function
MENU	Opens the main menu.
MEDIA	Opens the Media/Radio menu.
COM	Opens the Communication menu.
MAP	Opens navigation map.
NAV	Opens destination input menu for navigation.
BACK	Opens the previous display.
OPTION	Opens the Options menu.

Voice activation

Activating the voice activation system

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the signal.
3. Say the command.

This symbol indicates that the voice activation system is active.

No other commands may be available. In this case, operate the function via iDrive.

Terminating the voice activation system

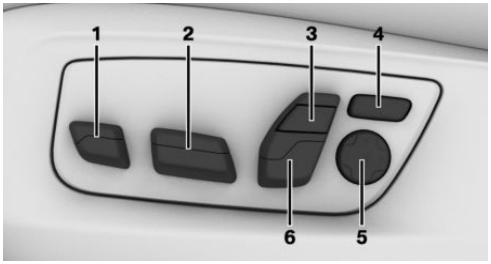
Press the button on the steering wheel or ›Cancel‹.

This symbol indicates that the voice activation system is deactivated.

Set-up and use

Seats, mirrors, and steering wheel

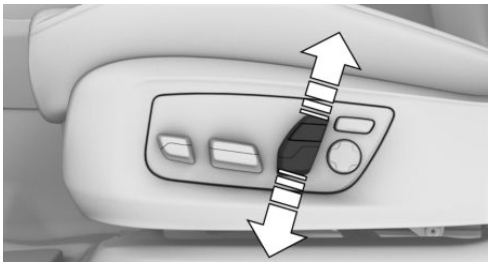
Electrically adjustable seats



1 Thigh support
2 Forward/backward, height, seat tilt
3 Upper backrest
4 Backrest width
5 Lumbar support
6 Backrest tilt, head restraint

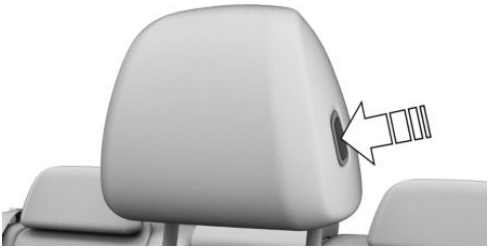
Adjusting the head restraint

Adjusting the height: power head restraints



Push switch up or down.

Adjust distance: manual head restraints

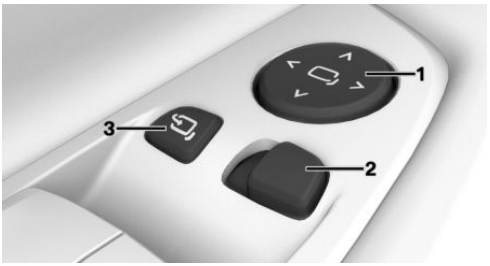


- Back: press the button and push the head restraint toward the rear.
- Forward: pull the head restraint toward the front.

Adjusting the distance: power head restraints

The head restraint is automatically repositioned when the upper backrest is adjusted.

Adjusting the exterior mirrors

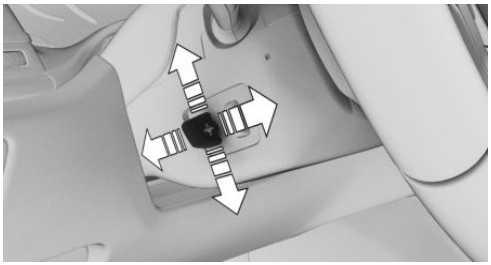


1 Adjusting
2 Selecting a mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor
3 Folding in and out

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2381
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Adjusting the steering wheel

Electrical steering wheel adjustment



Press the switch to adjust the forward/back position and height of the steering wheel to the seat position.

Memory function

Concept

The following settings can be stored and, if necessary, retrieved using the memory function:

- Seat position.
- Exterior mirror position.
- Steering wheel position.
- Height of the Head-up Display.

Storing

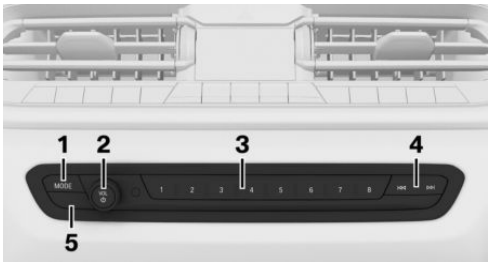
1. Set the desired position.
2. SET Press button on the door. The writing on the button lights up.
3. Press the desired button 1 or 2 at the door while the writing is lit. A signal sounds.

Calling up settings

Press the desired button 1 or 2.

Infotainment

Radio



1 Changing the entertainment source
2 Sound output on/off, volume
3 Programmable memory buttons
4 Changing the station/track
5 Changing the waveband

Waveband/satellite radio

Navigation destination input

Entering a destination via quick search

1. NAV Press the button on the Controller.
2. "Where to?"
3. Enter at least two letters or characters.

   The search term may be completed automatically in gray print.

   Press or move the controller up to apply the suggested search term.
4. OK Select the symbol, if needed.

   Results are displayed in a list.
5. "Search location": select search area.
6. Move the Controller to the right.
7. Select desired destination.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2382

Connecting a mobile phone

General information

After the mobile phone is connected once to the vehicle, the mobile phone can be operated using iDrive and the steering wheel buttons.

Connecting the mobile phone via Bluetooth

1. "COM"
2. If necessary, select the following setting: "Telephone"
3. "Connect new phone"
4. To perform additional steps on the mobile phone, refer to the mobile phone owner's manual: e.g., search for or connect the Bluetooth device or a new device.

   The Bluetooth name of the vehicle appears on the mobile phone display. Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle.
5. Depending on the mobile device, a control number is displayed or the control number must be entered.
   - ▷ Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number on the display of the device.

     Confirm the control number on the device and on the Control Display.
   - ▷ Enter and confirm the same control number on the device and via iDrive.

   The device is connected and displayed in the device list.

Using the telephone

Accepting a call

Depending on the equipment, incoming calls can be answered in several ways.

- ▷ Via iDrive:

  "Accept"
- ▷ /

  Press the corresponding button on the steering wheel.
- ▷ Via the selection list in the instrument cluster:

  Use the thumbwheel on the steering wheel to select: "Accept"
- ▷ Via touch screen: tap on the corresponding entry on the Control Display.
- ▷ Via gestures: point the index finger into the direction of the Control Display.

Dialing a number

1. "COM"
2. If necessary, "Telephone"
3. "Dial number:"
4. Enter the numbers.
5. Select the symbol. The connection is established via the mobile phone to which this function has been assigned.

Establish the connection via the additional telephone:

1.

Press the button.
2. "Call via"

Apple CarPlay preparation

Concept

CarPlay allows certain functions of a compatible Apple iPhone to be used via Siri voice operation and iDrive.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Compatible iPhone.

  iPhone 5 or later with iOS 7.1 or later.
- ▷ Corresponding mobile contract.
- ▷ The data connection may have to be activated on the smartphone.
- ▷ Bluetooth, WLAN, and Siri voice operation are activated on the iPhone.
- ▷ WLAN is activated on the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2383
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Pairing the iPhone with CarPlay

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. "New device"
4. "Phone calls and audio"

   The vehicle's Bluetooth name is displayed on the Control Display.
5. On the mobile device, search for Bluetooth devices in the vicinity and select the vehicle.

   A control number is displayed.
6. Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number on the display of the mobile device, and confirm that the two match.
7. Select CarPlay:

   "Confirm note and connect to Apple CarPlay"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2384

On the road

Driving

Drive-ready state

Switching on drive-ready state

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

Switching off drive-ready state

M Steptronic Sport transmission:

1. Engage selector lever position P with the vehicle stopped.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

   The engine is switched off.
3. Set the parking brake.

Auto Start/Stop function

The Auto Start/Stop function switches the engine off automatically while stationary to save fuel. The engine starts automatically under the following preconditions:

M Steptronic Sport transmission:

- By releasing the brake pedal.
- When Automatic Hold is activated: step on the accelerator pedal.

Parking brake

Setting

Pull the switch.

The LED on the switch and the indicator light in the instrument cluster are illuminated.

Releasing

With drive-ready state switched on:

Press the switch while stepping on the brake pedal or selector lever position P is set.

The LED and indicator light go out.

The parking brake is released.

Parking

The parking brake is automatically set if the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold and the drive-ready state is switched off or the vehicle is exited.

M Steptronic Sport transmission

Engaging selector lever position D/S, N, R

- R is reverse.
- Neutral N.
- Center position, forward position.
- - Downshifting, manual.
- + Upshifting, manual.
- D/S Drive mode or sequential mode.

With the driver's safety belt fastened, pull or push the selector lever in the desired direction, past a resistance point if necessary. The selector lever returns to the center position in each case.

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a gear position or reverse, maintain pres-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2385
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

sure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start.

In selector lever position R, the selector lever locks.

Engage selector lever position R only when the vehicle is stationary.

Drive mode D/S

Push the selector lever out of the center position in the D/S direction.

Drive mode is activated; all forward gears are automatically changed.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster along with a D, e.g., 1 D.

Sequential mode D/S

Push the selector lever out of the center position in the D/S direction, arrow 1, or shift via the selector lever, arrows at 2.

Sequential mode is activated; it is possible to shift gears manually without letting off the gas.

- To shift up: pull the selector lever rearwards.
- To shift down: press the selector lever forward.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, e.g., 1.

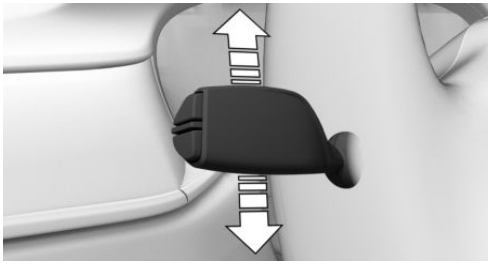
Engaging P

Engage selector lever position P only when the vehicle is stationary.

Press button P.

Turn signal, high beams, headlight flasher

Turn signal

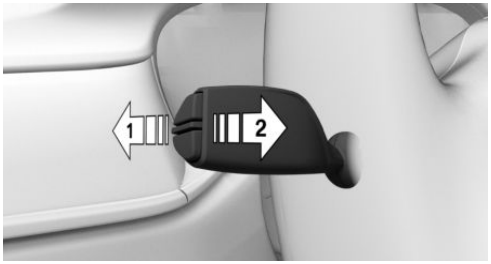


- On: press the lever past the resistance point.
- Off: press the lever past the resistance point in the opposite direction.
- Triple turn signal activation: lightly tap the lever up or down.
- Brief signaling: press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2386

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

High beams, headlight flasher



Push the lever forward or pull it backward.

- ▷ High beams on, arrow 1.
  The high beams light up when the low beams are switched on.
- ▷ High beams off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

Lights and lighting

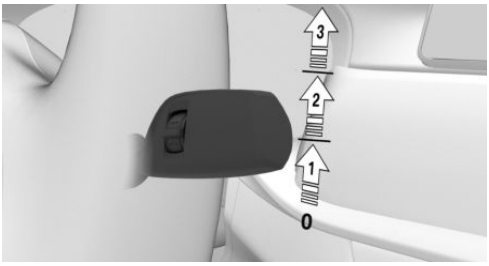
Light functions

Symbol	Function
0	Lights off. Daytime running lights.
≡D⊂≡	Parking lights.
CA	Automatic headlight control. Adaptive light functions.
≡D	Low beams.
	Instrument lighting.
P≡	Right roadside parking light.
≡P	Left roadside parking light.

Wiper system

Switching the wipers on/off and brief wipe

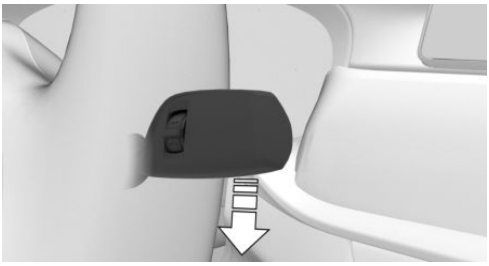
Switching on



Press the lever up until the desired position is reached.

- ▷ Resting position of the wipers: position 0.
- ▷ Rain sensor: position 1.
- ▷ Normal wiper speed: position 2.
- ▷ Fast wiper speed: position 3.

Switching off and brief wipe



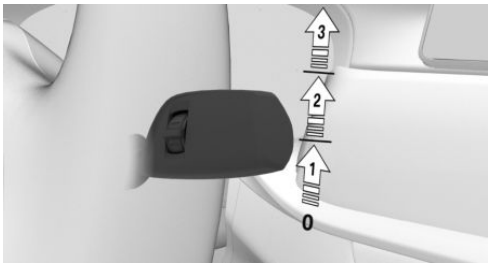
Press the lever down.

- ▷ Switching off: press the lever down until it reaches its standard position.
- ▷ Brief wipe: press the lever down from the standard position.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2387
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Rain sensor

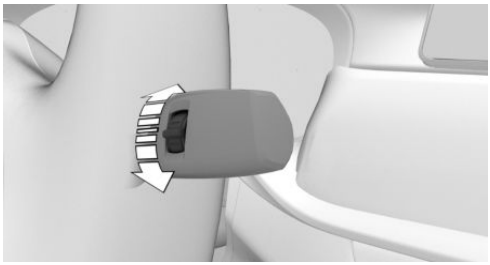
Activating/deactivating



To activate: press the lever up once from its standard position, arrow 1.

To deactivate: press the lever back into the standard position.

Adjusting the sensitivity



Turn the thumbwheel on the wiper lever.

Cleaning the windshield

Pull the wiper lever towards you.

Climate control

Automatic climate control

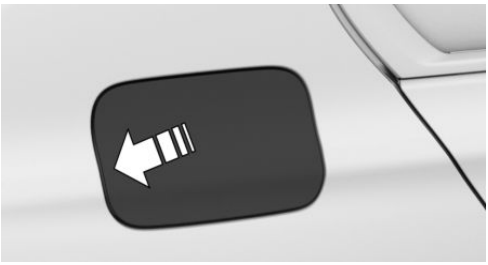
Button	Function
	Temperature.
A/C	Climate control operation.
MAX A/C	Maximum cooling.
AUTO	AUTO program.
	Recirculated-air mode.
	Air flow, manual.
	Air distribution, manual.
SYNC	SYNC program.
MAX	Defrost and defog window.
	Rear window defroster.
	Active seat ventilation.
	Seat heating.
MENU	Opening the Climate menu. For example, for the following settings: upper body temperature adjustment, parked-car ventilation.

Intermediate stop

Refueling

Fuel cap

1. To open the fuel filler flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.



2. Turn the fuel cap counterclockwise.
3. Place the fuel cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.

Gasoline

For the best fuel efficiency, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.

Wheels and tires

Tire inflation pressure specifications

The tire inflation pressure specifications can be found in the tire inflation pressure table in the printed Owner's Manual.

After correcting the tire inflation pressure

With runflat tires:

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

With Tire Pressure Monitor:

The corrected tire inflation pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the correct tire settings have been made.

With tires that cannot be found in the tire pressure values on the Control Display, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM.

Checking the tire inflation pressure

Regularly check the tire inflation pressure and correct it as needed:

- At least twice a month.
- Before embarking on an extended trip.

Cleaning the wheels

The friction during hard braking may produce brake dust and make the rims dirty. Brake dust can be removed by cleaning the rims. BMW recommends using vehicle care and cleaning products from BMW.

Electronic oil measurement

Functional requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of normal driving with the combustion engine running.

Displaying the engine oil level

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"

Different messages appear on the Control Display depending on the engine oil level. Pay attention to these messages.

Adding engine oil

General information

Safely park the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before adding engine oil.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2389
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Adding engine oil

Only add engine oil when the message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Observe the quantity to be added in the message.

Take care not to add too much engine oil.

Observe recommended engine oil types.

Providing assistance

Hazard warning flashers

The button is located in the center console.

Breakdown assistance

BMW Roadside Assistance

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "BMW Assist"
4. If necessary, "BMW Roadside Assistance"
   A voice connection is established.

ConnectedDrive

Concierge service

The BMW Assist Concierge service offers information on events, gas stations or hotels, and provides phone numbers and addresses. Many hotels can be booked directly by the BMW Concierge service. The Concierge service is part of the optional BMW Assist Response Center.

1. "COM"
2. "BMW Assist"
3. If necessary, select the entry for the Concierge Service.

A voice connection to the Concierge service is established.

Teleservices

Teleservices are services that help to maintain vehicle mobility.

Teleservices can comprise the following services:

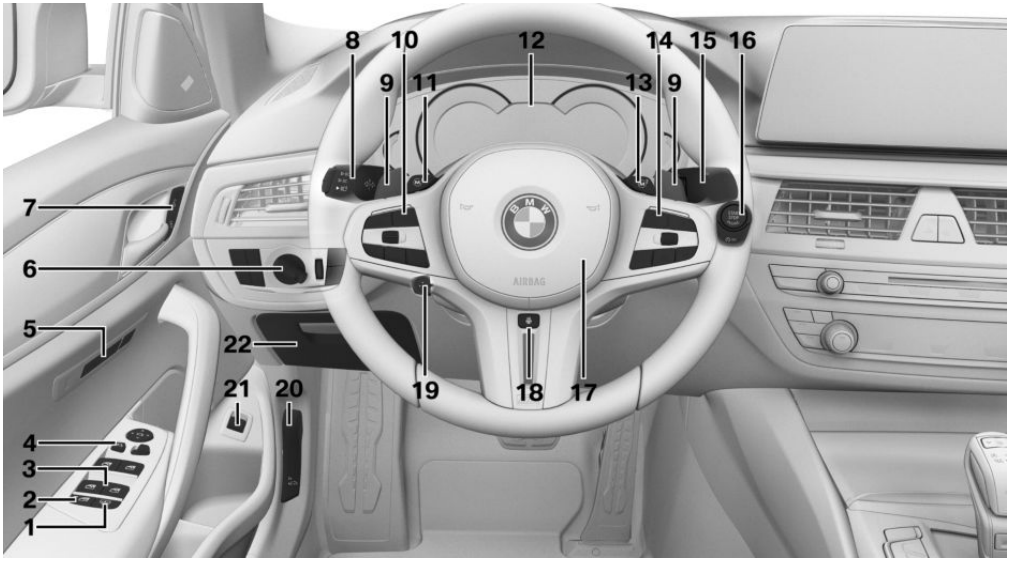
- BMW Roadside Assistance.
- BMW Accident Assistance.
- Service Request.
- Teleservice Report.
- Teleservice Battery Guard.
- Your dealer's service center.

Cockpit

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

In the vicinity of the steering wheel



1 Roller sunblind in the rear window 104

2 Safety switch 104

3 Power windows 102

4 Exterior mirror operation 116

5 Seating comfort features

SET Memory function 118

Massage function 119

6 Lights

Light switch 165

0 Lights off

Daytime running lights 167

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2391
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Parking lights 166

Automatic headlight control 165
Adaptive light functions 167
High-beam Assistant 168

Low beams 166

Instrument lighting 169

Right roadside parking light 166

Left roadside parking light 166

7 Central locking system 90

Unlocking

Locking

8 Steering column stalk, left

Turn signal 133

High beams, headlight flasher 133

High-beam Assistant 160

Widgets in the instrument cluster 147
Trip data 160

9 Shift paddles 137

10 Steering wheel buttons, left

Speed Limiter 218

Depending on the equipment:
Cruise control on/off 220

Depending on the equipment:
Active Cruise Control on/off 222

With steering and traffic jam assistant 232:
Cruise control, distance control and lane guidance on/off

Cruise control: to store the speed
Speed Limit Assist: take over suggested speed 231

Pause or continue cruise control

Active Cruise Control: increase distance

Active Cruise Control: reduce distance

Cruise control rocker switch

11
Activate M1 209

12 Instrument cluster 145

13
Activate M2 209

14 Steering wheel buttons, right

Selection lists 159

Volume, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2392

Voice activation system 46

Changing the station/track, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6

Thumbwheel for selection lists 159

15 Steering column stalk, right

Wipers 134

Rain sensor 135

Cleaning the windshield 135

16

Switching drive-ready state on/off 127

Auto Start/Stop function 127

17

Horn, entire surface

18

Heated steering wheel 118

19

Adjusting the steering wheel 118

20

Unlocking the hood 341

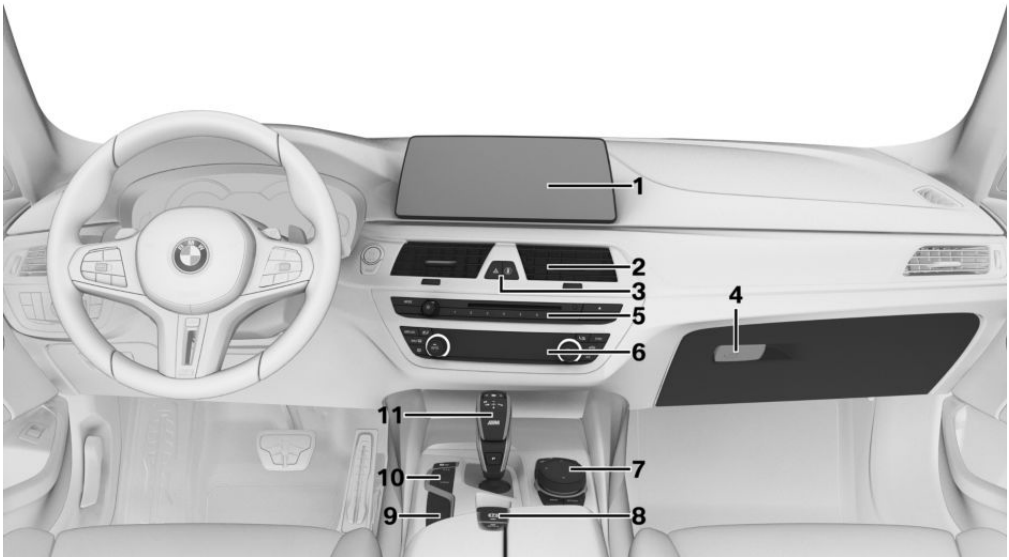
21

Opening and closing the trunk lid 95

22 Glove compartment 295

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2393
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

In the vicinity of the center console



1 Control Display 42

2 Ventilation 273

3 Hazard warning system 356

Intelligent Safety 176

4 Glove compartment 294

5 Radio/multimedia, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication 6

6 Automatic climate control 269

7 Controller with buttons 42

8 Parking brake 130

AUTO H Automatic Hold 131

9 Surround View: Panorama View 249

PDC Park Distance Control 242

Without Surround View: rearview camera 247

Surround View 249

Cross traffic warning 264

Parking assistant 257

Sound control 144

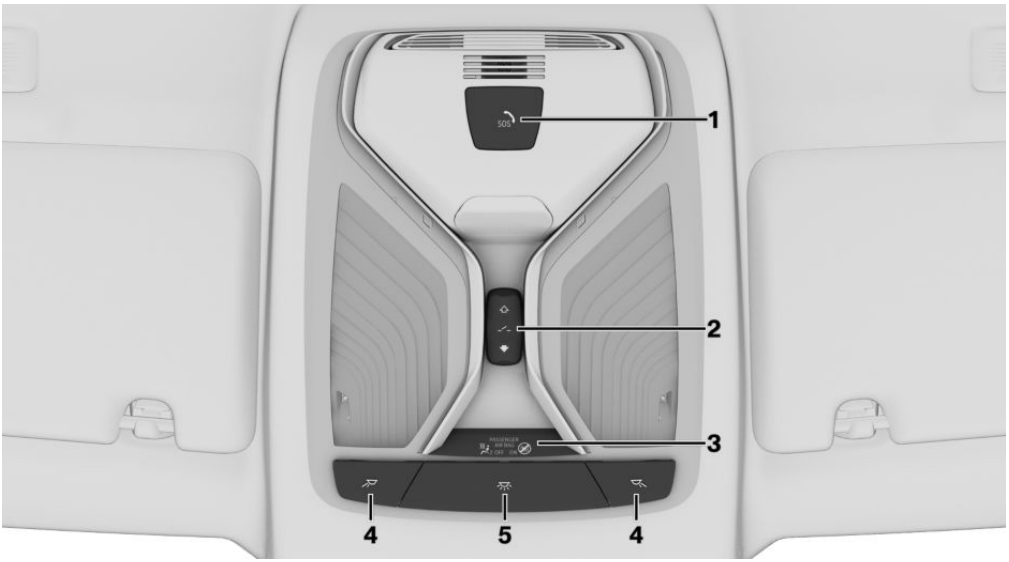
10 OFF DSC Dynamic Stability Control 213

SETUP SETUP 209

M MODE M MODE 211

11 Transmission: selector lever 137

In the vicinity of the roofliner



1 SOS Emergency Request, SOS 358

2 Operating the glass sunroof 104

3 PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON Indicator light, front-seat passenger airbag 175

4 Reading lights 170

5 Interior lights 170

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2395
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Operating state of the vehicle

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

General information

Depending on the situation, the vehicle is in one of the three states:

- Idle state.
- Standby state.
- Drive-ready state.

Idle state

Concept

When the vehicle is in idle state, it is switched off. All power consumers are deactivated.

General information

The vehicle is in idle state prior to opening from the outside and after exiting and locking.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Automatic idle state

The idle state is automatically established under the following conditions:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2396

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

- After several minutes, if no operation takes place on the vehicle.
- If the charge state of the vehicle battery is low.
- Depending on the setting via iDrive, if one of the front doors is opened when exiting the vehicle.

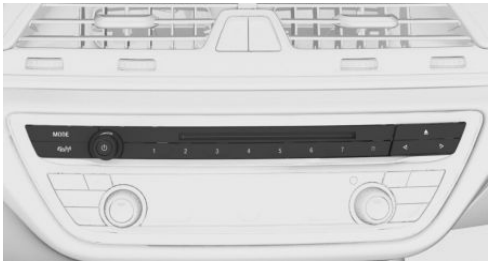
The idle state is not automatically established while a phone call is active.

Establishing idle state when opening the front doors

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Access"
4. "Turn off vehicle after opening door"

Manual idle state

To establish idle state in the vehicle after end of trip:



Press and hold the button until the OFF indicator on the instrument cluster goes out.

Standby state

Concept

When standby state is switched on, most functions can be used while the vehicle is stationary. Desired settings can be adjusted.

General information

The vehicle is in the standby state after the front doors are opened from the outside.

Display in the instrument cluster

OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster. The drivetrain is switched off and standby state switched on.

Drive-ready state

Concept

Switching on drive-ready state corresponds to starting the engine.

General information

Some vehicle functions can only be used with the drive-ready state switched on.

Safety information

DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can enter into the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2397
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

NOTICE

In the case of repeated starting attempts or repeated starting in quick succession, the fuel is not burned or is inadequately burned. The catalytic converter can overheat. There is a risk of damage to property. Avoid repeated starting in quick succession.

Switching on drive-ready state

Concept

Drive-ready state is switched on via the Start/Stop button.

M Steptronic Sport transmission

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

The ignition is activated automatically for a brief time and is stopped as soon as the engine starts.

Most of the indicator/warning lights in the instrument cluster light up for a varied length of time.

Gasoline engine

Depending on the motorization, the full drive power may not be available for approximately 30 seconds after starting the engine. In this case, the vehicle will not accelerate as usual.

Display in the instrument cluster

When drive-ready state is switched on, the tachometer shows the current engine speed.

Switching off drive-ready state

M Steptronic Sport transmission

1. Engage selector lever position P with the vehicle stopped.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

   The engine is switched off. The vehicle switches into standby state.
3. Set the parking brake.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2398

iDrive

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Operating concept

Concept

iDrive includes a large number of functions. These functions can be operated via the Controller and, depending on the equipment version, via touchscreen, voice activation system or gesture control.

Safety information

Warning

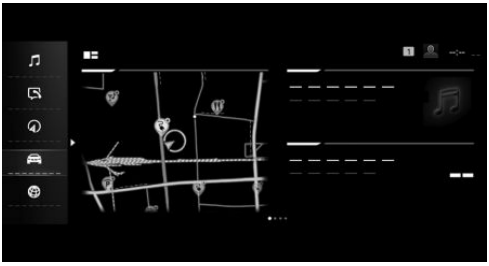
Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. As warranted, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.

Input and display

Main menu

General information

The main menu is divided into two areas. The left area contains menu items that can be used to call up all the iDrive functions. The right area contains widgets that provide quick access to certain functions.



Media/Radio

All functions of the entertainment system, e.g., radio stations or connection with external devices.

Communication

Phone and message functions, e-mail and calendar, and also the connection and management of mobile devices, such as smartphones.

Navigation

Access to the navigation system, destination input and traffic bulletins. Configurable map views and other functions, such as points of interest and areas to be avoided.

My Car

Information about vehicle status and trips. Access to the Integrated Owner's Manual and also administration of driver profiles and range of adjustments for vehicle and iDrive.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2399
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Apps

Management of apps, access to apps and vehicle functions. Additional apps can be purchased from the BMW Store.

Widgets

Widgets provide quick access to frequently used functions. The configured widgets display dynamic contents such as the navigation map, and serve as interfaces at the same time.

Letters and numbers

Letters and numbers can be selected when the destination is inputed, for example.

Letters and numbers can be entered using the Controller and, depending on the equipment version, via touchscreen or voice activation system. The keyboard's display changes automatically.

Symbol	Function
abc ABC	Change between capital and lower-case letters.
␣	Enter a blank space.
EN	Switching between languages.
	Use voice activation.
OK	Confirm entry.
← →	Slide the input area to the left or right.

Entry comparison

When entering names and addresses, the choice is narrowed down with every letter and number and added automatically as needed.

Entries are continuously compared with data stored in the vehicle.

- Only those letters and numbers are offered during entry for which data is available.
- Destination search: place names can be entered in all languages that are available in iDrive.

Activating/deactivating the functions

Several menu items are preceded by a checkbox. The checkbox indicates whether the function is activated or deactivated. Selecting the menu item activates or deactivates the function.

☑ Function is activated.

☐ Function is deactivated.

Status information

General information

The status field can be found in the upper area of the Control Display. Status information is displayed in the form of symbols.

Radio symbols

Symbol	Meaning
HD	HD Radio station is being received.
SXM	Satellite radio is switched on.

Telephone symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Incoming or outgoing call.
	Missed call.
	Signal strength of cellular network.
	Network search.
	Cellular network is not available.
	The critical charge state of the mobile phone has been reached.
R	Roaming is active.
	Locating is active.
	SMS text message received.
	Message received.

Symbol	Meaning
	Reminder.
	Sending not possible.

Entertainment symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Bluetooth audio.
	USB device.
	WLAN.
	Apple CarPlay.

Other symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Check Control message.
	Sound output active.
	Sound output deactivated.
	Voice activation system active.
	Request for the current vehicle position.
	Checking the current vehicle position.
	Driver profile.
1	Messages.
	Service notifications.
	Information.
STOP	Stop.
	Data protection.

Programmable memory buttons

General information

The iDrive functions can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly, for instance radio stations, navigation destinations, phone numbers and menu entries or pages in the Integrated Owner's Manual.

Settings are stored for the driver profile currently used.

Overview

1 ... 7 Programmable memory buttons

Storing a function

A function can be stored on a programmable memory button. A button with a stored function can be overwritten with another function.

1. Select function via iDrive, for instance radio station.
2. 1 ... 7 Press and hold the desired button until the displayed bar on the Control Display has loaded completely.

Executing a function

1 ... 7 Press the button.

The function will work immediately. This means, for instance that the number is dialed when a phone number is selected.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2401
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Displaying the key assignment

Touch buttons with finger. Do not wear gloves or use objects.

The assignment of the buttons is displayed in the upper area of the Control Display.

Deleting all button assignments

All button assignments can be deleted.

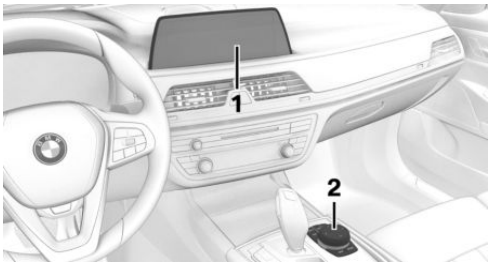
1. Press and hold buttons 1 and simultaneously for approx. 5 seconds.
2. "OK"

Control Display and Controller

Concept

The iDrive functions are displayed on the Control Display. The Control Display can be operated using the Controller, touchpad, and touch screen.

Overview



1 Control Display with touchscreen

2 Controller with buttons and touchpad

Control Display

Safety information

NOTICE

Objects in the area in the front of the Control Display can shift and damage the Control Display. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not place objects in the area in front of the Control Display.

Switching on/off automatically

The Control Display is switched on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked or as soon as the Control Display is needed for operation.

In certain situations, the Control Display is switched off automatically, for instance if no operation is performed on the vehicle for several minutes.

Switching on/off manually

The Control Display can also be switched off manually.

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Screen off"

Press the Controller or any button on the Controller to switch it back on again.

System limits

In the case of very high temperatures on the Control Display, for instance due to intense solar radiation, the brightness may be reduced down to complete deactivation. Once the temperature is reduced, for instance through shade or air conditioning, the normal functions are restored.

Controller

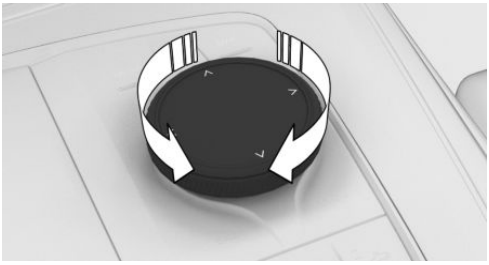
General information

The buttons can be used to open the menus directly. The Controller can be used to select menu items and enter the settings.

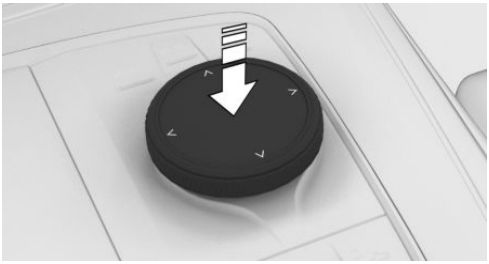
Some iDrive functions can be operated using the touchpad on the Controller.

Operation

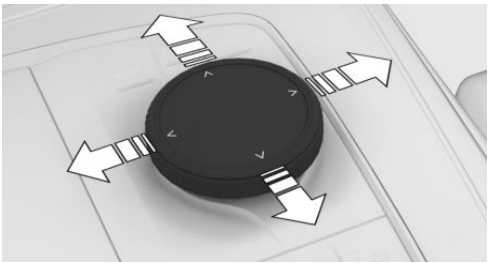
▷ Turn to switch between menu items, for example.



▷ Press to select a menu item, for example.



▷ Tilt in four directions to switch between displays, for example.



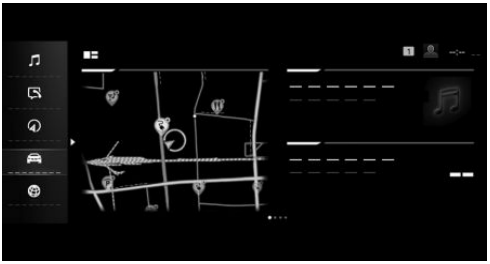
Buttons on the Controller

Button	Function
MENU	Opens the main menu.
MEDIA	Opens the Media/Radio menu.
COM	Opens the Communication menu.
MAP	Opens navigation map.
NAV	Opens destination input menu for navigation.
BACK	Opens the previous display.
OPTION	Opens the Options menu.

Operating via the Controller

Opening the main menu

MENU Press the button.



The main menu is displayed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2403
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Selecting a menu

Selecting menu items

1. Turn the Controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.
2. Press the Controller.

Select a widget

1. Move the Controller in the main menu to the right.
2. Turn the Controller until the desired widget is selected.
3. Press the Controller.

It is also possible to select widgets in the instrument cluster.

Adjusting the menu

Adjusting widgets

The widgets can be adjusted in the main menu. It is possible to create multiple pages with widgets and switch between pages. The adjustments can only be performed when the vehicle is stationary.

1. Select the desired page in the main menu. Only the currently selected page can be adjusted.
2. Tip the Controller up.
3. "Adjust main menu"
4. Select the desired adjustment:
   - ▷ + Symbol and select desired widget: add new widget.

     The requested widget will be inserted in the relevant position. A maximum of four widgets can be displayed per page.
   - ▷ ✕ Select symbol: delete selected widget.
   - ▷ Add new page: "Add page".
   - ▷ Delete selected page: "Delete page".
   - ▷ Adjust the content of the widget: select widget.
5. "Done"

Adjusting contents

Depending on the equipment, the contents of menus "MEDIA", "COM" and "NAV" can be adjusted, for instance to remove the entries of functions that are not used from the menu.

1. Select the menu.
2. "Personalize menu"
3. Select the desired setting.

Changing between displays

After a menu item is selected, for instance "Settings", a new display appears.

▷ Move the Controller to the left.

The current display closes and the previous display is shown.

▷

Press the button.

The previous display re-opens.

▷ Move the Controller to the right.

The new display opens.

An arrow indicates that additional displays can be opened.

Opening the Options menu

Press the button.

The "Options" menu is displayed.

The menu consists of various areas, for instance:

- ▷ "MEDIA": control options for the selected main menu.
- ▷ "Help": help for the selected menu.
- ▷ "Display off": system settings.

Entering letters and numbers

Input

1. Turn the Controller: select letter or number.
2. OK : confirm entry.

Deleting

Symbol	Function
⌫	Press the Controller: delete letter or number.
⌫	Hold the Controller down: delete all letters or numbers.

Using alphabetical lists

For alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries, the letters for which an entry exists can be displayed in a text box.

1. Turn the Controller to the left or right quickly.
2. Select the first letter of the desired entry.

   The first entry of the selected letter is displayed in the list.

Operation via touchpad

General information

Some iDrive functions can be operated using the touchpad on the Controller.

Selecting functions

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Touchpad"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Character input": enter letters and numbers.
   - ▷ "Map": use the map.
   - ▷ "Search fields": to write letters without selecting the list field.
   - ▷ "Audio confirmation": pronounces entered letters and numbers.

Entering letters and numbers

- ▷ Enter characters as they are displayed on the Control Display.
- ▷ Always enter associated characters, such as accents or periods so that the letter can be clearly recognized.
- ▷ The set language determines what input is possible. Where necessary, enter special characters via the Controller.

Entering special characters

Input	Operation
Delete a character.	Swipe to the left on the touchpad.
Enter a blank space.	Swipe to the right in the center of the touchpad.
Enter a hyphen.	Swipe to the right in the upper area of the touchpad.
Enter an underscore.	Swipe to the right in the lower area of the touchpad.

Using the map

The map in the navigation system can be moved via the touchpad.

Function	Operation
Move map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Enlarge/shrink map.	Drag in or out on the touchpad with fingers.
Display menu.	Tap once.

Operation via touchscreen

General information

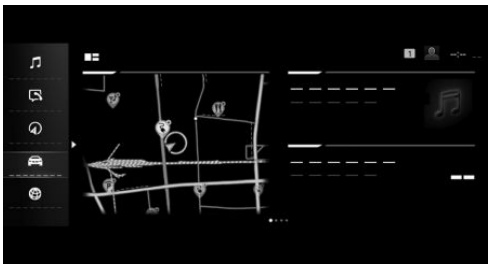
The Control Display is equipped with a touchscreen.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2405
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

You can tap on menu items and widgets. Touch the screen with your fingers. Do not use any objects.

Opening the main menu

Tap on the symbol.



The main menu is displayed.

Adjusting widgets

The widgets can be adjusted in the main menu. It is possible to create multiple pages with widgets and switch between pages. The adjustments can only be performed when the vehicle is stationary.

1. Select the desired page in the main menu. Only the currently selected page can be adjusted.
2. Tap the symbol in the main menu.
3. Select the desired adjustment:
   - ▷ + Tap symbol and select desired widget: add new widget.

     The requested widget will be inserted in the relevant position. A maximum of four widgets can be displayed per page.
   - ▷ × Tap symbol: delete selected widget.
   - ▷ Add new page: tap "Add page".
   - ▷ Delete selected page: tap "Delete page".
   - ▷ Adjust content of the widget: tap center of widget.
4. Tap "Done".

Showing/hiding the display bar

In the upper area of the Control Display, it is possible to show or hide a display bar with additional functions.

- ▷ To show the display bar, pull down the display bar at the top edge of the screen.
- ▷ To hide the display bar, pull up the display bar at the top edge of the screen.

Changing between displays

After a menu item is selected, a new display opens.

An arrow indicates that additional displays can be opened.

- ▷ Swipe to the left.
- ▷ Tap arrow.

The new display opens.

Entering letters and numbers

Input

1. Depending on the equipment version, tap the symbol on the touchscreen or a keyboard is displayed on the Control Display when the touchscreen is approached.
2. Enter desired letters and numbers.

Deleting

Symbol	Function
⌫	Tapping the symbol: deletes the letter or number.
⌫	Tapping and holding the symbol all letters: deletes all letters or numbers.

Using the map

The navigation map can be moved using the touchscreen.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2406

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Function	Operation
Move map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Enlarge/shrink map.	Drag in or out with the fingers.
Display menu.	Tap once.

Operation via voice

Concept

The voice activation system can be used to operate functions with spoken commands. The system supports you with announcements during input.

The voice control system and the feedback it provides are not a substitute for the printed or Integrated Owner's Manual.

General information

- Functions that can only be used when the vehicle is stationary can only be operated via the voice activation system to a limited extent.
- The system includes special microphones on the driver side and the front passenger side.
- ›...‹ denotes commands to use with the voice activation system.

Functional requirements

- A language must be set via iDrive that is supported by the voice activation system.

  To set the language, refer to page 59.
- Always say commands in the language of the voice activation system.

Activating the voice activation system

General information

There are various methods for activating the voice activation feature:

- Press the button on the steering wheel.
- Say the wake word ›Hello BMW‹ or a personal wake word.
- Active voice processing.

This symbol indicates that the voice activation system is active.

Then say the command. No other commands may be available. In this case, operate the function via iDrive.

The voice activation can be terminated:

- Press the button on the steering wheel again.
- ›Cancel‹

This symbol indicates that the voice activation system is deactivated.

Button on the steering wheel

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the signal.
3. Say the command.

Wake word

General information

Speaking the wake word ›Hello BMW‹ or the personal wake word will start the system.

Preset wake word

The preset wake word ›Hello BMW‹ can be activated and deactivated.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2407
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

›Hello BMW‹ activates the preset and personal wake word.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Activation with "Hello BMW""

Personal wake word

In addition to a preset wake word ›Hello BMW‹, a personal wake word can be set up.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Personal wake word"
6. "Start recording"

   For "Start recording", online speech processing must be available and activated. Alternatively, the personal wake word can be entered using the Controller.
7. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Active voice processing

General information

Active voice processing recognizes keywords that are spoken in the car's interior. For instance, if the name of a city is named, information for the navigation will be displayed on the Control Display.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Active speech processing"

Possible commands

General information

Most contents on the Control Display can be spoken as commands, e.g. menu items or list entries. Speak these list entries out loud exactly as they are shown in the list.

Say the commands and numbers fluently as well as with normal volume, emphasis, and speed.

The status of the voice recognition is displayed in the upper area of the Control Display.

Function examples

Menu items

The commands of the menu items are spoken just as they are selected via the Controller.

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. ›MEDIA‹
3. ›Presets‹

The stored stations are displayed on the Control Display.

Navigation

Destinations can be entered in the navigation system using the voice activation system. It is also possible to say points of interest or have traffic reports announced.

- ›Drive me to 300 Chestnut Ridge Road, Woodcliff Lake in New Jersey‹
- ›Take me home‹
- ›Are there any traffic messages‹

Communication

For example, when a mobile phone is connected, the voice activation system can be used to start calls or send SMS.

- ›Call John Doe on cell phone‹
- ›Dial the number 1 8 0 0 8 3 1 1 1 1 7‹

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2408

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

- ›New text message to John Doe: I'll be right there‹

Media and Radio

Most radio functions can be used via the Active Voice Recognition.

- ›Turn on music‹
- ›Music off‹
- ›Next title‹

Climate control

Most climate control functions can be used via voice.

- ›Activate climate control‹
- ›Deactivate air recirculation‹
- ›Temperature [...] at ...‹

Help on the voice activation system

- ›Voice commands‹: to have the available spoken commands announced.
- ›General information on voice control‹: have information on the operating principle of the voice activation system read out loud.
- ›Help‹: have help for the current menu read out loud.

Information for Emergency Requests

Do not use the voice activation system to initiate an Emergency Request. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change. This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a telephone connection.

Instead, use the SOS button close to the interior mirror.

Additional information:

Emergency Request, refer to page 358.

Settings

Setting the voice control

You can set the system to use standard dialog or a short version.

The short version of the voice control plays back short messages in abbreviated form.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Response length"
6. Select the desired setting.

Speaking during voice output

It is possible to answer during inquiries of the voice activation system. The function can be deactivated if inquiries are often undesirably interrupted, for instance due to background noise or conversations in the vehicle.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Speaking during voice output"

Online speech processing

Online speech processing provides a dictation function, a natural method of destinations input and improves the quality of voice recognition. To use the functions, data is transmitted to a service provider via an encrypted connection and stored locally there.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Online speech processing"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2409
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Adjusting the volume

Turn the volume button during the spoken instructions until the desired volume is set.

- The volume remains constant even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.
- The volume is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Using the voice activation system of the smartphone

Depending on the device, a smartphone connected to the vehicle can be used via voice activation.

Activate voice command response on the smartphone for this purpose.

1. Press and hold the button on the steering wheel for approx. 3 seconds.

   Voice command response is activated on the smartphone.
2. Release the button.

   If activation is successful, a confirmation appears on the Control Display.

Voice assistants from third-party providers

Concept

Some third-party providers provide digital voice assistants. Supported voice assistants can be used in the vehicle.

General information

Some of the functions are limited in the vehicle to prevent any impairment of safety while driving.

Functional requirements

- Connected Voice Services purchased via ConnectedDrive Store.
- Same ConnectedDrive account used in the vehicle and in the BMW Connected app.
- Vehicle added in the BMW Connected app.
- Third-party account and BMW account are linked in the BMW Connected app.
- Smartphone connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth.

Activation in the BMW Connected app

Third-party assistants are set up in the BMW Connected app.

Follow the instructions in the app.

Activation in the vehicle

An authorization for the use of the voice assistant is required every time before starting a trip.

1. Authorizing voice assistants from third-party providers:
   - Connect the smartphone to the vehicle via Bluetooth.
   - Selects appropriate driver profile.

     Driver profiles, refer to page 63.
2. If necessary, press the button on the steering wheel and wait for signal tone.
3. Say the specific activation word of the third-party provider and the desired command.

   Information about the active function is displayed on the Control Display.

Activation/deactivation of the specific activation word

In addition to the activation word of the voice activation system, the specific activation word from the third-party provider can be activated or deactivated.

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "Personal assistant"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Wake word"

6. "Activation by speech"
7. Select the desired setting.

Malfunction

In case of a malfunction, switch off the drive-ready state and restart again.

System limits

- Certain noises can be detected and may lead to problems. Keep the doors, windows, and glass sunroof closed.
- Noises from the front passenger or the rear seat bench can impair the system. Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.
- Major language dialects can cause problems with the voice recognition feature. Speak loud and clear.

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant

Concept

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is the personal assistant that expands the voice activation system with intelligent functions and improves the interaction in the vehicle.

General information

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is available depending on the national-market version. The use of the personal assistant is based on voice operation. The voice operation is enhanced with personal recommendations and messages as well as the automation of routines.

The personal assistant is connected to other digital services such as the Concierge service and is continually being developed. The full scope requires an active driver profile.

The BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is available in two variants:

- In the Guest profile: the variant is linked to a vehicle and cannot be personalized. Not all described functions are available to the full extent.
- With active Driver profile: the variant can be used and personalized in different vehicles. All described functions are available to the full extent.

Functional requirements

Enter the following settings to access the full range of functions:

- The Driver profile is activated.
- Relevant ConnectedDrive Services have been purchased via ConnectedDrive Store.
- Registered in the ConnectedDrive Store.
- "Online speech processing" is activated.
- "Synchronize driver profile" under "Personalization" is activated.

  Data protection, refer to page 62.
- All settings under "BMW ConnectedDrive" activated.

  Data protection, refer to page 62.

Example for function

1. Say the wake word ›Hello BMW‹ or a personal wake word.
2. ›Is my tire pressure still OK?‹

   The personal assistant provides information about the tire pressure.

Settings

Display, notifications

General information

Depending on the situation, different conditions can be activated.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2411
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Condition	Description
"Do not disturb"	Incoming calls and some messages are not displayed.
"Passenger on board"	Private contents, such as sender and content of e-mails, will not be displayed.

Activating/deactivating

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "Personal assistant"
4. "Notification display"
5. Select the desired setting.

Automating routines

General information

The personal assistant can learn routines, e.g., the automatic activation of the seat heating from a specific external temperature. Rules are created for this purpose, which can be activated and deactivated at any time.

Creating a rule

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "Personal assistant"
4. "Automate habits"
5. Select the desired setting.

Functions

Experience Modes

General information

The Experience Modes combine different vehicle functions in the car's interior to an overall experience. For example, the selection of a mode harmonizes the ambient light and seat climate control.

Functional requirements

- The Experience Modes app is installed in the vehicle.
- Drive-ready state is switched on.

Selecting a mode

1. "CAR"
2. "Experience Modes"
3. Select the desired mode.

Deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Experience Modes"
3. "End"

Adjusting the mode

1. "CAR"
2. "Experience Modes"
3. Select the desired mode.
4. "Settings"
5. Make the desired setting.

Caring Car

General information

Different vehicle functions in the car's interior are harmonized for the driver in a short-term program. A program takes 3 minutes.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Caring Car"
3. Select the desired channel.

The program can be stopped prematurely:

"End program"

Connected Command

General information

Connected Command enables passengers to control different functions in the vehicle via

smartphone and the BMW Connected App and receive information about the trip.

Functional requirements

- The smartphone is connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth and WLAN.
- The BMW Connected app is installed on the smartphone.

Managing rights

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Select the desired setting for the respective device.

Owner's Manual via voice operation

Concept

You can ask simple questions about vehicle functions and the operation of the vehicle.

General information

The voice control system and the feedback it provides are not a substitute for the printed or Integrated Owner's Manual. The voice recognition and quality of the feedback may vary.

The system supports questions that begin with How or What.

Example for function

1. ›Hello BMW‹
2. ›How can the passenger airbag be deactivated‹

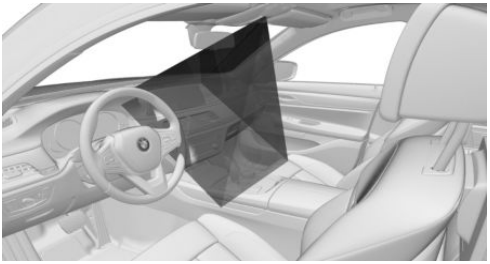
The voice activation system returns a feedback. When stationary, the section of the integrated Owner's Manual is displayed on the Control Display.

BMW Gesture Control

Concept

Several iDrive functions can be operated by hand motion using BMW Gesture Control.

Overview



The camera in the roofliner detects gestures that are carried out in the area of the center console at the height of the Control Display.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Gesture control"
5. "Gesture control"

Settings

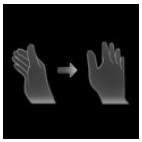
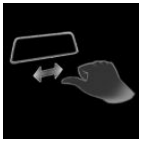
1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Gesture control"
5. Select the desired setting.

Carrying out gestures

- Perform gestures underneath the interior mirror and next to the steering wheel.
- Execute gestures clearly.
- The gestures can also be executed from the front-passenger side.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2413
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Possible gestures

Gesture	Operation	Function
	Move index finger forward and backward in the direction of the screen.	Accept call. Select a highlighted entry in a list during voice activation. Confirm pop-up.
	Move hand across the width of the Control Display in the direction of the front-passenger side.	Reject call. Close pop-up. Terminate voice activation.
	Slowly move hand clockwise in a circular pattern with the index finger stretched out forward. Gesture is detected after one circular motion.	Increase the volume.
	Slowly move forearm counterclockwise in a circular pattern with the index finger stretched out forward. Gesture is detected after one circular motion.	Reduce the volume.
	Pinch with thumb and index finger and move hand horizontally to the right or left.	Surround View: turn camera view. This gesture can only be executed while the vehicle is stationary.
	Move stretched out index and middle finger forward.	Individually assignable gesture.
	Move fist with thumb extended to the left back and forth.	Reverse Skip function. The previous music track is played.

Gesture	Operation	Function
	Move fist with thumb extended to right left back and forth.	Forward Skip function. The next music track is played.
	Stretch out five fingers, form a fist and stretch five fingers out again.	Individually assignable gesture.

Assigning gesture individually

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the following functions can be assigned to gestures that allow individual assignments:

- Destination guidance to home address.
- Voice command response.
- Mute/Playback
- Last calls.
- Control Display on/off
- Notifications.
- Music recognition
- No function.

Select function

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Gesture control"
5. "Function assignment gesture 1" or "Function assignment gesture 2"
6. Select the desired setting.

System limits

Gesture recognition by the camera in the roofliner can be disturbed by the following circumstances:

- The camera lens is covered.
- Objects are located on the interior mirror.
- The camera lens is dirty, clean camera lens.

  Sensors and camera lenses, refer to page 366.
- The gesture is executed outside of the detection range.
- Wearing of gloves or jewelry.
- Smoking in the car's interior.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2415
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

BMW Remote Software Upgrade

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

BMW Remote Software Upgrade

Concept

Remote Software Upgrade can be used to update the software of the vehicle. Remote Software Upgrade makes new functions, functional enhancements or quality improvements available.

General information

BMW recommends performing the Remote Software Upgrade as soon as it becomes available.

The available data for Remote Software Upgrade is automatically loaded into the vehicle.

For reasons of safety, the loaded upgrade can only be installed when the vehicle is stationary. The installation is not installed until it was confirmed on the vehicle.

- The installation may take around 20 minutes.
- The installation cannot be terminated.
- The vehicle cannot be used during the installation.
- The vehicle can be exited during the installation.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

Functional requirement

The use of the Remote Software Upgrade requires an active ConnectedDrive contract.

Information about the version

General information

The information about the version contains a description of the updates that are included in the Remote Software Upgrade. During the download and after the installation has been completed successfully, the information about the version can be displayed on the Control Display. The information is available in the ConnectedDrive customer portal at any time.

Logging on to the ConnectedDrive customer portal on the Internet under:

www.bmw-connecteddrive.com.

Displaying information about the version

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"

3. "General settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. "Installed version:"

Safety information

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Search for and download of an upgrade

General information

There are various options to search for and download an upgrade:

- Automatic.
- Via iDrive.
- Via BMW Connected app.

Automatic download

The available data for Remote Software Upgrade is automatically loaded into the vehicle. The download does not require an approval.

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. "Search for upgrades"
6. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Via BMW Connected app

1. Download the available upgrade to the smartphone in the BMW Connected app.
2. Follow the instructions in the BMW Connected app.
3. Establish connection to the vehicle.
   - iOS: Bluetooth Audio and WLAN.
   - Android: WLAN in the vehicle.

   The data transfer of the upgrade from the smartphone to the vehicle occurs only while driving.
4. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Additional information:

Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle, refer to page 67.

Install the upgrade immediately

General information

After successful download completion, installation is offered once the vehicle is parked. The installation can be carried out immediately following the download.

Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

After the successful completion of the upgrade, booked services, for example RTTI, will be reactivated automatically while driving.

Functional requirements

- The battery is sufficiently charged.
- The external temperature is above 14 °F/-10 °C.
- Vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2417
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

- Hazard warning system is switched off.
- Selector lever position P is engaged.
- Engine is sufficiently cooled down.
- Automatic engine start for stationary climate control is not activated via iDrive.

Preparing the vehicle

- Park the vehicle safely away from the public road.
- Cellular network reception must be ensured so that an error message can be sent, for instance if the installation is terminated.
- Close the windows.
- Close the glass sunroof.
- Close the trunk lid.
- Remove energy consuming devices, such as a mobile phone.
- The vehicle key is in the vehicle at the start of the installation.
- Switch off the exterior lighting.

Additional vehicle related functional requirements are shown on the Control Display.

Install the upgrade later

The installation of the upgrade can be carried out at a later time.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. "Start upgrade now"

   Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Functional limitations

During the upgrade, the majority of functions is temporarily unavailable, for instance:

- Hazard warning system.
- Central locking system.
- Parking lights.
- Horn.
- Alarm system.
- Emergency Request.
- Power windows.
- Glass sunroof.
- Checking the fuel filler flap lock.

The driver's door can be locked and unlocked from the outside using the integrated key.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, follow the instructions on the Control Display or in the BMW Connected app.

If the malfunction cannot be remedied, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

General settings

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Time

Setting the time zone

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time zone:"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the time

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time:"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired hours are displayed.
7. Press the Controller.
8. Turn the Controller until the desired minutes are displayed.
9. "OK"

Setting the time format

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time format:"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Automatic time setting

Depending on your vehicle's optional features, the time, date and, if needed, the time zone are updated automatically.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Automatic time setting"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Date

Setting the date

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Date:"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2419
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

6. Turn the Controller until the desired day is displayed.
7. Press the Controller.
8. Make the settings for the month and year.
9. "OK"

Setting the date format

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Date format:"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Language

Setting the language

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the units of measurement

Depending on the country version, you can set the units of measurement for some values, for instance consumption, distances, and temperature.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Units"
5. Select the desired menu item.
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Driver Attention Camera

Concept

A camera that monitors driver activity is located in the instrument cluster. The camera evaluates the head position and eye opening and uses the data to analyze the attention of the driver. This system supports various vehicle assistance systems, e.g.:

- Fatigue alert.
- Steering and traffic jam assistant with Extended Traffic Jam Assistant.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Driver Attention Camera"
5. Select the desired setting.

System limits

The Driver Attention Camera may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- When the Driver Attention Camera is covered by the steering wheel rim.
- When the driver is wearing infrared impermeable sunglasses.

Trip data settings

Concept

The intervals in which the trip data will be reset can be configured.

Resetting trip data

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Reset trip data"
5. Select the desired setting.

Speed warning

Concept

A speed limit can be set that when reached will cause a warning to be issued.

General information

The warning is repeated if the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed limit again, after it has dropped below it by 3 mph/5 km/h.

Adjusting

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Warning at:"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired speed is displayed.
7. Press the Controller.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Speed warning"

Setting your current speed as the speed warning

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Select current speed"

Activating/deactivating pop-ups

For some functions, pop-ups are displayed automatically on the Control Display. Some of these pop-ups can be activated or deactivated.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Pop-ups"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Control Display

Brightness

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Control display"
5. "Brightness at night"
6. Press the Controller.
7. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is set.
8. Press the Controller.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2421
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Depending on the light conditions, the brightness settings may not be clearly visible.

Resetting the vehicle configuration

All individual settings can be reset to the factory settings when the drive-ready state is switched off.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Reset vehicle data"
5. "Reset vehicle data"

When the stored settings in a driver profile are synchronized with the ConnectedDrive account, these settings will remain in the ConnectedDrive account.

Messages

Concept

The menu centrally displays all messages arriving in the vehicle in list form.

General information

The following messages can be displayed:

- Traffic messages.
- Check Control messages.
- Messages on service notifications.
- Communication messages, for example e-mails, SMS text messages or reminders.
- Messages from, e.g., the Concierge service or the BMW Connected app.
- Messages from the vehicle manufacturer.

The number of messages is additionally displayed in the status field.

The Messages menu can also be created as Widget.

Retrieving messages

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Select the desired message.

Deleting messages

All messages, except Check Control messages or messages from the vehicle manufacturer, can be deleted from the list.

Check Control messages or messages from the vehicle manufacturer are displayed as long as they are relevant.

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Select desired message, for instance. SMS.
4.

Press the button.
5. ▷ "Delete this notification"
   ▷ "Delete all notifications"

Settings

The following settings can be adjusted:

- ▷ Select the applications, from which messages will be permitted.
- ▷ All messages or a limited time period for received messages.

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. Select the desired setting.

Personal settings

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Data protection

Data transfer

Concept

The vehicle offers different services, whose use requires a data transfer to BMW or a service provider. The data transfer can be deactivated for some services.

General information

When the data transfer is deactivated, the respective service cannot be used.

Only make these settings while stationary.

Settings

The data transfer can be configured in different stages or individually for separate services.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. Select the desired setting.

Deleting personal data in the vehicle

Concept

Depending on the usage, the vehicle stores personal data, such as stored radio stations. This personal data can be permanently deleted using iDrive.

General information

Depending on the equipment package, the following data can be deleted:

- Driver profile settings.
- Stored radio stations.
- Stored programmable memory buttons.
- Travel and Onboard Computer information.
- Navigation, for instance stored destinations.
- Phone book.
- Online data, for instance Favorites, cookies.
- Office data, for instance voice memos.
- Login accounts.

Altogether, the deletion of the data can take up to 15 minutes.

Functional requirement

Data can only be deleted while stationary.

Deleting data

The personal data in the vehicle will be deleted when the vehicle is reset to the factory settings.

Additional information:

Resetting the vehicle configuration, refer to page 61.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2423
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Driver profiles

Concept

Driver profiles can be created to store personal vehicle settings. If the vehicle is used by multiple drivers, each driver can create his personal driver profile. When a driver profile is selected, the vehicle will automatically apply the stored settings in the driver profile.

General information

Three personal driver profiles can be created.

In addition, a guest profile is available that can be selected by any driver. The guest profile is active when a personal driver profile has not been selected.

Changes to the vehicle settings are automatically stored in the active driver profile or in the guest profile.

The vehicle can already adjust to the driver when it is unlocked. For this purpose, the recognition via a vehicle key and a digital key can be assigned to a driver profile.

ConnectedDrive countries: The settings stored in the driver's profile can be synchronized with the personal BMW ConnectedDrive account. It is thereby possible to use these settings in other BMW vehicles as well.

Functional requirements

When switching the driver profile, the vehicle must move at a maximum of walking speed.

Welcome screen

After the Control Display is switched on, the Welcome screen will be displayed.

The following actions can be carried out on the Welcome screen:

- Switching the driver profile.
- Starting the set-up assistant.

  This option is offered in new vehicle for a limited period of time.

As soon as the engine is started or any button is pressed, the Welcome screen will be hidden.

Setup assistant

The setup assistant is offered in new vehicles for a limited period of time on the Welcome screen to configure the most important settings for the vehicle.

"Getting started" Select to start the set-up assistant.

The set-up assistant can be started via iDrive at any time.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Getting started"

The driver is guided step by step through the following functions:

- Setting the system language.
- ConnectedDrive countries:

  If the set-up assistant was opened in the guest profile: create driver profile.
- Pairing mobile devices with the vehicle.
- If the set-up assistant was opened from an already defined driver profile: set up personal assistant.
- Depending on whether the set-up assistant was opened from an already defined driver profile or a guest profile: set up services or confirm the explanation for the transmission of vehicle related data.
- Set up other methods for use.

The selected settings are stored in the active driver's profile.

Guest profile

The guest profile can be activated by any driver. Vehicle settings that are entered when the guest profile is active will be stored in the guest profile.

In the following cases the guest profile is automatically active:

- A driver profile has not been created yet.
- No driver profile has been assigned to the vehicle key that was used to unlock the vehicle.
- No driver profile has been assigned to the digital key that was used to unlock the vehicle.

The following limitations apply:

- The guest profile cannot be renamed.
- It is not possible to assign the recognition to the guest profile.
- It is not possible to assign a PIN to the guest profile.
- ConnectedDrive countries: It is not possible to synchronize with a ConnectedDrive account.

The guest profile is selected on the Welcome screen or via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"

   As an alternative for Steps 1 and 2, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
3. "Guest"
4. "OK"

Creating a driver profile

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Add driver profile"

Not ConnectedDrive countries: A name must be entered for the driver profile.

ConnectedDrive countries: An existing ConnectedDrive account must be assigned to a driver profile. The following options are available for this purpose:

- "Via BMW Connected App"

  Scanning the displayed QR code will accept the access data for the ConnectedDrive account from the BMW ConnectedDrive app.
- "Log in"

  The access data must be entered via iDrive.
- "New registration"

  If a ConnectedDrive account does not yet exist, it can be created via iDrive.

Selecting recognition

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Driver recognition"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "with vehicle key"

     The vehicle key that is recognized in the car's interior is assigned to the driver profile. If multiple vehicle keys are detected, the unintended vehicle keys must be removed from the car's interior.
   - "With Digital Key"

     The digital key that is recognized in the car's interior is assigned to the driver profile. If multiple digital keys are detected, the unintended digital keys must be removed from the car's interior.
6. "Activate linkage"

As soon as the vehicle detects the vehicle key or the digital key, the corresponding driver profile will be activated. If the vehicle key or the smartphone with the digital key is not carried with you or not recognized, the driver profile can only be selected on the Welcome screen when a PIN has been set up.

Setting up a PIN

A driver profile with recognition cannot be activated without vehicle key and without digital key.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2425
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

In this case, a PIN can be set up to activate the driver profile.

Countries in which ConnectedDrive is not available: If a PIN was not set up or the PIN is not known, the driver profile cannot be activated.

Countries in which ConnectedDrive is available: If a PIN was not set up or the PIN is not known, the driver's profile can be activated with the access data of the corresponding ConnectedDrive account.

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Driver recognition"
5. "using PIN"

Changing/canceling the recognition function

When another vehicle key or another digital key is assigned to a driver profile, the current assignment must be canceled first.

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Driver recognition"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "with vehicle key"
   - ▷ "With Digital Key"
6. "Activate linkage"

When the vehicle and vehicle key will be handed over, such as for maintenance, carry out the following steps first:

- ▷ Setting up PIN.
- ▷ Canceling recognition using the vehicle key.
- ▷ Switching to the guest profile.

The handed over vehicle key can then no longer be used to access the personal driver profile.

Selecting a driver profile

Depending on the recognition setting, the driver profile will be selected automatically.

If the guest profile is active, the driver profile will be selected on the Welcome screen or via iDrive: A PIN may have to be entered.

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"

   As an alternative for Steps 1 and 2, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
3. Select driver profile.
4. "OK"

All settings stored in the selected driver profile are automatically applied.

Switching synchronization with the ConnectedDrive account on/off

ConnectedDrive countries:

The settings stored in the driver's profile are synchronized with the personal ConnectedDrive account. This means that it is possible to use the personal settings in other BMW vehicles with ConnectedDrive access as well, if this function is supported.

The synchronization with the ConnectedDrive account is enabled when a driver profile is created or via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Settings"
5. "Synchronize driver profile"
6. "Synchronize driver profile"

Renaming a driver profile

Non-ConnectedDrive countries:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"

   As an alternative for Steps 1 and 2, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
3. Select driver profile.
4. "Settings"
5. Enter a profile name.
6. OK Select the symbol.

ConnectedDrive countries:

The name of the driver profile is transferred from the ConnectedDrive account. Changes for the profile name must be made in the ConnectedDrive account.

Selecting a profile picture

Non-ConnectedDrive countries:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Avatar"
5. Select the desired profile picture.

ConnectedDrive countries:

The profile image is transferred from the ConnectedDrive customer portal or the BMW Connected app.

Deleting the driver profile

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Settings"
5. "Remove driver profile"
6. Select the desired driver profile.
7. "Delete now"

ConnectedDrive countries: If the driver profile was synchronized with a ConnectedDrive account, the stored data in the ConnectedDrive account will be retained.

System limits

A clear detection of the desired vehicle key may not be possible in the following cases, e.g.:

- The driver unlocks the vehicle via Comfort Access.
- The driver changes, but the vehicle is not locked and unlocked.
- When multiple vehicle keys are located outside on the driver's side of the vehicle.

ConnectedDrive countries:

A driver profile can only be created and synchronized with the ConnectedDrive account when cellular network reception is available.

The use of personal settings that are stored in the ConnectedDrive account in other vehicles is subject to technical limitations. For example, settings may be stored for a system that is not available, or available in a non-compatible version, in other vehicles.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2427
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Connections

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle

Concept

Various connection types are available for using mobile devices in the vehicle. The connection type to select depends on the mobile device and the desired function.

General information

The following overview shows possible functions and the suitable connection types for them. The scope of functions depends on the mobile device.

Function	Connection type	Symbol in the device list
Making calls via the hands-free system. Using phone functions via iDrive or touchscreen. Other functions, e.g. Contacts or SMS.	Bluetooth.	
Playing music from the smartphone or the audio player.	Bluetooth audio.	
WLAN in the vehicle: Using apps in the vehicle.	WLAN.	
Wi-Fi hotspot: Using the vehicle Internet access.	WLAN.	
Screen Mirroring: Showing the smartphone display on the Control Display.	WLAN.	
USB port: Playing music or videos from a USB device.	USB.	

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2428
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Function	Connection type	Symbol in the device list
Apple CarPlay: Using apps via iDrive and via voice operation.	Bluetooth and WLAN.	
Android Auto: Using apps via iDrive and via voice operation.	Bluetooth and WLAN.	

The following connection types require one-time pairing with the vehicle:

- Bluetooth.
- WLAN.

Paired devices are automatically recognized later on and connected to the vehicle.

Safety information

Warning

Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. As warranted, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.

Compatible devices

General information

Information on mobile devices compatible with the vehicle can be found at www.bmwusa.com/bluetooth.

Malfunctions may occur with devices not listed or deviating software versions.

Displaying the vehicle identification number and software part number

When looking for compatible devices, you may have to state the vehicle identification number and the software part number. These numbers can be displayed in the vehicle.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth® info"
6. "System information"

Managing mobile devices

General information

- After one-time pairing, the devices are automatically recognized and reconnected when standby state is switched on.
- After stored content on the SIM card or the mobile phone, such as contacts, has been detected, the data is transmitted to the vehicle and can be used via iDrive.
- For some devices, certain settings are necessary, for instance authorization; see the owner's manual of the device.

Displaying the device list

All devices paired with or connected to the vehicle are displayed in the device list.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2429
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

A maximum of 4 devices can be connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth, and a maximum of 10 devices can be connected to the vehicle via WLAN. A maximum of 20 devices will be detected.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"

A symbol to the right of the device name indicates, for which function the device is used.

When the icon is displayed in white, this function is actively connected to the vehicle. The icon is displayed in gray when the function of the device is inactive.

Symbol	Meaning
	Telephone.
	Bluetooth audio.
	WLAN in the vehicle, WiFi hotspot.
	Apps.
	Screen Mirroring.
	Apple CarPlay.
	Android Auto.

Configuring the device

Functions can be activated or deactivated for paired and connected devices.

The scope of functions depends on the mobile device.

Follow the information on the Control Display.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Select the desired device.
4. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Connect device"

     The functions that were assigned to the device before disconnecting are assigned to the device when it is reconnected. The functions may be deactivated on a device already connected.
   - ▷ "Disconnect device"

     The device remains paired and can be connected again.
   - ▷ "Delete device"

     The device is disconnected and removed from the device list.
   - ▷ "Connection mode"

     Select a connection mode, for instance Apple CarPlay.
   - ▷ "Telephone"

     Set telephone.
   - ▷ "Bluetooth® audio"

     Playback of music files on external devices such as audio devices or mobile phones via Bluetooth.
   - ▷ "Apps"

     With the installed BMW Connected app, apps from the smartphone can be displayed in the vehicle.
   - ▷ "Wi-Fi®"

     Connects the device with the WLAN in the vehicle.

Priority of the phones

When multiple mobile phones are connected to the vehicle, you can specify the priority of the mobile phones for reconnection.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Priorities for telephones"
6. Select the desired device.
7. Select the desired priority by sliding.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2430

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Bluetooth connection

Functional requirements

- Compatible device with Bluetooth interface.

  Compatible devices, refer to page 68.
- The vehicle key or BMW display key is in the vehicle.
- The device is ready for operation.
- Bluetooth is switched on in the vehicle and on the device.
- The pairing readiness is displayed on the Control Display.
- Bluetooth presettings, such as visibility, may be required on the device; refer to the owner's manual of the device.

Activate Bluetooth

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth®"
6. Select setting.

Connecting the device

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Phone calls and audio"

   The vehicle's Bluetooth name is displayed on the Control Display.
6. Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number on the display of the mobile device, and confirm that the two match.
7. A Bluetooth connection is established.

The mobile device is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Activating/deactivating telephone functions

To use all supported functions of a mobile phone, activate the desired functions in the vehicle prior to pairing the mobile phone with the vehicle as needed.

1. "COM"
2. "Personalize menu"
3. Select the desired settings, for instance"Text messages".

Frequently Asked Questions

All requirements are met and all required steps were completed in the specified order. Despite that, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations can help:

Why could the mobile phone not be paired or connected?

- There are too many Bluetooth devices connected to the mobile phone or vehicle.

  In the vehicle, delete Bluetooth connections with other devices.

  Delete the Bluetooth connection from the device list on the mobile phone and start a new device search.

  Too many Bluetooth devices with the same function are paired.
- The mobile phone is in power-save mode or has only a limited remaining battery life.

  Charge the mobile phone and deactivate the power-save mode where required.

Why does the mobile phone no longer react?

- The applications on the mobile phone do not function anymore.

  Switch the mobile phone off and on again.
- Too high or too low ambient temperature for mobile phone operation.

  Do not subject the mobile phone to extreme ambient temperatures.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2431
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Why can phone functions not be used via iDrive?

- Phone functions are not configured for the mobile phone.

  Connect the mobile phone with the telephone function.

Why are no or not all phone book entries displayed or why are they incomplete?

- Transmission of the phone book entries is not yet complete.
- It is possible that only the phone book entries of the mobile phone or the SIM card are transmitted.
- It may not be possible to display phone book entries with special characters.
- It may not be possible to transmit contacts from social networks.
- The number of phone book entries to be transmitted is too high.
- Data volume of the contact too large, for instance due to stored information such as notes.

  Reduce the data volume of the contact.
- A mobile phone can only be connected as audio source or as telephone.

  Configure the mobile phone and connect it with the telephone function.
- Contact was created in the contact list of the phone after the last synchronization.

  Synchronize contacts again: "Reload contacts"

How can the phone connection quality be improved?

- Adjust the strength of the Bluetooth signal on the mobile phone, depending on the mobile phone.
- Insert the mobile phone into the wireless charging tray.
- Adjust the volume of the microphone separately in the sound settings.

If all points in this list have been checked and the required function is still not available, contact the hotline, a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

WLAN connection

General information

For certain applications, such as apps, the data exchange between smartphone and vehicle occurs via WLAN.

Functional requirements

- Standby state is switched on.
- Compatible device with activated WLAN interface.

Activate WLAN in the vehicle

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Wi-Fi®"

WiFi hotspot

Concept

Compatible devices with WLAN interface can use the Internet connection of the vehicle via the WiFi hotspot.

General information

Up to 10 devices can be connected to the WiFi hotspot simultaneously.

Functional requirements

- Compatible device with activated WLAN interface.

  Compatible devices, refer to page 68.
- WLAN is activated on the vehicle.
- Internet use is activated for the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2432
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

- ▷ Registration and data contract with a service provider where required.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.

Connecting a device to the Internet via the WiFi hotspot

Using the Internet for the first time via the WiFi hotspot requires registration and possibly a data volume purchase from a service provider.

Depending on the country version, data volume can be purchased via the connected mobile device or from the ConnectedDrive Store.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Internet, apps"

   Hotspot name and hotspot code are displayed on the Control Display.
6. Activate Internet usage via WLAN if necessary.

   "Open settings"
7. Activate Internet usage.

   "Internet connection"
8. Move the Controller to the left.
9. Search for WLAN networks on the mobile device. Select network name on the device.
10. Enter hotspot code on the device and connect.

The device is displayed in the device list.

Additionally, a QR code will be displayed on the Control Display. Alternatively, this QR code can be used to pair the mobile device with the hotspot.

All devices connected via the hotspot use this data volume.

Deactivating Internet usage via the WiFi hotspot

Internet usage may be deactivated if the data volume is used up, for instance.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Internet connection"
6. Select the desired setting.

Screen Mirroring

General information

Screen Mirroring enables mirroring (outputting) of the smartphone display on the Control Display.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Compatible smartphone with Screen Mirroring interface.

  Compatible devices, refer to page 68.
- ▷ Screen Mirroring is activated on the smartphone.
- ▷ WLAN is activated on the vehicle.

Pairing a smartphone with Screen Mirroring

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Screen Mirroring"

   The WLAN name of the vehicle is displayed on the Control Display.
6. Search for WLAN devices in the surroundings of the smartphone.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2433
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

The WLAN name of the vehicle appears on the device display. Select the WLAN name of the vehicle.

7. Confirm the connection via iDrive.

The device is connected and displayed in the device list.

Apple CarPlay preparation

Concept

CarPlay allows certain functions of a compatible Apple iPhone to be used via Siri voice operation and iDrive.

Functional requirements

- Compatible iPhone, iPhone 5 or later with iOS 7.1 or later.

  Compatible devices, refer to page 68.
- Corresponding mobile contract.
- Bluetooth, WLAN, and Siri voice operation are activated on the iPhone.
- If necessary, the setting for mobile data must be activated on the iPhone.
- Booking the ConnectedDrive service: smartphone integration.
- WLAN and Bluetooth are enabled in the vehicle.

Pairing the iPhone with CarPlay

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Phone calls and audio"

   The vehicle's Bluetooth name is displayed on the Control Display.
6. On the mobile device, search for Bluetooth devices in the vicinity and select the vehicle.

   A control number is displayed.
7. Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number on the display of the mobile device, and confirm that the two match.
8. "Confirm note and connect to Apple CarPlay"

The iPhone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Operation

For more information, refer to the Integrated Owner's Manual or the Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication.

Frequently Asked Questions

All requirements are met and all required steps were completed in the specified order. Despite that, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations can help:

The iPhone has already been paired with Apple CarPlay. When a new connection is established, CarPlay can no longer be selected.

- Delete the iPhone concerned from the device list.
- On the iPhone, delete the vehicle concerned from the list of stored connections under Bluetooth and under WLAN.
- Pair the iPhone as a new device.

If the steps listed have been carried out and the required function is still not available: contact the hotline, a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Android Auto preparation

Concept

Android Auto allows the operation of certain functions of a compatible smartphone via voice operation and iDrive.

Functional requirements

- Compatible Android smartphone with Android 9.0 or later.

  Compatible devices, refer to page 68.
- Corresponding mobile contract.
- Bluetooth and WLAN are enabled on the smartphone.
- If necessary, the setting for mobile data must be activated on the smartphone.
- Booking the ConnectedDrive service: smartphone integration.
- The Android Auto app is installed on the smartphone.
- WLAN and Bluetooth are enabled in the vehicle.

Pairing a smartphone with Android Auto

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Phone calls and audio"

   The vehicle's Bluetooth name is displayed on the Control Display.
6. On the mobile device, search for Bluetooth devices in the vicinity and select the vehicle.

   A control number is displayed.
7. Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number on the display of the mobile device, and confirm that the two match.
8. "Confirm note and connect to Android Auto"
9. If necessary, finish the setup on the mobile device.

The smartphone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Operation

For more information, refer to the Integrated Owner's Manual or the Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication.

Frequently Asked Questions

All requirements are met and all required steps were completed in the specified order. Despite that, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations can help:

The smartphone has already been paired with Android Auto. When a new connection is established, Android Auto can no longer be selected.

- Delete the smartphone concerned from the device list.
- On the smartphone, delete the vehicle concerned from the list of stored connections under Bluetooth and under WLAN.
- Pair the smartphone as a new device.

If the steps listed have been carried out and the required function is still not available: contact the hotline, a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

USB connection

General information

The following mobile devices can be connected to the USB port:

- Mobile phones.
- Audio devices such as MP3 players.
- USB storage devices.

  Common file systems are supported. FAT32 and exFAT are the recommended formats.

A connected USB device will be supplied with charge current via the USB port if the device supports this. Follow the maximum charge current of the USB port.

The following uses are possible on USB ports with data transfer:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2435
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

- Playing music files.
- Playing videos.

Follow the following when connecting:

- Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB port.
- Use a flexible adapter cable.
- Protect the USB device against mechanical damage.
- Due to the large number of USB devices available on the market, it cannot be guaranteed that every device is operable on the vehicle.
- Do not expose USB devices to extreme environmental conditions, such as very high temperatures; refer to the owner's manual of the device.
- Due to the many different compression techniques, proper playback of the media stored on the USB device cannot be guaranteed in all cases.
- To ensure proper transmission of the stored data, do not charge a USB device via the onboard socket, when it is connected to the USB port.
- Depending on how the USB device is being used, settings may be required on the USB storage device, refer to the owner's manual of the device.

Not compatible USB devices:

- USB hard drives.
- USB hubs.
- USB memory card readers with multiple slots.
- HFS-formatted USB devices.
- Devices such as fans or lamps.

Functional requirement

Compatible device with USB port.

Additional information:

Compatible devices, refer to page 68.

Connecting the device

Connect the USB device using a suitable adapter cable to a USB port.

The USB device is displayed in the device list.

Additional information:

USB port, refer to page 289.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2436

Opening and closing

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Vehicle key

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the vehicle is delivered with two vehicle keys or one vehicle key and the BMW display key.

Each vehicle key contains a replaceable battery.

Depending on the equipment and country version, various settings can be configured for the button functions.

A driver profile with personal settings can be assigned to a vehicle key.

To provide information on maintenance requirements, the service data is stored in the vehicle key.

To prevent possible locking in of the vehicle key, take the vehicle key with you when exiting the vehicle.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Take the vehicle key with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.

⚠ Warning

For some country versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

⚠ Warning

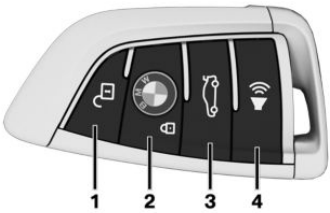
Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2437
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Overview



1 Unlocking

2 Locking

Stationary climate control through Remote Engine Start 278

3 Opening the trunk lid

4 Press and hold or press three times in quick succession: panic mode

Press briefly: pathway lighting

Unlocking

General information

The behavior of the vehicle during unlocking using the vehicle key depends on the following settings:

- If only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap or all access to the vehicle will be unlocked.
- If the unlocking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- If the welcome light is switched on when the vehicle is being unlocked.

Unlocking the vehicle

Press the button on the vehicle key.

If, due to the settings, only the driver's door and fuel filler flap were unlocked, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

In addition, the following functions are executed:

- If a driver profile was assigned to the vehicle key, this driver profile will be activated and the settings that are stored in it will be applied.
- The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off.
- Folded in exterior mirrors are folded out.

  If the exterior mirrors were folded in via the button in the car's interior, they will not be folded out when unlocking.
- With anti-theft protection: Anti-theft protection is switched off.
- With alarm system: The alarm system will be switched off.

After opening one of the front doors, the vehicle is ready for operation.

The light functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

Convenient opening

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key after unlocking.

The windows and the glass sunroof with sun protection are opened, as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Locking

General information

The behavior of the vehicle during locking using the vehicle key depends on the following settings:

- If the locking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- If the exterior mirrors are automatically folded in when the vehicle is locked. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.
- If pathway lighting is activated during locking.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2438

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

2. Press the button on the vehicle key.

The following functions are executed:

- All doors, the trunk lid, and the fuel filler flap are locked.
- With anti-theft protection: Anti-theft protection is switched on. This prevents the doors from being unlocked using the lock buttons or the door openers.
- With alarm system: The alarm system will be switched on.

If the drive-ready state is still switched on when you lock the vehicle, the vehicle horn honks twice. In this case, the drive-ready state must be switched off by means of the Start/Stop button.

With Comfort Access: convenient closing

Safety information

Warning

With convenient closing, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during convenient closing.

Closing

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key in the area close to the vehicle after locking.

The windows and the glass sunroof with sun protection are closed, as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Switching on the interior and exterior lights

Press the button on the vehicle key with the vehicle locked.

The function is not available for the first 10 seconds after locking.

- The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off.

  Interior lights, refer to page 170.
- Depending on the settings, the exterior lighting will be switched on.

  Welcome lights, refer to page 166.

The light functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

Trunk lid

General information

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

You can set up if the doors will be unlocked when the trunk lid is opened with the vehicle key.

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the trunk lid. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the trunk lid is clear during opening and closing.

NOTICE

During opening, the trunk lid pivots back and up. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the trunk lid is clear during opening and closing.

Opening

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2439
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

▷ Press the button on the vehicle key and hold for at least 3 seconds.

▷ Briefly press the button on the vehicle key three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Switching pathway lighting on

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

It is possible to adjust the duration of the pathway lighting feature.

Additional information:

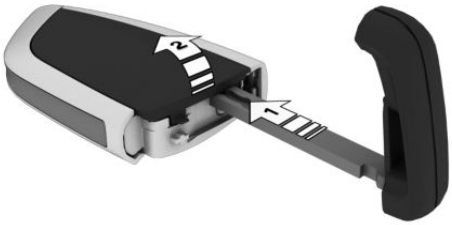
Pathway lighting, refer to page 166.

Replacing the battery

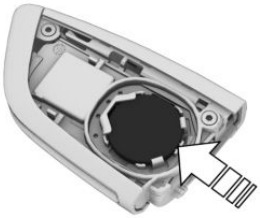
1. Remove the integrated key from the vehicle key.

   Integrated key, refer to page 89.

2. Place the integrated key underneath the battery compartment cover, arrow 1, and lift the cover with a lever movement of the integrated key, arrow 2.



3. Push battery in the direction of the arrow using a pointed object and lift it out.



4. Insert a type CR 2032 battery with the positive side facing up.
5. Press the cover closed.
6. Push the integrated key into the vehicle key until the integrated key engages.

Have old batteries disposed of by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take them to a collection point.

Additional vehicle keys

Additional vehicle keys are available from a service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Loss of vehicle keys

A lost vehicle key can be blocked and replaced by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

If the lost vehicle key has an assigned driver profile, the connection to this vehicle key must be deleted. A new vehicle key can then be assigned to the driver profile.

Malfunction

General information

A Check Control message is displayed.

Vehicle key recognition by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

▷ The battery of the vehicle key is discharged.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2440
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

- Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- Shielding of the vehicle key due to metal objects.

  Do not transport the vehicle key together with metal objects.
- Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity to the vehicle key.

  Do not transport the vehicle key together with electronic devices.
- Interference of radio transmission by a charging process of mobile devices, for instance charging of a mobile phone.
- The vehicle key is located in direct proximity of the tray for wireless charging tray.

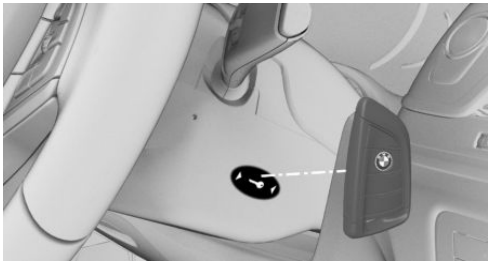
  Place the vehicle key in a different location.

In the case of interference, the vehicle can also be unlocked and locked from the outside with the integrated key.

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 89.

Switching the drive-ready state on via emergency detection of the vehicle key



It is not possible to switch on the drive-ready state if the vehicle key has not been detected.

Proceed as follows in this case:

1. Hold the back of the vehicle key against the marked area on the steering column. Pay attention to the display in the instrument cluster.
2. If the vehicle key is detected:

   Switch on drive-ready state within 10 seconds.

If the vehicle key is not recognized, slightly change the position of the vehicle key and repeat the procedure.

Frequently Asked Questions

What precautions can be taken to be able to open a vehicle with an accidentally locked in vehicle key?

- The options provided by the Remote Services of the BMW Connected app include the ability to lock and unlock a vehicle.

  This requires an active BMW ConnectedDrive contract and the BMW Connected app must be installed on a smartphone.
- Unlocking the vehicle can be requested via the BMW ConnectedDrive Call Center.

  An active BMW ConnectedDrive contract is required.

BMW display key

General information

The BMW display key is supplied with an additional mechanical key. If the display key is used, the mechanical key should be carried with you, for instance in the wallet. The mechanical key is used like the integrated key.

The display key supports all functions of the standard vehicle key.

In addition, the following functions are also available:

- Display status of doors and windows.
- Display status of the anti-theft warning system.
- Display service information.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2441
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

- Call up range with available fuel.
- With parked-car heating: operate parked-car heating.

  Without parked-car heating: operate parked-car ventilation.
- Stationary climate control through Remote Engine Start

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 89.

Safety information

Warning

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Take the vehicle key with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.

Warning

For some country versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

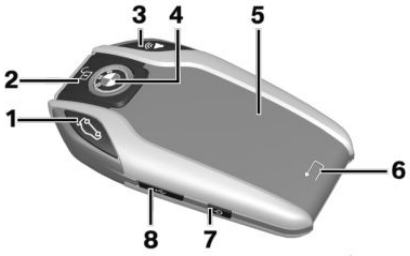
Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Overview



1 Opening the trunk lid

2 Unlocking

3 Press and hold or press three times in quick succession: panic mode

Press briefly: pathway lighting

4 Locking

5 Display

6 Back

7 Switch the display on/off

8 Micro-USB charging socket

Reception range

The number of available display key functions depends on the distance from the vehicle.

- When you are in close proximity to the vehicle, all functions of the display key are available.
- The status information can be called up in the extended reception range.

  With parked-car heating: the parked-car heating can be operated.

  Without parked-car heating: the parked-car ventilation can be operated.

- Outside of the reception range of the vehicle, you can display the last transmitted status information from the vehicle.

The symbol is shown on the display if one of the buttons is pressed outside of the reception range.

Display

General information

The display is divided into the upper status line, the information area, and the lower status line.

Upper status line

The upper status line displays the following information:

- / Vehicle secured/vehicle unsecured.
- Set time in the vehicle.
- Charge state of the display key battery.

Information area

The information area can be used to access information and perform additional functions.

If the information area contains more than one page, then page indicators are shown beneath the information.

A solid indicator denotes the current page.

Swipe to the right or left with a finger to change between the pages.

If further information is available on a page, tap the appropriate symbol.

To return to the original page: tap on the symbol beneath the display.

Lower status line

The lower status line indicates whether or not the display key is within reception range.

- "Connected": the display key is within reception range.
- "Updated": the display key is not within reception range. It indicates when the last data transfer from the vehicle took place.

Switching on/off

The display will go out automatically after a brief period to conserve battery power.

To hide the display manually:

Press the button on the left side of the display key.

To show the display:

1. Press the button on the left side of the display key.
2. Then, swipe with your finger from bottom to top to unlock the screen lock.

To switch off the display to increase the usable battery life:

1. If necessary, cancel the screen lock.
2. Press and hold the button on the left side of the display key for longer than 4 seconds.
3. "OK"

To switch the display on:

Press the button on the left side of the display key.

Operating concept

The following information shows how to access the information and functions using the main menus.

Main menu	Information/Function
"Security information"	/ Door status. Alarm system status. After alarm triggering: date, time, and reason for triggering the alarm.
	Window status. Glass sunroof status.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2443
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Main menu	Information/Function
"Vehicle information"	Maintenance indicators of Condition Based Service CBS. Status of the roadside parking lights.
"Mobility info"	Range with available fuel.
"Preconditioning setting"	With parked-car heating: operate parked-car heating. Without parked-car heating: operate parked-car ventilation. Stationary climate control through Remote Engine Start.

Display key battery

General information

Follow the following information:

- If the charge state of the display key battery declines, the display is switched off automatically. The battery must be recharged so that the display can be switched back on. The operability of the standard buttons is retained until the battery is completely discharged.
- Charge the battery for at least three hours before using the display key for the first time or if the key has not been used for an extended period.
- The display key can be used while it is being charged via the USB port. If the battery is fully discharged, it may take some time before the display key can be used again.
- Due to the large number of USB chargers available on the market, it cannot be guaranteed that every charger will function properly. The charging duration depends on the charger used.
- Charging via the USB port may heat up the charger and the display key.

  Charging in the wireless charging tray may heat up the tray and the display key.

  At higher temperatures, the charge current through the display key may be reduced, and in isolated cases the charge process may be interrupted temporarily.
- When inserting the display key into the wireless charging tray, make sure there are no objects between it and the wireless charging tray.

Safety information

Warning

When charging a device that meets the Qi standard in the wireless charging tray, any metal objects located between the device and the tray can become very hot. Placing storage devices or electronic cards, such as chip cards, cards with magnetic strips or cards for signal transmission, between the device and the tray may impair the card function. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. When charging mobile devices, make sure there are no objects between the device and the tray.

Charging

Via USB

Connect the display key via the micro-USB charging socket to a USB port.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2444

In the center console

1. Open the tray cover.
2. Place the display key into the middle of the wireless charging tray in front of the cup holders.

   Ensure that the display is facing up.
3. Close the tray cover.

LED displays

Color	Meaning
Blue	The display key is charging. The blue LED stays illuminated once the inserted display key is fully charged.
Orange	The display key is not charging. Temperature on the display key possibly too high or foreign object in charging tray.
Red	The display key is not charging. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Malfunction

General information

A Check Control message is displayed.

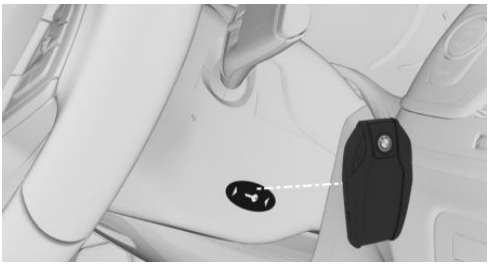
BMW display key detection by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- The battery of the display key is discharged.
- Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- Shielding of the display key due to metal objects.
- Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity.
- Interference of radio transmission by a charging process of mobile devices, for instance charging of a mobile phone.

Do not transport the display key together with metal objects or electronic devices.

In the case of interference, the vehicle can also be unlocked and locked from the outside with the mechanical key.

Switching on drive-ready state via emergency detection of the BMW display key



It is not possible to switch on the drive-ready state if the display key has not been detected.

Proceed as follows in this case:

1. Hold the display key with its back against the marked area on the steering column. Pay attention to the display in the instrument cluster.
2. If the display key is detected:

   Switch on drive-ready state within 10 seconds.

If the display key is not detected, slightly change the position of the display key and repeat the procedure.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2445
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Resetting the BMW display key

If the charged display key cannot be switched on anymore or if the display does not respond to entries anymore, the display key can be reset.

Press and hold the following buttons on the display key at the same time for at least 10 seconds until the display is switched off and then on again:

- ▷
- ▷

Key card

Concept

The key card allows the vehicle to be unlocked and locked, as well as started.

General information

The key card is available with Comfort Access. Depending on the national-market version, the key card may not be available.

A digital key that has already been paired with the vehicle is installed on the key card. The digital key must be activated via iDrive.

Before leaving the vehicle, deactivate the key card or take the key card with you because the active key card can be used to start the vehicle. Always take the vehicle key with you to a service appointment.

Safety information

Warning

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Take the vehicle key with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.

Warning

For some country versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Connection to the vehicle

The communication between the vehicle and the key card uses near-field communication, NFC.

Activating/deactivating key card in the vehicle

A vehicle key must be located in the vehicle to activate and deactivate the key card.

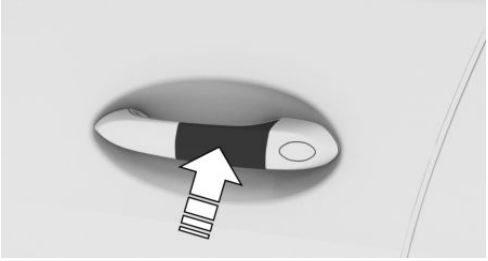
When BMW Digital Key is activated for the vehicle, a digital key can be used instead of the vehicle key.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"

3. "Doors/Access"
4. "BMW Digital Key"
5. Select key card.
6. "Digital Key active"

A deactivated key card remains in the list of paired digital keys.

Unlocking and locking the vehicle



Hold activated key card directly and centered on the outside door handle of the driver's door.

Starting the engine

1. Open the cover of the smartphone tray.
2. Place activated key card centered into the smartphone tray.
3. Press the Start/Stop button to start the engine.

With wireless charging tray: After starting the engine, take the key card out of the tray to make tray available for charging compatible smartphones.

Malfunction

The detection of the key card by the vehicle may be disrupted by objects between the sensors and the key card, for instance a wallet.

BMW Digital Key

Concept

BMW Digital Key allows the vehicle to be unlocked and locked, as well as started, with a compatible smartphone.

General information

The BMW Digital Key is available with Comfort Access. Depending on the national-market version, the BMW Digital Key may not be available.

To unlock and start a vehicle with a compatible smartphone, this function must be offered by the smartphone manufacturer. The BMW Connected app provides a check to determine if the smartphone and the vehicle are compatible.

A driver profile with individual settings can be assigned to a digital key.

When using a smartphone with a digital key, always carry a vehicle key or the activated key card with you. This ensures access to the vehicle, even in the event of a smartphone malfunction. It is also useful to carry the vehicle key or the key card with you if the vehicle has to be handed over to another person. You can then hand over the vehicle key or the key card, instead of your smartphone. Always take the vehicle key with you to a service appointment.

Safety information

Warning

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Take the vehicle key with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2447
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Warning

For some country versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Connection to the vehicle

The communication between the vehicle and the smartphone uses near-field communication, NFC.

Functional requirements

- The smartphone is compatible with BMW Digital Key
- The vehicle is linked with the ConnectedDrive account of the vehicle owner.
- The BMW Connected app must be installed on the smartphone to register the digital remote control key.
- The rechargeable battery of the smartphone has a sufficient charge. The necessary minimum charge of the rechargeable battery depends on the smartphone.

Register digital remote control key

The installed digital key on the vehicle owner's smartphone is registered as digital remote control key in the vehicle. The vehicle owner must prove his authorization for the vehicle for this purpose.

The proof of authorization is completed via the BMW Connected app and both vehicle keys. Both vehicle keys must be located in the vehicle for the registration.

Open the BMW Connected app and follow the instructions.

The period of validity of a digital key is limited and corresponds to the term of the booked service. The expiration date of the validity can be checked in the BMW Connected app and in the vehicle.

After a digital key has expired, it can still be used to move the vehicle until the vehicle is used with a different vehicle key or digital key.

Sharing digital keys

General information

Digital key allows the sharing of digital keys with other people. This option is available via the smartphone on which the digital key is stored.

Forwarding authorization

Select the corresponding menu item on the smartphone to share the digital key.

As soon as a digital key is shared with another person, the person will be notified. Following the confirmation of this message, the digital key on the recipient's smartphone will be activated.

Pairing shared digital keys in the vehicle

The registration of the shared key occurs on the external door handle or in the smartphone tray. This process may take a few seconds. Follow the corresponding instructions on the smartphone or the Control Display.

After the digital key has been paired, its name will be displayed in the list of digital keys.

Authentication

Depending on the recipient's smartphone model, an authentication may be required for security and safety reasons.

An authorized vehicle key, the digital remote control key or another method may be used for authentication. Follow the corresponding instructions on the smartphone or the Control Display.

Deleting a shared key

General information

Shared keys can be deleted via the smartphone of the digital remote control key, the smartphone of a shared key or via iDrive.

The deletion via the smartphone of the remote control key will not be performed until the vehicle is used with a key other than the key to be deleted.

Deleted digital keys cannot be restored.

Deletion via iDrive

To be able to delete a digital key via iDrive, an authorized vehicle key must be located in the vehicle or the digital remote control key must be located in the smartphone tray.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Access"
4. "BMW Digital Key"
5. If necessary, select the digital key.
6. "Remove Digital Key"

The digital key will be removed from the list of paired digital keys.

Deleting all shared keys

To be able to delete all digital keys, an authorized vehicle key must be located in the vehicle or the digital remote control key must be located in the smartphone tray.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Access"
4. "BMW Digital Key"
5. "Remove all Digital Keys"

Reset the function

To reset the BMW Digital Key function, an authorized vehicle key must be located in the vehicle.

When resetting the BMW Digital Key function, all digital keys including the digital remote control key will be deleted.

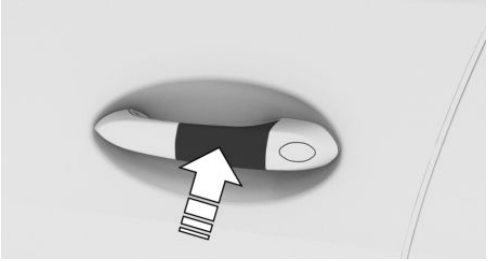
After the reset, the vehicle can no longer be unlocked, locked or started with a digital key.

The digital remote control key must be registered again to be able to use BMW Digital Key again.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Access"
4. "BMW Digital Key"
5. "Reset function"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2449
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Unlocking and locking the vehicle



Hold the near field communication antenna of the smartphone directly and centered on the outside door handle of the driver's door.

The position of the near field communication antenna depends on the smartphone model.

When locking the vehicle with the smartphone, make sure that all doors including the trunk lid are closed.

Starting the engine

1. Open the cover of the smartphone tray.
2. Place smartphone centered into the smartphone tray.
3. Press the Start/Stop button to start the engine.

Sale of the smartphone

Delete all digital keys on the smartphone prior to selling the smartphone. This ensures that that the smartphone is deactivated for the vehicle.

Sale of the vehicle

Prior to selling a vehicle, reset the Digital Key function or remove the vehicle from the ConnectedDrive account of the current vehicle owner.

When the vehicle is removed from the ConnectedDrive account, all digital keys for the vehicle will be deleted.

Malfunction

Digital key recognition by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- The smartphone is shielded from the sensors in the vehicle by a smartphone cover that is not suitable.
- Objects such as a chip card or the key card are located between the smartphone and the smartphone cover.

Integrated key

General information

The driver's door can be locked and unlocked without the vehicle key using the integrated key.

Depending on the national-market version, the integrated key also fits the glove compartment.

Safety information

Warning

For some country versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

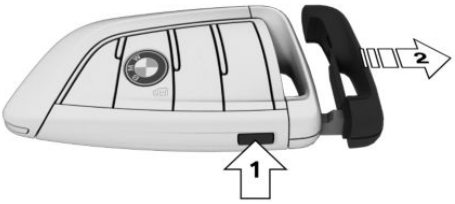
NOTICE

The door lock is permanently joined with the door. The door handle can be moved. When pulling the door handle with the integrated key inserted, paint or the integrated key can be damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Remove the integrated key before pulling the outside door handle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2450

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

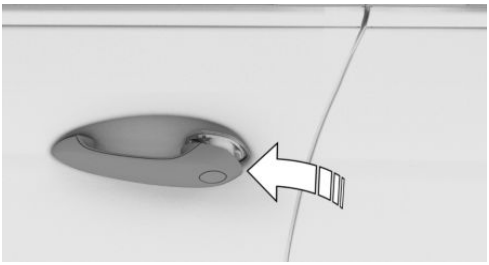
Removing



Press the button, arrow 1, and pull out the integrated key, arrow 2.

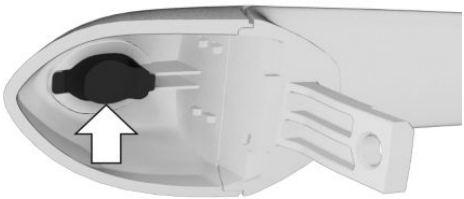
Locking/unlocking via the door lock

1. Pull and hold the door handle outward with one hand.

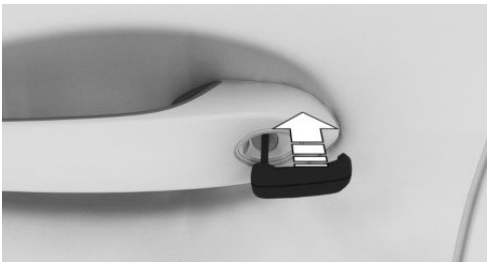


2. Guide one finger of your other hand from the back under the cover and push the cover out.

   Use the thumb for counter support to prevent the cover from falling out of the door handle.



3. Remove the cover.
4. Unlock or lock the door lock using the integrated key.



The other doors must be unlocked or locked from the inside.

Alarm system

The activated alarm system is triggered when the door is opened, if the vehicle has been unlocked via the door lock.

The alarm system is not switched on if the vehicle is locked with the integrated key.

Buttons for the central locking system

General information

In the event of a severe accident, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The hazard warning system and interior lights come on.

Overview

Buttons for the central locking system.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2451
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Locking

Press the button with the front doors closed.

- The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.
- The vehicle is not secured against theft when locking.

Unlocking

Press the button.

Opening

- Press the button to unlock all the doors.

  Pull the door opener above the armrest.
- Front doors: pull the door handle on the door to open the door. The other doors remain locked.
- Back doors: pull twice on the door handle on the door to be opened; the first time unlocks the door, the second time opens it. The other doors remain locked.

Comfort Access

Concept

The vehicle can be accessed without operating the vehicle key.

Carrying the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket, is sufficient.

The vehicle automatically detects the vehicle key when it is in close proximity or in the car's interior.

General information

Comfort Access supports the following functions:

- Unlocking and locking the vehicle from the door handle.
- Convenient closing.
- Touchless unlocking and locking of the vehicle.
- Unlocking and locking the vehicle using the BMW Digital Key.
- Opening trunk lid.
- Opening and closing the trunk lid with no-touch activation.

Functional requirements

- To lock the vehicle, the vehicle key must be outside of the vehicle near the doors.
- The next unlocking and locking cycle is not possible until after approx. 2 seconds.

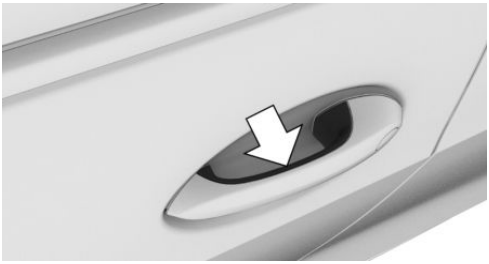
Unlocking

General information

The behavior of the vehicle during unlocking via the Comfort Access depends on the following settings:

- If the unlocking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- If the welcome light is switched on when the vehicle is being unlocked.

Unlocking the vehicle



Grasp the handle of a vehicle door completely.

In addition, the following functions are executed:

- If a driver profile was assigned to the vehicle key, this driver profile will be activated and the settings that are stored in it will be applied.

- The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off.
- Folded in exterior mirrors are folded out.

  If the exterior mirrors were folded in via the button in the car's interior, they will not be folded out when unlocking.
- With anti-theft protection: Anti-theft protection is switched off.
- With alarm system: The alarm system will be switched off.

Locking

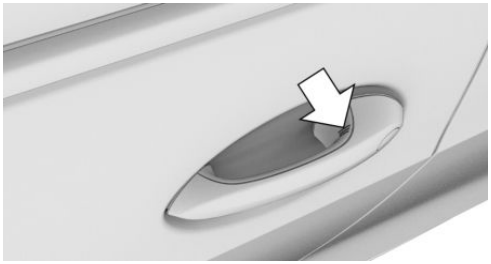
General information

The behavior of the vehicle during locking via the Comfort Access depends on the following settings:

- If the locking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- If the exterior mirrors are automatically folded in when the vehicle is locked. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.
- If pathway lighting is activated during locking.

Locking the vehicle

Close the driver's door.



Touch the grooved surface on the handle of a closed vehicle door with your finger for approx. 1 second without grasping the door handle.

The following functions are executed:

- All doors, the trunk lid, and the fuel filler flap are locked.
- With anti-theft protection: Anti-theft protection is switched on. This prevents the doors from being unlocked using the lock buttons or the door openers.
- With alarm system: The alarm system will be switched on.

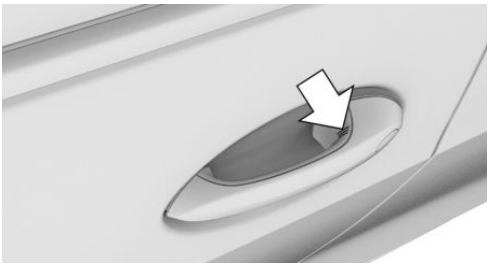
Convenient closing

Safety information

Warning

With convenient closing, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during convenient closing.

Closing



Touch the grooved surface on the handle of a closed vehicle door with your finger and hold it there without grasping the door handle.

In addition to locking, the windows and glass sunroof with sun protection will be closed.

Opening the trunk lid

General information

If you open the trunk lid via Comfort Access, locked doors will not be unlocked.

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2453
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Safety information

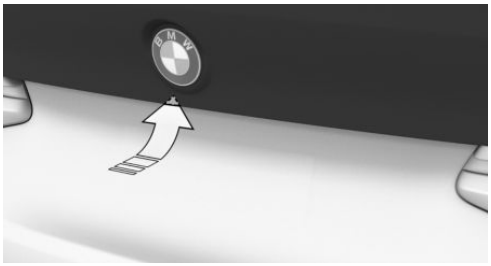
Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the trunk lid. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the trunk lid is clear during opening and closing.

NOTICE

During opening, the trunk lid pivots back and up. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the trunk lid is clear during opening and closing.

Opening



Press the button on the exterior of the trunk lid.

Opening and closing the trunk lid with no-touch activation

Concept

The trunk lid can be opened with no-touch activation using the vehicle key you are carrying. With automatic tailgate operation, it can also be closed with no-touch activation. Two sensors detect a forward-directed foot motion in the central rear area and the trunk lid is opened or closed.

General information

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

If the vehicle key is in the sensor area, the trunk lid may open or close inadvertently if you unintentionally move your foot or if a foot movement is detected.

The sensor has an approximate range of 5 ft/1.50 m extending from the rear of the vehicle.

If you open the trunk lid with no-touch activation, locked doors will not be unlocked.

Contactless opening and closing of the trunk lid must be activated in the settings.

Safety information

Warning

During no-touch activation, vehicle parts may be touched, such as the hot exhaust gas system. There is a risk of injury. When moving your foot, make sure you have a firm stance and do not touch the vehicle.

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the trunk lid. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the trunk lid is clear during opening and closing.

NOTICE

During opening, the trunk lid pivots back and up. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the trunk lid is clear during opening and closing.

Settings

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Access"
4. "Tailgate"
5. Select the desired setting:

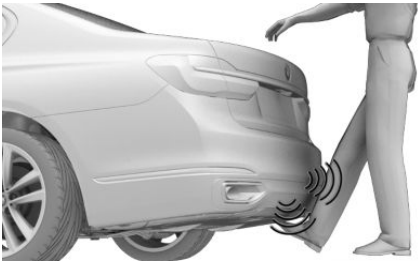
- "Open with foot movement"

  Contactless opening of the trunk lid is switched on or off.
- "Close by foot movement"

  Contactless closing of the trunk lid is switched on or off.

Performing the foot movement

1. Stand in the middle behind the vehicle at approx. one arm's length away from the rear end.
2. Wave a foot under the vehicle in the direction of travel and immediately pull it back. With this movement, the leg must pass through the ranges of both sensors.



Opening

Perform the foot movement described earlier.

Before the trunk lid opens, the hazard warning system flashes.

With automatic tailgate: Moving your foot again will stop the opening motion, and moving it one more time after that will close the trunk lid.

Closing

The trunk lid can only be closed with no-touch activation if automatic tailgate operation is active.

Perform the foot movement described earlier.

The hazard warning system flashes and an acoustic signal sounds.

Moving your foot again will stop the closing motion, and moving it one more time after that will re-open the trunk lid.

Touchless unlocking and locking of the vehicle

Concept

The vehicle will be unlocked when the driver approaches the locked vehicle with the vehicle key.

When the driver walks away from the unlocked vehicle with the vehicle key, the vehicle will be locked.

General information

The vehicle will be unlocked when an authorized vehicle key is detected in the unlocking zone.

The unlocking zone is located within a radius of approx. 3 ft/1 m around the door handles.

The vehicle will be locked when the vehicle key leaves the locking zone.

The locking zone is located within a radius of approx. 7 ft/2 m around the door handles.

If the vehicle key is located in the unlocking zone for an extended period of time without movement, the vehicle will be locked automatically.

If a passenger is detected in the front passenger seat during locking and the safety belt of the front passenger is engaged in the safety belt buckle during locking:

- The vehicle will be locked but not secured against theft.
- The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

The behavior of the vehicle during touchless unlocking/locking depends on the following settings:

- If the automatic unlocking is active.
- If the automatic locking is active.
- If only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap or all access to the vehicle will be unlocked.

  Only driver's door and fuel filler flap: the driver's door and fuel filler flap will only be unlocked when the driver approaches the vehicle on the driver's side.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2455
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

All vehicle entry points: the vehicle will be unlocked regardless of the side on which the driver approaches the vehicle.

- If the unlocking and locking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- If the welcome light is switched on when the vehicle is being unlocked.
- If pathway lighting is activated during locking.
- If the exterior mirrors are automatically folded out and in when the vehicle is unlocked and locked.

Functional requirements

- The drive-ready state must be turned off.
- Unlocking: when entering the unlocking zone, the doors and trunk lid must be closed.
- Locking: when leaving the locking zone, the doors and trunk lid must be closed.
- For touchless locking of the vehicle, no second vehicle key can be located in a radius of six meters around the vehicle.
- If the vehicle has been in the idle state for several days, touchless unlocking/locking is not possible until after the vehicle has been driven.

Malfunction

Vehicle key recognition by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- The battery of the vehicle key is discharged.

  For replacing the battery, refer to page 79.
- Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- Shielding of the vehicle key due to metal objects.

  Do not transport the vehicle key together with metal objects.
- Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity to the vehicle key.

  Do not transport the vehicle key together with electronic devices.

Wet or snowy conditions may disrupt the locking request recognition function on the door handles.

In the case of a malfunction, unlock and lock the vehicle using the buttons of the vehicle key or use the integrated key.

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 89.

Trunk lid

General information

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

It may not be possible to open the trunk lid when the vehicle is in valet parking mode.

Additional information:

Valet parking mode, refer to page 97.

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the trunk lid. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the trunk lid is clear during opening and closing.

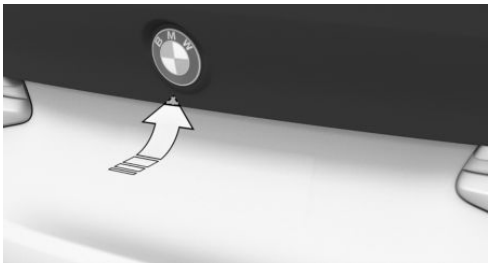
NOTICE

During opening, the trunk lid pivots back and up. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the trunk lid is clear during opening and closing.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2456
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Without automatic tailgate operation: opening and closing

Opening from the outside



- Unlock the vehicle and then press the button on the outside of the trunk lid.
- With Comfort Access: carry the vehicle key with you and press the button on the outside of the trunk lid.
- Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

  When unlocking with the vehicle key, the doors may also be unlocked.

Open from inside

Press the button in the storage compartment of the driver's door.

Closing

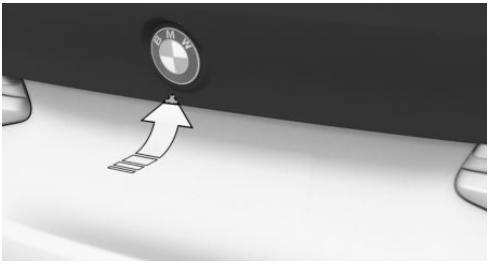
Grasp the recess grips and pull the trunk lid down.

With Comfort Access: With the driver's door closed, press the button on the inside of the trunk lid to lock an unlocked vehicle before closing the trunk lid.

With automatic tailgate operation: opening and closing

Opening

From the outside



- Unlock the vehicle and then press the button on the outside of the trunk lid.
- With Comfort Access: carry the vehicle key with you and press the button on the outside of the trunk lid.
- Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

  Depending on the setting, the doors may also be unlocked.

From the inside

Press the button in the storage compartment of the driver's door.

Interruption of the opening procedure

The opening operation is interrupted:

- When the vehicle starts moving.
- By pressing the button on the outside of the trunk lid. Pressing again closes the trunk lid.
- By pressing the button on the inside of the trunk lid. Pressing again closes the trunk lid.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2457
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

- By pressing the button on the vehicle key. Pressing again continues the opening motion.
- By pressing or pulling the button in the driver's door. Pressing again continues the opening motion.

Closing

From the outside

- Press the button on the inside of the trunk lid.

With Comfort Access:

- Press the button on the inside of the trunk lid.

  The vehicle will be locked after closing the trunk lid. The driver's door must be closed for this purpose and the vehicle key must be outside of the vehicle in the area of the trunk lid.

From the inside

Pull and hold the button in the storage compartmenr of the driver's door.

The vehicle key must be located inside the vehicle for this function.

An acoustic signal sounds before the trunk lid is closed.

Interruption of the closing procedure

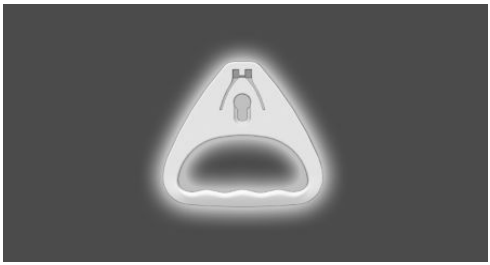
The closing procedure is interrupted in the following situations:

- If the vehicle starts off with a jerky movement.
- By pressing the button on the outside of the trunk lid. Pressing again re-opens the trunk lid.
- By pressing the button on the inside of the trunk lid. Pressing again re-opens the trunk lid.
- By releasing the button in the driver's door. Pulling again and holding continues the closing motion.

Malfunction

In the event of an electrical malfunction, operate the unlocked trunk lid manually with a slow and smooth motion.

Trunk emergency unlocking



Pull the handle inside the cargo area.

The trunk lid unlocks.

Soft-close automatic

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed while operating the doors. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during opening and closing.

Closing

To close the doors, push lightly.

Closing occurs automatically.

Valet parking mode

Concept

In the valet parking mode, the Control Display is locked. The operation via iDrive is no longer possible.

E.g., this mode can be used when the vehicle is handed over for valet parking.

General information

In the valet parking mode, it is not possible to change vehicle settings via iDrive. Personal profiles cannot be changed. Personal data cannot be displayed.

Additionally, the following actions are carried out:

- The volume of the audio system is limited.
- The integrated remote control is deactivated.
- DSC cannot be switched off.
- Depending on the vehicle, the trunk lid can be locked and disconnected from the central locking system.

Functional requirements

- At least one driver profile has been created.
- A driver profile or the guest profile is active.
- At least one driver profile has an assigned ConnectedDrive account.

Accessing the menu for the valet parking mode

Via the switch-off screen

After switching off drive-ready state the switch-off screen will be displayed. Select the entry for the valet parking mode on the switch-off screen.

Via the display bar at the upper edge of the Control Display

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Valet parking mode"

Via the vehicle settings

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Valet parking mode"

Activating the valet parking mode

General information

Before activating the valet parking mode, a PIN must be set up to be able to deactivate the valet parking mode at a future time.

The procedure for entering the PIN varies depending on the active driver profile.

Driver profile with PIN

A PIN has been stored for the active driver profile.

It is not necessary to enter another PIN.

1. Depending on the vehicle, select the desired setting, if necessary:

   "Lock tailgate as well"

   The trunk lid will be locked and disconnected from the central locking system.
2. "Activate now"

Driver profile without PIN

A PIN must be assigned to the driver profile.

1. "PIN"
2. Enter PIN.
3. Depending on the vehicle, select the desired setting, if necessary:
   - "Lock tailgate as well"

     The trunk lid will be locked and disconnected from the central locking system.
   - "Activate linkage"

     This PIN will be stored for the active driver profile.
4. "Activate now"

Guest profile

The guest profile is the active driver profile.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2459
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

A PIN must be entered.

1. "PIN"
2. Enter PIN.
3. Select the desired setting:

   "Lock tailgate as well"

   The trunk lid will be locked and disconnected from the central locking system.
4. "Activate now"

   This PIN can be used once to deactivate the valet parking mode for the active guest profile.

Deactivating valet parking mode

General information

The lock screen of the valet parking mode is displayed on the Control Display.

The deactivation of the valet parking mode depends on which driver profile is selected on the lock screen.

Driver profile with PIN

Regardless of which driver activated the valet parking mode, a driver can deactivate the valet parking mode by entering his/her PIN.

1. Select driver profile.
2. Enter the assigned PIN for the driver profile.

If you forgot the PIN, the valet parking mode must be deactivated by entering the assigned ConnectedDrive access data.

Driver profile without PIN

The valet parking mode was activated by another person. To deactivate the valet parking mode, a driver without a PIN has to enter the access data for his ConnectedDrive account.

1. Select driver profile.
2. Enter the ConnectedDrive access data assigned to the driver profile.

Guest profile

In the guest profile, the valet parking mode can only be deactivated if the valet parking mode was activated in the guest profile.

1. Select guest profile.
2. Enter the PIN that was specified during activation.

If the PIN has been forgotten, the valet parking mode must be deactivated via a personal driver profile.

Adjusting

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country version, various settings for opening and closing are possible.

These settings are stored for the driver profile currently used.

Unlocking and locking

Doors

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Key button settings"
4. Select the symbol.
5. Select the desired setting:

   ▷ "Driver's door only"

   Only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.

   ▷ "All doors"

   The entire vehicle is unlocked.

Confirmation signals from the vehicle

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"

3. "Doors/Access"
4. Deactivate or activate the desired confirmation signals:
   - ▷ "Flash when locking/unlocking"

     Unlocking is signaled by two flashes, locking by one.
   - ▷ With alarm system:

     "Sound when locking/unlocking"

     Unlocking is confirmed with two sound signals, locking is confirmed with one sound signal.

Folding mirrors in automatically

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Access"
4. "Fold mirrors in when locked"

Automatic unlocking

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Access"
4. "Unlock at end of trip"

   After drive-ready state is switched off by pressing the Start/Stop button, the locked vehicle is automatically unlocked.

Automatic locking

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Access"
4. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Lock automatically"

     The vehicle locks automatically after a while if no door is opened after unlocking.
   - ▷ "Lock after starting to drive"

     The vehicle locks automatically after you drive off.

Trunk lid

Trunk lid and doors

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country version, this setting may not be offered.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Key button settings"
4. Select the symbol.
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Tailgate"

     The trunk lid is opened.
   - ▷ "Tailgate and door(s)"

     The trunk lid is opened and the doors are unlocked.

Comfort Access

Touchless locking and unlocking

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Access"
4. "Comfort access"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Unlock when approaching"
   - ▷ "Lock when walking away"

Establishing idle state after opening the front doors

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Access"
4. "Turn off vehicle after opening door"

   Idle state, refer to page 35.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2461
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Alarm system

General information

When the vehicle is locked, the vehicle alarm system reacts to the following changes:

- Opening a door, the hood or the trunk lid.
- Movements in the car's interior.
- Changes in the vehicle tilt, for instance, during attempts at stealing a wheel or when towing the vehicle.
- Disconnected battery voltage.
- Improper use of the socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis.
- Locking the vehicle while a device is connected to the socket for the OBD Onboard-Diagnosis.

The alarm system signals these changes visually and acoustically:

- Acoustic alarm:

  Depending on local regulations, the acoustic alarm may be suppressed.
- Visual alarm:

  By flashing of the hazard warning system and headlights, where required.

Do not modify the system to ensure function of the alarm system.

Switching on/off

The alarm system is switched on or off as soon as the vehicle is locked with the vehicle key or unlocked or locked via Comfort Access.

Opening the doors with the alarm system switched on

The alarm system is triggered when a door is opened if the door was unlocked using the integrated key in the door lock.

Opening the trunk lid with the alarm system switched on

The trunk lid can be opened even when the alarm system is switched on.

After the trunk lid is closed, it is locked and monitored again provided the doors are locked. The hazard warning system flashes once.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

- Press the button on the vehicle key and hold for at least 3 seconds.
- Briefly press the button on the vehicle key three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Indicator light on the interior mirror

- The indicator light flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

  The alarm system is switched on.
- Indicator light flashes for approx. 10 seconds, then it flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

  Interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor are not active, as doors, hood, or trunk lid are not correctly closed. Correctly closed access points are secured.

  When the still open access points are closed, the interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor will be switched on.
- The indicator light goes out after unlocking:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2462
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

The vehicle has not been tampered with.

- The indicator light flashes after unlocking until drive-ready state is switched on, but no longer than approx. 5 minutes:

  An alarm has been triggered.

Tilt alarm sensor

The tilt of the vehicle is monitored.

The alarm system responds in situations such as attempts to steal a wheel or when the vehicle is towed.

Interior motion sensor

The windows and the glass sunroof must be closed for the system to function properly.

Avoiding unintentional alarms

General information

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor can trigger an alarm, although no unauthorized action occurred.

Possible situations for an unwanted alarm:

- In automatic car washes.
- In duplex garages.
- During transport on trains carrying vehicles, at sea or on a trailer.
- With animals in the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is locked after start of fueling.

The tilt alarm sensor and the interior motion sensor can be switched off in such situations.

Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor

Press the button on the vehicle key within 10 seconds as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator light lights up for approx. 2 seconds and then continues to flash.

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor are switched off until the vehicle is locked again.

Switching off the alarm

- Unlock the vehicle with the vehicle key.
- Unlock the vehicle with the integrated key and activate the drive-ready state via emergency detection of the vehicle key.

  Malfunction, refer to page 79.
- With Comfort Access: when carrying the vehicle key, grasp the driver's door or front passenger door handle completely.

Power windows

General information

The windows can be opened with the vehicle key from the outside as well as closed with Comfort Access.

With Comfort Access: The windows can be closed from the outside via Comfort Access.

When a window is often opened in the same position, this task can be performed by the BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant. For instance when the same parking garage is frequently used.

Additional information:

Vehicle key, refer to page 76.

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant, refer to page 50.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the windows is clear during opening and closing.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2463
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Overview

Power windows

Safety switch

Functional requirements

The windows can be operated under the following conditions.

- Standby state is switched on.
- Drive-ready state is switched on.

The vehicle key must be in the car's interior.

Opening

- Press the switch to the resistance point.

  The window opens while the switch is being held.

- Press the switch beyond the resistance point.

  The window opens automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Closing

- Pull the switch to the resistance point.

  The window closes while the switch is being held.

- Pull the switch beyond the resistance point.

  The window closes automatically if the door is closed. Pulling again stops the motion.

Jam protection system

Concept

The jam protection prevents objects or body parts becoming jammed between the door frame and window while a window is being closed.

General information

If resistance or a blockage is detected while a window is being closed, the closing action is interrupted.

The window opens slightly.

Safety information

Warning

Accessories on the windows such as antennas can impact jam protection. There is a risk of injury. Do not install accessories in the area of movement of the windows.

Closing without the jam protection system

In case of danger from the outside or if ice might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it there.

   The window closes with limited jam protection. If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.

2. Pull the switch past the resistance point again within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there.

   The window closes without jam protection.

Safety switch

Concept

The safety switch can be used to prevent children, for instance from opening and closing the rear windows using the switches in the rear.

If an accident of a certain severity occurs, the safety function is switched off automatically.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

The LED lights up if the safety function is switched on.

Rear window roller sunblind

Safety information

NOTICE

When operating the roller sunblind, objects stored on the shelf may damage the roller sunblind. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the roller sunblind is clear during the operation.

Overview

Button for the roller sunblind.

Operation

Press the button to open the closed roller sunblind or to close the open roller sunblind.

If the button is pressed again during the movement, the roller sunblind is moved in the opposite direction.

System limits

If you are no longer able to move the roller sunblind after having activated it consecutively a number of times, the overheating protection mechanism is active. The system is blocked for a limited time to prevent overheating. Let the system cool.

The roller sunblind cannot be moved at low interior temperatures.

Roller sunblinds, rear side windows

Safety information

Warning

With closed roller sunblinds and open windows, the roller sunblinds may be strained while driving due to the wind. The roller sunblinds may be damaged and vehicle occupants may be harmed. There is a risk of injury. Do not open the windows while driving if the roller sunblinds are closed.

Pull out the roller sunblind at the strap and hook it onto the bracket.

Glass sunroof

General information

The glass sunroof and the sun protection are operated using the same switch.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2465
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

The glass sunroof can be opened from the outside with the vehicle key and also closed with Comfort Access.

With Comfort Access: The glass sunroof can be closed from the outside via Comfort Access.

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the glass sunroof. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the glass sunroof is clear during opening and closing.

Overview

Opening/closing the glass sunroof.

Functional requirements

The glass sunroof and the sun protection can be operated under the following conditions.

- Standby state is switched on.
- Drive-ready state is switched on.

The vehicle key must be in the car's interior.

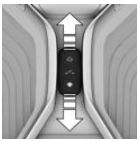
Lifting/closing glass sunroof

Push switch briefly upward.

- The closed glass sunroof tilts and the sun protection opens slightly.
- The opened glass sunroof closes until it is in the tilted position. The sun protection does not move.

- The tilted glass sunroof closes.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sun protection separately



- Slide switch back to the resistance point and hold.

  Holding down the switch opens the sun protection. If the sun protection is already fully open, the glass sunroof opens.

- Slide switch forward to the resistance point and hold.

  The glass sunroof closes while the switch is being held. If the glass sunroof is already closed or in the tilted position, the sun protection closes.

- Slide the switch back past the resistance point.

  The sun protection opens automatically. If the sun protection is already fully open, the glass sunroof opens automatically.

  Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

- Push the switch forward past the resistance point.

  The glass sunroof closes automatically. If the glass sunroof is already closed or in the tilted position, the sun protection closes automatically.

  Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sun protection together

- Briefly press out the switch twice in succession toward the rear past the resistance point.

  The glass sunroof and sun protection are opening together.

  Pressing the switch again stops the motion.
- Briefly press out the switch twice in succession toward the front past the resistance point.

  The glass sunroof and sun protection are closing together.

  Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Comfort position

In some models, the wind noises in the car's interior are lowest when the glass sunroof is not fully open. In these models, the automatic function initially only opens the glass sunroof up to this comfort position.

Pressing the switch again opens the glass sunroof fully.

Jam protection system

Concept

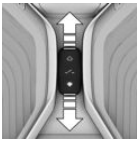
The jam protection prevents objects or body parts from becoming jammed between the roof and glass sunroof while the glass sunroof is closing.

General information

If a resistance or blockage is detected while the glass sunroof is closing, the closing operation is interrupted once the roof reaches the half-open position, or it is stopped when closing from the tilted position.

Closing from the open position without jam protection

In case of danger from the outside or if ice might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

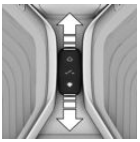


1. Close all doors.
2. Push the switch forward past the resistance point and hold.

   The glass sunroof closes with limited jam protection. If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.
3. Push the switch forward again past the resistance point and hold until the glass sunroof closes without jam protection. Make sure that the closing area is clear.

Closing from the lifted position without jam protection

In case of danger from the outside or if ice might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:



1. Close all doors.
2. Push the switch forward past the resistance point and hold.

Initializing after a power interruption

General information

After a power failure during the opening or closing process, the glass sunroof can only be operated to a limited extent. Initializing the system can help in this case.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2467
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

The system can be initialized under the following conditions:

- The vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- The drive-ready state is established.
- The external temperature is above 41 °F/5 °C.

During initialization, the glass sunroof closes without jam protection.

Make sure that the closing area is clear.

Initializing the system

Press the switch up and hold it until the initialization is complete:

Initialization begins within 15 seconds.

- If the glass sunroof is closed, it opens then closes again.
- If the glass sunroof is open, it first closes, then opens and closes again.

Initialization is complete once the glass sunroof and sun protection have opened then closed again.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2468

Seats, mirrors and steering wheel

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Sitting safely

An ideal seat position that meets the needs of the occupants can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving.

In the event of an accident, the correct seat position plays an important role. Follow the information in the following chapters.

Additional information:

- Seats, refer to page 108.
- Safety belts, refer to page 111.
- Head restraints, refer to page 113.
- Airbags, refer to page 172.

Seats

Safety information

Warning

Seat adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected movements of the seat. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. Only adjust the seat on the driver's side when the vehicle is stationary.

Warning

With a backrest inclined too far to the rear, the efficacy of the safety belt can no longer be ensured. There is a risk of sliding under the safety belt in an accident. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Adjust the seat prior to starting the trip. Adjust the backrest so that it is in the most upright position as possible and do not adjust again while driving.

Warning

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Electrically adjustable seats

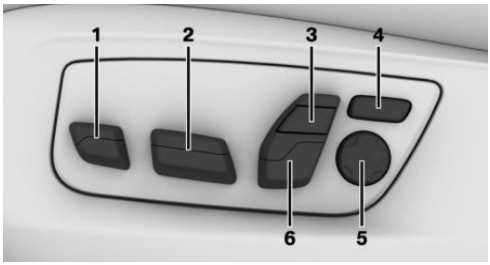
General information

The seat adjustment for the driver's seat is stored for the driver profile currently used. When a driver profile is selected, the stored position is called up automatically.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2469
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

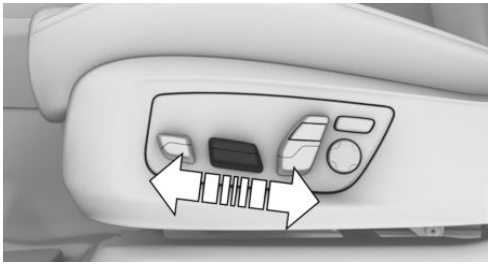
The current seat position can be stored using the memory function.

Overview



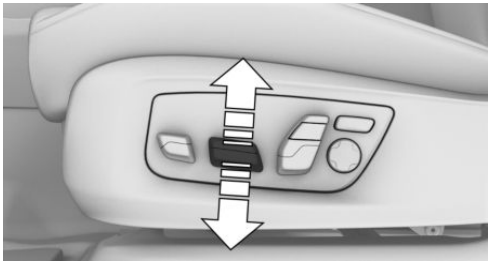
1 Thigh support
2 Forward/backward, height, seat tilt
3 Upper backrest
4 Backrest width
5 Lumbar support
6 Backrest tilt, head restraint

Forward/backward



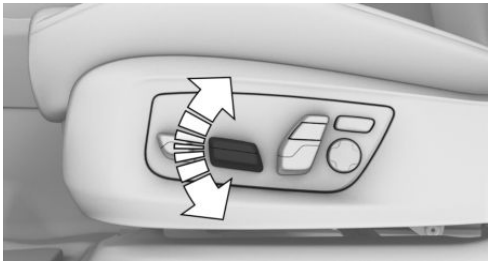
Push switch forward or backward.

Height



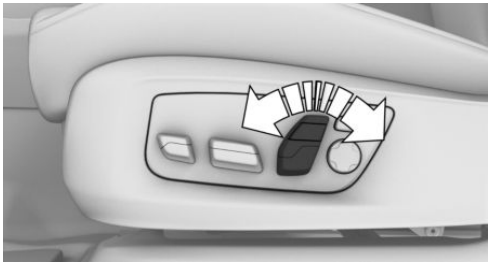
Push switch up or down.

Seat tilt



Move switch up or down.

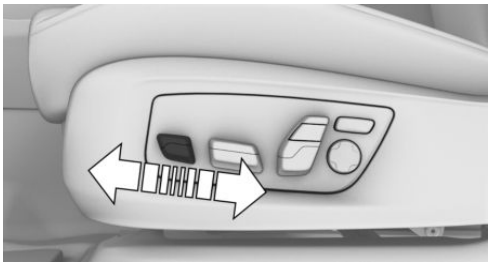
Backrest tilt



Move switch forward or backward.

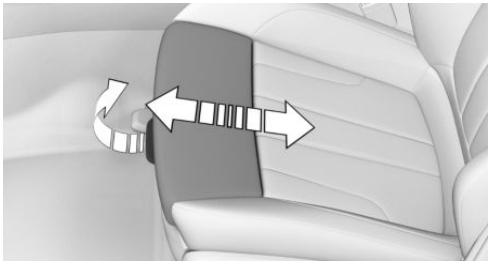
Thigh support

Multifunctional seat



Push the switch in the front or back.

Sport seat



Pull the lever at the front of the seat and push the thigh support forward or back.

Lumbar support

Concept

The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright posture.

Adjusting

- Press the front/rear section of the button:

  The curvature is increased/decreased.
- Press the upper/lower section of the button:

  The curvature is shifted up/down.

Backrest width

Concept

Adjusting the backrest width may improve lateral support when taking corners.

General information

The backrest width is changed by adjusting the side sections of the backrest.

Adjusting

- Press the front section of the button:

  The backrest width decreases.
- Press the rear section of the button:

  The backrest width increases.

Upper backrest

Concept

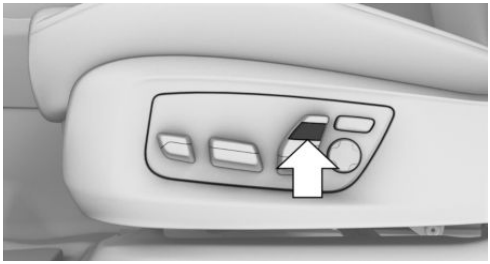
The upper backrest supports the back in the shoulder area. A correct setting leads to a relaxed seating position and reduces strain on the shoulder muscles.

General information

If the driver's door is opened when the drive-ready state is switched off, the upper backrest moves into the standard position.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2471
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Adjusting



- ▷ Press the front section of the button:
  The upper backrest is inclined forward.
- ▷ Press the rear section of the button:
  The upper backrest is inclined backward.

Safety belts

Number of safety belts and safety belt buckles

The vehicle is fitted with five safety belts to ensure occupant safety. However, they can only offer protection when adjusted correctly.

The two outer safety belt buckles of the rear seats are intended for the persons sitting on the left and right.

The center safety belt buckle of the rear seats is intended for the person sitting in the middle.

General information

Always make sure that safety belts are being worn by the occupants before driving off. The airbags supplement the safety belts as an additional safety device. The airbags are not a substitute for safety belts.

The upper shoulder strap's anchorage point will be correct for adult seat occupants of every build if the seat is correctly adjusted.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

Use of a safety belt to buckle more than one person will potentially defeat the ability of the safety belt to serve its protective function. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Infants and children are not allowed on an occupant's lap, but must be transported and secured in designated child restraint systems.

⚠ Warning

The efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts, can be limited or lost when safety belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened safety belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that all occupants are wearing safety belts correctly.

⚠ Warning

With a rear backrest that is not locked, the protective function of the middle safety belt is not guaranteed. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. If you are using the middle safety belt, lock the wider rear seat backrest.

⚠ Warning

The efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts, may not be fully functional or fail in the following situations:

- ▷ The safety belts or safety belt buckles are damaged, soiled, or changed in any other way.
- ▷ Belt tensioners or belt retractors were modified.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2472
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

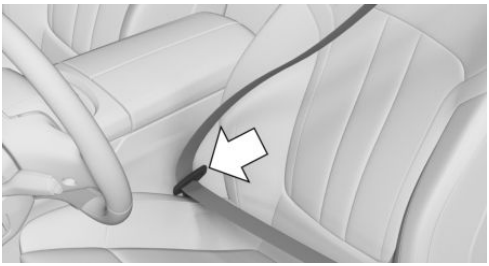
Safety belts can be imperceptibly damaged in the event of an accident. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not modify safety belts, safety belt buckles, belt tensioners, belt retractors or belt anchors and keep them clean. Have the safety belts checked after an accident at the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Correct use of safety belts

- Wear the safety belt twist-free and tight to your body over your lap and shoulders.
- Wear the safety belt deep on your hips over your lap. The safety belt may not press on your stomach.
- Do not rub the safety belt against sharp edges, or guide it or jam it in across hard or fragile objects.
- Avoid thick clothing.
- Re-tighten the safety belt frequently upward around your upper body.

Buckling the safety belt

1. Guide the safety belt slowly over shoulder and hip to put it on.
2. Insert the tongue plate into the safety belt buckle. The safety belt buckle must engage audibly.



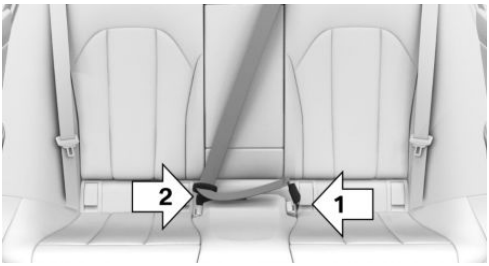
When the safety belt is fastened, the driver's and passenger's belt straps are automatically tightened once after driving away.

Unbuckling the safety belt

1. Hold the safety belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the safety belt buckle.
3. Guide the safety belt back into its roll-up mechanism.

Middle safety belt in the rear

Buckling the safety belt



1. Pull the latch plate at the end of the belt out of the fixture on the rear window shelf.
2. Insert the lower buckle tongue in the belt buckle, arrow 1.
3. Insert the upper buckle tongue in the belt buckle, arrow 2.

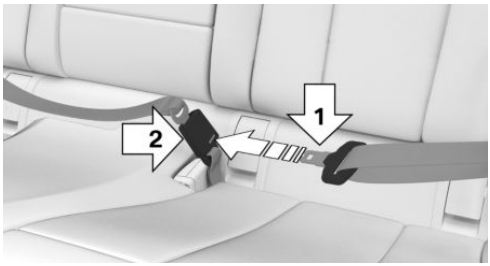
   Safety belt buckles must audibly click into place.

Unbuckling the safety belt

1. Hold the safety belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the belt buckle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2473
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

3. Use the buckle tongue, arrow 1, to open the second safety belt buckle, arrow 2.



4. Guide the safety belt to the fixture on the rear window shelf.

Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat

Display in the instrument cluster

The indicator light lights up and a signal sounds. Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly. The safety belt reminder can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

Safety belt reminder for rear seats

General information

The safety belt reminder is automatically activated each time the engine starts.

The safety belt reminder is also activated when a passenger unbuckles a rear seat safety belt during the trip.

Display in the instrument cluster

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates after the engine is started.

Symbol	Description
	Green: the safety belt is buckled on the corresponding rear seat.
	Red: the safety belt is not buckled on the corresponding rear seat.

Safety mode

In critical situations, for instance during an emergency stop, the front safety belts tighten automatically.

If the situation passes without an accident occurring, the belt tension relaxes.

If the belt tension does not loosen automatically, stop the vehicle and unbuckle the safety belt using the red button in the safety belt buckle. Fasten the safety belt before continuing on your trip.

Front head restraints

General information

The current head restraint position can be stored using the memory function.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

A missing protective effect due to removed or not correctly adjusted head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
- ▷ Adjust the head restraint so its center supports the back of the head at as close to eye level as possible.
- ▷ Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the backrest tilt as needed.

Warning

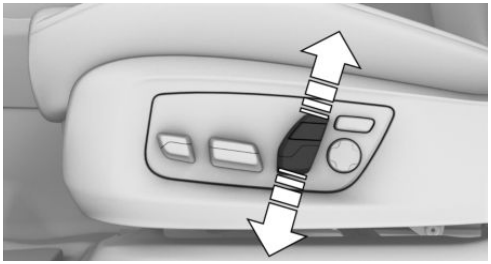
Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.

Warning

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

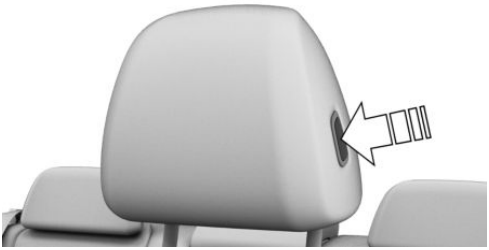
- Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.

Adjusting the height



Push switch up or down.

Adjusting the distance: sport seat



- Back: press the button and push the head restraint toward the rear.
- Forward: pull the head restraint toward the front.

After setting the distance, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Adjusting the distance: M multifunction seat

The head restraint is automatically repositioned when the upper backrest is adjusted.

Removing

The head restraints cannot be removed.

Rear head restraints

Safety information

Warning

A missing protective effect due to removed or not correctly adjusted head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
- Adjust the head restraint so its center supports the back of the head at as close to eye level as possible.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2475
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

▷ Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the backrest tilt as needed.

⚠ Warning

Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.

⚠ Warning

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

▷ Do not use seat or head restraint covers.

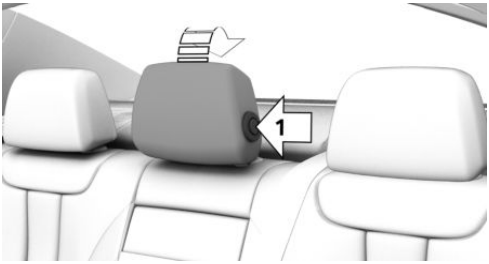
▷ Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.

▷ Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.

▷ Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.

Folding down the center head restraint

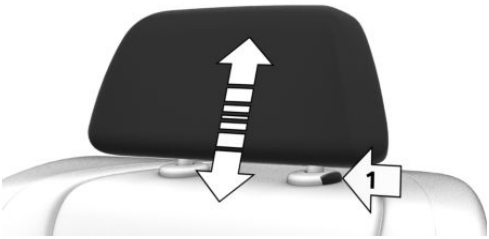
To improve the view to the rear, the center head restraint can be folded to the rear. Only push the head restraint down if no one will be sitting in the center seat.



▷ To the rear: press the button, arrow 1, and fold the head restraint backward.

▷ Forward: fold the head restraint toward the front as far as it will go. Make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Adjusting the height



The height of the outer head restraints can be adjusted.

▷ To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.

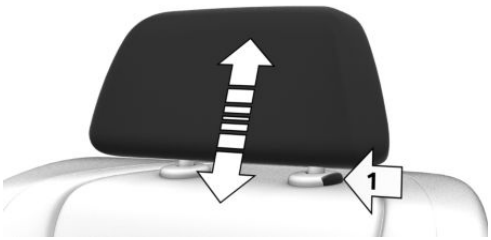
▷ To raise: push the head restraint up.

After setting the height, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Removing

With through-loading system:

The outer head restraints can be removed. Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.



1. Fold down the rear seat backrest in question.
   Enlarging the cargo area, refer to page 300.
2. Raise the head restraint up against the resistance.
3. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

Installing

Proceed in the reverse order to install the head restraint.

After the installation, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Exterior mirrors

General information

The mirror on the front passenger side is more curved than the driver's side mirror.

The mirror setting is stored for the driver profile currently in use. When a driver profile is selected, the stored position is called up automatically.

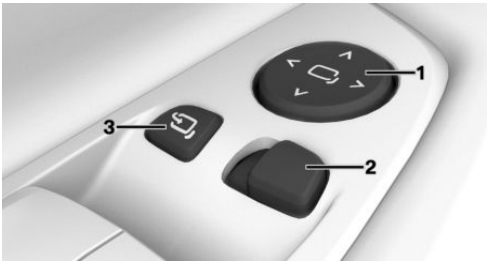
The current exterior mirror position can be stored using the memory function.

Safety information

Warning

Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. The distance to the traffic behind could be incorrectly estimated, for instance while changing lanes. There is a risk of accident. Estimate the distance to the traffic behind by looking over your shoulder.

Overview



1 Adjusting
2 Selecting a mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor
3 Folding in and out

Adjusting electrically

Press the button.

The selected mirror moves along with the button movement.

Selecting a mirror

To change over to the other mirror:

Slide the switch.

Malfunction

In case of an electrical malfunction, adjust the mirror by pressing the edges of the mirror glass.

Folding in and out

NOTICE

Depending on the vehicle width, the vehicle can be damaged in vehicle washes. There is a risk of damage to property. Before washing, fold in the mirrors by hand or with the button.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2477
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Press the button.

Folding is only possible up to a speed of approx. 15 mph/20 km/h.

Folding the mirrors in and out is helpful in the following situations:

- In car washes.
- On narrow roads.

Mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Automatic heating

Both exterior mirrors are automatically heated as needed and when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Automatic dimming feature

The exterior mirror on the driver's side is automatically dimmed. Photocells in the interior mirror are used to control this.

Automatic Curb Monitor, exterior mirror

Concept

If reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass on the front passenger side is tilted downward. This improves your view of the curb and other low-lying obstacles when parking, for instance.

Activating

1. slide the switch to the driver's side mirror position.
2. Engage selector lever position R.

Deactivating

Slide the switch to the passenger's side mirror position.

Interior mirror

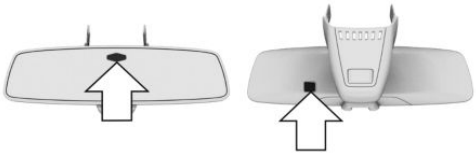
General information

The interior mirror is dimmed automatically.

Photocells are used for control:

- In the mirror glass.
- On the back of the mirror.

Overview



Functional requirements

- Keep the photocells clean.
- Do not cover the area between the interior mirror and the windshield.

Steering wheel

Safety information

Warning

Steering wheel adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected steering wheel movements. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. Adjustng the steering wheel while the vehicle is stationary only.

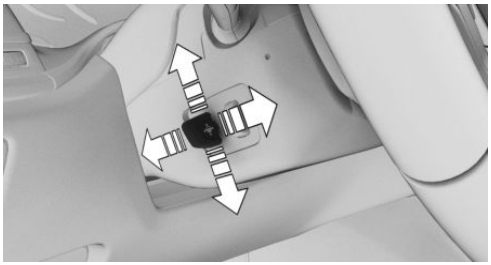
Electric steering wheel adjustment

General information

The steering wheel setting is stored for the driver profile currently in use. When a driver profile is selected, the position is accessed automatically when the drive-ready state is switched on.

The current steering wheel position can be stored using the memory function.

Adjusting



Press the switch to adjust the forward/back position and height of the steering wheel to the seat position.

Assistance getting in and out

The steering wheel temporarily moves into the highest position to make it easier to enter and exit the vehicle.

Heated steering wheel

Overview

Button for heated steering wheel

Switching on/off

Press the button.

A Check Control message is displayed.

If the trip is resumed within approx. 15 minutes after an intermediate stop, the heated steering wheel activates automatically if the function was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Memory function

Concept

The following settings can be stored and, if necessary, retrieved using the memory function:

- Seat position.
- Exterior mirror position.
- Steering wheel position.
- Height of the Head-up Display.

General information

Two memory locations with different settings can be set for each driver profile.

The following settings are not stored:

- Backrest width.
- Lumbar support.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2479
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Safety information

Warning

Using the memory function while driving can lead to unexpected seat or steering wheel movements. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. Only retrieve the memory function when the vehicle is stationary.

Warning

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Overview

The memory buttons are located on the front doors.

Storing

1. Set the desired position.
2. SET Press the button. The writing on the button lights up.
3. Press desired button 1 or 2 while the LED is lit. A signal sounds.

Calling up settings

Press the desired button 1 or 2.

The stored position is called up.

The procedure stops when a switch for setting the seat is pressed or one of the memory buttons is pressed again.

Once underway, adjustment of the seat position on the driver's side is disabled after a short while.

Massage function

Concept

Depending on the program, the massage function ensures relaxed muscles and better blood circulation and can avoid fatigue.

General information

Eight different massage programs can be selected:

- Pelvis activation.
- Upper body activation.
- Full body activation.
- Back massage.
- Shoulder massage.
- Lumbar massage.
- Upper body training.
- Full body training.

Overview

Massage function

Switching on

Press the button once for each intensity level.

The maximum intensity level is reached when three LEDs are lit.

Switching off

Press and hold the button until the LEDs go out.

Adjusting the massage program

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Seat comfort"
4. Select desired seat.
5. "Seat massage"
6. Select the desired setting.

Seat heating

Overview

Front

Seat heating

Rear

Seat heating

Switching on

Press the button once for each temperature level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

If the trip is continued within approx. 15 minutes after a stop, seat heating is activated automatically with the temperature selected last.

Switching off

Press and hold the button until the bar display on the climate control display goes out.

Seat heating distribution

The heating action in the seat cushion and the seat backrest can be distributed in different ways.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. Select the desired menu item.
5. Select desired seat.
6. Press the Controller and turn it to set the seat heating distribution.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2481
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Active seat ventilation

Concept

Integrated fans in the seat and armrest areas provide a comfortable seat temperature.

Overview

Active seat ventilation

Switching on

Press the button once for each ventilation level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

The ventilation switches back by one level after a short time.

Switching off

Press and hold the button, until the LEDs go out.

Climate control rules

Concept

A number of heating and cooling functions can be automatically activated depending on the external temperature.

General information

The external temperature at which the functions are to be automatically activated can be set via iDrive.

Activation is performed if the external temperature exceeds or falls below the set temperature in the first few minutes after drive-ready state has been switched on. A new alignment is carried out after the settings have been changed.

Depending on the equipment package, the following functions can be automatically activated:

- Seat heating.
- Heated steering wheel.
- Seat ventilation.

If the trip is continued within approx. 15 minutes after a stop, the functions are activated automatically with the levels that were last selected.

Functional requirement

- The safety belt of the driver's seat is buckled.
- Drive-ready state is switched on.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Climate control rules"
5. Select the desired functions.
6. Activate the desired rule.
7. Set the level.

Transporting children safely

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

The right place for children

Safety information

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Warning

A heated vehicle may result in death to persons, especially children, or animals. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not leave persons, especially children, or animals unattended in the vehicle.

Warning

Exposure to intense sunlight can cause child restraint systems and their components to become very hot. Persons may sustain burn injuries when touching the hot components. There is a risk of injury. Do not expose the child restraint system to direct sunlight or cover where necessary. If necessary, let the child restraint system cool down before transporting a child. Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle.

Transport children in the rear seat

General information

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is in the rear seat.

Children younger than 13 years of age or shorter than 5 ft/150 cm should be transported in the rear seat in suitable child restraint systems designed for the age, weight and size of the child. Children 13 years of age or older must wear a safety belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system can no longer be used due to their age, weight, or size.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2483
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Safety information

Warning

The safety belt cannot be fastened correctly on children shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm without suitable additional child restraint systems. The efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts, can be limited or lost when safety belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened safety belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Secure children shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm using suitable child restraint systems.

Children on the front passenger seat

General information

Before using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, ensure that the front, knee, and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated.

Additional information:

For automatic deactivation of front-seat passenger airbags, refer to page 175.

Safety information

Warning

Active front-seat passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are activated. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front-seat passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light lights up.

Installing child restraint systems

General information

Pay attention to the specifications and the operating and safety information of the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing, and using child restraint systems.

Safety information

Warning

The protective effect of child restraint systems and their fastening systems which have been damaged or exposed to an accident can be limited or lost. A child cannot be properly restrained in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life.

Do not use child restraint systems which have been damaged or exposed to an accident.

If a child restraint system and its fastening system has been damaged or exposed to an accident, have these systems checked and replaced by the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

On the front passenger seat

Deactivating airbags

Warning

Active front-seat passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are activated. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front-seat passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light lights up.

Before installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, make sure that the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated.

Additional information:

For automatic deactivation of front-seat passenger airbags, refer to page 175.

Seat position and height

Before installing a child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go and, if possible, bring it up to the highest position. This seat position and height ensure the best possible position for the belt and offers optimal protection in the event of an accident.

If the upper anchor of the safety belt is located in front of the belt guide of the child seat, move the front passenger seat carefully forward until the best possible belt guide position is reached.

Backrest width

Adjustable backrest width: before installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, open the backrest width completely. Do not change the backrest width again and do not call up a memory position.

Child seat security

The safety belts in the rear and the front passenger safety belt can be permanently locked to fasten child restraint systems.

Locking the safety belt

1. Pull out the belt strap completely.
2. Secure the child restraint system with the safety belt.
3. Allow the belt strap to be pulled in and pull it tight against the child restraint system. The safety belt is locked.

Unlocking the safety belt

1. Unbuckle the safety belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the belt strap to be pulled in completely.

LATCH child restraint fixing system

General information

LATCH: Lower Anchors and Tether for Children.

Pay attention to the specifications and the operating and safety information from the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing, and using LATCH child restraint fixing systems.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2485
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors

General information

The lower anchors may be used to attach the CRS to the vehicle seat up to a combined child and CRS weight of 65 lbs/30 kg when the child is restrained by the internal harnesses.

Safety information

Warning

If the LATCH child restraint fixing systems are not correctly engaged, the protective effect of the LATCH child restraint fixing system is limited. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the lower anchors are securely engaged and that the LATCH child restraint fixing system fits securely against the backrest.

Position

Symbol	Meaning
	The corresponding symbol shows the mounts for the lower LATCH anchors. Seats equipped with lower anchors are marked with a pair, (2), of LATCH symbols. For vehicles equipped with a middle seat: It is not recommended to use the inner lower anchors of standard outer LATCH positions to fasten a child restraint system on the middle seat. Use the vehicle safety belt instead for the middle seat.

Before installing LATCH child restraint fixing systems

Pull the safety belt away from the area of the child restraint system.

Assembly of LATCH child restraint fixing systems

1. Install child restraint system, see manufacturer's information.
2. Ensure that both LATCH anchors are properly engaged.

Child restraint systems with tether strap

Safety information

Warning

If the upper retaining strap is incorrectly used for the child restraint system, the protective effect is reduced. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the upper retaining strap does not run over sharp edges and is not twisted as it passes the upper anchor.

Warning

If the rear backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the child restraint system is limited or there is none. In certain situations, for instance braking maneuvers or in case of an accident, the rear backrest can fold forward. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the rear backrests are locked.

NOTICE

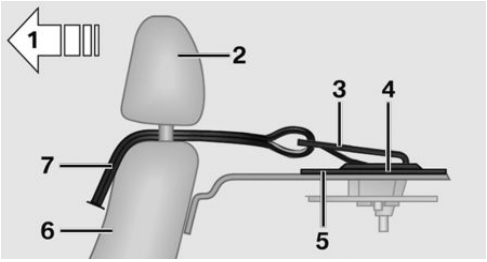
The anchors for the upper retaining straps of child restraint systems are only provided for these retaining straps. When other objects are mounted, the anchors can be damaged. There

is a risk of damage to property. Only mount child restraint systems to the upper anchors.

Anchors

Symbol	Meaning
	The respective symbol shows the anchor for the upper retaining strap. Seats with an upper top tether are marked with this symbol. It can be found on the rear seat backrest or the rear window shelf.

Routing the retaining strap



1 Direction of travel
2 Head restraint
3 Hook for upper retaining strap
4 Anchor
5 Rear window shelf
6 Seat backrest
7 Upper retaining strap

Attaching the upper retaining strap to the anchor

1. Open the anchor cover.
2. Raise the head restraint.
3. Guide the upper retaining strap between the supports or along both sides of the head restraint to the anchor.

   For the middle seat, guide it over or along both sides of the head restraint to the anchor where applicable.
4. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the anchor.
5. Tighten the retaining strap by pulling it down.
6. Lower and engage head restraints as needed.

Locking the doors and windows in the rear

General information

In certain situations it may be advisable to secure the rear doors and windows, for instance when transporting children.

Doors

Push the locking lever on the rear doors up.

The door can now be opened from the outside only.

Safety switch for the rear

Press the button on the driver's door.

This locks various functions so that they cannot be operated from the rear.

Additional information:

Safety switch, refer to page 104.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2487
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Driving

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Start/Stop button

Concept

Pressing the Start/Stop button switches drive-ready state on or off.

Drive-ready state is switched on when you depress the brake pedal while pressing the Start/Stop button.

Pressing the Start/Stop button again switches the drive-ready state back off and standby state is switched back on.

Additional information:

- Drive-ready state, refer to page 36.
- Standby state, refer to page 36.

Driving away

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. Apply gear position.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Drive away.

Auto Start/Stop function

Concept

The Auto Start/Stop function helps save fuel. The system switches off the engine during a stop, for instance in traffic congestion or at traffic lights. Drive-ready state remains switched on. The engine starts automatically for driving off.

General information

After each engine start using the Start/Stop button, the Auto Start/Stop function is ready. The function is activated from speeds of approx. 3 mph/5 km/h.

Engine stop

Functional requirements

M Steptronic Sport transmission

The engine is switched off automatically during a stop under the following conditions:

- The selector lever is in selector lever position D.
- The brake pedal remains pressed while the vehicle is stationary or the vehicle is held by Automatic Hold.
- The driver's safety belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

M Steptronic Sport transmission: manual engine stop

If the engine was not switched off automatically when the vehicle stopped, the engine can be switched off manually:

- Press the brake pedal forcefully again from the current pedal position.
- Engage selector lever position P.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2488

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

When all functional preconditions are fulfilled, the engine switches off.

Air conditioner when the engine is switched off

The air flow from the air conditioner is reduced when the engine is switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster

General information

The display in the tachometer indicates that the Auto Start/Stop function is ready for an Automatic engine start.

The display indicates that the conditions for an automatic engine stop have not been met.

Indications on the Control Display

Total time with switched-off engine

The total time for which the Auto Start/Stop function has switched off the engine is displayed in the trip data.

The total time is automatically reset every time the vehicle is refueled.

Functional limitations

The engine is not switched off automatically in the following situations:

- In case of a steep downhill grade.
- Brake not engaged strongly enough.
- The external temperature is high and automatic climate control is running.
- The car's interior has not yet been heated or cooled to the required level.
- Where there is a risk of window condensation when the automatic climate control is switched on.
- Engine or other parts not at operating temperature.
- Engine cooling is required.
- The wheels are at a sharp angle or the steering wheel is being turned.
- Vehicle battery is heavily discharged.
- At higher elevations.
- Hood is unlocked.
- The parking assistant is activated.
- Stop-and-go traffic.
- Selector lever position in N or R.
- After driving in reverse.

Starting the engine

Functional requirements

M Steptronic Sport transmission

The engine starts automatically under the following preconditions:

- By releasing the brake pedal.
- When Automatic Hold is activated: step on the accelerator pedal.

Driving off

After the engine starts, accelerate as usual.

Safety mode

After the engine switches off automatically, it will not start again automatically if any one of the following conditions are met:

- The driver's safety belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is open.
- Hood was unlocked.

Some indicator lights light up for a varied length of time.

The engine can only be started via the Start/Stop button.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2489
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

System limits

Even if driving off was not intended, the deactivated engine starts up automatically in the following situations:

- Excessive warming of the car's interior when the air conditioning is switched on.
- Excessive cooling of the car's interior when the heating is switched on.
- Where there is a risk of window condensation when the automatic climate control is switched on.
- When the steering wheel is turned.
- Change from selector lever position D to N or R.
- Change from selector lever position P to N, D, or R.
- Vehicle battery is heavily discharged.
- Start of an oil level measurement.

Additional functions Auto Start/Stop

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country-specific version, the vehicle features a variety of sensors for assessing the traffic situation. The Auto Start/Stop function uses this information to adapt to various traffic situations in a proactive manner.

For instance, this applies to the following situations:

- When a situation is detected in which the stopping time is expected to be very short, the engine is not switched off automatically. A message appears on the Control Display, depending on the situation.
- When a situation is detected in which the vehicle needs to drive off immediately, the engine is started automatically.

The function may be restricted if the navigation data is invalid, outdated or not available, for example.

Deactivate/activate the system manually

Concept

The engine is not automatically switched off.

The engine is started during an automatic engine stop.

Using the button

(A)OFF Press the button.

Display

- LED comes on: auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.
- LED goes out: auto Start/Stop function is activated.

Switching off the vehicle during an automatic engine stop

General information

During an automatic engine stop, the vehicle can be switched off permanently, for instance when leaving it.

M Steptronic Sport transmission

1. Press the Start/Stop button.
   - Drive-ready state is switched off.
   - Standby state is switched on.
   - Selector lever position P is engaged automatically.
2. Set the parking brake.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2490

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Automatic deactivation

General information

In certain situations, the Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated automatically for safety reasons, for instance if no driver is detected.

Malfunction

The Auto Start/Stop function no longer switches off the engine automatically. A Check Control message is displayed. It is possible to continue driving. Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Parking brake

Concept

The parking brake is used to prevent the vehicle from rolling when it is parked.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Overview

Parking brake

Setting

With a stationary vehicle

Pull the switch.

The LED lights up.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates red. The parking brake is set.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2491
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

While driving

General information

To use as emergency brake while driving.

Pull the switch and hold it. The vehicle brakes hard while the switch is being pulled.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates red, a signal sounds, and the brake lights illuminate.

A Check Control message is displayed.

The parking brake is engaged when the vehicle is stationary.

With Emergency Stop Assistant

Pull the switch briefly to activate the emergency stop function.

Additional information:

Emergency Stop Assistant, refer to page 202.

Releasing

Releasing manually

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. Press the switch while stepping on the brake pedal or selector lever position P is set.

   The LED and indicator light go out.

   The parking brake is released.

Automatic release

The parking brake is released automatically when you drive away.

The LED and indicator light go out.

Automatic Hold

Concept

This system assists the driver by automatically setting and releasing the brake, such as when moving in stop-and-go traffic.

The vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

On uphill grades the system prevents the vehicle from rolling backward when driving off.

General information

Under the following conditions, the parking brake is automatically engaged:

- Drive-ready state is switched off.
- The driver's door is opened while the vehicle is stationary.
- The moving vehicle is brought to a standstill using the parking brake.

Display

The indicator light changes from green to red.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

NOTICE

If the vehicle is stationary, Automatic Hold engages the parking brake and prevents the vehicle from rolling in a car wash. There is a risk of damage to property. Deactivate Automatic Hold prior to entering the car wash.

Overview

AUTO H Automatic Hold

Establishing function readiness of Automatic Hold

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. AUTO H Press the button.

   The LED lights up.

AUTO H The indicator light lights up green.

Automatic Hold is functional.

After every new vehicle start, the last selected setting is active.

Automatic Hold holding the vehicle

Function readiness is established and the driver's door is closed.

PARK (P) After the brake is applied, the vehicle is kept from rolling as soon as the indicator light illuminates green.

Driving off

Press the accelerator pedal to drive off.

The brake is released automatically and the indicator light of the parking brake is no longer illuminated.

Activating the parking brake automatically

The parking brake is automatically set if drive-ready state is switched off while the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold or if the vehicle is exited.

PARK (P) The indicator light changes from green to red.

The parking brake is not set automatically, if the drive-ready state is switched off, while the vehicle is coasting to a halt. Automatic Hold is deactivated.

Switching function readiness off

AUTO H Press the button.

The LED goes out.

AUTO H The indicator light goes out.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2493
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Automatic Hold is switched off.

If the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold, press additionally on the brake pedal, when switching off.

Malfunction

If the parking brake fails or malfunctions, secure the vehicle against rolling before exiting.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Secure the vehicle against rolling away, for instance with a wheel chock, after exiting the vehicle.

After a power failure

To reestablish parking brake functionality after a power failure:

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Pull the switch while stepping on the brake pedal or selector lever position P is set and then push.

This process may take a few seconds. Some mechanical sounds associated with this process are normal.

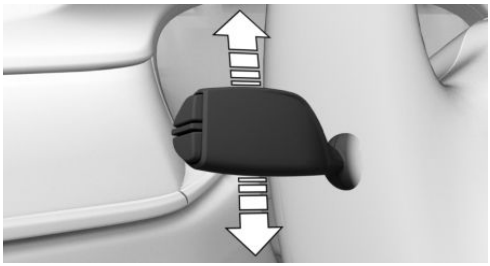
The indicator light is no longer illuminated as soon as the parking brake is ready for operation again.

Turn signal

Turn signal in exterior mirror

When driving and during operation of the turn signals or hazard warning system, do not fold in the exterior mirrors, so that the signal lights on the exterior mirror are easy to see.

Using turn signals



Press the lever past the resistance point.

Triple turn signal activation

Lightly tap the lever up or down.

The triple turn signal duration can be adjusted.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "One-touch turn signal"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Signaling briefly

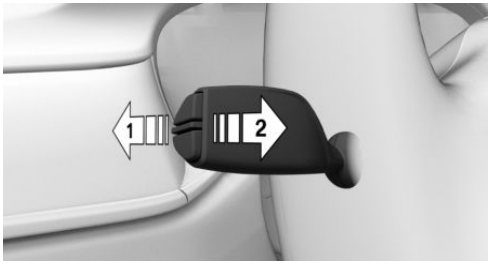
Press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

High beams, headlight flasher

Push the lever forward or pull it backward.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2494

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20



- ▷ High beams on, arrow 1.

  The high beams light up when the low beams are switched on.
- ▷ High beams off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

Wiper system

General information

Do not use the wipers if the windshield is dry, as this may damage the wiper blades or cause them to become worn more quickly.

Safety information

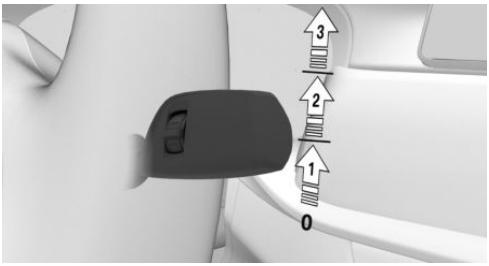
⚠ Warning

If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

⚠ NOTICE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of damage to property. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.

Switching on

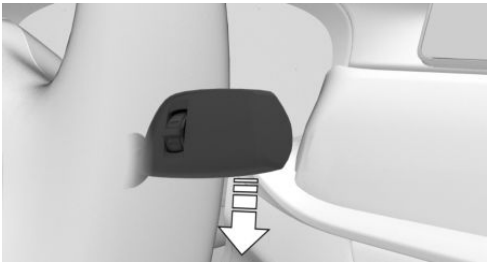


Press the lever up until the desired position is reached.

- ▷ Resting position of the wipers, position 0.
- ▷ Rain sensor, position 1.
- ▷ Normal wiper speed, position 2.
- ▷ Fast wiper speed, position 3.

When travel is interrupted with the wiper system switched on: when travel continues, the wipers resume at their previous speed.

Switching off and brief wipe



Press the lever down.

- ▷ Switching off: press the lever down until it reaches its standard position.
- ▷ Brief wipe: press the lever down from the standard position.

  The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2495
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Rain sensor

Concept

The rain sensor automatically controls the time between wipes depending on the intensity of the rainfall.

General information

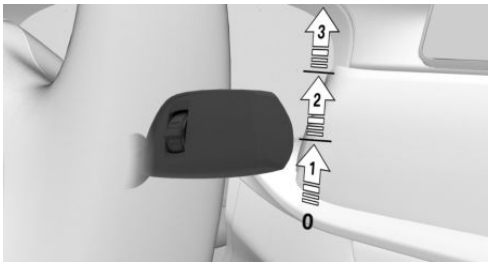
The sensor is located on the windshield, directly in front of the interior mirror.

Safety information

NOTICE

If the rain sensor is activated, the wipers can accidentally start moving in vehicle washes. There is a risk of damage to property. Deactivate the rain sensor in vehicle washes.

Activating



Press the lever up once from its standard position, arrow 1.

Wiping is started.

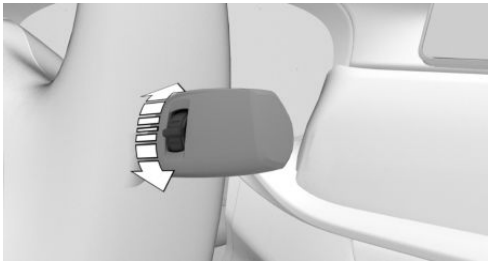
The LED in the wiper lever is illuminated.

In frosty conditions, wiper operation may not start.

Deactivating

Press the lever back into the standard position.

Adjusting the rain sensor sensitivity



Turn the thumbwheel to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Upward: high rain sensor sensitivity.

Downward: low rain sensor sensitivity.

Windshield washer system

Safety information

Warning

The washer fluid can freeze onto the window at low temperatures and obstruct the view. There is a risk of accident. Only use the washer systems, if the washer fluid cannot freeze. Use washer fluid with antifreeze, if needed.

NOTICE

When the washer fluid reservoir is empty, the wash pump cannot work as intended. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use the washer system when the washer fluid reservoir is empty.

Cleaning the windshield

Pull the lever.

The system sprays washer fluid on the windshield and activates the wipers briefly.

Windshield washer nozzles

The windshield washer nozzles are automatically heated while standby state is switched on.

Fold-away position of the wipers

Concept

The fold-away position enables the wipers to be folded away from the windshield.

General information

Important, for instance when changing the wiper blades or for folding away under frosty conditions.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

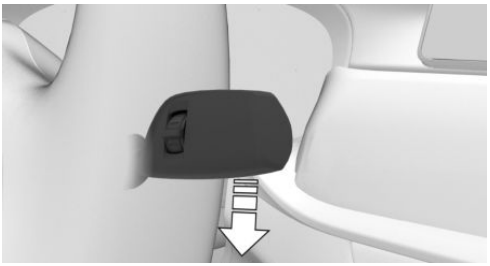
If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

⚠ NOTICE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of damage to property. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.

Folding away the wipers

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Press and hold the wiper lever down, until the wipers stop in a close to vertical position.



3. Fold the wipers all the way away from the windshield.

Folding down the wipers

After the wipers are folded back down, the wiper system must be reactivated.

1. Fold the wipers back down onto the windshield.
2. Switch on standby state and press and hold the wiper lever down again.
3. Wipers return to their resting position and are ready again for operation.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2497
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

M Steptronic Sport transmission

General information

The M Steptronic Sport transmission is operated via the selector lever or the two shift paddles on the steering wheel.

The following functions are available:

- Various driving programs: Drive mode or sequential mode.
- Low Speed Assistant.
- Various Drivelogic programs.
- Launch Control.
- Upshifting display, Shift point indicator.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling, for instance with the parking brake.

Overview

Selector lever

Selector lever functions

Symbol	Function
	Drivelogic programs
R:	Reverse gear.
N	Neutral.
	Center position, forward position.
-	Downshifting, manual.
+	Upshifting, manual.
D/S	Drive mode or sequential mode.
P	Parking.

Selector lever positions

D is Drive mode

Selector lever position for vehicle operation. All gears for forward travel are activated automatically.

S is Sequential mode

Selector lever position for vehicle operation. All gears for forward travel must be shifted manually.

R is reverse

Engage selector lever position R only when the vehicle is stationary.

N is Neutral

In selector lever position N, the vehicle may be pushed or roll without power, for instance, in vehicle washes.

P Park

Selector lever position, for instance for parking the vehicle. The transmission blocks the drive wheels in selector lever position P.

Engage selector lever position P only when the vehicle is stationary.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2498

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Selector lever position P is engaged automatically in situations such as the following:

- After the drive-ready state or standby state is switched off and selector lever position D/S or R is engaged.
- After the standby state has been switched off when selector lever position N is engaged.
- If the driver's safety belt is unbuckled, the driver's door is opened, and the brake pedal is not depressed while the vehicle is stationary and selector lever position D/S or R is engaged.

Engaging a selector lever position

General information

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a drive mode, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start.

The engaged selector lever position is displayed in the instrument cluster and on the selector lever.

Functional requirements

Only when the drive-ready state is switched on and the brake pedal is depressed is it possible to change from selector lever position P to another selector lever position.

Engaging selector lever position D/S, N, R

With the driver's safety belt fastened, press on the brake pedal and pull or push the selector lever in the required direction. The selector lever automatically returns to the center position when released.

In selector lever position R, the selector lever locks.

Engaging selector lever position P

Press button P.

Rolling or pushing the vehicle

General information

In some situations, the vehicle is to roll without its own power for a short distance, for instance in a car wash, or be pushed.

Engaging selector lever position N

1. Switch on drive-ready state while pressing on the brake pedal.
2. If necessary, release the parking brake.
3. If necessary, deactivate Automatic Hold.

   Automatic Hold, refer to page 131.
4. Depress the brake pedal.
5. Engage selector lever position N.
6. Switch off drive-ready state.

   In this way, standby state remains switched on, and a Check Control message is displayed.

   The vehicle can roll.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2499
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

NOTICE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not switch standby state off in vehicle washes.

Selector lever position P is engaged automatically after approximately 35 minutes.

If there is a malfunction, you may not be able to change the selector lever position.

Electronically unlock the transmission lock, if needed.

Kickdown

Kickdown is used to achieve maximum driving performance in Drive mode.

Step on the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position.

Drive mode D/S

Concept

In Drive mode, all forward gears are automatically changed.

Activating Drive mode

Push the selector lever out of the center position in the D/S direction.

Drive mode is activated. The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster along with a D, e.g., 1 D.

Deactivating Drive mode

Push the selector lever out of Drive mode in the D/S direction. Sequential mode is activated.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, e.g., 1.

Sequential mode D/S

Concept

In sequential mode, it is possible to shift gears manually using the selector lever or the shift paddles without letting off the gas.

General information

Shortly before falling below a gear-dependent minimum speed, the transmission is automatically downshifted.

Once the maximum engine speed is attained, upshifting is not automatically performed in sequential mode and the kickdown is deactivated.

It is also possible to start out in 2nd gear; for instance, on icy roads.

Activating sequential mode

Push the selector lever out of Drive mode in the D/S direction, arrow 1, or shift via the selector lever, arrows at 2.

Sequential mode is activated. The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, e.g., 1.

Deactivating sequential mode

Push the selector lever out of the center position in the D/S direction. Drive mode is activated.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster along with a D, e.g., 1 D.

Gear change

Concept

Manual gear-shifting is possible via the shift paddles or the selector lever in sequential mode.

The shift paddles on the steering wheel allow you to shift gears quickly while keeping both hands on the steering wheel.

General information

Shifting

Gears will only be shifted at appropriate engine and road speeds; for instance, downshifting is not possible if the engine speed is too high.

The lowest possible gear is selected by simultaneously operating the kickdown and moving the selector lever forward or actuating the left shift paddle.

Temporary sequential mode

After a shift paddle is actuated in Drive mode, the system temporarily switches to sequential mode.

After conservative driving in sequential mode without acceleration or shifting via the shift paddles for a certain amount of time, the transmission switches back to Drive mode.

Permanent sequential mode

Sequential mode remains permanently active if it was active before the shift paddle was actuated.

Switching to Drive mode

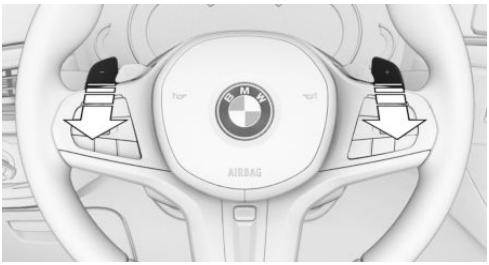
It is possible to switch to Drive mode as follows: pull and hold the right shift paddle.

Switching via the selector lever

- To shift up: pull the selector lever rearwards.
- To shift down: press the selector lever forward.

A shift in Drive mode causes a switch to Sequential mode.

Switching via the shift paddles



- Shift up: pull right shift paddle.
- Shift down: pull left shift paddle.

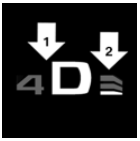
Display on the selector lever

The actually engaged transmission position can deviate from the selector lever position in some situations. The display in the selector lever flashes.

Observe the display in the instrument cluster in these cases.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Drive mode



- Engaged gear together with a D, arrow 1.
- Selected Drivelogic program, arrow 2.

Sequential mode

- Gear shift indicator, arrow 1.
- Engaged gear, arrow 2.
- Selected Drivelogic program, arrow 3.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2501
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Notice

When the external temperature is very low, the display may not work. Current driving direction is recognizable at the engaged selector lever position.

Low Speed Assistant

Concept

The Low Speed Assistant gives assistance at very low speeds. The vehicle moves at walking speed.

General information

Use the Low Speed Assistant for maneuvering or in stop-and-go traffic.

The Low Speed Assistant can also be used for rocking the vehicle in the snow. To do this, shift between reverse gear and forward gear without stepping on the brakes in the process.

Activating

1. Switch on drive-ready state while pressing on the brake pedal.
2. If necessary, release the parking brake.
3. If necessary, deactivate Automatic Hold.
4. Engage selector lever position D/S or R.
5. Release brake.

In 1st and 2nd gear and in reverse, the vehicle rolls at minimum speed.

Deactivating

Apply the brakes until the vehicle comes to a stop.

Drivelogic

Concept

Drivelogic changes the gear-shifting characteristics of the M Steptronic Sport transmission. For example, the shifting points are changed in Drive mode and the shifting times in sequential mode.

General information

Three Drivelogic programs are available.

After each switch between Sequential mode and Drive mode, the last program selected is an active.

If the drive-ready state is switched on after the vehicle has been in the idle state and is in Drive mode, the D1 program is activated.

Programs

Program	Drive mode	Sequential mode
D1/S1	Efficient driving.	Comfortable shifting operations.
D2/S2	Fast driving.	Sporty, fast shifting operations.
D3/S3	Sporty driving.	Maximum shifting speed, Launch Control.

Selecting a channel

Via the rocker switch on the selector lever

Press the rocker switch repeatedly until the desired program is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Via iDrive

It is possible to configure the required program for buttons M1 or M2.

1. "CAR"
2. "M menu"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4. "Transmission"
5. Select the desired channel
   - ▷ "D1" to "D3": Drive mode.
   - ▷ "S1" to "S3": sequential mode.

   The setting is immediately applied with active M1 or M2 configuration.

To activate the desired configuration with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:

- ▷
- ▷

Display in the instrument cluster

The selected program corresponds to the number of illuminated fields.

Launch Control

Concept

Launch Control enables optimum acceleration on surfaces with good traction under dry surrounding conditions.

General information

The use of Launch Control causes premature component wear since this function represents a very heavy load for the vehicle.

Do not use Launch Control during the break-in period.

Do not steer the steering wheel when driving off with Launch Control.

Additional information:

Breaking-in period, refer to page 306.

Functional requirements

Launch Control is available when the engine is at operating temperature. The engine is at operating temperature after an uninterrupted trip of at least 6 miles/10 km.

Start with launch control

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. Deactivate Dynamic Stability Control.

   DSC Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 213.
3. Select sequential mode with gear 1 and Drivelogic program S3.
4. With your left foot, forcefully press down on the brake.
5. Press and hold down the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position, kickdown.

   A destination flag is displayed in the instrument cluster.

   Keep the accelerator pedal in this position.
6. The starting engine speed adjusts. Within 3 seconds, release the brake. The vehicle accelerates.

   Upshifting occurs automatically as long as the destination flag is displayed and the accelerator pedal is not released.

Repeated use during a trip

After Launch Control has been used, it is necessary to drive a certain distance before Launch Control can be used again. Launch Control adjusts to the surrounding conditions, when used again.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2503
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

After using Launch Control

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC Dynamic Stability Control again as soon as possible.

System limits

An experienced driver may be able to achieve better acceleration values in DSC OFF mode.

Electronic unlocking of the transmission lock

General information

Electronically unlock the transmission lock to maneuver vehicle from a danger area.

Unlocking is possible, if the starter can spin the engine.

Before unlocking the transmission lock, set the parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

Engaging selector lever position N

1. Press and hold down brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button. The starter must audibly start. Hold the Start/Stop button pressed.
3. With your free hand, press and hold the selector lever in selector lever position N, until selector lever position N is displayed in the instrument cluster.

   A Check Control message is displayed.
4. Release Start/Stop button and selector lever.
5. Release brake, as soon as the starter stops.
6. Maneuver the vehicle from the danger area and secure it against moving on its own.

Additional information:

Tow-starting/towing, refer to page 360.

M Engine Dynamics Control

Concept

The M Engine Dynamics Control affects the response of the vehicle to accelerator pedal movements.

General information

The system offers several different types of engine response behavior:

Program	Response behavior
"EFFICIENT"	Efficient, comfortable. Minimal consumption. Ideal, for instance in city traffic or on snow.
"SPORT"	Sporty, dynamic.
"SPORT PLUS"	Spontaneous, direct. Maximum dynamics.

The "SPORT" and "SPORT PLUS" programs change the sound characteristics of the exhaust gas system. The sound takes on a sporty nature.

Selecting a channel

Using the button

SETUP Press the button and select the desired program on the Control Display.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2504
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Via iDrive

It is possible to configure the required program for buttons M1 or M2.

1. "CAR"
2. "M menu"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4. "Engine"
5. Select the desired channel.

   The setting is immediately applied with active M1 or M2 configuration.

To activate the desired configuration with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:

▷ M1

▷ M2

Display in the instrument cluster

When the display of the widget in the instrument cluster for M SETUP is activated, the selected program is displayed.

Additional information:

Widgets in the instrument cluster, refer to page 147.

Sound control

Concept

The sound control function changes the sound characteristics of the exhaust gas system.

General information

When sound control is switched on, the sound of the exhaust gas system takes on a sporty nature.

When sound control is switched off, the sound is focused on comfort.

During the engine warm-up phase, sound control does not have any effect on the sound of the exhaust gas system.

Additional information:

High-performance engine, refer to page 304.

Selecting a channel

Using the button

Press button to activate or deactivate the sound control.

The LED lights up when sound control is switched on.

Via iDrive

It is possible to configure the required program for buttons M1 or M2.

1. "CAR"
2. "M menu"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4. "Sound Control"
5. Select the desired channel.

   The setting is immediately applied with active M1 or M2 configuration.

To activate the desired configuration with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:

▷ M1

▷ M2

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2505
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Displays

Vehicle features and options

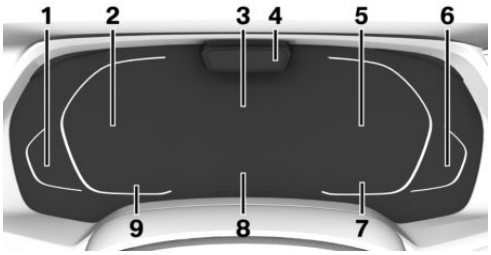
This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Instrument cluster

General information

Some of the displays in the instrument cluster may differ from the illustrations in the Owner's Manual.

Overview



1 Fuel gauge 154
Range 156

2 Speedometer

3 Central display area 145
Navigation display

4 Depending on the equipment: Driver Attention Camera

5 Tachometer 154
Selection lists 159
Widgets in the instrument cluster 147
Trip odometer, see Trip data 160
Gear display with Drivelogic 156

6 Engine oil temperature 155

7 External temperature 155

8 Check Control 148

9 Speed Limit Assist 231
Speed Limit Info 157
Time 58

Central display area

Depending on the equipment and configuration, the following is displayed in the central display area of the instrument cluster:

- Navigation displays such as the map view or, if destination guidance is active, a route preview with destination guidance information.
- Displays showing service notifications.
- Assisted Driving View. Information about the assist systems is displayed in an animated surrounding area of the vehicle.

Some displays in the central display area can be configured individually.

The displays may vary depending on the equipment version and country variant.

Standard View and M view

Concept

The display in the instrument cluster changes depending on the program that was selected via the M M MODE button.

General information

The following views are available:

- "ROAD": all displays of the assist systems and Intelligent Safety are active in the standard view of the instrument cluster for comfort oriented driving.
- "SPORT": in the M View, the displays of the assist systems and Intelligent Safety are reduced to a minimum. The digital speed, gear indicator with Drivelogic and the tachometer are displayed centered in the instrument cluster and support a sporty driving style. Additional displays, e.g., information about tires and engine, can be configured for the outer area of the instrument cluster.
- With Competition Package:

  "TRACK": in the M View for driving on a racetrack, all comfort oriented displays of the assist systems and Intelligent Safety are deactivated. Additional displays, e.g., information about tires and engine, can be configured for the outer area of the instrument cluster.

Configuring the M MODE programs

Depending on the selected View mode, various settings can be selected.

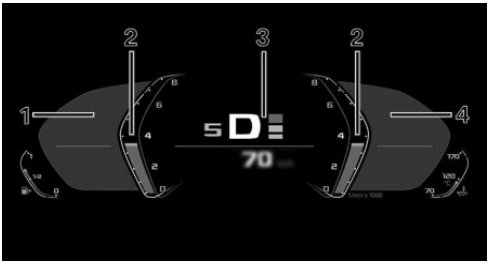
1. "CAR"
2. "M menu"
3. "Instrument panel"
4. "Configure view"
5. Select the desired setting.

Configuring additional displays

In the M View, it is possible configure additional displays for the left outer area of the instrument cluster.

1. "CAR"
2. "M menu"
3. "Instrument panel"
4. "Configure view"
5. "Widget selection, left"
6. Select the desired setting.

Display



1 Additional displays
2 Tachometer
3 Gear display with Drivelogic
4 Widgets in the instrument cluster

Adjusting

Individual displays in the instrument cluster can be configured individually.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument panel"
5. Select the desired setting.

Assisted Driving View

Concept

Depending on the equipment, information about the driver assistance systems is displayed in an animated surrounding area of the vehicle when driver assistance is active.

General information

Assisted Driving View is available in the standard ROAD view.

Depending on the settings, Assisted Driving View can be displayed permanently or temporarily with active driving assistance in the instrument cluster.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2507
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Settings

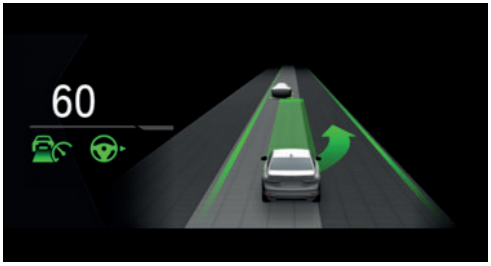
Permanent display

1. "CAR"
2. "M menu"
3. "Instrument panel"
4. "Configure view"
5. "Central display area"
6. "Assisted Driving View"

Temporary display

1. "CAR"
2. "M menu"
3. "Instrument panel"
4. "Configure view"
5. "Display Assisted Driving View when Driver Assistance is active"

Display



Example: the indicator/warning lights for the Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go function ACC and the Lane Change Assistant indicate a lane change to the next lane. At the same time, the lane change to the next lane is shown with animation in the Assisted Driving View.

System limits

The system's detection potential is limited.

Only objects that are detected by the system are taken into account.

Widgets

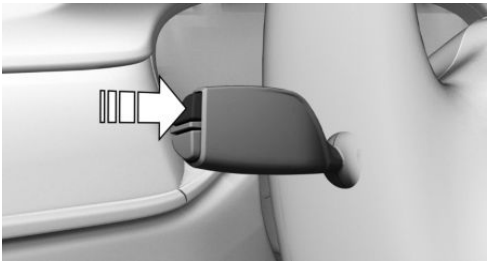
Concept

Displays for specific functions can be displayed in the instrument cluster.

The following displays can be selected:

- Current entertainment source, e.g., radio.
- Torque and power.
- G-Meter.
- Trip data.
- Consumption display.
- Tire data.
- M SETUP display.
- Engine data.

Selecting



Continue to press the button on the turn signal lever until the desired widget is selected.

Display

G-meter

The G-meter indicates the forces that are applied in longitudinal and transverse direction on the vehicle occupants while driving.

Consumption display

Concept

Information about consumption can be displayed in the form of a consumption display as a widget in the instrument cluster, for example.

Average consumption

The average consumption indicates the fuel consumption when driving a specific route.

Current consumption

The current consumption displays the current consumption of fuel. Check whether you are currently driving in an efficient and environmentally-friendly manner.

Energy recovery

During energy recovery, the kinetic energy of the vehicle is converted into electric energy during coasting. The vehicle battery is partially charged and fuel consumption can be reduced.

Tire data

Information about wheels and tires can be displayed in the instrument cluster as widget.

M SETUP display

Some of the stored settings in the M menu can be displayed as a widget in the instrument cluster.

Engine data

Coolant temperature and charging pressure of the exhaust turbocharger can be displayed in the instrument cluster as widget.

Check Control

Concept

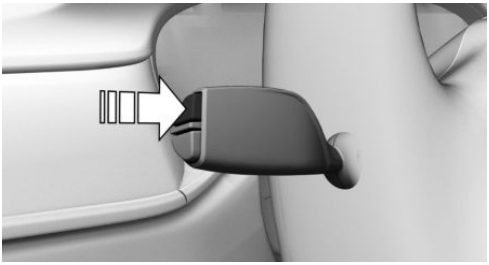
The Check Control system monitors functions in the vehicle and notifies you of malfunctions in the monitored systems.

General information

A Check Control message is displayed as a combination of indicator or warning lights and text messages in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, in the Head-up Display.

In addition, an acoustic signal may sound and a text message may appear on the Control Display.

Hiding Check Control messages



Press the button on the turn signal lever.

Continuous display

Some Check Control messages are displayed continuously and are not cleared until the malfunction is eliminated. If several malfunctions oc-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2509
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

cur at once, the messages are displayed consecutively.

The messages can be hidden for approx. 8 seconds. After this time, they are displayed again automatically.

Temporary display

Some Check Control messages are hidden automatically after approx. 20 seconds. The Check Control messages are stored and can be displayed again later.

Displaying stored Check Control messages

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. ⚠ "Check Control"
4. Select the SMS text message.

Display

Check Control

At least one Check Control message is displayed or stored.

SMS text messages

SMS text messages in combination with a symbol in the instrument cluster explain a Check Control message and the meaning of the indicator/warning lights.

Supplementary SMS text messages

Additional information, such as the reason for an error or malfunction or the required action, can be called up via Check Control.

With urgent messages the added text will be automatically displayed on the Control Display.

Depending on the Check Control message, further help can be selected.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. ⚠ "Check Control"
4. Select the desired text message.
5. Select the desired setting.

Messages after trip completion

Certain messages displayed while driving are displayed again after drive-ready state is switched off.

Indicator/warning lights

Concept

Indicator/warning lights in the instrument cluster display the status of some functions in the vehicle and indicate when a malfunction is present in the monitored systems.

General information

The indicator/warning lights can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when drive-ready state is switched on.

Red lights

Safety belt reminder

Indicator light flashes or is illuminated: safety belt on the driver or passenger side is not buckled. The safety belt reminder can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly.

Safety belt reminder for rear seats

The safety belt is not buckled on the corresponding rear seat.

Airbag system

Airbag system and belt tensioner may not be working.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Parking brake

The parking brake is set.

Additional information:

For releasing the parking brake, refer to page 131.

Brake system

Braking system impaired. Continue to drive moderately.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Front collision mitigation

The indicator light is illuminated: prewarning. Brake and increase distance.

Indicator light flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Additional information:

Front collision mitigation, refer to page 177.

Intersection collision warning

The indicator light is illuminated: risk of collision with crossing vehicle.

Indicator light is illuminated: risk of collision with vehicle without detectable direction of travel or prewarning for vehicles that cross own direction of travel.

Intervene yourself, for instance by braking.

Indicator light flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning when vehicles cross own direction of travel.

Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Additional information:

Intersection collision warning, refer to page 183.

Person warning with City braking function

Indicator light flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: imminent collision with a detected person or a cyclist.

Intervene immediately by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

Additional information:

Person warning with City braking function, refer to page 188.

Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go function

Indicator light flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: braking and evading.

Additional information:

Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function, refer to page 222.

Steering and traffic jam assistant

Indicator light flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: the system will be switched off.

Additional information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, refer to page 232.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2511
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Yellow lights

Steering and traffic jam assistant

The indicator light lights up and an acoustic signal may sound: a system interruption is imminent.

The indicator warning light flashes: lane marking driven over.

Additional information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, refer to page 232.

Antilock Braking System ABS

The Brake Assistant function may not activate. Avoid abrupt braking. Take the longer braking distance into account.

Have the system immediately checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control

The indicator light flashes: DSC controls the drive and braking forces. The vehicle is stabilized. Reduce speed and modify your driving style to the driving circumstances.

The indicator light lights up: DSC has malfunctioned.

Have the system immediately checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

DSC Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 213.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control deactivated

DSC is deactivated or M Dynamic Mode MDM is activated.

Additional information:

- DSC Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 213.
- M Dynamic Mode MDM, refer to page 214.

Flat Tire Monitor FTM

The FTM signals a loss of tire inflation pressure in a tire.

Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

Additional information:

Run-flat tires, refer to page 334.

Tire pressure monitor

The indicator light illuminates: the Tire Pressure Monitor reports a low tire inflation pressure or a flat tire. Follow the information in the Check Control message.

The indicator light flashes and is then illuminated continuously: flat tires or tire pressure losses cannot be detected.

- Interference caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- In the case of tires with special approval: the tire pressure monitor was unable to complete the reset. Reset the system again.
- A wheel without wheel electronics is mounted: have it checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop as needed.
- Malfunction: have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Tire pressure monitor, refer to page 328.

Steering system

Steering system may not be working.

Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Emissions

- The warning light lights up:

  Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.
- The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:

  This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

  Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

Additional information:

Socket for Onboard Diagnosis, refer to page 351.

Green lights

Safety belt reminder for rear seats

The safety belt is buckled on the corresponding rear seat.

Turn signal

Turn signal switched on.

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator light indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

Additional information:

Turn signal, refer to page 133.

Parking lights

Parking lights are switched on.

Additional information:

Parking lights/low beams, refer to page 166.

Low beams

Low beams are switched on.

Additional information:

Parking lights/low beams, refer to page 166.

Lane departure warning

The indicator light lights up: the system is activated. A lane marking was detected on at least one side of the vehicle and warnings can be issued.

Additional information:

Lane departure warning, refer to page 191.

High-beam Assistant

High-beam Assistant is switched on.

High beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the traffic situation.

Additional information:

High-beam Assistant, refer to page 168.

Automatic Hold

Automatic Hold is activated. The vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

Additional information:

Automatic Hold, refer to page 131.

Speed Limiter

The indicator light lights up: the system is switched on.

The indicator light flashes: the set speed limit has been exceeded.

Additional information:

Manual Speed Limiter, refer to page 218.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2513
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Cruise control

Indicator light is illuminated: the system is active.

Additional information:

Cruise control, refer to page 220.

Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go function

The indicator light lights up: the system is switched on.

Additional information:

Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function, refer to page 222.

Speed Limit Assist

Depending on the equipment, indicator light illuminates together with the symbol for a cruise control system: Speed Limit Assist is active and detected speed limits can be applied manually for the displayed system.

Indicator light illuminates: the detected speed limit can be applied with the SET button. As soon as the speed limit has been applied, a green checkmark is displayed.

Additional information:

Speed Limit Assist, refer to page 231.

Steering and traffic jam assistant

Indicator light lights up: the system supports the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane.

Additional information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, refer to page 232.

Lane change assistant

Gray line for lane marking on the appropriate side: system detected a lane change request. Lane change not currently possible.

Arrow symbol for lane change green: the system carries out a lane change.

Arrow symbol for lane change gray: lane change not possible; functional requirements not met.

Additional information:

Lane change assistant, refer to page 239.

Extended Traffic Jam Assistant

Indicator light is illuminated: the system is active.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving Plus, refer to page 237.

Blue lights

High beams

High beams are switched on.

Additional information:

High beams, refer to page 133.

Gray lights

Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go function

Indicator light is illuminated: the system is interrupted.

Indicator light flashes: the conditions are not adequate for the system to work or the system has been deactivated.

Additional information:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2514

Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function, refer to page 222.

Steering and traffic jam assistant

Indicator light is illuminated: the system is ready.

Additional information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, refer to page 232.

Extended Traffic Jam Assistant

Indicator light is illuminated: the system is interrupted.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving Plus, refer to page 237.

White lights

Extended Traffic Jam Assistant

Indicator light is illuminated: the system is ready.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving Plus, refer to page 237.

M xDrive: rear-wheel drive activated

The M xDrive 2WD program is activated. The driving forces are distributed via the rear axle.

Additional information:

M xDrive, refer to page 215.

Fuel gauge

Concept

The current fill level of the fuel tank is displayed.

General information

Vehicle tilt position may cause the display to vary.

Additional information:

Refueling, refer to page 314.

Display

An arrow beside the fuel pump symbol shows which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is on.

The current range is displayed as numerical value.

Indicator light in the instrument cluster

The yellow indicator light illuminates, once the fuel reserve is reached.

Tachometer

General information

A yellow prewarning field and a red prewarning field display the permitted speed range. The permitted engine speed increases as the engine oil temperature increases.

Always avoid engine speeds in the red warning field. In this range, the fuel supply is reduced to protect the engine.

Standby state and drive-ready state

The letters OFF in the tachometer indicate that drive-ready state is switched off and standby state is switched on.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2515
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

The letters READY in the tachometer indicate that the Auto Start/Stop function is ready to start the engine automatically.

Additional information:

Operating state of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Engine oil temperature

Display

- Cold engine: the pointer is at the low temperature end. Drive at moderate engine and vehicle speeds.
- Normal operating temperature: the pointer is in the middle or in the lower half of the temperature display.
- Hot engine: the pointer is at the high end of the temperature range. In addition, a Check Control message is displayed.

Additional information:

Coolant level, refer to page 348.

Indicator light in the instrument cluster

A red indicator light is displayed.

External temperature

General information

If the indicator drops to +37 °F/+3 °C or lower, a signal sounds.

A Check Control message is displayed.

There is an increased risk of ice on roads.

Safety information

Warning

Even at temperatures above +37 °F/+3 °C there can be a risk of icy roads, for instance on bridges or shady sections of the road. There is a risk of accident. Modify your driving style to the weather conditions at low temperatures.

Digital tachometer

General information

The digital tachometer is permanently displayed in the instrument cluster.

Adjusting the unit

Depending on the country version, it may be possible to set the unit for the digital tachometer.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Units"
5. "Digital speedometer"
6. Select the desired setting.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Display

The current speed is displayed in the instrument cluster.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2516

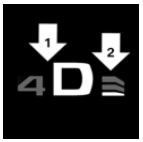
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Gear display with Drivelogic

Sequential mode

- Gear shift indicator, arrow 1.
- Engaged gear, arrow 2.
- Selected Drivelogic program, arrow 3.

Drive mode



- Engaged gear together with a D, arrow 1.
- Selected Drivelogic program, arrow 2.

Range

Concept

The range indicates the distance that can still be covered with the current fuel level.

General information

The estimated range available with the remaining fuel is permanently displayed in the instrument cluster.

With a low remaining range, a Check Control message is briefly displayed. With a dynamic driving style, for instance fast cornering, the engine function is not always ensured.

The Check Control message appears continuously below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km.

Safety information

NOTICE

With a driving range of less than 30 miles/50 km the engine may no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of damage to property. Refuel promptly.

Display

The current range is displayed as numerical value next to the fuel gauge.

Service notifications

Concept

The function displays the service notifications and the corresponding maintenance scopes.

General information

After switching on drive-ready state, the instrument cluster briefly displays available driving distance or time to the next scheduled maintenance.

A service advisor can read out the current service notifications from your vehicle key.

Some information on service notifications can also be shown on the BMW display key.

Display

Detailed information on service notifications

More information on the type of service required may be displayed on the Control Display.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2517
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

3. "Service notification"
   Maintenance work and legally mandated inspections are displayed.
4. Select an entry to call up detailed information.

Symbols

Symbols	Description
	No service is currently required.
	The time for recommended maintenance or a legally mandated inspection is approaching.
	Service interval is exceeded.

Entering appointment dates

Enter the dates for the mandatory vehicle inspections.

Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service notification"
4. "Vehicle inspection"
5. "Date:"
6. Select the desired setting.

Gear shift indicator

Concept

The system recommends the most efficient gear for the current driving situation.

General information

The gear shift indicator is active in the sequential mode of the M Steptronic Sport transmission.

Displays

Symbol	Description
	Shift up to efficient gear.
	Shift down to efficient gear.

Speed Limit Info

Speed Limit Info

Concept

Speed Limit Info shows the currently valid speed limit in the instrument cluster and, if necessary, the Head-up Display.

General information

The camera in the area of the interior mirror detects traffic signs at the edge of the road as well as overhead sign posts.

Traffic signs with extra symbols are considered and compared with the vehicle's onboard data. The traffic sign will then be either displayed or ignored depending on the situation in the instrument cluster and the Head-up Display.

With the navigation system, the system takes into account the information stored in the navigation data and also displays speed limits present on routes without signs.

Without a navigation system, the system is subject to limitations imposed by technology. Traffic signs with speed limitations are detected and displayed only. Speed limitations due to entering or exiting towns, highway signs, etc. are not displayed. Speed limits with extra text characters are always displayed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2518

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

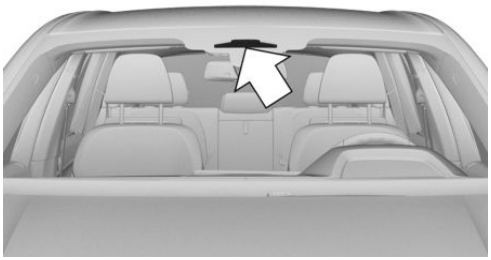
Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Displaying Speed Limit Info

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, Speed Limit Info is displayed permanently in the instrument cluster or via iDrive.

Activating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. If necessary, "Driving"
5. "Speed Limit Assistance"
6. "Speed limits"
7. "Show current limit"

Display

Speed Limit Info

Current speed limit.

Without a navigation system the traffic signals are grayed out after curves or longer stretches of roadway.

Depending on the equipment, Speed Limit Info not available.

If the detected speed limit has been exceeded, the indicator light will flash.

Settings

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. If necessary, "Driving"
5. "Speed Limit Assistance"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Warn when speeding": activate/deactivate the flashing of the Speed Limit Info display in the instrument cluster and, where applicable, the Head-up Display when the currently valid speed limit is exceeded. The warning that is issued when a speed limit is exceeded may depend on the Speed Limit Assist settings.
   - ▷ "Excess speed display": the speed limit that is detected by the Speed Limit Info is

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2519
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

displayed with a marking in the speedometer in the instrument cluster.

System limits

The system may not be fully functional and may provide incorrect information in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- When traffic signs are fully or partially concealed by objects, stickers or paint.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- When driving toward bright lights or strong reflections.
- When the windshield in front of the interior mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered by a sticker, etc.
- If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- In the event of incorrect detection by the camera.
- In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- In areas not covered by the navigation system.
- When roads differ from the navigation, such as due to changes in road routing.
- In case of electronic traffic signs.
- When passing buses or trucks with traffic signs applied to them.
- If the traffic signs are non-conforming.
- When traffic signs that are valid for a parallel road are detected.
- In the presence of country-specific road signs and road configurations.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

Selection lists

Concept

Lists can be displayed and, if necessary, used for certain functions in the instrument cluster or the Head-up Display.

- Entertainment source.
- Current audio source.
- List of most recent telephone calls.

If necessary, the corresponding menu will open on the Control Display.

Display

Depending on the equipment version, the list in the instrument cluster may differ from the illustration.

Displaying and using the list

Button	Function
	Change the entertainment source. Pressing the button again will close the currently displayed list.
	Show list of most recent telephone calls.
	Turn the thumbwheel to select the desired setting. Press the thumbwheel to confirm the setting. The currently selected list can be displayed in the instrument cluster by turning the thumbwheel.

Trip data

Concept

Values for the trip, such as the average consumption or trip miles, are displayed.

General information

The trip data can be displayed on the Control Display and in the instrument cluster.

The values can be displayed and reset depending on various intervals, such as after refueling.

Display on the Control Display

Overview

The following information is displayed based on the configured interval:

- Configured interval for displaying trip data.
- Average fuel consumption depending on the configured interval.
- Average speed.
- Total time for shut off engine through the Auto Start/Stop function.
- Consumption history in form of a chart.

Displays

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Trip data"

Consumption history

The average consumption is shown in the consumption history in form of a chart based on the distance traveled.

Display in the instrument cluster

Depending on the equipment, information about the route can be displayed as widget in the instrument cluster.

The following information is displayed:

- Total mileage.
- Configured interval for displaying trip data.
- Distance traveled depending on the configured interval.
- Average speed.

Selecting and setting widgets in the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Widgets in the instrument cluster, refer to page 147.

Adjusting the display of the trip data

The intervals for the display of the trip data in the instrument cluster and on the Control Display are adjustable.

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Trip data"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2521
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

4. "Data since"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "Start of trip ( )": the values are automatically reset approx. four hours after the vehicle has come to a standstill.
   - "Refueling ( )": the values are automatically reset after refueling with a larger quantity of fuel.
   - "Factory": Average consumption since delivery from the factory.

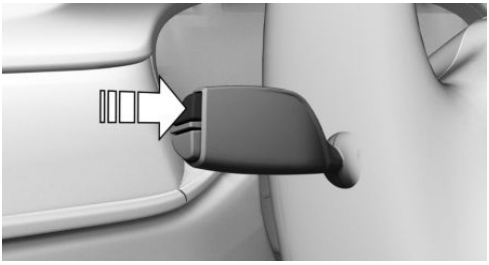
     The values since the time of the factory delivery are displayed.
   - "Individual ( )": the values since the last manual reset are displayed. The values can be reset at any time.

Resetting average values manually

The following interval can be reset manually at any time: "Individual ( )".

With the button on the turn signal lever:

1. Continue to press the button on the turn signal lever until the widget for the trip data is selected.



2. Press and hold the button on the turn signal lever.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Trip data"
4. "Data since"
5. "Reset individual"

The average values and counters are reset. Once the average values and counters have been reset, the following interval is automatically set: "Individual ( )".

Sport displays

Concept

The Sport displays especially support a sporty driving style.

Display on the Control Display

Overview

The following information is displayed:

- Boost pressure.
- Engine oil temperature.
- G-Meter.
- Torque.
- Power.

Displays

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Sport displays"

Display in the instrument cluster

The Sport displays can be displayed in form of widgets in the instrument cluster.

The following widgets can be selected:

- Widget for torque and power.
- Widget for G meter.

Additional information:

Widgets in the instrument cluster, refer to page 147.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2522

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Vehicle status

General information

The status can be displayed and actions performed for several systems.

Opening the vehicle status

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"

Information at a glance

Symbols	Description
(!)	"Flat Tire Monitor": status of the run-flat tires, refer to page 334.
(!)	"Tire Pressure Monitor": status of the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 328.
	"Engine oil level": electronic oil measurement, refer to page 344.
⚠	"Check Control": displaying stored Check Control messages, refer to page 148.
	"Service notification": displaying service notifications, refer to page 156.

Head-up Display

Concept

This system projects important information into the driver's field of vision, for instance the speed.

The driver can get information without averting his or her eyes from the road.

General information

Follow the information on cleaning the Head-up Display.

Overview

Switching on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Head-up display"

Display

Overview

The following information is displayed on the Head-up Display:

- Vehicle speed.
- Navigation instructions.
- Check Control messages.
- Selection list in the instrument cluster.
- Driver assistance systems.

Some of this information is only displayed briefly as needed.

Selecting displays in the Head-up Display

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2523
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Configuring the M MODE programs

Depending on the selected View mode, various settings can be selected.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Configure view"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

M view

In the M view, the displays on the Head-up Display switch from the standard view to a more sporty, M-specific view. The M View in the Head-up Display is active in M MODE programs SPORT and TRACK.

Setting the brightness

The brightness is automatically adjusted to the ambient brightness.

The basic setting can be adjusted manually.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Brightness"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is set.
7. Press the Controller.

When the low beams are switched on, the brightness of the Head-up Display can be additionally influenced using the instrument lighting.

Adjusting the height

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Height"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired height is reached.
7. Press the Controller.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

The height of the Head-up Display can also be stored using the memory function.

Setting the rotation

The Head-up Display view can be rotated.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Rotation"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is selected.
7. Press the Controller.

Visibility of the display

The visibility of the displays in the Head-up Display is influenced by the following factors:

- Seat position.
- Objects on the cover of the Head-up Display.
- Sunglasses with certain polarization filters.
- Wet roads.
- Unfavorable light conditions.

If the image is distorted, have the basic settings checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Special windshield

The windshield is part of the system.

The shape of the windshield makes it possible to display a precise image.

A film in the windshield prevents double images from being generated.

For this reason, it is strongly suggested to have the special windshield replaced by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, if necessary.

Shift point indicator

Concept

The shift lights indicate the upshift point at which the best possible acceleration can be achieved.

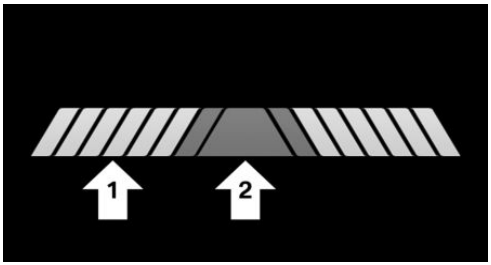
General information

If the Head-up Display is switched on, the Shift Lights will be displayed in the Head-up Display.

Shift lights are only shown in the Head-up Display in the M view.

If the Head-up Display is switched off, the Shift Lights are displayed in the instrument cluster.

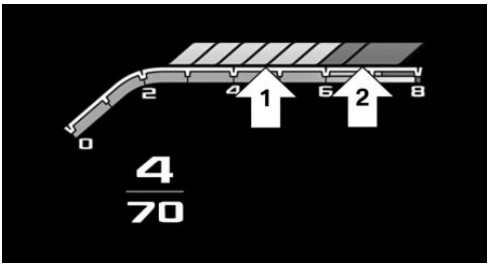
Shift lights in the instrument cluster



- Current engine speed is displayed in the tachometer.
- Arrow 1: successive yellow illuminated fields indicate the upcoming shift moment.
- Arrow 2: fields are illuminated in red. Do not wait any further to shift.

When the maximum RPM is reached, the entire display flashes. The fuel supply is reduced to protect the engine.

Shift point indicator in the Head-up Display



- Current engine speed is displayed in the tachometer.
- Arrow 1: successive yellow illuminated fields indicate the upcoming shift moment.
- Arrow 2: fields are illuminated in red. Do not wait any further to shift.

When the maximum speed is reached, the entire display flashes red and the supply of fuel is interrupted in order to protect the engine.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2525
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Lights

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Lights and lighting

Switches in the vehicle

The light switch element is located next to the steering wheel.

Symbol	Function
0	Lights off. Daytime running lights.
≡D⊂	Parking lights.
≡CA	Automatic headlight control. Adaptive light functions.
≡D	Low beams.
	Instrument lighting.
P≡	Right roadside parking light.
≡P	Left roadside parking light.

Automatic headlight control

Concept

The low beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness, for example in tunnels, in twilight or if there is precipitation.

General information

A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be switched on.

Activating

Position of switch: ≡A

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low beams are switched on.

System limits

The automatic headlight control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment of lighting conditions.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2526

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

For example, the sensors are unable to detect fog or hazy weather. In these situations, switch the lights on manually.

Parking lights, low beams and roadside parking lights

General information

Position of switch: 0 , ≡D , ≡D

If the driver's door is opened when the drive-ready state is switched off, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off after a period of time.

Parking lights

Switching on

Position of switch: ≡D

The indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up.

The vehicle is illuminated on all sides.

Do not use the parking lights for extended periods; otherwise, they might drain the battery and it would then be impossible to switch on drive-ready state.

Low beams

Switching on

Position of switch: ≡D

The low beams illuminate when drive-ready state is switched on.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up.

Roadside parking lights

When the vehicle is parked, a one-sided roadside parking light can be switched on.

Button	Function
	Right roadside parking light on/off.
	Left roadside parking light on/off.

Welcome lights

General information

The exterior lighting is switched on automatically when approaching or unlocking the vehicle. Depending on the equipment, the exterior lighting of the vehicle can be set individually.

Activating/deactivating

Position of switch: ≡D , ≡D

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Welcome and goodbye"

     When unlocking the vehicle, individual light functions are switched on for a limited time.

Pathway lighting

General information

For the illumination of the vehicle's surroundings after exiting the vehicle, the exterior lighting can be switched on for a defined period of time.

Activating

After switching off the drive-ready state, briefly push the indicator lever forward.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2527
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Setting the duration

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "Pathway lighting"
5. Select the desired setting.
6. "OK"

Daytime running lights

General information

Position of switch: 0 , ≡D◐≡ , 🚗

The daytime running lights light up when drive-ready state is switched on. After drive-ready state is switched off, the parking lights light up in position ≡D◐≡ .

Activating/deactivating

In some countries, daytime running lights are mandatory, so it may not be possible to deactivate the daytime running lights in front.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. Depending on country specifications: "Daytime driving lights" or "Daytime driving lights, rear"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Adaptive light functions

Concept

Adaptive light functions enable dynamic illumination of the roadway.

General information

The adaptive light functions may consist of one system or multiple systems, depending on the equipment version:

- Adaptive Light Control.
- Cornering light.

Activating

Position of switch: 🚗

The adaptive light functions are active when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Adaptive Light Control

General information

Depending on the steering angle and other parameters, the laser high beams follow the course of the road.

Cornering light

In tight curves, for instance on mountainous roads or when turning, an additional, cornering light is switched on that lights up the inside of the curve when the vehicle is moving below a certain speed.

The cornering light is automatically switched on depending on the steering angle or, where applicable, the use of turn signals.

When driving in reverse, the cornering lights may be automatically switched on regardless of the steering angle.

Adaptive headlight range control

The adaptive headlight range control feature balances out acceleration and braking processes as well as the vehicle load conditions in order to

avoid dazzling oncoming traffic. Illumination of the road is optimized.

High-beam Assistant

Concept

The high-beam Assistant detects other traffic participants early on and automatically switches the high beams on or off depending on the traffic situation.

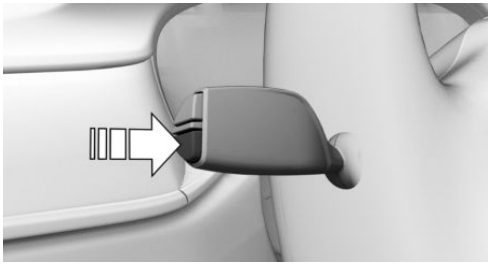
General information

The high-beam Assistant ensures that the high beams are switched on, whenever the traffic situation allows. In the low speed range, the high beams are not switched on by the system.

The system responds to light from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to ambient lighting, for instance in towns and cities.

The high beams can be switched on and off manually at any time.

Activating



Position of switch:

Press the button on the turn signal lever.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low beams are switched on.

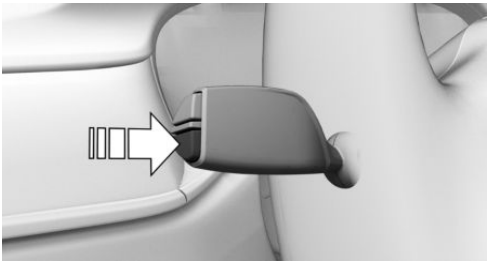
The headlights are automatically switched between low beams and high beams.

The blue indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up when the system switches on the high beams.

The high-beam Assistant is deactivated when manually switching the high beams on and off.

To reactivate the high-beam Assistant, press the button on the turn signal lever.

Deactivating



Press the button on the turn signal lever.

Sensitivity of the high-beam Assistant

General information

The sensitivity of the high-beam Assistant can be adjusted.

Safety information

Warning

If adjustments have been made or the sensitivity has been modified, oncoming traffic may be momentarily blinded. There is a risk of accident. If adjustments have been made and the sensitivity has been modified, make sure that oncoming traffic is not momentarily blinded. Switch off the high beams manually if required.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2529
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Functional requirements

The setting can only be performed when the vehicle is stationary. The drive-ready state must be switched on and the light must be turned off.

Adjusting the sensitivity

Push the turn signal lever to the front for approximately 10 seconds. The system responds more sensitively.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Resetting the sensitivity

Push the turn signal lever to the front again for approx. 10 seconds or switch off the drive-ready state.

The sensitivity of the high-beam Assistant is reset to the factory settings.

System limits

The high-beam Assistant cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of when to use the high beams. In situation that require this, therefore switch off manually.

The system is not fully functional in the following situations, and driver intervention may be necessary:

- In very unfavorable weather conditions, such as fog or heavy precipitation.
- When detecting poorly-lit road users such as pedestrians, cyclists, horseback riders and wagons; when driving close to train or ship traffic; or at animal crossings.
- In tight curves, on hilltops or in depressions, in crossing traffic or half-obscured oncoming traffic on highways.
- In poorly-lit towns and cities or in the presence of highly reflective signs.
- When the windshield in front of the interior mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.

Laser high beams

Concept

The range of the high beams is increased and ensures an even better illumination of the road.

General information

When the high beams are switched-on, starting with a speed of approx. 37 mph/60 km/h, the laser high beams in the headlight are automatically switched on in addition to the LED high beams.

Depending on the country variant, further information can be obtained from the laser label on the headlight.

Safety information

The label is in the headlight and is visible from the outside.

Instrument lighting

Functional requirement

The parking lights or low beams must be switched on to adjust the brightness.

Adjusting

Adjust the brightness with the thumbwheel.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2530

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Interior lights

General information

Depending on the equipment version, interior lights, footwell lights, entry lights, ambient lighting, and speaker lighting are automatically controlled.

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

Interior lights

Reading lights

Switching the interior lights on/off

Press the button.

To switch off permanently: press the button and hold for approx. 3 seconds.

The interior lights in the rear of the vehicle can be switched on and off independently. The button is located in the rear roofliner.

Switching the reading lights on/off

Press the button.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the reading lights are located next to the interior lights in the front and rear.

Ambient light

General information

Depending on the equipment version, lighting can be adjusted for some lights in the car's interior.

Switching on/off

The ambient light is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked, and switched off when the vehicle is locked.

If the ambient light was deactivated via iDrive, it will not be switched on when the vehicle is unlocked.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Ambient lighting"

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Selecting the color scheme

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Color"
5. Select the desired setting.

Setting the brightness

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Brightness"
5. Select the desired setting.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2531
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Dimmed while driving

Some lights of the interior lighting are dimmed when the vehicle is driven in the dark.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Dimmed for night driving"

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Bowers & Wilkins Diamond Surround Sound System

General information

Some speakers in the vehicle are illuminated. Brightness can be individually set.

If the speakers are muted, speaker lighting will be switched off.

Switching on/off

The speaker lighting is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked, and switched off when the vehicle is locked.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Bowers & Wilkins"

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the brightness

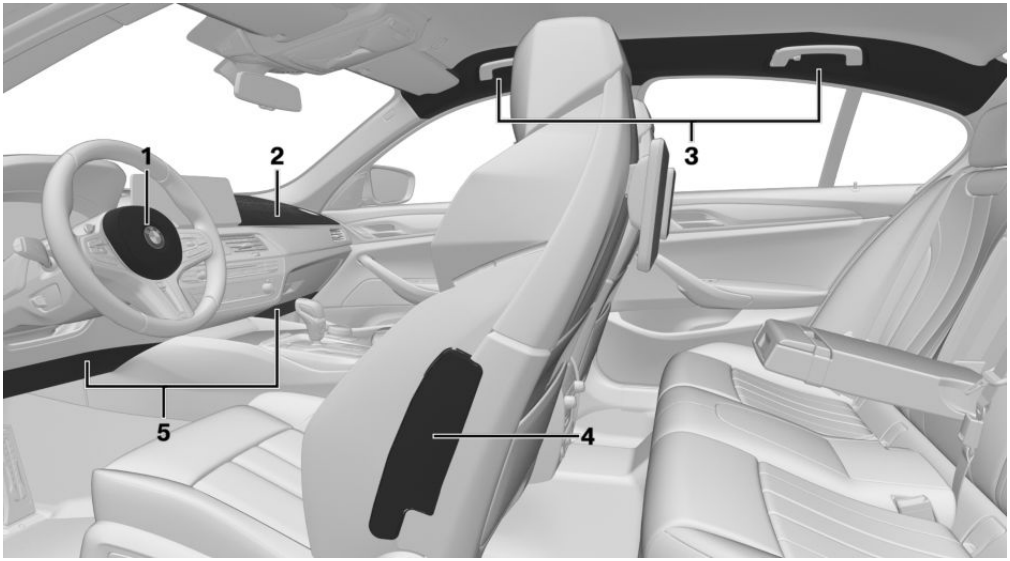
1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Bowers & Wilkins"
5. "Brightness"
6. Select the desired setting.

Safety

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Airbags



1 Front airbag, driver
2 Front airbag, front passenger
3 Head airbag
4 Side airbag
5 Knee airbag

Front airbags

Front airbags help protect the driver and the front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which safety belts alone would not provide adequate protection.

Side airbag

In the event of a side impact, the side airbag protects the side of the body in the chest and lap area.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2533
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Head airbag

In the event of a side impact, the head airbag protects the head.

Ejection Mitigation

The head airbag system is designed as an ejection mitigation countermeasure to reduce the likelihood of ejections of vehicle occupants through side windows during rollovers or side impact events.

Knee airbag

The knee airbag protects the legs in the event of a frontal impact.

Protective effect

General information

Airbags are not triggered in every impact situation, e.g., in less severe accidents.

Information on optimum effect of the airbags

⚠ Warning

If the seat position is incorrect or the deployment area of the airbags is impaired, the airbag system cannot provide protection as intended and may cause additional injuries due to triggering. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Follow the information on achieving the optimum protective effect of the airbag system.

- Keep a distance from the airbags.
- Always grasp the steering wheel on the steering wheel rim. Hold your hands at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions, to keep the risk of injury to your hands or arms as low as possible when the airbag is triggered.
- Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e., keeps his or her feet and legs in the floor area and does not support them on the dashboard.
- Make sure that occupants keep their heads away from the side airbag.
- There should be no additional persons, animals or objects between an airbag and a person.
- Dashboard and windshield on the front passenger side must stay clear - do not attach adhesive labels or coverings and do not attach brackets or cables, for instance for GPS devices or mobile phones.
- Do not apply adhesive materials to the airbag cover panels, do not cover them or modify them in any way.
- Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area.
- Do not attach slip covers, seat cushions or other objects to the front passenger seat that are not specifically suited for seats with integrated side airbags.
- Do not hang pieces of clothing, such as jackets, over the backrests.
- Never modify either the individual components or the wiring in the airbag system. This also applies to steering wheel covers, the dashboard, and the seats.
- Do not remove the airbag system.

Even when you follow all instructions very closely, injury from contact with the airbags cannot be fully ruled out in certain situations.

The ignition and inflation noise may lead to short-term and, in most cases, temporary hearing impairment in sensitive occupants.

Vehicle modifications for a person with disabilities may affect the air bag system; contact BMW Customer Relations for further information.

Warnings and information on the airbags are also found on the sun visors.

Functional readiness of the airbag system

Safety information

Warning

Individual components can be hot after triggering of the airbag system. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch individual components.

Warning

Improperly executed work can lead to failure, malfunction or unintentional triggering of the airbag system. In the case of a malfunction, the airbag system might not trigger as intended despite the accident severity. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Have the airbag system checked, repaired, dismantled and scrapped by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Display in the instrument cluster

When drive-ready state is switched on, the warning light in the instrument cluster lights up briefly and thereby indicates the function readiness of the entire airbag system and the belt tensioners.

Malfunction

▷ Warning light does not come on when drive-ready state is switched on.

▷ The warning light lights up continuously.

Have the system checked.

Strength of the driver's and front-seat passenger airbag

General information

The explosive power that activates driver's/front-seat passenger airbags very much depends on the positions of the driver's/front passenger seat.

To maintain the accuracy of this function over the long term, calibrate the front seats as soon as a respective message appears on the Control Display.

Calibrating the front seats

Warning

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

A corresponding message appears on the Control Display.

1. Press the switch and move the respective seat all the way forward, until it stops.
2. Press the switch forward again. The seat still moves forward slightly.
3. Readjust the seat to the desired position.

The calibration procedure is completed when the message on the Control Display disappears.

If the message continues to be displayed, repeat the calibration.

If the message does not disappear after a repeat calibration, have the system checked as soon as possible.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2535
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Automatic deactivation of the front-seat passenger airbags

Concept

The system reads if the front passenger seat is occupied by measuring the human body's resistance.

Front, knee, and side airbag on the front passenger's side are activated or deactivated.

General information

Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, refer to the safety information and instructions for children on the front passenger seat, see Children.

Safety information

Warning

To ensure the front-seat passenger airbag function, the system must be able to detect whether a person is sitting in the front passenger seat. The entire seat cushion area must be used for this purpose. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the front passenger keeps his or her feet in the floor area.

Malfunction of the automatic deactivation system

When transporting older children and adults, the front-seat passenger airbags may be deactivated in certain sitting positions. In this case, the indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up.

In this case, change the sitting position so that the front-seat passenger airbags are activated and the indicator light goes out.

If it is not possible to activate the airbags, have the person sit in the rear.

To enable correct recognition of the occupied seat cushion:

- Do not attach covers, cushions, ball mats or other items to the front passenger seat unless they are specifically determined to be safe for use on the front passenger seat.
- Do not place any electronic devices on the front passenger seat if a child restraint system is to be installed on it.
- Do not place objects under the seat that can push against the seat from below.
- No moisture in or on the seat.

Indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbags

The indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbag in the roofliner indicates the operating state of the front-seat passenger airbag.

The light indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.

After drive-ready state is switched on, the light briefly lights up and then indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.

- The indicator light lights up when a child is properly seated in a child restraint system or when the seat is empty. The airbags on the front passenger side are not activated.
- The indicator light does not light up when, for instance a correctly seated person of sufficient size is detected on the seat. The airbags on the front passenger side are activated.

Detected child restraint systems

The system generally detects children seated in a child restraint system, particularly in child restraint systems required by NHTSA at the point in time when the vehicle was manufactured. After installing a child restraint system, make sure

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2536
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

that the indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up. This indicates that the child restraint system has been detected and the front-seat passenger airbags are not activated.

Intelligent Safety

Concept

Intelligent Safety enables central operation of the driver assistance systems.

General information

Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, Intelligent Safety consists of one or more systems that can help prevent an imminent collision.

- Front collision mitigation.
- Evasion Assistant.
- Intersection collision warning.
- Person warning with City braking function.
- Lane departure warning.
- Blind spot collision warning.
- Side collision mitigation.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Switching on/off

Some Intelligent Safety systems are automatically active after every departure. Some Intelligent Safety systems activate according to the last setting.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2537
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly. The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions, for instance setting for warning time.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Front collision mitigation

Concept

The system may prevent some accidents. In the event of an accident, the system may reduce impact speed.

The system sounds a warning before an imminent collision and activates brakes independently, if needed.

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Camera in the area of the interior mirror.
- Radar sensor in the front bumper.

The system issues a two-phase warning of a possible risk of collision with vehicles at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h. The timing of warnings may vary with the current driving situation.

With the vehicle approaching another vehicle intentionally, the approach control warning and braking are delayed in order to avoid false system reactions.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the Driver Attention Camera in the instrument cluster captures the driver's field of vision. Additionally, the system checks for visual impairments. Field of vision and visibility also affect the timing of the warnings.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

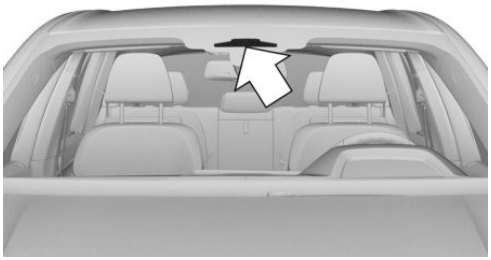
Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

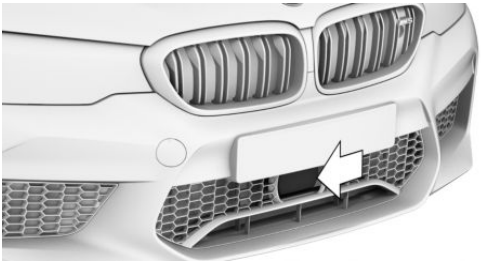
Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

With radar sensor



The radar sensor is located in the lower area of the front bumper.

Always keep radar sensor clean and unobstructed.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is automatically active after every driving off.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2539
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Manual switching off

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and Warnings"
5. "Front Collision Mitigation"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Early"
   - ▷ "Medium"
   - ▷ "Late": only acute warnings are displayed.

The selected time is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Warning with braking function

Display

A warning symbol appears in the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display, where available, if a collision with a detected vehicle is imminent.

Symbol	Measure
	Symbol lights up red: prewarning. Brake and increase distance.
	Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Prewarning

This warning is provided, for instance when there is impending danger of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small.

If a prewarning is provided, respond by braking as warranted.

Acute warning with braking function

An acute warning is displayed in case of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another object at a high differential speed.

Intervene in the case of an acute warning. Depending on the driving situation and the equipment version, the acute warning may be accompanied by a brief activation of the braking system.

With the warning time setting "Late" the brief activation of the braking system is omitted.

If an acute warning is provided, the system may also provide assistance, such as through braking, when there is risk of collision.

Acute warnings may be provided even when there has been no prior warning.

Brake intervention

The warning prompts the driver to intervene. If a warning is active, the maximum braking force is used when the brake is applied. The brake pedal must be applied sufficiently quickly and forcefully.

The system may also assist in braking if there is a risk of collision.

When the vehicle is traveling at a low speed, the vehicle may come to a complete stop.

City brake function: the brake intervention occurs to up to approx. 50 mph/80 km/h.

With radar sensor: the brake intervention occurs to up to approx. 155 mph/250 km/h.

At speeds above approx. 130 mph/210 km/h, the brake intervention occurs as a brief braking pressure. No automatic delay occurs.

The brake intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

The system's ability to detect objects may be limited in some circumstances. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the limitations of the system and actively intervene as warranted.

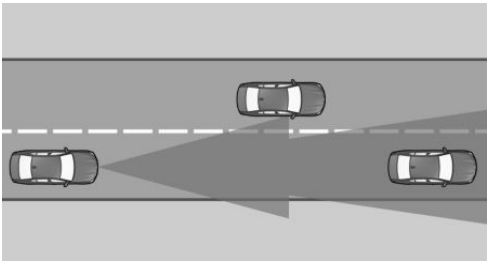
System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Detection range



The system's detection potential is limited.

Only objects that are detected by the system are taken into account.

Thus, a system reaction might not come or might come late.

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- Slow moving vehicles when you approach them at high speed.
- Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or sharply decelerating vehicles.
- Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.
- Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.

Upper speed limit

If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is deactivated temporarily. When the vehicle slows down to below this speed, the system is reactivated.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- In tight curves.
- If the driving stability control systems are limited or deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- If the field of view of the camera or the windshield is dirty or covered in the area of the interior mirror.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2541
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

- If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.
- When it is dark outside.
- Depending on the equipment: if the radar sensors are dirty or covered.
- Depending on the equipment version: after improperly performed work on the vehicle paint in the area of the radar sensors.

Attaching any objects such as stickers or film in the beam area of the radar sensors will also limit the function of the radar sensors and may even cause them to fail.

Warning sensitivity

The more sensitive the warning settings are, for example the warning time, the more warnings are displayed. Therefore, there may also be an excess of premature or unjustified warnings and reactions.

Evasion Assistant

Concept

The system supports the driver in making evasive maneuvers in certain situations, such as when obstacles or persons suddenly appear.

General information

The system issues a warning and intervenes to support the driver if a lateral evasive maneuver is possible. Sensors monitor and detect the clearance around the vehicle. If the system identifies space alongside the vehicle, it supports an evasive maneuver begun by the driver by safely providing targeted steering support.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

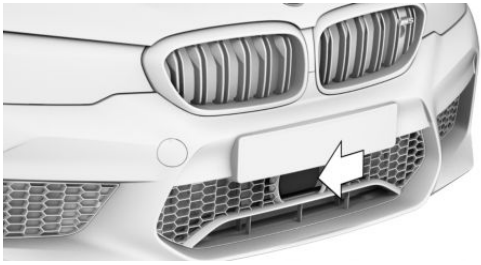
Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Radar sensors

The radar sensors are located in the bumpers.



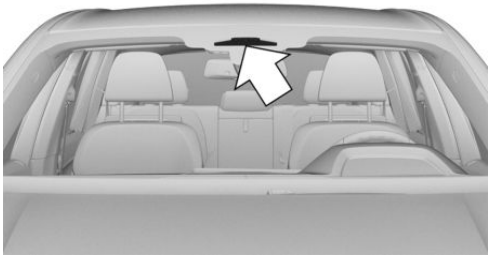
Front center bumper.

Front side bumper.

Rear bumper.

Always keep the bumper in the area of the radar sensors clean and unobstructed.

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Functional requirements

- Pedestrian warning with braking function is switched on.

  Person warning with City braking function, refer to page 188.
- Front collision mitigation is switched on.

  Front collision mitigation, refer to page 177.
- Sensors detect sufficient clearance around the vehicle.

Switching on/off

The system is automatically active after every driving off.

Warning with evasion support

Display in the instrument cluster

If a collision with a detected vehicle or a detected person is imminent, a warning symbol appears on the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display.

Symbol	Measure
	Symbol lights up red: prewarning. Brake and increase distance.
	Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning for obstacles. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.
	Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning for pedestrians. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Acute warning with evasion support

An acute warning is displayed when there is an imminent danger of collision due to the vehicle approaching another object at a high speed.

Intervene in the case of an acute warning. The system is designed to provide assistance by taking evasive action when there is a risk of collision.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2543
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Acute warnings may be provided even when there has been no prior warning.

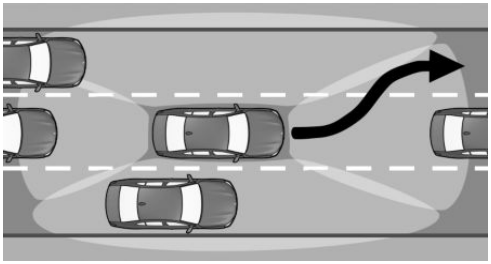
System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Detection range



The system's detection potential is limited.

Only objects that are detected by the system are taken into account.

Thus, a system reaction might not come or might come late.

The following situations may not be detected, for example:

- Slow moving vehicles when you approach them at high speed.
- Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or sharply decelerating vehicles.
- Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.
- Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- In tight curves.
- If the driving stability control systems are limited or deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- If the field of view of the camera or the windshield is dirty or covered in the area of the interior mirror.
- If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.
- When it is dark outside.
- Depending on the equipment: if the radar sensors are dirty or covered.
- Depending on the equipment version: after improperly performed work on the vehicle paint in the area of the radar sensors.

Attaching any objects such as stickers or film in the beam area of the radar sensors will also limit the function of the radar sensors and may even cause them to fail.

Intersection collision warning

Concept

The system may prevent some accidents with cross traffic at intersections and junctions. In the event of an accident, the system may reduce impact speed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2544
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

The system sounds a warning in the city speed range before an imminent collision and activates brakes independently, if needed.

General information

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Camera in the area of the interior mirror.
- Radar sensors on the side in the front bumper.
- Radar sensor in the center in the front bumper.

At intersections and junctions, a warning is issued when a danger of collision with crossing traffic is detected.

The system issues a two-phase warning of a possible risk of collision with vehicles at speeds above approx. 6 mph/10 km/h. The timing of warnings may vary with the current driving situation.

The Driver Attention Camera in the instrument cluster captures the driver's field of vision. Additionally, the system checks for visual impairments. Field of vision and visibility also affect the timing of the warnings.

Detection range

Vehicles that cross your direction of travel can be detected by the system as soon as these vehicles enter into the detection range of the system.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

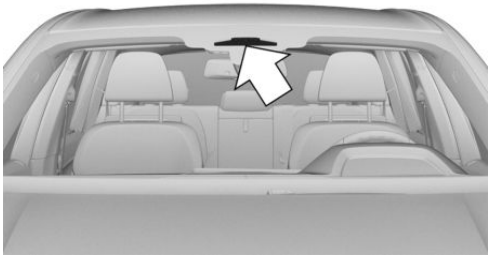
Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2545
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Camera



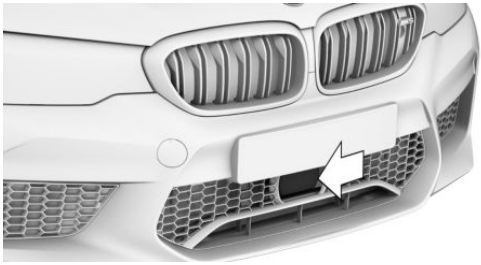
The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Radar sensors

The radar sensors are located in the front bumper.

Front side bumper.



Front center bumper.

Keep the radar sensors clean and unobstructed.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is automatically active after every driving off.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Manual switching off

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and Warnings"
5. "Front Collision Mitigation"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Early"
   - ▷ "Medium"
   - ▷ "Late": only acute warnings are displayed.

The selected time is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Warning with braking function

Display

General information

A warning symbol appears in the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display, where available, if a collision with a detected vehicle is imminent.

Symbol	Meaning
	Danger of collision with vehicle crossing from the right.
	Danger of collision with vehicle crossing from the left.
	Danger of collision with vehicle for which the direction of travel cannot be determined.

Display with prewarning

The respective symbol lights up red: prewarning for vehicles that cross your direction of travel.

Intervene yourself, for instance by braking.

Display with acute warning

The respective symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning when vehicles cross your direction of travel.

Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Prewarning

For example, a prewarning is displayed when a danger of collision with a crossing vehicle is detected.

If a prewarning is provided, respond by braking as warranted.

Acute warning with braking function

An acute warning is displayed in the event of an immediate danger of collision with a crossing vehicle.

Intervene in the case of an acute warning. If an acute warning is provided, the system may provide assistance, such as through braking, when there is risk of collision.

Acute warnings may be provided even when there has been no prior warning.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2547
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Brake intervention

The warning prompts the driver to intervene.

The system may also assist in braking if there is a risk of collision.

The vehicle can be decelerated to a standstill.

The brake intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

The system's ability to detect objects may be limited in some circumstances. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the limitations of the system and actively intervene as warranted.

System limits

Safety information

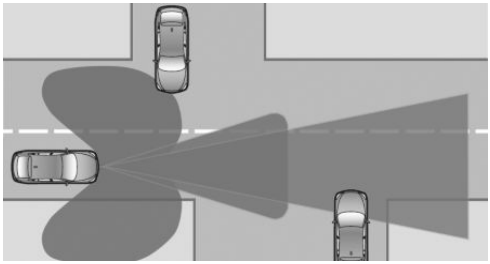
Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Upper speed limit

The system responds to crossing vehicles when your own speed is below approx. 50 mph/80 km/h.

Detection range



The system's detection potential is limited.

Thus, a system reaction might not come or might come late.

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- Crossing vehicles when they are hidden by buildings, for instance.
- Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or sharply decelerating vehicles.
- Crossing bicycles.
- Vehicles with an unusual side appearance.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- In tight curves.
- If the driving stability control systems are limited or deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- If the field of view of the camera or the windshield is dirty or covered in the area of the interior mirror.
- If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2548

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

- If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.
- When it is dark outside.
- Depending on the equipment: if the radar sensors are dirty or covered.
- Depending on the equipment version: after improperly performed work on the vehicle paint in the area of the radar sensors.

Attaching any objects such as stickers or film in the beam area of the radar sensors will also limit the function of the radar sensors and may even cause them to fail.

Warning sensitivity

The more sensitive the warning settings are, for example the warning time, the more warnings are displayed. Therefore, there may also be an excess of premature or unjustified warnings and reactions.

Person warning with City braking function

Concept

The system can help prevent accidents involving pedestrians and cyclists. In the event of an accident, the system may reduce impact speed.

The system sounds a warning in the city speed range before an imminent collision and activates brakes independently, if needed.

General information

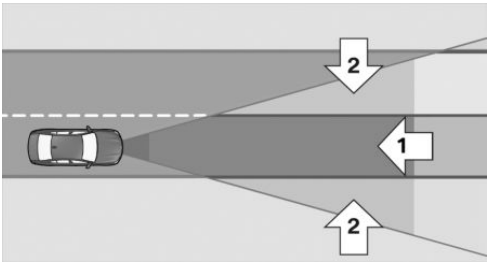
The system issues a warning of a possible risk of collision with pedestrians and cyclists at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h.

The system reacts to pedestrians and cyclists who are within the detection range of the system.

Depending on the equipment version, the system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Camera in the area of the interior mirror.
- Radar sensor in the front bumper.

Detection range



The detection area in front of the vehicle is divided into two areas:

- Central area, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.
- Expanded area, arrows 2, to the right and left of the central area.

A collision is imminent if pedestrians are located within the central area. A warning is issued about pedestrians who are located within the extended area only if they are moving in the direction of the central area.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2549
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

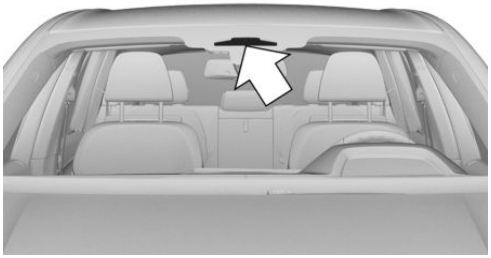
Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

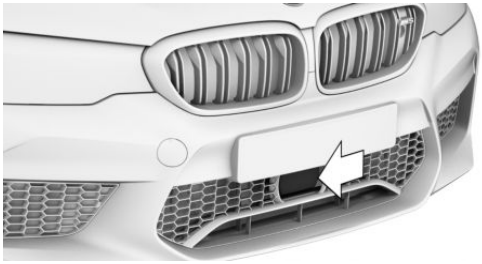
Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

With radar sensor



The radar sensor is located in the lower area of the front bumper.

Always keep radar sensor clean and unobstructed.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is automatically active after every driving off.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Manual switching off

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Warning with braking function

Display

If a collision with a pedestrian or a cyclist is imminent, a warning symbol appears on the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display.

The red symbol is displayed and a signal sounds.

Intervene immediately by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

Brake intervention

The warning prompts the driver to intervene. If a warning is active, the maximum braking force is used when the brake is applied. This requires the brake pedal to be depressed sufficiently quickly and forcefully.

If there is a risk of collision, the system may also assist with brake intervention.

When the vehicle is traveling at a low speed, the vehicle may come to a complete stop.

The brake intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

The system's ability to detect objects may be limited in some circumstances. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the limitations of the system and actively intervene as warranted.

System limits

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Upper speed limit

The system responds to pedestrians and cyclists when the speed of the vehicle is below approx. 50 mph/80 km/h.

Detection range

The system's detection potential is limited.

Thus, a warning might not be issued or be issued late.

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- Partially covered pedestrians.
- Pedestrians that are not detected as such because of the viewing angle or contour.
- Pedestrians outside of the detection range.
- Pedestrians having a body size less than 32 in/80 cm.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2551
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional or may not be available in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- In tight curves.
- If the driving stability control systems are deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- If the field of view of the camera or the windshield is dirty or covered in the area of the interior mirror.
- If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.
- When it is dark outside.
- Depending on the equipment: if the radar sensors are dirty or covered.
- Depending on the equipment version: after improperly performed work on the vehicle paint in the area of the radar sensors.

Attaching any objects such as stickers or film in the beam area of the radar sensors will also impact the function of the radar sensors and may even cause them to fail.

Lane departure warning

Concept

The lane departure warning alerts when the vehicle is about to run off the road or exit the lane.

General information

This camera-based system warns starting at a minimum speed.

The minimum speed is country-specific and is displayed in the menu for the intelligent Safety systems.

Warnings are issued by means of a steering wheel vibration. The severity of the steering wheel vibration can be adjusted.

The system does not provide a warning if the turn signal is set in the respective direction before leaving the lane.

Depending on the equipment version, if in the speed range up to 130 mph/210 km/h a lane marking is crossed, the system may intervene with a brief active steering intervention in addition to vibrating. The system thus helps keep the vehicle in the lane.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing road and traffic safety. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate. Do not jerk the steering wheel in response to a warning.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Functional requirement

The camera must detect the lane markings for the lane departure warning to be active.

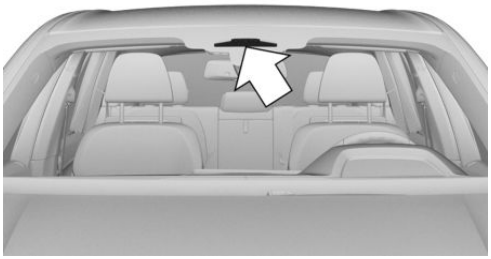
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2552
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The lane departure warning activates automatically after departure if the function was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Depending on the national-market version, the system is automatically active after every driving off. The base setting is thereby activated.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Manual switching off

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2553
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and Warnings"
5. "Lane Departure Warning"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Early"
   - ▷ "Medium"
   - ▷ "Reduced": some warnings are suppressed depending on the situation, for instance during passing without a turn signal or when purposely driving over lane markings in curves.
   - ▷ "Off": no warnings are issued.

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Steering Wheel Feedback"
5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all Intelligent Safety systems and stored for the driver profile currently used.

Switch steering intervention on/off

The steering intervention can be switched on and off separately for blind spot collision warning and lane departure warning.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and Warnings"
5. "Lane Departure Warning"
6. "Steering intervention"

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Display in the instrument cluster

The symbol illuminates green: at lane marking was detected on at least one side of the vehicle and warnings can be issued.

Warning function

If you leave the lane

If you leave the lane and if a lane marking has been detected, the steering wheel vibrates in accordance with the steering wheel vibration setting.

When the turn signal is switched on in the corresponding direction before changing the lane, a warning is not issued.

Steering intervention

Depending on the equipment version: if, in the speed range up to 130 mph/210 km/h a lane marking is crossed, the system may intervene with a brief active steering intervention in addition to vibrating. The steering intervention helps keep the vehicle in the lane. The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time. During an active steering intervention, the display in the instrument cluster will blink.

Warning signal

Depending on the equipment version: in the event of multiple active steering interventions by the system within 3 minutes without the driver's intervention at the steering wheel, an acoustic warning will sound. A short warning signal will sound at the second steering intervention. Beginning with the third steering intervention, an continuous warning will sound.

In addition, a Check Control message is displayed.

The warning signal and Check Control message are an encouragement to pay closer attention to the lane.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2554
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

End of warning

For instance, the warning will be canceled in the following situations:

- Automatically after a few seconds.
- When returning to your own lane.
- When braking hard.
- When using the turn signal.
- If DSC Dynamic Stability Control intervenes.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane markings such as in construction areas.
- When lane markings are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
- When lane markings are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.
- If the field of view of the camera or the windshield is dirty or covered in the area of the interior mirror.
- If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

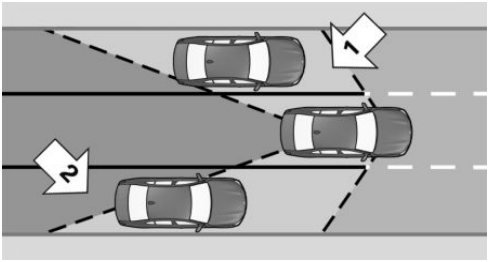
A Check Control message may be displayed when the system is not fully functional.

Blind spot collision warning

Concept

Blind spot collision warning detects vehicles in the blind spot or vehicles approaching from behind in the adjacent lane. A warning is issued in various gradations in these situations.

General information



Two radar sensors in the rear bumper monitor the area behind and next to the vehicle when traveling faster than a minimum speed.

The minimum speed is country-specific and is displayed in the menu for the intelligent Safety systems.

The system indicates whether there are vehicles in the blind spot, arrow 1, or approaching from behind in the adjacent lane, arrow 2.

The light in the exterior mirror lights up dimmed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2555
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Before you change lanes after setting the turn signal, the system issues a warning in the situations described above.

The light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

Vehicles with side collision mitigation: at speeds of up to 130 mph/210 km/h, the system can intervene with a brief active steering intervention and help guide the vehicle back into the lane. The steering intervention occurs when a minimum speed is reached. This minimum speed is displayed on the Control Display in the menu for the steering intervention.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Radar sensors

The radar sensors are located in the rear bumper.

Always keep the bumper in the area of the radar sensors clean and unobstructed.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

Blind spot collision warning is automatically activated after departure if the function was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Manual switching off

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and Warnings"
5. "Active Blind Spot Detection"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Early"
   - ▷ "Medium"
   - ▷ "Late"
   - ▷ "Off": with this setting, no warning is output.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Steering Wheel Feedback"
5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all Intelligent Safety systems and stored for the driver profile currently used.

Vehicles with side collision mitigation: switching steering intervention on/off

The steering intervention can be switched on and off separately for blind spot collision warning and lane departure warning.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and Warnings"
5. "Active Blind Spot Detection"
6. "Steering intervention"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2557
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Warning function

Light in the exterior mirror

Prewarning

The dimmed light in the exterior mirror indicates when there are vehicles in the blind spot or approaching from behind.

Acute warning

When the turn signal is switched on while a vehicle is in the critical zone, the steering wheel vibrates briefly and the light in the exterior mirror flashes brightly.

The warning stops when the other vehicle has left the critical area or the turn signal has been deactivated.

Vehicles with side collision mitigation

When there is no response to the vibration of the steering wheel at speeds of up to 130 mph/210 km/h and the lane marking is crossed, the system intervenes with a brief active steering intervention. The steering intervention helps return the vehicle into the lane. The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

Flashing of the light

A flashing of the light during vehicle unlocking serves as system self-test.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Upper speed limit

If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is deactivated temporarily.

If the vehicle speed falls below approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system once again responds according to the setting.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
- If the bumper is dirty, iced up, or covered, for instance by stickers.
- After improperly performed work on the vehicle paint.
- If cargo protrudes.

Attaching any objects such as stickers or film in the beam area of the radar sensors will also impact the function of the radar sensors and may even cause them to fail.

For vehicles with side collision mitigation, the steering intervention can be limited, for instance in the following situation:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2558
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

- In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane markings such as in construction areas.
- When lane markings are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- When lane markings are not white.
- When lane markings are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.
- If the field of view of the camera or the windshield is dirty or covered in the area of the interior mirror.
- If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

A Check Control message is displayed when the system is not fully functional.

Displaying warnings

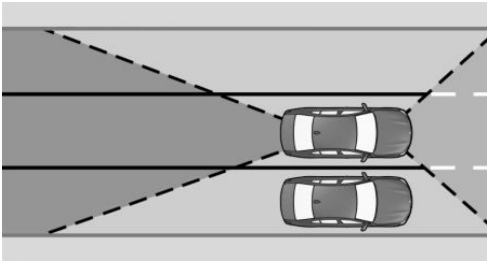
Depending on the selected warning settings, e.g., warning time, more or fewer warnings can be displayed. However, there may also be an excess of premature warnings of critical situations.

Side collision mitigation

Concept

The system helps to avoid imminent side collisions.

General information



Four radar sensors in the bumpers monitor the space next to the vehicle from a minimum speed of up to approx. 130 mph/210 km/h.

The minimum speed is country-specific and is displayed in the menu for the intelligent Safety systems.

The front camera determines the lane marking positions.

If, for instance, another vehicle is detected next to the vehicle and if there is a risk of collision with this vehicle, the system helps avoid the collision. For this purpose, the system issues a warning with a flashing LED in the exterior mirror and a vibrating steering wheel. If necessary, the system will carry out an active steering intervention.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2559
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Functional requirement

The camera must detect the lane markings for the side collision mitigation with steering intervention to be active.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Radar sensors

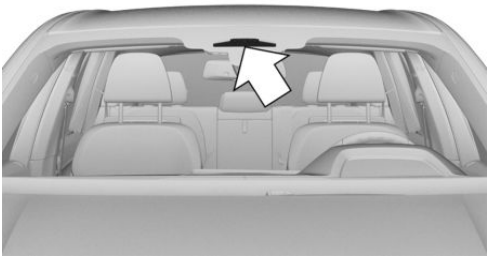
The radar sensors are located in the bumpers.

Front bumper.

Rear bumper.

Always keep the bumper in the area of the radar sensors clean and unobstructed.

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The side collision mitigation activates automatically after departure if the function was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety sys-

tems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Manual switching off

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Steering Wheel Feedback"
5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all Intelligent Safety systems and stored for the driver profile currently used.

Warning function

Light in the exterior mirror

Acute warning

If there is a risk of collision, the light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

A Check Control message is displayed at the same time.

If necessary, an active steering intervention takes place to prevent the collision and maintain the vehicle within its own lane.

The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2561
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
- If the bumper is dirty, iced up, or covered, for instance by stickers.
- After improperly performed work on the vehicle paint.
- If cargo protrudes.
- In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane markings such as in construction areas.
- When lane markings are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- When lane markings are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.
- If the field of view of the camera or the windshield is dirty or covered in the area of the interior mirror.
- If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

Attaching any objects such as stickers or film in the beam area of the radar sensors will also impact the function of the radar sensors and may even cause them to fail.

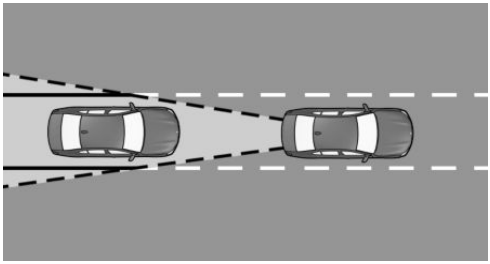
A Check Control message is displayed when the system is not fully functional.

Rear collision preparation

Concept

The system reacts to vehicles approaching from behind.

General information



Two radar sensors in the rear bumper monitor the area behind the vehicle.

When a vehicle approaches from the rear at a certain speed, the system responds as follows:

- Active Protection: when a collision seems to be unavoidable, PreCrash functions are triggered.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving

style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Radar sensors

The radar sensors are located in the rear bumper.

Always keep the bumper in the area of the radar sensors clean and unobstructed.

Switching on/off

The system is automatically active after every driving off.

The system is deactivated in the following situations:

- When driving in reverse.

System limits

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- When the approaching vehicle approaches slowly.
- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
- If the bumper is dirty, iced up, or covered, for instance by stickers.
- If the field of view of the sensors is covered, e.g., by garage walls, hedges or snow hills.
- If cargo protrudes.

If equipped with Equipment Stop Assistant

Concept

If the driver is no longer fit to drive, the system helps to safely bring the vehicle to a standstill.

General information

The emergency stop function is not triggered automatically. The emergency stop function can only be triggered manually by the occupants.

When the system is activated, the vehicle is brought to a standstill in its own lane by use of lane guidance.

Depending on the equipment version and national market version, the system includes a lane change function.

With lane change function: on motorways or motorway-like roads, the system steers the vehicle to the side of the road or shoulder where possible. On other roads or under high traffic conditions, the vehicle is brought to a standstill on the actual road.

Overview

Parking brake

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2563
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Functional requirements

- The function can be activated at speeds of approx. 6 mph/10 km/h up to approx. 155 mph/250 km/h.
- Lane changes are executed at speeds of approx. 43 mph/70 km/h up to approx. 62 mph/100 km/h.

Activating the emergency stop function

Pull the switch for the parking brake briefly to activate the emergency stop function.

- With lane change function: releasing the switch may trigger an automatic lane change.
- The system will take control of the vehicle for a maximum of 2 minutes.
- The hazard warning system is switched on.
- An Emergency Request is triggered.

Canceling the emergency stop function

The driver can cancel the emergency stop function by actively taking control of the vehicle throughout the entire process.

For instance, the emergency stop function will be canceled in the following situations:

- When steering.
- When using the turn signal.
- During acceleration.
- When switching off the hazard warning system.
- When canceling the Emergency Request.
- When switching the selector lever position at standstill.
- When the driver's foot remains on the accelerator pedal after the function has been triggered.
- When the switch of the parking brake is pressed.

At standstill

As soon as the vehicle is stationary, the system will carry out the following settings:

- Selector lever position P is engaged.
- Parking brake is set.
- Interior lights are switched on.
- Central locking system is unlocked.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Status
	Emergency Stop function active.

Without lane change function:

Symbol	Status
	Green steering wheel symbol: When lane markings are detected, the system keeps the vehicle in the lane.
	Gray steering wheel symbol: Lane guidance is briefly interrupted.
	Yellow steering wheel symbol: Lane marking driven over. When lane markings are detected, the system keeps the vehicle in the lane.
	Yellow steering wheel symbol: The hands are not grasping the steering wheel. The system is still active.

Symbol	Status
	Red steering wheel symbol and a signal sounds: The hands are not grasping the steering wheel. Interruption of lane guidance is imminent.
	Red steering wheel symbol and a signal sounds: Lane guidance is switched off.

System limits

Use the system only in the event of a driver failure.

The system cannot replace the driving performance of a driver who is fit to drive.

BMW Drive Recorder

Concept

The system stores brief video recordings of the surrounding area of the vehicle, e.g., to document traffic events.

Additionally, the following parameters are stored for the trip:

- Date.
- Time.
- Vehicle speed.
- GPS coordinates.

General information

There are various ways for storing video recordings:

- Automatic storage of the recording.

  The function allows the documentation of the event of an accident.
- Manual storage of the recording.

  The function allows the documentation of traffic situations.

The system records up to 20 seconds before and after the activation of the storage.

Cameras of the assistance systems are used, for instance Panorama View.

Data protection

The permissibility of recording and using video recordings is contingent upon the statutory regulations of the country in which the system is to be used. The user is responsible for the use of the system and compliance with the respective regulations.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends confirming there are no statutory or regulatory constraints on use of the system in your state or country prior to the initial use. In addition, the laws with respect to use of the system should be verified in regular intervals, especially when borders are frequently crossed.

Other drivers of the vehicle must be informed about the system. In addition, information about the system is required when handing off the vehicle.

Functional requirements

- BMW Drive Recorder is activated.
- Privacy Policy accepted.
- Recording type selected.
- Recording time selected.

Activating/deactivating

The BMW Drive Recorder must be activated before the first use of the recording function.

1. "Apps"
2. "Drive Recorder"
3. Accept Privacy Policy.
4. "Settings"
5. "Recording allowed"
6. Select the desired setting.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2565
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Recording functions

Automatic recording

The recording is stored automatically when the vehicle sensors detect an accident occurrence.

Manual recording

Using the button

Press and hold this button.

Via iDrive

1. "Apps"
2. "Drive Recorder"
3. "Start recording"

To stop the recording: "Cancel".

Recording can also be started by selecting the widget on the Control Display.

Recording playback and administration

Stored video recordings can be played back, exported and deleted.

For your own safety, the video recording is only displayed on the Control Display up to approx. 2 mph/3 km/h. In some national-market versions, the video recording is only displayed if the parking brake is engaged or if the selector lever is in selector lever position P.

1. "Apps"
2. "Drive Recorder"
3. "Saved recordings"
4. Select desired recording.
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "Play"
   - "Pause"
   - "Previous"
   - "Next"
   - "Export"
   - "Delete"

If a camera change occurred during the recording, different segments of the video can be selected.

Adjusting

General information

Different settings can be made.

Recording type

1. "Apps"
2. "Drive Recorder"
3. "Settings"
4. "RECORDING TYPE"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "Manually"
   - "Automatically"
   - "Manually" and "Automatically"

Recording time

1. "Apps"
2. "Drive Recorder"
3. "Settings"
4. Select the desired setting:
   - "Before trigger"
     Recording time before an event.
   - "After trigger"
     Recording time after an event.

Cameras

1. "Apps"
2. "Drive Recorder"
3. "Settings"
4. "Camera selection"
5. Select desired camera.

In case of an accident, the system switches automatically to "All" cameras.

If driver assistance systems are active, their camera views are selected automatically.

System limits

In the event of serious accidents, it may not be possible to store recordings if the damage on the vehicle is too great or the power supply was interrupted.

Active Protection

Concept

Active Protection prepares occupants and the vehicle for a possible accident in critical driving or collision situations.

General information

Active Protection consists of various PreCrash functions, which can vary depending on the equipment.

The system is used to detect certain critical driving situations that might lead to an accident. This includes the following critical driving situations:

- Emergency stop.
- Severe understeering.
- Severe oversteering.

Certain functions of several systems can, within the system limits, lead to Active Protection triggering:

- Front collision mitigation: automatic brake intervention.
- Front collision mitigation: Brake Assistant.
- Rear collision preparation: detection of imminent rear collisions.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to the system limits, critical situation could not be detected reliably or in time. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Function

When the safety belt is fastened, the driver's and passenger's belt straps are automatically tightened once after driving away.

In accident-critical situations, the following individual functions become active as needed:

- Automatic pretensioning of the front safety belts.
- Automatic window closing up to a narrow gap.
- Automatic closing of the glass sunroof, including sun protection.

After a critical driving situation without an accident, the front safety belts are loosened again.

If the belt tension does not loosen automatically, stop the vehicle and unbuckle the safety belt using the red button in the buckle. Fasten the safety belt before continuing on your trip.

All other systems can be restored to the desired setting.

PostCrash – iBrake

Concept

In the event of an accident, the system can bring the vehicle to a halt automatically without intervention by the driver in certain situations. This can reduce the risk of a further collision and the consequences thereof.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2567
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

At standstill

After coming to a halt, the brake is released automatically.

Harder vehicle braking

In certain situations, it can be necessary to bring the vehicle to a halt more quickly than the Brake Assistant allows.

To do this, quickly apply extra force to the brake. For a brief period, the braking pressure will be higher than the braking pressure that is achieved by the automatic braking function. Automatic braking is interrupted.

Interrupting automatic braking

It can be necessary to interrupt automatic braking in certain situations, for instance for an evasive maneuver.

Interrupt automatic braking:

- By pressing the brake pedal.
- By pressing the accelerator pedal.

Fatigue alert

General information

The system can detect decreasing alertness or fatigue of the driver during long, monotonous trips, for instance on highways. In this situation, it is recommended that the driver takes a break.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing one's physical state. An increasing lack of alertness or fatigue may not be detected or not be detected in time. There is a risk of accident. Make sure that the driver is rested and alert. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions.

Function

The system is switched on each time drive-ready state is switched on.

After travel has begun, the system monitors certain aspects of the driver's behavior, so that decreasing alertness or fatigue can be detected.

This procedure takes the following criteria into account:

- Personal driving style, for instance steering behavior.
- Driving conditions, for instance time, length of trip.
- Depending on the equipment: attention of the driver through the Driver Attention Camera.

Starting at approx. 43 mph/70 km/h, the system is active and can also display a recommendation to take a break.

Break recommendation

Adjusting

The fatigue alert is active automatically with each switching on of drive-ready state and can thus display a break recommendation.

The break recommendation can also be switched on or off and adjusted via iDrive.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Fatigue and Focus Alert"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "Standard": the break recommendation is made with a defined value.
   - "Sensitive": the break recommendation is issued earlier.
   - "Off": no break recommendation is made.

Display

If the driver becomes less alert or fatigued, a message is displayed in the Control Display with the recommendation to take a break.

During the display, various settings can be selected.

After a break, another recommendation to take a break cannot be displayed until after approximately 45 minutes.

System limits

The function may be limited in the following situations and may issue an incorrect warning or no warning at all:

- When the clock is set incorrectly.
- When the vehicle speed is mainly below about 43 mph/70 km/h.
- With a sporty driving style, such as during rapid acceleration or when cornering fast.
- In active driving situations, such as when changing lanes frequently.
- When the road surface is poor.
- In the event of strong side winds.

The system is reset approx. 45 minutes after parking the vehicle, for instance in the case of a break during longer trips on highways.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2569
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Driving stability control systems

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Antilock Braking System ABS

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during braking.

The vehicle maintains its steering power even during full brake applications, which increases the active safety.

ABS is operational every time you start the engine.

Brake assistant

When you apply the brakes rapidly, this system automatically boosts the vehicle braking assistance to the furthest possible extent. It reduces the braking distance to a minimum during an emergency stop. This system utilizes all of the capabilities provided by the Antilock Brake System ABS.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal for the duration of the emergency stop.

Adaptive brake assistant

In combination with Active Cruise Control ACC, this system ensures that the brakes respond even more rapidly when braking in critical situations.

Drive-off assistant

Concept

This system supports driving off on uphill grades.

Driving off

1. Hold the vehicle in place with the foot brake.
2. Release the foot brake and drive off without delay.

After the foot brake is released, the vehicle is held in place for approx. 2 seconds.

Depending on the vehicle loading, the vehicle may roll back slightly.

M Menu

Concept

Buttons M1 or M2 on the steering wheel can be used to store individual settings for the vehicle and call them up again as needed.

General information

The buttons are preset with the correct configuration for the vehicle and can be adjusted individually.

When the drive-ready state is switched on after the idle state, an efficient vehicle state is active by default. The configuration via the buttons is deactivated.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2570

Safety information

Warning

Depending on the setting, the DSC may only be available to a limited extent or may not be available when the M1 or M2 button is activated. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Heed the settings for DSC in iDrive and react actively, if necessary. Modify your driving style and react, if necessary.

Settings

The settings for the following systems can be stored in buttons M1 or M2:

Symbol	Meaning
	"Engine": programs of M Engine Dynamics Control, refer to page 143.
	"Transmission": shift modes and Drivelogic programs. Drivelogic, refer to page 141.
	"Chassis": programs of Adaptive M suspension, refer to page 267.
	"Steering": programs of Servotronic, refer to page 216.
	"DSC": DSC Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 213, and M Dynamic Mode MDM, refer to page 214.
	"M xDrive": programs of M xDrive, refer to page 215.
	"Start/Stop": Auto Start/Stop function, refer to page 127.
	"Sound Control": Sound Control, refer to page 144.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
M1	M1
M2	M2

Buttons in the center console

SETUP SETUP

Configuration

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "M menu"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4. Select the desired setting.
5. Select the desired channel.

The individual settings are stored for the configuration currently in use.

When M1 or M2 is active, any changes to the setting are immediately applied.

Using the button

A reduced number of systems and functions can be adjusted directly.

1. "SETUP" Press the button.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2571
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

2. Turn the controller to select the desired setting.
3. Press the controller to change the desired program.

Activating

Press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:

▷ Activate M1.

▷ Activate M2.

If DSC OFF or MDM is set under "Configure M1" or "Configure M2", a message is displayed in the instrument cluster. This message is confirmed by pressing the button again.

Deactivating

Press the corresponding button on the steering wheel.

Resetting the configuration

Individual settings can be reset to default values.

1. "CAR"
2. "M menu"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4. "Reset"
5. "Yes"

To cancel resetting: "No"

Display in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Description
	Symbol lights up: corresponding configuration is activated.
	Symbol lights up and additional lettering "Cannot be activated" appears: configuration cannot be activated due to the current dynamic driving situation. Reactivate configuration when the lettering goes out.

M MODE

Concept

The driving experience can be adjusted depending on the situation using various programs.

General information

The following programs are available:

▷ "ROAD"

▷ "SPORT"

▷ With Competition Package: "TRACK"

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

M MODE M MODE

Programs

ROAD

- All Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
- All assist systems are available.

SPORT

The Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

The following systems are deactivated:

- Speed Limiter.
- Cruise control.
- Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go function ACC.
- Speed Limit Assist.
- Steering and traffic jam assistant.
- Traffic Jam Assist.
- Lane change assistant.

Activating a system will automatically switch to the program "ROAD".

With Competition Package: TRACK

The Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

In addition to the deactivated systems in the program "SPORT", the following systems are deactivated:

- Speed Limit Info with No Passing display.
- Front collision mitigation.
- Evasion Assistant.
- Rear collision preparation.
- Hazard flashing with hard braking right before standstill is deactivated.
- The Control Display is switched off.
- The radio is muted.

Selecting a channel

M MODE Press the button to switch between "ROAD" and "SPORT".

With Competition Package:

To switch to the program "TRACK", hold the button down until a message is displayed on the Control Display. Confirm the message.

Pressing the button again switches back to the program "ROAD".

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2573
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Display

The display in the instrument cluster and the display of the Head-up Display change with the selected program as follows:

Program	Display
"ROAD"	Standard View.
"SPORT"	M View: individually set widgets are displayed.
With Competition Package: "TRACK"	M View: individually set widgets are displayed. Additional lettering "TRACK" in the instrument display.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control

Concept

Within the physical limits, the system helps to keep the vehicle on a steady course by reducing drive power and by braking the individual wheels.

General information

DSC detects the following unstable driving conditions, for instance:

- Fishtailing, which can lead to oversteering.
- Loss of traction of the front wheels, which can lead to understeering.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

When driving with a roof load, for instance with roof-mounted luggage rack, the vehicle's center of gravity is higher, which increases the risk of the vehicle tipping in critical driving situations. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Do not deactivate DSC Dynamic Stability Control when driving with roof load.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

DSC OFF

Deactivating/activating DSC

General information

When DSC is deactivated, driving stability is reduced during acceleration and when driving in curves.

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

Deactivating DSC

Hold the button down until DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster and the DSC OFF indicator light is illuminated.

M xDrive appears on the Control Display. The required program can be selected.

Additional information:

M xDrive, refer to page 215.

Activating DSC

Press the button.

DSC OFF and the DSC OFF indicator light go out.

Display

In the instrument cluster

When DSC is deactivated, DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Indicator/warning lights

The indicator light lights up: DSC is deactivated.

The indicator light flashes: DSC controls the drive and braking forces.

The indicator light lights up: DSC has malfunctioned.

M Dynamic Mode MDM

Concept

M Dynamic Mode MDM makes it possible to drive on a dry roadway with high longitudinal and transverse acceleration but with limited vehicle stability.

Only in the absolute limit area does the system intervene for stabilization by reducing the engine power and by braking interventions on the wheels. In this driving condition, additional steering corrections may be necessary.

General information

When M Dynamic Mode MDM is activated, the active M xDrive program is: "4WD SPORT"

You may find it useful to briefly activate MDM under the following special circumstances:

- When driving in slush or on uncleared, snow-covered roads.
- When freeing vehicle from deep snow or driving off from loose ground.
- When driving with snow chains.

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again.

Safety information

Warning

When M Dynamic Mode is activated, stabilizing interventions are carried out only to a reduced extent. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate. Do not jerk the steering wheel in response to a warning.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

DSC OFF

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2575
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Activating/deactivating MDM

Activating MDM

Press the button.

The MDM and DSC OFF symbols in the instrument cluster light up.

Deactivating MDM

Press the button.

The MDM and DSC OFF symbols go out.

Via iDrive

It is possible to configure M Dynamic Mode MDM for buttons M1 or M2.

1. "CAR"
2. "M menu"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4. "DSC"
5. "MDM"

To activate the desired configuration with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:

▷

▷

A message appears in the instrument cluster. This message is confirmed by pressing the button again.

Display in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Description
	Symbols light up: M Dynamic Mode is activated.
	DSC indicator light also flashes: M Dynamic Mode controls the drive forces and braking forces.
	Indicator lights light up: M Dynamic Mode or DSC has failed.

M xDrive

Concept

M xDrive is the all-wheel-drive system of the vehicle. M xDrive and DSC Dynamic Stability Control work together to optimize the traction and driving dynamics. M xDrive variably distributes the drive forces to the front and rear axles as demanded by the driving situation and road surface.

General information

Three M xDrive programs are available when DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.

Programs

Program	Distribution of driving forces
"4WD"	Front and rear axles.
"4WD SPORT"	Front and rear axles. Main component, rear axle.
"2WD"	Rear axle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2576

A program is activated automatically in the following situations:

- When the drive-ready state is switched on: "4WD".
- When MDM is activated: "4WD SPORT".
- When DSC is activated: "4WD".

Selecting a channel

General information

Changing programs in dynamic driving situations is not possible.

Using the button

SETUP Press the button and select the desired program on the Control Display.

Via iDrive

It is possible to configure the required program for buttons M1 or M2.

1. "CAR"
2. "M menu"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4. Deactivate DSC, if needed.
5. "M xDrive"
6. Select the desired channel.

   The setting is immediately applied with active M1 or M2 configuration.

To activate the desired configuration with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:

- M1
- M2

Display in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Description
OFF	The indicator light is illuminated and 4WD appears in the instrument cluster: "4WD" is activated.
OFF	The indicator light is illuminated and 4WD Sport appears in the instrument cluster: "4WD SPORT" is activated.
OFF	The indicator lights are illuminated and 2WD appears in the instrument cluster: "2WD" is activated.

Active M differential

The active M differential provides for continuously variable locking of the rear axle differential depending on the driving situation. This prevents individual rear wheels from spinning even when DSC is switched off and in M Dynamic Mode, enabling optimum traction to be achieved in all driving situations.

The driver is responsible adapting his or her driving style to the situation.

Servotronic

Concept

Servotronic is a speed-dependent power steering function.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2577
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

The system provides the steering force with more support at low speeds than at higher ones. This makes it easier to park, for instance, and makes steering firmer when driving at faster speeds.

Furthermore, the steering force adapts according to the program, so that a firm, sporty feel or a comfortable steering response is conveyed.

General information

The system offers several different steering force tunings.

Program	Steering force tuning
"COMFORT"	Low steering forces, good roadway feedback.
"SPORT"	High steering forces, maximum roadway feedback.

Selecting a channel

Using the button

SETUP Press the button and select the desired program on the Control Display.

Via iDrive

It is possible to configure the required program for buttons M1 or M2.

1. "CAR"
2. "M menu"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4. "Steering"
5. Select the desired channel.

   The setting is immediately applied with active M1 or M2 configuration.

To activate the desired configuration with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:

▷ M1

▷ M2

Display in the instrument cluster

When the display of the widget in the instrument cluster for M SETUP is activated, the selected program is displayed.

Additional information:

Widgets in the instrument cluster, refer to page 147.

Driver assistance systems

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Speed Limiter

Concept

The system can be used to set a speed limit, for instance to prevent the vehicle from exceeding speed limits.

General information

The system can limit the speed, starting at a value of 20 mph/30 km/h. The vehicle can be driven at any speed below the set speed limit.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	System on/off.
	Store current speed. Speed Limit Assist: take over suggested speed manually.
	Rocker switch: Changing the speed limit.

Operation

Switching on

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The current speed is accepted as the speed limit.

If the system is switched on while the vehicle is stationary or driving at low speeds, 20 mph/30 km/h is set as the speed limit.

The marking in the speedometer is set to the corresponding speed.

When the speed limit is switched on, DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on as well, if needed.

Switching off

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The system switches off automatically in the following situations, for example:

- When the engine is switched off.
- When cruise control is switched on.
- When activating some programs.

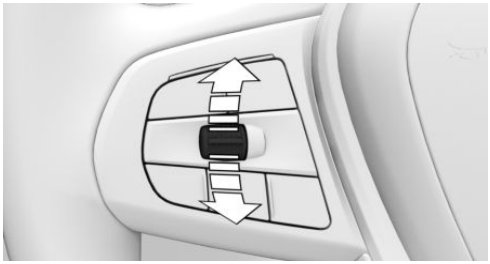
The displays go out.

Interrupting

If the reverse gear is engaged or at idle, the system is interrupted when rolling backwards.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2579
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Changing the speed limit



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed limit is set.

- Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the speed limit increases or decreases by 1 mph/1 km/h.
- Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

If the set speed limit is reached or unintentionally exceeded, such as when driving downhill, the vehicle is not actively braked.

When the speed limit is set during a trip to a value below the current speed, the vehicle coasts until it drops to the set speed limit.

The current speed can also be stored by pressing a button:

SET Press the button on the steering wheel.

Exceeding the speed limit

When the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed limit, a warning is issued.

The speed limit can be exceeded intentionally. There is no warning in this case.

Press the accelerator pedal all the way down to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit, the limit is automatically reactivated.

Warning when the speed limit is exceeded

Visual warning

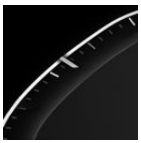
LIM If the speed limit is exceeded: the indicator light in the instrument cluster flashes while the vehicle speed is greater than the set speed limit.

Acoustic warning

- If the speed limit is exceeded unintentionally, a signal sounds.
- When the speed limit is reduced to below the vehicle speed while driving, the signal sounds after some time.
- When the speed limit is intentionally exceeded by stepping on the accelerator pedal all the way down, there is no signal.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Display in the speedometer



- Green marking: system is active.
- Grey marking: system is interrupted.
- No marking: system is switched off.

Indicator light

LIM
- The indicator light lights up: the system is switched on.
- The indicator light flashes: the set speed limit has been exceeded.

- Gray indicator light: the system has been interrupted.

Cruise control

Concept

Using this system, a desired speed can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel. The system maintains the desired speed. The system accelerates and brakes automatically as needed.

General information

The system can be activated starting at 20 mph/30 km/h.

Depending on the settings, the cruise control settings many change under certain conditions.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

The use of the system can lead to an increased risk of accidents in the following situations, for instance:

- On winding roads.
- In heavy traffic.
- On slippery roads, in fog, snow, or wet conditions, or on a loose road surface.

There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Only use the system if driving at constant speed is possible.

Warning

The desired speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Cruise control on/off.
RESUME	Continue cruise control with the last setting.
CANCEL	Pause cruise control.
SET	Store current speed. Speed Limit Assist: take over suggested speed manually.
	Rocker switch: Set speed.

Switching cruise control on/off

Switching on

Depending on the equipment version, press the relevant button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster light up and the marking on the speedometer is set to the current speed.

Cruise control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2581
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

Switching off

Depending on the equipment version, press the relevant button on the steering wheel.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

Pausing cruise control

Interrupting manually

CANCEL When active, press the button.

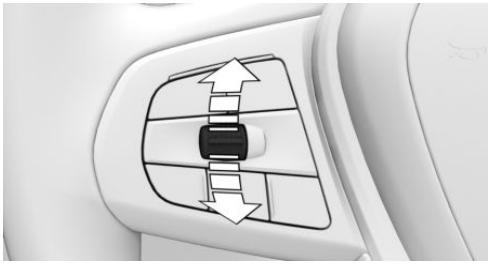
Interrupting automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations, for example:

- When the driver applies the brakes.
- When selector lever position D is disengaged.
- When M Dynamic Mode MDM is activated or DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.
- If DSC Dynamic Stability Control intervenes.

Setting the speed

Maintaining and storing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down once while the system is interrupted.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

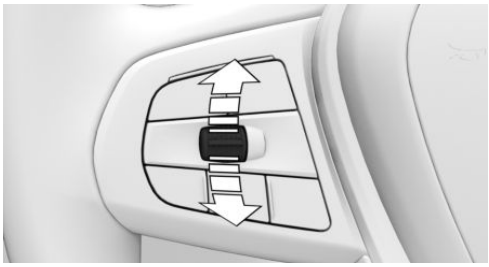
The stored speed is displayed on the speedometer.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

The speed can also be stored by pressing a button.

SET Press the button.

Changing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

- Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the desired speed increases or decreases by 1 mph/1 km/h.
- Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

  The maximum speed that can be set depends on the vehicle.
- Pressing the rocker switch to the resistance point and holding it: vehicle accelerates or decelerates without pressure on the accelerator pedal.

  After the rocker switch is released, the vehicle maintains its final speed. Pressing the switch beyond the resistance point causes the vehicle to accelerate more rapidly.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2582

Continuing cruise control

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed.

Make sure that the difference between current speed and stored speed is not too large before calling up the stored speed. Otherwise, unintentional braking or accelerating may occur.

RESUME Press the button with the system interrupted.

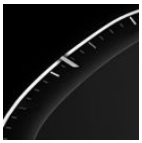
Cruise control is continued with the stored values.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- When the system is switched off.
- When drive-ready state is switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Display in the speedometer



- Green marking: system is active, the marking indicates the desired speed.
- Grey marking: system is interrupted, the marking indicates the stored speed.
- No marking: system is switched off.

Indicator light

- Indicator light green: system is active.
- Gray indicator light: the system has been interrupted.
- No indicator light: system is switched off.

Displays in the Head-up Display

Some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

The symbol is displayed when the set desired speed is reached.

Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go function ACC

Concept

Using this system, a desired speed and a distance to a vehicle ahead can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel.

The system maintains the desired speed on clear roads. The vehicle accelerates or brakes automatically.

If a vehicle is driving ahead of you, the system adjusts the speed of your vehicle so that the set distance to the vehicle ahead is maintained. The speed is adjusted as far as the given situation allows.

General information

A radar sensor is located in the front bumper and a camera on the interior mirror to detect vehicles driving ahead of you.

Depending on the settings, the cruise control settings many change under certain conditions.

The distance can be adjusted in several steps. For safety reasons, it depends on the respective speed.

If the vehicle ahead of you brakes to a halt, and then proceeds to drive again within a brief period, the system is able to detect this within the given system limits.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2583
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

The desired speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Risk of accident due to too high speed differences to other vehicles, for instance in the following situations:

- When fast approaching a slowly moving vehicle.
- Vehicle suddenly swerving into own lane.
- When fast approaching standing vehicles.

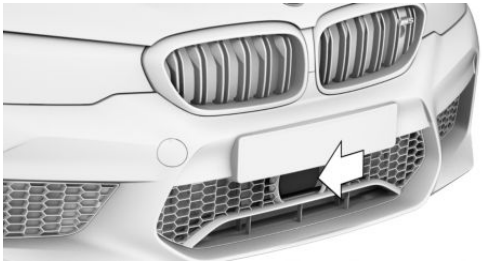
There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	With steering and traffic jam assistant: Cruise control on/off.
	With steering and traffic jam assistant: Select function.
	Without steering and traffic jam assistant: Cruise control on/off.
	Store current speed. Speed Limit Assist: take over suggested speed manually.
	With steering and traffic jam assistant: Pause cruise control. Continue cruise control with the last setting.
	Without steering and traffic jam assistant: Continue cruise control with the last setting.
	Without steering and traffic jam assistant: Pause cruise control.
	Increase the distance. Switch distance control on/off.
	Reduce distance. Switch distance control on/off.
	Rocker switch: Set speed.

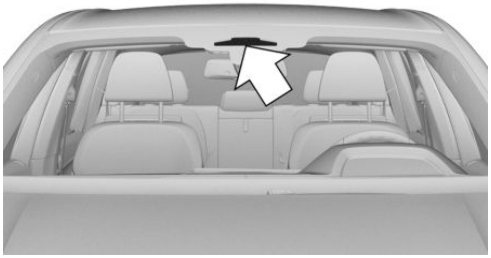
Radar sensor



The radar sensor is located in the lower area of the front bumper.

Always keep radar sensor clean and unobstructed.

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Area of application

The system is best used on well-constructed roads.

The minimum speed that can be set is 20 mph/30 km/h.

The maximum speed that can be set is limited and, e.g., depends on the vehicle and the vehicle equipment version.

The system can also be activated when stationary.

Switching on/off and interrupting cruise control

With steering and traffic jam assistant: Assisted Driving Mode

General information

This button is used to switch the configured function on and off.

MODE The button can be used to set the primarily used function.

Set function

MODE When the system is active, press the button repeatedly until the desired function is selected in the function bar. The function bar for Assisted Driving mode is displayed at the bottom of the instrument cluster.

Symbol	Function
	Cruise control with distance control.
	Depending on the equipment version, cruise control with distance control and steering and traffic jam assistant.

The selected function is shown in green.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Switching on

With steering and traffic jam assistant:

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. MODE If necessary, set the cruise control.

Without steering and traffic jam assistant:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2585
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster light up and the marking on the speedometer is set to the current speed.

Cruise control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

Switching off

To switch off the system while standing, step on brake pedal at the same time.

Press the button on the steering wheel:

With steering and traffic jam assistant.

Without steering and traffic jam assistant.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

Interrupting manually

When active, press the button on the steering wheel:

RES CANCEL With steering and traffic jam assistant.

CANCEL Without steering and traffic jam assistant.

If interrupting the system while stationary, press on the brake pedal at the same time.

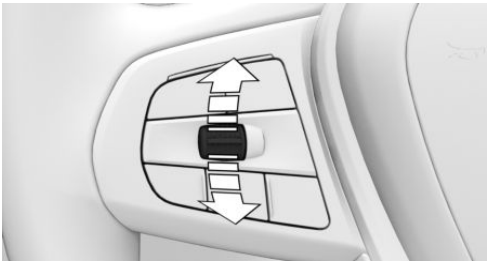
Interrupting automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations:

- When the driver applies the brakes.
- When selector lever position D is disengaged.
- When M Dynamic Mode MDM is activated or DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.
- If DSC Dynamic Stability Control intervenes.
- If the safety belt and the driver's door are opened while the vehicle is standing still.
- If the system has not detected objects for an extended period, for instance on a road with very little traffic without curb or shoulder markings.
- If the detection range of the radar is impaired, for instance by dirt or heavy fog.
- After a longer stationary period when the vehicle has been braked to a stop by the system.

Setting the speed

Maintaining and storing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down once while the system is interrupted. The system will be activated.

The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

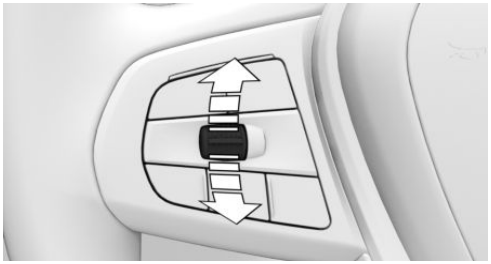
The stored speed is displayed on the speedometer.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

The speed can also be stored by pressing a button.

SET Press the button.

Changing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

- Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the desired speed increases or decreases by 1 mph/1 km/h.
- Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

Hold the rocker switch in position to repeat the action.

Adjusting the distance

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to the system limits, braking can be late. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Be aware to the traffic situation at all times. Adjust the distance to the traffic and weather conditions and maintain the prescribed safety distance, possibly by braking.

Reduce distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Instrument cluster will display selected distance.

Increase the distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Instrument cluster will display selected distance.

Automatic adaptation of the distance

Depending on the equipment and national-market version: the system can be adjusted so that the distance is automatically adjusted within the configured distance level according to the traffic situation or the ambient condition, for instance poor visibility.

The adjustment of the distance is shown in the display in the instrument cluster.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. If necessary, "Driving"
5. "Speed Limit Assistance"
6. "Adjust distance acc. to situation"

Continuing cruise control

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed.

Make sure that the difference between current speed and stored speed is not too large before calling up the stored speed. Otherwise, unintentional braking or accelerating may occur.

Press the button on the steering wheel with the system interrupted:

RES CANCEL With steering and traffic jam assistant.

RESUME Without steering and traffic jam assistant.

Cruise control is continued with the stored values.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2587
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- When the system is switched off.
- When drive-ready state is switched off.

Changing between cruise control with/without distance control

Safety information

Warning

The system does not react to traffic driving ahead of you, but instead maintains the stored speed. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions and brake as needed.

Switch mode of the cruise control

Switching cruise control without distance control off and on:

- Press and hold this button.
- Press and hold this button.

With steering and traffic jam assistant: switch on distance control:

Press the button.

Without steering and traffic jam assistant: switch on distance control:

- Press the button.
- Press the button.

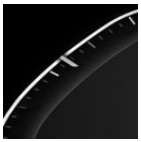
After switching, a Check Control message is displayed.

Displays in the instrument cluster

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the displays in the instrument cluster may vary.

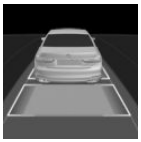
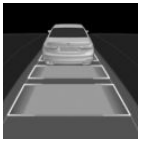
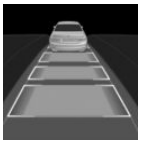
Display in the speedometer

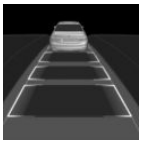


- Green marking: system is active, the marking indicates the desired speed.
- Grey marking: system is interrupted, the marking indicates the stored speed.
- No marking: system is switched off.

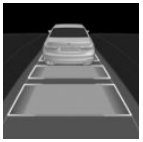
Distance to vehicle ahead of you

Selected distance to the vehicle ahead of you is shown.

Symbol	Description
	Distance 1
	Distance 2
	Distance 3

Symbol	Description
	Distance 4 This value is set automatically after the system is switched on.
	No distance control display, as the accelerator pedal is being pressed.

Detected vehicle

Symbol	Description
	Green symbol: A vehicle has been detected ahead of you.

When the distance to the detected vehicle increases, the vehicle symbol in the distance display will move away.

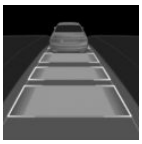
If necessary, independent drive-off, such as by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by pressing the rocker switch.

Indicator/warning lights

Symbol	Description
	Vehicle symbol white: No distance control display, as the accelerator pedal is being pressed.
	Green symbol: A vehicle has been detected ahead of you. The vehicle symbol goes out if no vehicle in front is detected. Vehicle symbol flashes green: Vehicle in front drove off.
	Gray symbol: System interrupted.
	Symbol flashes gray: The conditions are not adequate for the system to work. The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.
	Vehicle symbol flashes red and a signal sounds: Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2589
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Alternative displays

Symbol	Description
	Indicator light green: system is active. No indicator light: system is switched off.
	Vehicle symbol flashes: The conditions are not adequate for the system to work. The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.
	The vehicle symbol and distance bars flash red and an acoustic signal sounds: Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.
	System interrupted.

Displays in the Head-up Display

Desired speed

Some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

The symbol is displayed when the set desired speed is reached.

Distance information

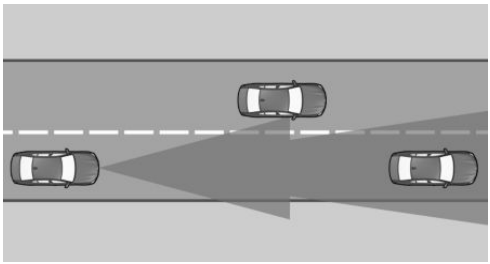
The symbol is displayed when the distance from the vehicle traveling ahead is too short.

The distance information is active in the following situations:

- Active Cruise Control switched off.
- Display in the Head-up Display selected.
  Head-Up Display, refer to page 162.
- Distance too short.
- Speed greater than approx. 40 mph/70 km/h.

System limits

Detection range



The detection capacity of the system and the automatic braking capacity are limited.

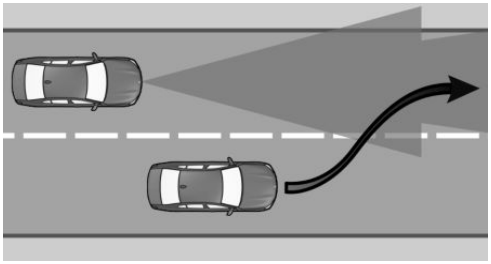
Two-wheeled vehicles for instance might not be detected.

Deceleration

The system does not decelerate in the following situations:

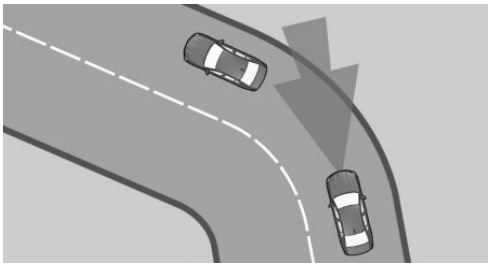
- For pedestrians or similarly slow-moving road users.
- Depending on the equipment, with red traffic lights.
- For cross traffic.
- For oncoming traffic.

Merging vehicles



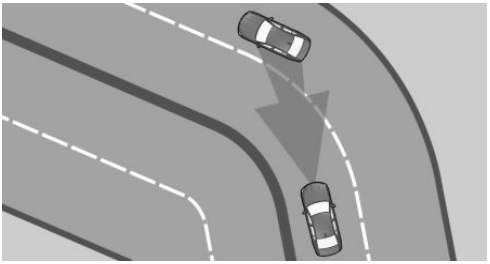
If a vehicle driving ahead of you suddenly merges into your lane, the system may not be able to automatically restore the selected distance. It may not be possible to restore the selected distance in certain situations, including if you are driving significantly faster than vehicles driving ahead of you, for instance when rapidly approaching a truck. When a vehicle driving ahead of you is reliably detected, the system requests that the driver intervene by braking and carrying out evasive maneuvers, if needed.

Cornering



When the desired speed is too high for a curve, the speed is reduced slightly. Because curves may not be anticipated in advance, drive into a curve at an appropriate speed.

The system has a limited detection range. Situations can arise in tight curves where a vehicle driving ahead will not be detected or will be detected very late.



When you approach a curve the system may briefly report vehicles in the next lane due to the bend of the curve. If the system decelerates you may compensate it by briefly accelerating. After releasing the accelerator pedal the system is reactivated and controls speed independently.

Driving off

In some situations, the vehicle cannot drive off automatically; for example:

- On steep uphill grades.
- In front of bumps in the road.

In these cases, step on the accelerator pedal.

Weather

The following restrictions can occur under unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- Poorer vehicle recognition.
- Short-term interruptions for vehicles that are already recognized.

Examples of unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- Wet conditions.
- Snowfall.
- Slush.
- Fog.
- Glare.

Drive attentively, and react to the current traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for instance by braking, steering or evading.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2591
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Malfunction

Radar sensor

The system cannot be activated if the radar sensor is not aligned correctly. This may be caused by damage incurred, for instance during parking.

A Check Control message is displayed if the system fails.

Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

The system may be impaired when the detection range of the radar sensor is partially covered such as by the license plate holder.

Camera

The function for detecting and responding when approaching stationary vehicles may be limited in the following situations:

- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- If the camera is malfunctioning or dirty. A Check Control message is displayed.

Speed Limit Assist

Concept

When the systems in the vehicle, e.g., Speed Limit Info, detect a change of the speed limit, this new speed value can be applied for the following systems:

- Speed Limiter.
- Cruise control.
- Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go function ACC.

The speed value is suggested as the new desired speed to be applied. To apply the speed value, the corresponding system must be activated.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

The desired speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
SET	Apply suggested speed manually.
	Rocker switch: Set speed, refer to Cruise Control.

Switching on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. If necessary, "Driving"
5. "Speed Limit Assistance"
6. "Speed limits"
7. Select the desired setting:
   - "Adjust manually": detected speed limit can be applied manually.

- ▷ "Show anticipation": detected speed limits are displayed in the instrument cluster without being applied.
- ▷ "Off": Speed Limit Assist will be switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster

A message is indicated in the instrument cluster when the system and cruise control are activated.

Symbol	Function
ASSIST	Depending on the equipment version, the indicator light illuminates green, together with the symbol for a cruise control system: Speed Limit Assist is active and detected speed limits can be applied manually for the displayed system.
75 mph	Detected change of a speed limit with immediate effect.
SET	Indicator light illuminates green: the detected speed limit can be applied with the SET button. After it has been applied, a green checkmark is displayed.

Manual adoption

A detected speed limit can be applied to cruise control manually.

SET When the SET icon lights up, press the button.

Adapt to route

Concept

The system can be configured so that the vehicle adapts the speed automatically to the route.

For instance, the speed will be reduced in the following situations, if necessary:

- ▷ Before making turns.
- ▷ Before a traffic circle.
- ▷ Before a curve.

Adjustment

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. If necessary, "Driving"
5. "Speed Limit Assistance"
6. "Adjust to route"

System limits

Speed Limit Assist is based on the Speed Limit Info system.

Consider the system limits of Speed Limit Info.

Upcoming speed limits can only be applied for the Active Cruise Control ACC.

The system may not respond at all or with limitations to the route when the navigation system is unable to clearly identify the position of the vehicle.

Additional information:

System limits of Speed Limit Information, refer to page 159.

Steering assistant

Concept

The system assists the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane. For this purpose, the system executes supporting steering movements, for instance when driving in a curve.

General information

The system determines the position of the lane markings and the vehicle driving ahead using five radar sensors and a camera.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2593
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Depending on the speed, the system orients itself according to the lane markings or vehicles in front.

Sensors on the steering wheel detect whether the steering wheel is being touched.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

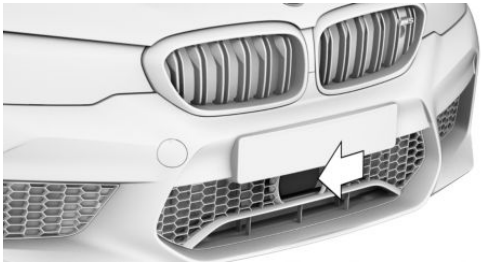
Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Steering and traffic jam assistant on/off.
	Switch function on.

Radar sensors

The radar sensors are located in the bumpers.



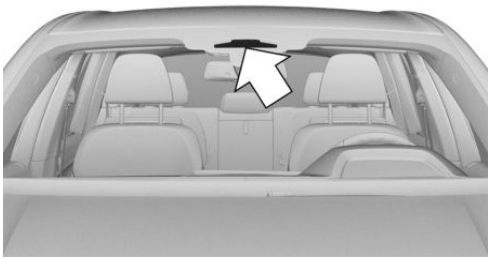
Front center bumper.

Front side bumper.

Rear bumper.

Always keep the bumper in the area of the radar sensors clean and unobstructed.

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Functional requirements

- Speed below 130 mph/210 km/h.
- Sufficient lane width.

- Above approx. 43 mph, 70 km/h: lane marking on both sides is detected.
- Below approx. 43 mph, 70 km/h: lane marking on both sides or a vehicle driving ahead is detected.
- Hands on the steering wheel rim.
- Wide curves.
- Drive in the center of the lane.
- Turn signal switched off.
- The sensor system calibration process is complete.
- Cruise control with distance control active.
- Safety belt on the driver's side fastened.
- Approach Control Warning active.
- Pedestrian Warning active.
- Side Collision Warning active.

Switching on/off

Assisted Driving Mode

General information

This button is used to switch the configured function on and off.

The button can be used to set the primarily used function.

Set function

When the system is active, press the button repeatedly until the desired function is selected in the function bar. The function bar for Assisted Driving mode is displayed at the bottom of the instrument cluster.

Symbol	Function
	Cruise control with distance control.
	Depending on the equipment version, cruise control with distance control and steering and traffic jam assistant.

The selected function is shown in green.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Switching on

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2.

Adjust the steering and traffic jam assistant if necessary.

Steering wheel symbol lights up gray.

The system is on standby and does not manipulate steering.

System activates automatically as soon as all function conditions are fulfilled.

Steering wheel symbol lights up green.

The system is active.

With the system switched on, the person warning with City braking function and the side collision mitigation are active.

Switching off

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator goes out.

The system does not perform supportive steering wheel movements.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2595
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Interrupting automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations, for example:

- At a speed above 130 mph/210 km/h.
- When the steering wheel is released.
- When the driver applies the brakes.
- When you manipulate steering.
- When leaving own lane.
- When the turn signal is switched on.
- When the lane is too narrow.
- If for a particular time no lane marking is detected and there is no vehicle driving in front.
- When Active Cruise Control ACC is interrupted.
- If the safety belt on the driver's side is unfastened.

Steering wheel symbol lights up gray.

The system is on standby and does not manipulate steering.

System activates automatically as soon as all function conditions are fulfilled.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Description
	Gray steering wheel symbol: The system is on standby.
	Green steering wheel symbol: The system is activated. The system supports the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane.
	Yellow flashing steering wheel symbol: Lane marking driven over. The steering wheel vibrates where applicable.
	Yellow steering wheel symbol and a signal sounds, if applicable: System interruption is imminent.
	Steering wheel symbol flashes red, signal sounds: System is switching off.
	Yellow steering wheel symbol: The hands are not grasping the steering wheel. The system is still active.
	Red steering wheel symbol and a signal sounds: The hands are not grasping the steering wheel. System interruption is imminent. The system reduces the speed to a standstill if applicable. It is possible that the system will not execute any supporting steering movements.

Alternative displays

Depending on the equipment version, the displays in the instrument cluster may vary and are displayed as follows:

Symbol	Description
	Gray steering wheel symbol: The system is on standby.
	Green steering wheel symbol: The system is activated.
	Depending on equipment, yellow flashing steering wheel symbol: Lane marking driven over. The steering wheel vibrates where applicable.

Symbol	Description
	Yellow steering wheel symbol and a signal sounds, if applicable: System interruption is imminent.
	Depending on equipment, steering wheel symbol flashes red, signal sounds: System is switching off.
	Green steering wheel symbol and lane marking symbol: The system supports the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane.
	Yellow steering wheel symbol: The hands are not grasping the steering wheel. The system is still active.
	Red steering wheel symbol and a signal sounds: The hands are not grasping the steering wheel. System interruption is imminent. It is possible that the system will not execute any supporting steering movements. With Active Cruise Control, the system may reduce the speed.

Displays on the steering wheel

The two LED lights above the buttons illuminate analogously to the displays in the instrument cluster:

- Yellow: system interruption is imminent.
- Red: system will be deactivated.

The steering wheel displays can be switched on/off if required.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Steering Wheel Feedback"
5. "Light elements"

Displays in the Head-up Display

All system information can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

System limits

General information

The system cannot be activated or meaningfully used in certain situations.

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2597
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Hands on the steering wheel

The sensors cannot detect hand-steering wheel contact in the following situations:

- Driving with gloves.
- Protective covers on the steering wheel.

Narrow lanes

When driving within narrow lanes, the system cannot be activated or effectively used, for instance in the following situations:

- In construction areas.
- Depending on the equipment, with automatic formation of emergency lanes.
- Within city limits.

Weather

The following restrictions can occur under unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- Poorer recognition of vehicles and lane markings.
- Short-term interruptions for vehicles that are already recognized.

Examples of unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- Wet conditions.
- Snowfall.
- Slush.
- Fog.
- Glare.

Drive attentively, and react to the current traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for instance by braking, steering or evading.

Driver Attention Camera

Always monitor the traffic conditions.

The Driver Attention Camera detects whether or not the driver is paying attention to the traffic conditions.

The Driver Attention Camera may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- When the Driver Attention Camera is covered by the steering wheel rim.
- When the driver is wearing infrared impermeable sunglasses.

Extended Traffic Jam Assistant

Concept

Extended Traffic Jam Assistant supports the driver with vehicle control in traffic jam situations.

Steering support takes place without the driver actively steering.

General information

The system uses the sensors of the steering and lane control assistant.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

State laws differ and the use of this function may violate the law. Before use, check your state and local laws.

Additionally, the notices for the Steering and Lane Control Assistant apply.

Additional information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, refer to page 232.

Functional requirements

- The functional requirements of the steering and traffic jam assistant are fulfilled.

  Functional requirements, refer to page 233.
- The steering and traffic jam assistant is active.
- The function is only available on certain street types, e.g. freeways.
- Driving on a road without pedestrians or cyclists.
- Sufficient lane width.
- Lane markings and a vehicle driving ahead are detected.
- Speed less than approx. 40 mph/60 km/h.
- The Driver Attention Camera in the instrument cluster detects that the driver is paying attention to the traffic.
- When traveling to countries outside of the country of origin of the vehicle, Extended Traffic Jam Assistant must be available in the respective country.

Switching on

As soon as all functional requirements are met, Extended Traffic Jam Assistant will be displayed as an additional symbol in the function bar. The toolbar is displayed at the bottom of the instrument cluster.

Select Extended Traffic Jam Assistant with the button on the steering wheel.

The symbol for Extended Traffic Jam Assistant is shown in green.

Two green LED lights are illuminated on the steering wheel.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is shown in green.

The system begins to assist the driver with vehicle control.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Description
	Indicator light green: system is active.
	Indicator light white: system is ready.
	Gray indicator light: the system has been interrupted.

Alternative displays

Depending on the equipment version, the displays in the instrument cluster may vary and are displayed as follows:

Indicator light	Description
	Indicator light green: system is active.

Displays on the steering wheel

The two LED lights above the buttons illuminate analogously to the displays in the instrument cluster:

- Green: the system is active.
- Yellow: system will be interrupted.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2599
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

▷ Red: system will be deactivated.

System limits

The limits of the Steering and Lane Control Assistant system apply.

Depending on the equipment version: Automatic Lane Change Assistant

Concept

The system additionally supports the driver when changing lanes on multilane roads.

General information

The system uses the sensors of the steering and lane control assistant.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Additionally, the notices for the Steering and Lane Control Assistant apply.

Additional information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, refer to page 232.

Functional requirements

▷ The functional requirements of the steering and traffic jam assistant are fulfilled.

Functional requirements, refer to page 233.

▷ Driving on a road without pedestrians or cyclists and with physical barriers to oncoming traffic, such as crash barriers.

▷ Lane markings have been detected.

▷ Maximum speed approx. 110 mph, 180 km/h.

▷ The minimum speed is country-specific.

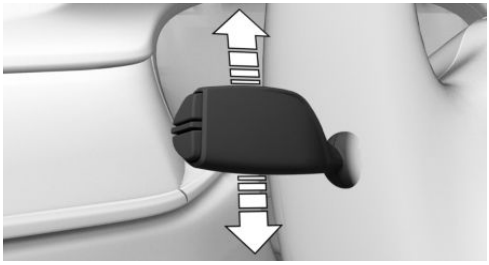
Switch lane change assist on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. If necessary, "Driving"
5. "Steering Assistance"
6. "Automatic Lane Change"

Changing lanes

1. Ensure that the traffic situation permits changing lanes.
2. Press the turn indicator lever in the required direction to the pressure point for signaling briefly.

   Steering support in the required direction can be detected a short time later.



After the lane change, the system helps keep the vehicle in the new lane.

Canceling a lane change

The lane change can be canceled by steering movement into the opposite direction.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Description
	Green steering wheel symbol. Green arrow symbol for lane-changing. The system carries out a lane change.
	Green steering wheel symbol. Gray line for lane marking on the appropriate side. The system detected the lane change request. Lane change not currently possible.
	Depending on country specifications: Green steering wheel symbol. Gray arrow symbol for lane-changing. Lane change not possible; functional requirements not met.

Alternative displays

Depending on the equipment version, the displays in the instrument cluster may vary and are displayed as follows:

Symbol	Description
	Green steering wheel symbol. Gray line for lane marking on the appropriate side. Green arrow symbol for lane-changing. The system carries out a lane change.
	Green steering wheel symbol. Gray line for lane marking on the appropriate side. No arrow symbol for lane-changing on the display. The system detected the lane change request. Lane change not currently possible.
	Depending on country specifications: Green steering wheel symbol. Gray line for lane marking on the appropriate side. Gray arrow symbol for lane-changing. Lane change not possible; functional requirements not met.

System limits

The limits of the Steering and Lane Control Assistant system apply.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2601
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Depending on the equipment version: lane change with active guidance

Concept

The system assists the driver when lane changes are necessary to reach a navigation destination.

General information

The system uses the sensors of the steering and lane control assistant.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Additionally, the notices for the Active Cruise Control and the Steering and Lane Control Assistant apply.

Additional information:

Active Cruise Control, refer to page 222.

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, refer to page 232.

Functional requirements

- Active Cruise Control is activated.
- Driving on a highway or highway-like road.
- Lane markings on the side of the desired lane change detected.
- Navigation system: guidance is activated.
- Adaptation to route details is activated.
- The function must be available in the country in which the vehicle is driven.

Changing lanes

1. One or more lane changes are required to reach a navigation destination.

   The system prepares for this lane change. For this purpose, the system determines a suitable opening in the traffic flow on the next lane.
2. When a gap is detected, the speed is adapted so that the vehicle remains at the level of the opening.
3. A Check Control message indicates a lane change suggestion.
4. When the traffic situation permits a lane change, the driver can steer the vehicle into the next lane.

   When equipped with Automatic Lane Change Assistant: after the Check Control message has been displayed, a lane change can be initiated by operating the turn signal.

Display in the instrument cluster

The suggestion for the lane change is displayed and a green checkmark indicates the active function.

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, the traffic situation is displayed in the Assisted Driving View of the instrument cluster.

More information: Assisted Driving View, refer to page 146.

Activate adaptation to route details

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. If necessary, "Driving"

5. "Speed Limit Assistance"
6. "Adjust to route"

System limits

The limits of the Active Cruise Control and Steering and Lane Control Assistant systems apply.

PDC Park Distance Control

Concept

PDC is a support when parking. Objects that you are approaching slowly in front of or behind the vehicle are indicated by signal tones and a display on the Control Display.

Depending on the equipment version: obstacles at the side of the vehicle that are detected by the side ultrasonic sensors may also be reported by the side parking aid.

General information

The ultrasound sensors for distance measurements are located in the bumpers and possibly on the sides of the vehicle.

The range, depending on obstacles and environmental conditions, is approx. 6 ft/2 m.

An acoustic warning sounds in case of an impending collision at a distance to the object of approx. 27 in/70 cm.

For objects behind the vehicle, the acoustic warning is already issued at a distance to the object of approx. 5 ft/1.50 m.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

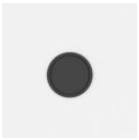
Due to high speeds when PDC Park Distance Control is activated, the warning can be delayed due to physical circumstances. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Avoid approaching an object too fast. Avoid driving off fast while PDC Park Distance Control is not yet active.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Ultrasound sensors



Ultrasound sensors of the PDC, for instance in the bumpers.

Functional requirements

- Do not cover sensors, for instance with stickers, bicycle racks or similar.
- Keep the sensors clean and free of ice.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2603
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system switches on automatically in the following situations:

- If selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.
- Depending on the equipment version: while approaching detected obstacles if the speed is slower than approx. 2.5 mph/4 km/h. The activation distance depends on the situation in question.

You may switch automatic activation when obstacles are detected on and off.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. If necessary, "Automatic PDC Activation"
6. "Automatic PDC Activation"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Depending on equipment, an additional camera view is also switched on.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on, if needed.

Switching on/off manually

Press the park assistance button.

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

The rearview camera image is displayed if the reverse gear is engaged when pressing the park assistance button.

Depending on the equipment version, the system cannot be switched off manually if the reverse gear is engaged.

Warning

Signal tones

General information

An intermittent tone indicates when the vehicle is approaching an object. E.g., when an object is detected to the left rear of the vehicle, a signal tone sounds from the left rear speaker.

The shorter the distance to the object, the shorter the intervals.

When the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 8 in/20 cm, a continuous tone is sounded.

When there are objects in front of and behind the vehicle at the same time, with a distance smaller than approx. 8 in/20 cm, an alternating constant tone will sound.

The intermittent tone and constant tone are switched off if the selector lever position P is engaged.

The intermittent tone is switched off after a short time when the vehicle is stationary.

Volume

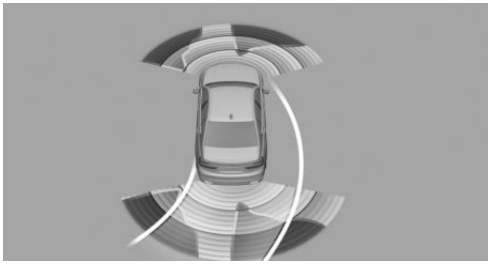
The PDC signal tone volume can be adjusted.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. "Volume PDC signal"
6. Set the desired value.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2604
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Visual warning



The approach of the vehicle to an object is shown on the Control Display. Objects that are farther away are already displayed on the Control Display before a signal sounds.

The display appears as soon as PDC is activated.

The range of the sensors is represented in the colors green, yellow and red when obstacles are detected.

Lanes are faded in for better estimation of the required space.

When the image of the rearview camera is displayed, the switch can be made to PDC or to a different view with obstacle markings as needed:

1. Press the Controller to the left, if needed.
2. For instance "Park. sensors only"

Cross traffic warning: depending on the equipment, it is warned in the PDC display against vehicles approaching in the front or rear from the side.

Additional information:

Cross traffic warning, refer to page 264.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Limits of ultrasonic measurement

The detection of objects with ultrasonic measurements can run into physical limits, e.g., in the following situations:

- For small children and animals.
- For persons with certain clothing, for instance coats.
- With external interference of the ultrasound, for instance from passing vehicles or loud machines.
- When sensors are dirty, iced over, damaged or out of position.
- Under certain weather conditions, e.g., high relative humidity, wet conditions, snowfall, cold, extreme heat, or strong wind.
- With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.
- With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- With moving objects.
- With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges.
- With objects with corners, edges, and smooth surfaces.
- With objects with a fine surface structure such as fences.
- For objects with porous surfaces.
- With small and low objects, for instance boxes.
- With obstacles and persons at the edge of the lane.
- With soft obstacles or obstacles covered in foam material.
- With plants and bushes.
- Low objects already displayed, for instance curbs, can move into the blind area of the

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2605
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.

- Cargo that extends beyond the perimeter of the vehicle is not taken into account by the system.

False warnings

The system may issue a warning under the following conditions even though there is no obstacle within the detection range:

- In heavy rain.
- When sensors are very dirty or covered with ice.
- When sensors are covered in snow.
- On rough road surfaces.
- On uneven surfaces, such as speed bumps.
- In large buildings with right angles and smooth walls, for instance in underground garages.
- In automatic car washes.
- Due to heavy exhaust.
- Due to other ultrasound sources, for instance sweeping machines, high pressure steam cleaners or neon lights.

To prevent false alarms, switch off automatic Park Distance Control PDC activation on obstacle detection, for instance in automatic car washes.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

White symbol is displayed, and the range of the sensors is dimmed on the Control Display.

PDC Park Distance Control has failed. Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Depending on equipment version: emergency brake function, Active PDC

Concept

The emergency braking function of PDC initiates an emergency braking in case of acute risk of collision.

General information

This function may not be available. Contact your authorized dealer's service center or another qualified service center as to whether this additional function is currently in your vehicle or when it can be installed in your vehicle in the future.

Due to system limits, a collision cannot be prevented under all circumstances.

The function is available below walking speed when driving in reverse or rolling backward.

A press of the accelerator pedal interrupts the brake intervention.

After emergency braking to a stop, further creeping toward an obstacle is possible. Proceed with caution. To move forward, lightly press the accelerator pedal and release as needed.

If the accelerator pedal is depressed longer, the vehicle drives off. Manual braking is possible at any time.

The system uses the ultrasonic sensors of the Park Distance Control PDC and the Parking Assistant.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2606
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Additionally, the Safety Instructions for the PDC Park Distance Control and the Automatic Parking Assistant apply.

Additional information:

- PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 242.
- Parking assistant, refer to page 257.

Temporary switching off

The emergency brake function can be switched off temporarily:

Confirm the message on the Control Display.

During continued driving in this surrounding situation, no further emergency braking will occur.

Settings

It is possible to set which areas on the vehicle will be protected by the system.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. "Active PDC with braking interv."
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

System limits

The limits of the systems of the Park Distance Control PDC and the Parking Assistant apply.

If required, deactivate the system via iDrive where applicable.

With Parking Assistant: side parking aid

Concept

The system warns of obstacles on the side of the vehicle.

General information

The system uses the ultrasonic sensors of the Park Distance Control PDC and the Parking Assistant.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

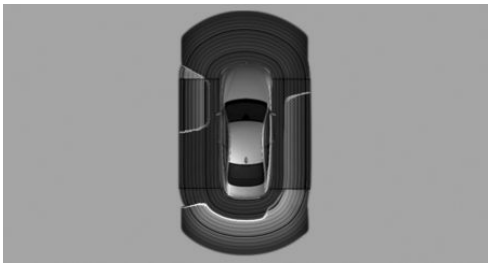
Additionally, the Safety Instructions for the PDC Park Distance Control and the Automatic Parking Assistant apply.

Additional information:

- PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 242.
- Parking assistant, refer to page 257.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2607
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Display



To protect the sides of the vehicle, obstacle markings are displayed on the sides of the vehicle.

- Color markings: warning against detected obstacles.
- Gray markings, hatched area: no obstacles were detected.
- No markings, black area: the area next to the vehicle was not yet captured.

Limits of the side parking aid

The system only displays stationary obstacles that were previously detected by sensors while passing them.

The system does not detect whether an obstacle moves later on. If the vehicle is stationary, the markings are shown in black after a certain time. The area next to the vehicle must be newly captured.

Additionally, the limits of the systems of the Park Distance Control PDC and the Parking Assistant apply.

Without Surround View: rearview camera

Concept

The rearview camera provides assistance in parking and maneuvering backwards. The area behind the vehicle is shown on the Control Display.

Additionally, assistance functions can be shown in the display, e.g., help lines.

Safety information

Warning

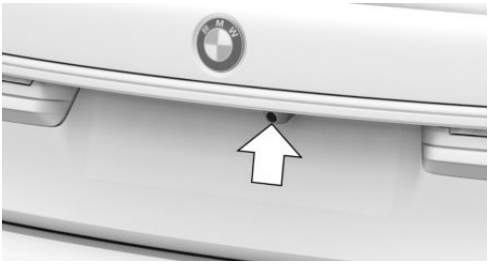
The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Depending on the vehicle equipment: button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Camera



The camera lens is located in the handle of the trunk lid.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2608

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

The image quality may be impaired by dirt. If necessary, clean the camera lens.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is switched on automatically if selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on, if needed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment: switching on/off manually

Press the park assistance button.

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

The parking assistance functions are shown on the Control Display.

Switching the view via iDrive

If the rearview camera view is not displayed, change the view via iDrive:

1. If necessary, tilt the controller to the side.
2. "Rear view camera"

The rearview camera image is displayed.

Functional requirements

- The trunk lid is fully closed.
- Keep the recording range of the camera open. Protruding cargo or carrier systems and trailers that are not connected to a trailer power socket can restrict the visibility range of the camera.

Display on the Control Display

Function bars

The assistance functions can be activated manually via the function bars on the sides of the Control Display.

1. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.
2. With corresponding equipment: "Camera image"
3. "Parking aid lines".

   Pathway lines and turning radius lines are displayed.

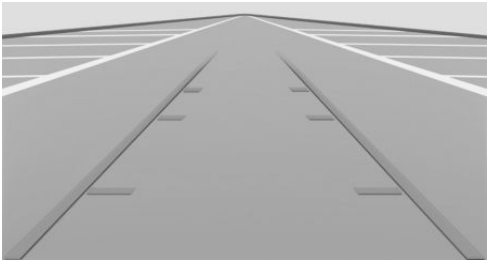
   "Obstacle mark.".

   Depending on the vehicle equipment, the obstacles detected by PDC Park Distance Control are displayed by markings.

More than one assistance function can be active at the same time.

Parking aid lines

Pathway lines

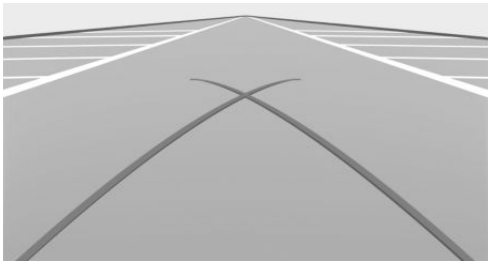


Pathway lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.

Pathway lines depend on the steering angle and are continuously adjusted to the steering wheel movements.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2609
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Turning radius lines



Turning radius lines can only be superimposed on the camera image together with pathway lines.

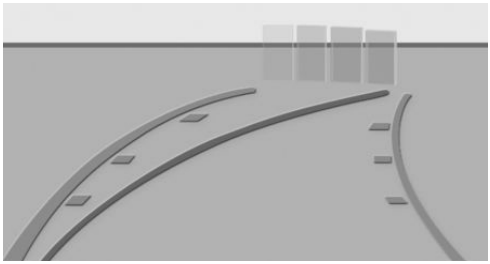
Turning radius lines show the course of the smallest possible turning radius on a level road.

Only one turning radius line is displayed after the steering wheel is turned past a certain angle.

Parking using pathway and turning radius lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the red turning radius line leads to within the limits of the parking space.
2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the green pathway line covers the corresponding turning radius line.

Obstacle marking



Depending on the vehicle equipment, obstacles behind the vehicle are detected by the PDC Park Distance Control sensors.

Obstacle markings can be faded into the image of the rearview camera.

The colored thresholds of the obstacle markings match the markings of the PDC Park Distance Control.

Setting brightness and contrast via iDrive

With the rearview camera switched on:

1. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.
2. "Camera image"
3. To perform the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Brightness"
   - ▷ "Contrast"

System limits

Deactivated camera

When the camera is deactivated, for instance when the trunk lid is open, the camera image is displayed hatched in gray.

Detection of objects

Very low obstacles as well as high, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected by the system.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, some assistance functions also consider data from the PDC Park Distance Control.

Follow the notes in the PDC Park Distance Control chapter.

The objects displayed on the Control Display may be closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance from the objects on the display.

With Parking Assistant Plus: Surround View

Concept

The system provides assistance in parking and maneuvering. The area around the vehicle is shown on the Control Display.

General information

Several cameras capture the area from different selectable perspectives.

The following camera perspectives can be displayed:

- Automatic camera perspective: the system shows the camera perspective suitable for the respective driving situation.
- Rearview camera: for representing the areas behind the vehicle.
- Right-hand and left-hand side view: for representing the areas on the sides of the vehicle.
- Unobstructed camera perspective, movable via iDrive.
- Panorama View: to present cross traffic, for instance at junctions and driveways, depending on the currently engaged gear.

Depending on the view, the vehicle's surroundings or a part of it is depicted.

Additionally, assistance functions are shown in the display, e.g., help lines.

More than one assistance function can be active at the same time.

Some assistance functions can be manually activated.

The following assistance functions are automatically displayed:

- Side parking aid.
- Door opening angle.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

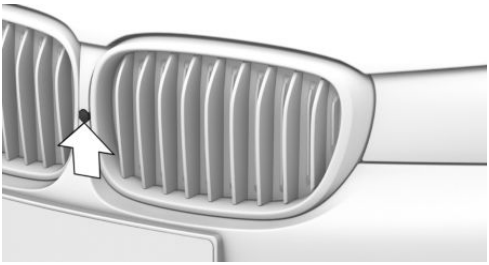
Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

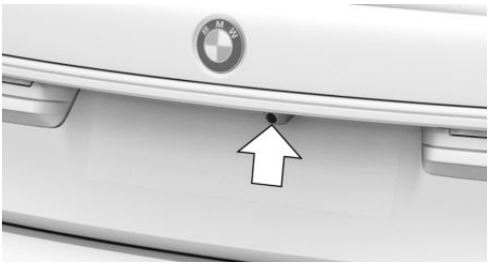
Park assistance button

Panorama View

Cameras

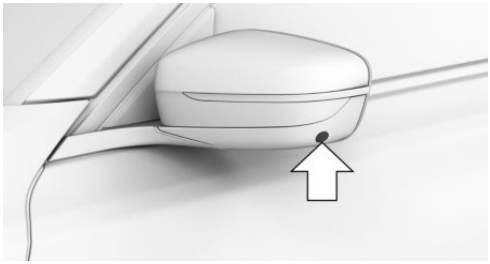


Front camera



Rearview camera

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2611
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20



One camera is located at the bottom of each exterior mirror housing.

The image quality may be impaired by dirt on the camera lenses. If required, clean the camera lenses.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is switched on automatically if selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.

The camera perspective suitable for the respective driving situation is displayed.

Additional information:

Switching on/off, refer to page 243.

Switching on/off manually

Press the park assistance button.

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

The rearview camera cannot be switched off if the reverse gear is engaged.

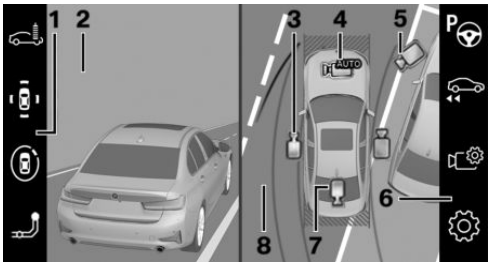
Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on, if needed.

Display on the Control Display

Overview



1 Function bar, left
2 Camera image
3 Side view
4 Automatic camera perspective
5 Movable unobstructed camera perspective
6 Function bar, right
7 Rearview camera
8 Selection window

Function bar on the left

The left function bar can be used for the direct selection of various views via iDrive. Move the Controller to the left, if needed.

- "Car wash".
- "Parking": around the vehicle.
- "3D view": available camera.

Side view

The side view can be selected for the right or left vehicle side.

This view helps when positioning the vehicle at the curb or with other obstacles on the side by displaying the side surroundings.

The side view looks from rear to front and in case of danger, focuses automatically on possible obstacles.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2612
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Automatic camera perspective

The automatic camera perspective shows a steering-dependent view in the respective driving direction.

This perspective adapts to the respective driving situation.

As soon as obstacles are detected, the view changes to a fixed display of the area in front or at the rear behind the bumper or, if necessary, changes to a side view.

When reverse gear is engaged, the automatic camera perspective is closed and the system uses a fixed perspective of the rearview camera. If necessary, manually select the automatic camera perspective when reverse gear is engaged. The automatic camera perspective will be retained for the current parking maneuver.

Movable unobstructed camera perspective

With selection of the movable camera perspective, a circle appears on the Control Display.

By turning the Controller or via touch function, specified perspectives on the circle can be selected.

The current perspective is marked with a camera symbol.

To leave the function, move the Controller sideways and select another camera function.

Function bar on the right

Assistance functions can be activated and settings can be entered via the right function bar via iDrive. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.

- "Autom. Parking".
- "Back-up Assistant".
- "Camera image":
  - "Brightness".
  - "Contrast".
  - "Parking aid lines".
  - "Obstacle mark.".
- "Settings": apply settings, for instance to use the activation points for Panorama View.

Rearview camera

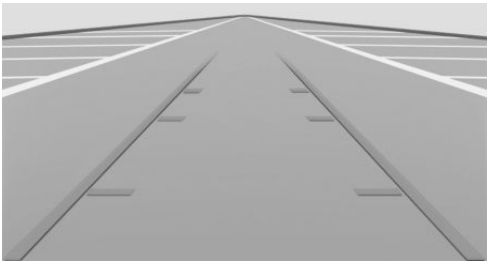
This view shows the picture of the rearview camera.

Selection window

The individual camera perspectives can be selected in the selection window via iDrive.

Parking aid lines

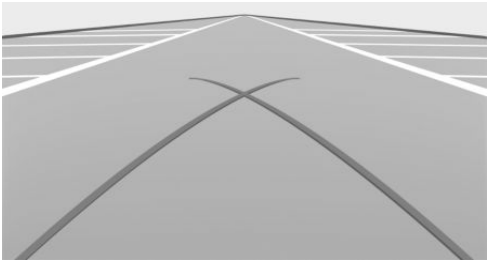
Pathway lines



Pathway lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.

Pathway lines depend on the steering angle and are continuously adjusted to the steering wheel movements.

Turning radius lines



Turning radius lines can only be superimposed on the camera image together with pathway lines.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2613
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

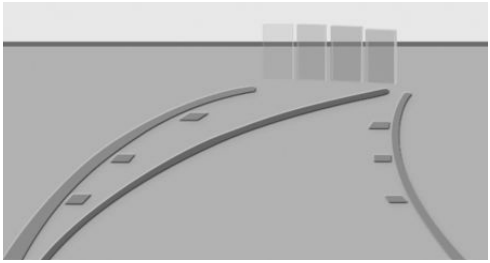
Turning radius lines show the course of the smallest possible turning radius on a level road.

Only one turning radius line is displayed after the steering wheel is turned past a certain angle.

Parking using pathway and turning radius lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the red turning radius line leads to within the limits of the parking space.
2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the green pathway line covers the corresponding turning radius line.

Obstacle marking

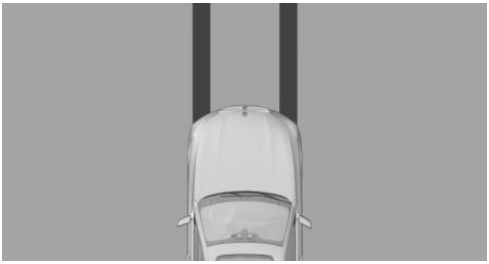


Obstacles behind the vehicle are detected by the PDC Park Distance Control sensors.

Obstacle markings can be shown in the camera image.

The colored thresholds of the obstacle markings match the markings of the PDC Park Distance Control.

Car wash view



The car wash view assists when entering a car wash by displaying the floor and the vehicle's own track.

Side parking aid

Concept

The system warns of obstacles on the side of the vehicle.

Display

To protect the sides of the vehicle, obstacle markings are displayed on the sides of the vehicle.

- ▷ No markings: no obstacles were detected.
- ▷ Color markings: warning against detected obstacles.

Limits of the side parking aid

The system only displays stationary obstacles that were previously detected by sensors while passing them.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2614

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

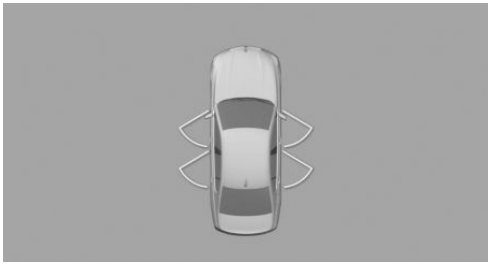
The system does not detect whether an obstacle moves later on. For this reason, at standstill, the markings are not shown anymore in the display after a certain time. The area next to the vehicle must be newly captured.

Door opening angle

Concept

If obstacle marking is activated, the system indicates fixed obstacles that obstruct the opening angles of the doors.

The system does not provide a warning of approaching traffic.



The maximum opening angle of the doors is displayed in selector lever position P.

As soon as the vehicle begins moving, the opening angles are replaced by parking aid lines.

Limits of the display

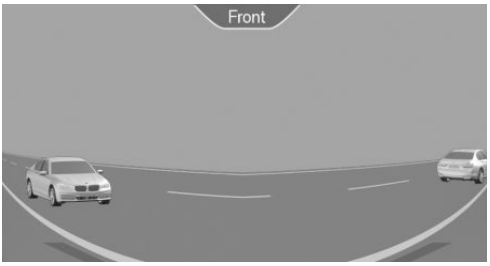
The vehicle's surroundings are displayed with distorted image for technical reasons.

Even if the symbols for the door opening angles do not cross other objects on the Control Display, the following needs to be noted when parking next to other objects:

Because of the perspective, higher, protruding objects may be closer than they appear on the Control Display.

Panorama View

Concept



The system provides an early look at cross traffic at blind driveways and intersections.

General information

Road users concealed by obstacles to the left and right of the vehicle can only be detected relatively late from the driver's seat. The cameras in the front and rear capture the sideways traffic area to improve the view.

Yellow lines in the screen display mark the front and rear end of the vehicle.

The camera image shows different levels of distortion in some areas and is thus not suitable for distance estimations.

Depending on the equipment version, the function can only be used when driving forward.

Display on the Control Display

Press the button when the engine is running.

Depending on the driving direction, the image of the respective camera is displayed:

- "Front": front camera image.
- "Rear": rear camera image.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, cross traffic warning can additionally warn of approaching vehicles using radar sensors.

Additional information:

Cross traffic warning, refer to page 264.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2615
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

With navigation system: activation points

Concept

Positions where Panorama View should switch on automatically can be stored as activation points provided that a GPS signal is received.

General information

Up to ten activation points can be stored.

Activation points can be used when driving forward for the front camera.

Storing activation points

1. Drive to the position at which the system is to be switched on, and stop.
2. Press the button.
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Activation point"

   The current position is displayed.
5. "Save activation point"

Activation points are, if possible, stored with town/city and street address, or else with the GPS coordinates.

Using activation points

The use of activation points can be switched on and off.

1. Press the button.
2. Move the Controller to the right.
3. "Settings"
4. "Panorama View, GPS-based"
5. "Panorama View is displayed automatically when set activation points are reached."

Displaying activation points

1. Press the button.
2. Move the Controller to the right.
3. "Manage points"

   A list of all activation points is displayed.

Renaming or deleting activation points

1. Press the button.
2. Move the Controller to the right.
3. "Manage points"

   A list of all activation points is displayed.
4. Select an activation point as needed.
5. To perform the desired setting:
   - "Rename"
   - "Delete activation point"
   - "Delete all activation points"

Setting brightness and contrast

Brightness and contrast can be adjusted with Surround View or Panorama View switched on.

1. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.
2. "Camera image"
3. To perform the desired setting:
   - "Brightness"
   - "Contrast"

Functional limitations

The system can be used only to a limited extent in the following situations:

- In poor light.
- In case of soiled cameras.
- With a door open.
- With the trunk lid open.
- With exterior mirrors folded in.

Gray hatched areas with symbol, for instance open door, in the camera image mark areas that are currently not displayed.

System limits

Non-visible areas

Because of the camera angle, the areas under the vehicle cannot be viewed by the cameras.

Detection of objects

Very low obstacles as well as high, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected by the system.

Some assistance functions also consider data from the PDC Park Distance Control.

Follow the notes in the PDC Park Distance Control chapter.

The objects displayed on the Control Display may be closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance from the objects on the display.

Additional information:

PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 242.

Malfunction

A camera malfunction is displayed on the Control Display.

A yellow symbol is displayed and the recording range of the malfunctioning camera is displayed in black on the Control Display.

With Parking Assistant Plus: Remote 3D View

Concept

The BMW Connected app and the pictures of the Surround View cameras in combination with the corresponding equipment enable the display of the vehicle's surroundings on a mobile device.

The function displays a momentary view of the situation.

Functional requirements

- Data transmission must be activated.

  Data protection, refer to page 62.
- BMW Connected App must be installed on the mobile device.
- ConnectedDrive countries: an activated driver profile with an existing ConnectedDrive account is required.

  Driver profiles, refer to page 63.

Switching the function on/off

Switching on/off with other functions

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "All services incl. analysis"
   - "All vehicle services"

Switching on/off individually

Pre-adjustment

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. "Select services individually"
6. "Connected App and cust. portal"
7. "Remote 3D View"

Switching on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. "Individual selection"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2617
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

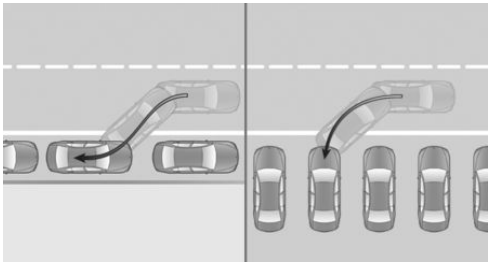
Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional or may not be available in the following situations:

- In poor light.
- In case of soiled cameras.
- With a door or the trunk lid open. Dark fields in the display indicate areas that are not recorded by the system.
- With exterior mirrors folded in.
- When other camera functions are being performed in the vehicle.
- When the vehicle moves faster than walking speed.
- It may not be possible to use the function in every country.
- For reasons of data protection, the function can only be used three times within two hours.

With Parking Assistant: Parking Assistant

Concept



The system supports the driver in the following situations:

- When parking parallel to the road, parallel parking.
- When reverse parking diagonally to the road, diagonal parking. The system orients itself with the middle of the parking space during diagonal parking.
- Depending on the equipment version: when driving out of parallel parking spaces.

General information

Handling

Parking assistant handling is divided into three steps:

- Switching on and activating.
- Parking space search.
- Parking.

System status and instructions on required actions are displayed on the Control Display.

Ultrasound sensors measure parking spaces on both sides of the vehicle.

M Steptronic Sport transmission

The parking assistant calculates the best possible parking line and takes control of the following functions during the parking operation:

- Steering.
- Accelerating and braking.
- Changing gears.

The parking operation is automatic.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

NOTICE

The parking assistant can steer the vehicle over or onto curbs. There is a risk of damage to property. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

The safety information of the PDC Park Distance Control applies in addition.

Additional information:

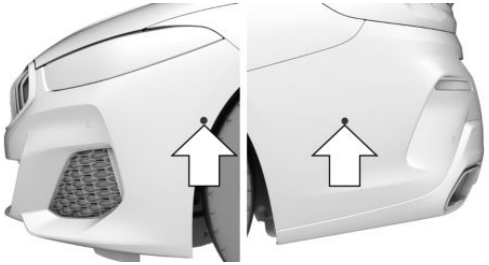
PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 242.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Ultrasound sensors



With the four side ultrasound sensors, arrows, and the ultrasound sensors in the bumpers, the parking spaces are measured and the distances to obstacles determined.

Functional requirements

Ultrasound sensors

- Do not cover sensors, for instance with stickers.
- Keep the sensors clean and unobstructed.

For measuring parking spaces

- Maximum speed while driving forward approx. 22 mph/35 km/h.
- Maximum distance to row of parked vehicles: 5 ft/1.5 m.

Suitable parking space

General information:

- Gap behind an object that has a min. length of 1.7 ft/0.5 m.
- Gap between two objects with a minimum length of approx. 1.7 ft/0.5 m.

Parallel parking to the road:

- Min. length of gap between two objects: your vehicle's length plus approx. 2.6 ft/0.8 m.
- Minimum depth: approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.

Diagonal parking:

- Minimum width of the gap: own vehicle's width plus approx. 2.3 ft/0.7 m.
- Minimum depth: your vehicle's length.

  The depth of diagonal parking spaces must be estimated by the driver. Due to technical limitations, the system is only able to approximate the depth of diagonal parking spaces.

For the parking operation

- Doors and trunk lid are closed.
- Driver's safety belt is fastened.

Switching on with the button

Press the park assistance button.

The LED lights up.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2619
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.

Parking assistant is activated automatically.

Switching on with reverse gear

1. Shift into reverse.

   The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.
2. If necessary, activate: "Autom. Parking"

Switching on via iDrive

Display of the rearview camera or PDC view must be active.

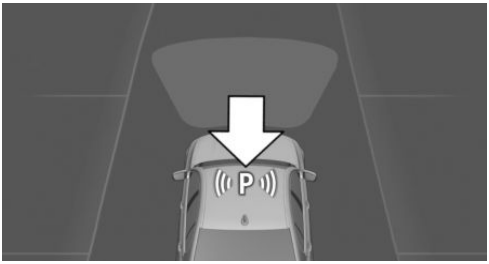
1. Move the Controller to the right.
2. Activate the parking assistant on the Control Display: "Autom. Parking"

Display on the Control Display

System activated/deactivated

Symbol	Meaning
	Gray: the system is not available. White: the system is available but not activated.
	System is activated.
	Parking space search is active.
	The parking procedure is active. The system takes over the steering.

Parking space search and system status



- Parking assistant is activated and parking space search is active.
- Control Display shows suitable parking spaces at the edge of the road next to the vehicle symbol. When Park Assistant is active, suitable parking spaces are highlighted and an acoustic signal sounds.
- If a diagonal or parallel parking space is clearly detected, the system automatically adjusts the suitable parking method. In the case of parking spaces suitable for parallel and diagonal parking, a selection menu is displayed. In this case, the desired parking method must be selected manually.
- The parking procedure is active. The system takes over the steering.
- Parking space search is always active whenever the vehicle is moving forward slow and straight, even if the system is deactivated. When the system is deactivated, the displays on the Control Display are shown in gray.

Switching signal tone for suitable parking spaces on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. "Automatic Parking"
6. "Alert if parking space detected"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Signal tones of the PDC Park Distance Control

During an automatic parking operation, no intermittent tone will sound from the PDC Park Distance Control.

A continuous tone sounds when the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 8 inches/20 cm.

Parking using the parking assistant

Parking

1. Switching on and activating the parking assistant.

   For this, engage the reverse gear or press the parking assist button and activate the system on the Control Display, if needed.

   Parking assistant is activated.
2. Pass the row of parked vehicles forward at a speed of up to approx. 22 mph/35 km/h and at a distance of maximum 5 ft/1.5 m.

   The status of the parking space search and possible parking spaces are displayed on the Control Display.
3. Confirm the suggested parking space for the parking operation: select the parking space on the Control Display.

   The system takes over the steering.
4. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

   At the end of the parking operation, the P selector lever position is set.

   The end of the parking operation is indicated on the Control Display.
5. Adjust the parking position yourself, if needed.

Interrupting manually

The parking assistant can be interrupted at any time:

- Press the park assistance button.
- "Autom. Parking": select the symbol on the Control Display.

Interrupting automatically

The system is interrupted automatically in the following situations:

- When the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes over steering.
- Possibly on snow-covered or slippery road surfaces.
- When there are obstacles that are hard to overcome, such as curbs.
- When there are obstacles that suddenly appear.
- If the PDC Park Distance Control displays clearances that are too small.
- When a maximum number of parking attempts or the time taken for parking is exceeded.
- When switching to another function on the Control Display.
- If the trunk lid is open.
- If doors are open.
- When setting the parking brake.
- During acceleration.
- When the brake pedal remains pressed for an extended period while the vehicle is stationary.
- When unfastening the driver's safety belt.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Flashing display on the selector lever

The actually engaged transmission position can deviate from the selector lever position in some

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2621
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

situations after function interruption. The display in the selector lever flashes.

Observe the display in the instrument cluster in these cases.

Additional information:

Displays in the instrument cluster, refer to page 140.

Resuming

An interrupted parking procedure can be continued, if needed.

Reactivate the parking assistant and follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Switching off

The system can be switched off manually:

Press the park assistance button.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

No parking assistance

The parking assistant does not offer assistance in the following situations:

- In tight curves.
- For diagonal parking spaces.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- On bumpy road surfaces such as gravel roads.
- On slippery ground.
- On steep uphill or downhill grades.
- With accumulations of leaves/snow in the parking space.
- In case of changes to an already-measured parking space.
- With ditches or edges, for instance an edge of a port.
- Parking spaces that are not suitable may be detected or suitable parking spaces may not be detected at all.

Limits of ultrasonic measurement

The detection of objects with ultrasonic measurements can run into physical limits.

The limits of the ultrasonic measurement of the Park Distance Control PDC apply.

Additional information:

PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 242.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

The parking assistant failed. Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Depending on the equipment version: driving out of a parking space using the parking assistant

Concept

The system makes driving out of parallel parking spaces easier.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2622

General information

M Steptronic Sport transmission

The parking assistant calculates an optimal line for pulling out of a parking space and takes control of the following functions during the maneuver:

- Steering.
- Accelerating and braking.
- Changing gears.

The vehicle maneuvers automatically until the vehicle reaches a position in which the driver can drive out of the parking space without further steering movements.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Additionally, the Safety Instructions for the PDC Park Distance Control and the Automatic Parking Assistant apply.

Additional information:

- PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 242.
- Parking assistant, refer to page 257.

Functional requirements

- The vehicle was parked manually and objects in front of and behind the car are detected. The distance to a detected curb is at least 6 inches/15 cm.
- The vehicle was parked using the parking assistant and an object is detected in front of the vehicle.
- The parking space is at least 2.6 ft/0.8 m longer than your vehicle.
- The vehicle has been parked in reverse.

Driving out of parking spaces

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. M Steptronic Sport transmission:

   Press the park assistance button or shift into reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary to switch on the parking assistant.
3. Tilt the controller to the right and activate the parking assistant on the Control Display: "Autom. Parking"
4. On the Control Display, confirm the required direction for driving out of the parking space if necessary.
5. M Steptronic Sport transmission:

   The system takes control of the maneuver. A message will be displayed at the end of the maneuver.
6. Make sure that the traffic situation permits driving out of the parking space and drive off as usual.

   The parking assistant is switched off automatically.

System limits

The limits of the systems of the Park Distance Control PDC and the Parking Assistant apply.

With Parking Assistant: Reversing Assistant

Concept

The system supports the driver when driving in reverse, for instance when driving out of tight or confusing parking or street situations.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2623
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

The vehicle stores the driving movements of the last route. This stored route can be driven back with automated steering.

General information

The system takes control of the steering when driving in reverse along the stored route.

The driver controls driving the vehicle via accelerator pedal and brake.

The Reversing Assistant uses the control elements and sensors of the PDC Park Distance Control and the Automatic Parking Assistant.

Additional information:

- PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 242.
- Parking assistant, refer to page 257.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Additionally, the Safety Instructions for the PDC Park Distance Control and the Automatic Parking Assistant apply.

Additional information:

- PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 242.
- Parking assistant, refer to page 257.

Functional requirements

- Drive forward without interruption to store the route.
- A maximum of 165 ft/50 m will be stored.
- To store the route, do not exceed a driving speed of 22 mph/36 km/h.
- DSC Dynamic Stability Control is activated.

Driving back with automated steering

1. Press the park assistance button or shift into reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary and the drive-ready state is switched on.
2. Move the Controller to the right.
3. "Back-up Assistant"

   The system takes over the steering.
4. Follow the instructions on the Control Display where required.
5. Take your hands off the steering wheel and carefully drive off with the accelerator pedal and the brake.

   When driving in reverse, pay attention to the vehicle's surroundings, and if you encounter an obstacle, stop immediately and take over control of the vehicle. Follow the instructions on the PDC Park Distance Control.
6. Stop no later than when normal traffic is reached and take control of the vehicle, such as by shifting to a forward gear.

   At the end of the stored route, a signal will sound and a request will be displayed, also with the instruction to take control of the vehicle.

Terminating the system

The system automatically cancels in situations such as the following:

- When the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes over steering.
- When engaging a forward gear.
- During activation or intervention by driving control systems or assist systems.
- After a few minutes when the vehicle is stationary.

- If the vehicle leaves the stored lane during reversing; for example, at the maximum steering angle.
- When the display on the Control Display is cross-faded with messages, e.g., due to incoming calls.

System limits

- When you reach normal road traffic or if you encounter an obstacle, stop immediately and take over control of the vehicle.
- The maximum speed for driving in reverse is limited to approximately 6 mph/9 km/h.

  If the maximum speed is exceeded, a warning is issued and the function may be canceled.
- Additionally, the limits of the systems of the Park Distance Control PDC and the Parking Assistant apply.

Different influences can lead to side deviations when driving back on the stored route. For example, this includes the following factors:

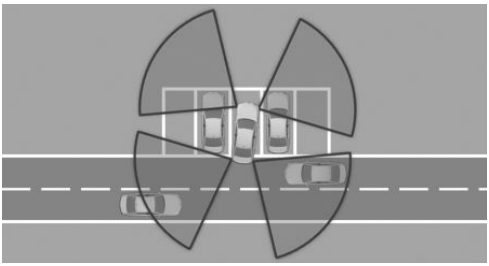
- Steering movements when the vehicle is stationary while storing the distance covered.
- The speed is not adapted to the distance traveled.
- Road characteristics, such as gradients or inclines.

Cross traffic warning

Concept

At blind driveways or when driving out of diagonal parking spaces, approaching cross traffic is detected sooner by the system than is possible from the driver's seat.

General information



Two radar sensors in the rear bumper monitor the area behind the vehicle.

The system indicates approaching traffic.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the traffic area in front of the vehicle is monitored as well. Two additional radar sensors are located in the front bumpers.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2625
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Park assistance button

Radar sensors

The radar sensors are located in the rear bumper.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, two additional radar sensors are located in the front bumpers.

Always keep the bumper in the area of the radar sensors clean and unobstructed.

Switching on/off

Activating/deactivating the system

With the button

1. Press the park assistance button.
2. Move the Controller to the right.
3. "Settings"
4. "Cross Traffic Warning"
5. "Activate function"

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. "Cross Traffic Warning"
6. "Activate function"

Switching on automatically

If the system was activated on the Control Display, it is automatically switched on as soon as PDC Park Distance Control or Panorama View is active and a gear is engaged.

If reverse gear is engaged, the rear system is switched on.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the front system is switched on when a forward gear is engaged.

Switching off automatically

The system is automatically switched off in the following situations:

- When the speed exceeds walking speed.
- When a certain driving distance is exceeded.
- With an active parking operation of the parking assistant.

Warning

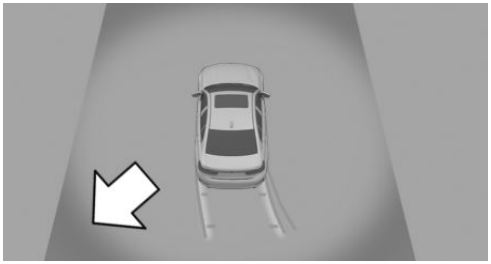
General information

The respective display is called up on the Control Display. A signal tone may sound and the light in the exterior mirror may flash.

Light in the exterior mirror

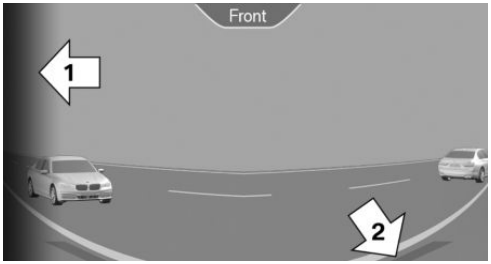
The light in the exterior mirror flashes if vehicles are detected by the rear sensors and your own vehicle is moving backwards.

Display in the PDC Park Distance Control view



In the PDC Park Distance Control view, the respective boundary area flashes red, if vehicles are detected by the sensors.

Display in the camera view



The respective boundary area, arrow 1, in the camera view flashes red, if vehicles are detected by the sensors.

Yellow lines, arrow 2, mark the bumper of your own vehicle.

Acoustic warning

In addition to the optical indicator, a warning signal sounds if your own vehicle moves into the respective direction.

System limits

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- If the speed of the approaching vehicle is very high.
- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- In tight curves.
- If the bumper is dirty, iced up, or covered, for instance by stickers.
- If the field of view of the sensors is covered, e.g., by garage walls, hedges or snow hills.
- If cargo protrudes.
- When crossing objects move at a very slow speed.
- If other objects are in the capture range of the sensors, that hide cross traffic.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2627
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Driving comfort

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Chassis components

The chassis components are optimized for the vehicle and its scope of application and thereby ensure the best possible Driving Dynamics.

Adaptive M chassis

Concept

This system reduces undesirable vehicle motion when using a dynamic driving style or traveling on uneven road surfaces.

This enhances the driving dynamics and driving comfort depending on the road surface condition and driving style.

General information

The system offers several different damping settings.

Program	Damping settings
"COMFORT"	Comfort-oriented.
"SPORT"	Balanced out.
"SPORT PLUS"	Consistently sporty.

Selecting a channel

Using the button

SETUP Press the button and select the desired program on the Control Display.

Via iDrive

It is possible to configure the required program for buttons M1 or M2.

1. "CAR"
2. "M menu"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4. "Chassis"
5. Select the desired channel.

   The setting is immediately applied with active M1 or M2 configuration.

To activate the desired configuration with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:

▷ M1

▷ M2

Display in the instrument cluster

Adaptive M chassis with selected program for the active display of driving dynamics system statuses.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2628

When the display of the widget in the instrument cluster for M SETUP is activated, the selected program is displayed.

Additional information:

Widgets in the instrument cluster, refer to page 147.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2629
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Climate control

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Interior air quality

The air quality in the vehicle is improved by the following components:

- Emission tested passenger compartment.
- Microfilter.
- Air conditioning system to control the temperature, air flow and recirculated-air mode.

Depending on the equipment:

- Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter.
- Ionization.
- Fragrancing.
- Automatic recirculated-air control AUC.
- Parked-car ventilation.

Automatic climate control

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

Climate control functions

Button	Function
	Temperature.
A/C	Climate control operation.
MAX A/C	Maximum cooling.
AUTO	AUTO program.
	Recirculated-air mode.
	Air flow, manual. Intensity AUTO program.
	Air distribution, manual.
SYNC	SYNC program.

Button	Function
MAX	Defrost and defog window.
	Rear window defroster.
	Active seat ventilation, refer to page 121.
	Seat heating, refer to page 120.
MENU	Opening the Climate menu. For example, for the following settings: upper body temperature adjustment, parked-car ventilation.

Some of the functions can also be used via voice, e.g., temperature.

Opening the Climate menu

MENU Press the button.

The Climate menu is displayed.

All the climate control functions which can adjusted via iDrive can be called up via the Climate menu, e.g., upper body temperature adjustment, parked-car ventilation.

Switching on/off

Switching on

Press any button except for the following:

- Rear window defroster.
- Left side of air flow button.
- SYNC program.
- Seat heating.
- Seat ventilation.

Switching off

When equipped with automatic climate control with enhanced features:

- Complete system:

  Press and hold the left button on the driver's side until the system switches off.

- On the front passenger side:

  Press and hold the left button on the front passenger side.

Temperature

Concept

The automatic climate control achieves the set temperature as quickly as possible, if needed, by using the maximum cooling or heating capacity, and then keeps it constant.

Adjusting

Turn the wheel to set the desired temperature.

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. Otherwise, the automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

Temperature of the ventilation

General information

The temperature of the ventilation in the upper body region can be adjusted.

The temperature is individually adjusted, e.g. colder toward blue, warmer toward red.

The air flow of the ventilation in the upper body region heats or cools noticeably, depending on the adjusted temperature.

This does not change the set interior temperature for the driver and front passenger.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2631
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Adjusting

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Temperature adjustment"
5. Set the desired temperature.

Air conditioning

Concept

The air in the car's interior will be cooled and dehumidified and, depending on the temperature setting, warmed again.

The car's interior can only be cooled with the drive-ready state switched on.

Switching on/off

A/C Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with air conditioning switched on.

Depending on the weather, the windshield and the side windows may fog up briefly when drive-ready state is switched on.

Air conditioning is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops and collects underneath the vehicle.

Maximum cooling

Concept

The system is set to the lowest temperature, optimum air flow and recirculated-air mode with the drive-ready state switched on.

General information

The function is available with external temperatures above approx. 32 °F/0 °C and with the drive-ready state switched on.

Switching on/off

MAX A/C Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the system switched on.

Air flows out of the vents to the upper body region. The vents need to be open for this.

Adjust air flow on the driver's side with the program active.

AUTO program

Concept

The AUTO program cools, ventilates or heats the car's interior automatically.

The air distribution and temperature are controlled automatically depending on the temperature in the car's interior and the desired temperature setting including the selected intensity of the air flow.

Switching on/off

AUTO Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the AUTO program switched on.

Depending on the selected settings and outside influences, the air is directed to the windshield, side windows, upper body, and into the floor area.

Air conditioning is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

Point the side vents toward the side windows.

At the same time, a condensation sensor controls the program so as to prevent window condensation as much as possible.

The AUTO program is switched off automatically, when manual air distribution is set.

Intensity

With the AUTO program switched on, the intensity can be adjusted. This changes the automatic control for the air mass.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2632
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Press the left or right side of the button: to decrease or increase intensity.

The selected intensity is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

Automatic recirculated-air control AUC

Concept

The automatic recirculated-air control AUC recognizes odors or pollutants in the outside air. The outside air supply is shut off and the interior air is recirculated.

General information

If the system is activated, a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and controls the shut-off automatically.

If the system is deactivated, outside air continuously flows into the car's interior.

With constant recirculated-air mode, the air quality in the car's interior deteriorates and window fogging increases.

Switching on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. If necessary, "Air quality"
5. "Auto-recirculate"

If there is window condensation, switch off recirculated-air mode or defog the windows.

Recirculated-air mode

Concept

You may react to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air flow within the vehicle.

Adjusting

Press the button:

The LED is illuminated when recirculated-air mode is switched on. The supply of outside air is shut off.

When recirculated-air mode is switched off, fresh air is directed into the vehicle's interior.

To prevent window fogging, recirculated-air mode switches off automatically after a certain amount of time, depending on the environmental conditions.

With constant recirculated-air mode, the air quality in the car's interior deteriorates and window fogging increases.

If there is window condensation, switch off recirculated-air mode or defog the windows.

Air flow, manual

Concept

The air flow for climate control can be adjusted manually.

General information

To adjust the air flow manually switch off AUTO program first.

Adjusting

Press the left or right side of the button: to decrease or increase air flow.

The selected air flow is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

The air flow of the automatic climate control may be reduced automatically to save battery power.

Manual air distribution

Concept

The air distribution for climate control can be adjusted manually.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2633
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Adjusting

Press the button repeatedly to select a program:

- Windows, upper body region, and floor area.
- Upper body region and floor area.
- Floor area.
- Windows and floor area.
- Windows: driver's side only.
- Windows and upper body.
- Upper body region.

The selected air distribution is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

SYNC program

Concept

Depending on the equipment, the following settings of the driver's side can be transferred to the front-passenger side and the rear:

- Temperature.
- Air flow.
- Air distribution.
- AUTO program.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the SYNC program switched on.

The program is switched off automatically if the settings on the front passenger side or in the rear are changed.

To defrost windows and remove condensation

Concept

Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the system switched on.

The air flow can be adjusted manually with the system switched on.

If there is window condensation, press the button on the driver's side or switch on air conditioning to utilize the condensation sensor. Make sure that air can flow to the windshield.

Rear window defroster

Press the button. The LED lights up.

The function is operational when the drive-ready state is switched on.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter

The microfilter removes dust and pollen from the incoming air.

The activated-charcoal filter also removes gaseous pollutants from the outside air that enters the vehicle.

Have this combined filter changed during vehicle maintenance.

Ventilation

Concept

The air flow directions can be individually adjusted.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2634
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Adjusting the ventilation

General information

The air flow directions can be adjusted for direct or indirect ventilation.

Open the vents and position them to ensure effective climate control.

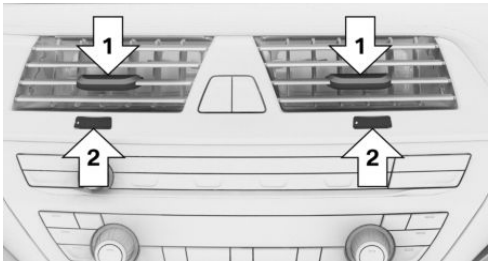
Direct ventilation

The air flow is directed towards the passengers. The air flow heats or cools noticeably, depending on the adjusted temperature.

Indirect ventilation

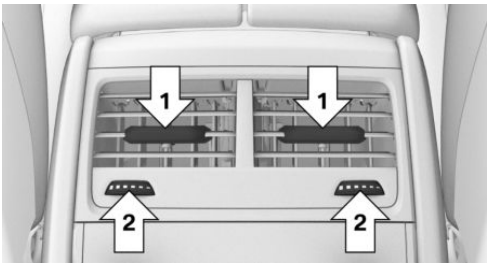
The air flow is not directed towards the passengers. The car's interior is warmed or cooled indirectly, depending on the set temperature.

Front ventilation



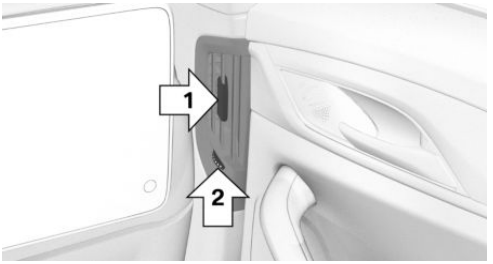
- Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 1.
- Thumbwheel for variable opening and closing of the vents, arrow 2.

Ventilation in rear, center



- Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 1.
- Thumbwheel for variable opening and closing of the vents, arrow 2.

Ventilation in the rear, on the side



- Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 1.
- Thumbwheel for variable opening and closing of the vents, arrow 2.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2635
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Rear automatic climate control

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

Climate control functions

Button	Function
	Temperature.
MAX A/C	Maximum cooling.
AUTO	AUTO program.
	Air flow, manual.
	Air distribution, manual.
	Seat heating, refer to page 120.

Switching on/off

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Rear climate control"

The rear automatic climate control is not ready for operation if the automatic climate control is switched off or if the function for defrosting the windows and removing condensation is active.

Using the button: switching on

Press any button except for the following:

- Left side of air flow button.
- Seat heating.

Using the button: switching off

Press and hold the left side of the button.

Temperature

Concept

The automatic climate control achieves the set temperature as quickly as possible, if needed, by using the maximum cooling or heating capacity, and then keeps it constant.

Adjusting

Turn the wheel to set the desired temperature.

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. Otherwise, the automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

Maximum cooling

Concept

The system is set to the lowest temperature, optimum air flow and recirculated-air mode with the drive-ready state switched on.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2636

General information

The function is available with external temperatures above approx. 32 °F/0 °C and with the drive-ready state switched on.

Switching on/off

MAX A/C Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the system switched on.

Air flows out of the vents to the upper body region. The vents need to be open for this.

AUTO program

Concept

Air flow, air distribution and temperature are controlled automatically.

Switching on/off

AUTO Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the AUTO program switched on.

Depending on the selected temperature, the AUTO intensity, and outside influences, the air is directed to the upper body and into the floor area.

Intensity

With the AUTO program activated, the automatic intensity control can be changed:

Press the left or right side of the button: to decrease or increase intensity.

The selected intensity is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

Air flow, manual

Concept

The air flow for climate control can be adjusted manually.

General information

To adjust the air flow manually switch off AUTO program first.

Adjusting

Press the left or right side of the button: to decrease or increase air flow.

The selected air flow is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

Manual air distribution

Concept

The air distribution for climate control can be adjusted manually.

Adjusting

Press the button repeatedly to select a program:

- Upper body region.
- Upper body region and floor area.
- Floor area.

Parked-car ventilation

Concept

The car's interior can be cooled or heated before driving off with the parked-car ventilation. Depending on set temperature and ambient temperature, the car's interior is ventilated or possibly heated using the residual engine heat.

General information

The system can be switched on and off directly or via a preset departure time.

The activation time is determined based on the external temperature. The system promptly switches on before the selected departure time.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2637
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Functional requirements

- The vehicle is in idle state or standby state and not in drive-ready state.
- The battery is sufficiently charged.

  If parked-car ventilation is switched on, the vehicle battery will be discharged. Thus, limit the maximum activation time to save the vehicle battery. The system will be available again after the engine is started or after a short trip.
- Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.
- Open the vents to allow air to flow out.

Switching on/off directly

General information

There are different ways to switch the system on or off.

The system switches off automatically after a certain period of time. The system continues to run for some time after being switched off.

Using the button

General information

When the vehicle is in standby state, the parked-car ventilation can be switched on or off via the automatic climate control buttons.

Switching on

Press any button except:

- Rear window defroster.
- Left side of air flow button.
- Seat heating.
- Seat ventilation.
- SYNC program.
- MENU.

Switching off

Press and hold the left side of the button.

The system switches off after leaving and locking the vehicle.

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Pre-ventilation"
5. "Start now"

Via BMW display key

Switching on

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap the symbol or the symbol.
4. "Activate now"
5. "Start"

Switching off

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap the symbol or the symbol.
4. "Stop"

Display

symbol on the automatic climate control indicates the system is switched on.

REST is displayed on the automatic climate control. The residual engine heat is used.

Departure time

Concept

Different departure times can be set to ensure a comfortable interior temperature in the vehicle at the time of departure.

- One-time departure time: the time can be set.

  The system is switched on once.
- Departure time with weekday: time and day of the week can be set.

  On the desired weekdays, the system will be switched on promptly before the set departure time.

The departure time is preselected in two steps:

- Set departure times.
- Activate departure times.

A minimum of 10 minutes should pass between setting/activating the departure time and the planned departure time to allow a sufficient period of time for the climate control.

Setting the departure time

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Pre-ventilation"
5. "Departure schedule"
6. Select the desired departure time.
7. Set the departure time.
8. Select day of the week, if needed.
9. "OK"

Via BMW display key

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap the symbol or the symbol.
4. Select the desired departure time.
5. Set the departure time.
6. Select day of the week, if needed.
7. "OK"

Activating the departure time

Functional requirement

If a departure time is to influence the switching on of parked-car ventilation, the respective departure time must be activated first.

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Pre-ventilation"
5. "Departure schedule"
6. Activate the desired departure time.

Via BMW display key

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap the symbol or the symbol.
4. Tap on the symbol.
5. Activate the desired departure time.

Display

, Symbol on the climate control display signals an activated departure time.

Stationary climate control through Remote Engine Start

Concept

Stationary climate control cools or heats the car's interior prior to departure to a comfortable tem-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2639
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

perature. The system automatically cools, vents, and heats depending on the interior, external, and set temperature. Snow and ice may be removed more easily.

The system starts the engine automatically and allows it to run for a limited period of time.

Safety information

⚠ DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can pollute the area in and around the vehicle or enter into the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas or areas with insufficient ventilation, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation. Do not switch on stationary climate control in enclosed areas or areas with insufficient ventilation, e.g. in enclosed garages.

⚠ Warning

When stationary climate control is in operation, high temperatures can occur underneath the body, for instance caused by the exhaust gas system. If combustible materials, such as leaves or grass, come in contact with hot parts of the exhaust gas system, these materials can ignite. There is a risk of fire. Make sure that no combustible materials can come in contact with hot vehicle parts during stationary climate control operation, e.g. leaves, grass, gas, gasoline, oil or other combustible objects.

Functional requirements

- The vehicle is in idle state or standby state and not in drive-ready state.
- Battery is sufficiently charged.
- For reasons of safety, the system can only be switched on twice consecutively. The system will be available again as soon as the drive-ready state is activated and deactivated again.
- The fuel tank capacity is sufficient.
- Hood is closed.
- Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.
- Open the vents to allow air to flow out.

Enabling the automatic engine start function

The automatic engine start must be enabled before using the system.

Otherwise, the engine cannot switch on automatically to climatize the car's interior.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Preconditioning/ventilation"
5. If necessary, "Remote Engine Start"
6. "Starting engine for clim. control"
7. Confirm the disclaimer.

Confirmation signals from the vehicle

The activation of the system is confirmed by flashing twice.

The parking lights are switched on as long as the system is switched on.

Switching on/off directly

General information

There are different ways to switch the system on or off:

- Via iDrive.
- With the vehicle key.
- Via BMW display key.

The system can also be switched off directly as follows: pressing the Start/Stop button, without operating the brake pedal.

The system switches off automatically after approx. 15 minutes.

For reasons of safety, the system can only be switched on twice consecutively. The system will be available again as soon as the drive-ready state is activated and deactivated again.

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Preconditioning/ventilation"
5. "Start now"

Via vehicle key

The system can be switched on and off using the vehicle key.

Press the button on the vehicle key three times within 1 second.

After operating the vehicle key, it will take approximately 3 seconds until the engine is switched on.

To switch off the system, press the button again three times.

Via BMW display key

Switching on:

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap on the symbol.
4. "Activate now"
5. "Start"

Switching off:

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap on the symbol.
4. "Stop"

Display

Symbol	Description
	Symbol on the BMW display key for automatic climate control. The symbol flashes while Remote Engine Start is running.

Climatization for the requested departure time

General information

Scheduled departure times can be set up in the system to ensure a comfortable interior temperature in the vehicle at the time of departure.

- One-time departure time: the time of the scheduled departure can be set.

  The system is switched on once.
- Departure time with weekday: time and day of the week of the scheduled departure can be set.

The departure time is preselected in two steps:

- Set departure times.
- Activate departure times.

The climate control function will start approximately 10 minutes before the set departure time and continue for approximately 5 more minutes after the departure time.

A minimum of 10 minutes should pass between setting/activating the departure time and the planned departure time to allow a sufficient period of time for the climate control.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2641
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

For reasons of safety, the system can only be switched on once. The system will be available again as soon as the drive-ready state is activated and deactivated again.

Observe the information about the intended use of the vehicle.

Additional information:

For Your Own Safety, refer to page 8.

Setting the departure time

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Preconditioning/ventilation"
5. Select the desired departure time.
6. Set the departure time.
7. Select day of the week, if needed.

Via BMW display key

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap on the symbol.
4. Select the desired departure time.
5. Set the departure time.
6. Select day of the week, if needed.
7. "OK"

Activating the departure time

Functional requirement

If a requested departure time is to influence the switching on of the system, the respective departure time must be activated first.

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Preconditioning/ventilation"
5. Activate the desired departure time.

, The symbol on the automatic climate control signals an activated departure time

Via BMW display key

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap on the symbol.
4. Activating the desired departure time:
   Tap on the symbol.

The symbol on the automatic climate control signals an activated departure time.

Display in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Description
	The engine runs for the purpose of operating the stationary climate control. The vehicle is not ready to drive.

Ambient air package

Concept

The Ambient Air Package can be used to clean and scent the interior air with high-quality fragrances.

Ionization is used to clean the air from suspended particles. Together with the selected fragrance, ionization contributes to well-being and relaxation while driving.

General information

Two different fragrances can be selected in the vehicle. A variety of other fragrances is possible by replacing the fragrance cartridges.

The following criteria can influence the perception of scents in the car's interior:

- Automatic climate control settings.
- Temperature and air humidity.
- Time of day and season.
- Physical condition of the vehicle occupants, for instance fatigue.

BMW recommends the use of genuine BMW fragrance cartridges.

The genuine BMW fragrance cartridges are not suitable for refilling. When a cartridge is empty, replace it with a new fragrance cartridge.

Safety information

Warning

Refilled genuine BMW fragrance cartridges can cause the emission of harmful substances, malfunctions, and damage to the system. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not refill genuine fragrance cartridges. When a cartridge is empty, replace it with a new fragrance cartridge.

Ionization

Concept

Ionization cleans the car's interior air of suspended particles.

Switching on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Air quality"
5. "Ionization"

Fragrancing

General information

Fragrancing is done at intervals in order to avoid a habituation effect.

Two fragrance cartridges in the vehicle allow switching between the fragrances.

The fragrance cartridges are located in the glove compartment.

To ensure a pleasant fragrance inside of the vehicle when starting the trip, fragrancing can occur prior to the trip. The system is automatically switched on with the parked-car ventilation if fragrancing was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Functional requirements

- The fragrance cartridges are sufficiently filled.
- The interior temperature is between 41 °F/+5 °C and 104 °F/+40 °C.
- Open the vents to allow the fragrance to flow out.

Selecting the fragrance

The car's interior is fragranced depending on the selected fragrance.

Two different fragrances can be selected in the vehicle.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Fragrance"
5. Select the desired fragrance.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Switching fragrancing on/off, adjusting intensity

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2643
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

3. "Climate control"
4. "Fragrance"
5. "Level"
6. Select the desired setting.

Display

The illustrations on the Control Display show the actual filling level of the fragrance cartridges.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Fragrance"

When an empty fragrance cartridge is indicated, the cartridge still contains a fluid carrying the fragrance. However, it is not sufficient for fragrancing.

When the fragrance cartridges are empty, a Check Control message is displayed once.

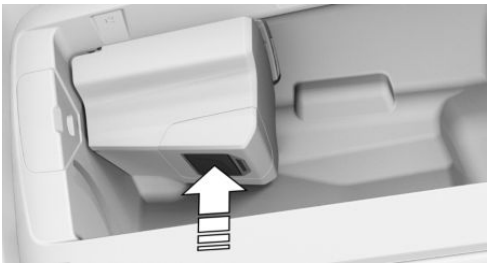
Inserting fragrance cartridges

The fragrance cartridges are located in the glove compartment.

1. Open the glove compartment.

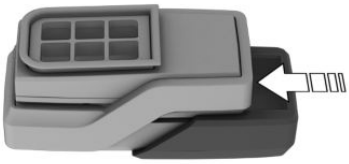
   Front passenger side glove compartment, refer to page 294.
2. Press on the bottom of the cartridge holder.

   The cartridge holder slides down.

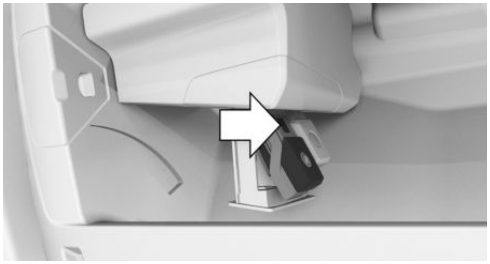


3. Remove the cover of the fragrance cartridge. Hold the cover on the top to slide it from the fragrance cartridge.

4. Insert the removed cover on the back side of the fragrance cartridge.



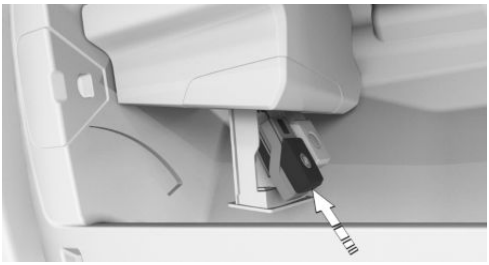
5. Position fragrance cartridge such that the chip faces away from the cartridge holder.



BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2644

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

6. Insert the fragrance cartridge without pressure into the cartridge holder. The cartridge snaps lightly into place.



7. Push the cartridge holder up, until it engages.

   Make sure that no objects press against the cartridge holder from below, otherwise the function of the ambient air package could be impacted.

8. Close the glove compartment.

Removing the fragrance cartridge

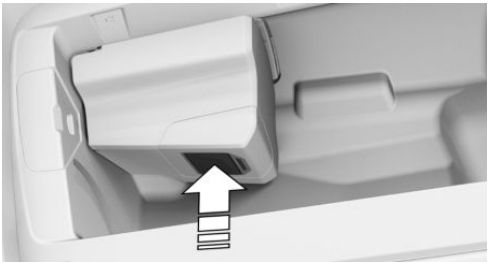
The fragrance cartridges are located in the glove compartment.

1. Open the glove compartment.

   Front passenger side glove compartment, refer to page 294.

2. Press on the bottom of the cartridge holder.

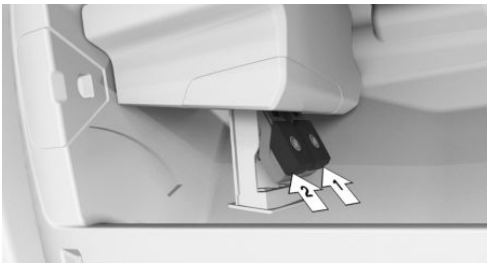
   The cartridge holder slides down.



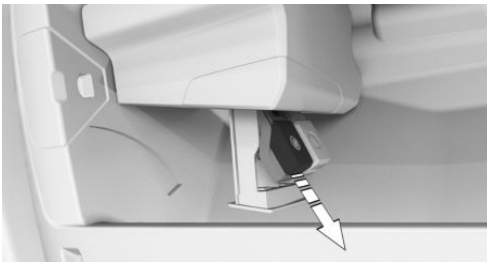
3. Pull desired fragrance cartridge from the holder.

   Fragrance cartridge, arrow 1: first fragrance indicated on the Control Display.

   Fragrance cartridge, arrow 2: second fragrance indicated on the Control Display.



4. Pull desired fragrance cartridge from the holder.



Recycling

Empty fragrance cartridges can be taken to a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop for recycling.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2645
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Interior equipment

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Integrated Universal Remote Control

Concept

The integrated Universal Remote Control in the interior mirror can operate up to 3 functions of remote-controlled systems such as garage door drives, barriers, or lighting systems.

General information

The Integrated Universal Remote Control replaces up to 3 different hand-held transmitters. To operate the remote control, the buttons on the interior mirror must be programmed with the desired functions. The hand-held transmitter for the particular system is required in order to program the remote control.

Before selling the vehicle, delete the stored functions for the sake of security.

If possible, do not install the antenna of the remote-controlled system, e.g. the garage door drive, near metal objects to ensure the best possible operation.

Safety information

Warning

The operation of remote-controlled systems with the integrated universal remote control, such as the garage door, may result in injury, for example, body parts becoming jammed in a garage door. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety information of the hand-held transmitter.

Compatibility

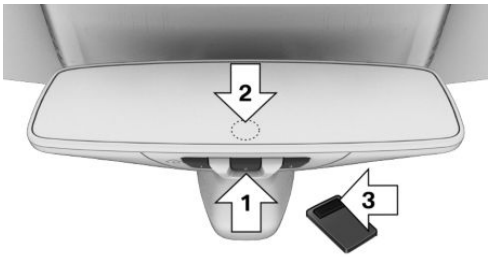
If this symbol is printed on the packaging or in the owner's manual of the system to be controlled, the system is generally compatible with the integrated Universal Remote Control.

Additional questions are answered by:

- A dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
- www.homelink.com on the Internet.

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

Control elements on the interior mirror



- ▷ Buttons, arrow 1.
- ▷ LED, arrow 2.
- ▷ The hand-held transmitter, arrow 3, is required for programming.

Programming

General information

The battery of the hand-held transmitter must be fully charged at the time of programming to ensure an optimal range of the integrated universal remote control.

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Initial setup:

   Press and hold the two outer buttons on the interior mirror simultaneously for approximately 10 seconds until the LED flashes green rapidly. This erases all programming of the buttons on the interior mirror.
3. Press the interior mirror button to be programmed. The LED on the interior mirror will slowly begin flashing orange.
4. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be used approx. 1 to 12 in/2.5 to 30 cm away from the buttons on the interior mirror. The required distance depends on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter.

   Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.
6. ▷ The LED lights up green: programming completed.

   Release the button.

   ▷ The LED flashes fast: programming is not complete.

   Press the button on the interior mirror for 2 seconds and release. Perform this procedure three times to complete the programming procedure.

   If the integrated universal remote control remains nonoperational, continue with the special features for change code wireless systems.

   ▷ LED does not flash green after 60 seconds: programming not completed.

   Repeat steps 3 to 6.

To program other functions on other buttons, repeat steps 3 to 5.

Special feature of the rolling code wireless system

If you are unable to operate the remote-controlled system after repeated programming, please check if the system to be controlled features a rolling code radio system.

Refer to the owner's manual for the system.

For systems with a rolling code radio system, the integrated Universal Remote Control and the system also have to be synchronized.

Please read the owner's manual to find out how to synchronize the system.

Synchronizing is easier with the aid of a second person.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2647
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Synchronizing the universal remote control with the system:

1. Park the vehicle within range of the remote-controlled system.
2. Program the relevant button on the interior mirror as described.
3. Locate and press the synchronizing button on the system being programmed, e.g. at the garage gate. You have approx. 30 seconds for the next step.
4. Hold down the programmed button on the interior mirror for approximately 3 seconds and then release it. If necessary, repeat this step up to three times in order to finish synchronization. Once synchronization is complete, the programmed function will be carried out.

Reprogramming individual buttons

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Press and hold the interior mirror button to be programmed.
3. As soon as the LED on the interior mirror flashes orange after approx. 20 seconds, release the button.
4. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be used approx. 1 to 12 in/2.5 to 30 cm away from the buttons on the interior mirror. The required distance depends on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter.

   Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.
6. The LED can light up in different ways.
   - ▷ The LED lights up green: the programming procedure is completed.

     Release the button.
   - ▷ The LED flashes fast: the hand-held transmitter was detected but programming is not complete.

     Press the button on the interior mirror for 2 seconds and release. Perform this procedure three times to complete the programming procedure.

     If the integrated universal remote control remains nonoperational, continue with the special features for change code wireless systems.
   - ▷ LED does not flash green after 60 seconds: programming not completed.

     Repeat steps 3 to 6.

If the programming procedure is not completed, the previous programming will remain unchanged.

Operation

Warning

The operation of remote-controlled systems with the integrated universal remote control, such as the garage door, may result in injury, for example, body parts becoming jammed in a garage door. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety information of the hand-held transmitter.

The system, such as the garage door, can be operated using the button on the interior mirror while the drive-ready or standby state is switched on. To do this, hold down the button within receiving range of the system until the function is activated. The interior mirror LED stays lit while the wireless signal is being transmitted.

Deleting stored functions

All stored functions will be deleted. The functions cannot be deleted individually.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2648
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Press and hold the two outer buttons on the interior mirror simultaneously for approximately 10 seconds until the LED on the interior mirror flashes green rapidly.

Sun visor

Glare shield

Fold the sun visor down or up.

Glare shield from the side

Folding out

1. Fold the sun visor down.
2. Unhook it from the holder and swing it to the side.

Folding up

Proceed in the reverse order to close the sun visor.

Vanity mirror

A vanity mirror is located in the sun visor behind a cover. When the cover is opened, the mirror lighting switches on.

Sockets

Concept

The lighter socket can be used as a socket for electrical equipment when standby and drive-ready state are switched on.

General information

The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 watts at 12 volts.

Do not damage the socket by using non-compatible connectors.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

Devices and cables in the unfolding area of the airbags, such as portable navigation devices, can hinder the unfolding of the airbag or be thrown around in the car's interior during unfolding. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that devices and cables are not in the airbag's area of unfolding.

⚠ NOTICE

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery can work with high voltages and currents, which means that the 12 volt electrical system can be overloaded or damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.

⚠ NOTICE

If metal objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of damage to property. Replace the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.

Front center console

Push the cover forward until it engages.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2649
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

A socket is located between the cup holders.

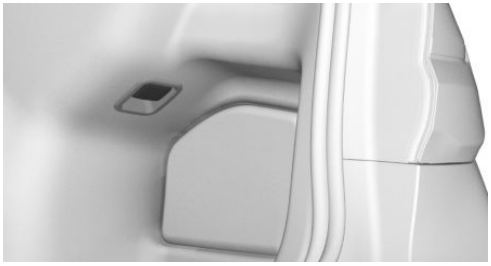
Pull off the cover.

Rear center console

A socket is located in the center console.

Pull off the cover.

In the cargo area



A socket is located on the right side in the cargo area. Unfold the cover.

USB port

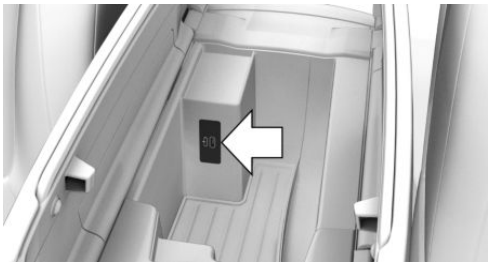
General information

Follow the information regarding the connection of mobile devices to the USB port in the section on USB connections.

Additional information:

USB connections, refer to page 74.

In the center armrest



A USB port is located in the center armrest.

Properties:

- USB port Type C.
- For charging of mobile devices.
- Charge current: max. 3 A.
- With navigation system: for data transfer.

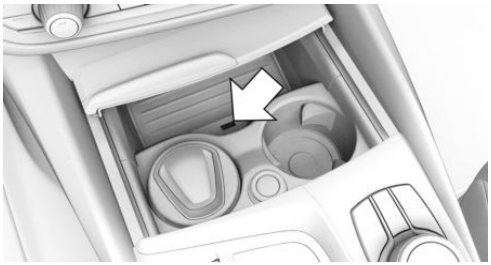
In the center console

NOTICE

Objects in the storage compartment, e.g., large USB connectors, may block or damage the cover when it is being opened or closed. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the cover is clear while opening and closing it.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2650
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Push the cover forward until it engages.



A USB port is located in the center console.

Properties:

- USB port Type A.
- For charging mobile devices and for data transfer.
- Charge current: max. 1.5 A.

In the rear center console

Two USB ports are located in the center console in the rear passenger compartment.

Properties:

- USB port Type C.
- For charging of mobile devices.
- Charge current: maximum 3 A per port.

Wireless charging tray

Concept

The wireless charging tray enables the following functions to be performed without cables:

- Charging the rechargeable battery of a mobile phone with Qi capability and of other mobile devices, which support the Qi standard.
- Charging the BMW Display key.
- Connect the mobile phone to the external antenna.

  Depending on the country, this provides for better network reception and a consistent reproduction quality.

General information

When inserting the mobile phone, make sure there are no objects between it and the wireless charging tray.

During charging, the surface of the tray and the mobile phone may become warm. Higher temperatures may lead to a reduction in the charge current through the mobile phone, and in isolated cases the charging process is paused temporarily. Follow the relevant instructions in the mobile phone owner's manual.

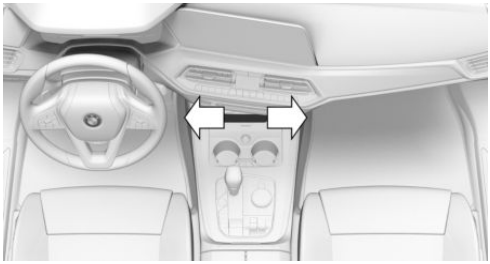
The charge indicator shows on the Control Display whether a mobile phone with Qi capability is being charged.

NOTE

This device has been tested for human exposure limits and found compliant at a minimum distance of 2 in/5 cm during operation.

Therefore, a distance of 4 in/10 cm must be maintained in every direction when operating the device.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2651
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20



Mounting position of the product.

Safety information

Warning

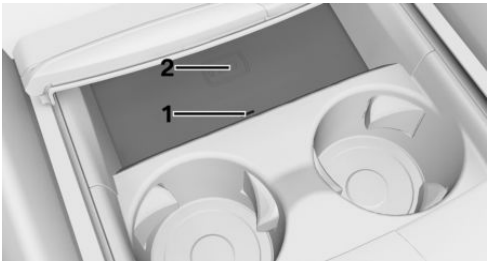
When charging a device that meets the Qi standard in the wireless charging tray, any metal objects located between the device and the tray can become very hot. Placing storage devices or electronic cards, such as chip cards, cards with magnetic strips or cards for signal transmission, between the device and the tray may impair the card function. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. When charging mobile devices, make sure there are no objects between the device and the tray.

NOTICE

The tray is intended for mobile phones up to a particular size. Forceful inserting of the mobile phone into the tray can damage the tray or the mobile phone. There is a risk of damage to property. Observe the maximum dimensions for mobile phones. Do not force the mobile phone into the tray.

Overview

Tray in the center console:



1 LED

2 Storage area

Functional requirements

- The mobile phone must compatibly support the required Qi standard.

  If the mobile phone does not support the Qi standard, the mobile phone can be charged using a special Qi-compatible charging case.
- Standby state is switched on.
- Observe the maximum dimensions of the mobile phone.
- Use only protective jackets and covers up to a maximum thickness of 0.07 in/2 mm; otherwise, the charging function may be impaired.
- The mobile phone to be charged is located in the center of the tray.

Operation

Inserting the mobile phone

The mobile phone must not exceed the maximum size of approximately 6.0 x 3.1 x 0.7 in/154.5 x 80 x 18 mm.

1. Open the tray cover.
2. Place the mobile phone centered in the tray with the display facing up.
3. Close the tray cover.

Removing the mobile phone

1. Open the tray cover.
2. Remove the mobile phone.

LED displays

Color	Meaning
Blue	The mobile phone is charging. The blue LED stays illuminated once the inserted mobile phone with Qi capability is fully charged.
Orange	The mobile phone is not charging. Temperature on the mobile phone possibly too high or foreign object in charging tray.
Red	The mobile phone is not charging. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Forgotten warning

General information

If the vehicle is equipped with the forgotten warning function, a warning can be output if a mobile phone with Qi capability was forgotten in the wireless charging tray when leaving the vehicle.

The forgotten warning is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Activating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Wireless charging tray"
5. Activate reminder.

System limits

At high temperatures on the mobile phone or in the vehicle, the charging functions of the mobile phone may be limited and some functions may no longer work.

LTE-Compensator - Information and User Manual

Your car is equipped with a wireless charging tray (WCA) to charge your mobile phone and connect it to the mobile network. To ensure the best possible connection a signal booster (LTE-Compensator) is used in conjunction with the WCA. The following paragraphs refer to this booster:

This is a CONSUMER device.

BEFORE USE, you MUST REGISTER THIS DEVICE with your wireless provider and have your provider's consent. Most wireless providers consent to the use of Compensators. Some providers may not consent to the use of this device on their network. If you are unsure, contact your provider. You MUST operate this device with approved antennas and cables as specified by the manufacturer. Antennas MUST be installed at least 20 cm (8 inches) from any person. You MUST cease operating this device immediately if requested by the FCC or a licensed wireless service provider. Warning E911 location information may not be provided or may be inaccurate for calls served by using this device.

Please observe additionally the following information

- Sprint Nextel will allow consumers to register their signal boosters by calling their toll-free number.
- T-Mobile online registration link: (www.T-Mobile.com/BoosterRegistration); (https://saqat.t-mobile.com/sites/SignalBooster#).
- Verizon's online registration link: (http://www.verizonwireless.com/wcms/consumer/register-signal-booster.html).
- AT&T online registration link (https://securec45.securewebsession.com/attsignal-booster.com/).
- U.S.Cellular online registration link (http://www.uscellular.com/uscellular/support/fcc-booster-registration.jsp).

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2653
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Before use you must register your booster device with your wireless provider.

If you should be requested by the FCC to cease operating your booster you are not allowed to insert your mobile phone in the charging tray anymore unless the booster is permanently deactivated by your local BMW dealer.

You must not remove the booster from the car nor use it with any other than the preinstalled coupling device or antenna. Any modification of the existing antenna or coupling device as well as the use of other antennas or coupling devices will cause the cease of the booster´s operating license.

The booster device fulfills the network protection standards as required by the FCC, such as intermodulation limits, oscillation detection and gain limits.

Booster Manufacturer: Kathrein Automotive

Model Number: LTECOMPB0

Part Number: 6803145-01

FCC-ID: 2ACC7LTECOMPB0

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2654

Storage compartments

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Storage compartments

General information

The vehicle interior contains multiple storage compartments for stowing objects.

Safety information

Warning

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, for instance mobile phones, can be thrown about the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the car's interior.

NOTICE

Anti-slip pads such as anti-slip mats can damage the dashboard. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use anti-slip pads.

Front passenger side glove compartment

Safety information

Warning

Folded open, the glove compartment protrudes in the car's interior. Objects in the glove compartment can be thrown into the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Always close the glove compartment immediately after using it.

Opening

Pull the handle.

The light in the glove compartment switches on.

Closing

Fold cover closed.

Locking

The glove compartment can be locked with an integrated key. This prevents access to the glove compartment.

After the glove compartment is locked, the vehicle key can be handed over without the

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2655
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

integrated key, for instance when the vehicle is parked by valet parking.

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 89.

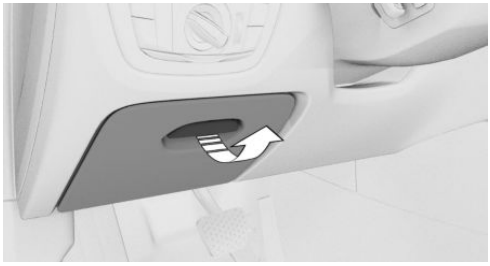
Driver's side glove compartment

Safety information

Warning

Folded open, the glove compartment protrudes in the car's interior. Objects in the glove compartment can be thrown into the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Always close the glove compartment immediately after using it.

Opening



Pull the handle.

Closing

Fold cover closed.

Compartments in the doors

General information

There are storage compartments in the doors.

Safety information

Warning

Breakable objects, such as glass bottles or glasses, can break in the event of an accident or a braking or evasive maneuver. Broken glass can be scattered in the car's interior. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not use any breakable objects while driving. Only stow breakable objects in closed storage compartments.

Storage compartment in the center console

Opening

Push the cover forward until it engages.

Closing

Touch the cover on the handle bar. The cover closes.

Storage compartment in the rear center console

The back of the center console contains one or two storage compartments.

Center armrest, front

General information

A storage compartment is located in the center armrest between the seats.

Opening

Press the button.

Closing

Press cover down until it engages.

Front cup holder

Safety information

Warning

Unsuitable containers in the cup holders may damage the cup holders or be thrown about the car's interior in the event of an accident, an evasive maneuver, or forceful braking. Spilled liquids can distract from the traffic conditions and lead to an accident. Hot drinks can damage the cup holder or lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not force objects into the cup holder. Use lightweight, shatterproof, and sealable containers. Do not transport hot beverages.

Opening

Push the cover forward until it engages.

Two cup holders are located in the center console.

Closing

Touch the cover on the handle bar. The cover closes.

Rear cup holder

Safety information

Warning

Unsuitable containers in the cup holders may damage the cup holders or be thrown about the car's interior in the event of an accident, an evasive maneuver, or forceful braking. Spilled liquids can distract from the traffic conditions and lead to an accident. Hot drinks can damage the cup holder or lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not force objects into the cup holder. Use light-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2657
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

weight, shatterproof, and sealable containers. Do not transport hot beverages.

NOTICE

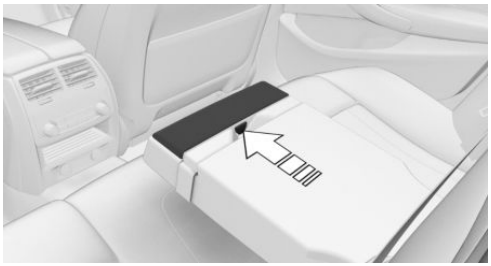
With an open cup holder, the center armrest cannot be folded back up. There is a risk of damage to property. Press back the covers before the center armrest is folded up.

Opening and closing

General information

The cup holder can be adjusted for three different container sizes.

Opening



Fold the center armrest forward.

Press the button and fold out the cup holder fully.

Reducing the size

To make it smaller, the cup holder can be folded in in 2 steps.

Enlarging

To make a smaller cup holder bigger, first fold it in completely. Then fold the cup holder out again fully.

Closing

Fold in the cup holder fully, until it engages.

Clothes hooks

General information

The clothes hooks are located in the grab handles in the rear and on the door pillar in the rear.

Safety information

Warning

Clothing articles on the clothes hooks can obstruct the view while driving. There is a risk of accident. When suspending clothing articles from the clothes hooks, ensure that they will not obstruct the driver's view.

Warning

Improper use of the clothes hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only hang lightweight objects, for instance clothing articles, from the clothes hooks.

Cargo area

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Loading

Safety information

Warning

High gross weight can overheat the tires, damage them internally and cause a sudden drop in tire inflation pressure. Driving characteristics may be negatively impacted, reducing lane stability, lengthening the braking distances and changing the steering response. There is a risk of accident. Pay attention to the permitted load capacity of the tires and never exceed the permitted gross weight.

Warning

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, for instance mobile phones, can be thrown about the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the car's interior.

Warning

Improperly stowed objects can shift and be thrown into the car's interior, for instance in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuver. Vehicle occupants can be hit and injured. There is a risk of injury. Stow and secure objects and cargo properly.

NOTICE

Fluids in the cargo area can cause damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that no fluids leak in the cargo area.

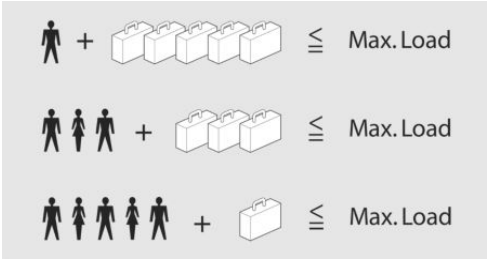
Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs” on your vehicle’s placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1,400 lbs and there will be five 150 lbs passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs (1,400 - 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your ve-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2659
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

hicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Load



The maximum load is the sum of the weight of the occupants and the cargo.

The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo that can be transported.

Stowing and securing cargo

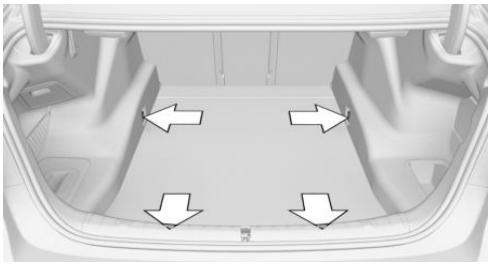
- Cover sharp edges and corners on the cargo.
- Heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear passenger seat backrests.
- Very heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear passenger seat backrests. When the rear seat is not occupied, secure each of the outer safety belts in the opposite buckle.
- If necessary, fold down the rear backrests to stow large cargo.
- Do not stack cargo above the top edge of the backrests.
- Smaller and lighter cargo: secure with ratchet straps or with a cargo net or draw straps.
- Larger and heavy cargo: secure with cargo straps.

Lashing eyes in the cargo area

General information

Attach load securing aids, such as lashing straps, tensioning straps, draw straps or cargo nets, to the lashing eyes in the cargo area.

Lashing eyes



There are four lashing eyes in the cargo area for securing cargo.

Multi-function hook

General information

A multi-function hook is located on the left side in the cargo area.

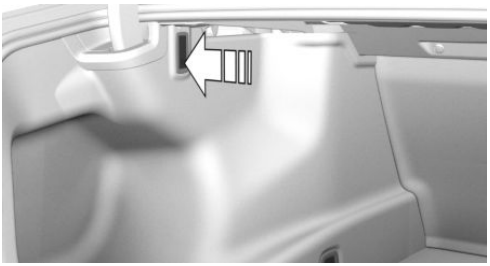
Safety information

Warning

Improper use of the multi-function hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers, for example. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only hang lightweight objects, such as shopping bags, from the multi-function hooks. Only transport heavy luggage in the cargo area if it has been appropriately secured.

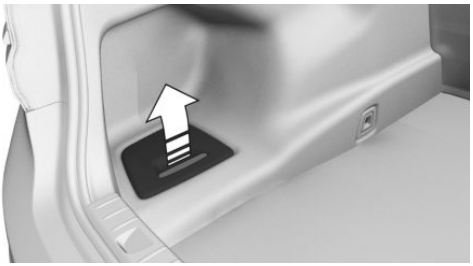
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2660

Folding down



Press on the multi-function hook and turn until it engages.

Opening



Pull the handle.

Net

Small objects can be stowed in the net on the left side.

Storage compartment on the right side

A storage compartment is available on the right side of the cargo area.

Storage compartment on the left side

General information

A storage compartment is located on the left side in the cargo area.

Through-loading system

Concept

The cargo area can be enlarged by folding down the rear seat backrests.

General information

The rear seat backrest is divided at a ratio of 40–20–40. The side rear seat backrests and the center section can be folded down separately.

The rear seat backrests can be folded down from the cargo area. The center section can be separately folded down from the rear.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

Danger of jamming with folding down the backrests. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the rear backrest and the of the head restraint is clear prior to folding down.

⚠ Warning

If a rear seat backrest is not locked, unsecured cargo can be thrown about the car's interior; for instance, in the event of an accident, braking or an evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2661
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Make sure that the rear seat backrest is locked after folding it back.

Warning

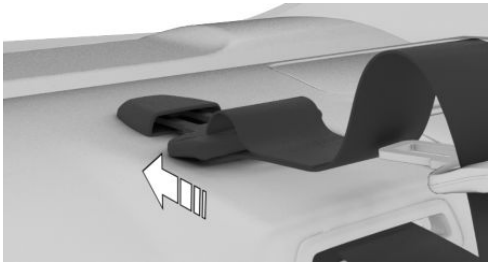
The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

NOTICE

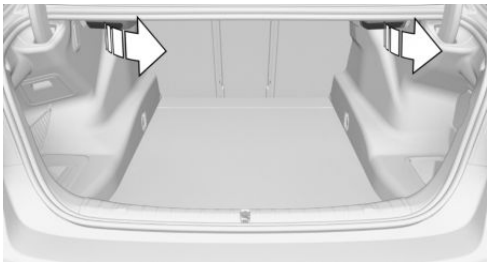
Vehicle parts can be damaged when folding down the rear backrest. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the rear backrest including head restraint is clear when folding down.

Folding down the rear seat backrest from the cargo area

1. Unlock the belt lock of the center safety belt in the rear using the latch plate of another safety belt.
2. Insert the latch plate at the end of the belt into the specially designated fixture on the rear window shelf.



3. Push the corresponding head restraint down as far as it will go.
4. Pull the corresponding lever in the cargo area to release the rear seat backrest. The unlocked rear seat backrest moves forward slightly.



5. Fold the rear seat backrest forward.

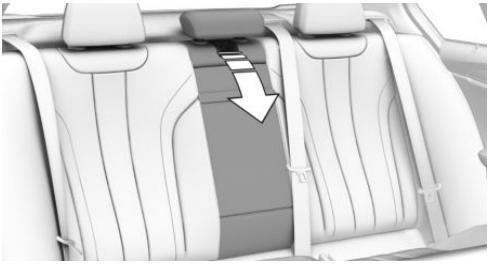
Folding back the backrest

1. Return the rear seat backrest to the upright seat position and engage it.
2. Release the belt tongue from the fixture on the rear window shelf.
3. Insert the belt tongue in the belt lock of the center safety belt. Make sure you hear the latch plate engage.

Folding down the center section

1. Fold down the center head restraint.

2. Pull lever and fold the center section forward.



Ski and snowboard bag

The ski and snowboard bag is contained in a protective jacket in the cargo area.

Follow the installation and owner's manual included in the protective jacket.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2663
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

BMW M5 Technology

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

High-performance engine

General information

With a displacement of 4.4 liters, the V8 high-performance engine generates a maximum power of 600 hp, with Competition Package 617 hp, and a maximum torque of 553 lbs ft/750 Nm. With its spontaneous response behavior, a speed range of wide utility results. The maximum engine speed is 7,200 rpm and is electronically controlled. Because of the high engine dynamics, the maximum engine speed with the vehicle stationary is reduced.

Warm-up

During the engine warm-up phase, the high-performance engine has a somewhat rougher running behavior because of the emission controls.

During the engine warm-up phase, the start occurs at an increased idle speed, which leads to increased exhaust system noises.

Additional information:

Tachometer, refer to page 154.

Engine oil temperature, refer to page 155.

Compound brake

General information

The high-performance braking system has perforated compound brake discs.

Due to the specific layout, temporary functional noise may occur after an extended minor brake load.

The functional noises have no effect on the performance, operational reliability, and durability of the brake.

Correct braking

To prevent functional noises, it is expedient to apply the brakes hard a few times in regular intervals. Ensure that the traffic situation permits the brake operations.

With moisture on the brake discs, the brake system may be operated dry to prevent noise.

M carbon ceramic brake

General information

The high-performance braking system has perforated carbon ceramic brake discs.

Due to properties of the materials used, braking may be associated with louder function noises, e.g., in the event of an extended minor brake load or in wet conditions, just before the vehicle comes to a stop.

The functional noises have no effect on the performance, operational reliability, and durability of the brake.

The effects of moisture and road salt from using a car wash, dew formation overnight, driving in rain, etc., may render the braking effect comparable to that of a conventional braking system. If necessary, this reduced braking effect can be

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2665
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

compensated for by pressing the brake pedal harder.

Correct braking and washing

To prevent functional noises, it is expedient to apply the brakes hard a few times in regular intervals. Ensure that the traffic situation permits the brake operations.

With moisture on the brake discs, the brake system may be operated dry to prevent noise.

First clean brake discs and calipers with a steam cleaner or high pressure cleaner before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash. This prevents salt crystals, for instance, from causing crusty deposits or buildup to form if the vehicle then remains stationary for a period of time. The cleaning effect of automatic washing systems or car washes is usually not adequate for this in the area around the wheels.

Drivetrain

The M xDrive all-wheel-drive system establishes variable torque distribution to the front and rear axles. The combination of M xDrive, active M differential, and an Adaptive M suspension in this vehicle ensures a high degree of driving dynamics that is typical of BMW M.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2666

Things to remember when driving

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Breaking-in period

General information

Moving parts need to begin working together smoothly.

The following instructions will help you to achieve a long vehicle life and good efficiency.

During break-in, do not use the Launch Control.

Safety information

Warning

Due to new parts and components, safety and driver assistance systems can react with a delay. There is a risk of accident. After installing new parts or with a new vehicle, drive conservatively and intervene early if necessary. Observe the break-in procedures of the respective parts and components.

Engine, transmission, and axle drive

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Drive at varying engine and road speeds, but do not exceed 5,500 rpm and 106 mph/170 km/h.

Avoid full load or kickdown under all circumstances.

At 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Have drive-in checkup maintenance performed.

From 1,200 miles/2,000 km to 3,100 miles/5,000 km

The engine and road speed can gradually be increased to a constant speed of 137 mph/220 km/h.

Use the maximum speed of 155 mph/250 km/h only briefly, for instance when passing.

Tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new; they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

For M compound brake:

Brake discs and brake pads of the M Compound brake only reach their full effectiveness after approx. 300 miles/500 km. Drive moderately during this break-in period.

For M carbon ceramic brake:

Brake discs and brake pads of the M Carbon Ceramic brake only reach their full effectiveness after approx. 600 miles/1,000 km. Drive moderately during this break-in period.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2667

Following part replacement

Observe the break-in procedures again, if components mentioned above are replaced.

General driving notes

Closing the trunk lid

Safety information

Warning

An open trunk lid protrudes from the vehicle and can endanger occupants and other traffic participants or damage the vehicle in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. In addition, exhaust fumes may enter the car's interior. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not drive with the trunk lid open.

Driving with the trunk lid open

If driving with the tailgate open cannot be avoided:

- Close all windows and the glass sunroof.
- Greatly increase the air flow from the vents.
- Drive moderately.

Hot exhaust gas system

Warning

High temperatures can occur underneath the body, for instance caused by the exhaust gas system, while driving. Contact with the exhaust gas system can cause burns. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch the hot exhaust gas system, including the exhaust pipe.

Warning

If combustible materials, such as leaves or grass, come in contact with hot parts of the exhaust gas system, these materials can ignite. There is a risk of fire and injuries. Do not remove the heat shields installed and never apply undercoating to them. Make sure that no combustible materials can come in contact with hot vehicle parts in driving operation, idle or during parking.

Mobile communication devices in the vehicle

Warning

Vehicle electronics and mobile phones can influence one another. There is radiation due to the transmission operations of mobile phones. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. If possible, in the car's interior use only mobile phones with direct connections to an exterior antenna in order to exclude mutual interference and deflect the radiation from the car's interior.

Hydroplaning

On wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water can form between the tires and road surface.

This phenomenon is referred to as hydroplaning. It is characterized by a partial or complete loss of contact between the tires and the road surface, ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle.

Driving through water

General information

When driving through water, follow the following:

- Deactivate Auto Start/Stop function.
- Drive through calm water only.

- Drive through water only if it is not deeper than maximum 9.8 inches/25 cm.
- Drive through water no faster than walking speed, up to 3 mph/5 km/h.

Safety information

NOTICE

When driving too quickly through too deep water, water can enter into the engine compartment, the electrical system or the transmission. There is a risk of damage to property. When driving through water, do not exceed the maximum indicated water level and the maximum speed for driving through water.

Braking safely

General information

The vehicle is equipped with an Antilock Braking System ABS as a standard feature.

Perform an emergency stop in situations that require such.

Steering is still responsive. You can still avoid any obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.

The pulsing of the brake pedal indicates that the Antilock Braking System ABS is in its active mode.

In certain braking situations, the perforated brake discs can emit functional noises. However, functional noises have no effect on the performance and operational reliability of the brake.

Objects in the area around the pedals

Warning

Objects in the driver's floor area can limit the pedal distance or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's floor area. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, for instance for cleaning.

Driving in wet conditions

When roads are wet, salted, or in heavy rain, gently press the brake pedal every few miles.

Ensure that this action does not endanger other traffic.

The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

In this way braking efficiency will be available when you need it.

Hills

General information

Drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear that requires least braking effort. Otherwise, the brakes may overheat and reduce brake efficiency.

You can increase the engine's braking effect by shifting down, going all the way to first gear, if needed.

Safety information

Warning

Light but consistent brake pressure can lead to high temperatures, brakes wearing out and possibly even brake failure. There is a risk of accident. Avoid placing excessive stress on the brake system.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2669
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Warning

In idle state or with the engine switched off, safety functions, for instance engine braking effect, braking assistance and steering assistance, may not be available. There is a risk of accident. Do not attempt to drive in idle state or with the engine switched off.

Brake disc corrosion

Corrosion on the brake discs and contamination on the brake pads are increased by the following circumstances:

- Low mileage.
- Extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all.
- Infrequent use of the brakes.
- Aggressive, acidic, or alkaline cleaning agents.

Corrosion buildup on the brake discs will cause a pulsating effect on the brakes in their response - generally this cannot be corrected.

Condensation water under the parked vehicle

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops and collects underneath the vehicle.

Ground clearance

NOTICE

If the ground clearance is insufficient, e.g., curbs or underground garage entrances, contact with vehicle parts, e.g., spoiler, and the underbody may occur. There is a risk of damage to property. Ensure that there is sufficient ground clearance available.

M Driver's Package: driving in the higher speed range

Warning

Damage to vehicle components can negatively impact the driving performance at high speeds. This includes, among other things, tires, undercarriage and parts for improving aerodynamics. There is a risk of accident. Have damage corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Do not drive at high speeds until the damage is corrected.

Roof-mounted luggage rack

General information

Roof racks are available as special accessories.

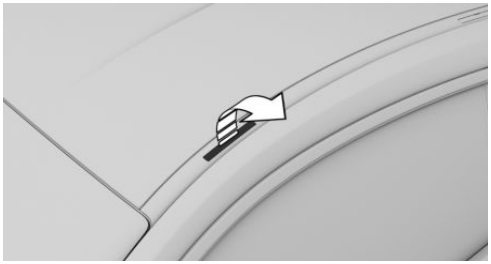
Safety information

Warning

When driving with a roof load, for instance with roof-mounted luggage rack, the vehicle's center of gravity is higher, which increases the risk of the vehicle tipping in critical driving situations. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Do not deactivate DSC Dynamic Stability Control when driving with roof load.

Roof drip rail with flaps

The fixing points are located in the roof drip rail above the doors.



Fold the cover outward.

Mounting

Follow the installation instructions of the roof rack.

Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.

Loading

Because roof-mounted luggage racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a major effect on vehicle handling and steering response.

Therefore, note the following when loading and driving:

- Do not exceed the approved roof/axle loads and the approved gross vehicle weight.
- Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.
- Distribute the roof load uniformly.
- The roof load should not extend past the loading area.
- Always place the heaviest pieces on the bottom.
- Secure the roof luggage firmly, for instance using ratchet straps.
- Do not let objects project into the opening path of the trunk lid.
- Drive cautiously and avoid sudden acceleration and braking maneuvers. Take corners gently.

Driving on racetracks

Warning

The vehicle is not designed for use in M Sport or motor sport type competition. There is a risk of accident. Do not use the vehicle for M Sport or motor sport type competitions.

Higher mechanical and thermal loads during racetrack operation lead to increased wear. This wear is not covered by the warranty.

When driving on a racetrack, increase the duration of the load slowly.

The standard brake linings and the wear indicators are not designed for racetrack operation.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2671
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Saving fuel

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Reducing fuel consumption

General information

The vehicle contains advanced technologies for the reduction of consumption and emission values.

Fuel consumption depends on a number of different factors.

Carrying out certain measures, such as a moderate driving style and regular maintenance, can influence fuel consumption and the environmental impact.

Remove unnecessary cargo

Additional weight increases fuel consumption.

Remove attached parts following use

Remove roof-mounted which are no longer required following use.

Attached parts on the vehicle impair the aerodynamics and increase the fuel consumption.

Close the windows and glass sunroof

Driving with the glass sunroof and windows open results in increased air resistance and raises fuel consumption.

Tires

General information

Tires can affect consumption in various ways, for instance tire size may influence consumption.

Check the tire inflation pressure regularly

Check and, if needed, correct the tire inflation pressure at least twice a month and before starting on a long trip.

Low tire inflation pressure increases rolling resistance and thus raises fuel consumption and tire wear.

Additional information:

Tire inflation pressure specifications, refer to page 316.

Drive away without delay

Do not wait for the engine to warm-up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving right away, but at moderate engine speeds.

This is the quickest way of warming the cold engine up to operating temperature.

Look well ahead when driving

Driving smoothly and proactively reduces fuel consumption.

Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.

By maintaining a suitable distance to the vehicle driving ahead of you.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2672
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Avoid high engine speeds

Driving at low engine speeds lowers fuel consumption and reduces wear.

If necessary, observe the vehicle's gear shift indicator.

Use coasting conditions

When approaching a red light, take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle coast to a halt.

For going downhill take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle roll.

The flow of fuel is interrupted while coasting.

Switch off the engine during longer stops

Switching off the engine

Switch off the engine during longer stops, for instance at traffic lights, railroad crossings or in traffic congestion.

Auto Start/Stop function

The Auto Start/Stop function of the vehicle automatically switches off the engine during a stop.

If the engine is switched off and then restarted rather than leaving the engine running constantly, fuel consumption and emissions are reduced. Savings can begin within a few seconds of switching off the engine.

In addition, fuel consumption is also determined by other factors, such as driving style, road conditions, maintenance or environmental factors.

Switch off any functions that are not currently needed

Functions such as seat heating and the rear window defroster require a lot of energy and increase fuel consumption, especially in city and stop-and-go traffic.

Switch off these functions if they are not needed.

Have maintenance carried out

Have the vehicle maintained regularly to achieve optimal vehicle efficiency and service life. BMW recommends that maintenance work be performed by a BMW service center.

For information on the BMW Maintenance System.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2673
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2674
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Refueling

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Follow the following when refueling

General information

Follow the fuel recommendation prior to refueling.

When refueling, insert the filler nozzle completely into the filler pipe. Lifting up the fuel pump nozzle during refueling causes:

- Premature switching off.
- Reduced return of the fuel vapors.

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

Make sure that the fuel cap is closed properly after refueling, otherwise the emissions warning light may light up.

Follow safety regulations posted at the gas station.

Additional information:

Fuel quality, refer to page 343.

Safety information

NOTICE

With a driving range of less than 30 miles/50 km the engine may no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of damage to property. Refuel promptly.

NOTICE

Fuels are toxic and aggressive. Overfilling of the fuel tank can damage the fuel system. Painted surfaces may be damaged by contact with fuel. Escaping fuel can harm the environment. There is a risk of damage to property. Avoid overfilling.

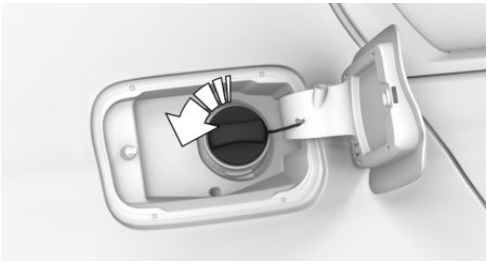
Fuel cap

Opening

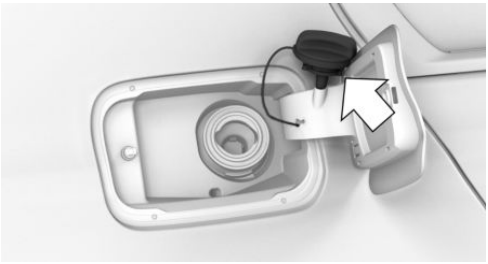
1. To open the fuel filler flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2675
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

2. Turn the fuel cap counterclockwise.



3. Place the fuel cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.



Closing

Warning

The retaining strap of the fuel cap can be jammed and crushed during closing. The cap cannot be correctly closed. Fuel or fuel vapors can escape. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Pay attention that the retaining strap is not jammed or crushed when closing the cap.

1. Fit the cap and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.
2. Press on the fuel filler flap until it engages.

Emergency unlocking

It may be necessary in certain situations to unlock the fuel filler flap manually, for instance with an electrical fault.

Have fuel filler flap unlocked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Wheels and tires

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Tire inflation pressure

General information

The tire characteristics and tire inflation pressure influence the following:

- The service life of the tires.
- Road safety.
- Driving comfort.
- Fuel consumption.

Safety information

Warning

A tire with too little or no tire inflation pressure may heat up significantly and sustain damage. This will have a negative impact on aspects of handling, such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident. Regularly check the tire inflation pressure, and correct it as needed, for instance twice a month and before a long trip.

Tire inflation pressure specifications

In the tire inflation pressure table

The tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 316, contains all tire inflation pressure specifications for the specified tire sizes at the ambient temperature. The tire inflation pressure values apply to tire sizes approved by the manufacturer of the vehicle for the vehicle type.

To identify the correct tire inflation pressure, please note the following:

- Tire sizes of your vehicle.
- Maximum permitted driving speed.

On the Control Display

The current tire inflation pressure values for the mounted tires can be displayed on the Control Display.

To ensure that they are displayed correctly, the tire sizes must be stored in the system and must have been set for the mounted tires.

The current tire inflation pressure value is located on each tire.

Checking the tire inflation pressure

General information

Tires heat up while driving. The tire inflation pressure increases with the tire temperature.

Tires have a natural, consistent loss of tire inflation pressure.

The displays of inflation devices may under-read by up to 0.1 bar/2 psi.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2677
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Checking using tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire inflation pressure table

1. Determine the intended tire inflation pressure levels for the mounted tires.
2. Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, using a pressure gage, for example.
3. Correct the tire inflation pressure if the actual tire inflation pressure deviates from the intended tire inflation pressure.
4. Check whether all valve caps are screwed onto the tire valves.

The tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire inflation pressure table only relate to cold tires or tires at the same temperature as the ambient temperature.

Only check the tire inflation pressure levels when the tires are cold, i.e.:

- ▷ A driving distance of max. 1.25 miles/2 km has not been exceeded.
- ▷ If the vehicle has not moved again for at least 2 hours after a trip.

Checking using the tire inflation pressure specifications on the Control Display

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) "Tire Pressure Monitor"
4. Check whether the current tire inflation pressure levels deviate from the intended tire pressure value.
5. Correct the tire inflation pressure if the actual tire inflation pressure deviates from the intended tire inflation pressure.

After correcting the tire inflation pressure

With runflat tires:

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

With Tire Pressure Monitor:

The corrected tire inflation pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the correct tire settings have been made.

With tires that cannot be found in the tire pressure values on the Control Display, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM.

Tire inflation pressures up to 100 mph/160 km/h

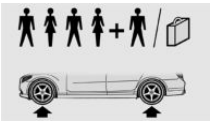
For speeds of up to 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table and adjust as necessary.

These pressure values can also be found on the tire inflation pressure label on the driver's door pillar.

Do not exceed a speed of 100 mph/160 km/h.

Tire inflation pressure values up to 100 mph/160 km/h

M5

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
265/40 R 19 102 V M+S XL	2.3 / 33	2.3 / 33

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Front: 265/40 R 19 102 V M+S XL	2.3 / 33	-
Rear: 285/40 R 19 107 V M+S XL	-	2.3 / 33
Front: 275/40 ZR 19 105 Y XL	2.4 / 35	-
Rear: 285/40 ZR 19 107 Y XL	-	2.4 / 35
Front: 275/35 ZR 20 102 Y XL	2.2 / 32	-
Rear: 285/35 ZR 20 104 Y XL	-	2.3 / 33

Tire inflation pressures at max. speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h

Warning

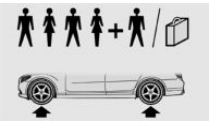
In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph/160 km/h, please observe, and, if necessary, adjust tire pressures for speeds exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h from the relevant table on the following pages. Otherwise, tire damage and accidents could occur.

For speeds over 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table and adjust as necessary.

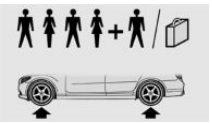
Tire inflation pressure values over 100 mph/160 km/h

M5

Without M Driver's Package:

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
265/40 R 19 102 V M+S XL	2.6 / 38	2.6 / 38
Front: 265/40 R 19 102 V M+S XL	2.6 / 38	-
Rear: 285/40 R 19 107 V M+S XL	-	2.6 / 38
Front: 275/40 ZR 19 105 Y XL	2.5 / 36	-
Rear: 285/40 ZR 19 107 Y XL	-	2.5 / 36
Front: 275/35 ZR 20 102 Y XL	2.4 / 35	-
Rear: 285/35 ZR 20 104 Y XL	-	2.5 / 36

With M Driver's Package:

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
265/40 R 19 102 V M+S XL	2.6 / 38	2.6 / 38
Front: 265/40 R 19 102 V M+S XL	2.6 / 38	-
Rear: 285/40 R 19 107 V M+S XL	-	2.6 / 38
Front: 275/40 ZR 19 105 Y XL	2.7 / 39	-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2679
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Rear: 285/40 ZR 19 107 Y XL	-	2.7 / 39
Front: 275/35 ZR 20 102 Y XL	3.0 / 44	-
Rear: 285/35 ZR 20 104 Y XL	-	3.1 / 45

Tire identification marks

Tire size

245/45 R 18 96 Y

245: nominal width in mm

45: aspect ratio in %

R: radial tire code

18: rim diameter in inches

96: load rating, not for ZR tires

Y: speed rating, before the R on ZR tires

Maximum tire load

Maximum tire load is the maximum permissible weight for which the tire is approved.

Locate the maximum tire load on the tire sidewall and the Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR – on the certification label on the driver door B-pillar. Divide the tire load by 1.1. It must be greater than one-half of the vehicle's Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR. Note, front vs. rear GAWR and tire loads, respectively.

Speed letter

Designation	Maximum speed
Q	up to 100 mph/160 km/h
R	up to 106 mph/170 km/h
S	up to 112 mph/180 km/h
T	up to 118 mph/190 km/h
H	up to 131 mph/210 km/h
V	up to 150 mph/240 km/h
W	up to 167 mph/270 km/h
Y	up to 186 mph/300 km/h
(Y)	above 186 mph/300 km/h

Tire Identification Number

DOT-Code: DOT xxxx xxx 2120

xxxx: manufacturer code for the tire brand

xxx: tire size and tire design

2120: tire age

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

Tire age

Recommendation

Regardless of the tire tread, replace tires at least every 6 years.

Manufacture date

You can find the manufacture date of the tire on the tire's sidewall.

Designation	Manufacture date
DOT … 2120	21st week 2020

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

E.g.: Treadwear 200; Traction AA; Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades

Treadwear

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2680

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Traction AA A B C

Temperature A B C

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. E.g., a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half, 1 g, times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.

Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades Band A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Warning

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

M+S

Winter and all-season tires with better cold weather performance than summer tires.

Tire tread

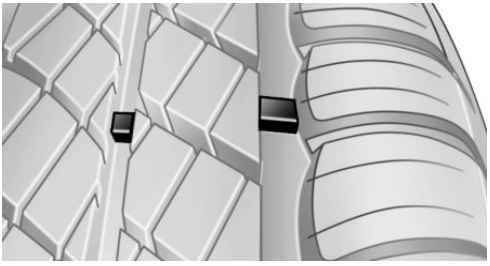
Summer tires

Do not drive with a tire tread of less than 0.12 in/3 mm, otherwise there is an increased risk of hydroplaning.

Winter tires

Do not drive with a tire tread of less than 0.16 in/4 mm, as such tires are less suitable for winter operation.

Minimum tread depth



Wear indicators are distributed around the tire circumference. These wear indicators have the

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2681
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

legally required minimum height of 0.063 in/1.6 mm.

The positions of the wear indicators are marked on the tire sidewall with TWI, Tread Wear Indicator.

Tire damage

General information

Inspect your tires regularly for damage, foreign objects lodged in the tread, and tread wear.

Driving over rough or damaged road surfaces, as well as debris, curbs and other obstacles can cause serious damage to wheels, tires and suspension parts. This is more likely to occur with low-profile tires, which provide less cushioning between the wheel and the road. Be careful to avoid road hazards and reduce your speed, especially if your vehicle is equipped with low-profile tires.

Indications of tire damage or other vehicle malfunctions:

- Unusual vibrations.
- Unusual tire or running noises.
- Unusual handling such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.

Damage can be caused by the following situations, for instance:

- Driving over curbs.
- Road damage.
- Tire inflation pressure too low.
- Vehicle overloading.
- Incorrect tire storage.

Safety information

Warning

Damaged tires can lose tire inflation pressure, which can lead to loss of vehicle control. There is a risk of accident. If tire damage is suspected while driving, immediately reduce speed and stop. Have wheels and tires checked. For this purpose, drive carefully to the nearest dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Have vehicle towed or transported as needed. Do not repair damaged tires, but have them replaced.

Warning

Tires can become damaged by driving over obstacles, e.g., curbs or road damage, at high speed. Larger wheels have a smaller tire cross-section. The smaller the tire cross-section, the higher the risk of tire damage. There is a danger of accidents and property damage. If possible, avoid driving over objects or road conditions that may damage tires, or drive over them slowly and carefully.

Changing wheels and tires

Mounting and wheel balancing

Have mounting and wheel balancing carried out by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Wheel and tire combination

General information

You can ask the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop about the correct wheel/tire combination and wheel rim versions for the vehicle.

Safety information

Warning

Wheels and tires which are not suitable for your vehicle can damage parts of the vehicle, for instance due to contact with the body due to tolerances despite the same official size rating. There is a risk of an accident. The manufacturer of your vehicle strongly suggests that you use wheels and tires that have been recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for your vehicle type.

Warning

Mounted steel wheels can cause technical problems, for instance unexpected loosening of the lug bolts and damage to the brake discs. There is a risk of accident. Do not mount steel wheels.

Warning

Incorrect wheel/tire combinations will have a negative impact on the vehicle's handling and on the function of a variety of systems, such as the ABS Antilock Braking System or DSC Dynamic Stability Control. There is a risk of accident. To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires with a single tread configuration from a single manufacturer. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you use wheels and tires that have been recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for your vehicle type. Following tire damage, have the original wheel/tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

Recommended tire brands

For each tire size, the manufacturer of the vehicle recommends certain tire brands. The tire brands can be identified by a star on the tire sidewall.

New tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new; they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Retreaded tires

Warning

Retreaded tires can have different tire casing structures. With advanced age the service life can be limited. There is a risk of an accident. The manufacturer of your vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

The manufacturer of the vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

Winter tires

General information

Winter tires are recommended for operating on winter roads.

Although so-called all-season M+S tires provide better winter traction than summer tires, they

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2683
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

usually do not provide the same level of performance as winter tires.

Maximum speed of winter tires

If the maximum speed of the vehicle is higher than the permissible speed for the winter tires, then attach a label showing the permissible maximum speed in the field of view. The label is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

With winter tires mounted, observe and do not exceed the permissible maximum speed.

Rotating wheels between axles

Warning

Rotating tires between the axles on vehicles with different tire sizes or rim sizes on the front and rear axles can cause damage to the tires and the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Do not rotate the tires between the axles on vehicles with different tire sizes or rim sizes on the front and rear axles.

Storing tires

Tire inflation pressure

Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the side wall of the tire.

Storage

- Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry and dark place.
- Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease, and solvents.
- Do not leave tires in plastic bags.
- Remove dirt from wheels or tires.

Repairing a flat tire

Safety measures

- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
- Switch on the hazard warning system.
- Secure the vehicle against rolling away by setting the parking brake.
- Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
- If necessary, set up a warning triangle at an appropriate distance.

Mobility System

Concept

With the Mobility System, minor tire damage can be sealed temporarily to enable continued travel. To accomplish this, sealant is pumped into the tires, which seals the damage from the inside.

General information

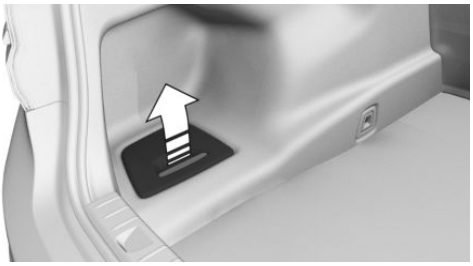
- Follow the instructions on using the Mobility System found on the compressor and sealant container.
- Use of the Mobility System may be ineffective if the tire puncture measures approx. 1/8 inches/4 mm or more.
- Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop if the tire cannot be made drivable.
- Do not remove foreign bodies that have penetrated the tire. Remove foreign objects only when they are visibly protruding from the tire.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2684
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

- Pull the speed limit sticker off the sealant container and apply it to the steering wheel.
- The use of a sealant can damage the wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics checked and replaced at the next opportunity.
- The compressor can be used to check the tire inflation pressure.

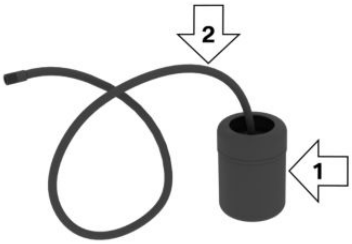
Overview

Storage



The Mobility System is in the left storage compartment of the cargo area.

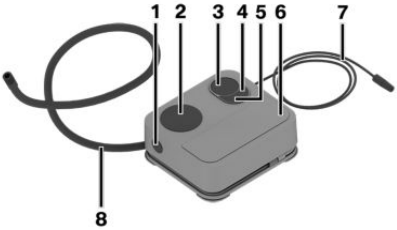
Sealant container



- Sealant container, arrow 1.
- Filling hose, arrow 2.

Observe use-by date on the sealant container.

Compressor



1 Sealant container unlocking
2 Sealant container holder
3 Tire pressure gage
4 Reduce tire inflation pressure button
5 On/off switch
6 Compressor
7 Connector/cable for socket
8 Connection hose

Safety measures

- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
- Switch on the hazard warning system.
- Secure the vehicle against rolling away by setting the parking brake.
- Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
- If necessary, set up a warning triangle at an appropriate distance.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2685
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Filling the tire with sealant

Safety information

DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can enter into the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.

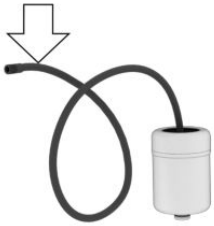
NOTICE

The compressor can overheat during extended operation. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not run the compressor for more than 10 minutes.

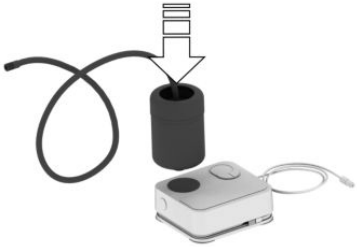
Filling

1. Shake the sealant container.

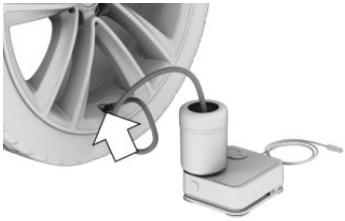
2. Pull filling hose completely out of the cover of the sealant container. Do not kink the hose.



3. Slide the sealant container into the holder on the compressor housing, ensuring that it engages audibly.



4. Screw the filling hose of the sealant container onto the tire valve of the nonworking wheel.



5. With the compressor switched off, insert the connector into the power socket in the vehicle interior.

6. With standby state or drive-ready state switched on, switch on the compressor.

Let the compressor run for max. 10 minutes to fill the tire with sealant and achieve a tire inflation pressure of approx. 2.0 bar.

While the tire is being filled with sealant, the tire inflation pressure may sporadically reach approx. 5 bar. Do not switch off the compressor at this point.

Checking and adjusting the tire inflation pressure

Checking

1. Switch off the compressor.
2. Read the tire inflation pressure on the tire pressure gage.

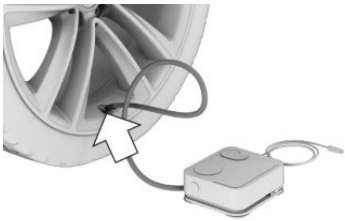
To continue the trip, a tire inflation pressure of at least 2 bar must be reached.

Removing and stowing the sealant container

1. Unscrew the filling hose of the sealant container from the tire valve.
2. Press the red unlocking device.
3. Remove the sealant container from the compressor.
4. Wrap and store the sealant container in suitable material to avoid dirtying the cargo area.

Minimum tire inflation pressure is not reached

1. Pull the connector out of the power socket in the vehicle interior.
2. Drive 33 ft/10 m forward and back to distribute the sealant in the tire.
3. Screw the connection hose of the compressor directly onto the tire valve stem.



4. Insert the connector into the power socket in the vehicle interior.

5. With standby state or drive-ready state switched on, switch on the compressor.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2687
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

When the tire pressure does not reach at least 2 bar, contact a manufacturer service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

When a tire pressure of at least 2 bar is reached, see Minimum tire inflation pressure is reached.

6. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
7. Pull the connector out of the power socket in the vehicle interior.
8. Stow the Mobility System in the vehicle.

Minimum tire inflation pressure is reached

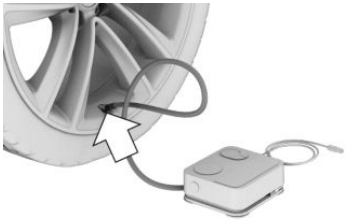
1. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
2. Pull the connector out of the power socket in the vehicle interior.
3. Stow the Mobility System in the vehicle.
4. Immediately drive approx. 5 miles/10 km to ensure that the sealant is evenly distributed in the tire.

   Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

   If possible, do not drive at speeds less than 12 mph/20 km/h.

Adjustment

1. Stop at a suitable location.
2. Screw the connection hose of the compressor directly onto the tire valve stem.



3. Insert the connector into the power socket in the vehicle interior.

4. Correct the tire inflation pressure to at least 2.0 bar:
   - ▷ Increase tire inflation pressure: with standby state or drive-ready state switched on, switch on the compressor.
   - ▷ Reduce tire inflation pressure: press the button on the compressor.
5. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
6. Pull the connector out of the power socket in the vehicle interior.
7. Stow the Mobility System in the vehicle.

Continuing the trip

Do not exceed the maximum permissible speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor again.

Replace the nonworking tire and the sealant container of the Mobility System promptly.

Additional information:

- ▷ Run-flat tires, refer to page 334.
- ▷ Tire pressure monitor, refer to page 328.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2688

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Snow chains

Safety information

Warning

With the mounting of snow chains on unsuitable tires, the snow chains can come into contact with vehicle parts. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Only mount snow chains on tires that are designated by their manufacturer as suitable for the use of snow chains.

Warning

Insufficiently tight snow chains may damage tires and vehicle components. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the snow chains are always sufficiently tight. Re-tighten as needed according to the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Fine-link snow chains

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends the use of fine-link snow chains. Certain types of fine-link snow chains have been tested by the manufacturer of the vehicle and recommended as road-safe and suitable.

Information regarding suitable snow chains is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Use

Use only in pairs on the rear wheels, equipped with the tires of the following size:

▷ 265/40 R 19.

Follow the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Do not initialize the Flat Tire Monitor after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

Do not reset the Tire Pressure Monitor after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

When driving with snow chains, briefly activate Dynamic Traction Control DTC to optimize the drive power.

Maximum speed with snow chains

Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h when using snow chains.

Tire pressure monitor

Concept

The system monitors tire inflation pressure in the four mounted tires. The system warns you if there is a loss of pressure in one or more tires.

General information

Sensors in the tire valves measure the tire inflation pressure and tire temperature.

Using the tire settings in iDrive, the system can automatically compare the specified target pressures with the actual tire inflation pressures.

If tires are being used that are not specified on the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle, such as tires with special approval, the system needs to be actively reset. The system will then take over the actual tire inflation pressures as the target pressures.

When operating the system, also note the information found in the Tire inflation pressure chapter.

Additional information:

Tire inflation pressure, refer to page 316.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2689
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Safety information

Warning

Incorrect entries in the tire settings can lead to incorrect target tire inflation pressure values. In this case, it cannot be guaranteed that the notification of a loss of tire inflation pressure will be reliable. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Ensure that the tire sizes of the mounted tires are displayed correctly and match the details on the tires and on the vehicle.

Functional requirements

The following conditions must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable flagging of a loss of tire inflation pressure is not assured:

- Every time a tire or wheel is changed, the correct details on the mounted tires must be entered in the tire settings.
- The Tire Pressure Monitor does not activate until after driving for a few minutes:
  - After a tire or wheel replacement.
  - After a reset, for tires with special approval.
  - After changing the tire setting.
- For tires with special approval:
  - After a tire or wheel replacement, a reset was performed with the correct tire inflation pressure.
  - After the tire inflation pressure was adjusted to a new value, a reset was performed.
- Wheels with wheel electronics.

Tire settings

General information

The tire sizes of the mounted tires can be gathered from the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle or directly on the tires.

The tire details do not need to be re-entered when the tire inflation pressure is corrected.

For summer and winter tires, the tire details entered last are stored. After a tire or wheel replacement, the settings of the tire sets used last can be selected.

Changing settings

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor"
4. "Tire settings"
5. "Tire selection"
6. "Manual"
7. "Tire type"
   - "Summer"
   - "Winter/All-year"
8. Select the tire type that is mounted on the rear axle.

   For tires with special approval:

   "Other tires/raceway"

   Observe further proceeding in the perform a reset section.
9. Select the maximum road speed that will be used with the tires.
10. "Save tire settings"

The measurement of the current tire inflation pressure is started. The measurement progress is displayed.

Status display

Current status

The system status can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g., whether or not the system is active.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor"

The current status is displayed.

Current tire inflation pressure

The current tire inflation pressure is displayed for each tire.

The current tire inflation pressures may change during driving operation or depending on the external temperature.

Current tire temperature

The current tire temperatures are displayed.

The current tire temperatures may change while driving or due to the external temperature.

Tire conditions

General information

Tire and system status are indicated by the color of the wheels and a text message on the Control Display.

Any existing messages may not be deleted if the target pressure is not reached after the tire inflation pressure is corrected.

All wheels green

- The system is active and bases warnings on the target pressures.
- For tires with special approval: the system is active and bases warnings on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

One to four yellow wheels

A flat tire or major drop in the tire inflation pressure has occurred in the indicated tires.

Gray wheels

It may not be possible to identify tire inflation pressure losses.

Possible causes:

- Malfunction.
- During tire inflation pressure measurement, after confirmation of the tire settings.
- For tires with special approval: a reset is performed for the system.

For tires with special approval: perform a reset

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor"
4. Make sure that correct tire settings have been made.

   Tire settings, refer to page 329.
5. Switch on drive-ready state and do not drive off.
6. Reset tire inflation pressure: "Perform reset".
7. Drive away.

The wheels are displayed in gray and the following is displayed "Resetting tire pressure…".

After a travel time of several minutes, the set tire inflation pressures are accepted as the target tire inflation pressures. The reset is completed automatically while driving.

After a successfully completed reset, the wheels on the Control Display are shown in green and the following is displayed: "Reset successful."

You may interrupt this trip at any time. When you continue the reset resumes automatically.

Messages: for tires without special approval

General information

A low tire inflation pressure may cause the DSC Dynamic Stability Control to be switched on.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving. Repair the flat tire or replace the wheel.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2691
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

If a tire inflation pressure check is required

Message

A symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	Inflation was not carried out according to specifications, for instance when the tire has not been sufficiently inflated or in the case of a natural steady tire pressure loss.

Measure

Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.

If the tire inflation pressure is too low

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a tire inflation pressure loss.

Measure

1. Reduce the vehicle speed. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph/130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, for instance at a gas station, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires and correct if necessary.

If there is a significant loss of tire inflation pressure

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with the affected tire appears in a Check Control message on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Read the description on What to do in case of a flat tire.

   Actions in the event of a flat tire, refer to page 332.

Messages: for tires with special approval

General information

A low tire inflation pressure may cause the DSC Dynamic Stability Control to be switched on.

Safety information

Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving. Repair the flat tire or replace the wheel.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2692
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

If a tire inflation pressure check is required

Message

A symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	Inflation was not carried out according to specifications, e.g., the tire has not been sufficiently inflated. The system has detected a wheel change, but no reset was done. The tire inflation pressure has fallen below the level of the last reset. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.
2. Perform a system reset.

If the tire inflation pressure is too low

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a tire inflation pressure loss. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Reduce the vehicle speed. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph/130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, for instance at a gas station, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires and correct if necessary.
3. Reset the system.

If there is a significant loss of tire inflation pressure

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with the affected tire appears in a Check Control message on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Read the description on What to do in case of a flat tire.

   Actions in the event of a flat tire, refer to page 332.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

1. Identify the damaged tire.

   Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure gage of a flat tire kit.

   For tires with special approval: if the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2693
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been reset. In this case, perform the reset.

If tire damage cannot be found, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

2. Repair the flat tire, e.g., with a flat tire kit or by changing the wheel.

   Use of sealant, for instance from the flat tire kit, may damage the wheel electronics. Have the electronics replaced at the next opportunity.

System limits

Temperature

The tire inflation pressure depends on the tire's temperature.

Driving or exposure to the sun will increase the tire's temperature, thus increasing the tire inflation pressure.

The tire inflation pressure is reduced when the tire temperature falls again.

These circumstances may cause a warning when temperatures fall very sharply.

Sudden tire pressure loss

The system cannot indicate sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances.

Failure performing a reset

Tires with special approval: the system will not function correctly if a reset was not performed, for example a flat tire may be indicated although the tire inflation pressures are correct.

Malfunction

Message

The yellow warning light flashes and is then illuminated continuously. A Check Control message is displayed. It may not be possible to identify tire pressure losses.

Measure

- A wheel without wheel electronics is mounted: have the wheels checked, if needed.
- Interference caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- For tires with special approval: the system was unable to complete the reset. Perform a system reset again.

Malfunction: have the system checked.

Declaration according to NHTSA/ FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Each tire, including the spare (if provided) should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.) As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if underinflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale. Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS

malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Flat Tire Monitor FTM

Concept

The system detects tire inflation pressure loss on the basis of rotation speed differences between the individual wheels while driving.

In the event of a tire inflation pressure loss, the diameter and therefore the rotational speed of the corresponding wheel changes. The difference will be detected and reported as a flat tire.

The system does not measure the actual inflation pressure in the tires.

Functional requirements

The following conditions must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable flagging of a loss of tire inflation pressure is not assured:

- After a tire or wheel replacement, an initialization was performed with the correct tire inflation pressure.
- After the tire pressure was adjusted to a new value, an initialization was performed.

Status display

The current status of the Flat Tire Monitor FTM can be displayed, for instance whether the FTM is active.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Flat Tire Monitor"

The status is displayed.

Initialization required

An initialization must be performed in the following situations:

- After the tire inflation pressure has been adjusted.
- After a tire or wheel replacement.

Performing initialization

When initializing, the set tire inflation pressures serve as reference values in order to detect a flat tire. Initialization is started by confirming the tire inflation pressures.

Do not initialize the system when driving with snow chains.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Flat Tire Monitor"
4. Switch on drive-ready state and do not drive off.
5. Start the initialization with: "Perform reset"
6. Drive away.

The initialization is completed while driving, which can be interrupted at any time.

The initialization automatically continues when driving resumes.

Messages

General information

When a flat tire is indicated, DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if needed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2695
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Safety information

Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving. Repair the flat tire or replace the wheel.

Indication of a flat tire

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

1. Identify the damaged tire.

   To do this, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure gage of a flat tire kit.

   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

   If identification of flat tire damage is not possible, please contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
2. Repair the flat tire, e.g., with a flat tire kit or by changing the wheel.

System limits

The system could be delayed or malfunction in the following situations:

- A natural, even tire inflation pressure loss in all four tires will not be recognized. Therefore, check the tire inflation pressure regularly.
- Sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances cannot be recognized in advance.
- The system has not been initialized.
- When driving on a snowy or slippery road surface.
- Sporty driving style: spinning traction wheels, high lateral acceleration (drifting).
- When driving with snow chains.

Changing wheels/tires

General information

When a flat tire kit is used, an immediate wheel change when there is a loss of tire inflation pressure in the event of a flat tire is not always necessary.

If needed, the tools for changing wheels are available as accessories from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

DANGER

The vehicle jack is only provided for short-term lifting of the vehicle for wheel changes. Even if all safety measures are observed, there is a risk of the raised vehicle falling, if the vehicle jack tips over. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. If the vehicle is raised, do not lie under the vehicle and do not start the engine.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2696
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

DANGER

Supports such as wooden blocks under the vehicle jack reduce the capacity of the vehicle jack to bear weight. They have the potential to exert too much strain on the vehicle jack, causing it to tip over and the vehicle to fall. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not place supports under the vehicle jack.

Warning

The jack, issued by the vehicle manufacturer, is provided in order to perform a wheel change in the event of a breakdown. The jack is not designed for frequent use; for example, changing from summer to winter tires. Using the jack frequently may cause it to become jammed or damaged. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only use the jack to attach an emergency or spare wheel in the event of a breakdown.

Warning

On soft, uneven or slippery ground, for example snow, ice, tiles, etc., the vehicle jack can slip away. There is a risk of injury. If possible, change the wheel on a flat, solid, and slip-resistant surface.

Warning

The vehicle jack is optimized for lifting the vehicle and for the jacking points on the vehicle only. There is a risk of injury. Do not lift any other vehicle or cargo using the vehicle jack.

Warning

When the vehicle jack is not inserted into the jacking point provided for this purpose, the vehicle may be damaged or the vehicle jack may slip when it is being cranked up. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. When cranking up the vehicle jack, ensure that it is inserted in the jacking point next to the wheel housing.

Warning

A vehicle that is raised on a vehicle jack may fall off of the jack if lateral forces are exerted on it. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. While the vehicle is raised, do not exert lateral forces on the vehicle or pull abruptly on the vehicle. Have a stuck wheel removed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Securing the vehicle against rolling

General information

The vehicle manufacturer recommends to additionally secure the vehicle against rolling away when changing a wheel.

On a level surface

Place wheel chocks or other suitable objects in front and behind the wheel that is diagonal to the wheel to be changed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2697
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

On a slight downhill gradient

If you need to change a wheel on a slight downhill grade, place chocks and other suitable objects, for instance rocks, under the wheels of both the front and rear axles against the rolling direction.

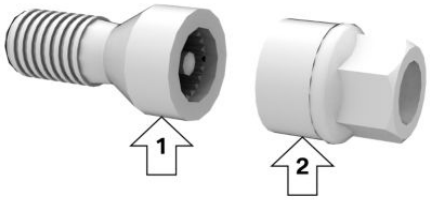
Lug bolt lock

Concept

The wheel lug bolts have a special coding. The lug bolts can only be released with the adapter which matches the coding.

Overview

The adapter of the lug bolt lock is in the onboard vehicle tool kit or in a storage compartment close to the onboard vehicle tool kit.



- ▷ Lug lock bolt, arrow 1.
- ▷ Adapter, arrow 2.

Unscrewing

1. Attach the adapter to the lug lock bolt.
2. Unscrew the lug lock bolt.
3. Remove the adapter after unscrewing the lug bolt.

Screwing on

1. Attach the adapter to the lug lock bolt. If necessary, turn the adapter until it fits on the lug lock bolt.
2. Screw on the lug lock bolt. The tightening torque is 140 Nm.
3. Remove the adapter and stow it after screwing on the lug bolt.

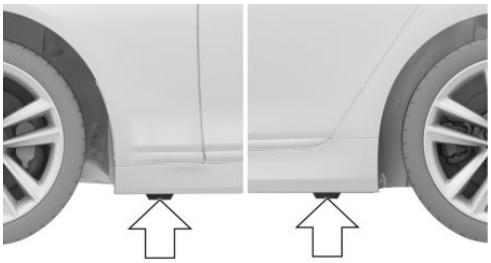
Preparing the vehicle

- ▷ Park the vehicle on solid and non-slip ground at a safe distance from traffic.
- ▷ Switch on the hazard warning system.
- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ Engage a gear or move the selector lever to position P.
- ▷ As soon as permitted by the traffic flow, have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
- ▷ Depending on the vehicle equipment, get wheel change tools and, if necessary, the emergency wheel from the vehicle.
- ▷ If necessary, set up a warning triangle or portable hazard warning light at an appropriate distance.
- ▷ Secure the vehicle additionally against rolling.
- ▷ Loosen the lug bolts a half turn.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2698

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Jacking points for the vehicle jack



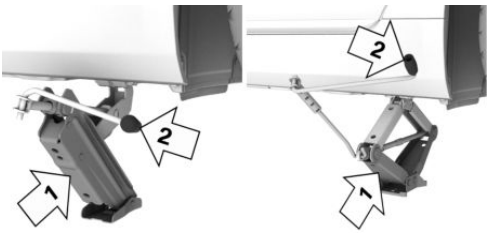
The jacking points for the vehicle jack are located at the indicated positions.

Jacking up the vehicle

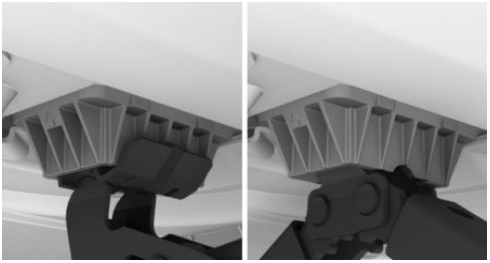
Warning

Hands and fingers can be jammed when using the vehicle jack. There is a risk of injury. Comply with the described hand position and do not change this position while using the vehicle jack.

1. Hold the vehicle jack with one hand, arrow 1, and grasp the vehicle jack crank or lever with your other hand, arrow 2.



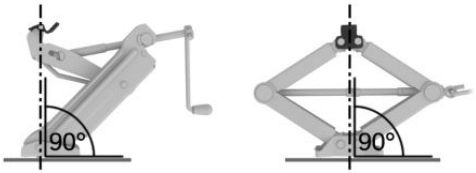
2. Insert the vehicle jack into the rectangular recess of the jacking point closest to the wheel to be changed.



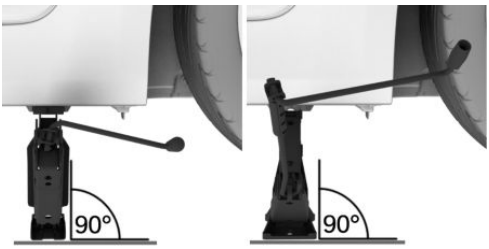
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2699
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

3. Extend the vehicle jack by turning the vehicle jack crank or lever clockwise.

4. Take your hand away from the vehicle jack as soon as the vehicle jack is under load and continue turning the vehicle jack crank or lever with one hand.
5. Make sure that the vehicle jack foot stands vertically and at a right angle beneath the jacking point.



6. Make sure that the vehicle jack foot stands vertically and perpendicularly beneath the jacking point after extending the vehicle jack.



7. Crank the vehicle up, until the vehicle jack is with the entire surface on the ground and the relevant wheel is maximum 1.2 inches/3 cm above ground.

Mounting a wheel

Mount one emergency wheel only, as required.

1. Unscrew the lug bolts.
2. Remove the wheel.
3. Put the new wheel or emergency wheel on and screw in at least two lug bolts in a crosswise pattern until hand-tight.

   When non-original light-alloy wheels of the vehicle manufacturer are mounted, the accompanying lug bolts may have to be used as well.
4. Hand-tighten the remaining lug bolts and tighten all lug bolts well in a crosswise pattern.
5. Turn the vehicle jack crank counterclockwise to retract the vehicle jack and lower the vehicle.
6. Remove the vehicle jack and stow it securely.

After the wheel change

1. Tighten the lug bolts crosswise. The tightening torque is 101 lbs ft/140 Nm.
2. Stow the nonworking wheel in the cargo area, if necessary.

   The nonworking wheel cannot be stored under the cargo floor panel because of its size.
3. Check tire inflation pressure at the next opportunity and correct as needed.
4. Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

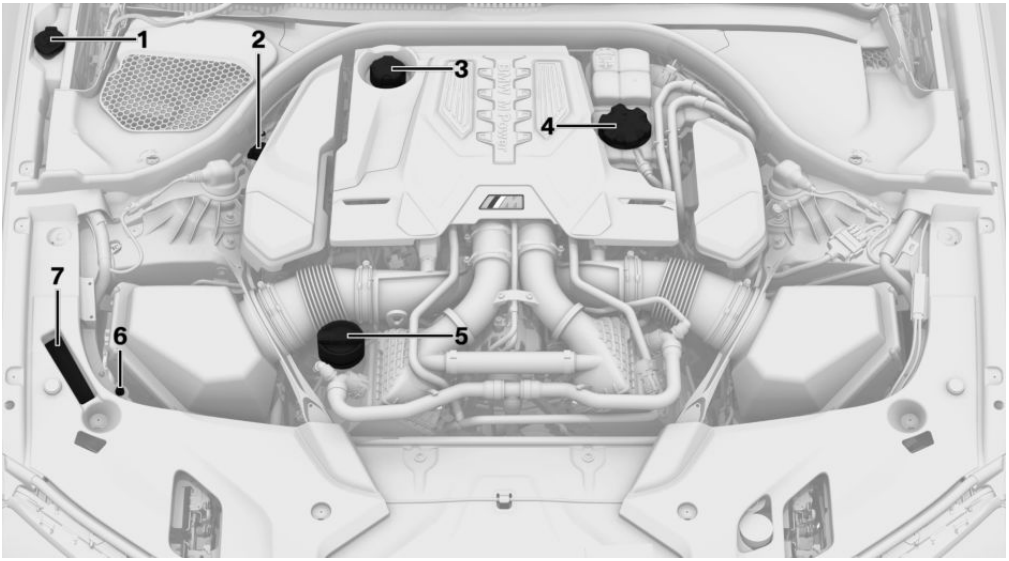
   Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor again.
5. Check to make sure the lug bolts are tight with a calibrated torque wrench.
6. Have the damaged tire replaced at the nearest dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Engine compartment

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Overview



1 Filler neck for washer fluid
2 Jump-starting, positive battery terminal
3 Coolant reservoir, charge air
4 Coolant reservoir, engine
5 Oil filler neck
6 Jump-starting, negative battery terminal
7 Vehicle identification number

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2701
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Hood

Safety information

Warning

Improperly executed work in the engine compartment can damage vehicle components and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of an accident and damage to property. Have work in the engine compartment performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

The engine compartment accommodates moving components. Certain components in the engine compartment can also move with the vehicle switched off, for instance the radiator fan. There is a risk of injury. Do not reach into the area of moving parts. Keep articles of clothing and hair away from moving parts.

Warning

There are protruding parts, for instance locking hook, on the inside of the hood. There is a risk of injury. If the hood is open, pay attention to protruding parts and keep clear of these areas.

Warning

An incorrectly locked hood can open while driving and restrict visibility. There is a risk of accident. Stop immediately and correctly close the hood.

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when opening and closing the hood. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of hood is clear during opening and closing.

NOTICE

Folded-away wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.

NOTICE

When the hood is closed, it must engage on both sides. Pressing again can damage the hood. There is a risk of damage to property. Open the hood again and then close it energetically. Avoid pressing again.

Opening

1. Pull lever, arrow 1.

   Hood is unlocked.

2. After the lever is released, pull the lever again, arrow 2.

   Hood can be opened.

3. Be careful of protruding parts on the hood.

Closing

Energetically close the hood from approx. 20 in/50 cm.

The hood must engage on both sides.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2703
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Operating materials

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Fuel recommendation

General information

Depending on the region, many gas stations sell fuel that has been customized to winter or summer conditions. Fuel that is available in winter, for instance helps make a cold start easier.

Gasoline

General information

For the best fuel efficiency, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.

Fuels with a maximum ethanol content of 25 %, i. e. E10 or E25, may be used for refueling.

Ethanol should meet the following quality standards:

US: ASTM 4806–xx

CAN: CGSB-3.511–xx

xx: comply with the current standard in each case.

Safety information

⚠ CAUTION

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in harmful engine deposits or damage. Additionally, problems relating to drivability, starting and stalling, especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude, may occur.

If drivability problems are encountered, we recommend switching to a high quality gasoline brand and a higher octane grade — AKI number — for a few tank fills. To avoid harmful engine deposits, it is highly recommended to purchase gasoline from Top Tier retailers.

Failure to comply with these recommendations may result in the need for unscheduled maintenance.

⚠ NOTICE

Even small quantities of the wrong fuel or wrong fuel additives can damage the fuel system and engine. Furthermore, the catalytic converter is permanently damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not refuel or add the following in the case of gasoline engines:

- Leaded gasoline.
- Metallic additives, for instance manganese or iron.

Do not press the Start/Stop button after refueling with the wrong fuel. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2704

NOTICE

Incorrect fuels can damage the fuel system and the engine. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use fuels with a higher percentage of ethanol than recommended. Do not refuel with fuels containing methanol, e.g. M5 to M100.

NOTICE

Fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality can compromise engine function or cause engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not fill with fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality.

Recommended fuel grade

BMW recommends AKI 93.

Refuel with this gasoline to achieve the rated performance and consumption values.

Minimum fuel grade

BMW recommends AKI 91.

If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI Rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high external temperatures. This has no effect on the engine life.

BMW M recommends Shell V-Power

Engine oil

General information

The engine oil consumption is dependent on your driving style and driving conditions.

Therefore, regularly check the engine oil level after refueling by taking a detailed measurement.

The engine oil consumption can increase in the following situations, for instance:

- Sporty driving style.
- Break-in of the engine.
- Idling of the engine.
- With use of engine oil types that are classified as not suitable.

Different Check Control messages appear on the Control Display depending on the engine oil level.

Safety information

NOTICE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Immediately add engine oil.

NOTICE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add too much engine oil. When too much engine oil is added, have the engine oil level corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Electronic oil measurement

General information

The electronic oil measurement has two measuring principles:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2705
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

- Monitoring.
- Detailed measurement.

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a dynamic driving style, for instance when taking curves aggressively, regularly perform a detailed measurement.

Monitoring

Concept

The engine oil level is monitored electronically while driving and can be shown on the Control Display.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.

A red indicator light indicates that the engine oil pressure is too low.

Functional requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of normal driving.

Displaying the engine oil level

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"

The engine oil level is displayed.

System limits

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a dynamic driving style, it may not be possible to calculate a measured value. In this case, the measured value for the last, sufficiently long trip is displayed.

Detailed measurement

Concept

The engine oil level is checked when the vehicle is stationary and displayed via a scale.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.

General information

During the measurement, the idle speed is increased somewhat.

Functional requirements

- Vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- Selector lever in selector lever position N or P and accelerator pedal not depressed.
- The drive-ready state is switched on by pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Engine is running and is at operating temperature.

Performing a detailed measurement

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"
4. "Engine oil measurement"
5. "Start measurement"

The engine oil level is checked and displayed via a scale.

Adding engine oil

General information

Only add engine oil when the message is displayed in the instrument cluster. The quantity to be added is indicated in the message shown on the Control Display.

Only add suitable types of engine oil.

Safely park the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before adding engine oil.

Take care not to add too much engine oil.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2706

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Safety information

Warning

Operating materials, for instance oils, greases, coolants, fuels, can contain harmful ingredients. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Follow the instructions on the containers. Avoid the contact of articles of clothing, skin or eyes with operating materials. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.

NOTICE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Immediately add engine oil.

NOTICE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add too much engine oil. When too much engine oil is added, have the engine oil level corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Overview

The oil filler neck is located in the engine compartment.

Additional information:

For an overview, refer to page 340.

Adding engine oil

1. Opening the hood.

   Opening, refer to page 341.
2. Open the lid counterclockwise.

3. Add engine oil.
4. Close the lid.

Engine oil types to add

General information

The engine oil quality is critical for the life of the engine.

Only add the types of engine oil which are listed.

Safety information

NOTICE

Oil additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use oil additives.

NOTICE

Incorrect engine oil can cause malfunctions in the engine or damage it. There is a risk of damage to property. When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has the correct oil rating.

Suitable engine oil types

Add engine oils that meet the following oil rating standards:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2707
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Oil rating
BMW Longlife-01 FE.

Alternative engine oil types

If an engine oil suitable for continuous use is not available, up to 1 US quart/liter of an engine oil with the following oil rating can be added:

Oil rating
API SL.
API SM.
API SN.

Viscosity grades

Viscosity grades
SAE 0W-30.

More information about suitable oil ratings and viscosity grades of engine oils can be requested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Engine oil change

NOTICE

Engine oil that is not changed in timely fashion can cause increased engine wear and thus engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. It is recommended that you do not exceed the service intervals indicated in the vehicle.

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop change the engine oil.

BMW recommends
Original BMW Engine Oil.

Coolant

General information

Coolant consists of water and additives.

Not all commercially available additives are suitable for the vehicle. Do not mix additives of different colors. Observe the water - additive mixing ratio of 50:50. Information about suitable additives is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Warning

With the engine hot and the cooling system open, coolant can escape and lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury. Only open the cooling system with the engine cooled down.

Warning

Additives are harmful and incorrect additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Do not allow additives to come into contact with skin, eyes or articles of clothing. Use suitable additives only.

Coolant level

General information

Depending on the motorization, there are up to two coolant reservoirs in the engine compartment. Check and top up the coolant levels on a regular basis.

The coolant level is indicated using minimum and maximum markings in the filler neck of the coolant reservoir.

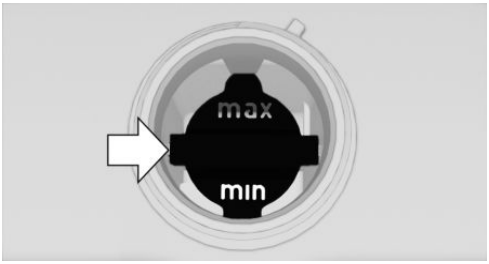
Additional information:

For an overview, refer to page 340.

Checking the coolant level

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Opening the hood.

   Opening, refer to page 341.
3. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.
4. Open the coolant reservoir lid.
5. The coolant level is correct if it lies between the minimum and maximum marks in the filler neck.



6. Close the lid.

Adding coolant

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Opening the hood.

   Opening, refer to page 341.
3. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.
4. Open the coolant reservoir lid.
5. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to the specified level; do not overfill.
6. Close the lid.
7. Have the cause of the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.

Disposal

Comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant and coolant additives.

Washer fluid

General information

All washer nozzles are supplied from one reservoir.

Use a mixture of tap water and windshield washer concentrate. If desired, a windshield washer concentrate containing antifreeze can be used.

Recommended minimum fill quantity:
0.2 US gal/1 liter.

Safety information

Warning

Some antifreeze agents can contain harmful substances and are flammable. There is a risk of fire and a risk of injury. Follow the instructions on the containers. Keep antifreeze away from ignition sources. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2709
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

United States: the washer fluid mixture ratio is regulated by the U.S. EPA and many individual states; do not exceed the allowable washer fluid dilution ratio limits that apply. Follow the usage instructions on the washer fluid container.

Use of BMW's Windshield Washer Concentrate or the equivalent is recommended.

Warning

Washer fluid can ignite and catch fire on contact with hot engine parts. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Only add washer fluid when the engine is cooled down. Next, fully close the lid of the washer fluid reservoir.

NOTICE

Silicon-containing additives in the washer fluid for the water-repelling effect on the windows can lead to damage to the washing system. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add silicon-containing additives to the washer fluid.

NOTICE

Mixing different windshield washer concentrates or antifreeze can damage the washing system. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not mix different windshield washer concentrates or antifreeze. Follow the information and mixing ratios provided on the containers.

Overview

The washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment.

Malfunction

The use of undiluted windshield washer concentrate or alcohol-based antifreeze can lead to incorrect readings at temperatures below +5 °F/-15 °C.

Maintenance

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

BMW maintenance system

The maintenance system provides service notifications and thereby provides support in maintaining road safety and the operational reliability of the vehicle.

In some cases, scopes and intervals of the maintenance system may vary according to the country version. Replacement work, spare parts, fuels and lubricants, and wear materials are calculated separately. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Condition Based Service CBS

Concept

Sensors and special algorithms take into account the driving conditions of the vehicle. CBS uses these to provide maintenance recommendations.

The system makes it possible to adapt the amount of maintenance corresponding to your user profile.

General information

Information on service notifications can be displayed on the Control Display.

Additional information:

Service notifications, refer to page 156.

Service data in the vehicle key

Information on the service notifications is continuously stored in the vehicle key. The service center can read this data out and suggest a maintenance scope for the vehicle.

Therefore, hand the service advisor the vehicle key with which the vehicle was driven most recently.

Storage periods

Storage periods during which the vehicle battery was disconnected are not taken into account.

If this occurs, have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop update the time-dependent maintenance procedures, such as checking brake fluid and, if necessary, changing the engine oil and the microfilter/activated-charcoal filter.

Maintenance Manual and Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

Please consult your Maintenance Manual and Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2711
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

the performance of service and maintenance work.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that maintenance and repair be performed by a service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Records of regular maintenance and repair work should be retained.

Socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis

General information

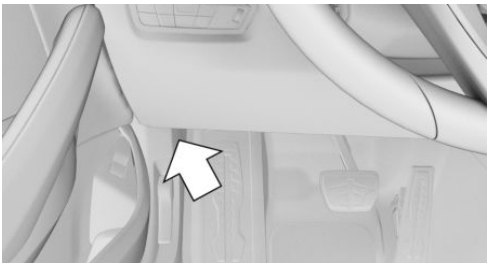
Devices connected to the OBD socket trigger the alarm system when the vehicle is locked. Remove any devices connected at the OBD socket before locking the vehicle.

Safety information

NOTICE

The socket for Onboard Diagnosis is an intricate component intended to be used in conjunction with specialized equipment to check the vehicle's primary emissions system. Improper use of the socket for Onboard Diagnosis, or contact with the socket for Onboard Diagnosis for other than its intended purpose, can cause vehicle malfunctions and creates risks of personal and property damage. Given the foregoing, the manufacture of your vehicle strongly recommends that access to the socket for Onboard Diagnosis be limited to a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or other persons that have the specialized training and equipment for purposes of properly utilizing the socket for Onboard Diagnosis.

Position



There is an OBD socket on the driver's side for checking the primary components in the vehicle's emissions.

Emissions

- The warning light lights up:

  Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

- The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:

  This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

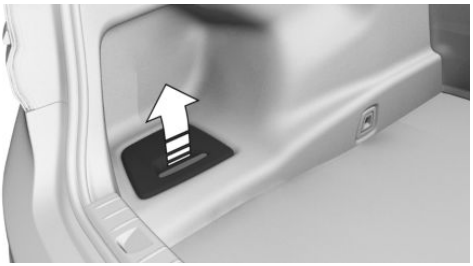
  Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

Replacing components

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Vehicle tool kit



The onboard vehicle tool kit is located in the left storage compartment of the cargo area.

Wiper blades

Safety information

NOTICE

The window may sustain damage if the wiper falls onto it without the wiper blade installed. There is a risk of damage to property. Hold the wiper firmly when changing the wiper blade. Do not fold or switch on the wiper without a wiper blade installed.

NOTICE

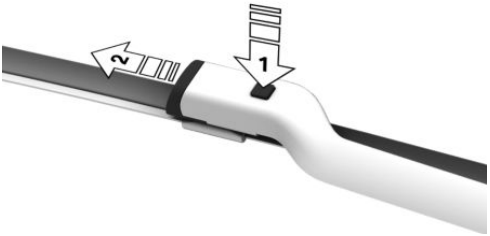
Folded-away wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.

Replacing

1. To change the wiper blades, fold up the wiper arms.

   Fold-away position of the wipers, refer to page 136.
2. Lift the wiper off of the windshield and hold.

3. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull out the wiper blade, arrow 2.



BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2713
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

4. Insert the new wiper blade and press it on until it you hear it snap into the holder.
5. Fold down the wipers.

Lights and bulbs

General information

Lights and bulbs make an essential contribution to vehicle safety.

All headlights and lights are made using LED or laser technology.

Some items of equipment use light-emitting diodes installed behind a cover as a light source. These light-emitting diodes are related to conventional lasers and are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you let a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop perform the work in case of a malfunction.

Safety information

Warning

Focused laser light can irritate or permanently damage the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that the work on the lighting system including bulb replacement be performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

Intensive brightness can irritate or damage the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. Do not look directly into the headlights or other light sources. Do not remove the LED covers.

Headlight glass

Condensation can form on the inside of the headlight glass in cool or humid weather. When driving with the lights switched on, the condensation evaporates after a short time. The headlight glass does not need to be changed.

If despite driving with the headlights switched on, increasing humidity forms, for instance water droplets in the light, have the headlights checked.

Vehicle battery

General information

The battery is maintenance-free.

More information about the battery can be requested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

DANGER

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.

Warning

Vehicle batteries that are not compatible can damage vehicle systems and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of an accident and damage to property. Only vehicle batteries that are compatible with your vehicle type should be installed in your vehicle. Information on compatible vehicle batteries is available at your dealer's service center.

Register the battery to the vehicle

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you have a service center or another qualified service center or repair shop register the vehicle battery to the vehicle after the battery has been replaced. Once the battery has been registered again, all comfort features will be available without restriction and any Check Control messages displayed which relate to comfort features will disappear.

Charging the battery

General information

Make sure that the battery is always sufficiently charged to guarantee that the battery remains usable for its full service life.

A discharged battery is indicated by a red indicator light.

Charge the battery in the following situations:

- When the inspection glass on the top of the battery is black.
- When the take-off performance is insufficient.

The following circumstances can have a negative effect on the performance of the battery:

- Frequent short-distance drives.
- The vehicle is not used for more than a month.

Safety information

NOTICE

Non-compatible external chargers can damage the vehicle. There is a risk of an accident and damage to property. Only loading devices that are compatible with your vehicle and that are below the maximum charge voltage should be used to charge your vehicle. Information on compatible chargers is available at your dealer's service center.

Maximum charge voltage: 14.4 volts.

NOTICE

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery can work with high voltages and currents, which means that the 12 volt electrical system can be overloaded or damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.

Charging the battery

Charge the battery only when the engine is off and via the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.

Additional information:

Starting aid terminals, refer to page 359.

Power failure

After a power loss, some equipment needs to be newly initialized or individual settings updated, for example:

- With Memory function: store the positions again.
- Time: update.
- Date: update.
- Glass sunroof: initialize the system.

Disposing of old batteries

Have old batteries disposed of by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take them to a collection point.

Fuses

General information

The fuses are located at different places in the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2715
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

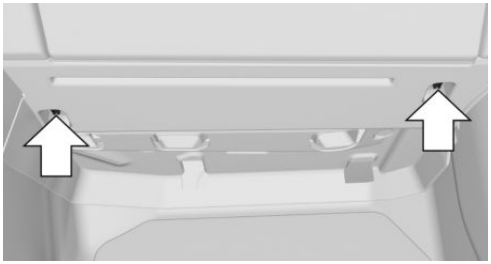
Safety information

Warning

Incorrect and repaired fuses can overload electrical lines and components. There is a risk of fire. Never attempt to repair a blown fuse. Do not replace a nonworking fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating.

In the car's interior

The fuses are located in the car's interior in the front passenger floor area behind a cover.



Loosen fasteners, arrows, and open cover.

The fuse box is located on the front right.

In the cargo area

The fuses are located in the cargo area on the right side behind a cover.

Remove the cover on the right side trim.

The fuse box may be located behind the sound insulation.

Information on the fuse types and locations, as well as the positions of any other fuse boxes, is available on the Internet: www.bmw.com/fusecard.

Where applicable, information on the fuse types and locations is also found on a separate sheet in the fuse box.

Additional fuse boxes

Additional fuse boxes are located in the vehicle. In the case of a malfunction, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Replacing fuses

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop replace the fuses.

Breakdown assistance

Vehicle features and options

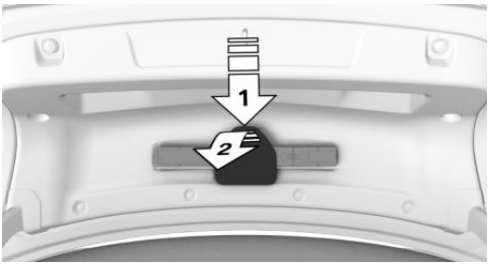
This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Hazard warning flashers

The button is located in the center console.

The red light in the button flashes when the hazard warning flashers are activated.

Warning triangle



The warning triangle is located on the inside of the trunk lid.

Press on the release, arrow 1, and swivel the cover down, arrow 2.

First-aid kit

General information

Some of the articles have a limited service life.

Check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace any expired items promptly.

Storage

The first-aid kit is located in the net on the left side of the cargo area.

BMW Roadside Assistance

Concept

Contact the BMW Group Roadside Assistance if assistance is needed in the event of a breakdown.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2717
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

General information

In the event of a breakdown, data on the vehicle's condition is transmitted to the BMW Roadside Assistance.

There are various ways of contacting BMW Roadside Assistance.

- Via a Check Control message.

  Supplementary SMS text messages, refer to page 149.
- Calling with a mobile phone.
- Via the BMW Connected app.

Functional requirements

- Active ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- Cellular network reception.
- Standby state is switched on.

Starting manually

If the vehicle is equipped with Teleservices, support is offered through Teleservice Diagnosis.

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "BMW Assist"
4. If necessary, "BMW Roadside Assistance"

   A voice connection is established.

Teleservice Diagnosis

Teleservice Diagnosis enables the wireless transmission of detailed vehicle data that is important for vehicle diagnosis. This data is transmitted automatically. It may be necessary to approve this on the Control Display.

Teleservice Help

Depending on the country, Teleservice Help enables an in-depth diagnosis of the vehicle by BMW Roadside Assistance via wireless transmission.

You can launch Teleservice Help by requesting it through BMW Roadside Assistance.

1. Park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Set the parking brake.
3. Control Display is switched on.
4. Confirm Teleservice Help.

BMW Accident Assistance

Concept

BMW Group Accident Assistance can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of an accident.

General information

If the vehicle sensors detect a minor to moderately severe accident, which did not trigger any airbags, a Check Control message appears on the instrument cluster. In addition, a text message appears on the Control Display.

When BMW Accident Assistance is activated, data on the vehicle's condition is sent to BMW.

Functional requirements

- Active ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- Cellular network reception.
- Standby state is switched on.

Starting BMW Accident Assistance

If an accident is detected automatically

A text message relating to BMW Accident Assistance appears on the Control Display.

The connection can be established directly:

"Call BMW Accident Assistance"

The Check Control message for BMW Accident Assistance can also be called up from the stored Check Control messages for a certain length of time.

Additional information:

Check Control, refer to page 148.

Starting manually

BMW Accident Assistance can also be contacted independently of the automatic accident detection function.

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "BMW Assist"
4. "BMW Accident Assistance"

   Follow the displays on the Control Display. A voice connection is established.

Emergency Request

Intelligent emergency call

Concept

In case of an emergency, an Emergency Request can be triggered automatically by the system or manually.

General information

Only press the SOS button in an emergency.

The Intelligent Assist system establishes a connection with the BMW Response Center.

For technical reasons, the Emergency Request cannot be guaranteed under unfavorable conditions.

Overview

SOS button.

Functional requirements

- Standby state is switched on.
- The Assist system is functional.
- If the vehicle is equipped with intelligent emergency call: the SIM card integrated in the vehicle has been activated.

Automatic triggering

Under certain conditions, for instance if the airbags trigger, an Emergency Request is automatically initiated immediately after an accident of corresponding severity. Automatic Collision Notification is not affected by pressing the SOS button.

Manual triggering

1. Tap the cover.
2. Press and hold the SOS button until the LED in the area of the button illuminates green.

- The LED is illuminated green when an Emergency Request has been initiated.

  If a cancel prompt appears on the Control Display, the Emergency Request can be aborted.

  If the situation allows, wait in your vehicle until the voice connection has been established.

- The LED flashes green when a connection to the BMW Response Center has been established.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2719
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

The BMW Response Center then makes contact with the occupants of the vehicle and initiates further steps to help.

Even if you are unable to respond, the BMW Response Center can take further steps to help you under certain circumstances.

For this purpose, data that serves to determine the necessary rescue measures, for instance the current position of the vehicle when it can be determined, is transmitted to the BMW Response Center.

Even if the BMW Response Center is no longer heard through the loudspeakers, the BMW Response Center may still be able to hear the occupants of the vehicle.

The BMW Response Center ends the Emergency Request.

Jump-starting

General information

If the battery is discharged, the engine can be started using the battery of another vehicle and two jumper cables. Only use jumper cables with fully insulated clamp handles.

Safety information

⚠ DANGER

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.

⚠ Warning

If the jumper cables are connected in the incorrect order, sparking may occur. There is a risk of injury. Pay attention to the correct order during connection.

⚠ NOTICE

In the case of body contact between the two vehicles, a short circuit can occur during jump-starting. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that no body contact occurs.

Preparation

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts. The voltage information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any electrical consumers in both vehicles.

Starting aid terminals

The starting aid terminal in the engine compartment acts as the positive battery terminal.

A special connection on the body in the engine compartment acts as the negative battery terminal.

Additional information:

Overview of engine compartment, refer to page 340.

Open the cover of the positive battery terminal.

Connecting the cables

Before you begin, switch off all unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers, such as the radio, on the assisting and receiving vehicle.

1. Open the cover of the starting aid terminal.
2. Attach one terminal clamp of the positive jumper cable to the positive battery terminal, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the terminal clamp on the other end of the cable to the positive battery terminal, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one terminal clamp of the negative jumper cable to the negative battery terminal,

or to the corresponding engine or body ground of assisting vehicle.

5. Attach the second terminal clamp to the negative battery terminal, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

Starting the engine

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.

1. Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run for several minutes at an increased idle speed.
2. Start the engine of the vehicle that is to be started in the usual way.

   If the first starting attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before making another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.
3. Let both engines run for several minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables in the reverse order.

Check the battery and recharge, if needed.

Tow-starting and towing

Safety information

Warning

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

Transporting the vehicle

General information

The vehicle is not permitted to be towed.

Safety information

NOTICE

The vehicle can be damaged when towing the vehicle with a single lifted axle. There is a risk of damage to property. The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.

NOTICE

The vehicle can become damaged when lifting and securing it.

There is a risk of damage to property.

- ▷ Lift the vehicle using suitable means.
- ▷ Do not lift or secure the vehicle by its tow fitting, body parts, or suspension parts.

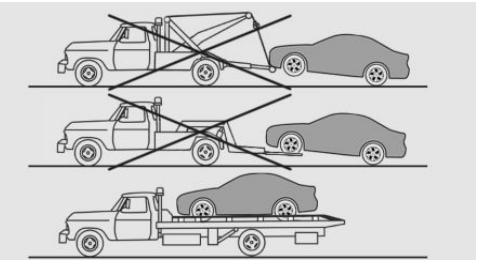
Pushing the vehicle

To remove a broken-down vehicle from the danger area, it can be pushed for a short distance.

Additional information:

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 138.

Tow truck



The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.

Towing other vehicles

General information

Switch on the hazard warning system, depending on local regulations.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2721
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

If the electrical system has failed, clearly identify the vehicle being towed by placing a sign or a warning triangle in the rear window.

With Safe Share function: to remove a broken-down vehicle from the danger area, tow it for a short distance at a speed of no more than 6 mph/10 km/h.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

If the approved gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is lighter than the vehicle to be towed, the tow fitting can tear off or it will not be possible to control the vehicle's response. There is a risk of accident. Make sure that the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is heavier than the vehicle to be towed.

⚠ NOTICE

If the tow bar or tow rope is attached incorrectly, damage to other vehicle parts can occur. There is a risk of damage to property. Correctly attach the tow bar or tow rope to the tow fitting.

Tow bar

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles.

Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an offset angle, please follow the following:

- Maneuvering capability is limited going around corners.
- The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is secured with an offset.

Tow rope

Observe the following notes when using the tow rope:

- Use nylon ropes or straps, which will enable the vehicle to be towed without jerking.
- Make sure the tow rope is not twisted when fastening.
- Check the fastening of the tow fitting and tow rope in regular intervals.
- Do not exceed a towing speed of 30 mph/50 km/h.
- Do not exceed a towing distance of 3 miles/5 km.
- When starting to tow the vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

Tow fitting

General information

The screw-in tow fitting should always be carried in the vehicle.

The tow fitting can be screwed in at the front or rear of the vehicle.

The tow fitting is found in the onboard vehicle tool kit.

- Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle and screw it all the way in.
- Use the tow fitting for towing on paved roads only.
- Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, for instance do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting.
- Check the fastening of the tow fitting in regular intervals.

Additional information:

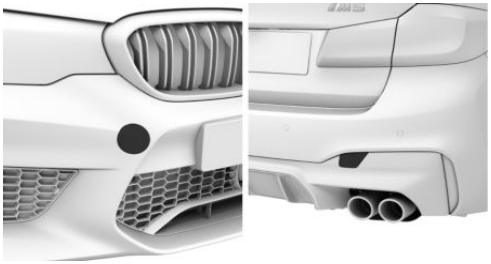
Onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 352.

Safety information

NOTICE

If the tow fitting is not used as intended, there may be damage to the vehicle or to the tow fitting. There is a risk of damage to property. Follow the notes on using the tow fitting.

Screw thread for tow fitting



Press on the mark on the edge of the cover to push it out.

Tow-starting

Do not tow-start the vehicle.

Start the engine by jump-starting, if possible.

Have the reasons for the starting difficulties corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Jump-starting, refer to page 359.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2723
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Care

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Washing the vehicle

General information

Regularly remove foreign objects such as leaves in the area below the windshield when the hood is raised.

Wash your vehicle frequently, particularly in winter. Intense soiling and road salt can damage the vehicle.

Steam blaster and high-pressure washer

Safety information

NOTICE

When cleaning with high-pressure washers, components can be damaged due to the pressure or temperatures being too high. There is a risk of damage to property. Maintain sufficient distance and do not spray too long continuously. Follow the operating instructions for the high-pressure washer.

Distances and temperature

- Maximum temperature: 140 °F/60 °C.
- Minimum distance from sensors, cameras, seals: 12 inches/30 cm.
- Minimum distance from glass sunroof: 31.5 in/80 cm.

Automatic vehicle washes

Safety information

NOTICE

Improper use of automatic washing systems or car washes can cause damage to the vehicle. There is a risk of damage to property. Follow the following instructions:

- Give preference to cloth car washes or those that use soft brushes in order to avoid paint damage.
- Do not drive through a car wash with guide rails higher than 4 in/10 cm to avoid damage to the chassis.
- Observe the tire width of the guide rail to avoid damage to tires and rims.
- Fold in exterior mirrors to avoid damage to the exterior mirrors.
- Deactivate the wiper and, if necessary, rain sensor to avoid damage to the wiper system.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2724
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Driving into a car wash with an M Steptronic Sport transmission

Safety information

NOTICE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not switch standby state off in vehicle washes.

General information

In a car wash, the vehicle must be able to roll freely.

Some car washes do not permit persons in the vehicle. The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside when in selector lever position N. A signal sounds when an attempt is made to lock the vehicle.

Additional information:

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 138.

Driving out of a car wash

Ensure that the vehicle key is in the car.

Switch on drive-ready state.

Additional information:

Drive-ready state, refer to page 36.

Headlights

Do not rub wet headlights dry and do not use abrasive or acidic cleaning agents.

Soak areas that have been dirtied, for instance from insects, with shampoo and wash off with water.

Thaw ice with de-icing spray; do not use an ice scraper.

After washing the vehicle

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them; otherwise, braking action can be reduced. The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Completely remove all residues on the windows, to minimize loss of visibility due to smearing and to reduce wiper noises and wiper blade wear.

Vehicle care

Vehicle care products

General information

BMW recommends using vehicle care and cleaning products from BMW. Suitable care products are available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Warning

Cleansers can contain substances that are dangerous and harmful to your health. There is a risk of injury. When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows. Only use products intended for cleaning vehicles. Follow the instructions on the container.

Vehicle paint

General information

Regular care contributes to driving safety and value retention. Environmental influences in areas with elevated air pollution or natural contaminants, such as tree resin or pollen can affect the vehicle's paintwork. Tailor the frequency and extent of your vehicle care to these influences.

Corrosive substances such as spilled fuel, oil, grease or bird droppings, must be removed immediately to prevent the finish from being altered or discolored.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2725
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Matte finish

Only use cleaning and care products suitable for vehicles with matte finish.

Leather care

Remove dust from the leather regularly, using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Otherwise, particles of dust and road grime chafe in pores and folds, and lead to increased wear and premature degradation of the leather surface.

To guard against discoloration, such as from clothing, clean leather and provide leather care roughly every two months.

Clean light-colored leather more frequently because soiling on such surfaces is substantially more visible.

Use leather care products; otherwise, dirt and grease will gradually break down the protective layer of the leather surface.

Upholstery material care

General information

Vacuum the upholstery regularly with a vacuum cleaner.

If upholstery is very dirty, for instance with beverage stains, use a soft sponge or microfiber cloth with a suitable interior cleaner.

Clean the upholstery down to the seams using large sweeping motions. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.

Safety information

NOTICE

Open Velcro® fasteners on articles of clothing can damage the seat covers. There is a risk of damage to property. Ensure that any Velcro® fasteners are closed.

Caring for special components

Light-alloy wheels

When cleaning the vehicle, use only neutral wheel cleaners having a pH value from 5 to 9. Do not use abrasive cleaning agents or steam jets above 140 °F/60 °C. Follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Aggressive, acidic or alkaline cleaning agents can destroy the protective layer of adjacent components, such as the brake disc.

After cleaning, apply the brakes briefly to dry them. The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Chrome surfaces

Carefully clean Chrome surfaces, especially in case of exposure to road salt, with plenty of water and added cleanser as needed.

Rubber components

Environmental influences can cause surface soiling of rubber parts and a loss of gloss. Use only water and suitable cleaning agents for cleaning.

Treat especially worn rubber parts with rubber care agents at regular intervals. When cleaning rubber seals, do not use any silicon-containing vehicle care products in order to avoid damage or noises.

Fine wood parts

Clean fine wood facing and fine wood components only with a moist rag. Then dry with a soft cloth.

Kenaf

Only treat parts made of Kenaf fibers using suitable care products.

Plastic components

NOTICE

Cleansers that contain alcohol or solvents, such as lacquer thinners, heavy-duty grease removers, fuel, or such, can damage plastic parts. There is a risk of damage to property. Clean with a microfiber cloth. Dampen the cloth lightly with water, if needed.

Clean with a microfiber cloth.

Dampen the cloth lightly with water, if needed.

Do not soak the roofliner.

Safety belts

Warning

Chemical cleansers can destroy the safety belt webbing. Missing protective effect of the safety belts. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Use only a mild soapy solution for cleaning the safety belts.

Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus have a negative impact on safety.

Use only a mild soapy solution for cleaning the installed belt straps.

Safety belts should only be allowed to retract if they are dry.

Carpets and floor mats

Warning

Objects in the driver's floor area can limit the pedal distance or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's floor area. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, for instance for cleaning.

The floor mats can be removed from the car's interior for cleaning.

If the floor carpets are very dirty, clean with a microfiber cloth and water or a textile cleaner. To prevent matting of the carpet, rub back and forth in the direction of travel only.

Sensors and camera lenses

To clean sensors and camera lenses, use a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass detergent.

Displays, screens, and protective glass of the Head-up Display

NOTICE

Chemical cleansers, moisture or fluids of any kind can damage the surface of displays and screens. There is a risk of damage to property. Clean with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth.

NOTICE

The surface of displays can be damaged with improper cleaning. There is a risk of damage to property. Avoid pressure that is too high and do not use any scratching materials.

Clean with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth.

Clean the protective glass of the Head-up Display using a microfiber cloth and commercially available dish-washing soap.

Long-term vehicle storage

When the vehicle is shut down for longer than three months, special measures must be taken. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2727
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Technical data

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

General information

The technical data and specifications in the Owner's Manual are used as guidance values. The vehicle-specific data can deviate from this, for instance due to the selected special equipment, country version or country-specific measurement method. Detailed values can be found in the approval documents, on labels on the vehicle or can be obtained from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Dimensions

The dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment or country-specific measurement method.

The specified heights do not take into account attached parts, for instance a roof antenna, roof racks or spoiler. The heights can deviate, for instance due to the selected special equipment, tires, load and chassis version.

BMW M5		
Width with mirrors	in/mm	83.7/2,126
Width without mirrors	in/mm	74.9/1,903
Height	in/mm	58/1,473
Length	in/mm	196.4/4,989
Wheelbase	in/mm	117.4/2,982
Smallest turning radius diam.	ft/m	41.3/12.6

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2729
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Weights

BMW M5		
Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs/kg	5,380/2,440
Load	lbs/kg	900/408
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	2,680/1,216
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	2,780/1,261

Capacities

BMW M5		
Fuel tank, approx.	US gal/liters	20.1/76.0

Observe further information on fuel quality, refer to page 343.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2730

Appendix

General information

Any updates to the Owner's Manual of the vehicle are listed here.

Updates made after the editorial deadline

The following chapters were updated in the printed version of the Owner's Manual after the editorial deadline for the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle had closed:

- Operation: opening and closing: Key Card.
- Operation: opening and closing: BMW Digital Key.
- Operation: driver assistance systems: Speed Limit Assistant.
- Operation: driver assistance systems: lane change with active guidance: lane change.
- Driving tips: things to remember when driving: roof-mounted luggage rack.
- Mobility: wheels and tires: tire pressure: tire inflation pressure specifications.
- Mobility: wheels and tires: Tire Pressure Monitor.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2731
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Everything from A to Z

Index

0-9

3D View, see Surround View 249

A

ABS Antilock Braking System 209
Acceleration Assistant, see Launch Control 142
Accessories and parts 8
Accident prevention, see Active Protection 206
ACC, see Active Cruise Control 222
Activated charcoal filter 273
Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function ACC 222
Active damping control, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension 267
Active Guard Plus, see Intelligent Safety 176
Active Guard, see Intelligent Safety 176
Active M differential 216
Active PDC, see Emergency brake function 245
Active Protection 206
Active seat ventilation 121
Active voice processing, voice activation 47
Adaptive brake assistant 209
Adaptive Light Control 167
Adaptive M chassis/suspension 267
Additives, engine oil types 346
Adjusting contents, iDrive 43
Adjustments, steering wheel 117
Airbags 172
Airbags, indicator and warning light 174
Air circulation, see Recirculated-air mode 272
air conditioning, climate 271
Air distribution, manual 272
Air drying, see air conditioning 271
Air flow, automatic climate control 272
Air outlets, see Ventilation 273
Air pressure, tires 316
Air quality 269
Alarm system 101
Alarm, unintentional 102
All-season tires, see Winter tires 322
All-wheel drive, see M xDrive 215
Amazon Alexa Car Integration 49
Ambient air package 281
Ambient light 170
Android Auto, connection to the vehicle 73
Android Auto preparation, connection to the vehicle 73
Android Auto preparation, smartphone integration 73
Antifreeze, see Washer fluid 348
Antilock Braking System ABS 209
Anti-slip control, see DSC 213
Anti-theft protection, locking 77
Anti-theft protection, lug bolt lock 337
Apple CarPlay preparation, connection to the vehicle 73
Apple CarPlay preparation, smartphone integration 73
Approach control warning with City braking function 177
Apps, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Assistance when driving off, see Drive-off assistant 209
Assistance with breakdown 356
Assisted Driving Mode, see Steering Assistant 232
Assisted Driving Plus 237
Assisted Driving View 146
AUC Automatic Recirculating Air Control 272
Audio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
AUTO H button, see Parking brake 130
Automatic activation, see Climate control rules 121
Automatic climate control 269
Automatic Curb Monitor, exterior mirror 117

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2733
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Automatic deactivation, front-seat passenger airbags 175
Automatic headlight control 165
Automatic Hold, see Parking brake 130
Automatic locking 100
Automatic Recirculating Air Control AUC 272
Automatic transmission, see M Steptronic Sport transmission 137
Automatic unlocking 100
Automating routines, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 51
AUTO program, automatic climate control 271
AUTO program, intensity 271
Auto Start/Stop function 127
Average consumption, see Trip data 160
Axle loads, approved 369

B

Backrest curvature, see Lumbar support 110
Backrest, seats 108
Backrest tilt 109
Backrest, width 110
Bandages, see First-aid kit 356
Bar for tow-starting/towing 361
Battery, disposing of 354
Battery, vehicle 353
Being towed, see Tow-starting and towing 360
Belts, see Safety belts 111
Beverage holder, see Cup holders 296
Blind spot collision warning 194
Blocking, power window, see Safety switch 104
Bluetooth connection 70
Blu-ray, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
BMW Accident Assistance 357
BMW Assist, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
BMW Digital Key 86
BMW display key 80
BMW display key, malfunction 84
BMW Drive Recorder 204
BMW Gesture Control 52
BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 50
BMW maintenance system 350
BMW M technology 304
BMW Roadside Assistance 356
Bottle holder, see Cup holders 296
Brake assistant 209
Brake assistant, adaptive 209
Brake discs, see Brake system 306
Brake pads, see Brake system 306
Brake system 306
Braking, information 308
Breakdown assistance 356
Breaking in 306
Break recommendation, see Fatigue alert 207
Brightness, Control Display 60
Buttons on the steering wheel 30
Button, SOS, see Intelligent emergency call 358
Button, Start/Stop 127
Bypassing, see Jump-starting 359

C

Cable for tow-starting/towing 361
California Proposition 65 Warning 8
Call, gesture control 53
Camera-based assistance systems, see Intelligent Safety 176
Camera lenses, care 366
Camera, rearview camera, see Surround View 249
Camera, rearview camera, without Surround View 247
Camera, see Surround View 249
CANCEL button, Active Cruise Control 222
CANCEL button, cruise control 220
Can holder, see Cup holders 296
Carbon ceramic brake 304
Care, Head-up Display 366
Care, light-alloy wheels 365
Care of displays, screens 366
Care, vehicle 364
Cargo area 298
Cargo area, enlarging 300
Cargo, stowing and securing 299
Cargo straps, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 299
Caring Car, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 51
Car key, see Vehicle key 76

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2734

Carpet, care 366
CarPlay, connection to the vehicle 73
Car seats, see Transporting children safely 122
Cartridge replacement, see Ambient air package 281
Car wash 363
Car wash lines 363
Catalytic converter, see Hot exhaust gas system 307
CBS Condition Based Service 350
Cell phone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Center armrest, front 296
Center console 33
Central Information Display (CID), see Control Display 41
Central locking system 90
Central screen, see Control Display 41
Ceramic brake 304
Changes, technical, see For Your Own Safety 8
Changing parts 352
Changing wheels 335
Changing, wheels and tires 321
Charging smartphone, see Wireless charging tray 290
Charging tray for smartphones, see Wireless charging tray 290
Chassis/suspension, electronic, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension 267
Chassis number, see Vehicle identification number 12
Check Control 148
Checking the engine oil level electronically 344
Children, seating position 122
Children, transporting safely 122
Child restraint system LATCH 124
Child restraint systems, mounting 123
Child restraint systems, see Transporting children safely 122
Child safety locks 126
Child seat, mounting 123
Child seats, see Transporting children safely 122
Chrome-plated surfaces, care 365
Chrome surfaces, care 365
Cleaning displays, screens 366
Cleaning, Head-up Display 366
Clearance, water 307
Climate control 269
Climate control rules 121
Closing with the smartphone, see BMW Digital Key 86
Clothes hooks 297
Combination switch, see Turn signals 133
Combination switch, see Washer/wiper system 134
Comfort Access 91
Communication, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Comparison of entries, see Entry comparison 39
Compartments, doors 295
Compatible devices, see Suitable devices 68
Compound brake 304
Compressor 324
Concierge Service, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Condensation water under the parked vehicle 309
Condensation, windshield 273
Condition Based Service CBS 350
Confirmation signal from the vehicle 99
Connected Command, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 51
ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Connecting device 67
Connecting electrical devices, see Sockets 288
Connecting, mobile devices 67
Connections, Screen Mirroring 72
Consumption display, widget in the instrument cluster 148
Consumption, see Current consumption 148
Consumption, see Trip data 160
Contacts, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Container for washer fluid 348
Control Display 41
Control Display, brightness 60
Controller 41
Control systems, driving stability 209
Convenient closing, vehicle key 78
Convenient opening, vehicle key 77

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2735
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Coolant 347
Coolant level 348
Coolant temperature, see Engine temperature 155
Cooling, maximum 271
Cooling system 347
Cornering light 167
Corrosion on brake discs 309
Cosmetic mirror 288
Cross traffic warning 264
Cruise control 220
Cruise control, active with Stop&Go function 222
Cruise control, see Active Cruise Control 222
Cruise control with distance control, see Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function 222
Cruise control without distance control, see Cruise control 220
Cruising range 156
Cup holder 296
Cup holder, front 296
Cup holder, rear 296
Current consumption 148
Customer service, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

D

Damage, tires 321
Damping control 267
Damping control active, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension 267
Dashcam, see BMW Drive Recorder 204
Data memory 10
Data protection, settings 62
Data, see Deleting personal data 62
Data, technical 368
Date 58
Daytime running lights 167
DCC, see Cruise control 220
Defrosting, see Defrosting windshield 273
Defrosting, windshield 273
Deleting personal data 62
Departure schedule, see Parked-car ventilation 276
Departure time, parked-car ventilation 278
Departure time, stationary climate control 280
Device list 68
Diagnosis connection 351
Differential lock 216
Digital Key 86
Digital Key, see BMW Digital Key 86
Dimensions 368
Dimmable exterior mirrors 117
Dimmable interior mirror 117
Direct dial buttons, see Programmable memory buttons 40
Direction indicator, see Turn signals 133
Display, iDrive 38
Display in the windshield, see Head-up Display 162
Display key 80
Display key, malfunction 84
Display key, see BMW display key 80
Display lighting, see Instrument lighting 169
Display, notifications, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 50
Displays 145
Displays and symbols 7
Disposal, coolant 348
Disposal, vehicle battery 354
Distance control, see PDC 242
Door opening angle, Surround View 251
Drivelogic 141
Drive mode 139
Drive-off assistant 209
Drive-off assistant, see DSC 213
Driver activity, see Driver Attention Camera 59
Driver assistance, driving, see Intelligent Safety 176
Driver assistance, see Intelligent Safety 176
Driver Attention Camera 59
Drive-ready state, engine start 36
Drive-ready state, idle state, and standby state 35
Driver profiles 63
Driver profile, setup 63
Driver profiles, welcome screen 63
Driving 127
Driving Assistant, see Intelligent Safety 176
Driving comfort 267
Driving Dynamics Control 143

Driving instructions, breaking in 306
Driving notes, general 307
Driving program, see Drivelogic 141
Driving stability control systems 209
Driving through water 307
Driving tips 307
DSC Dynamic Stability Control 213
Dynamic damping, see Adaptive M chassis/ suspension 267
Dynamic Stability Control DSC 213

E

Efficiency display, widget in the instrument cluster 148
Electronic oil measurement 344
Electronic Stability Program ESP, see DSC 213
E-mail, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Emergency brake function when parking, Active PDC 245
Emergency brake, see Emergency stop assistant 202
Emergency braking, see PostCrash - iBrake 206
Emergency Request 358
Emergency service, see BMW Accident Assistance 357
Emergency service, see BMW Roadside Assistance 356
Emergency stop assistant 202
Emergency unlocking, fuel filler flap 315
Emergency unlocking, transmission lock 143
Emergency unlocking, trunk lid 97
Energy recovery 148
Energy savings, see Gear shift indicator 157
Engine, automatic Start/Stop function 127
Engine compartment 340
Engine coolant 347
Engine oil, adding 345
Engine oil change 347
Engine oil filler neck 345
Engine oil temperature 155
Engine oil types to add 346
Engine start, see Drive-ready state 36
Engine start, see Jump-starting 359
Engine temperature 155
Entering a destination, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Entering an address, navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Entertainment, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Entry comparison 39
Equipment, interior 285
Error indicators, see Check Control 148
ESP Electronic Stability Program, see DSC 213
Evasion Assistant 181
Exchanging, wheels and tires 321
Exhaust gas system 307
Exhaust gas system sound 144
Exhaustion warner 207
Exhaust, see Exhaust gas system 307
Experience Modes, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 51
Exterior lighting during unlocking 77
Exterior lighting with the vehicle locked 78
Exterior mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor 117
Exterior mirror, automatic dimming feature 117
Exterior mirrors 116
Exterior mirrors, malfunction 116
External start, see Jump-starting 359
External temperature 155
Eyelet for towing 361
Eyes, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 299

F

Factory settings, see Reset vehicle configuration 61
Failure message, see Check Control 148
False alarm, see Avoiding unintentional alarms 102
Fan, see Air flow 272
Fastening safety belts, see Safety belts 111
Fatigue alert 207
Fault indicators, see Check Control 148
Filler neck for engine oil 345
Fine wood parts, care 365
First-aid kit 356
First Steps, see Setup Wizard 63

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2737

Flat tire, changing wheels 335
Flat tire, Flat Tire Monitor TPM 334
Flat tire message, FTM 334
Flat tire message, Tire Pressure Monitor 331
Flat Tire Monitor TPM 334
Flat tire, repairing 323
Flat tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor 328
Flat tire warning light, FTM 334
Flat tire warning light, see Tire Pressure Monitor 331
Flooding, driving through 307
Floor carpet, care 366
Floor mats, care 366
Fold-away position, wiper 136
Foot brake 308
Forward collision mitigation, see Intelligent Safety 176
For Your Own Safety 8
Fragrance cartridge, see Ambient air package 281
Fragrance, see Ambient air package 281
Fragrancing, see Ambient air package 281
Front airbags 172
Front collision mitigation 177
Front collision mitigation, see Approach Control Warning 177
Front collision mitigation, see Intersection Collision Warning 183
Front collision mitigation, see Pedestrian Warning 188
Front fog lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 353
Front lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 353
Front-seat passenger airbags, automatic deactivation 175
Front-seat passenger airbags, indicator light 175
Front seats 108
Fuel 343
Fuel cap 314
Fuel filler flap 314
Fuel filler flap, unlocking manually 315
Fuel gauge 154
Fuel quality 343
Fuel recommendation 343
Fuel tank, see Filling capacity 369
Fuses 354

G

Garage door opener, see Integrated Universal Remote Control 285
Gasoline 343
Gear change 140
Gear change, M Steptronic Sport transmission 137
Gear shift indicator 157
General driving notes 307
General settings 58
Gesture Control 52
Gestures, see BMW Gesture Control 52
Glare shield, see Sun visor 288
Glass sunroof, electric 104
Glass sunroof, initialize the system 106
Glove compartment 294
GPS, navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Gross vehicle weight, approved 369

H

Handbrake, see Parking brake 130
Hand-held transmitter, alternating code 286
Hands-free device, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Hazard warning flashers 356
Head airbags 173
Headlight control, automatic 165
Headlight flasher 133
Headlight glass 353
Headlights, care 364
Headlights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 353
Head restraints and seats 108
Head restraints, front 113
Head restraints, rear 114
Head-up Display 162
Head-up Display, care 366
Head-up Display, M view 163
Head-up Display, standard view 162
Head-up Display, store position, see Memory function 118
Heated steering wheel 118
Heated steering wheel, climate control rules 121
Heavy cargo, stowing 299

Height, vehicle 368
High-beam Assistant 168
High beams 133
High beams/low beams, see High-beam Assistant 168
Higher speed range 309
High-performance engine, V8 304
Hills 308
Hill start assistant, see Drive-off assistant 209
Holder for beverages, see Cup holders 296
HomeLink, see Integrated Universal Remote Control 285
Homepage, see Internet 6
Hood 341
Horn 30
Hotel function, see Valet parking mode 97
Hot exhaust gas system 307
Humidity in the headlight, see Headlight glass 353
Hydroplaning 307

I

iBrake - PostCrash 206
Ice warning, see External temperature 155
Icy roads, see External temperature 155
Identification marks, tires 319
Identification number, see Vehicle identification number 12
Idle state, standby state, and drive-ready state 35
iDrive 38
ID transmitter, see Vehicle key 76
Ignition key, see Vehicle key 76
Indicator/warning lights 149
Individual air distribution 272
Individual settings, see Driver profiles 63
Individual settings, see M menu 209
Inductive charging, smartphone, see Wireless charging tray 290
Inflation pressure, tires 316
Inflation pressure warning TPM, tires 334
Information 6
Information window, Control Display 60
Initialization, Flat Tire Monitor FTM 334
Input, iDrive 38
Instrument cluster 145
Instrument cluster, M View 145
Instrument cluster, standard view 145
Instrument lighting 169
Integrated key 89
Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle 14
Integrated Universal Remote Control 285
Intelligent emergency call 358
Intelligent Personal Assistant 50
Intelligent Safety 176
Intended use 8
Intensity, AUTO program 271
Interior camera, see Driver Attention Camera 59
Interior equipment 285
Interior lights 170
Interior lights during unlocking 77
Interior lights with the vehicle locked 78
Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature 117
Interior mirrors 117
Interior motion sensor 102
Internet connection 71
Internet hotspot 71
Internet page 6
Intersection collision warning 183
Interval display, see Service notifications 156
Ionization, see Ambient air package 281

J

Jacking points for the vehicle jack 338
Jam protection system, glass sunroof 106
Jam protection system, windows 103
Joystick, M Steptronic Sport transmission 137
Jump-starting 359
Jump-starting terminals 359

K

Kenaf, care 365
Key Card, see BMW Digital Key 86
Keyless Go, see Comfort Access 91
Key, mechanical 89
Key, see BMW Digital Key 86
Key, see BMW display key 80
Key, see Vehicle key 76
Kickdown, M Steptronic Sport transmission 137

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2739
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Knee airbag 173

L

Label on recommended tires 322
Lane change assistant 239
Lane control assistant with active side collision protection, see Side collision mitigation 198
Lane departure warning 191
Lane lines, Surround View 251
Lane threshold, warning 191
Language, set 59
Laser headlights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 353
Laser high beams 169
Lashing eyes in the cargo area 299
LATCH child restraint fixing system 124
Launch Control 142
Leather care 365
LED headlights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 353
Length, vehicle 368
Letters and numbers, entering 39
Light-alloy wheels, care 365
Light control, adaptive 167
Lighting 165
Lighting, loudspeaker, see Bowers & Wilkins 171
Light in the exterior mirror, see Blind spot collision warning 194
Light in the exterior mirror, see Cross traffic warning 264
Light replacement, see Lights and bulbs 353
Lights 165
Lights and bulbs 353
Light switch 165
LIM button, see Manual Speed Limiter 218
List of all messages 61
Load 299
Loading 298
Loading the cargo area, see Stowing cargo 299
Locking, automatic 100
Locking, see Opening and Closing 76
Locking, settings 99
Locking the trunk lid, see Valet parking mode 97
Locking, vehicle key 77
Lock, lug bolts 337
Loudspeaker lighting, see Bowers & Wilkins 171
Low beams 166
Low beams, automatic, see High-beam Assistant 168
Lower back support 110
Low Speed Assistant 141
Lug bolt lock 337
Luggage rack, see Roof-mounted luggage rack 309
Lumbar support 110

M

Maintenance 350
Maintenance requirements, see Condition Based Service CBS 350
Maintenance, see Service notifications 156
Maintenance system, BMW 350
Make-up mirror 288
Malfunction, BMW display key 84
Malfunction, vehicle key 79
Managing devices 68
Manual brake, see Parking brake 130
Manual control, air distribution 272
Manual control, air flow 272
Manual mode, M Steptronic Sport transmission 137
Manual operation, fuel filler flap 315
Manual Speed Limiter 218
Map update, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Massage seat, front 119
Matt paint, care 365
Maximum cooling 271
Maximum speed display, see Speed Limit Info 157
Maximum speed, winter tires 323
M Carbon ceramic brake 304
M chassis/suspension, adaptive, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension 267
M Compound brake 304
M differential, active 216
MDM, M Dynamic Mode 214
M Driver's Package, driving instructions 309
M Dynamic Mode MDM 214

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2740

Measuring units 59
Media of the Owner's Manual 14
Medical supplies, see First-aid kit 356
Memory function 118
M Engine Dynamics Control 143
Menu, instrument cluster, see Selection lists 159
Menus, operating, iDrive 38
Messages 61
Messages, see Check Control 148
Microfilter 273
Minimum tread depth, tires 320
M menu 209
M MODE 211
Mobile communication devices in the vehicle 307
Mobile devices, managing 68
Mobile phone, connecting 67
Mobile phone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Mobile Service, see BMW Accident Assistance 357
Mobile Service, see BMW Roadside Assistance 356
Mobility System 323
MODE button, see Active Cruise Control 222
Modifications, technical, see For Your Own Safety 8
Monitor, see Control Display 41
Mounting of child restraint systems 123
MP3 player, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
M SETUP, widget 148
M Steptronic Sport transmission 137
M technology 304
Multi-function hook 299
Multifunction steering wheel, buttons 30
Multimedia, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Music track, gesture control 53
M view, Head-up Display 163
M View, instrument cluster 145
M xDrive 215

N

Navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Neck restraints, front, see Head restraints front 113
Neck restraints, rear, see Head restraints rear 114
Net, cargo area 300
Neutral cleaner, see Light-alloy wheels, care 365
New wheels and tires 321
No-touch opening and closing of the trunk lid 93
Nylon rope for tow-starting/towing 361

O

OBD Onboard Diagnosis 351
Obstacle marking, rearview camera 248
Obstacle marking, Surround View 251
Octane rating, see Recommended fuel grade 344
Odometer, see Trip data 160
Oil, adding 345
Oil change 347
Oil change interval, see Service notifications 156
Oil filler neck 345
Oil level, checking electronically 344
Oil types to add, engine 346
Onboard Computer, see Trip data 160
Onboard Diagnosis OBD 351
Onboard literature, printed 14
Onboard vehicle tool kit 352
On-call service, see BMW Accident Assistance 357
On-call service, see BMW Roadside Assistance 356
Opening and closing 76
Opening with the smartphone, see BMW Digital Key 86
Operating concept, iDrive 38
Operation, app 51
Operation via voice 46
Optional equipment, see Vehicle equipment 7
Outside air, see AUC 272
Overheating of the engine, see Engine temperature 155

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2741
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Overwintering, see Long-term vehicle storage 366
Owner's Manual, printed 14
Owner's Manual via voice operation, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 52

P

Paint, car care 364
Pairing, mobile devices, see Connections 67
Panic alarm, see Panic mode 101
Panic mode 101
Panorama View, see Surround View 249
Park Distance Control PDC 242
Parked-car ventilation 276
Parking aid, see PDC 242
Parking assistant 257
Parking assistant Plus, see Surround View 249
Parking, Automatic Hold, see Parking brake 130
Parking brake 130
Parking lights 166
Parts and accessories 8
Passenger's side exterior mirror, tilt down, see Automatic Curb Monitor 117
Pathway lighting 166
Pathway lighting, switching on 79
Pathway lines, rearview camera 248
Payload, technical data 369
PDC Park Distance Control 242
Performance display, see Sport displays 161
Personal data, deleting 62
Personal profile, see Driver profiles 63
Personal settings 62
Person warning with braking function 188
Phone, connecting 67
Plastic parts, care 366
Possible gestures, gesture control 53
PostCrash - iBrake 206
Power failure 354
Power windows 102
Pressure test tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor 328
Pressure, tires 316
Printed onboard literature 14
Profiles, see Driver profiles 63
Programmable memory buttons, iDrive 40
Protective function, glass sunroof, see Jam protection system 106
Protective function, windows, see Jam protection system 103
Push-and-turn reel, see Controller 41

Q

Queuing Assistant, see Assisted Driving Plus 237

R

Racing track 310
Radiator fluid 347
Radio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Rain sensor 135
Rear automatic climate control 275
Rear collision preparation 201
Rear collision warning, see Rear collision preparation 201
Rear lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 353
Rear seat backrests, folding down 300
Rear Traffic Alert 261
Rearview camera, see Surround View 249
Rearview camera, without Surround View 247
Rear-view mirrors, exterior 116
Rear-view mirrors, interior 117
Rear window defroster 273
Recirculated-air filter, see Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter 273
Recirculated-air mode 272
Recommended fuel grade 344
Recommended tire brands 322
Refueling 314
Remote 3D View 256
Remote control for audio, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Remote control, see Vehicle key 76
Remote control, universal 285
Remote Engine Start, see Stationary climate control 278

Remote services, app, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Remote Software Upgrade 55
Replacing bulbs, see Lights and bulbs 353
Replacing light diodes, see Lights and bulbs 353
Replacing parts 352
Replacing the battery, vehicle key 79
Replacing, wheels and tires 321
Reporting safety malfunctions 13
RES CNCL button, Active Cruise Control ACC 222
RES CNCL button, cruise control 220
Reserve warning, see Range 156
Reset settings, vehicle 61
Reset, Tire Pressure Monitor 330
Reset, vehicle configuration 61
Reset, vehicle settings 61
RESUME button, Active Cruise Control 222
RESUME button, cruise control 220
Retreaded tires 322
Reversing Assistant 262
Roadside parking lights 166
Roller sunblind, rear window 104
Roller sunblinds, rear side windows 104
Rolling code hand-held transmitter 286
RON recommended fuel grade 344
Roofliner 34
Roof-mounted luggage rack 309
Rope for tow-starting/towing 361
Route, navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
RTTI, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Rubber components, care 365

S

Safe braking 308
Safe Share function, see BMW Digital Key/Key Card 86
Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat 113
Safety belt reminder for the rear seats 113
Safety belts 111
Safety belts, care 366
Safety locks, doors and windows 126
Safety package, see Active Protection 206
Safety switch, windows 104
Safety systems, see Airbags 172
Safety systems, see Intelligent Safety 176
Saving fuel 311
Screen Mirroring, connection 72
Screen, see Control Display 41
Screwdriver, see Onboard vehicle tool kit 352
Sealant, see Mobility System 323
Seat heating 120
Seat heating, climate control rules 121
Seating position for children 122
Seats and head restraints 108
Seats, front 108
Seat ventilation, climate control rules 121
Securing, cargo 299
Selection list in instrument cluster 159
Selector lever 137
Selector lever, M Steptronic Sport transmission 137
Selector lever position 137
Sensors, care 366
Sequential mode 139
Service and warranty 9
Service Center, see BMW Accident Assistance 357
Service Center, see BMW Roadside Assistance 356
Service notifications 156
Service requirements, see Condition Based Service CBS 350
Services, ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Servotronic 216
SET button, Active Cruise Control 222
SET button, cruise control 220
Set speed, see Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function 222
Setting, Control Display 60
Settings, general 58
Settings, locking/unlocking 99
Settings, M menu 209
Settings, seats and head restraints 108
Setup Wizard 63

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2743
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Shift paddles on the steering wheel 137
Shift point indicator 164
Side airbag 172
Side collision mitigation 198
Side parking aid, Surround View 251
Side parking aid without Surround View 246
Side protection aid, Surround View, see Side parking aid 251
Side protection aid without Surround View, see Side parking aid 246
Signaling, horn 30
Signals when unlocking, see Confirmation signals from the vehicle 99
Sitting safely 108
Ski and snowboard bag 302
Slide/tilt glass roof, see Glass sunroof 104
Smallest turning circle, vehicle 368
Smartphone, connecting 67
Smartphone Integration, Android Auto preparation 73
Smartphone Integration, Apple CarPlay preparation 73
Smartphone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Smartphone, using via voice activation 49
SMS, see Short messages, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Snow chains 328
Socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis 351
Sockets, electrical devices 288
Soft-close automatic, doors 97
Software Update, see Remote Software Upgrade 55
Software Upgrade, see Remote Software Upgrade 55
SOS button, see Intelligent emergency call 358
Sound control 144
Sound, exhaust gas system 144
Sound output, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Speech recognition 46
Speed Limit Assist 231
Speed Limit Device, Speed Limiter 218
Speed limit display, see Speed Limit Info 157
Speed Limit Info 157
Speed warning 60
Sport chassis/suspension, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension 267
Sport displays 161
Sport program, M Steptronic Sport transmission 137
Stability control systems 209
Standard equipment, see Vehicle equipment 7
Standard view, Head-up Display 162
Standard View, instrument cluster 145
Standby state, idle state and drive-ready state 35
Start/stop, automatic function 127
Start/Stop button 127
Starting aid terminals 359
Starting, see Drive-ready state 36
Starting the engine, see Drive-ready state 36
Stationary climate control via Remote Engine Start 278
Stations, AM/FM, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Status control display, tires 330
Status information, iDrive 39
Status of Owner's Manual 7
Status, vehicle 162
Steering and Lane Control Assistant 232
Steering assistance 216
Steering Assistant, see Steering and Lane Control Assistant 232
Steering column adjustment 117
Steering wheel, adjusting 117
Steering wheel, buttons 30
Storage compartment, cargo area 300
Storage compartment, center console 295
Storage compartments 294
Storage compartments, locations 294
Storage, tires 323
Store Mirror position, see Memory function 118
Store seat position, see Memory function 118
Store steering wheel position, see Memory function 118
Storing the vehicle 366
Stowing, cargo 299
Straps for cargo, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 299
Suitable devices 68

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2744

Suitable mobile phones 68
Summer tires, tread 320
Sun visor 288
Supplementary Owner's Manuals 14
Supplementary text message 149
Surround View 249
Surround View, gesture control 53
Switches, see Cockpit 30
Switching off the engine, see Drive-ready state 36
Symbols and displays 7
SYNC program, automatic climate control 273

T

Tachometer 154
Tail lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 353
Tank capacity 369
Technical changes, see For Your Own Safety 8
Technical data 368
Technology, BMW M 304
Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Teleservices, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Temperature, automatic climate control 270
Temperature display, see External temperature 155
Temperature, engine oil 155
Text message, Check Control 149
Theft alarm system, see Alarm system 101
Thigh support 110
Third-party providers 49
Through-loading system 300
Tilt alarm sensor 102
Tilt, backrest 109
Tilt down, passenger's side exterior mirror, see Automatic Curb Monitor 117
Time 58
Tire brands, recommended 322
Tire damage 321
Tire identification marks 319
Tire inflation pressure 316
Tire inflation pressure monitoring, see TPM 334
Tire inflation pressure monitor TPM 334
Tire pressure 316
Tire Pressure Monitor 328
Tire Pressure Monitor, reset 330
Tire repair kit, see Mobility System 323
Tires and wheels 316
Tires, changing 321
Tire sealant, see Mobility System 323
Tire settings 329
Tire tread 320
Tone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Tool 352
Top View, see Surround View 249
Torque display, see Sport displays 161
Touchpad, Controller 44
Tow bar 361
Tow fitting 361
Towing 360
Tow rope 361
Tow-starting 360
TPM Flat Tire Monitor 334
Traffic bulletins, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Traffic Jam Assistant, see Assisted Driving Plus 237
Traffic jam assistant, see Steering and Lane Control Assistant 232
Transmission lock, electronic unlocking 143
Transmission, see M Steptronic Sport transmission 137
Transporting children safely 122
Tread, tires 320
Trip data 160
Triple turn signal activation 133
Trip odometer, see Trip data 160
Trunk, emergency unlocking 97
Trunk lid 95
Trunk lid, emergency unlocking 97
Trunk lid, opening and closing with no-touch activation 93
Trunk lid, see Trunk lid 95
Trunk lid, vehicle key 78
Trunk, see Cargo area 298
Turning circle line, Surround View 251
Turning circle, vehicle 368
Turning radius lines, rearview camera 248
Turn signal, indicator light 152

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2745
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

Turn signal, replacing bulbs, see Lights and bulbs 353
Turn signals, high beams, headlight flasher 133

U

Unintentional alarm, avoiding 102
Units, see Measuring units 59
Universal remote control 285
Unlock button, M Steptronic Sport transmission 137
Unlocking, automatic 100
Unlocking, see Opening and Closing 76
Unlocking, settings 99
Unlocking, vehicle key 77
Updates made after the editorial deadline 7
Upgrade, see Remote Software Upgrade 55
Upholstery material care 365
Upper backrest, front 110
USB connection 74
USB port, position in vehicle 289
Used battery, disposing of 354
Use, intended 8

V

V8 high-performance engine 304
Valet parking mode 97
Vanity mirror 288
Vehicle battery 353
Vehicle breakdown, see Breakdown assistance 356
Vehicle, breaking in 306
Vehicle care 364
Vehicle care products 364
Vehicle configuration, reset 61
Vehicle equipment 7
Vehicle identification number 12
Vehicle key 76
Vehicle key, additional 79
Vehicle key, integrated key 89
Vehicle key, loss 79
Vehicle key, malfunction 79
Vehicle key, replacing the battery 79
Vehicle key with display, malfunction 84
Vehicle key with display, see BMW display key 80
Vehicle paint, care 364
Vehicle status 162
Vehicle storage 366
Vehicle washing 363
Ventilation 273
Ventilation, see Parked-car ventilation 276
Venting, see Ventilation 273
Vent, see Ventilation 273
Version Software, see Remote Software Upgrade 55
Video recording, see BMW Drive Recorder 204
Video, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
VIN, see Vehicle identification number 12
Voice activation, gesture control 53
Voice activation, see BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 50
Voice activation system 46
Voice command response 46
Voice control 46
Volume, gesture control 53

W

Wake word 46
Warning/indicator lights 149
Warning against cross traffic 264
Warning light in the exterior mirror, see Blind spot collision warning 194
Warning light in the exterior mirror, see Cross traffic warning 264
Warning messages, see Check Control 148
Warning triangle 356
Warranty 8
Washer fluid 348
Washer nozzles, windshield 136
Washer system 134
Washing systems, automatic 363
Washing, vehicle 363
Wash view, Surround View 251
Water on roads 307
Water, see Condensation water under the parked vehicle 309
Website, see Internet 6

Weights 369
Welcome light during unlocking 77
Welcome lights 166
Welcome screen, driver profiles 63
Wheel base, vehicle 368
Wheels and tires 316
Wheels, changing 321
Widgets, iDrive 39
Width, vehicle 368
Wi-Fi connection 71
WiFi connection, see WLAN connection 71
Wi-Fi hotspot 71
Window, defrosting 273
Windows, powered 102
Windshield, defrosting 273
Windshield washer fluid, see Washer fluid 348
Windshield washer nozzles 136
Windshield wiper, see Wiper system 134
Winter storage, see Long-term vehicle storage 366
Winter tires 322
Winter tires, tread 320
Wiper blades, replacing 352
Wiper fluid, see Washer fluid 348
Wiper, fold-away position 136
Wiper, see Washer/wiper system 134
Wiper system 134
Wireless charging, smartphone, see Wireless charging tray 290
Wireless charging tray for smartphones 290
WLAN connection 71
Wood parts, care 365
Wordmatch principle, see Entry comparison 39
Wrench, see Onboard vehicle tool kit 352

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2747
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

01405A10CF7 ue

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2748

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2749

California Proposition 65 Warning

For vehicles sold in California:

California Proposition 65 Warning

WARNING

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

The Ultimate Driving Machine®

BMW DRIVER'S GUIDE APP.

Your customized information about the vehicle in an app.
Optimized for smartphones & tablets. Can be used offline.

Download on the App Store

GET IT ON Google Play

01405A10CF7 de

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2751
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A10CF7 - VI/20

LINK:
CONTENT & A-Z

The Ultimate Driving Machine®

OWNER'S MANUAL.

THE BMW X3 PLUG-IN HYBRID.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2752
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2753
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

WELCOME TO BMW.

Owner's Manual.

Thank you for choosing a BMW.

The more familiar you are with your vehicle, the better control you will have on the road. We therefore strongly suggest:

Read this Owner's Manual before starting off in your new BMW. Also use the Integrated Owner's Manual in your vehicle. It contains important information on vehicle operation that will help you make full use of the technical features available in your BMW. The manual also contains information designed to enhance operating reliability and road safety, and to contribute to maintaining the value of your BMW.

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

You can find supplementary information in the additional brochures in the onboard literature.

We wish you a safe and enjoyable ride.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2754
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

TABLE OF CONTENTS

After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

NOTES

Information 6
Safety of the hybrid system 15
Owner's Manual media 16

QUICK REFERENCE

Entering 18
Set-up and use 22
On the road 26

CONTROLS

Cockpit 34
Sensors of the vehicle 39
Operating state of the vehicle 43
iDrive 47
General settings 64
Personal settings 68
Connections 73
Opening and closing 82
Seats, mirrors and steering wheel 106
Transporting children safely 119
Driving 125
Displays 146
Lights 165
Safety 172
Driving stability control systems 198
Driver assistance systems 203
Driving comfort 239
Climate control 240

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2755
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Interior equipment 253
Storage compartments 263
Cargo area 267

DRIVING TIPS

Things to remember when driving 274
Trailer towing 279
Saving fuel 283

MOBILITY

Charging the vehicle 288
Refueling 297
Wheels and tires 300
Engine compartment 328
Operating materials 331
Maintenance 338
Replacing components 340
Breakdown assistance 347
Care 355

REFERENCE

Technical data 360
Appendix 362
Everything from A to Z 364

© 2020 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Reprinting, including excerpts, only with the written consent of BMW AG, Munich.
US English ID7 X/20, 11 20 490
Printed on environmentally friendly paper, bleached without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2756
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Information

Using this Owner's Manual

Orientation

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic is by using the index.

An initial overview of the vehicle is provided in the first chapter.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication

The Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can be obtained as a printed book from the service center.

The topics are also discussed in the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Additional sources of information

Service center

A service center will be glad to answer questions at any time.

Internet

Vehicle information and general information on BMW, for instance, on technology, are available on the Internet: www.bmwusa.com.

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

The Integrated Owner's Manual specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle. The Integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the Control Display.

BMW Driver's Guide app

The BMW Driver's Guide app specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle. The app can be displayed on smartphones and tablets.

BMW Driver's Guide Web

Driver's Guide Web shows the most suitable information for the selected vehicle. If possible, only equipment and functions that are actually installed in the vehicle will be explained. Driver's Guide Web can be displayed in any current browser.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2757

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Symbols and displays

Symbols in the Owner's Manual

Symbol	Meaning
⚠	Precautions that must be followed in order to avoid the possibility of injury to yourself and to others as well as serious damage to the vehicle.
♻	Measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.
"..."	Texts in vehicle used to select individual functions.
›...‹	Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.
»...«	Responses generated by the voice activation system.

Action steps

Action steps to be carried out are presented as a numbered list. The steps must be carried out in the defined order.

1. First action step.
2. Second action step.

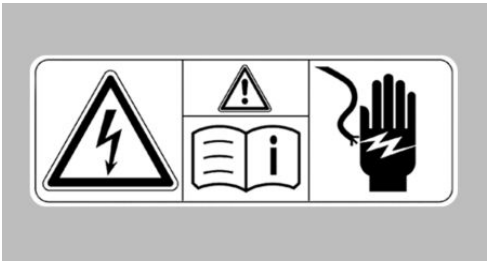
Enumerations

Enumerations without mandatory order or alternative possibilities are presented as a list with bullet points.

- First possibility.
- Second possibility.

Symbols on vehicle components

This symbol on a vehicle component indicates that further information on the component is available in the Owner's Manual.



The symbols on parts of the vehicle indicate that incorrect use of high-voltage equipment or of orange-colored high-voltage components results in the risk of life-threatening injury from electric shock.

Vehicle features and options

This Owner's Manual describes all models and all standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series. Therefore, this Owner's Manual also describes and illustrates features and functions that are not available in a vehicle, for example because of the selected optional features or the country-specific version.

This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

For any options and equipment not described in this Owner's Manual, refer to the Supplementary Owner's Manuals.

Your BMW service center is happy to answer any questions that you may have about the features and options applicable to your vehicle.

Status of the Owner's Manual

Basic information

The manufacturer of your vehicle pursues a policy of constant development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards. In rare cases, therefore, the features described in this Owner's Manual may differ from those in your vehicle.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

For Your Own Safety

Intended use

Heed the following when using the vehicle:

- ▷ Owner's Manual.
- ▷ Information on the vehicle. Do not remove stickers.
- ▷ Technical vehicle data.
- ▷ The traffic, speed, and safety laws where the vehicle is driven.
- ▷ Vehicle documents and statutory documents.

Warranty

Your vehicle is technically configured for the operating conditions and registration requirements applying in the country of first delivery, also known as homologation. If your vehicle is to be operated in a different country it might be necessary to adapt your vehicle to potentially differing operating conditions and registration requirements. If your vehicle does not comply with the homologation requirements in a certain country you may not be able to lodge warranty claims for your vehicle there. Further information on warranty is available from a service center.

Maintenance and repairs

Advanced technology, for instance the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires suitable maintenance and repair work.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you entrust corresponding procedures to a BMW center. If you choose to use another service facility, BMW recommends use of a facility that performs work, e.g., maintenance and repair, according to BMW specifications with properly trained personnel, referred to in the Owner's Manual as "another qualified service center or repair shop".

If work is performed improperly, for instance maintenance and repair, there is a risk of subsequent damage and related safety risks.

Improperly performed work on the vehicle paint can lead to a failure or malfunction of components, e.g., the radar sensors, and thereby result in a safety risk.

Parts and accessories

BMW recommends the use of parts and accessory products approved by BMW.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2759
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Approved parts and accessories, and advice on their use and installation are available from a BMW center.

BMW parts and accessories have been tested by BMW for their safety and suitability in BMW vehicles.

BMW warrants genuine BMW parts and accessories.

BMW does not evaluate whether each individual product from another manufacturer can be used with BMW vehicles without presenting a safety hazard, even if a country-specific official approval was issued. BMW does not evaluate whether these products are suitable for BMW vehicles under all usage conditions.

California Proposition 65 Warning

For vehicles sold in California, the law requires vehicle manufacturers to provide the following warning:

Warning

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of Automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Batteries also contain other chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer. Wash your hands after handling. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

Warning

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly. Your vehicle is covered by the following warranties:

- New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- Rust Perforation Limited Warranty.
- Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty.
- Federal Emissions Performance Warranty.
- California Emission Control System Limited Warranty.

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

Your vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating conditions and homologation requirements in your country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish to operate your vehicle in another country or region, you may be required to adapt your vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and homologation requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such

case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

Maintenance

Maintain the vehicle regularly to sustain the road safety, operational reliability and the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Specifications for maintenance measures:

- BMW Maintenance system.
- Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models.
- Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

If the vehicle is not maintained or is improperly maintained, this could result in serious damage to the vehicle. Such damage is not covered by the BMW New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Refer to section on engine oil change regarding recommended service intervals for oil changes.

Data memory

General information

Electronic control devices are installed in the vehicle. Electronic control units process data they receive from vehicle sensors, self-generate or exchange with each other. Some control units are necessary for the vehicle to function safely or provide assistance during driving, for instance driver assistance systems. Furthermore, control units facilitate comfort or infotainment functions.

Information about stored or exchanged data can be requested from the manufacturer of the vehicle, in a separate booklet, for example.

Personal reference

Each vehicle is marked with a unique vehicle identification number. Depending on the country, the vehicle owner can be identified with the vehicle identification number, license plate and corresponding authorities. In addition, there are other options to track data collected in the vehicle to the driver or vehicle owner, for instance, via the ConnectedDrive account that is used.

Operating data in the vehicle

Control units process data to operate the vehicle.

For example, this includes:

- Status messages for the vehicle and its individual components, e.g., wheel rotational speed, wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration, engaged safety belt indicator.
- Ambient conditions, e.g., temperature, rain sensor signals.

The processed data is only processed in the vehicle itself and generally volatile. The data is not stored beyond the operating period.

Electronic components, e.g. control units and ignition keys, contain components for storing technical information. Information about the vehicle condition, component usage, maintenance recommendations, events or faults can be stored temporarily or permanently.

This information generally records the state of a component, a module, a system, or the environment, for instance:

- Operating states of system components, for instance, fill levels, tire inflation pressure, battery status.
- Malfunctions and faults in important system components, for instance lights and brakes.
- Responses by the vehicle to special situations such as airbag deployment or engagement of the driving stability control systems.
- Information on vehicle-damaging events.

The data is required to perform the control unit functions. Furthermore, it also serves to recognize and correct malfunctions, and helps the vehicle manufacturer to optimize vehicle functions.

The majority of this data is stored temporarily and is only processed within the vehicle itself. In some circumstances the vehicle may store some data for an additional but limited period of time.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2761
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

When servicing, for instance during repairs, service processes, warranty cases, and quality assurance measures, this technical information can be read out from the vehicle together with the vehicle identification number.

A dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop can read out the information. The socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis required by law in the vehicle is used to read out the data.

The data is collected, processed, and used by the relevant organizations in the service network. The data documents technical conditions of the vehicle, which can be used to determine vehicle maintenance status, and facilitate quality improvement.

Fault and event memories in the vehicle can be reset when a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop performs repair or servicing work.

Data entry and data transfer into the vehicle

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, comfort and individual settings can be stored in the vehicle and modified or reset at any time.

For example, this includes:

- Settings for the seat and steering wheel positions.
- Suspension and climate control settings.

If necessary, data can be transferred to the entertainment and communication system of the vehicle, for instance via smartphone.

This includes the following depending on the respective equipment:

- Multimedia data such as music, films or photos for playback in an integrated multimedia system.
- Address book data for use in conjunction with an integrated hands-free system or an integrated navigation system.
- Entered navigation destinations.
- Data on the use of Internet services.

This data can be stored locally in the vehicle or is found on a device that has been connected to the vehicle, e.g., a smartphone, USB stick or MP3 player. If this data is stored in the vehicle, it can be deleted at any time.

This data is only transmitted to third parties upon personal request as part of the use of online services. The transmission depends on the selected settings for the use of the services.

Incorporation of mobile devices

Depending on the vehicle equipment, mobile devices connected to the vehicle, for instance smartphones, can be controlled via the vehicle control elements.

The sound and picture from the mobile device can be played back and displayed through the multimedia system. Certain information is transferred to the mobile device at the same time. Depending on the type of incorporation, this includes, for instance position data and other general vehicle information. This optimizes the way in which selected apps, for instance navigation or music playback, work.

There is no further interaction between the mobile device and the vehicle, such as active access to vehicle data.

How the data will be processed further is determined by the provider of the particular app being used. The extent of the possible settings depends on the respective app and the operating system of the mobile device.

Services

General information

If the vehicle has a wireless network connection, this enables data to be exchanged between the vehicle and other systems. The wireless network connection is realized via an in-vehicle transmitter and receiver unit or via personal mobile devices brought into the vehicle, for instance smart-

phones. This wireless network connection enables 'online functions' to be used. These include online services and apps supplied by the vehicle manufacturer or by other providers.

Services from the vehicle manufacturer

Where online services from the vehicle manufacturer are concerned, the corresponding functions are described in the appropriate place, for instance the Owner's Manual or manufacturer's website. The relevant legal information pertaining to data protection may also be found on the manufacturer's website. Personal data may be used to perform online services. Data is exchanged over a secure connection, for instance with the IT systems of the vehicle manufacturer intended for this purpose.

Any collection, processing, and use of personal data above and beyond that needed to provide the services must always be based on a legal permission, contractual arrangement or consent. It is also possible to activate or deactivate the data connection as a whole. That is, with the exception of functions and services required by law such as Assist systems.

Services from other providers

When using online services from other providers, these services are the responsibility of the relevant provider and subject to their data privacy conditions and terms of use. The vehicle manufacturer has no influence on the content exchanged during this process. Information on the way in which personal data is collected and used in relation to services from third parties, the scope of such data, and its purpose, can be obtained from the relevant service provider.

Event Data Recorder EDR

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder EDR. The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were fastened.
- How far, if at all, the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

EDR data is recorded by your vehicle only if a nontrivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data, for instance name, gender, age, and crash location, are recorded.

However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Vehicle identification number

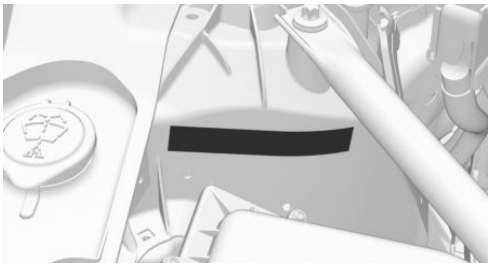
General information

Depending on the national-market version, the vehicle identification number is located in different positions in the vehicle. This chapter de-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2763
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

scribes all positions that are possible for the series.

Engine compartment



The engraved vehicle identification number can be found in the engine compartment, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

Right nameplate

The vehicle identification number can be found on the nameplate, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

Left nameplate

The vehicle identification number can be found on the nameplate, on the left-hand side of the vehicle.

Windshield

The vehicle identification number can also be found behind the windshield.

iDrive

It is also possible to display the vehicle identification number via iDrive.

Additional information:

Displaying the vehicle identification number and software part number, refer to page 74.

Reporting safety defects

For US customers

The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury

or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration NHTSA, in addition to notifying BMW of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or BMW of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may call the toll-free hotline 1-800-333-0510. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2765
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Safety of the hybrid system

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Working on the vehicle

General information

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that no changes be made to the vehicle, forinstance the retrofitting of accessories, that will have an effect on the vehicle's hybrid system.

Safety information

⚠ DANGER

Improperly performed work, in particular maintenance and repair on the high-voltage system, can lead to electric shock. There is a risk of injury, fire and danger to life.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that the work on the vehicle, in particular maintenance and repair, be performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Contact with water

The hybrid system is typically safe even in the following example situations:

- Water in the floor area, for instance after a rainstorm when the window was kept open.
- Vehicle is in water but only up to the allowed height.
- Fluid escapes in the cargo area.

Automatic deactivation

If an accident occurs, the hybrid system is switched off automatically to prevent risk of danger to occupants and other road users.

Additional information:

What to do after an accident, refer to page 350.

Owner's Manual media

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

General information

Media at a glance

You can use various media formats to call up the content in the Owner's Manual. The following Owner's Manual media formats are available:

- Printed Owner's Manual.
- Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

Printed Owner's Manual

Concept

The printed Owner's Manual describes all standard, country-specific, and optional features offered with the series.

General information

The Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can be obtained as a printed book from the service center.

Supplementary Owner's Manuals

Also follow the Supplementary Owner's Manuals, which are included in addition to the onboard literature.

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

Concept

The Integrated Owner's Manual specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle.

The Integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the Control Display.

Selecting the Owner's Manual

1. HOME Press the button.
2. "CAR"
3. "Owner's Manual"
4. Select the desired method of accessing the contents.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2767
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Scrolling through the Owner's Manual

Turn the Controller, until the next or previous contents are displayed.

Context help

General information

The Integrated Owner's Manual can be accessed from any menu. Depending on the selected function, either the associated description or the main menu of the Integrated Owner's Manual will be displayed.

Opening via iDrive

Change directly to the Options menu from the function on the Control Display:

1. OPTION Press the button.
2. "Help"

Opening when a Check Control message is displayed

Directly from the Check Control message on the Control Display:

"Owner's Manual"

Programmable memory buttons

General information

The entry points into the Owner's Manual can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly.

Storing

1. Select the desired entry point via iDrive:
   - ▷ "Keyword search"
   - ▷ "Picture search"
   - ▷ "Operating tips"
   - ▷ "Quick reference"
   - ▷ "Topics"
   - ▷ "Quick link"
2. 1 ... 7 Press and hold the desired button until the displayed bar on the Control Display has loaded completely.

Executing

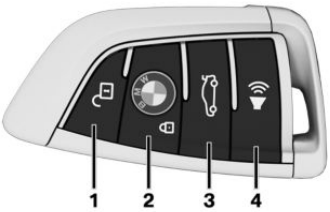
1 ... 7 Press the corresponding button.

The owner's manual is directly displayed at the selected entry point.

Entering

Opening and closing

Buttons on the vehicle key



1 Unlocking
2 Locking
3 To open the tailgate
4 Panic mode, pathway lighting

Unlocking the vehicle

Press the button on the vehicle key.

Depending on the settings, either only the driver's door or all vehicle access points are unlocked.

If only the driver's door is unlocked, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key after unlocking.

The windows and the glass sunroof are opened, as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Press the button on the vehicle key.

All vehicle access points are locked.

Buttons for the central locking system

Overview

Buttons for the central locking system.

Locking

Press the button with the front doors closed.

Unlocking

Press the button.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

- ▷ Press the button on the vehicle key and hold for at least 3 seconds.
- ▷ Briefly press the button on the vehicle key three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Comfort Access

Concept

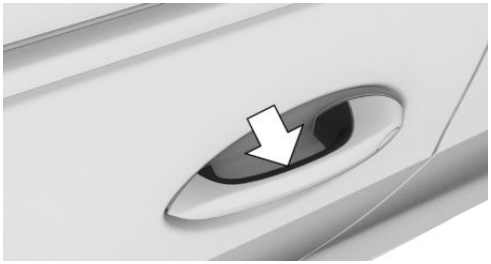
The vehicle can be accessed without operating the vehicle key.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2769
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Carrying the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket, is sufficient.

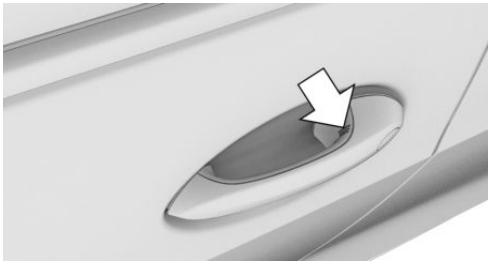
The vehicle automatically detects the vehicle key when it is in close proximity or in the car's interior.

Unlocking the vehicle



Grasp the handle of a vehicle door completely.

Locking the vehicle



Touch the grooved surface on the handle of a closed vehicle door with your finger for approx. 1 second without grasping the door handle.

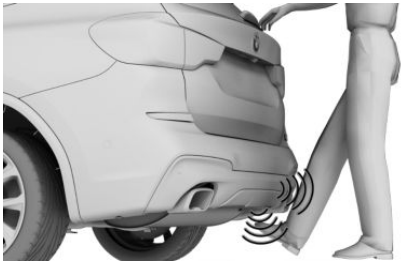
Opening and closing the tailgate with no-touch activation

Concept

The tailgate can be opened and closed with no-touch activation using the vehicle key you are carrying.

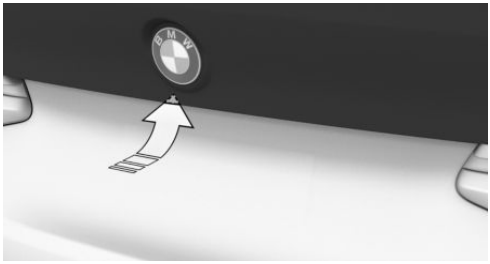
Performing the foot movement

1. Stand in the middle behind the vehicle at approx. one arm's length away from the rear of the vehicle.
2. Wave a foot under the vehicle in the direction of travel and immediately pull it back. With this movement, the leg must pass through the ranges of both sensors.



Tailgate

Opening



▷ Unlock the vehicle and then press the button on the outside of the tailgate.

▷ Press the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

Depending on the setting, the doors may be unlocked.

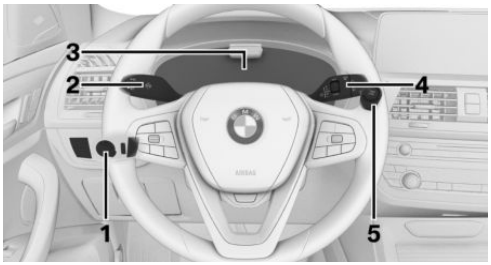
Closing

Press the button on the inside of the upper tailgate.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2770
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Displays, control elements

In the vicinity of the steering wheel



1 Light switch element
2 Turn signal indicator, high beams
3 Instrument cluster
4 Wipers
5 Start/Stop button

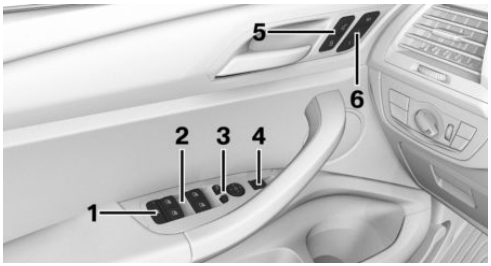
Indicator/warning lights

Instrument cluster

The indicator/warning lights can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

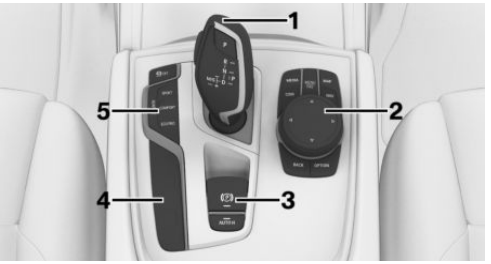
Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when drive-ready state is switched on.

Driver's door



1 Safety switch
2 Power windows
3 Exterior mirrors
4 Opening/closing the tailgate
5 Central locking system
6 Seats, comfort features

Switch console



1 Selector lever
2 Controller
3 Parking brake, Automatic Hold
4 Parking assistance systems
5 Driving Dynamics Control

iDrive

Concept

The iDrive combines the functions of many switches. These functions can be operated via the Controller.

Buttons on the Controller

Button	Function
MENU	Opens the main menu.
MEDIA	Opens the Media/Radio menu.
COM	Opens the Communication menu.
MAP	Opens navigation map.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2771
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Button	Function
NAV	Opens destination input menu for navigation.
BACK	Opens the previous display.
OPTION	Opens the Options menu.

Voice activation

Activating the voice activation system

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the signal.
3. Say the command.

This symbol indicates that the voice activation system is active.

No other commands may be available. In this case, operate the function via iDrive.

Terminating the voice activation system

Press the button on the steering wheel or ›Cancel‹.

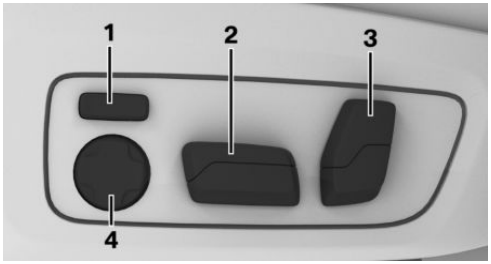
This symbol indicates that the voice activation system is deactivated.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2772

Set-up and use

Seats, mirrors and steering wheel

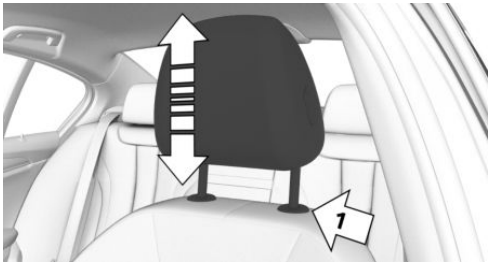
Electrically adjustable seats



1 Backrest width
2 Forward/backward, height, seat tilt
3 Backrest tilt, head restraint
4 Lumbar support

Adjusting the head restraint

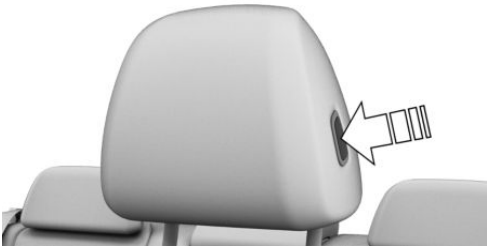
Adjusting the height: manual head restraints



- To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.
- To raise: push the head restraint up.

After setting the height, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

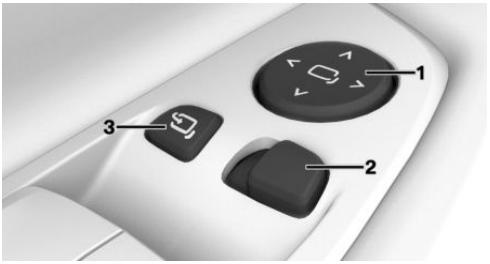
Adjust distance: manual head restraints



- Back: press the button and push the head restraint toward the rear.
- Forward: pull the head restraint toward the front.

After setting the distance, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Adjusting the exterior mirrors

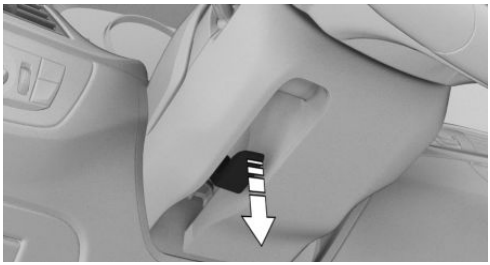


1 Adjusting
2 Selecting a mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor
3 Folding in and out

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2773
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Adjusting the steering wheel

Manual steering wheel setting



1. Fold the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seat position.
3. Fold the lever back up.

Memory function

Concept

The following settings can be stored and, if necessary, retrieved using the memory function:

- ▷ Seat position.
- ▷ Exterior mirror position.
- ▷ Height of the Head-up Display.

Storing

1. Set the desired position.
2. SET Press button on the door. The writing on the button lights up.
3. Press the desired button 1 or 2 at the door while the writing is lit. A signal sounds.

Calling up settings

Press the desired button 1 or 2.

Infotainment

Radio

1 Changing the entertainment source
2 Changing the station/track
3 Programmable memory buttons
4 Sound output on/off, volume
5 Changing the waveband

Waveband/satellite radio

Navigation destination input

Entering a destination via quick search

1. NAV Press the button on the Controller.
2. "Where to?"
3. Enter at least two letters or characters.

   The search term may be completed automatically in gray print.

   Press or move the controller up to apply the suggested search term.
4. OK Select the symbol, if needed.

   Results are displayed in a list.
5. "Search location": select search area.
6. Move the Controller to the right.
7. Select desired destination.

Connecting a mobile phone

General information

After the mobile phone is connected once to the vehicle, the mobile phone can be operated using iDrive and the steering wheel buttons.

Connecting the mobile phone via Bluetooth

1. "COM"
2. If necessary, select the following setting: "Telephone"
3. "Connect new phone"
4. To perform additional steps on the mobile phone, refer to the mobile phone owner's manual: e.g., search for or connect the Bluetooth device or a new device.

   The Bluetooth name of the vehicle appears on the mobile phone display. Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle.
5. Depending on the mobile device, a control number is displayed or the control number must be entered.
   - ▷ Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number on the display of the device.

     Confirm the control number on the device and on the Control Display.
   - ▷ Enter and confirm the same control number on the device and via iDrive.

   The device is connected and displayed in the device list.

Using the telephone

Accepting a call

Depending on the equipment, incoming calls can be answered in several ways.

- ▷ Via iDrive:

  "Accept"
- ▷ /

  Press the corresponding button on the steering wheel.
- ▷ Via the selection list in the instrument cluster:

  Use the thumbwheel on the steering wheel to select: "Accept"
- ▷ Via touch screen: tap on the corresponding entry on the Control Display.
- ▷ Via gestures: point the index finger into the direction of the Control Display.

Dialing a number

1. "COM"
2. If necessary, "Telephone"
3. "Dial number:"
4. Enter the numbers.
5. Select the symbol. The connection is established via the mobile phone to which this function has been assigned.

Establish the connection via the additional telephone:

1.

Press the button.
2. "Call via"

Apple CarPlay preparation

Concept

CarPlay allows certain functions of a compatible Apple iPhone to be used via Siri voice operation and iDrive.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Compatible iPhone, iPhone 5 or later with iOS 7.1 or later.
- ▷ Corresponding mobile contract.
- ▷ If necessary, the setting for mobile data must be activated on the iPhone.
- ▷ Bluetooth, WLAN, and Siri voice operation are activated on the iPhone.
- ▷ WLAN is activated on the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2775
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Pairing the iPhone with CarPlay

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. "New device"
4. "Phone calls and audio"

   The vehicle's Bluetooth name is displayed on the Control Display.
5. On the mobile device, search for Bluetooth devices in the vicinity and select the vehicle.

   A control number is displayed.
6. Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number on the display of the mobile device, and confirm that the two match.
7. "Use Apple CarPlay"

The iPhone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2776

On the road

Driving

Drive-ready state

Switching on drive-ready state

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

Drive-ready state is activated:

- Starting of combustion engine.
- Drive-ready state for electric driving without starting the engine.

Switching off drive-ready state

1. Engage selector lever position P with the vehicle stopped.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

   The engine is switched off.
3. Set the parking brake.

Auto Start/Stop function

The Auto Start/Stop function helps save fuel. The system switches off the combustion engine when conditions for electric driving have been met. The standby state remains on. READY is displayed in the instrument cluster. If necessary, the combustion engine starts automatically.

Parking brake

Setting

Pull the switch.

The LED on the switch and the indicator light in the instrument cluster are illuminated.

Releasing

With drive-ready state switched on:

Steptronic transmission: press the switch while the brake is pressed or selector lever position P is set.

The LED and indicator light go out.

The parking brake is released.

Steptronic transmission: parking

The parking brake is automatically set if the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold and the drive-ready state is switched off or the vehicle is exited.

Steptronic transmission

Engaging selector lever position D, N, R

- Drive mode D.
- Neutral N.
- R is reverse.

With the driver's safety belt fastened, briefly push the selector lever in the desired direction, past a resistance point, if needed. The selector lever returns to the center position in each case.

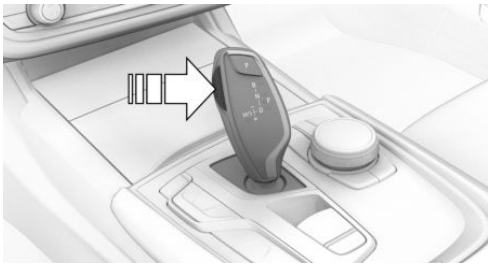
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2777
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a drive mode or reverse, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start.

A selector lever lock prevents the inadvertent shifting to selector lever position R or the inadvertent shifting from selector lever position P.

Engage selector lever position R only when the vehicle is stationary.

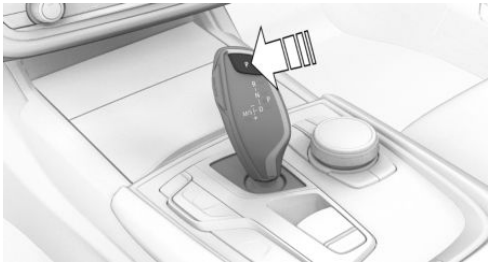
Releasing the selector lever lock



Press the button.

Engaging P

Engage selector lever position P only when the vehicle is stationary.



Press button P.

Steptronic transmission, Sport program and manual mode

Activate the Sport program/manual mode:

Press the selector lever to the left from selector lever position D.

Manual mode:

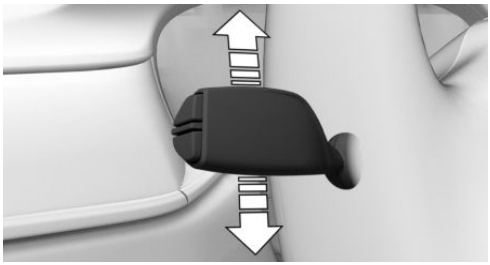
- To shift down: press the selector lever forward.
- To shift up: pull the selector lever rearwards.

End the sport program/manual mode:

Push the selector lever to the right.

Turn signal, high beams, headlight flasher

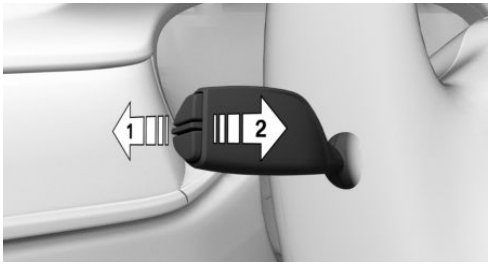
Turn signal



- On: press the lever past the resistance point.
- Off: press the lever past the resistance point in the opposite direction.
- Triple turn signal activation: lightly tap the lever up or down.

▷ Brief signaling: press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

High beams, headlight flasher



Push the lever forward or pull it backward.

▷ High beams on, arrow 1.

The high beams light up when the low beams are switched on.

▷ High beams off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

Lights and lighting

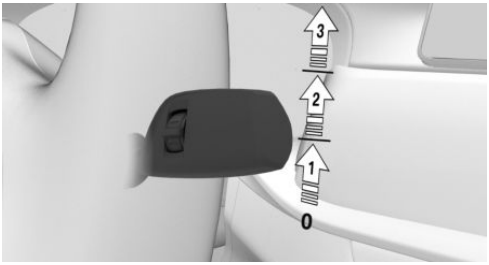
Light functions

Symbol	Function
	Front fog lights.
	Lights off. Daytime running lights.
	Parking lights.
	Automatic headlight control. Adaptive light functions.
	Low beams.
	Instrument lighting.
	Right roadside parking light.
	Left roadside parking light.

Wiper system

Switching the wipers on/off and brief wipe

Switching on



Press the lever up until the desired position is reached.

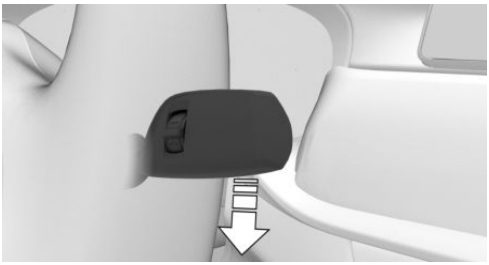
▷ Resting position of the wipers: position 0.

▷ Rain sensor: position 1.

▷ Normal wiper speed: position 2.

▷ Fast wiper speed: position 3.

Switching off and brief wipe



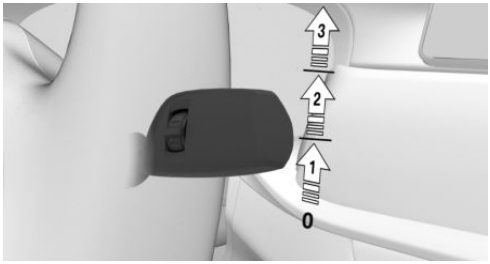
Press the lever down.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2779
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

- Switching off: press the lever down until it reaches its standard position.
- Brief wipe: press the lever down from the standard position.

Rain sensor

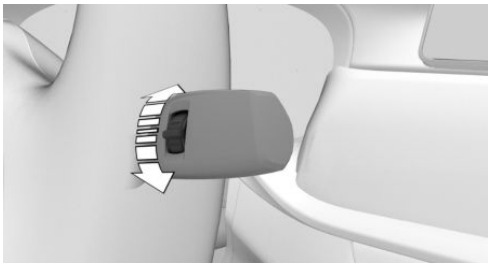
Activating/deactivating



To activate: press the lever up once from its standard position, arrow 1.

To deactivate: press the lever back into the standard position.

Adjusting the sensitivity



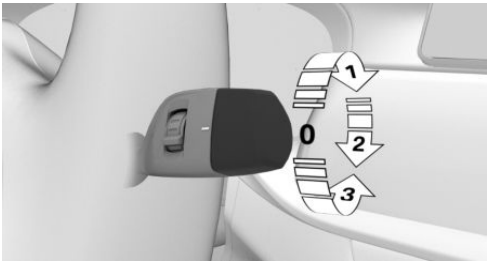
Turn the thumbwheel on the wiper lever.

Cleaning the windshield

Pull the wiper lever towards you.

Rear window wiper

Switching on



Turn the outer switch upward.

- Resting position of the wiper, position 0.
- Intermittent mode, arrow 1. When reverse gear is engaged, the system switches to continuous operation.

Clean the rear window

Turn the outer switch in the desired direction.

- In resting position: turn the switch downward, arrow 3. The switch automatically returns to its idle position when released.
- In intermittent mode: turn the switch further, arrow 2. The switch automatically returns to its interval position when released.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2780

Climate control

Automatic climate control

Button	Function
	Temperature.
A/C	Climate control operation.
MAX A/C	Maximum cooling.
AUTO	AUTO program.
	Recirculated-air mode.
	Air flow, manual.
	Air distribution, manual.
SYNC	SYNC program.
MAX	Defrost and defog window.
	Rear window defroster.
	Active seat ventilation.
	Seat heating.
MENU	Opening the Climate menu.

Intermediate stop

Charging the vehicle

Connecting

Charging socket flap

The charging socket flap is located on the left side of the vehicle.

Always keep charging socket clean and unobstructed.

Keep the charging socket flap closed when the charging socket is not used.

Connecting a charging cable

To connect, engage selector lever position P, deactivate drive-ready state, and unlock the vehicle. Set the parking brake, if needed.

1. To open the charging socket flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The charging socket flap opens.

2. Connect the mode 2 charging cable to the household socket or the mode 3 charging cable to the port at the AC charging station.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2781
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

3. Insert the appropriate charging cable connector, and push it in until it engages.

Removing

General information

When the vehicle is locked, the charging cable is locked. Unlock the vehicle before removing the cable.

If necessary, clean the area between the charging socket flap and charging socket, for instance from snow, before removing it.

Disconnecting a charging cable

1. Unlock the vehicle with the vehicle key if it is locked.

   Charging cable is unlocked.
2. Press the release button on the handle, arrow 1, and grasp the charging cable at the gripping areas.

3. Remove the charging cable from the charging socket, arrow 2.
4. Press on the charging socket flap until it engages.
5. Attach cover of the charging cable connector, if needed.
6. Disconnect the mode 2 charging cable from the household socket or the mode 3 charging cable from the port at the AC charging station as needed.
7. Stow the charging cable.

   At a charging station, insert the permanently installed charging cable in the place provided for it.

Refueling

Venting the tank

Excess pressure may build up in the fuel tank as a result of gasoline vapors; this pressure is dissipated before the fuel cap is opened.

The button is located in the storage compartment of the driver's door.

1. Switch off drive-ready state.
2. Press the button to start the pressure equalization.

   The tank venting status is displayed in the instrument cluster. In rare cases, tank venting can last several minutes.

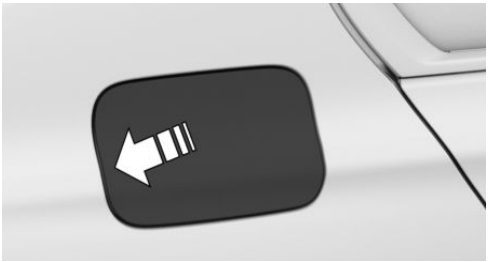
   When tank venting has finished, a message is displayed in the instrument cluster. The fuel cap is released for opening.
3. Open the fuel filler flap.

   If it is not possible to open the fuel filler flap after tank venting, press the button again.

   If it is still not possible to open the fuel filler flap even after pressing the button again, unlock the fuel filler flap manually.

Fuel cap

1. To open the fuel filler flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.



2. Turn the fuel cap counterclockwise.
3. Place the fuel cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2782

Gasoline

For the best fuel efficiency, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.

Wheels and tires

Tire inflation pressure specifications

The tire inflation pressure specifications can be found in the tire inflation pressure table in the printed Owner's Manual.

After correcting the tire inflation pressure

With runflat tires:

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

With Tire Pressure Monitor:

The corrected tire inflation pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the correct tire settings have been made.

With tires that cannot be found in the tire pressure values on the Control Display, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM.

Checking the tire inflation pressure

Regularly check the tire inflation pressure and correct it as needed:

- At least twice a month.
- Before embarking on an extended trip.

Cleaning the wheels

The friction during hard braking may produce brake dust and make the rims dirty. Brake dust can be removed by cleaning the rims. BMW recommends using vehicle care and cleaning products from BMW.

Electronic oil measurement

Functional requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of normal driving with the combustion engine running.

Displaying the engine oil level

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"

Different messages appear on the Control Display depending on the engine oil level. Pay attention to these messages.

Adding engine oil

General information

Safely park the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before adding engine oil.

Adding engine oil

Only add engine oil when the message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Observe the quantity to be added in the message.

Take care not to add too much engine oil.

Observe recommended engine oil types.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2783
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Providing assistance

Hazard warning flashers

The button is located in the center console.

Breakdown assistance

BMW Roadside Assistance

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "BMW Assist"
4. If necessary, "BMW Roadside Assistance"

   A voice connection is established.

ConnectedDrive

Concierge service

The BMW Assist Concierge service offers information on events, gas stations or hotels, and provides phone numbers and addresses. Many hotels can be booked directly by the BMW Concierge service. The Concierge service is part of the optional BMW Assist Response Center.

1. "COM"
2. "BMW Assist"
3. If necessary, select the entry for the Concierge Service.

A voice connection to the Concierge service is established.

Teleservices

Teleservices are services that help to maintain vehicle mobility.

Teleservices can comprise the following services:

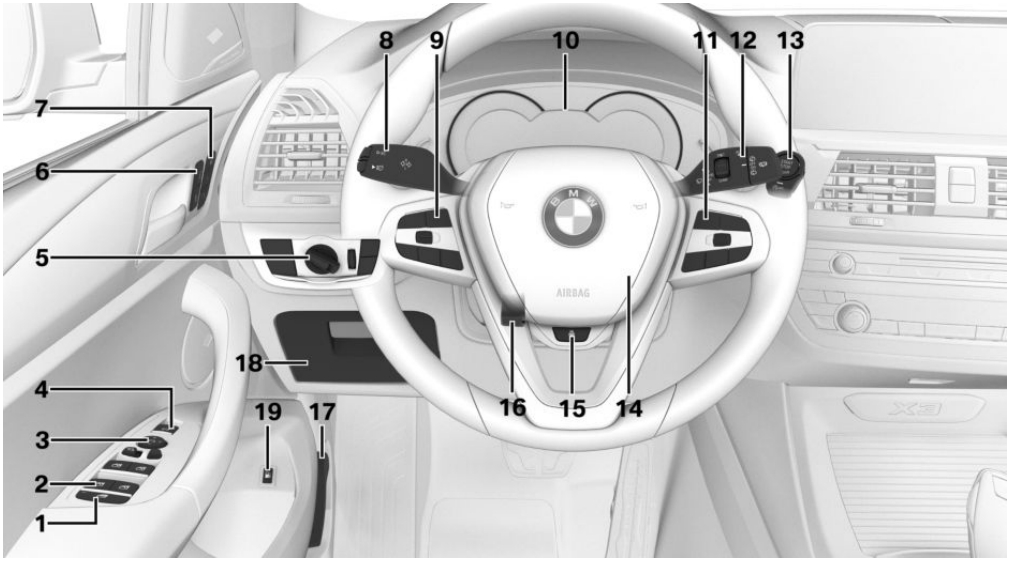
- BMW Roadside Assistance.
- BMW Accident Assistance.
- Service Request.
- Teleservice Report.
- Teleservice Battery Guard.
- Your dealer's service center.

Cockpit

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

In the vicinity of the steering wheel



1 Safety switch 102

2 Power windows 101

3 Exterior mirror operation 113

4 Opening and closing the tailgate 96

5 Lights

Front fog lights 169

Light switch 165

Lights off

Daytime running lights 167

Parking lights 166

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2785
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Automatic headlight control 165
Adaptive light functions 167
High-beam Assistant 168

Low beams 166

Instrument lighting 170

Right roadside parking light 166

Left roadside parking light 166

6 Central locking system 92

Unlocking

Locking

7 Seating comfort features

Memory function 116

8 Steering column stalk, left

Turn signal 137

High beams, headlight flasher 137

High-beam Assistant 168

Widgets 147
Trip data 160

9 Steering wheel buttons, left

Cruise control on/off 203

Active Cruise Control on/off 206

Steering and traffic jam assistant on/off 212

Cruise control: to store the speed

Pause or continue cruise control

Active Cruise Control: increase distance

Active Cruise Control: reduce distance

With steering and traffic jam assistant: adjust distance

Cruise control rocker switch

10 Instrument cluster 146

11 Steering wheel buttons, right

Selection lists 160

Volume, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6

Voice activation system 55

Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6

Thumbwheel for selection lists 160

12 Steering column stalk, right

Wipers 137

Rain sensor 138

Cleaning the windshield 139

Rear window wiper in Canadian models 139

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2786

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

REAR Rear window wiper 139

Clean the rear window 139

13 START STOP Switching drive-ready state on/ off 126

14 Horn, entire surface

15 Heated steering wheel 115

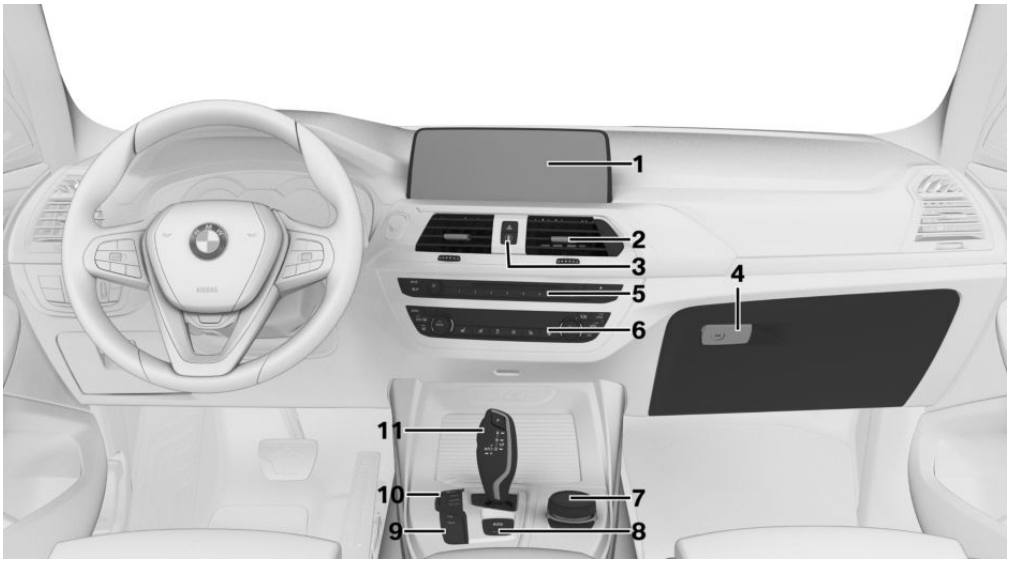
16 Adjusting the steering wheel 115

17 Unlocking the hood 329

18 Driver's side glove compartment 264

19 Tank vent 297

In the vicinity of the center console



1 Control Display 51

2 Ventilation 244

3 Hazard warning system 347

Intelligent Safety 176

4 Glove compartment 263

5 Radio/multimedia, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication 6

6 Automatic climate control 240

7 Controller with buttons 51

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2787
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

8 Parking brake 134

Automatic Hold 135

9

eDRIVE 130

Parking assistance systems 215

Panorama View 233

HDC Hill Descent Control 201

10

Driving Dynamics Control 132
SPORT drive mode

COMFORT drive mode

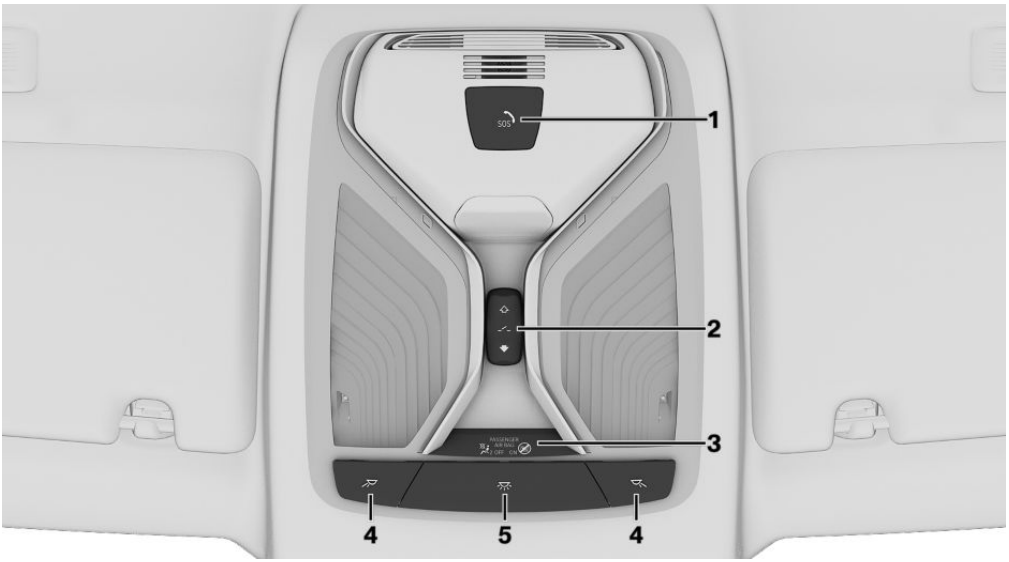
ECO PRO drive mode

ADAPTIVE drive mode

DSC Dynamic Stability Control 198

11 Steptronic transmission selector lever 140

In the vicinity of the roofliner



1 SOS Emergency Request, SOS 349

2 Glass sunroof 102

3 PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON Indicator light, front-seat passenger airbag 175

4 Reading lights 170

5 Interior lights 170

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2789
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Sensors of the vehicle

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Overview

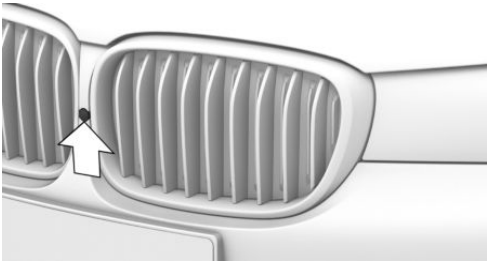
Depending on the equipment, the following cameras and sensors are installed in the vehicle:

- Front camera.
- Cameras behind the windshield.
- Top view cameras.
- Rearview camera.
- Front radar sensor.
- Radar sensors, side, front.
- Radar sensors, side, rear.
- Ultrasound sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors, side.

Keep the vehicle cameras and sensors, as well as surrounding areas, clean and unobstructed.

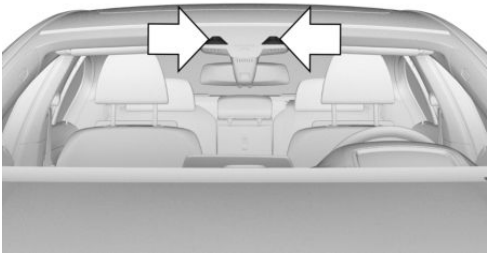
Cameras

Front camera



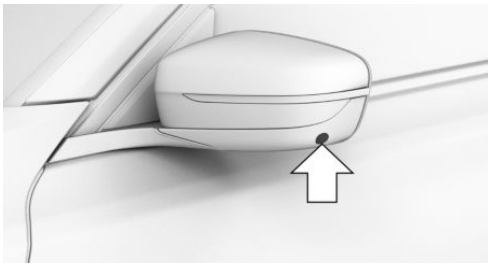
Front camera

Cameras behind the windshield



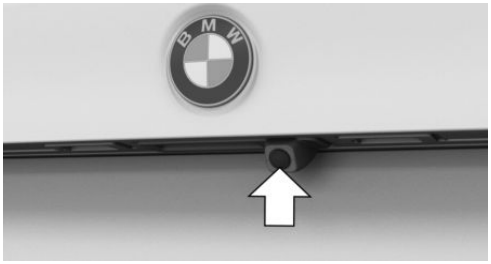
The cameras are located in the area of the interior mirror.

Top view cameras



One camera is located at the bottom of each exterior mirror housing.

Rearview camera



The camera is located in the handle of the tailgate.

System limits of the cameras

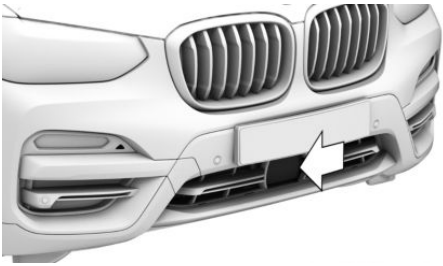
The cameras may not be fully functional and may provide incorrect information in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- On steep hills, in steep depressions or in tight curves.
- When the camera field of view is covered, for instance by a fogged up windshield or labels.
- When the camera lens is dirty or damaged.
- With exterior mirrors folded in.
- When driving toward bright lights or strong reflections, e.g., because of a setting sun.
- When it is dark outside.
- Camera behind the windshield: if the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- Camera behind the windshield: during calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

If applicable, a Check Control message is displayed if the system fails.

Radar sensors

Front radar sensor



The radar sensor is located in the front bumper.

Radar sensors, side, front

The radar sensors are located in the bumper.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2791
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Radar sensors, side, rear

The radar sensors are located in the bumper.

System limits of the radar sensors

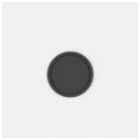
The radar sensors may not be fully functional or may not be available in the following situations:

- If sensors are dirty, such as due to icing.
- If sensors are covered, such as by labels, films or a number plate baseplate.
- If the sensor is not aligned correctly, for instance due to parking damage.
- If the radiation range of the sensors is covered, e.g., by protruding cargo.
- If the field of view of the sensors is covered, e.g., by garage walls, hedges or snow hills.
- After improperly performed work on the vehicle paint in the area of the sensors.
- On steep hilltops or in sharp dips in the road.

If applicable, a Check Control message is displayed if the system fails.

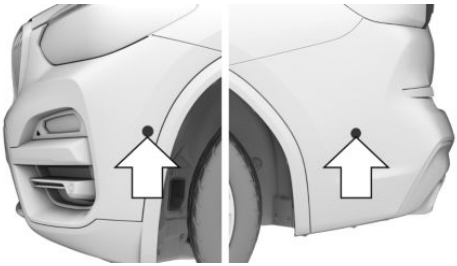
Ultrasound sensors

Ultrasound sensors in the front/ rear bumpers



The ultrasound sensors of the Park Distance Control PDC are located in the bumpers.

Ultrasonic sensors, side



The ultrasound sensors of the Automatic Parking Assistant are located on the side of the vehicle.

System limits of the ultrasonic sensors

The detection of objects with ultrasonic measurements can run into physical limits, e.g., in the following situations:

- In case of dirty sensors.
- In case of covered sensors, such as due to labels.
- If the sensor is not aligned correctly, for instance due to parking damage.
- After improperly performed work on the vehicle paint in the area of the sensors.
- For small children and animals.
- For persons with certain clothing, for instance coats.
- In case of external interference of the ultrasound, for instance from passing vehicles, loud machines or other ultrasonic sources.
- Under certain weather conditions, e.g., high relative humidity, wet conditions, snowfall, cold, extreme heat, or strong wind.
- With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.
- With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- With moving objects.
- With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges.

- With objects with corners, edges, and smooth surfaces.
- With objects with a fine surface structure such as fences.
- For objects with porous surfaces.
- With small and low objects, for instance boxes.
- With soft obstacles or obstacles covered in foam material.
- With plants and bushes.
- In automatic car washes.
- On uneven surfaces, such as speed bumps.
- Due to heavy exhaust.
- Cargo that extends beyond the perimeter of the vehicle is not taken into account by the ultrasonic sensors.
- When the trailer hitch cover is not on straight.

If applicable, a Check Control message is displayed if the system fails.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2793
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Operating state of the vehicle

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

General information

Depending on the situation, the vehicle is in one of the three states:

- Idle state.
- Standby state.
- Drive-ready state.

Idle state

Concept

When the vehicle is in idle state, it is switched off. All power consumers are deactivated.

General information

The vehicle is in idle state prior to opening from the outside and after exiting and locking.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Automatic idle state

For instance, the idle state is automatically established under the following conditions:

- After several minutes, if no operation takes place on the vehicle.
- If the charge state of the vehicle battery is low.
- Depending on the setting via iDrive: when one or both front doors are opened after driving when exiting the vehicle.

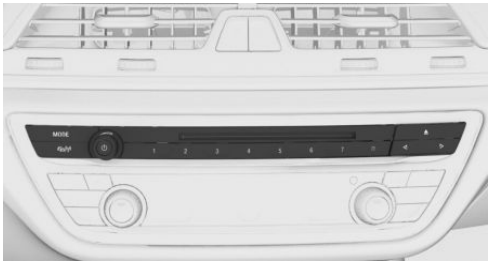
In some situations, the idle state is not set automatically, for instance during a phone call or when the low beams are switched on.

Establishing idle state when opening the front doors

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Turn off vehicle after opening door"

Manual idle state

To establish idle state in the vehicle after end of trip:



Press and hold the button until the OFF indicator on the instrument cluster goes out.

Standby state

Concept

When standby state is switched on, most functions can be used while the vehicle is stationary. Desired settings can be adjusted.

General information

The vehicle is in the standby state after the front doors are opened from the outside.

Display in the instrument cluster

OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster. The drivetrain is switched off and standby state switched on.

Drive-ready state

Concept

The following are the different drive-ready state variants:

- Electric drive-ready state.

  The vehicle is powered by the electric motor.
- Starting of combustion engine.

  The vehicle is powered by the combustion engine.

Safety information

⚠ DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can enter into the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2795
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Warning

When driving in electric mode, pedestrians and other traffic might pay less attention to the vehicle due to the lack of engine noise. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Switching on drive-ready state

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Depress brake pedal.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

   Most of the indicator/warning lights in the instrument cluster illuminate for a varied length of time depending on the duration of the system check.

Depending on the prerequisite, the electric drive-ready state or a combustion engine start is possible.

Electric drive-ready state

General information

The vehicle is ready for driving without starting the combustion engine.

Functional requirements

Electric drive-ready state is possible, if the prerequisites for electric driving are fulfilled.

Additional information:

BMW eDRIVE, refer to page 125.

Display in the instrument cluster

When the drive-ready state is switched on, READY is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Combustion engine start

Functional requirements

The combustion engine is started under the following conditions when the drive-ready state is switched on:

- The temperature of the hybrid system is too high or too low.
- The high-voltage battery has an insufficient charge.

Switching off drive-ready state

After stopping the vehicle:

1. Engage selector lever position P.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.
3. Set the parking brake.

After parking the vehicle, you may hear noises due to operation of the hybrid system, such as for cooling of the high-voltage battery.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2797
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

iDrive

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Operating concept

Concept

iDrive includes a large number of functions. These functions can be operated via the Controller and, depending on the equipment version, via touchscreen, voice activation system or gesture control.

Safety information

Warning

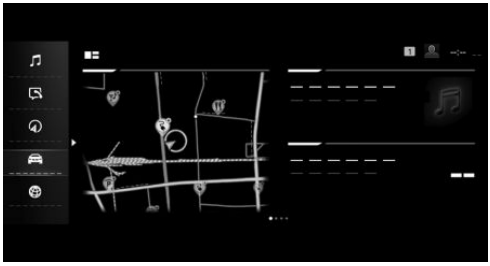
Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. As warranted, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.

Input and display

Main menu

General information

The main menu is divided into two areas. The left area contains menu items that can be used to call up all the iDrive functions. The right area contains widgets that provide quick access to certain functions.



Media/Radio

All functions of the entertainment system, e.g., radio stations or connection with external devices.

Communication

Phone and message functions, e-mail and calendar, and also the connection and management of mobile devices, such as smartphones.

Navigation

Access to the navigation system, destination input and traffic bulletins. Configurable map views and other functions, such as points of interest and areas to be avoided.

My Car

Information about vehicle status and trips. Access to the Integrated Owner's Manual and also administration of driver profiles and range of adjustments for vehicle and iDrive.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2798

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Apps

Management of apps, access to apps and vehicle functions. Additional apps and vehicle functions can be purchased from the BMW Store.

Widgets

Widgets provide quick access to frequently used functions. The configured widgets display dynamic contents such as the navigation map, and serve as interfaces at the same time.

Letters and numbers

Letters and numbers can be selected when the destination is inputed, for example.

Letters and numbers can be entered using the Controller and, depending on the equipment version, via touchscreen or voice activation system. The keyboard's display changes automatically.

Symbol	Function
abc ABC	Change between capital and lower-case letters.
␣	Enter a blank space.
EN	Switching between languages.
	Use voice activation.
OK	Confirm entry.
← →	Slide the input area to the left or right.

Entry comparison

When entering names and addresses, the choice is narrowed down with every letter and number and added automatically as needed.

Entries are continuously compared with data stored in the vehicle.

- Only those letters and numbers are offered during entry for which data is available.
- Destination search: place names can be entered in all languages that are available in iDrive.

Activating/deactivating the functions

Several menu items are preceded by a checkbox. The checkbox indicates whether the function is activated or deactivated. Selecting the menu item activates or deactivates the function.

☑ Function is activated.

☐ Function is deactivated.

Status information

General information

The status field can be found in the upper area of the Control Display. Status information is displayed in the form of symbols.

Radio symbols

Symbol	Meaning
HD	HD Radio station is being received.
SXM	Satellite radio is switched on.

Telephone symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Incoming or outgoing call.
	Missed call.
	Signal strength of cellular network.
	Network search.
	Cellular network is not available.
	The critical charge state of the mobile phone has been reached.
R	Roaming is active.
	Locating is active.
	SMS text message received.
	Message received.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2799
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Symbol	Meaning
	Reminder.
	Sending not possible.

Entertainment symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Bluetooth audio.
	USB device.
	WLAN.
	Apple CarPlay.

Other symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Check Control message.
	Sound output active.
	Sound output deactivated.
	Voice activation system active.
	Request for the current vehicle position.
	Checking the current vehicle position.
	Driver profile.
1	Messages.
	Service notifications.
i	Information.
STOP	Stop.
	Data protection.

Programmable memory buttons

General information

The iDrive functions can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly, for instance radio stations, navigation destinations, phone numbers and menu entries or pages in the Integrated Owner's Manual.

Settings are stored for the driver profile currently used.

Overview

1 ... 7 Programmable memory buttons

Storing a function

A function can be stored on a programmable memory button. A button with a stored function can be overwritten with another function.

1. Select function via iDrive, for instance radio station.
2. 1 ... 7 Press and hold the desired button until the displayed bar on the Control Display has loaded completely.

Executing a function

1 ... 7 Press the button.

The function will work immediately. This means, for instance that the number is dialed when a phone number is selected.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2800

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Displaying the key assignment

Touch buttons with finger. Do not wear gloves or use objects.

The assignment of the buttons is displayed in the upper area of the Control Display.

Deleting all button assignments

All button assignments can be deleted.

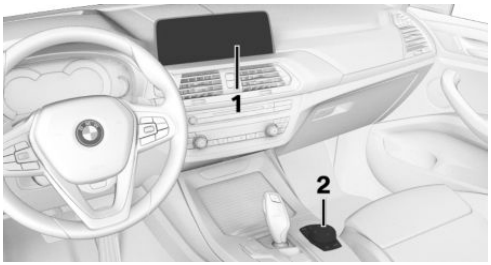
1. Press and hold buttons 1 and simultaneously for approx. 5 seconds.
2. "OK"

Control Display and Controller

Concept

The iDrive functions are displayed on the Control Display. The Control Display can be operated using the Controller, touchpad, and touch screen.

Overview



1 Control Display with touchscreen

2 Controller with buttons and touchpad

Control Display

Safety information

NOTICE

Objects in the area in the front of the Control Display can shift and damage the Control Display. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not place objects in the area in front of the Control Display.

Switching on/off automatically

The Control Display is switched on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked or as soon as the Control Display is needed for operation.

In certain situations, the Control Display is switched off automatically, for instance if no operation is performed on the vehicle for several minutes.

Switching on/off manually

The Control Display can also be switched off manually.

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Screen off"

Press the Controller or any button on the Controller to switch it back on again.

System limits

In the case of very high temperatures on the Control Display, for instance due to intense solar radiation, the brightness may be reduced down to complete deactivation. Once the temperature is reduced, for instance through shade or air conditioning, the normal functions are restored.

Controller

General information

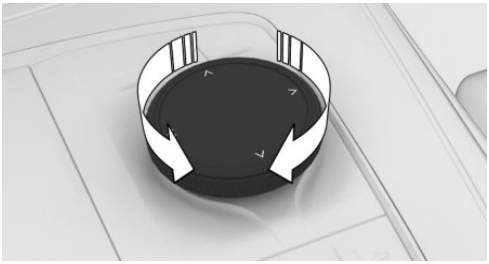
The buttons can be used to open the menus directly. The Controller can be used to select menu items and enter the settings.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2801
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

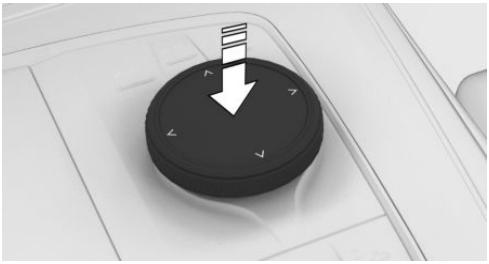
Some iDrive functions can be operated using the touchpad on the Controller.

Operation

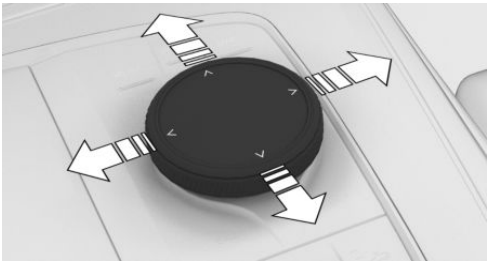
▷ Turn to switch between menu items, for example.



▷ Press to select a menu item, for example.



▷ Tilt in four directions to switch between displays, for example.



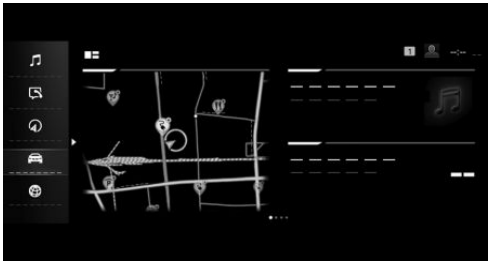
Buttons on the Controller

Button	Function
MENU	Opens the main menu.
MEDIA	Opens the Media/Radio menu.
COM	Opens the Communication menu.
MAP	Opens navigation map.
NAV	Opens destination input menu for navigation.
BACK	Opens the previous display.
OPTION	Opens the Options menu.

Operating via the Controller

Opening the main menu

MENU Press the button.



The main menu is displayed.

Selecting a menu

Selecting menu items

1. Turn the Controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.
2. Press the Controller.

Select a widget

1. Move the Controller in the main menu to the right.
2. Turn the Controller until the desired widget is selected.
3. Press the Controller.

It is also possible to select widgets in the instrument cluster.

Adjusting the menu

Adjusting widgets

The widgets can be adjusted in the main menu. It is possible to create multiple pages with widgets and switch between pages. The adjustments can only be performed when the vehicle is stationary.

1. Select the desired page in the main menu. Only the currently selected page can be adjusted.
2. Tip the Controller up.
3. "Adjust main menu"
4. Select the desired adjustment:
   - ▷ + Symbol and select desired widget: add new widget.

     The requested widget will be inserted in the relevant position. A maximum of four widgets can be displayed per page.
   - ▷ ✕ Select symbol: delete selected widget.
   - ▷ Add new page: "Add page".
   - ▷ Delete selected page: "Delete page".
   - ▷ Adjust the content of the widget: select widget.
5. "Done"

Adjusting contents

Depending on the equipment, the contents of menus "MEDIA", "COM" and "NAV" can be adjusted, for instance to remove the entries of functions that are not used from the menu.

1. Select the menu.
2. "Personalize menu"
3. Select the desired setting.

Changing between displays

After a menu item is selected, for instance "Settings", a new display appears.

▷ Move the Controller to the left.

The current display closes and the previous display is shown.

▷

Press the button.

The previous display re-opens.

▷ Move the Controller to the right.

The new display opens.

An arrow indicates that additional displays can be opened.

Opening the Options menu

Press the button.

The "Options" menu is displayed.

The menu consists of various areas, for instance:

- ▷ "MEDIA": control options for the selected main menu.
- ▷ "Help": help for the selected menu.
- ▷ "Control display off": system settings.

Entering letters and numbers

Input

1. Turn the Controller: select letter or number.
2. OK : confirm entry.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2803
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Deleting

Symbol	Function
I←	Press the Controller: delete letter or number.
I←	Hold the Controller down: delete all letters or numbers.

Using alphabetical lists

For alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries, the letters for which an entry exists can be displayed in a text box.

1. Turn the Controller to the left or right quickly.
2. Select the first letter of the desired entry.

   The first entry of the selected letter is displayed in the list.

Operation via touchpad

General information

Some iDrive functions can be operated using the touchpad on the Controller.

Selecting functions

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Touchpad"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Character input": enter letters and numbers.
   - ▷ "Map": use the map.
   - ▷ "Search fields": to write letters without selecting the list field.
   - ▷ "Audio confirmation": pronounces entered letters and numbers.

Entering letters and numbers

- ▷ Enter characters as they are displayed on the Control Display.
- ▷ Always enter associated characters, such as accents or periods so that the letter can be clearly recognized.
- ▷ The set language determines what input is possible. Where necessary, enter special characters via the Controller.

Entering special characters

Input	Operation
Delete a character.	Swipe to the left on the touchpad.
Enter a blank space.	Swipe to the right in the center of the touchpad.
Enter a hyphen.	Swipe to the right in the upper area of the touchpad.
Enter an underscore.	Swipe to the right in the lower area of the touchpad.

Using the map

The map in the navigation system can be moved via the touchpad.

Function	Operation
Move map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Enlarge/shrink map.	Drag in or out on the touchpad with fingers.
Display menu.	Tap once.

Operation via touchscreen

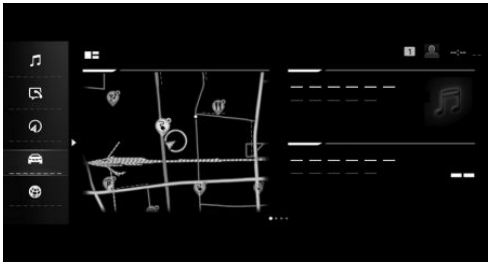
General information

The Control Display is equipped with a touchscreen.

You can tap on menu items and widgets. Touch the screen with your fingers. Do not use any objects.

Opening the main menu

Tap on the symbol.



The main menu is displayed.

Adjusting widgets

The widgets can be adjusted in the main menu. It is possible to create multiple pages with widgets and switch between pages. The adjustments can only be performed when the vehicle is stationary.

1. Select the desired page in the main menu. Only the currently selected page can be adjusted.
2. Tap the icon in the main menu.
3. Select the desired adjustment:
   - ▷ + Tap symbol and select desired widget: add new widget.

     The requested widget will be inserted in the relevant position. A maximum of four widgets can be displayed per page.
   - ▷ × Tap symbol: delete selected widget.
   - ▷ Add new page: tap "Add page".
   - ▷ Delete selected page: tap "Delete page".
   - ▷ Adjust content of the widget: tap center of widget.
4. Tap "Done".

Showing/hiding the display bar

In the upper area of the Control Display, it is possible to show or hide a display bar with additional functions.

- ▷ To show the display bar, pull down the display bar at the top edge of the screen.
- ▷ To hide the display bar, pull up the display bar at the top edge of the screen.

Changing between displays

After a menu item is selected, a new display opens.

An arrow indicates that additional displays can be opened.

- ▷ Swipe to the left.
- ▷ Tap arrow.

The new display opens.

Entering letters and numbers

Input

1. Depending on the equipment version, tap the symbol on the touchscreen or a keyboard is displayed on the Control Display when the touchscreen is approached.
2. Enter desired letters and numbers.

Deleting

Symbol	Function
⌫	Tapping the symbol: deletes the letter or number.
⌫	Tapping and holding the symbol all letters: deletes all letters or numbers.

Using the map

The navigation map can be moved using the touchscreen.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2805
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Function	Operation
Move map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Enlarge/shrink map.	Drag in or out with the fingers.
Display menu.	Tap once.

Operation via voice

Concept

The voice activation system can be used to operate functions with spoken commands. The system supports you with announcements during input.

The voice control system and the feedback it provides are not a substitute for the printed or Integrated Owner's Manual.

General information

- Functions that can only be used when the vehicle is stationary can only be operated via the voice activation system to a limited extent.
- The system includes special microphones on the driver side and the front passenger side.
- ›...‹ denotes commands to use with the voice activation system.

Functional requirements

- A language must be set via iDrive that is supported by the voice activation system.

  To set the language, refer to page 65.
- Always say commands in the language of the voice activation system.

Activating the voice activation system

General information

There are various methods for activating the voice activation feature:

- Press the button on the steering wheel.
- Say the wake word ›Hello BMW‹ or a personal wake word.

This symbol indicates that the voice activation system is active.

Then say the command. No other commands may be available. In this case, operate the function via iDrive.

The voice activation can be terminated:

- Press the button on the steering wheel again.
- ›Cancel‹

This symbol indicates that the voice activation system is deactivated.

Button on the steering wheel

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the signal.
3. Say the command.

Wake word

General information

Speaking the wake word ›Hello BMW‹ or the personal wake word will start the system.

Preset wake word

The preset wake word ›Hello BMW‹ can be activated and deactivated.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2806
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

›Hello BMW‹ activates the preset and personal wake word.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. If necessary, "Personal assistant"
5. "Voice control"
6. "Wake word"
7. "Activation with "Hello BMW""

Personal wake word

In addition to a preset wake word ›Hello BMW‹, a personal wake word can be set up.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. If necessary, "Personal assistant"
5. "Voice control"
6. "Wake word"
7. "Personal wake word"
8. "Start recording"

   For "Start recording", online speech processing must be available and activated. Alternatively, the personal wake word can be entered using the Controller.
9. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Possible commands

General information

Most contents on the Control Display can be spoken as commands, e.g. menu items or list entries. Speak these list entries out loud exactly as they are shown in the list.

Say the commands and numbers fluently as well as with normal volume, emphasis, and speed.

The status of the voice recognition is displayed in the upper area of the Control Display.

Function examples

Menu items

The commands of the menu items are spoken just as they are selected via the Controller.

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. ›MEDIA‹
3. ›Presets‹

The stored stations are displayed on the Control Display.

Navigation

Destinations can be entered in the navigation system using the voice activation system. It is also possible to say points of interest or have traffic reports announced.

- ›Drive me to 300 Chestnut Ridge Road, Woodcliff Lake in New Jersey‹
- ›Take me home‹
- ›Are there any traffic messages‹

Communication

For example, when a mobile phone is connected, the voice activation system can be used to start calls or send SMS.

- ›Call John Doe on cell phone‹
- ›Dial the number 1 8 0 0 8 3 1 1 1 1 7‹
- ›New text message to John Doe: I'll be right there‹

Media and Radio

Most radio functions can be used via the Active Voice Recognition.

- ›Turn on music‹
- ›Music off‹
- ›Next title‹

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2807
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Climate control

Most climate control functions can be used via voice.

- ▷ ›Activate climate control‹
- ▷ ›Deactivate air recirculation‹
- ▷ ›Temperature [...] at ...‹

Help on the voice activation system

- ▷ ›Voice commands‹: to have the available spoken commands announced.
- ▷ ›General information on voice control‹: have information on the operating principle of the voice activation system read out loud.
- ▷ ›Help‹: have help for the current menu read out loud.

Information for Emergency Requests

Do not use the voice activation system to initiate an Emergency Request. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change. This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a telephone connection.

Instead, use the SOS button close to the interior mirror.

Additional information:

Emergency Request, refer to page 349.

Settings

Setting the voice control

You can set the system to use standard dialog or a short version.

The short version of the voice control plays back short messages in abbreviated form.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. If necessary, "Personal assistant"
5. "Voice control"
6. "Response length"
7. Select the desired setting.

Speaking during voice output

It is possible to answer during inquiries of the voice activation system. The function can be deactivated if inquiries are often undesirably interrupted, for instance due to background noise or conversations in the vehicle.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. If necessary, "Personal assistant"
5. "Voice control"
6. "Speaking during voice output"

Online speech processing

Online speech processing provides a dictation function, a natural method of destinations input and improves the quality of voice recognition. To use the functions, data is transmitted to a service provider via an encrypted connection and stored locally there.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. If necessary, "Personal assistant"
5. "Voice control"
6. "Online speech processing"

Adjusting the volume

Turn the volume button during the spoken instructions until the desired volume is set.

- ▷ The volume remains constant even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.
- ▷ The volume is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Using the voice activation system of the smartphone

Depending on the device, a smartphone connected to the vehicle can be used via voice activation.

Activate voice command response on the smartphone for this purpose.

1. Press and hold the button on the steering wheel for approx. 3 seconds.

   Voice command response is activated on the smartphone.

2. Release the button.

   If activation is successful, a confirmation appears on the Control Display.

Voice assistants from third-party providers

Concept

Some third-party providers provide digital voice assistants. Supported voice assistants can be used in the vehicle.

General information

Some of the functions are limited in the vehicle to prevent any impairment of safety while driving.

Functional requirements

- Connected Voice Services purchased via ConnectedDrive Store.
- Same ConnectedDrive account used in the vehicle and in the BMW Connected app.
- Vehicle added in the BMW Connected app.
- Third-party account and BMW account are linked in the BMW Connected app.
- Smartphone connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth.

Activation in the BMW Connected app

Third-party assistants are set up in the BMW Connected app.

Follow the instructions in the app.

Activation in the vehicle

An authorization for the use of the voice assistant is required every time before starting a trip.

1. Authorizing voice assistants from third-party providers:
   - Connect the smartphone to the vehicle via Bluetooth.
   - Selects appropriate driver profile.

     Driver profiles, refer to page 69.
2. If necessary, press the button on the steering wheel and wait for signal tone.
3. Say the specific activation word of the third-party provider and the desired command.

   Information about the active function is displayed on the Control Display.

Activation/deactivation of the specific activation word

In addition to the activation word of the voice activation system, the specific activation word from the third-party provider can be activated or deactivated.

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "Personal assistant"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Wake word"
6. "Activation by speech"
7. Select the desired setting.

Malfunction

In case of a malfunction, switch off the drive-ready state and restart again.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2809
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

System limits

- Certain noises can be detected and may lead to problems. Keep the doors, windows, and glass sunroof closed.
- Noises from the front passenger or the rear seat bench can impair the system. Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.
- Major language dialects can cause problems with the voice recognition feature. Speak loud and clear.

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant

Concept

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is the personal assistant that expands the voice activation system with intelligent functions and improves the interaction in the vehicle.

General information

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is available depending on the national-market version. The use of the personal assistant is based on voice operation. The voice operation is enhanced with personal recommendations and messages as well as the automation of routines.

The personal assistant is connected to other digital services such as the Concierge service and is continually being developed. The full scope requires an active driver profile.

The BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is available in two variants:

- In the Guest profile: the variant is linked to a vehicle and cannot be personalized. Not all described functions are available to the full extent.
- With active Driver profile: the variant can be used and personalized in different vehicles. All described functions are available to the full extent.

Functional requirements

Enter the following settings to access the full range of functions:

- The Driver profile is activated.
- Relevant ConnectedDrive Services have been purchased via ConnectedDrive Store.
- Registered in the ConnectedDrive Store.
- "Online speech processing" is activated.
- "Synchronize driver profile" under "Personalization" is activated.

  Data protection, refer to page 68.
- All settings under "BMW ConnectedDrive" activated.

  Data protection, refer to page 68.

Example for function

1. Say the wake word ›Hello BMW‹ or a personal wake word.
2. ›Is my tire pressure still OK?‹

   The personal assistant provides information about the tire pressure.

Settings

Display, notifications

General information

Depending on the situation, different conditions can be activated.

Condition	Description
"Do not disturb"	Incoming calls and some messages are not displayed.
"Passenger on board"	Private contents, such as sender and content of e-mails, will not be displayed.

Activating/deactivating

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"

3. "Personal assistant"
4. "Notification display"
5. Select the desired setting.

Automating routines

General information

The personal assistant can learn routines, e.g., the automatic activation of the seat heating from a specific external temperature. Rules are created for this purpose, which can be activated and deactivated at any time.

Creating a rule

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "Personal assistant"
4. "Automate habits"
5. Select the desired setting.

Functions

Experience Modes

General information

The Experience Modes combine different vehicle functions in the car's interior to an overall experience. For example, the selection of a mode harmonizes the ambient light and seat climate control.

Functional requirements

- The Experience Modes app is installed in the vehicle.
- Drive-ready state is switched on.

Selecting a mode

1. "CAR"
2. "Experience Modes"
3. Select the desired mode.

Deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Experience Modes"
3. "End"

Adjusting the mode

1. "CAR"
2. "Experience Modes"
3. Select the desired mode.
4. "Settings"
5. Make the desired setting.

Caring Car

General information

Different vehicle functions in the car's interior are harmonized for the driver in a short-term program. A program takes 3 minutes.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Caring Car"
3. Select the desired channel.

The program can be stopped prematurely:

"End program"

Owner's Manual via voice operation

Concept

You can ask simple questions about vehicle functions and the operation of the vehicle.

General information

The voice control system and the feedback it provides are not a substitute for the printed or Integrated Owner's Manual. The voice recognition and quality of the feedback may vary.

The system supports questions that begin with How or What.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2811
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Example for function

1. ›Hello BMW‹
2. ›How can the passenger airbag be deactivated‹

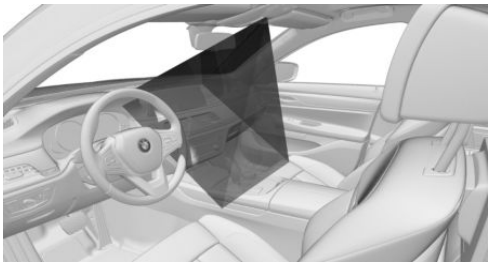
The voice activation system returns a feedback. When stationary, the section of the integrated Owner's Manual is displayed on the Control Display.

BMW Gesture Control

Concept

Several iDrive functions can be operated by hand motion using BMW Gesture Control.

Overview



The camera in the roofliner detects gestures that are carried out in the area of the center console at the height of the Control Display.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Gesture control"
5. "Gesture control"

Settings

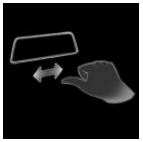
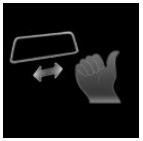
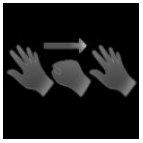
1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Gesture control"
5. Select the desired setting.

Carrying out gestures

- ▷ Perform gestures underneath the interior mirror and next to the steering wheel.
- ▷ Execute gestures clearly.
- ▷ The gestures can also be executed from the front-passenger side.

Possible gestures

Gesture	Operation	Function
	Move index finger forward and backward in the direction of the screen.	Accept call. Select a highlighted entry in a list during voice activation. Confirm pop-up.
	Move hand across the width of the Control Display in the direction of the front-passenger side.	Reject call. Close pop-up. Terminate voice activation.

Gesture	Operation	Function
	Slowly move hand clockwise in a circular pattern with the index finger stretched out forward. Gesture is detected after one circular motion.	Increase the volume.
	Slowly move forearm counterclockwise in a circular pattern with the index finger stretched out forward. Gesture is detected after one circular motion.	Reduce the volume.
	Pinch with thumb and index finger and move hand horizontally to the right or left.	Surround View: turn camera view. This gesture can only be executed while the vehicle is stationary.
	Move stretched out index and middle finger forward.	Individually assignable gesture.
	Move fist with thumb extended to the left back and forth.	Reverse Skip function. The previous music track is played.
	Move fist with thumb extended to right left back and forth.	Forward Skip function. The next music track is played.
	Stretch out five fingers, form a fist and stretch five fingers out again.	Individually assignable gesture.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2813
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Assigning gesture individually

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the following functions can be assigned to gestures that allow individual assignments:

- Destination guidance to home address.
- Voice command response.
- Mute/Playback
- Last calls.
- Control Display on/off
- Notifications.
- Music recognition
- No function.

Select function

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Gesture control"
5. "Function assignment gesture 1" or "Function assignment gesture 2"
6. Select the desired setting.

System limits

Gesture recognition by the camera in the roofliner can be disturbed by the following circumstances:

- The camera lens is covered.
- Objects are located on the interior mirror.
- The camera lens is dirty, clean camera lens.

  Sensors and camera lenses, refer to page 358.
- The gesture is executed outside of the detection range.
- Wearing of gloves or jewelry.
- Smoking in the car's interior.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2814

General settings

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Time

Setting the time zone

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time zone:"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the time

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time:"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired hours are displayed.
7. Press the Controller.
8. Turn the Controller until the desired minutes are displayed.
9. "OK"

Setting the time format

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time format:"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Automatic time setting

Depending on your vehicle's optional features, the time, date and, if needed, the time zone are updated automatically.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Automatic time setting"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Date

Setting the date

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2815
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

5. "Date:"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired day is displayed.
7. Press the Controller.
8. Make the settings for the month and year.
9. "OK"

Setting the date format

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Date format:"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Language

Setting the language

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the units of measurement

Depending on the country version, you can set the units of measurement for some values, for instance consumption, distances, and temperature.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Units"
5. Select the desired menu item.
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Trip data settings

Concept

The intervals in which the trip data will be reset can be configured.

Resetting trip data

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Reset trip data"
5. Select the desired setting.

Speed warning

Concept

The system can be used to set a speed limit. A warning will be issued when this speed limit is exceeded.

General information

The warning is repeated if the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed limit again, after it has dropped below it by 3 mph/5 km/h.

Adjusting

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Warning at:"

6. Turn the Controller until the desired speed is displayed.
7. Press the Controller.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Speed warning"

Setting your current speed as the speed warning

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Select current speed"

Activating/deactivating pop-ups

For some functions, pop-ups are displayed automatically on the Control Display. Some of these pop-ups can be activated or deactivated.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Pop-ups"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Control Display

Brightness

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Control display"
5. "Brightness at night"
6. Press the Controller.
7. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is set.
8. Press the Controller.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Depending on the light conditions, the brightness settings may not be clearly visible.

Resetting the vehicle configuration

All individual settings can be reset to the factory settings when the drive-ready state is switched off.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Reset vehicle data"
5. "Reset vehicle data"

When the stored settings in a driver profile are synchronized with the ConnectedDrive account, these settings will remain in the ConnectedDrive account.

Messages

Concept

The menu centrally displays all messages arriving in the vehicle in list form.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2817
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

General information

The following messages can be displayed:

- Traffic messages.
- Check Control messages.
- Messages on service notifications.
- Communication messages, for example e-mails, SMS text messages or reminders.
- Messages from, e.g., the Concierge service or the BMW Connected app.
- Messages from the vehicle manufacturer.

The number of messages is additionally displayed in the status field.

The Messages menu can also be created as Widget.

Retrieving messages

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Select the desired message.

Deleting messages

All messages, except Check Control messages or messages from the vehicle manufacturer, can be deleted from the list.

Check Control messages or messages from the vehicle manufacturer are displayed as long as they are relevant.

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Select desired message, for instance. SMS.
4. OPTION Press the button.
5. - "Delete this notification"
   - "Delete all notifications"

Settings

The following settings can be adjusted:

- Select the applications, from which messages will be permitted.
- All messages or a limited time period for received messages.

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. Select the desired setting.

Personal settings

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Data protection

Data transfer

Concept

The vehicle offers different services, whose use requires a data transfer to BMW or a service provider. The data transfer can be deactivated for some services.

General information

When the data transfer is deactivated, the respective service cannot be used.

Only make these settings while stationary.

Settings

The data transfer can be configured in different stages or individually for separate services.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. Select the desired setting.

Deleting personal data in the vehicle

Concept

Depending on the usage, the vehicle stores personal data, such as stored radio stations. This personal data can be permanently deleted using iDrive.

General information

Depending on the equipment package, the following data can be deleted:

- Driver profile settings.
- Stored radio stations.
- Stored programmable memory buttons.
- Travel and trip computer information.
- Navigation, for instance stored destinations.
- Phone book.
- Online data, for instance Favorites, cookies.
- Office data, for instance voice memos.
- Login accounts.

Altogether, the deletion of the data can take up to 15 minutes.

Functional requirement

Data can only be deleted while stationary.

Deleting data

The personal data in the vehicle will be deleted when the vehicle is reset to the factory settings.

Additional information:

Resetting the vehicle configuration, refer to page 66.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2819

Driver profiles

Concept

Driver profiles can be created to store personal vehicle settings. If the vehicle is used by multiple drivers, each driver can create his personal driver profile. When a driver profile is selected, the vehicle will automatically apply the stored settings in the driver profile.

General information

Three personal driver profiles can be created.

In addition, a guest profile is available that can be selected by any driver. The guest profile is active when a personal driver profile has not been selected.

Changes to the vehicle settings are automatically stored in the active driver profile or in the guest profile.

The recognition via a vehicle key can be assigned to a driver profile so that the vehicle will apply the settings as soon as the driver unlocks the vehicle. As soon as the vehicle recognizes the vehicle key, the corresponding driver profile will be activated.

ConnectedDrive countries: The settings stored in the driver's profile can be synchronized with the personal BMW ConnectedDrive account. It is thereby possible to use these settings in other BMW vehicles as well.

Functional requirements

When switching the driver profile, the vehicle must move at a maximum of walking speed.

Welcome screen

After the Control Display is switched on, the Welcome screen will be displayed.

The following actions can be carried out on the Welcome screen:

- Switching the driver profile.
- Starting the set-up assistant.

  This option is offered in new vehicle for a limited period of time.

As soon as the drive-ready state is switched on or any button is pressed, the Welcome screen will be hidden.

Setup assistant

The setup assistant is offered in new vehicles for a limited period of time on the Welcome screen to configure the most important settings for the vehicle.

"Getting started" Select to start the set-up assistant.

The set-up assistant can be started via iDrive at any time.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Getting started"

The driver is guided step by step through the following functions:

- Setting the system language.
- ConnectedDrive countries:

  If the set-up assistant was opened in the guest profile: create driver profile.
- Pairing mobile devices with the vehicle.
- If the set-up assistant was opened from an already defined driver profile: set up personal assistant.
- Depending on whether the set-up assistant was opened from an already defined driver profile or a guest profile: set up services or confirm the explanation for the transmission of vehicle related data.
- Set up other methods for use.

The selected settings are stored in the active driver's profile.

Guest profile

The guest profile can be activated by any driver. Vehicle settings that are entered when the guest profile is active will be stored in the guest profile.

In the following cases the guest profile is automatically active:

- A driver profile has not been created yet.
- No driver profile has been assigned to the vehicle key that was used to unlock the vehicle.

The following limitations apply:

- The guest profile cannot be renamed.
- It is not possible to assign the recognition to the guest profile.
- It is not possible to assign a PIN to the guest profile.
- ConnectedDrive countries: It is not possible to synchronize with a ConnectedDrive account.

The guest profile is selected on the Welcome screen or via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"

   As an alternative for Steps 1 and 2, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
3. "Guest"
4. "OK"

Creating a driver profile

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Add driver profile"

Not ConnectedDrive countries: A name must be entered for the driver profile.

ConnectedDrive countries: An existing ConnectedDrive account must be assigned to a driver profile. The following options are available for this purpose:

- "Log in"

  The access data must be entered via iDrive.
- "New registration"

  If a ConnectedDrive account does not yet exist, it can be created via iDrive.

Selecting recognition

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Driver recognition"
5. "with vehicle key"

   The vehicle key that was used to unlock the vehicle is assigned to the driver profile.
6. "Activate linkage"

As soon as the vehicle recognizes the vehicle key, the corresponding driver profile will be activated.

Setting up a PIN

After unlocking the vehicle, another driver profile can be selected via iDrive. If a PIN was set up for the selected driver profile, this driver profile can only be activated with the PIN.

Non-ConnectedDrive countries: If the PIN is not known, the driver's profile cannot be activated.

ConnectedDrive countries: If the PIN is not known, the driver's profile can be activated with the access data of the corresponding ConnectedDrive account.

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Driver recognition"
5. "using PIN"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2821
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Changing/canceling the recognition function

If another vehicle key is assigned to a driver profile, the current assignment must be canceled first.

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Driver recognition"
5. "with vehicle key"
6. "Activate linkage"

When the vehicle and vehicle key will be handed over, such as for maintenance, carry out the following steps first:

- ▷ Setting up PIN.
- ▷ Canceling recognition using the vehicle key.
- ▷ Switching to the guest profile.

The handed over vehicle key can then no longer be used to access the personal driver profile.

Selecting a driver profile

Depending on the recognition setting, the driver profile will be selected automatically.

If the guest profile is active, the driver profile will be selected on the Welcome screen or via iDrive: A PIN may have to be entered.

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"

   As an alternative for Steps 1 and 2, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
3. Select driver profile.
4. "OK"

All settings stored in the selected driver profile are automatically applied.

Switching synchronization with the ConnectedDrive account on/off

ConnectedDrive countries:

The settings stored in the driver's profile are synchronized with the personal ConnectedDrive account. This means that it is possible to use the personal settings in other BMW vehicles with ConnectedDrive access as well, if this function is supported.

The synchronization with the ConnectedDrive account is enabled when a driver profile is created or via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Settings"
5. "Synchronize driver profile"
6. "Synchronize driver profile"

Renaming a driver profile

Non-ConnectedDrive countries:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"

   As an alternative for Steps 1 and 2, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
3. Select driver profile.
4. "Settings"
5. Enter a profile name.
6. OK Select the symbol.

ConnectedDrive countries:

The name of the driver profile is transferred from the ConnectedDrive account. Changes for the profile name must be made in the ConnectedDrive account.

Selecting a profile picture

Non-ConnectedDrive countries:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Avatar"
5. Select the desired profile picture.

Deleting the driver profile

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Settings"
5. "Remove driver profile"
6. Select the desired driver profile.
7. "Delete now"

ConnectedDrive countries: If the driver profile was synchronized with a ConnectedDrive account, the stored data in the ConnectedDrive account will be retained.

System limits

A clear detection of the desired vehicle key may not be possible in the following cases, e.g.:

- The driver unlocks the vehicle via Comfort Access.
- The driver changes, but the vehicle is not locked and unlocked.
- When multiple vehicle keys are located outside on the driver's side of the vehicle.

ConnectedDrive countries:

A driver profile can only be created and synchronized with the ConnectedDrive account when cellular network reception is available.

The use of personal settings that are stored in the ConnectedDrive account in other vehicles is subject to technical limitations. For example, settings may be stored for a system that is not available, or available in a non-compatible version, in other vehicles.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2823
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Connections

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle

Concept

Various connection types are available for using mobile devices in the vehicle. The connection type to select depends on the mobile device and the desired function.

General information

The following overview shows possible functions and the suitable connection types for them. The scope of functions depends on the mobile device.

Function	Connection type	Symbol in the device list
Making calls via the hands-free system. Using phone functions via iDrive or touchscreen. Other functions, e.g. Contacts or SMS.	Bluetooth.	
Playing music from the smartphone or the audio player.	Bluetooth audio.	
WLAN in the vehicle: Using apps in the vehicle.	WLAN.	
Wi-Fi hotspot: Using the vehicle Internet access.	WLAN.	
Screen Mirroring: Showing the smartphone display on the Control Display.	WLAN.	
USB port: Playing music or videos from a USB device.	USB.	

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2824
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Function	Connection type	Symbol in the device list
Apple CarPlay: Using apps via iDrive and via voice operation.	Bluetooth and WLAN.	
Android Auto: Using apps via iDrive and via voice operation.	Bluetooth and WLAN.	

The following connection types require one-time pairing with the vehicle:

- Bluetooth.
- WLAN.

Paired devices are automatically recognized later on and connected to the vehicle.

Safety information

Warning

Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. As warranted, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.

Compatible devices

General information

Information on mobile devices compatible with the vehicle can be found at www.bmwusa.com/bluetooth.

Malfunctions may occur with devices not listed or deviating software versions.

Displaying the vehicle identification number and software part number

When looking for compatible devices, you may have to state the vehicle identification number and the software part number. These numbers can be displayed in the vehicle.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth® info"
6. "System information"

Managing mobile devices

General information

- After one-time pairing, the devices are automatically recognized and reconnected when standby state is switched on.
- After stored content on the SIM card or the mobile phone, such as contacts, has been detected, the data is transmitted to the vehicle and can be used via iDrive.
- For some devices, certain settings are necessary, for instance authorization; see the owner's manual of the device.

Displaying the device list

All devices paired with or connected to the vehicle are displayed in the device list.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2825
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

A maximum of four devices can be connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth, and a maximum of ten devices can be connected to the vehicle via WLAN. A maximum of 20 devices will be detected.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"

A symbol to the right of the device name indicates, for which function the device is used.

When the icon is displayed in white, this function is actively connected to the vehicle. The icon is displayed in gray when the function of the device is inactive.

Symbol	Meaning
	Telephone.
	Bluetooth audio.
	WLAN in the vehicle, WiFi hotspot.
	Apps.
	Screen Mirroring.
	Apple CarPlay.
	Android Auto.

Configuring the device

Functions can be activated or deactivated for paired and connected devices.

The scope of functions depends on the mobile device.

Follow the information on the Control Display.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Select the desired device.
4. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Connect device"

     The functions that were assigned to the device before disconnecting are assigned to the device when it is reconnected. The functions may be deactivated on a device already connected.
   - ▷ "Disconnect device"

     The device remains paired and can be connected again.
   - ▷ "Delete device"

     The device is disconnected and removed from the device list.
   - ▷ "Connection mode"

     Select a connection mode, for instance Apple CarPlay.
   - ▷ "Telephone"

     Set telephone.
   - ▷ "Bluetooth® audio"

     Playback of music files on external devices such as audio devices or mobile phones via Bluetooth.
   - ▷ "Apps"

     With the installed BMW Connected app, apps from the smartphone can be displayed in the vehicle.
   - ▷ "Wi-Fi®"

     Connects the device with the WLAN in the vehicle.

Priority of the phones

When multiple mobile phones are connected to the vehicle, you can specify the priority of the mobile phones for reconnection.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Priorities for telephones"
6. Select the desired device.
7. Select the desired priority by sliding.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2826

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Bluetooth connection

Functional requirements

- Compatible device with Bluetooth interface.

  Compatible devices, refer to page 74.
- The vehicle key or BMW display key is in the vehicle.
- The device is ready for operation.
- Bluetooth is switched on in the vehicle and on the device.
- The pairing readiness is displayed on the Control Display.
- Bluetooth presettings, such as visibility, may be required on the device; refer to the owner's manual of the device.

Activate Bluetooth

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth®"
6. Select setting.

Connecting the device

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Phone calls and audio"

   The vehicle's Bluetooth name is displayed on the Control Display.
6. Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number on the display of the mobile device, and confirm that the two match.
7. A Bluetooth connection is established.

The mobile device is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Activating/deactivating telephone functions

To use all supported functions of a mobile phone, activate the desired functions in the vehicle prior to pairing the mobile phone with the vehicle as needed.

1. "COM"
2. "Personalize menu"
3. Select the desired settings, for instance"Text messages".

Frequently Asked Questions

All requirements are met and all required steps were completed in the specified order. Despite that, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations can help:

Why could the mobile phone not be paired or connected?

- There are too many Bluetooth devices connected to the mobile phone or vehicle.

  In the vehicle, delete Bluetooth connections with other devices.

  Delete the Bluetooth connection from the device list on the mobile phone and start a new device search.

  Too many Bluetooth devices with the same function are paired.
- The mobile phone is in power-save mode or has only a limited remaining battery life.

  Charge the mobile phone and deactivate the power-save mode where required.

Why does the mobile phone no longer react?

- The applications on the mobile phone do not function anymore.

  Switch the mobile phone off and on again.
- Too high or too low ambient temperature for mobile phone operation.

  Do not subject the mobile phone to extreme ambient temperatures.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2827
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Why can phone functions not be used via iDrive?

- Phone functions are not configured for the mobile phone.

  Connect the mobile phone with the telephone function.

Why are no or not all phone book entries displayed or why are they incomplete?

- Transmission of the phone book entries is not yet complete.
- It is possible that only the phone book entries of the mobile phone or the SIM card are transmitted.
- It may not be possible to display phone book entries with special characters.
- It may not be possible to transmit contacts from social networks.
- The number of phone book entries to be transmitted is too high.
- Data volume of the contact too large, for instance due to stored information such as notes.

  Reduce the data volume of the contact.
- A mobile phone can only be connected as audio source or as telephone.

  Configure the mobile phone and connect it with the telephone function.
- Contact was created in the contact list of the phone after the last synchronization.

  Synchronize contacts again: "Reload contacts"

How can the phone connection quality be improved?

- Adjust the strength of the Bluetooth signal on the mobile phone, depending on the mobile phone.
- Insert the mobile phone into the wireless charging tray.
- Adjust the volume of the microphone separately in the sound settings.

If all points in this list have been checked and the required function is still not available, contact the hotline, a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

WLAN connection

General information

For certain applications, such as apps, the data exchange between smartphone and vehicle occurs via WLAN.

Functional requirements

- Standby state is switched on.
- Compatible device with activated WLAN interface.

Activate WLAN in the vehicle

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Wi-Fi®"

WiFi hotspot

Concept

Compatible devices with WLAN interface can use the Internet connection of the vehicle via the WiFi hotspot.

General information

Up to ten devices can be connected to the WiFi hotspot simultaneously.

Functional requirements

- Compatible device with activated WLAN interface.

  Compatible devices, refer to page 74.
- WLAN is activated on the vehicle.
- Internet use is activated for the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2828
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

- ▷ Registration and data contract with a service provider where required.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.

Connecting a device to the Internet via the WiFi hotspot

Using the Internet for the first time via the WiFi hotspot requires registration and possibly a data volume purchase from a service provider.

Depending on the country version, data volume can be purchased via the connected mobile device or from the ConnectedDrive Store.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Internet, apps"

   Hotspot name and hotspot code are displayed on the Control Display.
6. Activate Internet usage via WLAN if necessary.

   "Open settings"
7. Activate Internet usage.

   "Internet connection"
8. Move the Controller to the left.
9. Search for WLAN networks on the mobile device. Select network name on the device.
10. Enter hotspot code on the device and connect.

The device is displayed in the device list.

Additionally, a QR code will be displayed on the Control Display. Alternatively, this QR code can be used to pair the mobile device with the hotspot.

All devices connected via the hotspot use this data volume.

Deactivating Internet usage via the WiFi hotspot

Internet usage may be deactivated if the data volume is used up, for instance.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Internet connection"
6. Select the desired setting.

Screen Mirroring

General information

Screen Mirroring enables mirroring (outputting) of the smartphone display on the Control Display.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Compatible smartphone with Screen Mirroring interface.

  Compatible devices, refer to page 74.
- ▷ Screen Mirroring is activated on the smartphone.
- ▷ WLAN is activated on the vehicle.

Pairing a smartphone with Screen Mirroring

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Screen Mirroring"

   The WLAN name of the vehicle is displayed on the Control Display.
6. Search for WLAN devices in the surroundings of the smartphone.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2829
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

The WLAN name of the vehicle appears on the device display. Select the WLAN name of the vehicle.

7. Confirm the connection via iDrive.

The device is connected and displayed in the device list.

Apple CarPlay preparation

Concept

CarPlay allows certain functions of a compatible Apple iPhone to be used via Siri voice operation and iDrive.

Functional requirements

- Compatible iPhone, iPhone 5 or later with iOS 7.1 or later.

  Compatible devices, refer to page 74.
- Corresponding mobile contract.
- Bluetooth, WLAN, and Siri voice operation are activated on the iPhone.
- If necessary, the setting for mobile data must be activated on the iPhone.
- Booking the ConnectedDrive service: smartphone integration.
- WLAN and Bluetooth are enabled in the vehicle.

Pairing the iPhone with CarPlay

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Phone calls and audio"

   The vehicle's Bluetooth name is displayed on the Control Display.
6. On the mobile device, search for Bluetooth devices in the vicinity and select the vehicle.

   A control number is displayed.
7. Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number on the display of the mobile device, and confirm that the two match.
8. "Use Apple CarPlay"

The iPhone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Operation

For more information, refer to the Integrated Owner's Manual or the Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication.

Frequently Asked Questions

All requirements are met and all required steps were completed in the specified order. Despite that, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations can help:

The iPhone has already been paired with Apple CarPlay. When a new connection is established, CarPlay can no longer be selected.

- Delete the iPhone concerned from the device list.
- On the iPhone, delete the vehicle concerned from the list of stored connections under Bluetooth and under WLAN.
- Pair the iPhone as a new device.

If the steps listed have been carried out and the required function is still not available: contact the hotline, a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Android Auto preparation

Concept

Android Auto allows the operation of certain functions of a compatible smartphone via voice operation and iDrive.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2830
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Functional requirements

- Compatible Android smartphone with Android 9.0 or later.

  Compatible devices, refer to page 74.
- Corresponding mobile contract.
- Bluetooth and WLAN are enabled on the smartphone.
- If necessary, the setting for mobile data must be activated on the smartphone.
- Booking the ConnectedDrive service: smartphone integration.
- The Android Auto app is installed on the smartphone.
- WLAN and Bluetooth are enabled in the vehicle.

Pairing a smartphone with Android Auto

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Phone calls and audio"

   The vehicle's Bluetooth name is displayed on the Control Display.
6. On the mobile device, search for Bluetooth devices in the vicinity and select the vehicle.

   A control number is displayed.
7. Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number on the display of the mobile device, and confirm that the two match.
8. "Use Android Auto"
9. If necessary, finish the setup on the mobile device.

The smartphone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Operation

For more information, refer to the Integrated Owner's Manual or the Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication.

Frequently Asked Questions

All requirements are met and all required steps were completed in the specified order. Despite that, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations can help:

The smartphone has already been paired with Android Auto. When a new connection is established, Android Auto can no longer be selected.

- Delete the smartphone concerned from the device list.
- On the smartphone, delete the vehicle concerned from the list of stored connections under Bluetooth and under WLAN.
- Pair the smartphone as a new device.

If the steps listed have been carried out and the required function is still not available: contact the hotline, a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

USB connection

General information

The following mobile devices can be connected to the USB port:

- Mobile phones.
- Audio devices such as MP3 players.
- USB storage devices.

  Common file systems are supported. FAT32 and exFAT are the recommended formats.

A connected USB device will be supplied with charge current via the USB port if the device supports this. Follow the maximum charge current of the USB port.

The following uses are possible on USB ports with data transfer:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2831
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

- Playing music files.
- Playing videos.

Follow the following when connecting:

- Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB port.
- Use a flexible adapter cable.
- Protect the USB device against mechanical damage.
- Due to the large number of USB devices available on the market, it cannot be guaranteed that every device is operable on the vehicle.
- Do not expose USB devices to extreme environmental conditions, such as very high temperatures; refer to the owner's manual of the device.
- Due to the many different compression techniques, proper playback of the media stored on the USB device cannot be guaranteed in all cases.
- To ensure proper transmission of the stored data, do not charge a USB device via the onboard socket, when it is connected to the USB port.
- Depending on how the USB device is being used, settings may be required on the USB storage device, refer to the owner's manual of the device.

Not compatible USB devices:

- USB hard drives.
- USB hubs.
- USB memory card readers with multiple slots.
- HFS-formatted USB devices.
- Devices such as fans or lamps.

Functional requirement

Compatible device with USB port.

Additional information:

Compatible devices, refer to page 74.

Connecting the device

Connect the USB device using a suitable adapter cable to a USB port.

The USB device is displayed in the device list.

Additional information:

USB port, refer to page 258.

Opening and closing

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Vehicle key

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the vehicle is delivered with two vehicle keys or one vehicle key and the BMW display key.

Each vehicle key contains a replaceable battery.

Depending on the equipment and country version, various settings can be configured for the button functions.

A driver profile with personal settings can be assigned to a vehicle key.

To provide information on maintenance recommendations, the service data is stored in the vehicle key.

To prevent possible locking in of the vehicle key, take the vehicle key with you when exiting the vehicle.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Take the vehicle key with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.

⚠ Warning

For some country versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

⚠ Warning

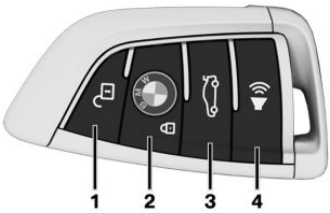
Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2833
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Overview



1 Unlocking
2 Locking
3 To open the tailgate
4 Panic mode, pathway lighting

Unlocking

General information

The behavior of the vehicle during unlocking using the vehicle key depends on the following settings:

- If only the driver's door or all access to the vehicle will be unlocked.
- If the unlocking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- If the welcome light is switched on when the vehicle is being unlocked.

Unlocking the vehicle

Press the button on the vehicle key.

If, due to the settings, only the driver's door was unlocked, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

In addition, the following functions are executed:

- If a driver profile was assigned to the vehicle key, this driver profile will be activated and the settings that are stored in it will be applied.
- The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off.
- Folded in exterior mirrors are folded out.

  If the exterior mirrors were folded in via the button in the car's interior, they will not be folded out when unlocking.
- With anti-theft protection: Anti-theft protection is switched off.
- With alarm system: The alarm system will be switched off.

After opening one of the front doors, the vehicle is ready for operation.

The light functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

Convenient opening

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key after unlocking.

The windows and the glass sunroof with sun protection are opened, as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Locking

General information

The behavior of the vehicle during locking using the vehicle key depends on the following settings:

- If the locking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- If the exterior mirrors are automatically folded in when the vehicle is locked. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.
- If pathway lighting is activated during locking.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Press the button on the vehicle key.

The following functions are executed:

- All doors and the tailgate are locked.
- With anti-theft protection: Anti-theft protection is switched on. This prevents the doors

from being unlocked using the lock buttons or the door openers.

- With alarm system: The alarm system will be switched on.

If the drive-ready state is still switched on when you lock the vehicle, the vehicle horn honks twice. In this case, the drive-ready state must be switched off by means of the Start/Stop button.

With Comfort Access: convenient closing

Safety information

Warning

With convenient closing, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during convenient closing.

Closing

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key in the area close to the vehicle after locking.

The windows and the glass sunroof with sun protection are closed, as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Switching on the interior and exterior lights

Press the button on the vehicle key with the vehicle locked.

The function is not available for the first 10 seconds after locking.

- The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off.

  Interior lights, refer to page 170.

- Depending on the settings, the exterior lighting will be switched on.

  Welcome lights, refer to page 166.

The light functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

Tailgate

General information

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

You can set up if the doors will be unlocked when the tailgate is opened with the vehicle key.

When the trailer socket is in use, the tailgate cannot be opened with the vehicle key or with the button in the car's interior.

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

Warning

The tailgate pivots out when it opens. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

NOTICE

Sharp-edged or pointed objects can hit the windows and heat conductors while driving. There is a risk of damage to property. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects do not hit the windows.

Opening

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2835
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

▷ Press the button on the vehicle key and hold for at least 3 seconds.

▷ Briefly press the button on the vehicle key three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Switching pathway lighting on

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

It is possible to adjust the duration of the pathway lighting feature.

Additional information:

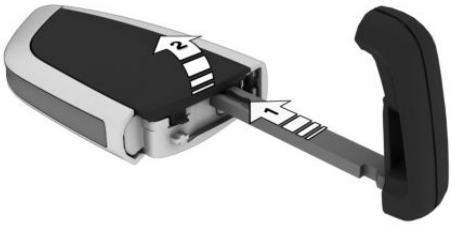
Pathway lighting, refer to page 167.

Replacing the battery

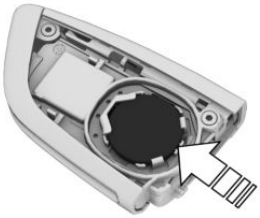
1. Remove the integrated key from the vehicle key.

   Integrated key, refer to page 91.

2. Place the integrated key underneath the battery compartment cover, arrow 1, and lift the cover with a lever movement of the integrated key, arrow 2.



3. Push battery in the direction of the arrow using a pointed object and lift it out.



4. Insert a type CR 2032 battery with the positive side facing up.
5. Press the cover closed.
6. Push the integrated key into the vehicle key until the integrated key engages.

Have old batteries disposed of by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take them to a collection point.

Additional vehicle keys

Additional vehicle keys are available from a service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Loss of vehicle keys

A lost vehicle key can be blocked and replaced by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

If the lost vehicle key has an assigned driver profile, the connection to this vehicle key must be deleted. A new vehicle key can then be assigned to the driver profile.

Malfunction

General information

A Check Control message is displayed.

Vehicle key recognition by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

▷ The battery of the vehicle key is discharged.

- Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- Shielding of the vehicle key due to metal objects.

  Do not transport the vehicle key together with metal objects.
- Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity to the vehicle key.

  Do not transport the vehicle key together with electronic devices.
- Interference of radio transmission by a charging process of mobile devices, for instance charging of a mobile phone.
- The vehicle key is located in direct proximity of the tray for wireless charging tray.

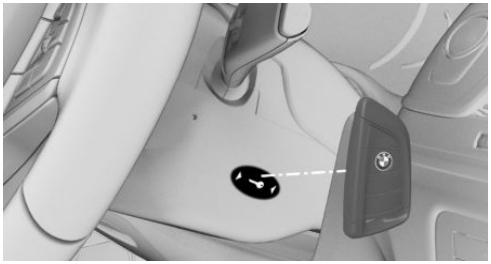
  Place the vehicle key in a different location.

In the case of interference, the vehicle can also be unlocked and locked from the outside with the integrated key.

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 91.

Switching the drive-ready state on via emergency detection of the vehicle key



It is not possible to switch on the drive-ready state if the vehicle key has not been detected.

Proceed as follows in this case:

1. Hold the back of the vehicle key against the marked area on the steering column. Pay attention to the display in the instrument cluster.
2. If the vehicle key is detected:

   Switch on drive-ready state within 10 seconds.

If the vehicle key is not recognized, slightly change the position of the vehicle key and repeat the procedure.

Frequently Asked Questions

What precautions can be taken to be able to open a vehicle with an accidentally locked in vehicle key?

- The options provided by the Remote Services of the BMW Connected app include the ability to lock and unlock a vehicle.

  This requires an active BMW ConnectedDrive contract and the BMW Connected app must be installed on a smartphone.
- Unlocking the vehicle can be requested via the BMW ConnectedDrive Call Center.

  An active BMW ConnectedDrive contract is required.

BMW display key

General information

The BMW display key is supplied with an additional mechanical key. If the display key is used, the mechanical key should be carried with you, for instance in the wallet. The mechanical key is used like the integrated key.

The display key supports all functions of the standard vehicle key.

In addition, the following functions are also available:

- Display status of doors and windows.
- Display status of the alarm system.
- Operate stationary climate control.
- Adjust charging times.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2837
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

- Call up range with available fuel and the current battery charge state.
- Display charge state of the high-voltage battery.
- Display service information.

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 91.

Safety information

Warning

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Take the vehicle key with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.

Warning

For some country versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

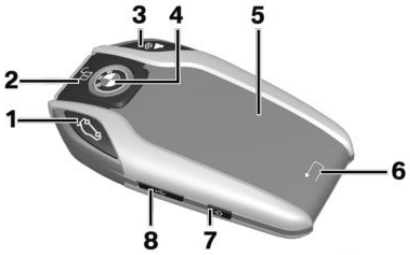
Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Overview



1 To open the tailgate
2 Unlocking
3 Press and hold or press three times in quick succession: panic mode
Press briefly: pathway lighting
4 Locking
5 Display
6 Back
7 Switch the display on/off
8 Micro-USB charging socket

Reception range

The number of available display key functions depends on the distance from the vehicle.

- When you are in close proximity to the vehicle, all functions of the display key are available.
- In the wider reception range, you can access status information and use the stationary climate control.
- Outside of the reception range of the vehicle, you can display the last transmitted status information from the vehicle.

The symbol is shown on the display if one of the buttons is pressed outside of the reception range.

Display

General information

The display is divided into the upper status line, the information area, and the lower status line.

Upper status line

The upper status line displays the following information:

- Vehicle secured/vehicle unsecured.
- Set time in the vehicle.
- Charge state of the display key battery.

Information area

The information area can be used to access information and perform additional functions.

If the information area contains more than one page, then page indicators are shown beneath the information.

A solid indicator denotes the current page.

Swipe to the right or left with a finger to change between the pages.

If further information is available on a page, tap the appropriate symbol.

To return to the original page: tap on the symbol beneath the display.

Touch it again to display the charge state of the high-voltage battery.

Lower status line

The lower status line indicates whether or not the display key is within reception range.

- "Connected": the display key is within reception range.
- "Updated": the display key is not within reception range. It indicates when the last data transfer from the vehicle took place.

Switching on/off

The display will go out automatically after a brief period to conserve battery power.

To hide the display manually:

Press the button on the left side of the display key.

To show the display:

1. Press the button on the left side of the display key.
2. Then, swipe with your finger from bottom to top to unlock the screen lock.

To switch off the display to increase the usable battery life:

1. If necessary, cancel the screen lock.
2. Press and hold the button on the left side of the display key for longer than 4 seconds.
3. "OK"

To switch the display on:

Press the button on the left side of the display key.

Operating concept

The following information shows how to access the information and functions using the main menus.

Main menu	Information/Function
"Security information"	/ Door status. Alarm system status. After alarm triggering: date, time, and reason for triggering the alarm.
	Window status. Glass sunroof status.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2839
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Main menu	Information/Function
"Vehicle information"	Maintenance indicators of Condition Based Service CBS. Status of the roadside parking lights.
"Mobility info"	Range with available fuel and the current battery charge state. Status during charging.
"Departure setting"	Operate stationary climate control. High-voltage battery: schedule charging times.

Display key battery

General information

Follow the following information:

- If the charge state of the display key battery declines, the display is switched off automatically. The battery must be recharged so that the display can be switched back on. The operability of the standard buttons is retained until the battery is completely discharged.
- Charge the battery for at least three hours before using the display key for the first time or if the key has not been used for an extended period.
- The display key can be used while it is being charged via the USB port. If the battery is fully discharged, it may take some time before the display key can be used again.
- Due to the large number of USB chargers available on the market, it cannot be guaranteed that every charger will function properly. The charging duration depends on the charger used.
- Charging via the USB port may heat up the charger and the display key.

  Charging in the wireless charging tray may heat up the tray and the display key.

  At higher temperatures, the charge current through the display key may be reduced, and in isolated cases the charge process may be interrupted temporarily.
- When inserting the display key into the wireless charging tray, make sure there are no objects between it and the wireless charging tray.

Safety information

Warning

When charging a device that meets the Qi standard in the wireless charging tray, any metal objects located between the device and the tray can become very hot. Placing storage devices or electronic cards, such as chip cards, cards with magnetic strips or cards for signal transmission, between the device and the tray may impair the card function. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. When charging mobile devices, make sure there are no objects between the device and the tray.

Charging

Via USB

Connect the display key via the micro-USB charging socket to a USB port.

In the center console

1. Open the tray cover.

2. Place the display key into the middle of the wireless charging tray in front of the cup holders.

   Ensure that the display is facing up.

3. Close the tray cover.

LED displays

Color	Meaning
Blue	The display key is charging. The blue LED stays illuminated once the inserted display key is fully charged.
Orange	The display key is not charging. Temperature on the display key possibly too high or foreign object in charging tray.
Red	The display key is not charging. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Malfunction

General information

A Check Control message is displayed.

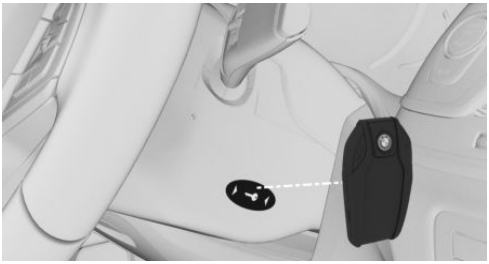
BMW display key detection by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- The battery of the display key is discharged.
- Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- Shielding of the display key due to metal objects.
- Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity.
- Interference of radio transmission by a charging process of mobile devices, for instance charging of a mobile phone.

Do not transport the display key together with metal objects or electronic devices.

In the case of interference, the vehicle can also be unlocked and locked from the outside with the mechanical key.

Switching on drive-ready state via emergency detection of the BMW display key



It is not possible to switch on the drive-ready state if the display key has not been detected.

Proceed as follows in this case:

1. Hold the display key with its back against the marked area on the steering column. Pay attention to the display in the instrument cluster.
2. If the display key is detected:

   Switch on drive-ready state within 10 seconds.

If the display key is not detected, slightly change the position of the display key and repeat the procedure.

Resetting the BMW display key

If the charged display key cannot be switched on anymore or if the display does not respond to entries anymore, the display key can be reset.

Press and hold the following buttons on the display key at the same time for at least 10 seconds until the display is switched off and then on again:

-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2841
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Integrated key

General information

The driver's door can be locked and unlocked without the vehicle key using the integrated key.

Depending on the national-market version, the integrated key also fits the glove compartment.

Safety information

Warning

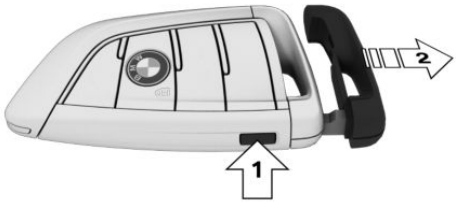
For some country versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

NOTICE

The door lock is permanently joined with the door. The door handle can be moved. When pulling the door handle with the integrated key inserted, paint or the integrated key can be damaged. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Remove the integrated key before pulling the external door handle.

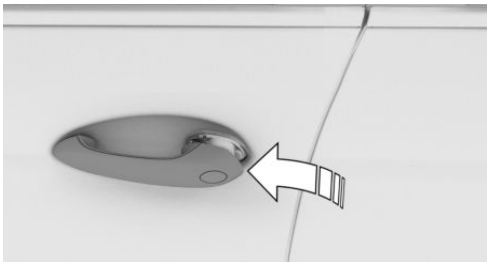
Removing



Press the button, arrow 1, and pull out the integrated key, arrow 2.

Locking/unlocking via the door lock

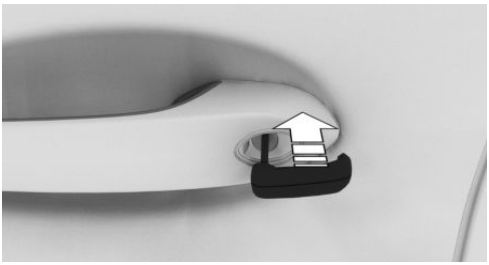
1. Pull and hold the door handle outward with one hand.



2. Guide one finger of your other hand from the back under the cover and push the cover out.

   Use the thumb for counter support to prevent the cover from falling out of the door handle.

3. Remove the cover.
4. Unlock or lock the door lock using the integrated key.



The other doors must be unlocked or locked from the inside.

Alarm system

The activated alarm system is triggered when the door is opened, if the vehicle has been unlocked via the door lock.

The alarm system is not switched on if the vehicle is locked with the integrated key.

Buttons for the central locking system

General information

In the event of a severe accident, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The hazard warning system and interior lights come on.

Overview

Buttons for the central locking system.

Locking

Press the button with the front doors closed.

The vehicle is not secured against theft when locking.

Unlocking

Press the button.

Opening

- Press the button to unlock all the doors.

  Pull the door opener above the armrest.
- Front doors: pull the door handle on the door to open the door. The other doors remain locked.
- Back doors: pull twice on the door handle on the door to be opened; the first time unlocks the door, the second time opens it. The other doors remain locked.

Comfort Access

Concept

The vehicle can be accessed without operating the vehicle key.

Carrying the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket, is sufficient.

The vehicle automatically detects the vehicle key when it is in close proximity or in the car's interior.

General information

Comfort Access supports the following functions:

- Unlocking and locking the vehicle from the door handle.
- Convenient closing.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2843
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

- Open the tailgate.
- Open and close the tailgate with no-touch activation.

Functional requirements

- To lock the vehicle, the vehicle key must be outside of the vehicle near the doors.
- The next unlocking and locking cycle is not possible until after approx. 2 seconds.

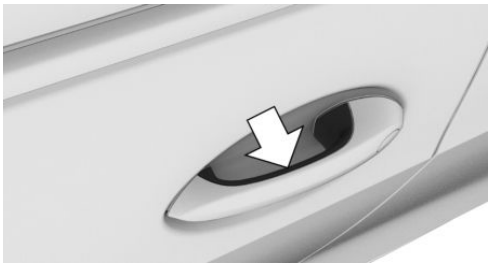
Unlocking

General information

The behavior of the vehicle during unlocking via the Comfort Access depends on the following settings:

- If the unlocking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- If the welcome light is switched on when the vehicle is being unlocked.

Unlocking the vehicle



Grasp the handle of a vehicle door completely.

In addition, the following functions are executed:

- If a driver profile was assigned to the vehicle key, this driver profile will be activated and the settings that are stored in it will be applied.
- The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off.
- Folded in exterior mirrors are folded out.

  If the exterior mirrors were folded in via the button in the car's interior, they will not be folded out when unlocking.
- With anti-theft protection: Anti-theft protection is switched off.
- With alarm system: The alarm system will be switched off.

Locking

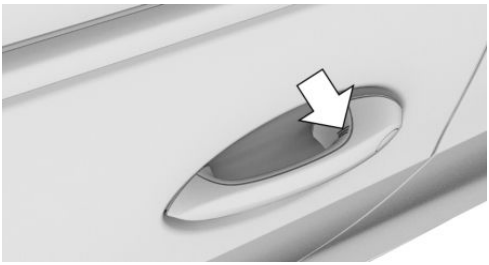
General information

The behavior of the vehicle during locking via the Comfort Access depends on the following settings:

- If the locking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- If the exterior mirrors are automatically folded in when the vehicle is locked. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.
- If pathway lighting is activated during locking.

Locking the vehicle

Close the driver's door.



Touch the grooved surface on the handle of a closed vehicle door with your finger for approx. 1 second without grasping the door handle.

The following functions are executed:

- All doors and the tailgate are locked.
- With anti-theft protection: Anti-theft protection is switched on. This prevents the doors from being unlocked using the lock buttons or the door openers.

▷ With alarm system: The alarm system will be switched on.

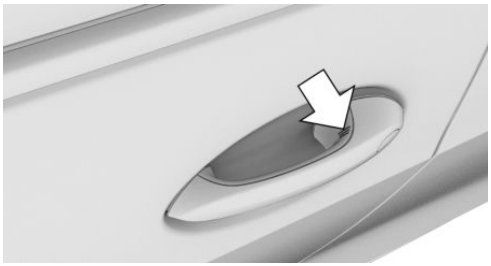
Convenient closing

Safety information

Warning

With convenient closing, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during convenient closing.

Closing



Touch the grooved surface on the handle of a closed vehicle door with your finger and hold it there without grasping the door handle.

In addition to locking, the windows and glass sunroof with sun protection will be closed.

Opening the tailgate

General information

If the tailgate is opened via Comfort Access, locked doors are not unlocked.

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

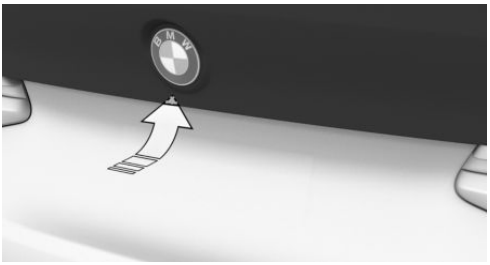
Warning

The tailgate pivots out when it opens. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

NOTICE

Sharp-edged or pointed objects can hit the windows and heat conductors while driving. There is a risk of damage to property. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects do not hit the windows.

Opening



Press the button on tailgate's exterior.

Opening and closing the tailgate with no-touch activation

Concept

The tailgate can be opened and closed with no-touch activation using the vehicle key you are

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2845
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

carrying. Two sensors detect a forward-directed foot motion in the central rear area and the tailgate is opened and closed.

General information

Touchless opening and closing of the tailgate is not possible when equipped with trailer hitch.

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

If the vehicle key is in the sensor area, the tailgate may open or close inadvertently if you unintentionally move your foot or if a foot movement is detected.

The sensor has an approximate range of 5 ft/1.50 m extending from the rear of the vehicle.

If the tailgate is opened with no-touch activation, locked doors are not unlocked.

Safety information

Warning

During no-touch activation, vehicle parts may be touched, such as the hot exhaust gas system. There is a risk of injury. When moving your foot, make sure you have a firm stance and do not touch the vehicle.

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

Warning

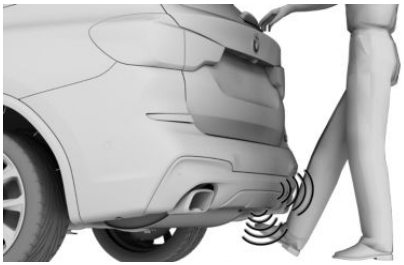
The tailgate pivots out when it opens. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

NOTICE

Sharp-edged or pointed objects can hit the windows and heat conductors while driving. There is a risk of damage to property. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects do not hit the windows.

Performing the foot movement

1. Stand in the middle behind the vehicle at approx. one arm's length away from the rear of the vehicle.
2. Wave a foot under the vehicle in the direction of travel and immediately pull it back. With this movement, the leg must pass through the ranges of both sensors.



Opening

Perform the foot movement described earlier.

Before the tailgate opens, the hazard warning system flashes.

Moving your foot again will stop the opening motion, and moving it one more time after that will close the tailgate.

Closing

Perform the foot movement described earlier.

The hazard warning system flashes and an acoustic signal sounds.

Moving your foot again will stop the closing motion, and moving it one more time after that will re-open the tailgate.

Malfunction

Vehicle key recognition by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- The battery of the vehicle key is discharged.

  For replacing the battery, refer to page 85.
- Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- Shielding of the vehicle key due to metal objects.

  Do not transport the vehicle key together with metal objects.
- Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity to the vehicle key.

  Do not transport the vehicle key together with electronic devices.

Wet or snowy conditions may disrupt the locking request recognition function on the door handles.

In the case of a malfunction, unlock and lock the vehicle using the buttons of the vehicle key or use the integrated key.

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 91.

Tailgate

General information

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country versions, it is possible to specify whether the doors are also unlocked when unlocking using the vehicle key.

Additional information:

Settings, refer to page 98.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

⚠ Warning

The tailgate pivots out when it opens. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

⚠ NOTICE

Sharp-edged or pointed objects can hit the windows and heat conductors while driving. There is a risk of damage to property. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects do not hit the windows.

Tailgate

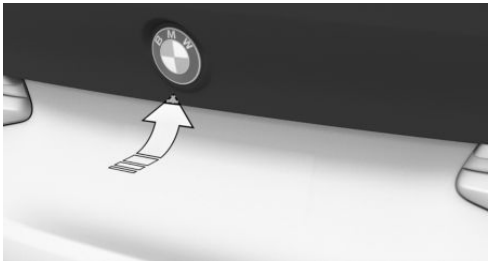
Opening

General information

When the trailer socket is occupied, the tailgate cannot be opened with the vehicle key or with the button in the car's interior.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2847
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

From the outside



- Unlock the vehicle and then press the button on the outside of the tailgate.
- With Comfort Access: carry the vehicle key with you and press the button on the outside of the tailgate.
- Press the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

Depending on the setting, the doors may also be unlocked.

If the vehicle is stationary, the tailgate opens automatically to the adjusted opening height.

From the inside

With Steptronic transmission:

Press the button in the driver's door downward.

If the vehicle is locked, selector lever position P must be engaged first.

With manual transmission:

With the vehicle stationary, push the button in the storage compartment of the driver's door downwards twice in quick succession.

The tailgate will be opened to the configured opening height.

Interruption of the opening procedure

The opening procedure is interrupted in the following situations:

- When the vehicle starts moving.
- By pressing the button on the outside of the tailgate. Pressing again closes the tailgate.
- By pressing the button on the inside of the tailgate. Pressing again closes the tailgate.
- By pressing the button on the vehicle key. Pressing again continues the opening motion.
- By pressing or pulling the button in the driver's door. Pressing again continues the opening motion.

Closing

From the outside

- Press the button on the inside of the tailgate.

With Comfort Access:

- Press the button on the inside of the tailgate.

  The vehicle will be locked after closing the tailgate. The driver's door must be closed for this purpose and the vehicle key must be outside of the vehicle in the area of the tailgate.

From the inside

Pull and hold the button in the driver door.

The vehicle key must be located in the car's interior for this function.

An acoustic signal sounds before the tailgate is closed.

Interruption of the closing procedure

The closing procedure is interrupted in the following situations:

- If the vehicle starts off with a jerky movement.
- By pressing the button on the outside of the tailgate. Pressing again re-opens the tailgate.
- By pressing the button on the inside of the tailgate. Pressing again re-opens the tailgate.

▷ By releasing the button in the driver's door. Pulling again and holding continues the closing motion.

Malfunction

Safety information

⚠ Warning

With manual operation of a blocked tailgate, it can release itself unexpectedly from the blockage. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not operate the tailgate manually if it is blocked. Have it checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

In the event of an electrical malfunction, operate the unlocked tailgate manually with a slow and smooth motion.

To close the tailgate fully, press down lightly only. Closing occurs automatically.

Adjusting

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country version, various settings for opening and closing are possible.

These settings are stored for the driver profile currently used.

Unlocking and locking

Doors

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Key button settings"
4. Select the symbol.
5. Select the desired setting:
   ▷ "Driver's door only"
   Only the driver's door is unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.
   ▷ "All doors"
   The entire vehicle is unlocked.

Confirmation signals from the vehicle

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. Deactivate or activate the desired confirmation signals:
   ▷ "Flash when locking/unlocking"
   Unlocking is signaled by two flashes, locking by one.
   ▷ With alarm system:
   "Sound when locking/unlocking"
   Unlocking is confirmed with two sound signals, locking is confirmed with one sound signal.

Folding mirrors in automatically

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Fold mirrors in when locked"

Automatic unlocking

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Unlock at end of trip"
   After drive-ready state is switched off by pressing the Start/Stop button, the locked vehicle is automatically unlocked.

Automatic locking

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2849
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Lock automatically"

   The vehicle locks automatically after a while if no door is opened after unlocking.

Tailgate

Tailgate and doors

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country version, this setting may not be offered.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Key button settings"
4. Select the symbol.
   - ▷ "Tailgate"

     The tailgate is opened.
   - ▷ "Tailgate and door(s)"

     The tailgate is opened and the doors unlocked.

Adjusting the opening height

You can set how far the tailgate can be opened.

When adjusting the opening height, make sure the clearance above the tailgate is at least 4 in/10 cm.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Tailgate"
5. "Opening height"
6. Monitor the tailgate and set the desired opening height.

Establishing idle state after opening the front doors

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Turn off vehicle after opening door"

Idle state, refer to page 43.

Alarm system

General information

When the vehicle is locked, the vehicle alarm system reacts to the following changes:

- ▷ Opening a door, the hood, or the tailgate.
- ▷ Movements in the car's interior.
- ▷ Changes in the vehicle tilt, for instance, during attempts at stealing a wheel or when towing the vehicle.
- ▷ Disconnected battery voltage.
- ▷ Improper use of the socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis.
- ▷ Locking the vehicle while a device is connected to the socket for the OBD Onboard-Diagnosis.

The alarm system signals these changes visually and acoustically:

- ▷ Acoustic alarm:

  Depending on local regulations, the acoustic alarm may be suppressed.
- ▷ Visual alarm:

  By flashing of the hazard warning system and headlights, where required.

Do not modify the system to ensure function of the alarm system.

Switching on/off

The alarm system is switched on or off as soon as the vehicle is locked with the vehicle key or unlocked or locked via Comfort Access.

Opening the doors with the alarm system switched on

The alarm system is triggered when a door is opened if the door was unlocked using the integrated key in the door lock.

Opening the tailgate with the alarm system switched on

The tailgate can be opened even when the alarm system is switched on.

After the tailgate is closed, it is locked and monitored again provided the doors are locked. The hazard warning system flashes once.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

- Press the button on the vehicle key and hold for at least 3 seconds.
- Briefly press the button on the vehicle key three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Indicator light on the interior mirror

- The indicator light flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

  The alarm system is switched on.
- Indicator light flashes for approx. 10 seconds, then it flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

  Interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor are not active, as doors, hood, or tailgate are not correctly closed. Correctly closed access points are secured.

  When the still open access points are closed, the interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor will be switched on.
- The indicator light goes out after unlocking:

  The vehicle has not been tampered with.
- The indicator light flashes after unlocking until drive-ready state is switched on, but no longer than approx. 5 minutes:

  An alarm has been triggered.

Tilt alarm sensor

The tilt of the vehicle is monitored.

The alarm system responds in situations such as attempts to steal a wheel or when the vehicle is towed.

Interior motion sensor

The windows and the glass sunroof must be closed for the system to function properly.

Avoiding unintentional alarms

General information

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor can trigger an alarm, although no unauthorized action occurred.

Possible situations for an unwanted alarm:

- In automatic car washes.
- In duplex garages.
- During transport on trains carrying vehicles, at sea or on a trailer.
- With animals in the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is locked after start of fueling.

The tilt alarm sensor and the interior motion sensor can be switched off in such situations.

Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor

Press the button on the vehicle key within 10 seconds as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator light lights up for approx. 2 seconds and then continues to flash.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2851
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor are switched off until the vehicle is locked again.

Switching off the alarm

- Unlock the vehicle with the vehicle key.
- Unlock the vehicle with the integrated key and activate the drive-ready state via emergency detection of the vehicle key.

  Malfunction, refer to page 85.
- With Comfort Access: when carrying the vehicle key, grasp the driver's door or front passenger door handle completely.

Power windows

General information

The windows can be opened with the vehicle key from the outside as well as closed with Comfort Access.

With Comfort Access: The windows can be closed from the outside via Comfort Access.

When a window is often opened in the same position, this task can be performed by the BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant. For instance when the same parking garage is frequently used.

Additional information:

- Vehicle key, refer to page 82.
- BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant, refer to page 59.

Safety information

Warning

When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the windows is clear during opening and closing.

Overview

Power windows

Safety switch

Functional requirements

The windows can be operated under the following conditions.

- Standby state is switched on.
- Drive-ready state is switched on.

The vehicle key must be in the car's interior.

Opening

- Press the switch to the resistance point.

  The window opens while the switch is being held.
- Press the switch beyond the resistance point.

  The window opens automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Closing

- Pull the switch to the resistance point.

  The window closes while the switch is being held.
- Pull the switch beyond the resistance point.

  The window closes automatically if the door is closed. Pulling again stops the motion.

Jam protection system

Concept

The jam protection prevents objects or body parts becoming jammed between the door frame and window while a window is being closed.

General information

If resistance or a blockage is detected while a window is being closed, the closing action is interrupted.

Safety information

Warning

Accessories on the windows such as antennas can impact jam protection. There is a risk of injury. Do not install accessories in the area of movement of the windows.

Closing without the jam protection system

In case of danger from the outside or if ice might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it there.

   The window closes with limited jam protection. If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.

2. Pull the switch past the resistance point again within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there.

   The window closes without jam protection.

Safety switch

Concept

The safety switch can be used to prevent children, for instance from opening and closing the rear windows using the switches in the rear.

If an accident of a certain severity occurs, the safety function is switched off automatically.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

The LED lights up if the safety function is switched on.

Roller sunblinds, rear side windows

Safety information

Warning

With closed roller sunblinds and open windows, the roller sunblinds may be strained while driving due to the wind. The roller sunblinds may be damaged and vehicle occupants may be harmed. There is a risk of injury. Do not open the windows while driving if the roller sunblinds are closed.

Pull out the roller sunblind at the strap and hook it onto the bracket.

Glass sunroof

General information

The glass sunroof and the sun protection are operated using the same switch.

The glass sunroof can be opened from the outside with the vehicle key and also closed with Comfort Access.

With Comfort Access: The glass sunroof can be closed from the outside via Comfort Access.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2853
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the glass sunroof. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the glass sunroof is clear during opening and closing.

Overview

Opening/closing the glass sunroof.

Functional requirements

The glass sunroof and the sun protection can be operated under the following conditions.

- Standby state is switched on.
- Drive-ready state is switched on.

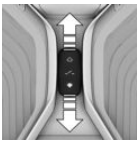
The vehicle key must be in the car's interior.

Lifting/closing glass sunroof

Push switch briefly upward.

- The closed glass sunroof tilts and the sun protection opens slightly.
- The opened glass sunroof closes until it is in the tilted position. The sun protection does not move.
- The tilted glass sunroof closes.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sun protection separately



- Slide switch back to the resistance point and hold.

  Holding down the switch opens the sun protection. If the sun protection is already fully open, the glass sunroof opens.
- Slide switch forward to the resistance point and hold.

  The glass sunroof closes while the switch is being held. If the glass sunroof is already closed or in the tilted position, the sun protection closes.
- Slide the switch back past the resistance point.

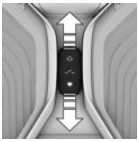
  The sun protection opens automatically. If the sun protection is already fully open, the glass sunroof opens automatically.

  Pressing the switch again stops the motion.
- Push the switch forward past the resistance point.

  The glass sunroof closes automatically. If the glass sunroof is already closed or in the tilted position, the sun protection closes automatically.

  Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sun protection together



- Briefly press out the switch twice in succession toward the rear past the resistance point.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2854

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

The glass sunroof and sun protection are opening together.

Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

▷ Briefly press out the switch twice in succession toward the front past the resistance point.

The glass sunroof and sun protection are closing together.

Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Comfort position

In some models, the wind noises in the car's interior are lowest when the glass sunroof is not fully open. In these models, the automatic function initially only opens the glass sunroof up to this comfort position.

Pressing the switch again opens the glass sunroof fully.

Jam protection system

Concept

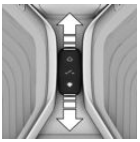
The jam protection prevents objects or body parts from becoming jammed between the roof and glass sunroof while the glass sunroof is closing.

General information

If a resistance or blockage is detected while the glass sunroof is closing, the closing operation is interrupted once the roof reaches the half-open position, or it is stopped when closing from the tilted position.

Closing from the open position without jam protection

In case of danger from the outside or if ice might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

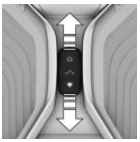


1. Close all doors.
2. Push the switch forward past the resistance point and hold.

   The glass sunroof closes with limited jam protection. If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.
3. Push the switch forward again past the resistance point and hold until the glass sunroof closes without jam protection. Make sure that the closing area is clear.

Closing from the lifted position without jam protection

In case of danger from the outside or if ice might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:



1. Close all doors.
2. Push the switch forward past the resistance point and hold.

Initializing after a power interruption

General information

After a power failure during the opening or closing process, the glass sunroof can only be operated to a limited extent. Initializing the system can help in this case.

The system can be initialized under the following conditions:

▷ The vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.

▷ The vehicle will not be moved until the initialization is completed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2855
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

- The drive-ready state is established.
- The external temperature is above 41 °F/5 °C.

During initialization, the glass sunroof closes without jam protection.

Make sure that the closing area is clear.

Initializing the system

Press the switch up and hold it until the initialization is complete:

Initialization begins within 15 seconds.

- If the glass sunroof is closed, it opens then closes again.
- If the glass sunroof is open, it first closes, then opens and closes again.

Initialization is complete once the glass sunroof and sun protection have opened then closed again.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2856

Seats, mirrors and steering wheel

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Sitting safely

An ideal seat position that meets the needs of the occupants can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving.

In the event of an accident, the correct seat position plays an important role. Follow the information in the following chapters.

Additional information:

- Seats, refer to page 106.
- Safety belts, refer to page 108.
- Head restraints, refer to page 111.
- Airbags, refer to page 172.

Seats, front

Safety information

Warning

Seat adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected movements of the seat. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. Only adjust the seat on the driver's side when the vehicle is stationary.

Warning

With a backrest inclined too far to the rear, the efficacy of the safety belt can no longer be ensured. There is a risk of sliding under the safety belt in an accident. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Adjust the seat prior to starting the trip. Adjust the backrest so that it is in the most upright position as possible and do not adjust again while driving.

Warning

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Electrically adjustable seats

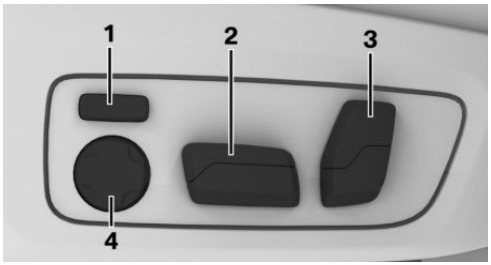
General information

The seat adjustment for the driver's seat is stored for the driver profile currently used. When a driver profile is selected, the stored position is called up automatically.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2857
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

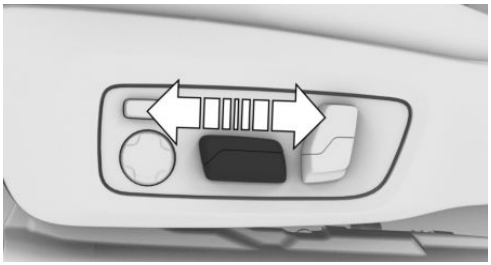
The current seat position can be stored using the memory function.

Overview



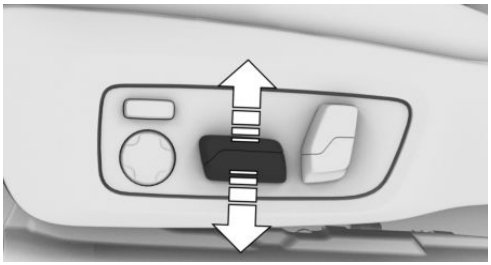
1 Backrest width
2 Forward/backward, height, seat tilt
3 Backrest tilt, head restraint
4 Lumbar support

Forward/backward



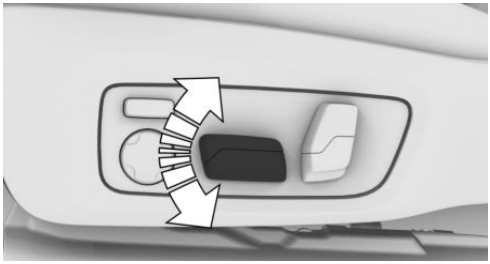
Push switch forward or backward.

Height



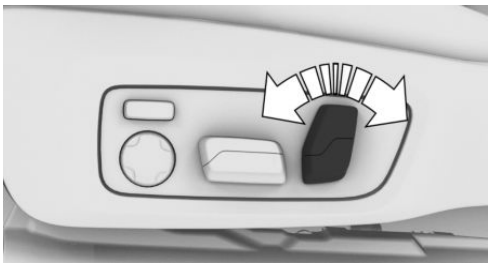
Push switch up or down.

Seat tilt



Move switch up or down.

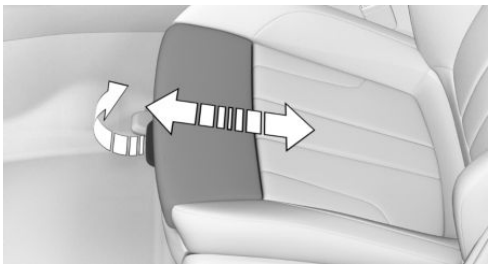
Backrest tilt



Move switch forward or backward.

Thigh support

Sport seat



Pull the lever at the front of the seat and push the thigh support forward or back.

Lumbar support

Concept

The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright posture.

Adjusting

- Press the front/rear section of the button:

  The curvature is increased/decreased.
- Press the upper/lower section of the button:

  The curvature is shifted up/down.

Functional limitations

It may not be possible to adjust the lumbar support at very high and very low temperatures.

Backrest width

Concept

Adjusting the backrest width may improve lateral support when taking corners.

General information

The backrest width is changed by adjusting the side sections of the backrest.

Adjusting

- Press the front section of the button:

  The backrest width decreases.
- Press the rear section of the button:

  The backrest width increases.

Functional limitations

It may not be possible to adjust the backrest width at very high and very low temperatures.

Rear seats

General information

The backrest tilt can be adjusted for the rear seats. The backrest tilt for the center section is adjusted together with the left rear seat backrest.

Backrest tilt

Pull the lever and apply your weight to the rear seat backrest or lift it off, as necessary.

After adjusting, move the rear seat backrest forward or back slightly making sure it engages properly.

Safety belts

General information

The vehicle is fitted with five safety belts to ensure occupant safety. However, they can only offer protection when adjusted correctly.

Always make sure that safety belts are being worn by the occupants before driving off. The airbags supplement the safety belts as an additional safety device. The airbags are not a substitute for safety belts.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2859
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

The upper shoulder strap's anchorage point will be correct for adult seat occupants of every build if the seat is correctly set.

The two outer safety belt buckles of the rear seats are intended for the persons sitting on the left and right.

The center safety belt buckle of the rear seats is intended for the person sitting in the middle.

Safety information

Warning

Use of a safety belt to buckle more than one person will potentially defeat the ability of the safety belt to serve its protective function. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Infants and children are not allowed on an occupant's lap, but must be transported and secured in designated child restraint systems.

Warning

The efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts, can be limited or lost when safety belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened safety belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that all occupants are wearing safety belts correctly.

Warning

With a rear backrest that is not locked, the protective function of the middle safety belt is not guaranteed. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. If you are using the middle safety belt, lock the wider rear seat backrest.

Warning

The efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts, may not be fully functional or fail in the following situations:

- The safety belts or safety belt buckles are damaged, soiled, or changed in any other way.
- Belt tensioners or belt retractors were modified.

Safety belts can be imperceptibly damaged in the event of an accident. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not modify safety belts, safety belt buckles, belt tensioners, belt retractors or belt anchors and keep them clean. Have the safety belts checked after an accident at the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

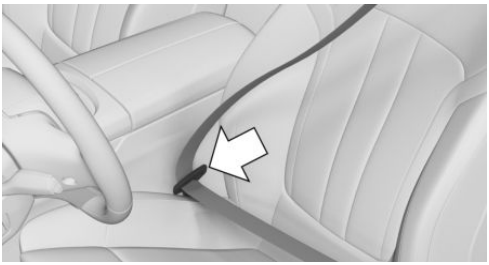
Correct use of safety belts

- Wear the safety belt twist-free and tight to your body over your lap and shoulders.
- Wear the safety belt deep on your hips over your lap. The safety belt may not press on your stomach.
- Do not rub the safety belt against sharp edges, or guide it or jam it in across hard or fragile objects.
- Avoid thick clothing.
- Re-tighten the safety belt frequently upward around your upper body.

Buckling the safety belt

1. Guide the safety belt slowly over shoulder and hip to put it on.

2. Insert the tongue plate into the safety belt buckle. The safety belt buckle must engage audibly.



To ease accessibility to the safety belt buckle, an adjustable slider is available on the belt to help position the buckle when not in use.

When the safety belt is fastened, the driver's and passenger's belt straps are automatically tightened once after driving away.

Unbuckling the safety belt

1. Hold the safety belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the safety belt buckle.
3. Guide the safety belt back into its roll-up mechanism.

Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat

Display in the instrument cluster

The indicator light lights up and a signal sounds. Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly. The safety belt reminder can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

Safety belt reminder for rear seats

General information

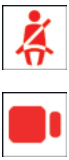
The safety belt reminder is automatically activated each time the engine starts.

The safety belt reminder is also activated when a passenger unbuckles a rear seat safety belt during the trip.

Display in the instrument cluster

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates after the engine is started.

The displays may vary depending on the equipment version and country variant.

Symbol	Description
	Green: the safety belt is buckled on the corresponding rear seat.
	Red: the safety belt is not buckled on the corresponding rear seat.

Safety mode

In critical situations, for instance during an emergency stop, the front safety belts tighten automatically.

If the situation passes without an accident occurring, the belt tension relaxes.

If the belt tension does not loosen automatically, stop the vehicle and unbuckle the safety belt using the red button in the safety belt buckle. Fasten the safety belt before continuing on your trip.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2861
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Front head restraints

Safety information

Warning

A missing protective effect due to removed or not correctly adjusted head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
- Adjust the head restraint so its center supports the back of the head at as close to eye level as possible.
- Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the backrest tilt as needed.

Warning

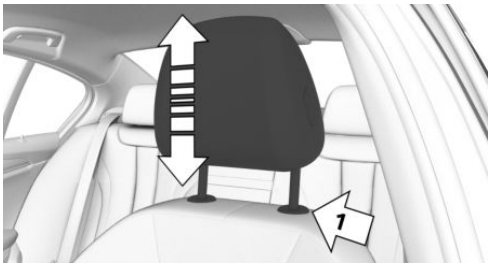
Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.

Warning

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.

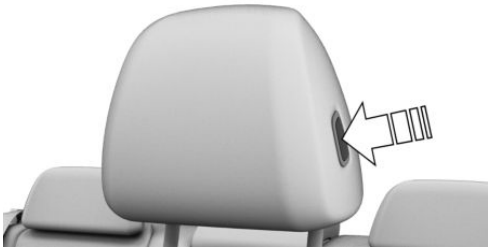
Adjusting the height



- To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.
- To raise: push the head restraint up.

After setting the height, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Adjusting distance

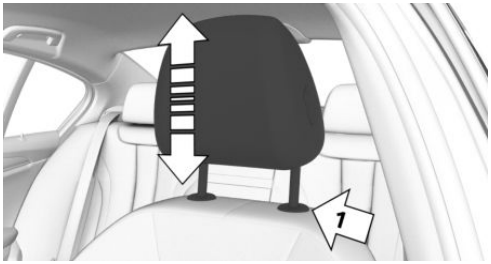


- Back: press the button and push the head restraint toward the rear.
- Forward: pull the head restraint toward the front.

After setting the distance, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Removing

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.



1. Raise the head restraint up against the resistance.
2. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

Installing

Proceed in the reverse order to install the head restraint.

Rear head restraints

Safety information

Warning

A missing protective effect due to removed or not correctly adjusted head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
- ▷ Adjust the head restraint so its center supports the back of the head at as close to eye level as possible.
- ▷ Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the backrest tilt as needed.

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.

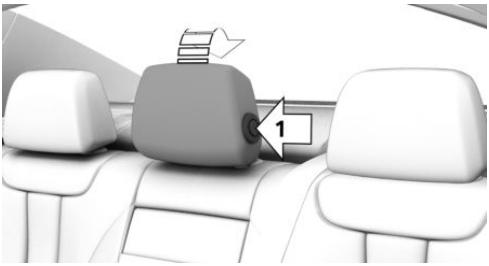
Warning

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- ▷ Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- ▷ Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- ▷ Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.

Folding down the head restraints

To improve the view to the rear, the head restraints can be folded back. Only fold the head restraint back if no one will be sitting in the corresponding seat.



- ▷ To the rear: press the button, arrow 1, and fold the head restraint backward.
- ▷ Forward: fold the head restraint toward the front as far as it will go. Make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2863
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Adjusting the height

The height of the outer head restraints can be adjusted.

- ▷ To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.
- ▷ To raise: push the head restraint up.

After setting the height, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Removing

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.

1. Fold down the rear seat backrest in question.

   Enlarging the cargo area, refer to page 269.
2. Raise the head restraint up against the resistance.
3. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

Installing

Proceed in the reverse order to install the head restraint.

After the installation, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Exterior mirrors

General information

The mirror on the front passenger side is more curved than the driver's side mirror.

The mirror setting is stored for the driver profile currently in use. When a driver profile is selected, the stored position is called up automatically.

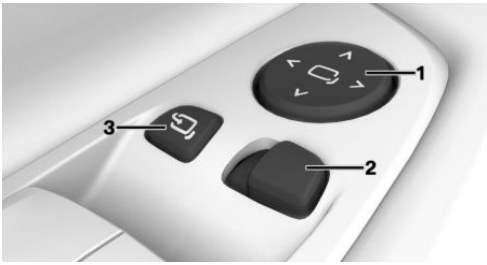
The current exterior mirror position can be stored using the memory function.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. The distance to the traffic behind could be incorrectly estimated, for instance while changing lanes. There is a risk of accident. Estimate the distance to the traffic behind by looking over your shoulder.

Overview



1 Adjusting

2 Selecting a mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor

3 Folding in and out

Adjusting electrically

Press the button.

The selected mirror moves along with the button movement.

Selecting a mirror

To change over to the other mirror:

Slide the switch.

Malfunction

In case of an electrical malfunction, adjust the mirror by pressing the edges of the mirror glass.

Folding in and out

NOTICE

Depending on the vehicle width, the vehicle can be damaged in vehicle washes. There is a risk of damage to property. Before washing, fold in the mirrors by hand or with the button.

Press the button.

Folding is only possible up to a speed of approx. 15 mph/20 km/h.

Folding the mirrors in and out is helpful in the following situations:

- In car washes.
- On narrow roads.

Mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Automatic heating

Both exterior mirrors are automatically heated as needed and when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Automatic dimming feature

The exterior mirror on the driver's side is automatically dimmed. Photocells in the interior mirror are used to control this.

Automatic Curb Monitor, exterior mirror

Concept

If reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass on the front passenger side is tilted downward. This improves your view of the curb and other low-lying obstacles when parking, for instance.

Activating

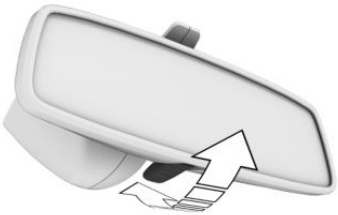
1. slide the switch to the driver's side mirror position.
2. Engage selector lever position R.

When the trailer socket is in use or trailer towing is activated, the Automatic Curb Monitor is deactivated.

Deactivating

Slide the switch to the passenger's side mirror position.

Interior mirror, manually dimmable



To reduce the blinding effect of the interior mirror, flip the lever forward.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2865
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature

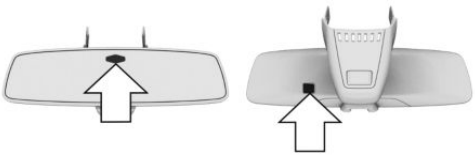
General information

The interior mirror is dimmed automatically.

Photocells are used for control:

- In the mirror glass.
- On the back of the mirror.

Overview



Functional requirements

- Keep the photocells clean.
- Do not cover the area between the interior mirror and the windshield.

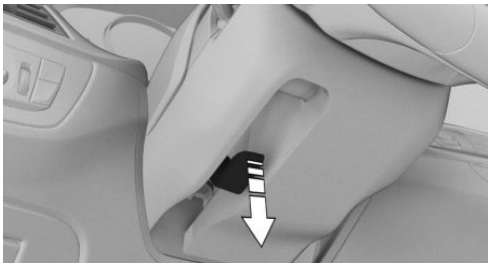
Steering wheel

Safety information

Warning

Steering wheel adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected steering wheel movements. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. Adjustng the steering wheel while the vehicle is stationary only.

Manual steering wheel adjustment



1. Fold the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seat position.
3. Fold the lever back up.

Heated steering wheel

Overview

Button for heated steering wheel

Switching on/off

Press the button.

A Check Control message is displayed.

If the trip is resumed within approx. 15 minutes after an intermediate stop, the heated steering wheel switches on automatically if the function was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Memory function

Concept

The following settings can be stored and, if necessary, retrieved using the memory function:

- Seat position.
- Exterior mirror position.
- Height of the Head-up Display.

General information

Two memory locations with different settings can be set for each driver profile.

The following settings are not stored:

- Backrest width.
- Lumbar support.

Safety information

Warning

Using the memory function while driving can lead to unexpected seat or steering wheel movements. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. Only retrieve the memory function when the vehicle is stationary.

Warning

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Overview

The memory buttons are located on the front doors.

Storing

1. Set the desired position.
2. SET Press the button. The writing on the button lights up.
3. Press desired button 1 or 2 while the LED is lit. A signal sounds.

Calling up settings

Press the desired button 1 or 2.

The stored position is called up.

The procedure stops when a switch for setting the seat is pressed or one of the memory buttons is pressed again.

Once underway, adjustment of the seat position on the driver's side is disabled after a short while.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2867
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Seat heating

Overview

Front

Seat heating

Rear

Seat heating

Switching on

Press the button once for each temperature level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

When ECO PRO is activated, the heating output is reduced.

Additional information:

ECO PRO, refer to page 285.

Switching off

Press and hold the button, until the LEDs go out.

Seat heating distribution

The heating action in the seat cushion and the seat backrest can be distributed in different ways.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. Select the desired menu item.
5. Select desired seat.
6. Press the Controller and turn it to set the seat heating distribution.

Active seat ventilation

Concept

Integrated fans in the seat and armrest areas provide a comfortable seat temperature.

Overview

Active seat ventilation

Switching on

Press the button once for each ventilation level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

The ventilation switches back by one level after a short time.

Switching off

Press and hold the button, until the LEDs go out.

Individual activation

Concept

Depending on the equipment, some heating and cooling functions can be automatically activated depending on the external temperature.

General information

The external temperature at which the functions are to be automatically activated can be set via iDrive.

Activation is performed if the external temperature exceeds or falls below the set temperature in the first few minutes after drive-ready state has been switched on. A new alignment is carried out after the settings have been changed.

Depending on the equipment package, the following functions can be automatically activated:

- Seat heating.
- Heated steering wheel.
- Seat ventilation.

If the trip is continued within approx. 15 minutes after a stop, the functions are activated automatically with the levels that were last selected.

Functional requirement

The safety belt of the corresponding seat is buckled.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. Select the desired menu item.
5. Select desired seat.
6. Select the menu item of the desired function.
7. Set the external temperature at which the function is to be activated.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2869
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Transporting children safely

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

The right place for children

Safety information

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Warning

A heated vehicle may result in death to persons, especially children, or animals. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not leave persons, especially children, or animals unattended in the vehicle.

Warning

Exposure to intense sunlight can cause child restraint systems and their components to become very hot. Persons may sustain burn injuries when touching the hot components. There is a risk of injury. Do not expose the child restraint system to direct sunlight or cover where necessary. If necessary, let the child restraint system cool down before transporting a child. Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle.

Transport children in the rear seat

General information

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is in the rear seat.

Children younger than 13 years of age or shorter than 5 ft/150 cm should be transported in the rear seat in suitable child restraint systems designed for the age, weight and size of the child. Children 13 years of age or older must wear a safety belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system can no longer be used due to their age, weight, or size.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2870

Safety information

Warning

The safety belt cannot be fastened correctly on children shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm without suitable additional child restraint systems. The efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts, can be limited or lost when safety belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened safety belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Secure children shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm using suitable child restraint systems.

Children on the front passenger seat

General information

Before using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, ensure that the front, knee, and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated.

Additional information:

For automatic deactivation of front-seat passenger airbags, refer to page 175.

Safety information

Warning

Active front-seat passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are activated. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front-seat passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light lights up.

Installing child restraint systems

General information

Pay attention to the specifications and the operating and safety information of the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing, and using child restraint systems.

Safety information

Warning

The protective effect of child restraint systems and their fastening systems which have been damaged or exposed to an accident can be limited or lost. A child cannot be properly restrained in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life.

Do not use child restraint systems which have been damaged or exposed to an accident.

If a child restraint system and its fastening system has been damaged or exposed to an accident, have these systems checked and replaced by the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2871
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

On the front passenger seat

Deactivating airbags

Warning

Active front-seat passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are activated. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front-seat passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light lights up.

Before installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, make sure that the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated.

Additional information:

For automatic deactivation of front-seat passenger airbags, refer to page 175.

Seat position and height

After installing a child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go and, if possible, bring it up to the highest position. This seat position and height ensure the best possible position for the belt and offers optimal protection in the event of an accident.

If the upper anchor of the safety belt is located in front of the belt guide of the child seat, move the front passenger seat carefully forward until the best possible belt guide position is reached.

Backrest width

Adjustable backrest width: before installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, open the backrest width completely. Do not change the backrest width again and do not call up a memory position.

Child seat security

The safety belts in the rear and the front passenger safety belt can be permanently locked to fasten child restraint systems.

Locking the safety belt

1. Pull out the belt strap completely.
2. Secure the child restraint system with the safety belt.
3. Allow the belt strap to be pulled in and pull it tight against the child restraint system. The safety belt is locked.

Unlocking the safety belt

1. Unbuckle the safety belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the belt strap to be pulled in completely.

LATCH child restraint fixing system

General information

LATCH: Lower Anchors and Tether for Children.

Pay attention to the specifications and the operating and safety information from the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing, and using LATCH child restraint fixing systems.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2872
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors

General information

The lower anchors may be used to attach the CRS to the vehicle seat up to a combined child and CRS weight of 65 lbs/30 kg when the child is restrained by the internal harnesses.

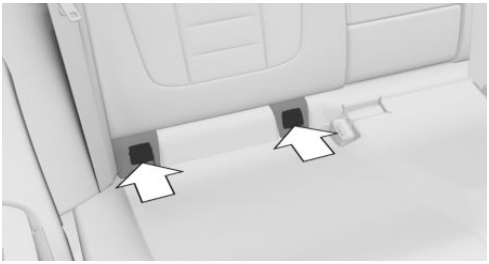
Safety information

Warning

If the LATCH child restraint fixing systems are not correctly engaged, the protective effect of the LATCH child restraint fixing system is limited. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the lower anchors are securely engaged and that the LATCH child restraint fixing system fits securely against the backrest.

Position

Symbol	Meaning
	The corresponding symbol shows the mounts for the lower LATCH anchors. Seats equipped with lower anchors are marked with a pair, (2), of LATCH symbols. For vehicles equipped with a middle seat: It is not recommended to use the inner lower anchors of standard outer LATCH positions to fasten a child restraint system on the middle seat. Use the vehicle safety belt instead for the middle seat.



Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors are located behind the marked covers.

The covers fold back automatically when the anchors of a child restraint system are inserted.

Before installing LATCH child restraint fixing systems

Pull the safety belt away from the area of the child restraint system.

Assembly of LATCH child restraint fixing systems

1. Install child restraint system, see manufacturer's information.
2. Ensure that both LATCH anchors are properly engaged.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2873
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Child restraint systems with tether strap

Safety information

Warning

If the upper retaining strap is incorrectly used for the child restraint system, the protective effect is reduced. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the upper retaining strap does not run over sharp edges and is not twisted as it passes the upper anchor.

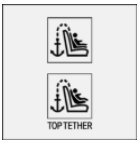
Warning

If the rear backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the child restraint system is limited or there is none. In certain situations, for instance braking maneuvers or in case of an accident, the rear backrest can fold forward. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the rear backrests are locked.

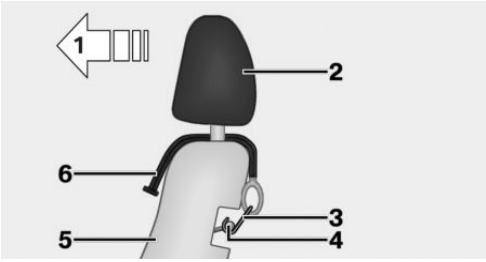
NOTICE

The anchors for the upper retaining straps of child restraint systems are only provided for these retaining straps. When other objects are mounted, the anchors can be damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Only mount child restraint systems to the upper anchors.

Anchors

Symbol	Meaning
	The respective symbol shows the anchor for the upper retaining strap. Seats with an upper top tether are marked with this symbol. It is located on the rear seat backrest, the rear shelf or the rear seat.

Routing the retaining strap



1 Direction of travel
2 Head restraint
3 Hook for upper retaining strap
4 Anchor
5 Seat backrest
6 Upper retaining strap

Attaching the upper retaining strap to the anchor

1. Raise the head restraint, if needed.
2. Guide the upper retaining strap between or along both sides of the supports for the head restraint to the anchor.

   For the middle seat, guide it over or along both sides of the head restraint to the anchor where applicable.
3. If there is a retaining strap, run it between the backrest and the cargo cover.

4. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the anchor.
5. Tighten the retaining strap by pulling it down.
6. Lower and engage head restraint as needed.

Locking the doors and windows in the rear

General information

In certain situations it may be advisable to secure the rear doors and windows, for instance when transporting children.

Doors

Push the locking lever on the rear doors up.

The door can now be opened from the outside only.

Safety switch for the rear

Press the button on the driver's door.

This locks various functions so that they cannot be operated from the rear.

Additional information:

Safety switch, refer to page 102.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2875
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Driving

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

BMW eDRIVE

Concept

This BMW is a hybrid vehicle. In addition to the combustion engine, the vehicle features a high-voltage hybrid system that consists of an electric motor and a high-voltage battery among other things.

The hybrid system can move the vehicle entirely on battery power. It can also support the combustion engine in certain situations.

General information

The vehicle does not consume any fuel while running on battery power. This enables environmentally friendly driving without emissions in certain conditions, for example, in city traffic.

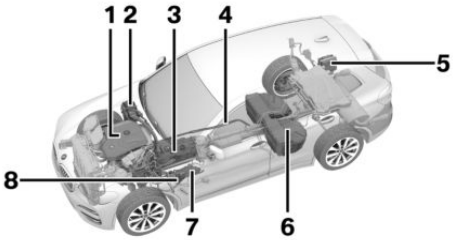
During driving with the combustion engine, the hybrid system helps to lower fuel consumption. The electric motor is switched on to support this, if required by the situation.

In addition to this, the electric motor acts as an alternator: during braking and coasting, the electric motor converts the vehicle's kinetic energy into electrical energy. The electrical energy is stored in the high-voltage battery and is used to drive the electric motor.

The high-voltage battery can be charged via the charging socket at charging stations or household sockets.

Overview

Hybrid system components



1 Combustion engine
2 Power electronics
3 Electric motor
4 High-voltage cables: orange
5 Auxiliary battery, combustion engine
6 High-voltage battery
7 Charging control unit
8 Charging socket

Displays of the hybrid system

The displays of the hybrid system provide information about the current state of hybrid operation and show the system activity in a chart.

Additional information:

Displays of the hybrid system, refer to page 149.

While driving

Observe the descriptions on the following topics in Chapter Functions while driving:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2876
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

- General driving notes.
- Safety Instructions.
- Functional requirements.
- Auto Start/Stop function, coasting.
- Energy recovery, CHARGE.
- Assistance from the electric motor.
- Adaptive hybrid mode.

Additional information:

Functions while driving, refer to page 128.

Charging the vehicle

The high-voltage battery of the vehicle can be charged via the charging socket at charging stations or household sockets.

Regular and complete charging of the high-voltage battery reduces the fuel consumption by using electric energy.

Additional information:

Charge vehicle, refer to page 288.

Climate control while parking and charging

The hybrid system makes it possible to operate the automatic climate control prior to driving off and with the combustion engine switched off.

During vehicle charging or if the high-voltage battery is sufficiently charged, the car's interior can be can be cooled or heated in advance of the trip.

The stationary climate control can also be switched on directly.

Additional information:

Stationary climate control, refer to page 249.

Energy-saving driving

To save energy while driving, read the following descriptions.

Additional information:

- Saving fuel, refer to page 283.
- Using the hybrid system efficiently, refer to page 284.
- ECO PRO drive mode, refer to page 285.

Safety of the hybrid system

Additional information:

Working on the hybrid system, refer to page 15.

Acoustic pedestrian protection

Depending on the country-specific version, the system generates a continuous driving noise at standstill with the drive-ready state activated and during electric driving up to approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.

A speaker system broadcasts the noise to the surroundings.

As a result, other road users, for instance pedestrians or cyclists, can better perceive the vehicle.

High-voltage battery, long stationary periods

Observe the information on vehicle storage and on longer idle periods.

Additional information:

High-voltage battery, long stationary periods, refer to page 359.

Start/Stop button

Concept

Pressing the Start/Stop button switches drive-ready state on or off.

Steptronic transmission: the drive-ready state is switched on when you depress the brake pedal while pressing the Start/Stop button.

Pressing the Start/Stop button again switches the drive-ready state back off and standby state is switched back on.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2877
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Drive-ready state cannot be switched on, as long as the charging cable is connected.

Additional information:

- Drive-ready state, refer to page 44.
- Standby state, refer to page 44.
- Charging cable, refer to page 289.

Driving away

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. Apply gear position.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Drive away.

The full drive power may not be available for approximately 30 seconds after starting the combustion engine. In this case, the vehicle will not accelerate as usual.

The maximum drive power can be utilized as soon as eBoost is available.

Auto Start/Stop function

Concept

The Auto Start/Stop function helps save fuel. The system switches off the combustion engine when conditions for electric driving have been met. The standby state remains on.

General information

READY is displayed in the instrument cluster. If necessary, the combustion engine starts automatically.

The combustion engine is also stopped during the trip when rolling without acceleration or braking. This driving condition, in which the vehicle is traveling without power and energy recovery is not active, is referred to as coasting.

The combustion engine is not switched off automatically in the following situations:

- The combustion engine is not at operating temperature.
- The transmission selector lever is in position M/S.
- High-voltage battery is heavily discharged or vehicle electrical system is heavily burdened.
- High stress of the automatic climate control in the heating or cooling phase.
- Hood is unlocked.
- The vehicle is being optimized for the current driving style, for instance during the break-in period or after a service appointment.
- The hybrid system is malfunctioning.

Safety mode

An automatically stopped combustion engine does not start independently:

- With the driver's door open, if neither the brake pedal nor the accelerator pedal is depressed, and the driver's safety belt is not fastened.
- When the hood is unlocked.

The indicator lights come on. The combustion engine can only be started via the Start/Stop button.

Switching off the vehicle during an automatic engine stop

During an automatic engine stop, the vehicle can be switched off permanently, for instance when leaving it.

1. Press the Start/Stop button.
   - The standby state is activated.
   - The Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.
   - Selector lever position P is engaged automatically.
2. Set the parking brake.

Malfunction

The Auto Start/Stop function no longer switches off the combustion engine automatically in the event of a malfunction. A message is displayed. It

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2878

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

is possible to continue driving. Have the system checked.

Functions while driving

General information

The combustion engine provides the main drive power. If required, the high-voltage battery is charged at the same time. The hybrid system starts the combustion engine automatically.

While driving electrically with ePOWER, the vehicle is powered by the electric motor.

Depending on the charge state of the high-voltage battery, maximum speed, the vehicle's capacity to accelerate, and range can vary.

For electric driving and driving with the combustion engine, the relevant conditions must be satisfied.

Driving off and accelerating require a lot of energy. To optimize acceleration and to reduce fuel consumption, the electric motor boosts the combustion engine.

Safety information

Warning

When driving in electric mode, pedestrians and other traffic might pay less attention to the vehicle due to the lack of engine noise. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Functional requirements

Electric driving

- State of charge and temperature of the high-voltage battery is sufficient.
- Selector lever position D or R engaged.
- The accelerator pedal is not depressed too far.
- The possible maximum speed for electric driving is not exceeded.

Automatic starting of the combustion engine while driving

Depending on the set hybrid mode, the combustion engine is automatically started under conditions such as the following while driving:

- When accelerating heavily or on uphill grades.
- By pressing the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position, kickdown.
- The high-voltage battery has an insufficient charge.
- Selector lever position M/S is engaged.
- During manual gear-shifting using the shift paddles.
- Anticipatory hybrid drive with active destination guidance, e.g., out of town.
- System-related demand from the hybrid components.

Automatic switching-off of the combustion engine while driving

Depending on the driving situation, the combustion engine is switched off if the conditions for electric driving are met.

Auto Start/Stop function, coasting

Concept

The Auto Start/Stop function switches the combustion engine off while the vehicle is moving, when braking, when rolling to a halt, and while the vehicle is stopped. The condition of rolling without energy recovery with the combustion engine switched off is referred to as coasting. Comfort functions such as automatic climate control are supplied by the high-voltage battery and can remain switched on.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2879
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

After coasting, the combustion engine or electric motor provides the necessary drive power automatically again, depending on the hybrid mode.

Functional requirements

Coasting is possible under the following conditions:

- The high-voltage battery is sufficiently charged.
- Transmission position D is engaged.
- The drive system is at operating temperature.
- Not in SPORT drive mode: when coasting, without operating the brake, at speeds below 100 mph, approx. 160 km/h.

Energy recovery: CHARGE

Concept

The electric motor acts as a generator and converts the kinetic energy of the vehicle into electrical energy during braking and coasting.

This recovered energy charges the high-voltage battery. If necessary, this stored electrical energy is output to the electric motor.

General information

Depending on the set hybrid mode, the high-voltage battery is charged at different speeds and the vehicle decelerated differently while coasting.

Functional requirements

Conditions such as the following must be met to recover kinetic energy:

- The vehicle is moving.
- Selector lever position D, M/S is set.
- The high-voltage battery is not fully charged.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Additional information:

Displays of the hybrid system, refer to page 149.

Assistance from the electric motor

Concept

The combustion engine provides the main drive power.

The electric motor provides assistance as needed with additional propulsive power.

eASSIST

During normal vehicle operation, the electric motor assists the combustion engine, depending on the situation.

eBOOST

Accelerating quickly, such as when passing, requires the maximum available power from the electric motor. To do this, depress the accelerator pedal firmly.

Adaptive hybrid mode

Concept

The system facilitates an optimal distribution of the available electric energy to permit electric driving with active destination guidance of the navigation system in the city and in the destination region. If the high-voltage battery is sufficiently charged, additional route sections will be selected for electric driving.

General information

For example, downhill gradients are taken into account for efficient energy recovery.

Depending on the route section, the combustion engine is automatically switched on or off, which supports an efficient driving style and emission-free driving in the inner city.

Additional information:

Using the hybrid system efficiently, refer to page 284.

Functional requirements

- Selector lever position D engaged.
- Destination guidance active.
- AUTO eDRIVE hybrid mode is activated.
- COMFORT or ECO PRO driving mode activated.

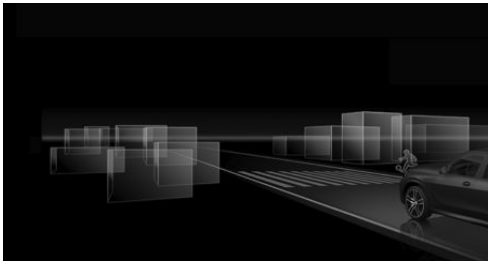
Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Anticipatory hybrid drive"

Displays

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Energy flow"

Display



Example: out of town situation. Electric driving is prepared before arriving in a town. When the town is reached, the vehicle switches to electric driving automatically.

Other situations are also shown on the Control Display:

- Downhill gradient: the vehicle drives electrically on the downhill gradient and and the high-voltage battery is charged.
- Target zone: electric driving is preferred in the target zone.
- Energy distribution: when the state of charge of the high-voltage battery is sufficient, electric driving is preferred when driving extended distances out of town.

Electric driving: ePOWER

eDRIVE button

General information

Using the eDRIVE button, the characteristics of the hybrid system can be adjusted.

The different hybrid modes can be manually activated in the following sequence:

- Auto eDRIVE
- MAX eDRIVE
- BATTERY CONTROL

Different system-related maximum speeds apply to the different settings. The electrical speed range that can be achieved in each case is indicated by a blue marking in the speedometer.

Overview

eDRIVE button

Auto eDRIVE

General information

Auto eDRIVE is activated by default when the vehicle is started via the Start/Stop button.

In Auto eDRIVE, the vehicle is driven in hybrid mode corresponding to the various driving situations, i.e. the drive combines combustion engine

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2881
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

and electric motor. The respectively most effective drive type is preferred.

The symbol is displayed while driving electrically in AUTO eDRIVE.

MAX eDRIVE

General information

The vehicle is driven exclusively by electric power.

If necessary, the maximum electrical speed that applies to MAX eDRIVE may be deliberately exceeded with the aid of kickdown. The combustion engine is automatically started and the system switches to AUTO eDRIVE mode. Further information: BMW eDrive, refer to page 125.

Activating MAX eDRIVE

Press the button repeatedly until MAX eDRIVE is displayed in the instrument cluster.

When pressing the button, the current eDRIVE setting is graphically displayed on the Control Display.

BATTERY CONTROL

General information

A certain charge state of the high-voltage battery can be maintained or increased with BATTERY CONTROL. This charge state can be adjusted. The electric range can be conserved in this way for a later point in the trip, for instance.

If the current charge state is too low, the battery is charged during the trip. This charging process increases the average consumption.

Activating BATTERY CONTROL

Press the button repeatedly until BATTERY CONTROL is displayed in the instrument cluster.

The BATTERY CONTROL symbol is displayed in the instrument cluster.

When pressing the button, the current eDRIVE setting is graphically displayed on the Control Display.

Adjusting the charge state

The charge state can be set in various ways.

Using the button:

1. Press the eDRIVE button repeatedly until BATTERY CONTROL is displayed in the instrument cluster and on the Control Display.
2. Select "Set target value" on the Control Display.
3. "Target:": set the desired value.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driving mode"
4. "BATTERY CONTROL"
5. Set the desired value.

The charge state to be conserved is displayed as a percentage value on the Control Display.

A marking is set in the instrument cluster for the adjusted value in the charge state indicator of the high-voltage battery.

Additional information:

High-voltage battery charge indicator, refer to page 149.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2882
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Driving Dynamics Control

Concept

Driving Dynamics Control influences the driving dynamics and hybrid system properties of the vehicle.

The vehicle can be adjusted depending on the situation using various driving modes.

General information

The following systems are affected, for instance:

- Characteristics of the drive system
- Steptronic transmission.
- Adaptive chassis.
- Steering.
- Display in the instrument cluster.
- Cruise control.

Overview

Displays in the instrument cluster

The selected drive mode is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Driving modes

Button	Driving mode	Configuration
	SPORT	INDIVIDUAL
	SPORT PLUS	
	COMFORT	
	ECO PRO	INDIVIDUAL
	ADAPTIVE	

Driving modes in detail

COMFORT

Concept

Balanced tuning between sporty and efficient driving.

Switching on

Press the button repeatedly until COMFORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

SPORT

Concept

Dynamic tuning for higher agility with an optimized chassis and suspension.

Switching on

Press the button repeatedly until SPORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

SPORT INDIVIDUAL

Concept

Individual settings can be adjusted in the SPORT INDIVIDUAL driving mode.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2883
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Configuration

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driving mode"
4. "SPORT INDIVIDUAL"
5. Select the desired setting:

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Reset SPORT INDIVIDUAL to the standard settings:

"Reset to SPORT STANDARD".

SPORT PLUS

Concept

Dynamic tuning for maximum agility with an adjusted drive.

Switching on

SPORT Press the button repeatedly until SPORT PLUS is displayed in the instrument cluster.

ECO PRO

Concept

Efficient driving setting.

General information

Reducing the energy recovery of the high-voltage battery optimizes consumption. The vehicle is operated more frequently in the coasting driving condition.

Switching on

ECO PRO Press the button repeatedly until ECO PRO is displayed in the instrument cluster.

ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL

Concept

Individual settings can be adjusted in the ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL driving mode.

Configuration

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driving mode"
4. "ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Reset ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL to the standard settings:

"Reset to ECO PRO STANDARD".

ADAPTIVE

Concept

Comfort-oriented driving mode, whose tuning is automatically modified to the driving situation and driving style.

If the navigation system is active, upcoming road sections are considered.

Switching on

ADAPTIVE Press the button. ADAPTIVE is displayed in the instrument cluster.

INDIVIDUAL configuration

General information

The individual configuration of the driving mode is stored for the active driver profile. The last set configuration is activated directly when the driving mode is called up again.

Activating configuration of the driving mode

Press the button for the desired driving mode several times.

Parking brake

Concept

The parking brake is used to prevent the vehicle from rolling when it is parked.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Overview

Parking brake

Setting

With a stationary vehicle

Pull the switch.

The LED lights up.

PARK

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates red. The parking brake is set.

While driving

General information

To use as emergency brake while driving.

Pull the switch and hold it. The vehicle brakes hard while the switch is being pulled.

PARK

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates red, a signal sounds, and the brake lights illuminate.

A Check Control message is displayed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2885
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

The parking brake is engaged when the vehicle is stationary.

Releasing

Releasing manually

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. Steptronic transmission: press the switch while the brake is pressed or selector lever position P is set.

   The LED and indicator light go out.

   The parking brake is released.

Automatic release

The parking brake is released automatically when you drive away.

The LED and indicator light go out.

Steptronic transmission: Automatic Hold

Concept

This system assists the driver by automatically setting and releasing the brake, such as when moving in stop-and-go traffic.

The vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

On uphill grades the system prevents the vehicle from rolling backward when driving off.

General information

Under the following conditions, the parking brake is automatically engaged:

- Drive-ready state is switched off.
- The driver's door is opened while the vehicle is stationary.
- The moving vehicle is brought to a standstill using the parking brake.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

NOTICE

If the vehicle is stationary, Automatic Hold engages the parking brake and prevents the vehicle from rolling in a car wash. There is a risk of damage to property. Deactivate Automatic Hold prior to entering the car wash.

Overview

AUTO H Automatic Hold

Establishing function readiness of Automatic Hold

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. AUTO H Press the button.

   The LED lights up.

AUTO H The indicator light lights up green.

Automatic Hold is functional.

After every new vehicle start, the last selected setting is active.

Automatic Hold holding the vehicle

Function readiness is established and the driver's door is closed.

PARK (P) After stepping on the brake pedal, for instance when stopping at a traffic light, the vehicle is automatically secured against rolling.

The indicator light lights up green.

Driving off

Press the accelerator pedal to drive off.

The brake is released automatically and the indicator light of the parking brake is no longer illuminated.

Activating the parking brake automatically

The parking brake is automatically set if drive-ready state is switched off while the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold or if the vehicle is exited.

PARK (P) The indicator light changes from green to red.

The parking brake is not set automatically, if the drive-ready state is switched off, while the vehicle is coasting to a halt. Automatic Hold is deactivated.

Switching function readiness off

AUTO H Press the button.

The LED goes out.

AUTO H The indicator light goes out.

Automatic Hold is switched off.

If the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold, press additionally on the brake pedal, when switching off.

Malfunction

If the parking brake fails or malfunctions, secure the vehicle against rolling before exiting.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Secure the vehicle against rolling away, for instance with a wheel chock, after exiting the vehicle.

After a power failure

To reestablish parking brake functionality after a power failure:

1. Switch on standby state.
2. (P) Pull the switch while stepping on the brake pedal or selector lever position P is set and then push.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2887
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

This process may take a few seconds. Some mechanical sounds associated with this process are normal.

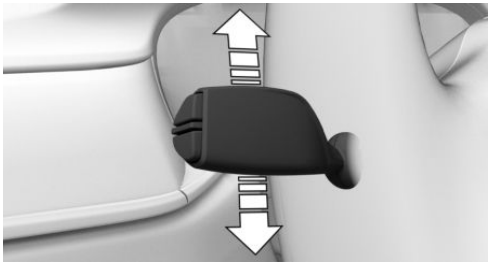
The indicator light is no longer illuminated as soon as the parking brake is ready for operation again.

Turn signal

Turn signal in exterior mirror

When driving and during operation of the turn signals or hazard warning system, do not fold in the exterior mirrors, so that the signal lights on the exterior mirror are easy to see.

Using turn signals



Press the lever past the resistance point.

Triple turn signal activation

Lightly tap the lever up or down.

The triple turn signal duration can be adjusted.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "One-touch turn signal"
5. Select the desired setting.

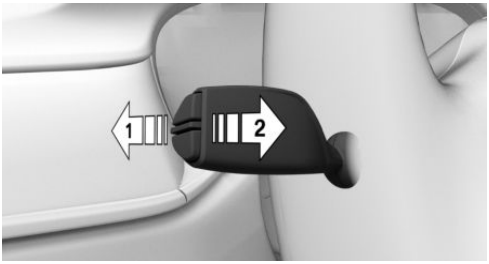
The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Signaling briefly

Press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

High beams, headlight flasher

Push the lever forward or pull it backward.



- ▷ High beams on, arrow 1.

  The high beams light up when the low beams are switched on.
- ▷ High beams off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

Wiper system

General information

Do not use the wipers if the windshield is dry, as this may damage the wiper blades or cause them to become worn more quickly.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2888

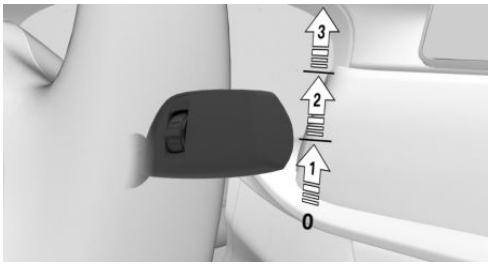
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

NOTICE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of damage to property. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.

Switching on

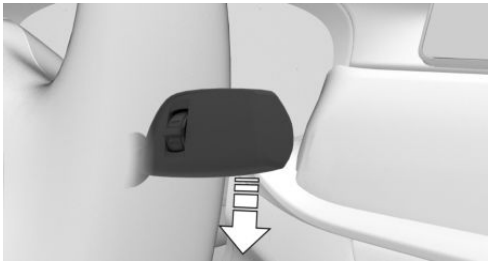


Press the lever up until the desired position is reached.

- Resting position of the wipers, position 0.
- Rain sensor, position 1.
- Normal wiper speed, position 2.
- Fast wiper speed, position 3.

When travel is interrupted with the wiper system switched on: when travel continues, the wipers resume at their previous speed.

Switching off and brief wipe



Press the lever down.

- Switching off: press the lever down until it reaches its standard position.
- Brief wipe: press the lever down from the standard position.

  The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

Rain sensor

Concept

The rain sensor automatically controls the time between wipes depending on the intensity of the rainfall.

General information

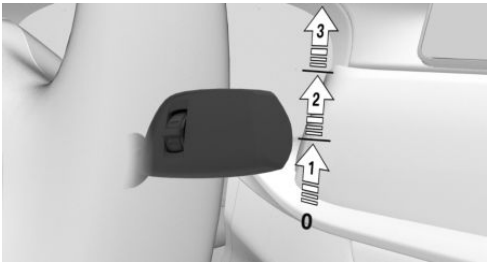
The sensor is located on the windshield, directly in front of the interior mirror.

Safety information

NOTICE

If the rain sensor is activated, the wipers can accidentally start moving in vehicle washes. There is a risk of damage to property. Deactivate the rain sensor in vehicle washes.

Activating



Press the lever up once from its standard position, arrow 1.

Wiping is started.

The LED in the wiper lever is illuminated.

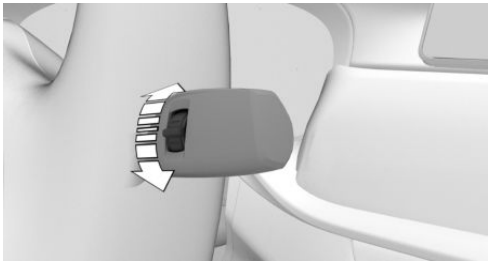
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2889
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

In frosty conditions, wiper operation may not start.

Deactivating

Press the lever back into the standard position.

Adjusting the rain sensor sensitivity



Turn the thumbwheel to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Upward: high rain sensor sensitivity.

Downward: low rain sensor sensitivity.

Windshield washer system

Safety information

Warning

The washer fluid can freeze onto the window at low temperatures and obstruct the view. There is a risk of accident. Only use the washer systems, if the washer fluid cannot freeze. Use washer fluid with antifreeze, if needed.

NOTICE

When the washer fluid reservoir is empty, the wash pump cannot work as intended. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use the washer system when the washer fluid reservoir is empty.

Cleaning the windshield

Pull the lever.

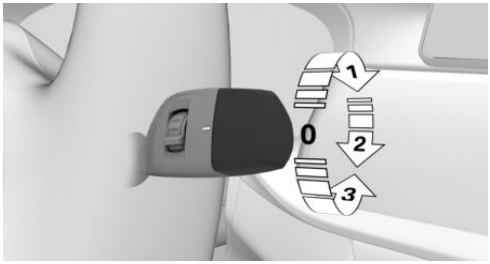
The system sprays washer fluid on the windshield and activates the wipers briefly.

Windshield washer nozzles

The windshield washer nozzles are automatically heated while standby state is switched on.

Rear window wiper

Overview



Switching on

Turn the outer switch upward.

- Resting position of the wiper, position 0.
- Intermittent mode, arrow 1. When reverse gear is engaged, the system switches to continuous operation.

Clean the rear window

Turn the outer switch in the desired direction.

- In resting position: turn the switch downward, arrow 3. The switch automatically returns to its idle position when released.
- In intermittent mode: turn the switch further, arrow 2. The switch automatically returns to its interval position when released.

The function is deactivated if the washer fluid reservoir level is low.

Fold-away position of the wipers

Concept

The fold-away position enables the wipers to be folded away from the windshield.

General information

Important, for instance when changing the wiper blades or for folding away under frosty conditions.

Safety information

Warning

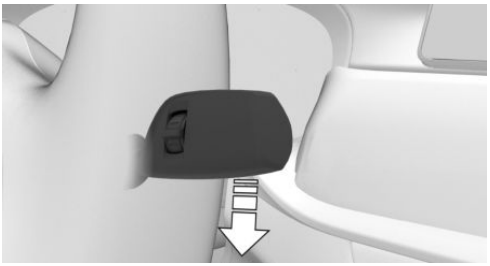
If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

NOTICE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of damage to property. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.

Folding away the wipers

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Press and hold the wiper lever down, until the wipers stop in a close to vertical position.



3. Fold the wipers all the way away from the windshield.

Folding down the wipers

After the wipers are folded back down, the wiper system must be reactivated.

1. Fold the wipers back down onto the windshield.
2. Switch on standby state and press and hold the wiper lever down again.
3. Wipers return to their resting position and are ready again for operation.

Steptronic transmission

Concept

The Steptronic transmission combines the functions of an automatic transmission with the possibility of manual shifting, if needed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2891
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling, for instance with the parking brake.

Selector lever positions

Drive mode D

Selector lever position for normal vehicle operation. All gears for forward travel are activated automatically.

R is reverse

Engage selector lever position R only when the vehicle is stationary.

Neutral N

The vehicle may be pushed or roll without power, for instance in vehicle washes in selector lever position N.

Parking position P

General information

Selector lever position, for instance for parking the vehicle. The transmission blocks the individual wheels in selector lever position P.

Engage selector lever position P only when the vehicle is stationary.

P is engaged automatically

Selector lever position P is engaged automatically in situations such as the following:

- After the drive-ready state is switched off and selector lever position R, D or M/S is engaged.
- After the standby state has been switched off when selector lever position N is engaged.
- If the driver's safety belt is unbuckled, the driver's door is opened, and the brake pedal is not pressed while the vehicle is stationary and selector lever position D, M/S or R is engaged.

Before exiting the vehicle, make sure that selector lever position P is set. Otherwise, the vehicle may begin to move. Also set parking brake.

Additional information:

Parking brake, refer to page 134.

Engaging selector lever positions

General information

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a drive mode, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start.

Functional requirements

Only when the drive-ready state is switched on and the brake pedal is depressed is it possible to change from selector lever position P to another selector lever position.

The selection lever position P cannot be changed until all technical requirements are met.

Engaging selector lever position D, N, R

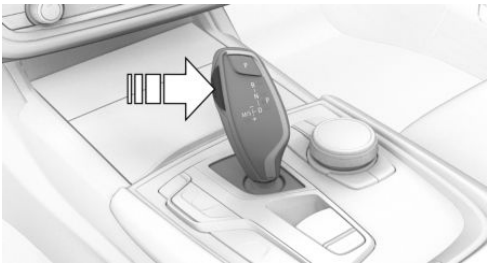
A selector lever lock prevents the following faulty operation:

- Unintentional shifting into selector lever position R.
- Unintentional shifting from selector lever position P into another selector lever position.

1. Fasten driver's safety belt.

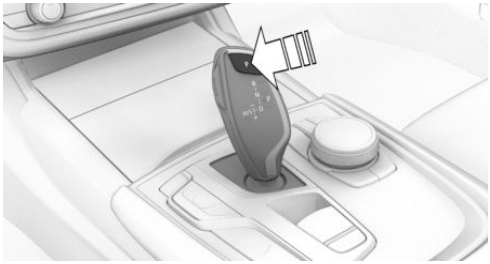
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2892
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

2. Press and hold the button to release the selector lever lock.



3. Push the selector lever in the desired direction, past a resistance point, if needed. The selector lever automatically returns to the center position when released.

Engaging selector lever position P



Press button P.

Rolling or pushing the vehicle

General information

In some situations, the vehicle is to roll without its own power for a short distance, for instance in a car wash, or be pushed.

Engaging selector lever position N

1. Switch on drive-ready state while pressing on the brake pedal.
2. If necessary, release the parking brake.
3. If necessary, switch off Automatic Hold.

   Automatic Hold, refer to page 135.
4. Depress the brake pedal.
5. Touch the selector lever lock and engage selector lever position N.
6. Switch off drive-ready state.

   In this way, standby state remains switched on, and a Check Control message is displayed.

   The vehicle can roll.

NOTICE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not switch standby state off in vehicle washes.

Selector lever position P is engaged automatically after approximately 35 minutes.

If there is a malfunction, you may not be able to change the selector lever position.

Electronically unlock the transmission lock, if needed.

Kickdown

Kickdown is used to achieve maximum driving performance.

Step on the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position.

Sport program M/S

Concept

The shifting points and shifting times in the Sport program are designed for a sportier driving style. The transmission, for instance shifts up later and the shifting times are shorter.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2893
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Activating the Sport program

Press the selector lever to the left from selector lever position D.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, for instance S1.

The sport program of the transmission is activated.

eDRIVE electric driving and the Auto Start Stop function are deactivated. Coasting to a standstill and braking phases are used more often to recover energy. The high-voltage battery can be charged depending on the driving situation. Charging may increase the fuel consumption.

Ending the Sport program

Push the selector lever to the right.

D is displayed in the instrument cluster.

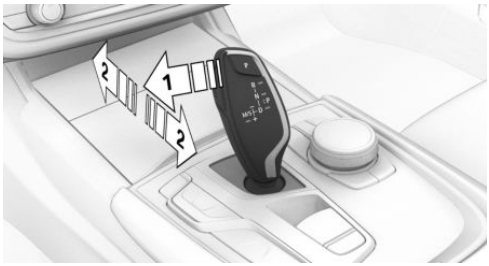
Manual mode M/S

Concept

Manual gear-shifting is possible in manual mode.

Activating manual mode

1. Press the selector lever to the left from selector lever position D, arrow 1.



2. Push the selector lever forward or pull it backward, arrows 2.

Manual mode becomes active and the gear is changed.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, for instance M1.

Shifting

- To shift down: press the selector lever forward.
- To shift up: pull the selector lever rearwards.

The transmission continues shifting automatically in certain situations, for instance when speed limits are reached.

Steptronic Sport transmission: prevent automatic upshifting in M/S manual mode

Depending on the motorization: if drive mode SPORT is selected, the Steptronic Sport transmission does not automatically upshift in M/S manual mode once the maximum speed is reached.

In addition, there is no downshifting for kickdown.

Additional information:

SPORT, refer to page 132.

Ending the manual mode

Push the selector lever to the right.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2894
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

D is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Shift paddles

Concept

The shift paddles on the steering wheel allow you to shift gears quickly while keeping both hands on the steering wheel.

General information

Shifting

The vehicle only shifts at suitable engine and road speeds.

Short-term manual mode

In selector lever position D, actuating a shift paddle switches into manual mode temporarily.

After conservative driving in manual mode without acceleration or shifting via the shift paddles for a certain amount of time, the transmission switches back to automatic mode.

It is possible to switch into automatic mode:

- Keep the right shift paddle pulled until D is displayed in the instrument cluster.
- In addition to the pulled right shift paddle, pull the left shift paddle.

Continuous manual mode

In selector lever position S, actuating a shift paddle switches into manual mode permanently.

Steptronic Sport transmission

With the appropriate transmission version, the lowest possible gear can be selected by simultaneously activating kickdown and operating the left shift paddles. This is not possible in short-term manual mode.

Shifting

- Shifting up: pull the right shift paddle.
- Shifting down: pull left shift paddle.
- Downshifting to the lowest possible gear: keep the left shift paddle pulled.

The selected gear is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the current gear.

Displays in the instrument cluster

The selector lever position is displayed, for example P.

Electronic unlocking of the transmission lock

General information

Electronically unlock the transmission lock to maneuver vehicle from a danger area.

Before unlocking the transmission lock, set the parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

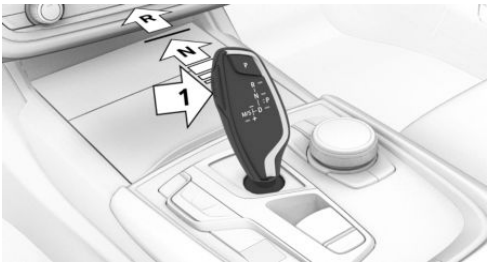
Engage selector lever position N

1. Press and hold down brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button. Hold the Start/Stop button pressed.
3. With your free hand, press the button on the selector lever, arrow 1, and press the selector lever into selector lever position N and hold,

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2895
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

arrow N, until selector lever position N is displayed in the instrument cluster.

A Check Control message is displayed.



4. Release Start/Stop button and selector lever.
5. Release the brake.
6. Maneuver the vehicle from the danger area and secure it against moving on its own.

Additional information:

Tow-starting/towing, refer to page 352.

Launch Control

Concept

Launch Control enables optimum acceleration on surfaces with good traction under dry surrounding conditions.

General information

The use of Launch Control causes premature component wear since this function represents a very heavy load for the vehicle.

Do not use Launch Control during the break-in period.

Do not steer the steering wheel when driving off with Launch Control.

Additional information:

Breaking-in period, refer to page 274.

Functional requirement

Launch Control is available when the engine is at operating temperature. The engine is at operating temperature after an uninterrupted trip of at least 6 miles/10 km.

Start with launch control

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2.

Press the button.

   TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster and the indicator light for DSC OFF lights up.
3. Engage selector lever position S.
4. With the left foot, forcefully press down on the brake.
5. Press and hold down the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position, kickdown.

   A destination flag is displayed in the instrument cluster.
6. The starting engine speed adjusts. Wait briefly until the engine speed is constant. Keep the accelerator pedal in this position.
7. Release the brake within 3 seconds after the destination flag illuminates.

   The vehicle accelerates.

   Upshifting occurs automatically as long as the destination flag is displayed and the accelerator pedal is not released.

Repeated use during a trip

After Launch Control has been used, the transmission must cool down for approx. 5 minutes before Launch Control can be used again. Launch Control adjusts to the surrounding conditions, when used again.

After using Launch Control

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC Dynamic Stability Control again as soon as possible.

System limits

An experienced driver may be able to achieve better acceleration values in DSC OFF mode.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2896

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Displays

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Instrument cluster

Concept

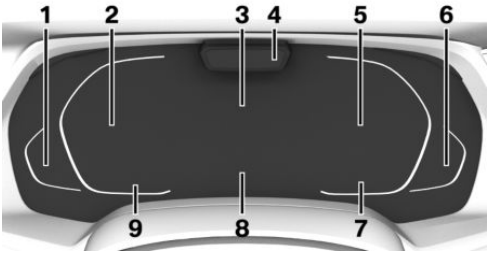
The instrument cluster is a variable display. When you change to a different program via Driving Dynamics Control, the displays in the instrument cluster adapt to the respective drive mode.

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, it may be possible to deactivate the display change in the instrument cluster via iDrive.

Some of the displays in the instrument cluster may differ from the illustrations in the Owner's Manual.

Overview



1 Fuel gauge 156
Overall range 156

2 Speedometer

3 Central display area 146
Navigation display
Charging screen 148

4 Depending on the equipment: Driver Attention Camera

5 Selection lists 160
Widgets 147
Trip odometer, see Trip data 160
Performance display 149
Status, Driving Dynamics Control 132
Transmission display 140

6 High-voltage battery charge indicator 149
Electric range 149

7 External temperature 156

8 Check Control 151

9 Speed Limit Info 158
Time 64

Central display area

Depending on the equipment and configuration, the following is displayed in the central display area of the instrument cluster:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2897
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

- Navigation displays such as the map view or, if destination guidance is active, a route preview with destination guidance information.
- Displays showing service notifications.
- Charging screen.

Some displays in the central display area can be configured individually.

The displays may vary depending on the equipment version and country variant.

Adjusting

Individual displays in the instrument cluster can be configured individually.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument panel"
5. Select the desired setting.

Widgets

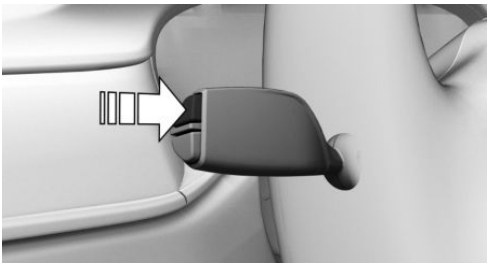
Concept

Displays for specific functions can be displayed in the instrument cluster.

The following displays can be selected:

- Current entertainment source, e.g., radio.
- Torque and power.
- Trip data.
- Efficiency display.

Selecting



Continue to press the button on the turn signal lever until the desired widget is selected.

Display

Efficiency display

Concept

Information about driving style and consumption can be displayed in the form of a consumption display as a widget in the instrument cluster, for example.

General information

Depending on the activated driving mode, different information will be displayed:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2898
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Driving mode	Display
Auto eDRIVE	Average consumption, fuel. Current consumption, fuel. Consumption display, fuel. Odometer for driving without a combustion engine.
MAX eDRIVE	Average consumption, electric. Current consumption, electric. Consumption display, electric. Odometer for driving without a combustion engine.
SPORT	Engine temperature.

Average consumption

The average consumption indicates the fuel consumption when driving a specific route.

In MAX eDRIVE, the average electric consumption is displayed.

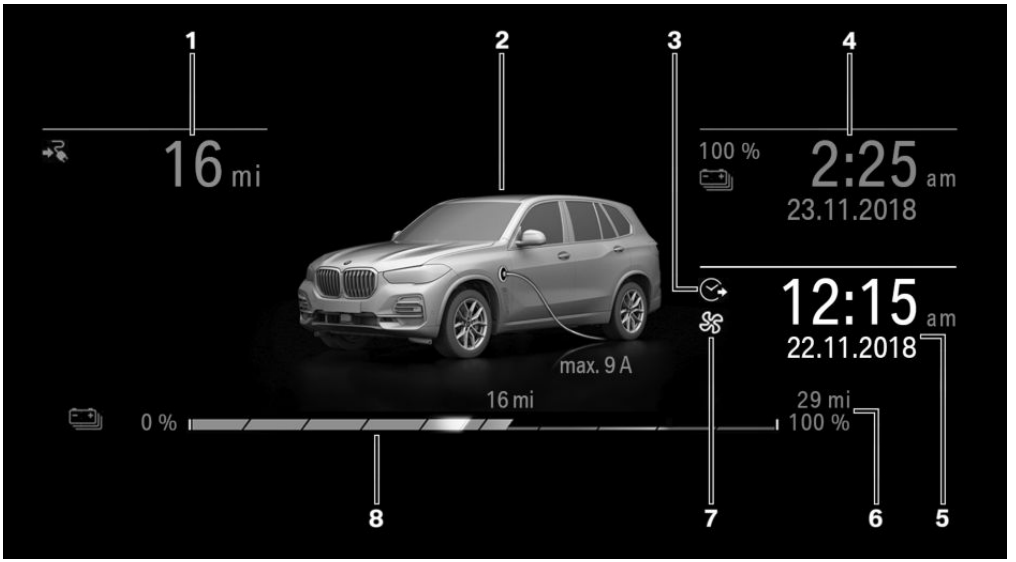
Current consumption

The current consumption displays the current consumption of fuel. Check whether you are currently driving in an efficient and environmentally-friendly manner.

In MAX eDRIVE, the current electric consumption is displayed.

Charging screen

Overview



1 Range for electric driving 294
2 Charging status with charging cable 294
3 Timer, departure time 295
4 End of charging time 294
5 Departure time with timer 295
6 Maximum electrical range 294

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2899
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

7 Stationary climate control 295

8 Current charge state 294

Displays of the hybrid system

Displays in the instrument cluster

General information

The following functions of the hybrid system are displayed:

- High-voltage battery charge indicator.
- Drive-ready state: READY.
- Electric driving: MAX eDRIVE.
- Electric driving: AUTO eDRIVE.
- BATTERY CONTROL.

The display depends on the system's operating condition.

High-voltage battery charge indicator

Concept

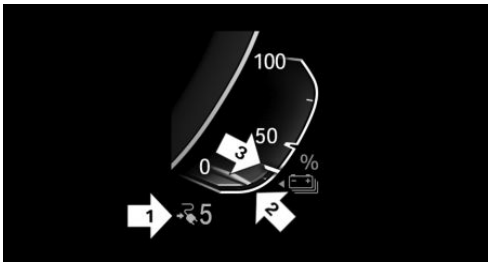
Indicates the current charge state of the high-voltage battery as a percentage.

Safety information

Warning

Even when it is indicated that the high-voltage battery is discharged, the high-voltage system is always still under high voltage. There is a risk of fire or a risk of injury. Do not touch or change live parts, for instance orange high-voltage cables, even when the batteries are discharged.

Display



- Electric range, arrow 1.
- Current charge state, arrow 2.
- Adjusted charge state of the BATTERY CONTROL function, arrow 3.

Drive-ready state: READY

READY indicates drive-ready state.

Additional information:

Drive-ready state, refer to page 44.

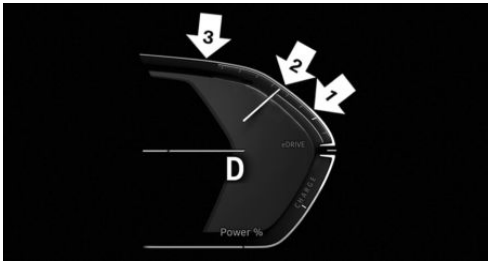
Performance display

Concept

This display indicates the performance available to the vehicle as a percentage of its total power.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2900
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

ePOWER



Full Black Panel Display.

In ePOWER mode, the range for electric driving is colored blue, arrow 1. The range highlighted in blue can vary depending on the driving situation and Hybrid mode.

A mark indicates the power outputted by the hybrid drive in a scale, arrow 2.

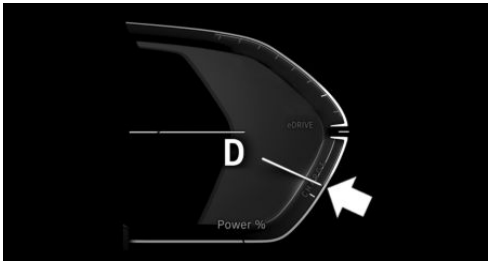
If the mark is outside the range highlighted in blue, the combustion engine is switched on, arrow 3.

Instrument cluster with enhanced features: in SPORT drive mode, the engine speed of the combustion engine is displayed instead of the output of the hybrid drive.

Additional information:

BMW eDRIVE, refer to page 125.

CHARGE



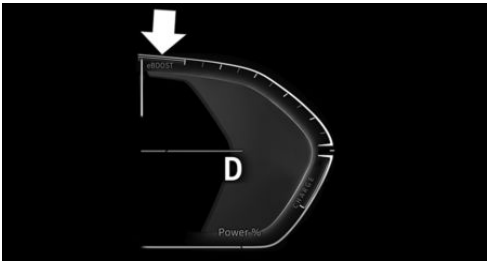
Full Black Panel Display.

Energy recovery during coasting and braking is indicated as CHARGE in the instrument cluster depending on the drive mode, see arrow. The high-voltage battery is charged. If the high-voltage battery is completely charged, no energy can be recovered.

Additional information:

BMW eDRIVE, refer to page 125.

eBOOST



Full Black Panel Display.

If the electric motor supports the combustion engine, for instance during rapid acceleration, eBOOST is displayed. The level of eBOOST provided depends on the available charge state of the high-voltage battery. If the charge state of the high-voltage battery is low, eBOOST may not be available.

Additional information:

BMW eDRIVE, refer to page 125.

Electric driving: MAX eDRIVE

The display becomes active after MAX eDRIVE is activated via the eDRIVE button.

Additional information:

E: ePOWER, refer to page 130.

Electric driving: AUTO eDRIVE

The display becomes active while driving electrically after AUTO eDRIVE is activated via the eDRIVE button.

Additional information:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2901
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

E: ePOWER, refer to page 130.

BATTERY CONTROL

The display becomes active after BATTERY CONTROL is activated via the eDRIVE button.

The available electric range is conserved for a later point in the trip.

Additional information:

E: ePOWER, refer to page 130.

Indications on the Control Display

Current vehicle state

General information

The following are displayed:

- Active components of the hybrid system.
- Direction of the energy flows:

  Orange: energy flow of the combustion engine.

  Blue: energy flow of the hybrid system.
- Vehicle states:
  - ePOWER.
  - POWER.
  - eBOOST.
  - CHARGE.
  - Coasting.
  - Charging.
- System requirements of the hybrid system, for instance drive system not yet warmed up to operating temperature.
- Driver request, for instance transmission selector lever in the M/S position.

Displaying the current vehicle state

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Energy flow"

Check Control

Concept

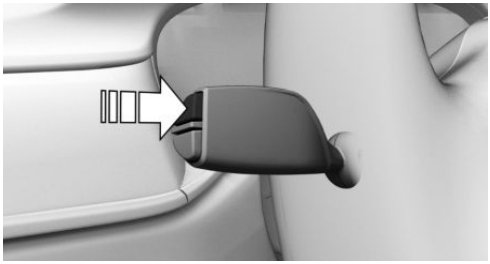
The Check Control system monitors functions in the vehicle and notifies you of malfunctions in the monitored systems.

General information

A Check Control message is displayed as a combination of indicator or warning lights and text messages in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, in the Head-up Display.

In addition, an acoustic signal may sound and a text message may appear on the Control Display.

Hiding Check Control messages



Press the button on the turn signal lever.

Continuous display

Some Check Control messages are displayed continuously and are not cleared until the malfunction is eliminated. If several malfunctions occur at once, the messages are displayed consecutively.

The messages can be hidden for approx. 8 seconds. After this time, they are displayed again automatically.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2902

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Temporary display

Some Check Control messages are hidden automatically after approx. 20 seconds. The Check Control messages are stored and can be displayed again later.

Displaying stored Check Control messages

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. ⚠ "Check Control messages"
4. Select the text message.

Display

Check Control

At least one Check Control message is displayed or stored.

Text messages

Text messages in combination with a symbol in the instrument cluster explain a Check Control message and the meaning of the indicator/warning lights.

Supplementary text messages

Additional information, such as the reason for an error or malfunction or the required action, can be called up via Check Control.

With urgent messages the added text will be automatically displayed on the Control Display.

Depending on the Check Control message, further help can be selected.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. ⚠ "Check Control messages"
4. Select the desired text message.
5. Select the desired setting.

Messages after trip completion

Certain messages displayed while driving are displayed again after drive-ready state is switched off.

Indicator/warning lights

Concept

Indicator/warning lights in the instrument cluster display the status of some functions in the vehicle and indicate when a malfunction is present in the monitored systems.

General information

The indicator/warning lights can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when drive-ready state is switched on.

Red lights

Safety belt reminder

Indicator light flashes or is illuminated: safety belt on the driver or passenger side is not buckled. The safety belt reminder can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly.

Safety belt reminder for rear seats

The safety belt is not buckled on the corresponding rear seat.

The displays may vary depending on the equipment version and country variant.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2903
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Airbag system

Airbag system and belt tensioner may not be working.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Parking brake

The parking brake is set.

Additional information:

For releasing the parking brake, refer to page 135.

Brake system

Braking system impaired. Continue to drive moderately.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Front collision mitigation

The indicator light is illuminated: pre-warning. Brake and increase distance.

Indicator light flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Additional information:

Front collision mitigation, refer to page 177.

Person warning with City braking function

Indicator light flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: imminent collision with a detected person or a cyclist.

Intervene immediately by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

Additional information:

Person warning with City braking function, refer to page 182.

Steering and traffic jam assistant

Indicator light flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: the system will be switched off.

Additional information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, refer to page 212.

Yellow lights

Steering and traffic jam assistant

The indicator light lights up and an acoustic signal may sound: a system interruption is imminent.

The indicator warning light flashes: lane marking driven over.

Additional information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, refer to page 212.

Antilock Braking System ABS

The Brake Assistant function may not activate. Avoid abrupt braking. Take the longer braking distance into account.

Have the system immediately checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control

The indicator light flashes: DSC controls the drive and braking forces. The vehicle is stabilized. Reduce speed and modify your driving style to the driving circumstances.

The indicator light lights up: DSC has malfunctioned.

Have the system immediately checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2904
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

DSC Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 198.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated or DTC Dynamic Traction Control is activated

DSC is deactivated or DTC is activated.

Additional information:

- DSC Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 198.
- DTC Dynamic Traction Control, refer to page 200.

Flat Tire Monitor FTM

The FTM signals a loss of tire inflation pressure in a tire.

Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

Additional information:

Run-flat tires, refer to page 321.

Tire pressure monitor

The indicator light illuminates: the Tire Pressure Monitor reports a low tire inflation pressure or a flat tire. Follow the information in the Check Control message.

The indicator light flashes and is then illuminated continuously: flat tires or tire pressure losses cannot be detected.

- Interference caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- In the case of tires with special approval: the tire pressure monitor was unable to complete the reset. Reset the system again.
- A wheel without wheel electronics is mounted: have it checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop as needed.
- Malfunction: have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Tire pressure monitor, refer to page 314.

Steering system

Steering system may not be working.

Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Emissions

- The warning light lights up:

  Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.
- The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:

  This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

  Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

Additional information:

Socket for Onboard Diagnosis, refer to page 339.

Acoustic pedestrian protection inactive

Acoustic pedestrian protection defective.

Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2905
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Green lights

Safety belt reminder for rear seats

The safety belt is buckled on the corresponding rear seat.

The displays may vary depending on the equipment version and country variant.

Turn signal

Turn signal switched on.

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator light indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

Additional information:

Turn signal, refer to page 137.

Parking lights

Parking lights are switched on.

Additional information:

Parking lights/low beams, refer to page 166.

Low beams

Low beams are switched on.

Additional information:

Parking lights/low beams, refer to page 166.

Lane departure warning

The indicator light lights up: the system is activated. A lane marking was detected on at least one side of the vehicle and warnings can be issued.

Additional information:

Lane departure warning, refer to page 185.

Front fog lights

Front fog lights are switched on.

Additional information:

Front fog lights, refer to page 169.

High-beam Assistant

High-beam Assistant is switched on.

High beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the traffic situation.

Additional information:

High-beam Assistant, refer to page 168.

Automatic Hold

Automatic Hold is activated. The vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

Additional information:

Automatic Hold, refer to page 135.

Cruise control

Indicator light is illuminated: the system is active.

Additional information:

Cruise control, refer to page 203.

Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go function

The indicator light lights up: the system is switched on.

Additional information:

Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function, refer to page 206.

Steering assistant

Indicator light lights up: the system supports the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2906
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Additional information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, refer to page 212.

Blue lights

High beams

High beams are switched on.

Additional information:

High beams, refer to page 137.

Gray lights

Steering and traffic jam assistant

Indicator light is illuminated: the system is ready.

Additional information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, refer to page 212.

Fuel gauge

Concept

The current fill level of the fuel tank is displayed.

General information

Vehicle tilt position may cause the display to vary.

Additional information:

Refueling, refer to page 297.

Display

An arrow beside the fuel pump symbol shows which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is on.

The current total range is displayed as a numerical value.

Indicator light in the instrument cluster

The yellow indicator light illuminates, once the fuel reserve is reached.

Tachometer

General information

Always avoid engine speeds in the red warning field. In this range, the fuel supply is reduced to protect the engine.

The tachometer is available in the SPORT drive mode or in the M/S Sport program.

External temperature

General information

If the indicator drops to +37 °F/+3 °C or lower, a signal sounds.

A Check Control message is displayed.

There is an increased risk of ice on roads.

Safety information

Warning

Even at temperatures above +37 °F/+3 °C there can be a risk of icy roads, for instance on bridges or shady sections of the road. There is a risk of accident. Modify your driving style to the weather conditions at low temperatures.

Range

Concept

The range indicates the distance that can still be covered with the current fuel level and the electric energy of the high-voltage battery.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2907
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

General information

The range can be displayed as the range for electric driving or as the total range. The total range considers the contents of the fuel tank as well as the electric energy in the high-voltage battery. If the requirements for electric driving are not met, the total range considers the content of the fuel tank only.

Various factors, such as the automatic climate control settings, are taken into account when calculating the electric range. The electric range value is adapted dynamically.

The following factors are taken into account when calculating the range:

- Automatic climate control settings.
- Driving style.
- Climate conditions.

With a low remaining total range, a Check Control message is briefly displayed. With a sporty driving style, for instance fast cornering, the engine function is not always ensured.

The Check Control message appears continuously below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km.

When the fuel level is low, MAX eDRIVE is automatically selected to protect the combustion engine if the requirements for electric driving are met. The Steptronic Sport program is not available.

You may continue driving with reduced performance and exclusively with electric motor power.

Safety information

NOTICE

With a driving range of less than 30 miles/50 km the engine may no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of damage to property. Refuel promptly.

Range display, electric motor

Instrument cluster with enhanced features:

The electric range is continuously displayed under the charge state indicator for the high-voltage battery.

The display indicates that the high-voltage battery is almost fully discharged or the electric drive is currently not available.

Total range display

Instrument cluster with enhanced features:

The total range is permanently displayed next to the fuel gauge.

Additional information:

Fuel gauge, refer to page 156.

Service notifications

Concept

The function displays the service notifications and the corresponding maintenance scopes.

General information

After switching on drive-ready state, the instrument cluster briefly displays available driving distance or time to the next scheduled maintenance.

A service advisor can read out the current service notifications from your vehicle key.

Some information on service notifications can also be shown on the BMW display key.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2908

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Display

Detailed information on service notifications

More information on the type of service required may be displayed on the Control Display.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Required services"

   Maintenance work and legally mandated inspections are displayed.
4. Select an entry to call up detailed information.

Symbols

Symbols	Description
	No service is currently required.
	The time for recommended maintenance or a legally mandated inspection is approaching.
	Service interval is exceeded.

Entering appointment dates

Enter the dates for the mandatory vehicle inspections.

Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Required services"
4. "Vehicle inspection"
5. "Date:"
6. Select the desired setting.

Gear shift indicator

Concept

The system recommends the most efficient gear for the current driving situation.

General information

Depending on the design and country version, the gear shift indicator may be active in the M manual mode of the Steptronic transmission.

Steptronic transmission: displaying

Suggestions to shift up or down are displayed in the instrument cluster.

On vehicles without a gear shift indicator, the engaged gear is displayed.

Example	Description
	Efficient gear is set.
	Shift into efficient gear.

Speed Limit Info

Speed Limit Info

Concept

Speed Limit Info shows the currently valid speed limit in the instrument cluster and, if necessary, the Head-up Display.

General information

The camera in the area of the interior mirror detects traffic signs at the edge of the road as well as overhead sign posts.

Traffic signs with extra symbols are considered and compared with the vehicle's onboard data. The traffic sign will then be either displayed or ig-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2909
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

nored depending on the situation in the instrument cluster and the Head-up Display.

With the navigation system, the system takes into account the information stored in the navigation data and also displays speed limits present on routes without signs.

Speed limits when towing a trailer are not shown.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windshield.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 39.

Displaying Speed Limit Info

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, Speed Limit Info is displayed permanently in the instrument cluster or via iDrive.

Activating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument panel"
5. "Speed limit information"

Display

Speed Limit Info

Current speed limit.

Depending on the equipment, Speed Limit Info not available.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 39.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional and may provide incorrect information in the following situations:

- When traffic signs are fully or partially concealed by objects, stickers or paint.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- In areas not covered by the navigation system.
- When roads differ from the navigation, such as due to changes in road routing.
- In case of electronic traffic signs.
- When passing buses or trucks with traffic signs applied to them.

- If the traffic signs are non-conforming.
- When traffic signs that are valid for a parallel road are detected.
- In the presence of country-specific road signs and road configurations.

Selection lists

Concept

Lists can be displayed and, if necessary, used for certain functions in the instrument cluster or the Head-up Display.

- Entertainment source.
- Current audio source.
- List of most recent telephone calls.

If necessary, the corresponding menu will open on the Control Display.

Display

Depending on the equipment version, the list in the instrument cluster may differ from the illustration.

Displaying and using the list

Button	Function
	Change the entertainment source. Pressing the button again will close the currently displayed list.
	Show list of most recent telephone calls.
	Turn the thumbwheel to select the desired setting. Press the thumbwheel to confirm the setting. The currently selected list can be displayed in the instrument cluster by turning the thumbwheel.

Trip data

Concept

Values for the trip, such as the average consumption or trip miles, are displayed.

General information

The trip data can be displayed on the Control Display and in the instrument cluster.

The values can be displayed and reset depending on various intervals, such as after refueling.

Display on the Control Display

Overview

The following information is displayed depending on the equipment and the set interval and drive mode:

- Configured interval for displaying trip data.
- Average fuel consumption depending on the configured interval.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2911
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

- Average speed.
- Odometer for driving without a combustion engine.
- Average consumption, electric.
- Consumption history in form of a chart.

Displays

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Trip data"

Consumption history

The consumption of the hybrid system is shown in the consumption history in form of a chart based on the distance traveled.

Display in the instrument cluster

Depending on the equipment, information about the route can be displayed as widget in the instrument cluster.

The following information is displayed:

- Total mileage.
- Configured interval for displaying trip data.
- Distance traveled depending on the configured interval.
- Odometer for driving without a combustion engine.

Selecting and setting widgets in the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Widgets, refer to page 147.

Adjusting the display of the trip data

The intervals for the display of the trip data in the instrument cluster and on the Control Display are adjustable.

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Trip data"
4. "Data since"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "Start of trip ( )": the values are automatically reset approx. four hours after the vehicle has come to a standstill.
   - "Refueling ( )": the values are automatically reset after refueling with a larger quantity of fuel.
   - "Charging ( )": the values are automatically reset after charging.
   - "Factory": Average consumption since delivery from the factory.

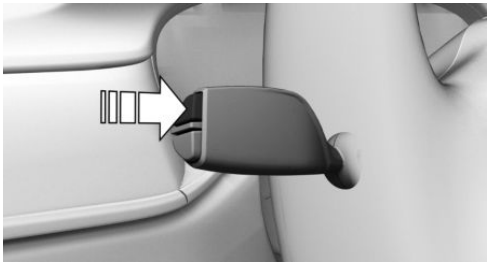
     The values since the time of the factory delivery are displayed.
   - "Individual ( )": the values since the last manual reset are displayed. The values can be reset at any time.

Resetting average values manually

The following interval can be reset manually at any time: "Individual ( )".

With the button on the turn signal lever:

1. Continue to press the button on the turn signal lever until the widget for the trip data is selected.



2. Press and hold the button on the turn signal lever.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Trip data"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2912
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

4. "Data since"
5. "Reset individual"

The average values and counters are reset. Once the average values and counters have been reset, the following interval is automatically set: "Individual ( )".

Sport displays

Concept

The Sport displays especially support a sporty driving style.

Display on the Control Display

Overview

The following information is displayed:

- Torque.
- Power.

Displays

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Sport displays"

Display in the instrument cluster

The Sport displays can be displayed in form of a widget in the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Widgets in the instrument cluster, refer to page 147.

Vehicle status

General information

The status can be displayed and actions performed for several systems.

Opening the vehicle status

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"

Information at a glance

Symbols	Description
(!)	"Flat Tire Monitor": status of the run-flat tires, refer to page 321.
(!)	"Tire Pressure Monitor": status of the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 314.
	"Engine oil level": electronic oil measurement, refer to page 332.
⚠	"Check Control messages": displaying stored Check Control messages, refer to page 151.
	"Required services": displaying service notifications, refer to page 157.

Head-up Display

Concept

This system projects important information into the driver's field of vision, for instance the speed.

The driver can get information without averting his or her eyes from the road.

General information

Follow the information on cleaning the Head-up Display.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2913
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Overview

Switching on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Head-up display"

Display

Overview

The following information is displayed on the Head-up Display:

- Vehicle speed.
- Navigation instructions.
- Check Control messages.
- Selection list in the instrument cluster.
- Driver assistance systems.
- Sport displays.

Some of this information is only displayed briefly as needed.

Selecting displays in the Head-up Display

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the brightness

The brightness is automatically adjusted to the ambient brightness.

The basic setting can be adjusted manually.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Brightness"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is set.
7. Press the Controller.

When the low beams are switched on, the brightness of the Head-up Display can be additionally influenced using the instrument lighting.

Adjusting the height

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Height"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired height is reached.
7. Press the Controller.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

The height of the Head-up Display can also be stored using the memory function.

Setting the rotation

The Head-up Display view can be rotated.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2914

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

5. "Rotation"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is selected.
7. Press the Controller.

Additional settings

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "Speed Limit Assistance": access the settings for the speed assistant.
   - "Display infotainment lists in": set up if the selection lists are displayed in the instrument cluster or the Head-up Display.
   - "Sport displays": display tachometer in the Head-Up Display.
     - "Off": the Sport displays are not displayed in the Head-up Display.
     - "In SPORT mode": the Sport displays are only displayed in SPORT drive mode.
     - "Always": the Sport displays are continuously displayed in the Head-up Display.
   - "Reduced height": if not all of the information is in the driver's field of vision, the information can be displayed in the lower section of the Head-up Display.

Visibility of the display

The visibility of the displays in the Head-up Display is influenced by the following factors:

- Seat position.
- Objects on the cover of the Head-up Display.
- Sunglasses with certain polarization filters.
- Wet roads.
- Unfavorable light conditions.

If the image is distorted, have the basic settings checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Special windshield

The windshield is part of the system.

The shape of the windshield makes it possible to display a precise image.

A film in the windshield prevents double images from being generated.

For this reason, it is strongly suggested to have the special windshield replaced by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, if necessary.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2915
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Lights

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Lights and lighting

Switches in the vehicle

The light switch element is located next to the steering wheel.

Symbol	Function
	Front fog lights.
	Lights off. Daytime running lights.
	Parking lights.
	Automatic headlight control. Adaptive light functions.
	Low beams.
	Instrument lighting.
	Right roadside parking light.
	Left roadside parking light.

Automatic headlight control

Concept

The low beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness, for example in tunnels, in twilight or if there is precipitation.

General information

A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be switched on.

Activating

Position of switch:

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low beams are switched on.

System limits

The automatic headlight control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment of lighting conditions.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2916

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

For example, the sensors are unable to detect fog or hazy weather. In these situations, switch the lights on manually.

Parking lights, low beams and roadside parking lights

General information

Position of switch: 0 , ≡D , ≡D

If the driver's door is opened when the drive-ready state is switched off, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off after a period of time.

Parking lights

Switching on

Position of switch: ≡D

The vehicle is illuminated on all sides.

Do not use the parking lights for extended periods; otherwise, they might drain the battery and it would then be impossible to switch on drive-ready state.

Low beams

Switching on

Position of switch: ≡D

The low beams illuminate when drive-ready state is switched on.

Roadside parking lights

When the vehicle is parked, a one-sided roadside parking light can be switched on.

Button	Function
P≡	Right roadside parking light on/off.
≡P	Left roadside parking light on/off.

Welcome lights

General information

The exterior lighting is switched on automatically during unlocking. Depending on the equipment, the exterior lighting of the vehicle can be set individually.

Activating/deactivating

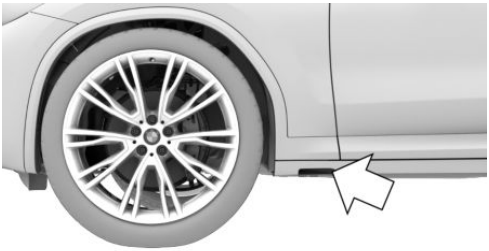
Position of switch: ≡D , ≡D

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Welcome and goodbye"

     When unlocking the vehicle, individual light functions are switched on for a limited time.
   - ▷ "Welcome Light Carpet"

     The area next to the vehicle is illuminated for a limited time.

LED light carpet



The light source is located in the position indicated.

Keep the light source clean and unobstructed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2917
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Pathway lighting

General information

For the illumination of the vehicle's surroundings after exiting the vehicle, the exterior lighting can be switched on for a defined period of time.

Activating

After switching off the drive-ready state, briefly push the indicator lever forward.

Setting the duration

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "Pathway lighting"
5. Select the desired setting.
6. "OK"

Daytime running lights

General information

Switch position:

- 0 ,
- Depending on the national-market version:

The daytime running lights light up when drive-ready state is switched on.

Depending on the national-market version: after switching off the drive-ready state, the parking lights will illuminate in position .

Activating/deactivating

In some countries, daytime running lights are mandatory, so it may not be possible to deactivate the daytime running lights in front.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "Daytime driving lights"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Adaptive light functions

Concept

Adaptive light functions enable dynamic illumination of the roadway.

General information

The adaptive light functions may consist of one system or multiple systems, depending on the equipment version:

- Adaptive Light Control.
- Cornering light.

Activating

Position of switch:

The adaptive light functions are active when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Adaptive Light Control

General information

Depending on the steering angle and other parameters, the light from the headlight follows the course of the road.

To avoid blinding oncoming traffic, the Adaptive Light Control does not swivel to the opposite lane when the vehicle is at a standstill.

Cornering light

In tight curves, for instance on mountainous roads or when turning, an additional, cornering light is switched on that lights up the inside of

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2918

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

the curve when the vehicle is moving below a certain speed.

The cornering light is automatically switched on depending on the steering angle or, where applicable, the use of turn signals.

When driving in reverse, the cornering lights may be automatically switched on regardless of the steering angle.

Adaptive headlight range control

The adaptive headlight range control feature balances out acceleration and braking processes as well as the vehicle load conditions in order to avoid dazzling oncoming traffic. Illumination of the road is optimized.

High-beam Assistant

Concept

The high-beam Assistant detects other traffic participants early on and automatically switches the high beams on or off depending on the traffic situation.

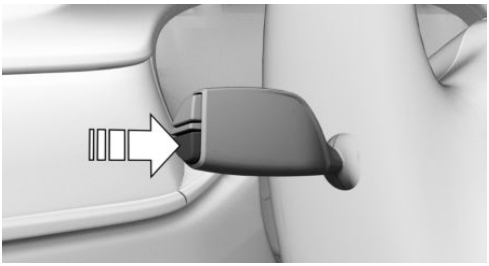
General information

The high-beam Assistant ensures that the high beams are switched on, whenever the traffic situation allows. In the low speed range, the high beams are not switched on by the system.

The system responds to light from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to ambient lighting, for instance in towns and cities.

The high beams can be switched on and off manually at any time.

Activating



Position of switch:

Press the button on the turn signal lever.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low beams are switched on.

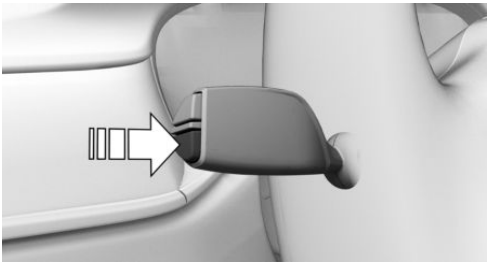
The headlights are automatically switched between low beams and high beams.

The blue indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up when the system switches on the high beams.

The high-beam Assistant is deactivated when manually switching the high beams on and off.

To reactivate the high-beam Assistant, press the button on the turn signal lever.

Deactivating



Press the button on the turn signal lever.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2919
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Sensitivity of the high-beam Assistant

General information

The sensitivity of the high-beam Assistant can be adjusted.

Safety information

Warning

If adjustments have been made or the sensitivity has been modified, oncoming traffic may be momentarily blinded. There is a risk of accident. If adjustments have been made and the sensitivity has been modified, make sure that oncoming traffic is not momentarily blinded. Switch off the high beams manually if required.

Adjusting the sensitivity

Pull the turn signal lever for approximately 10 seconds. The system responds more sensitively.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Resetting the sensitivity

Pull the turn signal lever again for approx. 10 seconds.

The sensitivity of the high-beam Assistant is reset to the factory settings.

System limits

The high-beam Assistant cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of when to use the high beams. In situation that require this, therefore switch off manually.

The system is not fully functional in the following situations, and driver intervention may be necessary:

- In very unfavorable weather conditions, such as fog or heavy precipitation.
- When detecting poorly-lit road users such as pedestrians, cyclists, horseback riders and wagons; when driving close to train or ship traffic; or at animal crossings.
- In tight curves, on hilltops or in depressions, in crossing traffic or half-obscured oncoming traffic on highways.
- In poorly-lit towns and cities or in the presence of highly reflective signs.
- When the windshield in front of the interior mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.

Fog lights

Front fog lights

Concept

The front fog lights work alongside the low beams to illuminate a wider area of the roadway.

Functional requirement

- Low beams are switched on.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

The green indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up if the front fog lights are switched on.

If the automatic headlight control is activated, the low beams will come on automatically when you switch on the front fog lights.

When the high beams or headlight flasher are activated, the front fog lights are not switched on.

Instrument lighting

Functional requirement

The parking lights or low beams must be switched on to adjust the brightness.

Adjusting

Adjust the brightness with the thumbwheel.

Interior lights

General information

Depending on the equipment version, interior lights, footwell lights, entry lights, ambient lighting, and speaker lighting are automatically controlled.

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

Interior lights

Reading lights

Switching the interior lights on/off

Press the button.

To switch off permanently: press the button and hold for approx. 3 seconds.

The interior lights in the rear of the vehicle can be switched on and off independently. The button is located in the rear roofliner.

Switching the reading lights on/off

Press the button.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the reading lights are located next to the interior lights in the front and rear.

Ambient light

General information

Depending on the equipment version, lighting can be adjusted for some lights in the car's interior.

Switching on/off

The ambient light is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked, and switched off when the vehicle is locked.

If the ambient light was deactivated via iDrive, it will not be switched on when the vehicle is unlocked.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Ambient lighting"

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2921
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Selecting the color scheme

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Color"
5. Select the desired setting.

Setting the brightness

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Brightness"
5. Select the desired setting.

Dimmed while driving

Some lights of the interior lighting are dimmed when the vehicle is driven in the dark.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Dimmed for night driving"

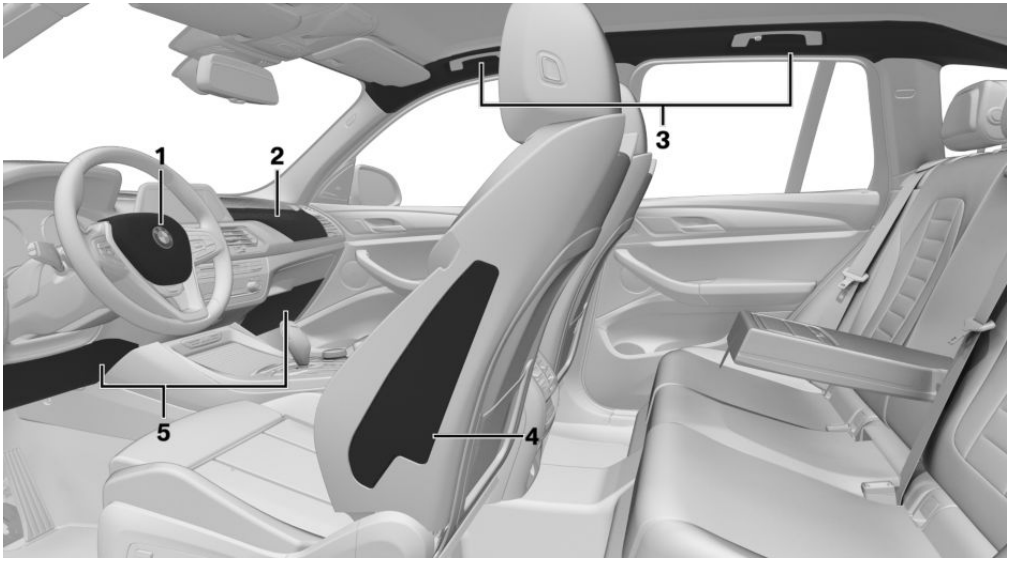
The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Safety

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Airbags



1 Front airbag, driver
2 Front airbag, front passenger
3 Head airbag
4 Side airbag
5 Knee airbag

Front airbags

Front airbags help protect the driver and the front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which safety belts alone would not provide adequate protection.

Side airbag

In the event of a side impact, the side airbag protects the side of the body in the chest and lap area.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2923
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Head airbag

In the event of a side impact, the head airbag protects the head.

Ejection Mitigation

The head airbag system is designed as an ejection mitigation countermeasure to reduce the likelihood of ejections of vehicle occupants through side windows during rollovers or side impact events.

Knee airbag

The knee airbag protects the legs in the event of a frontal impact.

Protective effect

General information

Airbags are not triggered in every impact situation, e.g., in less severe accidents.

Information on optimum effect of the airbags

⚠ Warning

If the seat position is incorrect or the deployment area of the airbags is impaired, the airbag system cannot provide protection as intended and may cause additional injuries due to triggering. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Follow the information on achieving the optimum protective effect of the airbag system.

- Keep a distance from the airbags.
- Always grasp the steering wheel on the steering wheel rim. Hold your hands at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions, to keep the risk of injury to your hands or arms as low as possible when the airbag is triggered.
- Adjust seat and steering wheel so that hands can be crossed over the steering wheel. Select the settings so that the shoulder rests against the backrest when crossing the hands and the upper body is as far back as possible while still maintaining a comfortable grip on the steering wheel.
- Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e., keeps his or her feet and legs in the floor area and does not support them on the dashboard.
- Make sure that occupants keep their heads away from the side airbag.
- There should be no additional persons, animals or objects between an airbag and a person.
- Dashboard and windshield on the front passenger side must stay clear - do not attach adhesive labels or coverings and do not attach brackets or cables, for instance for GPS devices or mobile phones.
- Do not apply adhesive materials to the airbag cover panels, do not cover them or modify them in any way.
- Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area.
- Do not attach slip covers, seat cushions or other objects to the front passenger seat that are not specifically suited for seats with integrated side airbags.
- Do not hang pieces of clothing, such as jackets, over the backrests.
- Never modify either the individual components or the wiring in the airbag system. This also applies to steering wheel covers, the dashboard, and the seats.
- Do not remove the airbag system.

Even when you follow all instructions very closely, injury from contact with the airbags cannot be fully ruled out in certain situations.

The ignition and inflation noise may lead to short-term and, in most cases, temporary hearing impairment in sensitive occupants.

Vehicle modifications for a person with disabilities may affect the air bag system; contact BMW Customer Relations for further information.

Warnings and information on the airbags are also found on the sun visors.

Functional readiness of the airbag system

Safety information

Warning

Individual components can be hot after triggering of the airbag system. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch individual components.

Warning

Improperly executed work can lead to failure, malfunction or unintentional triggering of the airbag system. In the case of a malfunction, the airbag system might not trigger as intended despite the accident severity. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Have the airbag system checked, repaired, dismantled and scrapped by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Display in the instrument cluster

When drive-ready state is switched on, the warning light in the instrument cluster lights up briefly and thereby indicates the function readiness of the entire airbag system and the belt tensioners.

Malfunction

▷ Warning light does not come on when drive-ready state is switched on.

▷ The warning light lights up continuously.

Have the system checked.

Strength of the driver's and front-seat passenger airbag

General information

The explosive power that activates driver's/front-seat passenger airbags very much depends on the positions of the driver's/front passenger seat.

To maintain the accuracy of this function over the long term, calibrate the front seats as soon as a respective message appears on the Control Display.

Calibrating the front seats

Warning

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

A corresponding message appears on the Control Display.

1. Press the switch and move the respective seat all the way forward, until it stops.
2. Press the switch forward again. The seat still moves forward slightly.
3. Readjust the seat to the desired position.

The calibration procedure is completed when the message on the Control Display disappears.

If the message continues to be displayed, repeat the calibration.

If the message does not disappear after a repeat calibration, have the system checked as soon as possible.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2925
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Automatic deactivation of the front-seat passenger airbags

Concept

The system reads if the front passenger seat is occupied by measuring the human body's resistance.

Front, knee, and side airbag on the front passenger's side are activated or deactivated.

General information

Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, refer to the safety information and instructions for children on the front passenger seat, see Children.

Safety information

Warning

To ensure the front-seat passenger airbag function, the system must be able to detect whether a person is sitting in the front passenger seat. The entire seat cushion area must be used for this purpose. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the front passenger keeps his or her feet in the floor area.

Malfunction of the automatic deactivation system

When transporting older children and adults, the front-seat passenger airbags may be deactivated in certain sitting positions. In this case, the indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up.

In this case, change the sitting position so that the front-seat passenger airbags are activated and the indicator light goes out.

If it is not possible to activate the airbags, have the person sit in the rear.

To enable correct recognition of the occupied seat cushion:

- Do not attach covers, cushions, ball mats or other items to the front passenger seat unless they are specifically determined to be safe for use on the front passenger seat.
- Do not place any electronic devices on the front passenger seat if a child restraint system is to be installed on it.
- Do not place objects under the seat that can push against the seat from below.
- No moisture in or on the seat.

Indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbags

The indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbag in the roofliner indicates the operating state of the front-seat passenger airbag.

The light indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.

After drive-ready state is switched on, the light briefly lights up and then indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.

- The indicator light lights up when a child is properly seated in a child restraint system or when the seat is empty. The airbags on the front passenger side are not activated.
- The indicator light does not light up when, for instance a correctly seated person of sufficient size is detected on the seat. The airbags on the front passenger side are activated.

Detected child restraint systems

The system generally detects children seated in a child restraint system, particularly in child restraint systems required by NHTSA at the point in time when the vehicle was manufactured. After installing a child restraint system, make sure

that the indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up. This indicates that the child restraint system has been detected and the front-seat passenger airbags are not activated.

Intelligent Safety

Concept

Intelligent Safety enables central operation of the driver assistance systems.

General information

Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, Intelligent Safety consists of one or more systems that can help prevent an imminent collision.

- Front collision mitigation.
- Evasion Assistant.
- Person warning with City braking function.
- Lane departure warning.
- Blind spot collision warning.
- Side collision mitigation.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Switching on/off

Some Intelligent Safety systems are automatically active after every departure. Some Intelligent Safety systems activate according to the last setting.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2927
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly. The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions, for instance setting for warning time.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Front collision mitigation

Concept

The system may prevent some accidents. In the event of an accident, the system may reduce impact speed.

The system sounds a warning before an imminent collision and activates brakes independently, if needed.

General information

Sensors detect the traffic situation.

Intersection collision warning when equipped with a radar sensor: in addition, a warning is issued at intersections and junctions if a risk of collision with crossing traffic is detected.

The approach control warning is available even if cruise control has been deactivated.

With the vehicle approaching another vehicle intentionally, the approach control warning and brake intervention are delayed in order to avoid false system reactions.

The system issues a two-phase warning of a possible risk of collision with vehicles at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h. The timing of warnings may vary with the current driving situation.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2928
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windshield.
- With radar sensor: front radar sensor.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 39.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is automatically active when the vehicle is turned on.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Manual switching off

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and Warnings"
5. "Forward Collision Mitigation"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - "Early"
   - "Medium"
   - "Late": only acute warnings are displayed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2929
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

The selected time is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Warning with braking function

Display

A warning symbol appears in the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display if a collision with a detected vehicle is imminent.

Symbol	Measure
	Symbol lights up red: prewarning. Brake and increase distance.
	Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.
 	Intersection collision warning: Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning when vehicles cross your direction of travel. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Prewarning

This warning is provided, for instance when there is impending danger of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small.

If a prewarning is provided, respond by braking as warranted.

Acute warning with braking function

An acute warning is displayed in case of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another object at a high differential speed.

Intervene in the case of an acute warning. If an acute warning is provided, the system may provide assistance, such as through braking, when there is risk of collision.

Acute warnings may be provided even when there has been no prior warning.

Brake intervention, City braking function

The warning prompts the driver to intervene. If a warning is active, the maximum braking force is used when the brake is applied. The brake pedal must be applied sufficiently quickly and forcefully.

The system may also assist in braking if there is a risk of collision.

When the vehicle is traveling at a low speed, the vehicle may come to a complete stop.

The brake intervention takes place up to approx. 50 mph/80 km/h.

The brake intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

The system's ability to detect objects may be limited in some circumstances. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the limitations of the system and actively intervene as warranted.

With radar sensor: brake intervention

The warning prompts the driver to intervene. If a warning is active, the maximum braking force is used when the brake is applied. The brake pedal must be applied sufficiently quickly and forcefully.

The system may also assist in braking if there is a risk of collision.

The vehicle can be decelerated to a standstill.

The brake intervention occurs only if driving stability has not been restricted, for instance by deactivating the DSC Dynamic Stability Control.

At speeds above approx. 130 mph/210 km/h, the brake intervention occurs as a brief braking pressure. No automatic delay occurs.

The brake intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Intersection collision warning: brake intervention is not performed in the event of cross traffic.

The system's ability to detect objects may be limited in some circumstances. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the limitations of the system and actively intervene as warranted.

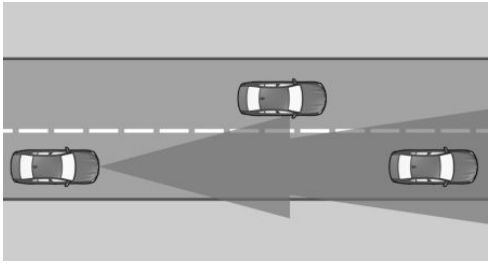
System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Detection range



The system's detection potential is limited.

Only objects that are detected by the system are taken into account.

Thus, a system reaction might not come or might come late.

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- Slow moving vehicles when you approach them at high speed.
- Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or sharply decelerating vehicles.
- Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.
- Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.
- Intersection collision warning: crossing vehicles if their speed is higher than your own speed.

Upper speed limit

If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is deactivated temporarily. When the vehicle slows down to below this speed, the system is reactivated.

Intersection collision warning: the vehicle responds to crossing traffic if its own speed is below approx. 40 mph/65 km/h.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 39.
- Radar sensors, refer to page 40.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- In tight curves.
- If the driving stability control systems are limited or deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.

Warning sensitivity

The more sensitive the warning settings are, for example the warning time, the more warnings are displayed. Therefore, there may also be an excess of premature or unjustified warnings and reactions.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2931
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Evasion Assistant

Concept

The system supports the driver in making evasive maneuvers in certain situations, such as when obstacles suddenly appear.

General information

The system issues a warning and intervenes to support the driver if a lateral evasive maneuver is possible. Sensors monitor and detect the clearance around the vehicle. If the system identifies space alongside the vehicle, it supports an evasive maneuver begun by the driver by safely providing targeted steering support.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windshield.
- Front radar sensor.
- Radar sensors, side, front.
- Radar sensors, side, rear.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 39.

Functional requirements

- Front collision mitigation is switched on.

  Front collision mitigation, refer to page 177.
- Sensors detect sufficient clearance around the vehicle.

Switching on/off

The system is automatically active when the vehicle is turned on.

Warning with evasion support

Display in the instrument cluster

A warning symbol appears in the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display if a collision with a detected vehicle is imminent.

Symbol	Measure
	Symbol lights up red: prewarning. Brake and increase distance.
	Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Acute warning with evasion support

An acute warning is displayed when there is an imminent danger of collision due to the vehicle approaching another object at a high speed.

Intervene in the case of an acute warning. The system is designed to provide assistance by taking evasive action when there is a risk of collision.

Acute warnings may be provided even when there has been no prior warning.

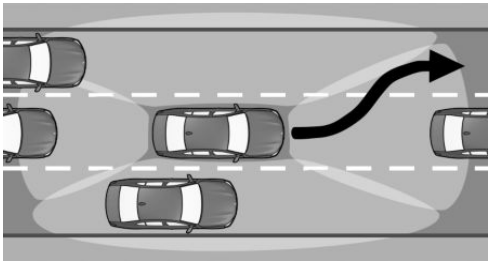
System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Detection range



The system's detection potential is limited.

Only objects that are detected by the system are taken into account.

Thus, a system reaction might not come or might come late.

The following situations may not be detected, for example:

- Slow moving vehicles when you approach them at high speed.
- Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or sharply decelerating vehicles.
- Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.
- Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 39.
- Radar sensors, refer to page 40.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- In tight curves.
- If the driving stability control systems are limited or deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.

Person warning with City braking function

Concept

The system may prevent some accidents with pedestrians. When driving at city speeds, the system will issue a warning if there is imminent risk of a collision with pedestrians, and support with a braking function.

General information

Sensors detect the traffic situation.

The system is active at speeds of approx. 3 mph/5 km/h up to approx. 40 mph/65 km/h.

The system reacts to people who are within the detection range of the system.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2933
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Sensors

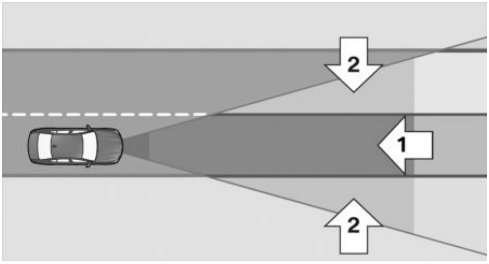
The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windshield.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 39.

Detection range



The detection area in front of the vehicle is divided into two areas:

- Central area, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.
- Expanded area, arrows 2, to the right and left of the central area.

A collision is imminent if pedestrians are located within the central area. A warning is issued about pedestrians who are located within the extended area only if they are moving in the direction of the central area.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is automatically active when the vehicle is turned on.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2934
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Manual switching off

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Warning with braking function

Display

If a collision with a detected person is imminent, a warning symbol appears on the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display.

The red symbol is displayed and a signal sounds.

Alternatively, depending on the vehicle equipment, a red warning triangle lights up in the instrument cluster.

Intervene immediately by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

Brake intervention

The warning prompts the driver to intervene. While a warning is active, the maximum braking force is used when the brake is applied. In order to activate the Brake Assistant function, the brakes must be applied sufficiently quickly and forcefully.

If there is a risk of collision, the system may also assist with brake intervention.

When the vehicle is traveling at a low speed, the vehicle may come to a complete stop.

The brake intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

The system's ability to detect objects may be limited in some circumstances. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the limitations of the system and actively intervene as warranted.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Detection range

The system's detection potential is limited.

Thus, a warning might not be issued or be issued late.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2935
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- Partially covered pedestrians.
- Pedestrians that are not detected as such because of the viewing angle or contour.
- Pedestrians outside of the detection range.
- Pedestrians having a body size less than 32 in/80 cm.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 39.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional or may not be available in the following situations:

- If the driving stability control systems are deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.

Lane departure warning

Concept

The lane departure warning alerts when the vehicle on roads with lane markings is about to leave the lane.

General information

This camera-based system warns starting at a minimum speed.

The minimum speed is country-specific and is displayed in the menu for the intelligent Safety systems.

Warnings are issued by means of a steering wheel vibration. The severity of the steering wheel vibration can be adjusted.

The time of the warning may vary depending on the current driving situation.

The system does not provide a warning if the turn signal is set before leaving the lane.

Vehicles with side collision mitigation: if in the speed range up to 130 mph/210 km/h a lane marking is crossed, the system intervenes with a brief active steering intervention in addition to vibrating. The system thus helps keep the vehicle in the lane.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing road and traffic safety. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate. Do not jerk the steering wheel in response to a warning.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Functional requirement

The camera must detect the lane markings for the lane departure warning to be active.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windshield.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 39.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The lane departure warning activates automatically after departure if the function was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Manual switching off

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and Warnings"
5. "Lane Departure Warning"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - "Always": the system issues a warning whenever a hazardous situation is detected.
   - "Reduced": some warnings are suppressed depending on the situation, for instance during passing without a turn signal or when purposely driving over lane markings in curves.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2937
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

▷ "Off": no warnings are issued.

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Steering Wheel Feedback"
5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all Intelligent Safety systems and stored for the driver profile currently used.

Vehicles with side collision mitigation: switch steering intervention on/off

The steering intervention can be switched on and off separately for blind spot collision warning and lane departure warning.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and Warnings"
5. "Lane Departure Warning"
6. "Steering intervention"

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Display in the instrument cluster

The symbol illuminates green: at least one lane marking was detected and warnings can be issued.

Warning function

If you leave the lane

If you leave the lane and if a lane marking has been detected, the steering wheel vibrates in accordance with the steering wheel vibration setting.

When the turn signal is switched on before a lane charge, a warning is not issued.

With side collision mitigation

If in the speed range up to 130 mph/210 km/h a lane marking is crossed, the system intervenes with a brief active steering intervention in addition to vibrating. The steering intervention helps keep the vehicle in the lane. The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

Warning signal

Depending on the equipment version: in the event of multiple active steering interventions by the system within 3 minutes without the driver's intervention at the steering wheel, an acoustic warning will sound. A short warning signal will sound at the second steering intervention. Beginning with the third steering intervention, an continuous warning will sound.

In addition, a Check Control message is displayed.

The warning signal and Check Control message are an encouragement to pay closer attention to the lane.

With trailer towing

If the trailer power socket is in use or trailer towing is activated, for instance during operation with trailer or bicycle rack, no steering intervention takes place.

End of warning

For instance, the warning will be canceled in the following situations:

- Automatically after approx. 3 seconds.
- When returning to your own lane.
- When braking hard.
- When using the turn signal.
- If DSC Dynamic Stability Control intervenes.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 39.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane markings such as in construction areas.
- When lane markings are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
- When lane markings are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.

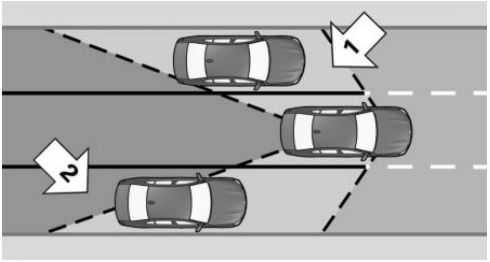
A Check Control message may be displayed when the system is not fully functional.

Blind spot collision warning

Concept

Blind spot collision warning detects vehicles in the blind spot or vehicles approaching from behind in the adjacent lane. A warning is issued in various gradations in these situations.

General information



Radar sensors monitor the area behind and next to the vehicle when traveling faster than a minimum speed.

The minimum speed is country-specific and is displayed in the menu for the intelligent Safety systems.

The system indicates whether there are vehicles in the blind spot, arrow 1, or approaching from behind in the adjacent lane, arrow 2.

The light in the exterior mirror lights up dimmed.

Before you change lanes after setting the turn signal, the system issues a warning in the situations described above.

The light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

Vehicles with side collision mitigation: at speeds between 45 mph/70 km/h and 130 mph/210 km/h, the system can intervene with a brief active steering intervention and help to return the vehicle into the lane.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2939
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Radar sensors, side, rear.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 39.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

Blind spot collision warning is automatically activated after departure if the function was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Manual switching off

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and Warnings"
5. "Active Blind Spot Detection"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Early"
   - ▷ "Medium"
   - ▷ "Late"
   - ▷ "Off": with this setting, no warning is output.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Steering Wheel Feedback"
5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all Intelligent Safety systems and stored for the driver profile currently used.

Vehicles with side collision mitigation: switching steering intervention on/off

The steering intervention can be switched on and off separately for blind spot collision warning and lane departure warning.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and Warnings"
5. "Active Blind Spot Detection"
6. "Steering intervention"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Warning function

Light in the exterior mirror

Prewarning

The dimmed light in the exterior mirror indicates when there are vehicles in the blind spot or approaching from behind.

Acute warning

When the turn signal is switched on while a vehicle is in the critical zone, the steering wheel vibrates briefly and the light in the exterior mirror flashes brightly.

The warning stops when the other vehicle has left the critical area or the turn signal has been deactivated.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2941
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Vehicles with side collision mitigation

When at speeds between 45 mph/70 km/h and 130 mph/210 km/h the vibrating steering wheel is ignored and the lane marking crossed, the system intervenes with a brief active steering intervention. The steering intervention helps return the vehicle into the lane. The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

Flashing of the light

A flashing of the light during vehicle unlocking serves as system self-test.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Upper speed limit

If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is deactivated temporarily.

If the vehicle speed falls below approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system once again responds according to the setting.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Radar sensors, refer to page 40.
- On vehicles with side collision warning: cameras, refer to page 39.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
- If the bumper is dirty, iced up, or covered, for instance by stickers.

For vehicles with side collision mitigation, the steering intervention can be limited, for instance in the following situation:

- In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane markings such as in construction areas.
- When lane markings are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- When lane markings are not white.
- When lane markings are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- If the camera is impaired.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.

A Check Control message is displayed when the system is not fully functional.

If the trailer power socket is occupied or trailer towing is activated, for instance during operation with trailer or bicycle rack, the system cannot be switched on. A Check Control message is displayed.

Displaying warnings

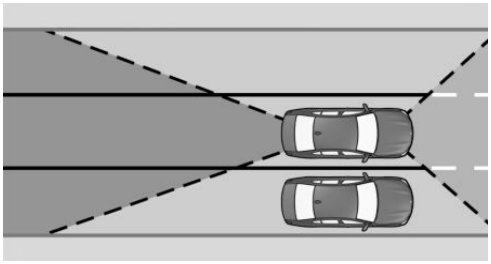
Depending on the selected warning settings, e.g., warning time, more or fewer warnings can be displayed. However, there may also be an excess of premature warnings of critical situations.

Side collision mitigation

Concept

The system helps to avoid imminent side collisions.

General information



Radar sensors monitor the area next to the vehicle in the speed range from approx. 45 mph/70 km/h to approx. 130 mph/210 km/h.

The front camera determines the lane marking positions.

If, for instance another vehicle is detected next to the vehicle and if there is a risk of collision with this vehicle, the system helps avoid the collision. The system will carry out an active steering intervention.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Functional requirement

The camera must detect the lane markings for the side collision mitigation with steering intervention to be active.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windshield.
- Radar sensors, side, front.
- Radar sensors, side, rear.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 39.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2943
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The side collision mitigation activates automatically after departure if the function was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Manual switching off

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Steering Wheel Feedback"
5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all Intelligent Safety systems and stored for the driver profile currently used.

Warning function

Light in the exterior mirror

Acute warning

If there is a risk of collision, the light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

If necessary, an active steering intervention then takes place to prevent collisions and maintain the vehicle within its own lane.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2944
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 39.
- Radar sensors, refer to page 40.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
- In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane markings such as in construction areas.
- When lane markings are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- When lane markings are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.

A Check Control message is displayed when the system is not fully functional.

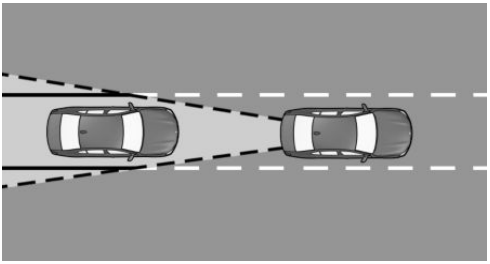
If the trailer power socket is occupied or trailer towing is activated, for instance during operation with trailer or bicycle rack, the system cannot be switched on. A Check Control message is displayed.

Rear collision preparation

Concept

The system reacts to vehicles approaching from behind.

General information



Radar sensors monitor the area behind the vehicle.

When a vehicle approaches from the rear at a certain speed, the system responds as follows:

- Active Protection: when a collision seems to be unavoidable, PreCrash functions are triggered.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2945
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Radar sensors, side, rear.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 39.

Switching on/off

The system is automatically active when the vehicle is turned on.

The system is deactivated in the following situations:

- When driving in reverse.
- When the trailer power socket is in use or trailer towing is activated, for instance during operation with trailer or bicycle rack.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Radar sensors, refer to page 40.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

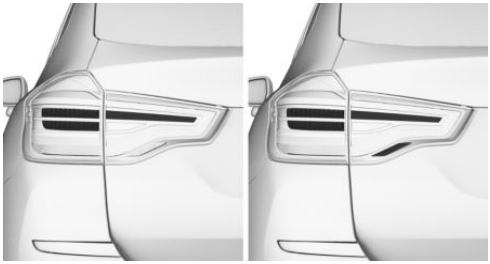
- When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- When the approaching vehicle approaches slowly.

Brake force display

Concept

Additional brake lights indicate emergency braking to the traffic behind. This can reduce the risk of a rear-end collision.

General information



- During normal brake application, the outer brake lights light up.
- During heavy brake application, the inner brake lights additionally light up.

Active Protection

Concept

Active Protection prepares occupants and the vehicle for a possible accident in critical driving or collision situations.

General information

Active Protection consists of various PreCrash functions, which can vary depending on the equipment.

The system is used to detect certain critical driving situations that might lead to an accident. This includes the following critical driving situations:

- Emergency stop.

- Severe understeering.
- Severe oversteering.

Certain functions of several systems can, within the system limits, lead to Active Protection triggering:

- Front collision mitigation: automatic brake intervention.
- Front collision mitigation: Brake Assistant.
- Rear collision preparation: detection of imminent rear collisions.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to the system limits, critical situation could not be detected reliably or in time. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Function

When the safety belt is fastened, the driver's and passenger's belt straps are automatically tightened once after driving away.

In accident-critical situations, the following individual functions become active as needed:

- Automatic pretensioning of the front safety belts.
- Automatic window closing up to a narrow gap.
- Automatic closing of the panoramic glass sunroof, including sun protection.
- For vehicles equipped with comfort seats in the front: automatic positioning of the backrest for the front passenger seat.

After a critical driving situation without an accident, the front safety belts are loosened again.

If the belt tension does not loosen automatically, stop the vehicle and unbuckle the safety belt using the red button in the buckle. Fasten the safety belt before continuing on your trip.

All other systems can be restored to the desired setting.

PostCrash – iBrake

Concept

In the event of an accident, the system can bring the vehicle to a halt automatically without intervention by the driver in certain situations. This can reduce the risk of a further collision and the consequences thereof.

At standstill

After coming to a halt, the brake is released automatically.

Harder vehicle braking

In certain situations, it can be necessary to bring the vehicle to a halt more quickly than the Brake Assistant allows.

To do this, quickly apply extra force to the brake. For a brief period, the braking pressure will be higher than the braking pressure that is achieved by the automatic braking function. Automatic braking is interrupted.

Interrupting automatic braking

It can be necessary to interrupt automatic braking in certain situations, for instance for an evasive maneuver.

Interrupt automatic braking:

- By pressing the brake pedal.
- By pressing the accelerator pedal.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2947
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Fatigue alert

General information

The system can detect decreasing alertness or fatigue of the driver during long, monotonous trips, for instance on highways. In this situation, it is recommended that the driver takes a break.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing one's physical state. An increasing lack of alertness or fatigue may not be detected or not be detected in time. There is a risk of accident. Make sure that the driver is rested and alert. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions.

Function

The system is switched on each time drive-ready state is switched on.

After travel has begun, the system monitors certain aspects of the driver's behavior, so that decreasing alertness or fatigue can be detected.

This procedure takes the following criteria into account:

- Personal driving style, for instance steering behavior.
- Driving conditions, for instance time, length of trip.

Starting at approx. 43 mph/70 km/h, the system is active and can also display a recommendation to take a break.

Break recommendation

Adjusting

The fatigue alert is active automatically with each switching on of drive-ready state and can thus display a break recommendation.

The break recommendation can also be switched on or off and adjusted via iDrive.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Fatigue and Focus Alert"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "Standard": the break recommendation is made with a defined value.
   - "Sensitive": the break recommendation is issued earlier.
   - "Off": no break recommendation is made.

Display

If the driver becomes less alert or fatigued, a message is displayed in the Control Display with the recommendation to take a break.

During the display, various settings can be selected.

After a break, another recommendation to take a break cannot be displayed until after approximately 45 minutes.

System limits

The function may be limited in the following situations and may issue an incorrect warning or no warning at all:

- When the clock is set incorrectly.
- When the vehicle speed is mainly below about 43 mph/70 km/h.
- With a sporty driving style, such as during rapid acceleration or when cornering fast.
- In active driving situations, such as when changing lanes frequently.
- When the road surface is poor.
- In the event of strong side winds.

The system is reset approx. 45 minutes after parking the vehicle, for instance in the case of a break during longer trips on highways.

Driving stability control systems

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Antilock Braking System ABS

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during braking.

The vehicle maintains its steering power even during full brake applications, which increases the active safety.

ABS is operational every time you start the engine.

Brake assistant

When you apply the brakes rapidly, this system automatically boosts the vehicle braking assistance to the furthest possible extent. It reduces the braking distance to a minimum during an emergency stop. This system utilizes all of the capabilities provided by the Antilock Brake System ABS.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal for the duration of the emergency stop.

Adaptive brake assistant

In combination with Active Cruise Control ACC, this system ensures that the brakes respond even more rapidly when braking in critical situations.

Drive-off assistant

Concept

This system supports driving off on uphill grades.

Driving off

1. Hold the vehicle in place with the foot brake.
2. Release the foot brake and drive off without delay.

After the foot brake is released, the vehicle is held in place for approx. 2 seconds.

Depending on the vehicle loading or when a trailer is used, the vehicle may roll back slightly.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control

Concept

Within the physical limits, the system helps to keep the vehicle on a steady course by reducing drive power and by braking the individual wheels.

General information

DSC detects the following unstable driving conditions, for instance:

- Fishtailing, which can lead to oversteering.
- Loss of traction of the front wheels, which can lead to understeering.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2949
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

When driving with a roof load, for instance with roof-mounted luggage rack, the vehicle's center of gravity is higher, which increases the risk of the vehicle tipping in critical driving situations. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Do not deactivate DSC Dynamic Stability Control when driving with roof load.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

DSC OFF

Deactivating/activating DSC

General information

When DSC is deactivated, driving stability is reduced during acceleration and when driving in curves.

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

Deactivating DSC

Hold the button down until DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster and the DSC OFF indicator light is illuminated.

Activating DSC

Press the button.

DSC OFF and the DSC OFF indicator light go out.

Display

In the instrument cluster

When DSC is deactivated, DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Indicator/warning lights

The indicator light lights up: DSC is deactivated.

The indicator light flashes: DSC controls the drive and braking forces.

The indicator light lights up: DSC has malfunctioned.

DTC Dynamic Traction Control

Concept

DTC is a version of the DSC Dynamic Stability Control where drive power is optimized.

The system ensures maximum drive power on unusual road conditions, for instance unplowed snow covered roads, or loose road surfaces, but with somewhat limited driving stability.

General information

When DTC is activated, the vehicle has maximum traction. Driving stability is limited during acceleration and when driving in curves.

You may find it useful to briefly activate DTC in the following situations:

- When driving in slush or on uncleared, snow-covered roads.
- When driving off from deep snow or loose ground.
- When driving with snow chains.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

DSC OFF

Activating/deactivating DTC

Activating DTC

Press the button.

TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster and the indicator light for DSC OFF lights up.

Deactivating DTC

Press the button again.

TRACTION and the DSC OFF indicator light go out.

Display

Display in the instrument cluster

If DTC is activated, TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Indicator/warning lights

The indicator light lights up: DTC is activated.

Automatic program change

In certain situations, the Dynamic Stability Control DSC is activated automatically:

- If Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function ACC is activated.
- On a brake intervention by the Intelligent Safety systems.
- The vehicle has a flat tire.

xDrive

Concept

xDrive is the all-wheel-drive system of the vehicle. The interaction of xDrive and other suspension control systems, such as DSC Dynamic Stability Control, further optimizes traction and

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2951
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

driving dynamics. xDrive variably distributes the driving forces to the front and rear axles as demanded by the driving situation and road surface.

Display on the Control Display

Display xView display

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "xOFFROAD"

   or

   "xVIEW"

The following information is displayed:

- With a navigation system: compass display for the driving direction.
- With navigation system: elevation for the current position.
- With navigation system: destination flag in compass direction to the destination.
- Pitch attitude with degree indication and percentage.
- Transverse gradient with degree indication.
- Graphic display for the steering angle.

Automatic Differential Brake

The system controls the driving force by automatic brake intervention on individual wheels.

The function works in the same way as a differential lock and improves traction on a loose surface, for example. The system detects when a wheel begins to spin and automatically brakes this wheel.

The driving force is diverted to the wheel with better traction.

As a result, the drive torque is transferred more efficiently to the wheels during accelerations.

HDC Hill Descent Control

Concept

HDC Hill Descent Control is a downhill control feature that controls the vehicle speed on steep downhill grades, for instance when driving on unpaved roads.

When the system is active, the vehicle moves at the speed set by the driver, without the driver having to depress the brake pedal.

While HDC is controlling the speed, the system automatically distributes the braking force to the individual wheels. This improves vehicle drivability and driving stability. If necessary, the Antilock Braking System prevents the wheels from locking.

General information

Hill Descent Control can be activated at speeds below approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Speeds can be set between approx. 2 mph/3 km/h and approx. 20 mph/30 km/h. When the vehicle is moving downhill, the system reduces the speed to the set value, within the physical limits.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

HDC

Activating HDC

Press the button. The LED on the button lights up.

Speeds between approx. 2 mph/3 km/h and approx. 20 mph/30 km/h are adopted as the desired speed.

Emergency braking function, Active PDC: the emergency braking function is deactivated.

Additional information:

Emergency brake function, Active PDC, refer to page 218.

Display in the instrument cluster

A symbol and the selected desired speed are displayed.

- Indicator green: HDC is active. The system is actively braking the vehicle.
- Gray display: HDC is on standby.

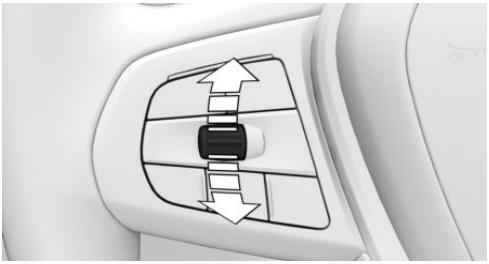
Display in the Head-up Display

The HDC status can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

Increasing or decreasing vehicle speed

Using the cruise control rocker switch

The desired speed can be changed using the cruise control rocker switch on the steering wheel.



- Press the rocker switch up: the speed increases gradually.
- Press the rocker switch up and hold: the speed increases while the rocker switch is pressed.
- Press the rocker switch down: the speed decreases gradually.
- Press the rocker switch down and hold: the speed decreases while the rocker switch is pressed.

Using the brake pedal

While HDC is controlling the speed, the set desired speed can be reduced by depressing the brake pedal.

Deactivating HDC

Press the button again. The LED goes out.

HDC is automatically deactivated above approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Malfunction

If a malfunction occurs, a message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Variable sport steering

The variable sport steering facilitates a direct and agile driving style with little steering effort. The variable sports steering works independently of the current speed, varying the steering ratio in line with the steering angle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2953
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Driver assistance systems

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Cruise control

Concept

Using this system, a desired speed can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel. The system maintains the desired speed. The system accelerates and brakes automatically as needed.

General information

The system can be activated starting at 20 mph/30 km/h.

Depending on the vehicle setting, the cruise control settings can change under certain conditions. For instance, the acceleration can change depending on the drive mode.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

The use of the system can lead to an increased risk of accidents in the following situations, for instance:

- On winding roads.
- In heavy traffic.
- On slippery roads, in fog, snow, or wet conditions, or on a loose road surface.

There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Only use the system if driving at constant speed is possible.

Warning

The desired speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Cruise control on/off.
	Pause cruise control. Continue cruise control with the last setting.

Button	Function
SET	Store speed.
	Rocker switch: Set speed.

Switching cruise control on/off

Switching on

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster light up and the marking on the speedometer is set to the current speed.

Cruise control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

Switching off

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

Pausing cruise control

Interrupting manually

RES CANCEL

When active, press the button.

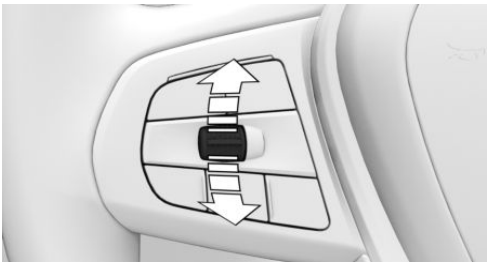
Interrupting automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations, for example:

- When the driver applies the brakes.
- Steptronic transmission: when selector lever position D is disengaged.
- Dynamic Traction Control DTC is activated or DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.
- If DSC Dynamic Stability Control intervenes.

Setting the speed

Maintaining and storing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down once while the system is interrupted.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

The stored speed is displayed on the speedometer.

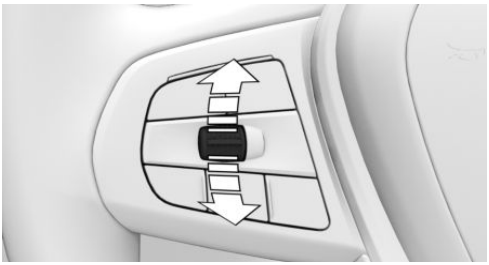
DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

The speed can also be stored by pressing a button.

SET

Press the button.

Changing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2955
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

- Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the desired speed increases or decreases by 1 mph/1 km/h.
- Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

  The maximum adjustable speed depends on the vehicle and the set hybrid system characteristic.
- Pressing the rocker switch to the resistance point and holding it: vehicle accelerates or decelerates without pressure on the accelerator pedal.

  After the rocker switch is released, the vehicle maintains its final speed. Pressing the switch beyond the resistance point causes the vehicle to accelerate more rapidly.

Continuing cruise control

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed.

Make sure that the difference between current speed and stored speed is not too large before calling up the stored speed. Otherwise, unintentional braking or accelerating may occur.

Press the button with the system interrupted.

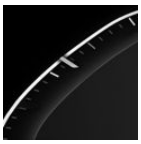
Cruise control is continued with the stored values.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- When the system is switched off.
- When drive-ready state is switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Display in the speedometer



- Green marking: system is active, the marking indicates the desired speed.
- Grey marking: system is interrupted, the marking indicates the stored speed.
- No marking: system is switched off.

Indicator light

- Indicator light green: system is active.
- Gray indicator light: the system has been interrupted.
- No indicator light: system is switched off.

Displays in the Head-up Display

Some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

The symbol is displayed when the set desired speed is reached.

System limits

The desired speed is also maintained downhill. The speed may not be maintained on uphill grades if the drive power is insufficient.

Depending on the drive mode, the vehicle may exceed or drop below the set desired speed in some situations; for instance, on downhill or uphill grades.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2956

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go function ACC

Concept

Using this system, a desired speed and a distance to a vehicle ahead can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel.

The system maintains the desired speed on clear roads. The vehicle accelerates or brakes automatically.

If a vehicle is driving ahead of you, the system adjusts the speed of your vehicle so that the set distance to the vehicle ahead is maintained. The speed is adjusted as far as the given situation allows.

General information

Depending on the vehicle setting, the cruise control settings can change under certain conditions. For instance, the acceleration can change depending on the drive mode.

The distance can be adjusted in several steps. For safety reasons, it depends on the respective speed.

If the vehicle ahead of you brakes to a halt, and then proceeds to drive again within a brief period, the system is able to detect this within the given system limits.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

The desired speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Risk of accident due to too high speed differences to other vehicles, for instance in the following situations:

- When fast approaching a slowly moving vehicle.
- Vehicle suddenly swerving into own lane.
- When fast approaching standing vehicles.

There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2957
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Cruise control on/off.
SET	Store/maintain speed.
RES CANCEL	Pause cruise control. Continue cruise control with the last setting.
	With steering and traffic jam assistant: Adjust distance.
	Without steering and traffic jam assistant: Reduce distance.
	Without steering and traffic jam assistant: Increase the distance.
	Rocker switch: Set speed.
	With steering and traffic jam assistant: Steering and traffic jam assistant including Traffic Jam Assist on/off.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windshield.
- Front radar sensor.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 39.

Area of application

The system is best used on well-constructed roads.

The minimum speed that can be set is 20 mph/30 km/h.

The maximum speed that can be set is limited and, e.g., depends on the vehicle and the vehicle equipment version.

Higher speeds can be selected when driving with the combustion engine if the system is switched to cruise control without distance control.

The system can also be activated when stationary.

Switching on/off and interrupting cruise control

Switching on

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster light up and the mark in the speedometer is set to the current speed.

Cruise control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

Switching off

To switch off the system while standing, step on brake pedal at the same time.

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

Interrupting manually

RES CANCEL When active, press the button on the steering wheel.

If interrupting the system while stationary, press on the brake pedal at the same time.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2958

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

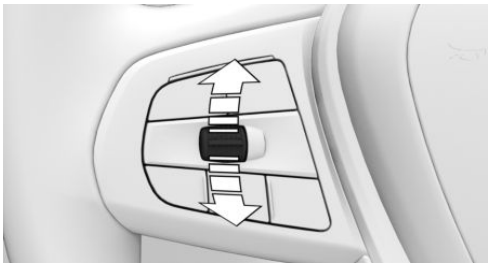
Interrupting automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations:

- When the driver applies the brakes.
- When selector lever position D is disengaged.
- Dynamic Traction Control DTC is activated or DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.
- If DSC Dynamic Stability Control intervenes.
- If the safety belt and the driver's door are opened while the vehicle is standing still.
- If the system has not detected objects for an extended period, for instance on a road with very little traffic without curb or shoulder markings.
- If the detection range of the radar is impaired, for instance by dirt or heavy fog.
- After a longer stationary period when the vehicle has been braked to a stop by the system.

Setting the speed

Maintaining and storing the speed



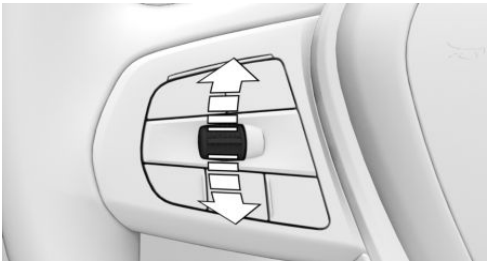
Press the rocker switch up or down once while the system is interrupted. The system will be activated.

The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

The stored speed is displayed on the speedometer.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

Changing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

- Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the desired speed increases or decreases by 1 mph/1 km/h.
- Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

Hold the rocker switch in position to repeat the action.

Adjusting the distance

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to the system limits, braking can be late. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Be aware to the traffic situation at all times. Adjust the distance to the traffic and weather conditions and maintain the prescribed safety distance, possibly by braking.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2959
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

With steering and traffic jam assistant: adjusting distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Without steering and traffic jam assistant: reducing distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Instrument cluster will display selected distance.

Without steering and traffic jam assistant: increasing distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Instrument cluster will display selected distance.

Continuing cruise control

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed.

Make sure that the difference between current speed and stored speed is not too large before calling up the stored speed. Otherwise, unintentional braking or accelerating may occur.

Press the button with the system interrupted.

Cruise control is continued with the stored values.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- When the system is switched off.
- When drive-ready state is switched off.

Changing between cruise control with/without distance control

Safety information

Warning

The system does not react to traffic driving ahead of you, but instead maintains the stored speed. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions and brake as needed.

Changing to cruise control without distance control

Distance control can be switched off and on when driving with cruise control activated.

With steering and traffic jam assistant: press and hold this button.

Without steering and traffic jam assistant:

Press and hold this button.

Press and hold this button.

In order to switch back to Cruise control with distance control, press the button again.

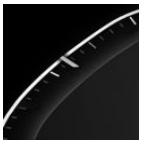
After switching, a Check Control message is displayed.

Displays in the instrument cluster

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the displays in the instrument cluster may vary.

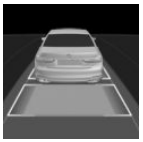
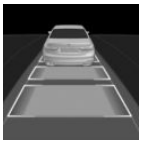
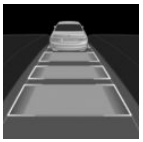
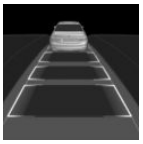
Display in the speedometer



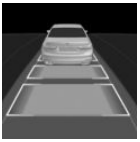
- Green marking: system is active, the marking indicates the desired speed.
- Grey marking: system is interrupted, the marking indicates the stored speed.
- No marking: system is switched off.

Distance to vehicle ahead of you

Selected distance to the vehicle ahead of you is shown.

Symbol	Description
	Distance 1
	Distance 2
	Distance 3
	Distance 4 This value is set automatically after the system is switched on.
	No distance control display, as the accelerator pedal is being pressed.

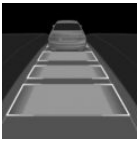
Detected vehicle

Symbol	Description
	Green symbol: A vehicle has been detected ahead of you.

When the distance to the detected vehicle increases, the vehicle symbol in the distance display will move away.

If necessary, independent drive-off, such as by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by pressing the rocker switch.

Indicator/warning lights

Symbol	Description
	Indicator light green: system is active. No indicator light: system is switched off.
	Vehicle symbol flashes: The conditions are not adequate for the system to work. The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.
	The vehicle symbol and distance bars flash red and an acoustic signal sounds: Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.
	System interrupted.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2961
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Displays in the Head-up Display

Desired speed

Some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

The symbol is displayed when the set desired speed is reached.

Distance information

The symbol is displayed when the distance from the vehicle traveling ahead is too short.

The distance information is active in the following situations:

- Active Cruise Control switched off.
- Display in the Head-up Display selected.
  Head-Up Display, refer to page 162.
- Distance too short.
- Speed greater than approx. 40 mph/70 km/h.

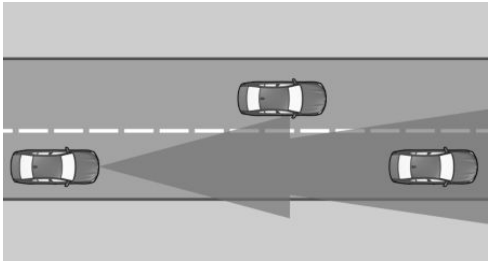
System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 39.
- Radar sensors, refer to page 40.

Detection range



The detection capacity of the system and the automatic braking capacity are limited.

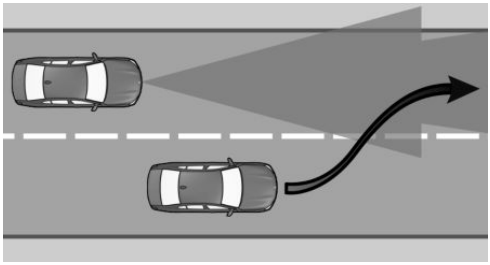
Two-wheeled vehicles for instance might not be detected.

Deceleration

The system does not decelerate in the following situations:

- For pedestrians or similarly slow-moving road users.
- Depending on the equipment, with red traffic lights.
- For cross traffic.
- For oncoming traffic.

Merging vehicles

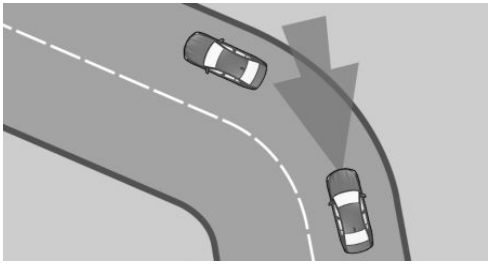


A vehicle driving in front of you is not detected until it is completely within the same lane as your vehicle.

If a vehicle driving ahead of you suddenly merges into your lane, the system may not be able to automatically restore the selected distance. It may not be possible to restore the selected distance in certain situations, including if you are driving significantly faster than vehicles driving ahead of you, for instance when rapidly approaching a truck. When a vehicle driving ahead of you is reliably detected, the system requests that the driver intervene by braking and carrying out evasive maneuvers, if needed.

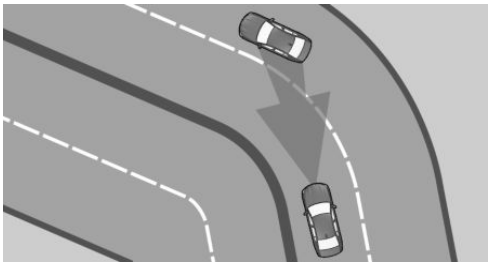
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2962

Cornering



When the desired speed is too high for a curve, the speed is reduced slightly. Because curves may not be anticipated in advance, drive into a curve at an appropriate speed.

The system has a limited detection range. Situations can arise in tight curves where a vehicle driving ahead will not be detected or will be detected very late.



When you approach a curve the system may briefly report vehicles in the next lane due to the bend of the curve. If the system decelerates you may compensate it by briefly accelerating. After releasing the accelerator pedal the system is reactivated and controls speed independently.

Driving off

In some situations, the vehicle cannot drive off automatically; for example:

- On steep uphill grades.
- In front of bumps in the road.
- With a heavy trailer.

In these cases, step on the accelerator pedal.

Weather

The following restrictions can occur under unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- Poorer vehicle recognition.
- Short-term interruptions for vehicles that are already recognized.

Drive attentively, and react to the current traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for instance by braking, steering or evading.

Drive power

The desired speed is also maintained downhill. The speed may not be maintained on uphill grades if the drive power is insufficient.

Depending on the drive mode, the vehicle may exceed or drop below the set desired speed in some situations; for instance, on downhill or uphill grades.

Steering assistant

Concept

The system assists the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane. For this purpose, the system executes supporting steering movements, for instance when driving in a curve.

General information

Depending on the speed, the system orients itself according to the lane markings or vehicles in front.

Sensors on the steering wheel detect whether the steering wheel is being touched.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traf-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2963
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

fic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Steering and traffic jam assistant on/off.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windshield.
- Front radar sensor.
- Radar sensors, side, front.
- Radar sensors, side, rear.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 39.

Functional requirements

- Speed below 130 mph/210 km/h.
- Sufficient lane width.
- Above approx. 43 mph, 70 km/h: lane marking on both sides is detected.
- Below approx. 43 mph, 70 km/h: lane marking on both sides or a vehicle driving ahead is detected.
- Hands on the steering wheel rim.
- Wide curves.
- Drive in the center of the lane.
- Turn signal switched off.
- The sensor system calibration process is complete.

Switching on/off

Switching on

Press the button on the steering wheel.

Steering wheel symbol lights up gray.

The system is on standby and does not manipulate steering.

System activates automatically as soon as all function conditions are fulfilled.

Steering wheel symbol lights up green.

The system is active.

With the system switched on, the person warning with City braking function and the side collision mitigation are active.

Switching off

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator goes out.

The system does not perform supportive steering wheel movements.

Interrupting automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations, for example:

- At a speed above 130 mph/210 km/h.
- When the steering wheel is released.
- When you manipulate steering.
- When leaving own lane.
- When the turn signal is switched on.
- When the lane is too narrow.
- If for a particular time no lane marking is detected and there is no vehicle driving in front.

Steering wheel symbol lights up gray.

The system is on standby and does not manipulate steering.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2964

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

System activates automatically as soon as all function conditions are fulfilled.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Description
	Gray steering wheel symbol: The system is on standby.
	Green steering wheel symbol: The system is activated.
	Depending on equipment, yellow flashing steering wheel symbol: Lane marking driven over. The steering wheel vibrates where applicable.
	Yellow steering wheel symbol and a signal sounds, if applicable: System interruption is imminent.
	Depending on equipment, steering wheel symbol flashes red, signal sounds: System is switching off.
	Green steering wheel symbol and lane marking symbol: The system supports the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane.
	Green steering wheel symbol, gray lane marking symbol: No lane marking detected, the vehicle follows the vehicle ahead. The limits of steering support when cornering may have been reached.
	Yellow steering wheel symbol: The hands are not grasping the steering wheel. The system is still active.
	Red steering wheel symbol and a signal sounds: The hands are not grasping the steering wheel. System interruption is imminent. It is possible that the system will not execute any supporting steering movements. With Active Cruise Control, the system may reduce the speed.

Displays in the Head-up Display

All system information can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

System limits

General information

The system cannot be activated or meaningfully used in certain situations.

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2965
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

- Cameras, refer to page 39.
- Radar sensors, refer to page 40.

Hands on the steering wheel

The sensors cannot detect hand-steering wheel contact in the following situations:

- Driving with gloves.
- Protective covers on the steering wheel.

Narrow lanes

When driving within narrow lanes, the system cannot be activated or effectively used, for instance in the following situations:

- In construction areas.
- Depending on the equipment, with automatic formation of emergency lanes.
- Within city limits.

Weather

The following restrictions can occur under unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- Poorer recognition of vehicles and lane markings.
- Short-term interruptions for vehicles that are already recognized.

Drive attentively, and react to the current traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for instance by braking, steering or evading.

Parking assistance systems

Concept

The parking assistance systems support the driver in parking and maneuvering.

General information

The parking assistance systems comprise the following individual systems.

Additional information:

- PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 215.
- Depending on equipment version: emergency brake function, Active PDC, refer to page 218.
- Side parking aid, refer to page 219.
- Without Surround View: rearview camera, refer to page 220.
- Parking assistant, refer to page 223.
- Surround View with rearview camera, refer to page 227.
- Panorama View, refer to page 233.
- Remote 3D View, refer to page 234.
- Cross traffic warning, refer to page 235.

PDC Park Distance Control

Concept

PDC is a support when parking. Objects that you are approaching slowly in front of or behind the vehicle are indicated by signal tones and a display on the Control Display.

Depending on the equipment version: obstacles at the side of the vehicle that are detected by the side ultrasonic sensors may also be reported by the side parking aid.

General information

The range of the system, depending on obstacles and environmental conditions, is approx. 6 ft/2 m.

An acoustic warning sounds in case of an impending collision at a distance to the object of approx. 27 in/70 cm.

For objects behind the vehicle, the acoustic warning is already issued at a distance to the object of approx. 5 ft/1.50 m.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2966

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Due to high speeds when PDC Park Distance Control is activated, the warning can be delayed due to physical circumstances. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Avoid approaching an object too fast. Avoid driving off fast while PDC Park Distance Control is not yet active.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Ultrasound sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Depending on the equipment: ultrasonic sensors on the side.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 39.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system switches on automatically in the following situations:

- If selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.
- Depending on the equipment version: while approaching detected obstacles if the speed is slower than approx. 2.5 mph/4 km/h. The activation distance depends on the situation in question.

You may switch automatic activation when obstacles are detected on and off.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. If necessary, "Automatic PDC Activation"
6. "Automatic PDC Activation"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Depending on equipment, an additional camera view is also switched on.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on, if needed.

Switching on/off manually

Press the park assistance button.

- On: the LED lights up.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2967
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

▷ Off: the LED goes out.

The rearview camera image is displayed if the reverse gear is engaged when pressing the park assistance button.

Depending on the equipment version, the system cannot be switched off manually if the reverse gear is engaged.

Warning

Signal tones

General information

An intermittent tone indicates when the vehicle is approaching an object. E.g., when an object is detected to the left rear of the vehicle, a signal tone sounds from the left rear speaker.

The shorter the distance to the object, the shorter the intervals.

When the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 8 in/20 cm, a continuous tone is sounded.

When there are objects in front of and behind the vehicle at the same time, with a distance smaller than approx. 8 in/20 cm, an alternating constant tone will sound.

Steptronic transmission: the intermittent tone and constant tone are switched off if the selector lever position P is engaged.

The intermittent tone is switched off after a short time when the vehicle is stationary.

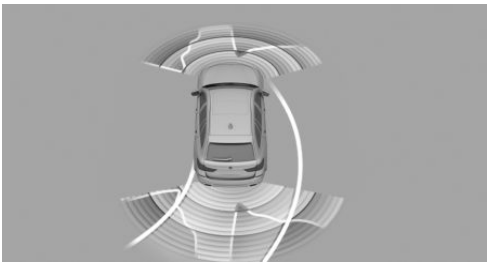
Volume

The PDC signal tone volume can be adjusted.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. "Volume PDC signal"
6. Set the desired value.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Visual warning



The approach of the vehicle to an object is shown on the Control Display. Objects that are farther away are already displayed on the Control Display before a signal sounds.

The display appears as soon as PDC is activated.

The range of the sensors is represented in the colors green, yellow and red when obstacles are detected.

Lanes are faded in for better estimation of the required space.

When the image of the rearview camera is displayed, the switch can be made to PDC or to a different view with obstacle markings as needed:

1. Press the Controller to the left, if needed.
2. For instance "Park. sensors only"

Cross traffic warning: depending on the equipment, it is warned in the PDC display against vehicles approaching in the front or rear from the side.

Additional information:

Cross traffic warning, refer to page 235.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2968

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

With trailer or trailer power socket in use

With a trailer, a trailer power socket in use or when trailer towing is activated, the rear PDC functions will be switched off.

White symbol is displayed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the range of the sensors is shown as a shaded area on the Control Display.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Ultrasonic sensors, refer to page 41.

Limits of ultrasonic measurement

The detection of objects with ultrasonic measurements can run into physical limits, e.g., in the following situations:

- With obstacles and persons at the edge of the lane.
- Low objects already displayed, for instance curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.

False warnings

Reaching the system limits can cause false warnings.

To prevent false alarms, switch off automatic Park Distance Control PDC activation on obstacle detection, for instance in automatic car washes.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

White symbol is displayed, and the range of the sensors is dimmed on the Control Display.

PDC Park Distance Control has failed. Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Depending on equipment version: emergency brake function, Active PDC

Concept

The emergency braking function of PDC initiates an emergency braking in case of acute risk of collision.

General information

Due to system limits, a collision cannot be prevented under all circumstances.

The function is available below walking speed when driving in reverse or rolling backward.

A press of the accelerator pedal interrupts the brake intervention.

After emergency braking to a stop, further creeping toward an obstacle is possible. Proceed with caution. To move forward, lightly press the accelerator pedal and release as needed.

If the accelerator pedal is depressed longer, the vehicle drives off. Manual braking is possible at any time.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2969
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

The system uses the ultrasonic sensors of the Park Distance Control PDC and the Parking Assistant.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Additionally, the Safety Instructions for the PDC Park Distance Control and the Automatic Parking Assistant apply.

Additional information:

- PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 215.
- Parking assistant, refer to page 223.

Settings

It is possible to set which areas on the vehicle will be protected by the system.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. "Active PDC with braking interv."
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

System limits

The limits of the systems of the Park Distance Control PDC and the Parking Assistant apply.

The system cannot be used in the following situations, for example:

- When Hill Descent Control is active, the emergency braking function is deactivated.
  Hill Descent Control HDC, refer to page 201.
- When driving with a trailer.

If required, deactivate the system via iDrive where applicable.

With Parking Assistant: side parking aid

Concept

The system warns of obstacles on the side of the vehicle.

General information

The system uses the ultrasonic sensors of the Park Distance Control PDC and the Parking Assistant.

Safety information

Warning

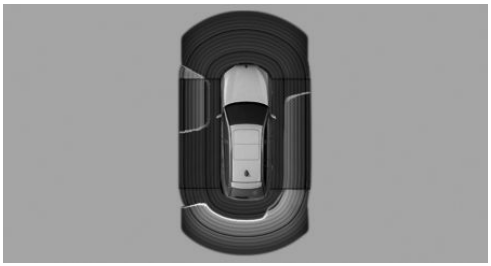
The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Additionally, the Safety Instructions for the PDC Park Distance Control and the Automatic Parking Assistant apply.

Additional information:

- PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 215.
- Parking assistant, refer to page 223.

Display



To protect the sides of the vehicle, obstacle markings are displayed on the sides of the vehicle.

- Color markings: warning against detected obstacles.
- Gray markings, hatched area: no obstacles were detected.
- No markings, black area: the area next to the vehicle was not yet captured.

Limits of the side parking aid

The system only displays stationary obstacles that were previously detected by sensors while passing them.

The system does not detect whether an obstacle moves later on. If the vehicle is stationary, the markings are shown in black after a certain time. The area next to the vehicle must be newly captured.

The side parking aid is not available when the trailer socket is occupied or trailer towing is activated.

Additionally, the limits of the systems of the Park Distance Control PDC and the Parking Assistant apply.

Without Surround View: rearview camera

Concept

The rearview camera provides assistance in parking and maneuvering backwards. The area behind the vehicle is shown on the Control Display.

Additionally, assistance functions can be shown in the display, e.g., help lines.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Depending on the vehicle equipment: button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Rearview camera.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2971
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 39.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is switched on automatically if selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on, if needed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment: switching on/off manually

Press the park assistance button.

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

The parking assistance functions are shown on the Control Display.

Switching the view via iDrive

If the rearview camera view is not displayed, change the view via iDrive:

1. If necessary, tilt the controller to the side.
2. "Rear view camera"

The rearview camera image is displayed.

Functional requirements

- The tailgate is fully closed.
- Keep the recording range of the camera open. Protruding cargo, roof rack systems or trailers can limit the detection range of the camera.

Display on the Control Display

Function bars

The assistance functions can be activated manually via the function bars on the sides of the Control Display.

1. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.
2. With corresponding equipment: "Camera image"
3. ▷ "Parking aid lines".

   Pathway lines and turning radius lines are displayed.

   ▷ "Obstacle mark.".

   Depending on the vehicle equipment, the obstacles detected by PDC Park Distance Control are displayed by markings.

Zoom on trailer hitch:

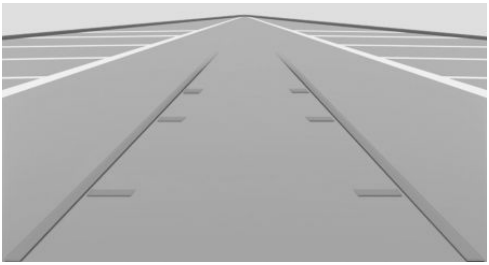
1. Move the Controller to the left, if needed.
2. "Trailer hitch".

   A zoomed image of the trailer hitch is shown.

More than one assistance function can be active at the same time.

Parking aid lines

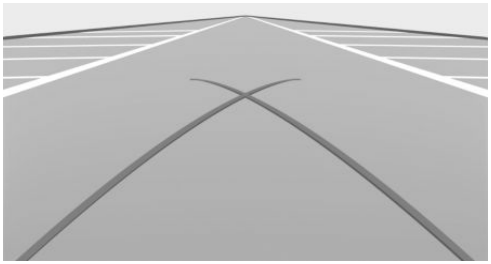
Pathway lines



Pathway lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.

Pathway lines depend on the steering angle and are continuously adjusted to the steering wheel movements.

Turning radius lines



Turning radius lines can only be superimposed on the camera image together with pathway lines.

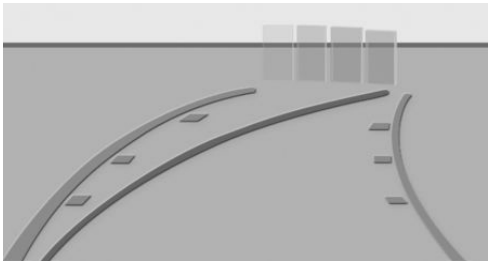
Turning radius lines show the course of the smallest possible turning radius on a level road.

Only one turning radius line is displayed after the steering wheel is turned past a certain angle.

Parking using pathway and turning radius lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the red turning radius line leads to within the limits of the parking space.
2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the green pathway line covers the corresponding turning radius line.

Obstacle marking



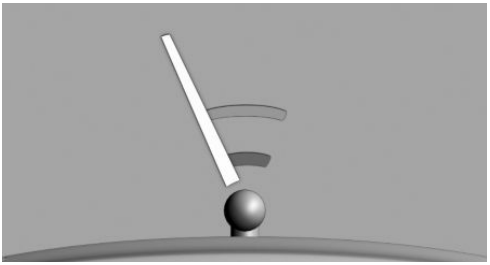
Depending on the vehicle equipment, obstacles behind the vehicle are detected by the PDC Park Distance Control sensors.

Obstacle markings can be faded into the image of the rearview camera.

The colored thresholds of the obstacle markings match the markings of the PDC Park Distance Control.

Zoom on trailer hitch

To make it easier to attach a trailer, you can zoom in on the view of the trailer hitch.



Two static circle segments show the distance between the trailer and the trailer hitch.

A docking line dependent on the steering angle helps with aiming for the trailer with the trailer hitch.

When zooming in, remember that the view may no longer show certain obstacles.

Setting brightness and contrast via iDrive

With the rearview camera switched on:

1. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.
2. "Camera image"
3. To perform the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Brightness"
   - ▷ "Contrast"

System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

▷ Cameras, refer to page 39.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2973
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Deactivated camera

When the camera is deactivated, for instance when the tailgate is open, the camera image is displayed hatched in gray.

Detection of objects

Very low obstacles as well as high, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected by the system.

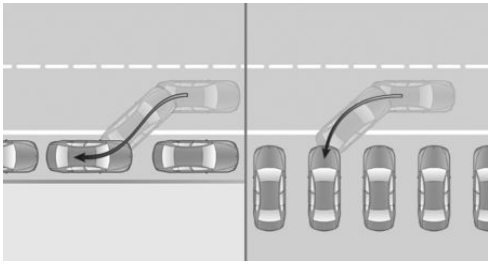
Depending on the vehicle equipment, some assistance functions also consider data from the PDC Park Distance Control.

Follow the notes in the PDC Park Distance Control chapter.

The objects displayed on the Control Display may be closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance from the objects on the display.

With Parking Assistant: Parking Assistant

Concept



The system supports the driver in the following situations:

- When parking parallel to the road, parallel parking.
- When reverse parking diagonally to the road, diagonal parking. The system orients itself with the middle of the parking space during diagonal parking.

General information

Handling

Parking assistant handling is divided into three steps:

- Switching on and activating.
- Parking space search.
- Parking.

System status and instructions on required actions are displayed on the Control Display.

Ultrasound sensors measure parking spaces on both sides of the vehicle.

Steptronic transmission

The parking assistant calculates the best possible parking line and takes control of the following functions during the parking operation:

- Steering.
- Accelerating and braking.
- Changing gears.

Press and hold the park assistance button for the duration of the parking operation.

The parking operation is automatic.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2974

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Warning

If the trailer hitch is used, the driver assistance system can cause damage due to covered sensors. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. The driver assistance system should not be used during trailer towing or if the trailer hitch is used, for instance bicycle rack.

NOTICE

The parking assistant can steer the vehicle over or onto curbs. There is a risk of damage to property. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

The safety information for PDC Park Distance Control and for opening the tailgate applies in addition.

Additional information:

- PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 215.
- Tailgate, refer to page 96.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Ultrasound sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors, side.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 39.

Functional requirements

For measuring parking spaces

- Maximum speed while driving forward approx. 22 mph/35 km/h.
- Maximum distance to row of parked vehicles: 5 ft/1.5 m.

Suitable parking space

General information:

- Gap behind an object that has a min. length of 1.7 ft/0.5 m.
- Gap between two objects with a minimum length of approx. 1.7 ft/0.5 m.

Parallel parking to the road:

- Min. length of gap between two objects: your vehicle's length plus approx. 2.6 ft/0.8 m.
- Minimum depth: approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.

Diagonal parking:

- Minimum width of the gap: own vehicle's width plus approx. 2.3 ft/0.7 m.
- Minimum depth: your vehicle's length.

  The depth of diagonal parking spaces must be estimated by the driver. Due to technical limitations, the system is only able to approximate the depth of diagonal parking spaces.

For the parking operation

- Doors and tailgate are closed.
- The parking brake is released.

Steptronic transmission:

- Driver's safety belt is fastened.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2975
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Switching on with the button

Press the park assistance button.

The LED lights up.

The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.

Parking assistant is activated automatically.

Switching on with reverse gear

1. Shift into reverse.

   The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.
2. If necessary, activate: "Autom. Parking"

Switching on via iDrive

Display of the rearview camera or PDC view must be active.

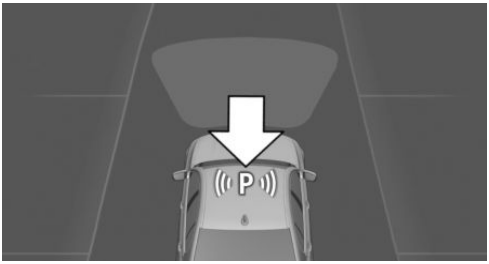
1. Move the Controller to the right.
2. Activate the parking assistant on the Control Display: "Autom. Parking"

Display on the Control Display

System activated/deactivated

Symbol	Meaning
	Gray: the system is not available. White: the system is available but not activated.
	System is activated.
	Parking space search is active.
	The parking procedure is active. The system takes over the steering.

Parking space search and system status



- Parking assistant is activated and parking space search is active.
- Control Display shows suitable parking spaces at the edge of the road next to the vehicle symbol. When Park Assistant is active, suitable parking spaces are highlighted and an acoustic signal sounds.
- If a diagonal or parallel parking space is clearly detected, the system automatically adjusts the suitable parking method. In the case of parking spaces suitable for parallel and diagonal parking, a selection menu is displayed. In this case, the desired parking method must be selected manually.
- The parking procedure is active. The system takes over the steering.
- Parking space search is always active whenever the vehicle is moving forward slow and straight, even if the system is deactivated. When the system is deactivated, the displays on the Control Display are shown in gray.

Switching signal tone for suitable parking spaces on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. "Automatic Parking"
6. "Alert if parking space detected"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Signal tones of the PDC Park Distance Control

During an automatic parking operation, no intermittent tone will sound from the PDC Park Distance Control.

A continuous tone sounds when the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 8 inches/20 cm.

Parking using the parking assistant

Parking

1. Switching on and activating the parking assistant.

   For this, engage the reverse gear or press the parking assist button and activate the system on the Control Display, if needed.

   Parking assistant is activated.
2. Pass the row of parked vehicles forward at a speed of up to approx. 22 mph/35 km/h and at a distance of maximum 5 ft/1.5 m.

   The status of the parking space search and possible parking spaces are displayed on the Control Display.
3. Confirm the suggested parking space for the parking operation: switch on the turn signal on the corresponding side.

   The system takes over the steering.
4. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

   Steptronic transmission:

   Press and hold the park assistance button for the duration of the parking operation. At the end of the parking operation, the P selector lever position is set.

   The end of the parking operation is indicated on the Control Display.
5. Adjust the parking position yourself, if needed.

Interrupting manually

The parking assistant can be interrupted at any time:

- Steptronic transmission: release the park assistance button during the parking procedure.
- "Autom. Parking": select the symbol on the Control Display.

Interrupting automatically

The system is interrupted automatically in the following situations:

- When the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes over steering.
- Possibly on snow-covered or slippery road surfaces.
- When there are obstacles that are hard to overcome, such as curbs.
- When there are obstacles that suddenly appear.
- If the PDC Park Distance Control displays clearances that are too small.
- When a maximum number of parking attempts or the time taken for parking is exceeded.
- When switching to another function on the Control Display.

Steptronic transmission:

- When the park assistance button is released.
- If the tailgate is open.
- If doors are open.
- When setting the parking brake.
- During acceleration.
- When the brake pedal remains pressed for an extended period while the vehicle is stationary.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2977
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

▷ When unfastening the driver's safety belt.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Resuming

An interrupted parking procedure can be continued, if needed.

Reactivate the parking assistant and follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Switching off

The system can be switched off manually:

Press the park assistance button.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

No parking assistance

The parking assistant does not offer assistance in the following situations:

▷ In tight curves.

▷ When towing a trailer.

▷ For diagonal parking spaces.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

▷ Ultrasonic sensors, refer to page 41.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

▷ On bumpy road surfaces such as gravel roads.

▷ On slippery ground.

▷ On steep uphill or downhill grades.

▷ With accumulations of leaves/snow in the parking space.

▷ In case of changes to an already-measured parking space.

▷ With ditches or edges, for instance an edge of a port.

▷ Parking spaces that are not suitable may be detected or suitable parking spaces may not be detected at all.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

The parking assistant failed. Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

With Parking Assistant Plus: Surround View

Concept

The system provides assistance in parking and maneuvering. The area around the vehicle is shown on the Control Display.

General information

Several cameras capture the area from different selectable perspectives.

The following camera perspectives can be displayed:

▷ Automatic camera perspective: the system shows the camera perspective suitable for the respective driving situation.

- Rearview camera: for representing the areas behind the vehicle.
- Right-hand and left-hand side view: for representing the areas on the sides of the vehicle.
- Unobstructed camera perspective, movable via iDrive.
- Panorama View: to present cross traffic, for instance at junctions and driveways, depending on the currently engaged gear.

Depending on the view, the vehicle's surroundings or a part of it is depicted.

Additionally, assistance functions are shown in the display, e.g., help lines.

More than one assistance function can be active at the same time.

Some assistance functions can be manually activated.

The following assistance functions are automatically displayed:

- Side parking aid.
- Door opening angle.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Panorama View

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Front camera.
- Top view cameras.
- Rearview camera.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 39.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is switched on automatically if selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.

The camera perspective suitable for the respective driving situation is displayed.

Additional information:

Park Distance Control, turn on/off, refer to page 216.

Switching on/off manually

Press the park assistance button.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2979
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

Depending on the equipment version, the rear-view camera cannot be switched off when the reverse gear is engaged.

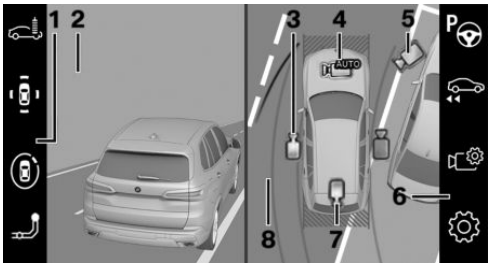
Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on, if needed.

Display on the Control Display

Overview



1 Function bar, left
2 Camera image
3 Side view
4 Automatic camera perspective
5 Movable unobstructed camera perspective
6 Function bar, right
7 Rearview camera
8 Selection window

Function bar on the left

The left function bar can be used for the direct selection of various views via iDrive. Move the Controller to the left, if needed.

- "Car wash".
- "Parking": around the vehicle.
- "3D view": available camera.
- "Trailer hitch".

Side view

The side view can be selected for the right or left vehicle side.

This view helps when positioning the vehicle at the curb or with other obstacles on the side by displaying the side surroundings.

The side view looks from rear to front and in case of danger, focuses automatically on possible obstacles.

Automatic camera perspective

The automatic camera perspective shows a steering-dependent view in the respective driving direction.

This perspective adapts to the respective driving situation.

As soon as obstacles are detected, the view changes to a fixed display of the area in front or at the rear behind the bumper or, if necessary, changes to a side view.

When reverse gear is engaged, the automatic camera perspective is, if necessary, closed and the system uses a fixed perspective of the rear-view camera. If necessary, manually select the automatic camera perspective when reverse gear is engaged. The automatic camera perspective will be retained for the current parking operation.

Movable unobstructed camera perspective

With selection of the movable camera perspective, a circle appears on the Control Display.

By turning the Controller or via touch function, specified perspectives on the circle can be selected.

The current perspective is marked with a camera symbol.

To leave the function, move the Controller sideways and select another camera function.

Function bar on the right

Assistance functions can be activated and settings can be entered via the right function bar via iDrive. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.

- "Autom. Parking".
- "Back-up Assistant".
- "Camera image":
  - "Brightness".
  - "Contrast".
  - "Parking aid lines".
  - "Obstacle mark.".
- "Settings": apply settings, for instance to use the activation points for Panorama View.

Rearview camera

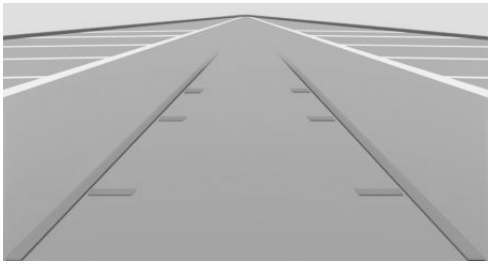
This view shows the picture of the rearview camera.

Selection window

The individual camera perspectives can be selected in the selection window via iDrive.

Parking aid lines

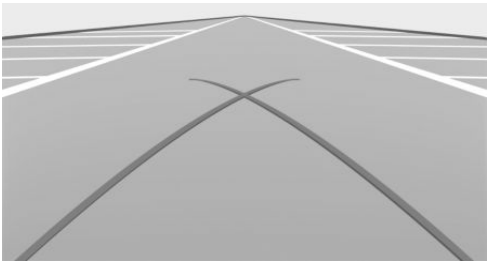
Pathway lines



Pathway lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.

Pathway lines depend on the steering angle and are continuously adjusted to the steering wheel movements.

Turning radius lines



Turning radius lines can only be superimposed on the camera image together with pathway lines.

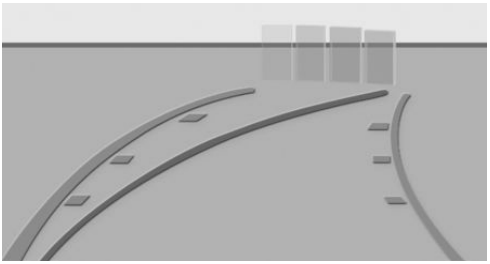
Turning radius lines show the course of the smallest possible turning radius on a level road.

Only one turning radius line is displayed after the steering wheel is turned past a certain angle.

Parking using pathway and turning radius lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the red turning radius line leads to within the limits of the parking space.
2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the green pathway line covers the corresponding turning radius line.

Obstacle marking



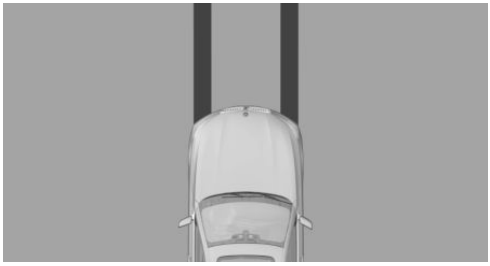
Obstacles behind the vehicle are detected by the PDC Park Distance Control sensors.

Obstacle markings can be shown in the camera image.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2981
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

The colored thresholds of the obstacle markings match the markings of the PDC Park Distance Control.

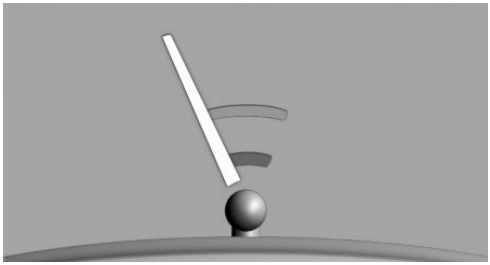
Car wash view



The car wash view assists when entering a car wash by displaying the floor and the vehicle's own track.

Zoom on trailer hitch

To make it easier to attach a trailer, you can zoom in on the view of the trailer hitch.



Two static circle segments show the distance between the trailer and the trailer hitch.

A docking line dependent on the steering angle helps with aiming for the trailer with the trailer hitch.

When zooming in, remember that the view may no longer show certain obstacles.

Side parking aid

Concept

The system warns of obstacles on the side of the vehicle.

Display

To protect the sides of the vehicle, obstacle markings are displayed on the sides of the vehicle.

- No markings: no obstacles were detected.
- Color markings: warning against detected obstacles.

Limits of the side parking aid

The system only displays stationary obstacles that were previously detected by sensors while passing them.

The system does not detect whether an obstacle moves later on. For this reason, at standstill, the markings are not shown anymore in the display after a certain time. The area next to the vehicle must be newly captured.

Door opening angle

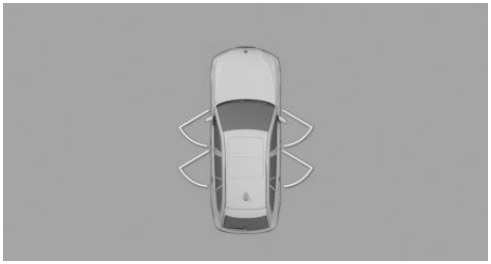
Concept

If obstacle marking is activated, the system indicates fixed obstacles that obstruct the opening angles of the doors.

The system does not provide a warning of approaching traffic.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2982

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20



Steptronic transmission: the maximum opening angles of the doors are displayed in selector lever position P. As soon as the vehicle begins moving, the opening angles are replaced by parking aid lines.

Limits of the display

The vehicle's surroundings are displayed with distorted image for technical reasons.

Even if the symbols for the door opening angles do not cross other objects on the Control Display, the following needs to be noted when parking next to other objects:

Because of the perspective, higher, protruding objects may be closer than they appear on the Control Display.

Setting brightness and contrast

Brightness and contrast can be adjusted with Surround View or Panorama View switched on.

1. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.
2. "Camera image"
3. To perform the desired setting:
   - "Brightness"
   - "Contrast"

Functional limitations

The system can be used only to a limited extent in the following situations:

- In poor light.
- In case of soiled cameras.
- With a door open.
- With the tailgate open.
- With exterior mirrors folded in.

Gray hatched areas with symbol, for instance open door, in the camera image mark areas that are currently not displayed.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 39.

Non-visible areas

Because of the camera angle, the areas under the vehicle cannot be viewed by the cameras.

Detection of objects

Very low obstacles as well as high, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected by the system.

Some assistance functions also consider data from the PDC Park Distance Control.

Follow the notes in the PDC Park Distance Control chapter.

The objects displayed on the Control Display may be closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance from the objects on the display.

Additional information:

PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 215.

Malfunction

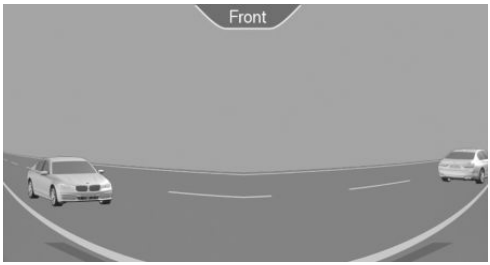
A camera malfunction is displayed on the Control Display.

A yellow symbol is displayed and the recording range of the malfunctioning camera is displayed in black on the Control Display.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2983
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

With Parking Assistant Plus: Panorama View

Concept



The system provides an early look at cross traffic at blind driveways and intersections.

General information

Road users concealed by obstacles to the left and right of the vehicle can only be detected relatively late from the driver's seat. The cameras in the front and rear capture the sideways traffic area to improve the view.

Yellow lines in the screen display mark the front and rear end of the vehicle.

The camera image shows different levels of distortion in some areas and is thus not suitable for distance estimations.

Depending on the equipment version, the function can only be used when driving forward.

Additional information:

Surround View, refer to page 227.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Panorama View

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Front camera.
- Depending on the equipment: rearview camera.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 39.

Display on the Control Display

Press the button when the engine is running.

Depending on the driving direction, the image of the respective camera is displayed:

- "Front": front camera image.
- "Rear": rear camera image.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, cross traffic warning can additionally warn of approaching vehicles using radar sensors.

Additional information:

Cross traffic warning, refer to page 235.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2984
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

With navigation system: activation points

Concept

Positions where Panorama View should switch on automatically can be stored as activation points provided that a GPS signal is received.

General information

Up to ten activation points can be stored.

Activation points can be used when driving forward for the front camera.

Storing activation points

1. Drive to the position at which the system is to be switched on, and stop.
2. Press the button.
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Activation point"

   The current position is displayed.
5. "Save activation point"

Activation points are, if possible, stored with town/city and street address, or else with the GPS coordinates.

Using activation points

The use of activation points can be switched on and off.

1. Press the button.
2. Move the Controller to the right.
3. "Settings"
4. "Panorama View, GPS-based"
5. "Panorama View is displayed automatically when set activation points are reached."

Displaying activation points

1. Press the button.
2. Move the Controller to the right.
3. "Manage points"

   A list of all activation points is displayed.

Renaming or deleting activation points

1. Press the button.
2. Move the Controller to the right.
3. "Manage points"

   A list of all activation points is displayed.
4. Select an activation point as needed.
5. To perform the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Rename"
   - ▷ "Delete activation point"
   - ▷ "Delete all activation points"

Functional limitations

The Surround View functional limitations apply.

Additional information:

Surround View, refer to page 227.

System limits

The limits of the Surround View system apply.

Additional information:

Surround View, refer to page 227.

With Parking Assistant Plus: Remote 3D View

Concept

The BMW Connected app and the pictures of the Surround View cameras in combination with the corresponding equipment enable the display of the vehicle's surroundings on a mobile device.

The function displays a momentary view of the situation.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2985
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Front camera.
- Top view cameras.
- Rearview camera.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 39.

Functional requirements

- Data transmission must be activated.

  Data protection, refer to page 68.
- BMW Connected App must be installed on the mobile device.
- ConnectedDrive countries: an activated driver profile with an existing ConnectedDrive account is required.

  Driver profiles, refer to page 69.

Switching the function on/off

Switching on/off with other functions

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "All services incl. analysis"
   - "All vehicle services"

Switching on/off individually

Pre-adjustment

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. "Select services individually"
6. "Connected App and cust. portal"
7. "Remote 3D View"

Switching on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. "Individual selection"

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 39.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional or may not be available in the following situations:

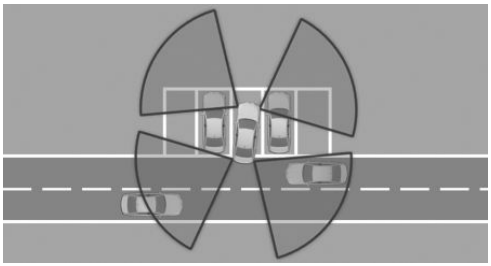
- With a door or the tailgate open. Dark fields in the display indicate areas that are not recorded by the system.
- With exterior mirrors folded in.
- When other camera functions are being performed in the vehicle.
- When the vehicle moves faster than walking speed.
- It may not be possible to use the function in every country.
- For reasons of data protection, the function can only be used three times within two hours.

Cross traffic warning

Concept

At blind driveways or when driving out of diagonal parking spaces, approaching cross traffic is detected sooner by the system than is possible from the driver's seat.

General information



Two radar sensors in the rear bumper monitor the area behind the vehicle.

The system indicates approaching traffic.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the traffic area in front of the vehicle is monitored as well. Two additional radar sensors are located in the front bumpers.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Radar sensors, side, rear.
- Depending on the equipment: radar sensors, side, front.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 39.

Switching on/off

Activating/deactivating the system

With the button

1. Press the park assistance button.
2. Move the Controller to the right.
3. "Settings"
4. "Cross Traffic Warning"
5. "Activate function"

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. "Cross Traffic Warning"
6. "Activate function"

Switching on automatically

If the system was activated on the Control Display, it is automatically switched on as soon as PDC Park Distance Control or Panorama View is active and a gear is engaged.

If reverse gear is engaged, the rear system is switched on.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2987
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the front system is switched on when a forward gear is engaged.

Switching off automatically

The system is automatically switched off in the following situations:

- When the speed exceeds walking speed.
- With the steering and traffic jam assistant active: when a certain driving distance is exceeded.
- With an active parking operation of the parking assistant.

Warning

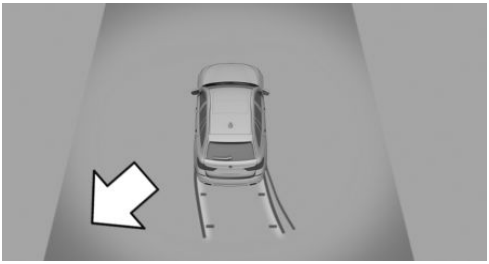
General information

The respective display is called up on the Control Display. A signal tone may sound and the light in the exterior mirror may flash.

Light in the exterior mirror

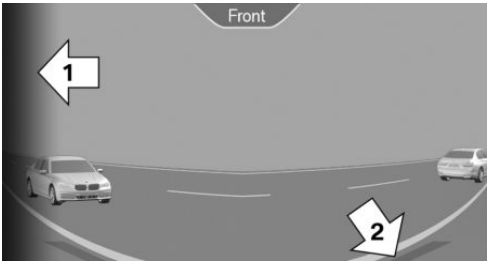
The light in the exterior mirror flashes if vehicles are detected by the rear sensors and your own vehicle is moving backwards.

Display in the PDC Park Distance Control view



In the PDC Park Distance Control view, the respective boundary area flashes red, if vehicles are detected by the sensors.

Display in the camera view



The respective boundary area, arrow 1, in the camera view flashes red, if vehicles are detected by the sensors.

Yellow lines, arrow 2, mark the bumper of your own vehicle.

Acoustic warning

In addition to the optical indicator, a warning signal sounds if your own vehicle moves into the respective direction.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Radar sensors, refer to page 40.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2988
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- In tight curves.
- When crossing objects move at a very slow or a very fast speed.
- If other objects are in the capture range of the sensors, that hide cross traffic.

If the trailer power socket is occupied or trailer towing is activated, for instance during operation with trailer or bicycle rack, cross traffic warning is not available for the area behind the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2989
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Driving comfort

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Chassis components

The chassis components are optimized for the vehicle and its scope of application and thereby ensure the best possible Driving Dynamics.

Adaptive chassis

Concept

This system reduces undesirable vehicle motion when using a sporty driving style or traveling on uneven road surfaces.

General information

The driving dynamics and driving comfort are enhanced depending on the road surface condition and driving style.

Tuning

The system offers different shock absorber settings ranging from comfortable travel to sporty driving.

The various damping settings can be set using Driving Dynamics Control.

Additional information:

Driving Dynamics Control, refer to page 132.

Performance Control

Performance Control enhances the agility of the vehicle.

To increase maneuverability, wheels are braked individually when a sporty driving style is used.

Engine sound

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, you may be able to configure the sound of the engine.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Engine sound"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Climate control

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Interior air quality

The air quality in the vehicle is improved by the following components:

- Emission tested passenger compartment.
- Microfilter.
- Air conditioning system to control the temperature, air flow and recirculated-air mode.

Depending on the equipment:

- Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter.
- Ionization.
- Fragrancing.
- Automatic recirculated-air control AUC.
- Parked-car ventilation.

Automatic climate control

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

Climate control functions

Button	Function
	Temperature.
A/C	Climate control operation.
MAX A/C	Maximum cooling.
AUTO	AUTO program.
	Recirculated-air mode.
	Air flow, manual. Intensity AUTO program.
	Air distribution, manual.
SYNC	SYNC program.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2991
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Button	Function
MAX	Defrost and defog window.
	Rear window defroster.
	Active seat ventilation, refer to page 117.
	Seat heating, refer to page 117.
MENU	Opening the Climate menu. For example, for the following settings: upper body temperature adjustment, parked-car ventilation.

Some of the functions can also be used via voice, e.g., temperature.

Opening the Climate menu

MENU Press the button.

The Climate menu is displayed.

All the climate control functions which can adjusted via iDrive can be called up via the Climate menu, e.g., upper body temperature adjustment, parked-car ventilation.

Switching on/off

Switching on

Press any button except for the following:

- Rear window defroster.
- Left side of air flow button.
- SYNC program.
- Seat heating.
- Seat ventilation.

Switching off

Press and hold the left button until the system switches off.

Temperature

Concept

The automatic climate control achieves the set temperature as quickly as possible, if needed, by using the maximum cooling or heating capacity, and then keeps it constant.

Adjusting

Turn the wheel to set the desired temperature.

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. Otherwise, the automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

Temperature of the ventilation

General information

The temperature of the ventilation in the upper body region can be adjusted.

The temperature is individually adjusted, e.g. colder toward blue, warmer toward red.

The air flow of the ventilation in the upper body region heats or cools noticeably, depending on the adjusted temperature.

This does not change the set interior temperature for the driver and front passenger.

Adjusting

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"

4. "Temperature adjustment"
5. Set the desired temperature.

Air conditioning

Concept

The air in the car's interior will be cooled and dehumidified and, depending on the temperature setting, warmed again.

The car's interior can be cooled with the drive-ready or standby state switched on.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with air conditioning switched on.

Depending on the weather, the windshield and the side windows may fog up briefly when drive-ready state is switched on.

Air conditioning is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops and collects underneath the vehicle.

Maximum cooling

Concept

The system is set to the lowest temperature, optimum air flow and recirculated-air mode with the drive-ready or standby state switched on.

General information

The function is available with external temperatures above approx. 32 °F/0 °C and with the drive-ready state switched on.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the system switched on.

Air flows out of the vents to the upper body region. The vents need to be open for this.

Adjust air flow on the driver's side with the program active.

AUTO program

Concept

The AUTO program cools, ventilates or heats the car's interior automatically.

The air distribution and temperature are controlled automatically depending on the temperature in the car's interior and the desired temperature setting including the selected intensity of the air flow.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the AUTO program switched on.

Depending on the selected settings and outside influences, the air is directed to the windshield, side windows, upper body, and into the floor area.

Air conditioning is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

Point the side vents toward the side windows.

At the same time, a condensation sensor controls the program so as to prevent window condensation as much as possible.

The AUTO program is switched off automatically, when manual air distribution is set.

Intensity

With the AUTO program switched on, the intensity can be adjusted. This changes the automatic control for the air mass.

Press the left or right side of the button: to decrease or increase intensity.

The selected intensity is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2993
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Automatic recirculated-air control AUC

Concept

The automatic recirculated-air control AUC recognizes odors or pollutants in the outside air. The outside air supply is shut off and the interior air is recirculated.

General information

If the system is activated, a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and controls the shut-off automatically.

If the system is deactivated, outside air continuously flows into the car's interior.

With constant recirculated-air mode, the air quality in the car's interior deteriorates and window fogging increases.

Switching on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. If necessary, "Air quality"
5. "Auto-recirculate"

If there is window condensation, switch off recirculated-air mode or defog the windows.

Recirculated-air mode

Concept

You may react to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air flow within the vehicle.

Adjusting

Press the button:

The LED is illuminated when recirculated-air mode is switched on. The supply of outside air is shut off.

When recirculated-air mode is switched off, fresh air is directed into the vehicle's interior.

To prevent window fogging, recirculated-air mode switches off automatically after a certain amount of time, depending on the environmental conditions.

With constant recirculated-air mode, the air quality in the car's interior deteriorates and window fogging increases.

If there is window condensation, switch off recirculated-air mode or defog the windows.

Air flow, manual

Concept

The air flow for climate control can be adjusted manually.

General information

To adjust the air flow manually switch off AUTO program first.

Adjusting

Press the left or right side of the button: to decrease or increase air flow.

The selected air flow is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

The air flow of the automatic climate control may be reduced automatically to save battery power.

Manual air distribution

Concept

The air distribution for climate control can be adjusted manually.

Adjusting

Press the button repeatedly to select a program:

▷ Windows, upper body region, and floor area.

- Upper body region and floor area.
- Floor area.
- Windows and floor area.
- Windows: driver's side only.
- Windows and upper body.
- Upper body region.

The selected air distribution is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

SYNC program

Concept

The following settings of the driver's side can be transferred to the front-passenger side and the rear:

- Temperature.
- Air distribution.

Switching on/off

SYNC Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the SYNC program switched on.

The program is switched off automatically if the settings on the front passenger side or in the rear are changed.

To defrost windows and remove condensation

Concept

Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

Switching on/off

MAX Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the system switched on.

The air flow can be adjusted manually with the system switched on.

AUTO If there is window condensation, press the button or switch on the air conditioning to utilize the condensation sensor. Make sure that air can flow to the windshield.

Rear window defroster

Press the button. The LED lights up.

The function is operational when the drive-ready state is switched on.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter

The microfilter removes dust and pollen from the incoming air.

The activated-charcoal filter also removes gaseous pollutants from the outside air that enters the vehicle.

Have this combined filter changed during vehicle maintenance.

Ventilation

Concept

The air flow directions can be individually adjusted.

Adjusting the ventilation

General information

The air flow directions can be adjusted for direct or indirect ventilation.

Open the vents and position them to ensure effective climate control.

Direct ventilation

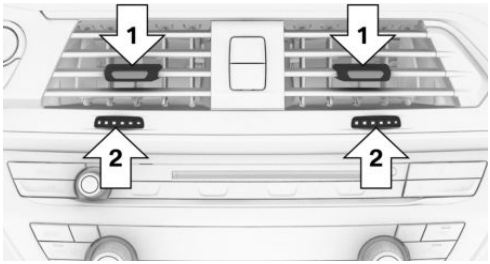
The air flow is directed towards the passengers. The air flow heats or cools noticeably, depending on the adjusted temperature.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2995
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Indirect ventilation

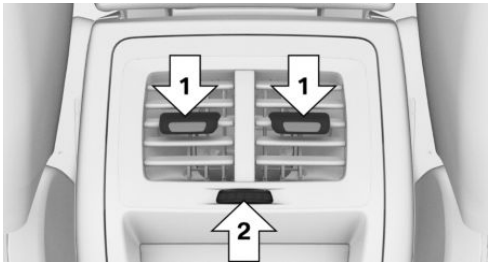
The air flow is not directed towards the passengers. The car's interior is warmed or cooled indirectly, depending on the set temperature.

Front ventilation



- Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 1.
- Thumbwheel for variable opening and closing of the vents, arrow 2.

Ventilation in rear, center



- Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 1.
- Thumbwheel for variable opening and closing of the vents, arrow 2.

Rear automatic climate control

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

Climate control functions

Button	Function
▼ ▲	Temperature.
AUTO	AUTO program.
	Air distribution, manual.
OFF	Switches off the system.
	Seat heating, refer to page 117.

Switching on/off

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Rear climate control"

The rear automatic climate control is not ready for operation if the automatic climate control is switched off or if the function for defrosting the windows and removing condensation is active.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2996
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Using the button: switching on

Press any button except for the following:

- OFF button.
- Seat heating.

Using the button: switching off

OFF Press the button.

Temperature

Concept

The automatic climate control achieves the set temperature as quickly as possible, if needed, by using the maximum cooling or heating capacity, and then keeps it constant.

Adjusting

Press the left or right side of the button: to decrease or increase temperature.

The selected temperature is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. Otherwise, the automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

AUTO program

Concept

Air flow, air distribution and temperature are controlled automatically.

Switching on/off

AUTO Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the AUTO program switched on.

Depending on the selected temperature and outside influences, the air is directed to the upper body and into the floor area.

Manual air distribution

Concept

The air distribution for climate control can be adjusted manually.

Adjusting

Press the button repeatedly to select a program:

- Upper body region.
- Upper body region and floor area.
- Floor area.

Ambient air package

Concept

The Ambient Air Package can be used to clean and scent the interior air with high-quality fragrances.

Ionization is used to clean the air from suspended particles. Together with the selected fragrance, ionization contributes to well-being and relaxation while driving.

General information

Two different fragrances can be selected in the vehicle. A variety of other fragrances is possible by replacing the fragrance cartridges.

The following criteria can influence the perception of scents in the car's interior:

- Automatic climate control settings.
- Temperature and air humidity.
- Time of day and season.
- Physical condition of the vehicle occupants, for instance fatigue.

BMW recommends the use of genuine BMW fragrance cartridges.

The genuine BMW fragrance cartridges are not suitable for refilling. When a cartridge is empty, replace it with a new fragrance cartridge.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2997
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Safety information

Warning

Refilled genuine BMW fragrance cartridges can cause the emission of harmful substances, malfunctions, and damage to the system. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not refill genuine fragrance cartridges. When a cartridge is empty, replace it with a new fragrance cartridge.

Ionization

Concept

Ionization cleans the car's interior air of suspended particles.

Switching on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Air quality"
5. "Ionization"

Fragrancing

General information

Fragrancing is done at intervals in order to avoid a habituation effect.

Two fragrance cartridges in the vehicle allow switching between the fragrances.

The fragrance cartridges are located in the glove compartment.

To ensure a pleasant fragrance inside of the vehicle when starting the trip, fragrancing can occur prior to the trip. The system is automatically switched on with the parked-car ventilation if fragrancing was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Functional requirements

- The fragrance cartridges are sufficiently filled.
- The interior temperature is between 41 ℉/+5 ℃ and 104 ℉/+40 ℃.
- Open the vents to allow the fragrance to flow out.

Selecting the fragrance

The car's interior is fragranced depending on the selected fragrance.

Two different fragrances can be selected in the vehicle.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Fragrance"
5. Select the desired fragrance.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Switching fragrancing on/off, adjusting intensity

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Fragrance"
5. "Level"
6. Select the desired setting.

Display

The illustrations on the Control Display show the actual filling level of the fragrance cartridges.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Fragrance"

When an empty fragrance cartridge is indicated, the cartridge still contains a fluid carrying the fra-

grance. However, it is not sufficient for fragrancing.

When the fragrance cartridges are empty, a Check Control message is displayed once.

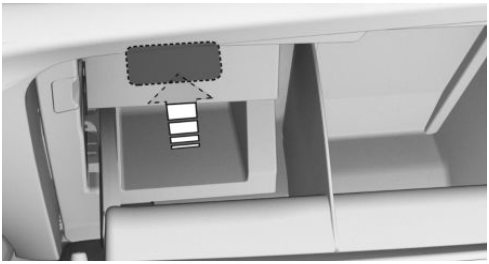
Inserting fragrance cartridges

The fragrance cartridges are located in the glove compartment.

1. Open the glove compartment.

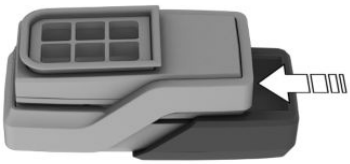
   Front passenger side glove compartment, refer to page 263.
2. Press on the bottom of the cartridge holder.

   The cartridge holder slides down.

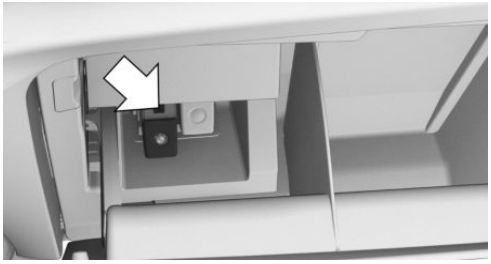


3. Remove the cover of the fragrance cartridge. Hold the cover on the top to slide it from the fragrance cartridge.

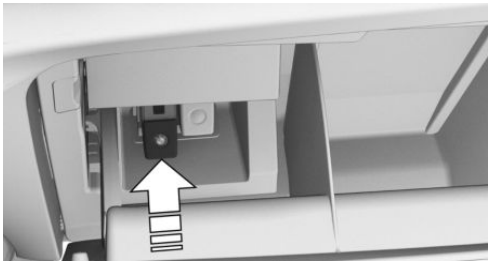
4. Insert the removed cover on the back side of the fragrance cartridge.



5. Position fragrance cartridge such that the chip faces away from the cartridge holder.



6. Insert the fragrance cartridge without pressure into the cartridge holder. The cartridge snaps lightly into place.



7. Push the cartridge holder up, until it engages.

   Make sure that no objects press against the cartridge holder from below, otherwise the function of the ambient air package could be impacted.
8. Close the glove compartment.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-2999
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

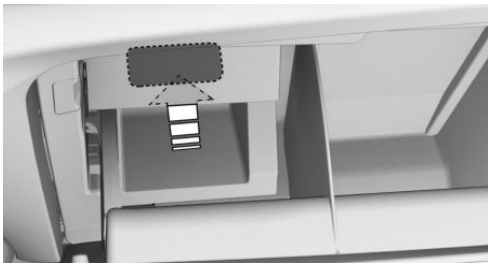
Removing the fragrance cartridge

The fragrance cartridges are located in the glove compartment.

1. Open the glove compartment.

   Front passenger side glove compartment, refer to page 263.
2. Press on the bottom of the cartridge holder.

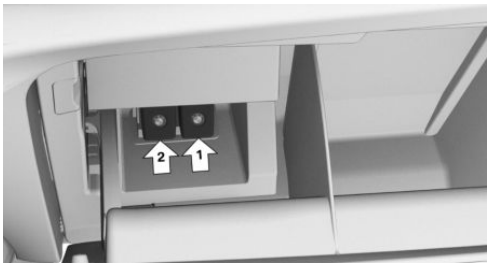
   The cartridge holder slides down.



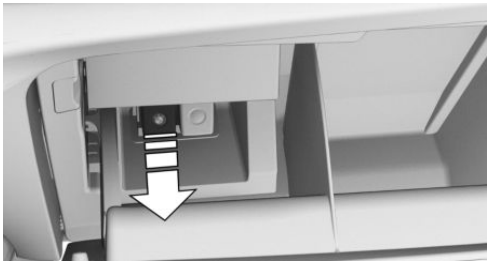
3. Pull desired fragrance cartridge from the holder.

   Fragrance cartridge, arrow 1: first fragrance indicated on the Control Display.

   Fragrance cartridge, arrow 2: second fragrance indicated on the Control Display.



4. Pull desired fragrance cartridge from the holder.



Recycling

Empty fragrance cartridges can be taken to a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop for recycling.

Stationary climate control

Concept

Stationary climate control cools or heats the car's interior prior to departure to a comfortable temperature.

The system automatically cools, vents, or heats depending on the internal and external temperature. Snow and ice may be removed more easily.

General information

The stationary climate control can be switched on and off directly or via a preset departure time.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3000
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

The air automatically exits through the vents to the windshield, the side windows, the upper body region and into the floor area.

The system switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

If stationary climate control is used during the charging process, less air conditioning capacity will be required while driving. This optimizes the range.

Functional requirements

- The vehicle is in idle state or standby state and not in drive-ready state.
- The high-voltage battery is sufficiently charged or the charging cable is connected.

  If the high-voltage battery is heavily discharged, it can take some time after connecting the charging cable, until the stationary climate control will be functional.
- Direct operation or departure time preselected: depends on internal, external, and set desired temperature.

  Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.
- To ensure the starting capability of the vehicle, the stationary climate control may be automatically switched off, for instance after repeated switching on or due to an insufficient state of charge of the high-voltage battery. After the stationary climate control is switched off due to an insufficient state of charge, charge the high-voltage battery. The stationary climate control is available again.
- Open the vents to allow air to flow out.

Switching on/off directly

Concept

There are different ways to switch the system on or off.

The system switches off automatically after approx. 30 minutes.

Using the button

General information

When the vehicle is in standby state, the system can be switched on or off via the automatic climate control buttons.

Switching on

Press any button except:

- Rear window defroster.
- Left side of air flow button.
- Seat heating.

Switching off

Press and hold the left side of the button.

The system switches off when the vehicle is exited.

Via iDrive

The system can be switched on or off via iDrive.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Preconditioning"
5. "Start now"

Via BMW display key

The system can be switched on or off via the BMW display key.

Switching on

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap on the symbol.
4. "Activate now"
5. "Start"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3001
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Switching off

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap on the symbol.
4. "Stop"

Display

symbol on the automatic climate control indicates the system is switched on.

Climate control for departure time

Concept

Different departure times can be set to ensure a comfortable interior temperature in the vehicle at the time of departure.

The activation time is automatically determined based on the temperature.

Departure time with weekday: time and day of the week can be set.

On the desired weekdays, the system will be switched on promptly before the set departure time.

Switch-off takes place automatically a few minutes after the set departure time.

The departure time is preselected in two steps:

- Set departure times.
- Activate departure times.

A minimum of 10 minutes should pass between setting/activating the departure time and the planned departure time to allow a sufficient period of time for the climate control.

Setting the departure time

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Preconditioning"
5. "Departure schedule"
6. Select the desired departure time.
7. Set the departure time.
8. Select day of the week, if needed.

Via BMW display key

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap on the symbol.
4. Select the desired departure time.
5. Set the departure time.
6. Select day of the week, if needed.
7. "OK"

Activating the departure time

Functional requirement

If a departure time is to influence the switching on of the stationary climate control, the respective departure time must be activated first.

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Preconditioning"
5. Activate "Preconditioning for departure".
6. "Departure schedule"
7. Select the desired departure time.
8. Set the departure time.
9. Select day of the week, if needed.
10. "Activate departure"

Via BMW display key

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"

3. Tap on the symbol.
4. Tap on the symbol.

   Activate the desired departure time.

Display

The symbol on the automatic climate control signals an activated departure time.

symbol on the automatic climate control indicates the system is switched on.

Activating with BMW Connected app

An appropriate BMW Connected app with remote function can be used to switch on the system either directly or via a preset departure time.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3003
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Interior equipment

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Integrated Universal Remote Control

Concept

The integrated Universal Remote Control in the interior mirror can operate up to 3 functions of remote-controlled systems such as garage door drives, barriers, or lighting systems.

General information

The Integrated Universal Remote Control replaces up to 3 different hand-held transmitters. To operate the remote control, the buttons on the interior mirror must be programmed with the desired functions. The hand-held transmitter for the particular system is required in order to program the remote control.

Before selling the vehicle, delete the stored functions for the sake of security.

If possible, do not install the antenna of the remote-controlled system, e.g. the garage door drive, near metal objects to ensure the best possible operation.

Safety information

Warning

The operation of remote-controlled systems with the integrated universal remote control, such as the garage door, may result in injury, for example, body parts becoming jammed in a garage door. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety information of the hand-held transmitter.

Compatibility

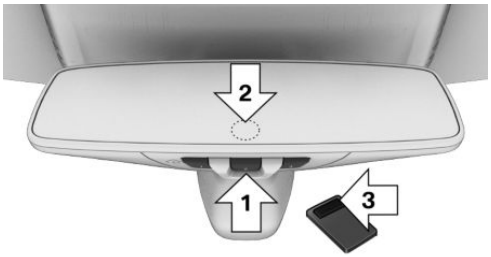
If this symbol is printed on the packaging or in the owner's manual of the system to be controlled, the system is generally compatible with the integrated Universal Remote Control.

Additional questions are answered by:

- A dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
- www.homelink.com on the Internet.

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

Control elements on the interior mirror



- ▷ Buttons, arrow 1.
- ▷ LED, arrow 2.
- ▷ The hand-held transmitter, arrow 3, is required for programming.

Programming

General information

The battery of the hand-held transmitter must be fully charged at the time of programming to ensure an optimal range of the integrated universal remote control.

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Initial setup:

   Press and hold the two outer buttons on the interior mirror simultaneously for approximately 10 seconds until the LED flashes green rapidly. This erases all programming of the buttons on the interior mirror.
3. Press the interior mirror button to be programmed. The LED on the interior mirror will slowly begin flashing orange.
4. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be used approx. 1 to 12 in/2.5 to 30 cm away from the buttons on the interior mirror. The required distance depends on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter.

   Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.
6. ▷ The LED lights up green: programming completed.

   Release the button.

   ▷ The LED flashes fast: programming is not complete.

   Press the button on the interior mirror for 2 seconds and release. Perform this procedure three times to complete the programming procedure.

   If the integrated universal remote control remains nonoperational, continue with the special features for change code wireless systems.

   ▷ LED does not flash green after 60 seconds: programming not completed.

   Repeat steps 3 to 6.

To program other functions on other buttons, repeat steps 3 to 5.

Special feature of the rolling code wireless system

If you are unable to operate the remote-controlled system after repeated programming, please check if the system to be controlled features a rolling code radio system.

Refer to the owner's manual for the system.

For systems with a rolling code radio system, the integrated Universal Remote Control and the system also have to be synchronized.

Please read the owner's manual to find out how to synchronize the system.

Synchronizing is easier with the aid of a second person.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3005
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Synchronizing the universal remote control with the system:

1. Park the vehicle within range of the remote-controlled system.
2. Program the relevant button on the interior mirror as described.
3. Locate and press the synchronizing button on the system being programmed, e.g. at the garage gate. You have approx. 30 seconds for the next step.
4. Hold down the programmed button on the interior mirror for approximately 3 seconds and then release it. If necessary, repeat this step up to three times in order to finish synchronization. Once synchronization is complete, the programmed function will be carried out.

Reprogramming individual buttons

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Press and hold the interior mirror button to be programmed.
3. As soon as the LED on the interior mirror flashes orange after approx. 20 seconds, release the button.
4. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be used approx. 1 to 12 in/2.5 to 30 cm away from the buttons on the interior mirror. The required distance depends on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter.

   Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.
6. The LED can light up in different ways.
   - ▷ The LED lights up green: the programming procedure is completed.

     Release the button.
   - ▷ The LED flashes fast: the hand-held transmitter was detected but programming is not complete.

     Press the button on the interior mirror for 2 seconds and release. Perform this procedure three times to complete the programming procedure.

     If the integrated universal remote control remains nonoperational, continue with the special features for change code wireless systems.
   - ▷ LED does not flash green after 60 seconds: programming not completed.

     Repeat steps 3 to 6.

If the programming procedure is not completed, the previous programming will remain unchanged.

Operation

⚠ Warning

The operation of remote-controlled systems with the integrated universal remote control, such as the garage door, may result in injury, for example, body parts becoming jammed in a garage door. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety information of the hand-held transmitter.

The system, such as the garage door, can be operated using the button on the interior mirror while the drive-ready or standby state is switched on. To do this, hold down the button within receiving range of the system until the function is activated. The interior mirror LED stays lit while the wireless signal is being transmitted.

Deleting stored functions

All stored functions will be deleted. The functions cannot be deleted individually.

Press and hold the two outer buttons on the interior mirror simultaneously for approximately 10 seconds until the LED on the interior mirror flashes green rapidly.

Sun visor

Glare shield

Fold the sun visor down or up.

Glare shield from the side

Folding out

1. Fold the sun visor down.
2. Unhook it from the holder and swing it to the side.

Folding up

Proceed in the reverse order to close the sun visor.

Vanity mirror

A vanity mirror is located in the sun visor behind a cover. When the cover is opened, the mirror lighting switches on.

Ashtray

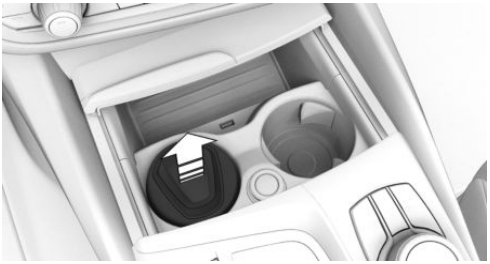
Front center console

Opening

1. Slide the cover forward.

2. The ashtray is located in a cup holder. Fold the ashtray cover upward.

Emptying



Pull the ashtray with the closed cover out of the cup holder.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3007
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Cigarette lighter

Safety information

Warning

Contact with the hot heating element or the hot socket of the cigarette lighter can cause burns. Flammable materials can ignite if the cigarette lighter falls down or is held against the objects. There is a risk of fire and injuries. There is a risk of damage to property. Take hold of the cigarette lighter by its handle. Make sure that children do not use the cigarette lighter.

NOTICE

If metal objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of damage to property. Replace the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.

Front center console

Slide the cover forward.

The cigarette lighter is located between the cup holders.

Operation

Push in the cigarette lighter.

The cigarette lighter can be removed as soon as it pops back out.

Sockets

Concept

The lighter socket can be used as a socket for electrical equipment when standby and drive-ready state are switched on.

General information

The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 watts at 12 volts.

Do not damage the socket by using non-compatible connectors.

Safety information

Warning

Devices and cables in the unfolding area of the airbags, such as portable navigation devices, can hinder the unfolding of the airbag or be thrown around in the car's interior during unfolding. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3008
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

devices and cables are not in the airbag's area of unfolding.

NOTICE

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery can work with high voltages and currents, which means that the 12 volt electrical system can be overloaded or damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.

NOTICE

If metal objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of damage to property. Replace the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.

Front center console

Slide the cover forward.

A socket is located between the cup holders.

Pull off the cover.

In the cargo area

A socket is located on the right side in the cargo area. Unfold the cover.

USB port

General information

Follow the information regarding the connection of mobile devices to the USB port in the section on USB connections.

Additional information:

USB connections, refer to page 80.

In the center armrest

A USB port is located in the center armrest.

Properties:

- USB port Type C.
- For charging mobile devices and for data transfer.
- Charge current: max. 3 A.

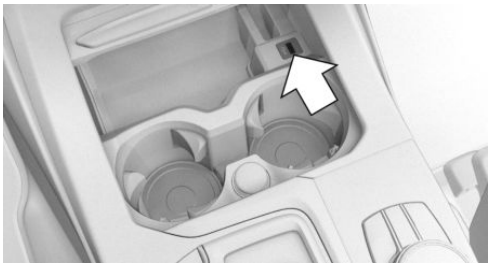
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3009
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

In the front center console

NOTICE

Objects in the storage compartment, e.g., large USB connectors, may block or damage the cover when it is being opened or closed. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the cover is clear while opening and closing it.

Slide the cover forward.



A USB port is located in the center console.

Properties:

- USB port Type A.
- For charging mobile devices and for data transfer.
- Charge current: max. 1.5 A.

In the rear center console

Two USB ports are located in the center console in the rear passenger compartment.

Properties:

- USB port Type C.
- For charging of mobile devices.
- Charge current: maximum 3 A per port.

Wireless charging tray

Concept

The wireless charging tray enables the following functions to be performed without cables:

- Charging the rechargeable battery of a mobile phone with Qi capability and of other mobile devices, which support the Qi standard.
- Charging the BMW Display key.
- Connect the mobile phone to the external antenna.

  Depending on the country, this provides for better network reception and a consistent reproduction quality.

General information

When inserting the mobile phone, make sure there are no objects between it and the wireless charging tray.

During charging, the surface of the tray and the mobile phone may become warm. Higher temperatures may lead to a reduction in the charge current through the mobile phone, and in iso-

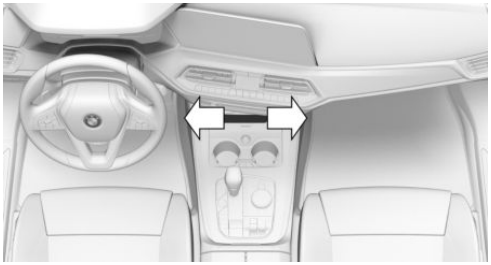
lated cases the charging process is paused temporarily. Follow the relevant instructions in the mobile phone owner's manual.

The charge indicator shows on the Control Display whether a mobile phone with Qi capability is being charged.

NOTE

This device has been tested for human exposure limits and found compliant at a minimum distance of 2 in/5 cm during operation.

Therefore, a distance of 4 in/10 cm must be maintained in every direction when operating the device.



Mounting position of the product.

Safety information

Warning

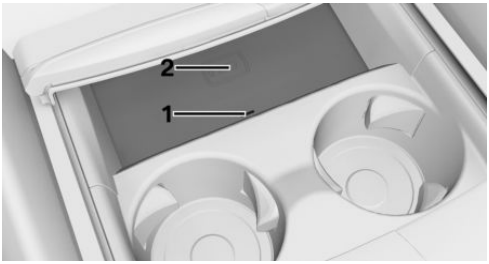
When charging a device that meets the Qi standard in the wireless charging tray, any metal objects located between the device and the tray can become very hot. Placing storage devices or electronic cards, such as chip cards, cards with magnetic strips or cards for signal transmission, between the device and the tray may impair the card function. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. When charging mobile devices, make sure there are no objects between the device and the tray.

NOTICE

The tray is intended for mobile phones up to a particular size. Forceful inserting of the mobile phone into the tray can damage the tray or the mobile phone. There is a risk of damage to property. Observe the maximum dimensions for mobile phones. Do not force the mobile phone into the tray.

Overview

Tray in the center console:



1 LED

2 Storage area

Functional requirements

- The mobile phone must compatibly support the required Qi standard.

  If the mobile phone does not support the Qi standard, the mobile phone can be charged using a special Qi-compatible charging case.
- Standby state is switched on.
- Observe the maximum dimensions of the mobile phone.
- Use only protective jackets and covers up to a maximum thickness of 0.07 in/2 mm; otherwise, the charging function may be impaired.
- The mobile phone to be charged is located in the center of the tray.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3011
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Operation

Inserting the mobile phone

The mobile phone must not exceed the maximum size of approximately 6.0 x 3.1 x 0.7 in/154.5 x 80 x 18 mm.

1. Open the tray cover.
2. Place the mobile phone centered in the tray with the display facing up.
3. Close the tray cover.

Removing the mobile phone

1. Open the tray cover.
2. Remove the mobile phone.

LED displays

Color	Meaning
Blue	The mobile phone is charging. The blue LED stays illuminated once the inserted mobile phone with Qi capability is fully charged.
Orange	The mobile phone is not charging. Temperature on the mobile phone possibly too high or foreign object in charging tray.
Red	The mobile phone is not charging. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Forgotten warning

General information

If the vehicle is equipped with the forgotten warning function, a warning can be output if a mobile phone with Qi capability was forgotten in the wireless charging tray when leaving the vehicle.

The forgotten warning is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Activating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Wireless charging tray"
5. Activate reminder.

System limits

At high temperatures on the mobile phone or in the vehicle, the charging functions of the mobile phone may be limited and some functions may no longer work.

LTE-Compensator - Information and User Manual

Your car is equipped with a wireless charging tray (WCA) to charge your mobile phone and connect it to the mobile network. To ensure the best possible connection a signal booster (LTE-Compensator) is used in conjunction with the WCA. The following paragraphs refer to this booster:

This is a CONSUMER device.

BEFORE USE, you MUST REGISTER THIS DEVICE with your wireless provider and have your provider's consent. Most wireless providers consent to the use of Compensators. Some providers may not consent to the use of this device on their network. If you are unsure, contact your provider. You MUST operate this device with approved antennas and cables as specified by the manufacturer. Antennas MUST be installed at least 20 cm (8 inches) from any person. You MUST cease operating this device immediately if requested by the FCC or a licensed wireless service provider. Warning E911 location information may not be provided or may be inaccurate for calls served by using this device.

Please observe additionally the following information

- Sprint Nextel will allow consumers to register their signal boosters by calling their toll-free number.
- T-Mobile online registration link: (www.T-Mobile.com/BoosterRegistration); (https://saqat.t-mobile.com/sites/SignalBooster#).
- Verizon's online registration link: (http://www.verizonwireless.com/wcms/consumer/register-signal-booster.html).
- AT&T online registration link (https://securec45.securewebsession.com/attsignal-booster.com/).
- U.S.Cellular online registration link (http://www.uscellular.com/uscellular/support/fcc-booster-registration.jsp).

Before use you must register your booster device with your wireless provider.

If you should be requested by the FCC to cease operating your booster you are not allowed to insert your mobile phone in the charging tray anymore unless the booster is permanently deactivated by your local BMW dealer.

You must not remove the booster from the car nor use it with any other than the preinstalled coupling device or antenna. Any modification of the existing antenna or coupling device as well as the use of other antennas or coupling devices will cause the cease of the booster´s operating license.

The booster device fulfills the network protection standards as required by the FCC, such as intermodulation limits, oscillation detection and gain limits.

Booster Manufacturer: Kathrein Automotive

Model Number: LTECOMPB0

Part Number: 6803145-01

FCC-ID: 2ACC7LTECOMPB0

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3013

Storage compartments

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Storage compartments

General information

The vehicle interior contains multiple storage compartments for stowing objects.

Safety information

Warning

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, for instance mobile phones, can be thrown about the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the car's interior.

NOTICE

Anti-slip pads such as anti-slip mats can damage the dashboard. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use anti-slip pads.

Front passenger side glove compartment

Safety information

Warning

Folded open, the glove compartment protrudes in the car's interior. Objects in the glove compartment can be thrown into the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Always close the glove compartment immediately after using it.

Opening

Pull the handle.

The light in the glove compartment switches on.

Closing

Fold cover closed.

Locking

The glove compartment can be locked with an integrated key. This prevents access to the glove compartment.

After the glove compartment is locked, the vehicle key can be handed over without the

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3014
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

integrated key, for instance when the vehicle is parked by valet parking.

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 91.

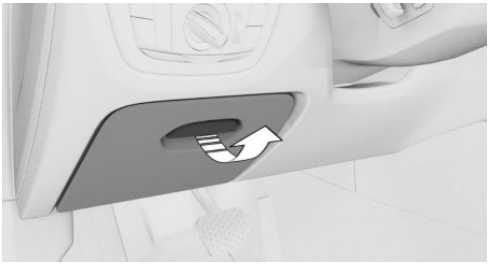
Driver's side glove compartment

Safety information

Warning

Folded open, the glove compartment protrudes in the car's interior. Objects in the glove compartment can be thrown into the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Always close the glove compartment immediately after using it.

Opening



Pull the handle.

Closing

Fold cover closed.

Compartments in the doors

General information

There are storage compartments in the doors.

Safety information

Warning

Breakable objects, such as glass bottles or glasses, can break in the event of an accident or a braking or evasive maneuver. Broken glass can be scattered in the car's interior. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not use any breakable objects while driving. Only stow breakable objects in closed storage compartments.

Storage compartment in the center console

Opening

Slide the cover forward.

Closing

Slide the cover rearward.

Storage compartment in the rear center console

The rear center console contains one or two storage compartments.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3015
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Center armrest, front

General information

A storage compartment is located in the center armrest between the seats.

Opening

Press the button.

Closing

Press cover down until it engages.

Front cup holder

Safety information

⚠ Warning

Unsuitable containers in the cup holders may damage the cup holders or be thrown about the car's interior in the event of an accident, an evasive maneuver, or forceful braking. Spilled liquids can distract from the traffic conditions and lead to an accident. Hot drinks can damage the cup holder or lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not force objects into the cup holder. Use lightweight, shatterproof, and sealable containers. Do not transport hot beverages.

Opening

Slide the cover forward.

Two cup holders are located in the center console.

Closing

Slide the cover rearward.

Rear cup holder

Safety information

⚠ Warning

Unsuitable containers in the cup holders may damage the cup holders or be thrown about the car's interior in the event of an accident, an evasive maneuver, or forceful braking. Spilled liquids can distract from the traffic conditions and lead to an accident. Hot drinks can damage the cup holder or lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not force objects into the cup holder. Use light-

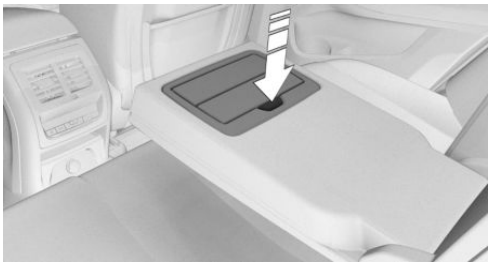
weight, shatterproof, and sealable containers. Do not transport hot beverages.

NOTICE

With an open cup holder, the center armrest cannot be folded back up. There is a risk of damage to property. Press back the covers before the center armrest is folded up.

Opening and closing

Opening



Fold the center armrest forward.

Press the button.

Closing

Press both covers back inward in sequence and fold the center armrest back.

Clothes hooks

General information

The clothes hooks are located in the grab handles in the rear.

Safety information

Warning

Clothing articles on the clothes hooks can obstruct the view while driving. There is a risk of accident. When suspending clothing articles from the clothes hooks, ensure that they will not obstruct the driver's view.

Warning

Improper use of the clothes hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only hang lightweight objects, for instance clothing articles, from the clothes hooks.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3017
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Cargo area

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Loading

Safety information

Warning

High gross weight can overheat the tires, damage them internally and cause a sudden drop in tire inflation pressure. Driving characteristics may be negatively impacted, reducing lane stability, lengthening the braking distances and changing the steering response. There is a risk of accident. Pay attention to the permitted load capacity of the tires and never exceed the permitted gross weight.

Warning

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, for instance mobile phones, can be thrown about the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the car's interior.

Warning

Improperly stowed objects can shift and be thrown into the car's interior, for instance in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuver. Vehicle occupants can be hit and injured. There is a risk of injury. Stow and secure objects and cargo properly.

NOTICE

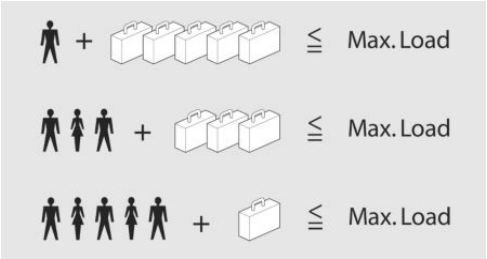
Fluids in the cargo area can cause damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that no fluids leak in the cargo area.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs” on your vehicle’s placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1,400 lbs and there will be five 150 lbs passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs (1,400 - 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your ve-

hicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Load



The maximum load is the sum of the weight of the occupants and the cargo.

The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo that can be transported.

Stowing and securing cargo

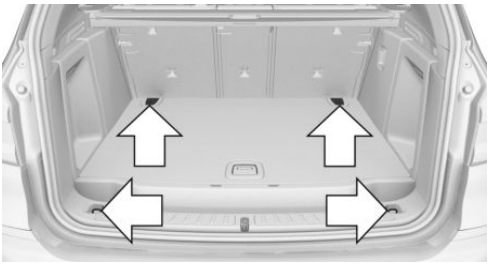
- Cover sharp edges and corners on the cargo.
- Heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear passenger seat backrests.
- Very heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear passenger seat backrests. When the rear seat is not occupied, secure each of the outer safety belts in the opposite buckle.
- If necessary, fold down the rear backrests to stow large cargo.
- Do not stack cargo above the top edge of the backrests.
- Use the cargo area partition net to protect occupants. Make sure that objects cannot penetrate the cargo area partition net.
- Small and light cargo: secure with ratchet straps or, depending on the equipment, with a cargo net or draw straps.
- Larger and heavy cargo: secure with cargo straps.

Lashing eyes in the cargo area

General information

Attach load securing aids, such as lashing straps, tensioning straps, draw straps or cargo nets, to the lashing eyes in the cargo area.

Lashing eyes



There are four lashing eyes in the cargo area for securing cargo.

Multi-function hook

General information

A multi-function hook is available on the right side of the cargo area.

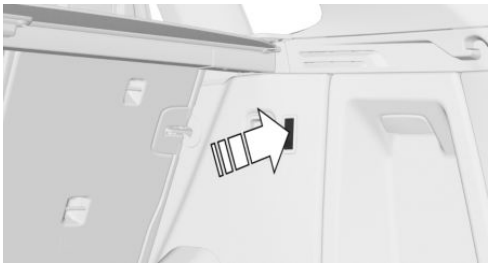
Safety information

Warning

Improper use of the multi-function hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers, for example. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only hang lightweight objects, such as shopping bags, from the multi-function hooks. Only transport heavy luggage in the cargo area if it has been appropriately secured.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3019
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Folding down



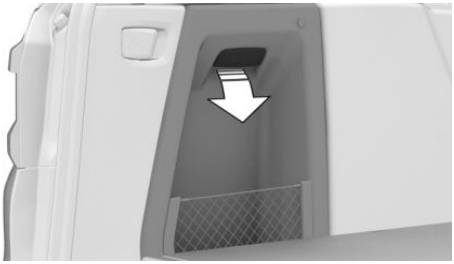
Press on the multi-function hook and turn until it engages.

Storage compartment on the left side

General information

A storage compartment is located on the left side in the cargo area.

Opening



Pull the handle.

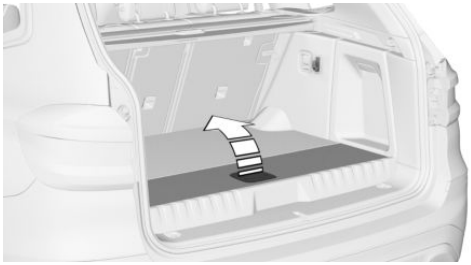
Storage compartment under the cargo floor panel

General information

There is a storage compartment under the cargo floor panel.

Opening

1. Fold down the multi-function hook, refer to page 268.
2. Pull the cargo floor panel up at the handle.



Closing

Press the cargo floor panel down, until it engages.

Through-loading system

Concept

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the cargo area can be enlarged as follows:

- The rear seat backrests can be folded down.
- The rear seat backrests can be moved into an upright loading position using the cargo setting.

General information

The rear seat backrest is divided at a ratio of 40–20–40. The side rear seat backrests and the center section can be folded down separately.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the rear seat backrests can be folded down from the rear or from the cargo area.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3020

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Safety information

Warning

Danger of jamming with folding down the backrests. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the rear backrest and the of the head restraint is clear prior to folding down.

Warning

If a rear seat backrest is not locked, unsecured cargo can be thrown about the car's interior; for instance, in the event of an accident, braking or an evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the rear seat backrest is locked after folding it back.

Warning

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

Warning

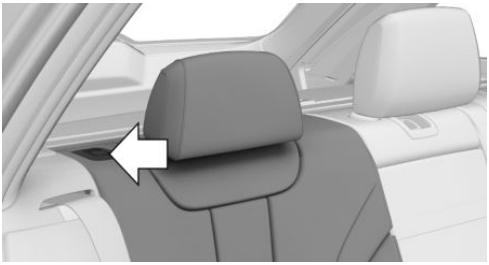
Once the rear seat backrest has been folded down, the locking bracket protrudes into the car's interior. There is a risk of damage to property. When the rear seat backrest is folded down, pay attention to the protruding locking bracket and keep this area unobstructed.

NOTICE

Vehicle parts can be damaged when folding down the rear backrest. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the rear backrest including head restraint is clear when folding down.

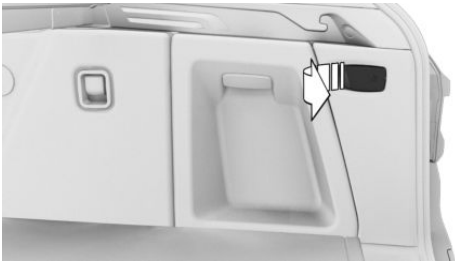
Reclining the backrest

From the rear



Pull the lever and fold the rear seat backrest forward.

From the cargo area



Pull the corresponding lever in the cargo area to release the rear seat backrest.

- Left lever: fold down the left and middle rear seat backrest.
- Right lever: fold down the right rear seat backrest.

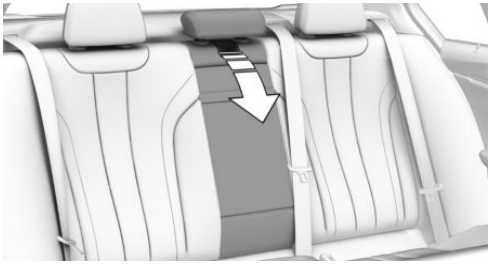
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3021
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Folding back the backrest

Return the rear seat backrest to the seat position and engage it.

Folding down the center section

1. Fold down the center head restraint.
2. Pull lever and fold the center section forward.



Cargo position

Concept

The rear seat backrests can be moved into an upright loading position individually. An adjustment in several tilt stages is possible as needed.

General information

The backrest tilt for the center section is adjusted together with the left backrest.

Adjusting

1. Pull the lever and hold it.

2. Adjust the tilt of the rear seat backrest if required.

After the adjustment, move the backrest slightly forward or back to engage it correctly.

Cargo cover

Safety information

Warning

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, for instance mobile phones, can be thrown about the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the car's interior.

Warning

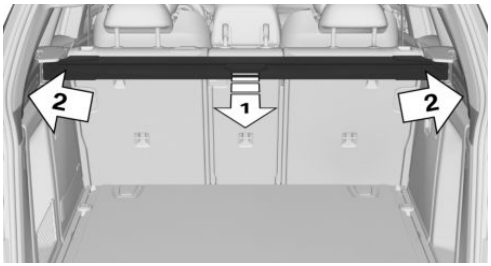
A cargo cover that snaps back quickly can jam body parts or cause damage. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not let the cargo cover snap back into place.

Warning

An incorrectly inserted cargo cover can be thrown about the car's interior, such as in the event of an accident or a braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Make sure the cargo cover is securely engaged in the brackets.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3022
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

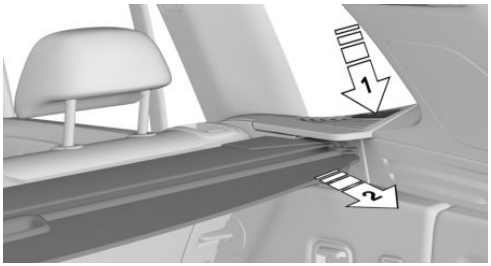
Closing



Pull out the cargo cover, arrow 1, and hook both sides into the brackets, arrow 2.

Removing

The cover can be removed to load bulky luggage.



Press the release button, arrow 1, and pull the cargo cover out toward the rear, arrow 2.

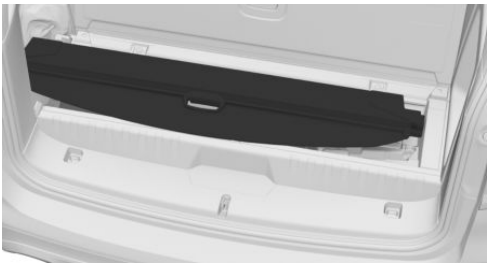
The cargo cover can be stowed in the storage compartment under the cargo floor panel.

Stowing

1. Open the storage compartment on the left side.

   Storage compartment on the left side, refer to page 269.
2. Open the cargo floor panel.

   Storage compartment under the cargo floor panel, refer to page 269.
3. Stow the cargo cover on the left and lower it on the right side.



4. Close the cargo floor panel.

Installing

Slide the cover forward horizontally into the two side brackets. Make sure that the cover audibly engages on both sides.

Cargo area partition net

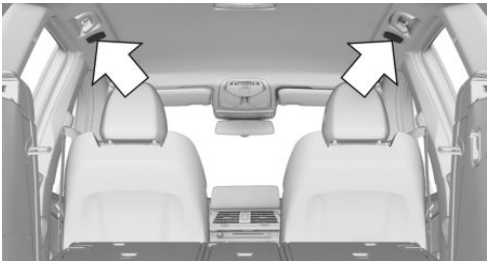
General information

The cargo area partition net can be installed in two different positions in the vehicle.

With the rear seat backrest folded down

1. Fold down the rear seat backrests.

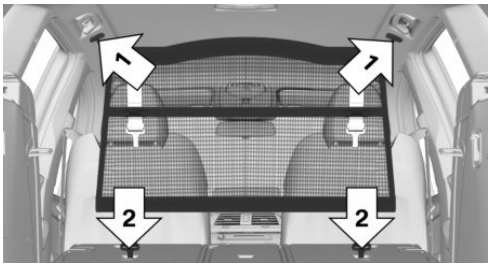
   Enlarging the cargo area, refer to page 269.
2. Open the front lids up on the roof frame until they engage.



3. Insert each of the two top retaining pins of the cargo area partition net into the recepta-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3023
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

cles until they reach the stop, arrow 1, and push them forward.



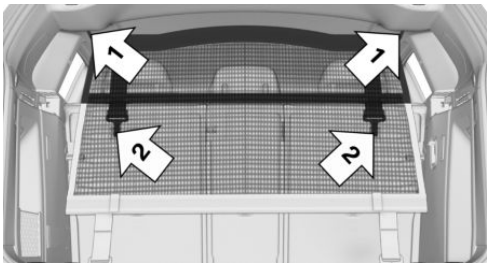
4. Attach the cargo area partition net with the lower two hooks into the two eyes on the folded-down rear seat backrest, arrows 2. You may need to lift the rear seat backrests slightly in order to do this.

With the rear seat backrest upright

1. Remove the cargo cover.
2. If necessary, move the rear seat backrest into a more upright position.

   Rear seats, refer to page 108.
3. Open the rear lids up on the roof frame until they engage.

4. Insert each of the two top retaining pins of the cargo area partition net into the receptacles until they reach the stop, arrow 1, and push them forward.



5. Attach the cargo area partition net with the upper two hooks into the two eyes on the rear seat backrest, arrows 2.

Ski and snowboard bag

The ski and snowboard bag is contained in a protective jacket in the cargo area.

Follow the installation and owner's manual included in the protective jacket.

Things to remember when driving

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Breaking-in period

General information

Moving parts need to begin working together smoothly.

The following instructions will help you to achieve a long vehicle life and good efficiency.

During break-in, do not use the Launch Control.

Safety information

Warning

Due to new parts and components, safety and driver assistance systems can react with a delay. There is a risk of accident. After installing new parts or with a new vehicle, drive conservatively and intervene early if necessary. Observe the break-in procedures of the respective parts and components.

Engine, transmission, and axle drive

General information

The tachometer is available in the SPORT drive mode or in the M/S Sport program.

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Do not exceed the maximum engine and road speed:

- For gasoline engine 4,500 rpm and 100 mph/160 km/h.

Avoid full load or kickdown under all circumstances.

From 1,200 miles/2,000 km

The engine and vehicle speed can gradually be increased.

Tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new; they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

Brake discs and brake pads only reach their full effectiveness after approx. 300 miles/500 km. Drive moderately during this break-in period.

Following part replacement

Observe the break-in procedures again, if components mentioned above are replaced.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3025
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Driving on poor roads

Concept

Because of its greater ground clearance, the vehicle can be driven on a variety of road types and qualities.

All-wheel drive can help improve forward momentum.

Safety information

NOTICE

Objects in unpaved areas, for instance stones or branches, can damage the vehicle. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not drive on unpaved terrain.

When driving on poor roads

For your own safety, for the safety of passengers and of the vehicle, heed the following points:

- Familiarize yourself with the vehicle before driving.
- Do not take risks when driving.
- Adjust the speed to the road surface conditions. The steeper and more uneven the road surface, the slower the speed should be.
- When driving on steep uphill or downhill grades: add engine oil and coolant up to near the MAX mark.
- On steep downhill grades, use Hill Descent Control HDC.
- Avoid that the chassis bottom coming in contact with the ground.

  The ground clearance is no more than 7.8 inches/20 cm and can vary according to the vehicle's load.
- When wheels continue to spin, depress the accelerator pedal sufficiently so that driving stability control systems can distribute the driving force to the wheels. Activate DTC Dynamic Traction Control if available.

After a trip on poor roads

After a trip on poor roads, check wheels and tires for damage to maintain driving safety. Clear heavy soiling from the body.

General driving notes

Closing the tailgate

Safety information

Warning

An open tailgate protrudes from the vehicle and can endanger occupants and other traffic participants or damage the vehicle in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. In addition, exhaust fumes may enter the vehicle interior. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not drive with the tailgate open.

Driving with the tailgate open

If driving with the tailgate open cannot be avoided:

- Close all windows and the glass sunroof.
- Greatly increase the air flow from the vents.
- Drive moderately.

Hot exhaust gas system

Warning

High temperatures can occur underneath the body, for instance caused by the exhaust gas system, while driving. Contact with the exhaust gas system can cause burns. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch the hot exhaust gas system, including the exhaust pipe.

Warning

If combustible materials, such as leaves or grass, come in contact with hot parts of the exhaust gas system, these materials can ignite. There is a risk of fire and injuries. Do not remove the heat shields installed and never apply undercoating to them. Make sure that no combustible materials can come in contact with hot vehicle parts in driving operation, idle or during parking.

Mobile communication devices in the vehicle

Warning

Vehicle electronics and mobile phones can influence one another. There is radiation due to the transmission operations of mobile phones. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. If possible, in the car's interior use only mobile phones with direct connections to an exterior antenna in order to exclude mutual interference and deflect the radiation from the car's interior.

Hydroplaning

On wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water can form between the tires and road surface.

This phenomenon is referred to as hydroplaning. It is characterized by a partial or complete loss of contact between the tires and the road surface, ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle.

Driving through water

General information

When driving through water, follow the following:

- Deactivate Auto Start/Stop function.
- Drive through calm water only.
- Drive through water only if it is not deeper than maximum 19.6 inches/50 cm.
- Drive through water no faster than walking speed, up to 3 mph/5 km/h.

Safety information

NOTICE

When driving too quickly through too deep water, water can enter into the engine compartment, the electrical system or the transmission. There is a risk of damage to property. When driving through water, do not exceed the maximum indicated water level and the maximum speed for driving through water.

Braking safely

General information

The vehicle is equipped with an Antilock Braking System ABS as a standard feature.

Perform an emergency stop in situations that require such.

Steering is still responsive. You can still avoid any obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.

Pulsation of the brake pedal and sounds from the hydraulic circuits indicate that the Antilock Braking System ABS is in its active mode.

In certain braking situations, the perforated brake discs can emit functional noises. However, functional noises have no effect on the performance and operational reliability of the brake.

Objects in the area around the pedals

Warning

Objects in the driver's floor area can limit the pedal distance or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's floor area. Use floor mats

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3027
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, for instance for cleaning.

Driving in wet conditions

When roads are wet, salted, or in heavy rain, gently press the brake pedal every few miles.

Ensure that this action does not endanger other traffic.

The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

In this way braking efficiency will be available when you need it.

Hills

General information

Drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear that requires least braking effort. Otherwise, the brakes may overheat and reduce brake efficiency.

You can increase the engine's braking effect by shifting down, going all the way to first gear, if needed.

Safety information

Warning

Light but consistent brake pressure can lead to high temperatures, brakes wearing out and possibly even brake failure. There is a risk of accident. Avoid placing excessive stress on the brake system.

Warning

In idle state, in the ECO PRO driving mode or with drive-ready state switched off, safety-relevant functions, for instance engine braking effect, braking force boost, and steering assistance, are restricted or not available at all. There is a risk of accident. Do not drive in idle state, in the ECO PRO driving mode or with drive-ready state switched off.

Brake disc corrosion

Corrosion on the brake discs and contamination on the brake pads are increased by the following circumstances:

- Low mileage.
- Extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all.
- Infrequent use of the brakes.
- Aggressive, acidic, or alkaline cleaning agents.

Corrosion buildup on the brake discs will cause a pulsating effect on the brakes in their response - generally this cannot be corrected.

Condensation water under the parked vehicle

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops and collects underneath the vehicle.

Roof-mounted luggage rack

General information

Installation only possible with roof rack.

Roof racks are available as special accessories.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3028
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Safety information

Warning

When driving with a roof load, for instance with roof-mounted luggage rack, the vehicle's center of gravity is higher, which increases the risk of the vehicle tipping in critical driving situations. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Do not deactivate DSC Dynamic Stability Control when driving with roof load.

Mounting

Follow the installation instructions of the roof rack.

Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.

Loading

Because roof-mounted luggage racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a major effect on vehicle handling and steering response.

Therefore, note the following when loading and driving:

- Do not exceed the approved roof/axle loads and the approved gross vehicle weight.
- Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.
- Distribute the roof load uniformly.
- The roof load should not extend past the loading area.
- Always place the heaviest pieces on the bottom.
- Secure the roof luggage firmly, for instance using ratchet straps.
- Do not let objects project into the opening path of the tailgate.
- Drive cautiously and avoid sudden acceleration and braking maneuvers. Take corners gently.

Driving on racetracks

Warning

The vehicle is not designed for use in M Sport or motor sport type competition. There is a risk of accident. Do not use the vehicle for M Sport or motor sport type competitions.

Higher mechanical and thermal loads during racetrack operation lead to increased wear. This wear is not covered by the warranty.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3029
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Trailer towing

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

General information

The permissible trailer loads, axle loads, drawbar node weights, and the permissible gross vehicle weight are specified in the technical data.

The vehicle is equipped with an enhanced suspension system on the rear axle and, depending on the vehicle type, with a more powerful cooling system.

Before driving

Drawbar nose weight

The maximum load of the towing vehicle is lowered by the weight of the trailer hitch and the drawbar nose weight. The drawbar nose weight increases the vehicle weight. Do not exceed the approved gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle.

Loading

Distribute cargo as evenly as possible on the cargo area.

Stow the load as low and close to the trailer axle as possible. A low center of gravity in the trailer increases the driving safety of the entire vehicle-trailer combination.

Do not exceed the approved gross vehicle weight of the trailer and the permissible trailer load of the vehicle. The smaller value applies in each case.

Tire inflation pressure

Note the tire inflation pressure of the vehicle and trailer.

For the vehicle, the tire inflation pressure for higher loads applies.

For the trailer, the specifications of the manufacturer apply.

Additional information:

Tire inflation pressure specifications, refer to page 300.

Flat Tire Monitor FTM

After correcting the tire inflation pressure or hitching/unhitching a trailer, initialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

Additional information:

Run-flat tires, refer to page 321.

Tire pressure monitor

After correcting the tire inflation pressure or hitching/unhitching a trailer, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor.

Additional information:

Tire pressure monitor, refer to page 314.

Exterior mirrors

Exterior mirrors, which allow the driver to see both rear corners of the trailer, are available as special accessories from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Power consumption

General information

Before starting to drive, check the function of the trailer tail lights.

Keep the activation times of the electronic systems/power consumers short when towing a camper to save the vehicle battery power.

Trailer tail lights

- Turn signals/brake lights: 54 watts per side.
- Rear lights: 100 watts in total.
- Backup light: 54 watts in total.

Towing a trailer

General information

If the trailer socket is occupied, some driver assistance systems are unavailable, or available to a limited extent. A Check Control message is displayed where applicable.

When driving with a trailer or load carrier and the trailer socket not occupied, some driver assistance systems may have functional limitations or may malfunction.

To prevent malfunctions, activate trailer towing.

When the trailer socket is occupied or trailer towing is activated, some driver assistance systems are unavailable, or available to a limited extent. A Check Control message is displayed where applicable.

Additional information:

Activating trailer towing, refer to page 281.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

Depending on the design and loading of trailers, they may begin swinging at speeds exceeding approx. 50 mph/80 km/h. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property.

Adapt your speed when driving with a trailer. Immediately brake in the case of swinging. Apply necessary steering corrections as carefully as possible.

⚠ Warning

The tire inflation pressure must be adjusted to the increased axle load in trailer towing. Driving with too low tire inflation pressure can damage the tires. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Do not exceed a speed of 60 mph / 100 km/h. Increase the tire inflation pressure of the towing vehicle by 0.2 bar. Note the maximum possible tire inflation pressure indicated on the tire.

Uphill grades

General information

In the interest of safety and to avoid hindering the smooth flow of traffic, the towing of trailers is permissible on uphill grades up to 12 %.

If higher trailer loads are approved at a later point in time, the gradient limit is 8 %.

Starting on uphill grades

The parking brake is automatically released when the accelerator pedal is activated.

In order to prevent rolling back during starting, use the parking brake.

1. Pull and release switch before starting off.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3031
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

The parking brake is set.

2. Step on the accelerator pedal sufficiently to drive off.

Hills

A vehicle-trailer combination has the tendency to swing more readily on hills.

Manually shift down to the next-lowest gear before driving on a hill and drive downhill slowly.

Trailer stabilization control

Concept

This system supports the driver in stopping the swinging of a trailer.

The trailer stabilization control detects swinging and automatically brakes the vehicle quickly to leave the critical speed range and stabilize the vehicle-trailer combination.

General information

If the trailer power socket is in use but a trailer has not been hitched, the system can become active in certain driving situations, such as when using a bicycle rack with lighting.

Functional requirement

The system is functional at speeds beginning at approx. 40 mph/65 km/h while a trailer is being towed and the trailer power socket is in use.

System limits

The system cannot intervene or not intervene in time in the following situations, for instance:

- If a trailer jackknifes suddenly, for instance on slippery roads or loose surfaces.
- If a trailer with a high center of gravity tilts, before swinging is detected.
- If DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated or has malfunctioned.
- When the power consumption of a trailer is too low, for instance due to tail lights in LED technology, to be detected by the system.

Activating trailer towing

Concept

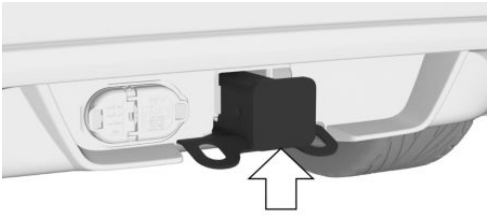
When driving with a trailer or load carrier and the trailer socket not in use, some driver assistance systems may have functional limitations or may malfunction. To prevent malfunctions, activate trailer towing.

Activating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Trailer mode"
5. "Trailer mode"

Mount for trailer hitch

General information



The mount for the trailer hitch is located on the rear of the vehicle.

Information on suitable trailer hitches is found on the underside of the mount, see arrow.

Follow the Maintenance Instructions, refer to page 357.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3032

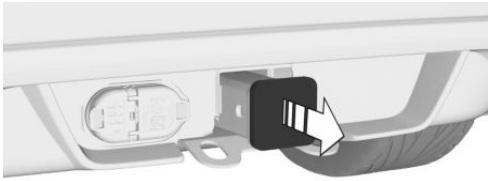
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Safety information

Warning

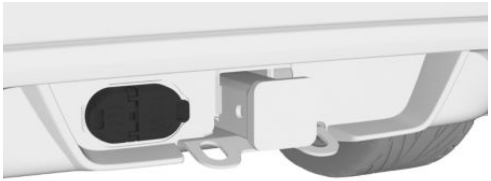
During driving operation, high temperatures can occur underneath the vehicle body, for instance caused by the exhaust gas system. Contact with the hot components can cause burns. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch hot components. Do not perform work in the vicinity of hot components until after they have cooled down.

Removing the cover



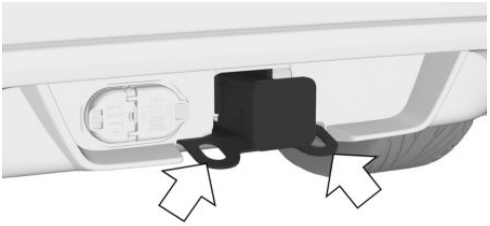
Pull the cover out of the back of the mount, and stow it in the vehicle.

Trailer connector



The socket is located to the left of the mount for the trailer hitch.

Fittings for trailer safety chain



There are two fittings on the mount for the trailer hitch for securing the trailer safety chain.

Secure the trailer safety chain to the fittings for increased safety when driving with a trailer.

Ensure that the trailer safety chain can move freely and is not dragging on the ground.

Brake Controller

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you have a Brake Controller installed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Information on installing a Brake Controller can be obtained from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3033
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Saving fuel

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Reducing fuel consumption

General information

The vehicle contains advanced technologies for the reduction of consumption and emission values.

Fuel consumption depends on a number of different factors.

Carrying out certain measures, such as a moderate driving style and regular maintenance, can influence fuel consumption and the environmental impact.

Remove unnecessary cargo

Additional weight increases fuel consumption.

Remove attached parts following use

Remove auxiliary mirrors, roof-mounted or rear luggage racks which are no longer required following use.

Attached parts on the vehicle impair the aerodynamics and increase the fuel consumption.

Close the windows and glass sunroof

Driving with the glass sunroof and windows open results in increased air resistance and raises fuel consumption.

Tires

General information

Tires can affect consumption in various ways, for instance tire size may influence consumption.

Check the tire inflation pressure regularly

Check and, if needed, correct the tire inflation pressure at least twice a month and before starting on a long trip.

Low tire inflation pressure increases rolling resistance and thus raises fuel consumption and tire wear.

Observe the correct tire inflation pressure as well as the ECO tire inflation pressure, where applicable.

Additional information:

Tire inflation pressure specifications, refer to page 300.

Drive away without delay

Do not wait for the engine to warm-up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving right away, but at moderate engine speeds.

This is the quickest way of warming the cold engine up to operating temperature.

Look well ahead when driving

Driving smoothly and proactively reduces fuel consumption.

Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3034
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

By maintaining a suitable distance to the vehicle driving ahead of you.

Avoid high engine speeds

Driving at low engine speeds lowers fuel consumption and reduces wear.

If necessary, observe the vehicle's gear shift indicator.

Use coasting conditions

When approaching a red light, take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle coast to a halt.

For going downhill take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle roll.

The flow of fuel is interrupted while coasting.

The high-voltage battery is charged.

Charge regularly

Charge the vehicle as often as possible at a charging facility. This will further reduce fuel consumption due to the use of electrical energy.

Switch off the engine during longer stops

Switch off the engine during longer stops, for instance at traffic lights, railroad crossings or in traffic congestion.

Switch off any functions that are not currently needed

Functions such as seat heating and the rear window defroster require a lot of energy and increase fuel consumption, especially in city and stop-and-go traffic.

Switch off these functions if they are not needed.

The ECO PRO drive mode supports the energy conserving use of comfort features. These functions are automatically deactivated partially or completely.

Have maintenance carried out

Have the vehicle maintained regularly to achieve optimal vehicle efficiency and service life. BMW recommends that maintenance work be performed by a BMW service center.

For information on the BMW Maintenance System.

Using the hybrid system efficiently

Concept

The vehicle's hybrid system runs automatically. Through foresighted driving, the hybrid properties are efficiently used, i.e., fuel consumption and energy recovery are optimized.

Optimizing energy recovery

Types of energy recovery

Energy recovery is used to charge the high-voltage battery. Energy recovery is important for the supply of electrical components and thus a prerequisite for fuel efficiency.

Energy recovery appears in three stages during coasting and braking:

- Low energy recovery: while coasting to a halt without stepping on the brake.
- Average energy recovery: while decelerating slightly by gently pressing the brake pedal.
- Maximum energy recovery: when pressing the brake pedal somewhat more firmly provided that the pointer remains in the middle area of the CHARGE indicator in the instrument cluster.

Optimum energy recovery

Foresighted driving and decelerating helps with optimizing energy recovery.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3035
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

As soon as the display shows the maximum energy recovery, only press the brake pedal harder if required by the situation.

Exemplary traffic situations for fuel efficiency

In many driving situations, the hybrid system allows for a particularly efficient energy management.

- Stop-and-go traffic:

  The combustion engine is switched on or over automatically by the hybrid system.
- Driving with constant speed:

  The electric motor relieves the combustion engine periodically by also being switched on.

Optimizing fuel consumption

Charging the vehicle regularly

Charge the vehicle regularly and completely using a suitable charging device. This will reduce fuel consumption due to the use of electrical energy.

Longer idle periods can reduce the charge state of the high-voltage battery.

Using the stationary climate control regularly

Run advance climate control in the vehicle during charging before driving off. This optimizes the range.

Stationary climate control, refer to page 249.

Avoiding the use of the combustion engine

Follow the following information to avoid using the combustion engine:

- Set the features of the hybrid system to MAX eDRIVE.

  E: ePOWER, refer to page 130.
- Follow the indicators for electric driving in the instrument cluster.

  E: ePOWER, refer to page 130.

Using the navigation system regularly

Use the navigation system also for familiar and regularly traveled routes. When the navigation system destination guidance is active, the hybrid system uses the existing navigation data. The upcoming course of the road is analyzed. Hybrid operation adapts to the specific route sections.

The function may be restricted if the navigation data is invalid, outdated or not available, for example.

ECO PRO

Concept

ECO PRO supports a driving style that saves on consumption. For this purpose, the engine control and comfort features, for instance the climate control output, are adjusted.

Under certain conditions the engine is automatically decoupled from the transmission in the D selector lever position and the engine is switched off. The D selector lever position remains engaged.

In addition, context-sensitive information, ECO PRO tips, are displayed to assist with an efficient driving style.

General information

The system includes the following EfficientDynamics functions and EfficientDynamics displays:

- ECO PRO seat climate control.
- ECO PRO climate control.
- ECO PRO light and sight.
- Driving style analysis.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3036

Overview

ECO PRO Button

Activating ECO PRO

ECO PRO Press the button. ECO PRO is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Configuring ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL

Via the Driving Dynamics Control

1. Activate ECO PRO.
2. "ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL"

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driving mode"
4. "ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

ECO PRO limit

- "ECO PRO speed": activate ECO PRO speed.

  An ECO PRO tip is displayed if the speed of the set ECO PRO limit is exceeded.
- "Notification at:"

  Set the desired speed for the ECO PRO speed.

Activating/deactivating ECO PRO functions

The following ECO PRO functions can be activated/deactivated:

- "ECO PRO seat heating"
- "ECO PRO climate control"
- "ECO PRO light and sight"

Settings are stored for the driver profile currently used.

ECO PRO seat climate control

The activation of ECO PRO will reduce the output of the seat heating.

ECO PRO climate control

Climate control is set to be efficient.

This means, it is possible to deviate slightly from the set temperature or to heat or cool the car's interior more slowly, to economize on consumption.

ECO PRO light and sight

The output of exterior mirror heating and rear window defroster is reduced.

Resetting the settings

Reset ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL to the standard settings:

"Reset to ECO PRO STANDARD"

Driving style analysis

Concept

The function helps develop an especially efficient driving style and to conserve fuel.

For this purpose, the driving style is analyzed. The assessment is done in various categories and is displayed on the Control Display.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3037
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

This display will help you adjust your driving style and save some fuel.

General information

The current trip is assessed.

To assist with an efficient driving style, ECO PRO tips are displayed during driving.

The range of the vehicle can be extended by adjusting your driving style.

Functional requirement

This function is available in ECO PRO drive mode.

Calling up the Driving style analysis

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Driving style analysis"

Display on the Control Display

The display of the Driving style analysis shows the efficiency of the Driving style.

The more efficient the driving style, the more bars are displayed in color.

In contrast, a reduced number of bars will be displayed with an inefficient driving style.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3038

Charging the vehicle

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

General information

The vehicle can be charged using various charging cables at charging stations or household sockets.

Control and monitoring of the charging process are handled completely automatically. The charge current strength can be set via iDrive.

Safety information

Warning

Improper working with electrical current can lead to an electric shock due to high voltages or high currents. There is a risk of fire or danger to life. Observe the general safety regulations when working with electrical current.

Warning

A faulty and incorrectly designed charging device at the charging location can cause damage to the vehicle and overload the power mains at the charging location. There is a risk of fire and a risk of injury.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that, prior to your first use of a charging location, you have the compatibility of the following components confirmed:

- Charging cable.
- Charging station.
- Household socket and connected circuits.

Warning

Damaged or worn charging devices, for instance worn contacts, can heat up. There is a risk of fire. Only use charging devices that are in good condition.

Warning

Simultaneous charging and refueling poses a risk of fire if a sufficient safety distance from easily flammable materials is not maintained. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not fill the vehicle with fuel and charge it simultaneously.

Warning

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. High voltage is present at the charging connection. There is a risk of injury or danger to life.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that work on the charging connection, for instance cleaning, be performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3039
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

High-voltage battery

The high-voltage battery is used as an energy accumulator. The high-voltage battery can be charged by energy recovery during the trip or via the power grid.

In order to operate the high-voltage battery optimally, charge the vehicle regularly and fully using a compatible charger.

When charging via the power grid, you can chose between the following variants:

- Household socket.
- AC charging station.

Charging is possible via a household socket with a voltage of 120 volts.

For optimal use of the energy from the power mains, charging at a charging station, for instance BMW Wallbox, is recommended.

Charge current

General information

The charge current strength is indicated in amperes.

The vehicle cannot automatically detect the maximum permissible charge current strength of the power grid during charging via a household socket.

Charging on a household socket

Prior to the first charging at your own household socket, as well as when charging at external electrical power sockets, the allowed charge current strength must be determined, for instance by a qualified electrician.

The current limit of the charge current strength can be set via iDrive.

Current limit

General information

The current limit for charging via the Mode 2 charging cable can be set.

Depending on the electrical mains, the vehicle must be charged with a different charge current strength. By default, the current limit of the charge current is set to the lowest level.

Set current limit

1. "CAR"
2. "Plan charge/climate"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "AC settings"
6. "Current limit"
7. Select the desired setting.

Settings are stored. When you change charging locations you also might need to change the setting for charging.

Set the charge current strength at other household sockets to the lowest level.

Maintaining the charge state

If it is necessary to conserve the electrical range for a later time during the trip, for example, BATTERY CONTROL can be used to maintain or increase the current charge state of the high-voltage battery.

Charging cable

General information

Use a mode 2 charging cable, mode 3 charging cable, or the permanently installed cable of a charging station to charge the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3040
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Different charging cables can be required depending on the country.

Safety information

Warning

Non-compatible charging cables or unsuitable charging stations can heat up and cause damage to the vehicle. There is a risk of fire. Use charging cables or charging stations for charging that are suitable for the respective vehicle type.

A dealer's service center will be glad to provide information about suitable charging cables.

Warning

Improper use of the charging cable can prevent charging and lead to damage, for instance cable fire. There is a risk of fire. Use the charging cable only for charging the vehicle, and do not extend it using cables or adapters.

Warning

Damaged charging cables can heat up or lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of fire or a risk of injury. Use undamaged charging cables only.

Mode 2 charging cable

Depending on the country version, the vehicle is supplied with a Mode 2 charging cable.

Mode 2 charging cables can be used to charge the vehicle from grounded household sockets. Charging at household socket connections is performed with alternating current.

When a Mode 2 charging cable is used, the efficiency values may differ from those stated on the energy label.

The Mode 2 charging cable is also referred to as standard charging cable.

Mode 3 charging cable

Depending on the country version, the vehicle is supplied with a mode 3 charging cable.

The mode 3 charging cable makes it possible to quickly recharge at sockets of designated AC charging stations using a special connector. Charging is performed with alternating current at designated AC charging stations. The charging process can be completed faster than at household sockets.

A charge current strength of up to maximum 16 A is possible.

The charging cable may be permanently installed at the charging station.

The mode 3 charging cable is also referred to as AC quick charging cable.

Storage

For the delivery, the charging cable is stowed in the luggage compartment, for instance under the cargo floor panel or in a bag.

Stow charging cable after use in the same place again.

If the charging cable is stowed in a bag, fasten the bag at an open lashing point in the luggage compartment.

If required, store the charging cable with the installed connector cover to prevent moisture in the charging cable plug.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3041
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Connecting

Charging socket flap

The charging socket flap is located on the left side of the vehicle.

Always keep charging socket clean and unobstructed.

Keep the charging socket flap closed when the charging socket is not used.

Connecting a charging cable

To connect, engage selector lever position P, deactivate drive-ready state, and unlock the vehicle. Set the parking brake, if needed.

1. To open the charging socket flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The charging socket flap opens.

2. Connect the mode 2 charging cable to the household socket or the mode 3 charging cable to the port at the AC charging station.
3. Insert the appropriate charging cable connector, and push it in until it engages.

Removing

General information

When the vehicle is locked, the charging cable is locked. Unlock the vehicle before removing the cable.

If necessary, clean the area between the charging socket flap and charging socket, for instance from snow, before removing it.

Disconnecting a charging cable

1. Unlock the vehicle with the vehicle key if it is locked.

   Charging cable is unlocked.
2. Press the release button on the handle, arrow 1, and grasp the charging cable at the gripping areas.

3. Remove the charging cable from the charging socket, arrow 2.
4. Press on the charging socket flap until it engages.
5. Attach cover of the charging cable connector, if needed.
6. Disconnect the mode 2 charging cable from the household socket or the mode 3 charging cable from the port at the AC charging station as needed.
7. Stow the charging cable.

   At a charging station, insert the permanently installed charging cable in the place provided for it.

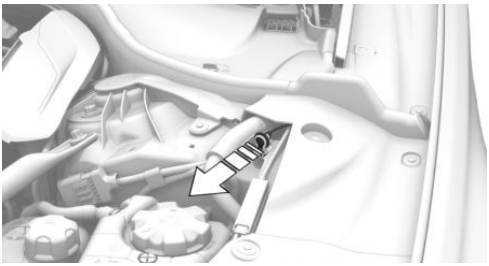
Performing emergency release

The charging cable is locked when the vehicle is locked and during the charging process.

In case of an electrical malfunction, the charging cable can be manually unlocked.

1. Opening the hood.
2. Release the button from the holder.
3. Pull the knob.

   The charging cable is manually unlocked.



4. Remove charging cable.

   Detach, refer to page 291.

Have the locking system of the charging socket checked at the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop after emergency unlocking of the charging cable.

Charging process

General information

At high or low outside temperatures, preheating/precooling of the high-voltage battery may cause longer charging times.

If the Mode 2 charging cable is exposed to high temperatures and direct sunlight, this may interrupt the charging process. Charging will resume automatically.

Safety information

Warning

Improper use of the power mains connection can lead to damage, for instance cable fire. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Use the charging cable only for charging the vehicle, and do not extend it using cables or adapters.

Warning

If the charge current strength is adjusted incorrectly, the power mains of the household socket can be overloaded and overheat. There is a risk of fire. Adjust the charge current strength to the power mains prior to charging on household sockets. With unknown power networks, set on the lowest level.

Warning

An incorrectly connected charging cable can lead to damage, for instance cable fire. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the charging cable connector is completely inserted in the charging socket.

Starting the charging process

1. Engage selector lever position P. Set the parking brake, if needed.
2. Planning the charging process.

   For planning the charging process, refer to page 293.
3. Switch off drive-ready state.
4. Connect the mode 2 charging cable to the household socket or the mode 3 charging cable to the port at the AC charging station as needed.
5. Open the charging socket flap.
6. Connect the charging cable to the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3043
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Connecting the charging cable, refer to page 291.

7. Lock vehicle if it is unlocked.

Charging status display

Indicator light at the charging socket

The charging status for charging with a charging cable is indicated on the charging socket indicator light.

Charging status

Light	Charging status
White	Charging cable can be connected or removed.
Flashes yellow	Charging process is being prepared.
Blue	Charging process paused.
Flashes blue	Charging process is active.
Flashes red	Fault in the charging process.
Green	Charging process is completed.

When the vehicle is locked, the indicator light goes out after some time.

When the vehicle is unlocked, the blue indicator light flashes continuously. The other indicator lights go out after some time.

To check the charging state, press the button on the vehicle key. The charging status is indicated on the indicator light. In some cases the vehicle is locked.

Additional messages about the charging status can be displayed in the instrument cluster, on the BMW display key, or via the BMW Connected app on a smartphone.

Planning the charging process

General information

The charging process can be adapted to constraints, such as the cost of electricity, available power sources, or a low ambient temperature. The vehicle controls the charging process in such a way that the charging process is completed if possible at the departure time. A departure time must be set for this purpose.

The following functions are available:

- Immediate charging.
- Charging in the time frame.

If drive-ready state is switched off, changes can be made via iDrive. Settings for the stationary climate control and charging process are also accepted for planned departure times.

1. Switch off drive-ready state.
2. "Charge immediately once"

Additional information:

Departure time, refer to page 295.

Setting the charging mode

1. "CAR"
2. "Plan charge/climate"
3. "Charging mode:"
4. Select the desired settings:
   - "Charge immediately": the charging process starts as soon as the charging cable is connected.
   - "Charging in time slot": if a departure time is set, a time window for charging with a favorable electricity rate can be set.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3044

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Charging in the time frame

General information

During the charging process, a time window for charging with a favorable electricity rate can be set.

To set a time window for favorable charging, a departure time must be set.

If drive-ready state is switched off, changes can be made via iDrive.

Setting the time window for favorable-rate

If a departure time is set, a time window for charging with a favorable electricity rate can be set.

1. "CAR"
2. "Plan charge/climate"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "AC settings"
6. "Charging time slot"
7. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "From:": set rate start.
   - ▷ "Until:": set rate end.

The vehicle can also start the charging process before the selected time window begins or end it after the selected time window finishes. The starting point of the charging process is adjusted so the vehicle can be as fully charged as possible and, if applicable, its climate adjusted by the departure time.

If drive-ready state is switched off, changes can be made via iDrive.

The set time window can be ignored for the next charging process: "Charge immediately once"

Stopping the charging process

The charging process can be stopped at any time by removing the charging cable and continued at a later time by connecting the charging cable. This enables other consumers to use the power connection or prevents simultaneous high power from multiple consumers, for example.

Additional information:

Detach, refer to page 291.

Continuing the charging process

If the charging process is interrupted, for instance through a temporary power failure, the charging process is automatically continued after the interruption.

Terminating the charging process

1. Remove the charging cable from the vehicle.
   Detach, refer to page 291.
2. Stow the charging cable as required.
3. Press on the charging socket flap until it engages.
4. Lock vehicle if it is unlocked.

Displays in the instrument cluster

The charge state indicator light shows the charge state of the high-voltage battery in the instrument cluster, if standby state is switched on. If all bars are filled, the high-voltage battery is fully charged.

Even if no bars are filled, the high-voltage system is still under high voltage.

Information regarding the charging process is shown on the charging screen.

Display	Meaning
	Blue connector: charging process active or completed. White connector: charging process interrupted.
	End of charging time. Set departure time.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3045
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Display	Meaning
	Charging progress bar.
	Indicator in blue: charged electrical range.
	Display in white: actual maximum available electric range with fully charged high-voltage battery.
	Maximum current limit or currently set current limit.
	Departure time set.
	Climate control activated at departure time.
	Flashing: ventilation active.
	Flashing: heating active.
	Flashing: cooling active.

Additional information:

Charging screen, refer to page 148.

Departure time

Concept

For optimum range and climate control, the departure time can be set before parking the vehicle.

General information

With a set departure time, the vehicle is preheated or precooled if climate control is set.

The following settings are possible for departure time:

- Climate control for departure time.
- Scheduling of up to three regular departure times.
- Planning a one-time departure time.

If drive-ready state is switched off, changes can be made via iDrive. Settings for climate control and charging process are also applied for scheduled departure times.

Climate control for departure time

1. "CAR"
2. "Plan charge/climate"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Precond. for depart."

Setting the departure time

1. "CAR"
2. "Plan charge/climate"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Departure schedule"
5. Select the desired departure time.
6. Set the time and weekday.

Up to three regular departure times and a one-time departure time can be set.

Activating the departure time

1. "CAR"
2. "Plan charge/climate"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Departure schedule"
5. Select the desired departure time.
6. "Activate departure"

Up to three regular departure times or a one-time departure time can be activated.

The set departure time will be deactivated, if the departure time was ignored three times in a row.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3046

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Climate control

General information

The following settings for vehicle air conditioning are possible:

- Activate stationary climate control immediately.

  The range is reduced if stationary climate control is activated without a charging cable connected.
- Planned climate control at the set departure time.

Additional information:

Stationary climate control, refer to page 249.

Discharged high-voltage and vehicle battery

General information

In addition to the high-voltage battery, the vehicle has a 12 volt vehicle battery, which is required for operation of the onboard electronics.

If the high-voltage battery is discharged and the combustion engine is started, air conditioning may be limited.

With a discharged vehicle battery, no operation of the vehicle is possible.

Starting the vehicle

If the vehicle battery is discharged, the combustion engine can be started using the battery of another vehicle and two jumper cables.

Additional information:

Jump-starting, refer to page 351.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3047
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Refueling

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Follow the following when refueling

General information

Follow the fuel recommendation prior to refueling.

To also ensure all engine functions under unfavorable conditions, for instance steep vehicle inclinations, at least 3 US gal/10 liters fuel should be refueled.

When refueling, insert the filler nozzle completely into the filler pipe. Lifting up the fuel pump nozzle during refueling causes:

- Premature switching off.
- Reduced return of the fuel vapors.

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

Make sure that the fuel cap is closed properly after refueling, otherwise the emissions warning light may light up.

Follow safety regulations posted at the gas station.

Additional information:

Fuel quality, refer to page 331.

Safety information

Warning

Simultaneous charging and refueling poses a risk of fire if a sufficient safety distance from easily flammable materials is not maintained. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not fill the vehicle with fuel and charge it simultaneously.

NOTICE

With a driving range of less than 30 miles/50 km the engine may no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of damage to property. Refuel promptly.

NOTICE

Fuels are toxic and aggressive. Overfilling of the fuel tank can damage the fuel system. Painted surfaces may be damaged by contact with fuel. Escaping fuel can harm the environment. There is a risk of damage to property. Avoid overfilling.

Tank vent

Concept

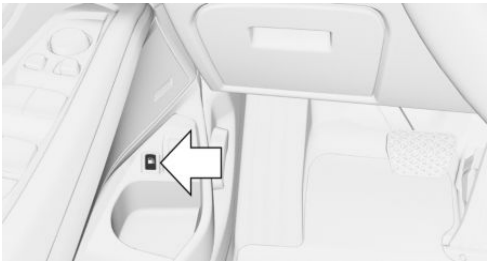
The vehicle is equipped with a special fuel tank. The fuel tank is designed for special requirements that arise from hybrid operation of the vehicle, i.e., alternating drive with combustion engine or electric motor.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3048
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

General information

Excess pressure may build up in the fuel tank as a result of gasoline vapors; this pressure is dissipated before the fuel cap is opened.

Overview



The button is located in the storage compartment of the driver's door.

Venting the tank

1. Switch off drive-ready state.
2. Press the button to start the pressure equalization.

   The tank venting status is displayed in the instrument cluster. In rare cases, tank venting can last several minutes.

   When tank venting has finished, a message is displayed in the instrument cluster. The fuel filler flap is released for opening.
3. Open the fuel filler flap.

   If it is not possible to open the fuel filler flap after tank venting, press the button again.

   If it is still not possible to open the fuel filler flap even after pressing the button again, unlock the fuel filler flap manually.

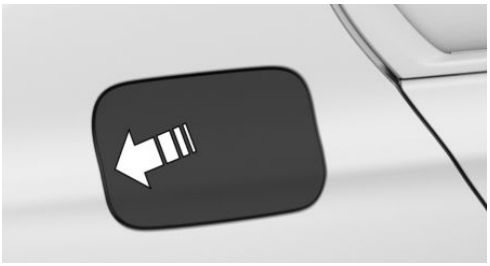
   Emergency unlocking, refer to page 299.

Fuel cap

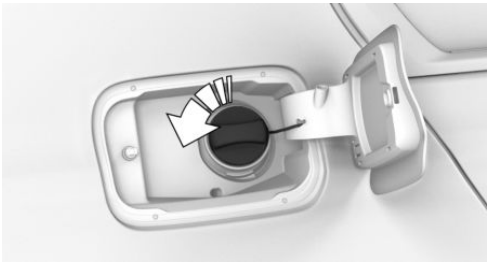
Opening

Before opening, vent the tank.

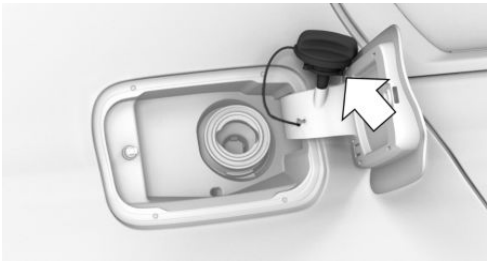
1. To open the fuel filler flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.



2. Turn the fuel cap counterclockwise.



3. Place the fuel cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.



Additional information:

Tank ventilation system, refer to page 297.

Closing

Warning

The retaining strap of the fuel cap can be jammed and crushed during closing. The cap cannot be correctly closed. Fuel or fuel vapors can escape. There is a risk of injury or risk of dam-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3049
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

age to property. Pay attention that the retaining strap is not jammed or crushed when closing the cap.

1. Fit the fuel cap and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.
2. Press on the fuel filler flap until it engages.

Emergency unlocking

It may be necessary in certain situations to unlock the fuel filler flap manually, for instance with an electrical fault.

The release is located in the cargo area.

1. Open the cover on the right side trim.

2. Pull the green button with the fuel pump symbol. This silently releases the fuel filler flap.
3. To open the fuel filler flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.
4. Carefully open the fuel cap. Excess pressure can build up in the fuel tank from gasoline vapor.
5. Refuel the vehicle as usual. The excess pressure in the tank may make refueling difficult, for instance the fuel pump nozzle may shut off frequently.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Wheels and tires

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Tire inflation pressure

General information

The tire characteristics and tire inflation pressure influence the following:

- The service life of the tires.
- Road safety.
- Driving comfort.
- Fuel consumption.

Safety information

Warning

A tire with too little or no tire inflation pressure may heat up significantly and sustain damage. This will have a negative impact on aspects of handling, such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident. Regularly check the tire inflation pressure, and correct it as needed, for instance twice a month and before a long trip.

Tire inflation pressure specifications

In the tire inflation pressure table

The tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 300, contains all tire inflation pressure specifications for the specified tire sizes at the ambient temperature. The tire inflation pressure values apply to tire sizes approved by the manufacturer of the vehicle for the vehicle type.

To identify the correct tire inflation pressure, please note the following:

- Tire sizes of your vehicle.
- Maximum permitted driving speed.

On the Control Display

The current tire inflation pressure values and the intended tire inflation pressure values for the mounted tires can be displayed on the Control Display.

To ensure that they are displayed correctly, the tire sizes must be stored in the system and must have been set for the mounted tires.

The current tire inflation pressure value is located on each tire.

The reference tire inflation pressure value is located in the lower area of the Control Display.

Checking the tire inflation pressure

General information

Tires heat up while driving. The tire inflation pressure increases with the tire temperature.

Tires have a natural, consistent loss of tire inflation pressure.

The displays of inflation devices may under-read by up to 0.1 bar/2 psi.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3051
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Checking using tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire inflation pressure table

1. Determine the intended tire inflation pressure levels for the mounted tires.
2. Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, using a pressure gage, for example.
3. Correct the tire inflation pressure if the actual tire inflation pressure deviates from the intended tire inflation pressure.
4. Check whether all valve caps are screwed onto the tire valves.

The tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire inflation pressure table only relate to cold tires or tires at the same temperature as the ambient temperature.

Only check the tire inflation pressure levels when the tires are cold, i.e.:

- ▷ A driving distance of max. 1.25 miles/2 km has not been exceeded.
- ▷ If the vehicle has not moved again for at least 2 hours after a trip.

Checking using the tire inflation pressure specifications on the Control Display

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) "Tire Pressure Monitor"
4. Check whether the current tire inflation pressure levels deviate from the intended tire pressure value.
5. Correct the tire inflation pressure if the actual tire inflation pressure deviates from the intended tire inflation pressure.

After correcting the tire inflation pressure

With runflat tires:

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

With Tire Pressure Monitor:

The corrected tire inflation pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the correct tire settings have been made.

With tires that cannot be found in the tire pressure values on the Control Display, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM.

Tire inflation pressures up to 100 mph/160 km/h

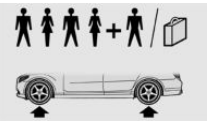
For speeds of up to 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table and adjust as necessary.

These pressure values can also be found on the tire inflation pressure label on the driver's door pillar.

Do not exceed a speed of 100 mph/160 km/h.

Tire inflation pressure values up to 100 mph/160 km/h

X3 xDrive30e

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
225/60 R 18 104 H XL A/S 245/50 R 19 105 H XL A/S 245/50 R 19 105 W XL 225/60 R 18 104 H XL M+S 245/50 R 19 105 V XL M+S	2.4 / 35	2.9 / 42
245/45 R 20 103 V XL M+S	2.6 / 38	3.1 / 45
Front: 245/45 R 20 103 W XL	2.2 / 32	-
Rear: 275/40 R 20 106 W XL	-	2.7 / 39
Front: 245/40 R 21 100 Y XL	2.5 / 36	-
Rear: 275/35 R 21 103 Y XL	-	3.0 / 44
Front: 245/45 R 20 103 V XL M+S	2.6 / 38	-
Rear: 275/40 R 20 106 V XL M+S	-	2.7 / 39

Tire inflation pressures at max. speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h

Warning

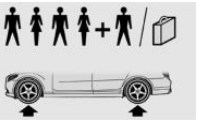
In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph/160 km/h, please observe, and, if necessary, adjust tire pressures for speeds exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h from the relevant table on the following pages. Otherwise, tire damage and accidents could occur.

For speeds over 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table and adjust as necessary.

Tire inflation pressure values over 100 mph/160 km/h

X3 xDrive30e

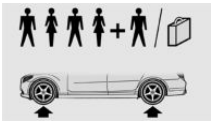
Without high-speed tuning feature

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
225/60 R 18 104 H XL A/S 245/50 R 19 105 H XL A/S 245/50 R 19 105 W XL 225/60 R 18 104 H XL M+S 245/50 R 19 105 V XL M+S	2.8 / 41	3.3 / 48
245/45 R 20 103 V XL M+S	2.8 / 41	3.3 / 48

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3053
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Front: 245/45 R 20 103 W XL	2.6 / 38	-
Rear: 275/40 R 20 106 W XL	-	3.1 / 45
Front: 245/40 R 21 100 Y XL	2.6 / 38	-
Rear: 275/35 R 21 103 Y XL	-	3.1 / 45
Front: 245/45 R 20 103 V XL M+S	2.8 / 41	-
Rear: 275/40 R 20 106 V XL M+S	-	3.0 / 44

With high-speed tuning feature

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
245/50 R 19 105 W XL	2.7 / 39	3.2 / 46
225/60 R 18 104 H XL M+S 245/50 R 19 105 V XL M+S	2.9 / 42	3.4 / 49
Front: 245/45 R 20 103 W XL	2.7 / 39	-
Rear: 275/40 R 20 106 W XL	-	3.2 / 46
Front: 245/40 R 21 100 Y XL	2.7 / 39	-
Rear: 275/35 R 21 103 Y XL	-	3.2 / 46

Tire identification marks

Tire size

245/45 R 18 96 Y

245: nominal width in mm

45: aspect ratio in %

R: radial tire code

18: rim diameter in inches

96: load rating, not for ZR tires

Y: speed rating, before the R on ZR tires

Maximum tire load

Maximum tire load is the maximum permissible weight for which the tire is approved.

Locate the maximum tire load on the tire sidewall and the Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR – on the certification label on the driver door B-pillar. Divide the tire load by 1.1. It must be greater than one-half of the vehicle's Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR. Note, front vs. rear GAWR and tire loads, respectively.

Speed letter

Designation	Maximum speed
Q	up to 100 mph/160 km/h
R	up to 106 mph/170 km/h
S	up to 112 mph/180 km/h
T	up to 118 mph/190 km/h
H	up to 131 mph/210 km/h
V	up to 150 mph/240 km/h
W	up to 167 mph/270 km/h
Y	up to 186 mph/300 km/h
(Y)	above 186 mph/300 km/h

Tire Identification Number

DOT Code: DOT xxxx xxx 3820

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3054

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

xxxx: manufacturer code for the tire brand

xxx: tire size and tire design

2120: tire age

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

Tire age

Recommendation

Regardless of the tire tread, replace tires at least every 6 years.

Manufacture date

You can find the manufacture date of the tire on the tire's sidewall.

Designation	Manufacture date
DOT … 3820	38th week 2020

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

E.g.: Treadwear 200; Traction AA; Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades

Treadwear

Traction AA A B C

Temperature A B C

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. E.g., a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half, 1 g, times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.

Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades Band A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Warning

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3055
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

RSC – Run-flat tires

Run-flat tires, refer to page 308, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the sidewall.

M+S

Winter and all-season tires with better cold weather performance than summer tires.

Tire tread

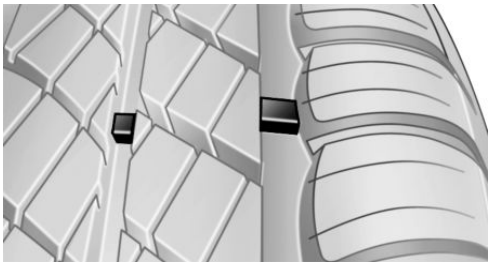
Summer tires

Do not drive with a tire tread of less than 0.12 in/3 mm, otherwise there is an increased risk of hydroplaning.

Winter tires

Do not drive with a tire tread of less than 0.16 in/4 mm, as such tires are less suitable for winter operation.

Minimum tread depth



Wear indicators are distributed around the tire circumference. These wear indicators have the legally required minimum height of 0.063 in/1.6 mm.

The positions of the wear indicators are marked on the tire sidewall with TWI, Tread Wear Indicator.

Tire damage

General information

Inspect your tires regularly for damage, foreign objects lodged in the tread, and tread wear.

Driving over rough or damaged road surfaces, as well as debris, curbs and other obstacles can cause serious damage to wheels, tires and suspension parts. This is more likely to occur with low-profile tires, which provide less cushioning between the wheel and the road. Be careful to avoid road hazards and reduce your speed, especially if your vehicle is equipped with low-profile tires.

Indications of tire damage or other vehicle malfunctions:

- Unusual vibrations.
- Unusual tire or running noises.
- Unusual handling such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.

Damage can be caused by the following situations, for instance:

- Driving over curbs.
- Road damage.
- Tire inflation pressure too low.
- Vehicle overloading.
- Incorrect tire storage.

Safety information

Warning

Damaged tires can lose tire inflation pressure, which can lead to loss of vehicle control. There is a risk of accident. If tire damage is suspected while driving, immediately reduce speed and stop. Have wheels and tires checked. For this purpose, drive carefully to the nearest dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Have vehicle towed or trans-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3056

ported as needed. Do not repair damaged tires, but have them replaced.

Warning

Tires can become damaged by driving over obstacles, e.g., curbs or road damage, at high speed. Larger wheels have a smaller tire cross-section. The smaller the tire cross-section, the higher the risk of tire damage. There is a danger of accidents and property damage. If possible, avoid driving over objects or road conditions that may damage tires, or drive over them slowly and carefully.

Changing wheels and tires

Mounting and wheel balancing

Have mounting and wheel balancing carried out by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Wheel and tire combination

General information

You can ask the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop about the correct wheel/tire combination and wheel rim versions for the vehicle.

Safety information

Warning

Wheels and tires which are not suitable for your vehicle can damage parts of the vehicle, for instance due to contact with the body due to tolerances despite the same official size rating. There is a risk of an accident. The manufacturer of your vehicle strongly suggests that you use wheels and tires that have been recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for your vehicle type.

Warning

Mounted steel wheels can cause technical problems, for instance unexpected loosening of the lug bolts and damage to the brake discs. There is a risk of accident. Do not mount steel wheels.

Warning

Incorrect wheel/tire combinations will have a negative impact on the vehicle's handling and on the function of a variety of systems, such as the ABS Antilock Braking System or DSC Dynamic Stability Control. There is a risk of accident. To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires with a single tread configuration from a single manufacturer. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you use wheels and tires that have been recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for your vehicle type. Following tire damage, have the original wheel/tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

Recommended tire brands

For each tire size, the manufacturer of the vehicle recommends certain tire brands. The tire brands can be identified by a star on the tire sidewall.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3057
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

New tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new; they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Retreaded tires

Warning

Retreaded tires can have different tire casing structures. With advanced age the service life can be limited. There is a risk of an accident. The manufacturer of your vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

The manufacturer of the vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

Winter tires

General information

Winter tires are recommended for operating on winter roads.

Although so-called all-season M+S tires provide better winter traction than summer tires, they usually do not provide the same level of performance as winter tires.

Safety information

Warning

If the vehicle is equipped with an M Sport differential and all-weather tires on 19 inch rims, this can alter handling, for instance the vehicle may swerve off course. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. If the vehicle is equipped with an M Sport differential, do not fit all-weather tires on 19 inch rims.

Maximum speed of winter tires

If the maximum speed of the vehicle is higher than the permissible speed for the winter tires, then attach a label showing the permissible maximum speed in the field of view. The label is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

With winter tires mounted, observe and do not exceed the permissible maximum speed.

Changing runflat tires

When changing from run-flat tires to standard tires, it must be ensured that the vehicle contains a compact spare tire ("donut") or tire mobility kit. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Rotating wheels between axles

Warning

Rotating tires between the axles on vehicles with different tire sizes or rim sizes on the front and rear axles can cause damage to the tires and the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Do not rotate the tires between the axles on vehicles with different tire sizes or rim sizes on the front and rear axles.

Different wear patterns can occur on the front and rear axles depending on individual driving conditions. The tires can be rotated in pairs between the axles to achieve even wear. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. After rotating, check the tire pressure and correct, if needed.

Storing tires

Tire inflation pressure

Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the side wall of the tire.

Storage

- Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry and dark place.
- Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease, and solvents.
- Do not leave tires in plastic bags.
- Remove dirt from wheels or tires.

Run-flat tires

Concept

Run-flat tires permit continued driving under restricted conditions even in the event of a complete loss of tire inflation pressure.

General information

The wheels consist of tires that are self-supporting, to a limited degree, and possibly special rims.

The support of the sidewall allows the tire to remain drivable to a restricted degree in the event of a tire inflation pressure loss.

Follow the instructions for continued driving with a flat tire.

Safety information

Warning

The vehicle handles differently when a run-flat tire has insufficient or no tire pressure; for instance, reduced lane stability when braking, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of accident. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Warning

Heavy trailers can start swinging when continuing to drive with a flat tire. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Do not exceed a speed of 35 mph/60 km/h when driving with a trailer and a flat tire. Immediately brake in the case of swinging. Apply necessary steering corrections as carefully as possible.

Label

The tires are marked on the tire sidewall with Run-flat System Component RSC.

Repairing a flat tire

Safety measures

- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
- Switch on the hazard warning system.
- Secure the vehicle against rolling away by setting the parking brake.
- Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
- If necessary, set up a warning triangle at an appropriate distance.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3059
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Mobility System

Concept

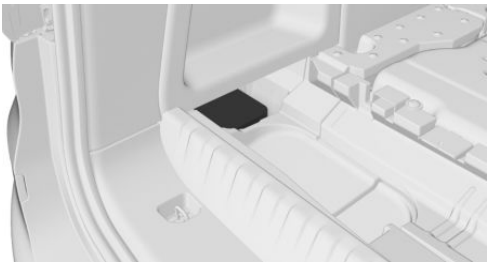
With the Mobility System, minor tire damage can be sealed temporarily to enable continued travel. To accomplish this, sealant is pumped into the tires, which seals the damage from the inside.

General information

- Follow the instructions on using the Mobility System found on the compressor and sealant container.
- Use of the Mobility System may be ineffective if the tire puncture measures approx. 1/8 inches/4 mm or more.
- Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop if the tire cannot be made drivable.
- Do not remove foreign bodies that have penetrated the tire. Remove foreign objects only when they are visibly protruding from the tire.
- Pull the speed limit sticker off the sealant container and apply it to the steering wheel.
- The use of a sealant can damage the wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics checked and replaced at the next opportunity.
- The compressor can be used to check the tire inflation pressure.

Overview

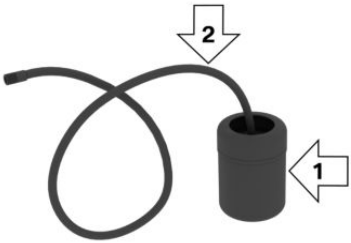
Storage



The Mobility System is located in the storage compartment on the left under the cargo floor panel.

Fold up the cargo floor panel.

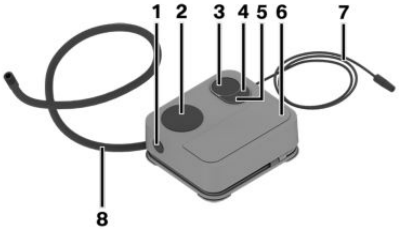
Sealant container



- Sealant container, arrow 1.
- Filling hose, arrow 2.

Observe use-by date on the sealant container.

Compressor



1 Sealant container unlocking
2 Sealant container holder
3 Tire pressure gage
4 Reduce tire inflation pressure button
5 On/off switch
6 Compressor
7 Connector/cable for socket
8 Connection hose

Safety measures

- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
- Switch on the hazard warning system.
- Secure the vehicle against rolling away by setting the parking brake.
- Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
- If necessary, set up a warning triangle at an appropriate distance.

Filling the tire with sealant

Safety information

⚠ DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can enter into the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.

⚠ NOTICE

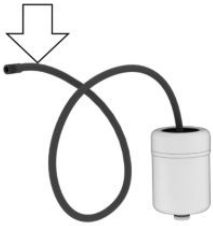
The compressor can overheat during extended operation. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not run the compressor for more than 10 minutes.

Filling

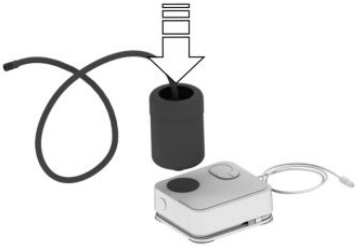
1. Shake the sealant container.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3061
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

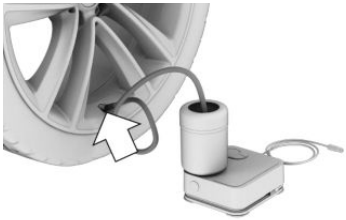
2. Pull filling hose completely out of the cover of the sealant container. Do not kink the hose.



3. Slide the sealant container into the holder on the compressor housing, ensuring that it engages audibly.



4. Screw the filling hose of the sealant container onto the tire valve of the nonworking wheel.



5. With the compressor switched off, insert the connector into the power socket in the vehicle interior.

6. With standby state or drive-ready state switched on, switch on the compressor.

Let the compressor run for max. 10 minutes to fill the tire with sealant and achieve a tire inflation pressure of approx. 2.0 bar.

While the tire is being filled with sealant, the tire inflation pressure may sporadically reach approx. 5 bar. Do not switch off the compressor at this point.

Checking and adjusting the tire inflation pressure

Checking

1. Switch off the compressor.
2. Read the tire inflation pressure on the tire pressure gage.

To continue the trip, a tire inflation pressure of at least 2 bar must be reached.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3062

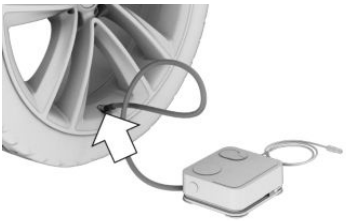
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Removing and stowing the sealant container

1. Unscrew the filling hose of the sealant container from the tire valve.
2. Press the red unlocking device.
3. Remove the sealant container from the compressor.
4. Wrap and store the sealant container in suitable material to avoid dirtying the cargo area.

Minimum tire inflation pressure is not reached

1. Pull the connector out of the power socket in the vehicle interior.
2. Drive 33 ft/10 m forward and back to distribute the sealant in the tire.
3. Screw the connection hose of the compressor directly onto the tire valve stem.



4. Insert the connector into the power socket in the vehicle interior.

5. With standby state or drive-ready state switched on, switch on the compressor.

   When the tire pressure does not reach at least 2 bar, contact a manufacturer service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

   When a tire pressure of at least 2 bar is reached, see Minimum tire inflation pressure is reached.
6. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
7. Pull the connector out of the power socket in the vehicle interior.
8. Stow the Mobility System in the vehicle.

Minimum tire inflation pressure is reached

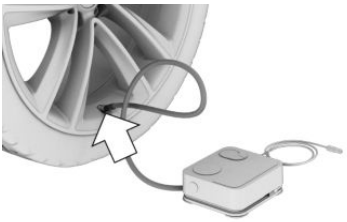
1. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
2. Pull the connector out of the power socket in the vehicle interior.
3. Stow the Mobility System in the vehicle.
4. Immediately drive approx. 5 miles/10 km to ensure that the sealant is evenly distributed in the tire.

   Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

   If possible, do not drive at speeds less than 12 mph/20 km/h.

Adjustment

1. Stop at a suitable location.
2. Screw the connection hose of the compressor directly onto the tire valve stem.



BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3063
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

3. Insert the connector into the power socket in the vehicle interior.

4. Correct the tire inflation pressure to at least 2.0 bar:
   - ▷ Increase tire inflation pressure: with standby state or drive-ready state switched on, switch on the compressor.
   - ▷ Reduce tire inflation pressure: press the button on the compressor.
5. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
6. Pull the connector out of the power socket in the vehicle interior.
7. Stow the Mobility System in the vehicle.

Continuing the trip

Do not exceed the maximum permissible speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor again.

Replace the nonworking tire and the sealant container of the Mobility System promptly.

Additional information:

- ▷ Run-flat tires, refer to page 321.
- ▷ Tire pressure monitor, refer to page 314.

Tire chains

Safety information

⚠ Warning

With the mounting of snow chains on unsuitable tires, the snow chains can come into contact with vehicle parts. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Only mount snow chains on tires that are designated by their manufacturer as suitable for the use of snow chains.

⚠ Warning

Insufficiently tight snow chains may damage tires and vehicle components. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the snow chains are always sufficiently tight. Re-tighten as needed according to the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Fine-link tire chains

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends the use of fine-link tire chains. Certain types of fine-link tire chains have been tested by the manufacturer of the vehicle and recommended as road-safe and suitable.

Information regarding suitable tire chains is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Use

Use only in pairs on the rear wheels, equipped with the tires of the following size:

- ▷ 225/60 R 18.
- ▷ 245/50 R 19.

Follow the tire chain manufacturer's instructions.

Do not initialize the Flat Tire Monitor after mounting tire chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3064
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Do not reset the Tire Pressure Monitor after mounting tire chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

When driving with tire chains, briefly activate Dynamic Traction Control DTC to optimize the drive power.

Maximum speed with tire chains

Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h when using tire chains.

Tire pressure monitor

Concept

The system monitors tire inflation pressure in the four mounted tires. The system warns you if there is a loss of pressure in one or more tires.

General information

Sensors in the tire valves measure the tire inflation pressure and tire temperature.

Using the tire settings in iDrive, the system can automatically compare the specified target pressures with the actual tire inflation pressures.

If tires are being used that are not specified on the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle, such as tires with special approval, the system needs to be actively reset. The system will then take over the actual tire inflation pressures as the target pressures.

When operating the system, also note the information found in the Tire inflation pressure chapter.

Additional information:

Tire inflation pressure, refer to page 300.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The display of the target pressures is not a substitute for the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle. Incorrect entries in the tire settings can lead to incorrect target tire inflation pressure values. In this case, it cannot be guaranteed that the notification of a loss of tire inflation pressure will be reliable. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Ensure that the tire sizes of the mounted tires are displayed correctly and match the details on the tires and on the vehicle.

Functional requirements

The following conditions must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable flagging of a loss of tire inflation pressure is not assured:

- Every time a tire or wheel is changed, the correct details on the mounted tires must be entered in the tire settings.
- The Tire Pressure Monitor does not activate until after driving for a few minutes:
  - After a tire or wheel replacement.
  - After a reset, for tires with special approval.
  - After changing the tire setting.
- For tires with special approval:
  - After a tire or wheel replacement, a reset was performed with the correct tire inflation pressure.
  - After the tire inflation pressure was adjusted to a new value, a reset was performed.
- Wheels with wheel electronics.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3065
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Tire settings

General information

The tire sizes of the mounted tires can be gathered from the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle or directly on the tires.

The tire details do not need to be re-entered when the tire inflation pressure is corrected.

For summer and winter tires, the tire details entered last are stored. After a tire or wheel replacement, the settings of the tire sets used last can be selected.

Changing settings

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) "Tire Pressure Monitor"
4. "Tire settings"
5. "Tire selection"
6. "Manual"
7. "Tire type"
   - ▷ "Summer"
   - ▷ "Winter/All-year"
8. Select the tire type that is mounted on the rear axle.

   For tires with special approval:

   "Other tires".

   Observe further proceeding in the perform a reset section.
9. Select the maximum road speed that will be used with the tires.
10. "Save tire settings"

The measurement of the current tire inflation pressure is started. The measurement progress is displayed.

Status display

Current status

The system status can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g., whether or not the system is active.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) "Tire Pressure Monitor"

The current status is displayed.

Current tire inflation pressure

The current tire inflation pressure is displayed for each tire.

The current tire inflation pressures may change during driving operation or depending on the external temperature.

Current tire temperature

Depending on the model, the current tire temperatures are displayed.

The current tire temperatures may change while driving or due to the external temperature.

Target pressure

The target pressure for the tires on the front and rear axles is displayed.

The specified target pressures take the influence of driving operation and external temperature on the tire temperature into account. The appropriate target pressure is always displayed, independent of the weather situation, tire temperatures and travel times.

The displayed target pressure may change and may differ from the tire inflation pressure details on the door pillar of the driver's door. The tire inflation pressure can thus be corrected to the value of the displayed target pressures.

The target pressure is immediately adjusted if the vehicle load is changed in the tire settings.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3066

Tire conditions

General information

Tire and system status are indicated by the color of the wheels and a text message on the Control Display.

Any existing messages may not be deleted if the target pressure is not reached after the tire inflation pressure is corrected.

All wheels green

- The system is active and bases warnings on the target pressures.
- For tires with special approval: the system is active and bases warnings on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

One to four yellow wheels

A flat tire or major drop in the tire inflation pressure has occurred in the indicated tires.

Gray wheels

It may not be possible to identify tire inflation pressure losses.

Possible causes:

- Malfunction.
- During tire inflation pressure measurement, after confirmation of the tire settings.
- For tires with special approval: a reset is performed for the system.

For tires with special approval: perform a reset

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor"
4. Make sure that correct tire settings have been made.

   Tire settings, refer to page 315.
5. Switch on drive-ready state and do not drive off.
6. Reset tire inflation pressure: "Perform reset".
7. Drive away.

The wheels are displayed in gray and the following is displayed "Resetting tire pressure…".

After a travel time of several minutes, the set tire inflation pressures are accepted as the target tire inflation pressures. The reset is completed automatically while driving.

After a successfully completed reset, the wheels on the Control Display are shown in green and the following is displayed: "Reset successful."

You may interrupt this trip at any time. When you continue the reset resumes automatically.

Messages: for tires without special approval

General information

A low tire inflation pressure may cause the DSC Dynamic Stability Control to be switched on.

Safety information

Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. Run-flat tires can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is equipped with normal tires. Follow the information on run-flat tires and continued driving with these tires.

If a tire inflation pressure check is required

Message

A symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3067
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Symbol	Possible cause
	Inflation was not carried out according to specifications, for instance when the tire has not been sufficiently inflated or in the case of a natural steady tire pressure loss.

Measure

Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.

If the tire inflation pressure is too low

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a tire inflation pressure loss.

Measure

1. Reduce the vehicle speed. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph/130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, for instance at a gas station, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires and correct if necessary.

If there is a significant loss of tire inflation pressure

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with the affected tire appears in a Check Control message on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with normal tires or run-flat tires.

   Run-flat tires are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire's sidewall.

   Run-flat tires, refer to page 308.
3. Read the description on What to do in case of a flat tire.

   Actions in the event of a flat tire, refer to page 319.

Messages: for tires with special approval

General information

A low tire inflation pressure may cause the DSC Dynamic Stability Control to be switched on.

Safety information

Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. Run-flat tires can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is equipped with normal tires. Follow the information on run-flat tires and continued driving with these tires.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3068
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

If a tire inflation pressure check is required

Message

A symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	Inflation was not carried out according to specifications, e.g., the tire has not been sufficiently inflated. The system has detected a wheel change, but no reset was done. The tire inflation pressure has fallen below the level of the last reset. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.
2. Perform a system reset.

If the tire inflation pressure is too low

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a tire inflation pressure loss. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Reduce the vehicle speed. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph/130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, for instance at a gas station, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires and correct if necessary.
3. Reset the system.

If there is a significant loss of tire inflation pressure

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with the affected tire appears in a Check Control message on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with normal tires or run-flat tires.

   Run-flat tires are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire's sidewall.

   Run-flat tires, refer to page 308.
3. Read the description on What to do in case of a flat tire.

   Actions in the event of a flat tire, refer to page 319.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3069
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Actions in the event of a flat tire

Normal tires

1. Identify the damaged tire.

   Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure gage of a flat tire kit.

   For tires with special approval: when the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been reset. In this case, perform the reset.

   If tire damage cannot be found, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
2. Repair the flat tire, e.g., with a flat tire kit or by changing the wheel.

Use of sealant, for instance from the flat tire kit, may damage the wheel electronics. Have the electronics replaced at the next opportunity.

Run-flat tires

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The vehicle handles differently when a run-flat tire has insufficient or no tire pressure; for instance, reduced lane stability when braking, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of accident. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

⚠ Warning

Heavy trailers can start swinging when continuing to drive with a flat tire. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Do not exceed a speed of 35 mph/60 km/h when driving with a trailer and a flat tire. Immediately brake in the case of swinging. Apply necessary steering corrections as carefully as possible.

Maximum speed

You may continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

Continued driving with a flat tire

Follow the following when continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

Possible driving range with a depressurized tire

The distance for which it may be possible to drive safely varies depending on how the vehicle is loaded and used, e.g., speed, road conditions, external temperature. The driving range may be less but may also be more if an economical driving style is used.

If the vehicle is loaded with an average weight and used under favorable conditions, the distance for which it may be safe to drive may be up to 50 miles/80 km.

Vehicle handling with damaged tires

Vehicles driven with a damaged tire will handle differently, potentially leading to conditions such as the following:

- Greater likelihood of swerving off course.
- Longer braking distances.
- Changed self-steering properties.

Modify your driving style. Avoid abrupt steering maneuvers or driving over obstacles, for instance curbs or potholes.

Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire.

Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident.

Do not continue driving. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

System limits

Temperature

The tire inflation pressure depends on the tire's temperature.

Driving or exposure to the sun will increase the tire's temperature, thus increasing the tire inflation pressure.

The tire inflation pressure is reduced when the tire temperature falls again.

These circumstances may cause a warning when temperatures fall very sharply.

Following a temperature-related warning, the target pressures are displayed on the Control Display again after a short distance.

Sudden tire pressure loss

The system cannot indicate sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances.

Failure performing a reset

Tires with special approval: the system will not function correctly if a reset was not performed, for example a flat tire may be indicated although the tire inflation pressures are correct.

Malfunction

Message

The yellow warning light flashes and is then illuminated continuously. A Check Control message is displayed. It may not be possible to identify tire pressure losses.

Measure

- A wheel without wheel electronics is mounted: have the wheels checked, if needed.
- Interference caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- For tires with special approval: the system was unable to complete the reset. Perform a system reset again.

Malfunction: have the system checked.

Declaration according to NHTSA/ FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Each tire, including the spare (if provided) should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.) As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale. Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3071
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Flat Tire Monitor FTM

Concept

The system detects tire inflation pressure loss on the basis of rotation speed differences between the individual wheels while driving.

In the event of a tire inflation pressure loss, the diameter and therefore the rotational speed of the corresponding wheel changes. The difference will be detected and reported as a flat tire.

The system does not measure the actual inflation pressure in the tires.

Functional requirements

The following conditions must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable flagging of a loss of tire inflation pressure is not assured:

- After a tire or wheel replacement, an initialization was performed with the correct tire inflation pressure.
- After the tire pressure was adjusted to a new value, an initialization was performed.

Status display

The current status of the Flat Tire Monitor FTM can be displayed, for instance whether the FTM is active.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Flat Tire Monitor"

The status is displayed.

Initialization required

An initialization must be performed in the following situations:

- After the tire inflation pressure has been adjusted.
- After a tire or wheel replacement.

Performing initialization

When initializing, the set tire inflation pressures serve as reference values in order to detect a flat tire. Initialization is started by confirming the tire inflation pressures.

Do not initialize the system when driving with tire chains.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Flat Tire Monitor"
4. Switch on drive-ready state and do not drive off.
5. Start the initialization with: "Perform reset"
6. Drive away.

The initialization is completed while driving, which can be interrupted at any time.

The initialization automatically continues when driving resumes.

Messages

General information

When a flat tire is indicated, DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if needed.

Safety information

Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. Run-flat tires can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is equipped with normal tires. Follow the information on run-flat tires and continued driving with these tires.

Indication of a flat tire

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with normal tires or run-flat tires.

   Run-flat tires are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire's sidewall.

   Run-flat tires, refer to page 308.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

Normal tires

1. Identify the damaged tire.

   To do this, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure gage of a flat tire kit.

   When the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor FTM may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

   If identification of flat tire damage is not possible, please contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
2. Repair the flat tire, e.g., with a flat tire kit or by changing the wheel.

Run-flat tires

Safety information

Warning

The vehicle handles differently when a run-flat tire has insufficient or no tire pressure; for instance, reduced lane stability when braking, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of accident. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Warning

Heavy trailers can start swinging when continuing to drive with a flat tire. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Do not exceed a speed of 35 mph/60 km/h when driving with a trailer and a flat tire. Immediately brake in the case of swinging. Apply necessary steering corrections as carefully as possible.

Maximum speed

You may continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3073
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Continued driving with a flat tire

Follow the following when continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

   When the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

Possible driving range with a depressurized tire

The distance for which it may be possible to drive safely varies depending on how the vehicle is loaded and used, e.g., speed, road conditions, external temperature. The driving range may be less but may also be more if an economical driving style is used.

If the vehicle is loaded with an average weight and used under favorable conditions, the distance for which it may be safe to drive may be up to 50 miles/80 km.

Vehicle handling with damaged tires

Vehicles driven with a damaged tire will handle differently, potentially leading to conditions such as the following:

- Greater likelihood of swerving off course.
- Longer braking distances.
- Changed self-steering properties.

Modify your driving style. Avoid abrupt steering maneuvers or driving over obstacles, for instance curbs or potholes.

Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire.

Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident.

Do not continue driving. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

System limits

The system could be delayed or malfunction in the following situations:

- A natural, even tire inflation pressure loss in all four tires will not be recognized. Therefore, check the tire inflation pressure regularly.
- Sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances cannot be recognized in advance.
- The system has not been initialized.
- When driving on a snowy or slippery road surface.
- Sporty driving style: spinning traction wheels, high lateral acceleration (drifting).
- When driving with snow chains.

Changing wheels/tires

General information

When using run-flat tires or a flat tire kit, a wheel does not always need to be changed immediately when there is a loss of tire inflation pressure due to a flat tire.

If needed, the tools for changing wheels are available as accessories from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

⚠ DANGER

The vehicle jack is only provided for short-term lifting of the vehicle for wheel changes. Even if all safety measures are observed, there is a risk of the raised vehicle falling, if the vehicle jack tips over. There is a risk of injuries or danger to

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3074
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

life. If the vehicle is raised, do not lie under the vehicle and do not start the engine.

DANGER

Supports such as wooden blocks under the vehicle jack reduce the capacity of the vehicle jack to bear weight. They have the potential to exert too much strain on the vehicle jack, causing it to tip over and the vehicle to fall. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not place supports under the vehicle jack.

Warning

The jack, issued by the vehicle manufacturer, is provided in order to perform a wheel change in the event of a breakdown. The jack is not designed for frequent use; for example, changing from summer to winter tires. Using the jack frequently may cause it to become jammed or damaged. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only use the jack to attach an emergency or spare wheel in the event of a breakdown.

Warning

On soft, uneven or slippery ground, for example snow, ice, tiles, etc., the vehicle jack can slip away. There is a risk of injury. If possible, change the wheel on a flat, solid, and slip-resistant surface.

Warning

The vehicle jack is optimized for lifting the vehicle and for the jacking points on the vehicle only. There is a risk of injury. Do not lift any other vehicle or cargo using the vehicle jack.

Warning

When the vehicle jack is not inserted into the jacking point provided for this purpose, the vehicle may be damaged or the vehicle jack may slip when it is being cranked up. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. When cranking up the vehicle jack, ensure that it is inserted in the jacking point next to the wheel housing.

Warning

A vehicle that is raised on a vehicle jack may fall off of the jack if lateral forces are exerted on it. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. While the vehicle is raised, do not exert lateral forces on the vehicle or pull abruptly on the vehicle. Have a stuck wheel removed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

Incorrect handling of the vehicle jack can damage the vehicle's underbody and expose high-voltage components. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. When cranking up the vehicle jack, ensure that it is inserted in the jacking point next to the wheel housing. Make sure not to damage any of the underbody paneling parts.

Securing the vehicle against rolling

General information

The vehicle manufacturer recommends to additionally secure the vehicle against rolling away when changing a wheel.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3075
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

On a level surface

Place wheel chocks or other suitable objects in front and behind the wheel that is diagonal to the wheel to be changed.

On a slight downhill gradient

If you need to change a wheel on a slight downhill grade, place chocks and other suitable objects, for instance rocks, under the wheels of both the front and rear axles against the rolling direction.

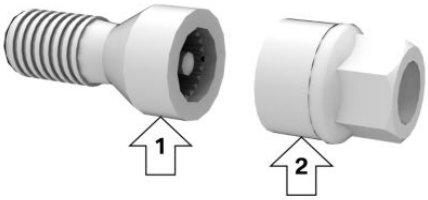
Lug bolt lock

Concept

The wheel lug bolts have a special coding. The lug bolts can only be released with the adapter which matches the coding.

Overview

The adapter of the lug bolt lock is in the onboard vehicle tool kit or in a storage compartment close to the onboard vehicle tool kit.



- Lug lock bolt, arrow 1.
- Adapter, arrow 2.

Unscrewing

1. Attach the adapter to the lug lock bolt.
2. Unscrew the lug lock bolt.
3. Remove the adapter after unscrewing the lug bolt.

Screwing on

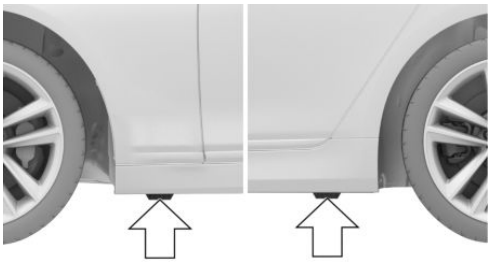
1. Attach the adapter to the lug lock bolt. If necessary, turn the adapter until it fits on the lug lock bolt.
2. Screw on the lug lock bolt. The tightening torque is 140 Nm.
3. Remove the adapter and stow it after screwing on the lug bolt.

Preparing the vehicle

- Park the vehicle on solid and non-slip ground at a safe distance from traffic.
- Switch on the hazard warning system.
- Set the parking brake.
- Engage a gear or move the selector lever to position P.
- As soon as permitted by the traffic flow, have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.

- Depending on the vehicle equipment, get wheel change tools and, if necessary, the emergency wheel from the vehicle.
- If necessary, set up a warning triangle or portable hazard warning light at an appropriate distance.
- Secure the vehicle additionally against rolling.
- Loosen the lug bolts a half turn.

Jacking points for the vehicle jack



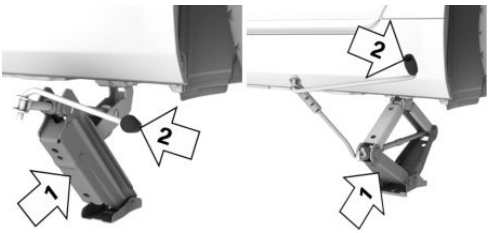
The jacking points for the vehicle jack are located at the indicated positions.

Jacking up the vehicle

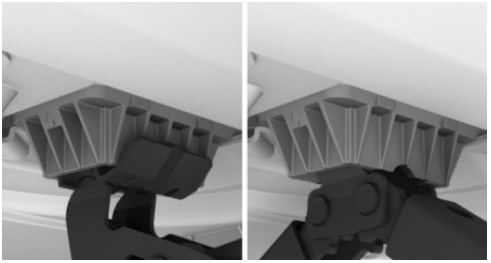
Warning

Hands and fingers can be jammed when using the vehicle jack. There is a risk of injury. Comply with the described hand position and do not change this position while using the vehicle jack.

1. Hold the vehicle jack with one hand, arrow 1, and grasp the vehicle jack crank or lever with your other hand, arrow 2.



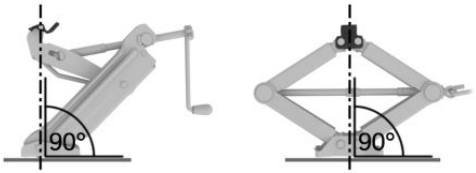
2. Insert the vehicle jack into the rectangular recess of the jacking point closest to the wheel to be changed.



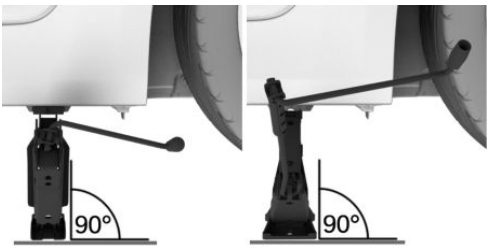
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3077
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

3. Extend the vehicle jack by turning the vehicle jack crank or lever clockwise.

4. Take your hand away from the vehicle jack as soon as the vehicle jack is under load and continue turning the vehicle jack crank or lever with one hand.
5. Make sure that the vehicle jack foot stands vertically and at a right angle beneath the jacking point.



6. Make sure that the vehicle jack foot stands vertically and perpendicularly beneath the jacking point after extending the vehicle jack.



7. Crank the vehicle up, until the vehicle jack is with the entire surface on the ground and the relevant wheel is maximum 1.2 inches/3 cm above ground.

Mounting a wheel

Mount one emergency wheel only, as required.

1. Unscrew the lug bolts.
2. Remove the wheel.
3. Put the new wheel or emergency wheel on and screw in at least two lug bolts in a crosswise pattern until hand-tight.

   When non-original light-alloy wheels of the vehicle manufacturer are mounted, the accompanying lug bolts may have to be used as well.
4. Hand-tighten the remaining lug bolts and tighten all lug bolts well in a crosswise pattern.
5. Turn the vehicle jack crank counterclockwise to retract the vehicle jack and lower the vehicle.
6. Remove the vehicle jack and stow it securely.

After the wheel change

1. Tighten the lug bolts crosswise. The tightening torque is 101 lbs ft/140 Nm.
2. Stow the nonworking wheel in the cargo area, if necessary.

   The nonworking wheel cannot be stored under the cargo floor panel because of its size.
3. Check tire inflation pressure at the next opportunity and correct as needed.
4. Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

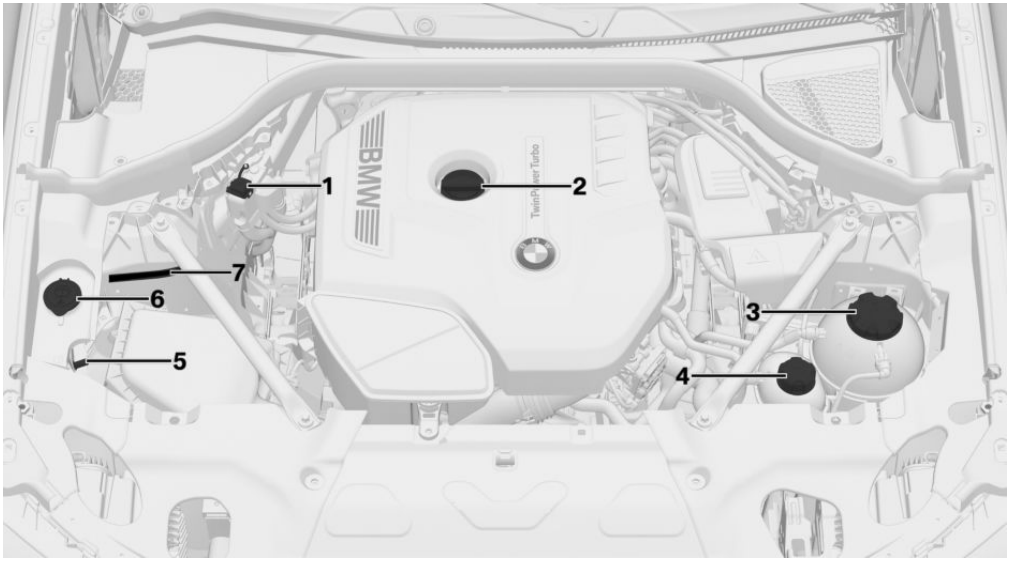
   Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor again.
5. Check to make sure the lug bolts are tight with a calibrated torque wrench.
6. Have the damaged tire replaced at the nearest dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Engine compartment

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Overview



1 Jump-starting, positive battery terminal
2 Oil filler neck
3 Coolant reservoir, engine
4 Depending on motorization: coolant reservoir for additional radiator
5 Jump-starting, negative battery terminal
6 Filler neck for washer fluid
7 Vehicle identification number

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3079
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Hood

Safety information

Warning

Improperly executed work in the engine compartment can damage vehicle components and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of an accident and damage to property. Have work in the engine compartment performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

The engine compartment accommodates moving components. Certain components in the engine compartment can also move with the vehicle switched off, for instance the radiator fan. There is a risk of injury. Do not reach into the area of moving parts. Keep articles of clothing and hair away from moving parts.

Warning

There are protruding parts, for instance locking hook, on the inside of the hood. There is a risk of injury. If the hood is open, pay attention to protruding parts and keep clear of these areas.

Warning

An incorrectly locked hood can open while driving and restrict visibility. There is a risk of accident. Stop immediately and correctly close the hood.

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when opening and closing the hood. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of hood is clear during opening and closing.

NOTICE

Folded-away wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.

NOTICE

When the hood is closed, it must engage on both sides. Pressing again can damage the hood. There is a risk of damage to property. Open the hood again and then close it energetically. Avoid pressing again.

Opening

1. Pull lever, arrow 1.

   Hood is unlocked.

2. After the lever is released, pull the lever again, arrow 2.

   Hood can be opened.

3. Be careful of protruding parts on the hood.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3080
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Closing

Energetically close the hood from approx. 20 in/50 cm.

The hood must engage on both sides.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3081
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Operating materials

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Fuel recommendation

General information

Depending on the region, many gas stations sell fuel that has been customized to winter or summer conditions. Fuel that is available in winter, for instance helps make a cold start easier.

Gasoline

General information

For the best fuel efficiency, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.

Fuels with a maximum ethanol content of 25 %, i. e. E10 or E25, may be used for refueling.

Ethanol should meet the following quality standards:

US: ASTM 4806–xx

CAN: CGSB-3.511–xx

xx: comply with the current standard in each case.

Safety information

⚠ CAUTION

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in harmful engine deposits or damage. Additionally, problems relating to drivability, starting and stalling, especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude, may occur.

If drivability problems are encountered, we recommend switching to a high quality gasoline brand and a higher octane grade — AKI number — for a few tank fills. To avoid harmful engine deposits, it is highly recommended to purchase gasoline from Top Tier retailers.

Failure to comply with these recommendations may result in the need for unscheduled maintenance.

⚠ NOTICE

Even small quantities of the wrong fuel or wrong fuel additives can damage the fuel system and engine. Furthermore, the catalytic converter is permanently damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not refuel or add the following in the case of gasoline engines:

- Leaded gasoline.
- Metallic additives, for instance manganese or iron.

Do not press the Start/Stop button after refueling with the wrong fuel. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3082

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

NOTICE

Fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality can compromise engine function or cause engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not fill with fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality.

NOTICE

Incorrect fuels can damage the fuel system and the engine. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use fuels with a higher percentage of ethanol than recommended. Do not refuel with fuels containing methanol, e.g. M5 to M100.

Recommended fuel grade

BMW recommends AKI 91.

Refuel with this gasoline to achieve the rated performance and consumption values.

Minimum fuel grade

BMW recommends AKI 89.

If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI Rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high external temperatures. This has no effect on the engine life.

BMW recommends Shell Quality Fuels

Engine oil

General information

The engine oil consumption is dependent on your driving style and driving conditions.

Therefore, regularly check the engine oil level after refueling by taking a detailed measurement.

The engine oil consumption can increase in the following situations, for instance:

- Sporty driving style.
- Break-in of the engine.
- Idling of the engine.
- With use of engine oil types that are classified as not suitable.

Different Check Control messages appear on the Control Display depending on the engine oil level.

Safety information

NOTICE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Immediately add engine oil.

NOTICE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add too much engine oil. When too much engine oil is added, have the engine oil level corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Electronic oil measurement

General information

The electronic oil measurement has two measuring principles:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3083
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

- Monitoring.
- Detailed measurement.

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a sporty driving style, for instance when taking curves aggressively, regularly perform a detailed measurement.

Monitoring

Concept

The engine oil level is monitored electronically while driving and can be shown on the Control Display.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.

A red indicator light indicates that the engine oil pressure is too low.

Functional requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of normal driving with the combustion engine running.

Displaying the engine oil level

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"

The engine oil level is displayed.

System limits

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a sporty driving style, it may not be possible to calculate a measured value. In this case, the measured value for the last, sufficiently long trip is displayed.

Detailed measurement

Concept

The engine oil level is checked when the vehicle is stationary and displayed via a scale.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.

General information

During the measurement, the idle speed is increased somewhat.

Functional requirements

- Vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- Drive-ready state is activated.
- Steptronic transmission: selector lever in selector lever position N or P and accelerator pedal not depressed.
- The combustion engine is at operating temperature.

Performing a detailed measurement

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"
4. "Engine oil measurement"
5. "Start measurement"

The engine oil level is checked and displayed via a scale.

Adding engine oil

General information

Only add engine oil when the message is displayed in the instrument cluster. The quantity to be added is indicated in the message shown on the Control Display.

Only add suitable types of engine oil.

Safely park the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before adding engine oil.

Take care not to add too much engine oil.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3084
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Safety information

Warning

Operating materials, for instance oils, greases, coolants, fuels, can contain harmful ingredients. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Follow the instructions on the containers. Avoid the contact of articles of clothing, skin or eyes with operating materials. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.

NOTICE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Immediately add engine oil.

NOTICE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add too much engine oil. When too much engine oil is added, have the engine oil level corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Overview

The oil filler neck is located in the engine compartment.

Additional information:

For an overview, refer to page 328.

Adding engine oil

1. Opening the hood.

   Opening, refer to page 329.
2. Open the lid counterclockwise.

3. Add engine oil.
4. Close the lid.

Engine oil types to add

General information

The engine oil quality is critical for the life of the engine.

Only add the types of engine oil which are listed.

Safety information

NOTICE

Oil additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use oil additives.

NOTICE

Incorrect engine oil can cause malfunctions in the engine or damage it. There is a risk of damage to property. When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has the correct oil rating.

Suitable engine oil types

Add engine oils that meet the following oil rating standards:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3085
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Oil rating
BMW Longlife-01 FE.
BMW Longlife-14 FE+.
BMW Longlife-17 FE+.

Alternative engine oil types

If an engine oil suitable for continuous use is not available, up to 1 US quart/liter of an engine oil with the following oil rating can be added:

Oil rating
API SL.
API SM.
API SN.

Viscosity grades

Viscosity grades
SAE 0W-20.
SAE 0W-30.

More information about suitable oil ratings and viscosity grades of engine oils can be requested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Engine oil change

NOTICE

Engine oil that is not changed in timely fashion can cause increased engine wear and thus engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. It is recommended that you do not exceed the service intervals indicated in the vehicle.

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop change the engine oil.

BMW recommends
Original BMW Engine Oil.

Coolant

General information

Coolant consists of water and additives.

Not all commercially available additives are suitable for the vehicle. Do not mix additives of different colors. Observe the water - additive mixing ratio of 50:50. Information about suitable additives is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Warning

With the engine hot and the cooling system open, coolant can escape and lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury. Only open the cooling system with the engine cooled down.

Warning

Additives are harmful and incorrect additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Do not allow additives to come into contact with skin, eyes or articles of clothing. Use suitable additives only.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3086
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Coolant level

General information

Depending on the motorization, there are up to two coolant reservoirs in the engine compartment. Check and top up the coolant levels on a regular basis.

The coolant level is indicated using minimum and maximum markings in the filler neck of the coolant reservoir.

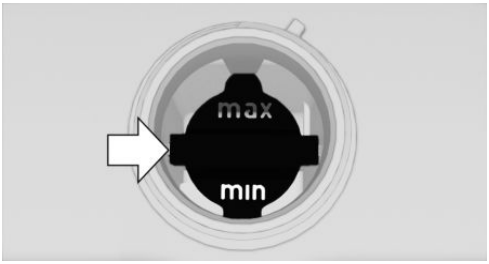
Additional information:

For an overview, refer to page 328.

Checking the coolant level in the filler neck

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Opening the hood.

   Opening, refer to page 329.
3. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.
4. Open the coolant reservoir lid.
5. The coolant level is correct if it lies between the minimum and maximum marks in the filler neck.



6. Close the lid.

Adding coolant

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Opening the hood.

   Opening, refer to page 329.
3. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.
4. Open the coolant reservoir lid.
5. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to the specified level; do not overfill.
6. Close the lid.
7. Have the cause of the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.

Disposal

Comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant and coolant additives.

Washer fluid

General information

All washer nozzles are supplied from one reservoir.

Use a mixture of tap water and windshield washer concentrate. If desired, a windshield washer concentrate containing antifreeze can be used.

Recommended minimum fill quantity:
0.2 US gal/1 liter.

Safety information

Warning

Some antifreeze agents can contain harmful substances and are flammable. There is a risk of fire and a risk of injury. Follow the instructions on the containers. Keep antifreeze away from ignition sources. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3087
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

United States: the washer fluid mixture ratio is regulated by the U.S. EPA and many individual states; do not exceed the allowable washer fluid dilution ratio limits that apply. Follow the usage instructions on the washer fluid container.

Use of BMW's Windshield Washer Concentrate or the equivalent is recommended.

Warning

Washer fluid can ignite and catch fire on contact with hot engine parts. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Only add washer fluid when the engine is cooled down. Next, fully close the lid of the washer fluid reservoir.

NOTICE

Silicon-containing additives in the washer fluid for the water-repelling effect on the windows can lead to damage to the washing system. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add silicon-containing additives to the washer fluid.

NOTICE

Mixing different windshield washer concentrates or antifreeze can damage the washing system. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not mix different windshield washer concentrates or antifreeze. Follow the information and mixing ratios provided on the containers.

Overview

The washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment.

Malfunction

The use of undiluted windshield washer concentrate or alcohol-based antifreeze can lead to incorrect readings at temperatures below +5 °F/-15 °C.

Maintenance

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

BMW maintenance system

The maintenance system provides service notifications and thereby provides support in maintaining road safety and the operational reliability of the vehicle.

In some cases, scopes and intervals of the maintenance system may vary according to the country version. Replacement work, spare parts, fuels and lubricants, and wear materials are calculated separately. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Condition Based Service CBS

Concept

Sensors and special algorithms take into account the driving conditions of the vehicle. CBS uses these to provide maintenance recommendations.

The system makes it possible to adapt the amount of maintenance corresponding to your user profile.

General information

Information on service notifications can be displayed on the Control Display.

Additional information:

Service notifications, refer to page 157.

Service data in the vehicle key

Information on the service notifications is continuously stored in the vehicle key. The service center can read this data out and suggest a maintenance scope for the vehicle.

Therefore, hand the service advisor the vehicle key with which the vehicle was driven most recently.

Storage periods

Storage periods during which the vehicle battery was disconnected are not taken into account.

If this occurs, have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop update the time-dependent maintenance procedures, such as checking brake fluid and, if necessary, changing the engine oil and the microfilter/activated-charcoal filter.

Maintenance Manual and Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

Please consult your Maintenance Manual and Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3089
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

the performance of service and maintenance work.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that maintenance and repair be performed by a service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Records of regular maintenance and repair work should be retained.

Socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis

General information

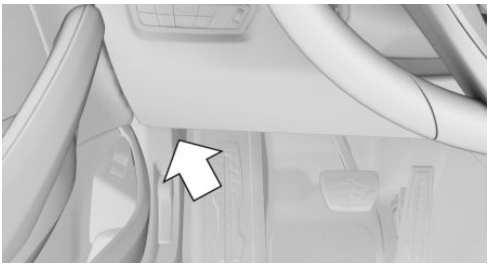
Devices connected to the OBD socket trigger the alarm system when the vehicle is locked. Remove any devices connected at the OBD socket before locking the vehicle.

Safety information

NOTICE

The socket for Onboard Diagnosis is an intricate component intended to be used in conjunction with specialized equipment to check the vehicle's primary emissions system. Improper use of the socket for Onboard Diagnosis, or contact with the socket for Onboard Diagnosis for other than its intended purpose, can cause vehicle malfunctions and creates risks of personal and property damage. Given the foregoing, the manufacture of your vehicle strongly recommends that access to the socket for Onboard Diagnosis be limited to a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or other persons that have the specialized training and equipment for purposes of properly utilizing the socket for Onboard Diagnosis.

Position



There is an OBD socket on the driver's side for checking the primary components in the vehicle's emissions.

Emissions

- The warning light lights up:

  Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

- The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:

  This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

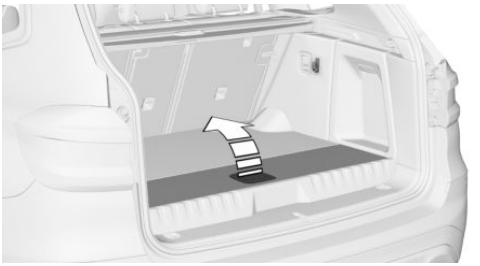
  Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

Replacing components

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Vehicle tool kit



The onboard vehicle tool kit is located under the cargo floor panel.

Wiper blades

Safety information

NOTICE

The window may sustain damage if the wiper falls onto it without the wiper blade installed. There is a risk of damage to property. Hold the wiper firmly when changing the wiper blade. Do not fold or switch on the wiper without a wiper blade installed.

NOTICE

Folded-away wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.

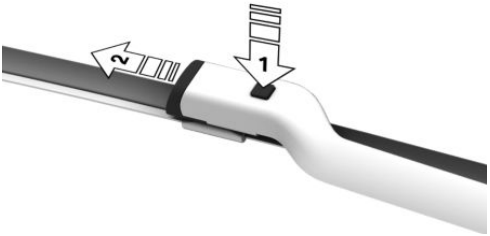
Replace front wiper blades

1. To change the wiper blades, fold up the wiper arms.

   Fold-away position of the wipers, refer to page 140.

2. Lift the wiper off of the windshield and hold.

3. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull out the wiper blade, arrow 2.



BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3091
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

4. Insert the new wiper blade and press it on until it you hear it snap into the holder.
5. Fold down the wipers.

Replacing the rear wiper blade

The wiper blade is engaged at the end of the wiper arm.

1. Lift off the wiper fully and pull off the wiper blade, arrow.

2. Attach a new wiper blade. The wiper blade must engage audibly.
3. Fold down the wipers.

Lights and bulbs

General information

Lights and bulbs make an essential contribution to vehicle safety.

All headlights and lights are made using LED or laser technology.

Some items of equipment use light-emitting diodes installed behind a cover as a light source. These light-emitting diodes are related to conventional lasers and are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you let a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop perform the work in case of a malfunction.

A spare light box is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Warning

Bulbs can get hot during operation. Contact with the bulbs can cause burns. There is a risk of injury. Only change bulbs after they have cooled off.

Warning

Work on switched-on lighting systems can cause short circuits. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. When working on the lighting system, switch off the lights in question. If necessary, heed the bulb manufacturer's instructions.

Warning

Focused laser light can irritate or permanently damage the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that the work on the lighting system including bulb replacement be performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

Intensive brightness can irritate or damage the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. Do not look directly into the headlights or other light sources. Do not remove the LED covers.

NOTICE

Dirty bulbs have a reduced service life. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not hold new bulbs with your bare hands. Use a clean cloth or something similar, or hold the bulb by its base.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3092

Headlight glass

Condensation can form on the inside of the headlight glass in cool or humid weather. When driving with the lights switched on, the condensation evaporates after a short time. The headlight glass does not need to be changed.

If despite driving with the headlights switched on, increasing humidity forms, for instance water droplets in the light, have the headlights checked.

Front lights

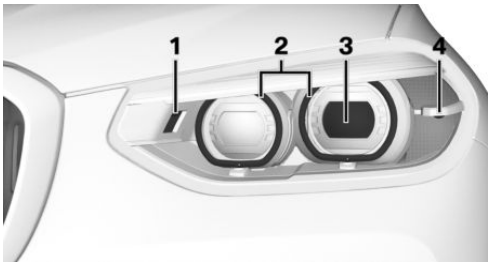
LED headlights with enhanced features

General information

All front lights are designed with LED technology, with the exception of the two turn signals.

In the case of a malfunction, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Overview

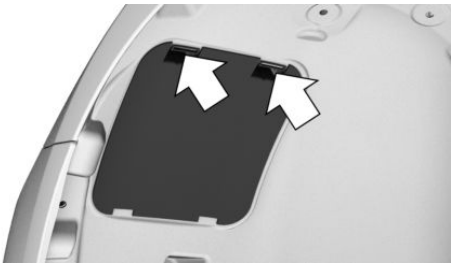


1 Cornering light
2 Daytime running lights/parking lights
3 Low beams/high beams
4 Turn signal

Turn signal, bulb replacement

24-watt bulb, PY24W

1. In the wheel house, press the two retainer tabs and fold down the cover.



2. Unscrew and remove the bulb holder.

3. Press the bulb gently into the bulb holder, turn counterclockwise and remove it.
4. Insert the new bulb.
5. Mount the bulb holder.
6. Mount the lid.

Adaptive LED headlights

All lights feature LED technology.

In the case of a malfunction, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

LED front fog lights

LED front fog lights are made using LED technology.

In the case of a malfunction, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3093
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Tail lights

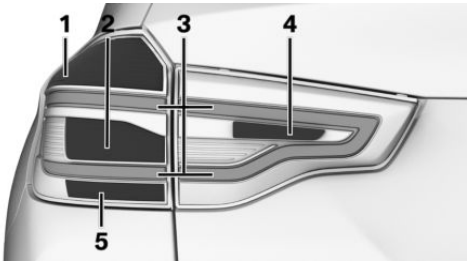
General information

With LED headlights or LED headlights with enhanced features: the rear light features LED technology.

With Adaptive LED headlights: all tail lights feature LED technology.

In the case of a malfunction, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Overview



1 Brake light
2 Turn signal
3 Tail lights
4 Reversing lights
5 Rear fog light
Lower brake lights

Exterior tail lights, bulb replacement

General information

Brake lights, turn signal: 21-watt bulb, P21W.

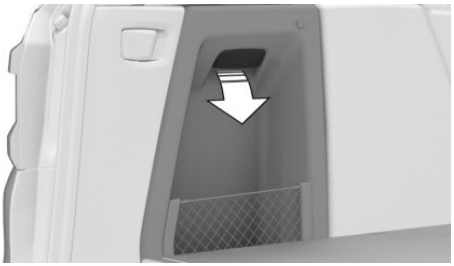
Rear fog light: 21-watt bulb, H21W.

Removing the exterior tail light

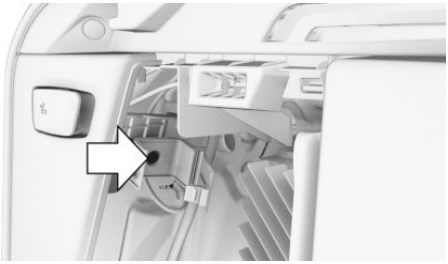
1. Open the tailgate.
2. Use the screwdriver from the onboard vehicle tool kit to loosen the clip, arrow 1, and remove the cover, arrow 2.

3. Release both nuts.

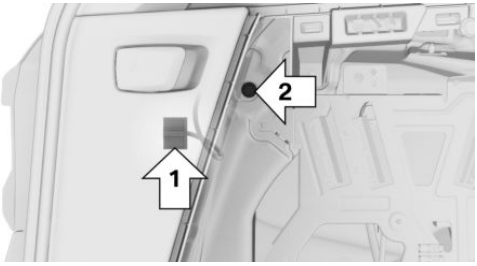
4. Open the cover on the side trim in the cargo area, arrow, and remove the warning triangle.
Warning triangle, refer to page 347.



5. Loosen the screw and remove the holder.



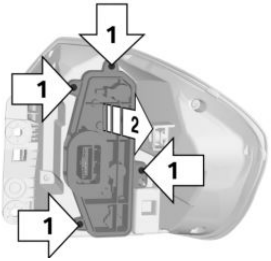
6. Remove the connector, arrow 1, and loosen the screw, arrow 2.



7. Detach the tail light from the body.

Replacing the bulbs

1. Loosen the four fasteners on the bulb holder, arrow 1, and detach the bulb holder from the tail light, arrow 2.



2. Press the bulb gently into the bulb holder, turn counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Proceed in the reverse order to insert the new bulb and attach the bulb holder. Make sure that the bulb holder is engaged in all fasteners.

Installing the tail light

1. Install the tail light in reverse order of removal and attach the connector.
2. Install the holder for the warning triangle and attach the warning triangle.
3. Close the cover on the side trim in the cargo area.
4. Fasten the cover with the clip.

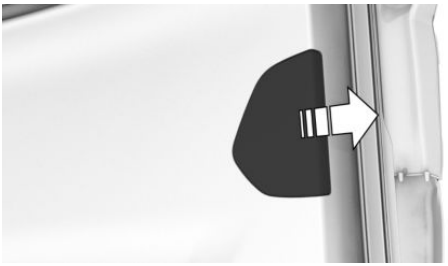
Reversing light in the tailgate

General information

21-watt bulb, H21W.

Access to the light

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Pull out the cover at the recessed grip, arrow.



Replacing the bulbs

1. Pull the bulb holder out of the reflector.
2. Press the bulb gently into the bulb holder, turn counterclockwise and remove it.
3. To insert the new bulb and attach the bulb holder, proceed in reverse order of removal.

Vehicle battery

General information

The battery is maintenance-free.

More information about the battery can be requested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3095
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Safety information

DANGER

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.

Warning

Vehicle batteries that are not compatible can damage vehicle systems and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of an accident and damage to property. Only vehicle batteries that are compatible with your vehicle type should be installed in your vehicle. Information on compatible vehicle batteries is available at your dealer's service center.

Register the battery to the vehicle

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you have a service center or another qualified service center or repair shop register the vehicle battery to the vehicle after the battery has been replaced. Once the battery has been registered again, all comfort features will be available without restriction and any Check Control messages displayed which relate to comfort features will disappear.

Charging the battery

General information

Make sure that the battery is always sufficiently charged to guarantee that the battery remains usable for its full service life.

A discharged battery is indicated by a red indicator light.

Charge the battery when acceleration is insufficient.

The following circumstances can have a negative effect on the performance of the battery:

- Frequent short-distance drives.
- The vehicle is not used for more than a month.

Safety information

NOTICE

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery can work with high voltages and currents, which means that the 12 volt electrical system can be overloaded or damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.

Charging the battery

Charge the battery only when the engine is off and via the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.

Additional information:

Starting aid terminals, refer to page 351.

Power failure

After a power loss, some equipment needs to be newly initialized or individual settings updated, for example:

- With Memory function: store the positions again.
- Time: update.
- Date: update.
- Glass sunroof: initialize the system.

Disposing of old batteries

Have old batteries disposed of by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take them to a collection point.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3096
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Maintain the filled battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Secure the battery so that it does not tip over during transport.

Fuses

General information

The fuses are located at different places in the vehicle.

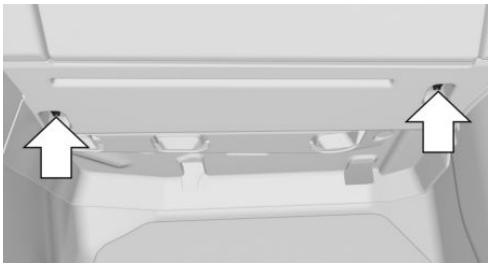
Safety information

Warning

Incorrect and repaired fuses can overload electrical lines and components. There is a risk of fire. Never attempt to repair a blown fuse. Do not replace a nonworking fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating.

In the car's interior

The fuses are located in the car's interior in the front passenger floor area behind a cover.

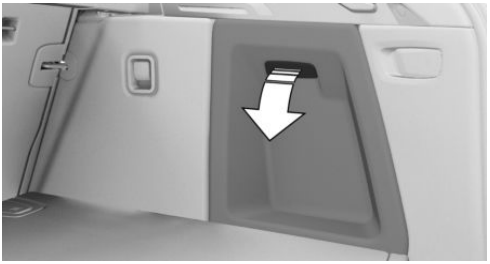


Loosen fasteners, arrows, and open cover.

The fuse box is located on the front right.

In the cargo area

The fuses are located in the cargo area on the right side behind a cover.



Open the cover on the right side trim.

The fuse box may be located behind the sound insulation.

Information on the fuse types and locations, as well as the positions of any other fuse boxes, is available on the Internet: www.bmw.com/fusecard.

Where applicable, information on the fuse types and locations is also found on a separate sheet in the fuse box.

Additional fuse boxes

Additional fuse boxes are located in the vehicle. In the case of a malfunction, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Replacing fuses

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop replace the fuses.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3097
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Breakdown assistance

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Hazard warning flashers

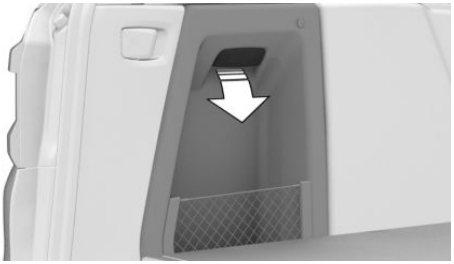
The button is located in the center console.

The red light in the button flashes when the hazard warning flashers are activated.

Warning triangle

The warning triangle is located behind the left-hand cover in the cargo area.

1. Open the cover on the left side trim.



2. Open the bracket and take the warning triangle out in the direction of the car's interior.

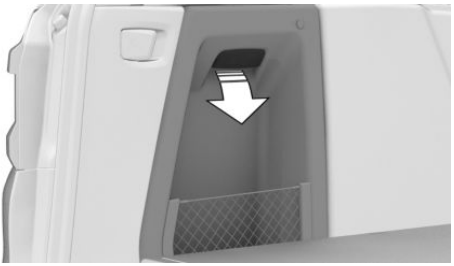
First-aid kit

General information

Some of the articles have a limited service life.

Check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace any expired items promptly.

Storage



The first-aid kit is located behind the left-hand cover in the cargo area.

To open, pull on the handle.

BMW Roadside Assistance

Concept

Contact the BMW Group Roadside Assistance if assistance is needed in the event of a breakdown.

General information

In the event of a breakdown, data on the vehicle's condition is transmitted to the BMW Roadside Assistance.

There are various ways of contacting BMW Roadside Assistance.

- Via a Check Control message.

  Supplementary text messages, refer to page 152.
- Calling with a mobile phone.
- Via the BMW Connected app.

Functional requirements

- Active ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- Cellular network reception.
- Standby state is switched on.

Starting manually

If the vehicle is equipped with Teleservices, support is offered through Teleservice Diagnosis.

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "BMW Assist"
4. If necessary, "BMW Roadside Assistance"

   A voice connection is established.

Teleservice Diagnosis

Teleservice Diagnosis enables the wireless transmission of detailed vehicle data that is important for vehicle diagnosis. This data is transmitted automatically. It may be necessary to approve this on the Control Display.

Teleservice Help

Depending on the country, Teleservice Help enables an in-depth diagnosis of the vehicle by BMW Roadside Assistance via wireless transmission.

You can launch Teleservice Help by requesting it through BMW Roadside Assistance.

1. Park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Set the parking brake.
3. Control Display is switched on.
4. Confirm Teleservice Help.

BMW Accident Assistance

Concept

BMW Group Accident Assistance can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of an accident.

General information

If the vehicle sensors detect a minor to moderately severe accident, which did not trigger any airbags, a Check Control message appears on

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3099
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

the instrument cluster. In addition, a text message appears on the Control Display.

When BMW Accident Assistance is activated, data on the vehicle's condition is sent to BMW.

Functional requirements

- Active ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- Cellular network reception.
- Standby state is switched on.

Starting BMW Accident Assistance

If an accident is detected automatically

A text message relating to BMW Accident Assistance appears on the Control Display.

The connection can be established directly:

"Contact accident assistance"

The Check Control message for BMW Accident Assistance can also be called up from the stored Check Control messages for a certain length of time.

Additional information:

Check Control, refer to page 151.

Starting manually

BMW Accident Assistance can also be contacted independently of the automatic accident detection function.

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "BMW Assist"
4. "BMW Accident Assistance"

   Follow the displays on the Control Display. A voice connection is established.

Emergency Request

Intelligent emergency call

Concept

In case of an emergency, an Emergency Request can be triggered automatically by the system or manually.

General information

Only press the SOS button in an emergency.

The Intelligent Assist system establishes a connection with the BMW Response Center.

For technical reasons, the Emergency Request cannot be guaranteed under unfavorable conditions.

Overview

SOS button.

Functional requirements

- Standby state is switched on.
- The Assist system is functional.
- If the vehicle is equipped with intelligent emergency call: the SIM card integrated in the vehicle has been activated.

Automatic triggering

Under certain conditions, for instance if the airbags trigger, an Emergency Request is automatically initiated immediately after an accident of corresponding severity. Automatic Collision Noti-

fication is not affected by pressing the SOS button.

Manual triggering

1. Tap the cover.
2. Press and hold the SOS button until the LED in the area of the button illuminates green.

▷ The LED is illuminated green when an Emergency Request has been initiated.

If a cancel prompt appears on the Control Display, the Emergency Request can be aborted.

If the situation allows, wait in your vehicle until the voice connection has been established.

▷ The LED flashes green when a connection to the BMW Response Center has been established.

The BMW Response Center then makes contact with the occupants of the vehicle and initiates further steps to help.

Even if you are unable to respond, the BMW Response Center can take further steps to help you under certain circumstances.

For this purpose, data that serves to determine the necessary rescue measures, for instance the current position of the vehicle when it can be determined, is transmitted to the BMW Response Center.

Even if the BMW Response Center is no longer heard through the loudspeakers, the BMW Response Center may still be able to hear the occupants of the vehicle.

The BMW Response Center ends the Emergency Request.

What to do after an accident

General information

After an accident, comply with the following safety precautions with regard to the high-voltage system:

▷ Secure the crash site.

▷ Immediately notify rescue forces, police, or firefighters of the fact that your vehicle is equipped with a high-voltage system.

▷ Engage selector lever position P, set the parking brake and switch off operating and drive-ready state.

▷ Lock the vehicle after exiting.

▷ Do not inhale any gases escaping from the high-voltage battery; if needed, maintain a safe distance from the vehicle.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. After an accident, do not touch any high-voltage components such as orange colored high-voltage cables or parts that are in contact with exposed high-voltage cables.

⚠ Warning

Fluids in the high-voltage battery are corrosive. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch fluids escaping from the high-voltage battery.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3101
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Jump-starting

General information

If the battery is discharged, the engine can be started using the battery of another vehicle and two jumper cables. Only use jumper cables with fully insulated clamp handles.

Vehicles with hybrid drive cannot be used for jump-starting.

Safety information

⚠ DANGER

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.

⚠ Warning

If the jumper cables are connected in the incorrect order, sparking may occur. There is a risk of injury. Pay attention to the correct order during connection.

⚠ NOTICE

In the case of body contact between the two vehicles, a short circuit can occur during jump-starting. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that no body contact occurs.

Preparation

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts. The voltage information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any electrical consumers in both vehicles.

Starting aid terminals

The starting aid terminal in the engine compartment acts as the positive battery terminal.

A special connection on the body in the engine compartment acts as the negative battery terminal.

Additional information:

Overview of engine compartment, refer to page 328.

Open the cover of the positive battery terminal.

Connecting the cables

Before you begin, switch off all unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers, such as the radio, on the assisting and receiving vehicle.

1. Open the cover of the starting aid terminal.
2. Attach one terminal clamp of the positive jumper cable to the positive battery terminal, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the terminal clamp on the other end of the cable to the positive battery terminal, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one terminal clamp of the negative jumper cable to the negative battery terminal, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of assisting vehicle.
5. Attach the second terminal clamp to the negative battery terminal, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

Establishing drive-ready state

1. Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run for several minutes at an increased idle speed.
2. Establish the drive-ready state for the vehicle to be started as usual.

   If the first starting attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before making another at-

tempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.

3. Disconnect the jumper cables in the reverse order.

Check the battery and recharge, if needed.

Tow-starting and towing

Safety information

Warning

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

Steptronic transmission: transporting the vehicle

General information

The vehicle is not permitted to be towed.

Safety information

NOTICE

The vehicle can be damaged when towing the vehicle with a single lifted axle. There is a risk of damage to property. The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.

NOTICE

The vehicle can become damaged when lifting and securing it.

There is a risk of damage to property.

- ▷ Lift the vehicle using suitable means.
- ▷ Do not lift or secure the vehicle by its tow fitting, body parts, or suspension parts.

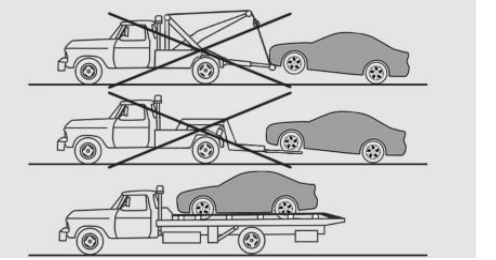
Pushing the vehicle

To remove a broken-down vehicle from the danger area, it can be pushed for a short distance.

Additional information:

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 142.

Tow truck



The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.

Towing other vehicles

General information

Switch on the hazard warning system, depending on local regulations.

If the electrical system has failed, clearly identify the vehicle being towed by placing a sign or a warning triangle in the rear window.

Safety information

Warning

If the approved gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is lighter than the vehicle to be towed, the tow fitting can tear off or it will not be possible to control the vehicle's response. There is a risk of accident. Make sure that the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is heavier than the vehicle to be towed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3103
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

NOTICE

If the tow bar or tow rope is attached incorrectly, damage to other vehicle parts can occur. There is a risk of damage to property. Correctly attach the tow bar or tow rope to the tow fitting.

Tow bar

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles.

Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an offset angle, please follow the following:

- Maneuvering capability is limited going around corners.
- The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is secured with an offset.

Tow rope

Observe the following notes when using the tow rope:

- Use nylon ropes or straps, which will enable the vehicle to be towed without jerking.
- Make sure the tow rope is not twisted when fastening.
- Check the fastening of the tow fitting and tow rope in regular intervals.
- Do not exceed a towing speed of 30 mph/50 km/h.
- Do not exceed a towing distance of 3 miles/5 km.
- When starting to tow the vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

Tow fitting

General information

The screw-in tow fitting should always be carried in the vehicle.

The tow fitting can be screwed in at the front or rear of the vehicle.

The tow fitting is found in the onboard vehicle tool kit.

- Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle and screw it all the way in.
- Use the tow fitting for towing on paved roads only.
- Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, for instance do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting.
- Check the fastening of the tow fitting in regular intervals.

Additional information:

Onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 340.

Safety information

NOTICE

If the tow fitting is not used as intended, there may be damage to the vehicle or to the tow fitting. There is a risk of damage to property. Follow the notes on using the tow fitting.

Screw thread for tow fitting

Press on the mark on the edge of the cover to push it out.

For covers which have an opening instead of a marking, pull the cover out by the opening.

Tow-starting

Do not tow-start the vehicle.

Start the engine by jump-starting, if possible.

Have the reasons for the starting difficulties corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Jump-starting, refer to page 351.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3105
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Care

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Washing the vehicle

General information

Regularly remove foreign objects such as leaves in the area below the windshield when the hood is raised.

Wash your vehicle frequently, particularly in winter. Intense soiling and road salt can damage the vehicle.

Steam blaster and high-pressure washer

Safety information

NOTICE

When cleaning with high-pressure washers, components can be damaged due to the pressure or temperatures being too high. There is a risk of damage to property. Maintain sufficient distance and do not spray too long continuously. Follow the operating instructions for the high-pressure washer.

Distances and temperature

- Maximum temperature: 140 °F/60 °C.
- Minimum distance from sensors, cameras, seals: 12 inches/30 cm.
- Minimum distance from glass sunroof: 31.5 in/80 cm.

Automatic washing systems or car washes

Safety information

NOTICE

Improper use of automatic washing systems or car washes can cause damage to the vehicle. There is a risk of damage to property. Follow the following instructions:

- Give preference to cloth car washes or those that use soft brushes in order to avoid paint damage.
- Do not drive through a car wash with guide rails higher than 4 in/10 cm to avoid damage to the chassis.
- Observe the tire width of the guide rail to avoid damage to tires and rims.
- Fold in exterior mirrors to avoid damage to the exterior mirrors.
- Deactivate the wiper and, if necessary, rain sensor to avoid damage to the wiper system.

Driving into a car wash with a Steptronic transmission

Safety information

NOTICE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not switch standby state off in vehicle washes.

General information

In a car wash, the vehicle must be able to roll freely.

Some car washes do not permit persons in the vehicle. The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside when in selector lever position N. A signal sounds when an attempt is made to lock the vehicle.

Additional information:

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 142.

Driving out of a car wash

Ensure that the vehicle key is in the car.

Switch on drive-ready state.

Additional information:

Drive-ready state, refer to page 44.

Headlights

Do not rub wet headlights dry and do not use abrasive or acidic cleaning agents.

Soak areas that have been dirtied, for instance from insects, with shampoo and wash off with water.

Thaw ice with de-icing spray; do not use an ice scraper.

After washing the vehicle

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them; otherwise, braking action can be reduced. The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Completely remove all residues on the windows, to minimize loss of visibility due to smearing and to reduce wiper noises and wiper blade wear.

Vehicle care

Vehicle care products

General information

BMW recommends using vehicle care and cleaning products from BMW. Suitable care products are available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Warning

Cleansers can contain substances that are dangerous and harmful to your health. There is a risk of injury. When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows. Only use products intended for cleaning vehicles. Follow the instructions on the container.

Vehicle paint

General information

Regular care contributes to driving safety and value retention. Environmental influences in areas with elevated air pollution or natural contaminants, such as tree resin or pollen can affect the vehicle's paintwork. Tailor the frequency and extent of your vehicle care to these influences.

Corrosive substances such as spilled fuel, oil, grease or bird droppings, must be removed immediately to prevent the finish from being altered or discolored.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3107
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Matte finish

Only use cleaning and care products suitable for vehicles with matte finish.

Leather care

Remove dust from the leather regularly, using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Otherwise, particles of dust and road grime chafe in pores and folds, and lead to increased wear and premature degradation of the leather surface.

To guard against discoloration, such as from clothing, clean leather and provide leather care roughly every two months.

Clean light-colored leather more frequently because soiling on such surfaces is substantially more visible.

Use leather care products; otherwise, dirt and grease will gradually break down the protective layer of the leather surface.

Upholstery material care

General information

Vacuum the upholstery regularly with a vacuum cleaner.

If upholstery is very dirty, for instance with beverage stains, use a soft sponge or microfiber cloth with a suitable interior cleaner.

Clean the upholstery down to the seams using large sweeping motions. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.

Safety information

NOTICE

Open Velcro® fasteners on articles of clothing can damage the seat covers. There is a risk of damage to property. Ensure that any Velcro® fasteners are closed.

Caring for special components

Light-alloy wheels

When cleaning the vehicle, use only neutral wheel cleaners having a pH value from 5 to 9. Do not use abrasive cleaning agents or steam jets above 140 °F/60 °C. Follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Aggressive, acidic or alkaline cleaning agents can destroy the protective layer of adjacent components, such as the brake disc.

After cleaning, apply the brakes briefly to dry them. The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Chrome surfaces

Carefully clean Chrome surfaces, especially in case of exposure to road salt, with plenty of water and added cleanser as needed.

Rubber components

Environmental influences can cause surface soiling of rubber parts and a loss of gloss. Use only water and suitable cleaning agents for cleaning.

Treat especially worn rubber parts with rubber care agents at regular intervals. When cleaning rubber seals, do not use any silicon-containing vehicle care products in order to avoid damage or noises.

Fine wood parts

Clean fine wood facing and fine wood components only with a moist rag. Then dry with a soft cloth.

Kenaf

Only treat parts made of Kenaf fibers using suitable care products.

Plastic components

NOTICE

Cleaning agents that contain alcohol or solvents, such as lacquer thinners, heavy-duty grease removers, fuel and such, can damage plastic parts. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Clean with a microfiber cloth. Dampen the cloth lightly with water, if needed.

Clean with a microfiber cloth.

Dampen the cloth lightly with water, if needed.

Do not soak the roofliner.

Safety belts

Warning

Chemical cleansers can destroy the safety belt webbing. Missing protective effect of the safety belts. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Use only a mild soapy solution for cleaning the safety belts.

Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus have a negative impact on safety.

Use only a mild soapy solution for cleaning the installed belt straps.

Safety belts should only be allowed to retract if they are dry.

Carpets and floor mats

Warning

Objects in the driver's floor area can limit the pedal distance or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's floor area. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats.

Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, for instance for cleaning.

The floor mats can be removed from the car's interior for cleaning.

If the floor carpets are very dirty, clean with a microfiber cloth and water or a textile cleaner. To prevent matting of the carpet, rub back and forth in the direction of travel only.

Mount for trailer hitch

Keep the mount clean.

Regularly grease or oil bearings and sliding surfaces with resin-free greases or oils.

Before using steam cleaners or high pressure cleaners on the vehicle, remove the ball head and insert the cover into the mount.

Sensors and camera lenses

To clean sensors and camera lenses, use a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass detergent.

Displays, screens, and protective glass of the Head-up Display

NOTICE

Chemical cleansers, moisture or fluids of any kind can damage the surface of displays and screens. There is a risk of damage to property. Clean with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth.

NOTICE

The surface of displays can be damaged with improper cleaning. There is a risk of damage to property. Avoid pressure that is too high and do not use any scratching materials.

Clean with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3109
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Clean the protective glass of the Head-up Display using a microfiber cloth and commercially available dish-washing soap.

High-voltage battery, long stationary periods

Concept

For idle phases that last several weeks, park the vehicle with the high-voltage battery fully charged, if possible.

Do not park the vehicle for longer than 14 days if the electric range is exhausted.

With storage times of up to three months, if possible plug the vehicle into a compatible power source or park it with the high-voltage battery as fully charged as possible.

General information

Your dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop can advise you on what to consider when storing the vehicle for longer than three months.

Safety information

NOTICE

The high-voltage battery can be damaged if left uncharged or with low charge for extended periods. There is a risk of damage to property. Before storing the vehicle for an extended period, ensure that the high-voltage battery is fully charged. During the idle period, connect the vehicle to a charging station at a compatible charging location. If necessary, the high-voltage battery will be charged automatically. Make sure that charging is carried out. Regularly check the charge state.

Do not allow the vehicle to sit idle for longer than three months with a charge state below approx. 50 %.

Technical data

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

General information

The technical data and specifications in the Owner's Manual are used as guidance values. The vehicle-specific data can deviate from this, for instance due to the selected special equipment, country version or country-specific measurement method. Detailed values can be found in the approval documents, on labels on the vehicle or can be obtained from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Dimensions

The dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment or country-specific measurement method.

The specified heights do not take into account attached parts, for instance a roof antenna, roof racks or spoiler. The heights can deviate, for instance due to the selected special equipment, tires, load and chassis version.

BMW X3 plug-in hybrid		
Width with mirrors	in/mm	84.2/2,138
Width without mirrors	in/mm	74.4/1,891
Height	in/mm	66/1,676
Length	in/mm	185.9/4,722
Wheelbase	in/mm	112.8/2,864
Smallest turning radius diam.	ft/m	39.4/12.0

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3111
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Weights

X3 xDrive30e		
Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs/kg	5,776/2,620
Load	lbs/kg	941/427
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	2,646/1,200
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	3,373/1,530

Trailer towing

X3 xDrive30e		
Details about possible increases or a reduced trailer load can be requested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop		
Trailer load without brakes	lbs/kg	1,653/750
Trailer load with brakes on uphill grades of up to 12 %	lbs/kg	4,409/2,000
Maximum drawbar nose weight	lbs/kg	441/200
Approved rear axle load, towing vehicle	lbs/kg	3,373/1,530
Approved gross vehicle weight, towing vehicle	lbs/kg	5,776/2,620

Capacities

BMW X3 Plug-In hybrid		
Fuel tank, approx.	US gal/liters	13.2/50.0

Observe further information on fuel quality, refer to page 331.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3112

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Appendix

General information

Any updates to the Owner's Manual of the vehicle are listed here.

Updates made after the editorial deadline

The following chapters were updated in the printed version of the Owner's Manual after the editorial deadline for the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle had closed:

- Operation: light: daytime driving lights.
- Operation: light: fog light: front fog light.
- Driving tips: things to remember when driving: roof-mounted luggage rack: safety instructions.

License Texts and Certifications

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3113
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3114

Everything from A to Z

Index

0-9

3D View, see Surround View 227

A

ABS Antilock Braking System 198
Acceleration Assistant, see Launch Control 145
Accessories and parts 8
Accident prevention, see Active Protection 195
Accident, what to do 350
ACC, see Active Cruise Control 206
Acoustic pedestrian protection 126
AC quick charging cable, see Mode 3 charging cable 290
Activated charcoal filter 244
Activation, trailer towing 281
Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function ACC 206
Active damping control, see Adaptive suspension 239
Active Guard Plus, see Intelligent Safety 176
Active Guard, see Intelligent Safety 176
Active PDC, see Emergency brake function 218
Active Protection 195
Active seat ventilation 117
Adaptive brake assistant 198
Adaptive brake lights, see Brake force display 195
Adaptive energy management 129
Adaptive hybrid mode 129
Adaptive Light Control 167
ADAPTIVE, see Driving Dynamics Control 133
Adaptive suspension 239
Additives, engine oil types 334
Adjusting contents, iDrive 52
Adjusting engine sound 239
Adjusting sound of the engine 239
Adjustments, steering wheel 115
Advance climate control, see Stationary climate control 249
Airbags 172
Airbags, indicator and warning light 174
Air circulation, see Recirculated-air mode 243
air conditioning, climate 242
Air distribution, manual 243
Air drying, see air conditioning 242
Air flow, automatic climate control 243
Air outlets, see Ventilation 244
Air pressure, tires 300
Air quality 240
Alarm system 99
Alarm, unintentional 100
All-season tires, see Winter tires 307
All-wheel-drive, see xDrive 200
Amazon Alexa Car Integration 58
Ambient air package 246
Ambient light 170
Android Auto, connection to the vehicle 79
Android Auto preparation, connection to the vehicle 79
Android Auto preparation, smartphone integration 79
Antifreeze, see Washer fluid 336
Antilock Braking System ABS 198
Anti-slip control, see DSC 198
Anti-theft protection, locking 83
Anti-theft protection, lug bolt lock 325
Apple CarPlay preparation, connection to the vehicle 79
Apple CarPlay preparation, smartphone integration 79
Approach control warning with City braking function 177
Apps, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Artificial engine noise, see Acoustic pedestrian protection 126
Ashtray 256

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3115
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Assistance for the combustion engine 129
Assistance when driving off, see Drive-off assistant 198
Assistance with breakdown 347
AUC Automatic Recirculating Air Control 243
Audio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
AUTO H button, see Parking brake 134
Automatic activation, see Individual activation 118
Automatic car wash 355
Automatic climate control 240
Automatic Curb Monitor, exterior mirror 114
Automatic deactivation, front-seat passenger airbags 175
Automatic Differential Brake 201
Automatic headlight control 165
Automatic Hold, see Parking brake 134
Automatic locking 98
Automatic Recirculating Air Control AUC 243
Automatic time setting 64
Automatic transmission, see Steptronic transmission 140
Automatic unlocking 98
Automating routines, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 60
AUTO program, automatic climate control 242
AUTO program, intensity 242
Auto Start/Stop function 127
Average consumption, see Trip data 160
Axle loads, approved 361

B

Backrest curvature, see Lumbar support 108
Backrest, seats 106
Backrest tilt 107
Backrest, width 108
Bad road trips 275
Bandages, see First-aid kit 347
Bar for tow-starting/towing 353
Battery, charge state indicator 149
BATTERY CONTROL button 125
BATTERY CONTROL, electric driving 131
Battery, disposing of 345
Battery high-voltage system, long stationary periods 359
Battery, vehicle 344
Being towed, see Tow-starting and towing 352
Belts, see Safety belts 108
Beverage holder, see Cup holders 265
Blind spot collision warning 188
Blocking, power window, see Safety switch 102
Bluetooth connection 76
Blu-ray, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
BMW Accident Assistance 348
BMW Assist, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
BMW display key 86
BMW display key, malfunction 90
BMW eDRIVE 125
BMW Gesture Control 61
BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 59
BMW maintenance system 338
BMW Roadside Assistance 348
Bottle holder, see Cup holders 265
Brake assistant 198
Brake assistant, adaptive 198
Brake Controller 282
Brake discs, see Brake system 274
Brake force display 195
Brake lights, brake force display 195
Brake pads, see Brake system 274
Brake system 274
Braking, information 276
Breakdown assistance 347
Breaking in 274
Break recommendation, see Fatigue alert 197
Brightness, Control Display 66
Buttons on the steering wheel 34
Button, SOS, see Intelligent emergency call 349
Button, Start/Stop 126
Bypassing, see Jump-starting 351

C

Cable for tow-starting/towing 353
California Proposition 65 Warning 9
Call, gesture control 61

Camera-based assistance systems, see Intelligent Safety 176
Camera lenses, care 358
Camera, rearview camera, see Surround View 227
Camera, rearview camera, without Surround View 220
Camera, see Surround View 227
Cameras, see Sensors of the vehicle 39
CANCEL button, Active Cruise Control 206
CANCEL button, cruise control 203
Can holder, see Cup holders 265
Care 355
Care, Head-up Display 358
Care, light-alloy wheels 357
Care of displays, screens 358
Care, vehicle 356
Cargo area 267
Cargo area, enlarging 269
Cargo area partition net 272
Cargo cover 271
Cargo position, rear seat backrest 269
Cargo, stowing and securing 268
Cargo straps, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 268
Caring Car, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 60
Car key, see Vehicle key 82
Carpet, care 358
CarPlay, connection to the vehicle 79
Car seats, see Transporting children safely 119
Cartridge replacement, see Ambient air package 246
Car wash 355
Car wash, automatic 355
Catalytic converter, see Hot exhaust gas system 275
CBS Condition Based Service 338
Cell phone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Center armrest, front 265
Center console 36
Central Information Display (CID), see Control Display 50
Central locking system 92
Central screen, see Control Display 50
Changes, technical, see For Your Own Safety 8
Changing parts 340
Changing wheels 323
Changing, wheels and tires 306
CHARGE, energy recovery 129
CHARGE, performance display 149
Charge state indicator of the high-voltage battery 149
Charging cable, storing, see Storage 290
Charging cable unlocking manually 292
Charging screen 148
Charging, see Charging the vehicle 288
Charging, see Vehicle charging 288
Charging smartphone, see Wireless charging tray 259
Charging status, see Display of the charging status 293
Charging the battery, see Vehicle charging 288
Charging the vehicle 288
Charging the vehicle, see Vehicle charging 288
Charging to save fuel 284
Charging tray for smartphones, see Wireless charging tray 259
Chassis number, see Vehicle identification number 12
Check Control 151
Checking the engine oil level electronically 332
Children, seating position 119
Children, transporting safely 119
Child restraint system LATCH 121
Child restraint systems, mounting 120
Child restraint systems, see Transporting children safely 119
Child safety locks 124
Child seat, mounting 120
Child seats, see Transporting children safely 119
Chrome-plated surfaces, care 357
Chrome surfaces, care 357
Cigarette lighter 257
Cigarette lighter, front 257
Cleaning displays, screens 358
Cleaning, Head-up Display 358
Clearance, water 276
Climate control 240
Clothes hooks 266

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3117
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Coasting 128
Combination switch, see Turn signals 137
Combination switch, see Washer/wiper system 137
Comfort Access 92
COMFORT, see Driving Dynamics Control 132
Communication, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Comparison of entries, see Entry comparison 48
Compartments, doors 264
Compatible devices, see Suitable devices 74
Compressor 310
Concierge Service, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Condensation water under the parked vehicle 277
Condensation, windshield 244
Condition Based Service CBS 338
Confirmation signal from the vehicle 98
ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Connecting device 73
Connecting electrical devices, see Sockets 257
Connecting, mobile devices 73
Connections, Screen Mirroring 78
Consumption display, widget in the instrument cluster 147
Consumption, see Current consumption 147
Consumption, see Trip data 160
Contacts, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Contact with water, hybrid system 15
Container for washer fluid 336
Continued driving with a flat tire 319, 323
Control Display 50
Control Display, brightness 66
Controller 50
Control systems, driving stability 198
Convenient closing, vehicle key 84
Convenient opening, vehicle key 83
Coolant 335
Coolant level 336
Cooling, maximum 242
Cooling system 335
Cornering light 167
Corrosion on brake discs 277
Cosmetic mirror 256
Cross traffic warning 235
Cruise control 203
Cruise control, active with Stop&Go function 206
Cruise control, see Active Cruise Control 206
Cruise control with distance control, see Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function 206
Cruise control without distance control, see Cruise control 203
Cruising range 156
Cup holder 265
Cup holder, front 265
Cup holder, rear 265
Current consumption 147
Customer service, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

D

Damage, tires 305
Damping control, active, see Adaptive suspension 239
Data memory 10
Data protection, settings 68
Data, see Deleting personal data 68
Data, technical 360
Date 64
Daytime running lights 167
DCC, see Cruise control 203
Deactivation, hybrid system 15
Defrosting, see Defrosting windshield 244
Defrosting, windshield 244
Deleting personal data 68
Departure schedule, see Stationary climate control 249
Departure time, stationary climate control 251
Device list 74
Diagnosis connection 339
Dimensions 360
Dimmable exterior mirrors 114
Dimmable interior mirror 115
Direct dial buttons, see Programmable memory buttons 49
Direction indicator, see Turn signals 137
Display, iDrive 47

Display in the windshield, see Head-up Display 162
Display key 86
Display key, malfunction 90
Display key, see BMW display key 86
Display lighting, see Instrument lighting 170
Display, notifications, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 59
Displays 146
Displays and symbols 7
Displays, hybrid system 149
Disposal, coolant 336
Disposal, vehicle battery 345
Distance control, see PDC 215
Door opening angle, Surround View 229
Downhill control, see HDC Hill Descent Control 201
Drawbar nose weight, technical data 361
Drive-off assistant 198
Drive-off assistant, see DSC 198
Driver assistance, driving, see Intelligent Safety 176
Driver assistance, parking, see Parking assistance systems 215
Driver assistance, see Intelligent Safety 176
Driver assistance systems 203
Drive-ready state, electric 44
Drive-ready state, engine start 44
Drive-ready state, idle state, and standby state 43
Driver profiles 69
Driver profile, setup 69
Driver profiles, welcome screen 69
Driving 125
Driving Assistant, see Intelligent Safety 176
Driving comfort 239
Driving Dynamics Control 132
Driving instructions, breaking in 274
Driving instructions, hybrid system 284
Driving mode, ECO PRO 285
Driving mode, see Driving Dynamics Control 132
Driving notes, general 275
Driving on bad roads 275
Driving stability control systems 198
Driving style analysis, ECO PRO 286
Driving through water 276
Driving tips 275
Driving with combustion engine, POWER 125
DSC Dynamic Stability Control 198
DTC Dynamic Traction Control 200
Dynamic damping, see Adaptive suspension 239
Dynamic Stability Control DSC 198
Dynamic Traction Control DTC 200

E

eASSIST, assistance for the combustion engine 129
eBOOST, assistance for the combustion engine 129
ECO PRO 285
ECO PRO, Driving style analysis 286
ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL, see Driving Dynamics Control 132
ECO PRO, see Driving Dynamics Control 132
eDRIVE button 130
Efficiency display, widget in the instrument cluster 147
ELECTRIC button 125
Electric drive-ready state 44
Electric driving, BATTERY CONTROL 131
Electric driving, ePOWER 125
Electric driving, MAX eDRIVE 131
Electronic oil measurement 332
Electronic Stability Program ESP, see DSC 198
E-mail, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Emergency brake function when parking, Active PDC 218
Emergency braking, see PostCrash - iBrake 196
Emergency Request 349
Emergency service, see BMW Accident Assistance 348
Emergency service, see BMW Roadside Assistance 348
Emergency unlocking, charging cable 292
Emergency unlocking, fuel filler flap 299
Emergency unlocking, transmission lock 144
Energy recovery, CHARGE 129
Energy savings, see Gear shift indicator 158

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3119

Engine, automatic Start/Stop function 127
Engine compartment 328
Engine coolant 335
Engine noise, artificial, see Acoustic pedestrian protection 126
Engine oil, adding 333
Engine oil change 335
Engine oil filler neck 333
Engine oil types to add 334
Engine start, see Drive-ready state 44
Engine start, see Jump-starting 351
Entering a destination, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Entering an address, navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Entertainment, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Entertainment, selection list in the instrument cluster 160
Entry comparison 48
ePOWER, electric driving 125
ePOWER, performance display 149
Equipment, interior 253
Error indicators, see Check Control 151
ESP Electronic Stability Program, see DSC 198
Evasion Assistant 181
Exchanging, wheels and tires 306
Exhaust gas system 275
Exhaustion warner 197
Exhaust, see Exhaust gas system 275
Experience Modes, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 60
Exterior lighting during unlocking 83
Exterior lighting with the vehicle locked 84
Exterior mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor 114
Exterior mirror, automatic dimming feature 114
Exterior mirrors 113
Exterior mirrors, malfunction 114
External start, see Jump-starting 351
External temperature 156
Eyelet for towing 353
Eyes, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 268

F

Factory settings, see Reset vehicle configuration 66
Failure message, see Check Control 151
False alarm, see Avoiding unintentional alarms 100
Fan, see Air flow 243
Fastening safety belts, see Safety belts 108
Fatigue alert 197
Fault indicators, see Check Control 151
Filler neck for engine oil 333
Fine wood parts, care 357
First-aid kit 347
First Steps, see Setup Wizard 69
Fittings for trailer safety chain, trailer towing 282
Flat tire, changing wheels 323
Flat tire, continued driving 319, 323
Flat tire, Flat Tire Monitor TPM 321
Flat tire message, FTM 321
Flat tire message, Tire Pressure Monitor 317
Flat Tire Monitor TPM 321
Flat tire, repairing 308
Flat tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor 314
Flat tire warning light, FTM 321
Flat tire warning light, see Tire Pressure Monitor 317
Flooding, driving through 276
Floor carpet, care 358
Floor mats, care 358
Fold-away position, wiper 140
Foot brake 276
Forward collision mitigation, see Intelligent Safety 176
For Your Own Safety 8
Fragrance cartridge, see Ambient air package 246
Fragrance, see Ambient air package 246
Fragrancing, see Ambient air package 246
Front airbags 172
Front collision mitigation 177
Front collision mitigation, see Approach Control Warning 177
Front collision mitigation, see Pedestrian Warning 182
Front fog lights 169

Front fog lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 341
Front lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 341
Front-seat passenger airbags, automatic deactivation 175
Front-seat passenger airbags, indicator light 175
Front seats 106
Fuel 331
Fuel cap 298
Fuel filler flap 298
Fuel filler flap, unlocking manually 299
Fuel gauge 156
Fuel quality 331
Fuel recommendation 331
Fuel tank, see Filling capacity 361
Functions, hybrid system 125
Fuses 346

G

Garage door opener, see Integrated Universal Remote Control 253
Gasoline 331
Gear change, Steptronic transmission 140
Gear shift indicator 158
General driving notes 275
General settings 64
Gesture Control 61
Gestures, see BMW Gesture Control 61
Glare shield, see Sun visor 256
Glass sunroof, electric 102
Glass sunroof, initialize the system 104
Glove compartment 263
GPS, navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Gross vehicle weight, approved 361
Gross vehicle weight, trailer mode 361

H

Handbrake, see Parking brake 134
Hand-held transmitter, alternating code 254
Hands-free device, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Hazard warning flashers 347
HDC Hill Descent Control 201
Head airbags 173
Headlight control, automatic 165
Headlight flasher 137
Headlight glass 342
Headlights, care 356
Headlights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 341
Head restraints and seats 106
Head restraints, front 111
Head restraints, rear 112
Head-up Display 162
Head-up Display, care 358
Head-up Display, store position, see Memory function 116
Heated steering wheel 115
Heated steering wheel, individual activation 118
Heavy cargo, stowing 268
Height, vehicle 360
High-beam Assistant 168
High beams 137
High beams/low beams, see High-beam Assistant 168
High-voltage battery, charge state indicator 149
High-voltage battery, long stationary periods 359
Hill Descent Control HDC 201
Hills 277
Hill start assistant, see Drive-off assistant 198
Holder for beverages, see Cup holders 265
HomeLink, see Integrated Universal Remote Control 253
Homepage, see Internet 6
Hood 329
Horn 34
Hot exhaust gas system 275
Humidity in the headlight, see Headlight glass 342
HYBRID button 125
Hybrid system, adapting to the course of the road 129
Hybrid system, automatic deactivation 15
Hybrid system, contact with water 15
Hybrid system, displays 149
Hybrid system, safety 15
Hybrid system, see BMW eDRIVE 125
Hybrid system, using efficiently 284
Hybrid system, working on 15

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3121
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Hydroplaning 276

I

iBrake - PostCrash 196
Ice warning, see External temperature 156
Icy roads, see External temperature 156
Identification marks, tires 303
Identification number, see Vehicle identification number 12
Idle state, standby state, and drive-ready state 43
iDrive 47
ID transmitter, see Vehicle key 82
Ignition key, see Vehicle key 82
Indicator/warning lights 152
Individual activation 118
Individual air distribution 243
Individual settings, see Driver profiles 69
Inductive charging, smartphone, see Wireless charging tray 259
Inflation pressure, tires 300
Inflation pressure warning TPM, tires 321
Information 6
Information window, Control Display 66
Initialization, Flat Tire Monitor FTM 321
Input, iDrive 47
Instrument cluster 146
Instrument lighting 170
Integrated key 91
Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle 16
Integrated Universal Remote Control 253
Intelligent adaptation 129
Intelligent emergency call 349
Intelligent Personal Assistant 59
Intelligent Safety 176
Intended use 8
Intensity, AUTO program 242
Interior equipment 253
Interior lights 170
Interior lights during unlocking 83
Interior lights with the vehicle locked 84
Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature 115
Interior mirrors 114, 115
Interior motion sensor 100
Internet connection 77
Internet hotspot 77
Internet page 6
Interval display, see Service notifications 157
Ionization, see Ambient air package 246

J

Jacking points for the vehicle jack 326
Jam protection system, glass sunroof 104
Jam protection system, windows 102
Joystick, Steptronic transmission 140
Jump-starting 351
Jump-starting terminals 351

K

Kenaf, care 357
Keyless Go, see Comfort Access 92
Key, mechanical 91
Key, see BMW display key 86
Key, see Vehicle key 82
Kickdown, Steptronic transmission 140
Knee airbag 173

L

Label on recommended tires 306
Lane control assistant with active side collision protection, see Side collision mitigation 192
Lane departure warning 185
Lane lines, Surround View 229
Lane threshold, warning 185
Language, set 65
Lashing eyes in the cargo area 268
LATCH child restraint fixing system 121
Launch Control 145
Leather care 357
LED front fog lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 341
LED headlights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 341
LED light carpet, see Welcome light 166
Length, vehicle 360
Letters and numbers, entering 48
Level 1 charging cable, see Mode 2 charging cable 290

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3122

Level 1 charging, see Mode 2 charging 288
Level 2 charging cable, see Mode 3 charging cable 290
Light-alloy wheels, care 357
Light control, adaptive 167
Lighter, cigarettes 257
Lighting 165
Light in the exterior mirror, see Blind spot collision warning 188
Light in the exterior mirror, see Cross traffic warning 235
Light replacement, see Lights and bulbs 341
Lights 165
Lights and bulbs 341
Light switch 165
List, instrument cluster, see Selection lists 160
List of all messages 66
Load 268
Loading 267
Loading position 269
Loading the cargo area, see Stowing cargo 268
Locking, automatic 98
Locking, see Opening and Closing 82
Locking, settings 98
Locking, vehicle key 83
Lock, lug bolts 325
Long stationary periods, high-voltage battery 359
Low beams 166
Low beams, automatic, see High-beam Assistant 168
Lower back support 108
Lug bolt lock 325
Luggage rack, see Roof-mounted luggage rack 277
Lumbar support 108

M

Maintaining charge state, BATTERY CONTROL 131
Maintenance 338
Maintenance recommendations, see Condition Based Service CBS 338
Maintenance, see Service notifications 157
Maintenance system, BMW 338
Make-up mirror 256
Malfunction, BMW display key 90
Malfunction, vehicle key 85
Managing devices 74
Manual brake, see Parking brake 134
Manual control, air distribution 243
Manual control, air flow 243
Manual mode, Steptronic transmission 140
Manual operation, fuel filler flap 299
Manual unlocking, charging cable 292
Map update, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Marking, run-flat tire 308
Matt paint, care 357
MAX eDRIVE, electric driving 131
Maximum cooling 242
Maximum speed display, see Speed Limit Info 158
Maximum speed, winter tires 307
Measuring units 65
Media of the Owner's Manual 16
Medical supplies, see First-aid kit 347
Memory function 116
Menu, instrument cluster, see Selection lists 160
Menus, operating, iDrive 47
Messages 66
Messages, see Check Control 151
Microfilter 244
Minimum tread depth, tires 305
Mobile communication devices in the vehicle 276
Mobile devices, managing 74
Mobile phone, connecting 73
Mobile phone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Mobile Service, see BMW Accident Assistance 348
Mobile Service, see BMW Roadside Assistance 348
Mobility System 309
Mode 2 charging 288
Mode 2 charging cable 290
Mode 3 charging cable 290
MODE button, see Active Cruise Control 206
Mode, ECO PRO 285

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3123
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Modifications, technical, see For Your Own Safety 8
Monitor, see Control Display 50
Mount for trailer hitch, care 358
Mounting for trailer hitch 281
Mounting of child restraint systems 120
MP3 player, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Multi-function hook 268
Multifunction steering wheel, buttons 34
Multimedia, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6

N

Navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Neck restraints, front, see Head restraints front 111
Neck restraints, rear, see Head restraints rear 112
Neutral cleaner, see Light-alloy wheels, care 357
New wheels and tires 306
No-touch opening and closing of the tailgate 94
Nylon rope for tow-starting/towing 353

O

OBD Onboard Diagnosis 339
Obstacle marking, rearview camera 221
Obstacle marking, Surround View 229
Octane rating, see Recommended fuel grade 332
Odometer, see Trip data 160
Oil, adding 333
Oil change 335
Oil filler neck 333
Oil level, checking electronically 332
Oil service interval, see Service notifications 157
Oil types to add, engine 334
Onboard Diagnosis OBD 339
Onboard literature, printed 16
Onboard vehicle tool kit 340
On-call service, see BMW Accident Assistance 348
On-call service, see BMW Roadside Assistance 348
Opening and closing 82
Operating concept, iDrive 47
Operation via voice 55
Optional equipment, see Vehicle equipment 7
Outside air, see AUC 243
Owner's Manual, printed 16
Owner's Manual via voice operation, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 60

P

Paint, car care 356
Pairing, mobile devices, see Connections 73
Panic alarm, see Panic mode 100
Panic mode 100
Panorama View 233
Panoramic glass sunroof, see Glass sunroof 102
Park Distance Control PDC 215
Parked car ventilation, see Stationary climate control 249
Parking aid, see PDC 215
Parking assistance systems 215
Parking assistant 223
Parking assistant Plus, see Surround View 227
Parking, Automatic Hold, see Parking brake 134
Parking brake 134
Parking lights 166
Partition net 272
Parts and accessories 8
Passenger's side exterior mirror, tilt down, see Automatic Curb Monitor 114
Pathway lighting 167
Pathway lighting, switching on 85
Pathway lines, rearview camera 221
Payload, technical data 361
PDC Park Distance Control 215
Pedestrian protection, acoustic 126
Performance Control 239
Performance display, see Sport displays 162
Personal data, deleting 68
Personal profile, see Driver profiles 69
Personal settings 68
Person warning with braking function 182
Phone, connecting 73

Plastic parts, care 358
Possible gestures, gesture control 61
PostCrash - iBrake 196
POWER, driving with combustion engine 125
Power failure 345
POWER, performance display 149
Power windows 101
Pressure test tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor 314
Pressure, tires 300
Printed onboard literature 16
Profiles, see Driver profiles 69
Programmable memory buttons, iDrive 49
Protective function, glass sunroof, see Jam protection system 104
Protective function, windows, see Jam protection system 102
Push-and-turn reel, see Controller 50

Q

Quick charging cable, see Mode 3 charging cable 290

R

Racing track 278
Radar sensors, see Sensors of the vehicle 39
Radiator fluid 335
Radio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Rain sensor 138
Rear automatic climate control 245
Rear collision preparation 194
Rear collision warning, see Rear collision preparation 194
Rear lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 341
Rear seat backrests, folding down 269
Rear seats 108
Rearview camera, see Surround View 227
Rearview camera, without Surround View 220
Rear-view mirrors, exterior 113
Rear-view mirrors, interior 114, 115
Rear window defroster 244
Rear window wiper, operation 139
Recirculated-air filter, see Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter 244
Recirculated-air mode 243
Recommended fuel grade 332
Recommended tire brands 306
Recuperative braking, see Energy recovery 129
Refueling 297
Regular charging 284
Remote 3D View 234
Remote control for audio, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Remote control, see Vehicle key 82
Remote control, universal 253
Remote services, app, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Removable ball head 281
Replacing bulbs, see Lights and bulbs 341
Replacing light diodes, see Lights and bulbs 341
Replacing parts 340
Replacing the battery, vehicle key 85
Replacing, wheels and tires 306
Reporting safety malfunctions 13
RES CNCL button, Active Cruise Control ACC 206
RES CNCL button, cruise control 203
Reserve warning, see Range 156
Reset settings, vehicle 66
Reset, Tire Pressure Monitor 316
Reset, vehicle configuration 66
Reset, vehicle settings 66
RESUME button, Active Cruise Control 206
RESUME button, cruise control 203
Retreaded tires 307
Roadside parking lights 166
Roller sunblinds, rear side windows 102
Rolling code hand-held transmitter 254
RON recommended fuel grade 332
Roofliner 38
Roof-mounted luggage rack 277
Rope for tow-starting/towing 353
Route, navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
RSC Runflat System, see Runflat tire 308

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3125
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

RTTI, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Rubber components, care 357
Run-flat tire 308

S

Safe braking 276
Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat 110
Safety belt reminder for the rear seats 110
Safety belts 108
Safety belts, care 358
Safety locks, doors and windows 124
Safety of the hybrid system 15
Safety package, see Active Protection 195
Safety switch, windows 102
Safety systems, see Airbags 172
Safety systems, see Intelligent Safety 176
Saving fuel 283
Screen Mirroring, connection 78
Screen, see Control Display 50
Screwdriver, see Onboard vehicle tool kit 340
Sealant, see Mobility System 309
Search for charging stations, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Seat heating 117
Seat heating, individual activation 118
Seating position for children 119
Seats and head restraints 106
Seats, front 106
Seats, rear 108
Seat ventilation, individual activation 118
Securing, cargo 268
Selection list in the instrument cluster 160
Selector lever, Steptronic transmission 140
Self-supporting tires, see Run-flat tires 308
Sensors, care 358
Sensors of the vehicle 39
Service and warranty 9
Service Center, see BMW Accident Assistance 348
Service Center, see BMW Roadside Assistance 348
Service notifications 157
Service notifications, see Condition Based Service CBS 338
Services, ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
SET button, Active Cruise Control 206
SET button, cruise control 203
Set speed, see Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function 206
Setting, Control Display 66
Settings, general 64
Settings, locking/unlocking 98
Settings, seats and head restraints 106
Setup Wizard 69
Shift paddles on the steering wheel 140
Side airbag 172
Side collision mitigation 192
Side parking aid, Surround View 229
Side parking aid without Surround View 219
Side protection aid, Surround View, see Side parking aid 229
Side protection aid without Surround View, see Side parking aid 219
Signaling, horn 34
Signals when unlocking, see Confirmation signals from the vehicle 98
Sitting safely 106
Ski and snowboard bag 273
Slide/tilt glass roof, see Glass sunroof 102
Smallest turning circle, vehicle 360
Smartphone, connecting 73
Smartphone Integration, Android Auto preparation 79
Smartphone Integration, Apple CarPlay preparation 79
Smartphone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Smartphone, using via voice activation 58
Smoker's package 256
SMS, see Short messages, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis 339
Sockets, electrical devices 257
SOS button, see Intelligent emergency call 349

Sound output, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Speech recognition 55
Speed limit display, see Speed Limit Info 158
Speed Limit Info 158
Speed warning 65
Sport displays 162
SPORT INDIVIDUAL, see Driving Dynamics Control 132
Sport program, Steptronic transmission 140
SPORT, see Driving Dynamics Control 132
Sport steering, variable 202
Stability control systems 198
Standard charging cable, see Mode 2 charging cable 290
Standard charging, see Mode 2 charging 288
Standard equipment, see Vehicle equipment 7
Standby state, idle state and drive-ready state 43
Start/stop, automatic function 127
Start/Stop button 126
Starting aid terminals 351
Starting, see Drive-ready state 44
Starting the engine, see Drive-ready state 44
Stationary climate control 249
Stations, AM/FM, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Status control display, tires 316
Status information, iDrive 48
Status of Owner's Manual 8
Status, vehicle 162
Steering and Lane Control Assistant 212
Steering Assistant, see Steering and Lane Control Assistant 212
Steering column adjustment 115
Steering wheel, adjusting 115
Steering wheel, buttons 34
Steptronic Sport transmission, see Steptronic transmission 140
Steptronic transmission 140
Storage, charging cable 290
Storage compartment, cargo area 269
Storage compartment, center console 264
Storage compartments 263
Storage compartments, locations 263
Storage, tires 307
Store Mirror position, see Memory function 116
Store seat position, see Memory function 116
Store steering wheel position, see Memory function 116
Stowing, cargo 268
Straps for cargo, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 268
Suitable devices 74
Suitable mobile phones 74
Summer tires, tread 305
Sun visor 256
Supplementary Owner's Manuals 16
Supplementary text message 152
Surround View 227
Surround View, gesture control 61
Suspension settings, see Driving Dynamics Control 132
Swinging of trailer, see Trailer stabilization control 281
Switches, see Cockpit 34
Switch for driving dynamics, see Driving Dynamics Control 132
Switching off the engine, see Drive-ready state 44
Symbols and displays 7
SYNC program, automatic climate control 244

T

Tachometer 156
Tailgate, opening and closing with no-touch activation 94
Tailgate, vehicle key 84
Tail lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 341
Tank capacity 361
Tank unlocking, see Tank vent 297
Tank vent 297
Technical changes, see For Your Own Safety 8
Technical data 360
Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Telephone, selection list in the instrument cluster 160
Teleservices, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Temperature, automatic climate control 241

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3127
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

Temperature display, see External temperature 156
Text message, Check Control 152
Theft alarm system, see Alarm system 99
Thigh support 107
Third-party provider, voice assistant 58
Through-loading system 269
Tilt alarm sensor 100
Tilt, backrest 107
Tilt down, passenger's side exterior mirror, see Automatic Curb Monitor 114
Time 64
Time setting, automatic 64
Tire brands, recommended 306
Tire chains 313
Tire damage 305
Tire identification marks 303
Tire inflation pressure 300
Tire inflation pressure monitoring, see TPM 321
Tire inflation pressure monitor TPM 321
Tire pressure 300
Tire Pressure Monitor 314
Tire Pressure Monitor, reset 316
Tire repair kit, see Mobility System 309
Tires and wheels 300
Tires, changing 306
Tire sealant, see Mobility System 309
Tire settings 315
Tires, run-flat 308
Tire tread 305
Title, gesture control 61
Tone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Tool 340
Top View, see Surround View 227
Torque display, see Sport displays 162
Touchpad, Controller 53
Tow bar 353
Tow fitting 353
Towing 352
Tow rope 353
Tow-starting 352
TPM Flat Tire Monitor 321
Traction control 200
TRACTION, driving dynamics 200
Traffic bulletins, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Trailer hitch, care 358
Trailer hitch, removable ball head 281
Trailer hitch, view of rearview camera 221
Trailer hitch, view of Surround View 229
Trailer loads 361
Trailer stabilization control 281
Trailer towing 279
Trailer towing, activation 281
Trailer towing, technical data 361
Transmission lock, electronic unlocking 144
Transmission, see Steptronic transmission 140
Transporting children safely 119
Tread, tires 305
Trip computer, see Trip data 160
Trip data 160
Triple turn signal activation 137
Trip odometer, see Trip data 160
Trunk, see Cargo area 267
Turning circle line, Surround View 229
Turning circle, vehicle 360
Turning radius lines, rearview camera 221
Turn signal, indicator light 155
Turn signal, replacing bulbs, see Lights and bulbs 341
Turn signals, high beams, headlight flasher 137

U

Ultrasonic sensors, see Sensors of the vehicle 39
Unintentional alarm, avoiding 100
Units, see Measuring units 65
Universal remote control 253
Unlock button, Steptronic transmission 140
Unlocking, automatic 98
Unlocking, see Opening and Closing 82
Unlocking, settings 98
Unlocking, vehicle key 83
Unpaved roads, cross-country trips 275
Updates made after the editorial deadline 8
Upholstery material care 357
USB connection 80
USB port, position in vehicle 258
Used battery, disposing of 345

Use, intended 8

V

Vanity mirror 256
Variable sport steering 202
Vehicle battery 344
Vehicle breakdown, see Breakdown assistance 347
Vehicle, breaking in 274
Vehicle care 356
Vehicle care products 356
Vehicle configuration, reset 66
Vehicle equipment 7
Vehicle identification number 12
Vehicle key 82
Vehicle key, additional 85
Vehicle key, integrated key 91
Vehicle key, loss 85
Vehicle key, malfunction 85
Vehicle key, replacing the battery 85
Vehicle key with display, malfunction 90
Vehicle key with display, see BMW display key 86
Vehicle paint, care 356
Vehicle status 162
Vehicle washing 355
Ventilation 244
Venting, see Stationary climate control 249
Venting, see Ventilation 244
Vent, see Ventilation 244
Video, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
VIN, see Vehicle identification number 12
Voice activation, see BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 59
Voice activation system 55
Voice assistant, third-party provider 58
Voice command response 55
Voice control 55
Voice control, gesture control 61
Volume, gesture control 61

W

Wake word 55
Warning/indicator lights 152
Warning against cross traffic 235
Warning light in the exterior mirror, see Blind spot collision warning 188
Warning light in the exterior mirror, see Cross traffic warning 235
Warning messages, see Check Control 151
Warning triangle 347
Warranty 8
Washer fluid 336
Washer nozzles, windshield 139
Washer system 137
Washing the vehicle 355
Washing, vehicle 355
Wash view, Surround View 229
Water, hybrid system 15
Water on roads 276
Water, see Condensation water under the parked vehicle 277
Website, see Internet 6
Weights 361
Welcome light during unlocking 83
Welcome lights 166
Welcome screen, driver profiles 69
Wheel base, vehicle 360
Wheels and tires 300
Wheels, changing 306
Widgets, iDrive 48
Widgets, instrument cluster 147
Width, vehicle 360
Wi-Fi connection 77
WiFi connection, see WLAN connection 77
Wi-Fi hotspot 77
Window, defrosting 244
Windows, powered 101
Windshield, defrosting 244
Windshield washer fluid, see Washer fluid 336
Windshield washer nozzles 139
Windshield wiper, see Wiper system 137
Winter tires 307
Winter tires, tread 305
Wiper blades, replacing 340
Wiper fluid, see Washer fluid 336
Wiper, fold-away position 140
Wiper, see Washer/wiper system 137
Wiper system 137

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3129

Wireless charging, smartphone, see Wireless charging tray 259
Wireless charging tray for smartphones 259
WLAN connection 77
Wood parts, care 357
Wordmatch principle, see Entry comparison 48
Working on, hybrid system 15
Wrench, see Onboard vehicle tool kit 340

X

xDrive 200

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3130
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

01405A1F7D5 ue

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3131

California Proposition 65 Warning

For vehicles sold in California:

California Proposition 65 Warning

WARNING

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

The Ultimate Driving Machine®

BMW DRIVER'S GUIDE APP.

Your customized information about the vehicle in an app.
Optimized for smartphones & tablets. Can be used offline.

Download on the App Store

GET IT ON Google Play

01405A1F7D5 DE

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3133
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F7D5 - X/20

LINK:
CONTENT & A-Z

The Ultimate Driving Machine®

OWNER'S MANUAL.

THE BMW X3 M.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3134
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3135
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

WELCOME TO BMW.

Owner's Manual.

Thank you for choosing a BMW.

The more familiar you are with your vehicle, the better control you will have on the road. We therefore strongly suggest:

Read this Owner's Manual before starting off in your new BMW. Also use the Integrated Owner's Manual in your vehicle. It contains important information on vehicle operation that will help you make full use of the technical features available in your BMW. The manual also contains information designed to enhance operating reliability and road safety, and to contribute to maintaining the value of your BMW.

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

You can find supplementary information in the additional brochures in the onboard literature.

We wish you a safe and enjoyable ride.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3136
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

TABLE OF CONTENTS

After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

NOTES

Information 6
Owner's Manual media 14

QUICK REFERENCE

Entering 16
Set-up and use 20
On the road 24

CONTROLS

Cockpit 32
Sensors of the vehicle 37
Operating state of the vehicle 41
iDrive 44
General settings 61
Personal settings 65
Connections 70
Opening and closing 79
Seats, mirrors and steering wheel 103
Transporting children safely 116
Driving 122
Displays 141
Lights 158
Safety 164
Driving stability control systems 190
Driver assistance systems 199
Driving comfort 233
Climate control 235

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3137
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Interior equipment 247
Storage compartments 257
Cargo area 261

DRIVING TIPS

BMW X3 M Technology 270
Things to remember when driving 271
Saving fuel 276

MOBILITY

Refueling 278
Wheels and tires 280
Engine compartment 306
Operating materials 309
Maintenance 316
Replacing components 318
Breakdown assistance 324
Care 331

REFERENCE

Technical data 336
Appendix 338
Everything from A to Z 340

© 2020 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Reprinting, including excerpts, only with the written consent of BMW AG, Munich.
US English ID7 X/20, 11 20 490
Printed on environmentally friendly paper, bleached without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3138

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Information

Using this Owner's Manual

Orientation

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic is by using the index.

An initial overview of the vehicle is provided in the first chapter.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication

The Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can be obtained as a printed book from the service center.

The topics are also discussed in the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Additional sources of information

Service center

A service center will be glad to answer questions at any time.

Internet

Vehicle information and general information on BMW, for instance, on technology, are available on the Internet: www.bmwusa.com.

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

The Integrated Owner's Manual specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle. The Integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the Control Display.

BMW Driver's Guide app

The BMW Driver's Guide app specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle. The app can be displayed on smartphones and tablets.

BMW Driver's Guide Web

Driver's Guide Web shows the most suitable information for the selected vehicle. If possible, only equipment and functions that are actually installed in the vehicle will be explained. Driver's Guide Web can be displayed in any current browser.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3139

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Symbols and displays

Symbols in the Owner's Manual

Symbol	Meaning
	Precautions that must be followed in order to avoid the possibility of injury to yourself and to others as well as serious damage to the vehicle.
	Measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.
"..."	Texts in vehicle used to select individual functions.
›...‹	Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.
»...«	Responses generated by the voice activation system.

Action steps

Action steps to be carried out are presented as a numbered list. The steps must be carried out in the defined order.

1. First action step.
2. Second action step.

Enumerations

Enumerations without mandatory order or alternative possibilities are presented as a list with bullet points.

- First possibility.
- Second possibility.

Symbols on vehicle components

This symbol on a vehicle component indicates that further information on the component is available in the Owner's Manual.

Vehicle features and options

This Owner's Manual describes all models and all standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series. Therefore, this Owner's Manual also describes and illustrates features and functions that are not available in a vehicle, for example because of the selected optional features or the country-specific version.

This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

For any options and equipment not described in this Owner's Manual, refer to the Supplementary Owner's Manuals.

Your BMW service center is happy to answer any questions that you may have about the features and options applicable to your vehicle.

Status of the Owner's Manual

Basic information

The manufacturer of your vehicle pursues a policy of constant development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards. In rare cases, therefore, the features described in this Owner's Manual may differ from those in your vehicle.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3140

Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

For Your Own Safety

Intended use

Heed the following when using the vehicle:

- Owner's Manual.
- Information on the vehicle. Do not remove stickers.
- Technical vehicle data.
- The traffic, speed, and safety laws where the vehicle is driven.
- Vehicle documents and statutory documents.

Warranty

Your vehicle is technically configured for the operating conditions and registration requirements applying in the country of first delivery, also known as homologation. If your vehicle is to be operated in a different country it might be necessary to adapt your vehicle to potentially differing operating conditions and registration requirements. If your vehicle does not comply with the homologation requirements in a certain country you may not be able to lodge warranty claims for your vehicle there. Further information on warranty is available from a service center.

Maintenance and repairs

Advanced technology, for instance the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires suitable maintenance and repair work.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you entrust corresponding procedures to a BMW center. If you choose to use another service facility, BMW recommends use of a facility that performs work, e.g., maintenance and repair, according to BMW specifications with properly trained personnel, referred to in the Owner's Manual as "another qualified service center or repair shop".

If work is performed improperly, for instance maintenance and repair, there is a risk of subsequent damage and related safety risks.

Improperly performed work on the vehicle paint can lead to a failure or malfunction of components, e.g., the radar sensors, and thereby result in a safety risk.

Parts and accessories

BMW recommends the use of parts and accessory products approved by BMW.

Approved parts and accessories, and advice on their use and installation are available from a BMW center.

BMW parts and accessories have been tested by BMW for their safety and suitability in BMW vehicles.

BMW warrants genuine BMW parts and accessories.

BMW does not evaluate whether each individual product from another manufacturer can be used with BMW vehicles without presenting a safety hazard, even if a country-specific official approval was issued. BMW does not evaluate whether these products are suitable for BMW vehicles under all usage conditions.

California Proposition 65 Warning

For vehicles sold in California, the law requires vehicle manufacturers to provide the following warning:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3141
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Warning

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of Automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Batteries also contain other chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer. Wash your hands after handling. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

Warning

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly. Your vehicle is covered by the following warranties:

- New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- Rust Perforation Limited Warranty.
- Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty.
- Federal Emissions Performance Warranty.
- California Emission Control System Limited Warranty.

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

Your vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating conditions and homologation requirements in your country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish to operate your vehicle in another country or region, you may be required to adapt your vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and homologation requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

Maintenance

Maintain the vehicle regularly to sustain the road safety, operational reliability and the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Specifications for maintenance measures:

- BMW Maintenance system.
- Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models.
- Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

If the vehicle is not maintained or is improperly maintained, this could result in serious damage to the vehicle. Such damage is not covered by the BMW New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Refer to section on engine oil change regarding recommended service intervals for oil changes.

Data memory

General information

Electronic control devices are installed in the vehicle. Electronic control units process data they receive from vehicle sensors, self-generate or exchange with each other. Some control units are necessary for the vehicle to function safely or provide assistance during driving, for instance driver assistance systems. Furthermore, control units facilitate comfort or infotainment functions.

Information about stored or exchanged data can be requested from the manufacturer of the vehicle, in a separate booklet, for example.

Personal reference

Each vehicle is marked with a unique vehicle identification number. Depending on the country, the vehicle owner can be identified with the vehicle identification number, license plate and corresponding authorities. In addition, there are other options to track data collected in the vehicle to the driver or vehicle owner, for instance, via the ConnectedDrive account that is used.

Operating data in the vehicle

Control units process data to operate the vehicle.

For example, this includes:

- Status messages for the vehicle and its individual components, e.g., wheel rotational speed, wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration, engaged safety belt indicator.
- Ambient conditions, e.g., temperature, rain sensor signals.

The processed data is only processed in the vehicle itself and generally volatile. The data is not stored beyond the operating period.

Electronic components, e.g. control units and ignition keys, contain components for storing technical information. Information about the vehicle condition, component usage, maintenance recommendations, events or faults can be stored temporarily or permanently.

This information generally records the state of a component, a module, a system, or the environment, for instance:

- Operating states of system components, for instance, fill levels, tire inflation pressure, battery status.
- Malfunctions and faults in important system components, for instance lights and brakes.
- Responses by the vehicle to special situations such as airbag deployment or engagement of the driving stability control systems.
- Information on vehicle-damaging events.

The data is required to perform the control unit functions. Furthermore, it also serves to recognize and correct malfunctions, and helps the vehicle manufacturer to optimize vehicle functions.

The majority of this data is stored temporarily and is only processed within the vehicle itself. In some circumstances the vehicle may store some data for an additional but limited period of time.

When servicing, for instance during repairs, service processes, warranty cases, and quality assurance measures, this technical information can be read out from the vehicle together with the vehicle identification number.

A dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop can read out the information. The socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis required by law in the vehicle is used to read out the data.

The data is collected, processed, and used by the relevant organizations in the service network. The data documents technical conditions of the vehicle, which can be used to determine vehicle maintenance status, and facilitate quality improvement.

Fault and event memories in the vehicle can be reset when a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop performs repair or servicing work.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3143
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Data entry and data transfer into the vehicle

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, comfort and individual settings can be stored in the vehicle and modified or reset at any time.

For example, this includes:

- Settings for the seat and steering wheel positions.
- Suspension and climate control settings.

If necessary, data can be transferred to the entertainment and communication system of the vehicle, for instance via smartphone.

This includes the following depending on the respective equipment:

- Multimedia data such as music, films or photos for playback in an integrated multimedia system.
- Address book data for use in conjunction with an integrated hands-free system or an integrated navigation system.
- Entered navigation destinations.
- Data on the use of Internet services.

This data can be stored locally in the vehicle or is found on a device that has been connected to the vehicle, e.g., a smartphone, USB stick or MP3 player. If this data is stored in the vehicle, it can be deleted at any time.

This data is only transmitted to third parties upon personal request as part of the use of online services. The transmission depends on the selected settings for the use of the services.

Incorporation of mobile devices

Depending on the vehicle equipment, mobile devices connected to the vehicle, for instance smartphones, can be controlled via the vehicle control elements.

The sound and picture from the mobile device can be played back and displayed through the multimedia system. Certain information is transferred to the mobile device at the same time. Depending on the type of incorporation, this includes, for instance position data and other general vehicle information. This optimizes the way in which selected apps, for instance navigation or music playback, work.

There is no further interaction between the mobile device and the vehicle, such as active access to vehicle data.

How the data will be processed further is determined by the provider of the particular app being used. The extent of the possible settings depends on the respective app and the operating system of the mobile device.

Services

General information

If the vehicle has a wireless network connection, this enables data to be exchanged between the vehicle and other systems. The wireless network connection is realized via an in-vehicle transmitter and receiver unit or via personal mobile devices brought into the vehicle, for instance smartphones. This wireless network connection enables 'online functions' to be used. These include online services and apps supplied by the vehicle manufacturer or by other providers.

Services from the vehicle manufacturer

Where online services from the vehicle manufacturer are concerned, the corresponding functions are described in the appropriate place, for instance the Owner's Manual or manufacturer's website. The relevant legal information pertaining to data protection may also be found on the manufacturer's website. Personal data may be used to perform online services. Data is exchanged over a secure connection, for instance with the IT systems of the vehicle manufacturer intended for this purpose.

Any collection, processing, and use of personal data above and beyond that needed to provide the services must always be based on a legal

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3144

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

permission, contractual arrangement or consent. It is also possible to activate or deactivate the data connection as a whole. That is, with the exception of functions and services required by law such as Assist systems.

Services from other providers

When using online services from other providers, these services are the responsibility of the relevant provider and subject to their data privacy conditions and terms of use. The vehicle manufacturer has no influence on the content exchanged during this process. Information on the way in which personal data is collected and used in relation to services from third parties, the scope of such data, and its purpose, can be obtained from the relevant service provider.

Event Data Recorder EDR

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder EDR. The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were fastened.
- How far, if at all, the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

EDR data is recorded by your vehicle only if a nontrivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data, for instance name, gender, age, and crash location, are recorded.

However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

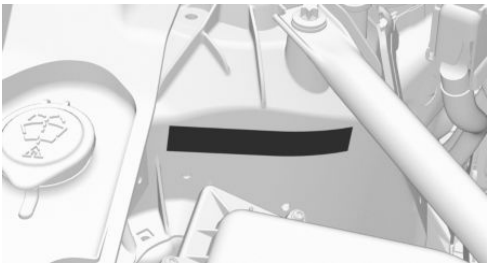
To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Vehicle identification number

General information

Depending on the national-market version, the vehicle identification number is located in different positions in the vehicle. This chapter describes all positions that are possible for the series.

Engine compartment



The engraved vehicle identification number can be found in the engine compartment, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3145
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Right nameplate

The vehicle identification number can be found on the nameplate, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

Left nameplate

The vehicle identification number can be found on the nameplate, on the left-hand side of the vehicle.

Windshield

The vehicle identification number can also be found behind the windshield.

iDrive

It is also possible to display the vehicle identification number via iDrive.

Additional information:

Displaying the vehicle identification number and software part number, refer to page 71.

Reporting safety defects

For US customers

The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration NHTSA, in addition to notifying BMW of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or BMW of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may call the toll-free hotline 1-800-333-0510. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety.

Owner's Manual media

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

General information

Media at a glance

You can use various media formats to call up the content in the Owner's Manual. The following Owner's Manual media formats are available:

- Printed Owner's Manual.
- Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

Printed Owner's Manual

Concept

The printed Owner's Manual describes all standard, country-specific, and optional features offered with the series.

General information

The Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can be obtained as a printed book from the service center.

Supplementary Owner's Manuals

Also follow the Supplementary Owner's Manuals, which are included in addition to the onboard literature.

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

Concept

The Integrated Owner's Manual specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle.

The Integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the Control Display.

Selecting the Owner's Manual

1. HOME Press the button.
2. "CAR"
3. "Owner's Manual"
4. Select the desired method of accessing the contents.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3147
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Scrolling through the Owner's Manual

Turn the Controller, until the next or previous contents are displayed.

Context help

General information

The Integrated Owner's Manual can be accessed from any menu. Depending on the selected function, either the associated description or the main menu of the Integrated Owner's Manual will be displayed.

Opening via iDrive

Change directly to the Options menu from the function on the Control Display:

1. OPTION Press the button.
2. "Help"

Opening when a Check Control message is displayed

Directly from the Check Control message on the Control Display:

"Owner's Manual"

Programmable memory buttons

General information

The entry points into the Owner's Manual can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly.

Storing

1. Select the desired entry point via iDrive:
   - ▷ "Keyword search"
   - ▷ "Picture search"
   - ▷ "Operating tips"
   - ▷ "Quick reference"
   - ▷ "Topics"
   - ▷ "Quick link"
2. 1 ... 7 Press and hold the desired button until the displayed bar on the Control Display has loaded completely.

Executing

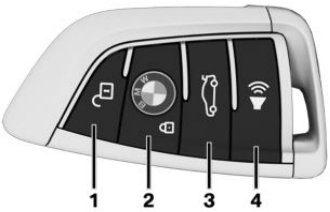
1 ... 7 Press the corresponding button.

The owner's manual is directly displayed at the selected entry point.

Entering

Opening and closing

Buttons on the vehicle key



1 Unlocking
2 Locking
3 To open the tailgate
4 Panic mode, pathway lighting

Unlocking the vehicle

Press the button on the vehicle key.

Depending on the settings, either only the driver's door or all vehicle access points are unlocked.

If only the driver's door is unlocked, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key after unlocking.

The windows and the glass sunroof are opened, as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Press the button on the vehicle key.

All vehicle access points are locked.

Buttons for the central locking system

Overview

Buttons for the central locking system.

Locking

Press the button with the front doors closed.

The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

Unlocking

Press the button.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

- ▷ Press the button on the vehicle key and hold for at least 3 seconds.
- ▷ Briefly press the button on the vehicle key three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3149
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Comfort Access

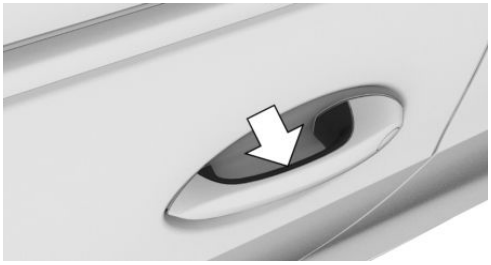
Concept

The vehicle can be accessed without operating the vehicle key.

Carrying the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket, is sufficient.

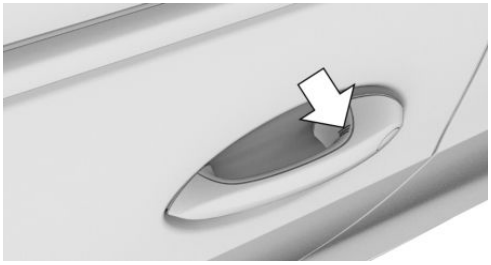
The vehicle automatically detects the vehicle key when it is in close proximity or in the car's interior.

Unlocking the vehicle



Grasp the handle of a vehicle door completely.

Locking the vehicle



Touch the grooved surface on the handle of a closed vehicle door with your finger for approx. 1 second without grasping the door handle.

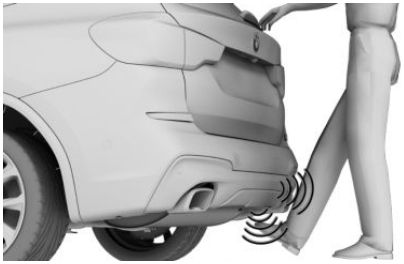
Opening and closing the tailgate with no-touch activation

Concept

The tailgate can be opened and closed with no-touch activation using the vehicle key you are carrying.

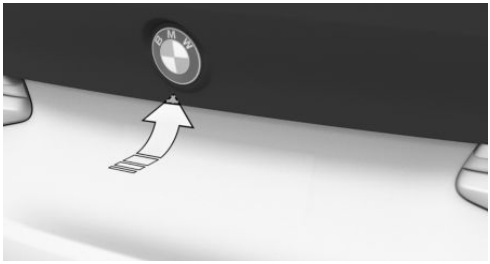
Performing the foot movement

1. Stand in the middle behind the vehicle at approx. one arm's length away from the rear of the vehicle.
2. Wave a foot under the vehicle in the direction of travel and immediately pull it back. With this movement, the leg must pass through the ranges of both sensors.



Tailgate

Opening



▷ Unlock the vehicle and then press the button on the outside of the tailgate.

▷ Press the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

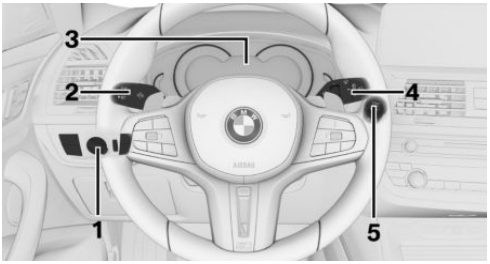
Depending on the setting, the doors may be unlocked.

Closing

Press the button on the inside of the upper tailgate.

Displays, control elements

In the vicinity of the steering wheel



1 Light switch element
2 Turn signal indicator, high beams
3 Instrument cluster
4 Wipers
5 Start/Stop button

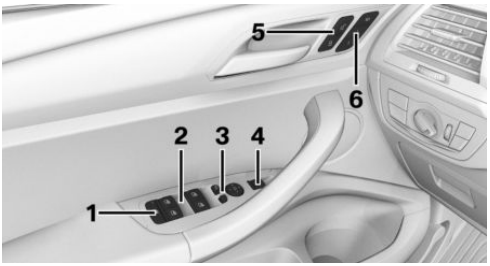
Indicator/warning lights

Instrument cluster

The indicator/warning lights can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

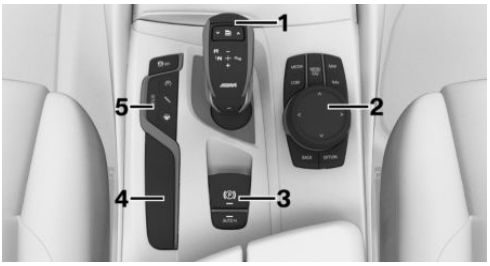
Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when drive-ready state is switched on.

Driver's door



1 Safety switch
2 Power windows
3 Exterior mirrors
4 Opening/closing the tailgate
5 Central locking system
6 Seats, comfort features

Switch console



1 Selector lever
2 Controller
3 Parking brake, Automatic Hold
4 ▷ Sound control
▷ Parking assistance systems
5 M Setup

iDrive

Concept

The iDrive combines the functions of many switches. These functions can be operated via the Controller.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3151
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Buttons on the Controller

Button	Function
MENU	Opens the main menu.
MEDIA	Opens the Media/Radio menu.
COM	Opens the Communication menu.
MAP	Opens navigation map.
NAV	Opens destination input menu for navigation.
BACK	Opens the previous display.
OPTION	Opens the Options menu.

Voice activation

Activating the voice activation system

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the signal.
3. Say the command.

This symbol indicates that the voice activation system is active.

No other commands may be available. In this case, operate the function via iDrive.

Terminating the voice activation system

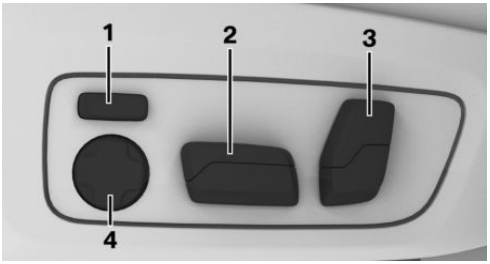
Press the button on the steering wheel or ›Cancel‹.

This symbol indicates that the voice activation system is deactivated.

Set-up and use

Seats, mirrors and steering wheel

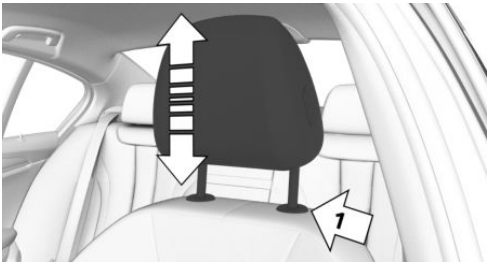
Electrically adjustable seats



1 Backrest width
2 Forward/backward, height, seat tilt
3 Backrest tilt, head restraint
4 Lumbar support

Adjusting the head restraint

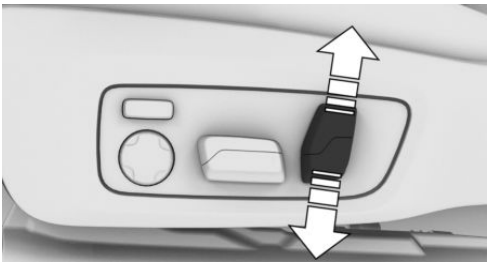
Adjusting the height: manual head restraints



- To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.
- To raise: push the head restraint up.

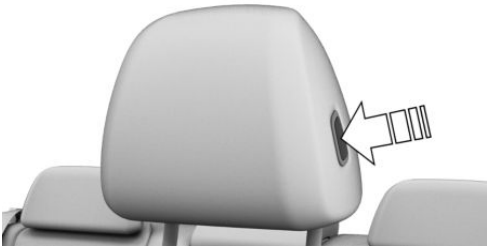
After setting the height, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Adjusting the height: power head restraints



Push switch up or down.

Adjust distance: manual head restraints



- Back: press the button and push the head restraint toward the rear.
- Forward: pull the head restraint toward the front.

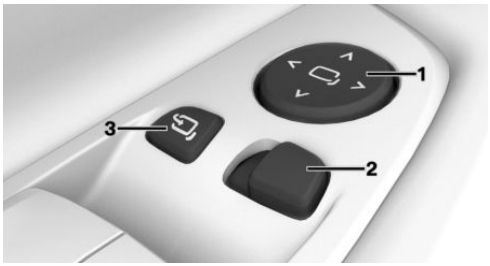
After setting the distance, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Adjusting the distance: power head restraints

The distance to the back of the head is adjusted via the backrest tilt.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3153
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

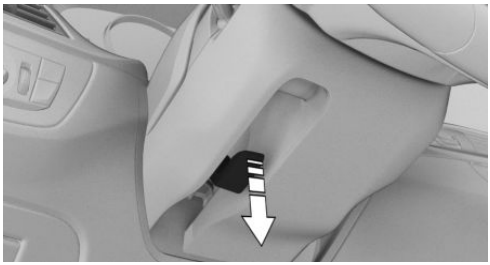
Adjusting the exterior mirrors



1 Adjusting
2 Selecting a mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor
3 Folding in and out

Adjusting the steering wheel

Manual steering wheel setting



1. Fold the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seat position.
3. Fold the lever back up.

Memory function

Concept

The following settings can be stored and, if necessary, retrieved using the memory function:

- Seat position.
- Exterior mirror position.
- Height of the Head-up Display.

Storing

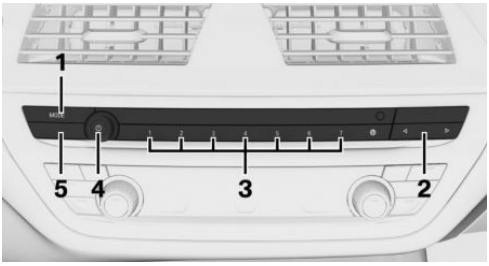
1. Set the desired position.
2. SET Press button on the door. The writing on the button lights up.
3. Press the desired button 1 or 2 at the door while the writing is lit. A signal sounds.

Calling up settings

Press the desired button 1 or 2.

Infotainment

Radio



1 Changing the entertainment source
2 Changing the station/track
3 Programmable memory buttons
4 Sound output on/off, volume
5 Changing the waveband

Waveband/satellite radio

Navigation destination input

Entering a destination via quick search

1. NAV Press the button on the Controller.
2. "Where to?"
3. Enter at least two letters or characters.

   The search term may be completed automatically in gray print.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3154

Press or move the controller up to apply the suggested search term.

4. OK Select the symbol, if needed.
   Results are displayed in a list.
5. "Search location": select search area.
6. Move the Controller to the right.
7. Select desired destination.

Connecting a mobile phone

General information

After the mobile phone is connected once to the vehicle, the mobile phone can be operated using iDrive and the steering wheel buttons.

Connecting the mobile phone via Bluetooth

1. "COM"
2. If necessary, select the following setting: "Telephone"
3. "Connect new phone"
4. To perform additional steps on the mobile phone, refer to the mobile phone owner's manual: e.g., search for or connect the Bluetooth device or a new device.
   The Bluetooth name of the vehicle appears on the mobile phone display. Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle.
5. Depending on the mobile device, a control number is displayed or the control number must be entered.
   - ▷ Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number on the display of the device.
     Confirm the control number on the device and on the Control Display.
   - ▷ Enter and confirm the same control number on the device and via iDrive.

   The device is connected and displayed in the device list.

Using the telephone

Accepting a call

Depending on the equipment, incoming calls can be answered in several ways.

- ▷ Via iDrive:
  "Accept"
- ▷ /
  Press the corresponding button on the steering wheel.
- ▷ Via the selection list in the instrument cluster:
  Use the thumbwheel on the steering wheel to select: "Accept"
- ▷ Via touch screen: tap on the corresponding entry on the Control Display.
- ▷ Via gestures: point the index finger into the direction of the Control Display.

Dialing a number

1. "COM"
2. If necessary, "Telephone"
3. "Dial number:"
4. Enter the numbers.
5. Select the symbol. The connection is established via the mobile phone to which this function has been assigned.

Establish the connection via the additional telephone:

1.

   Press the button.
2. "Call via"

Apple CarPlay preparation

Concept

CarPlay allows certain functions of a compatible Apple iPhone to be used via Siri voice operation and iDrive.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3155
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Functional requirements

- Compatible iPhone, iPhone 5 or later with iOS 7.1 or later.
- Corresponding mobile contract.
- If necessary, the setting for mobile data must be activated on the iPhone.
- Bluetooth, WLAN, and Siri voice operation are activated on the iPhone.
- WLAN is activated on the vehicle.

Pairing the iPhone with CarPlay

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. "New device"
4. "Phone calls and audio"

   The vehicle's Bluetooth name is displayed on the Control Display.
5. On the mobile device, search for Bluetooth devices in the vicinity and select the vehicle.

   A control number is displayed.
6. Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number on the display of the mobile device, and confirm that the two match.
7. "Use Apple CarPlay"

The iPhone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

On the road

Driving

Drive-ready state

Switching on drive-ready state

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

Switching off drive-ready state

M Steptronic Sport transmission:

1. Engage selector lever position P with the vehicle stopped.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

   The engine is switched off.
3. Set the parking brake.

Auto Start/Stop function

The Auto Start/Stop function switches the engine off automatically while stationary to save fuel. The engine starts automatically under the following preconditions:

M Steptronic Sport transmission:

- By releasing the brake pedal.
- When Automatic Hold is activated: step on the accelerator pedal.

Parking brake

Setting

Pull the switch.

The LED on the switch and the indicator light in the instrument cluster are illuminated.

Releasing

With drive-ready state switched on:

Press the switch while stepping on the brake pedal or selector lever position P is set.

The LED and indicator light go out.

The parking brake is released.

Parking

The parking brake is automatically set if the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold and the drive-ready state is switched off or the vehicle is exited.

M Steptronic Sport transmission

Engaging selector lever position D/S, N, R

- R is reverse.
- Neutral N.
- Center position, forward position.
- - Downshifting, manual.
- + Upshifting, manual.
- D/S Drive mode or sequential mode.

With the driver's safety belt fastened, pull or push the selector lever in the desired direction, past a resistance point if necessary. The selector lever returns to the center position in each case.

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a gear position or reverse, maintain pres-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3157
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

sure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start.

In selector lever position R, the selector lever locks.

Engage selector lever position R only when the vehicle is stationary.

Drive mode D/S

Push the selector lever out of the center position in the D/S direction.

Drive mode is activated; all forward gears are automatically changed.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster along with a D, e.g., 1 D.

Sequential mode D/S

Push the selector lever out of the center position in the D/S direction, arrow 1, or shift via the selector lever, arrows at 2.

Sequential mode is activated; it is possible to shift gears manually without letting off the gas.

- To shift up: pull the selector lever rearwards.
- To shift down: press the selector lever forward.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, e.g., 1.

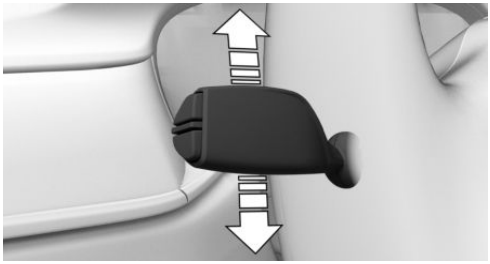
Engaging P

Engage selector lever position P only when the vehicle is stationary.

Press button P.

Turn signal, high beams, headlight flasher

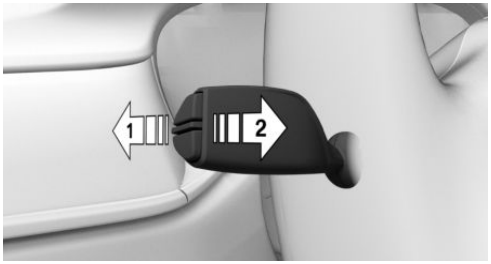
Turn signal



- On: press the lever past the resistance point.
- Off: press the lever past the resistance point in the opposite direction.
- Triple turn signal activation: lightly tap the lever up or down.
- Brief signaling: press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3158

High beams, headlight flasher



Push the lever forward or pull it backward.

- ▷ High beams on, arrow 1.
  The high beams light up when the low beams are switched on.
- ▷ High beams off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

Lights and lighting

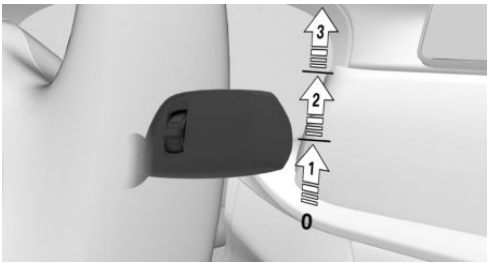
Light functions

Symbol	Function
0	Lights off. Daytime running lights.
≡D⊂≡	Parking lights.
CA	Automatic headlight control. Adaptive light functions.
≡D	Low beams.
	Instrument lighting.
P≡	Right roadside parking light.
≡P	Left roadside parking light.

Wiper system

Switching the wipers on/off and brief wipe

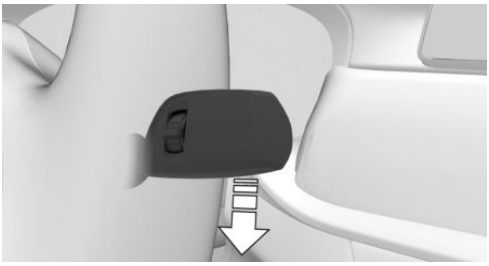
Switching on



Press the lever up until the desired position is reached.

- ▷ Resting position of the wipers: position 0.
- ▷ Rain sensor: position 1.
- ▷ Normal wiper speed: position 2.
- ▷ Fast wiper speed: position 3.

Switching off and brief wipe



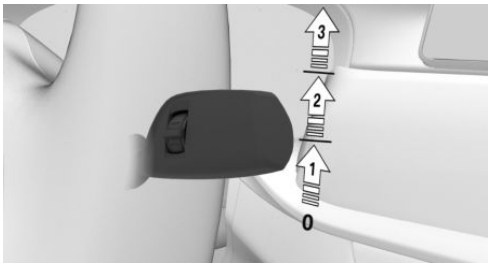
Press the lever down.

- ▷ Switching off: press the lever down until it reaches its standard position.
- ▷ Brief wipe: press the lever down from the standard position.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3159
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Rain sensor

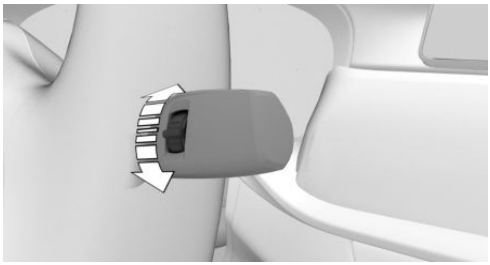
Activating/deactivating



To activate: press the lever up once from its standard position, arrow 1.

To deactivate: press the lever back into the standard position.

Adjusting the sensitivity



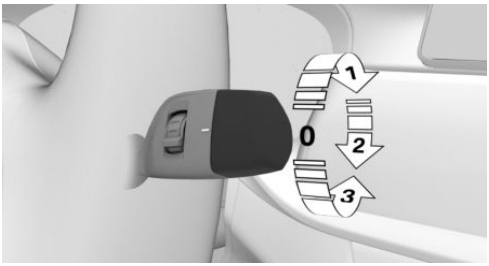
Turn the thumbwheel on the wiper lever.

Cleaning the windshield

Pull the wiper lever towards you.

Rear window wiper

Switching on



Turn the outer switch upward.

- ▷ Resting position of the wiper, position 0.
- ▷ Intermittent mode, arrow 1. When reverse gear is engaged, the system switches to continuous operation.

Clean the rear window

Turn the outer switch in the desired direction.

- ▷ In resting position: turn the switch downward, arrow 3. The switch automatically returns to its idle position when released.
- ▷ In intermittent mode: turn the switch further, arrow 2. The switch automatically returns to its interval position when released.

Climate control

Automatic climate control

Button	Function
	Temperature.
A/C	Climate control operation.
MAX A/C	Maximum cooling.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3160
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

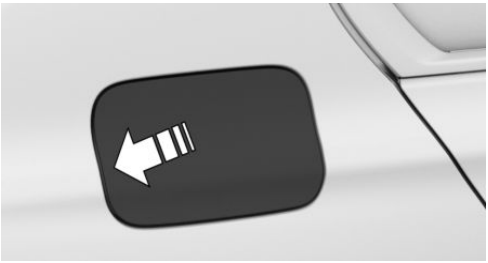
Button	Function
AUTO	AUTO program.
	Recirculated-air mode.
	Air flow, manual.
	Air distribution, manual.
SYNC	SYNC program.
MAX	Defrost and defog window.
	Rear window defroster.
	Active seat ventilation.
	Seat heating.
MENU	Opening the Climate menu.

Intermediate stop

Refueling

Fuel cap

1. To open the fuel filler flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.



2. Turn the fuel cap counterclockwise.
3. Place the fuel cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.

Gasoline

For the best fuel efficiency, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.

Wheels and tires

Tire inflation pressure specifications

The tire inflation pressure specifications can be found in the tire inflation pressure table in the printed Owner's Manual.

After correcting the tire inflation pressure

With runflat tires:

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

With Tire Pressure Monitor:

The corrected tire inflation pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the correct tire settings have been made.

With tires that cannot be found in the tire pressure values on the Control Display, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM.

Checking the tire inflation pressure

Regularly check the tire inflation pressure and correct it as needed:

- ▷ At least twice a month.
- ▷ Before embarking on an extended trip.

Cleaning the wheels

The friction during hard braking may produce brake dust and make the rims dirty. Brake dust can be removed by cleaning the rims. BMW recommends using vehicle care and cleaning products from BMW.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3161
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Electronic oil measurement

Functional requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of normal driving with the combustion engine running.

Displaying the engine oil level

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"

Different messages appear on the Control Display depending on the engine oil level. Pay attention to these messages.

Adding engine oil

General information

Safely park the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before adding engine oil.

Adding engine oil

Only add engine oil when the message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Observe the quantity to be added in the message.

Take care not to add too much engine oil.

Observe recommended engine oil types.

Providing assistance

Hazard warning flashers

The button is located in the center console.

Breakdown assistance

BMW Roadside Assistance

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "BMW Assist"
4. If necessary, "BMW Roadside Assistance"
   A voice connection is established.

ConnectedDrive

Concierge service

The BMW Assist Concierge service offers information on events, gas stations or hotels, and provides phone numbers and addresses. Many hotels can be booked directly by the BMW Concierge service. The Concierge service is part of the optional BMW Assist Response Center.

1. "COM"
2. "BMW Assist"
3. If necessary, select the entry for the Concierge Service.

A voice connection to the Concierge service is established.

Teleservices

Teleservices are services that help to maintain vehicle mobility.

Teleservices can comprise the following services:

- BMW Roadside Assistance.
- BMW Accident Assistance.
- Service Request.
- Teleservice Report.
- Teleservice Battery Guard.
- Your dealer's service center.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3163
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

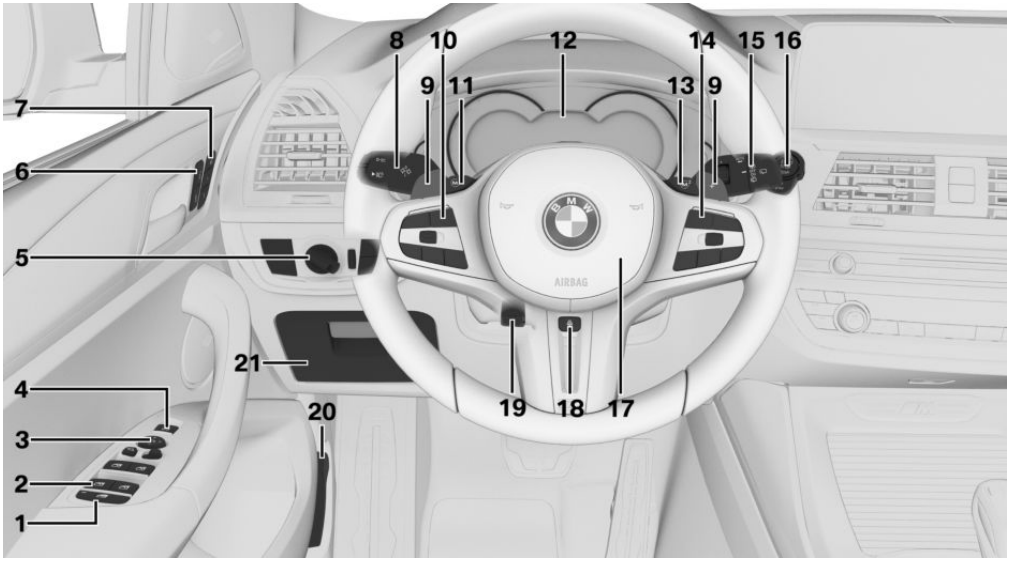
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3164

Cockpit

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

In the vicinity of the steering wheel



1 Safety switch 99

2 Power windows 98

3 Exterior mirror operation 110

4 Opening and closing the tailgate 93

5 Lights

Light switch 158

Lights off

Daytime running lights 160

Parking lights 159

Automatic headlight control 158

Adaptive light functions 160

High-beam Assistant 161

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3165
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Low beams 159

Instrument lighting 162

Right roadside parking light 159

Left roadside parking light 159

6 Central locking system 89

Unlocking

Locking

7 Seating comfort features

Memory function 113

8 Steering column stalk, left

Turn signal 128

High beams, headlight flasher 128

High-beam Assistant 161

Widgets 142

Trip data 152

9 Shift paddle

10 Steering wheel buttons, left

Cruise control on/off 199

Active Cruise Control on/off 201

Steering and traffic jam assistant on/off 208

Cruise control: to store the speed

Pause or continue cruise control

Active Cruise Control: increase distance

Active Cruise Control: reduce distance

With steering and traffic jam assistant: adjust distance

Cruise control rocker switch

11
Activating M1 setup 190

12 Instrument cluster 141

13
Activating M2 setup 190

14 Steering wheel buttons, right

Selection lists 152

Volume, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6

Voice activation system 52

Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6

Thumbwheel for selection lists 152

15 Steering column stalk, right

Wipers 128

Rain sensor 129

Cleaning the windshield 130

Rear window wiper in Canadian models 131

REAR Rear window wiper 131

Clean the rear window 131

16 START ENGINE STOP Switching drive-ready state on/off 122

Auto Start/Stop function 122

17 Horn, entire surface

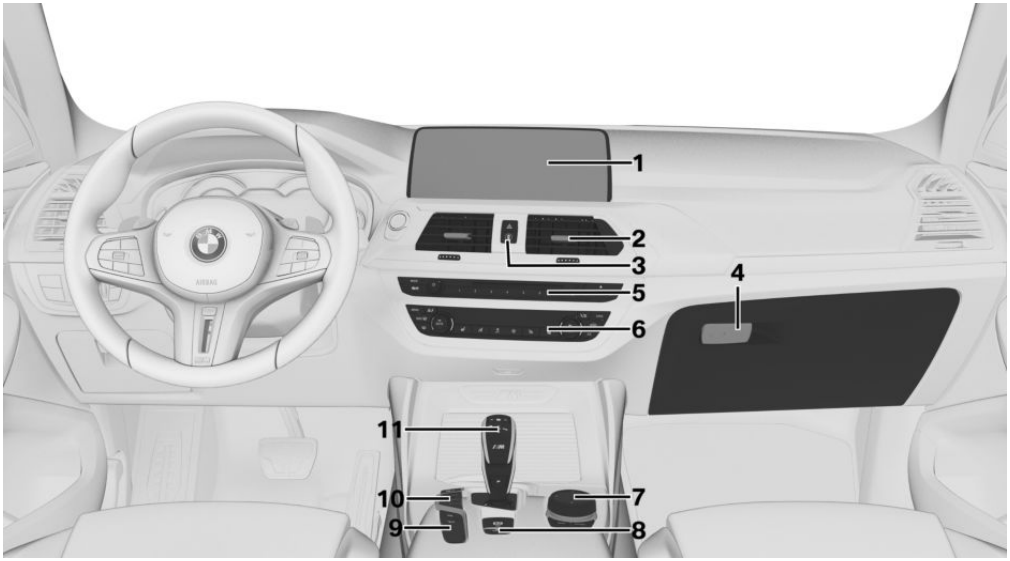
18 Heated steering wheel 112

19 Adjusting the steering wheel 112

20 Unlocking the hood 307

21 Driver's side glove compartment 258

In the vicinity of the center console



1 Control Display 48

2 Ventilation 239

3 Hazard warning system 324

Intelligent Safety 168

4 Glove compartment 257

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3167
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

5 Radio/multimedia, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication 6

6 Automatic climate control 235

7 Controller with buttons 48

8 Parking brake 125

Automatic Hold 126

9 Parking assistance systems 211

Panorama View 227

HDC Hill Descent Control 197

Sound control 139

10 Servotronic 192

Adaptive M chassis 233

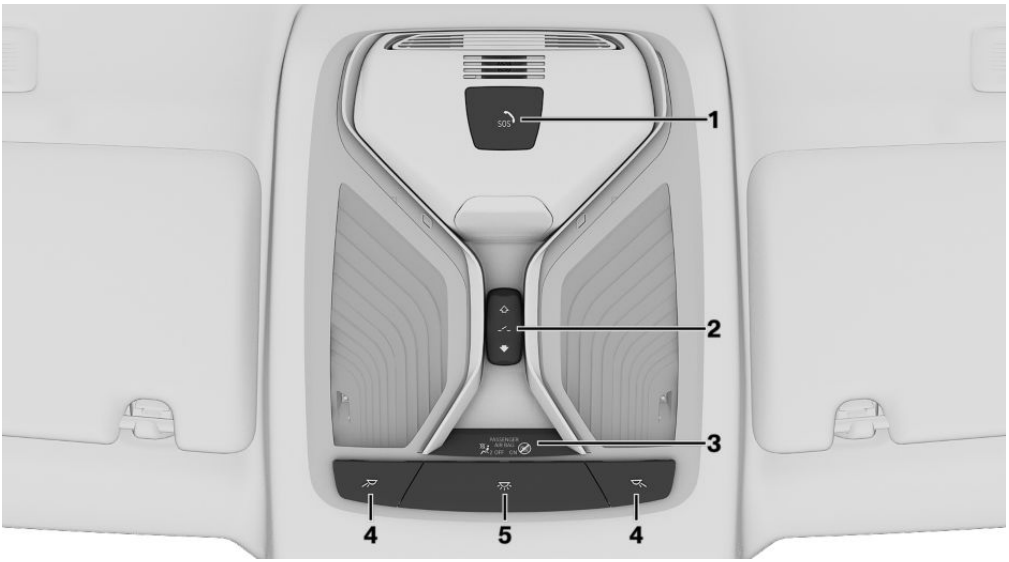
M Engine Dynamics Control 138

DSC Dynamic Stability Control 193

M Setup menu 190

11 Transmission selector lever 132

In the vicinity of the roofliner



1 SOS Emergency Request, SOS 326

2 Glass sunroof 99

3 PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON Indicator light, front-seat passenger airbag 167

4 Reading lights 163

5 Interior lights 162

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3169
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Sensors of the vehicle

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Overview

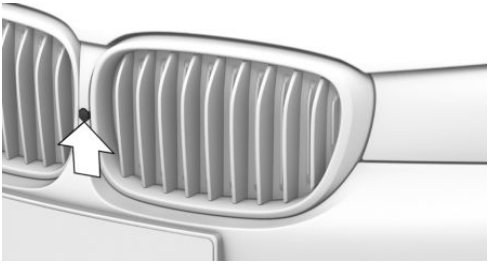
Depending on the equipment, the following cameras and sensors are installed in the vehicle:

- Front camera.
- Cameras behind the windshield.
- Top view cameras.
- Rearview camera.
- Front radar sensor.
- Radar sensors, side, front.
- Radar sensors, side, rear.
- Ultrasound sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors, side.

Keep the vehicle cameras and sensors, as well as surrounding areas, clean and unobstructed.

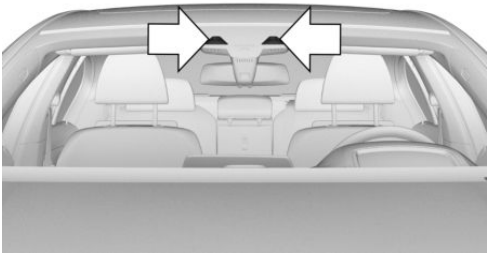
Cameras

Front camera



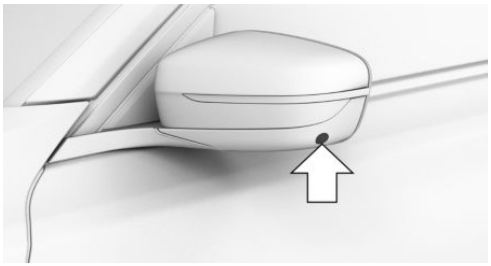
Front camera

Cameras behind the windshield



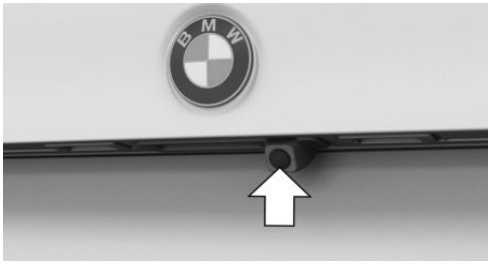
The cameras are located in the area of the interior mirror.

Top view cameras



One camera is located at the bottom of each exterior mirror housing.

Rearview camera



The camera is located in the handle of the tailgate.

System limits of the cameras

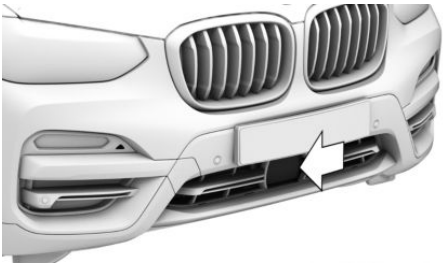
The cameras may not be fully functional and may provide incorrect information in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- On steep hills, in steep depressions or in tight curves.
- When the camera field of view is covered, for instance by a fogged up windshield or labels.
- When the camera lens is dirty or damaged.
- With exterior mirrors folded in.
- When driving toward bright lights or strong reflections, e.g., because of a setting sun.
- When it is dark outside.
- Camera behind the windshield: if the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- Camera behind the windshield: during calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

If applicable, a Check Control message is displayed if the system fails.

Radar sensors

Front radar sensor



The radar sensor is located in the front bumper.

Radar sensors, side, front

The radar sensors are located in the bumper.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3171
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Radar sensors, side, rear

The radar sensors are located in the bumper.

System limits of the radar sensors

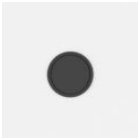
The radar sensors may not be fully functional or may not be available in the following situations:

- If sensors are dirty, such as due to icing.
- If sensors are covered, such as by labels, films or a number plate baseplate.
- If the sensor is not aligned correctly, for instance due to parking damage.
- If the radiation range of the sensors is covered, e.g., by protruding cargo.
- If the field of view of the sensors is covered, e.g., by garage walls, hedges or snow hills.
- After improperly performed work on the vehicle paint in the area of the sensors.
- On steep hilltops or in sharp dips in the road.

If applicable, a Check Control message is displayed if the system fails.

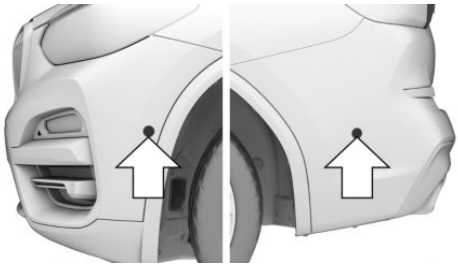
Ultrasound sensors

Ultrasound sensors in the front/ rear bumpers



The ultrasound sensors of the Park Distance Control PDC are located in the bumpers.

Ultrasonic sensors, side



The ultrasound sensors of the Automatic Parking Assistant are located on the side of the vehicle.

System limits of the ultrasonic sensors

The detection of objects with ultrasonic measurements can run into physical limits, e.g., in the following situations:

- In case of dirty sensors.
- In case of covered sensors, such as due to labels.
- If the sensor is not aligned correctly, for instance due to parking damage.
- After improperly performed work on the vehicle paint in the area of the sensors.
- For small children and animals.
- For persons with certain clothing, for instance coats.
- In case of external interference of the ultrasound, for instance from passing vehicles, loud machines or other ultrasonic sources.
- Under certain weather conditions, e.g., high relative humidity, wet conditions, snowfall, cold, extreme heat, or strong wind.
- With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.
- With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- With moving objects.
- With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges.

- With objects with corners, edges, and smooth surfaces.
- With objects with a fine surface structure such as fences.
- For objects with porous surfaces.
- With small and low objects, for instance boxes.
- With soft obstacles or obstacles covered in foam material.
- With plants and bushes.
- In automatic car washes.
- On uneven surfaces, such as speed bumps.
- Due to heavy exhaust.
- Cargo that extends beyond the perimeter of the vehicle is not taken into account by the ultrasonic sensors.

If applicable, a Check Control message is displayed if the system fails.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3173
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Operating state of the vehicle

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

General information

Depending on the situation, the vehicle is in one of the three states:

- Idle state.
- Standby state.
- Drive-ready state.

Idle state

Concept

When the vehicle is in idle state, it is switched off. All power consumers are deactivated.

General information

The vehicle is in idle state prior to opening from the outside and after exiting and locking.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Automatic idle state

For instance, the idle state is automatically established under the following conditions:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3174
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

- After several minutes, if no operation takes place on the vehicle.
- If the charge state of the vehicle battery is low.
- Depending on the setting via iDrive: when one or both front doors are opened after driving when exiting the vehicle.

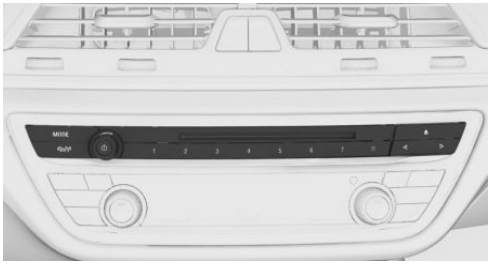
In some situations, the idle state is not set automatically, for instance during a phone call or when the low beams are switched on.

Establishing idle state when opening the front doors

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Turn off vehicle after opening door"

Manual idle state

To establish idle state in the vehicle after end of trip:



Press and hold the button until the OFF indicator on the instrument cluster goes out.

Standby state

Concept

When standby state is switched on, most functions can be used while the vehicle is stationary. Desired settings can be adjusted.

General information

The vehicle is in the standby state after the front doors are opened from the outside.

Display in the instrument cluster

OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster. The drivetrain is switched off and standby state switched on.

Drive-ready state

Concept

Switching on drive-ready state corresponds to starting the engine.

General information

Some vehicle functions can only be used with the drive-ready state switched on.

Safety information

⚠ DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can enter into the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3175
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

NOTICE

Repeated attempts to start the vehicle or repeated starting of the vehicle in rapid succession can cause the starter to overheat. This also results in unburned or inadequately burned fuel, and can cause the catalytic converter to overheat. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Avoid repeated starting of the vehicle, particularly repeated starting in rapid succession.

Switching on drive-ready state

Concept

Drive-ready state is switched on via the Start/Stop button.

M Steptronic Sport transmission

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

The ignition is activated automatically for a brief time and is stopped as soon as the engine starts.

Most of the indicator/warning lights in the instrument cluster light up for a varied length of time.

Gasoline engine

Depending on the motorization, the full drive power may not be available for approximately 30 seconds after starting the engine. In this case, the vehicle will not accelerate as usual.

Display in the instrument cluster

The lettering READY in the in the instrument cluster indicates that the drive-ready state is switched on.

Switching off drive-ready state

M Steptronic Sport transmission

1. Engage selector lever position P with the vehicle stopped.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

   The engine is switched off. The vehicle switches into standby state.
3. Set the parking brake.

iDrive

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Operating concept

Concept

iDrive includes a large number of functions. These functions can be operated via the Controller and, depending on the equipment version, via touchscreen, voice activation system or gesture control.

Safety information

Warning

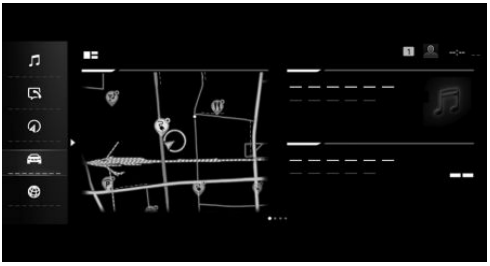
Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. As warranted, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.

Input and display

Main menu

General information

The main menu is divided into two areas. The left area contains menu items that can be used to call up all the iDrive functions. The right area contains widgets that provide quick access to certain functions.



Media/Radio

All functions of the entertainment system, e.g., radio stations or connection with external devices.

Communication

Phone and message functions, e-mail and calendar, and also the connection and management of mobile devices, such as smartphones.

Navigation

Access to the navigation system, destination input and traffic bulletins. Configurable map views and other functions, such as points of interest and areas to be avoided.

My Car

Information about vehicle status and trips. Access to the Integrated Owner's Manual and also administration of driver profiles and range of adjustments for vehicle and iDrive.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3177
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Apps

Management of apps, access to apps and vehicle functions. Additional apps and vehicle functions can be purchased from the BMW Store.

Widgets

Widgets provide quick access to frequently used functions. The configured widgets display dynamic contents such as the navigation map, and serve as interfaces at the same time.

Letters and numbers

Letters and numbers can be selected when the destination is inputed, for example.

Letters and numbers can be entered using the Controller and, depending on the equipment version, via touchscreen or voice activation system. The keyboard's display changes automatically.

Symbol	Function
abc ABC	Change between capital and lower-case letters.
␣	Enter a blank space.
EN	Switching between languages.
	Use voice activation.
OK	Confirm entry.
← →	Slide the input area to the left or right.

Entry comparison

When entering names and addresses, the choice is narrowed down with every letter and number and added automatically as needed.

Entries are continuously compared with data stored in the vehicle.

- Only those letters and numbers are offered during entry for which data is available.
- Destination search: place names can be entered in all languages that are available in iDrive.

Activating/deactivating the functions

Several menu items are preceded by a checkbox. The checkbox indicates whether the function is activated or deactivated. Selecting the menu item activates or deactivates the function.

☑ Function is activated.

☐ Function is deactivated.

Status information

General information

The status field can be found in the upper area of the Control Display. Status information is displayed in the form of symbols.

Radio symbols

Symbol	Meaning
HD	HD Radio station is being received.
SXM	Satellite radio is switched on.

Telephone symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Incoming or outgoing call.
	Missed call.
	Signal strength of cellular network.
	Network search.
	Cellular network is not available.
	The critical charge state of the mobile phone has been reached.
R	Roaming is active.
	Locating is active.
	SMS text message received.
	Message received.

Symbol	Meaning
	Reminder.
	Sending not possible.

Entertainment symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Bluetooth audio.
	USB device.
	WLAN.
	Apple CarPlay.

Other symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Check Control message.
	Sound output active.
	Sound output deactivated.
	Voice activation system active.
	Request for the current vehicle position.
	Checking the current vehicle position.
	Driver profile.
1	Messages.
	Service notifications.
	Information.
STOP	Stop.
	Data protection.

Programmable memory buttons

General information

The iDrive functions can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly, for instance radio stations, navigation destinations, phone numbers and menu entries or pages in the Integrated Owner's Manual.

Settings are stored for the driver profile currently used.

Overview

1 ... 7 Programmable memory buttons

Storing a function

A function can be stored on a programmable memory button. A button with a stored function can be overwritten with another function.

1. Select function via iDrive, for instance radio station.
2. 1 ... 7 Press and hold the desired button until the displayed bar on the Control Display has loaded completely.

Executing a function

1 ... 7 Press the button.

The function will work immediately. This means, for instance that the number is dialed when a phone number is selected.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3179
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Displaying the key assignment

Touch buttons with finger. Do not wear gloves or use objects.

The assignment of the buttons is displayed in the upper area of the Control Display.

Deleting all button assignments

All button assignments can be deleted.

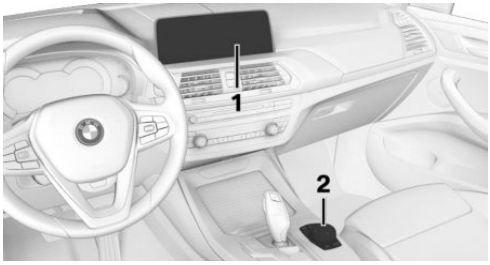
1. Press and hold buttons 1 and simultaneously for approx. 5 seconds.
2. "OK"

Control Display and Controller

Concept

The iDrive functions are displayed on the Control Display. The Control Display can be operated using the Controller, touchpad, and touch screen.

Overview



1 Control Display with touchscreen

2 Controller with buttons and touchpad

Control Display

Safety information

NOTICE

Objects in the area in the front of the Control Display can shift and damage the Control Display. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not place objects in the area in front of the Control Display.

Switching on/off automatically

The Control Display is switched on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked or as soon as the Control Display is needed for operation.

In certain situations, the Control Display is switched off automatically, for instance if no operation is performed on the vehicle for several minutes.

Switching on/off manually

The Control Display can also be switched off manually.

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Screen off"

Press the Controller or any button on the Controller to switch it back on again.

System limits

In the case of very high temperatures on the Control Display, for instance due to intense solar radiation, the brightness may be reduced down to complete deactivation. Once the temperature is reduced, for instance through shade or air conditioning, the normal functions are restored.

Controller

General information

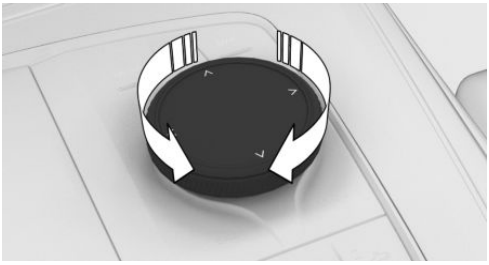
The buttons can be used to open the menus directly. The Controller can be used to select menu items and enter the settings.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3180
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

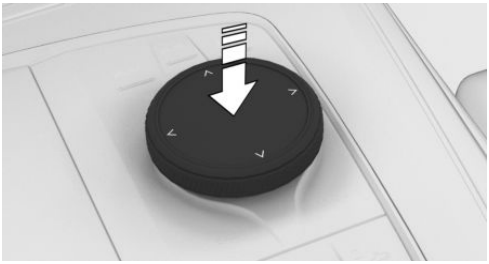
Some iDrive functions can be operated using the touchpad on the Controller.

Operation

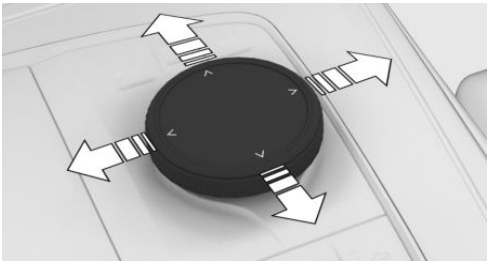
▷ Turn to switch between menu items, for example.



▷ Press to select a menu item, for example.



▷ Tilt in four directions to switch between displays, for example.



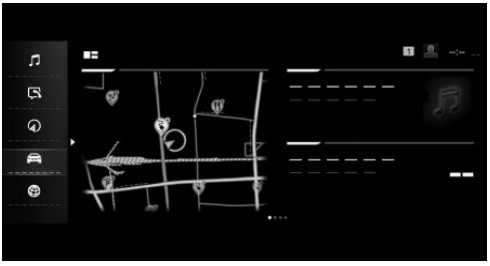
Buttons on the Controller

Button	Function
MENU	Opens the main menu.
MEDIA	Opens the Media/Radio menu.
COM	Opens the Communication menu.
MAP	Opens navigation map.
NAV	Opens destination input menu for navigation.
BACK	Opens the previous display.
OPTION	Opens the Options menu.

Operating via the Controller

Opening the main menu

MENU Press the button.



The main menu is displayed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3181
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Selecting a menu

Selecting menu items

1. Turn the Controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.
2. Press the Controller.

Select a widget

1. Move the Controller in the main menu to the right.
2. Turn the Controller until the desired widget is selected.
3. Press the Controller.

It is also possible to select widgets in the instrument cluster.

Adjusting the menu

Adjusting widgets

The widgets can be adjusted in the main menu. It is possible to create multiple pages with widgets and switch between pages. The adjustments can only be performed when the vehicle is stationary.

1. Select the desired page in the main menu. Only the currently selected page can be adjusted.
2. Tip the Controller up.
3. "Adjust main menu"
4. Select the desired adjustment:
   - ▷ + Symbol and select desired widget: add new widget.

     The requested widget will be inserted in the relevant position. A maximum of four widgets can be displayed per page.
   - ▷ ✕ Select symbol: delete selected widget.
   - ▷ Add new page: "Add page".
   - ▷ Delete selected page: "Delete page".
   - ▷ Adjust the content of the widget: select widget.
5. "Done"

Adjusting contents

Depending on the equipment, the contents of menus "MEDIA", "COM" and "NAV" can be adjusted, for instance to remove the entries of functions that are not used from the menu.

1. Select the menu.
2. "Personalize menu"
3. Select the desired setting.

Changing between displays

After a menu item is selected, for instance "Settings", a new display appears.

▷ Move the Controller to the left.

The current display closes and the previous display is shown.

▷

Press the button.

The previous display re-opens.

▷ Move the Controller to the right.

The new display opens.

An arrow indicates that additional displays can be opened.

Opening the Options menu

Press the button.

The "Options" menu is displayed.

The menu consists of various areas, for instance:

- ▷ "MEDIA": control options for the selected main menu.
- ▷ "Help": help for the selected menu.
- ▷ "Control display off": system settings.

Entering letters and numbers

Input

1. Turn the Controller: select letter or number.
2. OK : confirm entry.

Deleting

Symbol	Function
⌫	Press the Controller: delete letter or number.
⌫	Hold the Controller down: delete all letters or numbers.

Using alphabetical lists

For alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries, the letters for which an entry exists can be displayed in a text box.

1. Turn the Controller to the left or right quickly.
2. Select the first letter of the desired entry.

   The first entry of the selected letter is displayed in the list.

Operation via touchpad

General information

Some iDrive functions can be operated using the touchpad on the Controller.

Selecting functions

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Touchpad"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Character input": enter letters and numbers.
   - ▷ "Map": use the map.
   - ▷ "Search fields": to write letters without selecting the list field.
   - ▷ "Audio confirmation": pronounces entered letters and numbers.

Entering letters and numbers

- ▷ Enter characters as they are displayed on the Control Display.
- ▷ Always enter associated characters, such as accents or periods so that the letter can be clearly recognized.
- ▷ The set language determines what input is possible. Where necessary, enter special characters via the Controller.

Entering special characters

Input	Operation
Delete a character.	Swipe to the left on the touchpad.
Enter a blank space.	Swipe to the right in the center of the touchpad.
Enter a hyphen.	Swipe to the right in the upper area of the touchpad.
Enter an underscore.	Swipe to the right in the lower area of the touchpad.

Using the map

The map in the navigation system can be moved via the touchpad.

Function	Operation
Move map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Enlarge/shrink map.	Drag in or out on the touchpad with fingers.
Display menu.	Tap once.

Operation via touchscreen

General information

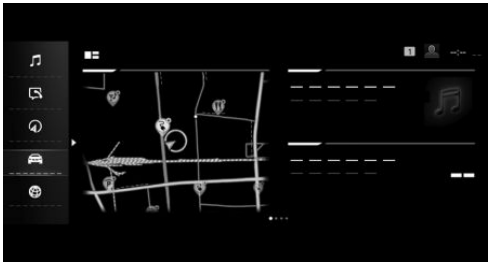
The Control Display is equipped with a touchscreen.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3183
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

You can tap on menu items and widgets. Touch the screen with your fingers. Do not use any objects.

Opening the main menu

Tap on the symbol.



The main menu is displayed.

Adjusting widgets

The widgets can be adjusted in the main menu. It is possible to create multiple pages with widgets and switch between pages. The adjustments can only be performed when the vehicle is stationary.

1. Select the desired page in the main menu. Only the currently selected page can be adjusted.
2. Tap the icon in the main menu.
3. Select the desired adjustment:
   - ▷ + Tap symbol and select desired widget: add new widget.

     The requested widget will be inserted in the relevant position. A maximum of four widgets can be displayed per page.
   - ▷ × Tap symbol: delete selected widget.
   - ▷ Add new page: tap "Add page".
   - ▷ Delete selected page: tap "Delete page".
   - ▷ Adjust content of the widget: tap center of widget.
4. Tap "Done".

Showing/hiding the display bar

In the upper area of the Control Display, it is possible to show or hide a display bar with additional functions.

- ▷ To show the display bar, pull down the display bar at the top edge of the screen.
- ▷ To hide the display bar, pull up the display bar at the top edge of the screen.

Changing between displays

After a menu item is selected, a new display opens.

An arrow indicates that additional displays can be opened.

- ▷ Swipe to the left.
- ▷ Tap arrow.

The new display opens.

Entering letters and numbers

Input

1. Depending on the equipment version, tap the symbol on the touchscreen or a keyboard is displayed on the Control Display when the touchscreen is approached.
2. Enter desired letters and numbers.

Deleting

Symbol	Function
⌫	Tapping the symbol: deletes the letter or number.
⌫	Tapping and holding the symbol all letters: deletes all letters or numbers.

Using the map

The navigation map can be moved using the touchscreen.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3184

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Function	Operation
Move map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Enlarge/shrink map.	Drag in or out with the fingers.
Display menu.	Tap once.

Operation via voice

Concept

The voice activation system can be used to operate functions with spoken commands. The system supports you with announcements during input.

The voice control system and the feedback it provides are not a substitute for the printed or Integrated Owner's Manual.

General information

- Functions that can only be used when the vehicle is stationary can only be operated via the voice activation system to a limited extent.
- The system includes special microphones on the driver side and the front passenger side.
- ›...‹ denotes commands to use with the voice activation system.

Functional requirements

- A language must be set via iDrive that is supported by the voice activation system.

  To set the language, refer to page 62.
- Always say commands in the language of the voice activation system.

Activating the voice activation system

General information

There are various methods for activating the voice activation feature:

- Press the button on the steering wheel.
- Say the wake word ›Hello BMW‹ or a personal wake word.

This symbol indicates that the voice activation system is active.

Then say the command. No other commands may be available. In this case, operate the function via iDrive.

The voice activation can be terminated:

- Press the button on the steering wheel again.
- ›Cancel‹

This symbol indicates that the voice activation system is deactivated.

Button on the steering wheel

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the signal.
3. Say the command.

Wake word

General information

Speaking the wake word ›Hello BMW‹ or the personal wake word will start the system.

Preset wake word

The preset wake word ›Hello BMW‹ can be activated and deactivated.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3185
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

›Hello BMW‹ activates the preset and personal wake word.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. If necessary, "Personal assistant"
5. "Voice control"
6. "Wake word"
7. "Activation with "Hello BMW""

Personal wake word

In addition to a preset wake word ›Hello BMW‹, a personal wake word can be set up.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. If necessary, "Personal assistant"
5. "Voice control"
6. "Wake word"
7. "Personal wake word"
8. "Start recording"

   For "Start recording", online speech processing must be available and activated. Alternatively, the personal wake word can be entered using the Controller.
9. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Possible commands

General information

Most contents on the Control Display can be spoken as commands, e.g. menu items or list entries. Speak these list entries out loud exactly as they are shown in the list.

Say the commands and numbers fluently as well as with normal volume, emphasis, and speed.

The status of the voice recognition is displayed in the upper area of the Control Display.

Function examples

Menu items

The commands of the menu items are spoken just as they are selected via the Controller.

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. ›MEDIA‹
3. ›Presets‹

The stored stations are displayed on the Control Display.

Navigation

Destinations can be entered in the navigation system using the voice activation system. It is also possible to say points of interest or have traffic reports announced.

- ›Drive me to 300 Chestnut Ridge Road, Woodcliff Lake in New Jersey‹
- ›Take me home‹
- ›Are there any traffic messages‹

Communication

For example, when a mobile phone is connected, the voice activation system can be used to start calls or send SMS.

- ›Call John Doe on cell phone‹
- ›Dial the number 1 8 0 0 8 3 1 1 1 1 7‹
- ›New text message to John Doe: I'll be right there‹

Media and Radio

Most radio functions can be used via the Active Voice Recognition.

- ›Turn on music‹
- ›Music off‹
- ›Next title‹

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3186

Climate control

Most climate control functions can be used via voice.

- ›Activate climate control‹
- ›Deactivate air recirculation‹
- ›Temperature [...] at ...‹

Help on the voice activation system

- ›Voice commands‹: to have the available spoken commands announced.
- ›General information on voice control‹: have information on the operating principle of the voice activation system read out loud.
- ›Help‹: have help for the current menu read out loud.

Information for Emergency Requests

Do not use the voice activation system to initiate an Emergency Request. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change. This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a telephone connection.

Instead, use the SOS button close to the interior mirror.

Additional information:

Emergency Request, refer to page 326.

Settings

Setting the voice control

You can set the system to use standard dialog or a short version.

The short version of the voice control plays back short messages in abbreviated form.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. If necessary, "Personal assistant"
5. "Voice control"
6. "Response length"
7. Select the desired setting.

Speaking during voice output

It is possible to answer during inquiries of the voice activation system. The function can be deactivated if inquiries are often undesirably interrupted, for instance due to background noise or conversations in the vehicle.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. If necessary, "Personal assistant"
5. "Voice control"
6. "Speaking during voice output"

Online speech processing

Online speech processing provides a dictation function, a natural method of destinations input and improves the quality of voice recognition. To use the functions, data is transmitted to a service provider via an encrypted connection and stored locally there.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. If necessary, "Personal assistant"
5. "Voice control"
6. "Online speech processing"

Adjusting the volume

Turn the volume button during the spoken instructions until the desired volume is set.

- The volume remains constant even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.
- The volume is stored for the driver profile currently used.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3187
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Using the voice activation system of the smartphone

Depending on the device, a smartphone connected to the vehicle can be used via voice activation.

Activate voice command response on the smartphone for this purpose.

1. Press and hold the button on the steering wheel for approx. 3 seconds.

   Voice command response is activated on the smartphone.

2. Release the button.

   If activation is successful, a confirmation appears on the Control Display.

Voice assistants from third-party providers

Concept

Some third-party providers provide digital voice assistants. Supported voice assistants can be used in the vehicle.

General information

Some of the functions are limited in the vehicle to prevent any impairment of safety while driving.

Functional requirements

- Connected Voice Services purchased via ConnectedDrive Store.
- Same ConnectedDrive account used in the vehicle and in the BMW Connected app.
- Vehicle added in the BMW Connected app.
- Third-party account and BMW account are linked in the BMW Connected app.
- Smartphone connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth.

Activation in the BMW Connected app

Third-party assistants are set up in the BMW Connected app.

Follow the instructions in the app.

Activation in the vehicle

An authorization for the use of the voice assistant is required every time before starting a trip.

1. Authorizing voice assistants from third-party providers:
   - Connect the smartphone to the vehicle via Bluetooth.
   - Selects appropriate driver profile.

     Driver profiles, refer to page 66.
2. If necessary, press the button on the steering wheel and wait for signal tone.
3. Say the specific activation word of the third-party provider and the desired command.

   Information about the active function is displayed on the Control Display.

Activation/deactivation of the specific activation word

In addition to the activation word of the voice activation system, the specific activation word from the third-party provider can be activated or deactivated.

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "Personal assistant"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Wake word"
6. "Activation by speech"
7. Select the desired setting.

Malfunction

In case of a malfunction, switch off the drive-ready state and restart again.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3188

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

System limits

- Certain noises can be detected and may lead to problems. Keep the doors, windows, and glass sunroof closed.
- Noises from the front passenger or the rear seat bench can impair the system. Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.
- Major language dialects can cause problems with the voice recognition feature. Speak loud and clear.

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant

Concept

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is the personal assistant that expands the voice activation system with intelligent functions and improves the interaction in the vehicle.

General information

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is available depending on the national-market version. The use of the personal assistant is based on voice operation. The voice operation is enhanced with personal recommendations and messages as well as the automation of routines.

The personal assistant is connected to other digital services such as the Concierge service and is continually being developed. The full scope requires an active driver profile.

The BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is available in two variants:

- In the Guest profile: the variant is linked to a vehicle and cannot be personalized. Not all described functions are available to the full extent.
- With active Driver profile: the variant can be used and personalized in different vehicles. All described functions are available to the full extent.

Functional requirements

Enter the following settings to access the full range of functions:

- The Driver profile is activated.
- Relevant ConnectedDrive Services have been purchased via ConnectedDrive Store.
- Registered in the ConnectedDrive Store.
- "Online speech processing" is activated.
- "Synchronize driver profile" under "Personalization" is activated.

  Data protection, refer to page 65.
- All settings under "BMW ConnectedDrive" activated.

  Data protection, refer to page 65.

Example for function

1. Say the wake word ›Hello BMW‹ or a personal wake word.
2. ›Is my tire pressure still OK?‹

   The personal assistant provides information about the tire pressure.

Settings

Display, notifications

General information

Depending on the situation, different conditions can be activated.

Condition	Description
"Do not disturb"	Incoming calls and some messages are not displayed.
"Passenger on board"	Private contents, such as sender and content of e-mails, will not be displayed.

Activating/deactivating

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3189
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

3. "Personal assistant"
4. "Notification display"
5. Select the desired setting.

Automating routines

General information

The personal assistant can learn routines, e.g., the automatic activation of the seat heating from a specific external temperature. Rules are created for this purpose, which can be activated and deactivated at any time.

Creating a rule

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "Personal assistant"
4. "Automate habits"
5. Select the desired setting.

Functions

Experience Modes

General information

The Experience Modes combine different vehicle functions in the car's interior to an overall experience. For example, the selection of a mode harmonizes the ambient light and seat climate control.

Functional requirements

▷ The Experience Modes app is installed in the vehicle.

▷ Drive-ready state is switched on.

Selecting a mode

1. "CAR"
2. "Experience Modes"
3. Select the desired mode.

Deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Experience Modes"
3. "End"

Adjusting the mode

1. "CAR"
2. "Experience Modes"
3. Select the desired mode.
4. "Settings"
5. Make the desired setting.

Caring Car

General information

Different vehicle functions in the car's interior are harmonized for the driver in a short-term program. A program takes 3 minutes.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Caring Car"
3. Select the desired channel.

The program can be stopped prematurely:

"End program"

Owner's Manual via voice operation

Concept

You can ask simple questions about vehicle functions and the operation of the vehicle.

General information

The voice control system and the feedback it provides are not a substitute for the printed or Integrated Owner's Manual. The voice recognition and quality of the feedback may vary.

The system supports questions that begin with How or What.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3190

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Example for function

1. ›Hello BMW‹
2. ›How can the passenger airbag be deactivated‹

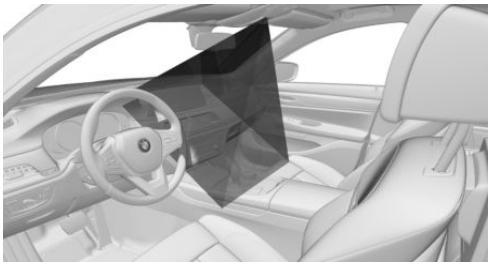
The voice activation system returns a feedback. When stationary, the section of the integrated Owner's Manual is displayed on the Control Display.

BMW Gesture Control

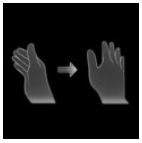
Concept

Several iDrive functions can be operated by hand motion using BMW Gesture Control.

Overview



Possible gestures

Gesture	Operation	Function
	Move index finger forward and backward in the direction of the screen.	Accept call. Select a highlighted entry in a list during voice activation. Confirm pop-up.
	Move hand across the width of the Control Display in the direction of the front-passenger side.	Reject call. Close pop-up. Terminate voice activation.

The camera in the roofliner detects gestures that are carried out in the area of the center console at the height of the Control Display.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Gesture control"
5. "Gesture control"

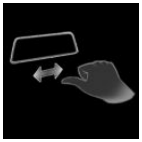
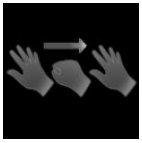
Settings

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Gesture control"
5. Select the desired setting.

Carrying out gestures

- ▷ Perform gestures underneath the interior mirror and next to the steering wheel.
- ▷ Execute gestures clearly.
- ▷ The gestures can also be executed from the front-passenger side.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3191
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Gesture	Operation	Function
	Slowly move hand clockwise in a circular pattern with the index finger stretched out forward. Gesture is detected after one circular motion.	Increase the volume.
	Slowly move forearm counterclockwise in a circular pattern with the index finger stretched out forward. Gesture is detected after one circular motion.	Reduce the volume.
	Pinch with thumb and index finger and move hand horizontally to the right or left.	Surround View: turn camera view. This gesture can only be executed while the vehicle is stationary.
	Move stretched out index and middle finger forward.	Individually assignable gesture.
	Move fist with thumb extended to the left back and forth.	Reverse Skip function. The previous music track is played.
	Move fist with thumb extended to right left back and forth.	Forward Skip function. The next music track is played.
	Stretch out five fingers, form a fist and stretch five fingers out again.	Individually assignable gesture.

Assigning gesture individually

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the following functions can be assigned to gestures that allow individual assignments:

- Destination guidance to home address.
- Voice command response.
- Mute/Playback
- Last calls.
- Control Display on/off
- Notifications.
- Music recognition
- No function.

Select function

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Gesture control"
5. "Function assignment gesture 1" or "Function assignment gesture 2"
6. Select the desired setting.

System limits

Gesture recognition by the camera in the roofliner can be disturbed by the following circumstances:

- The camera lens is covered.
- Objects are located on the interior mirror.
- The camera lens is dirty, clean camera lens.

  Sensors and camera lenses, refer to page 334.
- The gesture is executed outside of the detection range.
- Wearing of gloves or jewelry.
- Smoking in the car's interior.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3193
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

General settings

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Time

Setting the time zone

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time zone:"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the time

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time:"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired hours are displayed.
7. Press the Controller.
8. Turn the Controller until the desired minutes are displayed.
9. "OK"

Setting the time format

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time format:"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Automatic time setting

Depending on your vehicle's optional features, the time, date and, if needed, the time zone are updated automatically.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Automatic time setting"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Date

Setting the date

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"

5. "Date:"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired day is displayed.
7. Press the Controller.
8. Make the settings for the month and year.
9. "OK"

Setting the date format

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Date format:"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Language

Setting the language

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the units of measurement

Depending on the country version, you can set the units of measurement for some values, for instance consumption, distances, and temperature.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Units"
5. Select the desired menu item.
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Trip data settings

Concept

The intervals in which the trip data will be reset can be configured.

Resetting trip data

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Reset trip data"
5. Select the desired setting.

Speed warning

Concept

The system can be used to set a speed limit. A warning will be issued when this speed limit is exceeded.

General information

The warning is repeated if the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed limit again, after it has dropped below it by 3 mph/5 km/h.

Adjusting

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Warning at:"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3195
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

6. Turn the Controller until the desired speed is displayed.
7. Press the Controller.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Speed warning"

Setting your current speed as the speed warning

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Select current speed"

Activating/deactivating pop-ups

For some functions, pop-ups are displayed automatically on the Control Display. Some of these pop-ups can be activated or deactivated.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Pop-ups"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Control Display

Brightness

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Control display"
5. "Brightness at night"
6. Press the Controller.
7. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is set.
8. Press the Controller.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Depending on the light conditions, the brightness settings may not be clearly visible.

Resetting the vehicle configuration

All individual settings can be reset to the factory settings when the drive-ready state is switched off.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Reset vehicle data"
5. "Reset vehicle data"

When the stored settings in a driver profile are synchronized with the ConnectedDrive account, these settings will remain in the ConnectedDrive account.

Messages

Concept

The menu centrally displays all messages arriving in the vehicle in list form.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3196

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

General information

The following messages can be displayed:

- Traffic messages.
- Check Control messages.
- Messages on service notifications.
- Communication messages, for example e-mails, SMS text messages or reminders.
- Messages from, e.g., the Concierge service or the BMW Connected app.
- Messages from the vehicle manufacturer.

The number of messages is additionally displayed in the status field.

The Messages menu can also be created as Widget.

Retrieving messages

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Select the desired message.

Deleting messages

All messages, except Check Control messages or messages from the vehicle manufacturer, can be deleted from the list.

Check Control messages or messages from the vehicle manufacturer are displayed as long as they are relevant.

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Select desired message, for instance. SMS.
4. OPTION Press the button.
5. - "Delete this notification"
   - "Delete all notifications"

Settings

The following settings can be adjusted:

- Select the applications, from which messages will be permitted.
- All messages or a limited time period for received messages.

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. Select the desired setting.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3197
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Personal settings

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Data protection

Data transfer

Concept

The vehicle offers different services, whose use requires a data transfer to BMW or a service provider. The data transfer can be deactivated for some services.

General information

When the data transfer is deactivated, the respective service cannot be used.

Only make these settings while stationary.

Settings

The data transfer can be configured in different stages or individually for separate services.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. Select the desired setting.

Deleting personal data in the vehicle

Concept

Depending on the usage, the vehicle stores personal data, such as stored radio stations. This personal data can be permanently deleted using iDrive.

General information

Depending on the equipment package, the following data can be deleted:

- Driver profile settings.
- Stored radio stations.
- Stored programmable memory buttons.
- Travel and trip computer information.
- Navigation, for instance stored destinations.
- Phone book.
- Online data, for instance Favorites, cookies.
- Office data, for instance voice memos.
- Login accounts.

Altogether, the deletion of the data can take up to 15 minutes.

Functional requirement

Data can only be deleted while stationary.

Deleting data

The personal data in the vehicle will be deleted when the vehicle is reset to the factory settings.

Additional information:

Resetting the vehicle configuration, refer to page 63.

Driver profiles

Concept

Driver profiles can be created to store personal vehicle settings. If the vehicle is used by multiple drivers, each driver can create his personal driver profile. When a driver profile is selected, the vehicle will automatically apply the stored settings in the driver profile.

General information

Three personal driver profiles can be created.

In addition, a guest profile is available that can be selected by any driver. The guest profile is active when a personal driver profile has not been selected.

Changes to the vehicle settings are automatically stored in the active driver profile or in the guest profile.

The recognition via a vehicle key can be assigned to a driver profile so that the vehicle will apply the settings as soon as the driver unlocks the vehicle. As soon as the vehicle recognizes the vehicle key, the corresponding driver profile will be activated.

ConnectedDrive countries: The settings stored in the driver's profile can be synchronized with the personal BMW ConnectedDrive account. It is thereby possible to use these settings in other BMW vehicles as well.

Functional requirements

When switching the driver profile, the vehicle must move at a maximum of walking speed.

Welcome screen

After the Control Display is switched on, the Welcome screen will be displayed.

The following actions can be carried out on the Welcome screen:

- Switching the driver profile.
- Starting the set-up assistant.

  This option is offered in new vehicle for a limited period of time.

As soon as the engine is started or any button is pressed, the Welcome screen will be hidden.

Setup assistant

The setup assistant is offered in new vehicles for a limited period of time on the Welcome screen to configure the most important settings for the vehicle.

"Getting started" Select to start the set-up assistant.

The set-up assistant can be started via iDrive at any time.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Getting started"

The driver is guided step by step through the following functions:

- Setting the system language.
- ConnectedDrive countries:

  If the set-up assistant was opened in the guest profile: create driver profile.
- Pairing mobile devices with the vehicle.
- If the set-up assistant was opened from an already defined driver profile: set up personal assistant.
- Depending on whether the set-up assistant was opened from an already defined driver profile or a guest profile: set up services or confirm the explanation for the transmission of vehicle related data.
- Set up other methods for use.

The selected settings are stored in the active driver's profile.

Guest profile

The guest profile can be activated by any driver. Vehicle settings that are entered when the guest profile is active will be stored in the guest profile.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3199
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

In the following cases the guest profile is automatically active:

- A driver profile has not been created yet.
- No driver profile has been assigned to the vehicle key that was used to unlock the vehicle.

The following limitations apply:

- The guest profile cannot be renamed.
- It is not possible to assign the recognition to the guest profile.
- It is not possible to assign a PIN to the guest profile.
- ConnectedDrive countries: It is not possible to synchronize with a ConnectedDrive account.

The guest profile is selected on the Welcome screen or via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"

   As an alternative for Steps 1 and 2, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
3. "Guest"
4. "OK"

Creating a driver profile

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Add driver profile"

Not ConnectedDrive countries: A name must be entered for the driver profile.

ConnectedDrive countries: An existing ConnectedDrive account must be assigned to a driver profile. The following options are available for this purpose:

- "Log in"

  The access data must be entered via iDrive.
- "New registration"

  If a ConnectedDrive account does not yet exist, it can be created via iDrive.

Selecting recognition

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Driver recognition"
5. "with vehicle key"

   The vehicle key that was used to unlock the vehicle is assigned to the driver profile.
6. "Activate linkage"

As soon as the vehicle recognizes the vehicle key, the corresponding driver profile will be activated.

Setting up a PIN

After unlocking the vehicle, another driver profile can be selected via iDrive. If a PIN was set up for the selected driver profile, this driver profile can only be activated with the PIN.

Non-ConnectedDrive countries: If the PIN is not known, the driver's profile cannot be activated.

ConnectedDrive countries: If the PIN is not known, the driver's profile can be activated with the access data of the corresponding ConnectedDrive account.

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Driver recognition"
5. "using PIN"

Changing/canceling the recognition function

If another vehicle key is assigned to a driver profile, the current assignment must be canceled first.

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Driver recognition"
5. "with vehicle key"
6. "Activate linkage"

When the vehicle and vehicle key will be handed over, such as for maintenance, carry out the following steps first:

- ▷ Setting up PIN.
- ▷ Canceling recognition using the vehicle key.
- ▷ Switching to the guest profile.

The handed over vehicle key can then no longer be used to access the personal driver profile.

Selecting a driver profile

Depending on the recognition setting, the driver profile will be selected automatically.

If the guest profile is active, the driver profile will be selected on the Welcome screen or via iDrive: A PIN may have to be entered.

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"

   As an alternative for Steps 1 and 2, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
3. Select driver profile.
4. "OK"

All settings stored in the selected driver profile are automatically applied.

Switching synchronization with the ConnectedDrive account on/off

ConnectedDrive countries:

The settings stored in the driver's profile are synchronized with the personal ConnectedDrive account. This means that it is possible to use the personal settings in other BMW vehicles with ConnectedDrive access as well, if this function is supported.

The synchronization with the ConnectedDrive account is enabled when a driver profile is created or via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Settings"
5. "Synchronize driver profile"
6. "Synchronize driver profile"

Renaming a driver profile

Non-ConnectedDrive countries:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"

   As an alternative for Steps 1 and 2, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
3. Select driver profile.
4. "Settings"
5. Enter a profile name.
6. OK Select the symbol.

ConnectedDrive countries:

The name of the driver profile is transferred from the ConnectedDrive account. Changes for the profile name must be made in the ConnectedDrive account.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3201
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Selecting a profile picture

Non-ConnectedDrive countries:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Avatar"
5. Select the desired profile picture.

Deleting the driver profile

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Settings"
5. "Remove driver profile"
6. Select the desired driver profile.
7. "Delete now"

ConnectedDrive countries: If the driver profile was synchronized with a ConnectedDrive account, the stored data in the ConnectedDrive account will be retained.

System limits

A clear detection of the desired vehicle key may not be possible in the following cases, e.g.:

- The driver unlocks the vehicle via Comfort Access.
- The driver changes, but the vehicle is not locked and unlocked.
- When multiple vehicle keys are located outside on the driver's side of the vehicle.

ConnectedDrive countries:

A driver profile can only be created and synchronized with the ConnectedDrive account when cellular network reception is available.

The use of personal settings that are stored in the ConnectedDrive account in other vehicles is subject to technical limitations. For example, settings may be stored for a system that is not available, or available in a non-compatible version, in other vehicles.

Connections

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle

Concept

Various connection types are available for using mobile devices in the vehicle. The connection type to select depends on the mobile device and the desired function.

General information

The following overview shows possible functions and the suitable connection types for them. The scope of functions depends on the mobile device.

Function	Connection type	Symbol in the device list
Making calls via the hands-free system. Using phone functions via iDrive or touchscreen. Other functions, e.g. Contacts or SMS.	Bluetooth.	
Playing music from the smartphone or the audio player.	Bluetooth audio.	
WLAN in the vehicle: Using apps in the vehicle.	WLAN.	
Wi-Fi hotspot: Using the vehicle Internet access.	WLAN.	
Screen Mirroring: Showing the smartphone display on the Control Display.	WLAN.	
USB port: Playing music or videos from a USB device.	USB.	

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3203
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Function	Connection type	Symbol in the device list
Apple CarPlay: Using apps via iDrive and via voice operation.	Bluetooth and WLAN.	
Android Auto: Using apps via iDrive and via voice operation.	Bluetooth and WLAN.	

The following connection types require one-time pairing with the vehicle:

- Bluetooth.
- WLAN.

Paired devices are automatically recognized later on and connected to the vehicle.

Safety information

Warning

Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. As warranted, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.

Compatible devices

General information

Information on mobile devices compatible with the vehicle can be found at www.bmwusa.com/bluetooth.

Malfunctions may occur with devices not listed or deviating software versions.

Displaying the vehicle identification number and software part number

When looking for compatible devices, you may have to state the vehicle identification number and the software part number. These numbers can be displayed in the vehicle.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth® info"
6. "System information"

Managing mobile devices

General information

- After one-time pairing, the devices are automatically recognized and reconnected when standby state is switched on.
- After stored content on the SIM card or the mobile phone, such as contacts, has been detected, the data is transmitted to the vehicle and can be used via iDrive.
- For some devices, certain settings are necessary, for instance authorization; see the owner's manual of the device.

Displaying the device list

All devices paired with or connected to the vehicle are displayed in the device list.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3204

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

A maximum of four devices can be connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth, and a maximum of ten devices can be connected to the vehicle via WLAN. A maximum of 20 devices will be detected.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"

A symbol to the right of the device name indicates, for which function the device is used.

When the icon is displayed in white, this function is actively connected to the vehicle. The icon is displayed in gray when the function of the device is inactive.

Symbol	Meaning
	Telephone.
	Bluetooth audio.
	WLAN in the vehicle, WiFi hotspot.
	Apps.
	Screen Mirroring.
	Apple CarPlay.
	Android Auto.

Configuring the device

Functions can be activated or deactivated for paired and connected devices.

The scope of functions depends on the mobile device.

Follow the information on the Control Display.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Select the desired device.
4. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Connect device"

     The functions that were assigned to the device before disconnecting are assigned to the device when it is reconnected. The functions may be deactivated on a device already connected.
   - ▷ "Disconnect device"

     The device remains paired and can be connected again.
   - ▷ "Delete device"

     The device is disconnected and removed from the device list.
   - ▷ "Connection mode"

     Select a connection mode, for instance Apple CarPlay.
   - ▷ "Telephone"

     Set telephone.
   - ▷ "Bluetooth® audio"

     Playback of music files on external devices such as audio devices or mobile phones via Bluetooth.
   - ▷ "Apps"

     With the installed BMW Connected app, apps from the smartphone can be displayed in the vehicle.
   - ▷ "Wi-Fi®"

     Connects the device with the WLAN in the vehicle.

Priority of the phones

When multiple mobile phones are connected to the vehicle, you can specify the priority of the mobile phones for reconnection.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Priorities for telephones"
6. Select the desired device.
7. Select the desired priority by sliding.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3205
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Bluetooth connection

Functional requirements

- Compatible device with Bluetooth interface.

  Compatible devices, refer to page 71.
- The vehicle key or BMW display key is in the vehicle.
- The device is ready for operation.
- Bluetooth is switched on in the vehicle and on the device.
- The pairing readiness is displayed on the Control Display.
- Bluetooth presettings, such as visibility, may be required on the device; refer to the owner's manual of the device.

Activate Bluetooth

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth®"
6. Select setting.

Connecting the device

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Phone calls and audio"

   The vehicle's Bluetooth name is displayed on the Control Display.
6. Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number on the display of the mobile device, and confirm that the two match.
7. A Bluetooth connection is established.

The mobile device is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Activating/deactivating telephone functions

To use all supported functions of a mobile phone, activate the desired functions in the vehicle prior to pairing the mobile phone with the vehicle as needed.

1. "COM"
2. "Personalize menu"
3. Select the desired settings, for instance"Text messages".

Frequently Asked Questions

All requirements are met and all required steps were completed in the specified order. Despite that, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations can help:

Why could the mobile phone not be paired or connected?

- There are too many Bluetooth devices connected to the mobile phone or vehicle.

  In the vehicle, delete Bluetooth connections with other devices.

  Delete the Bluetooth connection from the device list on the mobile phone and start a new device search.

  Too many Bluetooth devices with the same function are paired.
- The mobile phone is in power-save mode or has only a limited remaining battery life.

  Charge the mobile phone and deactivate the power-save mode where required.

Why does the mobile phone no longer react?

- The applications on the mobile phone do not function anymore.

  Switch the mobile phone off and on again.
- Too high or too low ambient temperature for mobile phone operation.

  Do not subject the mobile phone to extreme ambient temperatures.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3206
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Why can phone functions not be used via iDrive?

- Phone functions are not configured for the mobile phone.

  Connect the mobile phone with the telephone function.

Why are no or not all phone book entries displayed or why are they incomplete?

- Transmission of the phone book entries is not yet complete.
- It is possible that only the phone book entries of the mobile phone or the SIM card are transmitted.
- It may not be possible to display phone book entries with special characters.
- It may not be possible to transmit contacts from social networks.
- The number of phone book entries to be transmitted is too high.
- Data volume of the contact too large, for instance due to stored information such as notes.

  Reduce the data volume of the contact.
- A mobile phone can only be connected as audio source or as telephone.

  Configure the mobile phone and connect it with the telephone function.
- Contact was created in the contact list of the phone after the last synchronization.

  Synchronize contacts again: "Reload contacts"

How can the phone connection quality be improved?

- Adjust the strength of the Bluetooth signal on the mobile phone, depending on the mobile phone.
- Insert the mobile phone into the wireless charging tray.
- Adjust the volume of the microphone separately in the sound settings.

If all points in this list have been checked and the required function is still not available, contact the hotline, a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

WLAN connection

General information

For certain applications, such as apps, the data exchange between smartphone and vehicle occurs via WLAN.

Functional requirements

- Standby state is switched on.
- Compatible device with activated WLAN interface.

Activate WLAN in the vehicle

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Wi-Fi®"

WiFi hotspot

Concept

Compatible devices with WLAN interface can use the Internet connection of the vehicle via the WiFi hotspot.

General information

Up to ten devices can be connected to the WiFi hotspot simultaneously.

Functional requirements

- Compatible device with activated WLAN interface.

  Compatible devices, refer to page 71.
- WLAN is activated on the vehicle.
- Internet use is activated for the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3207
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

- ▷ Registration and data contract with a service provider where required.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.

Connecting a device to the Internet via the WiFi hotspot

Using the Internet for the first time via the WiFi hotspot requires registration and possibly a data volume purchase from a service provider.

Depending on the country version, data volume can be purchased via the connected mobile device or from the ConnectedDrive Store.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Internet, apps"

   Hotspot name and hotspot code are displayed on the Control Display.
6. Activate Internet usage via WLAN if necessary.

   "Open settings"
7. Activate Internet usage.

   "Internet connection"
8. Move the Controller to the left.
9. Search for WLAN networks on the mobile device. Select network name on the device.
10. Enter hotspot code on the device and connect.

The device is displayed in the device list.

Additionally, a QR code will be displayed on the Control Display. Alternatively, this QR code can be used to pair the mobile device with the hotspot.

All devices connected via the hotspot use this data volume.

Deactivating Internet usage via the WiFi hotspot

Internet usage may be deactivated if the data volume is used up, for instance.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Internet connection"
6. Select the desired setting.

Screen Mirroring

General information

Screen Mirroring enables mirroring (outputting) of the smartphone display on the Control Display.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Compatible smartphone with Screen Mirroring interface.

  Compatible devices, refer to page 71.
- ▷ Screen Mirroring is activated on the smartphone.
- ▷ WLAN is activated on the vehicle.

Pairing a smartphone with Screen Mirroring

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Screen Mirroring"

   The WLAN name of the vehicle is displayed on the Control Display.
6. Search for WLAN devices in the surroundings of the smartphone.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3208

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

The WLAN name of the vehicle appears on the device display. Select the WLAN name of the vehicle.

7. Confirm the connection via iDrive.

The device is connected and displayed in the device list.

Apple CarPlay preparation

Concept

CarPlay allows certain functions of a compatible Apple iPhone to be used via Siri voice operation and iDrive.

Functional requirements

- Compatible iPhone, iPhone 5 or later with iOS 7.1 or later.

  Compatible devices, refer to page 71.
- Corresponding mobile contract.
- Bluetooth, WLAN, and Siri voice operation are activated on the iPhone.
- If necessary, the setting for mobile data must be activated on the iPhone.
- Booking the ConnectedDrive service: smartphone integration.
- WLAN and Bluetooth are enabled in the vehicle.

Pairing the iPhone with CarPlay

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Phone calls and audio"

   The vehicle's Bluetooth name is displayed on the Control Display.
6. On the mobile device, search for Bluetooth devices in the vicinity and select the vehicle.

   A control number is displayed.
7. Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number on the display of the mobile device, and confirm that the two match.
8. "Use Apple CarPlay"

The iPhone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Operation

For more information, refer to the Integrated Owner's Manual or the Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication.

Frequently Asked Questions

All requirements are met and all required steps were completed in the specified order. Despite that, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations can help:

The iPhone has already been paired with Apple CarPlay. When a new connection is established, CarPlay can no longer be selected.

- Delete the iPhone concerned from the device list.
- On the iPhone, delete the vehicle concerned from the list of stored connections under Bluetooth and under WLAN.
- Pair the iPhone as a new device.

If the steps listed have been carried out and the required function is still not available: contact the hotline, a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Android Auto preparation

Concept

Android Auto allows the operation of certain functions of a compatible smartphone via voice operation and iDrive.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3209
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Functional requirements

- Compatible Android smartphone with Android 9.0 or later.

  Compatible devices, refer to page 71.
- Corresponding mobile contract.
- Bluetooth and WLAN are enabled on the smartphone.
- If necessary, the setting for mobile data must be activated on the smartphone.
- Booking the ConnectedDrive service: smartphone integration.
- The Android Auto app is installed on the smartphone.
- WLAN and Bluetooth are enabled in the vehicle.

Pairing a smartphone with Android Auto

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Phone calls and audio"

   The vehicle's Bluetooth name is displayed on the Control Display.
6. On the mobile device, search for Bluetooth devices in the vicinity and select the vehicle.

   A control number is displayed.
7. Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number on the display of the mobile device, and confirm that the two match.
8. "Use Android Auto"
9. If necessary, finish the setup on the mobile device.

The smartphone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Operation

For more information, refer to the Integrated Owner's Manual or the Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication.

Frequently Asked Questions

All requirements are met and all required steps were completed in the specified order. Despite that, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations can help:

The smartphone has already been paired with Android Auto. When a new connection is established, Android Auto can no longer be selected.

- Delete the smartphone concerned from the device list.
- On the smartphone, delete the vehicle concerned from the list of stored connections under Bluetooth and under WLAN.
- Pair the smartphone as a new device.

If the steps listed have been carried out and the required function is still not available: contact the hotline, a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

USB connection

General information

The following mobile devices can be connected to the USB port:

- Mobile phones.
- Audio devices such as MP3 players.
- USB storage devices.

  Common file systems are supported. FAT32 and exFAT are the recommended formats.

A connected USB device will be supplied with charge current via the USB port if the device supports this. Follow the maximum charge current of the USB port.

The following uses are possible on USB ports with data transfer:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3210
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

- Playing music files.
- Playing videos.

Follow the following when connecting:

- Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB port.
- Use a flexible adapter cable.
- Protect the USB device against mechanical damage.
- Due to the large number of USB devices available on the market, it cannot be guaranteed that every device is operable on the vehicle.
- Do not expose USB devices to extreme environmental conditions, such as very high temperatures; refer to the owner's manual of the device.
- Due to the many different compression techniques, proper playback of the media stored on the USB device cannot be guaranteed in all cases.
- To ensure proper transmission of the stored data, do not charge a USB device via the onboard socket, when it is connected to the USB port.
- Depending on how the USB device is being used, settings may be required on the USB storage device, refer to the owner's manual of the device.

Not compatible USB devices:

- USB hard drives.
- USB hubs.
- USB memory card readers with multiple slots.
- HFS-formatted USB devices.
- Devices such as fans or lamps.

Functional requirement

Compatible device with USB port.

Additional information:

Compatible devices, refer to page 71.

Connecting the device

Connect the USB device using a suitable adapter cable to a USB port.

The USB device is displayed in the device list.

Additional information:

USB port, refer to page 252.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3211
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Opening and closing

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Vehicle key

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the vehicle is delivered with two vehicle keys or one vehicle key and the BMW display key.

Each vehicle key contains a replaceable battery.

Depending on the equipment and country version, various settings can be configured for the button functions.

A driver profile with personal settings can be assigned to a vehicle key.

To provide information on maintenance recommendations, the service data is stored in the vehicle key.

To prevent possible locking in of the vehicle key, take the vehicle key with you when exiting the vehicle.

Safety information

Warning

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Take the vehicle key with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.

Warning

For some country versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

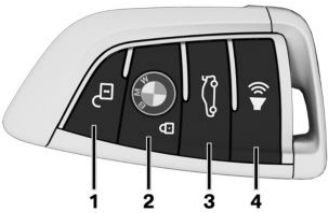
Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Overview



1 Unlocking
2 Locking
3 To open the tailgate
4 Panic mode, pathway lighting

Unlocking

General information

The behavior of the vehicle during unlocking using the vehicle key depends on the following settings:

- If only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap or all access to the vehicle will be unlocked.
- If the unlocking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- If the welcome light is switched on when the vehicle is being unlocked.

Unlocking the vehicle

Press the button on the vehicle key.

If, due to the settings, only the driver's door and fuel filler flap were unlocked, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

In addition, the following functions are executed:

- If a driver profile was assigned to the vehicle key, this driver profile will be activated and the settings that are stored in it will be applied.
- The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off.
- Folded in exterior mirrors are folded out.

  If the exterior mirrors were folded in via the button in the car's interior, they will not be folded out when unlocking.
- With alarm system: The alarm system will be switched off.

After opening one of the front doors, the vehicle is ready for operation.

The light functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

Convenient opening

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key after unlocking.

The windows and the glass sunroof with sun protection are opened, as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Locking

General information

The behavior of the vehicle during locking using the vehicle key depends on the following settings:

- If the locking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- If the exterior mirrors are automatically folded in when the vehicle is locked. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.
- If pathway lighting is activated during locking.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Press the button on the vehicle key.

The following functions are executed:

- All doors, the tailgate, and the fuel filler flap are locked.
- With alarm system: The alarm system will be switched on.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3213
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

If the drive-ready state is still switched on when you lock the vehicle, the vehicle horn honks twice. In this case, the drive-ready state must be switched off by means of the Start/Stop button.

With Comfort Access: convenient closing

Safety information

Warning

With convenient closing, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during convenient closing.

Closing

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key in the area close to the vehicle after locking.

The windows and the glass sunroof with sun protection are closed, as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Switching on the interior and exterior lights

Press the button on the vehicle key with the vehicle locked.

The function is not available for the first 10 seconds after locking.

- The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off.

  Interior lights, refer to page 162.
- Depending on the settings, the exterior lighting will be switched on.

  Welcome lights, refer to page 159.

The light functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

Tailgate

General information

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

You can set up if the doors will be unlocked when the tailgate is opened with the vehicle key.

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

Warning

The tailgate pivots out when it opens. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

NOTICE

Sharp-edged or pointed objects can hit the windows and heat conductors while driving. There is a risk of damage to property. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects do not hit the windows.

Opening

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

- Press the button on the vehicle key and hold for at least 3 seconds.

▷ Briefly press the button on the vehicle key three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Switching pathway lighting on

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

It is possible to adjust the duration of the pathway lighting feature.

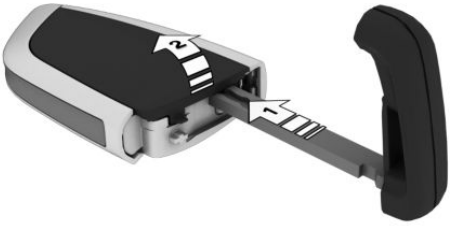
Additional information:

Pathway lighting, refer to page 160.

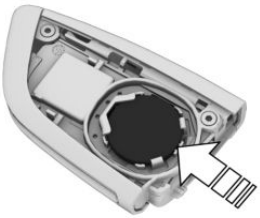
Replacing the battery

1. Remove the integrated key from the vehicle key.

   Integrated key, refer to page 88.
2. Place the integrated key underneath the battery compartment cover, arrow 1, and lift the cover with a lever movement of the integrated key, arrow 2.



3. Push battery in the direction of the arrow using a pointed object and lift it out.



4. Insert a type CR 2032 battery with the positive side facing up.
5. Press the cover closed.
6. Push the integrated key into the vehicle key until the integrated key engages.

Have old batteries disposed of by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take them to a collection point.

Additional vehicle keys

Additional vehicle keys are available from a service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Loss of vehicle keys

A lost vehicle key can be blocked and replaced by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

If the lost vehicle key has an assigned driver profile, the connection to this vehicle key must be deleted. A new vehicle key can then be assigned to the driver profile.

Malfunction

General information

A Check Control message is displayed.

Vehicle key recognition by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

▷ The battery of the vehicle key is discharged.

▷ Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.

▷ Shielding of the vehicle key due to metal objects.

  Do not transport the vehicle key together with metal objects.

▷ Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity to the vehicle key.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3215
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Do not transport the vehicle key together with electronic devices.

- Interference of radio transmission by a charging process of mobile devices, for instance charging of a mobile phone.
- The vehicle key is located in direct proximity of the tray for wireless charging tray.

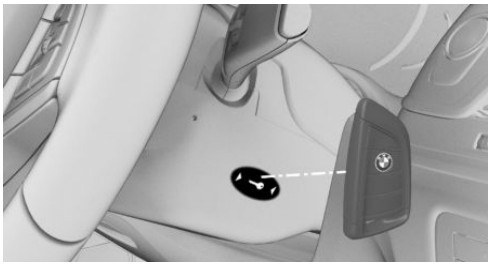
  Place the vehicle key in a different location.

In the case of interference, the vehicle can also be unlocked and locked from the outside with the integrated key.

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 88.

Switching the drive-ready state on via emergency detection of the vehicle key



It is not possible to switch on the drive-ready state if the vehicle key has not been detected.

Proceed as follows in this case:

1. Hold the back of the vehicle key against the marked area on the steering column. Pay attention to the display in the instrument cluster.
2. If the vehicle key is detected:

   Switch on drive-ready state within 10 seconds.

If the vehicle key is not recognized, slightly change the position of the vehicle key and repeat the procedure.

Frequently Asked Questions

What precautions can be taken to be able to open a vehicle with an accidentally locked in vehicle key?

- The options provided by the Remote Services of the BMW Connected app include the ability to lock and unlock a vehicle.

  This requires an active BMW ConnectedDrive contract and the BMW Connected app must be installed on a smartphone.
- Unlocking the vehicle can be requested via the BMW ConnectedDrive Call Center.

  An active BMW ConnectedDrive contract is required.

BMW display key

General information

The BMW display key is supplied with an additional mechanical key. If the display key is used, the mechanical key should be carried with you, for instance in the wallet. The mechanical key is used like the integrated key.

The display key supports all functions of the standard vehicle key.

In addition, the following functions are also available:

- Display status of doors and windows.
- Display status of the anti-theft warning system.
- Display service information.
- Call up range with available fuel.
- With parked-car heating: operate parked-car heating.

  Without parked-car heating: operate parked-car ventilation.

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 88.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3216

Safety information

Warning

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Take the vehicle key with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.

Warning

For some country versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

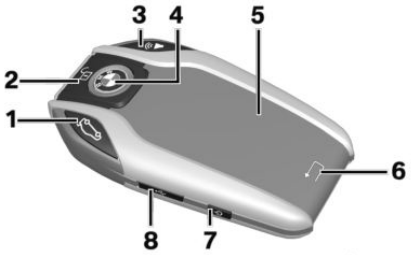
Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Overview



1 To open the tailgate
2 Unlocking
3 Press and hold or press three times in quick succession: panic mode

Press briefly: pathway lighting

4 Locking
5 Display
6 Back
7 Switch the display on/off
8 Micro-USB charging socket

Reception range

The number of available display key functions depends on the distance from the vehicle.

- When you are in close proximity to the vehicle, all functions of the display key are available.
- The status information can be called up in the extended reception range.

  With parked-car heating: the parked-car heating can be operated.

  Without parked-car heating: the parked-car ventilation can be operated.
- Outside of the reception range of the vehicle, you can display the last transmitted status information from the vehicle.

The symbol is shown on the display if one of the buttons is pressed outside of the reception range.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3217
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Display

General information

The display is divided into the upper status line, the information area, and the lower status line.

Upper status line

The upper status line displays the following information:

- / Vehicle secured/vehicle unsecured.
- Set time in the vehicle.
- Charge state of the display key battery.

Information area

The information area can be used to access information and perform additional functions.

If the information area contains more than one page, then page indicators are shown beneath the information.

○●○ A solid indicator denotes the current page.

Swipe to the right or left with a finger to change between the pages.

If further information is available on a page, tap the appropriate symbol.

To return to the original page: tap on the symbol beneath the display.

Lower status line

The lower status line indicates whether or not the display key is within reception range.

- "Connected": the display key is within reception range.
- "Updated": the display key is not within reception range. It indicates when the last data transfer from the vehicle took place.

Switching on/off

The display will go out automatically after a brief period to conserve battery power.

To hide the display manually:

Press the button on the left side of the display key.

To show the display:

1. Press the button on the left side of the display key.
2. Then, swipe with your finger from bottom to top to unlock the screen lock.

To switch off the display to increase the usable battery life:

1. If necessary, cancel the screen lock.
2. Press and hold the button on the left side of the display key for longer than 4 seconds.
3. "OK"

To switch the display on:

Press the button on the left side of the display key.

Operating concept

The following information shows how to access the information and functions using the main menus.

Main menu	Information/Function
"Security information"	/ Door status. Alarm system status. After alarm triggering: date, time, and reason for triggering the alarm.
	Window status. Glass sunroof status.
"Vehicle information"	Maintenance indicators of Condition Based Service CBS. Status of the roadside parking lights.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3218

Main menu	Information/Function
"Mobility info"	Range with available fuel.
"Preconditioning setting"	With parked-car heating: operate parked-car heating. Without parked-car heating: operate parked-car ventilation.

Display key battery

General information

Follow the following information:

- If the charge state of the display key battery declines, the display is switched off automatically. The battery must be recharged so that the display can be switched back on. The operability of the standard buttons is retained until the battery is completely discharged.
- Charge the battery for at least three hours before using the display key for the first time or if the key has not been used for an extended period.
- The display key can be used while it is being charged via the USB port. If the battery is fully discharged, it may take some time before the display key can be used again.
- Due to the large number of USB chargers available on the market, it cannot be guaranteed that every charger will function properly. The charging duration depends on the charger used.
- Charging via the USB port may heat up the charger and the display key.

  Charging in the wireless charging tray may heat up the tray and the display key.

  At higher temperatures, the charge current through the display key may be reduced, and in isolated cases the charge process may be interrupted temporarily.
- When inserting the display key into the wireless charging tray, make sure there are no objects between it and the wireless charging tray.

Safety information

Warning

When charging a device that meets the Qi standard in the wireless charging tray, any metal objects located between the device and the tray can become very hot. Placing storage devices or electronic cards, such as chip cards, cards with magnetic strips or cards for signal transmission, between the device and the tray may impair the card function. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. When charging mobile devices, make sure there are no objects between the device and the tray.

Charging

Via USB

Connect the display key via the micro-USB charging socket to a USB port.

In the center console

1. Open the tray cover.
2. Place the display key into the middle of the wireless charging tray in front of the cup holders.

   Ensure that the display is facing up.
3. Close the tray cover.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3219
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

LED displays

Color	Meaning
Blue	The display key is charging. The blue LED stays illuminated once the inserted display key is fully charged.
Orange	The display key is not charging. Temperature on the display key possibly too high or foreign object in charging tray.
Red	The display key is not charging. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Malfunction

General information

A Check Control message is displayed.

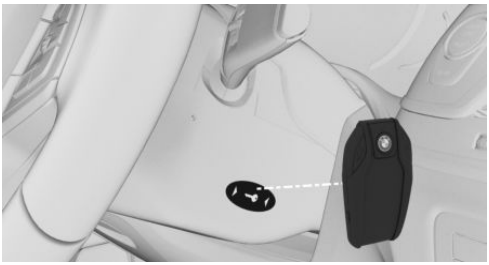
BMW display key detection by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- The battery of the display key is discharged.
- Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- Shielding of the display key due to metal objects.
- Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity.
- Interference of radio transmission by a charging process of mobile devices, for instance charging of a mobile phone.

Do not transport the display key together with metal objects or electronic devices.

In the case of interference, the vehicle can also be unlocked and locked from the outside with the mechanical key.

Switching on drive-ready state via emergency detection of the BMW display key



It is not possible to switch on the drive-ready state if the display key has not been detected.

Proceed as follows in this case:

1. Hold the display key with its back against the marked area on the steering column. Pay attention to the display in the instrument cluster.
2. If the display key is detected:

   Switch on drive-ready state within 10 seconds.

If the display key is not detected, slightly change the position of the display key and repeat the procedure.

Resetting the BMW display key

If the charged display key cannot be switched on anymore or if the display does not respond to entries anymore, the display key can be reset.

Press and hold the following buttons on the display key at the same time for at least 10 seconds until the display is switched off and then on again:

-
-

Integrated key

General information

The driver's door can be locked and unlocked without the vehicle key using the integrated key.

Depending on the national-market version, the integrated key also fits the glove compartment.

Safety information

Warning

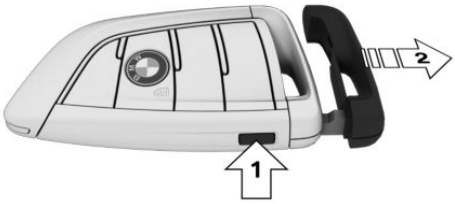
For some country versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

NOTICE

The door lock is permanently joined with the door. The door handle can be moved. When pulling the door handle with the integrated key inserted, paint or the integrated key can be damaged. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Remove the integrated key before pulling the external door handle.

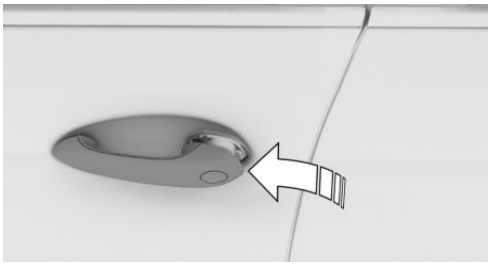
Removing



Press the button, arrow 1, and pull out the integrated key, arrow 2.

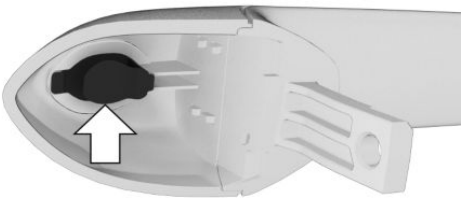
Locking/unlocking via the door lock

1. Pull and hold the door handle outward with one hand.



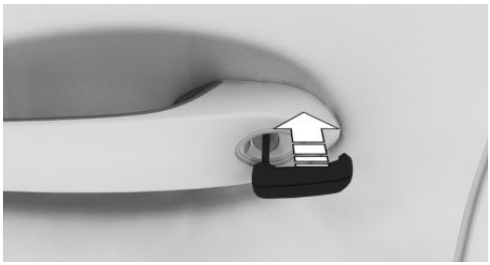
2. Guide one finger of your other hand from the back under the cover and push the cover out.

   Use the thumb for counter support to prevent the cover from falling out of the door handle.



BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3221
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

3. Remove the cover.
4. Unlock or lock the door lock using the integrated key.



The other doors must be unlocked or locked from the inside.

Alarm system

The activated alarm system is triggered when the door is opened, if the vehicle has been unlocked via the door lock.

The alarm system is not switched on if the vehicle is locked with the integrated key.

Buttons for the central locking system

General information

In the event of a severe accident, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The hazard warning system and interior lights come on.

Overview

Buttons for the central locking system.

Locking

Press the button with the front doors closed.

- The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.
- The vehicle is not secured against theft when locking.

Unlocking

Press the button.

Opening

- Press the button to unlock all the doors.

  Pull the door opener above the armrest.
- Front doors: pull the door handle on the door to open the door. The other doors remain locked.
- Back doors: pull twice on the door handle on the door to be opened; the first time unlocks the door, the second time opens it. The other doors remain locked.

Comfort Access

Concept

The vehicle can be accessed without operating the vehicle key.

Carrying the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket, is sufficient.

The vehicle automatically detects the vehicle key when it is in close proximity or in the car's interior.

General information

Comfort Access supports the following functions:

- Unlocking and locking the vehicle from the door handle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3222
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

- Convenient closing.
- Open the tailgate.
- Open and close the tailgate with no-touch activation.

Functional requirements

- To lock the vehicle, the vehicle key must be outside of the vehicle near the doors.
- The next unlocking and locking cycle is not possible until after approx. 2 seconds.

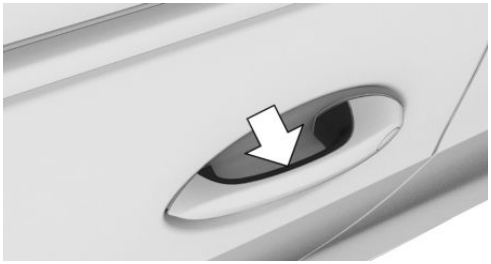
Unlocking

General information

The behavior of the vehicle during unlocking via the Comfort Access depends on the following settings:

- If the unlocking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- If the welcome light is switched on when the vehicle is being unlocked.

Unlocking the vehicle



Grasp the handle of a vehicle door completely.

In addition, the following functions are executed:

- If a driver profile was assigned to the vehicle key, this driver profile will be activated and the settings that are stored in it will be applied.
- The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off.
- Folded in exterior mirrors are folded out.

  If the exterior mirrors were folded in via the button in the car's interior, they will not be folded out when unlocking.
- With alarm system: The alarm system will be switched off.

Locking

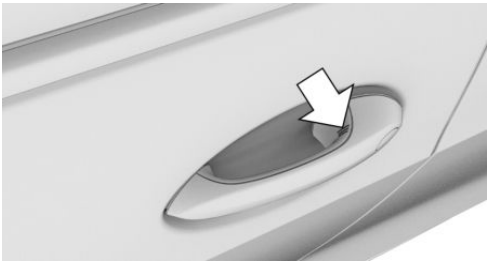
General information

The behavior of the vehicle during locking via the Comfort Access depends on the following settings:

- If the locking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- If the exterior mirrors are automatically folded in when the vehicle is locked. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.
- If pathway lighting is activated during locking.

Locking the vehicle

Close the driver's door.



Touch the grooved surface on the handle of a closed vehicle door with your finger for approx. 1 second without grasping the door handle.

The following functions are executed:

- All doors, the tailgate, and the fuel filler flap are locked.
- With alarm system: The alarm system will be switched on.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3223
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

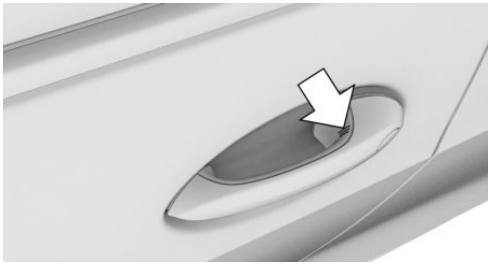
Convenient closing

Safety information

Warning

With convenient closing, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during convenient closing.

Closing



Touch the grooved surface on the handle of a closed vehicle door with your finger and hold it there without grasping the door handle.

In addition to locking, the windows and glass sunroof with sun protection will be closed.

Opening the tailgate

General information

If the tailgate is opened via Comfort Access, locked doors are not unlocked.

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

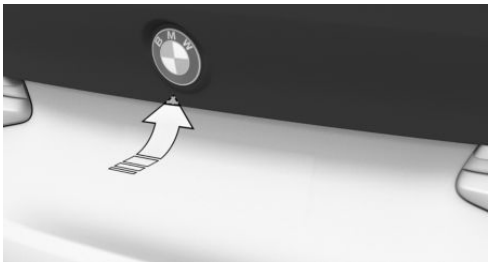
Warning

The tailgate pivots out when it opens. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

NOTICE

Sharp-edged or pointed objects can hit the windows and heat conductors while driving. There is a risk of damage to property. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects do not hit the windows.

Opening



Press the button on tailgate's exterior.

Opening and closing the tailgate with no-touch activation

Concept

The tailgate can be opened and closed with no-touch activation using the vehicle key you are

carrying. Two sensors detect a forward-directed foot motion in the central rear area and the tailgate is opened and closed.

General information

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

If the vehicle key is in the sensor area, the tailgate may open or close inadvertently if you unintentionally move your foot or if a foot movement is detected.

The sensor has an approximate range of 5 ft/1.50 m extending from the rear of the vehicle.

If the tailgate is opened with no-touch activation, locked doors are not unlocked.

Safety information

Warning

During no-touch activation, vehicle parts may be touched, such as the hot exhaust gas system. There is a risk of injury. When moving your foot, make sure you have a firm stance and do not touch the vehicle.

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

Warning

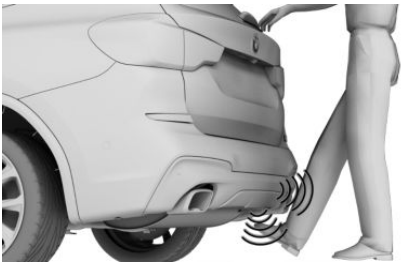
The tailgate pivots out when it opens. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

NOTICE

Sharp-edged or pointed objects can hit the windows and heat conductors while driving. There is a risk of damage to property. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects do not hit the windows.

Performing the foot movement

1. Stand in the middle behind the vehicle at approx. one arm's length away from the rear of the vehicle.
2. Wave a foot under the vehicle in the direction of travel and immediately pull it back. With this movement, the leg must pass through the ranges of both sensors.



Opening

Perform the foot movement described earlier.

Before the tailgate opens, the hazard warning system flashes.

Moving your foot again will stop the opening motion, and moving it one more time after that will close the tailgate.

Closing

Perform the foot movement described earlier.

The hazard warning system flashes and an acoustic signal sounds.

Moving your foot again will stop the closing motion, and moving it one more time after that will re-open the tailgate.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3225
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Malfunction

Vehicle key recognition by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- The battery of the vehicle key is discharged.

  For replacing the battery, refer to page 82.
- Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- Shielding of the vehicle key due to metal objects.

  Do not transport the vehicle key together with metal objects.
- Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity to the vehicle key.

  Do not transport the vehicle key together with electronic devices.

Wet or snowy conditions may disrupt the locking request recognition function on the door handles.

In the case of a malfunction, unlock and lock the vehicle using the buttons of the vehicle key or use the integrated key.

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 88.

Tailgate

General information

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country versions, it is possible to specify whether the doors are also unlocked when unlocking using the vehicle key.

Additional information:

Settings, refer to page 95.

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

Warning

The tailgate pivots out when it opens. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

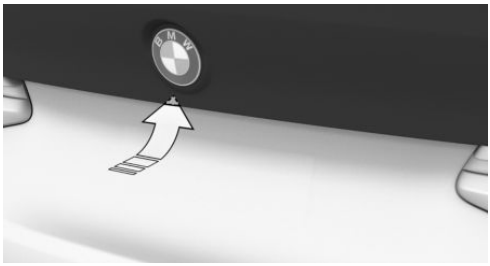
NOTICE

Sharp-edged or pointed objects can hit the windows and heat conductors while driving. There is a risk of damage to property. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects do not hit the windows.

Tailgate

Opening

From the outside



- Unlock the vehicle and then press the button on the outside of the tailgate.
- With Comfort Access: carry the vehicle key with you and press the button on the outside of the tailgate.

▷ Press the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

Depending on the setting, the doors may also be unlocked.

If the vehicle is stationary, the tailgate opens automatically to the adjusted opening height.

From the inside

Press the button in the driver's door downward.

If the vehicle is locked, selector lever position P must be engaged first.

The tailgate will be opened to the configured opening height.

Interruption of the opening procedure

The opening procedure is interrupted in the following situations:

- ▷ When the vehicle starts moving.
- ▷ By pressing the button on the outside of the tailgate. Pressing again closes the tailgate.
- ▷ By pressing the button on the inside of the tailgate. Pressing again closes the tailgate.
- ▷ By pressing the button on the vehicle key. Pressing again continues the opening motion.
- ▷ By pressing or pulling the button in the driver's door. Pressing again continues the opening motion.

Closing

From the outside

▷ Press the button on the inside of the tailgate.

With Comfort Access:

▷ Press the button on the inside of the tailgate.

The vehicle will be locked after closing the tailgate. The driver's door must be closed for this purpose and the vehicle key must be outside of the vehicle in the area of the tailgate.

From the inside

Pull and hold the button in the driver door.

The vehicle key must be located in the car's interior for this function.

An acoustic signal sounds before the tailgate is closed.

Interruption of the closing procedure

The closing procedure is interrupted in the following situations:

- ▷ If the vehicle starts off with a jerky movement.
- ▷ By pressing the button on the outside of the tailgate. Pressing again re-opens the tailgate.
- ▷ By pressing the button on the inside of the tailgate. Pressing again re-opens the tailgate.
- ▷ By releasing the button in the driver's door. Pulling again and holding continues the closing motion.

Malfunction

Safety information

⚠ Warning

With manual operation of a blocked tailgate, it can release itself unexpectedly from the blockage. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not operate the tailgate manually if it is blocked. Have it checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

In the event of an electrical malfunction, operate the unlocked tailgate manually with a slow and smooth motion.

To close the tailgate fully, press down lightly only. Closing occurs automatically.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3227
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Adjusting

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country version, various settings for opening and closing are possible.

These settings are stored for the driver profile currently used.

Unlocking and locking

Doors

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Key button settings"
4. Select the symbol.
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "Driver's door only"

     Only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.
   - "All doors"

     The entire vehicle is unlocked.

Confirmation signals from the vehicle

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. Deactivate or activate the desired confirmation signals:
   - "Flash when locking/unlocking"

     Unlocking is signaled by two flashes, locking by one.
   - With alarm system:

     "Sound when locking/unlocking"

     Unlocking is confirmed with two sound signals, locking is confirmed with one sound signal.

Folding mirrors in automatically

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Fold mirrors in when locked"

Automatic unlocking

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Unlock at end of trip"

   After drive-ready state is switched off by pressing the Start/Stop button, the locked vehicle is automatically unlocked.

Automatic locking

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. Select the desired setting:
   - "Lock automatically"

     The vehicle locks automatically after a while if no door is opened after unlocking.
   - "Lock after starting to drive"

     The vehicle locks automatically after you drive off.

Tailgate

Tailgate and doors

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country version, this setting may not be offered.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Key button settings"
4. Select the symbol.
   - "Tailgate"

     The tailgate is opened.
   - "Tailgate and door(s)"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3228

The tailgate is opened and the doors unlocked.

Adjusting the opening height

You can set how far the tailgate can be opened.

When adjusting the opening height, make sure the clearance above the tailgate is at least 4 in/10 cm.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Tailgate"
5. "Opening height"
6. Monitor the tailgate and set the desired opening height.

Establishing idle state after opening the front doors

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Turn off vehicle after opening door"

Idle state, refer to page 41.

Alarm system

General information

When the vehicle is locked, the vehicle alarm system reacts to the following changes:

- Opening a door, the hood, or the tailgate.
- Movements in the car's interior.
- Changes in the vehicle tilt, for instance, during attempts at stealing a wheel or when towing the vehicle.
- Disconnected battery voltage.
- Improper use of the socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis.
- Locking the vehicle while a device is connected to the socket for the OBD Onboard-Diagnosis.

The alarm system signals these changes visually and acoustically:

- Acoustic alarm:

  Depending on local regulations, the acoustic alarm may be suppressed.
- Visual alarm:

  By flashing of the hazard warning system and headlights, where required.

Do not modify the system to ensure function of the alarm system.

Switching on/off

The alarm system is switched on or off as soon as the vehicle is locked with the vehicle key or unlocked or locked via Comfort Access.

Opening the doors with the alarm system switched on

The alarm system is triggered when a door is opened if the door was unlocked using the integrated key in the door lock.

Opening the tailgate with the alarm system switched on

The tailgate can be opened even when the alarm system is switched on.

After the tailgate is closed, it is locked and monitored again provided the doors are locked. The hazard warning system flashes once.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

- Press the button on the vehicle key and hold for at least 3 seconds.
- Briefly press the button on the vehicle key three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3229
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Indicator light on the interior mirror

- The indicator light flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

  The alarm system is switched on.
- Indicator light flashes for approx. 10 seconds, then it flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

  Interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor are not active, as doors, hood, or tailgate are not correctly closed. Correctly closed access points are secured.

  When the still open access points are closed, the interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor will be switched on.
- The indicator light goes out after unlocking:

  The vehicle has not been tampered with.
- The indicator light flashes after unlocking until drive-ready state is switched on, but no longer than approx. 5 minutes:

  An alarm has been triggered.

Tilt alarm sensor

The tilt of the vehicle is monitored.

The alarm system responds in situations such as attempts to steal a wheel or when the vehicle is towed.

Interior motion sensor

The windows and the glass sunroof must be closed for the system to function properly.

Avoiding unintentional alarms

General information

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor can trigger an alarm, although no unauthorized action occurred.

Possible situations for an unwanted alarm:

- In automatic car washes.
- In duplex garages.
- During transport on trains carrying vehicles, at sea or on a trailer.
- With animals in the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is locked after start of fueling.

The tilt alarm sensor and the interior motion sensor can be switched off in such situations.

Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor

Press the button on the vehicle key within 10 seconds as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator light lights up for approx. 2 seconds and then continues to flash.

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor are switched off until the vehicle is locked again.

Switching off the alarm

- Unlock the vehicle with the vehicle key.
- Unlock the vehicle with the integrated key and activate the drive-ready state via emergency detection of the vehicle key.

  Malfunction, refer to page 82.
- With Comfort Access: when carrying the vehicle key, grasp the driver's door or front passenger door handle completely.

Power windows

General information

The windows can be opened with the vehicle key from the outside as well as closed with Comfort Access.

With Comfort Access: The windows can be closed from the outside via Comfort Access.

When a window is often opened in the same position, this task can be performed by the BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant. For instance when the same parking garage is frequently used.

Additional information:

- Vehicle key, refer to page 79.
- BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant, refer to page 56.

Safety information

Warning

When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the windows is clear during opening and closing.

Overview

Power windows

Safety switch

Functional requirements

The windows can be operated under the following conditions.

- Standby state is switched on.
- Drive-ready state is switched on.

The vehicle key must be in the car's interior.

Opening

- Press the switch to the resistance point.

  The window opens while the switch is being held.
- Press the switch beyond the resistance point.

  The window opens automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Closing

- Pull the switch to the resistance point.

  The window closes while the switch is being held.
- Pull the switch beyond the resistance point.

  The window closes automatically if the door is closed. Pulling again stops the motion.

Jam protection system

Concept

The jam protection prevents objects or body parts becoming jammed between the door frame and window while a window is being closed.

General information

If resistance or a blockage is detected while a window is being closed, the closing action is interrupted.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3231
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Safety information

Warning

Accessories on the windows such as antennas can impact jam protection. There is a risk of injury. Do not install accessories in the area of movement of the windows.

Closing without the jam protection system

In case of danger from the outside or if ice might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it there.

   The window closes with limited jam protection. If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.

2. Pull the switch past the resistance point again within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there.

   The window closes without jam protection.

Safety switch

Concept

The safety switch can be used to prevent children, for instance from opening and closing the rear windows using the switches in the rear.

If an accident of a certain severity occurs, the safety function is switched off automatically.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

The LED lights up if the safety function is switched on.

Roller sunblinds, rear side windows

Safety information

Warning

With closed roller sunblinds and open windows, the roller sunblinds may be strained while driving due to the wind. The roller sunblinds may be damaged and vehicle occupants may be harmed. There is a risk of injury. Do not open the windows while driving if the roller sunblinds are closed.

Pull out the roller sunblind at the strap and hook it onto the bracket.

Glass sunroof

General information

The glass sunroof and the sun protection are operated using the same switch.

The glass sunroof can be opened from the outside with the vehicle key and also closed with Comfort Access.

With Comfort Access: The glass sunroof can be closed from the outside via Comfort Access.

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the glass sunroof. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the glass sunroof is clear during opening and closing.

Overview

Opening/closing the glass sunroof.

Functional requirements

The glass sunroof and the sun protection can be operated under the following conditions.

- Standby state is switched on.
- Drive-ready state is switched on.
- Speed of 155 mph/250 km/h not exceeded.

The vehicle key must be in the car's interior.

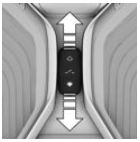
Lifting/closing glass sunroof

Push switch briefly upward.

- The closed glass sunroof tilts and the sun protection opens slightly.
- The opened glass sunroof closes until it is in the tilted position. The sun protection does not move.

- The tilted glass sunroof closes.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sun protection separately



- Slide switch back to the resistance point and hold.

  Holding down the switch opens the sun protection. If the sun protection is already fully open, the glass sunroof opens.

- Slide switch forward to the resistance point and hold.

  The glass sunroof closes while the switch is being held. If the glass sunroof is already closed or in the tilted position, the sun protection closes.

- Slide the switch back past the resistance point.

  The sun protection opens automatically. If the sun protection is already fully open, the glass sunroof opens automatically.

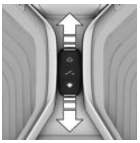
  Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

- Push the switch forward past the resistance point.

  The glass sunroof closes automatically. If the glass sunroof is already closed or in the tilted position, the sun protection closes automatically.

  Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sun protection together



- Briefly press out the switch twice in succession toward the rear past the resistance point.

  The glass sunroof and sun protection are opening together.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3233
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

▷ Briefly press out the switch twice in succession toward the front past the resistance point.

The glass sunroof and sun protection are closing together.

Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Comfort position

In some models, the wind noises in the car's interior are lowest when the glass sunroof is not fully open. In these models, the automatic function initially only opens the glass sunroof up to this comfort position.

Pressing the switch again opens the glass sunroof fully.

Jam protection system

Concept

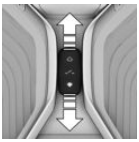
The jam protection prevents objects or body parts from becoming jammed between the roof and glass sunroof while the glass sunroof is closing.

General information

If a resistance or blockage is detected while the glass sunroof is closing, the closing operation is interrupted once the roof reaches the half-open position, or it is stopped when closing from the tilted position.

Closing from the open position without jam protection

In case of danger from the outside or if ice might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

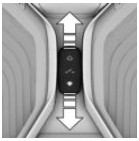


1. Close all doors.
2. Push the switch forward past the resistance point and hold.

   The glass sunroof closes with limited jam protection. If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.
3. Push the switch forward again past the resistance point and hold until the glass sunroof closes without jam protection. Make sure that the closing area is clear.

Closing from the lifted position without jam protection

In case of danger from the outside or if ice might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:



1. Close all doors.
2. Push the switch forward past the resistance point and hold.

Initializing after a power interruption

General information

After a power failure during the opening or closing process, the glass sunroof can only be operated to a limited extent. Initializing the system can help in this case.

The system can be initialized under the following conditions:

▷ The vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.

▷ The vehicle will not be moved until the initialization is completed.

- The drive-ready state is established.
- The external temperature is above 41 °F/5 °C.

During initialization, the glass sunroof closes without jam protection.

Make sure that the closing area is clear.

Initializing the system

Press the switch up and hold it until the initialization is complete:

Initialization begins within 15 seconds.

- If the glass sunroof is closed, it opens then closes again.
- If the glass sunroof is open, it first closes, then opens and closes again.

Initialization is complete once the glass sunroof and sun protection have opened then closed again.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3235
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Seats, mirrors and steering wheel

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Sitting safely

An ideal seat position that meets the needs of the occupants can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving.

In the event of an accident, the correct seat position plays an important role. Follow the information in the following chapters.

Additional information:

- Seats, refer to page 103.
- Safety belts, refer to page 105.
- Head restraints, refer to page 107.
- Airbags, refer to page 164.

Seats, front

Safety information

Warning

Seat adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected movements of the seat. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. Only adjust the seat on the driver's side when the vehicle is stationary.

Warning

With a backrest inclined too far to the rear, the efficacy of the safety belt can no longer be ensured. There is a risk of sliding under the safety belt in an accident. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Adjust the seat prior to starting the trip. Adjust the backrest so that it is in the most upright position as possible and do not adjust again while driving.

Warning

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

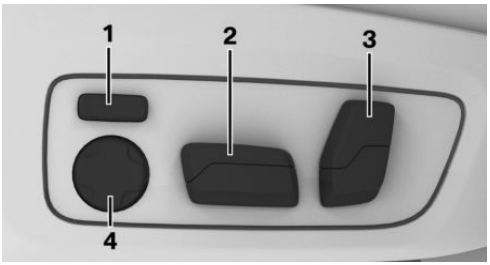
Electrically adjustable seats

General information

The seat adjustment for the driver's seat is stored for the driver profile currently used. When a driver profile is selected, the stored position is called up automatically.

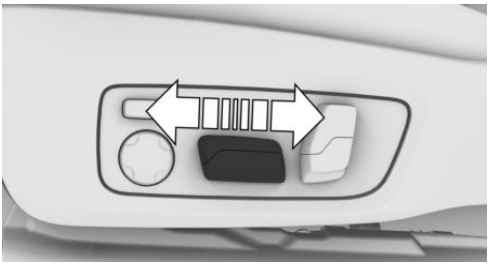
The current seat position can be stored using the memory function.

Overview



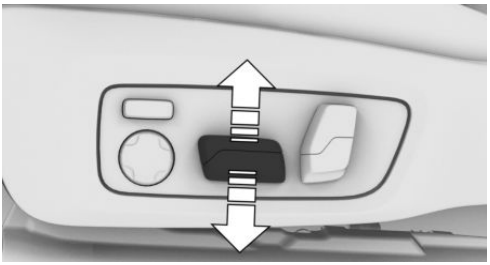
1 Backrest width
2 Forward/backward, height, seat tilt
3 Backrest tilt, head restraint
4 Lumbar support

Forward/backward



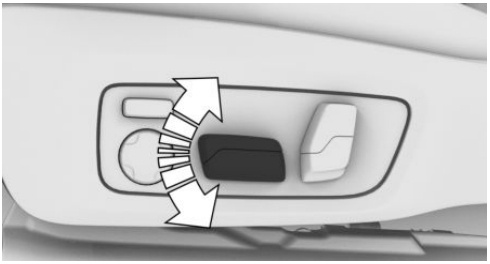
Push switch forward or backward.

Height



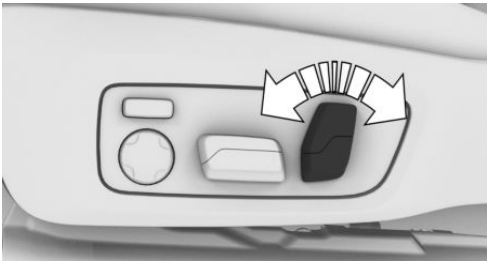
Push switch up or down.

Seat tilt



Move switch up or down.

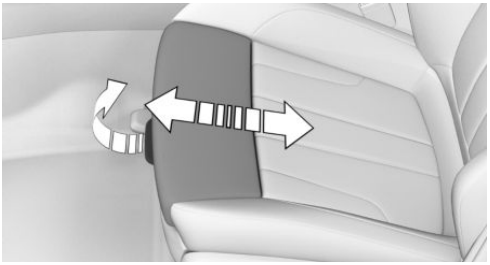
Backrest tilt



Move switch forward or backward.

Thigh support

Sport seat



Pull the lever at the front of the seat and push the thigh support forward or back.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3237
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Lumbar support

Concept

The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright posture.

Adjusting

- Press the front/rear section of the button:

  The curvature is increased/decreased.
- Press the upper/lower section of the button:

  The curvature is shifted up/down.

Functional limitations

It may not be possible to adjust the lumbar support at very high and very low temperatures.

Backrest width

Concept

Adjusting the backrest width may improve lateral support when taking corners.

General information

The backrest width is changed by adjusting the side sections of the backrest.

Adjusting

- Press the front section of the button:

  The backrest width decreases.
- Press the rear section of the button:

  The backrest width increases.

Functional limitations

It may not be possible to adjust the backrest width at very high and very low temperatures.

Rear seats

General information

The backrest tilt can be adjusted for the rear seats. The backrest tilt for the center section is adjusted together with the left rear seat backrest.

Backrest tilt

Pull the lever and apply your weight to the rear seat backrest or lift it off, as necessary.

After adjusting, move the rear seat backrest forward or back slightly making sure it engages properly.

Safety belts

General information

The vehicle is fitted with five safety belts to ensure occupant safety. However, they can only offer protection when adjusted correctly.

Always make sure that safety belts are being worn by the occupants before driving off. The airbags supplement the safety belts as an additional safety device. The airbags are not a substitute for safety belts.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3238

The upper shoulder strap's anchorage point will be correct for adult seat occupants of every build if the seat is correctly set.

The two outer safety belt buckles of the rear seats are intended for the persons sitting on the left and right.

The center safety belt buckle of the rear seats is intended for the person sitting in the middle.

Safety information

Warning

Use of a safety belt to buckle more than one person will potentially defeat the ability of the safety belt to serve its protective function. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Infants and children are not allowed on an occupant's lap, but must be transported and secured in designated child restraint systems.

Warning

The efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts, can be limited or lost when safety belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened safety belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that all occupants are wearing safety belts correctly.

Warning

With a rear backrest that is not locked, the protective function of the middle safety belt is not guaranteed. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. If you are using the middle safety belt, lock the wider rear seat backrest.

Warning

The efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts, may not be fully functional or fail in the following situations:

- The safety belts or safety belt buckles are damaged, soiled, or changed in any other way.
- Belt tensioners or belt retractors were modified.

Safety belts can be imperceptibly damaged in the event of an accident. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not modify safety belts, safety belt buckles, belt tensioners, belt retractors or belt anchors and keep them clean. Have the safety belts checked after an accident at the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Correct use of safety belts

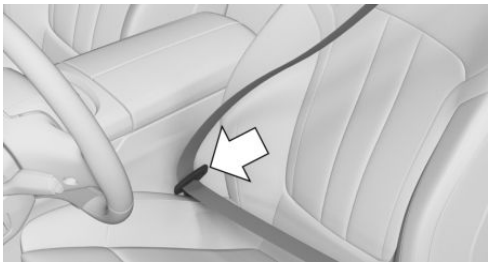
- Wear the safety belt twist-free and tight to your body over your lap and shoulders.
- Wear the safety belt deep on your hips over your lap. The safety belt may not press on your stomach.
- Do not rub the safety belt against sharp edges, or guide it or jam it in across hard or fragile objects.
- Avoid thick clothing.
- Re-tighten the safety belt frequently upward around your upper body.

Buckling the safety belt

1. Guide the safety belt slowly over shoulder and hip to put it on.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3239
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

2. Insert the tongue plate into the safety belt buckle. The safety belt buckle must engage audibly.



To ease accessibility to the safety belt buckle, an adjustable slider is available on the belt to help position the buckle when not in use.

When the safety belt is fastened, the driver's and passenger's belt straps are automatically tightened once after driving away.

Unbuckling the safety belt

1. Hold the safety belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the safety belt buckle.
3. Guide the safety belt back into its roll-up mechanism.

Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat

Display in the instrument cluster

The indicator light lights up and a signal sounds. Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly. The safety belt reminder can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

Safety belt reminder for rear seats

General information

The safety belt reminder is automatically activated each time the engine starts.

The safety belt reminder is also activated when a passenger unbuckles a rear seat safety belt during the trip.

Display in the instrument cluster

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates after the engine is started.

The displays may vary depending on the equipment version and country variant.

Symbol	Description
	Green: the safety belt is buckled on the corresponding rear seat.
	Red: the safety belt is not buckled on the corresponding rear seat.

Safety mode

In critical situations, for instance during an emergency stop, the front safety belts tighten automatically.

If the situation passes without an accident occurring, the belt tension relaxes.

If the belt tension does not loosen automatically, stop the vehicle and unbuckle the safety belt using the red button in the safety belt buckle. Fasten the safety belt before continuing on your trip.

Front head restraints

General information

The current head restraint position can be stored using the memory function.

Safety information

Warning

A missing protective effect due to removed or not correctly adjusted head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
- Adjust the head restraint so its center supports the back of the head at as close to eye level as possible.
- Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the backrest tilt as needed.

Warning

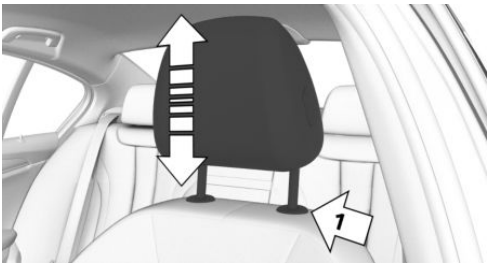
Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.

Warning

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.

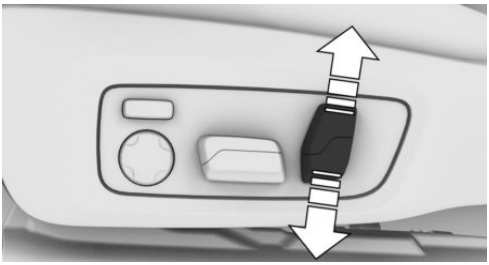
Adjusting the height: manual head restraints



- To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.
- To raise: push the head restraint up.

After setting the height, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

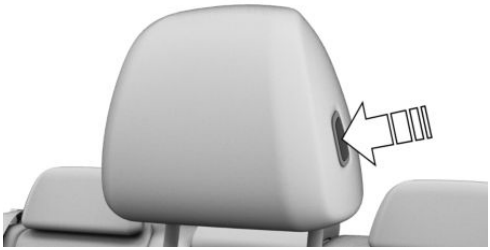
Adjusting the height: power head restraint



Push switch up or down.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3241
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Adjusting the distance: manual head restraints



- Back: press the button and push the head restraint toward the rear.
- Forward: pull the head restraint toward the front.

After setting the distance, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

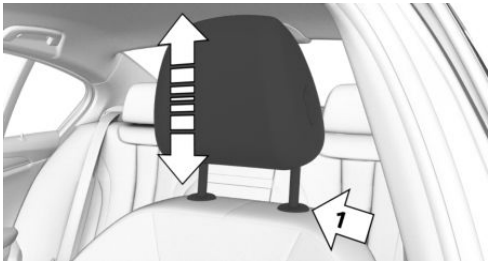
Adjusting the distance: power head restraints

The distance to the back of the head is adjusted via the backrest tilt.

Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head.

Removing

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.



1. Raise the head restraint up against the resistance.
2. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

Removing: M Sport seat

The head restraints cannot be removed.

Installing

Proceed in the reverse order to install the head restraint.

Rear head restraints

Safety information

Warning

A missing protective effect due to removed or not correctly adjusted head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
- Adjust the head restraint so its center supports the back of the head at as close to eye level as possible.
- Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the backrest tilt as needed.

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.

Warning

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.

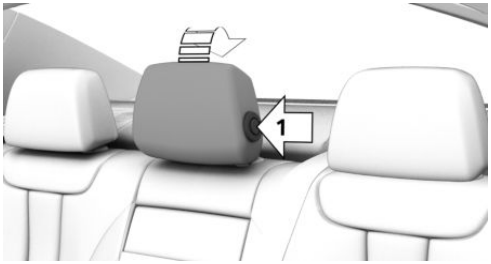
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3242

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

- ▷ Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- ▷ Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.

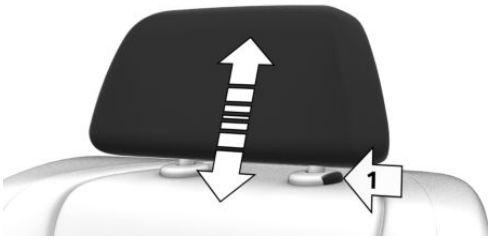
Folding down the head restraints

To improve the view to the rear, the head restraints can be folded back. Only fold the head restraint back if no one will be sitting in the corresponding seat.



- ▷ To the rear: press the button, arrow 1, and fold the head restraint backward.
- ▷ Forward: fold the head restraint toward the front as far as it will go. Make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Adjusting the height



The height of the outer head restraints can be adjusted.

- ▷ To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.
- ▷ To raise: push the head restraint up.

After setting the height, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Removing

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.

1. Fold down the rear seat backrest in question.
   Enlarging the cargo area, refer to page 265.
2. Raise the head restraint up against the resistance.
3. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

Installing

Proceed in the reverse order to install the head restraint.

After the installation, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Exterior mirrors

General information

The mirror on the front passenger side is more curved than the driver's side mirror.

The mirror setting is stored for the driver profile currently in use. When a driver profile is selected, the stored position is called up automatically.

The current exterior mirror position can be stored using the memory function.

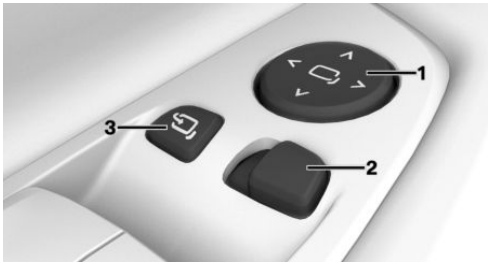
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3243
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Safety information

Warning

Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. The distance to the traffic behind could be incorrectly estimated, for instance while changing lanes. There is a risk of accident. Estimate the distance to the traffic behind by looking over your shoulder.

Overview



1 Adjusting

2 Selecting a mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor

3 Folding in and out

Adjusting electrically

Press the button.

The selected mirror moves along with the button movement.

Selecting a mirror

To change over to the other mirror:

Slide the switch.

Malfunction

In case of an electrical malfunction, adjust the mirror by pressing the edges of the mirror glass.

Folding in and out

NOTICE

Depending on the vehicle width, the vehicle can be damaged in vehicle washes. There is a risk of damage to property. Before washing, fold in the mirrors by hand or with the button.

Press the button.

Folding is only possible up to a speed of approx. 15 mph/20 km/h.

Folding the mirrors in and out is helpful in the following situations:

- In car washes.
- On narrow roads.

Mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Automatic heating

Both exterior mirrors are automatically heated as needed and when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Automatic dimming feature

The exterior mirror on the driver's side is automatically dimmed. Photocells in the interior mirror are used to control this.

Automatic Curb Monitor, exterior mirror

Concept

If reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass on the front passenger side is tilted downward. This improves your view of the curb and other low-lying obstacles when parking, for instance.

Activating

1. slide the switch to the driver's side mirror position.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3244

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

2. Engage selector lever position R.

Deactivating

Slide the switch to the passenger's side mirror position.

Interior mirror

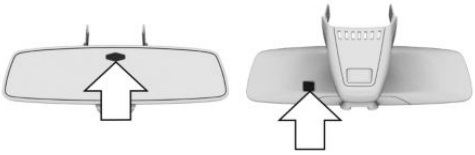
General information

The interior mirror is dimmed automatically.

Photocells are used for control:

- In the mirror glass.
- On the back of the mirror.

Overview



Functional requirements

- Keep the photocells clean.
- Do not cover the area between the interior mirror and the windshield.

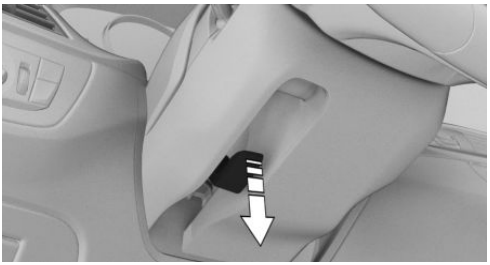
Steering wheel

Safety information

Warning

Steering wheel adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected steering wheel movements. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. Adjustng the steering wheel while the vehicle is stationary only.

Manual steering wheel adjustment



1. Fold the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seat position.
3. Fold the lever back up.

Heated steering wheel

Overview

Button for heated steering wheel

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3245
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Switching on/off

Press the button.

A Check Control message is displayed.

If the trip is resumed within approx. 15 minutes after an intermediate stop, the heated steering wheel switches on automatically if the function was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Memory function

Concept

The following settings can be stored and, if necessary, retrieved using the memory function:

- Seat position.
- Exterior mirror position.
- Height of the Head-up Display.

General information

Two memory locations with different settings can be set for each driver profile.

The following settings are not stored:

- Backrest width.
- Lumbar support.

Safety information

Warning

Using the memory function while driving can lead to unexpected seat or steering wheel movements. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. Only retrieve the memory function when the vehicle is stationary.

Warning

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Overview

The memory buttons are located on the front doors.

Storing

1. Set the desired position.
2. SET Press the button. The writing on the button lights up.
3. Press desired button 1 or 2 while the LED is lit. A signal sounds.

Calling up settings

Press the desired button 1 or 2.

The stored position is called up.

The procedure stops when a switch for setting the seat is pressed or one of the memory buttons is pressed again.

Once underway, adjustment of the seat position on the driver's side is disabled after a short while.

Seat heating

Overview

Front

Seat heating

Rear

Seat heating

Switching on

Press the button once for each temperature level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

Switching off

Press and hold the button, until the LEDs go out.

Seat heating distribution

The heating action in the seat cushion and the seat backrest can be distributed in different ways.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. Select the desired menu item.
5. Select desired seat.
6. Press the Controller and turn it to set the seat heating distribution.

Active seat ventilation

Concept

Integrated fans in the seat and armrest areas provide a comfortable seat temperature.

Overview

Active seat ventilation

Switching on

Press the button once for each ventilation level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

The ventilation switches back by one level after a short time.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3247
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Switching off

Press and hold the button, until the LEDs go out.

Individual activation

Concept

Depending on the equipment, some heating and cooling functions can be automatically activated depending on the external temperature.

General information

The external temperature at which the functions are to be automatically activated can be set via iDrive.

Activation is performed if the external temperature exceeds or falls below the set temperature in the first few minutes after drive-ready state has been switched on. A new alignment is carried out after the settings have been changed.

Depending on the equipment package, the following functions can be automatically activated:

- Seat heating.
- Heated steering wheel.
- Seat ventilation.

If the trip is continued within approx. 15 minutes after a stop, the functions are activated automatically with the levels that were last selected.

Functional requirement

The safety belt of the corresponding seat is buckled.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. Select the desired menu item.
5. Select desired seat.
6. Select the menu item of the desired function.
7. Set the external temperature at which the function is to be activated.

Transporting children safely

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

The right place for children

Safety information

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Warning

A heated vehicle may result in death to persons, especially children, or animals. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not leave persons, especially children, or animals unattended in the vehicle.

Warning

Exposure to intense sunlight can cause child restraint systems and their components to become very hot. Persons may sustain burn injuries when touching the hot components. There is a risk of injury. Do not expose the child restraint system to direct sunlight or cover where necessary. If necessary, let the child restraint system cool down before transporting a child. Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle.

Transport children in the rear seat

General information

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is in the rear seat.

Children younger than 13 years of age or shorter than 5 ft/150 cm should be transported in the rear seat in suitable child restraint systems designed for the age, weight and size of the child. Children 13 years of age or older must wear a safety belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system can no longer be used due to their age, weight, or size.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3249
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Safety information

Warning

The safety belt cannot be fastened correctly on children shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm without suitable additional child restraint systems. The efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts, can be limited or lost when safety belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened safety belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Secure children shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm using suitable child restraint systems.

Children on the front passenger seat

General information

Before using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, ensure that the front, knee, and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated.

Additional information:

For automatic deactivation of front-seat passenger airbags, refer to page 167.

Safety information

Warning

Active front-seat passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are activated. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front-seat passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light lights up.

Installing child restraint systems

General information

Pay attention to the specifications and the operating and safety information of the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing, and using child restraint systems.

Safety information

Warning

The protective effect of child restraint systems and their fastening systems which have been damaged or exposed to an accident can be limited or lost. A child cannot be properly restrained in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life.

Do not use child restraint systems which have been damaged or exposed to an accident.

If a child restraint system and its fastening system has been damaged or exposed to an accident, have these systems checked and replaced by the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

On the front passenger seat

Deactivating airbags

Warning

Active front-seat passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are activated. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front-seat passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light lights up.

Before installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, make sure that the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated.

Additional information:

For automatic deactivation of front-seat passenger airbags, refer to page 167.

Seat position and height

After installing a child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go and, if possible, bring it up to the highest position. This seat position and height ensure the best possible position for the belt and offers optimal protection in the event of an accident.

If the upper anchor of the safety belt is located in front of the belt guide of the child seat, move the front passenger seat carefully forward until the best possible belt guide position is reached.

Backrest width

Adjustable backrest width: before installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, open the backrest width completely. Do not change the backrest width again and do not call up a memory position.

Child seat security

The safety belts in the rear and the front passenger safety belt can be permanently locked to fasten child restraint systems.

Locking the safety belt

1. Pull out the belt strap completely.
2. Secure the child restraint system with the safety belt.
3. Allow the belt strap to be pulled in and pull it tight against the child restraint system. The safety belt is locked.

Unlocking the safety belt

1. Unbuckle the safety belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the belt strap to be pulled in completely.

LATCH child restraint fixing system

General information

LATCH: Lower Anchors and Tether for Children.

Pay attention to the specifications and the operating and safety information from the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing, and using LATCH child restraint fixing systems.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3251
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors

General information

The lower anchors may be used to attach the CRS to the vehicle seat up to a combined child and CRS weight of 65 lbs/30 kg when the child is restrained by the internal harnesses.

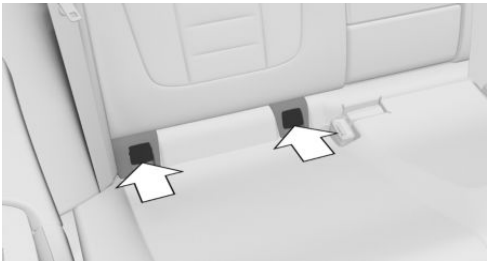
Safety information

Warning

If the LATCH child restraint fixing systems are not correctly engaged, the protective effect of the LATCH child restraint fixing system is limited. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the lower anchors are securely engaged and that the LATCH child restraint fixing system fits securely against the backrest.

Position

Symbol	Meaning
	The corresponding symbol shows the mounts for the lower LATCH anchors. Seats equipped with lower anchors are marked with a pair, (2), of LATCH symbols. For vehicles equipped with a middle seat: It is not recommended to use the inner lower anchors of standard outer LATCH positions to fasten a child restraint system on the middle seat. Use the vehicle safety belt instead for the middle seat.



Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors are located behind the marked covers.

The covers fold back automatically when the anchors of a child restraint system are inserted.

Before installing LATCH child restraint fixing systems

Pull the safety belt away from the area of the child restraint system.

Assembly of LATCH child restraint fixing systems

1. Install child restraint system, see manufacturer's information.
2. Ensure that both LATCH anchors are properly engaged.

Child restraint systems with tether strap

Safety information

Warning

If the upper retaining strap is incorrectly used for the child restraint system, the protective effect is reduced. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the upper retaining strap does not run over sharp edges and is not twisted as it passes the upper anchor.

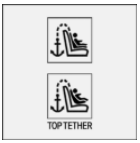
Warning

If the rear backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the child restraint system is limited or there is none. In certain situations, for instance braking maneuvers or in case of an accident, the rear backrest can fold forward. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the rear backrests are locked.

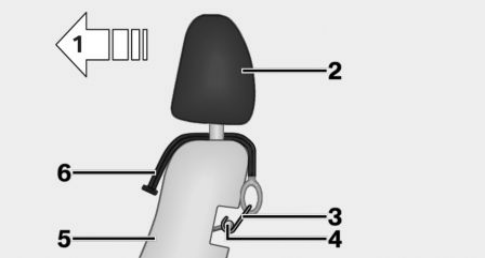
NOTICE

The anchors for the upper retaining straps of child restraint systems are only provided for these retaining straps. When other objects are mounted, the anchors can be damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Only mount child restraint systems to the upper anchors.

Anchors

Symbol	Meaning
	The respective symbol shows the anchor for the upper retaining strap. Seats with an upper top tether are marked with this symbol. It is located on the rear seat backrest, the rear shelf or the rear seat.

Routing the retaining strap



1 Direction of travel
2 Head restraint
3 Hook for upper retaining strap
4 Anchor
5 Seat backrest
6 Upper retaining strap

Attaching the upper retaining strap to the anchor

1. Raise the head restraint, if needed.
2. Guide the upper retaining strap between or along both sides of the supports for the head restraint to the anchor.

   For the middle seat, guide it over or along both sides of the head restraint to the anchor where applicable.
3. If there is a retaining strap, run it between the backrest and the cargo cover.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3253
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

4. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the anchor.
5. Tighten the retaining strap by pulling it down.
6. Lower and engage head restraint as needed.

Locking the doors and windows in the rear

General information

In certain situations it may be advisable to secure the rear doors and windows, for instance when transporting children.

Doors

Push the locking lever on the rear doors up.

The door can now be opened from the outside only.

Safety switch for the rear

Press the button on the driver's door.

This locks various functions so that they cannot be operated from the rear.

Additional information:

Safety switch, refer to page 99.

Driving

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Start/Stop button

Concept

Pressing the Start/Stop button switches drive-ready state on or off.

Drive-ready state is switched on when you depress the brake pedal while pressing the Start/Stop button.

Pressing the Start/Stop button again switches the drive-ready state back off and standby state is switched back on.

Additional information:

- Drive-ready state, refer to page 42.
- Standby state, refer to page 42.

Driving away

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. Apply gear position.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Drive away.

Auto Start/Stop function

Concept

The Auto Start/Stop function helps save fuel. The system switches off the engine during a stop, for instance in traffic congestion or at traffic lights. Drive-ready state remains switched on. The engine starts automatically for driving off.

General information

After each engine start using the Start/Stop button, the Auto Start/Stop function is ready. The function is activated from speeds of approx. 3 mph/5 km/h.

Engine stop

Functional requirements

M Steptronic Sport transmission

The engine is switched off automatically during a stop under the following conditions:

- The selector lever is in selector lever position D.
- The brake pedal remains pressed while the vehicle is stationary or the vehicle is held by Automatic Hold.
- The driver's safety belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

M Steptronic Sport transmission: manual engine stop

If the engine was not switched off automatically when the vehicle stopped, the engine can be switched off manually:

- Press the brake pedal forcefully again from the current pedal position.
- Engage selector lever position P.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3255
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

When all functional preconditions are fulfilled, the engine switches off.

Air conditioner when the engine is switched off

The air flow from the air conditioner is reduced when the engine is switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster

General information

The display in the instrument cluster indicates that the Auto Start/Stop function is ready for an automatic engine start.

The display indicates that the conditions for an automatic engine stop have not been met.

Indications on the Control Display

Total time with switched-off engine

The total time for which the Auto Start/Stop function has switched off the engine is displayed in the trip data.

The total time is automatically reset every time the vehicle is refueled.

Functional limitations

The engine is not switched off automatically in the following situations:

- In case of a steep downhill grade.
- Brake not engaged strongly enough.
- The external temperature is high and automatic climate control is running.
- The car's interior has not yet been heated or cooled to the required level.
- Where there is a risk of window condensation when the automatic climate control is switched on.
- Engine or other parts not at operating temperature.
- Engine cooling is required.
- The wheels are at a sharp angle or the steering wheel is being turned.
- Vehicle battery is heavily discharged.
- At higher elevations.
- Hood is unlocked.
- HDC Hill Descent Control is activated.
- The parking assistant is activated.
- Stop-and-go traffic.
- Selector lever position in N or R.
- After driving in reverse.

Starting the engine

Functional requirements

M Steptronic Sport transmission

The engine starts automatically under the following preconditions:

- By releasing the brake pedal.
- When Automatic Hold is activated: step on the accelerator pedal.

Driving off

After the engine starts, accelerate as usual.

Safety mode

After the engine switches off automatically, it will not start again automatically if any one of the following conditions are met:

- The driver's safety belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is open.
- Hood was unlocked.

Some indicator lights light up for a varied length of time.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3256

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

The engine can only be started via the Start/Stop button.

System limits

Even if driving off was not intended, the deactivated engine starts up automatically in the following situations:

- Excessive warming of the car's interior when air conditioning is switched on.
- Excessive cooling of the car's interior when the heating is switched on.
- Where there is a risk of window condensation when the automatic climate control is switched on.
- When the steering wheel is turned.
- Change from selector lever position D to N or R.
- Change from selector lever position P to N, D, or R.
- Vehicle battery is heavily discharged.
- Start of an oil level measurement.

Additional functions Auto Start/Stop

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country-specific version, the vehicle features a variety of sensors for assessing the traffic situation. The Auto Start/Stop function uses this information to adapt to various traffic situations in a proactive manner.

For instance, this applies to the following situations:

- When a situation is detected in which the stopping time is expected to be very short, the engine is not switched off automatically. A message appears on the Control Display, depending on the situation.
- When a situation is detected in which the vehicle needs to drive off immediately, the engine is started automatically.

The function may be restricted if the navigation data is invalid, outdated or not available, for example.

Deactivate/activate the system manually

Concept

The engine is not automatically switched off.

The engine is started during an automatic engine stop.

Using the button

Press the button.

Display

- LED comes on: auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.
- LED goes out: auto Start/Stop function is activated.

Switching off the vehicle during an automatic engine stop

General information

During an automatic engine stop, the vehicle can be switched off permanently, for instance when leaving it.

M Steptronic Sport transmission

1. Press the Start/Stop button.
   - Drive-ready state is switched off.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3257
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

▷ Standby state is switched on.
▷ Selector lever position P is engaged automatically.

2. Set the parking brake.

Automatic deactivation

General information

In certain situations, the Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated automatically for safety reasons, for instance if no driver is detected.

Malfunction

The Auto Start/Stop function no longer switches off the engine automatically. A Check Control message is displayed. It is possible to continue driving. Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Parking brake

Concept

The parking brake is used to prevent the vehicle from rolling when it is parked.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

▷ Set the parking brake.
▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
▷ Releasing the parking brake.
▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Overview

Parking brake

Setting

With a stationary vehicle

Pull the switch.

The LED lights up.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates red. The parking brake is set.

While driving

General information

To use as emergency brake while driving.

Pull the switch and hold it. The vehicle brakes hard while the switch is being pulled.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates red, a signal sounds, and the brake lights illuminate.

A Check Control message is displayed.

The parking brake is engaged when the vehicle is stationary.

Releasing

Releasing manually

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2.

Press the switch while stepping on the brake pedal or selector lever position P is set.

   The LED and indicator light go out.

   The parking brake is released.

Automatic release

The parking brake is released automatically when you drive away.

The LED and indicator light go out.

Automatic Hold

Concept

This system assists the driver by automatically setting and releasing the brake, such as when moving in stop-and-go traffic.

The vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

On uphill grades the system prevents the vehicle from rolling backward when driving off.

General information

Under the following conditions, the parking brake is automatically engaged:

- Drive-ready state is switched off.
- The driver's door is opened while the vehicle is stationary.
- The moving vehicle is brought to a standstill using the parking brake.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

⚠ Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3259
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

NOTICE

If the vehicle is stationary, Automatic Hold engages the parking brake and prevents the vehicle from rolling in a car wash. There is a risk of damage to property. Deactivate Automatic Hold prior to entering the car wash.

Overview

AUTO H Automatic Hold

Establishing function readiness of Automatic Hold

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. AUTO H Press the button.

   The LED lights up.

AUTO H The indicator light lights up green.

Automatic Hold is functional.

After every new vehicle start, the last selected setting is active.

Automatic Hold holding the vehicle

Function readiness is established and the driver's door is closed.

PARK (P) After stepping on the brake pedal, for instance when stopping at a traffic light, the vehicle is automatically secured against rolling.

The indicator light lights up green.

Driving off

Press the accelerator pedal to drive off.

The brake is released automatically and the indicator light of the parking brake is no longer illuminated.

Activating the parking brake automatically

The parking brake is automatically set if drive-ready state is switched off while the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold or if the vehicle is exited.

PARK (P) The indicator light changes from green to red.

The parking brake is not set automatically, if the drive-ready state is switched off, while the vehicle is coasting to a halt. Automatic Hold is deactivated.

Switching function readiness off

AUTO H Press the button.

The LED goes out.

AUTO H The indicator light goes out.

Automatic Hold is switched off.

If the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold, press additionally on the brake pedal, when switching off.

Malfunction

If the parking brake fails or malfunctions, secure the vehicle against rolling before exiting.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Secure the vehicle against rolling away, for instance with a wheel chock, after exiting the vehicle.

After a power failure

To reestablish parking brake functionality after a power failure:

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Pull the switch while stepping on the brake pedal or selector lever position P is set and then push.

This process may take a few seconds. Some mechanical sounds associated with this process are normal.

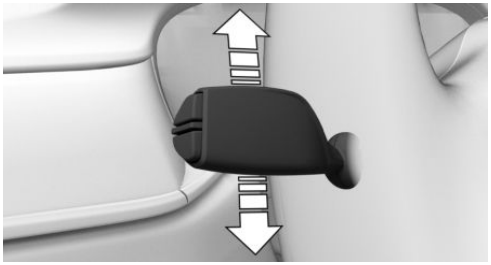
PARK The indicator light is no longer illuminated as soon as the parking brake is ready for operation again.

Turn signal

Turn signal in exterior mirror

When driving and during operation of the turn signals or hazard warning system, do not fold in the exterior mirrors, so that the signal lights on the exterior mirror are easy to see.

Using turn signals



Press the lever past the resistance point.

Triple turn signal activation

Lightly tap the lever up or down.

The triple turn signal duration can be adjusted.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "One-touch turn signal"
5. Select the desired setting.

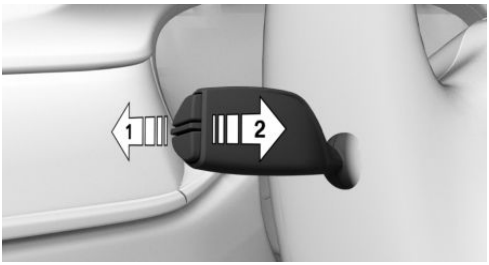
The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Signaling briefly

Press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

High beams, headlight flasher

Push the lever forward or pull it backward.



- ▷ High beams on, arrow 1.

  The high beams light up when the low beams are switched on.
- ▷ High beams off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

Wiper system

General information

Do not use the wipers if the windshield is dry, as this may damage the wiper blades or cause them to become worn more quickly.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3261
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Safety information

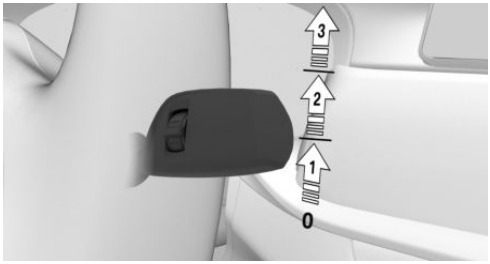
Warning

If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

NOTICE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of damage to property. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.

Switching on

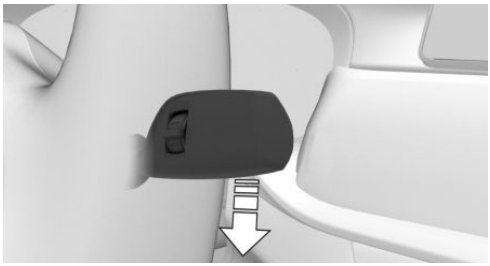


Press the lever up until the desired position is reached.

- Resting position of the wipers, position 0.
- Rain sensor, position 1.
- Normal wiper speed, position 2.
- Fast wiper speed, position 3.

When travel is interrupted with the wiper system switched on: when travel continues, the wipers resume at their previous speed.

Switching off and brief wipe



Press the lever down.

- Switching off: press the lever down until it reaches its standard position.
- Brief wipe: press the lever down from the standard position.

  The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

Rain sensor

Concept

The rain sensor automatically controls the time between wipes depending on the intensity of the rainfall.

General information

The sensor is located on the windshield, directly in front of the interior mirror.

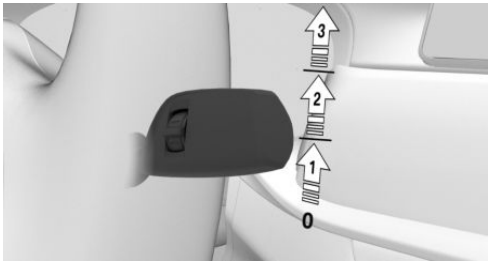
Safety information

NOTICE

If the rain sensor is activated, the wipers can accidentally start moving in vehicle washes. There is a risk of damage to property. Deactivate the rain sensor in vehicle washes.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3262
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Activating



Press the lever up once from its standard position, arrow 1.

Wiping is started.

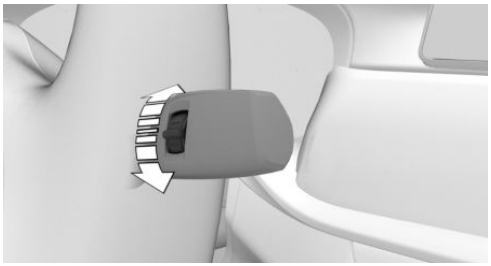
The LED in the wiper lever is illuminated.

In frosty conditions, wiper operation may not start.

Deactivating

Press the lever back into the standard position.

Adjusting the rain sensor sensitivity



Turn the thumbwheel to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Upward: high rain sensor sensitivity.

Downward: low rain sensor sensitivity.

Windshield washer system

Safety information

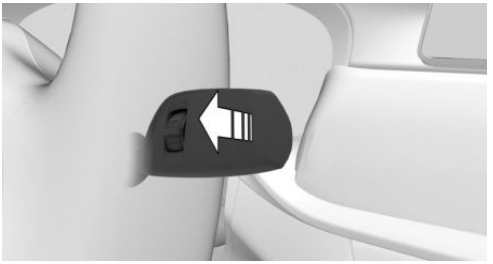
Warning

The washer fluid can freeze onto the window at low temperatures and obstruct the view. There is a risk of accident. Only use the washer systems, if the washer fluid cannot freeze. Use washer fluid with antifreeze, if needed.

NOTICE

When the washer fluid reservoir is empty, the wash pump cannot work as intended. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use the washer system when the washer fluid reservoir is empty.

Cleaning the windshield



Pull the lever.

The system sprays washer fluid on the windshield and activates the wipers briefly.

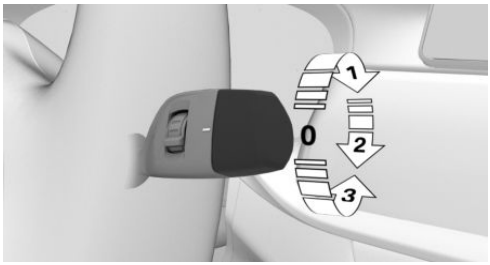
Windshield washer nozzles

The windshield washer nozzles are automatically heated while standby state is switched on.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3263
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Rear window wiper

Overview



Switching on

Turn the outer switch upward.

- Resting position of the wiper, position 0.
- Intermittent mode, arrow 1. When reverse gear is engaged, the system switches to continuous operation.

Clean the rear window

Turn the outer switch in the desired direction.

- In resting position: turn the switch downward, arrow 3. The switch automatically returns to its idle position when released.
- In intermittent mode: turn the switch further, arrow 2. The switch automatically returns to its interval position when released.

The function is deactivated if the washer fluid reservoir level is low.

Fold-away position of the wipers

Concept

The fold-away position enables the wipers to be folded away from the windshield.

General information

Important, for instance when changing the wiper blades or for folding away under frosty conditions.

Safety information

Warning

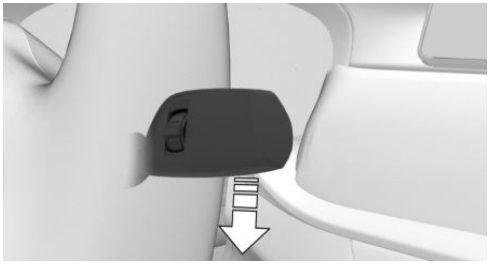
If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

NOTICE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of damage to property. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.

Folding away the wipers

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Press and hold the wiper lever down, until the wipers stop in a close to vertical position.



3. Fold the wipers all the way away from the windshield.

Folding down the wipers

After the wipers are folded back down, the wiper system must be reactivated.

1. Fold the wipers back down onto the windshield.
2. Switch on standby state and press and hold the wiper lever down again.
3. Wipers return to their resting position and are ready again for operation.

M Steptronic Sport transmission

General information

The M Steptronic Sport transmission is operated via the selector lever or the two shift paddles on the steering wheel.

The following functions are available:

- Various driving programs: Drive mode or sequential mode.
- Low Speed Assistant.
- Various Drivelogic programs.
- Launch Control.
- Upshifting display, Shift point indicator.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling, for instance with the parking brake.

Overview

Selector lever

Selector lever functions

Symbol	Function
	Drivelogic programs
R:	Reverse gear.
N	Neutral.
	Center position, forward position.
-	Downshifting, manual.
+	Upshifting, manual.
D/S	Drive mode or sequential mode.
P	Parking.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3265
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Selector lever positions

D is Drive mode

Selector lever position for vehicle operation. All gears for forward travel are activated automatically.

S is Sequential mode

Selector lever position for vehicle operation. All gears for forward travel must be shifted manually.

R is reverse

Engage selector lever position R only when the vehicle is stationary.

N is Neutral

In selector lever position N, the vehicle may be pushed or roll without power, for instance, in vehicle washes.

P Park

Selector lever position, for instance for parking the vehicle. The transmission blocks the drive wheels in selector lever position P.

Engage selector lever position P only when the vehicle is stationary.

Selector lever position P is engaged automatically in situations such as the following:

- After the drive-ready state or standby state is switched off and selector lever position D/S or R is engaged.
- After the standby state has been switched off when selector lever position N is engaged.
- If the driver's safety belt is unbuckled, the driver's door is opened, and the brake pedal is not depressed while the vehicle is stationary and selector lever position D/S or R is engaged.

Engaging a selector lever position

General information

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a drive mode, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start.

The engaged selector lever position is displayed in the instrument cluster and on the selector lever.

Functional requirements

Only when the drive-ready state is switched on and the brake pedal is depressed is it possible to change from selector lever position P to another selector lever position.

Engaging selector lever position D/S, N, R

With the driver's safety belt fastened, press on the brake pedal and pull or push the selector lever in the required direction. The selector lever automatically returns to the center position when released.

In selector lever position R, the selector lever locks.

Engaging selector lever position P

Press button P.

Rolling or pushing the vehicle

General information

In some situations, the vehicle is to roll without its own power for a short distance, for instance in a car wash, or be pushed.

Engaging selector lever position N

1. Switch on drive-ready state while pressing on the brake pedal.
2. If necessary, release the parking brake.
3. If necessary, deactivate Automatic Hold.

   Automatic Hold, refer to page 126.
4. Depress the brake pedal.
5. Engage selector lever position N.
6. Switch off drive-ready state.

   In this way, standby state remains switched on, and a Check Control message is displayed.

   The vehicle can roll.

NOTICE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not switch standby state off in vehicle washes.

Selector lever position P is engaged automatically after approximately 35 minutes.

If there is a malfunction, you may not be able to change the selector lever position.

Electronically unlock the transmission lock, if needed.

Kickdown

Kickdown is used to achieve maximum driving performance in Drive mode.

Step on the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position.

Drive mode D/S

Concept

In Drive mode, all forward gears are automatically changed.

Activating Drive mode

Push the selector lever out of the center position in the D/S direction.

Drive mode is activated. The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster along with a D, e.g., 1 D.

Deactivating Drive mode

Push the selector lever out of Drive mode in the D/S direction. Sequential mode is activated.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, e.g., 1.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3267
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Sequential mode D/S

Concept

In sequential mode, it is possible to shift gears manually using the selector lever or the shift paddles without letting off the gas.

General information

Shortly before falling below a gear-dependent minimum speed, the transmission is automatically downshifted.

Once the maximum engine speed is attained, upshifting is not automatically performed in sequential mode and the kickdown is deactivated.

It is also possible to start out in 2nd gear; for instance, on icy roads.

Activating sequential mode

Push the selector lever out of Drive mode in the D/S direction, arrow 1, or shift via the selector lever, arrows at 2.

Sequential mode is activated. The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, e.g., 1.

Deactivating sequential mode

Push the selector lever out of the center position in the D/S direction. Drive mode is activated.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster along with a D, e.g., 1 D.

Gear change

Concept

Manual gear-shifting is possible via the shift paddles or the selector lever in sequential mode.

The shift paddles on the steering wheel allow you to shift gears quickly while keeping both hands on the steering wheel.

General information

Shifting

Gears will only be shifted at appropriate engine and road speeds; for instance, downshifting is not possible if the engine speed is too high.

The lowest possible gear is selected by simultaneously operating the kickdown and moving the selector lever forward or actuating the left shift paddle.

Temporary sequential mode

After a shift paddle is actuated in Drive mode, the system temporarily switches to sequential mode.

After conservative driving in sequential mode without acceleration or shifting via the shift paddles for a certain amount of time, the transmission switches back to Drive mode.

Permanent sequential mode

Sequential mode remains permanently active if it was active before the shift paddle was actuated.

Switching to Drive mode

It is possible to switch to Drive mode as follows: pull and hold the right shift paddle.

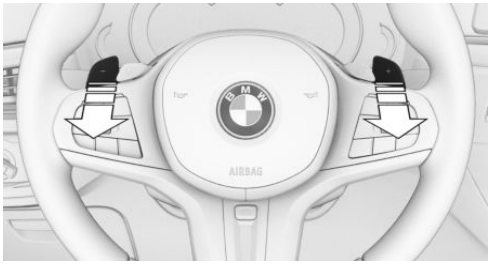
Switching via the selector lever

- To shift up: pull the selector lever rearwards.
- To shift down: press the selector lever forward.

A shift in Drive mode causes a switch to Sequential mode.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3268
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Switching via the shift paddles



- Shift up: pull right shift paddle.
- Shift down: pull left shift paddle.

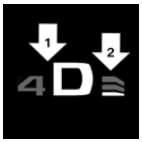
Display on the selector lever

The actually engaged transmission position can deviate from the selector lever position in some situations. The display in the selector lever flashes.

Observe the display in the instrument cluster in these cases.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Drive mode



- Engaged gear together with a D, arrow 1.
- Selected Drivelogic program, arrow 2.

Sequential mode

- Gear shift indicator, arrow 1.
- Engaged gear, arrow 2.
- Selected Drivelogic program, arrow 3.

Notice

When the external temperature is very low, the display may not work. Current driving direction is recognizable at the engaged selector lever position.

Low Speed Assistant

Concept

The Low Speed Assistant gives assistance at very low speeds. The vehicle moves at walking speed.

General information

Use the Low Speed Assistant for maneuvering or in stop-and-go traffic.

The Low Speed Assistant can also be used for rocking the vehicle in the snow. To do this, shift between reverse gear and forward gear without stepping on the brakes in the process.

Activating

1. Switch on drive-ready state while pressing on the brake pedal.
2. If necessary, release the parking brake.
3. If necessary, deactivate Automatic Hold.
4. Engage selector lever position D/S or R.
5. Release brake.

In 1st and 2nd gear and in reverse, the vehicle rolls at minimum speed.

Deactivating

Apply the brakes until the vehicle comes to a stop.

Drivelogic

Concept

Drivelogic changes the gear-shifting characteristics of the M Steptronic Sport transmission. For example, the shifting points are changed in Drive mode and the shifting times in sequential mode.

General information

Three Drivelogic programs are available.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3269
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

After each switch between Sequential mode and Drive mode, the last program selected is an active.

If the drive-ready state is switched on after the vehicle has been in the idle state and is in Drive mode, the D1 program is activated.

Programs

Program	Drive mode	Sequential mode
D1/S1	Efficient driving.	Comfortable shifting operations.
D2/S2	Fast driving.	Sporty, fast shifting operations.
D3/S3	Sporty driving.	Maximum shifting speed, Launch Control.

Selecting a channel

Via the rocker switch on the selector lever

Press the rocker switch repeatedly until the desired program is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Via iDrive

It is possible to configure the required program for buttons M1 or M2.

1. "CAR"
2. "M setup"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4. "Transmission"
5. Select the desired channel
   - ▷ "D1" to "D3": Drive mode.
   - ▷ "S1" to "S3": sequential mode.

   The setting is immediately applied with active M1 or M2 configuration.

To activate the desired configuration with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:

- ▷ M1
- ▷ M2

Display in the instrument cluster

The selected program corresponds to the number of illuminated fields.

Launch Control

Concept

Launch Control enables optimum acceleration on surfaces with good traction under dry surrounding conditions.

General information

The use of Launch Control causes premature component wear since this function represents a very heavy load for the vehicle.

Do not use Launch Control during the break-in period.

Do not steer the steering wheel when driving off with Launch Control.

Additional information:

Breaking-in period, refer to page 271.

Functional requirements

Launch Control is available when the engine is at operating temperature. The engine is at operat-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3270
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

ing temperature after an uninterrupted trip of at least 6 miles/10 km.

Start with launch control

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. Deactivate Dynamic Stability Control.

   DSC Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 193.
3. Select sequential mode with gear 1 and Drivelogic program S3.
4. With your left foot, forcefully press down on the brake.
5. Press and hold down the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position, kickdown.

   A destination flag is displayed in the instrument cluster.

   Keep the accelerator pedal in this position.
6. The starting engine speed adjusts. Within 3 seconds, release the brake. The vehicle accelerates.

   Upshifting occurs automatically as long as the destination flag is displayed and the accelerator pedal is not released.

Repeated use during a trip

After Launch Control has been used, it is necessary to drive a certain distance before Launch Control can be used again. Launch Control adjusts to the surrounding conditions, when used again.

After using Launch Control

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC Dynamic Stability Control again as soon as possible.

System limits

An experienced driver may be able to achieve better acceleration values in DSC OFF mode.

Electronic unlocking of the transmission lock

General information

Electronically unlock the transmission lock to maneuver vehicle from a danger area.

Unlocking is possible, if the starter can spin the engine.

Before unlocking the transmission lock, set the parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

Engaging selector lever position N

1. Press and hold down brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button. The starter must audibly start. Hold the Start/Stop button pressed.
3. With your free hand, press and hold the selector lever in selector lever position N, until selector lever position N is displayed in the instrument cluster.

   A Check Control message is displayed.
4. Release Start/Stop button and selector lever.
5. Release brake, as soon as the starter stops.
6. Maneuver the vehicle from the danger area and secure it against moving on its own.

Additional information:

Tow-starting/towing, refer to page 328.

M Engine Dynamics Control

Concept

The M Engine Dynamics Control affects the response of the vehicle to accelerator pedal movements.

General information

The system offers several different types of engine response behavior:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3271
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Program	Response behavior
"EFFICIENT"	Efficient, comfortable. Minimal consumption. Ideal, for instance in city traffic or on snow.
"SPORT"	Sporty, dynamic.
"SPORT PLUS"	Spontaneous, direct. Maximum dynamics.

The "SPORT" and "SPORT PLUS" programs change the sound characteristics of the exhaust gas system. The sound takes on a sporty nature.

Selecting a channel

Using the button

Press the button repeatedly until the desired program is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Via iDrive

It is possible to configure the required program for buttons M1 or M2.

1. "CAR"
2. "M setup"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4. "Engine"
5. Select the desired channel.

   The setting is immediately applied with active M1 or M2 configuration.

To activate the desired configuration with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:

▷ M1

▷ M2

Display in the instrument cluster

Engine Dynamics Control with selected program with activated Display of the system states of the driving dynamics.

Sound control

Concept

The sound control function changes the sound characteristics of the exhaust gas system.

General information

When sound control is switched on, the sound of the exhaust gas system takes on a sporty nature.

When sound control is switched off, the sound is focused on comfort.

During the engine warm-up phase, sound control does not have any effect on the sound of the exhaust gas system.

Additional information:

High-performance engine, refer to page 270.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3272

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Selecting a channel

Using the button

Press button to activate or deactivate the sound control.

The LED lights up when sound control is switched on.

Via iDrive

It is possible to configure the required program for buttons M1 or M2.

1. "CAR"
2. "M setup"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4. "Sound Control"
5. Select the desired channel.

   The setting is immediately applied with active M1 or M2 configuration.

To activate the desired configuration with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:

▷ M1

▷ M2

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3273
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Displays

Vehicle features and options

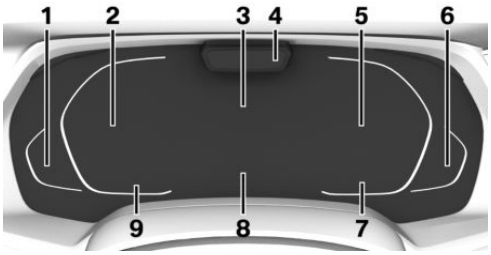
This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Instrument cluster

General information

Some of the displays in the instrument cluster may differ from the illustrations in the Owner's Manual.

Overview



1 Fuel gauge 147
Range 149

2 Speedometer

3 Central display area 141
Navigation display

4 Depending on the equipment: Driver Attention Camera

5 Tachometer 147
Selection lists 152
Widgets 142
Trip odometer, see Trip data 152
M Steptronic Sport transmission: gear display with Drivelogic 148
Driving Dynamics System 149

6 Engine oil temperature 148

7 External temperature 148

8 Check Control 142

9 Speed Limit Info 150
Time 61

Central display area

Depending on the equipment and configuration, the following is displayed in the central display area of the instrument cluster:

- Navigation displays such as the map view or, if destination guidance is active, a route preview with destination guidance information.
- Displays showing service notifications.

Some displays in the central display area can be configured individually.

The displays may vary depending on the equipment version and country variant.

Adjusting

Individual displays in the instrument cluster can be configured individually.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument panel"
5. Select the desired setting.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3274

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Widgets

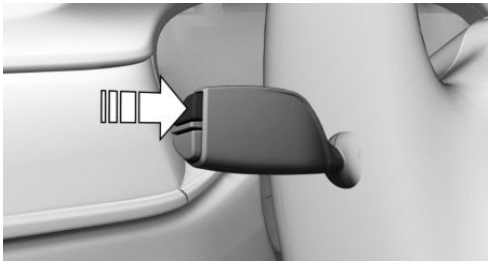
Concept

Displays for specific functions can be displayed in the instrument cluster.

The following displays can be selected:

- Current entertainment source, e.g., radio.
- Torque and power.
- Trip data.
- Consumption display.
- Tire data.

Selecting



Continue to press the button on the turn signal lever until the desired widget is selected.

Display

Consumption display

Concept

Information about consumption can be displayed in the form of a consumption display as a widget in the instrument cluster, for example.

Average consumption

The average consumption indicates the fuel consumption when driving a specific route.

Current consumption

The current consumption displays the current consumption of fuel. Check whether you are currently driving in an efficient and environmentally-friendly manner.

Energy recovery

During energy recovery, the kinetic energy of the vehicle is converted into electric energy during coasting. The vehicle battery is partially charged and fuel consumption can be reduced.

Tire data

Information about wheels and tires can be displayed in the instrument cluster as widget.

Check Control

Concept

The Check Control system monitors functions in the vehicle and notifies you of malfunctions in the monitored systems.

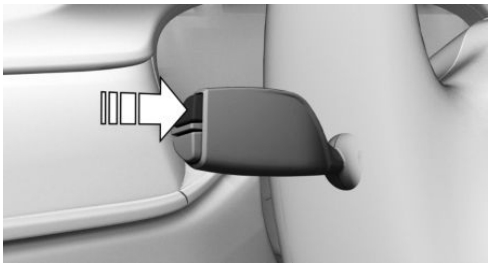
General information

A Check Control message is displayed as a combination of indicator or warning lights and text messages in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, in the Head-up Display.

In addition, an acoustic signal may sound and a text message may appear on the Control Display.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3275
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Hiding Check Control messages



Press the button on the turn signal lever.

Continuous display

Some Check Control messages are displayed continuously and are not cleared until the malfunction is eliminated. If several malfunctions occur at once, the messages are displayed consecutively.

The messages can be hidden for approx. 8 seconds. After this time, they are displayed again automatically.

Temporary display

Some Check Control messages are hidden automatically after approx. 20 seconds. The Check Control messages are stored and can be displayed again later.

Displaying stored Check Control messages

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. ⚠ "Check Control messages"
4. Select the text message.

Display

Check Control

⚠ At least one Check Control message is displayed or stored.

Text messages

Text messages in combination with a symbol in the instrument cluster explain a Check Control message and the meaning of the indicator/warning lights.

Supplementary text messages

Additional information, such as the reason for an error or malfunction or the required action, can be called up via Check Control.

With urgent messages the added text will be automatically displayed on the Control Display.

Depending on the Check Control message, further help can be selected.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. ⚠ "Check Control messages"
4. Select the desired text message.
5. Select the desired setting.

Messages after trip completion

Certain messages displayed while driving are displayed again after drive-ready state is switched off.

Indicator/warning lights

Concept

Indicator/warning lights in the instrument cluster display the status of some functions in the vehicle and indicate when a malfunction is present in the monitored systems.

General information

The indicator/warning lights can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when drive-ready state is switched on.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3276

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Red lights

Safety belt reminder

Indicator light flashes or is illuminated: safety belt on the driver or passenger side is not buckled. The safety belt reminder can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly.

Safety belt reminder for rear seats

The safety belt is not buckled on the corresponding rear seat.

The displays may vary depending on the equipment version and country variant.

Airbag system

Airbag system and belt tensioner may not be working.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Parking brake

The parking brake is set.

Additional information:

For releasing the parking brake, refer to page 126.

Brake system

Braking system impaired. Continue to drive moderately.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Front collision mitigation

The indicator light is illuminated: pre-warning. Brake and increase distance.

Indicator light flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Additional information:

Front collision mitigation, refer to page 169.

Person warning with City braking function

Indicator light flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: imminent collision with a detected person or a cyclist.

Intervene immediately by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

Additional information:

Person warning with City braking function, refer to page 174.

Steering and traffic jam assistant

Indicator light flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: the system will be switched off.

Additional information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, refer to page 208.

Yellow lights

Steering and traffic jam assistant

The indicator light lights up and an acoustic signal may sound: a system interruption is imminent.

The indicator warning light flashes: lane marking driven over.

Additional information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, refer to page 208.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3277
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Antilock Braking System ABS

The Brake Assistant function may not activate. Avoid abrupt braking. Take the longer braking distance into account.

Have the system immediately checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control

The indicator light flashes: DSC controls the drive and braking forces. The vehicle is stabilized. Reduce speed and modify your driving style to the driving circumstances.

The indicator light lights up: DSC has malfunctioned.

Have the system immediately checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

DSC Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 193.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control deactivated

DSC is deactivated or M Dynamic Mode MDM is activated.

Additional information:

- DSC Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 193.
- M Dynamic Mode MDM, refer to page 194.

Flat Tire Monitor FTM

The FTM signals a loss of tire inflation pressure in a tire.

Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

Additional information:

Run-flat tires, refer to page 298.

Tire pressure monitor

The indicator light illuminates: the Tire Pressure Monitor reports a low tire inflation pressure or a flat tire. Follow the information in the Check Control message.

The indicator light flashes and is then illuminated continuously: flat tires or tire pressure losses cannot be detected.

- Interference caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- In the case of tires with special approval: the tire pressure monitor was unable to complete the reset. Reset the system again.
- A wheel without wheel electronics is mounted: have it checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop as needed.
- Malfunction: have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Tire pressure monitor, refer to page 292.

Steering system

Steering system may not be working.

Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Emissions

- The warning light lights up:

  Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

- The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:

  This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

  Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious

engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

Additional information:

Socket for Onboard Diagnosis, refer to page 317.

Green lights

Safety belt reminder for rear seats

The safety belt is buckled on the corresponding rear seat.

The displays may vary depending on the equipment version and country variant.

Turn signal

Turn signal switched on.

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator light indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

Additional information:

Turn signal, refer to page 128.

Parking lights

Parking lights are switched on.

Additional information:

Parking lights/low beams, refer to page 159.

Low beams

Low beams are switched on.

Additional information:

Parking lights/low beams, refer to page 159.

Lane departure warning

The indicator light lights up: the system is activated. A lane marking was detected on at least one side of the vehicle and warnings can be issued.

Additional information:

Lane departure warning, refer to page 177.

High-beam Assistant

High-beam Assistant is switched on.

High beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the traffic situation.

Additional information:

High-beam Assistant, refer to page 161.

Automatic Hold

Automatic Hold is activated. The vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

Additional information:

Automatic Hold, refer to page 126.

Cruise control

Indicator light is illuminated: the system is active.

Additional information:

Cruise control, refer to page 199.

Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go function

The indicator light lights up: the system is switched on.

Additional information:

Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function, refer to page 201.

Steering assistant

Indicator light lights up: the system supports the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3279
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Additional information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, refer to page 208.

Blue lights

High beams

High beams are switched on.

Additional information:

High beams, refer to page 128.

Gray lights

Steering and traffic jam assistant

Indicator light is illuminated: the system is ready.

Additional information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, refer to page 208.

Fuel gauge

Concept

The current fill level of the fuel tank is displayed.

General information

Vehicle tilt position may cause the display to vary.

Additional information:

Refueling, refer to page 278.

Display

An arrow beside the fuel pump symbol shows which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is on.

The current range is displayed as numerical value.

Indicator light in the instrument cluster

The yellow indicator light illuminates, once the fuel reserve is reached.

Tachometer

General information

A yellow prewarning field and a red prewarning field display the permitted speed range. The permitted engine speed increases as the engine oil temperature increases.

Always avoid engine speeds in the red warning field. In this range, the fuel supply is reduced to protect the engine.

Standby state and drive-ready state

The lettering OFF in the instrument cluster indicates that drive-ready state is switched off and standby state is switched on.

The lettering READY in the in the instrument cluster indicates that the drive-ready state is switched on.

Additional information:

Operating state of the vehicle, refer to page 41.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3280
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Engine oil temperature

Display

- Cold engine: the pointer is at the low temperature end. Drive at moderate engine and vehicle speeds.
- Normal operating temperature: the pointer is in the middle or in the lower half of the temperature display.
- Hot engine: the pointer is at the high end of the temperature range. In addition, a Check Control message is displayed.

Additional information:

Coolant level, refer to page 314.

Indicator light in the instrument cluster

A red indicator light is displayed.

External temperature

General information

If the indicator drops to +37 °F/+3 °C or lower, a signal sounds.

A Check Control message is displayed.

There is an increased risk of ice on roads.

Safety information

Warning

Even at temperatures above +37 °F/+3 °C there can be a risk of icy roads, for instance on bridges or shady sections of the road. There is a risk of accident. Modify your driving style to the weather conditions at low temperatures.

Digital tachometer

General information

The digital tachometer is permanently displayed in the instrument cluster.

Adjusting the unit

Depending on the country version, it may be possible to set the unit for the digital tachometer.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Units"
5. "Distance"
6. Select the desired setting.

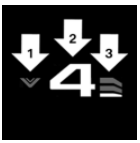
Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Display

The current speed is displayed in the instrument cluster.

M Steptronic Sport transmission: gear display with Drivelogic

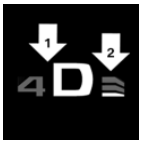
Sequential mode



- Gear shift indicator, arrow 1.
- Engaged gear, arrow 2.
- Selected Drivelogic program, arrow 3.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3281
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Drive mode



- Engaged gear together with a D, arrow 1.
- Selected Drivelogic program, arrow 2.

Driving dynamics systems

Concept

The driving dynamics system states are displayed in the instrument cluster.

Display

Symbols

Symbols	Description
	M Engine Dynamics Control, refer to page 138.
	Adaptive M chassis, refer to page 233.
	Servotronic, refer to page 192.

Range

Concept

The range indicates the distance that can still be covered with the current fuel level.

General information

The estimated range available with the remaining fuel is permanently displayed in the instrument cluster.

With a low remaining range, a Check Control message is briefly displayed. With a sporty driving style, for instance fast cornering, the engine function is not always ensured.

The Check Control message appears continuously below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km.

Safety information

NOTICE

With a driving range of less than 30 miles/50 km the engine may no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of damage to property. Refuel promptly.

Display

The current range is displayed as numerical value next to the fuel gauge.

Service notifications

Concept

The function displays the service notifications and the corresponding maintenance scopes.

General information

After switching on drive-ready state, the instrument cluster briefly displays available driving distance or time to the next scheduled maintenance.

A service advisor can read out the current service notifications from your vehicle key.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3282
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Some information on service notifications can also be shown on the BMW display key.

Display

Detailed information on service notifications

More information on the type of service required may be displayed on the Control Display.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Required services"

   Maintenance work and legally mandated inspections are displayed.
4. Select an entry to call up detailed information.

Symbols

Symbols	Description
OK	No service is currently required.
△	The time for recommended maintenance or a legally mandated inspection is approaching.
!	Service interval is exceeded.

Entering appointment dates

Enter the dates for the mandatory vehicle inspections.

Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Required services"
4. "Vehicle inspection"
5. "Date:"
6. Select the desired setting.

Gear shift indicator

Concept

The system recommends the most efficient gear for the current driving situation.

General information

The gear shift indicator is active in the sequential mode of the M Steptronic Sport transmission.

Displays

Symbol	Description
	Shift up to efficient gear.
	Shift down to efficient gear.

Speed Limit Info

Speed Limit Info

Concept

Speed Limit Info shows the currently valid speed limit in the instrument cluster and, if necessary, the Head-up Display.

General information

The camera in the area of the interior mirror detects traffic signs at the edge of the road as well as overhead sign posts.

Traffic signs with extra symbols are considered and compared with the vehicle's onboard data. The traffic sign will then be either displayed or ignored depending on the situation in the instrument cluster and the Head-up Display.

With the navigation system, the system takes into account the information stored in the navigation data and also displays speed limits present on routes without signs.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3283
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windshield.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Displaying Speed Limit Info

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, Speed Limit Info is displayed permanently in the instrument cluster or via iDrive.

Activating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument panel"
5. "Speed limit information"

Display

Speed Limit Info

Current speed limit.

Depending on the equipment, Speed Limit Info not available.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 37.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional and may provide incorrect information in the following situations:

- When traffic signs are fully or partially concealed by objects, stickers or paint.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- In areas not covered by the navigation system.
- When roads differ from the navigation, such as due to changes in road routing.
- In case of electronic traffic signs.
- When passing buses or trucks with traffic signs applied to them.
- If the traffic signs are non-conforming.
- When traffic signs that are valid for a parallel road are detected.
- In the presence of country-specific road signs and road configurations.

Selection lists

Concept

Lists can be displayed and, if necessary, used for certain functions in the instrument cluster or the Head-up Display.

- Entertainment source.
- Current audio source.
- List of most recent telephone calls.

If necessary, the corresponding menu will open on the Control Display.

Display

Depending on the equipment version, the list in the instrument cluster may differ from the illustration.

Displaying and using the list

Button	Function
	Change the entertainment source. Pressing the button again will close the currently displayed list.
	Show list of most recent telephone calls.
	Turn the thumbwheel to select the desired setting. Press the thumbwheel to confirm the setting. The currently selected list can be displayed in the instrument cluster by turning the thumbwheel.

Trip data

Concept

Values for the trip, such as the average consumption or trip miles, are displayed.

General information

The trip data can be displayed on the Control Display and in the instrument cluster.

The values can be displayed and reset depending on various intervals, such as after refueling.

Display on the Control Display

Overview

The following information is displayed depending on the equipment and the set interval and drive mode:

- Configured interval for displaying trip data.
- Average fuel consumption depending on the configured interval.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3285
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

- Average speed.
- Total time for shut off engine through the Auto Start/Stop function.
- Consumption history in form of a chart.

Displays

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Trip data"

Consumption history

The average consumption is shown in the consumption history in form of a chart based on the distance traveled.

Display in the instrument cluster

Depending on the equipment, information about the route can be displayed as widget in the instrument cluster.

The following information is displayed:

- Total mileage.
- Configured interval for displaying trip data.
- Distance traveled depending on the configured interval.
- Average speed.

Selecting and setting widgets in the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Widgets, refer to page 142.

Adjusting the display of the trip data

The intervals for the display of the trip data in the instrument cluster and on the Control Display are adjustable.

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Trip data"
4. "Data since"
5. Select the desired setting:

- "Start of trip ( )": the values are automatically reset approx. four hours after the vehicle has come to a standstill.
- "Refueling ( )": the values are automatically reset after refueling with a larger quantity of fuel.
- "Factory": Average consumption since delivery from the factory.

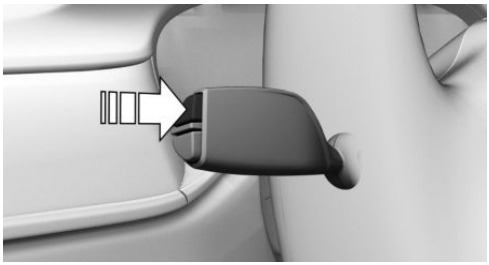
  The values since the time of the factory delivery are displayed.
- "Individual ( )": the values since the last manual reset are displayed. The values can be reset at any time.

Resetting average values manually

The following interval can be reset manually at any time: "Individual ( )".

With the button on the turn signal lever:

1. Continue to press the button on the turn signal lever until the widget for the trip data is selected.



2. Press and hold the button on the turn signal lever.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Trip data"
4. "Data since"
5. "Reset individual"

The average values and counters are reset. Once the average values and counters have

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3286
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

been reset, the following interval is automatically set: "Individual ( )".

Sport displays

Concept

The Sport displays especially support a sporty driving style.

Display on the Control Display

Overview

The following information is displayed:

- Torque.
- Power.

Displays

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Sport displays"

Display in the instrument cluster

The Sport displays can be displayed in form of a widget in the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Widgets in the instrument cluster, refer to page 142.

Vehicle status

General information

The status can be displayed and actions performed for several systems.

Opening the vehicle status

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"

Information at a glance

Symbols	Description
(!)	"Flat Tire Monitor": status of the run-flat tires, refer to page 298.
(!)	"Tire Pressure Monitor": status of the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 292.
	"Engine oil level": electronic oil measurement, refer to page 310.
⚠	"Check Control messages": displaying stored Check Control messages, refer to page 142.
	"Required services": displaying service notifications, refer to page 149.

Head-up Display

Concept

This system projects important information into the driver's field of vision, for instance the speed.

The driver can get information without averting his or her eyes from the road.

General information

Follow the information on cleaning the Head-up Display.

Overview

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3287
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Switching on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Head-up display"

Display

Overview

The following information is displayed on the Head-up Display:

- Vehicle speed.
- Navigation instructions.
- Check Control messages.
- Selection list in the instrument cluster.
- Driver assistance systems.

Some of this information is only displayed briefly as needed.

Selecting displays in the Head-up Display

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

M view

General information

In the M view, the displays on the Head-up Display switch from the standard view to a more sporty, M-specific view.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "M setup"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4. "Head-up displ."
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "M VIEW": in the selected configuration, the M View is always displayed in the Head-up Display.
   - "STANDARD": in the selected configuration, the standard view is always displayed in the Head-up Display.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the view in M Setup

In the M Setup, it is possible to make different settings for the Head-up Display.

1. "CAR"
2. "M setup"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4. "Head-up displ."
5. Select the desired setting.

Setting the brightness

The brightness is automatically adjusted to the ambient brightness.

The basic setting can be adjusted manually.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Brightness"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is set.
7. Press the Controller.

When the low beams are switched on, the brightness of the Head-up Display can be additionally influenced using the instrument lighting.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3288

Adjusting the height

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Height"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired height is reached.
7. Press the Controller.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

The height of the Head-up Display can also be stored using the memory function.

Setting the rotation

The Head-up Display view can be rotated.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Rotation"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is selected.
7. Press the Controller.

Additional settings

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "Speed Limit Assistance": access the settings for the speed assistant.
   - "Display infotainment lists in": set up if the selection lists are displayed in the instrument cluster or the Head-up Display.
   - "Reduced height": if not all of the information is in the driver's field of vision, the information can be displayed in the lower section of the Head-up Display.

Visibility of the display

The visibility of the displays in the Head-up Display is influenced by the following factors:

- Seat position.
- Objects on the cover of the Head-up Display.
- Sunglasses with certain polarization filters.
- Wet roads.
- Unfavorable light conditions.

If the image is distorted, have the basic settings checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Special windshield

The windshield is part of the system.

The shape of the windshield makes it possible to display a precise image.

A film in the windshield prevents double images from being generated.

For this reason, it is strongly suggested to have the special windshield replaced by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, if necessary.

Shift point indicator

Concept

The shift lights indicate the upshift point at which the best possible acceleration can be achieved.

General information

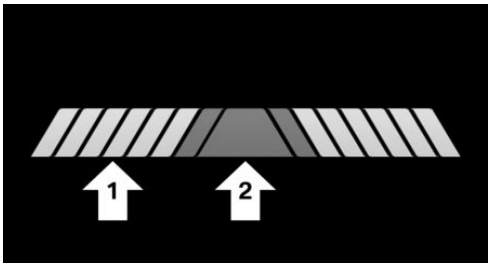
If the Head-up Display is switched on, the Shift Lights will be displayed in the Head-up Display.

Shift lights are only shown in the Head-up Display in the M view.

If the Head-up Display is switched off, the Shift Lights are displayed in the instrument cluster.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3289
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

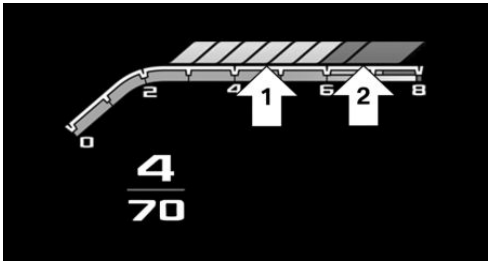
Shift lights in the instrument cluster



- Current engine speed is displayed in the tachometer.
- Arrow 1: successive yellow illuminated fields indicate the upcoming shift moment.
- Arrow 2: fields are illuminated in red. Do not wait any further to shift.

When the maximum RPM is reached, the entire display flashes. The fuel supply is reduced to protect the engine.

Shift point indicator in the Head-up Display



- Current engine speed is displayed in the tachometer.
- Arrow 1: successive yellow illuminated fields indicate the upcoming shift moment.
- Arrow 2: fields are illuminated in red. Do not wait any further to shift.

When the maximum speed is reached, the entire display flashes red and the supply of fuel is interrupted in order to protect the engine.

Lights

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Lights and lighting

Switches in the vehicle

The light switch element is located next to the steering wheel.

Symbol	Function
	Lights off. Daytime running lights.
	Parking lights.
	Automatic headlight control. Adaptive light functions.
	Low beams.
	Instrument lighting.
	Right roadside parking light.
	Left roadside parking light.

Automatic headlight control

Concept

The low beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness, for example in tunnels, in twilight or if there is precipitation.

General information

A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be switched on.

Activating

Position of switch:

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low beams are switched on.

System limits

The automatic headlight control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment of lighting conditions.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3291
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

For example, the sensors are unable to detect fog or hazy weather. In these situations, switch the lights on manually.

Parking lights, low beams and roadside parking lights

General information

Position of switch: 0 , ≡D , ≡D

If the driver's door is opened when the drive-ready state is switched off, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off after a period of time.

Parking lights

Switching on

Position of switch: ≡D

The vehicle is illuminated on all sides.

Do not use the parking lights for extended periods; otherwise, they might drain the battery and it would then be impossible to switch on drive-ready state.

Low beams

Switching on

Position of switch: ≡D

The low beams illuminate when drive-ready state is switched on.

Roadside parking lights

When the vehicle is parked, a one-sided roadside parking light can be switched on.

Button	Function
P≡	Right roadside parking light on/off.
≡P	Left roadside parking light on/off.

Welcome lights

General information

The exterior lighting is switched on automatically during unlocking. Depending on the equipment, the exterior lighting of the vehicle can be set individually.

Activating/deactivating

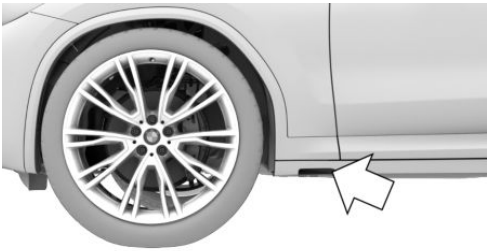
Position of switch: ≡D , ≡D

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Welcome and goodbye"

     When unlocking the vehicle, individual light functions are switched on for a limited time.
   - ▷ "Welcome Light Carpet"

     The area next to the vehicle is illuminated for a limited time.

LED light carpet



The light source is located in the position indicated.

Keep the light source clean and unobstructed.

Pathway lighting

General information

For the illumination of the vehicle's surroundings after exiting the vehicle, the exterior lighting can be switched on for a defined period of time.

Activating

After switching off the drive-ready state, briefly push the indicator lever forward.

Setting the duration

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "Pathway lighting"
5. Select the desired setting.
6. "OK"

Daytime running lights

General information

Switch position:

- ▷ 0 ,
- ▷ Depending on the national-market version:

The daytime running lights light up when drive-ready state is switched on.

Depending on the national-market version: after switching off the drive-ready state, the parking lights will illuminate in position .

Activating/deactivating

In some countries, daytime running lights are mandatory, so it may not be possible to deactivate the daytime running lights in front.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "Daytime driving lights"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Adaptive light functions

Concept

Adaptive light functions enable dynamic illumination of the roadway.

General information

The adaptive light functions may consist of one system or multiple systems, depending on the equipment version:

- ▷ Adaptive Light Control.
- ▷ Cornering light.

Activating

Position of switch:

The adaptive light functions are active when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Adaptive Light Control

General information

Depending on the steering angle and other parameters, the light from the headlight follows the course of the road.

To avoid blinding oncoming traffic, the Adaptive Light Control does not swivel to the opposite lane when the vehicle is at a standstill.

Cornering light

In tight curves, for instance on mountainous roads or when turning, an additional, cornering light is switched on that lights up the inside of

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3293
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

the curve when the vehicle is moving below a certain speed.

The cornering light is automatically switched on depending on the steering angle or, where applicable, the use of turn signals.

When driving in reverse, the cornering lights may be automatically switched on regardless of the steering angle.

Adaptive headlight range control

The adaptive headlight range control feature balances out acceleration and braking processes as well as the vehicle load conditions in order to avoid dazzling oncoming traffic. Illumination of the road is optimized.

High-beam Assistant

Concept

The high-beam Assistant detects other traffic participants early on and automatically switches the high beams on or off depending on the traffic situation.

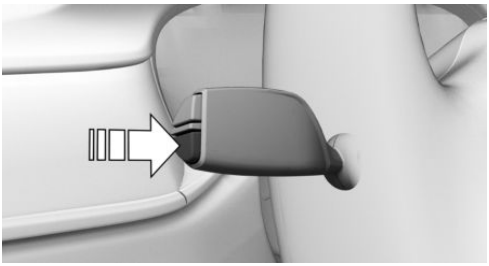
General information

The high-beam Assistant ensures that the high beams are switched on, whenever the traffic situation allows. In the low speed range, the high beams are not switched on by the system.

The system responds to light from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to ambient lighting, for instance in towns and cities.

The high beams can be switched on and off manually at any time.

Activating



Position of switch:

Press the button on the turn signal lever.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low beams are switched on.

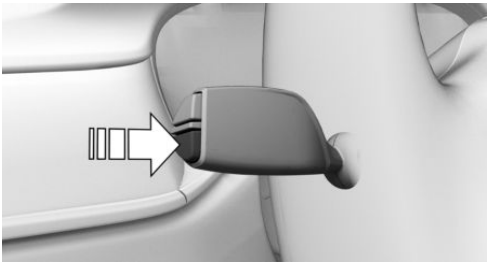
The headlights are automatically switched between low beams and high beams.

The blue indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up when the system switches on the high beams.

The high-beam Assistant is deactivated when manually switching the high beams on and off.

To reactivate the high-beam Assistant, press the button on the turn signal lever.

Deactivating



Press the button on the turn signal lever.

Sensitivity of the high-beam Assistant

General information

The sensitivity of the high-beam Assistant can be adjusted.

Safety information

Warning

If adjustments have been made or the sensitivity has been modified, oncoming traffic may be momentarily blinded. There is a risk of accident. If adjustments have been made and the sensitivity has been modified, make sure that oncoming traffic is not momentarily blinded. Switch off the high beams manually if required.

Adjusting the sensitivity

Pull the turn signal lever for approximately 10 seconds. The system responds more sensitively.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Resetting the sensitivity

Pull the turn signal lever again for approx. 10 seconds.

The sensitivity of the high-beam Assistant is reset to the factory settings.

System limits

The high-beam Assistant cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of when to use the high beams. In situation that require this, therefore switch off manually.

The system is not fully functional in the following situations, and driver intervention may be necessary:

- In very unfavorable weather conditions, such as fog or heavy precipitation.
- When detecting poorly-lit road users such as pedestrians, cyclists, horseback riders and wagons; when driving close to train or ship traffic; or at animal crossings.
- In tight curves, on hilltops or in depressions, in crossing traffic or half-obscured oncoming traffic on highways.
- In poorly-lit towns and cities or in the presence of highly reflective signs.
- When the windshield in front of the interior mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.

Instrument lighting

Functional requirement

The parking lights or low beams must be switched on to adjust the brightness.

Adjusting

Adjust the brightness with the thumbwheel.

Interior lights

General information

Depending on the equipment version, interior lights, footwell lights, entry lights, ambient lighting, and speaker lighting are automatically controlled.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3295
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

Interior lights

Reading lights

Switching the interior lights on/off

Press the button.

To switch off permanently: press the button and hold for approx. 3 seconds.

The interior lights in the rear of the vehicle can be switched on and off independently. The button is located in the rear roofliner.

Switching the reading lights on/off

Press the button.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the reading lights are located next to the interior lights in the front and rear.

Ambient light

General information

Depending on the equipment version, lighting can be adjusted for some lights in the car's interior.

Switching on/off

The ambient light is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked, and switched off when the vehicle is locked.

If the ambient light was deactivated via iDrive, it will not be switched on when the vehicle is unlocked.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Ambient lighting"

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Selecting the color scheme

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Color"
5. Select the desired setting.

Setting the brightness

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Brightness"
5. Select the desired setting.

Dimmed while driving

Some lights of the interior lighting are dimmed when the vehicle is driven in the dark.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Dimmed for night driving"

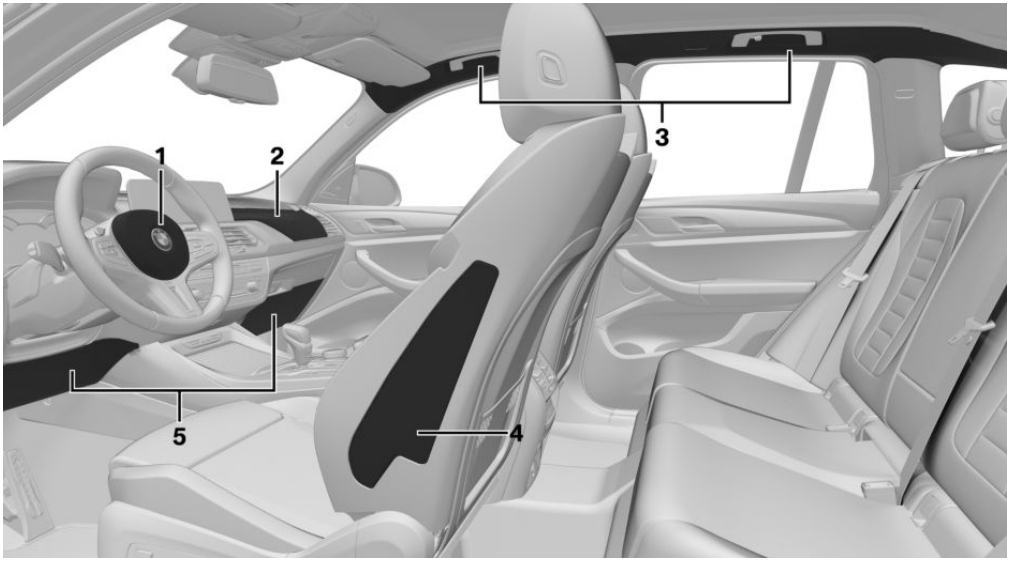
The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Safety

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Airbags



1 Front airbag, driver
2 Front airbag, front passenger
3 Head airbag
4 Side airbag
5 Knee airbag

Front airbags

Front airbags help protect the driver and the front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which safety belts alone would not provide adequate protection.

Side airbag

In the event of a side impact, the side airbag protects the side of the body in the chest and lap area.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3297
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Head airbag

In the event of a side impact, the head airbag protects the head.

Ejection Mitigation

The head airbag system is designed as an ejection mitigation countermeasure to reduce the likelihood of ejections of vehicle occupants through side windows during rollovers or side impact events.

Knee airbag

The knee airbag protects the legs in the event of a frontal impact.

Protective effect

General information

Airbags are not triggered in every impact situation, e.g., in less severe accidents.

Information on optimum effect of the airbags

Warning

If the seat position is incorrect or the deployment area of the airbags is impaired, the airbag system cannot provide protection as intended and may cause additional injuries due to triggering. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Follow the information on achieving the optimum protective effect of the airbag system.

- Keep a distance from the airbags.
- Always grasp the steering wheel on the steering wheel rim. Hold your hands at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions, to keep the risk of injury to your hands or arms as low as possible when the airbag is triggered.
- Adjust seat and steering wheel so that hands can be crossed over the steering wheel. Select the settings so that the shoulder rests against the backrest when crossing the hands and the upper body is as far back as possible while still maintaining a comfortable grip on the steering wheel.
- Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e., keeps his or her feet and legs in the floor area and does not support them on the dashboard.
- Make sure that occupants keep their heads away from the side airbag.
- There should be no additional persons, animals or objects between an airbag and a person.
- Dashboard and windshield on the front passenger side must stay clear - do not attach adhesive labels or coverings and do not attach brackets or cables, for instance for GPS devices or mobile phones.
- Do not apply adhesive materials to the airbag cover panels, do not cover them or modify them in any way.
- Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area.
- Do not attach slip covers, seat cushions or other objects to the front passenger seat that are not specifically suited for seats with integrated side airbags.
- Do not hang pieces of clothing, such as jackets, over the backrests.
- Never modify either the individual components or the wiring in the airbag system. This also applies to steering wheel covers, the dashboard, and the seats.
- Do not remove the airbag system.

Even when you follow all instructions very closely, injury from contact with the airbags cannot be fully ruled out in certain situations.

The ignition and inflation noise may lead to short-term and, in most cases, temporary hearing impairment in sensitive occupants.

Vehicle modifications for a person with disabilities may affect the air bag system; contact BMW Customer Relations for further information.

Warnings and information on the airbags are also found on the sun visors.

Functional readiness of the airbag system

Safety information

Warning

Individual components can be hot after triggering of the airbag system. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch individual components.

Warning

Improperly executed work can lead to failure, malfunction or unintentional triggering of the airbag system. In the case of a malfunction, the airbag system might not trigger as intended despite the accident severity. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Have the airbag system checked, repaired, dismantled and scrapped by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Display in the instrument cluster

When drive-ready state is switched on, the warning light in the instrument cluster lights up briefly and thereby indicates the function readiness of the entire airbag system and the belt tensioners.

Malfunction

▷ Warning light does not come on when drive-ready state is switched on.

▷ The warning light lights up continuously.

Have the system checked.

Strength of the driver's and front-seat passenger airbag

General information

The explosive power that activates driver's/front-seat passenger airbags very much depends on the positions of the driver's/front passenger seat.

To maintain the accuracy of this function over the long term, calibrate the front seats as soon as a respective message appears on the Control Display.

Calibrating the front seats

Warning

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

A corresponding message appears on the Control Display.

1. Press the switch and move the respective seat all the way forward, until it stops.
2. Press the switch forward again. The seat still moves forward slightly.
3. Readjust the seat to the desired position.

The calibration procedure is completed when the message on the Control Display disappears.

If the message continues to be displayed, repeat the calibration.

If the message does not disappear after a repeat calibration, have the system checked as soon as possible.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3299
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Automatic deactivation of the front-seat passenger airbags

Concept

The system reads if the front passenger seat is occupied by measuring the human body's resistance.

Front, knee, and side airbag on the front passenger's side are activated or deactivated.

General information

Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, refer to the safety information and instructions for children on the front passenger seat, see Children.

Safety information

Warning

To ensure the front-seat passenger airbag function, the system must be able to detect whether a person is sitting in the front passenger seat. The entire seat cushion area must be used for this purpose. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the front passenger keeps his or her feet in the floor area.

Malfunction of the automatic deactivation system

When transporting older children and adults, the front-seat passenger airbags may be deactivated in certain sitting positions. In this case, the indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up.

In this case, change the sitting position so that the front-seat passenger airbags are activated and the indicator light goes out.

If it is not possible to activate the airbags, have the person sit in the rear.

To enable correct recognition of the occupied seat cushion:

- Do not attach covers, cushions, ball mats or other items to the front passenger seat unless they are specifically determined to be safe for use on the front passenger seat.
- Do not place any electronic devices on the front passenger seat if a child restraint system is to be installed on it.
- Do not place objects under the seat that can push against the seat from below.
- No moisture in or on the seat.

Indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbags

The indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbag in the roofliner indicates the operating state of the front-seat passenger airbag.

The light indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.

After drive-ready state is switched on, the light briefly lights up and then indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.

- The indicator light lights up when a child is properly seated in a child restraint system or when the seat is empty. The airbags on the front passenger side are not activated.
- The indicator light does not light up when, for instance a correctly seated person of sufficient size is detected on the seat. The airbags on the front passenger side are activated.

Detected child restraint systems

The system generally detects children seated in a child restraint system, particularly in child restraint systems required by NHTSA at the point in time when the vehicle was manufactured. After installing a child restraint system, make sure

that the indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up. This indicates that the child restraint system has been detected and the front-seat passenger airbags are not activated.

Intelligent Safety

Concept

Intelligent Safety enables central operation of the driver assistance systems.

General information

Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, Intelligent Safety consists of one or more systems that can help prevent an imminent collision.

- Front collision mitigation.
- Evasion Assistant.
- Person warning with City braking function.
- Lane departure warning.
- Blind spot collision warning.
- Side collision mitigation.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Switching on/off

Some Intelligent Safety systems are automatically active after every departure. Some Intelligent Safety systems activate according to the last setting.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3301
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly. The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions, for instance setting for warning time.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Front collision mitigation

Concept

The system may prevent some accidents. In the event of an accident, the system may reduce impact speed.

The system sounds a warning before an imminent collision and activates brakes independently, if needed.

General information

Sensors detect the traffic situation.

Intersection collision warning when equipped with a radar sensor: in addition, a warning is issued at intersections and junctions if a risk of collision with crossing traffic is detected.

The approach control warning is available even if cruise control has been deactivated.

With the vehicle approaching another vehicle intentionally, the approach control warning and brake intervention are delayed in order to avoid false system reactions.

The system issues a two-phase warning of a possible risk of collision with vehicles at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h. The timing of warnings may vary with the current driving situation.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3302
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windshield.
- With radar sensor: front radar sensor.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is automatically active when the vehicle is turned on.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Manual switching off

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and Warnings"
5. "Forward Collision Mitigation"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - "Early"
   - "Medium"
   - "Late": only acute warnings are displayed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3303
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

The selected time is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Warning with braking function

Display

A warning symbol appears in the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display if a collision with a detected vehicle is imminent.

Symbol	Measure
	Symbol lights up red: prewarning. Brake and increase distance.
	Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.
 	Intersection collision warning: Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning when vehicles cross your direction of travel. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Prewarning

This warning is provided, for instance when there is impending danger of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small.

If a prewarning is provided, respond by braking as warranted.

Acute warning with braking function

An acute warning is displayed in case of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another object at a high differential speed.

Intervene in the case of an acute warning. If an acute warning is provided, the system may provide assistance, such as through braking, when there is risk of collision.

Acute warnings may be provided even when there has been no prior warning.

Brake intervention, City braking function

The warning prompts the driver to intervene. If a warning is active, the maximum braking force is used when the brake is applied. The brake pedal must be applied sufficiently quickly and forcefully.

The system may also assist in braking if there is a risk of collision.

When the vehicle is traveling at a low speed, the vehicle may come to a complete stop.

The brake intervention takes place up to approx. 50 mph/80 km/h.

The brake intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

The system's ability to detect objects may be limited in some circumstances. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the limitations of the system and actively intervene as warranted.

With radar sensor: brake intervention

The warning prompts the driver to intervene. If a warning is active, the maximum braking force is used when the brake is applied. The brake pedal must be applied sufficiently quickly and forcefully.

The system may also assist in braking if there is a risk of collision.

The vehicle can be decelerated to a standstill.

The brake intervention occurs only if driving stability has not been restricted, for instance by deactivating the DSC Dynamic Stability Control.

At speeds above approx. 130 mph/210 km/h, the brake intervention occurs as a brief braking pressure. No automatic delay occurs.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3304

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

The brake intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Intersection collision warning: brake intervention is not performed in the event of cross traffic.

The system's ability to detect objects may be limited in some circumstances. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the limitations of the system and actively intervene as warranted.

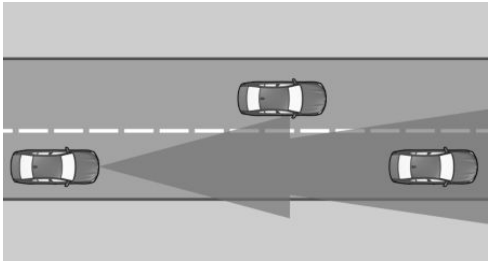
System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Detection range



The system's detection potential is limited.

Only objects that are detected by the system are taken into account.

Thus, a system reaction might not come or might come late.

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- Slow moving vehicles when you approach them at high speed.
- Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or sharply decelerating vehicles.
- Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.
- Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.
- Intersection collision warning: crossing vehicles if their speed is higher than your own speed.

Upper speed limit

If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is deactivated temporarily. When the vehicle slows down to below this speed, the system is reactivated.

Intersection collision warning: the vehicle responds to crossing traffic if its own speed is below approx. 40 mph/65 km/h.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 37.
- Radar sensors, refer to page 38.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- In tight curves.
- If the driving stability control systems are limited or deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.

Warning sensitivity

The more sensitive the warning settings are, for example the warning time, the more warnings are displayed. Therefore, there may also be an excess of premature or unjustified warnings and reactions.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3305
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Evasion Assistant

Concept

The system supports the driver in making evasive maneuvers in certain situations, such as when obstacles suddenly appear.

General information

The system issues a warning and intervenes to support the driver if a lateral evasive maneuver is possible. Sensors monitor and detect the clearance around the vehicle. If the system identifies space alongside the vehicle, it supports an evasive maneuver begun by the driver by safely providing targeted steering support.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windshield.
- Front radar sensor.
- Radar sensors, side, front.
- Radar sensors, side, rear.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Functional requirements

- Front collision mitigation is switched on.

  Front collision mitigation, refer to page 169.
- Sensors detect sufficient clearance around the vehicle.

Switching on/off

The system is automatically active when the vehicle is turned on.

Warning with evasion support

Display in the instrument cluster

A warning symbol appears in the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display if a collision with a detected vehicle is imminent.

Symbol	Measure
	Symbol lights up red: prewarning. Brake and increase distance.
	Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Acute warning with evasion support

An acute warning is displayed when there is an imminent danger of collision due to the vehicle approaching another object at a high speed.

Intervene in the case of an acute warning. The system is designed to provide assistance by taking evasive action when there is a risk of collision.

Acute warnings may be provided even when there has been no prior warning.

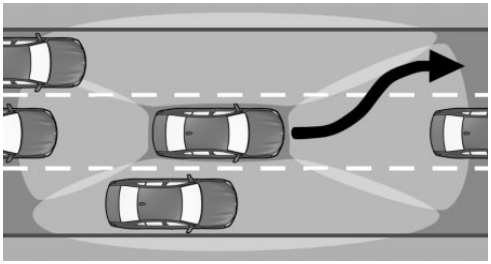
System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Detection range



The system's detection potential is limited.

Only objects that are detected by the system are taken into account.

Thus, a system reaction might not come or might come late.

The following situations may not be detected, for example:

- Slow moving vehicles when you approach them at high speed.
- Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or sharply decelerating vehicles.
- Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.
- Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 37.
- Radar sensors, refer to page 38.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- In tight curves.
- If the driving stability control systems are limited or deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.

Person warning with City braking function

Concept

The system may prevent some accidents with pedestrians. When driving at city speeds, the system will issue a warning if there is imminent risk of a collision with pedestrians, and support with a braking function.

General information

Sensors detect the traffic situation.

The system is active at speeds of approx. 3 mph/5 km/h up to approx. 40 mph/65 km/h.

The system reacts to people who are within the detection range of the system.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3307
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Sensors

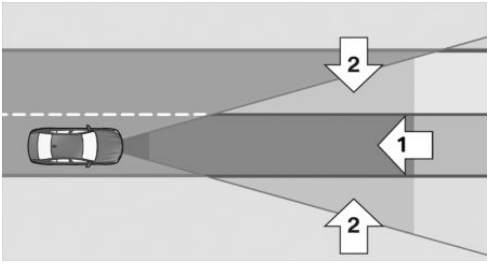
The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windshield.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Detection range



The detection area in front of the vehicle is divided into two areas:

- Central area, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.
- Expanded area, arrows 2, to the right and left of the central area.

A collision is imminent if pedestrians are located within the central area. A warning is issued about pedestrians who are located within the extended area only if they are moving in the direction of the central area.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is automatically active when the vehicle is turned on.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3308
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Manual switching off

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Warning with braking function

Display

If a collision with a detected person is imminent, a warning symbol appears on the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display.

The red symbol is displayed and a signal sounds.

Intervene immediately by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

Brake intervention

The warning prompts the driver to intervene. While a warning is active, the maximum braking force is used when the brake is applied. In order to activate the Brake Assistant function, the brakes must be applied sufficiently quickly and forcefully.

If there is a risk of collision, the system may also assist with brake intervention.

When the vehicle is traveling at a low speed, the vehicle may come to a complete stop.

The brake intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

The system's ability to detect objects may be limited in some circumstances. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the limitations of the system and actively intervene as warranted.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Detection range

The system's detection potential is limited.

Thus, a warning might not be issued or be issued late.

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- Partially covered pedestrians.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3309
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

- Pedestrians that are not detected as such because of the viewing angle or contour.
- Pedestrians outside of the detection range.
- Pedestrians having a body size less than 32 in/80 cm.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 37.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional or may not be available in the following situations:

- If the driving stability control systems are deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.

Lane departure warning

Concept

The lane departure warning alerts when the vehicle on roads with lane markings is about to leave the lane.

General information

This camera-based system warns starting at a minimum speed.

The minimum speed is country-specific and is displayed in the menu for the intelligent Safety systems.

Warnings are issued by means of a steering wheel vibration. The severity of the steering wheel vibration can be adjusted.

The time of the warning may vary depending on the current driving situation.

The system does not provide a warning if the turn signal is set before leaving the lane.

Vehicles with side collision mitigation: if in the speed range up to 130 mph/210 km/h a lane marking is crossed, the system intervenes with a brief active steering intervention in addition to vibrating. The system thus helps keep the vehicle in the lane.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing road and traffic safety. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate. Do not jerk the steering wheel in response to a warning.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Functional requirement

The camera must detect the lane markings for the lane departure warning to be active.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windshield.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The lane departure warning activates automatically after departure if the function was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Manual switching off

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and Warnings"
5. "Lane Departure Warning"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - "Always": the system issues a warning whenever a hazardous situation is detected.
   - "Reduced": some warnings are suppressed depending on the situation, for instance during passing without a turn signal or when purposely driving over lane markings in curves.
   - "Off": no warnings are issued.

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Steering Wheel Feedback"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3311
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all Intelligent Safety systems and stored for the driver profile currently used.

Vehicles with side collision mitigation: switch steering intervention on/off

The steering intervention can be switched on and off separately for blind spot collision warning and lane departure warning.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and Warnings"
5. "Lane Departure Warning"
6. "Steering intervention"

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Display in the instrument cluster

The symbol illuminates green: at least one lane marking was detected and warnings can be issued.

Warning function

If you leave the lane

If you leave the lane and if a lane marking has been detected, the steering wheel vibrates in accordance with the steering wheel vibration setting.

When the turn signal is switched on before a lane charge, a warning is not issued.

With side collision mitigation

If in the speed range up to 130 mph/210 km/h a lane marking is crossed, the system intervenes with a brief active steering intervention in addition to vibrating. The steering intervention helps keep the vehicle in the lane. The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

Warning signal

Depending on the equipment version: in the event of multiple active steering interventions by the system within 3 minutes without the driver's intervention at the steering wheel, an acoustic warning will sound. A short warning signal will sound at the second steering intervention. Beginning with the third steering intervention, an continuous warning will sound.

In addition, a Check Control message is displayed.

The warning signal and Check Control message are an encouragement to pay closer attention to the lane.

End of warning

For instance, the warning will be canceled in the following situations:

- Automatically after approx. 3 seconds.
- When returning to your own lane.
- When braking hard.
- When using the turn signal.
- If DSC Dynamic Stability Control intervenes.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3312
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 37.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane markings such as in construction areas.
- When lane markings are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
- When lane markings are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.

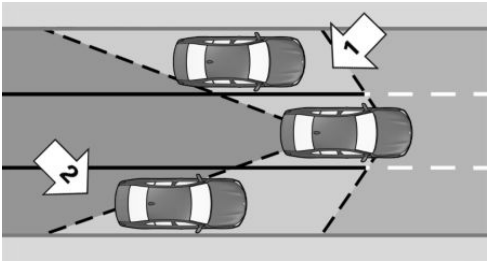
A Check Control message may be displayed when the system is not fully functional.

Blind spot collision warning

Concept

Blind spot collision warning detects vehicles in the blind spot or vehicles approaching from behind in the adjacent lane. A warning is issued in various gradations in these situations.

General information



Radar sensors monitor the area behind and next to the vehicle when traveling faster than a minimum speed.

The minimum speed is country-specific and is displayed in the menu for the intelligent Safety systems.

The system indicates whether there are vehicles in the blind spot, arrow 1, or approaching from behind in the adjacent lane, arrow 2.

The light in the exterior mirror lights up dimmed.

Before you change lanes after setting the turn signal, the system issues a warning in the situations described above.

The light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

Vehicles with side collision mitigation: at speeds between 45 mph/70 km/h and 130 mph/210 km/h, the system can intervene with a brief active steering intervention and help to return the vehicle into the lane.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3313
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Radar sensors, side, rear.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

Blind spot collision warning is automatically activated after departure if the function was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Manual switching off

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3314

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Setting the warning time

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and Warnings"
5. "Active Blind Spot Detection"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Early"
   - ▷ "Medium"
   - ▷ "Late"
   - ▷ "Off": with this setting, no warning is output.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Steering Wheel Feedback"
5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all Intelligent Safety systems and stored for the driver profile currently used.

Vehicles with side collision mitigation: switching steering intervention on/off

The steering intervention can be switched on and off separately for blind spot collision warning and lane departure warning.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and Warnings"
5. "Active Blind Spot Detection"
6. "Steering intervention"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Warning function

Light in the exterior mirror

Prewarning

The dimmed light in the exterior mirror indicates when there are vehicles in the blind spot or approaching from behind.

Acute warning

When the turn signal is switched on while a vehicle is in the critical zone, the steering wheel vibrates briefly and the light in the exterior mirror flashes brightly.

The warning stops when the other vehicle has left the critical area or the turn signal has been deactivated.

Vehicles with side collision mitigation

When at speeds between 45 mph/70 km/h and 130 mph/210 km/h the vibrating steering wheel is ignored and the lane marking crossed, the system intervenes with a brief active steering intervention. The steering intervention helps return the vehicle into the lane. The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

Flashing of the light

A flashing of the light during vehicle unlocking serves as system self-test.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3315
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Upper speed limit

If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is deactivated temporarily.

If the vehicle speed falls below approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system once again responds according to the setting.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Radar sensors, refer to page 38.
- On vehicles with side collision warning: cameras, refer to page 37.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
- If the bumper is dirty, iced up, or covered, for instance by stickers.

For vehicles with side collision mitigation, the steering intervention can be limited, for instance in the following situation:

- In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane markings such as in construction areas.
- When lane markings are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- When lane markings are not white.
- When lane markings are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- If the camera is impaired.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.

A Check Control message is displayed when the system is not fully functional.

Displaying warnings

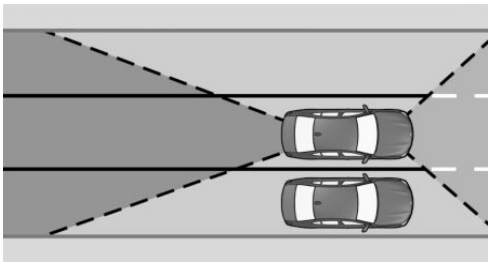
Depending on the selected warning settings, e.g., warning time, more or fewer warnings can be displayed. However, there may also be an excess of premature warnings of critical situations.

Side collision mitigation

Concept

The system helps to avoid imminent side collisions.

General information



Radar sensors monitor the area next to the vehicle in the speed range from approx. 45 mph/70 km/h to approx. 130 mph/210 km/h.

The front camera determines the lane marking positions.

If, for instance another vehicle is detected next to the vehicle and if there is a risk of collision with this vehicle, the system helps avoid the collision. The system will carry out an active steering intervention.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Functional requirement

The camera must detect the lane markings for the side collision mitigation with steering intervention to be active.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windshield.
- Radar sensors, side, front.
- Radar sensors, side, rear.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The side collision mitigation activates automatically after departure if the function was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3317
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Manual switching off

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Steering Wheel Feedback"
5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all Intelligent Safety systems and stored for the driver profile currently used.

Warning function

Light in the exterior mirror

Acute warning

If there is a risk of collision, the light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

If necessary, an active steering intervention then takes place to prevent collisions and maintain the vehicle within its own lane.

The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 37.
- Radar sensors, refer to page 38.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
- In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane markings such as in construction areas.
- When lane markings are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- When lane markings are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.

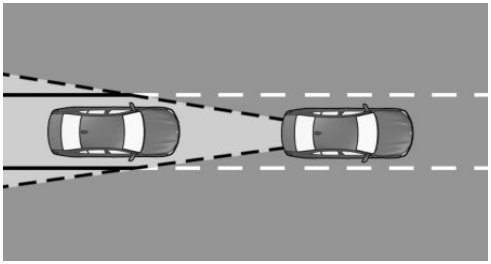
A Check Control message is displayed when the system is not fully functional.

Rear collision preparation

Concept

The system reacts to vehicles approaching from behind.

General information



Radar sensors monitor the area behind the vehicle.

When a vehicle approaches from the rear at a certain speed, the system responds as follows:

- Active Protection: when a collision seems to be unavoidable, PreCrash functions are triggered.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

⚠ Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Radar sensors, side, rear.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Switching on/off

The system is automatically active when the vehicle is turned on.

The system is deactivated in the following situations:

- When driving in reverse.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3319
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Radar sensors, refer to page 38.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

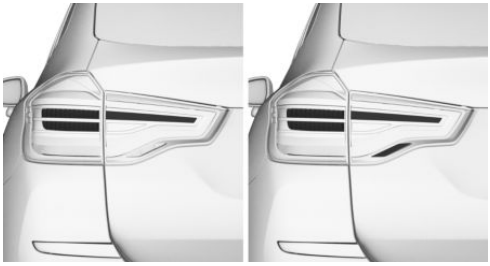
- When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- When the approaching vehicle approaches slowly.

Brake force display

Concept

Additional brake lights indicate emergency braking to the traffic behind. This can reduce the risk of a rear-end collision.

General information



- During normal brake application, the outer brake lights light up.
- During heavy brake application, the inner brake lights additionally light up.

Active Protection

Concept

Active Protection prepares occupants and the vehicle for a possible accident in critical driving or collision situations.

General information

Active Protection consists of various PreCrash functions, which can vary depending on the equipment.

The system is used to detect certain critical driving situations that might lead to an accident. This includes the following critical driving situations:

- Emergency stop.
- Severe understeering.
- Severe oversteering.

Certain functions of several systems can, within the system limits, lead to Active Protection triggering:

- Front collision mitigation: automatic brake intervention.
- Front collision mitigation: Brake Assistant.
- Rear collision preparation: detection of imminent rear collisions.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to the system limits, critical situation could not be detected reliably or in time. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3320
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Function

When the safety belt is fastened, the driver's and passenger's belt straps are automatically tightened once after driving away.

In accident-critical situations, the following individual functions become active as needed:

- Automatic pretensioning of the front safety belts.
- Automatic window closing up to a narrow gap.
- Automatic closing of the panoramic glass sunroof, including sun protection.

After a critical driving situation without an accident, the front safety belts are loosened again.

If the belt tension does not loosen automatically, stop the vehicle and unbuckle the safety belt using the red button in the buckle. Fasten the safety belt before continuing on your trip.

All other systems can be restored to the desired setting.

PostCrash – iBrake

Concept

In the event of an accident, the system can bring the vehicle to a halt automatically without intervention by the driver in certain situations. This can reduce the risk of a further collision and the consequences thereof.

At standstill

After coming to a halt, the brake is released automatically.

Harder vehicle braking

In certain situations, it can be necessary to bring the vehicle to a halt more quickly than the Brake Assistant allows.

To do this, quickly apply extra force to the brake. For a brief period, the braking pressure will be higher than the braking pressure that is achieved by the automatic braking function. Automatic braking is interrupted.

Interrupting automatic braking

It can be necessary to interrupt automatic braking in certain situations, for instance for an evasive maneuver.

Interrupt automatic braking:

- By pressing the brake pedal.
- By pressing the accelerator pedal.

Fatigue alert

General information

The system can detect decreasing alertness or fatigue of the driver during long, monotonous trips, for instance on highways. In this situation, it is recommended that the driver takes a break.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing one's physical state. An increasing lack of alertness or fatigue may not be detected or not be detected in time. There is a risk of accident. Make sure that the driver is rested and alert. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions.

Function

The system is switched on each time drive-ready state is switched on.

After travel has begun, the system monitors certain aspects of the driver's behavior, so that decreasing alertness or fatigue can be detected.

This procedure takes the following criteria into account:

- Personal driving style, for instance steering behavior.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3321
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

- Driving conditions, for instance time, length of trip.

Starting at approx. 43 mph/70 km/h, the system is active and can also display a recommendation to take a break.

Break recommendation

Adjusting

The fatigue alert is active automatically with each switching on of drive-ready state and can thus display a break recommendation.

The break recommendation can also be switched on or off and adjusted via iDrive.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Fatigue and Focus Alert"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "Standard": the break recommendation is made with a defined value.
   - "Sensitive": the break recommendation is issued earlier.
   - "Off": no break recommendation is made.

Display

If the driver becomes less alert or fatigued, a message is displayed in the Control Display with the recommendation to take a break.

During the display, various settings can be selected.

After a break, another recommendation to take a break cannot be displayed until after approximately 45 minutes.

System limits

The function may be limited in the following situations and may issue an incorrect warning or no warning at all:

- When the clock is set incorrectly.
- When the vehicle speed is mainly below about 43 mph/70 km/h.
- With a sporty driving style, such as during rapid acceleration or when cornering fast.
- In active driving situations, such as when changing lanes frequently.
- When the road surface is poor.
- In the event of strong side winds.

The system is reset approx. 45 minutes after parking the vehicle, for instance in the case of a break during longer trips on highways.

Driving stability control systems

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Antilock Braking System ABS

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during braking.

The vehicle maintains its steering power even during full brake applications, which increases the active safety.

ABS is operational every time you start the engine.

Brake assistant

When you apply the brakes rapidly, this system automatically boosts the vehicle braking assistance to the furthest possible extent. It reduces the braking distance to a minimum during an emergency stop. This system utilizes all of the capabilities provided by the Antilock Brake System ABS.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal for the duration of the emergency stop.

Adaptive brake assistant

In combination with Active Cruise Control ACC, this system ensures that the brakes respond even more rapidly when braking in critical situations.

Drive-off assistant

Concept

This system supports driving off on uphill grades.

Driving off

1. Hold the vehicle in place with the foot brake.
2. Release the foot brake and drive off without delay.

After the foot brake is released, the vehicle is held in place for approx. 2 seconds.

Depending on the vehicle loading, the vehicle may roll back slightly.

M Setup

Concept

Buttons M1 or M2 on the steering wheel can be used to store individual settings for the vehicle and call them up again as needed.

General information

The buttons are preset with the correct configuration for the vehicle and can be adjusted individually.

When the drive-ready state is switched on after the idle state, an efficient vehicle state is active by default. The configuration via the buttons is deactivated.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3323
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Safety information

Warning

Depending on the setting, the DSC may only be available to a limited extent or may not be available when the M1 or M2 button is activated. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Heed the settings for DSC in iDrive and react actively, if necessary. Modify your driving style and react, if necessary.

Settings

The settings for the following systems can be stored in buttons M1 or M2:

Symbol	Meaning
	"Engine": programs of M Engine Dynamics Control, refer to page 138.
	"Transmission": shift modes and Drivelogic programs. Drivelogic, refer to page 136.
	"Chassis": programs of Adaptive M suspension, refer to page 233.
	"Steering": programs of Servotronic, refer to page 192.
	"Head-up displ.": views of the Head-up Display, refer to page 154.
	"DSC": DSC Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 193, and M Dynamic Mode MDM, refer to page 193.
	"M xDrive": programs of M xDrive, refer to page 196.
	"Start/Stop": Auto Start/Stop function, refer to page 122.
	"Sound Control": Sound Control, refer to page 139.

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

Buttons	Function
OFF	Dynamic Stability Control DSC, M Dynamic Mode MDM.
	M Engine Dynamics Control.
	Adaptive M chassis.
	Servotronic.
	Drivelogic.
SETUP	"M setup".

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
M1	M1.
M2	M2.

Configuration

Via buttons

1. Set the required function with the corresponding button in the center console. This

deactivates currently active configuration, if applicable.

2. Press and hold button M1 or M2 on the steering wheel.

   The settings are stored.

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "M setup"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4. Select the desired setting.
5. Select the desired channel.

The individual settings are stored for the configuration currently in use.

With activated M1 or M2 configuration, any changes to the setting are immediately applied.

Activating

Press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:

▷ Activate M1.

▷ Activate M2.

If DSC OFF or MDM is set under "Configure M1" or "Configure M2", a message is displayed in the instrument cluster. This message is confirmed by pressing the button again.

Deactivating

Press the corresponding button on the steering wheel.

Resetting the configuration

Individual settings can be reset to default values.

1. "CAR"
2. "M setup"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4. "Reset"
5. "Yes"

To cancel resetting: "No"

Display in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Description
	Symbol lights up: corresponding configuration is activated.
	Symbol lights up and additional lettering "Cannot be activated" appears: configuration cannot be activated due to the current dynamic driving situation. Reactivate configuration when the lettering goes out.

Servotronic

Concept

Servotronic is a speed-dependent power steering function.

The system provides the steering force with more support at low speeds than at higher ones. This makes it easier to park, for instance, and makes steering firmer when driving at faster speeds.

Furthermore, the steering force adapts according to the program, so that a firm, sporty feel or a comfortable steering response is conveyed.

General information

The system offers several different steering force tunings.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3325
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Program	Steering force tuning
"COMFORT"	Low steering forces, good roadway feedback.
"SPORT"	Medium steering forces, enhanced roadway feedback.
"SPORT PLUS"	High steering forces, maximum roadway feedback.

Selecting a channel

Using the button

Press the button repeatedly until the desired program is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Via iDrive

It is possible to configure the required program for buttons M1 or M2.

1. "CAR"
2. "M setup"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4. "Steering"
5. Select the desired channel.

   The setting is immediately applied with active M1 or M2 configuration.

To activate the desired configuration with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:

▷ M1

▷ M2

Display in the instrument cluster

Servotronic with selected program with activated display of the System states of the driving dynamics.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control

Concept

Within the physical limits, the system helps to keep the vehicle on a steady course by reducing drive power and by braking the individual wheels.

General information

DSC detects the following unstable driving conditions, for instance:

- ▷ Fishtailing, which can lead to oversteering.
- ▷ Loss of traction of the front wheels, which can lead to understeering.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

⚠ Warning

When driving with a roof load, for instance with roof-mounted luggage rack, the vehicle's center of gravity is higher, which increases the risk of the vehicle tipping in critical driving situa-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3326
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

tions. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Do not deactivate DSC Dynamic Stability Control when driving with roof load.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

DSC OFF

Deactivating/activating DSC

General information

When DSC is deactivated, driving stability is reduced during acceleration and when driving in curves.

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

Deactivating DSC

Hold the button down until DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster and the DSC OFF indicator light is illuminated.

M xDrive appears on the Control Display. The required program can be selected.

Additional information:

M xDrive, refer to page 196.

Activating DSC

Press the button.

DSC OFF and the DSC OFF indicator light go out.

Display

In the instrument cluster

When DSC is deactivated, DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Indicator/warning lights

The indicator light lights up: DSC is deactivated.

The indicator light flashes: DSC controls the drive and braking forces.

The indicator light lights up: DSC has malfunctioned.

M Dynamic Mode MDM

Concept

M Dynamic Mode MDM makes it possible to drive on a dry roadway with high longitudinal and transverse acceleration but with limited vehicle stability.

Only in the absolute limit area does the system intervene for stabilization by reducing the engine power and by braking interventions on the wheels. In this driving condition, additional steering corrections may be necessary.

General information

When M Dynamic Mode MDM is activated, the active M xDrive program is: "4WD SPORT"

You may find it useful to briefly activate MDM under the following special circumstances:

- When driving in slush or on uncleared, snow-covered roads.
- When freeing vehicle from deep snow or driving off from loose ground.
- When driving with tire chains.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3327
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

To increase driving stability, activate DSC again.

Safety information

Warning

When M Dynamic Mode is activated, stabilizing interventions are carried out only to a reduced extent. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate. Do not jerk the steering wheel in response to a warning.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

DSC OFF

Activating/deactivating MDM

Activating MDM

Press the button.

The MDM and DSC OFF symbols in the instrument cluster light up.

Deactivating MDM

Press the button.

The MDM and DSC OFF symbols go out.

Via iDrive

It is possible to configure M Dynamic Mode MDM for buttons M1 or M2.

1. "CAR"
2. "M setup"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4. "DSC"
5. "MDM"

To activate the desired configuration with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:

▷ M1

▷ M2

A message appears in the instrument cluster. This message is confirmed by pressing the button again.

Display in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Description
MDM OFF	Symbols light up: M Dynamic Mode is activated.
	DSC indicator light also flashes: M Dynamic Mode controls the drive forces and braking forces.
OFF 	Indicator lights light up: M Dynamic Mode or DSC has failed.

M xDrive

Concept

M xDrive is the all-wheel-drive system of the vehicle. M xDrive and DSC Dynamic Stability Control work together to optimize the traction and driving dynamics. M xDrive variably distributes the drive forces to the front and rear axles as demanded by the driving situation and road surface.

General information

Two M xDrive programs are available when DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.

Programs

Program	Distribution of driving forces
"4WD"	Front and rear axles.
"4WD SPORT"	Front and rear axles. Main component, rear axle.

A program is activated automatically in the following situations:

- When the drive-ready state is switched on: "4WD".
- When MDM is activated: "4WD SPORT".
- When DSC is activated: "4WD".

Selecting a channel

General information

Changing programs in dynamic driving situations is not possible.

Via iDrive

It is possible to configure the required program for buttons M1 or M2.

1. "CAR"
2. "M setup"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4. Deactivate DSC, if needed.
5. "M xDrive"
6. Select the desired channel.

   The setting is immediately applied with active M1 or M2 configuration.

To activate the desired configuration with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:

-
-

Display in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Description
	The indicator light is illuminated and 4WD appears in the instrument cluster: "4WD" is activated.
	The indicator light is illuminated and 4WD Sport appears in the instrument cluster: "4WD SPORT" is activated.

Active M differential

The active M differential provides for continuously variable locking of the rear axle differential depending on the driving situation. This prevents individual rear wheels from spinning even when DSC is switched off and in M Dynamic Mode, enabling optimum traction to be achieved in all driving situations.

The driver is responsible adapting his or her driving style to the situation.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3329
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

HDC Hill Descent Control

Concept

HDC Hill Descent Control is a downhill control feature that controls the vehicle speed on steep downhill grades, for instance when driving on unpaved roads.

When the system is active, the vehicle moves at the speed set by the driver, without the driver having to depress the brake pedal.

While HDC is controlling the speed, the system automatically distributes the braking force to the individual wheels. This improves vehicle drivability and driving stability. If necessary, the Antilock Braking System prevents the wheels from locking.

General information

Hill Descent Control can be activated at speeds below approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Speeds can be set between approx. 2 mph/3 km/h and approx. 20 mph/30 km/h. When the vehicle is moving downhill, the system reduces the speed to the set value, within the physical limits.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

HDC

Activating HDC

Press the button. The LED on the button lights up.

Speeds between approx. 2 mph/3 km/h and approx. 20 mph/30 km/h are adopted as the desired speed.

Emergency braking function, Active PDC: the emergency braking function is deactivated.

Additional information:

Emergency brake function, Active PDC, refer to page 214.

Display in the instrument cluster

A symbol and the selected desired speed are displayed.

- Indicator green: HDC is active. The system is actively braking the vehicle.
- Gray display: HDC is on standby.

Display in the Head-up Display

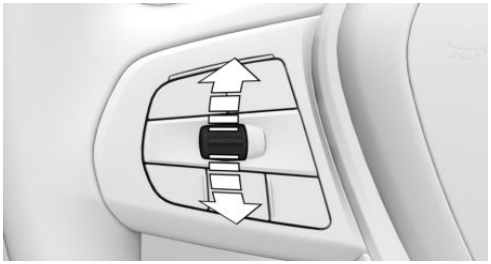
The HDC status can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

Increasing or decreasing vehicle speed

Using the cruise control rocker switch

The desired speed can be changed using the cruise control rocker switch on the steering wheel.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3330
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20



- Press the rocker switch up: the speed increases gradually.
- Press the rocker switch up and hold: the speed increases while the rocker switch is pressed.
- Press the rocker switch down: the speed decreases gradually.
- Press the rocker switch down and hold: the speed decreases while the rocker switch is pressed.

Using the brake pedal

While HDC is controlling the speed, the set desired speed can be reduced by depressing the brake pedal.

Deactivating HDC

Press the button again. The LED goes out.

HDC is automatically deactivated above approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Malfunction

If a malfunction occurs, a message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3331
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Driver assistance systems

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Cruise control

Concept

Using this system, a desired speed can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel. The system maintains the desired speed. The system accelerates and brakes automatically as needed.

General information

The system can be activated starting at 20 mph/30 km/h.

Depending on the settings, the cruise control settings many change under certain conditions.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

The use of the system can lead to an increased risk of accidents in the following situations, for instance:

- On winding roads.
- In heavy traffic.
- On slippery roads, in fog, snow, or wet conditions, or on a loose road surface.

There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Only use the system if driving at constant speed is possible.

Warning

The desired speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Cruise control on/off.
	Pause cruise control. Continue cruise control with the last setting.

Button	Function
SET	Store speed.
	Rocker switch: Set speed.

Switching cruise control on/off

Switching on

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster light up and the marking on the speedometer is set to the current speed.

Cruise control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

Switching off

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

Pausing cruise control

Interrupting manually

When active, press the button.

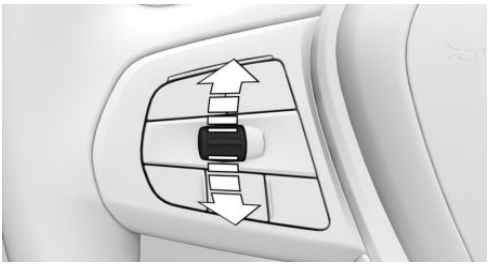
Interrupting automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations, for example:

- When the driver applies the brakes.
- When selector lever position D is disengaged.
- When M Dynamic Mode MDM is activated or DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.
- If DSC Dynamic Stability Control intervenes.

Setting the speed

Maintaining and storing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down once while the system is interrupted.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

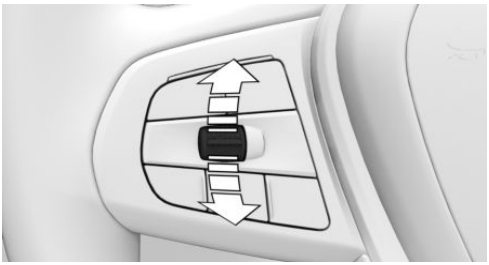
The stored speed is displayed on the speedometer.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

The speed can also be stored by pressing a button.

Press the button.

Changing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3333
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

- Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the desired speed increases or decreases by 1 mph/1 km/h.
- Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

  The maximum speed that can be set depends on the vehicle.
- Pressing the rocker switch to the resistance point and holding it: vehicle accelerates or decelerates without pressure on the accelerator pedal.

  After the rocker switch is released, the vehicle maintains its final speed. Pressing the switch beyond the resistance point causes the vehicle to accelerate more rapidly.

Continuing cruise control

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed.

Make sure that the difference between current speed and stored speed is not too large before calling up the stored speed. Otherwise, unintentional braking or accelerating may occur.

Press the button with the system interrupted.

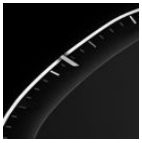
Cruise control is continued with the stored values.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- When the system is switched off.
- When drive-ready state is switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Display in the speedometer



- Green marking: system is active, the marking indicates the desired speed.
- Grey marking: system is interrupted, the marking indicates the stored speed.
- No marking: system is switched off.

Indicator light

- Indicator light green: system is active.
- Gray indicator light: the system has been interrupted.
- No indicator light: system is switched off.

Displays in the Head-up Display

Some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

The symbol is displayed when the set desired speed is reached.

Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go function ACC

Concept

Using this system, a desired speed and a distance to a vehicle ahead can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel.

The system maintains the desired speed on clear roads. The vehicle accelerates or brakes automatically.

If a vehicle is driving ahead of you, the system adjusts the speed of your vehicle so that the set distance to the vehicle ahead is maintained. The speed is adjusted as far as the given situation allows.

General information

Depending on the settings, the cruise control settings many change under certain conditions.

The distance can be adjusted in several steps. For safety reasons, it depends on the respective speed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3334

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

If the vehicle ahead of you brakes to a halt, and then proceeds to drive again within a brief period, the system is able to detect this within the given system limits.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

The desired speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Risk of accident due to too high speed differences to other vehicles, for instance in the following situations:

- When fast approaching a slowly moving vehicle.
- Vehicle suddenly swerving into own lane.
- When fast approaching standing vehicles.

There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Cruise control on/off.
	Store/maintain speed.
	Pause cruise control. Continue cruise control with the last setting.
	With steering and traffic jam assistant: Adjust distance.
	Without steering and traffic jam assistant: Reduce distance.
	Without steering and traffic jam assistant: Increase the distance.
	Rocker switch: Set speed.
	With steering and traffic jam assistant: Steering and traffic jam assistant including Traffic Jam Assist on/off.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3335
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windshield.
- Front radar sensor.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Area of application

The system is best used on well-constructed roads.

The minimum speed that can be set is 20 mph/30 km/h.

The maximum speed that can be set is limited and, e.g., depends on the vehicle and the vehicle equipment version.

Higher speeds can be selected if the system is switched to cruise control without distance control.

The system can also be activated when stationary.

Switching on/off and interrupting cruise control

Switching on

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster light up and the mark in the speedometer is set to the current speed.

Cruise control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

Switching off

To switch off the system while standing, step on brake pedal at the same time.

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

Interrupting manually

When active, press the button on the steering wheel.

If interrupting the system while stationary, press on the brake pedal at the same time.

Interrupting automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations:

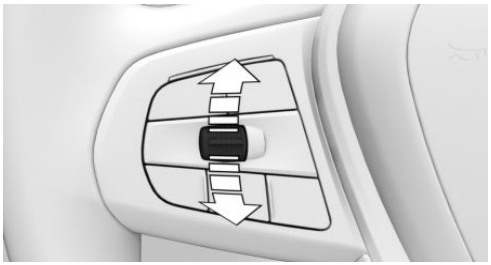
- When the driver applies the brakes.
- When selector lever position D is disengaged.
- When M Dynamic Mode MDM is activated or DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.
- If DSC Dynamic Stability Control intervenes.
- If the safety belt and the driver's door are opened while the vehicle is standing still.
- If the system has not detected objects for an extended period, for instance on a road with very little traffic without curb or shoulder markings.
- If the detection range of the radar is impaired, for instance by dirt or heavy fog.
- After a longer stationary period when the vehicle has been braked to a stop by the system.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3336

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Setting the speed

Maintaining and storing the speed



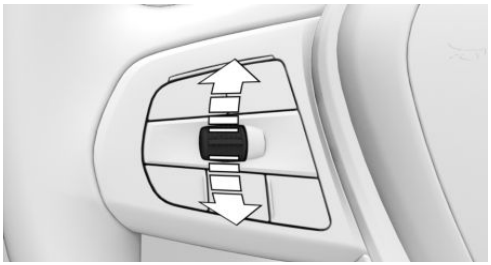
Press the rocker switch up or down once while the system is interrupted. The system will be activated.

The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

The stored speed is displayed on the speedometer.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

Changing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

- Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the desired speed increases or decreases by 1 mph/1 km/h.
- Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

Hold the rocker switch in position to repeat the action.

Adjusting the distance

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to the system limits, braking can be late. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Be aware to the traffic situation at all times. Adjust the distance to the traffic and weather conditions and maintain the prescribed safety distance, possibly by braking.

With steering and traffic jam assistant: adjusting distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Without steering and traffic jam assistant: reducing distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Instrument cluster will display selected distance.

Without steering and traffic jam assistant: increasing distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Instrument cluster will display selected distance.

Continuing cruise control

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3337
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Make sure that the difference between current speed and stored speed is not too large before calling up the stored speed. Otherwise, unintentional braking or accelerating may occur.

RES CANCEL Press the button with the system interrupted.

Cruise control is continued with the stored values.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- When the system is switched off.
- When drive-ready state is switched off.

Changing between cruise control with/without distance control

Safety information

Warning

The system does not react to traffic driving ahead of you, but instead maintains the stored speed. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions and brake as needed.

Changing to cruise control without distance control

Distance control can be switched off and on when driving with cruise control activated.

With steering and traffic jam assistant: press and hold this button.

Without steering and traffic jam assistant:

Press and hold this button.

Press and hold this button.

In order to switch back to Cruise control with distance control, press the button again.

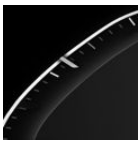
After switching, a Check Control message is displayed.

Displays in the instrument cluster

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the displays in the instrument cluster may vary.

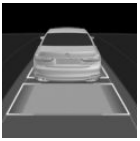
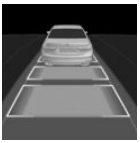
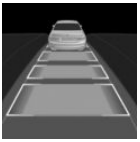
Display in the speedometer

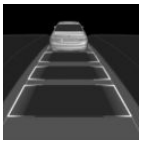


- Green marking: system is active, the marking indicates the desired speed.
- Grey marking: system is interrupted, the marking indicates the stored speed.
- No marking: system is switched off.

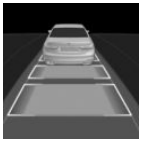
Distance to vehicle ahead of you

Selected distance to the vehicle ahead of you is shown.

Symbol	Description
	Distance 1
	Distance 2
	Distance 3

Symbol	Description
	Distance 4 This value is set automatically after the system is switched on.
	No distance control display, as the accelerator pedal is being pressed.

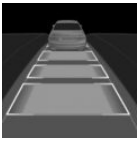
Detected vehicle

Symbol	Description
	Green symbol: A vehicle has been detected ahead of you.

When the distance to the detected vehicle increases, the vehicle symbol in the distance display will move away.

If necessary, independent drive-off, such as by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by pressing the rocker switch.

Indicator/warning lights

Symbol	Description
	Indicator light green: system is active. No indicator light: system is switched off.
	Vehicle symbol flashes: The conditions are not adequate for the system to work. The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.
	The vehicle symbol and distance bars flash red and an acoustic signal sounds: Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.
	System interrupted.

Displays in the Head-up Display

Desired speed

Some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

The symbol is displayed when the set desired speed is reached.

Distance information

The symbol is displayed when the distance from the vehicle traveling ahead is too short.

The distance information is active in the following situations:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3339
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

- Active Cruise Control switched off.
- Display in the Head-up Display selected.
  Head-Up Display, refer to page 154.
- Distance too short.
- Speed greater than approx. 40 mph/70 km/h.

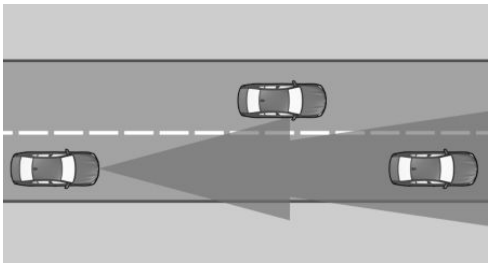
System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 37.
- Radar sensors, refer to page 38.

Detection range



The detection capacity of the system and the automatic braking capacity are limited.

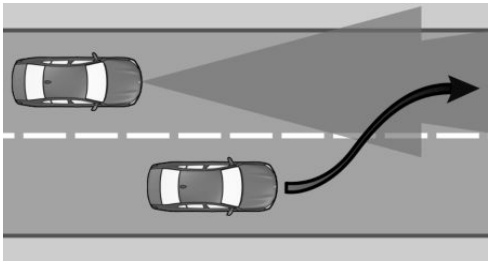
Two-wheeled vehicles for instance might not be detected.

Deceleration

The system does not decelerate in the following situations:

- For pedestrians or similarly slow-moving road users.
- Depending on the equipment, with red traffic lights.
- For cross traffic.
- For oncoming traffic.

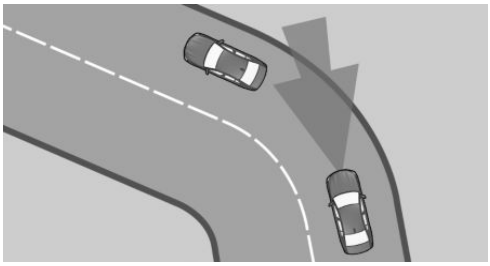
Merging vehicles



A vehicle driving in front of you is not detected until it is completely within the same lane as your vehicle.

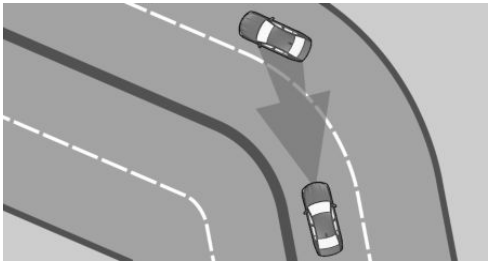
If a vehicle driving ahead of you suddenly merges into your lane, the system may not be able to automatically restore the selected distance. It may not be possible to restore the selected distance in certain situations, including if you are driving significantly faster than vehicles driving ahead of you, for instance when rapidly approaching a truck. When a vehicle driving ahead of you is reliably detected, the system requests that the driver intervene by braking and carrying out evasive maneuvers, if needed.

Cornering



When the desired speed is too high for a curve, the speed is reduced slightly. Because curves may not be anticipated in advance, drive into a curve at an appropriate speed.

The system has a limited detection range. Situations can arise in tight curves where a vehicle driving ahead will not be detected or will be detected very late.



When you approach a curve the system may briefly report vehicles in the next lane due to the bend of the curve. If the system decelerates you may compensate it by briefly accelerating. After releasing the accelerator pedal the system is reactivated and controls speed independently.

Driving off

In some situations, the vehicle cannot drive off automatically; for example:

- On steep uphill grades.
- In front of bumps in the road.

In these cases, step on the accelerator pedal.

Weather

The following restrictions can occur under unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- Poorer vehicle recognition.
- Short-term interruptions for vehicles that are already recognized.

Drive attentively, and react to the current traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for instance by braking, steering or evading.

Steering assistant

Concept

The system assists the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane. For this purpose, the system executes supporting steering movements, for instance when driving in a curve.

General information

Depending on the speed, the system orients itself according to the lane markings or vehicles in front.

Sensors on the steering wheel detect whether the steering wheel is being touched.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Steering and traffic jam assistant on/off.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windshield.
- Front radar sensor.
- Radar sensors, side, front.
- Radar sensors, side, rear.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Functional requirements

- Speed below 130 mph/210 km/h.
- Sufficient lane width.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3341
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

- Above approx. 43 mph, 70 km/h: lane marking on both sides is detected.
- Below approx. 43 mph, 70 km/h: lane marking on both sides or a vehicle driving ahead is detected.
- Hands on the steering wheel rim.
- Wide curves.
- Drive in the center of the lane.
- Turn signal switched off.
- The sensor system calibration process is complete.

Switching on/off

Switching on

Press the button on the steering wheel.

Steering wheel symbol lights up gray.

The system is on standby and does not manipulate steering.

System activates automatically as soon as all function conditions are fulfilled.

Steering wheel symbol lights up green.

The system is active.

With the system switched on, the person warning with City braking function and the side collision mitigation are active.

Switching off

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator goes out.

The system does not perform supportive steering wheel movements.

Interrupting automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations, for example:

- At a speed above 130 mph/210 km/h.
- When the steering wheel is released.
- When you manipulate steering.
- When leaving own lane.
- When the turn signal is switched on.
- When the lane is too narrow.
- If for a particular time no lane marking is detected and there is no vehicle driving in front.

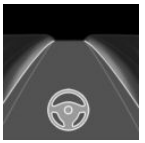
Steering wheel symbol lights up gray.

The system is on standby and does not manipulate steering.

System activates automatically as soon as all function conditions are fulfilled.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Description
	Gray steering wheel symbol: The system is on standby.
	Green steering wheel symbol: The system is activated.
	Depending on equipment, yellow flashing steering wheel symbol: Lane marking driven over. The steering wheel vibrates where applicable.
	Yellow steering wheel symbol and a signal sounds, if applicable: System interruption is imminent.
	Depending on equipment, steering wheel symbol flashes red, signal sounds: System is switching off.

Symbol	Description
	Green steering wheel symbol and lane marking symbol: The system supports the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane.
	Green steering wheel symbol, gray lane marking symbol: No lane marking detected, the vehicle follows the vehicle ahead. The limits of steering support when cornering may have been reached.
	Yellow steering wheel symbol: The hands are not grasping the steering wheel. The system is still active.
	Red steering wheel symbol and a signal sounds: The hands are not grasping the steering wheel. System interruption is imminent. It is possible that the system will not execute any supporting steering movements. With Active Cruise Control, the system may reduce the speed.

Displays in the Head-up Display

All system information can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

System limits

General information

The system cannot be activated or meaningfully used in certain situations.

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 37.
- Radar sensors, refer to page 38.

Hands on the steering wheel

The sensors cannot detect hand-steering wheel contact in the following situations:

- Driving with gloves.
- Protective covers on the steering wheel.

Narrow lanes

When driving within narrow lanes, the system cannot be activated or effectively used, for instance in the following situations:

- In construction areas.
- Depending on the equipment, with automatic formation of emergency lanes.
- Within city limits.

Weather

The following restrictions can occur under unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- Poorer recognition of vehicles and lane markings.
- Short-term interruptions for vehicles that are already recognized.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3343
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Drive attentively, and react to the current traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for instance by braking, steering or evading.

Parking assistance systems

Concept

The parking assistance systems support the driver in parking and maneuvering.

General information

The parking assistance systems comprise the following individual systems.

Additional information:

- PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 211.
- Side parking aid, refer to page 215.
- Without Surround View: rearview camera, refer to page 215.
- Parking assistant, refer to page 218.
- Surround View with rearview camera, refer to page 222.
- Panorama View, refer to page 227.
- Remote 3D View, refer to page 229.
- Cross traffic warning, refer to page 230.

PDC Park Distance Control

Concept

PDC is a support when parking. Objects that you are approaching slowly in front of or behind the vehicle are indicated by signal tones and a display on the Control Display.

Depending on the equipment version: obstacles at the side of the vehicle that are detected by the side ultrasonic sensors may also be reported by the side parking aid.

General information

The range of the system, depending on obstacles and environmental conditions, is approx. 6 ft/2 m.

An acoustic warning sounds in case of an impending collision at a distance to the object of approx. 27 in/70 cm.

For objects behind the vehicle, the acoustic warning is already issued at a distance to the object of approx. 5 ft/1.50 m.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Due to high speeds when PDC Park Distance Control is activated, the warning can be delayed due to physical circumstances. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Avoid approaching an object too fast. Avoid driving off fast while PDC Park Distance Control is not yet active.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Ultrasound sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Depending on the equipment: ultrasonic sensors on the side.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system switches on automatically in the following situations:

- If selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.
- Depending on the equipment version: while approaching detected obstacles if the speed is slower than approx. 2.5 mph/4 km/h. The activation distance depends on the situation in question.

You may switch automatic activation when obstacles are detected on and off.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. If necessary, "Automatic PDC Activation"
6. "Automatic PDC Activation"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Depending on equipment, an additional camera view is also switched on.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on, if needed.

Switching on/off manually

Press the park assistance button.

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

The rearview camera image is displayed if the reverse gear is engaged when pressing the park assistance button.

Depending on the equipment version, the system cannot be switched off manually if the reverse gear is engaged.

Warning

Signal tones

General information

An intermittent tone indicates when the vehicle is approaching an object. E.g., when an object is detected to the left rear of the vehicle, a signal tone sounds from the left rear speaker.

The shorter the distance to the object, the shorter the intervals.

When the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 8 in/20 cm, a continuous tone is sounded.

When there are objects in front of and behind the vehicle at the same time, with a distance smaller

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3345
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

than approx. 8 in/20 cm, an alternating constant tone will sound.

The intermittent tone and constant tone are switched off if the selector lever position P is engaged.

The intermittent tone is switched off after a short time when the vehicle is stationary.

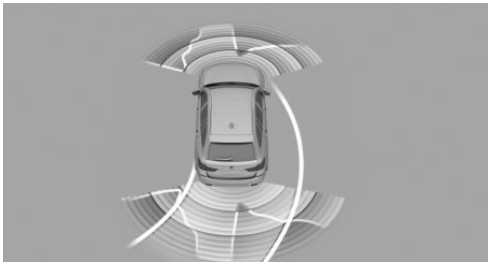
Volume

The PDC signal tone volume can be adjusted.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. "Volume PDC signal"
6. Set the desired value.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Visual warning



The approach of the vehicle to an object is shown on the Control Display. Objects that are farther away are already displayed on the Control Display before a signal sounds.

The display appears as soon as PDC is activated.

The range of the sensors is represented in the colors green, yellow and red when obstacles are detected.

Lanes are faded in for better estimation of the required space.

When the image of the rearview camera is displayed, the switch can be made to PDC or to a different view with obstacle markings as needed:

1. Press the Controller to the left, if needed.
2. For instance "Park. sensors only"

Cross traffic warning: depending on the equipment, it is warned in the PDC display against vehicles approaching in the front or rear from the side.

Additional information:

Cross traffic warning, refer to page 230.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

▷ Ultrasonic sensors, refer to page 39.

Limits of ultrasonic measurement

The detection of objects with ultrasonic measurements can run into physical limits, e.g., in the following situations:

- ▷ With obstacles and persons at the edge of the lane.
- ▷ Low objects already displayed, for instance curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3346

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

False warnings

Reaching the system limits can cause false warnings.

To prevent false alarms, switch off automatic Park Distance Control PDC activation on obstacle detection, for instance in automatic car washes.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

White symbol is displayed, and the range of the sensors is dimmed on the Control Display.

PDC Park Distance Control has failed. Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Depending on equipment version: emergency brake function, Active PDC

Concept

The emergency braking function of PDC initiates an emergency braking in case of acute risk of collision.

General information

Due to system limits, a collision cannot be prevented under all circumstances.

The function is available below walking speed when driving in reverse or rolling backward.

A press of the accelerator pedal interrupts the brake intervention.

After emergency braking to a stop, further creeping toward an obstacle is possible. Proceed with caution. To move forward, lightly press the accelerator pedal and release as needed.

If the accelerator pedal is depressed longer, the vehicle drives off. Manual braking is possible at any time.

The system uses the ultrasonic sensors of the Park Distance Control PDC and the Parking Assistant.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Additionally, the Safety Instructions for the PDC Park Distance Control and the Automatic Parking Assistant apply.

Additional information:

- PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 211.
- Parking assistant, refer to page 218.

Settings

It is possible to set which areas on the vehicle will be protected by the system.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. "Active PDC with braking interv."
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

System limits

The limits of the systems of the Park Distance Control PDC and the Parking Assistant apply.

The system cannot be used in the following situations, for example:

- When Hill Descent Control is active, the emergency braking function is deactivated.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3347
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Hill Descent Control HDC, refer to page 197.

If required, deactivate the system via iDrive where applicable.

With Parking Assistant: side parking aid

Concept

The system warns of obstacles on the side of the vehicle.

General information

The system uses the ultrasonic sensors of the Park Distance Control PDC and the Parking Assistant.

Safety information

Warning

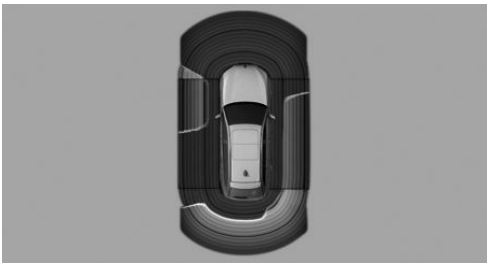
The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Additionally, the Safety Instructions for the PDC Park Distance Control and the Automatic Parking Assistant apply.

Additional information:

- PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 211.
- Parking assistant, refer to page 218.

Display



To protect the sides of the vehicle, obstacle markings are displayed on the sides of the vehicle.

- Color markings: warning against detected obstacles.
- Gray markings, hatched area: no obstacles were detected.
- No markings, black area: the area next to the vehicle was not yet captured.

Limits of the side parking aid

The system only displays stationary obstacles that were previously detected by sensors while passing them.

The system does not detect whether an obstacle moves later on. If the vehicle is stationary, the markings are shown in black after a certain time. The area next to the vehicle must be newly captured.

Additionally, the limits of the systems of the Park Distance Control PDC and the Parking Assistant apply.

Without Surround View: rearview camera

Concept

The rearview camera provides assistance in parking and maneuvering backwards. The area behind the vehicle is shown on the Control Display.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3348
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Additionally, assistance functions can be shown in the display, e.g., help lines.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Depending on the vehicle equipment: button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Rearview camera.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is switched on automatically if selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on, if needed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment: switching on/off manually

Press the park assistance button.

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

The parking assistance functions are shown on the Control Display.

Switching the view via iDrive

If the rearview camera view is not displayed, change the view via iDrive:

1. If necessary, tilt the controller to the side.
2. "Rear view camera"

The rearview camera image is displayed.

Functional requirements

- The tailgate is fully closed.
- Keep the recording range of the camera open. Protruding cargo, roof rack systems or trailers can limit the detection range of the camera.

Display on the Control Display

Function bars

The assistance functions can be activated manually via the function bars on the sides of the Control Display.

1. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.
2. With corresponding equipment: "Camera image"
3. "Parking aid lines".

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3349
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Pathway lines and turning radius lines are displayed.

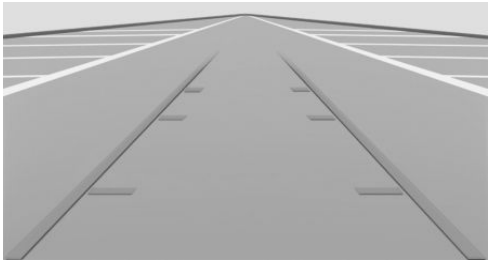
▷ "Obstacle mark.".

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the obstacles detected by PDC Park Distance Control are displayed by markings.

More than one assistance function can be active at the same time.

Parking aid lines

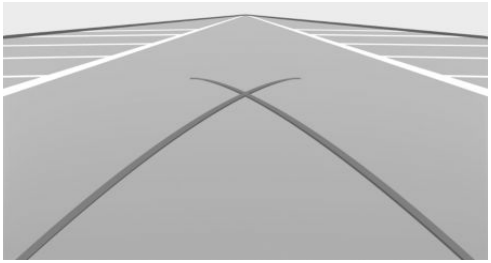
Pathway lines



Pathway lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.

Pathway lines depend on the steering angle and are continuously adjusted to the steering wheel movements.

Turning radius lines



Turning radius lines can only be superimposed on the camera image together with pathway lines.

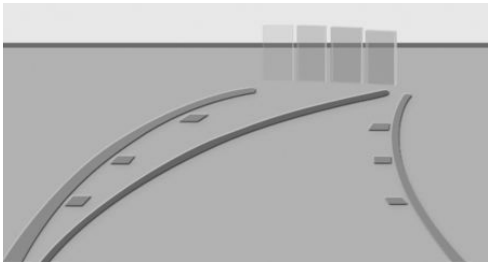
Turning radius lines show the course of the smallest possible turning radius on a level road.

Only one turning radius line is displayed after the steering wheel is turned past a certain angle.

Parking using pathway and turning radius lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the red turning radius line leads to within the limits of the parking space.
2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the green pathway line covers the corresponding turning radius line.

Obstacle marking



Depending on the vehicle equipment, obstacles behind the vehicle are detected by the PDC Park Distance Control sensors.

Obstacle markings can be faded into the image of the rearview camera.

The colored thresholds of the obstacle markings match the markings of the PDC Park Distance Control.

Setting brightness and contrast via iDrive

With the rearview camera switched on:

1. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.
2. "Camera image"
3. To perform the desired setting:
   ▷ "Brightness"
   ▷ "Contrast"

System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 37.

Deactivated camera

When the camera is deactivated, for instance when the tailgate is open, the camera image is displayed hatched in gray.

Detection of objects

Very low obstacles as well as high, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected by the system.

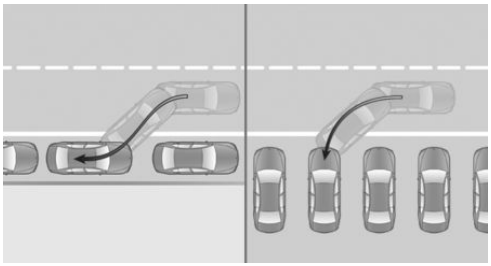
Depending on the vehicle equipment, some assistance functions also consider data from the PDC Park Distance Control.

Follow the notes in the PDC Park Distance Control chapter.

The objects displayed on the Control Display may be closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance from the objects on the display.

With Parking Assistant: Parking Assistant

Concept



The system supports the driver in the following situations:

- When parking parallel to the road, parallel parking.
- When reverse parking diagonally to the road, diagonal parking. The system orients itself with the middle of the parking space during diagonal parking.

General information

Handling

Parking assistant handling is divided into three steps:

- Switching on and activating.
- Parking space search.
- Parking.

System status and instructions on required actions are displayed on the Control Display.

Ultrasound sensors measure parking spaces on both sides of the vehicle.

M Steptronic Sport transmission

The parking assistant calculates the best possible parking line and takes control of the following functions during the parking operation:

- Steering.
- Accelerating and braking.
- Changing gears.

Press and hold the park assistance button for the duration of the parking operation.

The parking operation is automatic.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3351
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

NOTICE

The parking assistant can steer the vehicle over or onto curbs. There is a risk of damage to property. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

The safety information for PDC Park Distance Control and for opening the tailgate applies in addition.

Additional information:

- PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 211.
- Tailgate, refer to page 93.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Ultrasound sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors, side.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Functional requirements

For measuring parking spaces

- Maximum speed while driving forward approx. 22 mph/35 km/h.
- Maximum distance to row of parked vehicles: 5 ft/1.5 m.

Suitable parking space

General information:

- Gap behind an object that has a min. length of 1.7 ft/0.5 m.
- Gap between two objects with a minimum length of approx. 1.7 ft/0.5 m.

Parallel parking to the road:

- Min. length of gap between two objects: your vehicle's length plus approx. 2.6 ft/0.8 m.
- Minimum depth: approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.

Diagonal parking:

- Minimum width of the gap: own vehicle's width plus approx. 2.3 ft/0.7 m.
- Minimum depth: your vehicle's length.

  The depth of diagonal parking spaces must be estimated by the driver. Due to technical limitations, the system is only able to approximate the depth of diagonal parking spaces.

For the parking operation

- Doors and tailgate are closed.
- The parking brake is released.
- Driver's safety belt is fastened.

Switching on with the button

Press the park assistance button.

The LED lights up.

The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.

Parking assistant is activated automatically.

Switching on with reverse gear

1. Shift into reverse.

   The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.
2. If necessary, activate: "Autom. Parking"

Switching on via iDrive

Display of the rearview camera or PDC view must be active.

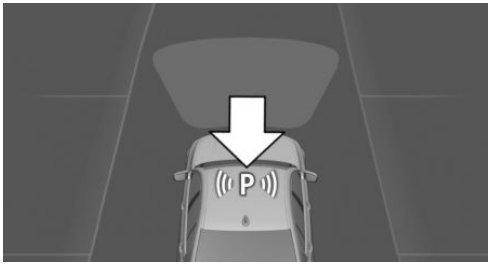
1. Move the Controller to the right.
2. Activate the parking assistant on the Control Display: "Autom. Parking"

Display on the Control Display

System activated/deactivated

Symbol	Meaning
	Gray: the system is not available. White: the system is available but not activated.
	System is activated.
	Parking space search is active.
	The parking procedure is active. The system takes over the steering.

Parking space search and system status



▷ Parking assistant is activated and parking space search is active.

▷ Control Display shows suitable parking spaces at the edge of the road next to the vehicle symbol. When Park Assistant is active, suitable parking spaces are highlighted and an acoustic signal sounds.

▷ If a diagonal or parallel parking space is clearly detected, the system automatically adjusts the suitable parking method. In the case of parking spaces suitable for parallel and diagonal parking, a selection menu is displayed. In this case, the desired parking method must be selected manually.

▷ The parking procedure is active. The system takes over the steering.

▷ Parking space search is always active whenever the vehicle is moving forward slow and straight, even if the system is deactivated. When the system is deactivated, the displays on the Control Display are shown in gray.

Switching signal tone for suitable parking spaces on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. "Automatic Parking"
6. "Alert if parking space detected"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Signal tones of the PDC Park Distance Control

During an automatic parking operation, no intermittent tone will sound from the PDC Park Distance Control.

A continuous tone sounds when the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 8 inches/20 cm.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3353
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Parking using the parking assistant

Parking

1. Switching on and activating the parking assistant.

   For this, engage the reverse gear or press the parking assist button and activate the system on the Control Display, if needed.

   Parking assistant is activated.
2. Pass the row of parked vehicles forward at a speed of up to approx. 22 mph/35 km/h and at a distance of maximum 5 ft/1.5 m.

   The status of the parking space search and possible parking spaces are displayed on the Control Display.
3. Confirm the suggested parking space for the parking operation: switch on the turn signal on the corresponding side.

   The system takes over the steering.
4. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

   Press and hold the park assistance button for the duration of the parking operation. At the end of the parking operation, the P selector lever position is set.

   The end of the parking operation is indicated on the Control Display.
5. Adjust the parking position yourself, if needed.

Interrupting manually

The parking assistant can be interrupted at any time:

- M Steptronic Sport transmission: release the park assistance button during the parking procedure.
- "Autom. Parking": select the symbol on the Control Display.

Interrupting automatically

The system is interrupted automatically in the following situations:

- When the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes over steering.
- Possibly on snow-covered or slippery road surfaces.
- When there are obstacles that are hard to overcome, such as curbs.
- When there are obstacles that suddenly appear.
- If the PDC Park Distance Control displays clearances that are too small.
- When a maximum number of parking attempts or the time taken for parking is exceeded.
- When switching to another function on the Control Display.
- When the park assistance button is released.
- If the tailgate is open.
- If doors are open.
- When setting the parking brake.
- During acceleration.
- When the brake pedal remains pressed for an extended period while the vehicle is stationary.
- When unfastening the driver's safety belt.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Flashing display on the selector lever

The actually engaged transmission position can deviate from the selector lever position in some situations after function interruption. The display in the selector lever flashes.

Observe the display in the instrument cluster in these cases.

Additional information:

Displays in the instrument cluster, refer to page 136.

Resuming

An interrupted parking procedure can be continued, if needed.

Reactivate the parking assistant and follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Switching off

The system can be switched off manually:

Press the park assistance button.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

No parking assistance

The parking assistant does not offer assistance in the following situations:

- In tight curves.
- For diagonal parking spaces.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Ultrasonic sensors, refer to page 39.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- On bumpy road surfaces such as gravel roads.
- On slippery ground.
- On steep uphill or downhill grades.
- With accumulations of leaves/snow in the parking space.
- With a mounted emergency wheel.
- In case of changes to an already-measured parking space.
- With ditches or edges, for instance an edge of a port.
- Parking spaces that are not suitable may be detected or suitable parking spaces may not be detected at all.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

The parking assistant failed. Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

With Parking Assistant Plus: Surround View

Concept

The system provides assistance in parking and maneuvering. The area around the vehicle is shown on the Control Display.

General information

Several cameras capture the area from different selectable perspectives.

The following camera perspectives can be displayed:

- Automatic camera perspective: the system shows the camera perspective suitable for the respective driving situation.
- Rearview camera: for representing the areas behind the vehicle.
- Right-hand and left-hand side view: for representing the areas on the sides of the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3355
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

- Unobstructed camera perspective, movable via iDrive.
- Panorama View: to present cross traffic, for instance at junctions and driveways, depending on the currently engaged gear.

Depending on the view, the vehicle's surroundings or a part of it is depicted.

Additionally, assistance functions are shown in the display, e.g., help lines.

More than one assistance function can be active at the same time.

Some assistance functions can be manually activated.

The following assistance functions are automatically displayed:

- Side parking aid.
- Door opening angle.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Panorama View

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Front camera.
- Top view cameras.
- Rearview camera.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is switched on automatically if selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.

The camera perspective suitable for the respective driving situation is displayed.

Additional information:

Park Distance Control, turn on/off, refer to page 212.

Switching on/off manually

Press the park assistance button.

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

Depending on the equipment version, the rearview camera cannot be switched off when the reverse gear is engaged.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

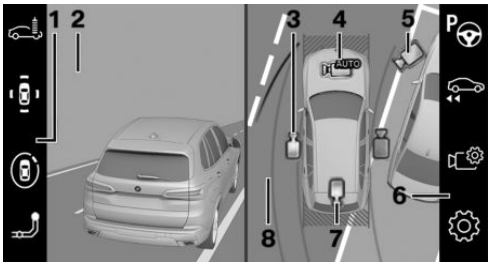
The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on, if needed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3356
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Display on the Control Display

Overview



1 Function bar, left
2 Camera image
3 Side view
4 Automatic camera perspective
5 Movable unobstructed camera perspective
6 Function bar, right
7 Rearview camera
8 Selection window

Function bar on the left

The left function bar can be used for the direct selection of various views via iDrive. Move the Controller to the left, if needed.

- "Car wash".
- "Parking": around the vehicle.
- "3D view": available camera.

Side view

The side view can be selected for the right or left vehicle side.

This view helps when positioning the vehicle at the curb or with other obstacles on the side by displaying the side surroundings.

The side view looks from rear to front and in case of danger, focuses automatically on possible obstacles.

Automatic camera perspective

The automatic camera perspective shows a steering-dependent view in the respective driving direction.

This perspective adapts to the respective driving situation.

As soon as obstacles are detected, the view changes to a fixed display of the area in front or at the rear behind the bumper or, if necessary, changes to a side view.

When reverse gear is engaged, the automatic camera perspective is, if necessary, closed and the system uses a fixed perspective of the rear-view camera. If necessary, manually select the automatic camera perspective when reverse gear is engaged. The automatic camera perspective will be retained for the current parking operation.

Movable unobstructed camera perspective

With selection of the movable camera perspective, a circle appears on the Control Display.

By turning the Controller or via touch function, specified perspectives on the circle can be selected.

The current perspective is marked with a camera symbol.

To leave the function, move the Controller sideways and select another camera function.

Function bar on the right

Assistance functions can be activated and settings can be entered via the right function bar via iDrive. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.

- "Autom. Parking".
- "Back-up Assistant".
- "Camera image":
  - "Brightness".
  - "Contrast".
  - "Parking aid lines".

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3357
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

- "Obstacle mark.".
- "Settings": apply settings, for instance to use the activation points for Panorama View.

Rearview camera

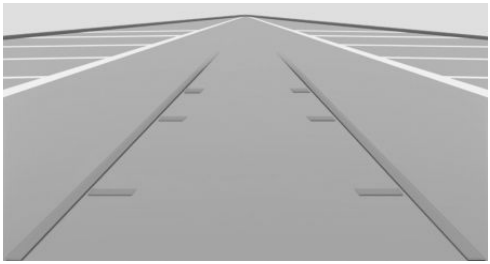
This view shows the picture of the rearview camera.

Selection window

The individual camera perspectives can be selected in the selection window via iDrive.

Parking aid lines

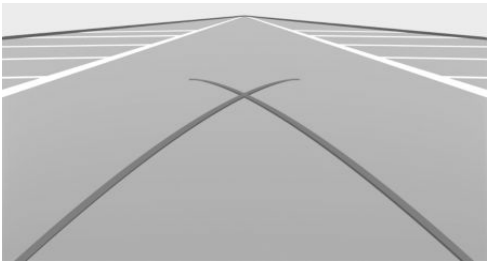
Pathway lines



Pathway lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.

Pathway lines depend on the steering angle and are continuously adjusted to the steering wheel movements.

Turning radius lines



Turning radius lines can only be superimposed on the camera image together with pathway lines.

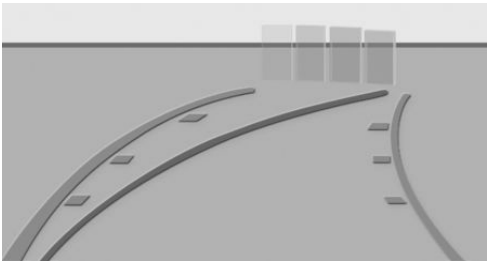
Turning radius lines show the course of the smallest possible turning radius on a level road.

Only one turning radius line is displayed after the steering wheel is turned past a certain angle.

Parking using pathway and turning radius lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the red turning radius line leads to within the limits of the parking space.
2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the green pathway line covers the corresponding turning radius line.

Obstacle marking



Obstacles behind the vehicle are detected by the PDC Park Distance Control sensors.

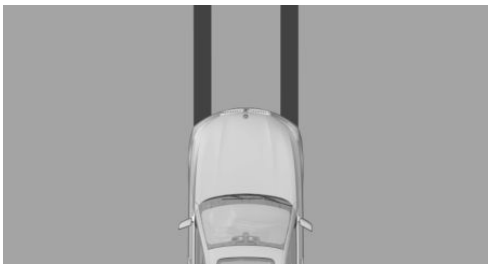
Obstacle markings can be shown in the camera image.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3358

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

The colored thresholds of the obstacle markings match the markings of the PDC Park Distance Control.

Car wash view



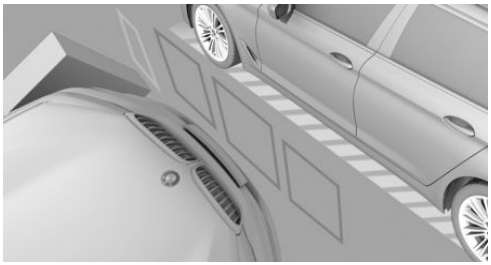
The car wash view assists when entering a car wash by displaying the floor and the vehicle's own track.

Side parking aid

Concept

The system warns of obstacles on the side of the vehicle.

Display



To protect the sides of the vehicle, obstacle markings are displayed on the sides of the vehicle.

- ▷ No markings: no obstacles were detected.
- ▷ Color markings: warning against detected obstacles.

Limits of the side parking aid

The system only displays stationary obstacles that were previously detected by sensors while passing them.

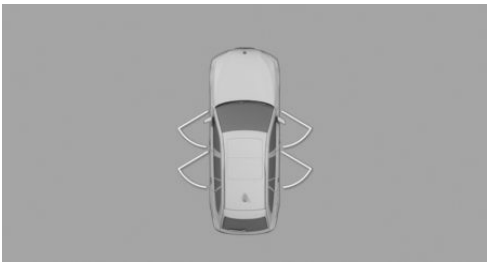
The system does not detect whether an obstacle moves later on. For this reason, at standstill, the markings are not shown anymore in the display after a certain time. The area next to the vehicle must be newly captured.

Door opening angle

Concept

If obstacle marking is activated, the system indicates fixed obstacles that obstruct the opening angles of the doors.

The system does not provide a warning of approaching traffic.



The maximum opening angle of the doors is displayed in selector lever position P. As soon as the vehicle begins moving, the opening angles are replaced by parking aid lines.

Limits of the display

The vehicle's surroundings are displayed with distorted image for technical reasons.

Even if the symbols for the door opening angles do not cross other objects on the Control Display, the following needs to be noted when parking next to other objects:

Because of the perspective, higher, protruding objects may be closer than they appear on the Control Display.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3359
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Setting brightness and contrast

Brightness and contrast can be adjusted with Surround View or Panorama View switched on.

1. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.
2. "Camera image"
3. To perform the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Brightness"
   - ▷ "Contrast"

Functional limitations

The system can be used only to a limited extent in the following situations:

- ▷ In poor light.
- ▷ In case of soiled cameras.
- ▷ With a door open.
- ▷ With the tailgate open.
- ▷ With exterior mirrors folded in.

Gray hatched areas with symbol, for instance open door, in the camera image mark areas that are currently not displayed.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- ▷ Cameras, refer to page 37.

Non-visible areas

Because of the camera angle, the areas under the vehicle cannot be viewed by the cameras.

Detection of objects

Very low obstacles as well as high, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected by the system.

Some assistance functions also consider data from the PDC Park Distance Control.

Follow the notes in the PDC Park Distance Control chapter.

The objects displayed on the Control Display may be closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance from the objects on the display.

Additional information:

PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 211.

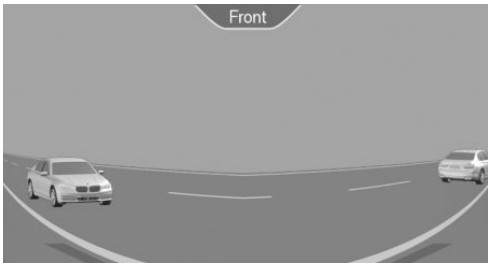
Malfunction

A camera malfunction is displayed on the Control Display.

A yellow symbol is displayed and the recording range of the malfunctioning camera is displayed in black on the Control Display.

With Parking Assistant Plus: Panorama View

Concept



The system provides an early look at cross traffic at blind driveways and intersections.

General information

Road users concealed by obstacles to the left and right of the vehicle can only be detected relatively late from the driver's seat. The cameras in the front and rear capture the sideways traffic area to improve the view.

Yellow lines in the screen display mark the front and rear end of the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3360
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

The camera image shows different levels of distortion in some areas and is thus not suitable for distance estimations.

Depending on the equipment version, the function can only be used when driving forward.

Additional information:

Surround View, refer to page 222.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Panorama View

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Front camera.
- Depending on the equipment: rearview camera.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Display on the Control Display

Press the button when the engine is running.

Depending on the driving direction, the image of the respective camera is displayed:

- "Front": front camera image.
- "Rear": rear camera image.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, cross traffic warning can additionally warn of approaching vehicles using radar sensors.

Additional information:

Cross traffic warning, refer to page 230.

With navigation system: activation points

Concept

Positions where Panorama View should switch on automatically can be stored as activation points provided that a GPS signal is received.

General information

Up to ten activation points can be stored.

Activation points can be used when driving forward for the front camera.

Storing activation points

1. Drive to the position at which the system is to be switched on, and stop.
2. Press the button.
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Activation point"

   The current position is displayed.
5. "Save activation point"

Activation points are, if possible, stored with town/city and street address, or else with the GPS coordinates.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3361
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Using activation points

The use of activation points can be switched on and off.

1. Press the button.
2. Move the Controller to the right.
3. "Settings"
4. "Panorama View, GPS-based"
5. "Panorama View is displayed automatically when set activation points are reached."

Displaying activation points

1. Press the button.
2. Move the Controller to the right.
3. "Manage points"

   A list of all activation points is displayed.

Renaming or deleting activation points

1. Press the button.
2. Move the Controller to the right.
3. "Manage points"

   A list of all activation points is displayed.
4. Select an activation point as needed.
5. To perform the desired setting:
   - "Rename"
   - "Delete activation point"
   - "Delete all activation points"

Functional limitations

The Surround View functional limitations apply.

Additional information:

Surround View, refer to page 222.

System limits

The limits of the Surround View system apply.

Additional information:

Surround View, refer to page 222.

With Parking Assistant Plus: Remote 3D View

Concept

The BMW Connected app and the pictures of the Surround View cameras in combination with the corresponding equipment enable the display of the vehicle's surroundings on a mobile device.

The function displays a momentary view of the situation.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Front camera.
- Top view cameras.
- Rearview camera.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Functional requirements

- Data transmission must be activated.

  Data protection, refer to page 65.
- BMW Connected App must be installed on the mobile device.
- ConnectedDrive countries: an activated driver profile with an existing ConnectedDrive account is required.

  Driver profiles, refer to page 66.

Switching the function on/off

Switching on/off with other functions

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"

4. "Data privacy"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "All services incl. analysis"
   - ▷ "All vehicle services"

Switching on/off individually

Pre-adjustment

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. "Select services individually"
6. "Connected App and cust. portal"
7. "Remote 3D View"

Switching on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. "Individual selection"

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- ▷ Cameras, refer to page 37.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional or may not be available in the following situations:

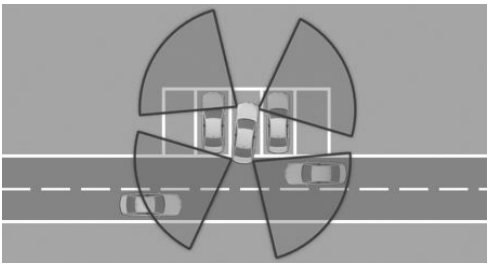
- ▷ With a door or the tailgate open. Dark fields in the display indicate areas that are not recorded by the system.
- ▷ With exterior mirrors folded in.
- ▷ When other camera functions are being performed in the vehicle.
- ▷ When the vehicle moves faster than walking speed.
- ▷ It may not be possible to use the function in every country.
- ▷ For reasons of data protection, the function can only be used three times within two hours.

Cross traffic warning

Concept

At blind driveways or when driving out of diagonal parking spaces, approaching cross traffic is detected sooner by the system than is possible from the driver's seat.

General information



Two radar sensors in the rear bumper monitor the area behind the vehicle.

The system indicates approaching traffic.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the traffic area in front of the vehicle is monitored as well. Two additional radar sensors are located in the front bumpers.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3363
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Radar sensors, side, rear.
- Depending on the equipment: radar sensors, side, front.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Switching on/off

Activating/deactivating the system

With the button

1. Press the park assistance button.
2. Move the Controller to the right.
3. "Settings"
4. "Cross Traffic Warning"
5. "Activate function"

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. "Cross Traffic Warning"
6. "Activate function"

Switching on automatically

If the system was activated on the Control Display, it is automatically switched on as soon as PDC Park Distance Control or Panorama View is active and a gear is engaged.

If reverse gear is engaged, the rear system is switched on.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the front system is switched on when a forward gear is engaged.

Switching off automatically

The system is automatically switched off in the following situations:

- When the speed exceeds walking speed.
- With the steering and traffic jam assistant active: when a certain driving distance is exceeded.
- With an active parking operation of the parking assistant.

Warning

General information

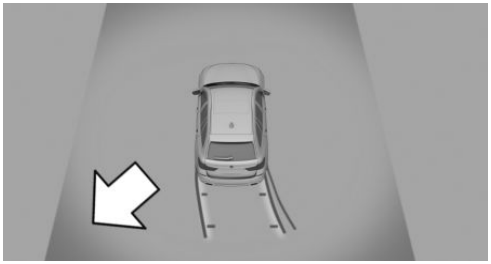
The respective display is called up on the Control Display. A signal tone may sound and the light in the exterior mirror may flash.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3364
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Light in the exterior mirror

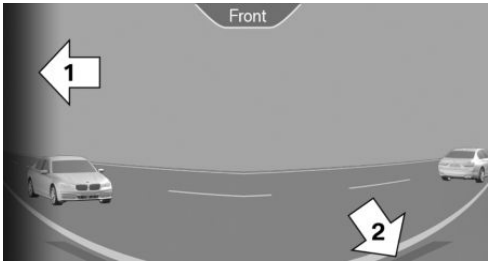
The light in the exterior mirror flashes if vehicles are detected by the rear sensors and your own vehicle is moving backwards.

Display in the PDC Park Distance Control view



In the PDC Park Distance Control view, the respective boundary area flashes red, if vehicles are detected by the sensors.

Display in the camera view



The respective boundary area, arrow 1, in the camera view flashes red, if vehicles are detected by the sensors.

Yellow lines, arrow 2, mark the bumper of your own vehicle.

Acoustic warning

In addition to the optical indicator, a warning signal sounds if your own vehicle moves into the respective direction.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Radar sensors, refer to page 38.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- In tight curves.
- When crossing objects move at a very slow or a very fast speed.
- If other objects are in the capture range of the sensors, that hide cross traffic.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3365
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Driving comfort

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Chassis components

The chassis components are optimized for the vehicle and its scope of application and thereby ensure the best possible Driving Dynamics.

Adaptive M chassis

Concept

This system reduces undesirable vehicle motion when using a sporty driving style or traveling on uneven road surfaces.

This enhances the driving dynamics and driving comfort depending on the road surface condition and driving style.

General information

The system offers several different damping settings.

Program	Damping settings
"COMFORT"	Comfort-oriented.
"SPORT"	Balanced out.
"SPORT PLUS"	Consistently sporty.

Selecting a channel

Using the button

Press the button repeatedly until the desired program is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Via iDrive

It is possible to configure the required program for buttons M1 or M2.

1. "CAR"
2. "M setup"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4. "Chassis"
5. Select the desired channel.

   The setting is immediately applied with active M1 or M2 configuration.

To activate the desired configuration with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:

▷ M1

▷ M2

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3366

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Display in the instrument cluster

Adaptive M chassis with selected program for the active display of driving dynamics system statuses.

Performance Control

Performance Control enhances the agility of the vehicle.

To increase maneuverability, wheels are braked individually when a sporty driving style is used.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3367
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Climate control

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Interior air quality

The air quality in the vehicle is improved by the following components:

- Emission tested passenger compartment.
- Microfilter.
- Air conditioning system to control the temperature, air flow and recirculated-air mode.

Depending on the equipment:

- Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter.
- Ionization.
- Fragrancing.
- Automatic recirculated-air control AUC.
- Parked-car ventilation.

Automatic climate control

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

Climate control functions

Button	Function
	Temperature.
A/C	Climate control operation.
MAX A/C	Maximum cooling.
AUTO	AUTO program.
	Recirculated-air mode.
	Air flow, manual. Intensity AUTO program.
	Air distribution, manual.
SYNC	SYNC program.

Button	Function
MAX	Defrost and defog window.
	Rear window defroster.
	Active seat ventilation, refer to page 114.
	Seat heating, refer to page 114.
MENU	Opening the Climate menu. For example, for the following settings: upper body temperature adjustment, parked-car ventilation.

Some of the functions can also be used via voice, e.g., temperature.

Opening the Climate menu

MENU Press the button.

The Climate menu is displayed.

All the climate control functions which can adjusted via iDrive can be called up via the Climate menu, e.g., upper body temperature adjustment, parked-car ventilation.

Switching on/off

Switching on

Press any button except for the following:

- Rear window defroster.
- Left side of air flow button.
- SYNC program.
- Seat heating.
- Seat ventilation.

Switching off

Press and hold the left button until the system switches off.

Temperature

Concept

The automatic climate control achieves the set temperature as quickly as possible, if needed, by using the maximum cooling or heating capacity, and then keeps it constant.

Adjusting

Turn the wheel to set the desired temperature.

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. Otherwise, the automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

Temperature of the ventilation

General information

The temperature of the ventilation in the upper body region can be adjusted.

The temperature is individually adjusted, e.g. colder toward blue, warmer toward red.

The air flow of the ventilation in the upper body region heats or cools noticeably, depending on the adjusted temperature.

This does not change the set interior temperature for the driver and front passenger.

Adjusting

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3369
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

4. "Temperature adjustment"
5. Set the desired temperature.

Air conditioning

Concept

The air in the car's interior will be cooled and dehumidified and, depending on the temperature setting, warmed again.

The car's interior can only be cooled with the drive-ready state switched on.

Switching on/off

A/C Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with air conditioning switched on.

Depending on the weather, the windshield and the side windows may fog up briefly when drive-ready state is switched on.

Air conditioning is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops and collects underneath the vehicle.

Maximum cooling

Concept

The system is set to the lowest temperature, optimum air flow and recirculated-air mode with the drive-ready state switched on.

General information

The function is available with external temperatures above approx. 32 °F/0 °C and with the drive-ready state switched on.

Switching on/off

MAX A/C Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the system switched on.

Air flows out of the vents to the upper body region. The vents need to be open for this.

Adjust air flow on the driver's side with the program active.

AUTO program

Concept

The AUTO program cools, ventilates or heats the car's interior automatically.

The air distribution and temperature are controlled automatically depending on the temperature in the car's interior and the desired temperature setting including the selected intensity of the air flow.

Switching on/off

AUTO Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the AUTO program switched on.

Depending on the selected settings and outside influences, the air is directed to the windshield, side windows, upper body, and into the floor area.

Air conditioning is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

Point the side vents toward the side windows.

At the same time, a condensation sensor controls the program so as to prevent window condensation as much as possible.

The AUTO program is switched off automatically, when manual air distribution is set.

Intensity

With the AUTO program switched on, the intensity can be adjusted. This changes the automatic control for the air mass.

Press the left or right side of the button: to decrease or increase intensity.

The selected intensity is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

Automatic recirculated-air control AUC

Concept

The automatic recirculated-air control AUC recognizes odors or pollutants in the outside air. The outside air supply is shut off and the interior air is recirculated.

General information

If the system is activated, a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and controls the shut-off automatically.

If the system is deactivated, outside air continuously flows into the car's interior.

With constant recirculated-air mode, the air quality in the car's interior deteriorates and window fogging increases.

Switching on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. If necessary, "Air quality"
5. "Auto-recirculate"

If there is window condensation, switch off recirculated-air mode or defog the windows.

Recirculated-air mode

Concept

You may react to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air flow within the vehicle.

Adjusting

Press the button:

The LED is illuminated when recirculated-air mode is switched on. The supply of outside air is shut off.

When recirculated-air mode is switched off, fresh air is directed into the vehicle's interior.

To prevent window fogging, recirculated-air mode switches off automatically after a certain amount of time, depending on the environmental conditions.

With constant recirculated-air mode, the air quality in the car's interior deteriorates and window fogging increases.

If there is window condensation, switch off recirculated-air mode or defog the windows.

Air flow, manual

Concept

The air flow for climate control can be adjusted manually.

General information

To adjust the air flow manually switch off AUTO program first.

Adjusting

Press the left or right side of the button: to decrease or increase air flow.

The selected air flow is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

The air flow of the automatic climate control may be reduced automatically to save battery power.

Manual air distribution

Concept

The air distribution for climate control can be adjusted manually.

Adjusting

Press the button repeatedly to select a program:

- ▷ Windows, upper body region, and floor area.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3371
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

- Upper body region and floor area.
- Floor area.
- Windows and floor area.
- Windows: driver's side only.
- Windows and upper body.
- Upper body region.

The selected air distribution is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

SYNC program

Concept

The following settings of the driver's side can be transferred to the front-passenger side and the rear:

- Temperature.
- Air distribution.

Switching on/off

SYNC Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the SYNC program switched on.

The program is switched off automatically if the settings on the front passenger side or in the rear are changed.

To defrost windows and remove condensation

Concept

Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

Switching on/off

MAX Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the system switched on.

The air flow can be adjusted manually with the system switched on.

AUTO If there is window condensation, press the button or switch on the air conditioning to utilize the condensation sensor. Make sure that air can flow to the windshield.

Rear window defroster

Press the button. The LED lights up.

The function is operational when the drive-ready state is switched on.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter

The microfilter removes dust and pollen from the incoming air.

The activated-charcoal filter also removes gaseous pollutants from the outside air that enters the vehicle.

Have this combined filter changed during vehicle maintenance.

Ventilation

Concept

The air flow directions can be individually adjusted.

Adjusting the ventilation

General information

The air flow directions can be adjusted for direct or indirect ventilation.

Open the vents and position them to ensure effective climate control.

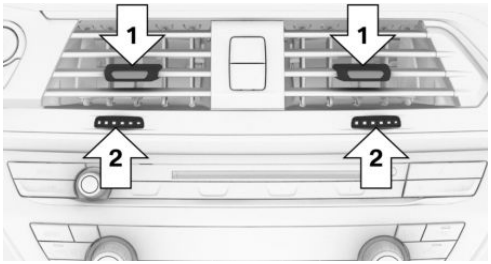
Direct ventilation

The air flow is directed towards the passengers. The air flow heats or cools noticeably, depending on the adjusted temperature.

Indirect ventilation

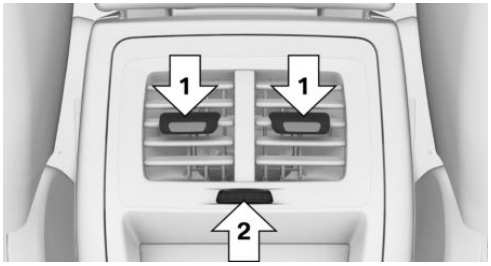
The air flow is not directed towards the passengers. The car's interior is warmed or cooled indirectly, depending on the set temperature.

Front ventilation



- Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 1.
- Thumbwheel for variable opening and closing of the vents, arrow 2.

Ventilation in rear, center



- Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 1.
- Thumbwheel for variable opening and closing of the vents, arrow 2.

Rear automatic climate control

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

Climate control functions

Button	Function
▼ ▲	Temperature.
AUTO	AUTO program.
	Air distribution, manual.
OFF	Switches off the system.
	Seat heating, refer to page 114.

Switching on/off

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Rear climate control"

The rear automatic climate control is not ready for operation if the automatic climate control is switched off or if the function for defrosting the windows and removing condensation is active.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3373
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Using the button: switching on

Press any button except for the following:

- OFF button.
- Seat heating.

Using the button: switching off

OFF Press the button.

Temperature

Concept

The automatic climate control achieves the set temperature as quickly as possible, if needed, by using the maximum cooling or heating capacity, and then keeps it constant.

Adjusting

Press the left or right side of the button: to decrease or increase temperature.

The selected temperature is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. Otherwise, the automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

AUTO program

Concept

Air flow, air distribution and temperature are controlled automatically.

Switching on/off

AUTO Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the AUTO program switched on.

Depending on the selected temperature and outside influences, the air is directed to the upper body and into the floor area.

Manual air distribution

Concept

The air distribution for climate control can be adjusted manually.

Adjusting

Press the button repeatedly to select a program:

- Upper body region.
- Upper body region and floor area.
- Floor area.

Parked-car ventilation

Concept

The car's interior can be cooled or heated before driving off with the parked-car ventilation. Depending on set temperature and ambient temperature, the car's interior is ventilated or possibly heated using the residual engine heat.

General information

The system can be switched on and off directly or via a preset departure time.

The activation time is determined based on the external temperature. The system promptly switches on before the selected departure time.

Functional requirements

- The vehicle is in idle state or standby state and not in drive-ready state.
- The battery is sufficiently charged.

  If parked-car ventilation is switched on, the vehicle battery will be discharged. Thus, limit the maximum activation time to save the vehicle battery. The system will be available again after the engine is started or after a short trip.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3374

- Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.
- Open the vents to allow air to flow out.

Switching on/off directly

General information

There are different ways to switch the system on or off.

The system switches off automatically after a certain period of time. The system continues to run for some time after being switched off.

Using the button

General information

When the vehicle is in standby state, the parked-car ventilation can be switched on or off via the automatic climate control buttons.

Switching on

Press any button except:

- Rear window defroster.
- Left side of air flow button.
- Seat heating.
- SYNC program.
- MENU.

Switching off

Press and hold the left side of the button.

The system switches off after leaving and locking the vehicle.

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Pre-ventilation"
5. "Start now"

Via BMW display key

Switching on

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap the symbol or the symbol.
4. "Activate now"
5. "Start"

Switching off

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap the symbol or the symbol.
4. "Stop"

Display

symbol on the automatic climate control indicates the system is switched on.

REST is displayed on the automatic climate control. The residual engine heat is used.

Departure time

Concept

Different departure times can be set to ensure a comfortable interior temperature in the vehicle at the time of departure.

- One-time departure time: the time can be set.

  The system is switched on once.
- Departure time with weekday: time and day of the week can be set.

  On the desired weekdays, the system will be switched on promptly before the set departure time.

The departure time is preselected in two steps:

- Set departure times.
- Activate departure times.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3375
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

A minimum of 10 minutes should pass between setting/activating the departure time and the planned departure time to allow a sufficient period of time for the climate control.

Setting the departure time

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Pre-ventilation"
5. "Departure schedule"
6. Select the desired departure time.
7. Set the departure time.
8. Select day of the week, if needed.
9. "OK"

Via BMW display key

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap the symbol or the symbol.
4. Select the desired departure time.
5. Set the departure time.
6. Select day of the week, if needed.
7. "OK"

Activating the departure time

Functional requirement

If a departure time is to influence the switching on of parked-car ventilation, the respective departure time must be activated first.

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Pre-ventilation"
5. "Departure schedule"
6. Activate the desired departure time.

Via BMW display key

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap the symbol or the symbol.
4. Tap on the symbol.
5. Activate the desired departure time.

Display

, Symbol on the climate control display signals an activated departure time.

Ambient air package

Concept

The Ambient Air Package can be used to clean and scent the interior air with high-quality fragrances.

Ionization is used to clean the air from suspended particles. Together with the selected fragrance, ionization contributes to well-being and relaxation while driving.

General information

Two different fragrances can be selected in the vehicle. A variety of other fragrances is possible by replacing the fragrance cartridges.

The following criteria can influence the perception of scents in the car's interior:

- Automatic climate control settings.
- Temperature and air humidity.
- Time of day and season.
- Physical condition of the vehicle occupants, for instance fatigue.

BMW recommends the use of genuine BMW fragrance cartridges.

The genuine BMW fragrance cartridges are not suitable for refilling. When a cartridge is empty, replace it with a new fragrance cartridge.

Safety information

Warning

Refilled genuine BMW fragrance cartridges can cause the emission of harmful substances, malfunctions, and damage to the system. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not refill genuine fragrance cartridges. When a cartridge is empty, replace it with a new fragrance cartridge.

Ionization

Concept

Ionization cleans the car's interior air of suspended particles.

Switching on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Air quality"
5. "Ionization"

Fragrancing

General information

Fragrancing is done at intervals in order to avoid a habituation effect.

Two fragrance cartridges in the vehicle allow switching between the fragrances.

The fragrance cartridges are located in the glove compartment.

To ensure a pleasant fragrance inside of the vehicle when starting the trip, fragrancing can occur prior to the trip. The system is automatically switched on with the parked-car ventilation if fragrancing was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Functional requirements

- The fragrance cartridges are sufficiently filled.
- The interior temperature is between 41 °F/+5 °C and 104 °F/+40 °C.
- Open the vents to allow the fragrance to flow out.

Selecting the fragrance

The car's interior is fragranced depending on the selected fragrance.

Two different fragrances can be selected in the vehicle.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Fragrance"
5. Select the desired fragrance.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Switching fragrancing on/off, adjusting intensity

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Fragrance"
5. "Level"
6. Select the desired setting.

Display

The illustrations on the Control Display show the actual filling level of the fragrance cartridges.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Fragrance"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3377
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

When an empty fragrance cartridge is indicated, the cartridge still contains a fluid carrying the fragrance. However, it is not sufficient for fragrancing.

When the fragrance cartridges are empty, a Check Control message is displayed once.

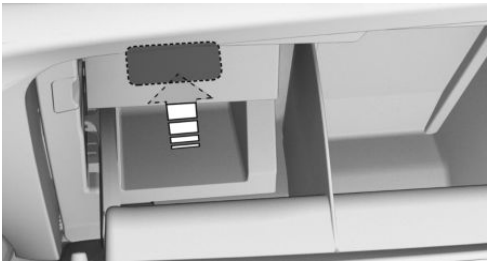
Inserting fragrance cartridges

The fragrance cartridges are located in the glove compartment.

1. Open the glove compartment.

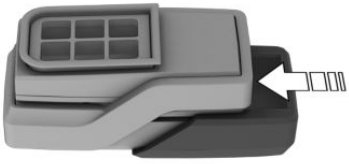
   Front passenger side glove compartment, refer to page 257.
2. Press on the bottom of the cartridge holder.

   The cartridge holder slides down.

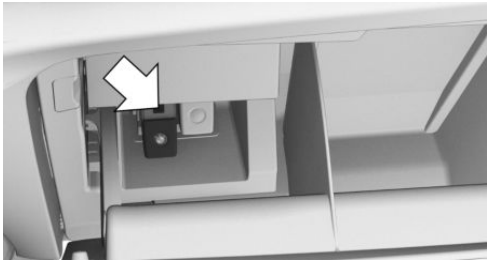


3. Remove the cover of the fragrance cartridge. Hold the cover on the top to slide it from the fragrance cartridge.

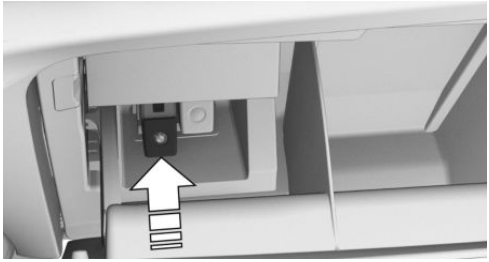
4. Insert the removed cover on the back side of the fragrance cartridge.



5. Position fragrance cartridge such that the chip faces away from the cartridge holder.



6. Insert the fragrance cartridge without pressure into the cartridge holder. The cartridge snaps lightly into place.



7. Push the cartridge holder up, until it engages.

   Make sure that no objects press against the cartridge holder from below, otherwise the function of the ambient air package could be impacted.
8. Close the glove compartment.

Removing the fragrance cartridge

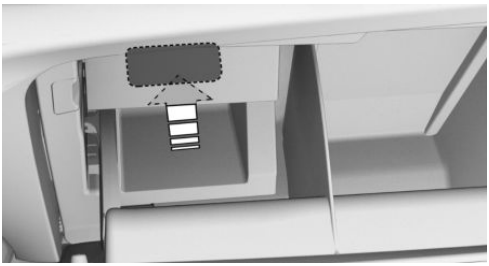
The fragrance cartridges are located in the glove compartment.

1. Open the glove compartment.

   Front passenger side glove compartment, refer to page 257.

2. Press on the bottom of the cartridge holder.

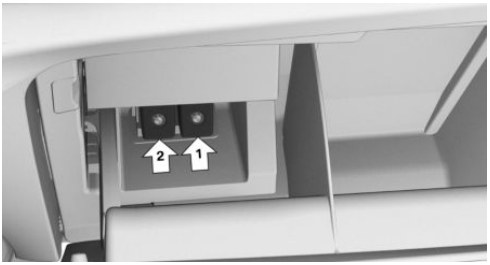
   The cartridge holder slides down.



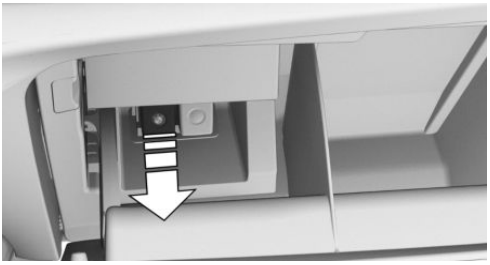
3. Pull desired fragrance cartridge from the holder.

   Fragrance cartridge, arrow 1: first fragrance indicated on the Control Display.

   Fragrance cartridge, arrow 2: second fragrance indicated on the Control Display.



4. Pull desired fragrance cartridge from the holder.



Recycling

Empty fragrance cartridges can be taken to a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop for recycling.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3379
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Interior equipment

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Integrated Universal Remote Control

Concept

The integrated Universal Remote Control in the interior mirror can operate up to 3 functions of remote-controlled systems such as garage door drives, barriers, or lighting systems.

General information

The Integrated Universal Remote Control replaces up to 3 different hand-held transmitters. To operate the remote control, the buttons on the interior mirror must be programmed with the desired functions. The hand-held transmitter for the particular system is required in order to program the remote control.

Before selling the vehicle, delete the stored functions for the sake of security.

If possible, do not install the antenna of the remote-controlled system, e.g. the garage door drive, near metal objects to ensure the best possible operation.

Safety information

Warning

The operation of remote-controlled systems with the integrated universal remote control, such as the garage door, may result in injury, for example, body parts becoming jammed in a garage door. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety information of the hand-held transmitter.

Compatibility

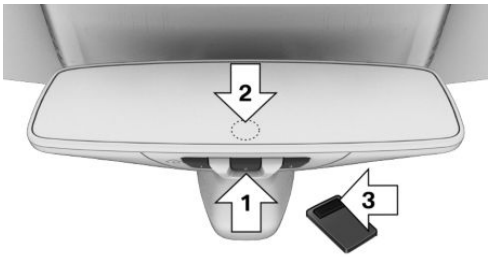
If this symbol is printed on the packaging or in the owner's manual of the system to be controlled, the system is generally compatible with the integrated Universal Remote Control.

Additional questions are answered by:

- A dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
- www.homelink.com on the Internet.

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

Control elements on the interior mirror



- ▷ Buttons, arrow 1.
- ▷ LED, arrow 2.
- ▷ The hand-held transmitter, arrow 3, is required for programming.

Programming

General information

The battery of the hand-held transmitter must be fully charged at the time of programming to ensure an optimal range of the integrated universal remote control.

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Initial setup:

   Press and hold the two outer buttons on the interior mirror simultaneously for approximately 10 seconds until the LED flashes green rapidly. This erases all programming of the buttons on the interior mirror.
3. Press the interior mirror button to be programmed. The LED on the interior mirror will slowly begin flashing orange.
4. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be used approx. 1 to 12 in/2.5 to 30 cm away from the buttons on the interior mirror. The required distance depends on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter.

   Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.
6. ▷ The LED lights up green: programming completed.

   Release the button.

   ▷ The LED flashes fast: programming is not complete.

   Press the button on the interior mirror for 2 seconds and release. Perform this procedure three times to complete the programming procedure.

   If the integrated universal remote control remains nonoperational, continue with the special features for change code wireless systems.

   ▷ LED does not flash green after 60 seconds: programming not completed.

   Repeat steps 3 to 6.

To program other functions on other buttons, repeat steps 3 to 5.

Special feature of the rolling code wireless system

If you are unable to operate the remote-controlled system after repeated programming, please check if the system to be controlled features a rolling code radio system.

Refer to the owner's manual for the system.

For systems with a rolling code radio system, the integrated Universal Remote Control and the system also have to be synchronized.

Please read the owner's manual to find out how to synchronize the system.

Synchronizing is easier with the aid of a second person.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3381
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Synchronizing the universal remote control with the system:

1. Park the vehicle within range of the remote-controlled system.
2. Program the relevant button on the interior mirror as described.
3. Locate and press the synchronizing button on the system being programmed, e.g. at the garage gate. You have approx. 30 seconds for the next step.
4. Hold down the programmed button on the interior mirror for approximately 3 seconds and then release it. If necessary, repeat this step up to three times in order to finish synchronization. Once synchronization is complete, the programmed function will be carried out.

Reprogramming individual buttons

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Press and hold the interior mirror button to be programmed.
3. As soon as the LED on the interior mirror flashes orange after approx. 20 seconds, release the button.
4. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be used approx. 1 to 12 in/2.5 to 30 cm away from the buttons on the interior mirror. The required distance depends on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter.

   Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.
6. The LED can light up in different ways.
   - ▷ The LED lights up green: the programming procedure is completed.

     Release the button.
   - ▷ The LED flashes fast: the hand-held transmitter was detected but programming is not complete.

     Press the button on the interior mirror for 2 seconds and release. Perform this procedure three times to complete the programming procedure.

     If the integrated universal remote control remains nonoperational, continue with the special features for change code wireless systems.
   - ▷ LED does not flash green after 60 seconds: programming not completed.

     Repeat steps 3 to 6.

If the programming procedure is not completed, the previous programming will remain unchanged.

Operation

Warning

The operation of remote-controlled systems with the integrated universal remote control, such as the garage door, may result in injury, for example, body parts becoming jammed in a garage door. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety information of the hand-held transmitter.

The system, such as the garage door, can be operated using the button on the interior mirror while the drive-ready or standby state is switched on. To do this, hold down the button within receiving range of the system until the function is activated. The interior mirror LED stays lit while the wireless signal is being transmitted.

Deleting stored functions

All stored functions will be deleted. The functions cannot be deleted individually.

Press and hold the two outer buttons on the interior mirror simultaneously for approximately 10 seconds until the LED on the interior mirror flashes green rapidly.

Sun visor

Glare shield

Fold the sun visor down or up.

Glare shield from the side

Folding out

1. Fold the sun visor down.
2. Unhook it from the holder and swing it to the side.

Folding up

Proceed in the reverse order to close the sun visor.

Vanity mirror

A vanity mirror is located in the sun visor behind a cover. When the cover is opened, the mirror lighting switches on.

Ashtray

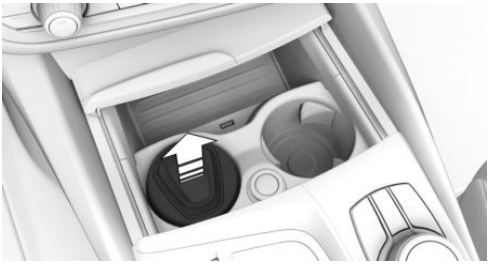
Front center console

Opening

1. Slide the cover forward.

2. The ashtray is located in a cup holder. Fold the ashtray cover upward.

Emptying



Pull the ashtray with the closed cover out of the cup holder.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3383
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Cigarette lighter

Safety information

Warning

Contact with the hot heating element or the hot socket of the cigarette lighter can cause burns. Flammable materials can ignite if the cigarette lighter falls down or is held against the objects. There is a risk of fire and injuries. There is a risk of damage to property. Take hold of the cigarette lighter by its handle. Make sure that children do not use the cigarette lighter.

NOTICE

If metal objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of damage to property. Replace the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.

Front center console

Slide the cover forward.

The cigarette lighter is located between the cup holders.

Operation

Push in the cigarette lighter.

The cigarette lighter can be removed as soon as it pops back out.

Sockets

Concept

The lighter socket can be used as a socket for electrical equipment when standby and drive-ready state are switched on.

General information

The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 watts at 12 volts.

Do not damage the socket by using non-compatible connectors.

Safety information

Warning

Devices and cables in the unfolding area of the airbags, such as portable navigation devices, can hinder the unfolding of the airbag or be thrown around in the car's interior during unfolding. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that

devices and cables are not in the airbag's area of unfolding.

NOTICE

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery can work with high voltages and currents, which means that the 12 volt electrical system can be overloaded or damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.

NOTICE

If metal objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of damage to property. Replace the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.

Front center console

Slide the cover forward.

A socket is located between the cup holders.

Pull off the cover.

In the cargo area

A socket is located on the right side in the cargo area. Unfold the cover.

USB port

General information

Follow the information regarding the connection of mobile devices to the USB port in the section on USB connections.

Additional information:

USB connections, refer to page 77.

In the center armrest

A USB port is located in the center armrest.

Properties:

- USB port Type C.
- For charging mobile devices and for data transfer.
- Charge current: max. 3 A.

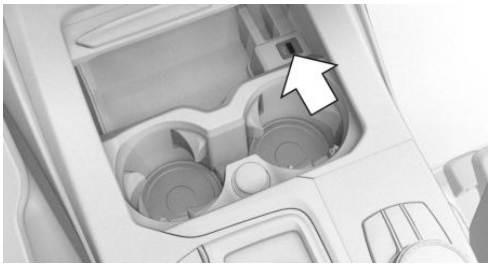
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3385
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

In the front center console

NOTICE

Objects in the storage compartment, e.g., large USB connectors, may block or damage the cover when it is being opened or closed. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the cover is clear while opening and closing it.

Slide the cover forward.



A USB port is located in the center console.

Properties:

- USB port Type A.
- For charging mobile devices and for data transfer.
- Charge current: max. 1.5 A.

In the rear center console

Two USB ports are located in the center console in the rear passenger compartment.

Properties:

- USB port Type C.
- For charging of mobile devices.
- Charge current: maximum 3 A per port.

Wireless charging tray

Concept

The wireless charging tray enables the following functions to be performed without cables:

- Charging the rechargeable battery of a mobile phone with Qi capability and of other mobile devices, which support the Qi standard.
- Charging the BMW Display key.
- Connect the mobile phone to the external antenna.

  Depending on the country, this provides for better network reception and a consistent reproduction quality.

General information

When inserting the mobile phone, make sure there are no objects between it and the wireless charging tray.

During charging, the surface of the tray and the mobile phone may become warm. Higher temperatures may lead to a reduction in the charge current through the mobile phone, and in iso-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3386
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

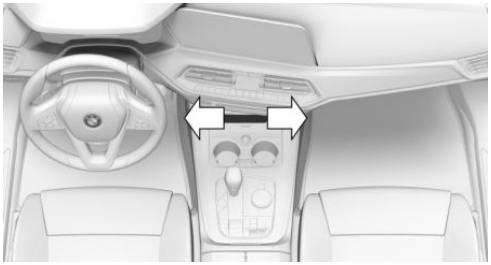
lated cases the charging process is paused temporarily. Follow the relevant instructions in the mobile phone owner's manual.

The charge indicator shows on the Control Display whether a mobile phone with Qi capability is being charged.

NOTE

This device has been tested for human exposure limits and found compliant at a minimum distance of 2 in/5 cm during operation.

Therefore, a distance of 4 in/10 cm must be maintained in every direction when operating the device.



Mounting position of the product.

Safety information

Warning

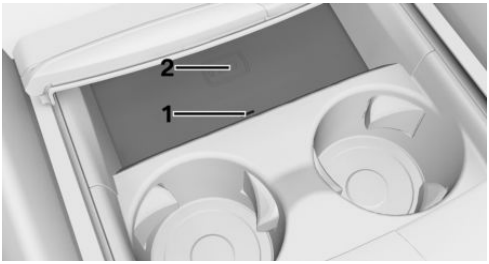
When charging a device that meets the Qi standard in the wireless charging tray, any metal objects located between the device and the tray can become very hot. Placing storage devices or electronic cards, such as chip cards, cards with magnetic strips or cards for signal transmission, between the device and the tray may impair the card function. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. When charging mobile devices, make sure there are no objects between the device and the tray.

NOTICE

The tray is intended for mobile phones up to a particular size. Forceful inserting of the mobile phone into the tray can damage the tray or the mobile phone. There is a risk of damage to property. Observe the maximum dimensions for mobile phones. Do not force the mobile phone into the tray.

Overview

Tray in the center console:



1 LED

2 Storage area

Functional requirements

- The mobile phone must compatibly support the required Qi standard.

  If the mobile phone does not support the Qi standard, the mobile phone can be charged using a special Qi-compatible charging case.
- Standby state is switched on.
- Observe the maximum dimensions of the mobile phone.
- Use only protective jackets and covers up to a maximum thickness of 0.07 in/2 mm; otherwise, the charging function may be impaired.
- The mobile phone to be charged is located in the center of the tray.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3387
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Operation

Inserting the mobile phone

The mobile phone must not exceed the maximum size of approximately 6.0 x 3.1 x 0.7 in/154.5 x 80 x 18 mm.

1. Open the tray cover.
2. Place the mobile phone centered in the tray with the display facing up.
3. Close the tray cover.

Removing the mobile phone

1. Open the tray cover.
2. Remove the mobile phone.

LED displays

Color	Meaning
Blue	The mobile phone is charging. The blue LED stays illuminated once the inserted mobile phone with Qi capability is fully charged.
Orange	The mobile phone is not charging. Temperature on the mobile phone possibly too high or foreign object in charging tray.
Red	The mobile phone is not charging. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Forgotten warning

General information

If the vehicle is equipped with the forgotten warning function, a warning can be output if a mobile phone with Qi capability was forgotten in the wireless charging tray when leaving the vehicle.

The forgotten warning is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Activating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Wireless charging tray"
5. Activate reminder.

System limits

At high temperatures on the mobile phone or in the vehicle, the charging functions of the mobile phone may be limited and some functions may no longer work.

LTE-Compensator - Information and User Manual

Your car is equipped with a wireless charging tray (WCA) to charge your mobile phone and connect it to the mobile network. To ensure the best possible connection a signal booster (LTE-Compensator) is used in conjunction with the WCA. The following paragraphs refer to this booster:

This is a CONSUMER device.

BEFORE USE, you MUST REGISTER THIS DEVICE with your wireless provider and have your provider's consent. Most wireless providers consent to the use of Compensators. Some providers may not consent to the use of this device on their network. If you are unsure, contact your provider. You MUST operate this device with approved antennas and cables as specified by the manufacturer. Antennas MUST be installed at least 20 cm (8 inches) from any person. You MUST cease operating this device immediately if requested by the FCC or a licensed wireless service provider. Warning E911 location information may not be provided or may be inaccurate for calls served by using this device.

Please observe additionally the following information

- Sprint Nextel will allow consumers to register their signal boosters by calling their toll-free number.
- T-Mobile online registration link: (www.T-Mobile.com/BoosterRegistration); (https://saqat.t-mobile.com/sites/SignalBooster#).
- Verizon's online registration link: (http://www.verizonwireless.com/wcms/consumer/register-signal-booster.html).
- AT&T online registration link (https://securec45.securewebsession.com/attsignal-booster.com/).
- U.S.Cellular online registration link (http://www.uscellular.com/uscellular/support/fcc-booster-registration.jsp).

Before use you must register your booster device with your wireless provider.

If you should be requested by the FCC to cease operating your booster you are not allowed to insert your mobile phone in the charging tray anymore unless the booster is permanently deactivated by your local BMW dealer.

You must not remove the booster from the car nor use it with any other than the preinstalled coupling device or antenna. Any modification of the existing antenna or coupling device as well as the use of other antennas or coupling devices will cause the cease of the booster´s operating license.

The booster device fulfills the network protection standards as required by the FCC, such as intermodulation limits, oscillation detection and gain limits.

Booster Manufacturer: Kathrein Automotive

Model Number: LTECOMPB0

Part Number: 6803145-01

FCC-ID: 2ACC7LTECOMPB0

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3389

Storage compartments

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Storage compartments

General information

The vehicle interior contains multiple storage compartments for stowing objects.

Safety information

Warning

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, for instance mobile phones, can be thrown about the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the car's interior.

NOTICE

Anti-slip pads such as anti-slip mats can damage the dashboard. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use anti-slip pads.

Front passenger side glove compartment

Safety information

Warning

Folded open, the glove compartment protrudes in the car's interior. Objects in the glove compartment can be thrown into the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Always close the glove compartment immediately after using it.

Opening

Pull the handle.

The light in the glove compartment switches on.

Closing

Fold cover closed.

Locking

The glove compartment can be locked with an integrated key. This prevents access to the glove compartment.

After the glove compartment is locked, the vehicle key can be handed over without the

integrated key, for instance when the vehicle is parked by valet parking.

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 88.

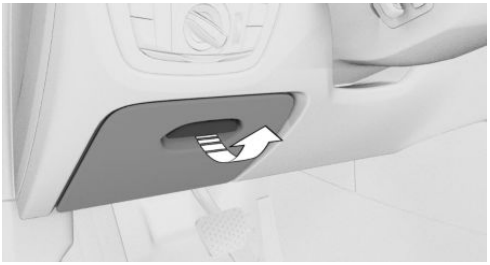
Driver's side glove compartment

Safety information

Warning

Folded open, the glove compartment protrudes in the car's interior. Objects in the glove compartment can be thrown into the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Always close the glove compartment immediately after using it.

Opening



Pull the handle.

Closing

Fold cover closed.

Compartments in the doors

General information

There are storage compartments in the doors.

Safety information

Warning

Breakable objects, such as glass bottles or glasses, can break in the event of an accident or a braking or evasive maneuver. Broken glass can be scattered in the car's interior. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not use any breakable objects while driving. Only stow breakable objects in closed storage compartments.

Storage compartment in the center console

Opening

Slide the cover forward.

Closing

Slide the cover rearward.

Storage compartment in the rear center console

The rear center console contains one or two storage compartments.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3391
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Center armrest, front

General information

A storage compartment is located in the center armrest between the seats.

Opening

Press the button.

Closing

Press cover down until it engages.

Front cup holder

Safety information

Warning

Unsuitable containers in the cup holders may damage the cup holders or be thrown about the car's interior in the event of an accident, an evasive maneuver, or forceful braking. Spilled liquids can distract from the traffic conditions and lead to an accident. Hot drinks can damage the cup holder or lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not force objects into the cup holder. Use lightweight, shatterproof, and sealable containers. Do not transport hot beverages.

Opening

Slide the cover forward.

Two cup holders are located in the center console.

Closing

Slide the cover rearward.

Rear cup holder

Safety information

Warning

Unsuitable containers in the cup holders may damage the cup holders or be thrown about the car's interior in the event of an accident, an evasive maneuver, or forceful braking. Spilled liquids can distract from the traffic conditions and lead to an accident. Hot drinks can damage the cup holder or lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not force objects into the cup holder. Use light-

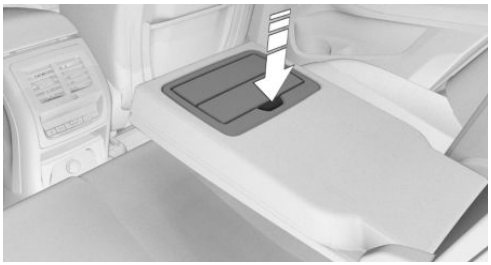
weight, shatterproof, and sealable containers. Do not transport hot beverages.

NOTICE

With an open cup holder, the center armrest cannot be folded back up. There is a risk of damage to property. Press back the covers before the center armrest is folded up.

Opening and closing

Opening



Fold the center armrest forward.

Press the button.

Closing

Press both covers back inward in sequence and fold the center armrest back.

Clothes hooks

General information

The clothes hooks are located in the grab handles in the rear.

Safety information

Warning

Clothing articles on the clothes hooks can obstruct the view while driving. There is a risk of accident. When suspending clothing articles from the clothes hooks, ensure that they will not obstruct the driver's view.

Warning

Improper use of the clothes hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only hang lightweight objects, for instance clothing articles, from the clothes hooks.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3393
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Cargo area

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Loading

Safety information

Warning

High gross weight can overheat the tires, damage them internally and cause a sudden drop in tire inflation pressure. Driving characteristics may be negatively impacted, reducing lane stability, lengthening the braking distances and changing the steering response. There is a risk of accident. Pay attention to the permitted load capacity of the tires and never exceed the permitted gross weight.

Warning

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, for instance mobile phones, can be thrown about the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the car's interior.

Warning

Improperly stowed objects can shift and be thrown into the car's interior, for instance in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuver. Vehicle occupants can be hit and injured. There is a risk of injury. Stow and secure objects and cargo properly.

NOTICE

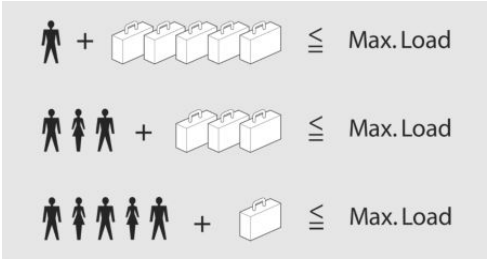
Fluids in the cargo area can cause damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that no fluids leak in the cargo area.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs” on your vehicle’s placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1,400 lbs and there will be five 150 lbs passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs (1,400 - 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your ve-

hicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Load



The maximum load is the sum of the weight of the occupants and the cargo.

The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo that can be transported.

Stowing and securing cargo

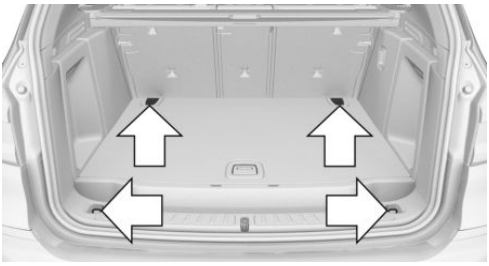
- Cover sharp edges and corners on the cargo.
- Heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear passenger seat backrests.
- Very heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear passenger seat backrests. When the rear seat is not occupied, secure each of the outer safety belts in the opposite buckle.
- If necessary, fold down the rear backrests to stow large cargo.
- Do not stack cargo above the top edge of the backrests.
- Small and light cargo: secure with ratchet straps or, depending on the equipment, with a cargo net or draw straps.
- Larger and heavy cargo: secure with cargo straps.

Lashing eyes in the cargo area

General information

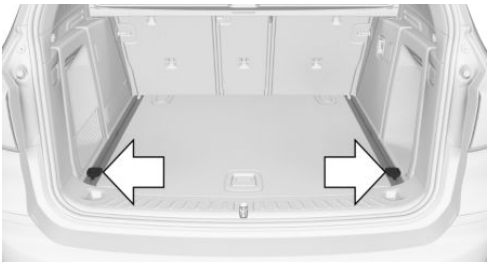
Attach load securing aids, such as lashing straps, tensioning straps, draw straps or cargo nets, to the lashing eyes in the cargo area.

Fixed lashing eyes



There are four lashing eyes in the cargo area for securing cargo.

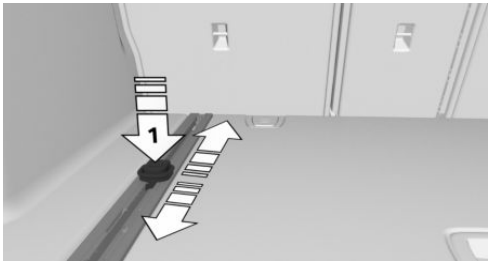
Movable lashing eyes



To secure the cargo there are additional movable lashing eyes in the cargo area.

The lashing eyes may be located underneath the cargo floor panel. The lashing eyes can be inserted into the openings in the rails.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3395
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20



To slide the lashing eyes, press the button, arrow 1. Make sure that the lashing eyes latch at the new position.

Multi-function hook

General information

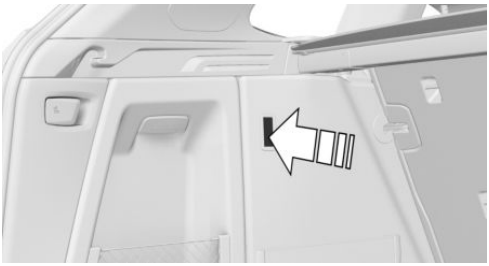
A multi-function hook is located on the left or right side in the cargo area.

Safety information

Warning

Improper use of the multi-function hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers, for example. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only hang lightweight objects, such as shopping bags, from the multi-function hooks. Only transport heavy luggage in the cargo area if it has been appropriately secured.

Folding down



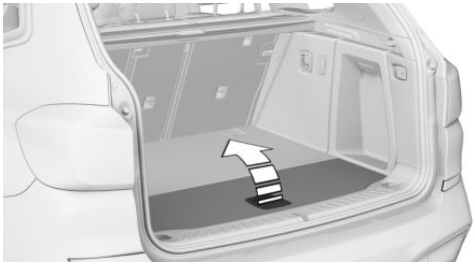
Press on the multi-function hook and turn until it engages.

Retaining function for the cargo floor panel

The cargo floor panel can be hooked onto the right-hand multi-function hook.

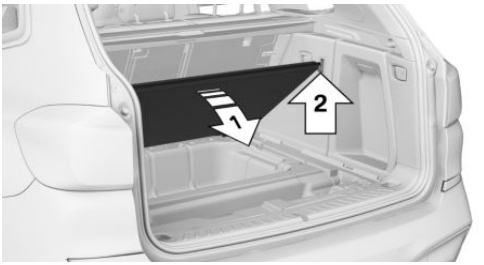
Without storage compartment package:

1. Fold the rear part of the cargo floor panel forward.



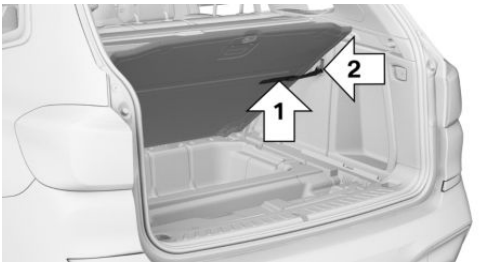
2. Lift the cargo floor panel up until it is over the multi-function hook.

3. Fold down the multi-function hook.
4. Lower the cargo floor panel, arrow 1, until it is resting on the multi-function hook, arrow 2.



With storage compartment package:

1. Fold down the multi-function hook.
2. Lift the cargo floor panel.
3. Release the loop from the cargo floor panel.
4. Attach the loop, arrow 1, on the multi-function hook, arrow 2.



Tensioning strap

A tensioning strap is available on the left side trim for fastening small objects.

Net

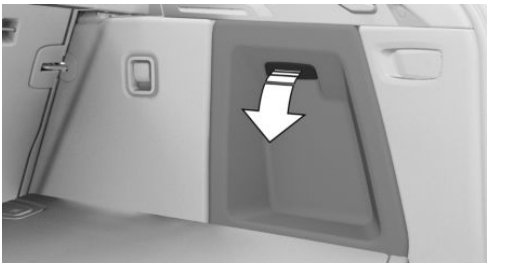
Small objects can be stowed in the net on the left side.

Storage compartment on the right side

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, a storage compartment is located on the right side.

Opening



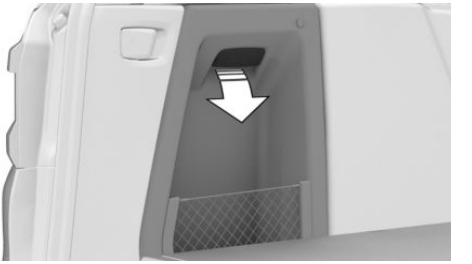
Pull the handle.

Storage compartment on the left side

General information

A storage compartment is located on the left side in the cargo area.

Opening



Pull the handle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3397
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Storage compartment under the cargo floor panel

General information

There is a storage compartment under the cargo floor panel.

Opening

Fold up the cargo floor panel.

Closing

Push the cargo floor panel downward.

Through-loading system

Concept

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the cargo area can be enlarged as follows:

- The rear seat backrests can be folded down.
- The rear seat backrests can be moved into an upright loading position using the cargo setting.

General information

The rear seat backrest is divided at a ratio of 40–20–40. The side rear seat backrests and the center section can be folded down separately.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the rear seat backrests can be folded down from the rear or from the cargo area.

Safety information

Warning

Danger of jamming with folding down the backrests. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the rear backrest and the of the head restraint is clear prior to folding down.

Warning

If a rear seat backrest is not locked, unsecured cargo can be thrown about the car's interior; for instance, in the event of an accident, braking or an evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the rear seat backrest is locked after folding it back.

Warning

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

Warning

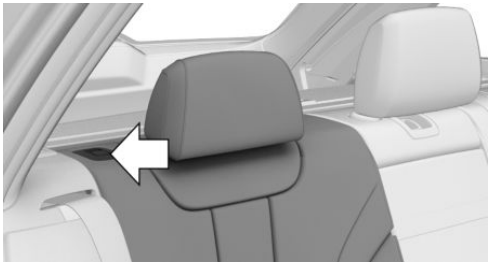
Once the rear seat backrest has been folded down, the locking bracket protrudes into the car's interior. There is a risk of damage to property. When the rear seat backrest is folded down, pay attention to the protruding locking bracket and keep this area unobstructed.

NOTICE

Vehicle parts can be damaged when folding down the rear backrest. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the rear backrest including head restraint is clear when folding down.

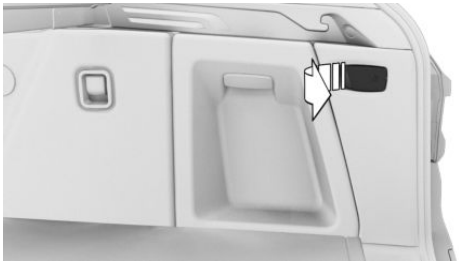
Reclining the backrest

From the rear



Pull the lever and fold the rear seat backrest forward.

From the cargo area

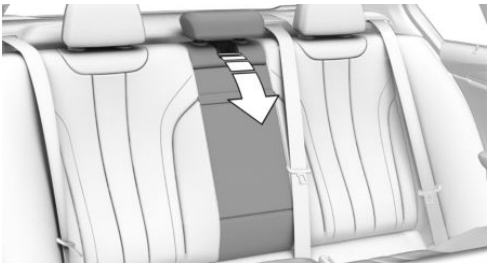


Pull the corresponding lever in the cargo area to release the rear seat backrest.

- Left lever: fold down the left and middle rear seat backrest.
- Right lever: fold down the right rear seat backrest.

Folding down the center section

1. Fold down the center head restraint.
2. Pull lever and fold the center section forward.



Cargo position

Concept

The rear seat backrests can be moved into an upright loading position individually. An adjustment in several tilt stages is possible as needed.

General information

The backrest tilt for the center section is adjusted together with the left backrest.

Adjusting

1. Pull the lever and hold it.

2. Adjust the tilt of the rear seat backrest if required.

After the adjustment, move the backrest slightly forward or back to engage it correctly.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3399
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Cargo cover

Safety information

Warning

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, for instance mobile phones, can be thrown about the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the car's interior.

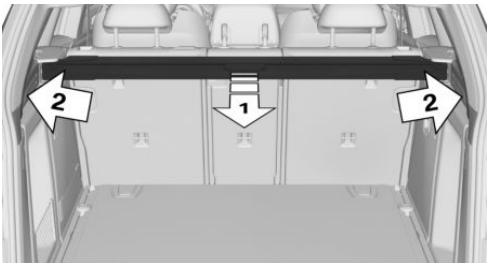
Warning

A cargo cover that snaps back quickly can jam body parts or cause damage. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not let the cargo cover snap back into place.

Warning

An incorrectly inserted cargo cover can be thrown about the car's interior, such as in the event of an accident or a braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Make sure the cargo cover is securely engaged in the brackets.

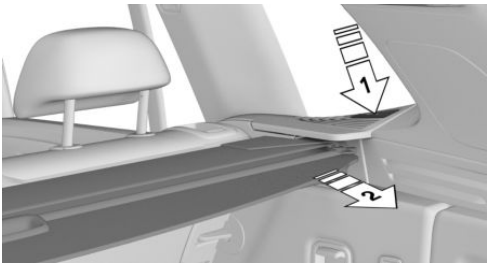
Closing



Pull out the cargo cover, arrow 1, and hook both sides into the brackets, arrow 2.

Removing

The cover can be removed to load bulky luggage.



Press the release button, arrow 1, and pull the cargo cover out toward the rear, arrow 2.

The cargo cover can be stowed in the storage compartment under the cargo floor panel.

Stowing

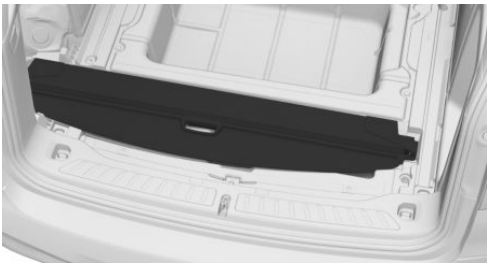
1. Open the storage compartment on the left side.

   Storage compartment on the left side, refer to page 264.

2. Lift the cargo floor panel up and attach it to the right multi-function hook.

   Multi-function hook, refer to page 263.

3. Stow the cargo cover on the left and lower it on the right side.



4. Close the cargo floor panel.

Installing

Slide the cover forward horizontally into the two side brackets. Make sure that the cover audibly engages on both sides.

Ski and snowboard bag

The ski and snowboard bag is contained in a protective jacket in the cargo area.

Follow the installation and owner's manual included in the protective jacket.

Depending on the vehicle equipment: remove the emergency wheel from the vehicle to mount the ski and snowboard bag.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3401
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

BMW X3 M Technology

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

High-performance engine

General information

With a displacement of 3 liters, the high-performance engine generates a maximum power of 473 hp, with Competition Package 503 hp, and a maximum torque of 443 lbs ft/600 Nm. With its spontaneous response behavior, a speed range of wide utility results. The maximum engine speed is 7,200 rpm and is electronically controlled. Because of the high engine dynamics, the maximum engine speed with the vehicle stationary is reduced.

Warm-up

During the engine warm-up phase, the high-performance engine has a somewhat rougher running behavior because of the emission controls.

During the engine warm-up phase, the start occurs at an increased idle speed, which leads to increased exhaust system noises.

Additional information:

Tachometer, refer to page 147.

Engine oil temperature, refer to page 148.

Compound brake

General information

The high-performance braking system has perforated compound brake discs.

Due to the specific layout, temporary functional noise may occur after an extended minor brake load.

The functional noises have no effect on the performance, operational reliability, and durability of the brake.

Correct braking

To prevent functional noises, it is expedient to apply the brakes hard a few times in regular intervals. Ensure that the traffic situation permits the brake operations.

With moisture on the brake discs, the brake system may be operated dry to prevent noise.

Drivetrain

With this vehicle, particular value was placed on the direct connection from engine to the drivetrain. Due to the torsionally rigid design of the drivetrain, as is typical in a sports vehicle, the transmission of the torque also gives acoustic feedback.

When there are load changes, this may result in clicking noises. The clicking noises do not impair the operation or the service life of the components.

The M xDrive all-wheel-drive system establishes variable torque distribution to the front and rear axles. The combination of M xDrive, active M differential, and an Adaptive M chassis in this vehicle ensures a high degree of driving dynamics that is typical of BMW M.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3403
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Things to remember when driving

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Breaking-in period

General information

Moving parts need to begin working together smoothly.

The following instructions will help you to achieve a long vehicle life and good efficiency.

During break-in, do not use the Launch Control.

Safety information

Warning

Due to new parts and components, safety and driver assistance systems can react with a delay. There is a risk of accident. After installing new parts or with a new vehicle, drive conservatively and intervene early if necessary. Observe the break-in procedures of the respective parts and components.

Engine, transmission, and axle drive

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Drive at varying engine and road speeds, but do not exceed 5,500 rpm and 106 mph/170 km/h.

Avoid full load or kickdown under all circumstances.

At 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Have drive-in checkup maintenance performed.

From 1,200 miles/2,000 km to 3,100 miles/5,000 km

The engine and road speed can gradually be increased to a constant speed of 137 mph/220 km/h.

Use the maximum speed of 155 mph/250 km/h only briefly, for instance when passing.

Tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new; they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

For M compound brake:

Brake discs and brake pads of the M Compound brake only reach their full effectiveness after approx. 300 miles/500 km. Drive moderately during this break-in period.

Following part replacement

Observe the break-in procedures again, if components mentioned above are replaced.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3404
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Driving on poor roads

Concept

Because of its greater ground clearance, the vehicle can be driven on a variety of road types and qualities.

All-wheel drive can help improve forward momentum.

Safety information

NOTICE

Objects in unpaved areas, for instance stones or branches, can damage the vehicle. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not drive on unpaved terrain.

When driving on poor roads

For your own safety, for the safety of passengers and of the vehicle, heed the following points:

- Familiarize yourself with the vehicle before driving.
- Do not take risks when driving.
- Adjust the speed to the road surface conditions. The steeper and more uneven the road surface, the slower the speed should be.
- When driving on steep uphill or downhill grades: add engine oil and coolant up to near the MAX mark.
- On steep downhill grades, use Hill Descent Control HDC.
- Avoid that the chassis bottom coming in contact with the ground.

  The ground clearance is no more than 7.8 inches/20 cm and can vary according to the vehicle's load.
- When wheels continue to spin, depress the accelerator so that driving stability control systems can distribute the driving force to the wheels. Activate M Dynamic Mode MDM if necessary.

After a trip on poor roads

After a trip on poor roads, check wheels and tires for damage to maintain driving safety. Clear heavy soiling from the body.

General driving notes

Closing the tailgate

Safety information

Warning

An open tailgate protrudes from the vehicle and can endanger occupants and other traffic participants or damage the vehicle in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. In addition, exhaust fumes may enter the vehicle interior. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not drive with the tailgate open.

Driving with the tailgate open

If driving with the tailgate open cannot be avoided:

- Close all windows and the glass sunroof.
- Greatly increase the air flow from the vents.
- Drive moderately.

Hot exhaust gas system

Warning

High temperatures can occur underneath the body, for instance caused by the exhaust gas system, while driving. Contact with the exhaust gas system can cause burns. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch the hot exhaust gas system, including the exhaust pipe.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3405
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Warning

If combustible materials, such as leaves or grass, come in contact with hot parts of the exhaust gas system, these materials can ignite. There is a risk of fire and injuries. Do not remove the heat shields installed and never apply undercoating to them. Make sure that no combustible materials can come in contact with hot vehicle parts in driving operation, idle or during parking.

Mobile communication devices in the vehicle

Warning

Vehicle electronics and mobile phones can influence one another. There is radiation due to the transmission operations of mobile phones. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. If possible, in the car's interior use only mobile phones with direct connections to an exterior antenna in order to exclude mutual interference and deflect the radiation from the car's interior.

Hydroplaning

On wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water can form between the tires and road surface.

This phenomenon is referred to as hydroplaning. It is characterized by a partial or complete loss of contact between the tires and the road surface, ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle.

Driving through water

General information

When driving through water, follow the following:

- Deactivate Auto Start/Stop function.
- Drive through calm water only.
- Drive through water only if it is not deeper than maximum 9.8 inches/25 cm.
- Drive through water no faster than walking speed, up to 3 mph/5 km/h.

Safety information

NOTICE

When driving too quickly through too deep water, water can enter into the engine compartment, the electrical system or the transmission. There is a risk of damage to property. When driving through water, do not exceed the maximum indicated water level and the maximum speed for driving through water.

Braking safely

General information

The vehicle is equipped with an Antilock Braking System ABS as a standard feature.

Perform an emergency stop in situations that require such.

Steering is still responsive. You can still avoid any obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.

The pulsing of the brake pedal indicates that the Antilock Braking System ABS is in its active mode.

In certain braking situations, the perforated brake discs can emit functional noises. However, functional noises have no effect on the performance and operational reliability of the brake.

Objects in the area around the pedals

Warning

Objects in the driver's floor area can limit the pedal distance or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's floor area. Use floor mats

that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, for instance for cleaning.

Driving in wet conditions

When roads are wet, salted, or in heavy rain, gently press the brake pedal every few miles.

Ensure that this action does not endanger other traffic.

The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

In this way braking efficiency will be available when you need it.

Hills

General information

Drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear that requires least braking effort. Otherwise, the brakes may overheat and reduce brake efficiency.

You can increase the engine's braking effect by shifting down, going all the way to first gear, if needed.

Safety information

Warning

Light but consistent brake pressure can lead to high temperatures, brakes wearing out and possibly even brake failure. There is a risk of accident. Avoid placing excessive stress on the brake system.

Warning

In idle state or with the engine switched off, safety functions, for instance engine braking effect, braking assistance and steering assistance, may not be available. There is a risk of accident. Do not attempt to drive in idle state or with the engine switched off.

Brake disc corrosion

Corrosion on the brake discs and contamination on the brake pads are increased by the following circumstances:

- Low mileage.
- Extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all.
- Infrequent use of the brakes.
- Aggressive, acidic, or alkaline cleaning agents.

Corrosion buildup on the brake discs will cause a pulsating effect on the brakes in their response - generally this cannot be corrected.

Condensation water under the parked vehicle

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops and collects underneath the vehicle.

Ground clearance

NOTICE

If the ground clearance is insufficient, e.g., curbs or underground garage entrances, contact with vehicle parts, e.g., spoiler, and the underbody may occur. There is a risk of damage to property. Ensure that there is sufficient ground clearance available.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3407
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

M Driver's Package: driving in the higher speed range

Warning

Damage to vehicle components can negatively impact the driving performance at high speeds. This includes, among other things, tires, undercarriage and parts for improving aerodynamics. There is a risk of accident. Have damage corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Do not drive at high speeds until the damage is corrected.

Roof-mounted luggage rack

General information

Installation only possible with roof rack.

Roof racks are available as special accessories.

Safety information

Warning

When driving with a roof load, for instance with roof-mounted luggage rack, the vehicle's center of gravity is higher, which increases the risk of the vehicle tipping in critical driving situations. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Do not deactivate DSC Dynamic Stability Control when driving with roof load.

Mounting

Follow the installation instructions of the roof rack.

Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.

Loading

Because roof-mounted luggage racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a major effect on vehicle handling and steering response.

Therefore, note the following when loading and driving:

- Do not exceed the approved roof/axle loads and the approved gross vehicle weight.
- Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.
- Distribute the roof load uniformly.
- The roof load should not extend past the loading area.
- Always place the heaviest pieces on the bottom.
- Secure the roof luggage firmly, for instance using ratchet straps.
- Do not let objects project into the opening path of the tailgate.
- Drive cautiously and avoid sudden acceleration and braking maneuvers. Take corners gently.

Driving on racetracks

Warning

The vehicle is not designed for use in M Sport or motor sport type competition. There is a risk of accident. Do not use the vehicle for M Sport or motor sport type competitions.

Higher mechanical and thermal loads during racetrack operation lead to increased wear. This wear is not covered by the warranty.

When driving on a racetrack, increase the duration of the load slowly.

The standard brake linings and the wear indicators are not designed for racetrack operation.

Saving fuel

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Reducing fuel consumption

General information

The vehicle contains advanced technologies for the reduction of consumption and emission values.

Fuel consumption depends on a number of different factors.

Carrying out certain measures, such as a moderate driving style and regular maintenance, can influence fuel consumption and the environmental impact.

Remove unnecessary cargo

Additional weight increases fuel consumption.

Remove attached parts following use

Remove roof-mounted which are no longer required following use.

Attached parts on the vehicle impair the aerodynamics and increase the fuel consumption.

Close the windows and glass sunroof

Driving with the glass sunroof and windows open results in increased air resistance and raises fuel consumption.

Tires

General information

Tires can affect consumption in various ways, for instance tire size may influence consumption.

Check the tire inflation pressure regularly

Check and, if needed, correct the tire inflation pressure at least twice a month and before starting on a long trip.

Low tire inflation pressure increases rolling resistance and thus raises fuel consumption and tire wear.

Additional information:

Tire inflation pressure specifications, refer to page 280.

Drive away without delay

Do not wait for the engine to warm-up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving right away, but at moderate engine speeds.

This is the quickest way of warming the cold engine up to operating temperature.

Look well ahead when driving

Driving smoothly and proactively reduces fuel consumption.

Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.

By maintaining a suitable distance to the vehicle driving ahead of you.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3409

Avoid high engine speeds

Driving at low engine speeds lowers fuel consumption and reduces wear.

If necessary, observe the vehicle's gear shift indicator.

Use coasting conditions

When approaching a red light, take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle coast to a halt.

For going downhill take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle roll.

The flow of fuel is interrupted while coasting.

Switch off the engine during longer stops

Switching off the engine

Switch off the engine during longer stops, for instance at traffic lights, railroad crossings or in traffic congestion.

Auto Start/Stop function

The Auto Start/Stop function of the vehicle automatically switches off the engine during a stop.

If the engine is switched off and then restarted rather than leaving the engine running constantly, fuel consumption and emissions are reduced. Savings can begin within a few seconds of switching off the engine.

In addition, fuel consumption is also determined by other factors, such as driving style, road conditions, maintenance or environmental factors.

Switch off any functions that are not currently needed

Functions such as seat heating and the rear window defroster require a lot of energy and increase fuel consumption, especially in city and stop-and-go traffic.

Switch off these functions if they are not needed.

Have maintenance carried out

Have the vehicle maintained regularly to achieve optimal vehicle efficiency and service life. BMW recommends that maintenance work be performed by a BMW service center.

For information on the BMW Maintenance System.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3410
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Refueling

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Follow the following when refueling

General information

Follow the fuel recommendation prior to refueling.

When refueling, insert the filler nozzle completely into the filler pipe. Lifting up the fuel pump nozzle during refueling causes:

- Premature switching off.
- Reduced return of the fuel vapors.

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

Make sure that the fuel cap is closed properly after refueling, otherwise the emissions warning light may light up.

Follow safety regulations posted at the gas station.

Additional information:

Fuel quality, refer to page 309.

Safety information

NOTICE

With a driving range of less than 30 miles/50 km the engine may no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of damage to property. Refuel promptly.

NOTICE

Fuels are toxic and aggressive. Overfilling of the fuel tank can damage the fuel system. Painted surfaces may be damaged by contact with fuel. Escaping fuel can harm the environment. There is a risk of damage to property. Avoid overfilling.

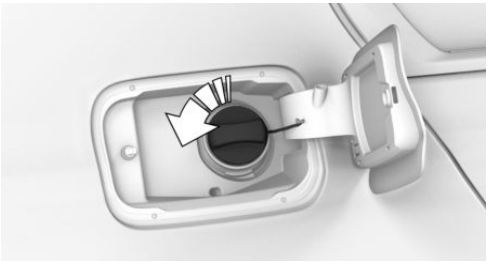
Fuel cap

Opening

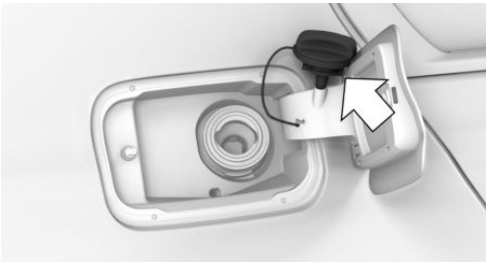
1. To open the fuel filler flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3411
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

2. Turn the fuel cap counterclockwise.



3. Place the fuel cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.



Closing

Warning

The retaining strap of the fuel cap can be jammed and crushed during closing. The cap cannot be correctly closed. Fuel or fuel vapors can escape. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Pay attention that the retaining strap is not jammed or crushed when closing the cap.

1. Fit the fuel cap and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.
2. Press on the fuel filler flap until it engages.

Emergency unlocking

It may be necessary in certain situations to unlock the fuel filler flap manually, for instance with an electrical fault.

Have fuel filler flap unlocked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Wheels and tires

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Tire inflation pressure

General information

The tire characteristics and tire inflation pressure influence the following:

- The service life of the tires.
- Road safety.
- Driving comfort.
- Fuel consumption.

Safety information

Warning

A tire with too little or no tire inflation pressure may heat up significantly and sustain damage. This will have a negative impact on aspects of handling, such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident. Regularly check the tire inflation pressure, and correct it as needed, for instance twice a month and before a long trip.

Tire inflation pressure specifications

In the tire inflation pressure table

The tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 280, contains all tire inflation pressure specifications for the specified tire sizes at the ambient temperature. The tire inflation pressure values apply to tire sizes approved by the manufacturer of the vehicle for the vehicle type.

To identify the correct tire inflation pressure, please note the following:

- Tire sizes of your vehicle.
- Maximum permitted driving speed.

On the Control Display

The current tire inflation pressure values for the mounted tires can be displayed on the Control Display.

To ensure that they are displayed correctly, the tire sizes must be stored in the system and must have been set for the mounted tires.

The current tire inflation pressure value is located on each tire.

Checking the tire inflation pressure

General information

Tires heat up while driving. The tire inflation pressure increases with the tire temperature.

Tires have a natural, consistent loss of tire inflation pressure.

The displays of inflation devices may under-read by up to 0.1 bar/2 psi.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3413
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Checking using tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire inflation pressure table

1. Determine the intended tire inflation pressure levels for the mounted tires.
2. Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, using a pressure gage, for example.
3. Correct the tire inflation pressure if the actual tire inflation pressure deviates from the intended tire inflation pressure.
4. Check whether all valve caps are screwed onto the tire valves.

The tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire inflation pressure table only relate to cold tires or tires at the same temperature as the ambient temperature.

Only check the tire inflation pressure levels when the tires are cold, i.e.:

- A driving distance of max. 1.25 miles/2 km has not been exceeded.
- If the vehicle has not moved again for at least 2 hours after a trip.

Check the tire inflation pressure of the emergency wheel in the cargo area regularly, and correct it as needed.

Checking using the tire inflation pressure specifications on the Control Display

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) "Tire Pressure Monitor"
4. Check whether the current tire inflation pressure levels deviate from the intended tire pressure value.
5. Correct the tire inflation pressure if the actual tire inflation pressure deviates from the intended tire inflation pressure.

After correcting the tire inflation pressure

With runflat tires:

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

With Tire Pressure Monitor:

The corrected tire inflation pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the correct tire settings have been made.

With tires that cannot be found in the tire pressure values on the Control Display, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM.

Tire inflation pressures up to 100 mph/160 km/h

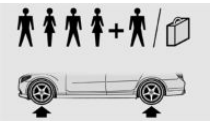
For speeds of up to 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table and adjust as necessary.

These pressure values can also be found on the tire inflation pressure label on the driver's door pillar.

Do not exceed a speed of 100 mph/160 km/h.

Tire inflation pressure values up to 100 mph/160 km/h

X3 M

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
255/45 R 20 105 V XL M+S	2.2 / 32	2.6 / 38
Front: 255/45 ZR 20 105 Y XL	2.2 / 32	-
Rear: 265/45 ZR 20 108 Y XL	-	2.4 / 35
Front: 255/40 ZR 21 102 Y XL	2.3 / 33	-
Rear: 265/40 ZR 21 105 Y XL	-	2.6 / 38
Emergency wheel:	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h	
T 135/70 R 19 105 M	4.2 / 60	

Tire inflation pressures at max. speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h

Warning

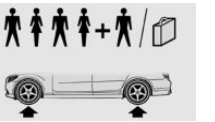
In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph/160 km/h, please observe, and, if necessary, adjust tire pressures for speeds exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h from the relevant table on the following pages. Otherwise, tire damage and accidents could occur.

For speeds over 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table and adjust as necessary.

Tire inflation pressure values over 100 mph/160 km/h

X3 M

Without M Driver's Package:

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
255/45 R 20 105 V XL M+S	2.6 / 38	3.1 / 45
Front: 255/45 ZR 20 105 Y XL	2.4 / 35	-
Rear: 265/45 ZR 20 108 Y XL	-	2.7 / 39
Front: 255/40 ZR 21 102 Y XL	2.6 / 38	-
Rear: 265/40 ZR 21 105 Y XL	-	3.0 / 44
Emergency wheel:	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h	
T 135/70 R 19 105 M	4.2 / 60	

With M Driver's Package:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3415
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
255/45 R 20 105 V XL M+S	2.6 / 38	3.1 / 45
Front: 255/45 ZR 20 105 Y XL	2.7 / 39	-
Rear: 265/45 ZR 20 108 Y XL	-	3.2 / 46
Front: 255/40 ZR 21 102 Y XL	3.0 / 44	-
Rear: 265/40 ZR 21 105 Y XL	-	3.4 / 49
Emergency wheel: T 135/70 R 19 105 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

Tire identification marks

Tire size

245/45 R 18 96 Y

245: nominal width in mm

45: aspect ratio in %

R: radial tire code

18: rim diameter in inches

96: load rating, not for ZR tires

Y: speed rating, before the R on ZR tires

Maximum tire load

Maximum tire load is the maximum permissible weight for which the tire is approved.

Locate the maximum tire load on the tire sidewall and the Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR – on the certification label on the driver door B-pillar. Divide the tire load by 1.1. It must be greater than one-half of the vehicle's Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR. Note, front vs. rear GAWR and tire loads, respectively.

Speed letter

Designation	Maximum speed
Q	up to 100 mph/160 km/h
R	up to 106 mph/170 km/h
S	up to 112 mph/180 km/h
T	up to 118 mph/190 km/h
H	up to 131 mph/210 km/h
V	up to 150 mph/240 km/h
W	up to 167 mph/270 km/h
Y	up to 186 mph/300 km/h
(Y)	above 186 mph/300 km/h

Tire Identification Number

DOT Code: DOT xxxx xxx 3820

xxxx: manufacturer code for the tire brand

xxx: tire size and tire design

2120: tire age

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

Tire age

Recommendation

Regardless of the tire tread, replace tires at least every 6 years.

Manufacture date

You can find the manufacture date of the tire on the tire's sidewall.

Designation	Manufacture date
DOT … 3820	38th week 2020

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

E.g.: Treadwear 200; Traction AA; Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades

Treadwear

Traction AA A B C

Temperature A B C

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. E.g., a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half, 1 g, times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.

Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades Band A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Warning

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

M+S

Winter and all-season tires with better cold weather performance than summer tires.

Tire tread

Summer tires

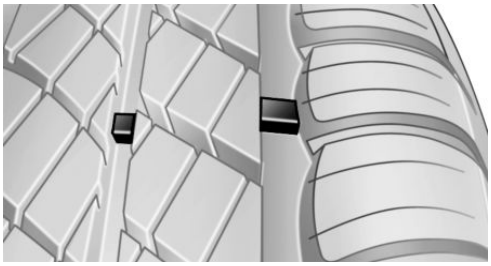
Do not drive with a tire tread of less than 0.12 in/3 mm, otherwise there is an increased risk of hydroplaning.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3417
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Winter tires

Do not drive with a tire tread of less than 0.16 in/4 mm, as such tires are less suitable for winter operation.

Minimum tread depth



Wear indicators are distributed around the tire circumference. These wear indicators have the legally required minimum height of 0.063 in/1.6 mm.

The positions of the wear indicators are marked on the tire sidewall with TWI, Tread Wear Indicator.

Tire damage

General information

Inspect your tires regularly for damage, foreign objects lodged in the tread, and tread wear.

Driving over rough or damaged road surfaces, as well as debris, curbs and other obstacles can cause serious damage to wheels, tires and suspension parts. This is more likely to occur with low-profile tires, which provide less cushioning between the wheel and the road. Be careful to avoid road hazards and reduce your speed, especially if your vehicle is equipped with low-profile tires.

Indications of tire damage or other vehicle malfunctions:

- Unusual vibrations.
- Unusual tire or running noises.
- Unusual handling such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.

Damage can be caused by the following situations, for instance:

- Driving over curbs.
- Road damage.
- Tire inflation pressure too low.
- Vehicle overloading.
- Incorrect tire storage.

Safety information

Warning

Damaged tires can lose tire inflation pressure, which can lead to loss of vehicle control. There is a risk of accident. If tire damage is suspected while driving, immediately reduce speed and stop. Have wheels and tires checked. For this purpose, drive carefully to the nearest dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Have vehicle towed or transported as needed. Do not repair damaged tires, but have them replaced.

Warning

Tires can become damaged by driving over obstacles, e.g., curbs or road damage, at high speed. Larger wheels have a smaller tire cross-section. The smaller the tire cross-section, the higher the risk of tire damage. There is a danger of accidents and property damage. If possible, avoid driving over objects or road conditions that may damage tires, or drive over them slowly and carefully.

Changing wheels and tires

Mounting and wheel balancing

Have mounting and wheel balancing carried out by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Wheel and tire combination

General information

You can ask the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop about the correct wheel/tire combination and wheel rim versions for the vehicle.

Safety information

Warning

Wheels and tires which are not suitable for your vehicle can damage parts of the vehicle, for instance due to contact with the body due to tolerances despite the same official size rating. There is a risk of an accident. The manufacturer of your vehicle strongly suggests that you use wheels and tires that have been recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for your vehicle type.

Warning

Mounted steel wheels can cause technical problems, for instance unexpected loosening of the lug bolts and damage to the brake discs. There is a risk of accident. Do not mount steel wheels.

Warning

Incorrect wheel/tire combinations will have a negative impact on the vehicle's handling and on the function of a variety of systems, such as the ABS Antilock Braking System or DSC Dynamic Stability Control. There is a risk of accident. To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires with a single tread configuration from a single manufacturer. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you use wheels and tires that have been recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for your vehicle type. Following tire damage, have the original wheel/tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

Warning

Unsuitable wheel studs, such as single-section wheel studs, may loosen or come off. The wheel may come loose during driving. There is a risk of accident. Use only two-section wheel studs that have been categorized as suitable for the respective wheel type by the manufacturer of the vehicle.

Recommended tire brands

For each tire size, the manufacturer of the vehicle recommends certain tire brands. The tire brands can be identified by a star on the tire sidewall.

New tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new; they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3419
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Retreaded tires

Warning

Retreaded tires can have different tire casing structures. With advanced age the service life can be limited. There is a risk of an accident. The manufacturer of your vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

The manufacturer of the vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

Winter tires

General information

Winter tires are recommended for operating on winter roads.

Although so-called all-season M+S tires provide better winter traction than summer tires, they usually do not provide the same level of performance as winter tires.

Maximum speed of winter tires

If the maximum speed of the vehicle is higher than the permissible speed for the winter tires, then attach a label showing the permissible maximum speed in the field of view. The label is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

With winter tires mounted, observe and do not exceed the permissible maximum speed.

Rotating wheels between axles

Warning

Rotating tires between the axles on vehicles with different tire sizes or rim sizes on the front and rear axles can cause damage to the tires and the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Do not rotate the tires between the axles on vehicles with different tire sizes or rim sizes on the front and rear axles.

Storing tires

Tire inflation pressure

Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the side wall of the tire.

Storage

- Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry and dark place.
- Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease, and solvents.
- Do not leave tires in plastic bags.
- Remove dirt from wheels or tires.

Repairing a flat tire

Safety measures

- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
- Switch on the hazard warning system.
- Secure the vehicle against rolling away by setting the parking brake.
- Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
- If necessary, set up a warning triangle at an appropriate distance.

Mobility System

Concept

With the Mobility System, minor tire damage can be sealed temporarily to enable continued travel. To accomplish this, sealant is pumped into the tires, which seals the damage from the inside.

General information

- Follow the instructions on using the Mobility System found on the compressor and sealant container.
- Use of the Mobility System may be ineffective if the tire puncture measures approx. 1/8 inches/4 mm or more.
- Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop if the tire cannot be made drivable.
- Do not remove foreign bodies that have penetrated the tire. Remove foreign objects only when they are visibly protruding from the tire.
- Pull the speed limit sticker off the sealant container and apply it to the steering wheel.
- The use of a sealant can damage the wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics checked and replaced at the next opportunity.
- The compressor can be used to check the tire inflation pressure.

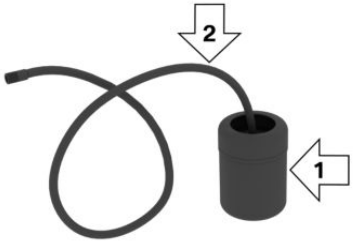
Overview

Storage

The Mobility System is located in the storage compartment under the cargo floor panel.

Fold up the cargo floor panel.

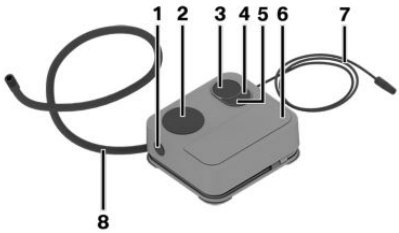
Sealant container



- Sealant container, arrow 1.
- Filling hose, arrow 2.

Observe use-by date on the sealant container.

Compressor



1 Sealant container unlocking
2 Sealant container holder
3 Tire pressure gage
4 Reduce tire inflation pressure button
5 On/off switch
6 Compressor
7 Connector/cable for socket
8 Connection hose

Safety measures

- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
- Switch on the hazard warning system.
- Secure the vehicle against rolling away by setting the parking brake.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3421
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

- Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
- If necessary, set up a warning triangle at an appropriate distance.

Filling the tire with sealant

Safety information

⚠ DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can enter into the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.

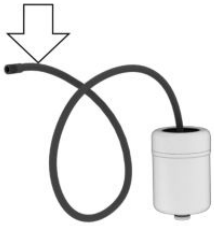
⚠ NOTICE

The compressor can overheat during extended operation. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not run the compressor for more than 10 minutes.

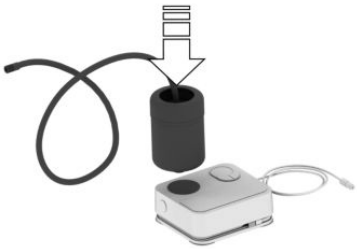
Filling

1. Shake the sealant container.

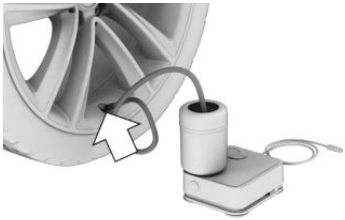
2. Pull filling hose completely out of the cover of the sealant container. Do not kink the hose.



3. Slide the sealant container into the holder on the compressor housing, ensuring that it engages audibly.



4. Screw the filling hose of the sealant container onto the tire valve of the nonworking wheel.



5. With the compressor switched off, insert the connector into the power socket in the vehicle interior.

6. With standby state or drive-ready state switched on, switch on the compressor.

Let the compressor run for max. 10 minutes to fill the tire with sealant and achieve a tire inflation pressure of approx. 2.0 bar.

While the tire is being filled with sealant, the tire inflation pressure may sporadically reach approx. 5 bar. Do not switch off the compressor at this point.

Checking and adjusting the tire inflation pressure

Checking

1. Switch off the compressor.
2. Read the tire inflation pressure on the tire pressure gage.

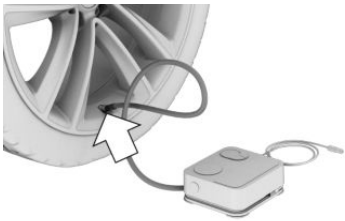
To continue the trip, a tire inflation pressure of at least 2 bar must be reached.

Removing and stowing the sealant container

1. Unscrew the filling hose of the sealant container from the tire valve.
2. Press the red unlocking device.
3. Remove the sealant container from the compressor.
4. Wrap and store the sealant container in suitable material to avoid dirtying the cargo area.

Minimum tire inflation pressure is not reached

1. Pull the connector out of the power socket in the vehicle interior.
2. Drive 33 ft/10 m forward and back to distribute the sealant in the tire.
3. Screw the connection hose of the compressor directly onto the tire valve stem.



4. Insert the connector into the power socket in the vehicle interior.

5. With standby state or drive-ready state switched on, switch on the compressor.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3423
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

When the tire pressure does not reach at least 2 bar, contact a manufacturer service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

When a tire pressure of at least 2 bar is reached, see Minimum tire inflation pressure is reached.

6. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
7. Pull the connector out of the power socket in the vehicle interior.
8. Stow the Mobility System in the vehicle.

Minimum tire inflation pressure is reached

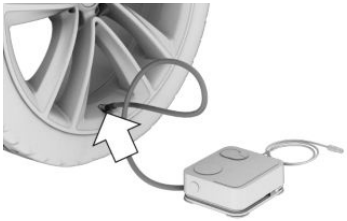
1. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
2. Pull the connector out of the power socket in the vehicle interior.
3. Stow the Mobility System in the vehicle.
4. Immediately drive approx. 5 miles/10 km to ensure that the sealant is evenly distributed in the tire.

   Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

   If possible, do not drive at speeds less than 12 mph/20 km/h.

Adjustment

1. Stop at a suitable location.
2. Screw the connection hose of the compressor directly onto the tire valve stem.



3. Insert the connector into the power socket in the vehicle interior.

4. Correct the tire inflation pressure to at least 2.0 bar:
   - ▷ Increase tire inflation pressure: with standby state or drive-ready state switched on, switch on the compressor.
   - ▷ Reduce tire inflation pressure: press the button on the compressor.
5. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
6. Pull the connector out of the power socket in the vehicle interior.
7. Stow the Mobility System in the vehicle.

Continuing the trip

Do not exceed the maximum permissible speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor again.

Replace the nonworking tire and the sealant container of the Mobility System promptly.

Additional information:

- ▷ Run-flat tires, refer to page 298.
- ▷ Tire pressure monitor, refer to page 292.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3424

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Tire chains

Safety information

Warning

With the mounting of snow chains on unsuitable tires, the snow chains can come into contact with vehicle parts. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Only mount snow chains on tires that are designated by their manufacturer as suitable for the use of snow chains.

Warning

Insufficiently tight snow chains may damage tires and vehicle components. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the snow chains are always sufficiently tight. Re-tighten as needed according to the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Fine-link tire chains

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends the use of fine-link tire chains. Certain types of fine-link tire chains have been tested by the manufacturer of the vehicle and recommended as road-safe and suitable.

Information regarding suitable tire chains is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Use

Use only in pairs on the rear wheels, equipped with the tires of the following size:

▷ 255/45 R 20.

Follow the tire chain manufacturer's instructions.

Do not initialize the Flat Tire Monitor after mounting tire chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

Do not reset the Tire Pressure Monitor after mounting tire chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

When driving with tire chains, briefly activate Dynamic Traction Control DTC to optimize the drive power.

Maximum speed with tire chains

Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h when using tire chains.

Tire pressure monitor

Concept

The system monitors tire inflation pressure in the four mounted tires. The system warns you if there is a loss of pressure in one or more tires.

General information

Sensors in the tire valves measure the tire inflation pressure and tire temperature.

Using the tire settings in iDrive, the system can automatically compare the specified target pressures with the actual tire inflation pressures.

If tires are being used that are not specified on the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle, such as tires with special approval, the system needs to be actively reset. The system will then take over the actual tire inflation pressures as the target pressures.

When operating the system, also note the information found in the Tire inflation pressure chapter.

Additional information:

Tire inflation pressure, refer to page 280.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3425
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Safety information

Warning

Incorrect entries in the tire settings can lead to incorrect target tire inflation pressure values. In this case, it cannot be guaranteed that the notification of a loss of tire inflation pressure will be reliable. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Ensure that the tire sizes of the mounted tires are displayed correctly and match the details on the tires and on the vehicle.

Functional requirements

The following conditions must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable flagging of a loss of tire inflation pressure is not assured:

- Every time a tire or wheel is changed, the correct details on the mounted tires must be entered in the tire settings.
- The Tire Pressure Monitor does not activate until after driving for a few minutes:
  - After a tire or wheel replacement.
  - After a reset, for tires with special approval.
  - After changing the tire setting.
- For tires with special approval:
  - After a tire or wheel replacement, a reset was performed with the correct tire inflation pressure.
  - After the tire inflation pressure was adjusted to a new value, a reset was performed.
- Wheels with wheel electronics.

Tire settings

General information

The tire sizes of the mounted tires can be gathered from the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle or directly on the tires.

The tire details do not need to be re-entered when the tire inflation pressure is corrected.

For summer and winter tires, the tire details entered last are stored. After a tire or wheel replacement, the settings of the tire sets used last can be selected.

Changing settings

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor"
4. "Tire settings"
5. "Tire selection"
6. "Manual"
7. "Tire type"
   - "Summer"
   - "Winter/All-year"
8. Select the tire type that is mounted on the rear axle.

   For tires with special approval:

   "Other tires/raceway"

   Observe further proceeding in the perform a reset section.
9. Select the maximum road speed that will be used with the tires.
10. "Save tire settings"

The measurement of the current tire inflation pressure is started. The measurement progress is displayed.

Status display

Current status

The system status can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g., whether or not the system is active.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor"

The current status is displayed.

Current tire inflation pressure

The current tire inflation pressure is displayed for each tire.

The current tire inflation pressures may change during driving operation or depending on the external temperature.

Current tire temperature

The current tire temperatures are displayed.

The current tire temperatures may change while driving or due to the external temperature.

Tire conditions

General information

Tire and system status are indicated by the color of the wheels and a text message on the Control Display.

Any existing messages may not be deleted if the target pressure is not reached after the tire inflation pressure is corrected.

All wheels green

- The system is active and bases warnings on the target pressures.
- For tires with special approval: the system is active and bases warnings on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

One to four yellow wheels

A flat tire or major drop in the tire inflation pressure has occurred in the indicated tires.

Gray wheels

It may not be possible to identify tire inflation pressure losses.

Possible causes:

- Malfunction.
- During tire inflation pressure measurement, after confirmation of the tire settings.
- For tires with special approval: a reset is performed for the system.

For tires with special approval: perform a reset

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor"
4. Make sure that correct tire settings have been made.

   Tire settings, refer to page 293.
5. Switch on drive-ready state and do not drive off.
6. Reset tire inflation pressure: "Perform reset".
7. Drive away.

The wheels are displayed in gray and the following is displayed "Resetting tire pressure…".

After a travel time of several minutes, the set tire inflation pressures are accepted as the target tire inflation pressures. The reset is completed automatically while driving.

After a successfully completed reset, the wheels on the Control Display are shown in green and the following is displayed: "Reset successful."

You may interrupt this trip at any time. When you continue the reset resumes automatically.

Messages: for tires without special approval

General information

A low tire inflation pressure may cause the DSC Dynamic Stability Control to be switched on.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving. Repair the flat tire or replace the wheel.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3427
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

If a tire inflation pressure check is required

Message

A symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	Inflation was not carried out according to specifications, for instance when the tire has not been sufficiently inflated or in the case of a natural steady tire pressure loss.

Measure

Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.

If the tire inflation pressure is too low

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a tire inflation pressure loss.

Measure

1. Reduce the vehicle speed. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph/130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, for instance at a gas station, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires and correct if necessary.

If there is a significant loss of tire inflation pressure

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with the affected tire appears in a Check Control message on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Read the description on What to do in case of a flat tire.

   Actions in the event of a flat tire, refer to page 296.

Messages: for tires with special approval

General information

A low tire inflation pressure may cause the DSC Dynamic Stability Control to be switched on.

Safety information

Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving. Repair the flat tire or replace the wheel.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3428
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

If a tire inflation pressure check is required

Message

A symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	Inflation was not carried out according to specifications, e.g., the tire has not been sufficiently inflated. The system has detected a wheel change, but no reset was done. The tire inflation pressure has fallen below the level of the last reset. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.
2. Perform a system reset.

If the tire inflation pressure is too low

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a tire inflation pressure loss. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Reduce the vehicle speed. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph/130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, for instance at a gas station, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires and correct if necessary.
3. Reset the system.

If there is a significant loss of tire inflation pressure

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with the affected tire appears in a Check Control message on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Read the description on What to do in case of a flat tire.

   Actions in the event of a flat tire, refer to page 296.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

1. Identify the damaged tire.

   Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure gage of a flat tire kit.

   For tires with special approval: if the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3429
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been reset. In this case, perform the reset.

If tire damage cannot be found, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

2. Repair the flat tire, e.g., with a flat tire kit or by changing the wheel.

   Use of sealant, for instance from the flat tire kit, may damage the wheel electronics. Have the electronics replaced at the next opportunity.

System limits

Temperature

The tire inflation pressure depends on the tire's temperature.

Driving or exposure to the sun will increase the tire's temperature, thus increasing the tire inflation pressure.

The tire inflation pressure is reduced when the tire temperature falls again.

These circumstances may cause a warning when temperatures fall very sharply.

Sudden tire pressure loss

The system cannot indicate sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances.

Failure performing a reset

Tires with special approval: the system will not function correctly if a reset was not performed, for example a flat tire may be indicated although the tire inflation pressures are correct.

Malfunction

Message

The yellow warning light flashes and is then illuminated continuously. A Check Control message is displayed. It may not be possible to identify tire pressure losses.

Measure

- A wheel without wheel electronics is mounted: have the wheels checked, if needed.
- A wheel without wheel electronics, such as an emergency wheel, is mounted: have the wheels checked, if needed.
- Interference caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- For tires with special approval: the system was unable to complete the reset. Perform a system reset again.

Malfunction: have the system checked.

Declaration according to NHTSA/ FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Each tire, including the spare (if provided) should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.) As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illu-

mination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale. Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Flat Tire Monitor FTM

Concept

The system detects tire inflation pressure loss on the basis of rotation speed differences between the individual wheels while driving.

In the event of a tire inflation pressure loss, the diameter and therefore the rotational speed of the corresponding wheel changes. The difference will be detected and reported as a flat tire.

The system does not measure the actual inflation pressure in the tires.

Functional requirements

The following conditions must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable flagging of a loss of tire inflation pressure is not assured:

- After a tire or wheel replacement, an initialization was performed with the correct tire inflation pressure.
- After the tire pressure was adjusted to a new value, an initialization was performed.

Status display

The current status of the Flat Tire Monitor FTM can be displayed, for instance whether the FTM is active.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) "Flat Tire Monitor"

The status is displayed.

Initialization required

An initialization must be performed in the following situations:

- After the tire inflation pressure has been adjusted.
- After a tire or wheel replacement.

Performing initialization

When initializing, the set tire inflation pressures serve as reference values in order to detect a flat tire. Initialization is started by confirming the tire inflation pressures.

Do not initialize the system when driving with tire chains.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Flat Tire Monitor"
4. Switch on drive-ready state and do not drive off.
5. Start the initialization with: "Perform reset"
6. Drive away.

The initialization is completed while driving, which can be interrupted at any time.

The initialization automatically continues when driving resumes.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3431
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Messages

General information

When a flat tire is indicated, DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if needed.

Safety information

Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving. Repair the flat tire or replace the wheel.

Indication of a flat tire

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

1. Identify the damaged tire.

   To do this, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure gage of a flat tire kit.

   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

   If identification of flat tire damage is not possible, please contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
2. Repair the flat tire, e.g., with a flat tire kit or by changing the wheel.

System limits

The system could be delayed or malfunction in the following situations:

- A natural, even tire inflation pressure loss in all four tires will not be recognized. Therefore, check the tire inflation pressure regularly.
- Sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances cannot be recognized in advance.
- The system has not been initialized.
- When driving on a snowy or slippery road surface.
- Sporty driving style: spinning traction wheels, high lateral acceleration (drifting).
- When driving with snow chains.

Changing wheels/tires

General information

When a flat tire kit is used, an immediate wheel change when there is a loss of tire inflation pressure in the event of a flat tire is not always necessary.

If needed, the tools for changing wheels are available as accessories from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3432
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Safety information

DANGER

The vehicle jack is only provided for short-term lifting of the vehicle for wheel changes. Even if all safety measures are observed, there is a risk of the raised vehicle falling, if the vehicle jack tips over. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. If the vehicle is raised, do not lie under the vehicle and do not start the engine.

DANGER

Supports such as wooden blocks under the vehicle jack reduce the capacity of the vehicle jack to bear weight. They have the potential to exert too much strain on the vehicle jack, causing it to tip over and the vehicle to fall. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not place supports under the vehicle jack.

Warning

The jack, issued by the vehicle manufacturer, is provided in order to perform a wheel change in the event of a breakdown. The jack is not designed for frequent use; for example, changing from summer to winter tires. Using the jack frequently may cause it to become jammed or damaged. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only use the jack to attach an emergency or spare wheel in the event of a breakdown.

Warning

On soft, uneven or slippery ground, for example snow, ice, tiles, etc., the vehicle jack can slip away. There is a risk of injury. If possible, change the wheel on a flat, solid, and slip-resistant surface.

Warning

The vehicle jack is optimized for lifting the vehicle and for the jacking points on the vehicle only. There is a risk of injury. Do not lift any other vehicle or cargo using the vehicle jack.

Warning

When the vehicle jack is not inserted into the jacking point provided for this purpose, the vehicle may be damaged or the vehicle jack may slip when it is being cranked up. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. When cranking up the vehicle jack, ensure that it is inserted in the jacking point next to the wheel housing.

Warning

A vehicle that is raised on a vehicle jack may fall off of the jack if lateral forces are exerted on it. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. While the vehicle is raised, do not exert lateral forces on the vehicle or pull abruptly on the vehicle. Have a stuck wheel removed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Securing the vehicle against rolling

General information

The vehicle manufacturer recommends to additionally secure the vehicle against rolling away when changing a wheel.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3433
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

On a level surface

Place wheel chocks or other suitable objects in front and behind the wheel that is diagonal to the wheel to be changed.

On a slight downhill gradient

If you need to change a wheel on a slight downhill grade, place chocks and other suitable objects, for instance rocks, under the wheels of both the front and rear axles against the rolling direction.

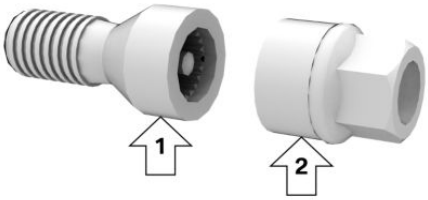
Lug bolt lock

Concept

The wheel lug bolts have a special coding. The lug bolts can only be released with the adapter which matches the coding.

Overview

The adapter of the lug bolt lock is in the onboard vehicle tool kit or in a storage compartment close to the onboard vehicle tool kit.



- Lug lock bolt, arrow 1.
- Adapter, arrow 2.

Unscrewing

1. Attach the adapter to the lug lock bolt.
2. Unscrew the lug lock bolt.
3. Remove the adapter after unscrewing the lug bolt.

Screwing on

1. Attach the adapter to the lug lock bolt. If necessary, turn the adapter until it fits on the lug lock bolt.
2. Screw on the lug lock bolt. The tightening torque is 140 Nm.
3. Remove the adapter and stow it after screwing on the lug bolt.

Preparing the vehicle

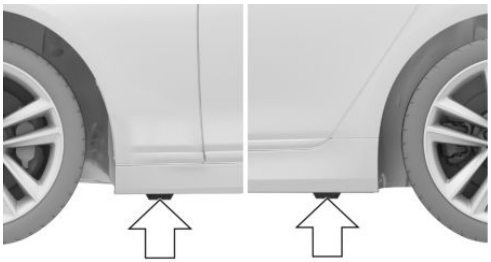
- Park the vehicle on solid and non-slip ground at a safe distance from traffic.
- Switch on the hazard warning system.
- Set the parking brake.
- Engage a gear or move the selector lever to position P.
- As soon as permitted by the traffic flow, have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3434

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

- Depending on the vehicle equipment, get wheel change tools and, if necessary, the emergency wheel from the vehicle.
- If necessary, set up a warning triangle or portable hazard warning light at an appropriate distance.
- Secure the vehicle additionally against rolling.
- Loosen the lug bolts a half turn.

Jacking points for the vehicle jack



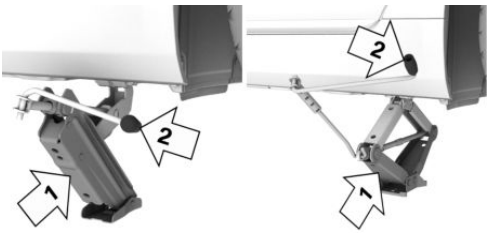
The jacking points for the vehicle jack are located at the indicated positions.

Jacking up the vehicle

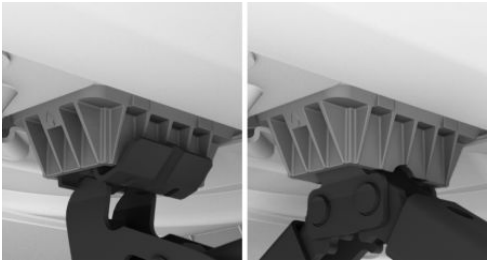
Warning

Hands and fingers can be jammed when using the vehicle jack. There is a risk of injury. Comply with the described hand position and do not change this position while using the vehicle jack.

1. Hold the vehicle jack with one hand, arrow 1, and grasp the vehicle jack crank or lever with your other hand, arrow 2.



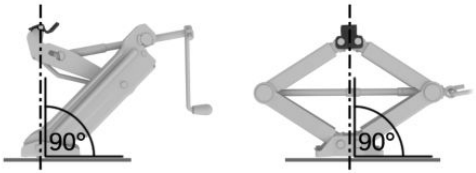
2. Insert the vehicle jack into the rectangular recess of the jacking point closest to the wheel to be changed.



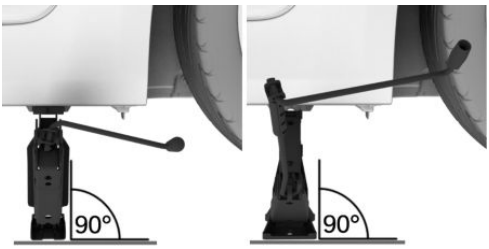
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3435
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

3. Extend the vehicle jack by turning the vehicle jack crank or lever clockwise.

4. Take your hand away from the vehicle jack as soon as the vehicle jack is under load and continue turning the vehicle jack crank or lever with one hand.
5. Make sure that the vehicle jack foot stands vertically and at a right angle beneath the jacking point.



6. Make sure that the vehicle jack foot stands vertically and perpendicularly beneath the jacking point after extending the vehicle jack.



7. Crank the vehicle up, until the vehicle jack is with the entire surface on the ground and the relevant wheel is maximum 1.2 inches/3 cm above ground.

Mounting a wheel

Warning

Unsuitable wheel studs, such as single-section wheel studs, may loosen or come off. The wheel may come loose during driving. There is a risk of accident. Use only two-section wheel studs that have been categorized as suitable for the respective wheel type by the manufacturer of the vehicle.

Mount one emergency wheel only, as required.

1. Unscrew the lug bolts.
2. Remove the wheel.
3. Put the new wheel or emergency wheel on and screw in at least two lug bolts in a crosswise pattern until hand-tight.

   When non-original light-alloy wheels of the vehicle manufacturer are mounted, the accompanying lug bolts may have to be used as well.
4. Hand-tighten the remaining lug bolts and tighten all lug bolts well in a crosswise pattern.
5. Turn the vehicle jack crank counterclockwise to retract the vehicle jack and lower the vehicle.
6. Remove the vehicle jack and stow it securely.

After the wheel change

1. Tighten the lug bolts crosswise. The tightening torque is 101 lbs ft/140 Nm.
2. Stow the nonworking wheel in the cargo area, if necessary.

   The nonworking wheel cannot be stored under the cargo floor panel because of its size.
3. Check tire inflation pressure at the next opportunity and correct as needed.
4. Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

   Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor again.

5. Check to make sure the lug bolts are tight with a calibrated torque wrench.
6. Have the damaged tire replaced at the nearest dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Emergency wheel

Concept

In the event of a flat tire, the emergency wheel can be used in place of the wheel with the defective tire. The emergency wheel is only intended for temporary use until the defective tire/wheel has been replaced.

General information

Mount one emergency wheel only.

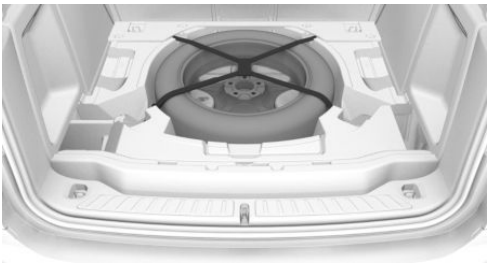
Also check the tire inflation pressure of the emergency wheel in the cargo area regularly, and correct it as needed.

Safety information

Warning

The emergency wheel has particular dimensions. When driving with an emergency wheel, changed driving properties may occur, for instance reduced lane stability when braking, longer braking distance, and changed self-steering properties in the limit area. There is a risk of accident. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

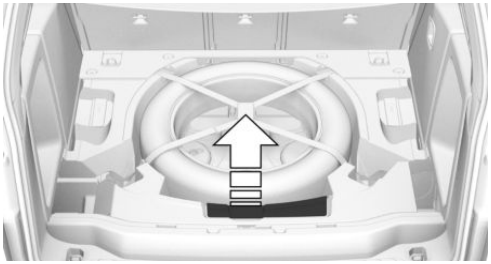
Overview



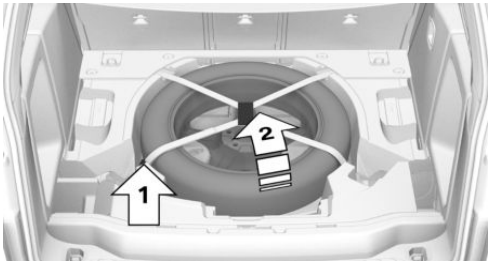
The emergency wheel and the wheel change tools are located in the cargo area under the cargo floor panel.

Removing the emergency wheel

1. Fold the rear part of the cargo floor panel forward.
2. Lift the cargo floor panel up and attach it to the folded-down multi-function hook.
3. Remove the cover.



4. Open the ratchet strap at the clasp, arrow 1.



5. Remove the emergency wheel from the storage well, arrow 2.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3437
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Inserting the emergency wheel

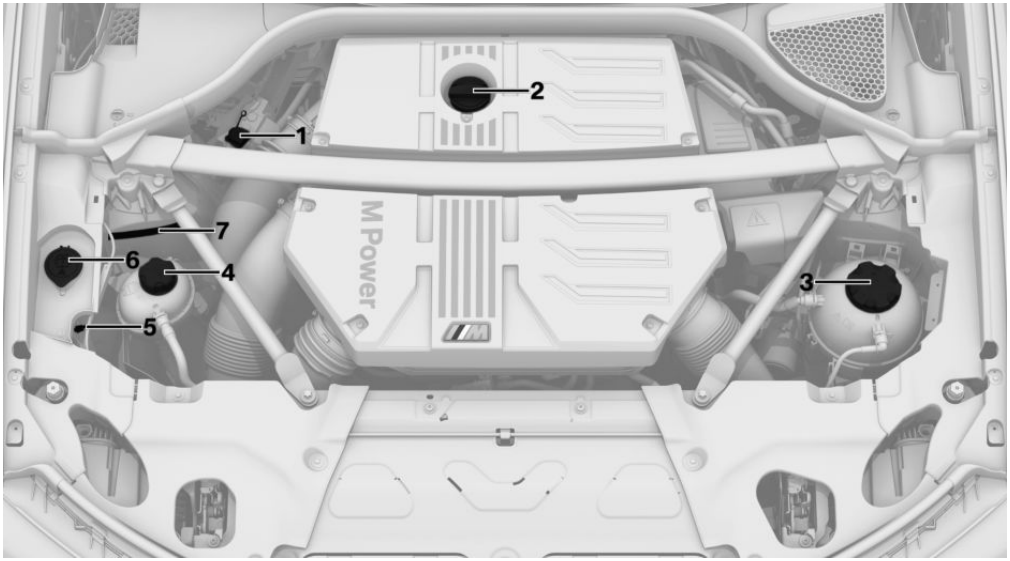
1. Place the emergency wheel in the storage well.
2. Tie the ratchet strap. Make sure that it is correctly and firmly seated.
3. Install the cover.
4. Lift the cargo floor panel up slightly and fold in the multi-function hook.
5. Lower the cargo floor panel and fold it toward the rear.

Engine compartment

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Overview



1 Jump-starting, positive battery terminal
2 Oil filler neck
3 Coolant reservoir, engine
4 Coolant reservoir, auxiliary cooling
5 Jump-starting, negative battery terminal
6 Filler neck for washer fluid
7 Vehicle identification number

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3439
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Hood

Safety information

Warning

Improperly executed work in the engine compartment can damage vehicle components and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of an accident and damage to property. Have work in the engine compartment performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

The engine compartment accommodates moving components. Certain components in the engine compartment can also move with the vehicle switched off, for instance the radiator fan. There is a risk of injury. Do not reach into the area of moving parts. Keep articles of clothing and hair away from moving parts.

Warning

There are protruding parts, for instance locking hook, on the inside of the hood. There is a risk of injury. If the hood is open, pay attention to protruding parts and keep clear of these areas.

Warning

An incorrectly locked hood can open while driving and restrict visibility. There is a risk of accident. Stop immediately and correctly close the hood.

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when opening and closing the hood. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of hood is clear during opening and closing.

NOTICE

Folded-away wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.

NOTICE

When the hood is closed, it must engage on both sides. Pressing again can damage the hood. There is a risk of damage to property. Open the hood again and then close it energetically. Avoid pressing again.

Opening

1. Pull lever, arrow 1.

   Hood is unlocked.

2. After the lever is released, pull the lever again, arrow 2.

   Hood can be opened.

3. Be careful of protruding parts on the hood.

Closing

Energetically close the hood from approx. 20 in/50 cm.

The hood must engage on both sides.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3441
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Operating materials

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Fuel recommendation

General information

Depending on the region, many gas stations sell fuel that has been customized to winter or summer conditions. Fuel that is available in winter, for instance helps make a cold start easier.

Gasoline

General information

For the best fuel efficiency, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.

Fuels with a maximum ethanol content of 25 %, i. e. E10 or E25, may be used for refueling.

Ethanol should meet the following quality standards:

US: ASTM 4806–xx

CAN: CGSB-3.511–xx

xx: comply with the current standard in each case.

Safety information

⚠ CAUTION

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in harmful engine deposits or damage. Additionally, problems relating to drivability, starting and stalling, especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude, may occur.

If drivability problems are encountered, we recommend switching to a high quality gasoline brand and a higher octane grade — AKI number — for a few tank fills. To avoid harmful engine deposits, it is highly recommended to purchase gasoline from Top Tier retailers.

Failure to comply with these recommendations may result in the need for unscheduled maintenance.

⚠ NOTICE

Even small quantities of the wrong fuel or wrong fuel additives can damage the fuel system and engine. Furthermore, the catalytic converter is permanently damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not refuel or add the following in the case of gasoline engines:

- Leaded gasoline.
- Metallic additives, for instance manganese or iron.

Do not press the Start/Stop button after refueling with the wrong fuel. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

NOTICE

Fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality can compromise engine function or cause engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not fill with fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality.

NOTICE

Incorrect fuels can damage the fuel system and the engine. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use fuels with a higher percentage of ethanol than recommended. Do not refuel with fuels containing methanol, e.g. M5 to M100.

Recommended fuel grade

BMW recommends AKI 93.

Refuel with this gasoline to achieve the rated performance and consumption values.

Minimum fuel grade

BMW recommends AKI 91.

If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI Rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high external temperatures. This has no effect on the engine life.

BMW M recommends Shell V-Power

Engine oil

General information

The engine oil consumption is dependent on your driving style and driving conditions.

Therefore, regularly check the engine oil level after refueling by taking a detailed measurement.

The engine oil consumption can increase in the following situations, for instance:

- Sporty driving style.
- Break-in of the engine.
- Idling of the engine.
- With use of engine oil types that are classified as not suitable.

Different Check Control messages appear on the Control Display depending on the engine oil level.

Safety information

NOTICE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Immediately add engine oil.

NOTICE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add too much engine oil. When too much engine oil is added, have the engine oil level corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Electronic oil measurement

General information

The electronic oil measurement has two measuring principles:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3443
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

- Monitoring.
- Detailed measurement.

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a sporty driving style, for instance when taking curves aggressively, regularly perform a detailed measurement.

Monitoring

Concept

The engine oil level is monitored electronically while driving and can be shown on the Control Display.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.

A red indicator light indicates that the engine oil pressure is too low.

Functional requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of normal driving.

Displaying the engine oil level

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"

The engine oil level is displayed.

System limits

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a sporty driving style, it may not be possible to calculate a measured value. In this case, the measured value for the last, sufficiently long trip is displayed.

Detailed measurement

Concept

The engine oil level is checked when the vehicle is stationary and displayed via a scale.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.

General information

During the measurement, the idle speed is increased somewhat.

Functional requirements

- Vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- Selector lever in selector lever position N or P and accelerator pedal not depressed.
- Engine is running and is at operating temperature.

Performing a detailed measurement

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"
4. "Engine oil measurement"
5. "Start measurement"

The engine oil level is checked and displayed via a scale.

Adding engine oil

General information

Only add engine oil when the message is displayed in the instrument cluster. The quantity to be added is indicated in the message shown on the Control Display.

Only add suitable types of engine oil.

Safely park the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before adding engine oil.

Take care not to add too much engine oil.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3444
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Safety information

Warning

Operating materials, for instance oils, greases, coolants, fuels, can contain harmful ingredients. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Follow the instructions on the containers. Avoid the contact of articles of clothing, skin or eyes with operating materials. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.

NOTICE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Immediately add engine oil.

NOTICE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add too much engine oil. When too much engine oil is added, have the engine oil level corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Overview

The oil filler neck is located in the engine compartment.

Additional information:

For an overview, refer to page 306.

Adding engine oil

1. Opening the hood.

   Opening, refer to page 307.
2. Open the lid counterclockwise.

3. Add engine oil.
4. Close the lid.

Engine oil types to add

General information

The engine oil quality is critical for the life of the engine.

Only add the types of engine oil which are listed.

Safety information

NOTICE

Oil additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use oil additives.

NOTICE

Incorrect engine oil can cause malfunctions in the engine or damage it. There is a risk of damage to property. When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has the correct oil rating.

Suitable engine oil types

Add engine oils that meet the following oil rating standards:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3445
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Oil rating
BMW Longlife-01 FE.

Alternative engine oil types

If an engine oil suitable for continuous use is not available, up to 1 US quart/liter of an engine oil with the following oil rating can be added:

Oil rating
API SL.
API SM.
API SN.

Viscosity grades

Viscosity grades
SAE 0W-20.
SAE 0W-30.

More information about suitable oil ratings and viscosity grades of engine oils can be requested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Engine oil change

NOTICE

Engine oil that is not changed in timely fashion can cause increased engine wear and thus engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. It is recommended that you do not exceed the service intervals indicated in the vehicle.

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop change the engine oil.

BMW recommends
Original BMW Engine Oil.

Coolant

General information

Coolant consists of water and additives.

Not all commercially available additives are suitable for the vehicle. Do not mix additives of different colors. Observe the water - additive mixing ratio of 50:50. Information about suitable additives is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Warning

With the engine hot and the cooling system open, coolant can escape and lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury. Only open the cooling system with the engine cooled down.

Warning

Additives are harmful and incorrect additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Do not allow additives to come into contact with skin, eyes or articles of clothing. Use suitable additives only.

Coolant level

General information

Depending on the motorization, there are up to two coolant reservoirs in the engine compartment. Check and top up the coolant levels on a regular basis.

The coolant level is indicated using minimum and maximum markings in the filler neck of the coolant reservoir.

Additional information:

For an overview, refer to page 306.

Checking the coolant level on the side markings

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Opening the hood.

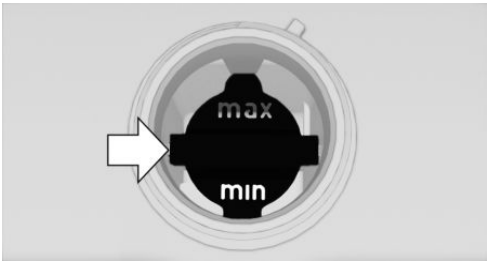
   Opening, refer to page 307.
3. The coolant level is correct if it lies between the minimum and maximum marks on the coolant reservoir.

Symbol	Meaning
▽	Maximum.
△	Minimum.

Checking the coolant level in the filler neck

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Opening the hood.

   Opening, refer to page 307.
3. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.
4. Open the coolant reservoir lid.
5. The coolant level is correct if it lies between the minimum and maximum marks in the filler neck.



6. Close the lid.

Adding coolant

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Opening the hood.

   Opening, refer to page 307.
3. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.
4. Open the coolant reservoir lid.
5. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to the specified level; do not overfill.
6. Close the lid.
7. Have the cause of the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.

Disposal

Comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant and coolant additives.

Washer fluid

General information

All washer nozzles are supplied from one reservoir.

Use a mixture of tap water and windshield washer concentrate. If desired, a windshield

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3447
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

washer concentrate containing antifreeze can be used.

Recommended minimum fill quantity:
0.2 US gal/1 liter.

Safety information

Warning

Some antifreeze agents can contain harmful substances and are flammable. There is a risk of fire and a risk of injury. Follow the instructions on the containers. Keep antifreeze away from ignition sources. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.

United States: the washer fluid mixture ratio is regulated by the U.S. EPA and many individual states; do not exceed the allowable washer fluid dilution ratio limits that apply. Follow the usage instructions on the washer fluid container.

Use of BMW's Windshield Washer Concentrate or the equivalent is recommended.

Warning

Washer fluid can ignite and catch fire on contact with hot engine parts. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Only add washer fluid when the engine is cooled down. Next, fully close the lid of the washer fluid reservoir.

NOTICE

Silicon-containing additives in the washer fluid for the water-repelling effect on the windows can lead to damage to the washing system. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add silicon-containing additives to the washer fluid.

NOTICE

Mixing different windshield washer concentrates or antifreeze can damage the washing system. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not mix different windshield washer concentrates or antifreeze. Follow the information and mixing ratios provided on the containers.

Overview

The washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment.

Malfunction

The use of undiluted windshield washer concentrate or alcohol-based antifreeze can lead to incorrect readings at temperatures below +5 °F/-15 °C.

Maintenance

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

BMW maintenance system

The maintenance system provides service notifications and thereby provides support in maintaining road safety and the operational reliability of the vehicle.

In some cases, scopes and intervals of the maintenance system may vary according to the country version. Replacement work, spare parts, fuels and lubricants, and wear materials are calculated separately. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Condition Based Service CBS

Concept

Sensors and special algorithms take into account the driving conditions of the vehicle. CBS uses these to provide maintenance recommendations.

The system makes it possible to adapt the amount of maintenance corresponding to your user profile.

General information

Information on service notifications can be displayed on the Control Display.

Additional information:

Service notifications, refer to page 149.

Service data in the vehicle key

Information on the service notifications is continuously stored in the vehicle key. The service center can read this data out and suggest a maintenance scope for the vehicle.

Therefore, hand the service advisor the vehicle key with which the vehicle was driven most recently.

Storage periods

Storage periods during which the vehicle battery was disconnected are not taken into account.

If this occurs, have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop update the time-dependent maintenance procedures, such as checking brake fluid and, if necessary, changing the engine oil and the microfilter/activated-charcoal filter.

Maintenance Manual and Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

Please consult your Maintenance Manual and Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3449

the performance of service and maintenance work.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that maintenance and repair be performed by a service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Records of regular maintenance and repair work should be retained.

Socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis

General information

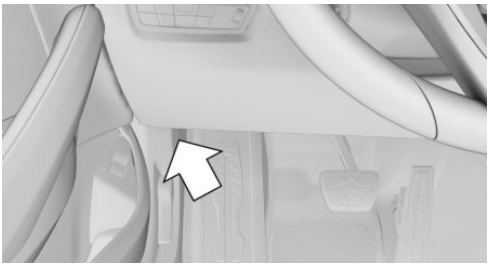
Devices connected to the OBD socket trigger the alarm system when the vehicle is locked. Remove any devices connected at the OBD socket before locking the vehicle.

Safety information

NOTICE

The socket for Onboard Diagnosis is an intricate component intended to be used in conjunction with specialized equipment to check the vehicle's primary emissions system. Improper use of the socket for Onboard Diagnosis, or contact with the socket for Onboard Diagnosis for other than its intended purpose, can cause vehicle malfunctions and creates risks of personal and property damage. Given the foregoing, the manufacture of your vehicle strongly recommends that access to the socket for Onboard Diagnosis be limited to a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or other persons that have the specialized training and equipment for purposes of properly utilizing the socket for Onboard Diagnosis.

Position



There is an OBD socket on the driver's side for checking the primary components in the vehicle's emissions.

Emissions

- The warning light lights up:

  Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

- The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:

  This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

  Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3450

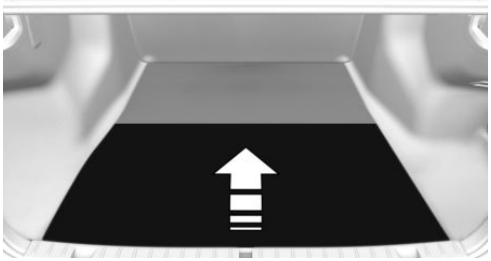
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Replacing components

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Vehicle tool kit



The onboard vehicle tool kit is located under the cargo floor panel.

Wiper blades

Safety information

NOTICE

The window may sustain damage if the wiper falls onto it without the wiper blade installed. There is a risk of damage to property. Hold the wiper firmly when changing the wiper blade. Do not fold or switch on the wiper without a wiper blade installed.

NOTICE

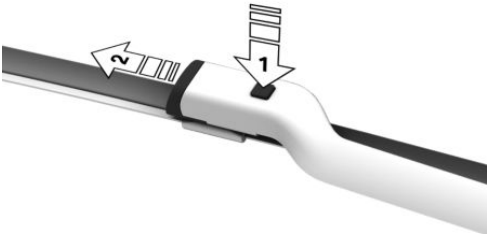
Folded-away wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.

Replace front wiper blades

1. To change the wiper blades, fold up the wiper arms.

   Fold-away position of the wipers, refer to page 131.
2. Lift the wiper off of the windshield and hold.

3. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull out the wiper blade, arrow 2.



BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3451
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

4. Insert the new wiper blade and press it on until it you hear it snap into the holder.
5. Fold down the wipers.

Replacing the rear wiper blade

The wiper blade is engaged at the end of the wiper arm.

1. Lift off the wiper fully and pull off the wiper blade, arrow.

2. Attach a new wiper blade. The wiper blade must engage audibly.
3. Fold down the wipers.

Lights and bulbs

General information

Lights and bulbs make an essential contribution to vehicle safety.

All headlights and lights are made using LED or laser technology.

Some items of equipment use light-emitting diodes installed behind a cover as a light source. These light-emitting diodes are related to conventional lasers and are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you let a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop perform the work in case of a malfunction.

Safety information

Warning

Bulbs can get hot during operation. Contact with the bulbs can cause burns. There is a risk of injury. Only change bulbs after they have cooled off.

Warning

Work on switched-on lighting systems can cause short circuits. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. When working on the lighting system, switch off the lights in question. If necessary, heed the bulb manufacturer's instructions.

Warning

Focused laser light can irritate or permanently damage the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that the work on the lighting system including bulb replacement be performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

Intensive brightness can irritate or damage the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. Do not look directly into the headlights or other light sources. Do not remove the LED covers.

NOTICE

Dirty bulbs have a reduced service life. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not hold new bulbs with your bare hands. Use a clean cloth or something similar, or hold the bulb by its base.

Headlight glass

Condensation can form on the inside of the headlight glass in cool or humid weather. When driving with the lights switched on, the condensation evaporates after a short time. The headlight glass does not need to be changed.

If despite driving with the headlights switched on, increasing humidity forms, for instance water droplets in the light, have the headlights checked.

Tail lights

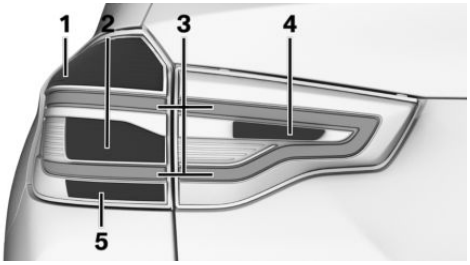
General information

With LED headlights or LED headlights with enhanced features: the rear light features LED technology.

With Adaptive LED headlights: all tail lights feature LED technology.

In the case of a malfunction, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Overview



1 Brake light
2 Turn signal
3 Tail lights
4 Reversing lights
5 Rear fog light
Lower brake lights

Exterior tail lights, bulb replacement

General information

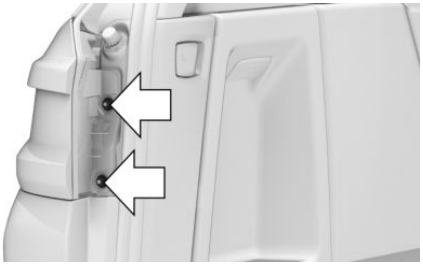
Brake lights, turn signal: 21-watt bulb, P21W.

Rear fog light: 21-watt bulb, H21W.

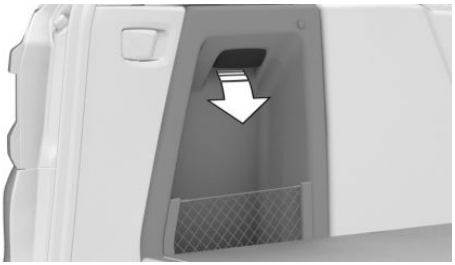
Removing the exterior tail light

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Use the screwdriver from the onboard vehicle tool kit to loosen the clip, arrow 1, and remove the cover, arrow 2.

3. Release both nuts.

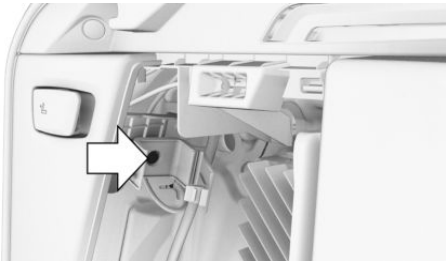


4. Open the cover on the side trim in the cargo area, arrow, and remove the warning triangle.
Warning triangle, refer to page 324.

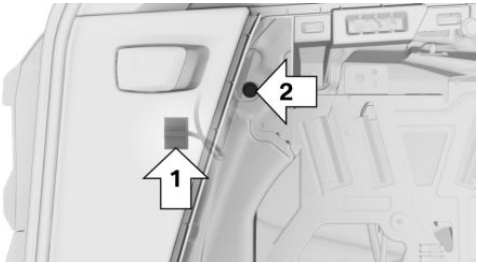


BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3453
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

5. Loosen the screw and remove the holder.



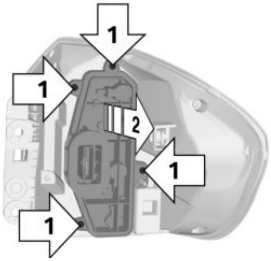
6. Remove the connector, arrow 1, and loosen the screw, arrow 2.



7. Detach the tail light from the body.

Replacing the bulbs

1. Loosen the four fasteners on the bulb holder, arrow 1, and detach the bulb holder from the tail light, arrow 2.



2. Press the bulb gently into the bulb holder, turn counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Proceed in the reverse order to insert the new bulb and attach the bulb holder. Make sure that the bulb holder is engaged in all fasteners.

Installing the tail light

1. Install the tail light in reverse order of removal and attach the connector.
2. Install the holder for the warning triangle and attach the warning triangle.
3. Close the cover on the side trim in the cargo area.
4. Fasten the cover with the clip.

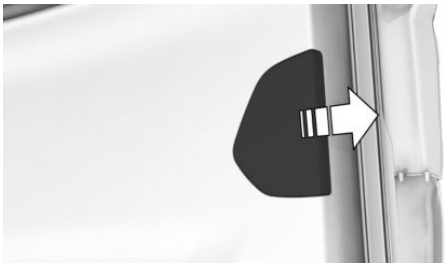
Reversing light in the tailgate

General information

21-watt bulb, H21W.

Access to the light

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Pull out the cover at the recessed grip, arrow.



Replacing the bulbs

1. Pull the bulb holder out of the reflector.
2. Press the bulb gently into the bulb holder, turn counterclockwise and remove it.
3. To insert the new bulb and attach the bulb holder, proceed in reverse order of removal.

Vehicle battery

General information

The battery is maintenance-free.

More information about the battery can be requested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3454

Safety information

DANGER

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.

Warning

Vehicle batteries that are not compatible can damage vehicle systems and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of an accident and damage to property. Only vehicle batteries that are compatible with your vehicle type should be installed in your vehicle. Information on compatible vehicle batteries is available at your dealer's service center.

Register the battery to the vehicle

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you have a service center or another qualified service center or repair shop register the vehicle battery to the vehicle after the battery has been replaced. Once the battery has been registered again, all comfort features will be available without restriction and any Check Control messages displayed which relate to comfort features will disappear.

Charging the battery

General information

Make sure that the battery is always sufficiently charged to guarantee that the battery remains usable for its full service life.

A discharged battery is indicated by a red indicator light.

Charge the battery when acceleration is insufficient.

The following circumstances can have a negative effect on the performance of the battery:

- Frequent short-distance drives.
- The vehicle is not used for more than a month.

Safety information

NOTICE

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery can work with high voltages and currents, which means that the 12 volt electrical system can be overloaded or damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.

Charging the battery

Charge the battery only when the engine is off and via the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.

Additional information:

Starting aid terminals, refer to page 327.

Power failure

After a power loss, some equipment needs to be newly initialized or individual settings updated, for example:

- With Memory function: store the positions again.
- Time: update.
- Date: update.
- Glass sunroof: initialize the system.

Disposing of old batteries

Have old batteries disposed of by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take them to a collection point.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3455
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Maintain the filled battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Secure the battery so that it does not tip over during transport.

Fuses

General information

The fuses are located at different places in the vehicle.

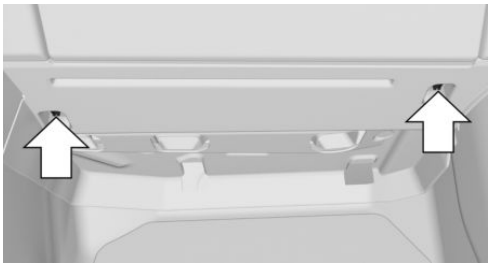
Safety information

Warning

Incorrect and repaired fuses can overload electrical lines and components. There is a risk of fire. Never attempt to repair a blown fuse. Do not replace a nonworking fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating.

In the car's interior

The fuses are located in the car's interior in the front passenger floor area behind a cover.

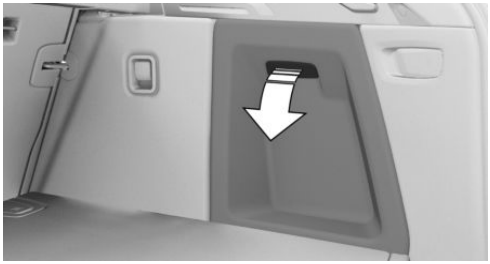


Loosen fasteners, arrows, and open cover.

The fuse box is located on the front right.

In the cargo area

The fuses are located in the cargo area on the right side behind a cover.



Open the cover on the right side trim.

The fuse box may be located behind the sound insulation.

Information on the fuse types and locations, as well as the positions of any other fuse boxes, is available on the Internet: www.bmw.com/fusecard.

Where applicable, information on the fuse types and locations is also found on a separate sheet in the fuse box.

Additional fuse boxes

Additional fuse boxes are located in the vehicle. In the case of a malfunction, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Replacing fuses

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop replace the fuses.

Breakdown assistance

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Hazard warning flashers

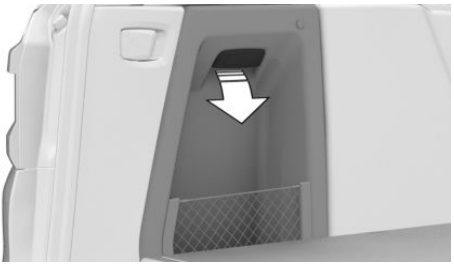
The button is located in the center console.

The red light in the button flashes when the hazard warning flashers are activated.

Warning triangle

The warning triangle is located behind the left-hand cover in the cargo area.

1. Open the cover on the left side trim.



2. Open the bracket and take the warning triangle out in the direction of the car's interior.

First-aid kit

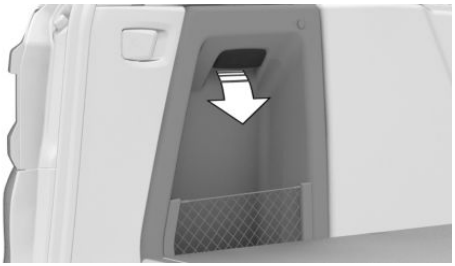
General information

Some of the articles have a limited service life.

Check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace any expired items promptly.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3457
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Storage



The first-aid kit is located behind the left-hand cover in the cargo area.

To open, pull on the handle.

BMW Roadside Assistance

Concept

Contact the BMW Group Roadside Assistance if assistance is needed in the event of a breakdown.

General information

In the event of a breakdown, data on the vehicle's condition is transmitted to the BMW Roadside Assistance.

There are various ways of contacting BMW Roadside Assistance.

- Via a Check Control message.

  Supplementary text messages, refer to page 143.
- Calling with a mobile phone.
- Via the BMW Connected app.

Functional requirements

- Active ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- Cellular network reception.
- Standby state is switched on.

Starting manually

If the vehicle is equipped with Teleservices, support is offered through Teleservice Diagnosis.

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "BMW Assist"
4. If necessary, "BMW Roadside Assistance"

   A voice connection is established.

Teleservice Diagnosis

Teleservice Diagnosis enables the wireless transmission of detailed vehicle data that is important for vehicle diagnosis. This data is transmitted automatically. It may be necessary to approve this on the Control Display.

Teleservice Help

Depending on the country, Teleservice Help enables an in-depth diagnosis of the vehicle by BMW Roadside Assistance via wireless transmission.

You can launch Teleservice Help by requesting it through BMW Roadside Assistance.

1. Park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Set the parking brake.
3. Control Display is switched on.
4. Confirm Teleservice Help.

BMW Accident Assistance

Concept

BMW Group Accident Assistance can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of an accident.

General information

If the vehicle sensors detect a minor to moderately severe accident, which did not trigger any airbags, a Check Control message appears on

the instrument cluster. In addition, a text message appears on the Control Display.

When BMW Accident Assistance is activated, data on the vehicle's condition is sent to BMW.

Functional requirements

- Active ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- Cellular network reception.
- Standby state is switched on.

Starting BMW Accident Assistance

If an accident is detected automatically

A text message relating to BMW Accident Assistance appears on the Control Display.

The connection can be established directly:

"Contact accident assistance"

The Check Control message for BMW Accident Assistance can also be called up from the stored Check Control messages for a certain length of time.

Additional information:

Check Control, refer to page 142.

Starting manually

BMW Accident Assistance can also be contacted independently of the automatic accident detection function.

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "BMW Assist"
4. "BMW Accident Assistance"

   Follow the displays on the Control Display. A voice connection is established.

Emergency Request

Intelligent emergency call

Concept

In case of an emergency, an Emergency Request can be triggered automatically by the system or manually.

General information

Only press the SOS button in an emergency.

The Intelligent Assist system establishes a connection with the BMW Response Center.

For technical reasons, the Emergency Request cannot be guaranteed under unfavorable conditions.

Overview

SOS button.

Functional requirements

- Standby state is switched on.
- The Assist system is functional.
- If the vehicle is equipped with intelligent emergency call: the SIM card integrated in the vehicle has been activated.

Automatic triggering

Under certain conditions, for instance if the airbags trigger, an Emergency Request is automatically initiated immediately after an accident of corresponding severity. Automatic Collision Noti-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3459
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

fication is not affected by pressing the SOS button.

Manual triggering

1. Tap the cover.
2. Press and hold the SOS button until the LED in the area of the button illuminates green.

▷ The LED is illuminated green when an Emergency Request has been initiated.

If a cancel prompt appears on the Control Display, the Emergency Request can be aborted.

If the situation allows, wait in your vehicle until the voice connection has been established.

▷ The LED flashes green when a connection to the BMW Response Center has been established.

The BMW Response Center then makes contact with the occupants of the vehicle and initiates further steps to help.

Even if you are unable to respond, the BMW Response Center can take further steps to help you under certain circumstances.

For this purpose, data that serves to determine the necessary rescue measures, for instance the current position of the vehicle when it can be determined, is transmitted to the BMW Response Center.

Even if the BMW Response Center is no longer heard through the loudspeakers, the BMW Response Center may still be able to hear the occupants of the vehicle.

The BMW Response Center ends the Emergency Request.

Jump-starting

General information

If the battery is discharged, the engine can be started using the battery of another vehicle and two jumper cables. Only use jumper cables with fully insulated clamp handles.

Safety information

⚠ DANGER

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.

⚠ Warning

If the jumper cables are connected in the incorrect order, sparking may occur. There is a risk of injury. Pay attention to the correct order during connection.

⚠ NOTICE

In the case of body contact between the two vehicles, a short circuit can occur during jump-starting. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that no body contact occurs.

Preparation

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts. The voltage information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any electrical consumers in both vehicles.

Starting aid terminals

The starting aid terminal in the engine compartment acts as the positive battery terminal.

A special connection on the body in the engine compartment acts as the negative battery terminal.

Additional information:

Overview of engine compartment, refer to page 306.

Open the cover of the positive battery terminal.

Connecting the cables

Before you begin, switch off all unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers, such as the radio, on the assisting and receiving vehicle.

1. Open the cover of the starting aid terminal.
2. Attach one terminal clamp of the positive jumper cable to the positive battery terminal, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the terminal clamp on the other end of the cable to the positive battery terminal, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one terminal clamp of the negative jumper cable to the negative battery terminal, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of assisting vehicle.
5. Attach the second terminal clamp to the negative battery terminal, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

Starting the engine

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.

1. Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run for several minutes at an increased idle speed.
2. Start the engine of the vehicle that is to be started in the usual way.

   If the first starting attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before making another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.
3. Let both engines run for several minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables in the reverse order.

Check the battery and recharge, if needed.

Tow-starting and towing

Safety information

Warning

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

M Steptronic Sport transmission: transporting the vehicle

General information

The vehicle is not permitted to be towed.

Safety information

NOTICE

The vehicle can be damaged when towing the vehicle with a single lifted axle. There is a risk of damage to property. The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.

NOTICE

The vehicle can become damaged when lifting and securing it.

There is a risk of damage to property.

- ▷ Lift the vehicle using suitable means.
- ▷ Do not lift or secure the vehicle by its tow fitting, body parts, or suspension parts.

Pushing the vehicle

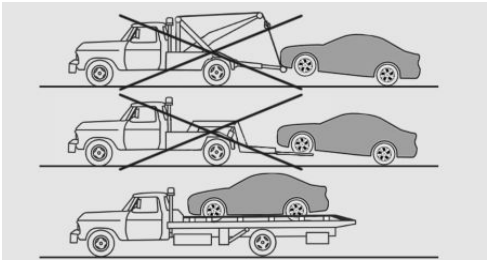
To remove a broken-down vehicle from the danger area, it can be pushed for a short distance.

Additional information:

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 134.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3461
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Tow truck



The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.

Towing other vehicles

General information

Switch on the hazard warning system, depending on local regulations.

If the electrical system has failed, clearly identify the vehicle being towed by placing a sign or a warning triangle in the rear window.

Safety information

Warning

If the approved gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is lighter than the vehicle to be towed, the tow fitting can tear off or it will not be possible to control the vehicle's response. There is a risk of accident. Make sure that the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is heavier than the vehicle to be towed.

NOTICE

If the tow bar or tow rope is attached incorrectly, damage to other vehicle parts can occur. There is a risk of damage to property. Correctly attach the tow bar or tow rope to the tow fitting.

Tow bar

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles.

Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an offset angle, please follow the following:

- Maneuvering capability is limited going around corners.
- The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is secured with an offset.

Tow rope

Observe the following notes when using the tow rope:

- Use nylon ropes or straps, which will enable the vehicle to be towed without jerking.
- Make sure the tow rope is not twisted when fastening.
- Check the fastening of the tow fitting and tow rope in regular intervals.
- Do not exceed a towing speed of 30 mph/50 km/h.
- Do not exceed a towing distance of 3 miles/5 km.
- When starting to tow the vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

Tow fitting

General information

The screw-in tow fitting should always be carried in the vehicle.

The tow fitting can be screwed in at the front or rear of the vehicle.

The tow fitting is found in the onboard vehicle tool kit.

- Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle and screw it all the way in.
- Use the tow fitting for towing on paved roads only.
- Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, for instance do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting.
- Check the fastening of the tow fitting in regular intervals.

Additional information:

Onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 318.

Safety information

NOTICE

If the tow fitting is not used as intended, there may be damage to the vehicle or to the tow fitting. There is a risk of damage to property. Follow the notes on using the tow fitting.

Screw thread for tow fitting

Press on the mark on the edge of the cover to push it out.

For covers which have an opening instead of a marking, pull the cover out by the opening.

Tow-starting

Do not tow-start the vehicle.

Start the engine by jump-starting, if possible.

Have the reasons for the starting difficulties corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Jump-starting, refer to page 327.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3463
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Care

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Washing the vehicle

General information

Regularly remove foreign objects such as leaves in the area below the windshield when the hood is raised.

Wash your vehicle frequently, particularly in winter. Intense soiling and road salt can damage the vehicle.

Steam blaster and high-pressure washer

Safety information

NOTICE

When cleaning with high-pressure washers, components can be damaged due to the pressure or temperatures being too high. There is a risk of damage to property. Maintain sufficient distance and do not spray too long continuously. Follow the operating instructions for the high-pressure washer.

Distances and temperature

- Maximum temperature: 140 °F/60 °C.
- Minimum distance from sensors, cameras, seals: 12 inches/30 cm.
- Minimum distance from glass sunroof: 31.5 in/80 cm.

Automatic washing systems or car washes

Safety information

NOTICE

Improper use of automatic washing systems or car washes can cause damage to the vehicle. There is a risk of damage to property. Follow the following instructions:

- Give preference to cloth car washes or those that use soft brushes in order to avoid paint damage.
- Do not drive through a car wash with guide rails higher than 4 in/10 cm to avoid damage to the chassis.
- Observe the tire width of the guide rail to avoid damage to tires and rims.
- Fold in exterior mirrors to avoid damage to the exterior mirrors.
- Deactivate the wiper and, if necessary, rain sensor to avoid damage to the wiper system.

Driving out of a car wash

Ensure that the vehicle key is in the car.

Switch on drive-ready state.

Additional information:

Drive-ready state, refer to page 42.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3464
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Headlights

Do not rub wet headlights dry and do not use abrasive or acidic cleaning agents.

Soak areas that have been dirtied, for instance from insects, with shampoo and wash off with water.

Thaw ice with de-icing spray; do not use an ice scraper.

After washing the vehicle

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them; otherwise, braking action can be reduced. The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Completely remove all residues on the windows, to minimize loss of visibility due to smearing and to reduce wiper noises and wiper blade wear.

Vehicle care

Vehicle care products

General information

BMW recommends using vehicle care and cleaning products from BMW. Suitable care products are available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

Cleansers can contain substances that are dangerous and harmful to your health. There is a risk of injury. When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows. Only use products intended for cleaning vehicles. Follow the instructions on the container.

Vehicle paint

General information

Regular care contributes to driving safety and value retention. Environmental influences in areas with elevated air pollution or natural contaminants, such as tree resin or pollen can affect the vehicle's paintwork. Tailor the frequency and extent of your vehicle care to these influences.

Corrosive substances such as spilled fuel, oil, grease or bird droppings, must be removed immediately to prevent the finish from being altered or discolored.

Matte finish

Only use cleaning and care products suitable for vehicles with matte finish.

Leather care

Remove dust from the leather regularly, using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Otherwise, particles of dust and road grime chafe in pores and folds, and lead to increased wear and premature degradation of the leather surface.

To guard against discoloration, such as from clothing, clean leather and provide leather care roughly every two months.

Clean light-colored leather more frequently because soiling on such surfaces is substantially more visible.

Use leather care products; otherwise, dirt and grease will gradually break down the protective layer of the leather surface.

Upholstery material care

General information

Vacuum the upholstery regularly with a vacuum cleaner.

If upholstery is very dirty, for instance with beverage stains, use a soft sponge or microfiber cloth with a suitable interior cleaner.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3465
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Clean the upholstery down to the seams using large sweeping motions. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.

Safety information

NOTICE

Open Velcro® fasteners on articles of clothing can damage the seat covers. There is a risk of damage to property. Ensure that any Velcro® fasteners are closed.

Caring for special components

Light-alloy wheels

When cleaning the vehicle, use only neutral wheel cleaners having a pH value from 5 to 9. Do not use abrasive cleaning agents or steam jets above 140 °F/60 °C. Follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Aggressive, acidic or alkaline cleaning agents can destroy the protective layer of adjacent components, such as the brake disc.

After cleaning, apply the brakes briefly to dry them. The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Chrome surfaces

Carefully clean Chrome surfaces, especially in case of exposure to road salt, with plenty of water and added cleanser as needed.

Rubber components

Environmental influences can cause surface soiling of rubber parts and a loss of gloss. Use only water and suitable cleaning agents for cleaning.

Treat especially worn rubber parts with rubber care agents at regular intervals. When cleaning rubber seals, do not use any silicon-containing vehicle care products in order to avoid damage or noises.

Fine wood parts

Clean fine wood facing and fine wood components only with a moist rag. Then dry with a soft cloth.

Kenaf

Only treat parts made of Kenaf fibers using suitable care products.

Plastic components

NOTICE

Cleaning agents that contain alcohol or solvents, such as lacquer thinners, heavy-duty grease removers, fuel and such, can damage plastic parts. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Clean with a microfiber cloth. Dampen the cloth lightly with water, if needed.

Clean with a microfiber cloth.

Dampen the cloth lightly with water, if needed.

Do not soak the roofliner.

Safety belts

Warning

Chemical cleansers can destroy the safety belt webbing. Missing protective effect of the safety belts. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Use only a mild soapy solution for cleaning the safety belts.

Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus have a negative impact on safety.

Use only a mild soapy solution for cleaning the installed belt straps.

Safety belts should only be allowed to retract if they are dry.

Carpets and floor mats

Warning

Objects in the driver's floor area can limit the pedal distance or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's floor area. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, for instance for cleaning.

The floor mats can be removed from the car's interior for cleaning.

If the floor carpets are very dirty, clean with a microfiber cloth and water or a textile cleaner. To prevent matting of the carpet, rub back and forth in the direction of travel only.

Sensors and camera lenses

To clean sensors and camera lenses, use a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass detergent.

Displays, screens, and protective glass of the Head-up Display

NOTICE

Chemical cleansers, moisture or fluids of any kind can damage the surface of displays and screens. There is a risk of damage to property. Clean with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth.

NOTICE

The surface of displays can be damaged with improper cleaning. There is a risk of damage to property. Avoid pressure that is too high and do not use any scratching materials.

Clean with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth.

Clean the protective glass of the Head-up Display using a microfiber cloth and commercially available dish-washing soap.

Long-term vehicle storage

When the vehicle is shut down for longer than three months, special measures must be taken. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3467
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Technical data

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

General information

The technical data and specifications in the Owner's Manual are used as guidance values. The vehicle-specific data can deviate from this, for instance due to the selected special equipment, country version or country-specific measurement method. Detailed values can be found in the approval documents, on labels on the vehicle or can be obtained from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Dimensions

The dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment or country-specific measurement method.

The specified heights do not take into account attached parts, for instance a roof antenna, roof racks or spoiler. The heights can deviate, for instance due to the selected special equipment, tires, load and chassis version.

BMW X3 M		
Width with mirrors	in/mm	84.2/2,138
Width without mirrors	in/mm	74.7/1,897
Height	in/mm	65.7/1,669
Length	in/mm	186.2/4,730
Wheelbase	in/mm	112.8/2,864
Smallest turning radius diam.	ft/m	41.3/12.6

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3469
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Weights

BMW X3 M		
Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs/kg	5,509/2,499
Load	lbs/kg	840/381
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	2,610/1,184
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	3,139/1,424

Capacities

BMW X3 M		
Fuel tank, approx.	US gal/liters	17.2/65.0

Observe further information on fuel quality, refer to page 309.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3470

Appendix

General information

Any updates to the Owner's Manual of the vehicle are listed here.

Updates made after the editorial deadline

The following chapters were updated in the printed version of the Owner's Manual after the editorial deadline for the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle had closed:

- Operation: light: daytime driving lights.
- Driving tips: things to remember when driving: roof-mounted luggage rack: safety instructions.

License Texts and Certifications

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3471

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3472

Everything from A to Z

Index

0-9

3D View, see Surround View 222

A

ABS Antilock Braking System 190
Acceleration Assistant, see Launch Control 137
Accessories and parts 8
Accident prevention, see Active Protection 187
ACC, see Active Cruise Control 201
Activated charcoal filter 239
Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function ACC 201
Active damping control, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension 233
Active Guard Plus, see Intelligent Safety 168
Active Guard, see Intelligent Safety 168
Active M differential 196
Active PDC, see Emergency brake function 214
Active Protection 187
Active seat ventilation 114
Adaptive brake assistant 190
Adaptive brake lights, see Brake force display 187
Adaptive Light Control 160
Adaptive M chassis/suspension 233
Additives, engine oil types 312
Adjusting contents, iDrive 49
Adjustments, steering wheel 112
Airbags 164
Airbags, indicator and warning light 166
Air circulation, see Recirculated-air mode 238
air conditioning, climate 237
Air distribution, manual 238
Air drying, see air conditioning 237
Air flow, automatic climate control 238
Air outlets, see Ventilation 239
Air pressure, tires 280
Air quality 235
Alarm system 96
Alarm, unintentional 97
All-season tires, see Winter tires 287
All-wheel drive, see M xDrive 196
Amazon Alexa Car Integration 55
Ambient air package 243
Ambient light 163
Android Auto, connection to the vehicle 76
Android Auto preparation, connection to the vehicle 76
Android Auto preparation, smartphone integration 76
Antifreeze, see Washer fluid 314
Antilock Braking System ABS 190
Anti-slip control, see DSC 193
Anti-theft protection, lug bolt lock 301
Apple CarPlay preparation, connection to the vehicle 76
Apple CarPlay preparation, smartphone integration 76
Approach control warning with City braking function 169
Apps, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Ashtray 250
Assistance when driving off, see Drive-off assistant 190
Assistance with breakdown 324
AUC Automatic Recirculating Air Control 238
Audio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
AUTO H button, see Parking brake 125
Automatic activation, see Individual activation 115
Automatic car wash 331
Automatic climate control 235
Automatic Curb Monitor, exterior mirror 111
Automatic deactivation, front-seat passenger airbags 167
Automatic headlight control 158

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3473

Automatic Hold, see Parking brake 125
Automatic locking 95
Automatic Recirculating Air Control AUC 238
Automatic time setting 61
Automatic transmission, see M Steptronic Sport transmission 132
Automatic unlocking 95
Automating routines, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 57
AUTO program, automatic climate control 237
AUTO program, intensity 237
Auto Start/Stop function 122
Average consumption, see Trip data 152
Axle loads, approved 337

B

Backrest curvature, see Lumbar support 105
Backrest, seats 103
Backrest tilt 104
Backrest, width 105
Bad road trips 272
Bandages, see First-aid kit 324
Bar for tow-starting/towing 329
Battery, disposing of 322
Battery, vehicle 321
Being towed, see Tow-starting and towing 328
Belts, see Safety belts 105
Beverage holder, see Cup holders 259
Blind spot collision warning 180
Blocking, power window, see Safety switch 99
Bluetooth connection 73
Blu-ray, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
BMW Accident Assistance 325
BMW Assist, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
BMW display key 83
BMW display key, malfunction 87
BMW Gesture Control 58
BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 56
BMW maintenance system 316
BMW M technology 270
BMW Roadside Assistance 325
Bottle holder, see Cup holders 259
Brake assistant 190
Brake assistant, adaptive 190
Brake discs, see Brake system 271
Brake force display 187
Brake lights, brake force display 187
Brake pads, see Brake system 271
Brake system 271
Braking, information 273
Breakdown assistance 324
Breaking in 271
Break recommendation, see Fatigue alert 188
Brightness, Control Display 63
Buttons on the steering wheel 32
Button, SOS, see Intelligent emergency call 326
Button, Start/Stop 122
Bypassing, see Jump-starting 327

C

Cable for tow-starting/towing 329
California Proposition 65 Warning 8
Call, gesture control 58
Camera-based assistance systems, see Intelligent Safety 168
Camera lenses, care 334
Camera, rearview camera, see Surround View 222
Camera, rearview camera, without Surround View 215
Camera, see Surround View 222
Cameras, see Sensors of the vehicle 37
CANCEL button, Active Cruise Control 201
CANCEL button, cruise control 199
Can holder, see Cup holders 259
Care 331
Care, Head-up Display 334
Care, light-alloy wheels 333
Care of displays, screens 334
Care, vehicle 332
Cargo area 261
Cargo area, enlarging 265
Cargo cover 267
Cargo position, rear seat backrest 265
Cargo, stowing and securing 262
Cargo straps, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 262

Caring Car, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 57
Car key, see Vehicle key 79
Carpet, care 334
CarPlay, connection to the vehicle 76
Car seats, see Transporting children safely 116
Cartridge replacement, see Ambient air package 243
Car wash 331
Car wash, automatic 331
Catalytic converter, see Hot exhaust gas system 272
CBS Condition Based Service 316
Cell phone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Center armrest, front 259
Center console 34
Central Information Display (CID), see Control Display 47
Central locking system 89
Central screen, see Control Display 47
Changes, technical, see For Your Own Safety 8
Changing parts 318
Changing wheels 299
Changing, wheels and tires 286
Charging smartphone, see Wireless charging tray 253
Charging tray for smartphones, see Wireless charging tray 253
Chassis/suspension, electronic, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension 233
Chassis number, see Vehicle identification number 12
Check Control 142
Checking the engine oil level electronically 310
Children, seating position 116
Children, transporting safely 116
Child restraint system LATCH 118
Child restraint systems, mounting 117
Child restraint systems, see Transporting children safely 116
Child safety locks 121
Child seat, mounting 117
Child seats, see Transporting children safely 116
Chrome-plated surfaces, care 333
Chrome surfaces, care 333
Cigarette lighter 251
Cigarette lighter, front 251
Cleaning displays, screens 334
Cleaning, Head-up Display 334
Clearance, water 273
Climate control 235
Clothes hooks 260
Combination switch, see Turn signals 128
Combination switch, see Washer/wiper system 128
Comfort Access 89
Communication, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Compact wheel, see Emergency wheel 304
Comparison of entries, see Entry comparison 45
Compartments, doors 258
Compatible devices, see Suitable devices 71
Compound brake 270
Compressor 288
Concierge Service, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Condensation water under the parked vehicle 274
Condensation, windshield 239
Condition Based Service CBS 316
Confirmation signal from the vehicle 95
ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Connecting device 70
Connecting electrical devices, see Sockets 251
Connecting, mobile devices 70
Connections, Screen Mirroring 75
Consumption display, widget in the instrument cluster 142
Consumption, see Current consumption 142
Consumption, see Trip data 152
Contacts, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Container for washer fluid 314
Control Display 47
Control Display, brightness 63
Controller 47
Control systems, driving stability 190
Convenient closing, vehicle key 81
Convenient opening, vehicle key 80

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3475
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Coolant 313
Coolant level 314
Coolant temperature, see Engine temperature 148
Cooling, maximum 237
Cooling system 313
Cornering light 160
Corrosion on brake discs 274
Cosmetic mirror 250
Cross traffic warning 230
Cruise control 199
Cruise control, active with Stop&Go function 201
Cruise control, see Active Cruise Control 201
Cruise control with distance control, see Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function 201
Cruise control without distance control, see Cruise control 199
Cruising range 149
Cup holder 259
Cup holder, front 259
Cup holder, rear 259
Current consumption 142
Customer service, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

D

Damage, tires 285
Damping control 233
Damping control active, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension 233
Data memory 10
Data protection, settings 65
Data, see Deleting personal data 65
Data, technical 336
Date 61
Daytime running lights 160
DCC, see Cruise control 199
Defrosting, see Defrosting windshield 239
Defrosting, windshield 239
Deleting personal data 65
Departure schedule, see Pre-ventilation 241
Departure time, parked-car ventilation 242
Device list 71
Diagnosis connection 317
Differential lock 196
Dimensions 336
Dimmable exterior mirrors 111
Dimmable interior mirror 112
Direct dial buttons, see Programmable memory buttons 46
Direction indicator, see Turn signals 128
Display, iDrive 44
Display in the windshield, see Head-up Display 154
Display key 83
Display key, malfunction 87
Display key, see BMW display key 83
Display lighting, see Instrument lighting 162
Display, notifications, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 56
Displays 141
Displays and symbols 7
Disposal, coolant 314
Disposal, vehicle battery 322
Distance control, see PDC 211
Door opening angle, Surround View 224
Downhill control, see HDC Hill Descent Control 197
Drivelogic 136
Drive mode 134
Drive-off assistant 190
Drive-off assistant, see DSC 193
Driver assistance, driving, see Intelligent Safety 168
Driver assistance, parking, see Parking assistance systems 211
Driver assistance, see Intelligent Safety 168
Driver assistance systems 199
Drive-ready state, engine start 42
Drive-ready state, idle state, and standby state 41
Driver profiles 66
Driver profile, setup 66
Driver profiles, welcome screen 66
Driving 122
Driving Assistant, see Intelligent Safety 168
Driving comfort 233
Driving Dynamics Control 138
Driving instructions, breaking in 271
Driving notes, general 272

Driving on bad roads 272
Driving program, see Drivelogic 136
Driving stability control systems 190
Driving through water 273
Driving tips 272
DSC Dynamic Stability Control 193
Dynamic damping, see Adaptive M chassis/ suspension 233
Dynamic Stability Control DSC 193

E

Efficiency display, widget in the instrument cluster 142
Electronic oil measurement 310
Electronic Stability Program ESP, see DSC 193
E-mail, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Emergency brake function when parking, Active PDC 214
Emergency braking, see PostCrash - iBrake 188
Emergency Request 326
Emergency service, see BMW Accident Assistance 325
Emergency service, see BMW Roadside Assistance 325
Emergency unlocking, fuel filler flap 279
Emergency unlocking, transmission lock 138
Emergency wheel 304
Energy recovery 142
Energy savings, see Gear shift indicator 150
Engine, automatic Start/Stop function 122
Engine compartment 306
Engine coolant 313
Engine oil, adding 311
Engine oil change 313
Engine oil filler neck 311
Engine oil temperature 148
Engine oil types to add 312
Engine start, see Drive-ready state 42
Engine start, see Jump-starting 327
Engine temperature 148
Entering a destination, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Entering an address, navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Entertainment, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Entertainment, selection list in the instrument cluster 152
Entry comparison 45
Equipment, interior 247
Error indicators, see Check Control 142
ESP Electronic Stability Program, see DSC 193
Evasion Assistant 173
Exchanging, wheels and tires 286
Exhaust gas system 272
Exhaust gas system sound 139
Exhaustion warner 188
Exhaust, see Exhaust gas system 272
Experience Modes, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 57
Exterior lighting during unlocking 80
Exterior lighting with the vehicle locked 81
Exterior mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor 111
Exterior mirror, automatic dimming feature 111
Exterior mirrors 110
Exterior mirrors, malfunction 111
External start, see Jump-starting 327
External temperature 148
Eyelet for towing 329
Eyes, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 262

F

Factory settings, see Reset vehicle configuration 63
Failure message, see Check Control 142
False alarm, see Avoiding unintentional alarms 97
Fan, see Air flow 238
Fastening safety belts, see Safety belts 105
Fatigue alert 188
Fault indicators, see Check Control 142
Filler neck for engine oil 311
Fine wood parts, care 333
First-aid kit 324
First Steps, see Setup Wizard 66
Flat tire, changing wheels 299

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3477

Flat tire, Flat Tire Monitor TPM 298
Flat tire message, FTM 299
Flat tire message, Tire Pressure Monitor 295
Flat Tire Monitor TPM 298
Flat tire, repairing 287
Flat tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor 292
Flat tire warning light, FTM 299
Flat tire warning light, see Tire Pressure Monitor 295
Flooding, driving through 273
Floor carpet, care 334
Floor mats, care 334
Fold-away position, wiper 131
Foot brake 273
Forward collision mitigation, see Intelligent Safety 168
For Your Own Safety 8
Fragrance cartridge, see Ambient air package 243
Fragrance, see Ambient air package 243
Fragrancing, see Ambient air package 243
Front airbags 164
Front collision mitigation 169
Front collision mitigation, see Approach Control Warning 169
Front collision mitigation, see Pedestrian Warning 174
Front fog lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 319
Front lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 319
Front-seat passenger airbags, automatic deactivation 167
Front-seat passenger airbags, indicator light 167
Front seats 103
Fuel 309
Fuel cap 278
Fuel filler flap 278
Fuel filler flap, unlocking manually 279
Fuel gauge 147
Fuel quality 309
Fuel recommendation 309
Fuel tank, see Filling capacity 337
Fuses 323

G

Garage door opener, see Integrated Universal Remote Control 247
Gasoline 309
Gear change 135
Gear change, M Steptronic Sport transmission 132
Gear shift indicator 150
General driving notes 272
General settings 61
Gesture Control 58
Gestures, see BMW Gesture Control 58
Glare shield, see Sun visor 250
Glass sunroof, electric 99
Glass sunroof, initialize the system 101
Glove compartment 257
GPS, navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Gross vehicle weight, approved 337

H

Handbrake, see Parking brake 125
Hand-held transmitter, alternating code 248
Hands-free device, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Hazard warning flashers 324
HDC Hill Descent Control 197
Head airbags 165
Headlight control, automatic 158
Headlight flasher 128
Headlight glass 320
Headlights, care 332
Headlights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 319
Head restraints and seats 103
Head restraints, front 107
Head restraints, rear 109
Head-up Display 154
Head-up Display, care 334
Head-up Display, M view 155
Head-up Display, standard view 155
Head-up Display, store position, see Memory function 113
Heated steering wheel 112
Heated steering wheel, individual activation 115

Heavy cargo, stowing 262
Height, vehicle 336
High-beam Assistant 161
High beams 128
High beams/low beams, see High-beam Assistant 161
Higher speed range 275
High-performance engine 270
Hill Descent Control HDC 197
Hills 274
Hill start assistant, see Drive-off assistant 190
Holder for beverages, see Cup holders 259
HomeLink, see Integrated Universal Remote Control 247
Homepage, see Internet 6
Hood 307
Horn 32
Hot exhaust gas system 272
Humidity in the headlight, see Headlight glass 320
Hydroplaning 273

I

iBrake - PostCrash 188
Ice warning, see External temperature 148
Icy roads, see External temperature 148
Identification marks, tires 283
Identification number, see Vehicle identification number 12
Idle state, standby state, and drive-ready state 41
iDrive 44
ID transmitter, see Vehicle key 79
Ignition key, see Vehicle key 79
Indicator/warning lights 143
Individual activation 115
Individual air distribution 238
Individual settings, see Driver profiles 66
Individual settings, see M Setup 190
Inductive charging, smartphone, see Wireless charging tray 253
Inflation pressure, tires 280
Inflation pressure warning TPM, tires 298
Information 6
Information window, Control Display 63
Initialization, Flat Tire Monitor FTM 298
Input, iDrive 44
Instrument cluster 141
Instrument lighting 162
Integrated key 88
Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle 14
Integrated Universal Remote Control 247
Intelligent emergency call 326
Intelligent Personal Assistant 56
Intelligent Safety 168
Intended use 8
Intensity, AUTO program 237
Interior equipment 247
Interior lights 162
Interior lights during unlocking 80
Interior lights with the vehicle locked 81
Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature 112
Interior mirrors 112
Interior motion sensor 97
Internet connection 74
Internet hotspot 74
Internet page 6
Interval display, see Service notifications 149
Ionization, see Ambient air package 243

J

Jacking points for the vehicle jack 302
Jam protection system, glass sunroof 101
Jam protection system, windows 98
Joystick, M Steptronic Sport transmission 132
Jump-starting 327
Jump-starting terminals 327

K

Kenaf, care 333
Keyless Go, see Comfort Access 89
Key, mechanical 88
Key, see BMW display key 83
Key, see Vehicle key 79
Kickdown, M Steptronic Sport transmission 132
Knee airbag 165

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3479
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

L

Label on recommended tires 286
Lane control assistant with active side collision protection, see Side collision mitigation 183
Lane departure warning 177
Lane lines, Surround View 224
Lane threshold, warning 177
Language, set 62
Lashing eyes in the cargo area 262
LATCH child restraint fixing system 118
Launch Control 137
Leather care 332
LED headlights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 319
LED light carpet, see Welcome light 159
Length, vehicle 336
Letters and numbers, entering 45
Light-alloy wheels, care 333
Light control, adaptive 160
Lighter, cigarettes 251
Lighting 158
Light in the exterior mirror, see Blind spot collision warning 180
Light in the exterior mirror, see Cross traffic warning 230
Light replacement, see Lights and bulbs 319
Lights 158
Lights and bulbs 319
Light switch 158
List, instrument cluster, see Selection lists 152
List of all messages 63
Load 262
Loading 261
Loading position 265
Loading the cargo area, see Stowing cargo 262
Locking, automatic 95
Locking, see Opening and Closing 79
Locking, settings 95
Locking, vehicle key 80
Lock, lug bolts 301
Low beams 159
Low beams, automatic, see High-beam Assistant 161
Lower back support 105
Low Speed Assistant 136
Lug bolt lock 301
Luggage rack, see Roof-mounted luggage rack 275
Lumbar support 105

M

Maintenance 316
Maintenance recommendations, see Condition Based Service CBS 316
Maintenance, see Service notifications 149
Maintenance system, BMW 316
Make-up mirror 250
Malfunction, BMW display key 87
Malfunction, vehicle key 82
Managing devices 71
Manual brake, see Parking brake 125
Manual control, air distribution 238
Manual control, air flow 238
Manual mode, M Steptronic Sport transmission 132
Manual operation, fuel filler flap 279
Map update, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Matt paint, care 332
Maximum cooling 237
Maximum speed display, see Speed Limit Info 150
Maximum speed, winter tires 287
M chassis/suspension, adaptive, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension 233
M Compound brake 270
M differential, active 196
MDM, M Dynamic Mode 194
M Driver's Package, driving instructions 275
M Dynamic Mode MDM 194
Measuring units 62
Media of the Owner's Manual 14
Medical supplies, see First-aid kit 324
Memory function 113
M Engine Dynamics Control 138
Menu, instrument cluster, see Selection lists 152
Menus, operating, iDrive 44
Messages 63
Messages, see Check Control 142

Microfilter 239
Minimum tread depth, tires 285
Mobile communication devices in the vehicle 273
Mobile devices, managing 71
Mobile phone, connecting 70
Mobile phone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Mobile Service, see BMW Accident Assistance 325
Mobile Service, see BMW Roadside Assistance 325
Mobility System 287
MODE button, see Active Cruise Control 201
Modifications, technical, see For Your Own Safety 8
Monitor, see Control Display 47
Mounting of child restraint systems 117
MP3 player, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
M Setup 190
M Steptronic Sport transmission 132
M technology 270
Multi-function hook 263
Multifunction steering wheel, buttons 32
Multimedia, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
M view, Head-up Display 155
M xDrive 196

N

Navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Neck restraints, front, see Head restraints front 107
Neck restraints, rear, see Head restraints rear 109
Net, cargo area 264
Neutral cleaner, see Light-alloy wheels, care 333
New wheels and tires 286
No-touch opening and closing of the tailgate 91
Nylon rope for tow-starting/towing 329

O

OBD Onboard Diagnosis 317
Obstacle marking, rearview camera 216
Obstacle marking, Surround View 224
Octane rating, see Recommended fuel grade 310
Odometer, see Trip data 152
Oil, adding 311
Oil change 313
Oil filler neck 311
Oil level, checking electronically 310
Oil service interval, see Service notifications 149
Oil types to add, engine 312
Onboard Diagnosis OBD 317
Onboard literature, printed 14
Onboard vehicle tool kit 318
On-call service, see BMW Accident Assistance 325
On-call service, see BMW Roadside Assistance 325
Opening and closing 79
Operating concept, iDrive 44
Operation via voice 52
Optional equipment, see Vehicle equipment 7
Outside air, see AUC 238
Overheating of the engine, see Engine temperature 148
Overwintering, see Long-term vehicle storage 334
Owner's Manual, printed 14
Owner's Manual via voice operation, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 57

P

Paint, car care 332
Pairing, mobile devices, see Connections 70
Panic alarm, see Panic mode 96
Panic mode 96
Panorama View 227
Panoramic glass sunroof, see Glass sunroof 99
Park Distance Control PDC 211
Parking aid, see PDC 211
Parking assistance systems 211
Parking assistant 218

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3481
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Parking assistant Plus, see Surround View 222
Parking, Automatic Hold, see Parking brake 125
Parking brake 125
Parking lights 159
Parts and accessories 8
Passenger's side exterior mirror, tilt down, see Automatic Curb Monitor 111
Pathway lighting 160
Pathway lighting, switching on 82
Pathway lines, rearview camera 216
Payload, technical data 337
PDC Park Distance Control 211
Performance Control 234
Performance display, see Sport displays 154
Personal data, deleting 65
Personal profile, see Driver profiles 66
Personal settings 65
Person warning with braking function 174
Phone, connecting 70
Plastic parts, care 333
Possible gestures, gesture control 58
PostCrash - iBrake 188
Power failure 322
Power windows 98
Pressure test tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor 292
Pressure, tires 280
Pre-ventilation 241
Printed onboard literature 14
Profiles, see Driver profiles 66
Programmable memory buttons, iDrive 46
Protective function, glass sunroof, see Jam protection system 101
Protective function, windows, see Jam protection system 98
Push-and-turn reel, see Controller 47

R

Racing track 275
Radar sensors, see Sensors of the vehicle 37
Radiator fluid 313
Radio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Rain sensor 129
Rear automatic climate control 240
Rear collision preparation 186
Rear collision warning, see Rear collision preparation 186
Rear lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 319
Rear seat backrests, folding down 265
Rear seats 105
Rearview camera, see Surround View 222
Rearview camera, without Surround View 215
Rear-view mirrors, exterior 110
Rear-view mirrors, interior 112
Rear window defroster 239
Rear window wiper, operation 131
Recirculated-air filter, see Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter 239
Recirculated-air mode 238
Recommended fuel grade 310
Recommended tire brands 286
Refueling 278
Remote 3D View 229
Remote control for audio, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Remote control, see Vehicle key 79
Remote control, universal 247
Remote services, app, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Replacing bulbs, see Lights and bulbs 319
Replacing light diodes, see Lights and bulbs 319
Replacing parts 318
Replacing the battery, vehicle key 82
Replacing, wheels and tires 286
Reporting safety malfunctions 13
RES CNCL button, Active Cruise Control ACC 201
RES CNCL button, cruise control 199
Reserve warning, see Range 149
Reset settings, vehicle 63
Reset, Tire Pressure Monitor 294
Reset, vehicle configuration 63
Reset, vehicle settings 63
RESUME button, Active Cruise Control 201
RESUME button, cruise control 199
Retreaded tires 287
Roadside parking lights 159
Roller sunblinds, rear side windows 99

Rolling code hand-held transmitter 248
RON recommended fuel grade 310
Roofliner 36
Roof-mounted luggage rack 275
Rope for tow-starting/towing 329
Route, navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
RTTI, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Rubber components, care 333

S

Safe braking 273
Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat 107
Safety belt reminder for the rear seats 107
Safety belts 105
Safety belts, care 333
Safety locks, doors and windows 121
Safety package, see Active Protection 187
Safety switch, windows 99
Safety systems, see Airbags 164
Safety systems, see Intelligent Safety 168
Saving fuel 276
Screen Mirroring, connection 75
Screen, see Control Display 47
Screwdriver, see Onboard vehicle tool kit 318
Sealant, see Mobility System 287
Seat heating 114
Seat heating, individual activation 115
Seating position for children 116
Seats and head restraints 103
Seats, front 103
Seats, rear 105
Seat ventilation, individual activation 115
Securing, cargo 262
Selection list in the instrument cluster 152
Selector lever 133
Selector lever, M Steptronic Sport transmission 132
Selector lever position 133
Sensors, care 334
Sensors of the vehicle 37
Sequential mode 135
Service and warranty 9
Service Center, see BMW Accident Assistance 325
Service Center, see BMW Roadside Assistance 325
Service notifications 149
Service notifications, see Condition Based Service CBS 316
Services, ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Servotronic 192
SET button, Active Cruise Control 201
SET button, cruise control 199
Set speed, see Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function 201
Setting, Control Display 63
Settings, general 61
Settings, locking/unlocking 95
Settings, M Setup 190
Settings, seats and head restraints 103
Setup Wizard 66
Shift paddles on the steering wheel 132
Shift point indicator 156
Side airbag 164
Side collision mitigation 183
Side parking aid, Surround View 224
Side parking aid without Surround View 215
Side protection aid, Surround View, see Side parking aid 224
Side protection aid without Surround View, see Side parking aid 215
Signaling, horn 32
Signals when unlocking, see Confirmation signals from the vehicle 95
Sitting safely 103
Ski and snowboard bag 268
Slide/tilt glass roof, see Glass sunroof 99
Smallest turning circle, vehicle 336
Smartphone, connecting 70
Smartphone Integration, Android Auto preparation 76
Smartphone Integration, Apple CarPlay preparation 76
Smartphone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Smartphone, using via voice activation 55

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3483

Smoker's package 250
SMS, see Short messages, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis 317
Sockets, electrical devices 251
SOS button, see Intelligent emergency call 326
Sound control 139
Sound, exhaust gas system 139
Sound output, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Spare tire, see Emergency wheel 304
Speech recognition 52
Speed limit display, see Speed Limit Info 150
Speed Limit Info 150
Speed warning 62
Sport chassis/suspension, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension 233
Sport displays 154
Sport program, M Steptronic Sport transmission 132
Stability control systems 190
Standard equipment, see Vehicle equipment 7
Standard view, Head-up Display 155
Standby state, idle state and drive-ready state 41
Start/stop, automatic function 122
Start/Stop button 122
Starting aid terminals 327
Starting, see Drive-ready state 42
Starting the engine, see Drive-ready state 42
Stations, AM/FM, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Status control display, tires 294
Status information, iDrive 45
Status of Owner's Manual 7
Status, vehicle 154
Steering and Lane Control Assistant 208
Steering assistance 192
Steering Assistant, see Steering and Lane Control Assistant 208
Steering column adjustment 112
Steering wheel, adjusting 112
Steering wheel, buttons 32
Storage compartment, cargo area 264
Storage compartment, center console 258
Storage compartments 257
Storage compartments, locations 257
Storage, tires 287
Store Mirror position, see Memory function 113
Store seat position, see Memory function 113
Store steering wheel position, see Memory function 113
Storing the vehicle 334
Stowing, cargo 262
Straps for cargo, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 262
Suitable devices 71
Suitable mobile phones 71
Summer tires, tread 284
Sun visor 250
Supplementary Owner's Manuals 14
Supplementary text message 143
Surround View 222
Surround View, gesture control 58
Switches, see Cockpit 32
Switching off the engine, see Drive-ready state 42
Symbols and displays 7
SYNC program, automatic climate control 239

T

Tachometer 147
Tailgate, opening and closing with no-touch activation 91
Tailgate, vehicle key 81
Tail lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 319
Tank capacity 337
Technical changes, see For Your Own Safety 8
Technical data 336
Technology, BMW M 270
Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Telephone, selection list in the instrument cluster 152
Teleservices, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Temperature, automatic climate control 236
Temperature display, see External temperature 148
Temperature, engine oil 148

Tensioning straps, cargo area 264
Text message, Check Control 143
Theft alarm system, see Alarm system 96
Thigh support 104
Third-party provider, voice assistant 55
Through-loading system 265
Tilt alarm sensor 97
Tilt, backrest 104
Tilt down, passenger's side exterior mirror, see Automatic Curb Monitor 111
Time 61
Time setting, automatic 61
Tire brands, recommended 286
Tire chains 292
Tire damage 285
Tire data, widget in the instrument cluster 142
Tire identification marks 283
Tire inflation pressure 280
Tire inflation pressure monitoring, see TPM 298
Tire inflation pressure monitor TPM 298
Tire pressure 280
Tire Pressure Monitor 292
Tire Pressure Monitor, reset 294
Tire repair kit, see Mobility System 287
Tires and wheels 280
Tires, changing 286
Tire sealant, see Mobility System 287
Tire settings 293
Tire tread 284
Title, gesture control 58
Tone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Tool 318
Top View, see Surround View 222
Torque display, see Sport displays 154
Touchpad, Controller 50
Tow bar 329
Tow fitting 329
Towing 328
Tow rope 329
Tow-starting 328
TPM Flat Tire Monitor 298
Traffic bulletins, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Transmission lock, electronic unlocking 138
Transmission, see M Steptronic Sport transmission 132
Transporting children safely 116
Tread, tires 284
Trip computer, see Trip data 152
Trip data 152
Triple turn signal activation 128
Trip odometer, see Trip data 152
Trunk, see Cargo area 261
Turning circle line, Surround View 224
Turning circle, vehicle 336
Turning radius lines, rearview camera 216
Turn signal, indicator light 146
Turn signal, replacing bulbs, see Lights and bulbs 319
Turn signals, high beams, headlight flasher 128

U

Ultrasonic sensors, see Sensors of the vehicle 37
Unintentional alarm, avoiding 97
Units, see Measuring units 62
Universal remote control 247
Unlock button, M Steptronic Sport transmission 132
Unlocking, automatic 95
Unlocking, see Opening and Closing 79
Unlocking, settings 95
Unlocking, vehicle key 80
Unpaved roads, cross-country trips 272
Updates made after the editorial deadline 7
Upholstery material care 332
USB connection 77
USB port, position in vehicle 252
Used battery, disposing of 322
Use, intended 8

V

Vanity mirror 250
Vehicle battery 321
Vehicle breakdown, see Breakdown assistance 324
Vehicle, breaking in 271
Vehicle care 332

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3485
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

Vehicle care products 332
Vehicle configuration, reset 63
Vehicle equipment 7
Vehicle identification number 12
Vehicle key 79
Vehicle key, additional 82
Vehicle key, integrated key 88
Vehicle key, loss 82
Vehicle key, malfunction 82
Vehicle key, replacing the battery 82
Vehicle key with display, malfunction 87
Vehicle key with display, see BMW display key 83
Vehicle paint, care 332
Vehicle status 154
Vehicle storage 334
Vehicle washing 331
Ventilation 239
Ventilation, see Pre-ventilation 241
Venting, see Ventilation 239
Vent, see Ventilation 239
Video, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
VIN, see Vehicle identification number 12
Voice activation, see BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 56
Voice activation system 52
Voice assistant, third-party provider 55
Voice command response 52
Voice control 52
Voice control, gesture control 58
Volume, gesture control 58

W

Wake word 52
Warning/indicator lights 143
Warning against cross traffic 230
Warning light in the exterior mirror, see Blind spot collision warning 180
Warning light in the exterior mirror, see Cross traffic warning 230
Warning messages, see Check Control 142
Warning triangle 324
Warranty 8
Washer fluid 314
Washer nozzles, windshield 130
Washer system 128
Washing the vehicle 331
Washing, vehicle 331
Wash view, Surround View 224
Water on roads 273
Water, see Condensation water under the parked vehicle 274
Website, see Internet 6
Weights 337
Welcome light during unlocking 80
Welcome lights 159
Welcome screen, driver profiles 66
Wheel base, vehicle 336
Wheels and tires 280
Wheels, changing 286
Widgets, iDrive 45
Widgets, instrument cluster 142
Width, vehicle 336
Wi-Fi connection 74
WiFi connection, see WLAN connection 74
Wi-Fi hotspot 74
Window, defrosting 239
Windows, powered 98
Windshield, defrosting 239
Windshield washer fluid, see Washer fluid 314
Windshield washer nozzles 130
Windshield wiper, see Wiper system 128
Winter storage, see Long-term vehicle storage 334
Winter tires 287
Winter tires, tread 285
Wiper blades, replacing 318
Wiper fluid, see Washer fluid 314
Wiper, fold-away position 131
Wiper, see Washer/wiper system 128
Wiper system 128
Wireless charging, smartphone, see Wireless charging tray 253
Wireless charging tray for smartphones 253
WLAN connection 74
Wood parts, care 333
Wordmatch principle, see Entry comparison 45
Wrench, see Onboard vehicle tool kit 318

01405A1F5B6 ue

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3487

California Proposition 65 Warning

For vehicles sold in California:

California Proposition 65 Warning

WARNING

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

The Ultimate Driving Machine®

BMW DRIVER'S GUIDE APP.

Your customized information about the vehicle in an app.
Optimized for smartphones & tablets. Can be used offline.

Download on the App Store

GET IT ON Google Play

01405A1F5B6 DE

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3489
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5B6 - X/20

LINK:
CONTENT & A-Z

The Ultimate Driving Machine®

OWNER'S MANUAL.

THE BMW X4.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3490
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3491
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

WELCOME TO BMW.

Owner's Manual.

Thank you for choosing a BMW.

The more familiar you are with your vehicle, the better control you will have on the road. We therefore strongly suggest:

Read this Owner's Manual before starting off in your new BMW. Also use the Integrated Owner's Manual in your vehicle. It contains important information on vehicle operation that will help you make full use of the technical features available in your BMW. The manual also contains information designed to enhance operating reliability and road safety, and to contribute to maintaining the value of your BMW.

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

You can find supplementary information in the additional brochures in the onboard literature.

We wish you a safe and enjoyable ride.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3492
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

TABLE OF CONTENTS

After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

NOTES

Information 6
Owner's Manual media 14

QUICK REFERENCE

Entering 16
Set-up and use 20
On the road 24

CONTROLS

Cockpit 32
Sensors of the vehicle 37
Operating state of the vehicle 41
iDrive 44
General settings 61
Personal settings 65
Connections 70
Opening and closing 79
Seats, mirrors and steering wheel 102
Transporting children safely 115
Driving 121
Displays 139
Lights 156
Safety 163
Driving stability control systems 189
Driver assistance systems 194
Driving comfort 228
Climate control 230

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3493
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Interior equipment 245
Storage compartments 255
Cargo area 259

DRIVING TIPS

Things to remember when driving 266
Saving fuel 271

MOBILITY

Refueling 278
Wheels and tires 280
Engine compartment 312
Operating materials 315
Maintenance 322
Replacing components 324
Breakdown assistance 330
Care 337

REFERENCE

Technical data 342
Appendix 344
Everything from A to Z 346

© 2020 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Reprinting, including excerpts, only with the written consent of BMW AG, Munich.
US English ID7 X/20, 11 20 490
Printed on environmentally friendly paper, bleached without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

Information

Using this Owner's Manual

Orientation

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic is by using the index.

An initial overview of the vehicle is provided in the first chapter.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication

The Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can be obtained as a printed book from the service center.

The topics are also discussed in the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Additional sources of information

Service center

A service center will be glad to answer questions at any time.

Internet

Vehicle information and general information on BMW, for instance, on technology, are available on the Internet: www.bmwusa.com.

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

The Integrated Owner's Manual specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle. The Integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the Control Display.

BMW Driver's Guide app

The BMW Driver's Guide app specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle. The app can be displayed on smartphones and tablets.

BMW Driver's Guide Web

Driver's Guide Web shows the most suitable information for the selected vehicle. If possible, only equipment and functions that are actually installed in the vehicle will be explained. Driver's Guide Web can be displayed in any current browser.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3495

Symbols and displays

Symbols in the Owner's Manual

Symbol	Meaning
	Precautions that must be followed in order to avoid the possibility of injury to yourself and to others as well as serious damage to the vehicle.
	Measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.
"..."	Texts in vehicle used to select individual functions.
›...‹	Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.
»...«	Responses generated by the voice activation system.

Action steps

Action steps to be carried out are presented as a numbered list. The steps must be carried out in the defined order.

1. First action step.
2. Second action step.

Enumerations

Enumerations without mandatory order or alternative possibilities are presented as a list with bullet points.

- First possibility.
- Second possibility.

Symbols on vehicle components

This symbol on a vehicle component indicates that further information on the component is available in the Owner's Manual.

Vehicle features and options

This Owner's Manual describes all models and all standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series. Therefore, this Owner's Manual also describes and illustrates features and functions that are not available in a vehicle, for example because of the selected optional features or the country-specific version.

This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

For any options and equipment not described in this Owner's Manual, refer to the Supplementary Owner's Manuals.

Your BMW service center is happy to answer any questions that you may have about the features and options applicable to your vehicle.

Status of the Owner's Manual

Basic information

The manufacturer of your vehicle pursues a policy of constant development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards. In rare cases, therefore, the features described in this Owner's Manual may differ from those in your vehicle.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3496

Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

For Your Own Safety

Intended use

Heed the following when using the vehicle:

- Owner's Manual.
- Information on the vehicle. Do not remove stickers.
- Technical vehicle data.
- The traffic, speed, and safety laws where the vehicle is driven.
- Vehicle documents and statutory documents.

Warranty

Your vehicle is technically configured for the operating conditions and registration requirements applying in the country of first delivery, also known as homologation. If your vehicle is to be operated in a different country it might be necessary to adapt your vehicle to potentially differing operating conditions and registration requirements. If your vehicle does not comply with the homologation requirements in a certain country you may not be able to lodge warranty claims for your vehicle there. Further information on warranty is available from a service center.

Maintenance and repairs

Advanced technology, for instance the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires suitable maintenance and repair work.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you entrust corresponding procedures to a BMW center. If you choose to use another service facility, BMW recommends use of a facility that performs work, e.g., maintenance and repair, according to BMW specifications with properly trained personnel, referred to in the Owner's Manual as "another qualified service center or repair shop".

If work is performed improperly, for instance maintenance and repair, there is a risk of subsequent damage and related safety risks.

Improperly performed work on the vehicle paint can lead to a failure or malfunction of components, e.g., the radar sensors, and thereby result in a safety risk.

Parts and accessories

BMW recommends the use of parts and accessory products approved by BMW.

Approved parts and accessories, and advice on their use and installation are available from a BMW center.

BMW parts and accessories have been tested by BMW for their safety and suitability in BMW vehicles.

BMW warrants genuine BMW parts and accessories.

BMW does not evaluate whether each individual product from another manufacturer can be used with BMW vehicles without presenting a safety hazard, even if a country-specific official approval was issued. BMW does not evaluate whether these products are suitable for BMW vehicles under all usage conditions.

California Proposition 65 Warning

For vehicles sold in California, the law requires vehicle manufacturers to provide the following warning:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3497

⚠ Warning

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of Automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Batteries also contain other chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer. Wash your hands after handling. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly. Your vehicle is covered by the following warranties:

- New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- Rust Perforation Limited Warranty.
- Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty.
- Federal Emissions Performance Warranty.
- California Emission Control System Limited Warranty.

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

Your vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating conditions and homologation requirements in your country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish to operate your vehicle in another country or region, you may be required to adapt your vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and homologation requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

Maintenance

Maintain the vehicle regularly to sustain the road safety, operational reliability and the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Specifications for maintenance measures:

- BMW Maintenance system.
- Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models.
- Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

If the vehicle is not maintained or is improperly maintained, this could result in serious damage to the vehicle. Such damage is not covered by the BMW New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Refer to section on engine oil change regarding recommended service intervals for oil changes.

Data memory

General information

Electronic control devices are installed in the vehicle. Electronic control units process data they receive from vehicle sensors, self-generate or exchange with each other. Some control units are necessary for the vehicle to function safely or provide assistance during driving, for instance driver assistance systems. Furthermore, control units facilitate comfort or infotainment functions.

Information about stored or exchanged data can be requested from the manufacturer of the vehicle, in a separate booklet, for example.

Personal reference

Each vehicle is marked with a unique vehicle identification number. Depending on the country, the vehicle owner can be identified with the vehicle identification number, license plate and corresponding authorities. In addition, there are other options to track data collected in the vehicle to the driver or vehicle owner, for instance, via the ConnectedDrive account that is used.

Operating data in the vehicle

Control units process data to operate the vehicle.

For example, this includes:

- Status messages for the vehicle and its individual components, e.g., wheel rotational speed, wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration, engaged safety belt indicator.
- Ambient conditions, e.g., temperature, rain sensor signals.

The processed data is only processed in the vehicle itself and generally volatile. The data is not stored beyond the operating period.

Electronic components, e.g. control units and ignition keys, contain components for storing technical information. Information about the vehicle condition, component usage, maintenance recommendations, events or faults can be stored temporarily or permanently.

This information generally records the state of a component, a module, a system, or the environment, for instance:

- Operating states of system components, for instance, fill levels, tire inflation pressure, battery status.
- Malfunctions and faults in important system components, for instance lights and brakes.
- Responses by the vehicle to special situations such as airbag deployment or engagement of the driving stability control systems.
- Information on vehicle-damaging events.

The data is required to perform the control unit functions. Furthermore, it also serves to recognize and correct malfunctions, and helps the vehicle manufacturer to optimize vehicle functions.

The majority of this data is stored temporarily and is only processed within the vehicle itself. In some circumstances the vehicle may store some data for an additional but limited period of time.

When servicing, for instance during repairs, service processes, warranty cases, and quality assurance measures, this technical information can be read out from the vehicle together with the vehicle identification number.

A dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop can read out the information. The socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis required by law in the vehicle is used to read out the data.

The data is collected, processed, and used by the relevant organizations in the service network. The data documents technical conditions of the vehicle, which can be used to determine vehicle maintenance status, and facilitate quality improvement.

Fault and event memories in the vehicle can be reset when a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop performs repair or servicing work.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3499

Data entry and data transfer into the vehicle

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, comfort and individual settings can be stored in the vehicle and modified or reset at any time.

For example, this includes:

- Settings for the seat and steering wheel positions.
- Suspension and climate control settings.

If necessary, data can be transferred to the entertainment and communication system of the vehicle, for instance via smartphone.

This includes the following depending on the respective equipment:

- Multimedia data such as music, films or photos for playback in an integrated multimedia system.
- Address book data for use in conjunction with an integrated hands-free system or an integrated navigation system.
- Entered navigation destinations.
- Data on the use of Internet services.

This data can be stored locally in the vehicle or is found on a device that has been connected to the vehicle, e.g., a smartphone, USB stick or MP3 player. If this data is stored in the vehicle, it can be deleted at any time.

This data is only transmitted to third parties upon personal request as part of the use of online services. The transmission depends on the selected settings for the use of the services.

Incorporation of mobile devices

Depending on the vehicle equipment, mobile devices connected to the vehicle, for instance smartphones, can be controlled via the vehicle control elements.

The sound and picture from the mobile device can be played back and displayed through the multimedia system. Certain information is transferred to the mobile device at the same time. Depending on the type of incorporation, this includes, for instance position data and other general vehicle information. This optimizes the way in which selected apps, for instance navigation or music playback, work.

There is no further interaction between the mobile device and the vehicle, such as active access to vehicle data.

How the data will be processed further is determined by the provider of the particular app being used. The extent of the possible settings depends on the respective app and the operating system of the mobile device.

Services

General information

If the vehicle has a wireless network connection, this enables data to be exchanged between the vehicle and other systems. The wireless network connection is realized via an in-vehicle transmitter and receiver unit or via personal mobile devices brought into the vehicle, for instance smartphones. This wireless network connection enables 'online functions' to be used. These include online services and apps supplied by the vehicle manufacturer or by other providers.

Services from the vehicle manufacturer

Where online services from the vehicle manufacturer are concerned, the corresponding functions are described in the appropriate place, for instance the Owner's Manual or manufacturer's website. The relevant legal information pertaining to data protection may also be found on the manufacturer's website. Personal data may be used to perform online services. Data is exchanged over a secure connection, for instance with the IT systems of the vehicle manufacturer intended for this purpose.

Any collection, processing, and use of personal data above and beyond that needed to provide the services must always be based on a legal

permission, contractual arrangement or consent. It is also possible to activate or deactivate the data connection as a whole. That is, with the exception of functions and services required by law such as Assist systems.

Services from other providers

When using online services from other providers, these services are the responsibility of the relevant provider and subject to their data privacy conditions and terms of use. The vehicle manufacturer has no influence on the content exchanged during this process. Information on the way in which personal data is collected and used in relation to services from third parties, the scope of such data, and its purpose, can be obtained from the relevant service provider.

Event Data Recorder EDR

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder EDR. The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were fastened.
- How far, if at all, the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

EDR data is recorded by your vehicle only if a nontrivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data, for instance name, gender, age, and crash location, are recorded.

However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

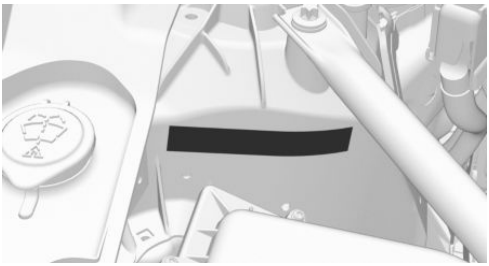
To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Vehicle identification number

General information

Depending on the national-market version, the vehicle identification number is located in different positions in the vehicle. This chapter describes all positions that are possible for the series.

Engine compartment



The engraved vehicle identification number can be found in the engine compartment, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3501
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Right nameplate

The vehicle identification number can be found on the nameplate, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

Left nameplate

The vehicle identification number can be found on the nameplate, on the left-hand side of the vehicle.

Windshield

The vehicle identification number can also be found behind the windshield.

iDrive

It is also possible to display the vehicle identification number via iDrive.

Additional information:

Displaying the vehicle identification number and software part number, refer to page 71.

Reporting safety defects

For US customers

The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration NHTSA, in addition to notifying BMW of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or BMW of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may call the toll-free hotline 1-800-333-0510. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety.

Owner's Manual media

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

General information

Media at a glance

You can use various media formats to call up the content in the Owner's Manual. The following Owner's Manual media formats are available:

- Printed Owner's Manual.
- Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

Printed Owner's Manual

Concept

The printed Owner's Manual describes all standard, country-specific, and optional features offered with the series.

General information

The Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can be obtained as a printed book from the service center.

Supplementary Owner's Manuals

Also follow the Supplementary Owner's Manuals, which are included in addition to the onboard literature.

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

Concept

The Integrated Owner's Manual specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle.

The Integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the Control Display.

Selecting the Owner's Manual

1. HOME Press the button.
2. "CAR"
3. "Owner's Manual"
4. Select the desired method of accessing the contents.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3503
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Scrolling through the Owner's Manual

Turn the Controller, until the next or previous contents are displayed.

Context help

General information

The Integrated Owner's Manual can be accessed from any menu. Depending on the selected function, either the associated description or the main menu of the Integrated Owner's Manual will be displayed.

Opening via iDrive

Change directly to the Options menu from the function on the Control Display:

1. OPTION Press the button.
2. "Help"

Opening when a Check Control message is displayed

Directly from the Check Control message on the Control Display:

"Owner's Manual"

Programmable memory buttons

General information

The entry points into the Owner's Manual can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly.

Storing

1. Select the desired entry point via iDrive:
   - ▷ "Keyword search"
   - ▷ "Picture search"
   - ▷ "Operating tips"
   - ▷ "Quick reference"
   - ▷ "Topics"
   - ▷ "Quick link"
2. 1 ... 7 Press and hold the desired button until the displayed bar on the Control Display has loaded completely.

Executing

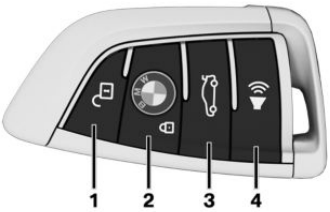
1 ... 7 Press the corresponding button.

The owner's manual is directly displayed at the selected entry point.

Entering

Opening and closing

Buttons on the vehicle key



1 Unlocking
2 Locking
3 To open the tailgate
4 Panic mode, pathway lighting

Unlocking the vehicle

Press the button on the vehicle key.

Depending on the settings, either only the driver's door or all vehicle access points are unlocked.

If only the driver's door is unlocked, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key after unlocking.

The windows and the glass sunroof are opened, as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Press the button on the vehicle key.

All vehicle access points are locked.

Buttons for the central locking system

Overview

Buttons for the central locking system.

Locking

Press the button with the front doors closed.

The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

Unlocking

Press the button.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

- ▷ Press the button on the vehicle key and hold for at least 3 seconds.
- ▷ Briefly press the button on the vehicle key three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3505
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Comfort Access

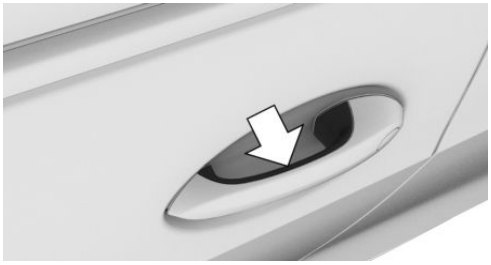
Concept

The vehicle can be accessed without operating the vehicle key.

Carrying the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket, is sufficient.

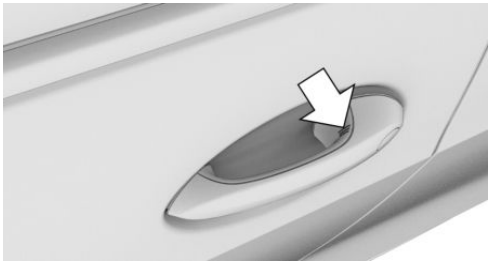
The vehicle automatically detects the vehicle key when it is in close proximity or in the car's interior.

Unlocking the vehicle



Grasp the handle of a vehicle door completely.

Locking the vehicle



Touch the grooved surface on the handle of a closed vehicle door with your finger for approx. 1 second without grasping the door handle.

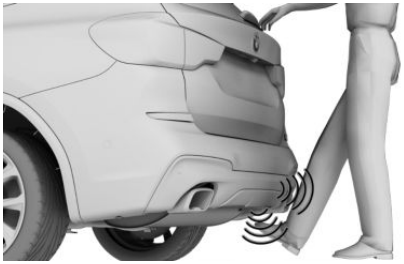
Opening and closing the tailgate with no-touch activation

Concept

The tailgate can be opened and closed with no-touch activation using the vehicle key you are carrying.

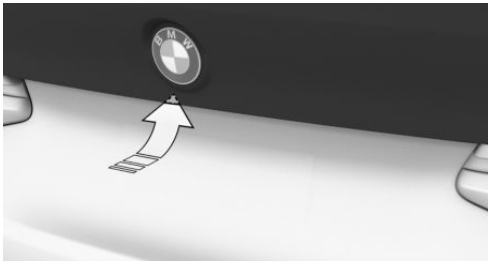
Performing the foot movement

1. Stand in the middle behind the vehicle at approx. one arm's length away from the rear of the vehicle.
2. Wave a foot under the vehicle in the direction of travel and immediately pull it back. With this movement, the leg must pass through the ranges of both sensors.



Tailgate

Opening



▷ Unlock the vehicle and then press the button on the outside of the tailgate.

▷ Press the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

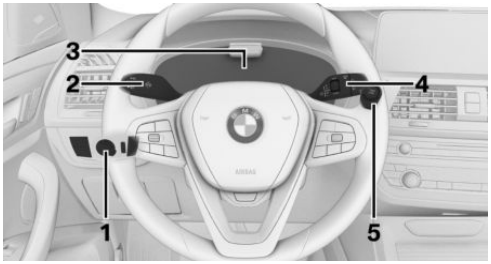
Depending on the setting, the doors may be unlocked.

Closing

Press the button on the inside of the upper tailgate.

Displays, control elements

In the vicinity of the steering wheel



1 Light switch element
2 Turn signal indicator, high beams
3 Instrument cluster
4 Wipers
5 Start/Stop button

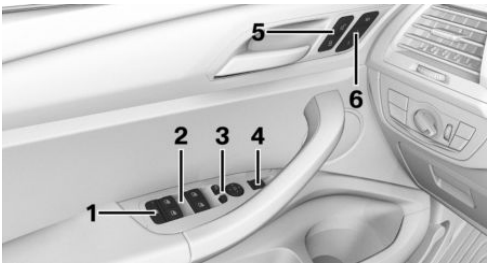
Indicator/warning lights

Instrument cluster

The indicator/warning lights can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

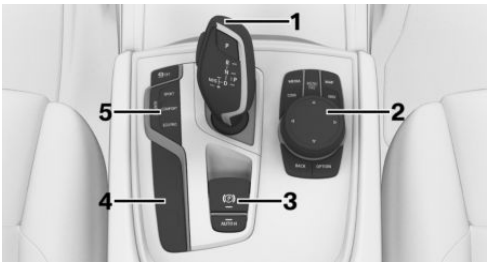
Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when drive-ready state is switched on.

Driver's door



1 Safety switch
2 Power windows
3 Exterior mirrors
4 Opening/closing the tailgate
5 Central locking system
6 Seats, comfort features

Switch console



1 Selector lever
2 Controller
3 Parking brake, Automatic Hold
4 Parking assistance systems
5 Driving Dynamics Control

iDrive

Concept

The iDrive combines the functions of many switches. These functions can be operated via the Controller.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3507
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Buttons on the Controller

Button	Function
MENU	Opens the main menu.
MEDIA	Opens the Media/Radio menu.
COM	Opens the Communication menu.
MAP	Opens navigation map.
NAV	Opens destination input menu for navigation.
BACK	Opens the previous display.
OPTION	Opens the Options menu.

Voice activation

Activating the voice activation system

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the signal.
3. Say the command.

This symbol indicates that the voice activation system is active.

No other commands may be available. In this case, operate the function via iDrive.

Terminating the voice activation system

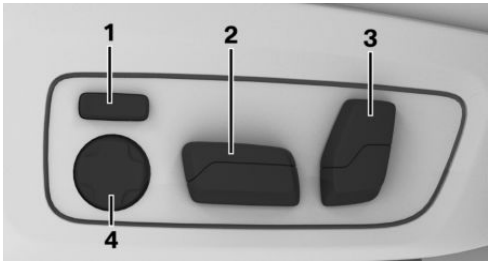
Press the button on the steering wheel or ›Cancel‹.

This symbol indicates that the voice activation system is deactivated.

Set-up and use

Seats, mirrors and steering wheel

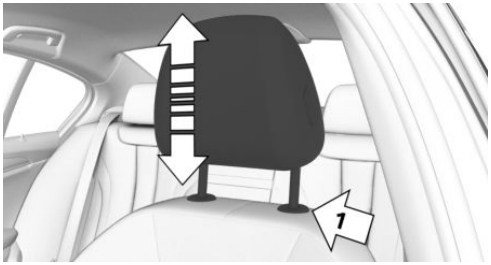
Electrically adjustable seats



1 Backrest width
2 Forward/backward, height, seat tilt
3 Backrest tilt, head restraint
4 Lumbar support

Adjusting the head restraint

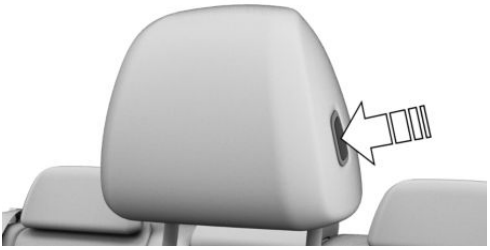
Adjusting the height: manual head restraints



- To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.
- To raise: push the head restraint up.

After setting the height, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

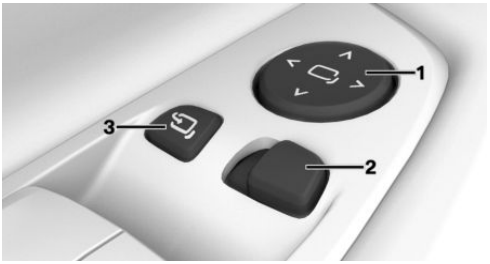
Adjust distance: manual head restraints



- Back: press the button and push the head restraint toward the rear.
- Forward: pull the head restraint toward the front.

After setting the distance, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Adjusting the exterior mirrors

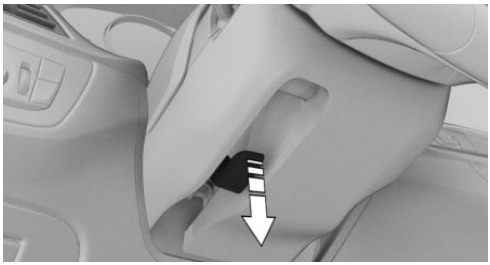


1 Adjusting
2 Selecting a mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor
3 Folding in and out

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3509
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Adjusting the steering wheel

Manual steering wheel setting



1. Fold the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seat position.
3. Fold the lever back up.

Memory function

Concept

The following settings can be stored and, if necessary, retrieved using the memory function:

- Seat position.
- Exterior mirror position.
- Height of the Head-up Display.

Storing

1. Set the desired position.
2. SET Press button on the door. The writing on the button lights up.
3. Press the desired button 1 or 2 at the door while the writing is lit. A signal sounds.

Calling up settings

Press the desired button 1 or 2.

Infotainment

Radio

1 Changing the entertainment source
2 Changing the station/track
3 Programmable memory buttons
4 Sound output on/off, volume
5 Changing the waveband

Waveband/satellite radio

Navigation destination input

Entering a destination via quick search

1. NAV Press the button on the Controller.
2. "Where to?"
3. Enter at least two letters or characters.

   The search term may be completed automatically in gray print.

   Press or move the controller up to apply the suggested search term.
4. OK Select the symbol, if needed.

   Results are displayed in a list.
5. "Search location": select search area.
6. Move the Controller to the right.
7. Select desired destination.

Connecting a mobile phone

General information

After the mobile phone is connected once to the vehicle, the mobile phone can be operated using iDrive and the steering wheel buttons.

Connecting the mobile phone via Bluetooth

1. "COM"
2. If necessary, select the following setting: "Telephone"
3. "Connect new phone"
4. To perform additional steps on the mobile phone, refer to the mobile phone owner's manual: e.g., search for or connect the Bluetooth device or a new device.

   The Bluetooth name of the vehicle appears on the mobile phone display. Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle.
5. Depending on the mobile device, a control number is displayed or the control number must be entered.
   - ▷ Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number on the display of the device.

     Confirm the control number on the device and on the Control Display.
   - ▷ Enter and confirm the same control number on the device and via iDrive.

   The device is connected and displayed in the device list.

Using the telephone

Accepting a call

Depending on the equipment, incoming calls can be answered in several ways.

- ▷ Via iDrive:

  "Accept"
- ▷ /

  Press the corresponding button on the steering wheel.
- ▷ Via the selection list in the instrument cluster:

  Use the thumbwheel on the steering wheel to select: "Accept"
- ▷ Via touch screen: tap on the corresponding entry on the Control Display.
- ▷ Via gestures: point the index finger into the direction of the Control Display.

Dialing a number

1. "COM"
2. If necessary, "Telephone"
3. "Dial number:"
4. Enter the numbers.
5. Select the symbol. The connection is established via the mobile phone to which this function has been assigned.

Establish the connection via the additional telephone:

1.

Press the button.
2. "Call via"

Apple CarPlay preparation

Concept

CarPlay allows certain functions of a compatible Apple iPhone to be used via Siri voice operation and iDrive.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Compatible iPhone, iPhone 5 or later with iOS 7.1 or later.
- ▷ Corresponding mobile contract.
- ▷ If necessary, the setting for mobile data must be activated on the iPhone.
- ▷ Bluetooth, WLAN, and Siri voice operation are activated on the iPhone.
- ▷ WLAN is activated on the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3511
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Pairing the iPhone with CarPlay

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. "New device"
4. "Phone calls and audio"

   The vehicle's Bluetooth name is displayed on the Control Display.
5. On the mobile device, search for Bluetooth devices in the vicinity and select the vehicle.

   A control number is displayed.
6. Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number on the display of the mobile device, and confirm that the two match.
7. "Use Apple CarPlay"

The iPhone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3512

On the road

Driving

Drive-ready state

Switching on drive-ready state

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

Switching off drive-ready state

Steptronic transmission:

1. Engage selector lever position P with the vehicle stopped.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

   The engine is switched off.
3. Set the parking brake.

Auto Start/Stop function

The Auto Start/Stop function switches the engine off automatically while stationary to save fuel. The engine starts automatically under the following preconditions:

Steptronic transmission:

- By releasing the brake pedal.
- When Automatic Hold is activated: step on the accelerator pedal.

Parking brake

Setting

Pull the switch.

The LED on the switch and the indicator light in the instrument cluster are illuminated.

Releasing

With drive-ready state switched on:

Press the switch while stepping on the brake pedal or selector lever position P is set.

The LED and indicator light go out.

The parking brake is released.

Steptronic transmission: parking

The parking brake is automatically set if the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold and the drive-ready state is switched off or the vehicle is exited.

Steptronic transmission

Engaging selector lever position D, N, R

- Drive mode D.
- Neutral N.
- R is reverse.

With the driver's safety belt fastened, briefly push the selector lever in the desired direction, past a resistance point, if needed. The selector lever returns to the center position in each case.

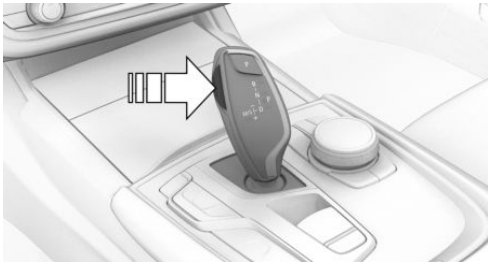
To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a drive mode or reverse, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3513
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

A selector lever lock prevents the inadvertent shifting to selector lever position R or the inadvertent shifting from selector lever position P.

Engage selector lever position R only when the vehicle is stationary.

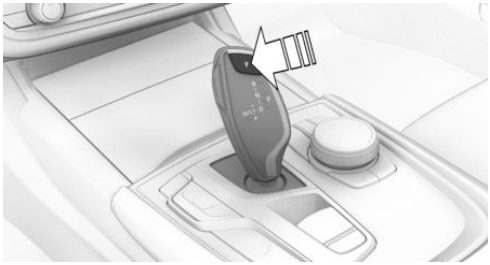
Releasing the selector lever lock



Press the button.

Engaging P

Engage selector lever position P only when the vehicle is stationary.



Press button P.

Steptronic transmission, Sport program and manual mode

Activate the Sport program/manual mode:

Press the selector lever to the left from selector lever position D.

Manual mode:

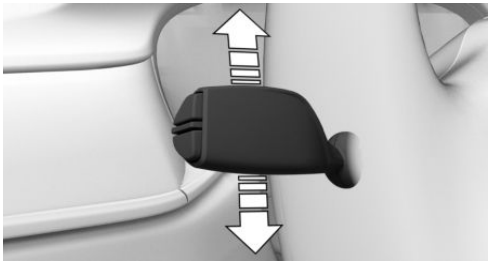
- To shift down: press the selector lever forward.
- To shift up: pull the selector lever rearwards.

End the sport program/manual mode:

Push the selector lever to the right.

Turn signal, high beams, headlight flasher

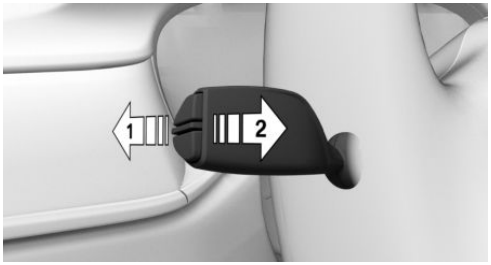
Turn signal



- On: press the lever past the resistance point.
- Off: press the lever past the resistance point in the opposite direction.
- Triple turn signal activation: lightly tap the lever up or down.

▷ Brief signaling: press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

High beams, headlight flasher



Push the lever forward or pull it backward.

▷ High beams on, arrow 1.

The high beams light up when the low beams are switched on.

▷ High beams off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

Lights and lighting

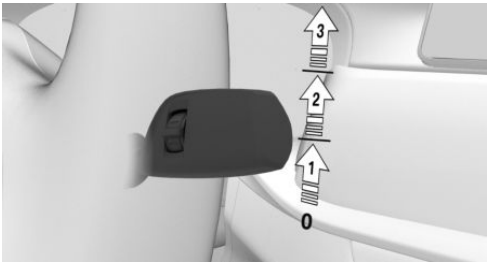
Light functions

Symbol	Function
	Front fog lights.
	Lights off. Daytime running lights.
	Parking lights.
	Automatic headlight control. Adaptive light functions.
	Low beams.
	Instrument lighting.
	Right roadside parking light.
	Left roadside parking light.

Wiper system

Switching the wipers on/off and brief wipe

Switching on



Press the lever up until the desired position is reached.

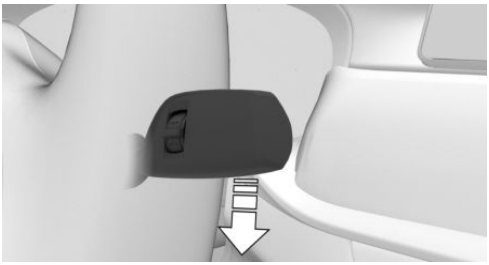
▷ Resting position of the wipers: position 0.

▷ Rain sensor: position 1.

▷ Normal wiper speed: position 2.

▷ Fast wiper speed: position 3.

Switching off and brief wipe



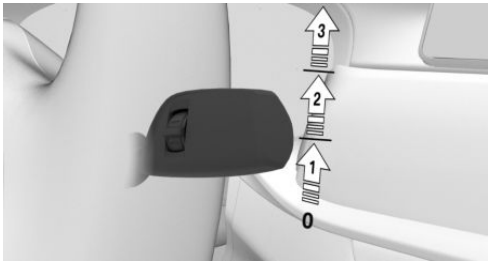
Press the lever down.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3515
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

- Switching off: press the lever down until it reaches its standard position.
- Brief wipe: press the lever down from the standard position.

Rain sensor

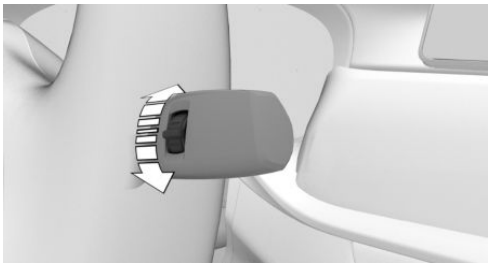
Activating/deactivating



To activate: press the lever up once from its standard position, arrow 1.

To deactivate: press the lever back into the standard position.

Adjusting the sensitivity



Turn the thumbwheel on the wiper lever.

Cleaning the windshield

Pull the wiper lever towards you.

Climate control

Automatic climate control

Button	Function
	Temperature.
A/C	Climate control operation.
AUTO	AUTO program.
	Recirculated-air mode.
	Air flow, manual.
	Air distribution, manual.
MAX	Defrost and defog window.

Button	Function
	Rear window defroster.
	Seat heating.

Automatic climate control with enhanced features

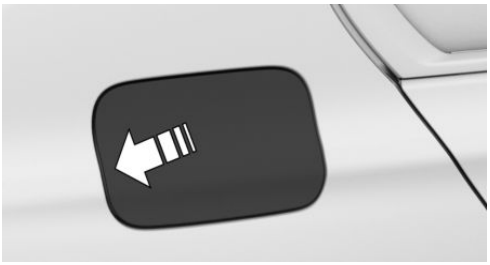
Button	Function
	Temperature.
	Climate control operation.
	Maximum cooling.
	AUTO program.
	Recirculated-air mode.
	Air flow, manual.
	Air distribution, manual.
	SYNC program.
	Defrost and defog window.
	Rear window defroster.
	Active seat ventilation.
	Seat heating.
	Opening the Climate menu.

Intermediate stop

Refueling

Fuel cap

1. To open the fuel filler flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.



2. Turn the fuel cap counterclockwise.
3. Place the fuel cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.

Gasoline

For the best fuel efficiency, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.

Wheels and tires

Tire inflation pressure specifications

The tire inflation pressure specifications can be found in the tire inflation pressure table in the printed Owner's Manual.

After correcting the tire inflation pressure

With runflat tires:

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

With Tire Pressure Monitor:

The corrected tire inflation pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the correct tire settings have been made.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3517
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

With tires that cannot be found in the tire pressure values on the Control Display, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM.

Checking the tire inflation pressure

Regularly check the tire inflation pressure and correct it as needed:

- At least twice a month.
- Before embarking on an extended trip.

Cleaning the wheels

The friction during hard braking may produce brake dust and make the rims dirty. Brake dust can be removed by cleaning the rims. BMW recommends using vehicle care and cleaning products from BMW.

Electronic oil measurement

Functional requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of normal driving with the combustion engine running.

Displaying the engine oil level

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"

Different messages appear on the Control Display depending on the engine oil level. Pay attention to these messages.

Adding engine oil

General information

Safely park the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before adding engine oil.

Adding engine oil

Only add engine oil when the message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Observe the quantity to be added in the message.

Take care not to add too much engine oil.

Observe recommended engine oil types.

Providing assistance

Hazard warning flashers

The button is located in the center console.

Breakdown assistance

BMW Roadside Assistance

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "BMW Assist"
4. If necessary, "BMW Roadside Assistance"
   A voice connection is established.

ConnectedDrive

Concierge service

The BMW Assist Concierge service offers information on events, gas stations or hotels, and provides phone numbers and addresses. Many hotels can be booked directly by the BMW Concierge service. The Concierge service is part of the optional BMW Assist Response Center.

1. "COM"
2. "BMW Assist"
3. If necessary, select the entry for the Concierge Service.

A voice connection to the Concierge service is established.

Teleservices

Teleservices are services that help to maintain vehicle mobility.

Teleservices can comprise the following services:

- BMW Roadside Assistance.
- BMW Accident Assistance.
- Service Request.
- Teleservice Report.
- Teleservice Battery Guard.
- Your dealer's service center.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3519

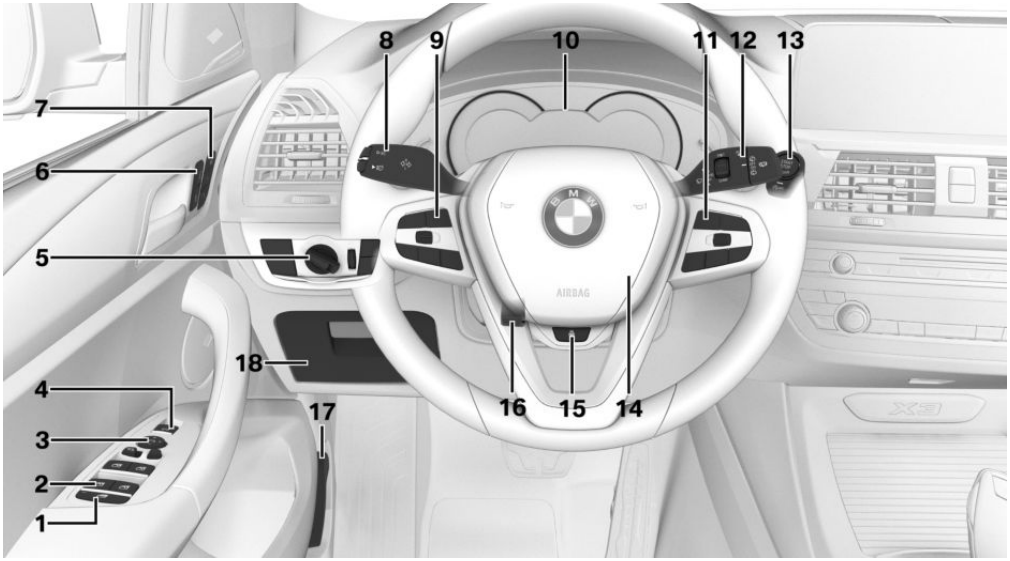
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3520

Cockpit

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

In the vicinity of the steering wheel



1 Safety switch 99

2 Power windows 98

3 Exterior mirror operation 109

4 Opening and closing the tailgate 93

5 Lights

Front fog lights 160

Light switch 156

Lights off

Daytime running lights 158

Parking lights 157

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3521
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Automatic headlight control 156
Adaptive light functions 158
High-beam Assistant 159

Low beams 157

Instrument lighting 161

Right roadside parking light 157

Left roadside parking light 157

6 Central locking system 89

Unlocking

Locking

7 Seating comfort features

Memory function 111

8 Steering column stalk, left

Turn signal 129

High beams, headlight flasher 129

High-beam Assistant 159

Widgets 140
Trip data 151

9 Steering wheel buttons, left

Cruise control on/off 194

Active Cruise Control on/off 196

Steering and traffic jam assistant on/off 203

Cruise control: to store the speed

Pause or continue cruise control

Active Cruise Control: increase distance

Active Cruise Control: reduce distance

With steering and traffic jam assistant: adjust distance

Cruise control rocker switch

10 Instrument cluster 139

11 Steering wheel buttons, right

Selection lists 150

Volume, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6

Voice activation system 52

Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6

Thumbwheel for selection lists 150

12 Steering column stalk, right

Wipers 130

Rain sensor 131

Cleaning the windshield 131

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3522

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

13 START ENGINE STOP Switching drive-ready state on/ off 121

A OFF Auto Start/Stop function 121

14 Horn, entire surface

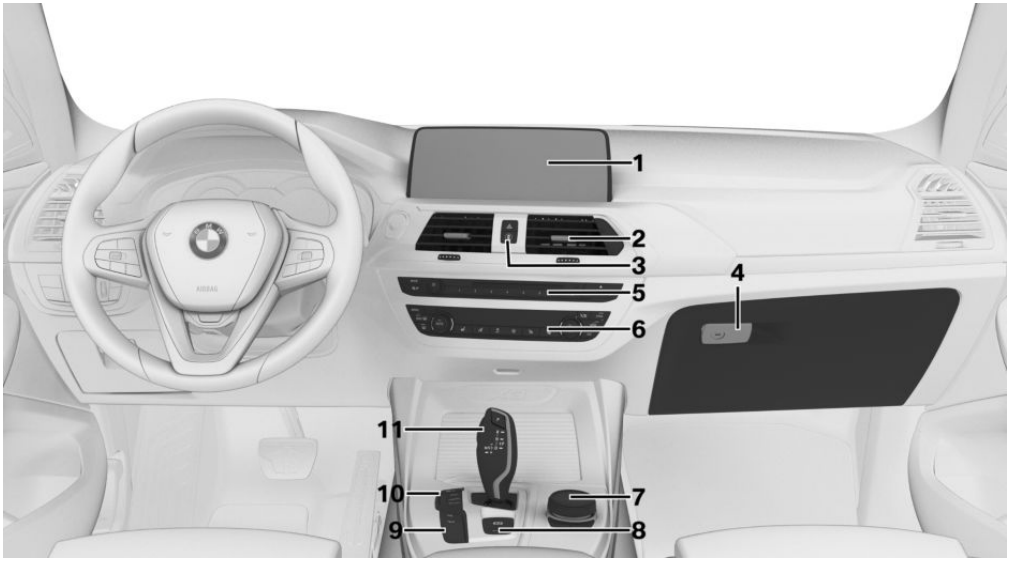
15 Heated steering wheel 111

16 Adjusting the steering wheel 111

17 Unlocking the hood 313

18 Driver's side glove compartment 256

In the vicinity of the center console



1 Control Display 48

2 Ventilation 237

3 Hazard warning system 330

Intelligent Safety 167

4 Glove compartment 255

5 Radio/multimedia, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication 6

6 Automatic climate control 233

7 Controller with buttons 48

8 Parking brake 126

AUTO H Automatic Hold 127

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3523
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

9 Parking assistance systems 206

Panorama View 222

HDC Hill Descent Control 192

10 Driving Dynamics Control 124

SPORT drive mode

COMFORT drive mode

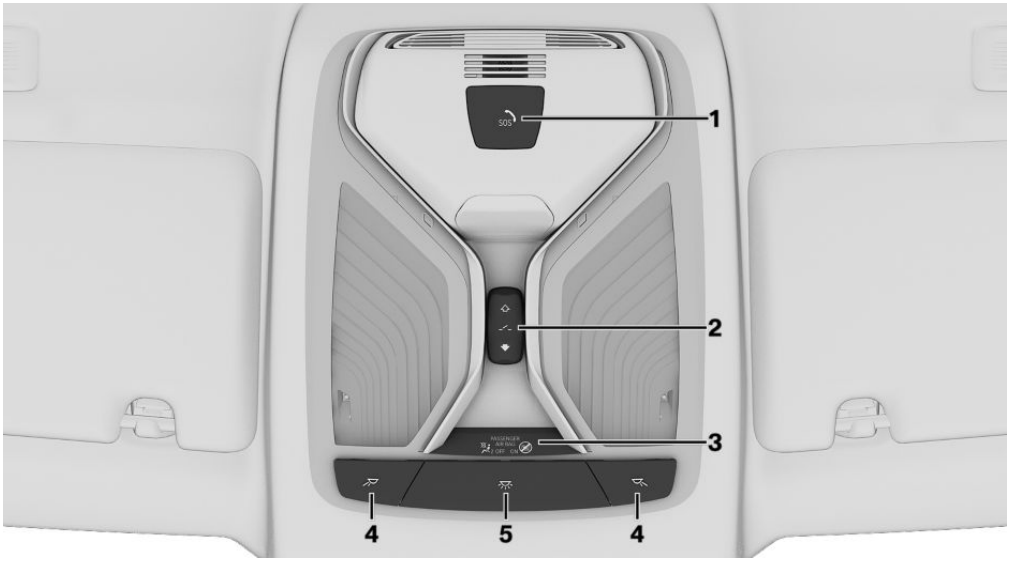
ECO PRO drive mode

ADAPTIVE drive mode

DSC Dynamic Stability Control 189

11 Steptronic transmission selector lever 133

In the vicinity of the roofliner



1 Emergency Request, SOS 332

2 Glass sunroof 99

3 Indicator light, front-seat passenger airbag 166

4 Reading lights 161

5 Interior lights 161

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3525
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Sensors of the vehicle

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Overview

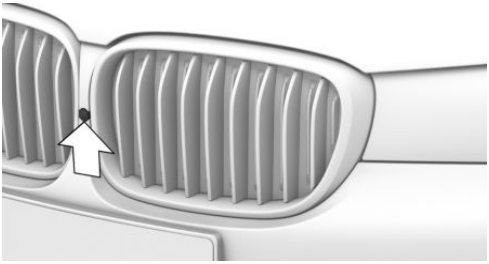
Depending on the equipment, the following cameras and sensors are installed in the vehicle:

- Front camera.
- Cameras behind the windshield.
- Top view cameras.
- Rearview camera.
- Front radar sensor.
- Radar sensors, side, front.
- Radar sensors, side, rear.
- Ultrasound sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors, side.

Keep the vehicle cameras and sensors, as well as surrounding areas, clean and unobstructed.

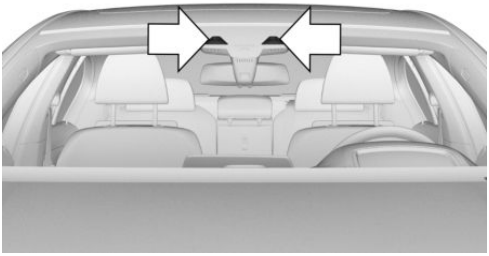
Cameras

Front camera



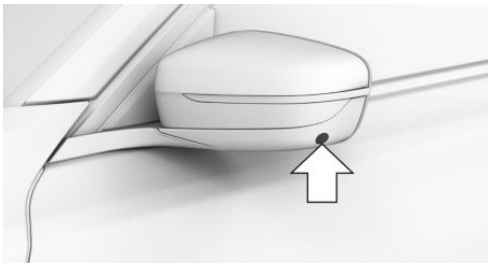
Front camera

Cameras behind the windshield



The cameras are located in the area of the interior mirror.

Top view cameras



One camera is located at the bottom of each exterior mirror housing.

Rearview camera

The camera is located between the license plate lights.

System limits of the cameras

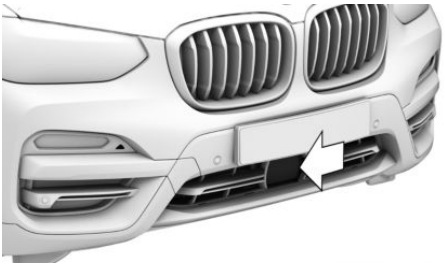
The cameras may not be fully functional and may provide incorrect information in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- On steep hills, in steep depressions or in tight curves.
- When the camera field of view is covered, for instance by a fogged up windshield or labels.
- When the camera lens is dirty or damaged.
- With exterior mirrors folded in.
- When driving toward bright lights or strong reflections, e.g., because of a setting sun.
- When it is dark outside.
- Camera behind the windshield: if the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- Camera behind the windshield: during calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

If applicable, a Check Control message is displayed if the system fails.

Radar sensors

Front radar sensor



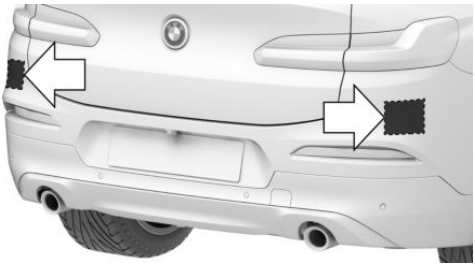
The radar sensor is located in the front bumper.

Radar sensors, side, front

The radar sensors are located in the bumper.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3527
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Radar sensors, side, rear



The radar sensors are located in the bumper.

System limits of the radar sensors

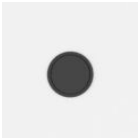
The radar sensors may not be fully functional or may not be available in the following situations:

- If sensors are dirty, such as due to icing.
- If sensors are covered, such as by labels, films or a number plate baseplate.
- If the sensor is not aligned correctly, for instance due to parking damage.
- If the radiation range of the sensors is covered, e.g., by protruding cargo.
- If the field of view of the sensors is covered, e.g., by garage walls, hedges or snow hills.
- After improperly performed work on the vehicle paint in the area of the sensors.
- On steep hilltops or in sharp dips in the road.

If applicable, a Check Control message is displayed if the system fails.

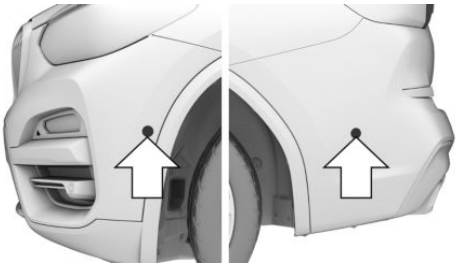
Ultrasound sensors

Ultrasound sensors in the front/ rear bumpers



The ultrasound sensors of the Park Distance Control PDC are located in the bumpers.

Ultrasonic sensors, side



The ultrasound sensors of the Automatic Parking Assistant are located on the side of the vehicle.

System limits of the ultrasonic sensors

The detection of objects with ultrasonic measurements can run into physical limits, e.g., in the following situations:

- In case of dirty sensors.
- In case of covered sensors, such as due to labels.
- If the sensor is not aligned correctly, for instance due to parking damage.
- After improperly performed work on the vehicle paint in the area of the sensors.
- For small children and animals.
- For persons with certain clothing, for instance coats.
- In case of external interference of the ultrasound, for instance from passing vehicles, loud machines or other ultrasonic sources.
- Under certain weather conditions, e.g., high relative humidity, wet conditions, snowfall, cold, extreme heat, or strong wind.
- With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.
- With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- With moving objects.
- With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges.

- With objects with corners, edges, and smooth surfaces.
- With objects with a fine surface structure such as fences.
- For objects with porous surfaces.
- With small and low objects, for instance boxes.
- With soft obstacles or obstacles covered in foam material.
- With plants and bushes.
- In automatic car washes.
- On uneven surfaces, such as speed bumps.
- Due to heavy exhaust.
- Cargo that extends beyond the perimeter of the vehicle is not taken into account by the ultrasonic sensors.

If applicable, a Check Control message is displayed if the system fails.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3529
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Operating state of the vehicle

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

General information

Depending on the situation, the vehicle is in one of the three states:

- Idle state.
- Standby state.
- Drive-ready state.

Idle state

Concept

When the vehicle is in idle state, it is switched off. All power consumers are deactivated.

General information

The vehicle is in idle state prior to opening from the outside and after exiting and locking.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Automatic idle state

For instance, the idle state is automatically established under the following conditions:

- After several minutes, if no operation takes place on the vehicle.
- If the charge state of the vehicle battery is low.
- Depending on the setting via iDrive: when one or both front doors are opened after driving when exiting the vehicle.

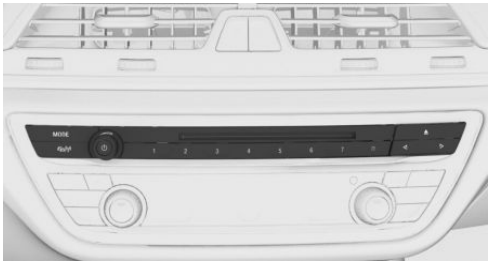
In some situations, the idle state is not set automatically, for instance during a phone call or when the low beams are switched on.

Establishing idle state when opening the front doors

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Turn off vehicle after opening door"

Manual idle state

To establish idle state in the vehicle after end of trip:



Press and hold the button until the OFF indicator on the instrument cluster goes out.

Standby state

Concept

When standby state is switched on, most functions can be used while the vehicle is stationary. Desired settings can be adjusted.

General information

The vehicle is in the standby state after the front doors are opened from the outside.

Display in the instrument cluster

OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster. The drivetrain is switched off and standby state switched on.

Drive-ready state

Concept

Switching on drive-ready state corresponds to starting the engine.

General information

Some functions, such as DSC Dynamic Stability Control, can only be used with drive-ready state switched on.

Safety information

⚠ DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can enter into the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3531
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

NOTICE

Repeated attempts to start the vehicle or repeated starting of the vehicle in rapid succession can cause the starter to overheat. This also results in unburned or inadequately burned fuel, and can cause the catalytic converter to overheat. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Avoid repeated starting of the vehicle, particularly repeated starting in rapid succession.

Switching on drive-ready state

Concept

Drive-ready state is switched on via the Start/Stop button.

Steptronic transmission

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

The ignition is activated automatically for a brief time and is stopped as soon as the engine starts.

Most of the indicator/warning lights in the instrument cluster light up for a varied length of time.

Gasoline engine

Depending on the motorization, the full drive power may not be available for approximately 30 seconds after starting the engine. In this case, the vehicle will not accelerate as usual.

Display in the instrument cluster

The lettering READY in the in the instrument cluster indicates that the drive-ready state is switched on.

Switching off drive-ready state

Steptronic transmission

1. Engage selector lever position P with the vehicle stopped.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

   The engine is switched off. The vehicle switches into standby state.
3. Set the parking brake.

iDrive

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Operating concept

Concept

iDrive includes a large number of functions. These functions can be operated via the Controller and, depending on the equipment version, via touchscreen, voice activation system or gesture control.

Safety information

Warning

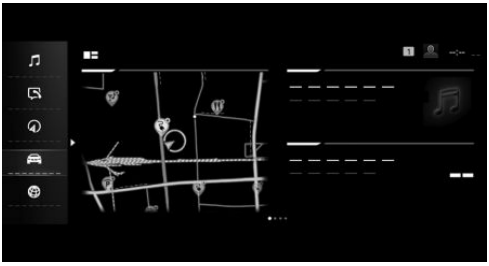
Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. As warranted, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.

Input and display

Main menu

General information

The main menu is divided into two areas. The left area contains menu items that can be used to call up all the iDrive functions. The right area contains widgets that provide quick access to certain functions.



Media/Radio

All functions of the entertainment system, e.g., radio stations or connection with external devices.

Communication

Phone and message functions, e-mail and calendar, and also the connection and management of mobile devices, such as smartphones.

Navigation

Access to the navigation system, destination input and traffic bulletins. Configurable map views and other functions, such as points of interest and areas to be avoided.

My Car

Information about vehicle status and trips. Access to the Integrated Owner's Manual and also administration of driver profiles and range of adjustments for vehicle and iDrive.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3533
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Apps

Management of apps, access to apps and vehicle functions. Additional apps and vehicle functions can be purchased from the BMW Store.

Widgets

Widgets provide quick access to frequently used functions. The configured widgets display dynamic contents such as the navigation map, and serve as interfaces at the same time.

Letters and numbers

Letters and numbers can be selected when the destination is inputed, for example.

Letters and numbers can be entered using the Controller and, depending on the equipment version, via touchscreen or voice activation system. The keyboard's display changes automatically.

Symbol	Function
abc ABC	Change between capital and lower-case letters.
␣	Enter a blank space.
EN	Switching between languages.
	Use voice activation.
OK	Confirm entry.
← →	Slide the input area to the left or right.

Entry comparison

When entering names and addresses, the choice is narrowed down with every letter and number and added automatically as needed.

Entries are continuously compared with data stored in the vehicle.

- Only those letters and numbers are offered during entry for which data is available.
- Destination search: place names can be entered in all languages that are available in iDrive.

Activating/deactivating the functions

Several menu items are preceded by a checkbox. The checkbox indicates whether the function is activated or deactivated. Selecting the menu item activates or deactivates the function.

☑ Function is activated.

☐ Function is deactivated.

Status information

General information

The status field can be found in the upper area of the Control Display. Status information is displayed in the form of symbols.

Radio symbols

Symbol	Meaning
HD	HD Radio station is being received.
SXM	Satellite radio is switched on.

Telephone symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Incoming or outgoing call.
	Missed call.
	Signal strength of cellular network.
	Network search.
	Cellular network is not available.
	The critical charge state of the mobile phone has been reached.
R	Roaming is active.
	Locating is active.
	SMS text message received.
	Message received.

Symbol	Meaning
	Reminder.
	Sending not possible.

Entertainment symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Bluetooth audio.
	USB device.
	WLAN.
	Apple CarPlay.

Other symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Check Control message.
	Sound output active.
	Sound output deactivated.
	Voice activation system active.
	Request for the current vehicle position.
	Checking the current vehicle position.
	Driver profile.
1	Messages.
	Service notifications.
	Information.
	Stop.
	Data protection.

Programmable memory buttons

General information

The iDrive functions can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly, for instance radio stations, navigation destinations, phone numbers and menu entries or pages in the Integrated Owner's Manual.

Settings are stored for the driver profile currently used.

Overview

1 ... 7 Programmable memory buttons

Storing a function

A function can be stored on a programmable memory button. A button with a stored function can be overwritten with another function.

1. Select function via iDrive, for instance radio station.
2. 1 ... 7 Press and hold the desired button until the displayed bar on the Control Display has loaded completely.

Executing a function

1 ... 7 Press the button.

The function will work immediately. This means, for instance that the number is dialed when a phone number is selected.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3535
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Displaying the key assignment

Touch buttons with finger. Do not wear gloves or use objects.

The assignment of the buttons is displayed in the upper area of the Control Display.

Deleting all button assignments

All button assignments can be deleted.

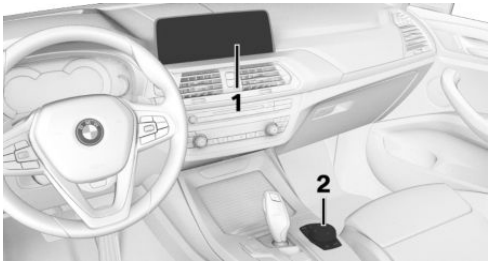
1. Press and hold buttons 1 and simultaneously for approx. 5 seconds.
2. "OK"

Control Display and Controller

Concept

The iDrive functions are displayed on the Control Display. The Control Display can be operated using the Controller, touchpad, and touch screen.

Overview



1 Control Display with touchscreen

2 Controller with buttons and touchpad

Control Display

Safety information

NOTICE

Objects in the area in the front of the Control Display can shift and damage the Control Display. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not place objects in the area in front of the Control Display.

Switching on/off automatically

The Control Display is switched on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked or as soon as the Control Display is needed for operation.

In certain situations, the Control Display is switched off automatically, for instance if no operation is performed on the vehicle for several minutes.

Switching on/off manually

The Control Display can also be switched off manually.

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Screen off"

Press the Controller or any button on the Controller to switch it back on again.

System limits

In the case of very high temperatures on the Control Display, for instance due to intense solar radiation, the brightness may be reduced down to complete deactivation. Once the temperature is reduced, for instance through shade or air conditioning, the normal functions are restored.

Controller

General information

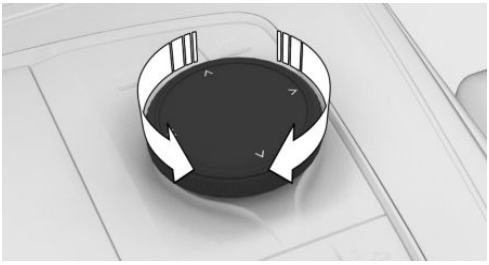
The buttons can be used to open the menus directly. The Controller can be used to select menu items and enter the settings.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3536
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

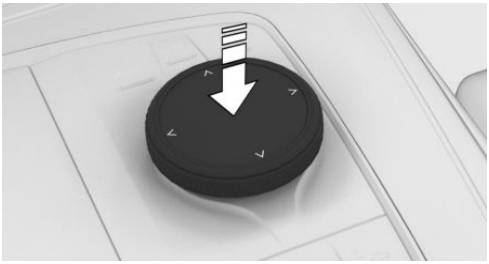
Some iDrive functions can be operated using the touchpad on the Controller.

Operation

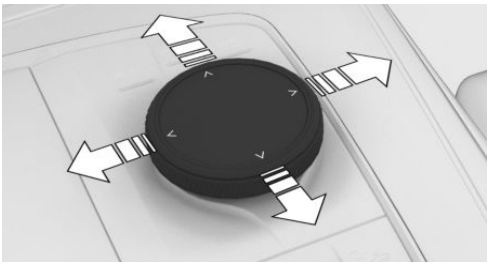
▷ Turn to switch between menu items, for example.



▷ Press to select a menu item, for example.



▷ Tilt in four directions to switch between displays, for example.



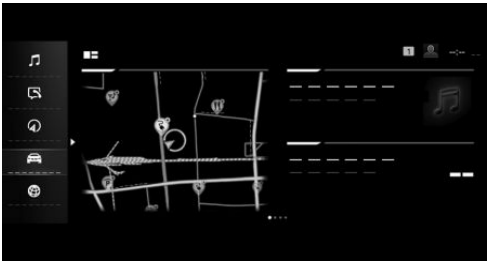
Buttons on the Controller

Button	Function
MENU	Opens the main menu.
MEDIA	Opens the Media/Radio menu.
COM	Opens the Communication menu.
MAP	Opens navigation map.
NAV	Opens destination input menu for navigation.
BACK	Opens the previous display.
OPTION	Opens the Options menu.

Operating via the Controller

Opening the main menu

MENU Press the button.



The main menu is displayed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3537
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Selecting a menu

Selecting menu items

1. Turn the Controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.
2. Press the Controller.

Select a widget

1. Move the Controller in the main menu to the right.
2. Turn the Controller until the desired widget is selected.
3. Press the Controller.

It is also possible to select widgets in the instrument cluster.

Adjusting the menu

Adjusting widgets

The widgets can be adjusted in the main menu. It is possible to create multiple pages with widgets and switch between pages. The adjustments can only be performed when the vehicle is stationary.

1. Select the desired page in the main menu. Only the currently selected page can be adjusted.
2. Tip the Controller up.
3. "Adjust main menu"
4. Select the desired adjustment:
   - ▷ + Symbol and select desired widget: add new widget.

     The requested widget will be inserted in the relevant position. A maximum of four widgets can be displayed per page.
   - ▷ ✕ Select symbol: delete selected widget.
   - ▷ Add new page: "Add page".
   - ▷ Delete selected page: "Delete page".
   - ▷ Adjust the content of the widget: select widget.
5. "Done"

Adjusting contents

Depending on the equipment, the contents of menus "MEDIA", "COM" and "NAV" can be adjusted, for instance to remove the entries of functions that are not used from the menu.

1. Select the menu.
2. "Personalize menu"
3. Select the desired setting.

Changing between displays

After a menu item is selected, for instance "Settings", a new display appears.

▷ Move the Controller to the left.

The current display closes and the previous display is shown.

▷

Press the button.

The previous display re-opens.

▷ Move the Controller to the right.

The new display opens.

An arrow indicates that additional displays can be opened.

Opening the Options menu

Press the button.

The "Options" menu is displayed.

The menu consists of various areas, for instance:

- ▷ "MEDIA": control options for the selected main menu.
- ▷ "Help": help for the selected menu.
- ▷ "Control display off": system settings.

Entering letters and numbers

Input

1. Turn the Controller: select letter or number.
2. OK : confirm entry.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3538

Deleting

Symbol	Function
⌫	Press the Controller: delete letter or number.
⌫	Hold the Controller down: delete all letters or numbers.

Using alphabetical lists

For alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries, the letters for which an entry exists can be displayed in a text box.

1. Turn the Controller to the left or right quickly.
2. Select the first letter of the desired entry.

   The first entry of the selected letter is displayed in the list.

Operation via touchpad

General information

Some iDrive functions can be operated using the touchpad on the Controller.

Selecting functions

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Touchpad"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Character input": enter letters and numbers.
   - ▷ "Map": use the map.
   - ▷ "Search fields": to write letters without selecting the list field.
   - ▷ "Audio confirmation": pronounces entered letters and numbers.

Entering letters and numbers

- ▷ Enter characters as they are displayed on the Control Display.
- ▷ Always enter associated characters, such as accents or periods so that the letter can be clearly recognized.
- ▷ The set language determines what input is possible. Where necessary, enter special characters via the Controller.

Entering special characters

Input	Operation
Delete a character.	Swipe to the left on the touchpad.
Enter a blank space.	Swipe to the right in the center of the touchpad.
Enter a hyphen.	Swipe to the right in the upper area of the touchpad.
Enter an underscore.	Swipe to the right in the lower area of the touchpad.

Using the map

The map in the navigation system can be moved via the touchpad.

Function	Operation
Move map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Enlarge/shrink map.	Drag in or out on the touchpad with fingers.
Display menu.	Tap once.

Operation via touchscreen

General information

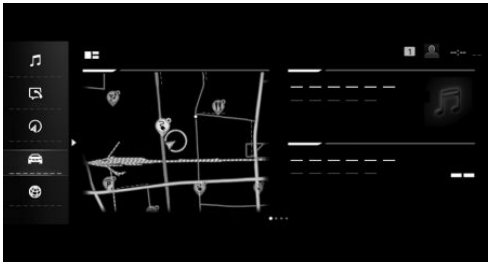
The Control Display is equipped with a touchscreen.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3539
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

You can tap on menu items and widgets. Touch the screen with your fingers. Do not use any objects.

Opening the main menu

Tap on the symbol.



The main menu is displayed.

Adjusting widgets

The widgets can be adjusted in the main menu. It is possible to create multiple pages with widgets and switch between pages. The adjustments can only be performed when the vehicle is stationary.

1. Select the desired page in the main menu. Only the currently selected page can be adjusted.
2. Tap the icon in the main menu.
3. Select the desired adjustment:
   - ▷ + Tap symbol and select desired widget: add new widget.

     The requested widget will be inserted in the relevant position. A maximum of four widgets can be displayed per page.
   - ▷ × Tap symbol: delete selected widget.
   - ▷ Add new page: tap "Add page".
   - ▷ Delete selected page: tap "Delete page".
   - ▷ Adjust content of the widget: tap center of widget.
4. Tap "Done".

Showing/hiding the display bar

In the upper area of the Control Display, it is possible to show or hide a display bar with additional functions.

- ▷ To show the display bar, pull down the display bar at the top edge of the screen.
- ▷ To hide the display bar, pull up the display bar at the top edge of the screen.

Changing between displays

After a menu item is selected, a new display opens.

An arrow indicates that additional displays can be opened.

- ▷ Swipe to the left.
- ▷ Tap arrow.

The new display opens.

Entering letters and numbers

Input

1. Depending on the equipment version, tap the symbol on the touchscreen or a keyboard is displayed on the Control Display when the touchscreen is approached.
2. Enter desired letters and numbers.

Deleting

Symbol	Function
⌫	Tapping the symbol: deletes the letter or number.
⌫	Tapping and holding the symbol all letters: deletes all letters or numbers.

Using the map

The navigation map can be moved using the touchscreen.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3540

Function	Operation
Move map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Enlarge/shrink map.	Drag in or out with the fingers.
Display menu.	Tap once.

Operation via voice

Concept

The voice activation system can be used to operate functions with spoken commands. The system supports you with announcements during input.

The voice control system and the feedback it provides are not a substitute for the printed or Integrated Owner's Manual.

General information

- Functions that can only be used when the vehicle is stationary can only be operated via the voice activation system to a limited extent.
- The system includes special microphones on the driver side and the front passenger side.
- ›...‹ denotes commands to use with the voice activation system.

Functional requirements

- A language must be set via iDrive that is supported by the voice activation system.

  To set the language, refer to page 62.
- Always say commands in the language of the voice activation system.

Activating the voice activation system

General information

There are various methods for activating the voice activation feature:

- Press the button on the steering wheel.
- Say the wake word ›Hello BMW‹ or a personal wake word.

This symbol indicates that the voice activation system is active.

Then say the command. No other commands may be available. In this case, operate the function via iDrive.

The voice activation can be terminated:

- Press the button on the steering wheel again.
- ›Cancel‹

This symbol indicates that the voice activation system is deactivated.

Button on the steering wheel

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the signal.
3. Say the command.

Wake word

General information

Speaking the wake word ›Hello BMW‹ or the personal wake word will start the system.

Preset wake word

The preset wake word ›Hello BMW‹ can be activated and deactivated.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3541
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

›Hello BMW‹ activates the preset and personal wake word.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. If necessary, "Personal assistant"
5. "Voice control"
6. "Wake word"
7. "Activation with "Hello BMW""

Personal wake word

In addition to a preset wake word ›Hello BMW‹, a personal wake word can be set up.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. If necessary, "Personal assistant"
5. "Voice control"
6. "Wake word"
7. "Personal wake word"
8. "Start recording"

   For "Start recording", online speech processing must be available and activated. Alternatively, the personal wake word can be entered using the Controller.
9. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Possible commands

General information

Most contents on the Control Display can be spoken as commands, e.g. menu items or list entries. Speak these list entries out loud exactly as they are shown in the list.

Say the commands and numbers fluently as well as with normal volume, emphasis, and speed.

The status of the voice recognition is displayed in the upper area of the Control Display.

Function examples

Menu items

The commands of the menu items are spoken just as they are selected via the Controller.

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. ›MEDIA‹
3. ›Presets‹

The stored stations are displayed on the Control Display.

Navigation

Destinations can be entered in the navigation system using the voice activation system. It is also possible to say points of interest or have traffic reports announced.

- ›Drive me to 300 Chestnut Ridge Road, Woodcliff Lake in New Jersey‹
- ›Take me home‹
- ›Are there any traffic messages‹

Communication

For example, when a mobile phone is connected, the voice activation system can be used to start calls or send SMS.

- ›Call John Doe on cell phone‹
- ›Dial the number 1 8 0 0 8 3 1 1 1 1 7‹
- ›New text message to John Doe: I'll be right there‹

Media and Radio

Most radio functions can be used via the Active Voice Recognition.

- ›Turn on music‹
- ›Music off‹
- ›Next title‹

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3542

Climate control

Most climate control functions can be used via voice.

- ▷ ›Activate climate control‹
- ▷ ›Deactivate air recirculation‹
- ▷ ›Temperature [...] at ...‹

Help on the voice activation system

- ▷ ›Voice commands‹: to have the available spoken commands announced.
- ▷ ›General information on voice control‹: have information on the operating principle of the voice activation system read out loud.
- ▷ ›Help‹: have help for the current menu read out loud.

Information for Emergency Requests

Do not use the voice activation system to initiate an Emergency Request. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change. This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a telephone connection.

Instead, use the SOS button close to the interior mirror.

Additional information:

Emergency Request, refer to page 332.

Settings

Setting the voice control

You can set the system to use standard dialog or a short version.

The short version of the voice control plays back short messages in abbreviated form.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. If necessary, "Personal assistant"
5. "Voice control"
6. "Response length"
7. Select the desired setting.

Speaking during voice output

It is possible to answer during inquiries of the voice activation system. The function can be deactivated if inquiries are often undesirably interrupted, for instance due to background noise or conversations in the vehicle.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. If necessary, "Personal assistant"
5. "Voice control"
6. "Speaking during voice output"

Online speech processing

Online speech processing provides a dictation function, a natural method of destinations input and improves the quality of voice recognition. To use the functions, data is transmitted to a service provider via an encrypted connection and stored locally there.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. If necessary, "Personal assistant"
5. "Voice control"
6. "Online speech processing"

Adjusting the volume

Turn the volume button during the spoken instructions until the desired volume is set.

- ▷ The volume remains constant even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.
- ▷ The volume is stored for the driver profile currently used.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3543
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Using the voice activation system of the smartphone

Depending on the device, a smartphone connected to the vehicle can be used via voice activation.

Activate voice command response on the smartphone for this purpose.

1. Press and hold the button on the steering wheel for approx. 3 seconds.

   Voice command response is activated on the smartphone.

2. Release the button.

   If activation is successful, a confirmation appears on the Control Display.

Voice assistants from third-party providers

Concept

Some third-party providers provide digital voice assistants. Supported voice assistants can be used in the vehicle.

General information

Some of the functions are limited in the vehicle to prevent any impairment of safety while driving.

Functional requirements

- Connected Voice Services purchased via ConnectedDrive Store.
- Same ConnectedDrive account used in the vehicle and in the BMW Connected app.
- Vehicle added in the BMW Connected app.
- Third-party account and BMW account are linked in the BMW Connected app.
- Smartphone connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth.

Activation in the BMW Connected app

Third-party assistants are set up in the BMW Connected app.

Follow the instructions in the app.

Activation in the vehicle

An authorization for the use of the voice assistant is required every time before starting a trip.

1. Authorizing voice assistants from third-party providers:
   - Connect the smartphone to the vehicle via Bluetooth.
   - Selects appropriate driver profile.

     Driver profiles, refer to page 66.
2. If necessary, press the button on the steering wheel and wait for signal tone.
3. Say the specific activation word of the third-party provider and the desired command.

   Information about the active function is displayed on the Control Display.

Activation/deactivation of the specific activation word

In addition to the activation word of the voice activation system, the specific activation word from the third-party provider can be activated or deactivated.

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "Personal assistant"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Wake word"
6. "Activation by speech"
7. Select the desired setting.

Malfunction

In case of a malfunction, switch off the drive-ready state and restart again.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3544

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

System limits

- Certain noises can be detected and may lead to problems. Keep the doors, windows, and glass sunroof closed.
- Noises from the front passenger or the rear seat bench can impair the system. Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.
- Major language dialects can cause problems with the voice recognition feature. Speak loud and clear.

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant

Concept

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is the personal assistant that expands the voice activation system with intelligent functions and improves the interaction in the vehicle.

General information

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is available depending on the national-market version. The use of the personal assistant is based on voice operation. The voice operation is enhanced with personal recommendations and messages as well as the automation of routines.

The personal assistant is connected to other digital services such as the Concierge service and is continually being developed. The full scope requires an active driver profile.

The BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is available in two variants:

- In the Guest profile: the variant is linked to a vehicle and cannot be personalized. Not all described functions are available to the full extent.
- With active Driver profile: the variant can be used and personalized in different vehicles. All described functions are available to the full extent.

Functional requirements

Enter the following settings to access the full range of functions:

- The Driver profile is activated.
- Relevant ConnectedDrive Services have been purchased via ConnectedDrive Store.
- Registered in the ConnectedDrive Store.
- "Online speech processing" is activated.
- "Synchronize driver profile" under "Personalization" is activated.

  Data protection, refer to page 65.
- All settings under "BMW ConnectedDrive" activated.

  Data protection, refer to page 65.

Example for function

1. Say the wake word ›Hello BMW‹ or a personal wake word.
2. ›Is my tire pressure still OK?‹

   The personal assistant provides information about the tire pressure.

Settings

Display, notifications

General information

Depending on the situation, different conditions can be activated.

Condition	Description
"Do not disturb"	Incoming calls and some messages are not displayed.
"Passenger on board"	Private contents, such as sender and content of e-mails, will not be displayed.

Activating/deactivating

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3545
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

3. "Personal assistant"
4. "Notification display"
5. Select the desired setting.

Automating routines

General information

The personal assistant can learn routines, e.g., the automatic activation of the seat heating from a specific external temperature. Rules are created for this purpose, which can be activated and deactivated at any time.

Creating a rule

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "Personal assistant"
4. "Automate habits"
5. Select the desired setting.

Functions

Experience Modes

General information

The Experience Modes combine different vehicle functions in the car's interior to an overall experience. For example, the selection of a mode harmonizes the ambient light and seat climate control.

Functional requirements

▷ The Experience Modes app is installed in the vehicle.

▷ Drive-ready state is switched on.

Selecting a mode

1. "CAR"
2. "Experience Modes"
3. Select the desired mode.

Deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Experience Modes"
3. "End"

Adjusting the mode

1. "CAR"
2. "Experience Modes"
3. Select the desired mode.
4. "Settings"
5. Make the desired setting.

Caring Car

General information

Different vehicle functions in the car's interior are harmonized for the driver in a short-term program. A program takes 3 minutes.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Caring Car"
3. Select the desired channel.

The program can be stopped prematurely:

"End program"

Owner's Manual via voice operation

Concept

You can ask simple questions about vehicle functions and the operation of the vehicle.

General information

The voice control system and the feedback it provides are not a substitute for the printed or Integrated Owner's Manual. The voice recognition and quality of the feedback may vary.

The system supports questions that begin with How or What.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3546

Example for function

1. ›Hello BMW‹
2. ›How can the passenger airbag be deactivated‹

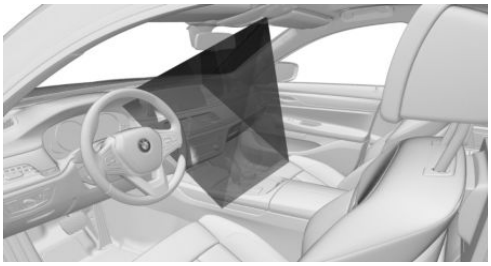
The voice activation system returns a feedback. When stationary, the section of the integrated Owner's Manual is displayed on the Control Display.

BMW Gesture Control

Concept

Several iDrive functions can be operated by hand motion using BMW Gesture Control.

Overview



Possible gestures

Gesture	Operation	Function
	Move index finger forward and backward in the direction of the screen.	Accept call. Select a highlighted entry in a list during voice activation. Confirm pop-up.
	Move hand across the width of the Control Display in the direction of the front-passenger side.	Reject call. Close pop-up. Terminate voice activation.

The camera in the roofliner detects gestures that are carried out in the area of the center console at the height of the Control Display.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Gesture control"
5. "Gesture control"

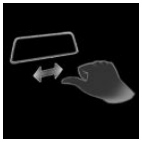
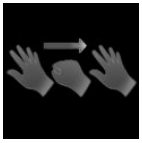
Settings

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Gesture control"
5. Select the desired setting.

Carrying out gestures

- ▷ Perform gestures underneath the interior mirror and next to the steering wheel.
- ▷ Execute gestures clearly.
- ▷ The gestures can also be executed from the front-passenger side.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3547
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Gesture	Operation	Function
	Slowly move hand clockwise in a circular pattern with the index finger stretched out forward. Gesture is detected after one circular motion.	Increase the volume.
	Slowly move forearm counterclockwise in a circular pattern with the index finger stretched out forward. Gesture is detected after one circular motion.	Reduce the volume.
	Pinch with thumb and index finger and move hand horizontally to the right or left.	Surround View: turn camera view. This gesture can only be executed while the vehicle is stationary.
	Move stretched out index and middle finger forward.	Individually assignable gesture.
	Move fist with thumb extended to the left back and forth.	Reverse Skip function. The previous music track is played.
	Move fist with thumb extended to right left back and forth.	Forward Skip function. The next music track is played.
	Stretch out five fingers, form a fist and stretch five fingers out again.	Individually assignable gesture.

Assigning gesture individually

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the following functions can be assigned to gestures that allow individual assignments:

- Destination guidance to home address.
- Voice command response.
- Mute/Playback
- Last calls.
- Control Display on/off
- Notifications.
- Music recognition
- No function.

Select function

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Gesture control"
5. "Function assignment gesture 1" or "Function assignment gesture 2"
6. Select the desired setting.

System limits

Gesture recognition by the camera in the roofliner can be disturbed by the following circumstances:

- The camera lens is covered.
- Objects are located on the interior mirror.
- The camera lens is dirty, clean camera lens.

  Sensors and camera lenses, refer to page 340.
- The gesture is executed outside of the detection range.
- Wearing of gloves or jewelry.
- Smoking in the car's interior.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3549
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

General settings

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Time

Setting the time zone

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time zone:"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the time

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time:"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired hours are displayed.
7. Press the Controller.
8. Turn the Controller until the desired minutes are displayed.
9. "OK"

Setting the time format

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time format:"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Automatic time setting

Depending on your vehicle's optional features, the time, date and, if needed, the time zone are updated automatically.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Automatic time setting"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Date

Setting the date

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"

5. "Date:"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired day is displayed.
7. Press the Controller.
8. Make the settings for the month and year.
9. "OK"

Setting the date format

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Date format:"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Language

Setting the language

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the units of measurement

Depending on the country version, you can set the units of measurement for some values, for instance consumption, distances, and temperature.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Units"
5. Select the desired menu item.
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Trip data settings

Concept

The intervals in which the trip data will be reset can be configured.

Resetting trip data

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Reset trip data"
5. Select the desired setting.

Speed warning

Concept

The system can be used to set a speed limit. A warning will be issued when this speed limit is exceeded.

General information

The warning is repeated if the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed limit again, after it has dropped below it by 3 mph/5 km/h.

Adjusting

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Warning at:"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3551
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

6. Turn the Controller until the desired speed is displayed.
7. Press the Controller.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Speed warning"

Setting your current speed as the speed warning

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Select current speed"

Activating/deactivating pop-ups

For some functions, pop-ups are displayed automatically on the Control Display. Some of these pop-ups can be activated or deactivated.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Pop-ups"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Control Display

Brightness

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Control display"
5. "Brightness at night"
6. Press the Controller.
7. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is set.
8. Press the Controller.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Depending on the light conditions, the brightness settings may not be clearly visible.

Resetting the vehicle configuration

All individual settings can be reset to the factory settings when the drive-ready state is switched off.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Reset vehicle data"
5. "Reset vehicle data"

When the stored settings in a driver profile are synchronized with the ConnectedDrive account, these settings will remain in the ConnectedDrive account.

Messages

Concept

The menu centrally displays all messages arriving in the vehicle in list form.

General information

The following messages can be displayed:

- Traffic messages.
- Check Control messages.
- Messages on service notifications.
- Communication messages, for example e-mails, SMS text messages or reminders.
- Messages from, e.g., the Concierge service or the BMW Connected app.
- Messages from the vehicle manufacturer.

The number of messages is additionally displayed in the status field.

The Messages menu can also be created as Widget.

Retrieving messages

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Select the desired message.

Deleting messages

All messages, except Check Control messages or messages from the vehicle manufacturer, can be deleted from the list.

Check Control messages or messages from the vehicle manufacturer are displayed as long as they are relevant.

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Select desired message, for instance. SMS.
4. OPTION Press the button.
5. - "Delete this notification"
   - "Delete all notifications"

Settings

The following settings can be adjusted:

- Select the applications, from which messages will be permitted.
- All messages or a limited time period for received messages.

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. Select the desired setting.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3553
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Personal settings

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Data protection

Data transfer

Concept

The vehicle offers different services, whose use requires a data transfer to BMW or a service provider. The data transfer can be deactivated for some services.

General information

When the data transfer is deactivated, the respective service cannot be used.

Only make these settings while stationary.

Settings

The data transfer can be configured in different stages or individually for separate services.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. Select the desired setting.

Deleting personal data in the vehicle

Concept

Depending on the usage, the vehicle stores personal data, such as stored radio stations. This personal data can be permanently deleted using iDrive.

General information

Depending on the equipment package, the following data can be deleted:

- Driver profile settings.
- Stored radio stations.
- Stored programmable memory buttons.
- Travel and trip computer information.
- Navigation, for instance stored destinations.
- Phone book.
- Online data, for instance Favorites, cookies.
- Office data, for instance voice memos.
- Login accounts.

Altogether, the deletion of the data can take up to 15 minutes.

Functional requirement

Data can only be deleted while stationary.

Deleting data

The personal data in the vehicle will be deleted when the vehicle is reset to the factory settings.

Additional information:

Resetting the vehicle configuration, refer to page 63.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3554

Driver profiles

Concept

Driver profiles can be created to store personal vehicle settings. If the vehicle is used by multiple drivers, each driver can create his personal driver profile. When a driver profile is selected, the vehicle will automatically apply the stored settings in the driver profile.

General information

Three personal driver profiles can be created.

In addition, a guest profile is available that can be selected by any driver. The guest profile is active when a personal driver profile has not been selected.

Changes to the vehicle settings are automatically stored in the active driver profile or in the guest profile.

The recognition via a vehicle key can be assigned to a driver profile so that the vehicle will apply the settings as soon as the driver unlocks the vehicle. As soon as the vehicle recognizes the vehicle key, the corresponding driver profile will be activated.

ConnectedDrive countries: The settings stored in the driver's profile can be synchronized with the personal BMW ConnectedDrive account. It is thereby possible to use these settings in other BMW vehicles as well.

Functional requirements

When switching the driver profile, the vehicle must move at a maximum of walking speed.

Welcome screen

After the Control Display is switched on, the Welcome screen will be displayed.

The following actions can be carried out on the Welcome screen:

- Switching the driver profile.
- Starting the set-up assistant.

  This option is offered in new vehicle for a limited period of time.

As soon as the engine is started or any button is pressed, the Welcome screen will be hidden.

Setup assistant

The setup assistant is offered in new vehicles for a limited period of time on the Welcome screen to configure the most important settings for the vehicle.

"Getting started" Select to start the set-up assistant.

The set-up assistant can be started via iDrive at any time.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Getting started"

The driver is guided step by step through the following functions:

- Setting the system language.
- ConnectedDrive countries:

  If the set-up assistant was opened in the guest profile: create driver profile.
- Pairing mobile devices with the vehicle.
- If the set-up assistant was opened from an already defined driver profile: set up personal assistant.
- Depending on whether the set-up assistant was opened from an already defined driver profile or a guest profile: set up services or confirm the explanation for the transmission of vehicle related data.
- Set up other methods for use.

The selected settings are stored in the active driver's profile.

Guest profile

The guest profile can be activated by any driver. Vehicle settings that are entered when the guest profile is active will be stored in the guest profile.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3555
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

In the following cases the guest profile is automatically active:

- A driver profile has not been created yet.
- No driver profile has been assigned to the vehicle key that was used to unlock the vehicle.

The following limitations apply:

- The guest profile cannot be renamed.
- It is not possible to assign the recognition to the guest profile.
- It is not possible to assign a PIN to the guest profile.
- ConnectedDrive countries: It is not possible to synchronize with a ConnectedDrive account.

The guest profile is selected on the Welcome screen or via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"

   As an alternative for Steps 1 and 2, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
3. "Guest"
4. "OK"

Creating a driver profile

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Add driver profile"

Not ConnectedDrive countries: A name must be entered for the driver profile.

ConnectedDrive countries: An existing ConnectedDrive account must be assigned to a driver profile. The following options are available for this purpose:

- "Log in"

  The access data must be entered via iDrive.
- "New registration"

  If a ConnectedDrive account does not yet exist, it can be created via iDrive.

Selecting recognition

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Driver recognition"
5. "with vehicle key"

   The vehicle key that was used to unlock the vehicle is assigned to the driver profile.
6. "Activate linkage"

As soon as the vehicle recognizes the vehicle key, the corresponding driver profile will be activated.

Setting up a PIN

After unlocking the vehicle, another driver profile can be selected via iDrive. If a PIN was set up for the selected driver profile, this driver profile can only be activated with the PIN.

Non-ConnectedDrive countries: If the PIN is not known, the driver's profile cannot be activated.

ConnectedDrive countries: If the PIN is not known, the driver's profile can be activated with the access data of the corresponding ConnectedDrive account.

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Driver recognition"
5. "using PIN"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3556

Changing/canceling the recognition function

If another vehicle key is assigned to a driver profile, the current assignment must be canceled first.

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Driver recognition"
5. "with vehicle key"
6. "Activate linkage"

When the vehicle and vehicle key will be handed over, such as for maintenance, carry out the following steps first:

- ▷ Setting up PIN.
- ▷ Canceling recognition using the vehicle key.
- ▷ Switching to the guest profile.

The handed over vehicle key can then no longer be used to access the personal driver profile.

Selecting a driver profile

Depending on the recognition setting, the driver profile will be selected automatically.

If the guest profile is active, the driver profile will be selected on the Welcome screen or via iDrive: A PIN may have to be entered.

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"

   As an alternative for Steps 1 and 2, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
3. Select driver profile.
4. "OK"

All settings stored in the selected driver profile are automatically applied.

Switching synchronization with the ConnectedDrive account on/off

ConnectedDrive countries:

The settings stored in the driver's profile are synchronized with the personal ConnectedDrive account. This means that it is possible to use the personal settings in other BMW vehicles with ConnectedDrive access as well, if this function is supported.

The synchronization with the ConnectedDrive account is enabled when a driver profile is created or via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Settings"
5. "Synchronize driver profile"
6. "Synchronize driver profile"

Renaming a driver profile

Non-ConnectedDrive countries:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"

   As an alternative for Steps 1 and 2, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
3. Select driver profile.
4. "Settings"
5. Enter a profile name.
6. OK Select the symbol.

ConnectedDrive countries:

The name of the driver profile is transferred from the ConnectedDrive account. Changes for the profile name must be made in the ConnectedDrive account.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3557
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Selecting a profile picture

Non-ConnectedDrive countries:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Avatar"
5. Select the desired profile picture.

Deleting the driver profile

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Settings"
5. "Remove driver profile"
6. Select the desired driver profile.
7. "Delete now"

ConnectedDrive countries: If the driver profile was synchronized with a ConnectedDrive account, the stored data in the ConnectedDrive account will be retained.

System limits

A clear detection of the desired vehicle key may not be possible in the following cases, e.g.:

- The driver unlocks the vehicle via Comfort Access.
- The driver changes, but the vehicle is not locked and unlocked.
- When multiple vehicle keys are located outside on the driver's side of the vehicle.

ConnectedDrive countries:

A driver profile can only be created and synchronized with the ConnectedDrive account when cellular network reception is available.

The use of personal settings that are stored in the ConnectedDrive account in other vehicles is subject to technical limitations. For example, settings may be stored for a system that is not available, or available in a non-compatible version, in other vehicles.

Connections

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle

Concept

Various connection types are available for using mobile devices in the vehicle. The connection type to select depends on the mobile device and the desired function.

General information

The following overview shows possible functions and the suitable connection types for them. The scope of functions depends on the mobile device.

Function	Connection type	Symbol in the device list
Making calls via the hands-free system. Using phone functions via iDrive or touchscreen. Other functions, e.g. Contacts or SMS.	Bluetooth.	
Playing music from the smartphone or the audio player.	Bluetooth audio.	
WLAN in the vehicle: Using apps in the vehicle.	WLAN.	
Wi-Fi hotspot: Using the vehicle Internet access.	WLAN.	
Screen Mirroring: Showing the smartphone display on the Control Display.	WLAN.	
USB port: Playing music or videos from a USB device.	USB.	

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3559
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Function	Connection type	Symbol in the device list
Apple CarPlay: Using apps via iDrive and via voice operation.	Bluetooth and WLAN.	
Android Auto: Using apps via iDrive and via voice operation.	Bluetooth and WLAN.	

The following connection types require one-time pairing with the vehicle:

- Bluetooth.
- WLAN.

Paired devices are automatically recognized later on and connected to the vehicle.

Safety information

Warning

Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. As warranted, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.

Compatible devices

General information

Information on mobile devices compatible with the vehicle can be found at www.bmwusa.com/bluetooth.

Malfunctions may occur with devices not listed or deviating software versions.

Displaying the vehicle identification number and software part number

When looking for compatible devices, you may have to state the vehicle identification number and the software part number. These numbers can be displayed in the vehicle.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth® info"
6. "System information"

Managing mobile devices

General information

- After one-time pairing, the devices are automatically recognized and reconnected when standby state is switched on.
- After stored content on the SIM card or the mobile phone, such as contacts, has been detected, the data is transmitted to the vehicle and can be used via iDrive.
- For some devices, certain settings are necessary, for instance authorization; see the owner's manual of the device.

Displaying the device list

All devices paired with or connected to the vehicle are displayed in the device list.

A maximum of four devices can be connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth, and a maximum of ten devices can be connected to the vehicle via WLAN. A maximum of 20 devices will be detected.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"

A symbol to the right of the device name indicates, for which function the device is used.

When the icon is displayed in white, this function is actively connected to the vehicle. The icon is displayed in gray when the function of the device is inactive.

Symbol	Meaning
	Telephone.
	Bluetooth audio.
	WLAN in the vehicle, WiFi hotspot.
	Apps.
	Screen Mirroring.
	Apple CarPlay.
	Android Auto.

Configuring the device

Functions can be activated or deactivated for paired and connected devices.

The scope of functions depends on the mobile device.

Follow the information on the Control Display.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Select the desired device.
4. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Connect device"

     The functions that were assigned to the device before disconnecting are assigned to the device when it is reconnected. The functions may be deactivated on a device already connected.
   - ▷ "Disconnect device"

     The device remains paired and can be connected again.
   - ▷ "Delete device"

     The device is disconnected and removed from the device list.
   - ▷ "Connection mode"

     Select a connection mode, for instance Apple CarPlay.
   - ▷ "Telephone"

     Set telephone.
   - ▷ "Bluetooth® audio"

     Playback of music files on external devices such as audio devices or mobile phones via Bluetooth.
   - ▷ "Apps"

     With the installed BMW Connected app, apps from the smartphone can be displayed in the vehicle.
   - ▷ "Wi-Fi®"

     Connects the device with the WLAN in the vehicle.

Priority of the phones

When multiple mobile phones are connected to the vehicle, you can specify the priority of the mobile phones for reconnection.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Priorities for telephones"
6. Select the desired device.
7. Select the desired priority by sliding.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3561
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Bluetooth connection

Functional requirements

- Compatible device with Bluetooth interface.

  Compatible devices, refer to page 71.
- The vehicle key or BMW display key is in the vehicle.
- The device is ready for operation.
- Bluetooth is switched on in the vehicle and on the device.
- The pairing readiness is displayed on the Control Display.
- Bluetooth presettings, such as visibility, may be required on the device; refer to the owner's manual of the device.

Activate Bluetooth

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth®"
6. Select setting.

Connecting the device

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Phone calls and audio"

   The vehicle's Bluetooth name is displayed on the Control Display.
6. Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number on the display of the mobile device, and confirm that the two match.
7. A Bluetooth connection is established.

The mobile device is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Activating/deactivating telephone functions

To use all supported functions of a mobile phone, activate the desired functions in the vehicle prior to pairing the mobile phone with the vehicle as needed.

1. "COM"
2. "Personalize menu"
3. Select the desired settings, for instance"Text messages".

Frequently Asked Questions

All requirements are met and all required steps were completed in the specified order. Despite that, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations can help:

Why could the mobile phone not be paired or connected?

- There are too many Bluetooth devices connected to the mobile phone or vehicle.

  In the vehicle, delete Bluetooth connections with other devices.

  Delete the Bluetooth connection from the device list on the mobile phone and start a new device search.

  Too many Bluetooth devices with the same function are paired.
- The mobile phone is in power-save mode or has only a limited remaining battery life.

  Charge the mobile phone and deactivate the power-save mode where required.

Why does the mobile phone no longer react?

- The applications on the mobile phone do not function anymore.

  Switch the mobile phone off and on again.
- Too high or too low ambient temperature for mobile phone operation.

  Do not subject the mobile phone to extreme ambient temperatures.

Why can phone functions not be used via iDrive?

- Phone functions are not configured for the mobile phone.

  Connect the mobile phone with the telephone function.

Why are no or not all phone book entries displayed or why are they incomplete?

- Transmission of the phone book entries is not yet complete.
- It is possible that only the phone book entries of the mobile phone or the SIM card are transmitted.
- It may not be possible to display phone book entries with special characters.
- It may not be possible to transmit contacts from social networks.
- The number of phone book entries to be transmitted is too high.
- Data volume of the contact too large, for instance due to stored information such as notes.

  Reduce the data volume of the contact.
- A mobile phone can only be connected as audio source or as telephone.

  Configure the mobile phone and connect it with the telephone function.
- Contact was created in the contact list of the phone after the last synchronization.

  Synchronize contacts again: "Reload contacts"

How can the phone connection quality be improved?

- Adjust the strength of the Bluetooth signal on the mobile phone, depending on the mobile phone.
- Insert the mobile phone into the wireless charging tray.
- Adjust the volume of the microphone separately in the sound settings.

If all points in this list have been checked and the required function is still not available, contact the hotline, a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

WLAN connection

General information

For certain applications, such as apps, the data exchange between smartphone and vehicle occurs via WLAN.

Functional requirements

- Standby state is switched on.
- Compatible device with activated WLAN interface.

Activate WLAN in the vehicle

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Wi-Fi®"

WiFi hotspot

Concept

Compatible devices with WLAN interface can use the Internet connection of the vehicle via the WiFi hotspot.

General information

Up to ten devices can be connected to the WiFi hotspot simultaneously.

Functional requirements

- Compatible device with activated WLAN interface.

  Compatible devices, refer to page 71.
- WLAN is activated on the vehicle.
- Internet use is activated for the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3563
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

- ▷ Registration and data contract with a service provider where required.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.

Connecting a device to the Internet via the WiFi hotspot

Using the Internet for the first time via the WiFi hotspot requires registration and possibly a data volume purchase from a service provider.

Depending on the country version, data volume can be purchased via the connected mobile device or from the ConnectedDrive Store.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Internet, apps"

   Hotspot name and hotspot code are displayed on the Control Display.
6. Activate Internet usage via WLAN if necessary.

   "Open settings"
7. Activate Internet usage.

   "Internet connection"
8. Move the Controller to the left.
9. Search for WLAN networks on the mobile device. Select network name on the device.
10. Enter hotspot code on the device and connect.

The device is displayed in the device list.

Additionally, a QR code will be displayed on the Control Display. Alternatively, this QR code can be used to pair the mobile device with the hotspot.

All devices connected via the hotspot use this data volume.

Deactivating Internet usage via the WiFi hotspot

Internet usage may be deactivated if the data volume is used up, for instance.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Internet connection"
6. Select the desired setting.

Screen Mirroring

General information

Screen Mirroring enables mirroring (outputting) of the smartphone display on the Control Display.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Compatible smartphone with Screen Mirroring interface.

  Compatible devices, refer to page 71.
- ▷ Screen Mirroring is activated on the smartphone.
- ▷ WLAN is activated on the vehicle.

Pairing a smartphone with Screen Mirroring

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Screen Mirroring"

   The WLAN name of the vehicle is displayed on the Control Display.
6. Search for WLAN devices in the surroundings of the smartphone.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3564

The WLAN name of the vehicle appears on the device display. Select the WLAN name of the vehicle.

7. Confirm the connection via iDrive.

The device is connected and displayed in the device list.

Apple CarPlay preparation

Concept

CarPlay allows certain functions of a compatible Apple iPhone to be used via Siri voice operation and iDrive.

Functional requirements

- Compatible iPhone, iPhone 5 or later with iOS 7.1 or later.

  Compatible devices, refer to page 71.
- Corresponding mobile contract.
- Bluetooth, WLAN, and Siri voice operation are activated on the iPhone.
- If necessary, the setting for mobile data must be activated on the iPhone.
- Booking the ConnectedDrive service: smartphone integration.
- WLAN and Bluetooth are enabled in the vehicle.

Pairing the iPhone with CarPlay

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Phone calls and audio"

   The vehicle's Bluetooth name is displayed on the Control Display.
6. On the mobile device, search for Bluetooth devices in the vicinity and select the vehicle.

   A control number is displayed.
7. Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number on the display of the mobile device, and confirm that the two match.
8. "Use Apple CarPlay"

The iPhone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Operation

For more information, refer to the Integrated Owner's Manual or the Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication.

Frequently Asked Questions

All requirements are met and all required steps were completed in the specified order. Despite that, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations can help:

The iPhone has already been paired with Apple CarPlay. When a new connection is established, CarPlay can no longer be selected.

- Delete the iPhone concerned from the device list.
- On the iPhone, delete the vehicle concerned from the list of stored connections under Bluetooth and under WLAN.
- Pair the iPhone as a new device.

If the steps listed have been carried out and the required function is still not available: contact the hotline, a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Android Auto preparation

Concept

Android Auto allows the operation of certain functions of a compatible smartphone via voice operation and iDrive.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3565
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Functional requirements

- Compatible Android smartphone with Android 9.0 or later.

  Compatible devices, refer to page 71.
- Corresponding mobile contract.
- Bluetooth and WLAN are enabled on the smartphone.
- If necessary, the setting for mobile data must be activated on the smartphone.
- Booking the ConnectedDrive service: smartphone integration.
- The Android Auto app is installed on the smartphone.
- WLAN and Bluetooth are enabled in the vehicle.

Pairing a smartphone with Android Auto

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Phone calls and audio"

   The vehicle's Bluetooth name is displayed on the Control Display.
6. On the mobile device, search for Bluetooth devices in the vicinity and select the vehicle.

   A control number is displayed.
7. Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number on the display of the mobile device, and confirm that the two match.
8. "Use Android Auto"
9. If necessary, finish the setup on the mobile device.

The smartphone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Operation

For more information, refer to the Integrated Owner's Manual or the Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication.

Frequently Asked Questions

All requirements are met and all required steps were completed in the specified order. Despite that, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations can help:

The smartphone has already been paired with Android Auto. When a new connection is established, Android Auto can no longer be selected.

- Delete the smartphone concerned from the device list.
- On the smartphone, delete the vehicle concerned from the list of stored connections under Bluetooth and under WLAN.
- Pair the smartphone as a new device.

If the steps listed have been carried out and the required function is still not available: contact the hotline, a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

USB connection

General information

The following mobile devices can be connected to the USB port:

- Mobile phones.
- Audio devices such as MP3 players.
- USB storage devices.

  Common file systems are supported. FAT32 and exFAT are the recommended formats.

A connected USB device will be supplied with charge current via the USB port if the device supports this. Follow the maximum charge current of the USB port.

The following uses are possible on USB ports with data transfer:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3566
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

- Playing music files.
- Playing videos.

Follow the following when connecting:

- Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB port.
- Use a flexible adapter cable.
- Protect the USB device against mechanical damage.
- Due to the large number of USB devices available on the market, it cannot be guaranteed that every device is operable on the vehicle.
- Do not expose USB devices to extreme environmental conditions, such as very high temperatures; refer to the owner's manual of the device.
- Due to the many different compression techniques, proper playback of the media stored on the USB device cannot be guaranteed in all cases.
- To ensure proper transmission of the stored data, do not charge a USB device via the onboard socket, when it is connected to the USB port.
- Depending on how the USB device is being used, settings may be required on the USB storage device, refer to the owner's manual of the device.

Not compatible USB devices:

- USB hard drives.
- USB hubs.
- USB memory card readers with multiple slots.
- HFS-formatted USB devices.
- Devices such as fans or lamps.

Functional requirement

Compatible device with USB port.

Additional information:

Compatible devices, refer to page 71.

Connecting the device

Connect the USB device using a suitable adapter cable to a USB port.

The USB device is displayed in the device list.

Additional information:

USB port, refer to page 250.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3567
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Opening and closing

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Vehicle key

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the vehicle is delivered with two vehicle keys or one vehicle key and the BMW display key.

Each vehicle key contains a replaceable battery.

Depending on the equipment and country version, various settings can be configured for the button functions.

A driver profile with personal settings can be assigned to a vehicle key.

To provide information on maintenance recommendations, the service data is stored in the vehicle key.

To prevent possible locking in of the vehicle key, take the vehicle key with you when exiting the vehicle.

Safety information

Warning

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Take the vehicle key with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.

Warning

For some country versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

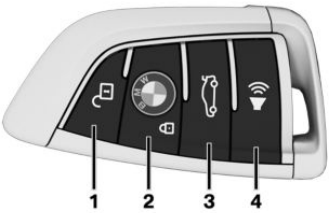
Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Overview



1 Unlocking
2 Locking
3 To open the tailgate
4 Panic mode, pathway lighting

Unlocking

General information

The behavior of the vehicle during unlocking using the vehicle key depends on the following settings:

- If only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap or all access to the vehicle will be unlocked.
- If the unlocking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- If the welcome light is switched on when the vehicle is being unlocked.

Unlocking the vehicle

Press the button on the vehicle key.

If, due to the settings, only the driver's door and fuel filler flap were unlocked, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

In addition, the following functions are executed:

- If a driver profile was assigned to the vehicle key, this driver profile will be activated and the settings that are stored in it will be applied.
- The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off.
- Folded in exterior mirrors are folded out.

  If the exterior mirrors were folded in via the button in the car's interior, they will not be folded out when unlocking.
- With anti-theft protection: Anti-theft protection is switched off.
- With alarm system: The alarm system will be switched off.

After opening one of the front doors, the vehicle is ready for operation.

The light functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

Convenient opening

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key after unlocking.

The windows and the glass sunroof with sun protection are opened, as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Locking

General information

The behavior of the vehicle during locking using the vehicle key depends on the following settings:

- If the locking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- If the exterior mirrors are automatically folded in when the vehicle is locked. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.
- If pathway lighting is activated during locking.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Press the button on the vehicle key.

The following functions are executed:

- All doors, the tailgate, and the fuel filler flap are locked.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3569
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

- With anti-theft protection: Anti-theft protection is switched on. This prevents the doors from being unlocked using the lock buttons or the door openers.
- With alarm system: The alarm system will be switched on.

If the drive-ready state is still switched on when you lock the vehicle, the vehicle horn honks twice. In this case, the drive-ready state must be switched off by means of the Start/Stop button.

With Comfort Access: convenient closing

Safety information

Warning

With convenient closing, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during convenient closing.

Closing

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key in the area close to the vehicle after locking.

The windows and the glass sunroof with sun protection are closed, as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Switching on the interior and exterior lights

Press the button on the vehicle key with the vehicle locked.

The function is not available for the first 10 seconds after locking.

- The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off.

  Interior lights, refer to page 161.
- Depending on the settings, the exterior lighting will be switched on.

  Welcome lights, refer to page 157.

The light functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

Tailgate

General information

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

You can set up if the doors will be unlocked when the tailgate is opened with the vehicle key.

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

Warning

The tailgate pivots out when it opens. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

NOTICE

Sharp-edged or pointed objects can hit the windows and heat conductors while driving. There is a risk of damage to property. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects do not hit the windows.

Opening

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

▷ Press the button on the vehicle key and hold for at least 3 seconds.

▷ Briefly press the button on the vehicle key three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Switching pathway lighting on

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

It is possible to adjust the duration of the pathway lighting feature.

Additional information:

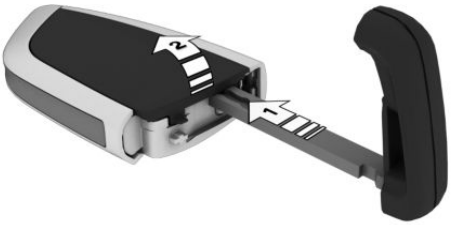
Pathway lighting, refer to page 158.

Replacing the battery

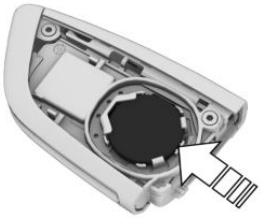
1. Remove the integrated key from the vehicle key.

   Integrated key, refer to page 88.

2. Place the integrated key underneath the battery compartment cover, arrow 1, and lift the cover with a lever movement of the integrated key, arrow 2.



3. Push battery in the direction of the arrow using a pointed object and lift it out.



4. Insert a type CR 2032 battery with the positive side facing up.
5. Press the cover closed.
6. Push the integrated key into the vehicle key until the integrated key engages.

Have old batteries disposed of by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take them to a collection point.

Additional vehicle keys

Additional vehicle keys are available from a service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Loss of vehicle keys

A lost vehicle key can be blocked and replaced by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

If the lost vehicle key has an assigned driver profile, the connection to this vehicle key must be deleted. A new vehicle key can then be assigned to the driver profile.

Malfunction

General information

A Check Control message is displayed.

Vehicle key recognition by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

▷ The battery of the vehicle key is discharged.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3571
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

- Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- Shielding of the vehicle key due to metal objects.

  Do not transport the vehicle key together with metal objects.
- Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity to the vehicle key.

  Do not transport the vehicle key together with electronic devices.
- Interference of radio transmission by a charging process of mobile devices, for instance charging of a mobile phone.
- The vehicle key is located in direct proximity of the tray for wireless charging tray.

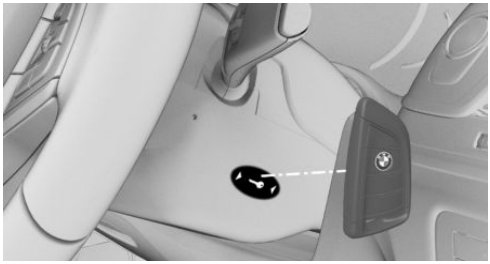
  Place the vehicle key in a different location.

In the case of interference, the vehicle can also be unlocked and locked from the outside with the integrated key.

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 88.

Switching the drive-ready state on via emergency detection of the vehicle key



It is not possible to switch on the drive-ready state if the vehicle key has not been detected.

Proceed as follows in this case:

1. Hold the back of the vehicle key against the marked area on the steering column. Pay attention to the display in the instrument cluster.
2. If the vehicle key is detected:

   Switch on drive-ready state within 10 seconds.

If the vehicle key is not recognized, slightly change the position of the vehicle key and repeat the procedure.

Frequently Asked Questions

What precautions can be taken to be able to open a vehicle with an accidentally locked in vehicle key?

- The options provided by the Remote Services of the BMW Connected app include the ability to lock and unlock a vehicle.

  This requires an active BMW ConnectedDrive contract and the BMW Connected app must be installed on a smartphone.
- Unlocking the vehicle can be requested via the BMW ConnectedDrive Call Center.

  An active BMW ConnectedDrive contract is required.

BMW display key

General information

The BMW display key is supplied with an additional mechanical key. If the display key is used, the mechanical key should be carried with you, for instance in the wallet. The mechanical key is used like the integrated key.

The display key supports all functions of the standard vehicle key.

In addition, the following functions are also available:

- Display status of doors and windows.
- Display status of the anti-theft warning system.
- Display service information.

- Call up range with available fuel.
- With parked-car heating: operate parked-car heating.

  Without parked-car heating: operate parked-car ventilation.

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 88.

Safety information

Warning

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Take the vehicle key with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.

Warning

For some country versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

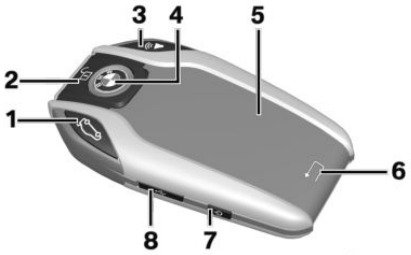
Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Overview



1 To open the tailgate

2 Unlocking

3 Press and hold or press three times in quick succession: panic mode

Press briefly: pathway lighting

4 Locking

5 Display

6 Back

7 Switch the display on/off

8 Micro-USB charging socket

Reception range

The number of available display key functions depends on the distance from the vehicle.

- When you are in close proximity to the vehicle, all functions of the display key are available.
- The status information can be called up in the extended reception range.

  With parked-car heating: the parked-car heating can be operated.

  Without parked-car heating: the parked-car ventilation can be operated.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3573
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

- Outside of the reception range of the vehicle, you can display the last transmitted status information from the vehicle.

The symbol is shown on the display if one of the buttons is pressed outside of the reception range.

Display

General information

The display is divided into the upper status line, the information area, and the lower status line.

Upper status line

The upper status line displays the following information:

- / Vehicle secured/vehicle unsecured.
- Set time in the vehicle.
- Charge state of the display key battery.

Information area

The information area can be used to access information and perform additional functions.

If the information area contains more than one page, then page indicators are shown beneath the information.

A solid indicator denotes the current page.

Swipe to the right or left with a finger to change between the pages.

If further information is available on a page, tap the appropriate symbol.

To return to the original page: tap on the symbol beneath the display.

Lower status line

The lower status line indicates whether or not the display key is within reception range.

- "Connected": the display key is within reception range.
- "Updated": the display key is not within reception range. It indicates when the last data transfer from the vehicle took place.

Switching on/off

The display will go out automatically after a brief period to conserve battery power.

To hide the display manually:

Press the button on the left side of the display key.

To show the display:

1. Press the button on the left side of the display key.
2. Then, swipe with your finger from bottom to top to unlock the screen lock.

To switch off the display to increase the usable battery life:

1. If necessary, cancel the screen lock.
2. Press and hold the button on the left side of the display key for longer than 4 seconds.
3. "OK"

To switch the display on:

Press the button on the left side of the display key.

Operating concept

The following information shows how to access the information and functions using the main menus.

Main menu	Information/Function
"Security information"	/
	Door status.
	Alarm system status.
	After alarm triggering: date, time, and reason for triggering the alarm.
	Window status.
	Glass sunroof status.

Main menu	Information/Function
"Vehicle information"	Maintenance indicators of Condition Based Service CBS. Status of the roadside parking lights.
"Mobility info"	Range with available fuel.
"Preconditioning setting"	With parked-car heating: operate parked-car heating. Without parked-car heating: operate parked-car ventilation.

Display key battery

General information

Follow the following information:

- If the charge state of the display key battery declines, the display is switched off automatically. The battery must be recharged so that the display can be switched back on. The operability of the standard buttons is retained until the battery is completely discharged.
- Charge the battery for at least three hours before using the display key for the first time or if the key has not been used for an extended period.
- The display key can be used while it is being charged via the USB port. If the battery is fully discharged, it may take some time before the display key can be used again.
- Due to the large number of USB chargers available on the market, it cannot be guaranteed that every charger will function properly. The charging duration depends on the charger used.
- Charging via the USB port may heat up the charger and the display key.

  Charging in the wireless charging tray may heat up the tray and the display key.

  At higher temperatures, the charge current through the display key may be reduced, and in isolated cases the charge process may be interrupted temporarily.
- When inserting the display key into the wireless charging tray, make sure there are no objects between it and the wireless charging tray.

Safety information

Warning

When charging a device that meets the Qi standard in the wireless charging tray, any metal objects located between the device and the tray can become very hot. Placing storage devices or electronic cards, such as chip cards, cards with magnetic strips or cards for signal transmission, between the device and the tray may impair the card function. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. When charging mobile devices, make sure there are no objects between the device and the tray.

Charging

Via USB

Connect the display key via the micro-USB charging socket to a USB port.

In the center console

1. Open the tray cover.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3575
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

2. Place the display key into the middle of the wireless charging tray in front of the cup holders.

   Ensure that the display is facing up.
3. Close the tray cover.

LED displays

Color	Meaning
Blue	The display key is charging. The blue LED stays illuminated once the inserted display key is fully charged.
Orange	The display key is not charging. Temperature on the display key possibly too high or foreign object in charging tray.
Red	The display key is not charging. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Malfunction

General information

A Check Control message is displayed.

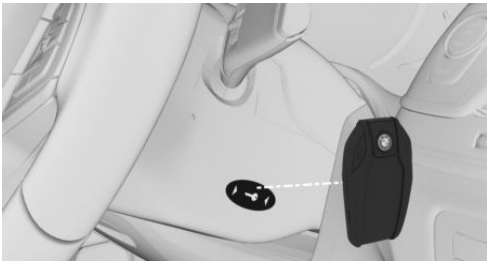
BMW display key detection by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- The battery of the display key is discharged.
- Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- Shielding of the display key due to metal objects.
- Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity.
- Interference of radio transmission by a charging process of mobile devices, for instance charging of a mobile phone.

Do not transport the display key together with metal objects or electronic devices.

In the case of interference, the vehicle can also be unlocked and locked from the outside with the mechanical key.

Switching on drive-ready state via emergency detection of the BMW display key



It is not possible to switch on the drive-ready state if the display key has not been detected.

Proceed as follows in this case:

1. Hold the display key with its back against the marked area on the steering column. Pay attention to the display in the instrument cluster.
2. If the display key is detected:

   Switch on drive-ready state within 10 seconds.

If the display key is not detected, slightly change the position of the display key and repeat the procedure.

Resetting the BMW display key

If the charged display key cannot be switched on anymore or if the display does not respond to entries anymore, the display key can be reset.

Press and hold the following buttons on the display key at the same time for at least 10 seconds until the display is switched off and then on again:

-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3576

Integrated key

General information

The driver's door can be locked and unlocked without the vehicle key using the integrated key.

Depending on the national-market version, the integrated key also fits the glove compartment.

Safety information

Warning

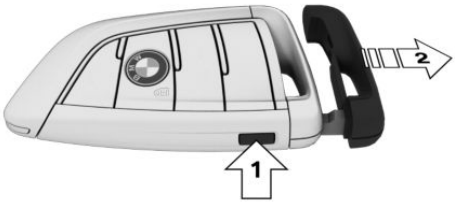
For some country versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

NOTICE

The door lock is permanently joined with the door. The door handle can be moved. When pulling the door handle with the integrated key inserted, paint or the integrated key can be damaged. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Remove the integrated key before pulling the external door handle.

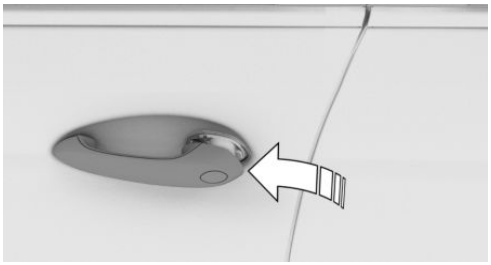
Removing



Press the button, arrow 1, and pull out the integrated key, arrow 2.

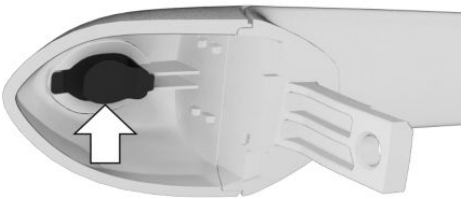
Locking/unlocking via the door lock

1. Pull and hold the door handle outward with one hand.



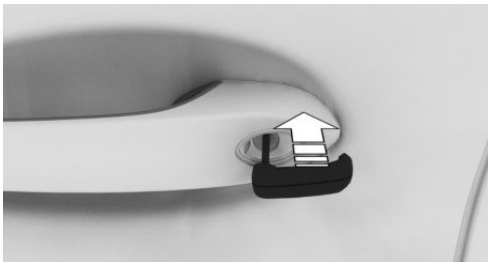
2. Guide one finger of your other hand from the back under the cover and push the cover out.

   Use the thumb for counter support to prevent the cover from falling out of the door handle.



BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3577
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

3. Remove the cover.
4. Unlock or lock the door lock using the integrated key.



The other doors must be unlocked or locked from the inside.

Alarm system

The activated alarm system is triggered when the door is opened, if the vehicle has been unlocked via the door lock.

The alarm system is not switched on if the vehicle is locked with the integrated key.

Buttons for the central locking system

General information

In the event of a severe accident, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The hazard warning system and interior lights come on.

Overview

Buttons for the central locking system.

Locking

Press the button with the front doors closed.

- The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.
- The vehicle is not secured against theft when locking.

Unlocking

Press the button.

Opening

- Press the button to unlock all the doors.

  Pull the door opener above the armrest.
- Front doors: pull the door handle on the door to open the door. The other doors remain locked.
- Back doors: pull twice on the door handle on the door to be opened; the first time unlocks the door, the second time opens it. The other doors remain locked.

Comfort Access

Concept

The vehicle can be accessed without operating the vehicle key.

Carrying the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket, is sufficient.

The vehicle automatically detects the vehicle key when it is in close proximity or in the car's interior.

General information

Comfort Access supports the following functions:

- Unlocking and locking the vehicle from the door handle.

- Convenient closing.
- Open the tailgate.
- Open and close the tailgate with no-touch activation.

Functional requirements

- To lock the vehicle, the vehicle key must be outside of the vehicle near the doors.
- The next unlocking and locking cycle is not possible until after approx. 2 seconds.

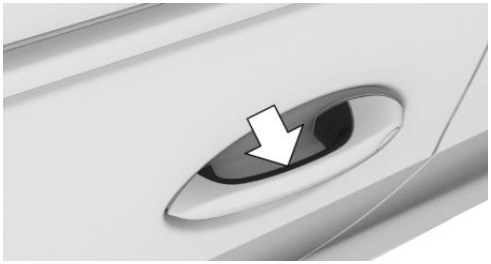
Unlocking

General information

The behavior of the vehicle during unlocking via the Comfort Access depends on the following settings:

- If the unlocking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- If the welcome light is switched on when the vehicle is being unlocked.

Unlocking the vehicle



Grasp the handle of a vehicle door completely.

In addition, the following functions are executed:

- If a driver profile was assigned to the vehicle key, this driver profile will be activated and the settings that are stored in it will be applied.
- The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off.
- Folded in exterior mirrors are folded out.

  If the exterior mirrors were folded in via the button in the car's interior, they will not be folded out when unlocking.
- With anti-theft protection: Anti-theft protection is switched off.
- With alarm system: The alarm system will be switched off.

Locking

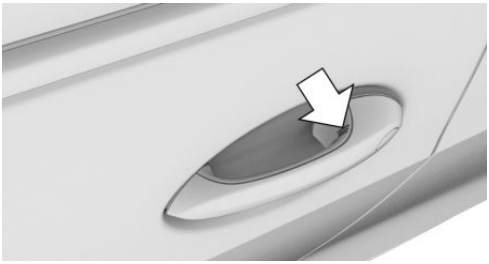
General information

The behavior of the vehicle during locking via the Comfort Access depends on the following settings:

- If the locking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- If the exterior mirrors are automatically folded in when the vehicle is locked. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.
- If pathway lighting is activated during locking.

Locking the vehicle

Close the driver's door.



Touch the grooved surface on the handle of a closed vehicle door with your finger for approx. 1 second without grasping the door handle.

The following functions are executed:

- All doors, the tailgate, and the fuel filler flap are locked.
- With anti-theft protection: Anti-theft protection is switched on. This prevents the doors

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3579
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

from being unlocked using the lock buttons or the door openers.

▷ With alarm system: The alarm system will be switched on.

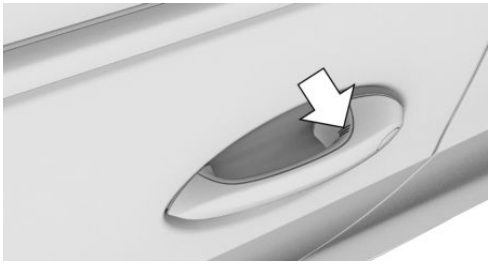
Convenient closing

Safety information

Warning

With convenient closing, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during convenient closing.

Closing



Touch the grooved surface on the handle of a closed vehicle door with your finger and hold it there without grasping the door handle.

In addition to locking, the windows and glass sunroof with sun protection will be closed.

Opening the tailgate

General information

If the tailgate is opened via Comfort Access, locked doors are not unlocked.

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

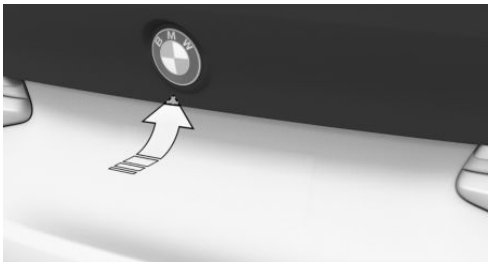
Warning

The tailgate pivots out when it opens. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

NOTICE

Sharp-edged or pointed objects can hit the windows and heat conductors while driving. There is a risk of damage to property. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects do not hit the windows.

Opening



Press the button on tailgate's exterior.

Opening and closing the tailgate with no-touch activation

Concept

The tailgate can be opened and closed with no-touch activation using the vehicle key you are

carrying. Two sensors detect a forward-directed foot motion in the central rear area and the tailgate is opened and closed.

General information

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

If the vehicle key is in the sensor area, the tailgate may open or close inadvertently if you unintentionally move your foot or if a foot movement is detected.

The sensor has an approximate range of 5 ft/1.50 m extending from the rear of the vehicle.

If the tailgate is opened with no-touch activation, locked doors are not unlocked.

Safety information

Warning

During no-touch activation, vehicle parts may be touched, such as the hot exhaust gas system. There is a risk of injury. When moving your foot, make sure you have a firm stance and do not touch the vehicle.

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

Warning

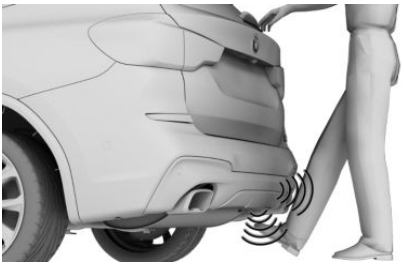
The tailgate pivots out when it opens. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

NOTICE

Sharp-edged or pointed objects can hit the windows and heat conductors while driving. There is a risk of damage to property. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects do not hit the windows.

Performing the foot movement

1. Stand in the middle behind the vehicle at approx. one arm's length away from the rear of the vehicle.
2. Wave a foot under the vehicle in the direction of travel and immediately pull it back. With this movement, the leg must pass through the ranges of both sensors.



Opening

Perform the foot movement described earlier.

Before the tailgate opens, the hazard warning system flashes.

Moving your foot again will stop the opening motion, and moving it one more time after that will close the tailgate.

Closing

Perform the foot movement described earlier.

The hazard warning system flashes and an acoustic signal sounds.

Moving your foot again will stop the closing motion, and moving it one more time after that will re-open the tailgate.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3581
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Malfunction

Vehicle key recognition by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- The battery of the vehicle key is discharged.

  For replacing the battery, refer to page 82.
- Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- Shielding of the vehicle key due to metal objects.

  Do not transport the vehicle key together with metal objects.
- Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity to the vehicle key.

  Do not transport the vehicle key together with electronic devices.

Wet or snowy conditions may disrupt the locking request recognition function on the door handles.

In the case of a malfunction, unlock and lock the vehicle using the buttons of the vehicle key or use the integrated key.

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 88.

Tailgate

General information

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country versions, it is possible to specify whether the doors are also unlocked when unlocking using the vehicle key.

Additional information:

Settings, refer to page 95.

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

Warning

The tailgate pivots out when it opens. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

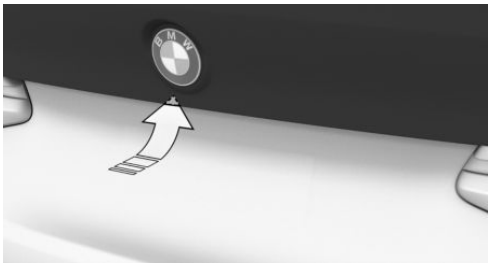
NOTICE

Sharp-edged or pointed objects can hit the windows and heat conductors while driving. There is a risk of damage to property. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects do not hit the windows.

Tailgate

Opening

From the outside



- Unlock the vehicle and then press the button on the outside of the tailgate.
- With Comfort Access: carry the vehicle key with you and press the button on the outside of the tailgate.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3582
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

▷ Press the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

Depending on the setting, the doors may also be unlocked.

If the vehicle is stationary, the tailgate opens automatically to the adjusted opening height.

From the inside

Press the button in the driver's door downward.

If the vehicle is locked, selector lever position P must be engaged first.

The tailgate will be opened to the configured opening height.

Interruption of the opening procedure

The opening procedure is interrupted in the following situations:

- ▷ When the vehicle starts moving.
- ▷ By pressing the button on the outside of the tailgate. Pressing again closes the tailgate.
- ▷ By pressing the button on the inside of the tailgate. Pressing again closes the tailgate.
- ▷ By pressing the button on the vehicle key. Pressing again continues the opening motion.
- ▷ By pressing or pulling the button in the driver's door. Pressing again continues the opening motion.

Closing

From the outside

▷ Press the button on the inside of the tailgate.

With Comfort Access:

▷ Press the button on the inside of the tailgate.

The vehicle will be locked after closing the tailgate. The driver's door must be closed for this purpose and the vehicle key must be outside of the vehicle in the area of the tailgate.

From the inside

Pull and hold the button in the driver door.

The vehicle key must be located in the car's interior for this function.

An acoustic signal sounds before the tailgate is closed.

Interruption of the closing procedure

The closing procedure is interrupted in the following situations:

- ▷ If the vehicle starts off with a jerky movement.
- ▷ By pressing the button on the outside of the tailgate. Pressing again re-opens the tailgate.
- ▷ By pressing the button on the inside of the tailgate. Pressing again re-opens the tailgate.
- ▷ By releasing the button in the driver's door. Pulling again and holding continues the closing motion.

Malfunction

Safety information

⚠ Warning

With manual operation of a blocked tailgate, it can release itself unexpectedly from the blockage. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not operate the tailgate manually if it is blocked. Have it checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

In the event of an electrical malfunction, operate the unlocked tailgate manually with a slow and smooth motion.

To close the tailgate fully, press down lightly only. Closing occurs automatically.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3583
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Adjusting

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country version, various settings for opening and closing are possible.

These settings are stored for the driver profile currently used.

Unlocking and locking

Doors

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Key button settings"
4. Select the symbol.
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Driver's door only"

     Only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.
   - ▷ "All doors"

     The entire vehicle is unlocked.

Confirmation signals from the vehicle

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. Deactivate or activate the desired confirmation signals:
   - ▷ "Flash when locking/unlocking"

     Unlocking is signaled by two flashes, locking by one.
   - ▷ With alarm system:

     "Sound when locking/unlocking"

     Unlocking is confirmed with two sound signals, locking is confirmed with one sound signal.

Folding mirrors in automatically

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Fold mirrors in when locked"

Automatic unlocking

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Unlock at end of trip"

   After drive-ready state is switched off by pressing the Start/Stop button, the locked vehicle is automatically unlocked.

Automatic locking

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Lock automatically"

   The vehicle locks automatically after a while if no door is opened after unlocking.

Tailgate

Tailgate and doors

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country version, this setting may not be offered.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Key button settings"
4. Select the symbol.
   - ▷ "Tailgate"

     The tailgate is opened.
   - ▷ "Tailgate and door(s)"

     The tailgate is opened and the doors unlocked.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3584

Adjusting the opening height

You can set how far the tailgate can be opened.

When adjusting the opening height, make sure the clearance above the tailgate is at least 4 in/10 cm.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Tailgate"
5. "Opening height"
6. Monitor the tailgate and set the desired opening height.

Establishing idle state after opening the front doors

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Turn off vehicle after opening door"

   Idle state, refer to page 41.

Alarm system

General information

When the vehicle is locked, the vehicle alarm system reacts to the following changes:

- Opening a door, the hood, or the tailgate.
- Movements in the car's interior.
- Changes in the vehicle tilt, for instance, during attempts at stealing a wheel or when towing the vehicle.
- Disconnected battery voltage.
- Improper use of the socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis.
- Locking the vehicle while a device is connected to the socket for the OBD Onboard-Diagnosis.

The alarm system signals these changes visually and acoustically:

- Acoustic alarm:

  Depending on local regulations, the acoustic alarm may be suppressed.
- Visual alarm:

  By flashing of the hazard warning system and headlights, where required.

Do not modify the system to ensure function of the alarm system.

Switching on/off

The alarm system is switched on or off as soon as the vehicle is locked with the vehicle key or unlocked or locked via Comfort Access.

Opening the doors with the alarm system switched on

The alarm system is triggered when a door is opened if the door was unlocked using the integrated key in the door lock.

Opening the tailgate with the alarm system switched on

The tailgate can be opened even when the alarm system is switched on.

After the tailgate is closed, it is locked and monitored again provided the doors are locked. The hazard warning system flashes once.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

- Press the button on the vehicle key and hold for at least 3 seconds.
- Briefly press the button on the vehicle key three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3585
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Indicator light on the interior mirror

- The indicator light flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

  The alarm system is switched on.
- Indicator light flashes for approx. 10 seconds, then it flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

  Interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor are not active, as doors, hood, or tailgate are not correctly closed. Correctly closed access points are secured.

  When the still open access points are closed, the interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor will be switched on.
- The indicator light goes out after unlocking:

  The vehicle has not been tampered with.
- The indicator light flashes after unlocking until drive-ready state is switched on, but no longer than approx. 5 minutes:

  An alarm has been triggered.

Tilt alarm sensor

The tilt of the vehicle is monitored.

The alarm system responds in situations such as attempts to steal a wheel or when the vehicle is towed.

Interior motion sensor

The windows and the glass sunroof must be closed for the system to function properly.

Avoiding unintentional alarms

General information

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor can trigger an alarm, although no unauthorized action occurred.

Possible situations for an unwanted alarm:

- In automatic car washes.
- In duplex garages.
- During transport on trains carrying vehicles, at sea or on a trailer.
- With animals in the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is locked after start of fueling.

The tilt alarm sensor and the interior motion sensor can be switched off in such situations.

Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor

Press the button on the vehicle key within 10 seconds as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator light lights up for approx. 2 seconds and then continues to flash.

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor are switched off until the vehicle is locked again.

Switching off the alarm

- Unlock the vehicle with the vehicle key.
- Unlock the vehicle with the integrated key and activate the drive-ready state via emergency detection of the vehicle key.

  Malfunction, refer to page 82.
- With Comfort Access: when carrying the vehicle key, grasp the driver's door or front passenger door handle completely.

Power windows

General information

The windows can be opened with the vehicle key from the outside as well as closed with Comfort Access.

With Comfort Access: The windows can be closed from the outside via Comfort Access.

When a window is often opened in the same position, this task can be performed by the BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant. For instance when the same parking garage is frequently used.

Additional information:

- Vehicle key, refer to page 79.
- BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant, refer to page 56.

Safety information

Warning

When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the windows is clear during opening and closing.

Overview

Power windows

Safety switch

Functional requirements

The windows can be operated under the following conditions.

- Standby state is switched on.
- Drive-ready state is switched on.

The vehicle key must be in the car's interior.

Opening

- Press the switch to the resistance point.

  The window opens while the switch is being held.
- Press the switch beyond the resistance point.

  The window opens automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Closing

- Pull the switch to the resistance point.

  The window closes while the switch is being held.
- Pull the switch beyond the resistance point.

  The window closes automatically if the door is closed. Pulling again stops the motion.

Jam protection system

Concept

The jam protection prevents objects or body parts becoming jammed between the door frame and window while a window is being closed.

General information

If resistance or a blockage is detected while a window is being closed, the closing action is interrupted.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3587
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Safety information

Warning

Accessories on the windows such as antennas can impact jam protection. There is a risk of injury. Do not install accessories in the area of movement of the windows.

Closing without the jam protection system

In case of danger from the outside or if ice might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it there.

   The window closes with limited jam protection. If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.

2. Pull the switch past the resistance point again within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there.

   The window closes without jam protection.

Safety switch

Concept

The safety switch can be used to prevent children, for instance from opening and closing the rear windows using the switches in the rear.

If an accident of a certain severity occurs, the safety function is switched off automatically.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

The LED lights up if the safety function is switched on.

Glass sunroof

General information

The glass sunroof and the sun protection are operated using the same switch.

The glass sunroof can be opened from the outside with the vehicle key and also closed with Comfort Access.

With Comfort Access: The glass sunroof can be closed from the outside via Comfort Access.

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the glass sunroof. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the glass sunroof is clear during opening and closing.

Overview

Opening/closing the glass sunroof.

Functional requirements

The glass sunroof and the sun protection can be operated under the following conditions.

- Standby state is switched on.
- Drive-ready state is switched on.

The vehicle key must be in the car's interior.

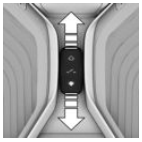
Lifting/closing glass sunroof

Push switch briefly upward.

- ▷ The closed glass sunroof tilts and the sun protection opens slightly.
- ▷ The opened glass sunroof closes until it is in the tilted position. The sun protection does not move.

▷ The tilted glass sunroof closes.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sun protection separately



▷ Slide switch back to the resistance point and hold.

Holding down the switch opens the sun protection. If the sun protection is already fully open, the glass sunroof opens.

▷ Slide switch forward to the resistance point and hold.

The glass sunroof closes while the switch is being held. If the glass sunroof is already closed or in the tilted position, the sun protection closes.

▷ Slide the switch back past the resistance point.

The sun protection opens automatically. If the sun protection is already fully open, the glass sunroof opens automatically.

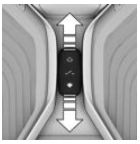
Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

▷ Push the switch forward past the resistance point.

The glass sunroof closes automatically. If the glass sunroof is already closed or in the tilted position, the sun protection closes automatically.

Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sun protection together



▷ Briefly press out the switch twice in succession toward the rear past the resistance point.

The glass sunroof and sun protection are opening together.

Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

▷ Briefly press out the switch twice in succession toward the front past the resistance point.

The glass sunroof and sun protection are closing together.

Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Comfort position

In some models, the wind noises in the car's interior are lowest when the glass sunroof is not fully open. In these models, the automatic function initially only opens the glass sunroof up to this comfort position.

Pressing the switch again opens the glass sunroof fully.

Jam protection system

Concept

The jam protection prevents objects or body parts from becoming jammed between the roof and glass sunroof while the glass sunroof is closing.

General information

If a resistance or blockage is detected while the glass sunroof is closing, the closing operation is

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3589
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

interrupted once the roof reaches the half-open position, or it is stopped when closing from the tilted position.

Closing from the open position without jam protection

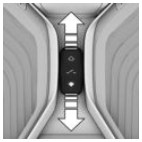
In case of danger from the outside or if ice might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

1. Close all doors.
2. Push the switch forward past the resistance point and hold.

   The glass sunroof closes with limited jam protection. If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.
3. Push the switch forward again past the resistance point and hold until the glass sunroof closes without jam protection. Make sure that the closing area is clear.

Closing from the lifted position without jam protection

In case of danger from the outside or if ice might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:



1. Close all doors.
2. Push the switch forward past the resistance point and hold.

Initializing after a power interruption

General information

After a power failure during the opening or closing process, the glass sunroof can only be operated to a limited extent. Initializing the system can help in this case.

The system can be initialized under the following conditions:

- The vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- The vehicle will not be moved until the initialization is completed.
- The drive-ready state is established.
- The external temperature is above 41 °F/5 °C.

During initialization, the glass sunroof closes without jam protection.

Make sure that the closing area is clear.

Initializing the system

Press the switch up and hold it until the initialization is complete:

Initialization begins within 15 seconds.

- If the glass sunroof is closed, it opens then closes again.
- If the glass sunroof is open, it first closes, then opens and closes again.

Initialization is complete once the glass sunroof and sun protection have opened then closed again.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3590

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Seats, mirrors and steering wheel

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Sitting safely

An ideal seat position that meets the needs of the occupants can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving.

In the event of an accident, the correct seat position plays an important role. Follow the information in the following chapters.

Additional information:

- Seats, refer to page 102.
- Safety belts, refer to page 104.
- Head restraints, refer to page 106.
- Airbags, refer to page 163.

Seats

Safety information

⚠ Warning

Seat adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected movements of the seat. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. Only adjust the seat on the driver's side when the vehicle is stationary.

⚠ Warning

With a backrest inclined too far to the rear, the efficacy of the safety belt can no longer be ensured. There is a risk of sliding under the safety belt in an accident. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Adjust the seat prior to starting the trip. Adjust the backrest so that it is in the most upright position as possible and do not adjust again while driving.

⚠ Warning

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Electrically adjustable seats

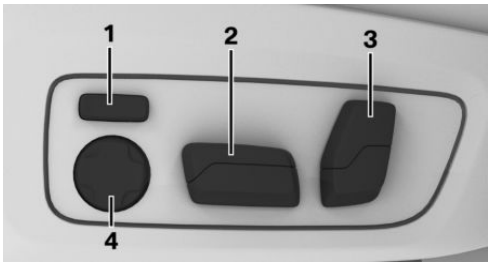
General information

The seat adjustment for the driver's seat is stored for the driver profile currently used. When a driver profile is selected, the stored position is called up automatically.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3591
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

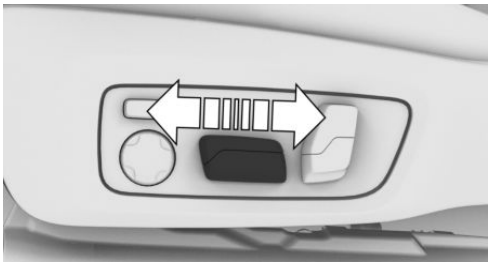
The current seat position can be stored using the memory function.

Overview



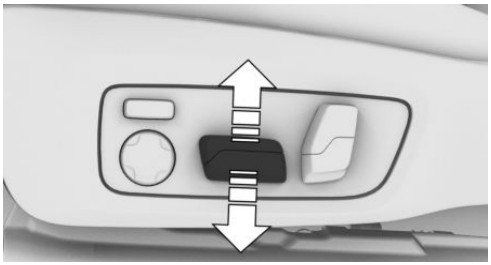
1 Backrest width
2 Forward/backward, height, seat tilt
3 Backrest tilt, head restraint
4 Lumbar support

Forward/backward



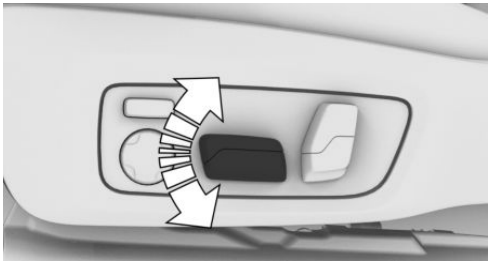
Push switch forward or backward.

Height



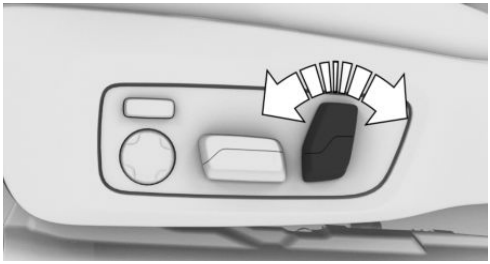
Push switch up or down.

Seat tilt



Move switch up or down.

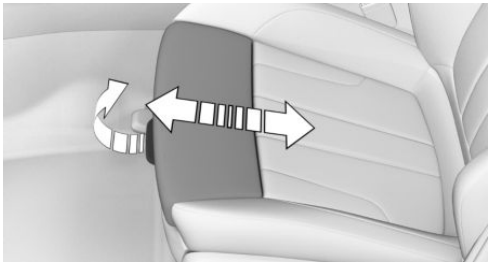
Backrest tilt



Move switch forward or backward.

Thigh support

Sport seat



Pull the lever at the front of the seat and push the thigh support forward or back.

Lumbar support

Concept

The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright posture.

Adjusting

- Press the front/rear section of the button:

  The curvature is increased/decreased.
- Press the upper/lower section of the button:

  The curvature is shifted up/down.

Functional limitations

It may not be possible to adjust the lumbar support at very high and very low temperatures.

Backrest width

Concept

Adjusting the backrest width may improve lateral support when taking corners.

General information

The backrest width is changed by adjusting the side sections of the backrest.

Adjusting

- Press the front section of the button:

  The backrest width decreases.
- Press the rear section of the button:

  The backrest width increases.

Functional limitations

It may not be possible to adjust the backrest width at very high and very low temperatures.

Safety belts

General information

The vehicle is fitted with five safety belts to ensure occupant safety. However, they can only offer protection when adjusted correctly.

Always make sure that safety belts are being worn by the occupants before driving off. The airbags supplement the safety belts as an additional safety device. The airbags are not a substitute for safety belts.

The upper shoulder strap's anchorage point will be correct for adult seat occupants of every build if the seat is correctly set.

The two outer safety belt buckles of the rear seats are intended for the persons sitting on the left and right.

The center safety belt buckle of the rear seats is intended for the person sitting in the middle.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

Use of a safety belt to buckle more than one person will potentially defeat the ability of the safety belt to serve its protective function. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Infants and children are not allowed on an occupant's lap, but must be transported and secured in designated child restraint systems.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3593
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Warning

The efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts, can be limited or lost when safety belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened safety belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that all occupants are wearing safety belts correctly.

Warning

With a rear backrest that is not locked, the protective function of the middle safety belt is not guaranteed. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. If you are using the middle safety belt, lock the wider rear seat backrest.

Warning

The efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts, may not be fully functional or fail in the following situations:

- The safety belts or safety belt buckles are damaged, soiled, or changed in any other way.
- Belt tensioners or belt retractors were modified.

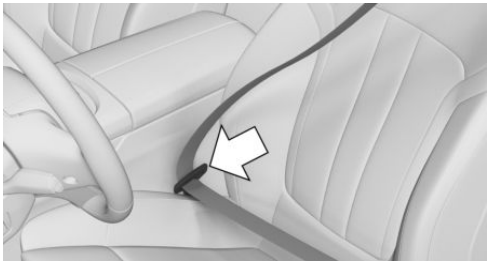
Safety belts can be imperceptibly damaged in the event of an accident. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not modify safety belts, safety belt buckles, belt tensioners, belt retractors or belt anchors and keep them clean. Have the safety belts checked after an accident at the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Correct use of safety belts

- Wear the safety belt twist-free and tight to your body over your lap and shoulders.
- Wear the safety belt deep on your hips over your lap. The safety belt may not press on your stomach.
- Do not rub the safety belt against sharp edges, or guide it or jam it in across hard or fragile objects.
- Avoid thick clothing.
- Re-tighten the safety belt frequently upward around your upper body.

Buckling the safety belt

1. Guide the safety belt slowly over shoulder and hip to put it on.
2. Insert the tongue plate into the safety belt buckle. The safety belt buckle must engage audibly.



To ease accessibility to the safety belt buckle, an adjustable slider is available on the belt to help position the buckle when not in use.

When the safety belt is fastened, the driver's and passenger's belt straps are automatically tightened once after driving away.

Unbuckling the safety belt

1. Hold the safety belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the safety belt buckle.
3. Guide the safety belt back into its roll-up mechanism.

Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat

Display in the instrument cluster

The indicator light lights up and a signal sounds. Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly. The safety belt reminder can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

Safety belt reminder for rear seats

General information

The safety belt reminder is automatically activated each time the engine starts.

The safety belt reminder is also activated when a passenger unbuckles a rear seat safety belt during the trip.

Display in the instrument cluster

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates after the engine is started.

The displays may vary depending on the equipment version and country variant.

Symbol	Description
	Green: the safety belt is buckled on the corresponding rear seat.
	Red: the safety belt is not buckled on the corresponding rear seat.

Safety mode

In critical situations, for instance during an emergency stop, the front safety belts tighten automatically.

If the situation passes without an accident occurring, the belt tension relaxes.

If the belt tension does not loosen automatically, stop the vehicle and unbuckle the safety belt using the red button in the safety belt buckle. Fasten the safety belt before continuing on your trip.

Front head restraints

Safety information

⚠ Warning

A missing protective effect due to removed or not correctly adjusted head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
- ▷ Adjust the head restraint so its center supports the back of the head at as close to eye level as possible.
- ▷ Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the backrest tilt as needed.

⚠ Warning

Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.

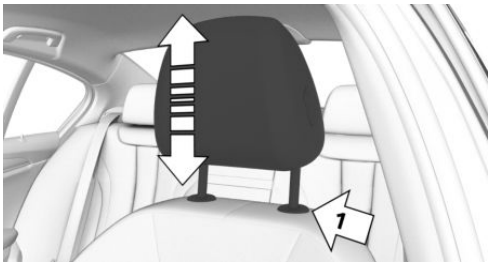
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3595
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Warning

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.

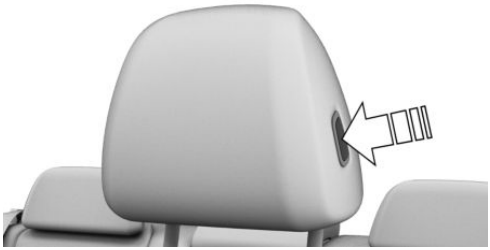
Adjusting the height



- To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.
- To raise: push the head restraint up.

After setting the height, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Adjusting distance

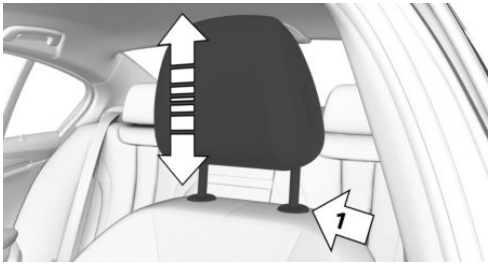


- Back: press the button and push the head restraint toward the rear.
- Forward: pull the head restraint toward the front.

After setting the distance, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Removing

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.



1. Raise the head restraint up against the resistance.
2. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

Installing

Proceed in the reverse order to install the head restraint.

Rear head restraints

Safety information

Warning

A missing protective effect due to removed or not correctly adjusted head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
- Adjust the head restraint so its center supports the back of the head at as close to eye level as possible.
- Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the backrest tilt as needed.

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.

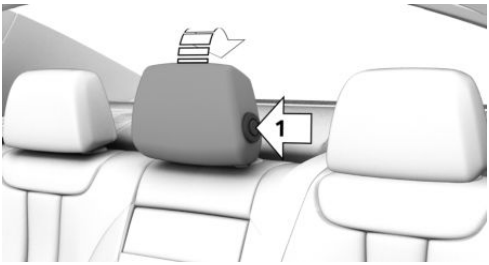
Warning

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.

Folding down the center head restraint

To improve the view to the rear, the center head restraint can be folded to the rear. Only push the head restraint down if no one will be sitting in the center seat.



- To the rear: press the button, arrow 1, and fold the head restraint backward.
- Forward: fold the head restraint toward the front as far as it will go. Make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Adjusting the height

The height of the head restraints cannot be set.

Removing

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.

1. Fold down the rear seat backrest in question.
   Enlarging the cargo area, refer to page 263.
2. Raise the head restraint up against the resistance.
3. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3597
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Installing

Proceed in the reverse order to install the head restraint.

After the installation, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Exterior mirrors

General information

The mirror on the front passenger side is more curved than the driver's side mirror.

The mirror setting is stored for the driver profile currently in use. When a driver profile is selected, the stored position is called up automatically.

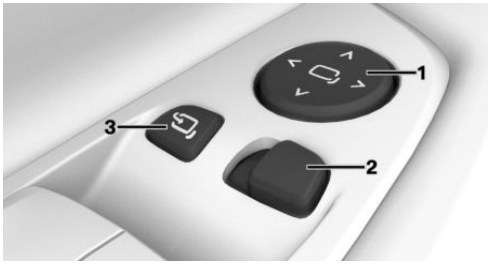
The current exterior mirror position can be stored using the memory function.

Safety information

Warning

Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. The distance to the traffic behind could be incorrectly estimated, for instance while changing lanes. There is a risk of accident. Estimate the distance to the traffic behind by looking over your shoulder.

Overview



1 Adjusting

2 Selecting a mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor

3 Folding in and out

Adjusting electrically

Press the button.

The selected mirror moves along with the button movement.

Selecting a mirror

To change over to the other mirror:

Slide the switch.

Malfunction

In case of an electrical malfunction, adjust the mirror by pressing the edges of the mirror glass.

Folding in and out

NOTICE

Depending on the vehicle width, the vehicle can be damaged in vehicle washes. There is a risk of damage to property. Before washing, fold in the mirrors by hand or with the button.

Press the button.

Folding is only possible up to a speed of approx. 15 mph/20 km/h.

Folding the mirrors in and out is helpful in the following situations:

- In car washes.
- On narrow roads.

Mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Automatic heating

Both exterior mirrors are automatically heated as needed and when the drive-ready state is switched on.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3598
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Automatic dimming feature

The exterior mirror on the driver's side is automatically dimmed. Photocells in the interior mirror are used to control this.

Automatic Curb Monitor, exterior mirror

Concept

If reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass on the front passenger side is tilted downward. This improves your view of the curb and other low-lying obstacles when parking, for instance.

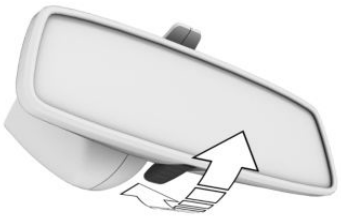
Activating

1. slide the switch to the driver's side mirror position.
2. Engage selector lever position R.

Deactivating

Slide the switch to the passenger's side mirror position.

Interior mirror, manually dimmable



To reduce the blinding effect of the interior mirror, flip the lever forward.

Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature

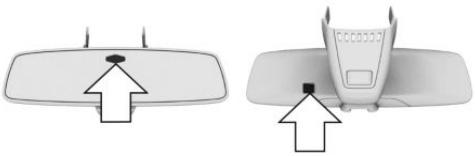
General information

The interior mirror is dimmed automatically.

Photocells are used for control:

- In the mirror glass.
- On the back of the mirror.

Overview



Functional requirements

- Keep the photocells clean.
- Do not cover the area between the interior mirror and the windshield.

Steering wheel

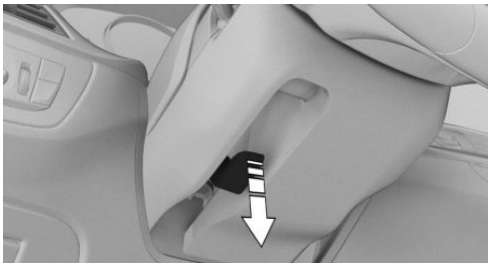
Safety information

Warning

Steering wheel adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected steering wheel movements. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. Adjustng the steering wheel while the vehicle is stationary only.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3599
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Manual steering wheel adjustment



1. Fold the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seat position.
3. Fold the lever back up.

Heated steering wheel

Overview

Button for heated steering wheel

Switching on/off

Press the button.

A Check Control message is displayed.

If the trip is resumed within approx. 15 minutes after an intermediate stop, the heated steering wheel switches on automatically if the function was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Memory function

Concept

The following settings can be stored and, if necessary, retrieved using the memory function:

- Seat position.
- Exterior mirror position.
- Height of the Head-up Display.

General information

Two memory locations with different settings can be set for each driver profile.

The following settings are not stored:

- Backrest width.
- Lumbar support.

Safety information

Warning

Using the memory function while driving can lead to unexpected seat or steering wheel movements. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. Only retrieve the memory function when the vehicle is stationary.

Warning

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Overview

The memory buttons are located on the front doors.

Storing

1. Set the desired position.
2. SET Press the button. The writing on the button lights up.
3. Press desired button 1 or 2 while the LED is lit. A signal sounds.

Calling up settings

Press the desired button 1 or 2.

The stored position is called up.

The procedure stops when a switch for setting the seat is pressed or one of the memory buttons is pressed again.

Once underway, adjustment of the seat position on the driver's side is disabled after a short while.

Seat heating

Overview

Front

Seat heating

Rear

Seat heating

Switching on

Press the button once for each temperature level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

When ECO PRO is activated, the heating output is reduced.

Additional information:

ECO PRO, refer to page 272.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3601
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Switching off

Press and hold the button, until the LEDs go out.

Seat heating distribution

The heating action in the seat cushion and the seat backrest can be distributed in different ways.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. Select the desired menu item.
5. Select desired seat.
6. Press the Controller and turn it to set the seat heating distribution.

Active seat ventilation

Concept

Integrated fans in the seat and armrest areas provide a comfortable seat temperature.

Overview

Active seat ventilation

Switching on

Press the button once for each ventilation level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

The ventilation switches back by one level after a short time.

Switching off

Press and hold the button, until the LEDs go out.

Individual activation

Concept

Depending on the equipment, some heating and cooling functions can be automatically activated depending on the external temperature.

General information

The external temperature at which the functions are to be automatically activated can be set via iDrive.

Activation is performed if the external temperature exceeds or falls below the set temperature in the first few minutes after drive-ready state has been switched on. A new alignment is carried out after the settings have been changed.

Depending on the equipment package, the following functions can be automatically activated:

- Seat heating.
- Heated steering wheel.
- Seat ventilation.

If the trip is continued within approx. 15 minutes after a stop, the functions are activated automatically with the levels that were last selected.

Functional requirement

The safety belt of the corresponding seat is buckled.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. Select the desired menu item.
5. Select desired seat.
6. Select the menu item of the desired function.
7. Set the external temperature at which the function is to be activated.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3603
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Transporting children safely

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

The right place for children

Safety information

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Warning

A heated vehicle may result in death to persons, especially children, or animals. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not leave persons, especially children, or animals unattended in the vehicle.

Warning

Exposure to intense sunlight can cause child restraint systems and their components to become very hot. Persons may sustain burn injuries when touching the hot components. There is a risk of injury. Do not expose the child restraint system to direct sunlight or cover where necessary. If necessary, let the child restraint system cool down before transporting a child. Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle.

Transport children in the rear seat

General information

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is in the rear seat.

Children younger than 13 years of age or shorter than 5 ft/150 cm should be transported in the rear seat in suitable child restraint systems designed for the age, weight and size of the child. Children 13 years of age or older must wear a safety belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system can no longer be used due to their age, weight, or size.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3604

Safety information

Warning

The safety belt cannot be fastened correctly on children shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm without suitable additional child restraint systems. The efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts, can be limited or lost when safety belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened safety belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Secure children shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm using suitable child restraint systems.

Children on the front passenger seat

General information

Before using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, ensure that the front, knee, and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated.

Additional information:

For automatic deactivation of front-seat passenger airbags, refer to page 166.

Safety information

Warning

Active front-seat passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are activated. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front-seat passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light lights up.

Installing child restraint systems

General information

Pay attention to the specifications and the operating and safety information of the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing, and using child restraint systems.

Safety information

Warning

The protective effect of child restraint systems and their fastening systems which have been damaged or exposed to an accident can be limited or lost. A child cannot be properly restrained in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life.

Do not use child restraint systems which have been damaged or exposed to an accident.

If a child restraint system and its fastening system has been damaged or exposed to an accident, have these systems checked and replaced by the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3605
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

On the front passenger seat

Deactivating airbags

Warning

Active front-seat passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are activated. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front-seat passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light lights up.

Before installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, make sure that the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated.

Additional information:

For automatic deactivation of front-seat passenger airbags, refer to page 166.

Seat position and height

After installing a child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go and, if possible, bring it up to the highest position. This seat position and height ensure the best possible position for the belt and offers optimal protection in the event of an accident.

If the upper anchor of the safety belt is located in front of the belt guide of the child seat, move the front passenger seat carefully forward until the best possible belt guide position is reached.

Backrest width

Adjustable backrest width: before installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, open the backrest width completely. Do not change the backrest width again and do not call up a memory position.

Child seat security

The safety belts in the rear and the front passenger safety belt can be permanently locked to fasten child restraint systems.

Locking the safety belt

1. Pull out the belt strap completely.
2. Secure the child restraint system with the safety belt.
3. Allow the belt strap to be pulled in and pull it tight against the child restraint system. The safety belt is locked.

Unlocking the safety belt

1. Unbuckle the safety belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the belt strap to be pulled in completely.

LATCH child restraint fixing system

General information

LATCH: Lower Anchors and Tether for Children.

Pay attention to the specifications and the operating and safety information from the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing, and using LATCH child restraint fixing systems.

Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors

General information

The lower anchors may be used to attach the CRS to the vehicle seat up to a combined child and CRS weight of 65 lbs/30 kg when the child is restrained by the internal harnesses.

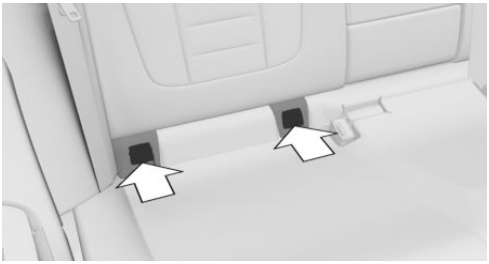
Safety information

Warning

If the LATCH child restraint fixing systems are not correctly engaged, the protective effect of the LATCH child restraint fixing system is limited. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the lower anchors are securely engaged and that the LATCH child restraint fixing system fits securely against the backrest.

Position

Symbol	Meaning
	The corresponding symbol shows the mounts for the lower LATCH anchors. Seats equipped with lower anchors are marked with a pair, (2), of LATCH symbols. For vehicles equipped with a middle seat: It is not recommended to use the inner lower anchors of standard outer LATCH positions to fasten a child restraint system on the middle seat. Use the vehicle safety belt instead for the middle seat.



Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors are located behind the marked covers.

The covers fold back automatically when the anchors of a child restraint system are inserted.

Before installing LATCH child restraint fixing systems

Pull the safety belt away from the area of the child restraint system.

Assembly of LATCH child restraint fixing systems

1. Install child restraint system, see manufacturer's information.
2. Ensure that both LATCH anchors are properly engaged.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3607
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Child restraint systems with tether strap

Safety information

Warning

If the upper retaining strap is incorrectly used for the child restraint system, the protective effect is reduced. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the upper retaining strap does not run over sharp edges and is not twisted as it passes the upper anchor.

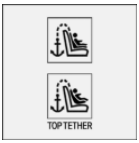
Warning

If the rear backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the child restraint system is limited or there is none. In certain situations, for instance braking maneuvers or in case of an accident, the rear backrest can fold forward. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the rear backrests are locked.

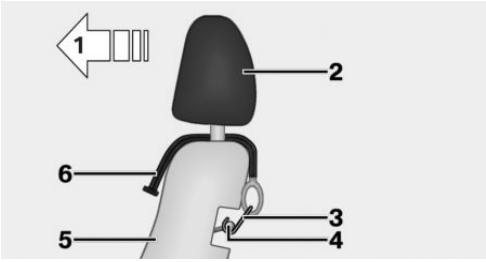
NOTICE

The anchors for the upper retaining straps of child restraint systems are only provided for these retaining straps. When other objects are mounted, the anchors can be damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Only mount child restraint systems to the upper anchors.

Anchors

Symbol	Meaning
	The respective symbol shows the anchor for the upper retaining strap. Seats with an upper top tether are marked with this symbol. It is located on the rear seat backrest, the rear shelf or the rear seat.

Routing the retaining strap



1 Direction of travel
2 Head restraint
3 Hook for upper retaining strap
4 Anchor
5 Seat backrest
6 Upper retaining strap

Attaching the upper retaining strap to the anchor

1. Raise the head restraint, if needed.
2. Guide the upper retaining strap between or along both sides of the supports for the head restraint to the anchor.

   For the middle seat, guide it over or along both sides of the head restraint to the anchor where applicable.
3. If there is a retaining strap, run it between the backrest and the cargo cover.

4. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the anchor.
5. Tighten the retaining strap by pulling it down.
6. Lower and engage head restraint as needed.

Locking the doors and windows in the rear

General information

In certain situations it may be advisable to secure the rear doors and windows, for instance when transporting children.

Doors

Push the locking lever on the rear doors up.

The door can now be opened from the outside only.

Safety switch for the rear

Press the button on the driver's door.

This locks various functions so that they cannot be operated from the rear.

Additional information:

Safety switch, refer to page 99.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3609
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Driving

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Start/Stop button

Concept

Pressing the Start/Stop button switches drive-ready state on or off.

Steptronic transmission: the drive-ready state is switched on when you depress the brake pedal while pressing the Start/Stop button.

Pressing the Start/Stop button again switches the drive-ready state back off and standby state is switched back on.

Additional information:

- Drive-ready state, refer to page 42.
- Standby state, refer to page 42.

Driving away

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. Apply gear position.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Drive away.

Auto Start/Stop function

Concept

The Auto Start/Stop function helps save fuel. The system switches off the engine during a stop, for instance in traffic congestion or at traffic lights. Drive-ready state remains switched on. The engine starts automatically for driving off.

General information

After each engine start using the Start/Stop button, the Auto Start/Stop function is ready. The function is activated from speeds of approx. 3 mph/5 km/h.

Depending on the selected driving mode, the system is automatically activated or deactivated.

Engine stop

Functional requirements

Steptronic transmission

The engine is switched off automatically during a stop under the following conditions:

- The selector lever is in selector lever position D.
- The brake pedal remains pressed while the vehicle is stationary or the vehicle is held by Automatic Hold.
- The driver's safety belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

Steptronic transmission: manual engine stop

If the engine was not switched off automatically when the vehicle stopped, the engine can be switched off manually:

- Press the brake pedal forcefully again from the current pedal position.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3610

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

▷ Engage selector lever position P.

When all functional preconditions are fulfilled, the engine switches off.

Air conditioner when the engine is switched off

The air flow from the air conditioner is reduced when the engine is switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster

General information

The display in the instrument cluster indicates that the Auto Start/Stop function is ready for an automatic engine start.

The display indicates that the conditions for an automatic engine stop have not been met.

Total time with switched-off engine

ECO PRO drive mode: depending on the vehicle equipment, the total time that the engine has been switched off using the Auto Start/Stop function is displayed on an automatic engine stop.

The total time can be reset via the trip data.

Additional information:

ECO PRO, refer to page 272.

Functional limitations

The engine is not switched off automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ In case of a steep downhill grade.
- ▷ Brake not engaged strongly enough.
- ▷ The external temperature is high and automatic climate control is running.
- ▷ The car's interior has not yet been heated or cooled to the required level.
- ▷ Where there is a risk of window condensation when the automatic climate control is switched on.
- ▷ Engine or other parts not at operating temperature.
- ▷ Engine cooling is required.
- ▷ The wheels are at a sharp angle or the steering wheel is being turned.
- ▷ Vehicle battery is heavily discharged.
- ▷ At higher elevations.
- ▷ Hood is unlocked.
- ▷ HDC Hill Descent Control is activated.
- ▷ The parking assistant is activated.
- ▷ Stop-and-go traffic.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission: selector lever position in N or R.
- ▷ After driving in reverse.
- ▷ Use of fuel with high ethanol content.

Starting the engine

Functional requirements

Steptronic transmission

The engine starts automatically under the following preconditions:

- ▷ By releasing the brake pedal.
- ▷ When Automatic Hold is activated: step on the accelerator pedal.

Driving off

After the engine starts, accelerate as usual.

Safety mode

After the engine switches off automatically, it will not start again automatically if any one of the following conditions are met:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3611
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

- The driver's safety belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is open.
- Hood was unlocked.

Some indicator lights light up for a varied length of time.

The engine can only be started via the Start/Stop button.

System limits

Even if driving off was not intended, the deactivated engine starts up automatically in the following situations:

- Excessive warming of the car's interior when air conditioning is switched on.
- Excessive cooling of the car's interior when the heating is switched on.
- Where there is a risk of window condensation when the automatic climate control is switched on.
- When the steering wheel is turned.
- Change from selector lever position D to N or R.
- Change from selector lever position P to N, D, or R.
- Vehicle battery is heavily discharged.
- Start of an oil level measurement.

Additional functions Auto Start/Stop

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country-specific version, the vehicle features a variety of sensors for assessing the traffic situation. The Auto Start/Stop function uses this information to adapt to various traffic situations in a proactive manner.

For instance, this applies to the following situations:

- When a situation is detected in which the stopping time is expected to be very short, the engine is not switched off automatically. A message appears on the Control Display, depending on the situation.
- When a situation is detected in which the vehicle needs to drive off immediately, the engine is started automatically.

The function may be restricted if the navigation data is invalid, outdated or not available, for example.

Deactivate/activate the system manually

Concept

The engine is not automatically switched off.

The engine is started during an automatic engine stop.

Using the button

Press the button.

Steptronic transmission: via selector lever position

The Auto Start/Stop function is also deactivated in selector lever position M/S.

Via the Driving Dynamics Control

The Auto Start/Stop function is also deactivated in SPORT driving mode of the Driving Dynamics Control.

Display

- LED comes on: auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.
- LED goes out: auto Start/Stop function is activated.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3612

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Switching off the vehicle during an automatic engine stop

General information

During an automatic engine stop, the vehicle can be switched off permanently, for instance when leaving it.

Steptronic transmission

1. Press the Start/Stop button.
   - ▷ Drive-ready state is switched off.
   - ▷ Standby state is switched on.
   - ▷ Selector lever position P is engaged automatically.
2. Set the parking brake.

Automatic deactivation

General information

In certain situations, the Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated automatically for safety reasons, for instance if no driver is detected.

Malfunction

The Auto Start/Stop function no longer switches off the engine automatically. A Check Control message is displayed. It is possible to continue driving. Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Driving Dynamics Control

Concept

The Driving Dynamics Control influences the driving dynamics properties of the vehicle.

The vehicle can be adjusted depending on the situation using various driving modes.

General information

The following systems are affected, for instance:

- ▷ Characteristics of the drive system
- ▷ Steptronic transmission.
- ▷ Adaptive chassis.
- ▷ Steering.
- ▷ Adaptive M chassis.
- ▷ Display in the instrument cluster.
- ▷ Cruise control.

Overview

Displays in the instrument cluster

The selected drive mode is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Driving modes

Button	Driving mode	Configuration
	SPORT	INDIVIDUAL
	SPORT PLUS	
	COMFORT	
	ECO PRO	INDIVIDUAL
	ADAPTIVE	

When drive-ready state is switched on, the COMFORT drive mode is selected automatically.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3613
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Driving modes in detail

COMFORT

Concept

Balanced tuning between sporty and efficient driving.

Switching on

Press the button repeatedly until COMFORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

SPORT

Concept

Dynamic tuning for higher agility with an optimized chassis and suspension.

Switching on

Press the button repeatedly until SPORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

SPORT INDIVIDUAL

Concept

Individual settings can be adjusted in the SPORT INDIVIDUAL driving mode.

Configuration

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driving mode"
4. "SPORT INDIVIDUAL"
5. Select the desired setting:

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Reset SPORT INDIVIDUAL to the standard settings:

"Reset to SPORT STANDARD".

SPORT PLUS

Concept

Dynamic tuning for maximum agility with an adjusted drive.

Switching on

Press the button repeatedly until SPORT PLUS is displayed in the instrument cluster.

ECO PRO

Concept

Efficient driving setting.

Switching on

Press the button repeatedly until ECO PRO is displayed in the instrument cluster.

ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL

Concept

Individual settings can be adjusted in the ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL driving mode.

Configuration

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driving mode"
4. "ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Reset ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL to the standard settings:

"Reset to ECO PRO STANDARD".

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3614

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

ADAPTIVE

Concept

Comfort-oriented driving mode, whose tuning is automatically modified to the driving situation and driving style.

If the navigation system is active, upcoming road sections are considered.

Switching on

ADAPTIVE Press the button. ADAPTIVE is displayed in the instrument cluster.

INDIVIDUAL configuration

General information

The individual configuration of the driving mode is stored for the active driver profile. The last set configuration is activated directly when the driving mode is called up again.

Activating configuration of the driving mode

Press the button for the desired driving mode several times.

Parking brake

Concept

The parking brake is used to prevent the vehicle from rolling when it is parked.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

⚠ Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Overview

Parking brake

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3615
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Setting

With a stationary vehicle

Pull the switch.

The LED lights up.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates red. The parking brake is set.

While driving

General information

To use as emergency brake while driving.

Pull the switch and hold it. The vehicle brakes hard while the switch is being pulled.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates red, a signal sounds, and the brake lights illuminate.

A Check Control message is displayed.

The parking brake is engaged when the vehicle is stationary.

Releasing

Releasing manually

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. Steptronic transmission: press the switch while the brake is pressed or selector lever position P is set.

   The LED and indicator light go out.

   The parking brake is released.

Automatic release

The parking brake is released automatically when you drive away.

The LED and indicator light go out.

Steptronic transmission: Automatic Hold

Concept

This system assists the driver by automatically setting and releasing the brake, such as when moving in stop-and-go traffic.

The vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

On uphill grades the system prevents the vehicle from rolling backward when driving off.

General information

Under the following conditions, the parking brake is automatically engaged:

- Drive-ready state is switched off.
- The driver's door is opened while the vehicle is stationary.
- The moving vehicle is brought to a standstill using the parking brake.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3616

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

NOTICE

If the vehicle is stationary, Automatic Hold engages the parking brake and prevents the vehicle from rolling in a car wash. There is a risk of damage to property. Deactivate Automatic Hold prior to entering the car wash.

Overview

AUTO H Automatic Hold

Establishing function readiness of Automatic Hold

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. AUTO H Press the button.

   The LED lights up.

AUTO H The indicator light lights up green.

Automatic Hold is functional.

After every new vehicle start, the last selected setting is active.

Automatic Hold holding the vehicle

Function readiness is established and the driver's door is closed.

PARK (P) After stepping on the brake pedal, for instance when stopping at a traffic light, the vehicle is automatically secured against rolling.

The indicator light lights up green.

Driving off

Press the accelerator pedal to drive off.

The brake is released automatically and the indicator light of the parking brake is no longer illuminated.

Activating the parking brake automatically

The parking brake is automatically set if drive-ready state is switched off while the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold or if the vehicle is exited.

PARK (P) The indicator light changes from green to red.

The parking brake is not set automatically, if the drive-ready state is switched off, while the vehicle is coasting to a halt. Automatic Hold is deactivated.

Switching function readiness off

AUTO H Press the button.

The LED goes out.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3617
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

The indicator light goes out.

Automatic Hold is switched off.

If the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold, press additionally on the brake pedal, when switching off.

Malfunction

If the parking brake fails or malfunctions, secure the vehicle against rolling before exiting.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Secure the vehicle against rolling away, for instance with a wheel chock, after exiting the vehicle.

After a power failure

To reestablish parking brake functionality after a power failure:

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Pull the switch while stepping on the brake pedal or selector lever position P is set and then push.

This process may take a few seconds. Some mechanical sounds associated with this process are normal.

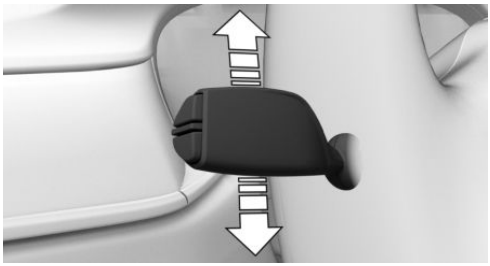
The indicator light is no longer illuminated as soon as the parking brake is ready for operation again.

Turn signal

Turn signal in exterior mirror

When driving and during operation of the turn signals or hazard warning system, do not fold in the exterior mirrors, so that the signal lights on the exterior mirror are easy to see.

Using turn signals



Press the lever past the resistance point.

Triple turn signal activation

Lightly tap the lever up or down.

The triple turn signal duration can be adjusted.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "One-touch turn signal"
5. Select the desired setting.

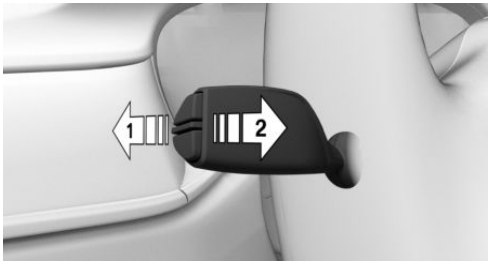
The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Signaling briefly

Press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

High beams, headlight flasher

Push the lever forward or pull it backward.



- ▷ High beams on, arrow 1.

  The high beams light up when the low beams are switched on.
- ▷ High beams off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

Wiper system

General information

Do not use the wipers if the windshield is dry, as this may damage the wiper blades or cause them to become worn more quickly.

Safety information

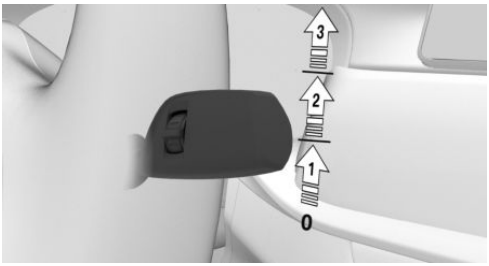
⚠ Warning

If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

⚠ NOTICE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of damage to property. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.

Switching on

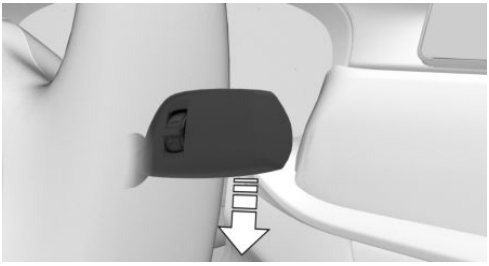


Press the lever up until the desired position is reached.

- ▷ Resting position of the wipers, position 0.
- ▷ Rain sensor, position 1.
- ▷ Normal wiper speed, position 2.
- ▷ Fast wiper speed, position 3.

When travel is interrupted with the wiper system switched on: when travel continues, the wipers resume at their previous speed.

Switching off and brief wipe



Press the lever down.

- ▷ Switching off: press the lever down until it reaches its standard position.
- ▷ Brief wipe: press the lever down from the standard position.

  The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3619
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Rain sensor

Concept

The rain sensor automatically controls the time between wipes depending on the intensity of the rainfall.

General information

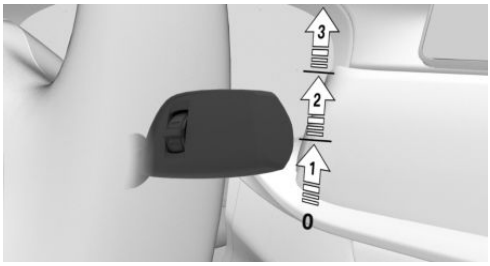
The sensor is located on the windshield, directly in front of the interior mirror.

Safety information

NOTICE

If the rain sensor is activated, the wipers can accidentally start moving in vehicle washes. There is a risk of damage to property. Deactivate the rain sensor in vehicle washes.

Activating



Press the lever up once from its standard position, arrow 1.

Wiping is started.

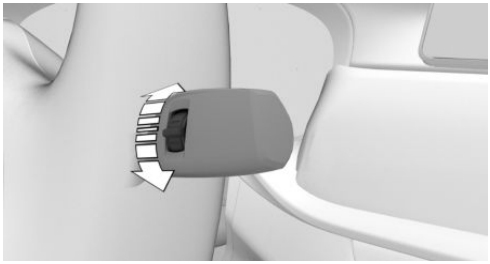
The LED in the wiper lever is illuminated.

In frosty conditions, wiper operation may not start.

Deactivating

Press the lever back into the standard position.

Adjusting the rain sensor sensitivity



Turn the thumbwheel to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Upward: high rain sensor sensitivity.

Downward: low rain sensor sensitivity.

Windshield washer system

Safety information

Warning

The washer fluid can freeze onto the window at low temperatures and obstruct the view. There is a risk of accident. Only use the washer systems, if the washer fluid cannot freeze. Use washer fluid with antifreeze, if needed.

NOTICE

When the washer fluid reservoir is empty, the wash pump cannot work as intended. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use the washer system when the washer fluid reservoir is empty.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3620
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Cleaning the windshield

Pull the lever.

The system sprays washer fluid on the windshield and activates the wipers briefly.

Windshield washer nozzles

The windshield washer nozzles are automatically heated while standby state is switched on.

Fold-away position of the wipers

Concept

The fold-away position enables the wipers to be folded away from the windshield.

General information

Important, for instance when changing the wiper blades or for folding away under frosty conditions.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

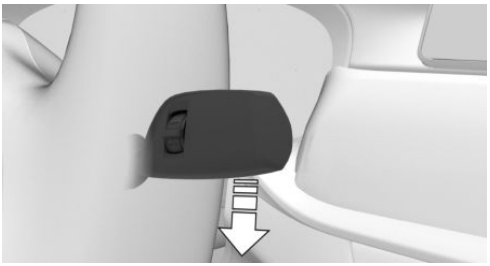
If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

⚠ NOTICE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of damage to property. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.

Folding away the wipers

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Press and hold the wiper lever down, until the wipers stop in a close to vertical position.



3. Fold the wipers all the way away from the windshield.

Folding down the wipers

After the wipers are folded back down, the wiper system must be reactivated.

1. Fold the wipers back down onto the windshield.
2. Switch on standby state and press and hold the wiper lever down again.
3. Wipers return to their resting position and are ready again for operation.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3621
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Steptronic transmission

Concept

The Steptronic transmission combines the functions of an automatic transmission with the possibility of manual shifting, if needed.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling, for instance with the parking brake.

Selector lever positions

Drive mode D

Selector lever position for normal vehicle operation. All gears for forward travel are activated automatically.

R is reverse

Engage selector lever position R only when the vehicle is stationary.

Neutral N

The vehicle may be pushed or roll without power, for instance in vehicle washes in selector lever position N.

Parking position P

General information

Selector lever position, for instance for parking the vehicle. The transmission blocks the individual wheels in selector lever position P.

Engage selector lever position P only when the vehicle is stationary.

P is engaged automatically

Selector lever position P is engaged automatically in situations such as the following:

- After the drive-ready state is switched off and selector lever position R, D or M/S is engaged.
- After the standby state has been switched off when selector lever position N is engaged.
- If the driver's safety belt is unbuckled, the driver's door is opened, and the brake pedal is not pressed while the vehicle is stationary and selector lever position D, M/S or R is engaged.

Before exiting the vehicle, make sure that selector lever position P is set. Otherwise, the vehicle may begin to move. Also set parking brake.

Additional information:

Parking brake, refer to page 126.

Engaging selector lever positions

General information

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a drive mode, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start.

Functional requirements

Only when the drive-ready state is switched on and the brake pedal is depressed is it possible to change from selector lever position P to another selector lever position.

The selection lever position P cannot be changed until all technical requirements are met.

Engaging selector lever position D, N, R

A selector lever lock prevents the following faulty operation:

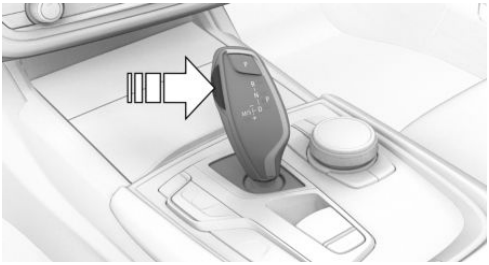
- Unintentional shifting into selector lever position R.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3622

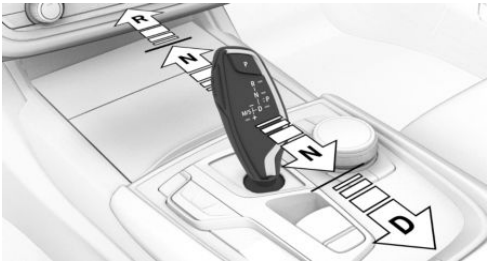
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

▷ Unintentional shifting from selector lever position P into another selector lever position.

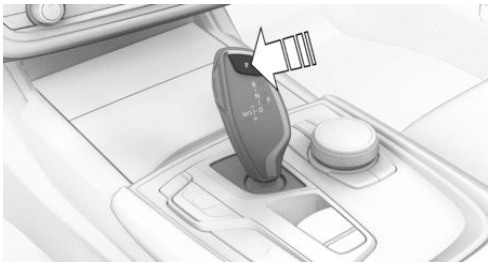
1. Fasten driver's safety belt.
2. Press and hold the button to release the selector lever lock.



3. Push the selector lever in the desired direction, past a resistance point, if needed. The selector lever automatically returns to the center position when released.



Engaging selector lever position P



Press button P.

Rolling or pushing the vehicle

General information

In some situations, the vehicle is to roll without its own power for a short distance, for instance in a car wash, or be pushed.

Engaging selector lever position N

1. Switch on drive-ready state while pressing on the brake pedal.
2. If necessary, release the parking brake.
3. If necessary, switch off Automatic Hold.

   Automatic Hold, refer to page 127.
4. Depress the brake pedal.
5. Touch the selector lever lock and engage selector lever position N.
6. Switch off drive-ready state.

   In this way, standby state remains switched on, and a Check Control message is displayed.

   The vehicle can roll.

⚠ NOTICE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not switch standby state off in vehicle washes.

Selector lever position P is engaged automatically after approximately 35 minutes.

If there is a malfunction, you may not be able to change the selector lever position.

Electronically unlock the transmission lock, if needed.

Kickdown

Kickdown is used to achieve maximum driving performance.

Step on the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3623
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Sport program M/S

Concept

The shifting points and shifting times in the Sport program are designed for a sportier driving style. The transmission, for instance shifts up later and the shifting times are shorter.

Activating the Sport program

Press the selector lever to the left from selector lever position D.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, for instance S1.

The sport program of the transmission is activated.

Ending the Sport program

Push the selector lever to the right.

D is displayed in the instrument cluster.

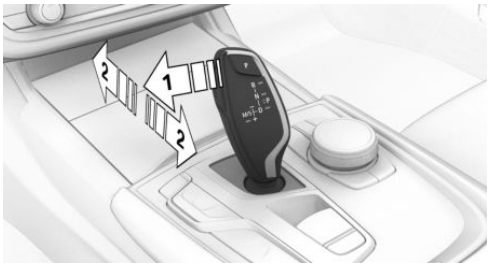
Manual mode M/S

Concept

Manual gear-shifting is possible in manual mode.

Activating manual mode

1. Press the selector lever to the left from selector lever position D, arrow 1.



2. Push the selector lever forward or pull it backward, arrows 2.

Manual mode becomes active and the gear is changed.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, for instance M1.

Shifting

- To shift down: press the selector lever forward.
- To shift up: pull the selector lever rearwards.

The transmission continues shifting automatically in certain situations, for instance when speed limits are reached.

Steptronic Sport transmission: prevent automatic upshifting in M/S manual mode

Depending on the motorization: if drive mode SPORT is selected, the Steptronic Sport transmission does not automatically upshift in M/S manual mode once the maximum speed is reached.

In addition, there is no downshifting for kickdown.

Additional information:

SPORT, refer to page 125.

Ending the manual mode

Push the selector lever to the right.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3624
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

D is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Shift paddles

Concept

The shift paddles on the steering wheel allow you to shift gears quickly while keeping both hands on the steering wheel.

General information

Shifting

The vehicle only shifts at suitable engine and road speeds.

Short-term manual mode

In selector lever position D, actuating a shift paddle switches into manual mode temporarily.

After conservative driving in manual mode without acceleration or shifting via the shift paddles for a certain amount of time, the transmission switches back to automatic mode.

It is possible to switch into automatic mode:

- Keep the right shift paddle pulled until D is displayed in the instrument cluster.
- In addition to the pulled right shift paddle, pull the left shift paddle.

Continuous manual mode

In selector lever position S, actuating a shift paddle switches into manual mode permanently.

With the transmission version it is possible to switch into automatic mode:

- Keep the right shift paddle pulled until S is displayed in the instrument cluster.
- In addition to the pulled right shift paddle, pull the left shift paddle.

Steptronic Sport transmission

With the appropriate transmission version, the lowest possible gear can be selected by simultaneously activating kickdown and operating the left shift paddles. This is not possible in short-term manual mode.

Shifting

- Shifting up: pull the right shift paddle.
- Shifting down: pull left shift paddle.
- Downshifting to the lowest possible gear: keep the left shift paddle pulled.

The selected gear is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the current gear.

Displays in the instrument cluster

The selector lever position is displayed, for example P.

Electronic unlocking of the transmission lock

General information

Electronically unlock the transmission lock to maneuver vehicle from a danger area.

Before unlocking the transmission lock, set the parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

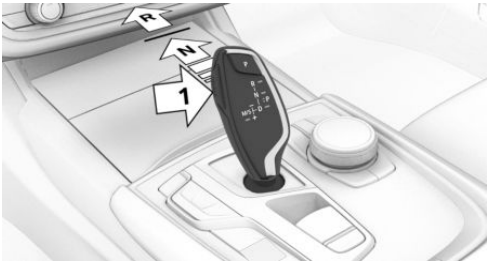
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3625
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Engage selector lever position N

Unlocking is possible, if the starter can spin the engine.

1. Press and hold down brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button. The starter must audibly start. Hold the Start/Stop button pressed.
3. With your free hand, press the button on the selector lever, arrow 1, and press the selector lever into selector lever position N and hold, arrow N, until selector lever position N is displayed in the instrument cluster.

   A Check Control message is displayed.



4. Release Start/Stop button and selector lever.
5. Release brake, as soon as the starter stops.
6. Maneuver the vehicle from the danger area and secure it against moving on its own.

Additional information:

Tow-starting/towing, refer to page 334.

Launch Control

Concept

Launch Control enables optimum acceleration on surfaces with good traction under dry surrounding conditions.

General information

The use of Launch Control causes premature component wear since this function represents a very heavy load for the vehicle.

Do not use Launch Control during the break-in period.

Do not steer the steering wheel when driving off with Launch Control.

Additional information:

Breaking-in period, refer to page 266.

Functional requirement

Launch Control is available when the engine is at operating temperature. The engine is at operating temperature after an uninterrupted trip of at least 6 miles/10 km.

Start with launch control

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2.

Press the button.

   TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster and the indicator light for DSC OFF lights up.
3. Engage selector lever position S.
4. With the left foot, forcefully press down on the brake.
5. Press and hold down the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position, kickdown.

   A destination flag is displayed in the instrument cluster.
6. The starting engine speed adjusts. Wait briefly until the engine speed is constant. Keep the accelerator pedal in this position.
7. Release the brake within 3 seconds after the destination flag illuminates.

   The vehicle accelerates.

   Upshifting occurs automatically as long as the destination flag is displayed and the accelerator pedal is not released.

Repeated use during a trip

After Launch Control has been used, the transmission must cool down for approx. 5 minutes before Launch Control can be used again. Launch Control adjusts to the surrounding conditions, when used again.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3626

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

After using Launch Control

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC Dynamic Stability Control again as soon as possible.

System limits

An experienced driver may be able to achieve better acceleration values in DSC OFF mode.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3627
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Displays

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Instrument cluster

Concept

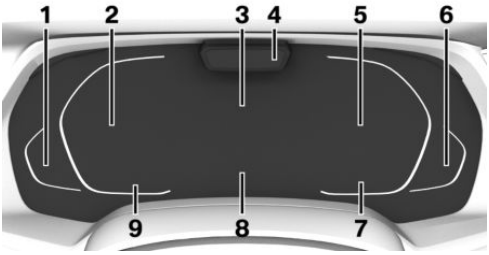
The instrument cluster is a variable display. When you change to a different program via Driving Dynamics Control, the displays in the instrument cluster adapt to the respective drive mode.

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, it may be possible to deactivate the display change in the instrument cluster via iDrive.

Some of the displays in the instrument cluster may differ from the illustrations in the Owner's Manual.

Overview



1 Fuel gauge 146
Range 147

2 Speedometer

3 Central display area 139
Navigation display

4 Depending on the equipment: Driver Attention Camera

5 Tachometer 146
Selection lists 150
Widgets 140
Trip odometer, see Trip data 151
ECO PRO displays 272
Performance display 146
Status, Driving Dynamics Control 124
Transmission display 133

6 Engine temperature 147

7 External temperature 147

8 Check Control 141

9 Speed Limit Info 149
Time 61

Central display area

Depending on the equipment and configuration, the following is displayed in the central display area of the instrument cluster:

- Navigation displays such as the map view or, if destination guidance is active, a route preview with destination guidance information.
- Displays showing service notifications.

Some displays in the central display area can be configured individually.

The displays may vary depending on the equipment version and country variant.

Driving mode view

Concept

Depending on the equipment, if the drive mode view is activated, the displays in the instrument cluster will adapt to the respective drive mode when a program is changed via the Driving Dynamics Control.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Driving mode view"

Adjusting

Individual displays in the instrument cluster can be configured individually.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument panel"
5. Select the desired setting.

Widgets

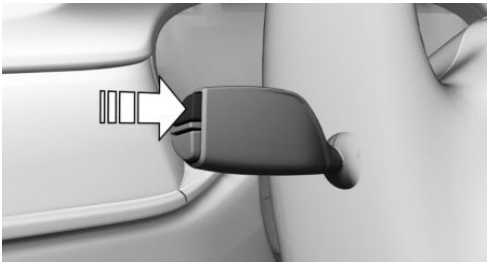
Concept

Displays for specific functions can be displayed in the instrument cluster.

The following displays can be selected:

- Current entertainment source, e.g., radio.
- Torque and power.
- Trip data.
- Efficiency display.

Selecting



Continue to press the button on the turn signal lever until the desired widget is selected.

Display

Efficiency display

Concept

Information about driving style and consumption can be displayed in the form of a consumption display as a widget in the instrument cluster, for example.

General information

Depending on the activated driving mode, different information will be displayed:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3629
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Driving mode	Display
COMFORT SPORT	Average consumption. Current consumption. Energy recovery.
ECO PRO	ECO PRO bonus range. Distance traveled in Coasting mode. Current consumption.

Average consumption

The average consumption indicates the fuel consumption when driving a specific route.

Current consumption

The current consumption displays the current consumption of fuel. Check whether you are currently driving in an efficient and environmentally-friendly manner.

Energy recovery

During energy recovery, the kinetic energy of the vehicle is converted into electric energy during coasting. The vehicle battery is partially charged and fuel consumption can be reduced.

ECO PRO bonus range

In the ECO PRO driving mode, the yielded extension of the range as a result of fuel-efficient driving is displayed as ECO PRO bonus range.

Check Control

Concept

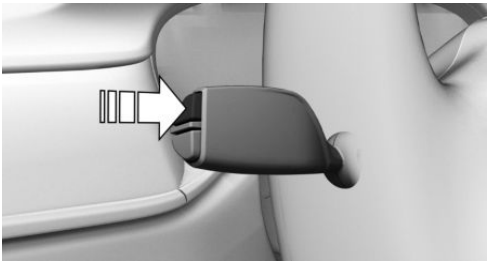
The Check Control system monitors functions in the vehicle and notifies you of malfunctions in the monitored systems.

General information

A Check Control message is displayed as a combination of indicator or warning lights and text messages in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, in the Head-up Display.

In addition, an acoustic signal may sound and a text message may appear on the Control Display.

Hiding Check Control messages



Press the button on the turn signal lever.

Continuous display

Some Check Control messages are displayed continuously and are not cleared until the malfunction is eliminated. If several malfunctions occur at once, the messages are displayed consecutively.

The messages can be hidden for approx. 8 seconds. After this time, they are displayed again automatically.

Temporary display

Some Check Control messages are hidden automatically after approx. 20 seconds. The Check Control messages are stored and can be displayed again later.

Displaying stored Check Control messages

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. ⚠ "Check Control messages"
4. Select the text message.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3630
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Display

Check Control

At least one Check Control message is displayed or stored.

Text messages

Text messages in combination with a symbol in the instrument cluster explain a Check Control message and the meaning of the indicator/warning lights.

Supplementary text messages

Additional information, such as the reason for an error or malfunction or the required action, can be called up via Check Control.

With urgent messages the added text will be automatically displayed on the Control Display.

Depending on the Check Control message, further help can be selected.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. ⚠ "Check Control messages"
4. Select the desired text message.
5. Select the desired setting.

Messages after trip completion

Certain messages displayed while driving are displayed again after drive-ready state is switched off.

Indicator/warning lights

Concept

Indicator/warning lights in the instrument cluster display the status of some functions in the vehicle and indicate when a malfunction is present in the monitored systems.

General information

The indicator/warning lights can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when drive-ready state is switched on.

Red lights

Safety belt reminder

Indicator light flashes or is illuminated: safety belt on the driver or passenger side is not buckled. The safety belt reminder can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly.

Safety belt reminder for rear seats

The safety belt is not buckled on the corresponding rear seat.

The displays may vary depending on the equipment version and country variant.

Airbag system

Airbag system and belt tensioner may not be working.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Parking brake

The parking brake is set.

Additional information:

For releasing the parking brake, refer to page 127.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3631
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Brake system

Braking system impaired. Continue to drive moderately.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Front collision mitigation

The indicator light is illuminated: pre-warning. Brake and increase distance.

Indicator light flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Additional information:

Front collision mitigation, refer to page 168.

Person warning with City braking function

Indicator light flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: imminent collision with a detected person or a cyclist.

Intervene immediately by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

Additional information:

Person warning with City braking function, refer to page 173.

Steering and traffic jam assistant

Indicator light flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: the system will be switched off.

Additional information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, refer to page 203.

Yellow lights

Steering and traffic jam assistant

The indicator light lights up and an acoustic signal may sound: a system interruption is imminent.

The indicator warning light flashes: lane marking driven over.

Additional information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, refer to page 203.

Antilock Braking System ABS

The Brake Assistant function may not activate. Avoid abrupt braking. Take the longer braking distance into account.

Have the system immediately checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control

The indicator light flashes: DSC controls the drive and braking forces. The vehicle is stabilized. Reduce speed and modify your driving style to the driving circumstances.

The indicator light lights up: DSC has malfunctioned.

Have the system immediately checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

DSC Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 189.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated or DTC Dynamic Traction Control is activated

DSC is deactivated or DTC is activated.

Additional information:

- DSC Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 189.
- DTC Dynamic Traction Control, refer to page 191.

Flat Tire Monitor FTM

The FTM signals a loss of tire inflation pressure in a tire.

Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

Additional information:

Run-flat tires, refer to page 304.

Tire pressure monitor

The indicator light illuminates: the Tire Pressure Monitor reports a low tire inflation pressure or a flat tire. Follow the information in the Check Control message.

The indicator light flashes and is then illuminated continuously: flat tires or tire pressure losses cannot be detected.

- Interference caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- In the case of tires with special approval: the tire pressure monitor was unable to complete the reset. Reset the system again.
- A wheel without wheel electronics is mounted: have it checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop as needed.
- Malfunction: have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Tire pressure monitor, refer to page 297.

Steering system

Steering system may not be working.

Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Emissions

- The warning light lights up:

  Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.
- The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:

  This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

  Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

Additional information:

Socket for Onboard Diagnosis, refer to page 323.

Green lights

Safety belt reminder for rear seats

The safety belt is buckled on the corresponding rear seat.

The displays may vary depending on the equipment version and country variant.

Turn signal

Turn signal switched on.

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator light indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

Additional information:

Turn signal, refer to page 129.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3633
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Parking lights

Parking lights are switched on.

Additional information:

Parking lights/low beams, refer to page 157.

Low beams

Low beams are switched on.

Additional information:

Parking lights/low beams, refer to page 157.

Lane departure warning

The indicator light lights up: the system is activated. A lane marking was detected on at least one side of the vehicle and warnings can be issued.

Additional information:

Lane departure warning, refer to page 176.

Front fog lights

Front fog lights are switched on.

Additional information:

Front fog lights, refer to page 160.

High-beam Assistant

High-beam Assistant is switched on.

High beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the traffic situation.

Additional information:

High-beam Assistant, refer to page 159.

Automatic Hold

Automatic Hold is activated. The vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

Additional information:

Automatic Hold, refer to page 127.

Cruise control

Indicator light is illuminated: the system is active.

Additional information:

Cruise control, refer to page 194.

Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go function

The indicator light lights up: the system is switched on.

Additional information:

Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function, refer to page 196.

Steering assistant

Indicator light lights up: the system supports the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane.

Additional information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, refer to page 203.

Blue lights

High beams

High beams are switched on.

Additional information:

High beams, refer to page 129.

Gray lights

Steering and traffic jam assistant

Indicator light is illuminated: the system is ready.

Additional information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, refer to page 203.

Fuel gauge

Concept

The current fill level of the fuel tank is displayed.

General information

Vehicle tilt position may cause the display to vary.

Additional information:

Refueling, refer to page 278.

Display

An arrow beside the fuel pump symbol shows which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is on.

The current range is displayed as numerical value.

Indicator light in the instrument cluster

The yellow indicator light illuminates, once the fuel reserve is reached.

Tachometer

General information

Always avoid engine speeds in the red warning field. In this range, the fuel supply is reduced to protect the engine.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument panel"
5. "Engine display"
6. "Tachometer"

When the setting for the drive mode view is activated, the activated tachometer is only shown in the COMFORT or SPORT drive mode.

Power rating

Concept

The display indicates the performance available as a percentage of its total power.

General information

The available power may be reduced due to certain factors, for instance a cold engine.

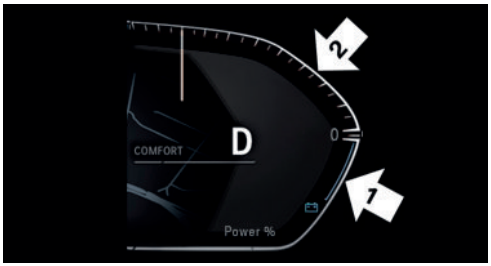
Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument panel"
5. "Engine display"
6. "Power meter"

When the setting for the drive mode view is activated, the activated power indicator is only shown in the COMFORT drive mode.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3635
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Display



Pointer in the area of arrow 1: display of the energy recovered by coasting or when decelerating, CHARGE.

Pointer in the area of arrow 2: output in percent, POWER.

Standby state and drive-ready state

The lettering OFF in the instrument cluster indicates that drive-ready state is switched off and standby state is switched on.

The lettering READY in the in the instrument cluster indicates that the drive-ready state is switched on.

Additional information:

Operating state of the vehicle, refer to page 41.

Engine oil temperature

Display

- Cold engine: the pointer is at the low temperature end. Drive at moderate engine and vehicle speeds.
- Normal operating temperature: the pointer is in the middle or in the lower half of the temperature display.
- Hot engine: the pointer is at the high end of the temperature range. In addition, a Check Control message is displayed.

Additional information:

Coolant level, refer to page 320.

Indicator light in the instrument cluster

A red indicator light is displayed.

External temperature

General information

If the indicator drops to +37 °F/+3 °C or lower, a signal sounds.

A Check Control message is displayed.

There is an increased risk of ice on roads.

Safety information

Warning

Even at temperatures above +37 °F/+3 °C there can be a risk of icy roads, for instance on bridges or shady sections of the road. There is a risk of accident. Modify your driving style to the weather conditions at low temperatures.

Range

Concept

The range indicates the distance that can still be covered with the current fuel level.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3636

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

General information

The estimated range available with the remaining fuel is permanently displayed in the instrument cluster.

With a low remaining range, a Check Control message is briefly displayed. With a sporty driving style, for instance fast cornering, the engine function is not always ensured.

The Check Control message appears continuously below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km.

Safety information

NOTICE

With a driving range of less than 30 miles/50 km the engine may no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of damage to property. Refuel promptly.

Display

The current range is displayed as numerical value next to the fuel gauge.

Service notifications

Concept

The function displays the service notifications and the corresponding maintenance scopes.

General information

After switching on drive-ready state, the instrument cluster briefly displays available driving distance or time to the next scheduled maintenance.

A service advisor can read out the current service notifications from your vehicle key.

Some information on service notifications can also be shown on the BMW display key.

Display

Detailed information on service notifications

More information on the type of service required may be displayed on the Control Display.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Required services"

   Maintenance work and legally mandated inspections are displayed.
4. Select an entry to call up detailed information.

Symbols

Symbols	Description
OK	No service is currently required.
△	The time for recommended maintenance or a legally mandated inspection is approaching.
!	Service interval is exceeded.

Entering appointment dates

Enter the dates for the mandatory vehicle inspections.

Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Required services"
4. "Vehicle inspection"
5. "Date:"
6. Select the desired setting.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3637
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Gear shift indicator

Concept

The system recommends the most efficient gear for the current driving situation.

General information

Depending on the design and country version, the gear shift indicator may be active in the M manual mode of the Steptronic transmission.

Steptronic transmission: displaying

Suggestions to shift up or down are displayed in the instrument cluster.

On vehicles without a gear shift indicator, the engaged gear is displayed.

Example	Description
	Efficient gear is set.
	Shift into efficient gear.

Speed Limit Info

Speed Limit Info

Concept

Speed Limit Info shows the currently valid speed limit in the instrument cluster and, if necessary, the Head-up Display.

General information

The camera in the area of the interior mirror detects traffic signs at the edge of the road as well as overhead sign posts.

Traffic signs with extra symbols are considered and compared with the vehicle's onboard data. The traffic sign will then be either displayed or ignored depending on the situation in the instrument cluster and the Head-up Display.

With the navigation system, the system takes into account the information stored in the navigation data and also displays speed limits present on routes without signs.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windshield.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Displaying Speed Limit Info

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, Speed Limit Info is displayed permanently in the instrument cluster or via iDrive.

Activating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument panel"
5. "Speed limit information"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3638

Display

Speed Limit Info

Current speed limit.

Depending on the equipment, Speed Limit Info not available.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 37.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional and may provide incorrect information in the following situations:

- When traffic signs are fully or partially concealed by objects, stickers or paint.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- In areas not covered by the navigation system.
- When roads differ from the navigation, such as due to changes in road routing.
- In case of electronic traffic signs.
- When passing buses or trucks with traffic signs applied to them.
- If the traffic signs are non-conforming.
- When traffic signs that are valid for a parallel road are detected.
- In the presence of country-specific road signs and road configurations.

Selection lists

Concept

Lists can be displayed and, if necessary, used for certain functions in the instrument cluster or the Head-up Display.

- Entertainment source.
- Current audio source.
- List of most recent telephone calls.

If necessary, the corresponding menu will open on the Control Display.

Display

Depending on the equipment version, the list in the instrument cluster may differ from the illustration.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3639
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Displaying and using the list

Button	Function
	Change the entertainment source. Pressing the button again will close the currently displayed list.
	Show list of most recent telephone calls.
	Turn the thumbwheel to select the desired setting. Press the thumbwheel to confirm the setting. The currently selected list can be displayed in the instrument cluster by turning the thumbwheel.

Trip data

Concept

Values for the trip, such as the average consumption or trip miles, are displayed.

General information

The trip data can be displayed on the Control Display and in the instrument cluster.

The values can be displayed and reset depending on various intervals, such as after refueling.

Display on the Control Display

Overview

The following information is displayed depending on the equipment and the set interval and drive mode:

- Configured interval for displaying trip data.
- Average fuel consumption depending on the configured interval.
- Average speed.
- Total time for shut off engine through the Auto Start/Stop function.
- Distance traveled in Coasting mode.
- Consumption history in form of a chart.

Displays

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Trip data"

Consumption history

The average consumption is shown in the consumption history in form of a chart based on the distance traveled and the driving mode.

Display in the instrument cluster

Depending on the equipment, information about the route can be displayed as widget in the instrument cluster.

The following information is displayed:

- Total mileage.
- Configured interval for displaying trip data.
- Distance traveled depending on the configured interval.
- Average speed.

Selecting and setting widgets in the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Widgets, refer to page 140.

Adjusting the display of the trip data

The intervals for the display of the trip data in the instrument cluster and on the Control Display are adjustable.

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Trip data"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3640

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

4. "Data since"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Start of trip ( )": the values are automatically reset approx. four hours after the vehicle has come to a standstill.
   - ▷ "Refueling ( )": the values are automatically reset after refueling with a larger quantity of fuel.
   - ▷ "Factory": Average consumption since delivery from the factory.

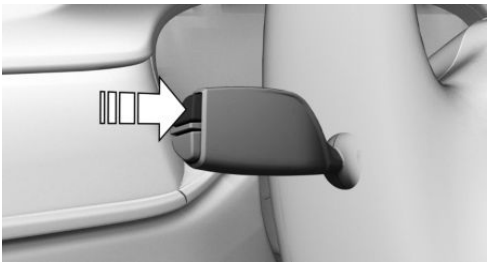
     The values since the time of the factory delivery are displayed.
   - ▷ "Individual ( )": the values since the last manual reset are displayed. The values can be reset at any time.

Resetting average values manually

The following interval can be reset manually at any time: "Individual ( )".

With the button on the turn signal lever:

1. Continue to press the button on the turn signal lever until the widget for the trip data is selected.



2. Press and hold the button on the turn signal lever.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Trip data"
4. "Data since"
5. "Reset individual"

The average values and counters are reset. Once the average values and counters have been reset, the following interval is automatically set: "Individual ( )".

Sport displays

Concept

The Sport displays especially support a sporty driving style.

Display on the Control Display

Overview

The following information is displayed:

- ▷ Torque.
- ▷ Power.

Displays

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Sport displays"

Display in the instrument cluster

The Sport displays can be displayed in form of a widget in the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Widgets in the instrument cluster, refer to page 140.

Vehicle status

General information

The status can be displayed and actions performed for several systems.

Opening the vehicle status

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3641
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Information at a glance

Symbols	Description
(!)	"Flat Tire Monitor": status of the run-flat tires, refer to page 304.
(!)	"Tire Pressure Monitor": status of the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 297.
	"Engine oil level": electronic oil measurement, refer to page 316.
⚠	"Check Control messages": displaying stored Check Control messages, refer to page 141.
	"Required services": displaying service notifications, refer to page 148.

Head-up Display

Concept

This system projects important information into the driver's field of vision, for instance the speed.

The driver can get information without averting his or her eyes from the road.

General information

Follow the information on cleaning the Head-up Display.

Overview

Switching on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Head-up display"

Display

Overview

The following information is displayed on the Head-up Display:

- Vehicle speed.
- Navigation instructions.
- Check Control messages.
- Selection list in the instrument cluster.
- Driver assistance systems.
- Sport displays.

Some of this information is only displayed briefly as needed.

Selecting displays in the Head-up Display

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the brightness

The brightness is automatically adjusted to the ambient brightness.

The basic setting can be adjusted manually.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3642
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

4. "Head-up display"
5. "Brightness"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is set.
7. Press the Controller.

When the low beams are switched on, the brightness of the Head-up Display can be additionally influenced using the instrument lighting.

Adjusting the height

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Height"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired height is reached.
7. Press the Controller.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

The height of the Head-up Display can also be stored using the memory function.

Setting the rotation

The Head-up Display view can be rotated.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Rotation"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is selected.
7. Press the Controller.

Additional settings

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "Speed Limit Assistance": access the settings for the speed assistant.
   - "Display infotainment lists in": set up if the selection lists are displayed in the instrument cluster or the Head-up Display.
   - "Sport displays": display tachometer and Shift Lights in the Head-up Display.
     - "Off": the Sport displays are not displayed in the Head-up Display.
     - "In SPORT mode": the Sport displays are only displayed in SPORT drive mode.
     - "Always": the Sport displays are continuously displayed in the Head-up Display.
   - "Reduced height": if not all of the information is in the driver's field of vision, the information can be displayed in the lower section of the Head-up Display.

Visibility of the display

The visibility of the displays in the Head-up Display is influenced by the following factors:

- Seat position.
- Objects on the cover of the Head-up Display.
- Sunglasses with certain polarization filters.
- Wet roads.
- Unfavorable light conditions.

If the image is distorted, have the basic settings checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Special windshield

The windshield is part of the system.

The shape of the windshield makes it possible to display a precise image.

A film in the windshield prevents double images from being generated.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3643
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

For this reason, it is strongly suggested to have the special windshield replaced by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, if necessary.

Lights

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Lights and lighting

Switches in the vehicle

The light switch element is located next to the steering wheel.

Symbol	Function
	Front fog lights.
	Lights off. Daytime running lights.
	Parking lights.
	Automatic headlight control. Adaptive light functions.
	Low beams.
	Instrument lighting.
	Right roadside parking light.
	Left roadside parking light.

Automatic headlight control

Concept

The low beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness, for example in tunnels, in twilight or if there is precipitation.

General information

A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be switched on.

Activating

Position of switch:

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low beams are switched on.

System limits

The automatic headlight control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment of lighting conditions.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3645
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

For example, the sensors are unable to detect fog or hazy weather. In these situations, switch the lights on manually.

Parking lights, low beams and roadside parking lights

General information

Position of switch: 0 , ≡D , ≡D

If the driver's door is opened when the drive-ready state is switched off, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off after a period of time.

Parking lights

Switching on

Position of switch: ≡D

The vehicle is illuminated on all sides.

Do not use the parking lights for extended periods; otherwise, they might drain the battery and it would then be impossible to switch on drive-ready state.

Low beams

Switching on

Position of switch: ≡D

The low beams illuminate when drive-ready state is switched on.

Roadside parking lights

When the vehicle is parked, a one-sided roadside parking light can be switched on.

Button	Function
P≡	Right roadside parking light on/off.
≡P	Left roadside parking light on/off.

Welcome lights

General information

The exterior lighting is switched on automatically during unlocking. Depending on the equipment, the exterior lighting of the vehicle can be set individually.

Activating/deactivating

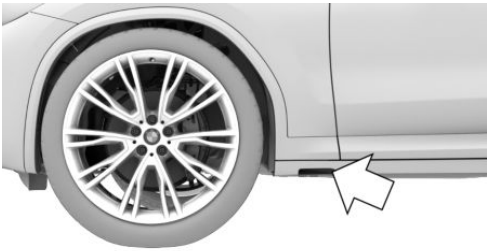
Position of switch: ≡D , ≡D

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Welcome and goodbye"

     When unlocking the vehicle, individual light functions are switched on for a limited time.
   - ▷ "Welcome Light Carpet"

     The area next to the vehicle is illuminated for a limited time.

LED light carpet



The light source is located in the position indicated.

Keep the light source clean and unobstructed.

Pathway lighting

General information

For the illumination of the vehicle's surroundings after exiting the vehicle, the exterior lighting can be switched on for a defined period of time.

Activating

After switching off the drive-ready state, briefly push the indicator lever forward.

Setting the duration

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "Pathway lighting"
5. Select the desired setting.
6. "OK"

Daytime running lights

General information

Switch position:

- ▷ 0 ,
- ▷ Depending on the national-market version:

The daytime running lights light up when drive-ready state is switched on.

Depending on the national-market version: after switching off the drive-ready state, the parking lights will illuminate in position .

Activating/deactivating

In some countries, daytime running lights are mandatory, so it may not be possible to deactivate the daytime running lights in front.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "Daytime driving lights"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Adaptive light functions

Concept

Adaptive light functions enable dynamic illumination of the roadway.

General information

The adaptive light functions may consist of one system or multiple systems, depending on the equipment version:

- ▷ Adaptive Light Control.
- ▷ Cornering light.

Activating

Position of switch:

The adaptive light functions are active when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Adaptive Light Control

General information

Depending on the steering angle and other parameters, the light from the headlight follows the course of the road.

To avoid blinding oncoming traffic, the Adaptive Light Control does not swivel to the opposite lane when the vehicle is at a standstill.

Cornering light

In tight curves, for instance on mountainous roads or when turning, an additional, cornering light is switched on that lights up the inside of

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3647
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

the curve when the vehicle is moving below a certain speed.

The cornering light is automatically switched on depending on the steering angle or, where applicable, the use of turn signals.

When driving in reverse, the cornering lights may be automatically switched on regardless of the steering angle.

Adaptive headlight range control

The adaptive headlight range control feature balances out acceleration and braking processes as well as the vehicle load conditions in order to avoid dazzling oncoming traffic. Illumination of the road is optimized.

High-beam Assistant

Concept

The high-beam Assistant detects other traffic participants early on and automatically switches the high beams on or off depending on the traffic situation.

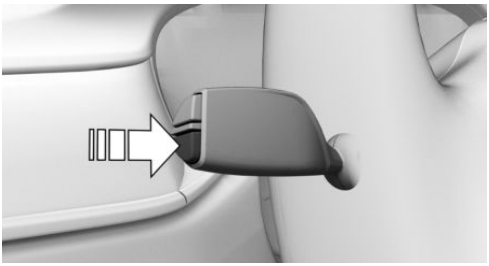
General information

The high-beam Assistant ensures that the high beams are switched on, whenever the traffic situation allows. In the low speed range, the high beams are not switched on by the system.

The system responds to light from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to ambient lighting, for instance in towns and cities.

The high beams can be switched on and off manually at any time.

Activating



Position of switch:

Press the button on the turn signal lever.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low beams are switched on.

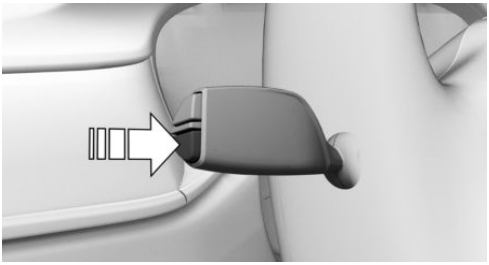
The headlights are automatically switched between low beams and high beams.

The blue indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up when the system switches on the high beams.

The high-beam Assistant is deactivated when manually switching the high beams on and off.

To reactivate the high-beam Assistant, press the button on the turn signal lever.

Deactivating



Press the button on the turn signal lever.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3648

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Sensitivity of the high-beam Assistant

General information

The sensitivity of the high-beam Assistant can be adjusted.

Safety information

Warning

If adjustments have been made or the sensitivity has been modified, oncoming traffic may be momentarily blinded. There is a risk of accident. If adjustments have been made and the sensitivity has been modified, make sure that oncoming traffic is not momentarily blinded. Switch off the high beams manually if required.

Adjusting the sensitivity

Pull the turn signal lever for approximately 10 seconds. The system responds more sensitively.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Resetting the sensitivity

Pull the turn signal lever again for approx. 10 seconds.

The sensitivity of the high-beam Assistant is reset to the factory settings.

System limits

The high-beam Assistant cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of when to use the high beams. In situation that require this, therefore switch off manually.

The system is not fully functional in the following situations, and driver intervention may be necessary:

- In very unfavorable weather conditions, such as fog or heavy precipitation.
- When detecting poorly-lit road users such as pedestrians, cyclists, horseback riders and wagons; when driving close to train or ship traffic; or at animal crossings.
- In tight curves, on hilltops or in depressions, in crossing traffic or half-obscured oncoming traffic on highways.
- In poorly-lit towns and cities or in the presence of highly reflective signs.
- When the windshield in front of the interior mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.

Fog lights

Front fog lights

Concept

The front fog lights work alongside the low beams to illuminate a wider area of the roadway.

Functional requirement

- Low beams are switched on.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

The green indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up if the front fog lights are switched on.

If the automatic headlight control is activated, the low beams will come on automatically when you switch on the front fog lights.

When the high beams or headlight flasher are activated, the front fog lights are not switched on.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3649
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Instrument lighting

Functional requirement

The parking lights or low beams must be switched on to adjust the brightness.

Adjusting

Adjust the brightness with the thumbwheel.

Interior lights

General information

Depending on the equipment version, interior lights, footwell lights, entry lights, ambient lighting, and speaker lighting are automatically controlled.

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

Interior lights

Reading lights

Switching the interior lights on/off

Press the button.

To switch off permanently: press the button and hold for approx. 3 seconds.

The interior lights in the rear of the vehicle can be switched on and off independently. The button is located in the rear roofliner.

Switching the reading lights on/off

Press the button.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the reading lights are located next to the interior lights in the front and rear.

Ambient light

General information

Depending on the equipment version, lighting can be adjusted for some lights in the car's interior.

Switching on/off

The ambient light is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked, and switched off when the vehicle is locked.

If the ambient light was deactivated via iDrive, it will not be switched on when the vehicle is unlocked.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Ambient lighting"

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Selecting the color scheme

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Color"
5. Select the desired setting.

Setting the brightness

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Brightness"
5. Select the desired setting.

Dimmed while driving

Some lights of the interior lighting are dimmed when the vehicle is driven in the dark.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Dimmed for night driving"

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

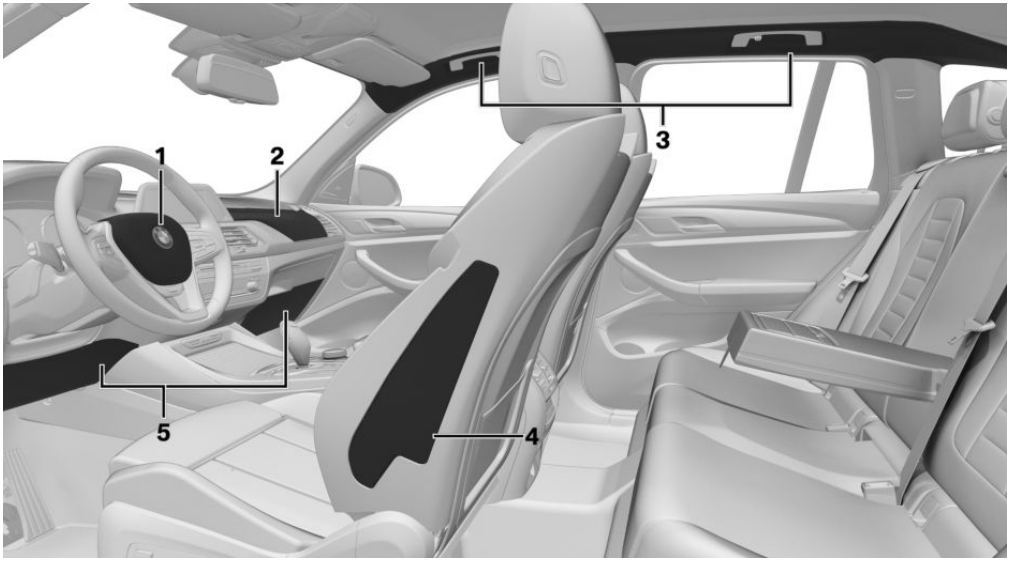
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3651
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Safety

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Airbags



1 Front airbag, driver
2 Front airbag, front passenger
3 Head airbag
4 Side airbag
5 Knee airbag

Front airbags

Front airbags help protect the driver and the front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which safety belts alone would not provide adequate protection.

Side airbag

In the event of a side impact, the side airbag protects the side of the body in the chest and lap area.

Head airbag

In the event of a side impact, the head airbag protects the head.

Ejection Mitigation

The head airbag system is designed as an ejection mitigation countermeasure to reduce the likelihood of ejections of vehicle occupants through side windows during rollovers or side impact events.

Knee airbag

The knee airbag protects the legs in the event of a frontal impact.

Protective effect

General information

Airbags are not triggered in every impact situation, e.g., in less severe accidents.

Information on optimum effect of the airbags

Warning

If the seat position is incorrect or the deployment area of the airbags is impaired, the airbag system cannot provide protection as intended and may cause additional injuries due to triggering. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Follow the information on achieving the optimum protective effect of the airbag system.

- Keep a distance from the airbags.
- Always grasp the steering wheel on the steering wheel rim. Hold your hands at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions, to keep the risk of injury to your hands or arms as low as possible when the airbag is triggered.
- Adjust seat and steering wheel so that hands can be crossed over the steering wheel. Select the settings so that the shoulder rests against the backrest when crossing the hands and the upper body is as far back as possible while still maintaining a comfortable grip on the steering wheel.
- Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e., keeps his or her feet and legs in the floor area and does not support them on the dashboard.
- Make sure that occupants keep their heads away from the side airbag.
- There should be no additional persons, animals or objects between an airbag and a person.
- Dashboard and windshield on the front passenger side must stay clear - do not attach adhesive labels or coverings and do not attach brackets or cables, for instance for GPS devices or mobile phones.
- Do not apply adhesive materials to the airbag cover panels, do not cover them or modify them in any way.
- Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area.
- Do not attach slip covers, seat cushions or other objects to the front passenger seat that are not specifically suited for seats with integrated side airbags.
- Do not hang pieces of clothing, such as jackets, over the backrests.
- Never modify either the individual components or the wiring in the airbag system. This also applies to steering wheel covers, the dashboard, and the seats.
- Do not remove the airbag system.

Even when you follow all instructions very closely, injury from contact with the airbags cannot be fully ruled out in certain situations.

The ignition and inflation noise may lead to short-term and, in most cases, temporary hearing impairment in sensitive occupants.

Vehicle modifications for a person with disabilities may affect the air bag system; contact BMW Customer Relations for further information.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3653
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Warnings and information on the airbags are also found on the sun visors.

Functional readiness of the airbag system

Safety information

Warning

Individual components can be hot after triggering of the airbag system. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch individual components.

Warning

Improperly executed work can lead to failure, malfunction or unintentional triggering of the airbag system. In the case of a malfunction, the airbag system might not trigger as intended despite the accident severity. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Have the airbag system checked, repaired, dismantled and scrapped by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Display in the instrument cluster

When drive-ready state is switched on, the warning light in the instrument cluster lights up briefly and thereby indicates the function readiness of the entire airbag system and the belt tensioners.

Malfunction

- ▷ Warning light does not come on when drive-ready state is switched on.
- ▷ The warning light lights up continuously.

Have the system checked.

Strength of the driver's and front-seat passenger airbag

General information

The explosive power that activates driver's/front-seat passenger airbags very much depends on the positions of the driver's/front passenger seat.

To maintain the accuracy of this function over the long term, calibrate the front seats as soon as a respective message appears on the Control Display.

Calibrating the front seats

Warning

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

A corresponding message appears on the Control Display.

1. Press the switch and move the respective seat all the way forward, until it stops.
2. Press the switch forward again. The seat still moves forward slightly.
3. Readjust the seat to the desired position.

The calibration procedure is completed when the message on the Control Display disappears.

If the message continues to be displayed, repeat the calibration.

If the message does not disappear after a repeat calibration, have the system checked as soon as possible.

Automatic deactivation of the front-seat passenger airbags

Concept

The system reads if the front passenger seat is occupied by measuring the human body's resistance.

Front, knee, and side airbag on the front passenger's side are activated or deactivated.

General information

Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, refer to the safety information and instructions for children on the front passenger seat, see Children.

Safety information

Warning

To ensure the front-seat passenger airbag function, the system must be able to detect whether a person is sitting in the front passenger seat. The entire seat cushion area must be used for this purpose. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the front passenger keeps his or her feet in the floor area.

Malfunction of the automatic deactivation system

When transporting older children and adults, the front-seat passenger airbags may be deactivated in certain sitting positions. In this case, the indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up.

In this case, change the sitting position so that the front-seat passenger airbags are activated and the indicator light goes out.

If it is not possible to activate the airbags, have the person sit in the rear.

To enable correct recognition of the occupied seat cushion:

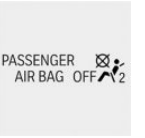
- Do not attach covers, cushions, ball mats or other items to the front passenger seat unless they are specifically determined to be safe for use on the front passenger seat.
- Do not place any electronic devices on the front passenger seat if a child restraint system is to be installed on it.
- Do not place objects under the seat that can push against the seat from below.
- No moisture in or on the seat.

Indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbags

The indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbag in the roofliner indicates the operating state of the front-seat passenger airbag.

The light indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.

After drive-ready state is switched on, the light briefly lights up and then indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.



- The indicator light lights up when a child is properly seated in a child restraint system or when the seat is empty. The airbags on the front passenger side are not activated.
- The indicator light does not light up when, for instance a correctly seated person of sufficient size is detected on the seat. The airbags on the front passenger side are activated.

Detected child restraint systems

The system generally detects children seated in a child restraint system, particularly in child restraint systems required by NHTSA at the point in time when the vehicle was manufactured. After installing a child restraint system, make sure

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3655
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

that the indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up. This indicates that the child restraint system has been detected and the front-seat passenger airbags are not activated.

Intelligent Safety

Concept

Intelligent Safety enables central operation of the driver assistance systems.

General information

Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, Intelligent Safety consists of one or more systems that can help prevent an imminent collision.

- Front collision mitigation.
- Evasion Assistant.
- Person warning with City braking function.
- Lane departure warning.
- Blind spot collision warning.
- Side collision mitigation.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Switching on/off

Some Intelligent Safety systems are automatically active after every departure. Some Intelligent Safety systems activate according to the last setting.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly. The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions, for instance setting for warning time.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Front collision mitigation

Concept

The system may prevent some accidents. In the event of an accident, the system may reduce impact speed.

The system sounds a warning before an imminent collision and activates brakes independently, if needed.

General information

Sensors detect the traffic situation.

Intersection collision warning when equipped with a radar sensor: in addition, a warning is issued at intersections and junctions if a risk of collision with crossing traffic is detected.

The approach control warning is available even if cruise control has been deactivated.

With the vehicle approaching another vehicle intentionally, the approach control warning and brake intervention are delayed in order to avoid false system reactions.

The system issues a two-phase warning of a possible risk of collision with vehicles at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h. The timing of warnings may vary with the current driving situation.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

⚠ Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

⚠ Warning

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3657
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windshield.
- With radar sensor: front radar sensor.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is automatically active when the vehicle is turned on.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Manual switching off

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and Warnings"
5. "Forward Collision Mitigation"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - "Early"
   - "Medium"
   - "Late": only acute warnings are displayed.

The selected time is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Warning with braking function

Display

A warning symbol appears in the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display if a collision with a detected vehicle is imminent.

Symbol	Measure
	Symbol lights up red: prewarning. Brake and increase distance.
	Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.
 	Intersection collision warning: Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning when vehicles cross your direction of travel. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Prewarning

This warning is provided, for instance when there is impending danger of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small.

If a prewarning is provided, respond by braking as warranted.

Acute warning with braking function

An acute warning is displayed in case of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another object at a high differential speed.

Intervene in the case of an acute warning. If an acute warning is provided, the system may provide assistance, such as through braking, when there is risk of collision.

Acute warnings may be provided even when there has been no prior warning.

Brake intervention, City braking function

The warning prompts the driver to intervene. If a warning is active, the maximum braking force is used when the brake is applied. The brake pedal must be applied sufficiently quickly and forcefully.

The system may also assist in braking if there is a risk of collision.

When the vehicle is traveling at a low speed, the vehicle may come to a complete stop.

The brake intervention takes place up to approx. 50 mph/80 km/h.

The brake intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

The system's ability to detect objects may be limited in some circumstances. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the limitations of the system and actively intervene as warranted.

With radar sensor: brake intervention

The warning prompts the driver to intervene. If a warning is active, the maximum braking force is used when the brake is applied. The brake pedal must be applied sufficiently quickly and forcefully.

The system may also assist in braking if there is a risk of collision.

The vehicle can be decelerated to a standstill.

The brake intervention occurs only if driving stability has not been restricted, for instance by deactivating the DSC Dynamic Stability Control.

At speeds above approx. 130 mph/210 km/h, the brake intervention occurs as a brief braking pressure. No automatic delay occurs.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3659
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

The brake intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Intersection collision warning: brake intervention is not performed in the event of cross traffic.

The system's ability to detect objects may be limited in some circumstances. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the limitations of the system and actively intervene as warranted.

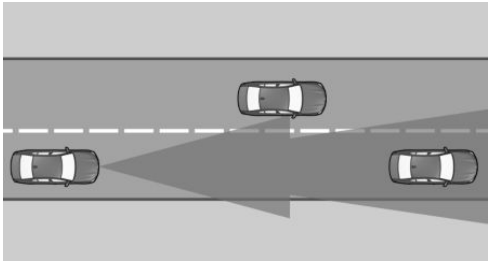
System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Detection range



The system's detection potential is limited.

Only objects that are detected by the system are taken into account.

Thus, a system reaction might not come or might come late.

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- Slow moving vehicles when you approach them at high speed.
- Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or sharply decelerating vehicles.
- Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.
- Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.
- Intersection collision warning: crossing vehicles if their speed is higher than your own speed.

Upper speed limit

If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is deactivated temporarily. When the vehicle slows down to below this speed, the system is reactivated.

Intersection collision warning: the vehicle responds to crossing traffic if its own speed is below approx. 40 mph/65 km/h.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 37.
- Radar sensors, refer to page 38.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- In tight curves.
- If the driving stability control systems are limited or deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.

Warning sensitivity

The more sensitive the warning settings are, for example the warning time, the more warnings are displayed. Therefore, there may also be an excess of premature or unjustified warnings and reactions.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3660

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Evasion Assistant

Concept

The system supports the driver in making evasive maneuvers in certain situations, such as when obstacles suddenly appear.

General information

The system issues a warning and intervenes to support the driver if a lateral evasive maneuver is possible. Sensors monitor and detect the clearance around the vehicle. If the system identifies space alongside the vehicle, it supports an evasive maneuver begun by the driver by safely providing targeted steering support.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windshield.
- Front radar sensor.
- Radar sensors, side, front.
- Radar sensors, side, rear.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Functional requirements

- Front collision mitigation is switched on.

  Front collision mitigation, refer to page 168.
- Sensors detect sufficient clearance around the vehicle.

Switching on/off

The system is automatically active when the vehicle is turned on.

Warning with evasion support

Display in the instrument cluster

A warning symbol appears in the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display if a collision with a detected vehicle is imminent.

Symbol	Measure
	Symbol lights up red: prewarning. Brake and increase distance.
	Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Acute warning with evasion support

An acute warning is displayed when there is an imminent danger of collision due to the vehicle approaching another object at a high speed.

Intervene in the case of an acute warning. The system is designed to provide assistance by taking evasive action when there is a risk of collision.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3661
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Acute warnings may be provided even when there has been no prior warning.

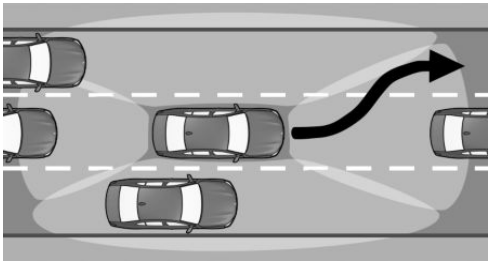
System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Detection range



The system's detection potential is limited.

Only objects that are detected by the system are taken into account.

Thus, a system reaction might not come or might come late.

The following situations may not be detected, for example:

- Slow moving vehicles when you approach them at high speed.
- Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or sharply decelerating vehicles.
- Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.
- Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 37.
- Radar sensors, refer to page 38.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- In tight curves.
- If the driving stability control systems are limited or deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.

Person warning with City braking function

Concept

The system may prevent some accidents with pedestrians. When driving at city speeds, the system will issue a warning if there is imminent risk of a collision with pedestrians, and support with a braking function.

General information

Sensors detect the traffic situation.

The system is active at speeds of approx. 3 mph/5 km/h up to approx. 40 mph/65 km/h.

The system reacts to people who are within the detection range of the system.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch

traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Sensors

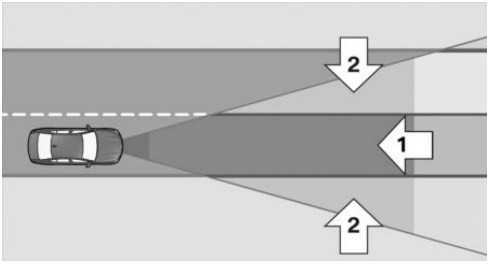
The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windshield.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Detection range



The detection area in front of the vehicle is divided into two areas:

- Central area, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.
- Expanded area, arrows 2, to the right and left of the central area.

A collision is imminent if pedestrians are located within the central area. A warning is issued about pedestrians who are located within the extended area only if they are moving in the direction of the central area.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is automatically active when the vehicle is turned on.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3663
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Manual switching off

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Warning with braking function

Display

If a collision with a detected person is imminent, a warning symbol appears on the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display.

The red symbol is displayed and a signal sounds.

Alternatively, depending on the vehicle equipment, a red warning triangle lights up in the instrument cluster.

Intervene immediately by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

Brake intervention

The warning prompts the driver to intervene. While a warning is active, the maximum braking force is used when the brake is applied. In order to activate the Brake Assistant function, the brakes must be applied sufficiently quickly and forcefully.

If there is a risk of collision, the system may also assist with brake intervention.

When the vehicle is traveling at a low speed, the vehicle may come to a complete stop.

The brake intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

The system's ability to detect objects may be limited in some circumstances. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the limitations of the system and actively intervene as warranted.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Detection range

The system's detection potential is limited.

Thus, a warning might not be issued or be issued late.

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- Partially covered pedestrians.
- Pedestrians that are not detected as such because of the viewing angle or contour.
- Pedestrians outside of the detection range.
- Pedestrians having a body size less than 32 in/80 cm.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 37.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional or may not be available in the following situations:

- If the driving stability control systems are deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.

Lane departure warning

Concept

The lane departure warning alerts when the vehicle on roads with lane markings is about to leave the lane.

General information

This camera-based system warns starting at a minimum speed.

The minimum speed is country-specific and is displayed in the menu for the intelligent Safety systems.

Warnings are issued by means of a steering wheel vibration. The severity of the steering wheel vibration can be adjusted.

The time of the warning may vary depending on the current driving situation.

The system does not provide a warning if the turn signal is set before leaving the lane.

Vehicles with side collision mitigation: if in the speed range up to 130 mph/210 km/h a lane marking is crossed, the system intervenes with a brief active steering intervention in addition to vibrating. The system thus helps keep the vehicle in the lane.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing road and traffic safety. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate. Do not jerk the steering wheel in response to a warning.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Functional requirement

The camera must detect the lane markings for the lane departure warning to be active.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3665
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windshield.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The lane departure warning activates automatically after departure if the function was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Manual switching off

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and Warnings"
5. "Lane Departure Warning"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - "Always": the system issues a warning whenever a hazardous situation is detected.
   - "Reduced": some warnings are suppressed depending on the situation, for instance during passing without a turn signal or when purposely driving over lane markings in curves.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3666

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

▷ "Off": no warnings are issued.

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Steering Wheel Feedback"
5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all Intelligent Safety systems and stored for the driver profile currently used.

Vehicles with side collision mitigation: switch steering intervention on/off

The steering intervention can be switched on and off separately for blind spot collision warning and lane departure warning.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and Warnings"
5. "Lane Departure Warning"
6. "Steering intervention"

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Display in the instrument cluster

The symbol illuminates green: at least one lane marking was detected and warnings can be issued.

Warning function

If you leave the lane

If you leave the lane and if a lane marking has been detected, the steering wheel vibrates in accordance with the steering wheel vibration setting.

When the turn signal is switched on before a lane charge, a warning is not issued.

With side collision mitigation

If in the speed range up to 130 mph/210 km/h a lane marking is crossed, the system intervenes with a brief active steering intervention in addition to vibrating. The steering intervention helps keep the vehicle in the lane. The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

Warning signal

Depending on the equipment version: in the event of multiple active steering interventions by the system within 3 minutes without the driver's intervention at the steering wheel, an acoustic warning will sound. A short warning signal will sound at the second steering intervention. Beginning with the third steering intervention, an continuous warning will sound.

In addition, a Check Control message is displayed.

The warning signal and Check Control message are an encouragement to pay closer attention to the lane.

End of warning

For instance, the warning will be canceled in the following situations:

▷ Automatically after approx. 3 seconds.

▷ When returning to your own lane.

▷ When braking hard.

▷ When using the turn signal.

▷ If DSC Dynamic Stability Control intervenes.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3667
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 37.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane markings such as in construction areas.
- When lane markings are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
- When lane markings are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.

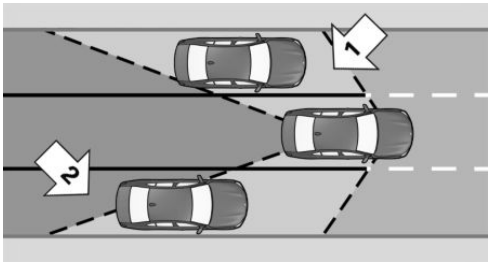
A Check Control message may be displayed when the system is not fully functional.

Blind spot collision warning

Concept

Blind spot collision warning detects vehicles in the blind spot or vehicles approaching from behind in the adjacent lane. A warning is issued in various gradations in these situations.

General information



Radar sensors monitor the area behind and next to the vehicle when traveling faster than a minimum speed.

The minimum speed is country-specific and is displayed in the menu for the intelligent Safety systems.

The system indicates whether there are vehicles in the blind spot, arrow 1, or approaching from behind in the adjacent lane, arrow 2.

The light in the exterior mirror lights up dimmed.

Before you change lanes after setting the turn signal, the system issues a warning in the situations described above.

The light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

Vehicles with side collision mitigation: at speeds between 45 mph/70 km/h and 130 mph/210 km/h, the system can intervene with a brief active steering intervention and help to return the vehicle into the lane.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3668
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Radar sensors, side, rear.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

Blind spot collision warning is automatically activated after departure if the function was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Manual switching off

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3669
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Setting the warning time

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and Warnings"
5. "Active Blind Spot Detection"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Early"
   - ▷ "Medium"
   - ▷ "Late"
   - ▷ "Off": with this setting, no warning is output.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Steering Wheel Feedback"
5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all Intelligent Safety systems and stored for the driver profile currently used.

Vehicles with side collision mitigation: switching steering intervention on/off

The steering intervention can be switched on and off separately for blind spot collision warning and lane departure warning.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and Warnings"
5. "Active Blind Spot Detection"
6. "Steering intervention"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Warning function

Light in the exterior mirror

Prewarning

The dimmed light in the exterior mirror indicates when there are vehicles in the blind spot or approaching from behind.

Acute warning

When the turn signal is switched on while a vehicle is in the critical zone, the steering wheel vibrates briefly and the light in the exterior mirror flashes brightly.

The warning stops when the other vehicle has left the critical area or the turn signal has been deactivated.

Vehicles with side collision mitigation

When at speeds between 45 mph/70 km/h and 130 mph/210 km/h the vibrating steering wheel is ignored and the lane marking crossed, the system intervenes with a brief active steering intervention. The steering intervention helps return the vehicle into the lane. The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

Flashing of the light

A flashing of the light during vehicle unlocking serves as system self-test.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Upper speed limit

If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is deactivated temporarily.

If the vehicle speed falls below approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system once again responds according to the setting.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Radar sensors, refer to page 38.
- On vehicles with side collision warning: cameras, refer to page 37.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
- If the bumper is dirty, iced up, or covered, for instance by stickers.

For vehicles with side collision mitigation, the steering intervention can be limited, for instance in the following situation:

- In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane markings such as in construction areas.
- When lane markings are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- When lane markings are not white.
- When lane markings are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- If the camera is impaired.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.

A Check Control message is displayed when the system is not fully functional.

Displaying warnings

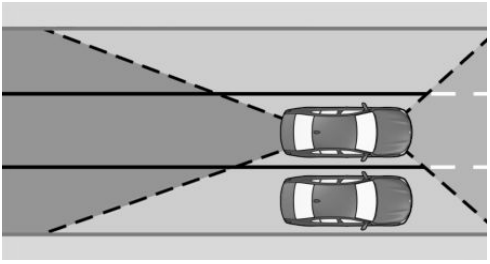
Depending on the selected warning settings, e.g., warning time, more or fewer warnings can be displayed. However, there may also be an excess of premature warnings of critical situations.

Side collision mitigation

Concept

The system helps to avoid imminent side collisions.

General information



Radar sensors monitor the area next to the vehicle in the speed range from approx. 45 mph/70 km/h to approx. 130 mph/210 km/h.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3671
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

The front camera determines the lane marking positions.

If, for instance another vehicle is detected next to the vehicle and if there is a risk of collision with this vehicle, the system helps avoid the collision. The system will carry out an active steering intervention.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Functional requirement

The camera must detect the lane markings for the side collision mitigation with steering intervention to be active.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windshield.
- Radar sensors, side, front.
- Radar sensors, side, rear.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The side collision mitigation activates automatically after departure if the function was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3672
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Manual switching off

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Steering Wheel Feedback"
5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all Intelligent Safety systems and stored for the driver profile currently used.

Warning function

Light in the exterior mirror

Acute warning

If there is a risk of collision, the light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

If necessary, an active steering intervention then takes place to prevent collisions and maintain the vehicle within its own lane.

The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 37.
- Radar sensors, refer to page 38.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3673
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
- In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane markings such as in construction areas.
- When lane markings are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- When lane markings are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.

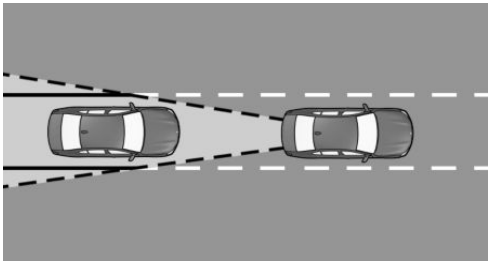
A Check Control message is displayed when the system is not fully functional.

Rear collision preparation

Concept

The system reacts to vehicles approaching from behind.

General information



Radar sensors monitor the area behind the vehicle.

When a vehicle approaches from the rear at a certain speed, the system responds as follows:

- Active Protection: when a collision seems to be unavoidable, PreCrash functions are triggered.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Radar sensors, side, rear.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Switching on/off

The system is automatically active when the vehicle is turned on.

The system is deactivated in the following situations:

- When driving in reverse.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Radar sensors, refer to page 38.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

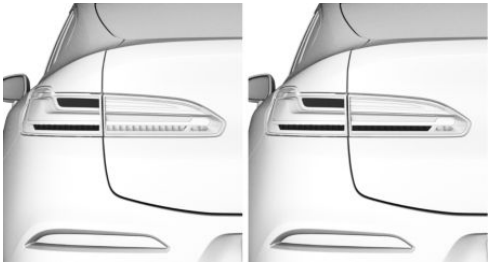
- When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- When the approaching vehicle approaches slowly.

Brake force display

Concept

Additional brake lights indicate emergency braking to the traffic behind. This can reduce the risk of a rear-end collision.

General information



- During normal brake application, the outer brake lights light up.
- During heavy brake application, the inner brake lights additionally light up.

Active Protection

Concept

Active Protection prepares occupants and the vehicle for a possible accident in critical driving or collision situations.

General information

Active Protection consists of various PreCrash functions, which can vary depending on the equipment.

The system is used to detect certain critical driving situations that might lead to an accident. This includes the following critical driving situations:

- Emergency stop.
- Severe understeering.
- Severe oversteering.

Certain functions of several systems can, within the system limits, lead to Active Protection triggering:

- Front collision mitigation: automatic brake intervention.
- Front collision mitigation: Brake Assistant.
- Rear collision preparation: detection of imminent rear collisions.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to the system limits, critical situation could not be detected reliably or in time. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3675
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Function

When the safety belt is fastened, the driver's and passenger's belt straps are automatically tightened once after driving away.

In accident-critical situations, the following individual functions become active as needed:

- Automatic pretensioning of the front safety belts.
- Automatic window closing up to a narrow gap.
- Automatic closing of the panoramic glass sunroof, including sun protection.
- For vehicles equipped with comfort seats in the front: automatic positioning of the backrest for the front passenger seat.

After a critical driving situation without an accident, the front safety belts are loosened again.

If the belt tension does not loosen automatically, stop the vehicle and unbuckle the safety belt using the red button in the buckle. Fasten the safety belt before continuing on your trip.

All other systems can be restored to the desired setting.

PostCrash – iBrake

Concept

In the event of an accident, the system can bring the vehicle to a halt automatically without intervention by the driver in certain situations. This can reduce the risk of a further collision and the consequences thereof.

At standstill

After coming to a halt, the brake is released automatically.

Harder vehicle braking

In certain situations, it can be necessary to bring the vehicle to a halt more quickly than the Brake Assistant allows.

To do this, quickly apply extra force to the brake. For a brief period, the braking pressure will be higher than the braking pressure that is achieved by the automatic braking function. Automatic braking is interrupted.

Interrupting automatic braking

It can be necessary to interrupt automatic braking in certain situations, for instance for an evasive maneuver.

Interrupt automatic braking:

- By pressing the brake pedal.
- By pressing the accelerator pedal.

Fatigue alert

General information

The system can detect decreasing alertness or fatigue of the driver during long, monotonous trips, for instance on highways. In this situation, it is recommended that the driver takes a break.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing one's physical state. An increasing lack of alertness or fatigue may not be detected or not be detected in time. There is a risk of accident. Make sure that the driver is rested and alert. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions.

Function

The system is switched on each time drive-ready state is switched on.

After travel has begun, the system monitors certain aspects of the driver's behavior, so that decreasing alertness or fatigue can be detected.

This procedure takes the following criteria into account:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3676

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

- Personal driving style, for instance steering behavior.
- Driving conditions, for instance time, length of trip.

Starting at approx. 43 mph/70 km/h, the system is active and can also display a recommendation to take a break.

Break recommendation

Adjusting

The fatigue alert is active automatically with each switching on of drive-ready state and can thus display a break recommendation.

The break recommendation can also be switched on or off and adjusted via iDrive.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Fatigue and Focus Alert"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "Standard": the break recommendation is made with a defined value.
   - "Sensitive": the break recommendation is issued earlier.
   - "Off": no break recommendation is made.

Display

If the driver becomes less alert or fatigued, a message is displayed in the Control Display with the recommendation to take a break.

During the display, various settings can be selected.

After a break, another recommendation to take a break cannot be displayed until after approximately 45 minutes.

System limits

The function may be limited in the following situations and may issue an incorrect warning or no warning at all:

- When the clock is set incorrectly.
- When the vehicle speed is mainly below about 43 mph/70 km/h.
- With a sporty driving style, such as during rapid acceleration or when cornering fast.
- In active driving situations, such as when changing lanes frequently.
- When the road surface is poor.
- In the event of strong side winds.

The system is reset approx. 45 minutes after parking the vehicle, for instance in the case of a break during longer trips on highways.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3677
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Driving stability control systems

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Antilock Braking System ABS

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during braking.

The vehicle maintains its steering power even during full brake applications, which increases the active safety.

ABS is operational every time you start the engine.

Brake assistant

When you apply the brakes rapidly, this system automatically boosts the vehicle braking assistance to the furthest possible extent. It reduces the braking distance to a minimum during an emergency stop. This system utilizes all of the capabilities provided by the Antilock Brake System ABS.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal for the duration of the emergency stop.

Adaptive brake assistant

In combination with Active Cruise Control ACC, this system ensures that the brakes respond even more rapidly when braking in critical situations.

Drive-off assistant

Concept

This system supports driving off on uphill grades.

Driving off

1. Hold the vehicle in place with the foot brake.
2. Release the foot brake and drive off without delay.

After the foot brake is released, the vehicle is held in place for approx. 2 seconds.

Depending on the vehicle loading, the vehicle may roll back slightly.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control

Concept

Within the physical limits, the system helps to keep the vehicle on a steady course by reducing drive power and by braking the individual wheels.

General information

DSC detects the following unstable driving conditions, for instance:

- Fishtailing, which can lead to oversteering.
- Loss of traction of the front wheels, which can lead to understeering.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3678

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

When driving with a roof load, for instance with roof-mounted luggage rack, the vehicle's center of gravity is higher, which increases the risk of the vehicle tipping in critical driving situations. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Do not deactivate DSC Dynamic Stability Control when driving with roof load.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

DSC OFF

Deactivating/activating DSC

General information

When DSC is deactivated, driving stability is reduced during acceleration and when driving in curves.

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

Deactivating DSC

Hold the button down until DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster and the DSC OFF indicator light is illuminated.

Activating DSC

Press the button.

DSC OFF and the DSC OFF indicator light go out.

Display

In the instrument cluster

When DSC is deactivated, DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Indicator/warning lights

The indicator light lights up: DSC is deactivated.

The indicator light flashes: DSC controls the drive and braking forces.

The indicator light lights up: DSC has malfunctioned.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3679
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

DTC Dynamic Traction Control

Concept

DTC is a version of the DSC Dynamic Stability Control where drive power is optimized.

The system ensures maximum drive power on unusual road conditions, for instance unplowed snow covered roads, or loose road surfaces, but with somewhat limited driving stability.

General information

When DTC is activated, the vehicle has maximum traction. Driving stability is limited during acceleration and when driving in curves.

You may find it useful to briefly activate DTC in the following situations:

- When driving in slush or on uncleared, snow-covered roads.
- When driving off from deep snow or loose ground.
- When driving with snow chains.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

DSC OFF

Activating/deactivating DTC

Activating DTC

Press the button.

TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster and the indicator light for DSC OFF lights up.

Deactivating DTC

Press the button again.

TRACTION and the DSC OFF indicator light go out.

Display

Display in the instrument cluster

If DTC is activated, TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Indicator/warning lights

The indicator light lights up: DTC is activated.

Automatic program change

In certain situations, the Dynamic Stability Control DSC is activated automatically:

- If Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function ACC is activated.
- On a brake intervention by the Intelligent Safety systems.
- The vehicle has a flat tire.

xDrive

Concept

xDrive is the all-wheel-drive system of the vehicle. The interaction of xDrive and other suspension control systems, such as DSC Dynamic Stability Control, further optimizes traction and

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3680
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

driving dynamics. xDrive variably distributes the driving forces to the front and rear axles as demanded by the driving situation and road surface.

Display on the Control Display

Display xView display

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "xOFFROAD"

   or

   "xVIEW"

The following information is displayed:

- With a navigation system: compass display for the driving direction.
- With navigation system: elevation for the current position.
- With navigation system: destination flag in compass direction to the destination.
- Pitch attitude with degree indication and percentage.
- Transverse gradient with degree indication.
- Graphic display for the steering angle.

Automatic Differential Brake

The system controls the driving force by automatic brake intervention on individual wheels.

The function works in the same way as a differential lock and improves traction on a loose surface, for example. The system detects when a wheel begins to spin and automatically brakes this wheel.

The driving force is diverted to the wheel with better traction.

As a result, the drive torque is transferred more efficiently to the wheels during accelerations.

HDC Hill Descent Control

Concept

HDC Hill Descent Control is a downhill control feature that controls the vehicle speed on steep downhill grades, for instance when driving on unpaved roads.

When the system is active, the vehicle moves at the speed set by the driver, without the driver having to depress the brake pedal.

While HDC is controlling the speed, the system automatically distributes the braking force to the individual wheels. This improves vehicle drivability and driving stability. If necessary, the Antilock Braking System prevents the wheels from locking.

General information

Hill Descent Control can be activated at speeds below approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Speeds can be set between approx. 2 mph/3 km/h and approx. 20 mph/30 km/h. When the vehicle is moving downhill, the system reduces the speed to the set value, within the physical limits.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

HDC

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3681
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Activating HDC

Press the button. The LED on the button lights up.

Speeds between approx. 2 mph/3 km/h and approx. 20 mph/30 km/h are adopted as the desired speed.

Emergency braking function, Active PDC: the emergency braking function is deactivated.

Additional information:

Emergency brake function, Active PDC, refer to page 209.

Display in the instrument cluster

A symbol and the selected desired speed are displayed.

- Indicator green: HDC is active. The system is actively braking the vehicle.
- Gray display: HDC is on standby.

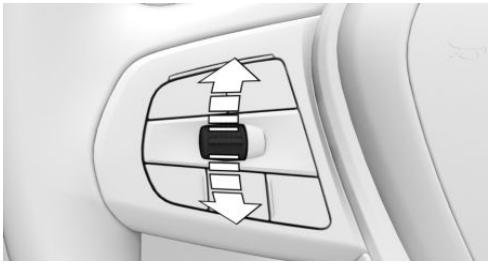
Display in the Head-up Display

The HDC status can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

Increasing or decreasing vehicle speed

Using the cruise control rocker switch

The desired speed can be changed using the cruise control rocker switch on the steering wheel.



- Press the rocker switch up: the speed increases gradually.
- Press the rocker switch up and hold: the speed increases while the rocker switch is pressed.
- Press the rocker switch down: the speed decreases gradually.
- Press the rocker switch down and hold: the speed decreases while the rocker switch is pressed.

Using the brake pedal

While HDC is controlling the speed, the set desired speed can be reduced by depressing the brake pedal.

Deactivating HDC

Press the button again. The LED goes out.

HDC is automatically deactivated above approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Malfunction

If a malfunction occurs, a message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Variable sport steering

The variable sport steering facilitates a direct and agile driving style with little steering effort. The variable sports steering works independently of the current speed, varying the steering ratio in line with the steering angle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3682

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Driver assistance systems

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Cruise control

Concept

Using this system, a desired speed can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel. The system maintains the desired speed. The system accelerates and brakes automatically as needed.

General information

The system can be activated starting at 20 mph/30 km/h.

Depending on the vehicle setting, the cruise control settings may change under certain conditions. For instance, acceleration can change depending on the driving mode.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

The use of the system can lead to an increased risk of accidents in the following situations, for instance:

- On winding roads.
- In heavy traffic.
- On slippery roads, in fog, snow, or wet conditions, or on a loose road surface.

There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Only use the system if driving at constant speed is possible.

Warning

The desired speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Cruise control on/off.
	Pause cruise control. Continue cruise control with the last setting.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3683
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Button	Function
SET	Store speed.
	Rocker switch: Set speed.

Switching cruise control on/off

Switching on

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster light up and the marking on the speedometer is set to the current speed.

Cruise control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

Switching off

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

Pausing cruise control

Interrupting manually

When active, press the button.

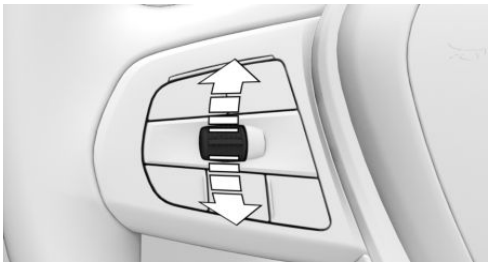
Interrupting automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations, for example:

- When the driver applies the brakes.
- Steptronic transmission: when selector lever position D is disengaged.
- Dynamic Traction Control DTC is activated or DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.
- If DSC Dynamic Stability Control intervenes.

Setting the speed

Maintaining and storing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down once while the system is interrupted.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

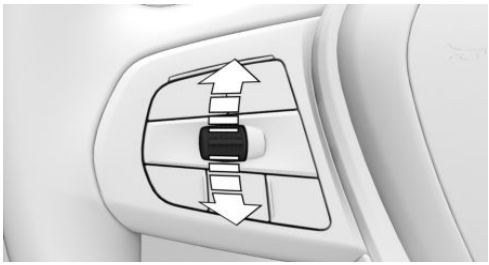
The stored speed is displayed on the speedometer.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

The speed can also be stored by pressing a button.

Press the button.

Changing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3684

- Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the desired speed increases or decreases by 1 mph/1 km/h.
- Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

  The maximum speed that can be set depends on the vehicle.
- Pressing the rocker switch to the resistance point and holding it: vehicle accelerates or decelerates without pressure on the accelerator pedal.

  After the rocker switch is released, the vehicle maintains its final speed. Pressing the switch beyond the resistance point causes the vehicle to accelerate more rapidly.

Continuing cruise control

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed.

Make sure that the difference between current speed and stored speed is not too large before calling up the stored speed. Otherwise, unintentional braking or accelerating may occur.

Press the button with the system interrupted.

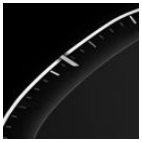
Cruise control is continued with the stored values.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- When the system is switched off.
- When drive-ready state is switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Display in the speedometer



- Green marking: system is active, the marking indicates the desired speed.
- Grey marking: system is interrupted, the marking indicates the stored speed.
- No marking: system is switched off.

Indicator light

- Indicator light green: system is active.
- Gray indicator light: the system has been interrupted.
- No indicator light: system is switched off.

Displays in the Head-up Display

Some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

The symbol is displayed when the set desired speed is reached.

System limits

The desired speed is also maintained downhill. The speed may not be maintained on uphill grades if the drive power is insufficient.

In ECO PRO drive mode, the vehicle may exceed or drop below the set desired speed in some situations, for instance on downhill or uphill grades.

Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go function ACC

Concept

Using this system, a desired speed and a distance to a vehicle ahead can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel.

The system maintains the desired speed on clear roads. The vehicle accelerates or brakes automatically.

If a vehicle is driving ahead of you, the system adjusts the speed of your vehicle so that the set distance to the vehicle ahead is maintained. The speed is adjusted as far as the given situation allows.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3685
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

General information

Depending on the vehicle setting, the cruise control settings may change under certain conditions. For instance, acceleration can change depending on the driving mode.

The distance can be adjusted in several steps. For safety reasons, it depends on the respective speed.

If the vehicle ahead of you brakes to a halt, and then proceeds to drive again within a brief period, the system is able to detect this within the given system limits.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

The desired speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Risk of accident due to too high speed differences to other vehicles, for instance in the following situations:

- When fast approaching a slowly moving vehicle.
- Vehicle suddenly swerving into own lane.
- When fast approaching standing vehicles.

There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Cruise control on/off.
	Store/maintain speed.
	Pause cruise control. Continue cruise control with the last setting.
	With steering and traffic jam assistant: Adjust distance.
	Without steering and traffic jam assistant: Reduce distance.

Button	Function
	Without steering and traffic jam assistant: Increase the distance.
	Rocker switch: Set speed.
	With steering and traffic jam assistant: Steering and traffic jam assistant including Traffic Jam Assist on/off.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windshield.
- Front radar sensor.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Area of application

The system is best used on well-constructed roads.

The minimum speed that can be set is 20 mph/30 km/h.

The maximum speed that can be set is limited and, e.g., depends on the vehicle and the vehicle equipment version.

Higher speeds can be selected if the system is switched to cruise control without distance control.

The system can also be activated when stationary.

Switching on/off and interrupting cruise control

Switching on

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster light up and the mark in the speedometer is set to the current speed.

Cruise control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

Switching off

To switch off the system while standing, step on brake pedal at the same time.

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

Interrupting manually

When active, press the button on the steering wheel.

If interrupting the system while stationary, press on the brake pedal at the same time.

Interrupting automatically

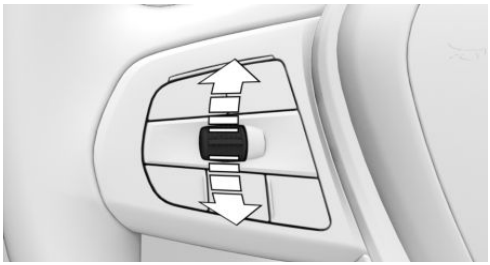
The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations:

- When the driver applies the brakes.
- When selector lever position D is disengaged.
- Dynamic Traction Control DTC is activated or DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.
- If DSC Dynamic Stability Control intervenes.
- If the safety belt and the driver's door are opened while the vehicle is standing still.
- If the system has not detected objects for an extended period, for instance on a road with very little traffic without curb or shoulder markings.
- If the detection range of the radar is impaired, for instance by dirt or heavy fog.
- After a longer stationary period when the vehicle has been braked to a stop by the system.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3687
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Setting the speed

Maintaining and storing the speed



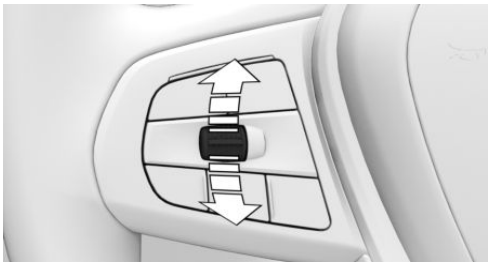
Press the rocker switch up or down once while the system is interrupted. The system will be activated.

The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

The stored speed is displayed on the speedometer.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

Changing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

- Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the desired speed increases or decreases by 1 mph/1 km/h.
- Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

Hold the rocker switch in position to repeat the action.

Adjusting the distance

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to the system limits, braking can be late. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Be aware to the traffic situation at all times. Adjust the distance to the traffic and weather conditions and maintain the prescribed safety distance, possibly by braking.

With steering and traffic jam assistant: adjusting distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Without steering and traffic jam assistant: reducing distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Instrument cluster will display selected distance.

Without steering and traffic jam assistant: increasing distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Instrument cluster will display selected distance.

Continuing cruise control

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed.

Make sure that the difference between current speed and stored speed is not too large before calling up the stored speed. Otherwise, unintentional braking or accelerating may occur.

RES CANCEL Press the button with the system interrupted.

Cruise control is continued with the stored values.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- When the system is switched off.
- When drive-ready state is switched off.

Changing between cruise control with/without distance control

Safety information

Warning

The system does not react to traffic driving ahead of you, but instead maintains the stored speed. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions and brake as needed.

Changing to cruise control without distance control

Distance control can be switched off and on when driving with cruise control activated.

With steering and traffic jam assistant: press and hold this button.

Without steering and traffic jam assistant:

Press and hold this button.

Press and hold this button.

In order to switch back to Cruise control with distance control, press the button again.

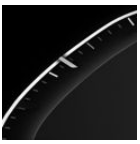
After switching, a Check Control message is displayed.

Displays in the instrument cluster

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the displays in the instrument cluster may vary.

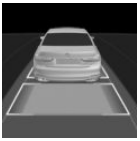
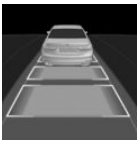
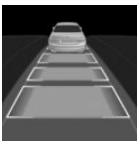
Display in the speedometer



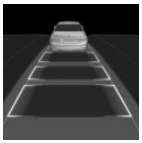
- Green marking: system is active, the marking indicates the desired speed.
- Grey marking: system is interrupted, the marking indicates the stored speed.
- No marking: system is switched off.

Distance to vehicle ahead of you

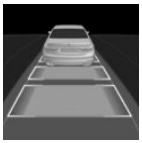
Selected distance to the vehicle ahead of you is shown.

Symbol	Description
	Distance 1
	Distance 2
	Distance 3

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3689
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Symbol	Description
	Distance 4 This value is set automatically after the system is switched on.
	No distance control display, as the accelerator pedal is being pressed.

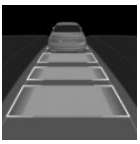
Detected vehicle

Symbol	Description
	Green symbol: A vehicle has been detected ahead of you.

When the distance to the detected vehicle increases, the vehicle symbol in the distance display will move away.

If necessary, independent drive-off, such as by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by pressing the rocker switch.

Indicator/warning lights

Symbol	Description
	Indicator light green: system is active. No indicator light: system is switched off.
	Vehicle symbol flashes: The conditions are not adequate for the system to work. The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.
	The vehicle symbol and distance bars flash red and an acoustic signal sounds: Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.
	System interrupted.

Displays in the Head-up Display

Desired speed

Some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

The symbol is displayed when the set desired speed is reached.

Distance information

The symbol is displayed when the distance from the vehicle traveling ahead is too short.

The distance information is active in the following situations:

- Active Cruise Control switched off.
- Display in the Head-up Display selected.
  Head-Up Display, refer to page 153.
- Distance too short.
- Speed greater than approx. 40 mph/70 km/h.

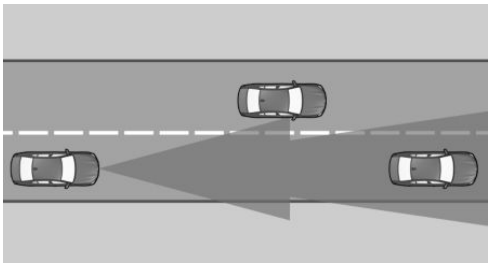
System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 37.
- Radar sensors, refer to page 38.

Detection range



The detection capacity of the system and the automatic braking capacity are limited.

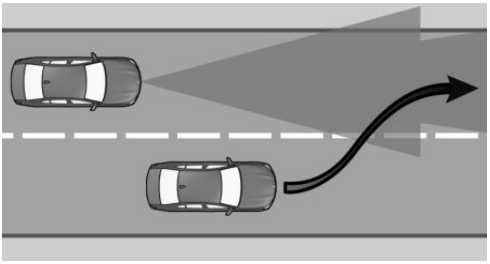
Two-wheeled vehicles for instance might not be detected.

Deceleration

The system does not decelerate in the following situations:

- For pedestrians or similarly slow-moving road users.
- Depending on the equipment, with red traffic lights.
- For cross traffic.
- For oncoming traffic.

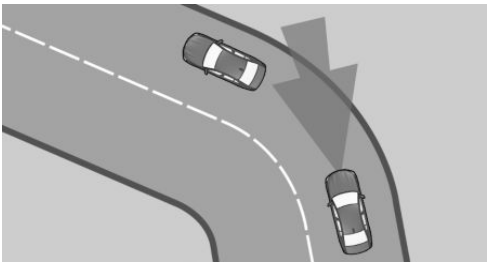
Merging vehicles



A vehicle driving in front of you is not detected until it is completely within the same lane as your vehicle.

If a vehicle driving ahead of you suddenly merges into your lane, the system may not be able to automatically restore the selected distance. It may not be possible to restore the selected distance in certain situations, including if you are driving significantly faster than vehicles driving ahead of you, for instance when rapidly approaching a truck. When a vehicle driving ahead of you is reliably detected, the system requests that the driver intervene by braking and carrying out evasive maneuvers, if needed.

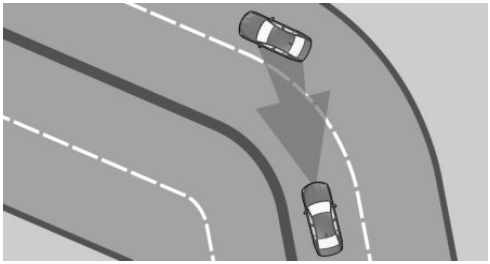
Cornering



When the desired speed is too high for a curve, the speed is reduced slightly. Because curves may not be anticipated in advance, drive into a curve at an appropriate speed.

The system has a limited detection range. Situations can arise in tight curves where a vehicle driving ahead will not be detected or will be detected very late.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3691
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20



When you approach a curve the system may briefly report vehicles in the next lane due to the bend of the curve. If the system decelerates you may compensate it by briefly accelerating. After releasing the accelerator pedal the system is reactivated and controls speed independently.

Driving off

In some situations, the vehicle cannot drive off automatically; for example:

- On steep uphill grades.
- In front of bumps in the road.

In these cases, step on the accelerator pedal.

Weather

The following restrictions can occur under unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- Poorer vehicle recognition.
- Short-term interruptions for vehicles that are already recognized.

Drive attentively, and react to the current traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for instance by braking, steering or evading.

Drive power

The desired speed is also maintained downhill. The speed may not be maintained on uphill grades if the drive power is insufficient.

In ECO PRO drive mode, the vehicle may exceed or drop below the set desired speed in some situations, for instance on downhill or uphill grades.

Steering assistant

Concept

The system assists the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane. For this purpose, the system executes supporting steering movements, for instance when driving in a curve.

General information

Depending on the speed, the system orients itself according to the lane markings or vehicles in front.

Sensors on the steering wheel detect whether the steering wheel is being touched.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Steering and traffic jam assistant on/off.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windshield.
- Front radar sensor.

- Radar sensors, side, front.
- Radar sensors, side, rear.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Functional requirements

- Speed below 130 mph/210 km/h.
- Sufficient lane width.
- Above approx. 43 mph, 70 km/h: lane marking on both sides is detected.
- Below approx. 43 mph, 70 km/h: lane marking on both sides or a vehicle driving ahead is detected.
- Hands on the steering wheel rim.
- Wide curves.
- Drive in the center of the lane.
- Turn signal switched off.
- The sensor system calibration process is complete.

Switching on/off

Switching on

Press the button on the steering wheel.

Steering wheel symbol lights up gray.

The system is on standby and does not manipulate steering.

System activates automatically as soon as all function conditions are fulfilled.

Steering wheel symbol lights up green.

The system is active.

With the system switched on, the person warning with City braking function and the side collision mitigation are active.

Switching off

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator goes out.

The system does not perform supportive steering wheel movements.

Interrupting automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations, for example:

- At a speed above 130 mph/210 km/h.
- When the steering wheel is released.
- When you manipulate steering.
- When leaving own lane.
- When the turn signal is switched on.
- When the lane is too narrow.
- If for a particular time no lane marking is detected and there is no vehicle driving in front.

Steering wheel symbol lights up gray.

The system is on standby and does not manipulate steering.

System activates automatically as soon as all function conditions are fulfilled.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Description
	Gray steering wheel symbol: The system is on standby.
	Green steering wheel symbol: The system is activated.
	Depending on equipment, yellow flashing steering wheel symbol: Lane marking driven over. The steering wheel vibrates where applicable.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3693
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Symbol	Description
	Yellow steering wheel symbol and a signal sounds, if applicable: System interruption is imminent.
	Depending on equipment, steering wheel symbol flashes red, signal sounds: System is switching off.
	Green steering wheel symbol and lane marking symbol: The system supports the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane.
	Green steering wheel symbol, gray lane marking symbol: No lane marking detected, the vehicle follows the vehicle ahead. The limits of steering support when cornering may have been reached.
	Yellow steering wheel symbol: The hands are not grasping the steering wheel. The system is still active.
	Red steering wheel symbol and a signal sounds: The hands are not grasping the steering wheel. System interruption is imminent. It is possible that the system will not execute any supporting steering movements. With Active Cruise Control, the system may reduce the speed.

Displays in the Head-up Display

All system information can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

System limits

General information

The system cannot be activated or meaningfully used in certain situations.

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 37.
- Radar sensors, refer to page 38.

Hands on the steering wheel

The sensors cannot detect hand-steering wheel contact in the following situations:

- Driving with gloves.
- Protective covers on the steering wheel.

Narrow lanes

When driving within narrow lanes, the system cannot be activated or effectively used, for instance in the following situations:

- In construction areas.
- Depending on the equipment, with automatic formation of emergency lanes.
- Within city limits.

Weather

The following restrictions can occur under unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- Poorer recognition of vehicles and lane markings.
- Short-term interruptions for vehicles that are already recognized.

Drive attentively, and react to the current traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for instance by braking, steering or evading.

Parking assistance systems

Concept

The parking assistance systems support the driver in parking and maneuvering.

General information

The parking assistance systems comprise the following individual systems.

Additional information:

- PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 206.
- Depending on equipment version: emergency brake function, Active PDC, refer to page 209.
- Side parking aid, refer to page 210.
- Without Surround View: rearview camera, refer to page 210.
- Parking assistant, refer to page 213.
- Surround View with rearview camera, refer to page 217.
- Panorama View, refer to page 222.
- Remote 3D View, refer to page 224.
- Cross traffic warning, refer to page 225.

PDC Park Distance Control

Concept

PDC is a support when parking. Objects that you are approaching slowly in front of or behind the vehicle are indicated by signal tones and a display on the Control Display.

Depending on the equipment version: obstacles at the side of the vehicle that are detected by the side ultrasonic sensors may also be reported by the side parking aid.

General information

The range of the system, depending on obstacles and environmental conditions, is approx. 6 ft/2 m.

An acoustic warning sounds in case of an impending collision at a distance to the object of approx. 27 in/70 cm.

For objects behind the vehicle, the acoustic warning is already issued at a distance to the object of approx. 5 ft/1.50 m.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

⚠ Warning

Due to high speeds when PDC Park Distance Control is activated, the warning can be delayed due to physical circumstances. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Avoid approaching an object too fast. Avoid

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3695
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

driving off fast while PDC Park Distance Control is not yet active.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Ultrasound sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Depending on the equipment: ultrasonic sensors on the side.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system switches on automatically in the following situations:

- If selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.
- Depending on the equipment version: while approaching detected obstacles if the speed is slower than approx. 2.5 mph/4 km/h. The activation distance depends on the situation in question.

You may switch automatic activation when obstacles are detected on and off.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. If necessary, "Automatic PDC Activation"
6. "Automatic PDC Activation"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Depending on equipment, an additional camera view is also switched on.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on, if needed.

Switching on/off manually

Press the park assistance button.

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

The rearview camera image is displayed if the reverse gear is engaged when pressing the park assistance button.

Depending on the equipment version, the system cannot be switched off manually if the reverse gear is engaged.

Warning

Signal tones

General information

An intermittent tone indicates when the vehicle is approaching an object. E.g., when an object is detected to the left rear of the vehicle, a signal tone sounds from the left rear speaker.

The shorter the distance to the object, the shorter the intervals.

When the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 8 in/20 cm, a continuous tone is sounded.

When there are objects in front of and behind the vehicle at the same time, with a distance smaller than approx. 8 in/20 cm, an alternating constant tone will sound.

Steptronic transmission: the intermittent tone and constant tone are switched off if the selector lever position P is engaged.

The intermittent tone is switched off after a short time when the vehicle is stationary.

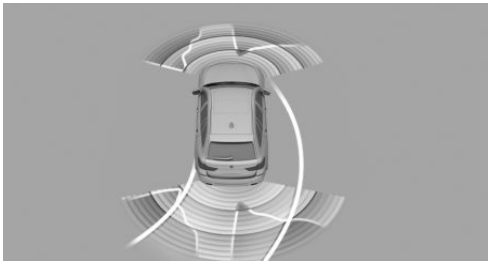
Volume

The PDC signal tone volume can be adjusted.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. "Volume PDC signal"
6. Set the desired value.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Visual warning



The approach of the vehicle to an object is shown on the Control Display. Objects that are farther away are already displayed on the Control Display before a signal sounds.

The display appears as soon as PDC is activated.

The range of the sensors is represented in the colors green, yellow and red when obstacles are detected.

Lanes are faded in for better estimation of the required space.

When the image of the rearview camera is displayed, the switch can be made to PDC or to a different view with obstacle markings as needed:

1. Press the Controller to the left, if needed.
2. For instance "Park. sensors only"

Cross traffic warning: depending on the equipment, it is warned in the PDC display against vehicles approaching in the front or rear from the side.

Additional information:

Cross traffic warning, refer to page 225.

System limits

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

▷ Ultrasonic sensors, refer to page 39.

Limits of ultrasonic measurement

The detection of objects with ultrasonic measurements can run into physical limits, e.g., in the following situations:

▷ With obstacles and persons at the edge of the lane.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3697
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

- Low objects already displayed, for instance curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.

False warnings

Reaching the system limits can cause false warnings.

To prevent false alarms, switch off automatic Park Distance Control PDC activation on obstacle detection, for instance in automatic car washes.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

White symbol is displayed, and the range of the sensors is dimmed on the Control Display.

PDC Park Distance Control has failed. Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Depending on equipment version: emergency brake function, Active PDC

Concept

The emergency braking function of PDC initiates an emergency braking in case of acute risk of collision.

General information

Due to system limits, a collision cannot be prevented under all circumstances.

The function is available below walking speed when driving in reverse or rolling backward.

A press of the accelerator pedal interrupts the brake intervention.

After emergency braking to a stop, further creeping toward an obstacle is possible. Proceed with caution. To move forward, lightly press the accelerator pedal and release as needed.

If the accelerator pedal is depressed longer, the vehicle drives off. Manual braking is possible at any time.

The system uses the ultrasonic sensors of the Park Distance Control PDC and the Parking Assistant.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Additionally, the Safety Instructions for the PDC Park Distance Control and the Automatic Parking Assistant apply.

Additional information:

- PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 206.
- Parking assistant, refer to page 213.

Settings

It is possible to set which areas on the vehicle will be protected by the system.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. "Active PDC with braking interv."
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3698

System limits

The limits of the systems of the Park Distance Control PDC and the Parking Assistant apply.

The system cannot be used in the following situations, for example:

- When Hill Descent Control is active, the emergency braking function is deactivated.

  Hill Descent Control HDC, refer to page 192.

If required, deactivate the system via iDrive where applicable.

With Parking Assistant: side parking aid

Concept

The system warns of obstacles on the side of the vehicle.

General information

The system uses the ultrasonic sensors of the Park Distance Control PDC and the Parking Assistant.

Safety information

Warning

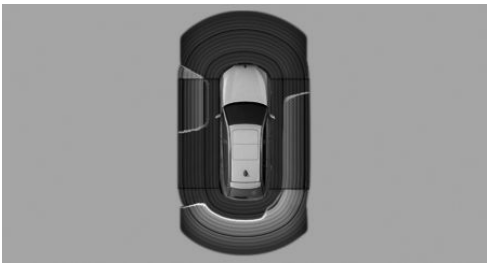
The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Additionally, the Safety Instructions for the PDC Park Distance Control and the Automatic Parking Assistant apply.

Additional information:

- PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 206.
- Parking assistant, refer to page 213.

Display



To protect the sides of the vehicle, obstacle markings are displayed on the sides of the vehicle.

- Color markings: warning against detected obstacles.
- Gray markings, hatched area: no obstacles were detected.
- No markings, black area: the area next to the vehicle was not yet captured.

Limits of the side parking aid

The system only displays stationary obstacles that were previously detected by sensors while passing them.

The system does not detect whether an obstacle moves later on. If the vehicle is stationary, the markings are shown in black after a certain time. The area next to the vehicle must be newly captured.

Additionally, the limits of the systems of the Park Distance Control PDC and the Parking Assistant apply.

Without Surround View: rearview camera

Concept

The rearview camera provides assistance in parking and maneuvering backwards. The area behind the vehicle is shown on the Control Display.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3699
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Additionally, assistance functions can be shown in the display, e.g., help lines.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Depending on the vehicle equipment: button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Rearview camera.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is switched on automatically if selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on, if needed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment: switching on/off manually

Press the park assistance button.

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

The parking assistance functions are shown on the Control Display.

Switching the view via iDrive

If the rearview camera view is not displayed, change the view via iDrive:

1. If necessary, tilt the controller to the side.
2. "Rear view camera"

The rearview camera image is displayed.

Functional requirements

- The tailgate is fully closed.
- Keep the recording range of the camera open. Protruding cargo, roof rack systems or trailers can limit the detection range of the camera.

Display on the Control Display

Function bars

The assistance functions can be activated manually via the function bars on the sides of the Control Display.

1. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.
2. With corresponding equipment: "Camera image"
3. "Parking aid lines".

Pathway lines and turning radius lines are displayed.

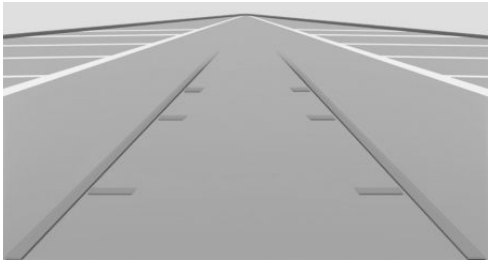
▷ "Obstacle mark.".

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the obstacles detected by PDC Park Distance Control are displayed by markings.

More than one assistance function can be active at the same time.

Parking aid lines

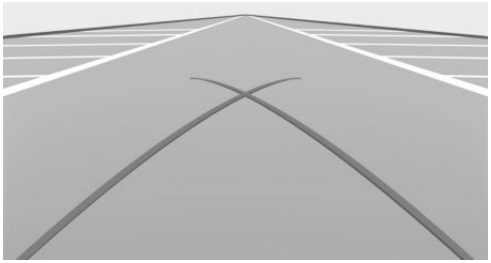
Pathway lines



Pathway lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.

Pathway lines depend on the steering angle and are continuously adjusted to the steering wheel movements.

Turning radius lines



Turning radius lines can only be superimposed on the camera image together with pathway lines.

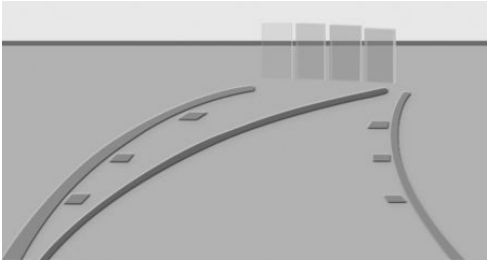
Turning radius lines show the course of the smallest possible turning radius on a level road.

Only one turning radius line is displayed after the steering wheel is turned past a certain angle.

Parking using pathway and turning radius lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the red turning radius line leads to within the limits of the parking space.
2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the green pathway line covers the corresponding turning radius line.

Obstacle marking



Depending on the vehicle equipment, obstacles behind the vehicle are detected by the PDC Park Distance Control sensors.

Obstacle markings can be faded into the image of the rearview camera.

The colored thresholds of the obstacle markings match the markings of the PDC Park Distance Control.

Setting brightness and contrast via iDrive

With the rearview camera switched on:

1. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.
2. "Camera image"
3. To perform the desired setting:
   ▷ "Brightness"
   ▷ "Contrast"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3701
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 37.

Deactivated camera

When the camera is deactivated, for instance when the tailgate is open, the camera image is displayed hatched in gray.

Detection of objects

Very low obstacles as well as high, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected by the system.

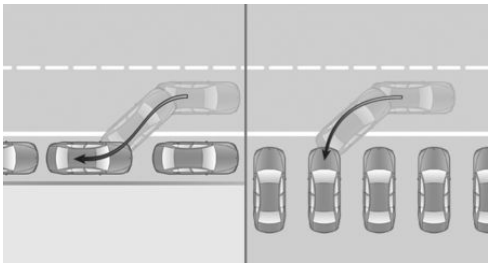
Depending on the vehicle equipment, some assistance functions also consider data from the PDC Park Distance Control.

Follow the notes in the PDC Park Distance Control chapter.

The objects displayed on the Control Display may be closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance from the objects on the display.

With Parking Assistant: Parking Assistant

Concept



The system supports the driver in the following situations:

- When parking parallel to the road, parallel parking.
- When reverse parking diagonally to the road, diagonal parking. The system orients itself with the middle of the parking space during diagonal parking.

General information

Handling

Parking assistant handling is divided into three steps:

- Switching on and activating.
- Parking space search.
- Parking.

System status and instructions on required actions are displayed on the Control Display.

Ultrasound sensors measure parking spaces on both sides of the vehicle.

Steptronic transmission

The parking assistant calculates the best possible parking line and takes control of the following functions during the parking operation:

- Steering.
- Accelerating and braking.
- Changing gears.

Press and hold the park assistance button for the duration of the parking operation.

The parking operation is automatic.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3702
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

NOTICE

The parking assistant can steer the vehicle over or onto curbs. There is a risk of damage to property. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

The safety information for PDC Park Distance Control and for opening the tailgate applies in addition.

Additional information:

- PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 206.
- Tailgate, refer to page 93.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Ultrasound sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors, side.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Functional requirements

For measuring parking spaces

- Maximum speed while driving forward approx. 22 mph/35 km/h.
- Maximum distance to row of parked vehicles: 5 ft/1.5 m.

Suitable parking space

General information:

- Gap behind an object that has a min. length of 1.7 ft/0.5 m.
- Gap between two objects with a minimum length of approx. 1.7 ft/0.5 m.

Parallel parking to the road:

- Min. length of gap between two objects: your vehicle's length plus approx. 2.6 ft/0.8 m.
- Minimum depth: approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.

Diagonal parking:

- Minimum width of the gap: own vehicle's width plus approx. 2.3 ft/0.7 m.
- Minimum depth: your vehicle's length.

  The depth of diagonal parking spaces must be estimated by the driver. Due to technical limitations, the system is only able to approximate the depth of diagonal parking spaces.

For the parking operation

- Doors and tailgate are closed.
- The parking brake is released.

Steptronic transmission:

- Driver's safety belt is fastened.

Switching on with the button

Press the park assistance button.

The LED lights up.

The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.

Parking assistant is activated automatically.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3703
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Switching on with reverse gear

1. Shift into reverse.

   The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.
2. If necessary, activate: "Autom. Parking"

Switching on via iDrive

Display of the rearview camera or PDC view must be active.

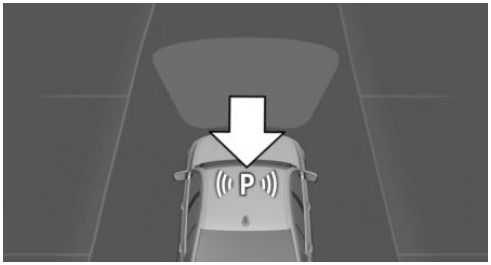
1. Move the Controller to the right.
2. Activate the parking assistant on the Control Display: "Autom. Parking"

Display on the Control Display

System activated/deactivated

Symbol	Meaning
	Gray: the system is not available. White: the system is available but not activated.
	System is activated.
	Parking space search is active.
	The parking procedure is active. The system takes over the steering.

Parking space search and system status



▷ Parking assistant is activated and parking space search is active.

▷ Control Display shows suitable parking spaces at the edge of the road next to the vehicle symbol. When Park Assistant is active, suitable parking spaces are highlighted and an acoustic signal sounds.

▷ If a diagonal or parallel parking space is clearly detected, the system automatically adjusts the suitable parking method. In the case of parking spaces suitable for parallel and diagonal parking, a selection menu is displayed. In this case, the desired parking method must be selected manually.

▷ The parking procedure is active. The system takes over the steering.

▷ Parking space search is always active whenever the vehicle is moving forward slow and straight, even if the system is deactivated. When the system is deactivated, the displays on the Control Display are shown in gray.

Switching signal tone for suitable parking spaces on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. "Automatic Parking"
6. "Alert if parking space detected"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Signal tones of the PDC Park Distance Control

During an automatic parking operation, no intermittent tone will sound from the PDC Park Distance Control.

A continuous tone sounds when the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 8 inches/20 cm.

Parking using the parking assistant

Parking

1. Switching on and activating the parking assistant.

   For this, engage the reverse gear or press the parking assist button and activate the system on the Control Display, if needed.

   Parking assistant is activated.
2. Pass the row of parked vehicles forward at a speed of up to approx. 22 mph/35 km/h and at a distance of maximum 5 ft/1.5 m.

   The status of the parking space search and possible parking spaces are displayed on the Control Display.
3. Confirm the suggested parking space for the parking operation: switch on the turn signal on the corresponding side.

   The system takes over the steering.
4. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

   Steptronic transmission:

   Press and hold the park assistance button for the duration of the parking operation. At the end of the parking operation, the P selector lever position is set.

   The end of the parking operation is indicated on the Control Display.
5. Adjust the parking position yourself, if needed.

Interrupting manually

The parking assistant can be interrupted at any time:

- Steptronic transmission: release the park assistance button during the parking procedure.
- "Autom. Parking": select the symbol on the Control Display.

Interrupting automatically

The system is interrupted automatically in the following situations:

- When the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes over steering.
- Possibly on snow-covered or slippery road surfaces.
- When there are obstacles that are hard to overcome, such as curbs.
- When there are obstacles that suddenly appear.
- If the PDC Park Distance Control displays clearances that are too small.
- When a maximum number of parking attempts or the time taken for parking is exceeded.
- When switching to another function on the Control Display.

Steptronic transmission:

- When the park assistance button is released.
- If the tailgate is open.
- If doors are open.
- When setting the parking brake.
- During acceleration.
- When the brake pedal remains pressed for an extended period while the vehicle is stationary.
- When unfastening the driver's safety belt.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Resuming

An interrupted parking procedure can be continued, if needed.

Reactivate the parking assistant and follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Switching off

The system can be switched off manually:

Press the park assistance button.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3705
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

No parking assistance

The parking assistant does not offer assistance in the following situations:

- In tight curves.
- For diagonal parking spaces.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Ultrasonic sensors, refer to page 39.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- On bumpy road surfaces such as gravel roads.
- On slippery ground.
- On steep uphill or downhill grades.
- With accumulations of leaves/snow in the parking space.
- With a mounted emergency wheel.
- In case of changes to an already-measured parking space.
- With ditches or edges, for instance an edge of a port.
- Parking spaces that are not suitable may be detected or suitable parking spaces may not be detected at all.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

The parking assistant failed. Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

With Parking Assistant Plus: Surround View

Concept

The system provides assistance in parking and maneuvering. The area around the vehicle is shown on the Control Display.

General information

Several cameras capture the area from different selectable perspectives.

The following camera perspectives can be displayed:

- Automatic camera perspective: the system shows the camera perspective suitable for the respective driving situation.
- Rearview camera: for representing the areas behind the vehicle.
- Right-hand and left-hand side view: for representing the areas on the sides of the vehicle.
- Unobstructed camera perspective, movable via iDrive.
- Panorama View: to present cross traffic, for instance at junctions and driveways, depending on the currently engaged gear.

Depending on the view, the vehicle's surroundings or a part of it is depicted.

Additionally, assistance functions are shown in the display, e.g., help lines.

More than one assistance function can be active at the same time.

Some assistance functions can be manually activated.

The following assistance functions are automatically displayed:

- Side parking aid.
- Door opening angle.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Panorama View

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Front camera.
- Top view cameras.
- Rearview camera.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is switched on automatically if selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.

The camera perspective suitable for the respective driving situation is displayed.

Additional information:

Park Distance Control, turn on/off, refer to page 207.

Switching on/off manually

Press the park assistance button.

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

Depending on the equipment version, the rear-view camera cannot be switched off when the reverse gear is engaged.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

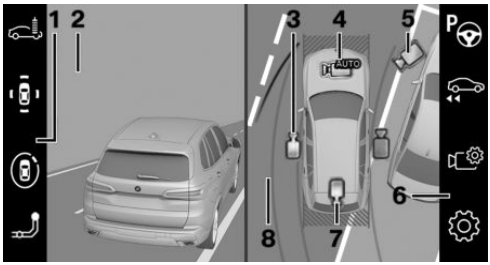
The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on, if needed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3707
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Display on the Control Display

Overview



1 Function bar, left
2 Camera image
3 Side view
4 Automatic camera perspective
5 Movable unobstructed camera perspective
6 Function bar, right
7 Rearview camera
8 Selection window

Function bar on the left

The left function bar can be used for the direct selection of various views via iDrive. Move the Controller to the left, if needed.

- "Car wash".
- "Parking": around the vehicle.
- "3D view": available camera.

Side view

The side view can be selected for the right or left vehicle side.

This view helps when positioning the vehicle at the curb or with other obstacles on the side by displaying the side surroundings.

The side view looks from rear to front and in case of danger, focuses automatically on possible obstacles.

Automatic camera perspective

The automatic camera perspective shows a steering-dependent view in the respective driving direction.

This perspective adapts to the respective driving situation.

As soon as obstacles are detected, the view changes to a fixed display of the area in front or at the rear behind the bumper or, if necessary, changes to a side view.

When reverse gear is engaged, the automatic camera perspective is, if necessary, closed and the system uses a fixed perspective of the rear-view camera. If necessary, manually select the automatic camera perspective when reverse gear is engaged. The automatic camera perspective will be retained for the current parking operation.

Movable unobstructed camera perspective

With selection of the movable camera perspective, a circle appears on the Control Display.

By turning the Controller or via touch function, specified perspectives on the circle can be selected.

The current perspective is marked with a camera symbol.

To leave the function, move the Controller sideways and select another camera function.

Function bar on the right

Assistance functions can be activated and settings can be entered via the right function bar via iDrive. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.

- "Autom. Parking".
- "Back-up Assistant".
- "Camera image":
  - "Brightness".
  - "Contrast".
  - "Parking aid lines".

▷ "Obstacle mark.".

▷ "Settings": apply settings, for instance to use the activation points for Panorama View.

Rearview camera

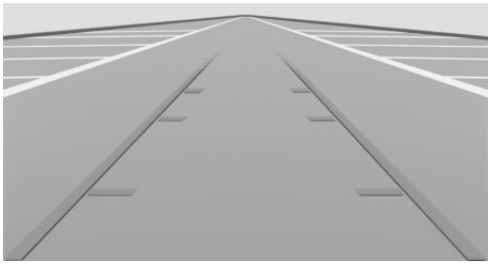
This view shows the picture of the rearview camera.

Selection window

The individual camera perspectives can be selected in the selection window via iDrive.

Parking aid lines

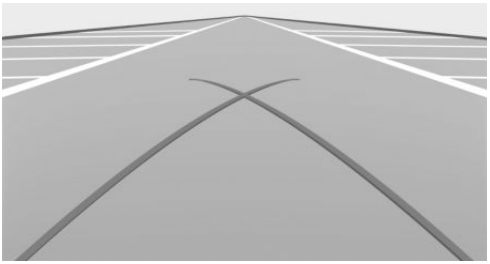
Pathway lines



Pathway lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.

Pathway lines depend on the steering angle and are continuously adjusted to the steering wheel movements.

Turning radius lines



Turning radius lines can only be superimposed on the camera image together with pathway lines.

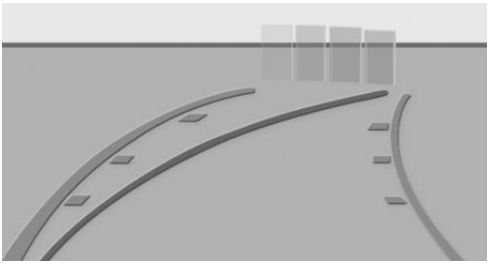
Turning radius lines show the course of the smallest possible turning radius on a level road.

Only one turning radius line is displayed after the steering wheel is turned past a certain angle.

Parking using pathway and turning radius lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the red turning radius line leads to within the limits of the parking space.
2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the green pathway line covers the corresponding turning radius line.

Obstacle marking



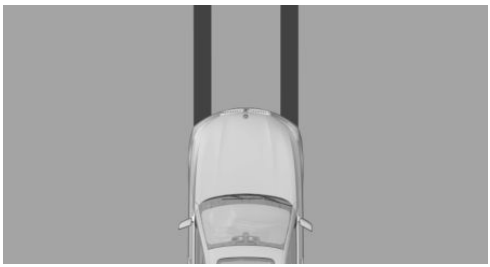
Obstacles behind the vehicle are detected by the PDC Park Distance Control sensors.

Obstacle markings can be shown in the camera image.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3709
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

The colored thresholds of the obstacle markings match the markings of the PDC Park Distance Control.

Car wash view



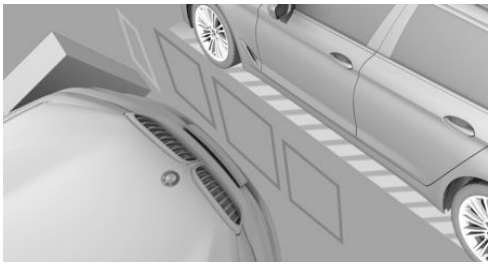
The car wash view assists when entering a car wash by displaying the floor and the vehicle's own track.

Side parking aid

Concept

The system warns of obstacles on the side of the vehicle.

Display



To protect the sides of the vehicle, obstacle markings are displayed on the sides of the vehicle.

- No markings: no obstacles were detected.
- Color markings: warning against detected obstacles.

Limits of the side parking aid

The system only displays stationary obstacles that were previously detected by sensors while passing them.

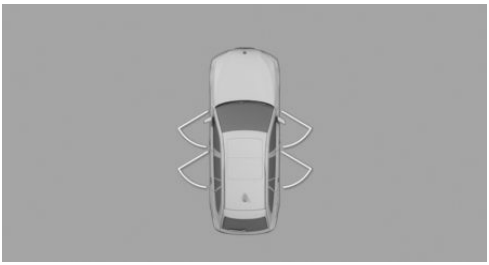
The system does not detect whether an obstacle moves later on. For this reason, at standstill, the markings are not shown anymore in the display after a certain time. The area next to the vehicle must be newly captured.

Door opening angle

Concept

If obstacle marking is activated, the system indicates fixed obstacles that obstruct the opening angles of the doors.

The system does not provide a warning of approaching traffic.



Steptronic transmission: the maximum opening angles of the doors are displayed in selector lever position P. As soon as the vehicle begins moving, the opening angles are replaced by parking aid lines.

Limits of the display

The vehicle's surroundings are displayed with distorted image for technical reasons.

Even if the symbols for the door opening angles do not cross other objects on the Control Display, the following needs to be noted when parking next to other objects:

Because of the perspective, higher, protruding objects may be closer than they appear on the Control Display.

Setting brightness and contrast

Brightness and contrast can be adjusted with Surround View or Panorama View switched on.

1. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.
2. "Camera image"
3. To perform the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Brightness"
   - ▷ "Contrast"

Functional limitations

The system can be used only to a limited extent in the following situations:

- ▷ In poor light.
- ▷ In case of soiled cameras.
- ▷ With a door open.
- ▷ With the tailgate open.
- ▷ With exterior mirrors folded in.

Gray hatched areas with symbol, for instance open door, in the camera image mark areas that are currently not displayed.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- ▷ Cameras, refer to page 37.

Non-visible areas

Because of the camera angle, the areas under the vehicle cannot be viewed by the cameras.

Detection of objects

Very low obstacles as well as high, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected by the system.

Some assistance functions also consider data from the PDC Park Distance Control.

Follow the notes in the PDC Park Distance Control chapter.

The objects displayed on the Control Display may be closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance from the objects on the display.

Additional information:

PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 206.

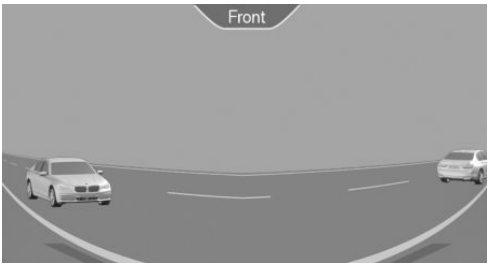
Malfunction

A camera malfunction is displayed on the Control Display.

A yellow symbol is displayed and the recording range of the malfunctioning camera is displayed in black on the Control Display.

With Parking Assistant Plus: Panorama View

Concept



The system provides an early look at cross traffic at blind driveways and intersections.

General information

Road users concealed by obstacles to the left and right of the vehicle can only be detected relatively late from the driver's seat. The cameras in the front and rear capture the sideways traffic area to improve the view.

Yellow lines in the screen display mark the front and rear end of the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3711
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

The camera image shows different levels of distortion in some areas and is thus not suitable for distance estimations.

Depending on the equipment version, the function can only be used when driving forward.

Additional information:

Surround View, refer to page 217.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Panorama View

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Front camera.
- Depending on the equipment: rearview camera.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Display on the Control Display

Press the button when the engine is running.

Depending on the driving direction, the image of the respective camera is displayed:

- "Front": front camera image.
- "Rear": rear camera image.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, cross traffic warning can additionally warn of approaching vehicles using radar sensors.

Additional information:

Cross traffic warning, refer to page 225.

With navigation system: activation points

Concept

Positions where Panorama View should switch on automatically can be stored as activation points provided that a GPS signal is received.

General information

Up to ten activation points can be stored.

Activation points can be used when driving forward for the front camera.

Storing activation points

1. Drive to the position at which the system is to be switched on, and stop.
2. Press the button.
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Activation point"

   The current position is displayed.
5. "Save activation point"

Activation points are, if possible, stored with town/city and street address, or else with the GPS coordinates.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3712

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Using activation points

The use of activation points can be switched on and off.

1. Press the button.
2. Move the Controller to the right.
3. "Settings"
4. "Panorama View, GPS-based"
5. "Panorama View is displayed automatically when set activation points are reached."

Displaying activation points

1. Press the button.
2. Move the Controller to the right.
3. "Manage points"

   A list of all activation points is displayed.

Renaming or deleting activation points

1. Press the button.
2. Move the Controller to the right.
3. "Manage points"

   A list of all activation points is displayed.
4. Select an activation point as needed.
5. To perform the desired setting:
   - "Rename"
   - "Delete activation point"
   - "Delete all activation points"

Functional limitations

The Surround View functional limitations apply.

Additional information:

Surround View, refer to page 217.

System limits

The limits of the Surround View system apply.

Additional information:

Surround View, refer to page 217.

With Parking Assistant Plus: Remote 3D View

Concept

The BMW Connected app and the pictures of the Surround View cameras in combination with the corresponding equipment enable the display of the vehicle's surroundings on a mobile device.

The function displays a momentary view of the situation.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Front camera.
- Top view cameras.
- Rearview camera.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Functional requirements

- Data transmission must be activated.

  Data protection, refer to page 65.
- BMW Connected App must be installed on the mobile device.
- ConnectedDrive countries: an activated driver profile with an existing ConnectedDrive account is required.

  Driver profiles, refer to page 66.

Switching the function on/off

Switching on/off with other functions

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3713
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

4. "Data privacy"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "All services incl. analysis"
   - "All vehicle services"

Switching on/off individually

Pre-adjustment

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. "Select services individually"
6. "Connected App and cust. portal"
7. "Remote 3D View"

Switching on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. "Individual selection"

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 37.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional or may not be available in the following situations:

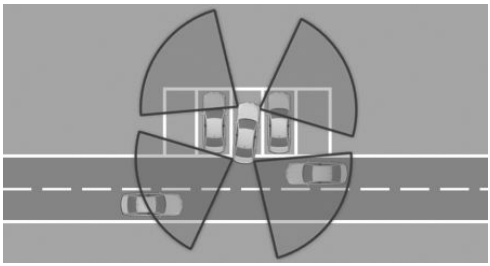
- With a door or the tailgate open. Dark fields in the display indicate areas that are not recorded by the system.
- With exterior mirrors folded in.
- When other camera functions are being performed in the vehicle.
- When the vehicle moves faster than walking speed.
- It may not be possible to use the function in every country.
- For reasons of data protection, the function can only be used three times within two hours.

Cross traffic warning

Concept

At blind driveways or when driving out of diagonal parking spaces, approaching cross traffic is detected sooner by the system than is possible from the driver's seat.

General information



Two radar sensors in the rear bumper monitor the area behind the vehicle.

The system indicates approaching traffic.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the traffic area in front of the vehicle is monitored as well. Two additional radar sensors are located in the front bumpers.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3714
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Radar sensors, side, rear.
- Depending on the equipment: radar sensors, side, front.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Switching on/off

Activating/deactivating the system

With the button

1. Press the park assistance button.
2. Move the Controller to the right.
3. "Settings"
4. "Cross Traffic Warning"
5. "Activate function"

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. "Cross Traffic Warning"
6. "Activate function"

Switching on automatically

If the system was activated on the Control Display, it is automatically switched on as soon as PDC Park Distance Control or Panorama View is active and a gear is engaged.

If reverse gear is engaged, the rear system is switched on.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the front system is switched on when a forward gear is engaged.

Switching off automatically

The system is automatically switched off in the following situations:

- When the speed exceeds walking speed.
- With the steering and traffic jam assistant active: when a certain driving distance is exceeded.
- With an active parking operation of the parking assistant.

Warning

General information

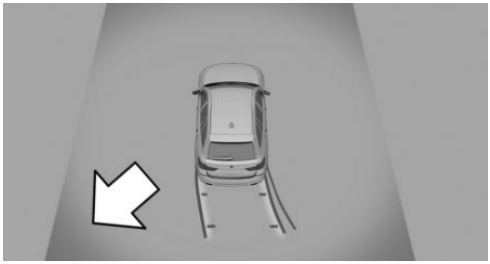
The respective display is called up on the Control Display. A signal tone may sound and the light in the exterior mirror may flash.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3715
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Light in the exterior mirror

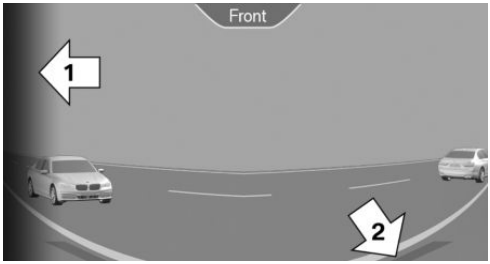
The light in the exterior mirror flashes if vehicles are detected by the rear sensors and your own vehicle is moving backwards.

Display in the PDC Park Distance Control view



In the PDC Park Distance Control view, the respective boundary area flashes red, if vehicles are detected by the sensors.

Display in the camera view



The respective boundary area, arrow 1, in the camera view flashes red, if vehicles are detected by the sensors.

Yellow lines, arrow 2, mark the bumper of your own vehicle.

Acoustic warning

In addition to the optical indicator, a warning signal sounds if your own vehicle moves into the respective direction.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Radar sensors, refer to page 38.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- In tight curves.
- When crossing objects move at a very slow or a very fast speed.
- If other objects are in the capture range of the sensors, that hide cross traffic.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3716

Driving comfort

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Chassis components

The chassis components are optimized for the vehicle and its scope of application and thereby ensure the best possible Driving Dynamics.

Adaptive chassis

Concept

This system reduces undesirable vehicle motion when using a sporty driving style or traveling on uneven road surfaces.

General information

The driving dynamics and driving comfort are enhanced depending on the road surface condition and driving style.

Tuning

The system offers different shock absorber settings ranging from comfortable travel to sporty driving.

The damping settings are assigned to the different drive modes of the Driving Dynamics Control.

Additional information:

Driving Dynamics Control, refer to page 124.

Adaptive M chassis

Concept

The Adaptive M chassis is a controllable sport chassis.

This system reduces undesirable vehicle motion when using a sporty driving style or traveling on uneven road surfaces.

General information

The driving dynamics and driving comfort are enhanced depending on the road surface condition and driving style.

Tuning

The system offers different shock absorber settings ranging from comfortable travel to sporty driving.

The damping settings are assigned to the different drive modes of the Driving Dynamics Control.

Additional information:

Driving Dynamics Control, refer to page 124.

Performance Control

Performance Control enhances the agility of the vehicle.

To increase maneuverability, wheels are braked individually when a sporty driving style is used.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3717
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Engine sound

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, you may be able to configure the sound of the engine.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Engine sound"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3718

Climate control

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Interior air quality

The air quality in the vehicle is improved by the following components:

- Emission tested passenger compartment.
- Microfilter.
- Air conditioning system to control the temperature, air flow and recirculated-air mode.

Depending on the equipment:

- Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter.
- Ionization.
- Fragrancing.
- Automatic recirculated-air control AUC.
- Parked-car ventilation.

Automatic climate control

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

Climate control functions

Button	Function
	Temperature.
	Climate control operation.
	AUTO program.
	Recirculated-air mode.
	Air flow, manual.
	Air distribution, manual.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3719
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Button	Function
	Rear window defroster.
	Seat heating, refer to page 112.

Some of the functions can also be used via voice, e.g., temperature.

Switching on/off

Switching on

Press any button except for the following:

- Rear window defroster.
- Left side of air flow button.
- Seat heating.

Switching off

Press and hold the left button until the system switches off.

Temperature

Concept

The automatic climate control achieves the set temperature as quickly as possible, if needed, by using the maximum cooling or heating capacity, and then keeps it constant.

Adjusting

Turn the wheel to set the desired temperature.

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. Otherwise, the automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

Air conditioning

Concept

The air in the car's interior will be cooled and dehumidified and, depending on the temperature setting, warmed again.

The car's interior can only be cooled with the drive-ready state switched on.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with air conditioning switched on.

Depending on the weather, the windshield and the side windows may fog up briefly when drive-ready state is switched on.

Air conditioning is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops and collects underneath the vehicle.

AUTO program

Concept

The AUTO program cools, ventilates or heats the car's interior automatically.

The air distribution and temperature are controlled automatically depending on the temperature in the car's interior and the desired temperature setting including the selected intensity of the air flow.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the AUTO program switched on.

Depending on the selected temperature and outside influences, the air is directed to the windshield, side windows, upper body, and into the floor area.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3720

The cooling function is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

Point the side vents toward the side windows.

The AUTO program is switched off automatically, when manual air distribution is set.

Recirculated-air mode

Concept

You may react to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air flow within the vehicle.

Operation

Press the button:

The LED is illuminated when recirculated-air mode is switched on. The supply of outside air is shut off.

When recirculated-air mode is switched off, fresh air is directed into the vehicle's interior.

To prevent window fogging, recirculated-air mode switches off automatically after a certain amount of time, depending on the environmental conditions.

With constant recirculated-air mode, the air quality in the car's interior deteriorates and window fogging increases.

If there is window condensation, switch off recirculated-air mode or defog the windows.

Air flow, manual

Concept

The air flow for climate control can be adjusted manually.

Adjusting

Press the left or right side of the button: to decrease or increase air flow.

The intensity is indicated by LEDs. The highest level is active when seven LEDs are lit.

The air flow of the automatic climate control may be reduced automatically to save battery power.

Manual air distribution

Concept

The air distribution for climate control can be adjusted manually.

Adjusting

Turn the wheel to select the desired program or the desired intermediate setting.

- Windows.
- Upper body region.
- Windows, upper body region, and floor area.
- Floor area.

To defrost windows and remove condensation

Concept

Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

Adjusting

Make the following settings to defrost the windows and remove condensation:

- Direct the air distribution onto the windows.
- Increasing the air flow.
- Increase the temperature.
- Switch on the air conditioning if needed.

Rear window defroster

Press the button. The LED lights up.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3721
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

The function is available with the engine running.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

Microfilter

The microfilter removes dust and pollen from the incoming air.

Have this filter changed during vehicle maintenance.

Automatic climate control with enhanced features

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

Climate control functions

Button	Function
	Temperature.
A/C	Climate control operation.
MAX A/C	Maximum cooling.
AUTO	AUTO program.
	Recirculated-air mode.
	Air flow, manual. Intensity AUTO program.
	Air distribution, manual.
SYNC	SYNC program.
	Defrost and defog window.
	Rear window defroster.
	Active seat ventilation, refer to page 113.
	Seat heating, refer to page 112.
MENU	Opening the Climate menu. For example, for the following settings: upper body temperature adjustment, parked-car ventilation.

Some of the functions can also be used via voice, e.g., temperature.

Opening the Climate menu

MENU Press the button.

The Climate menu is displayed.

All the climate control functions which can adjusted via iDrive can be called up via the Climate menu, e.g., upper body temperature adjustment, parked-car ventilation.

Switching on/off

Switching on

Press any button except for the following:

- Rear window defroster.
- Left side of air flow button.
- SYNC program.
- Seat heating.
- Seat ventilation.

Switching off

Press and hold the left button until the system switches off.

Temperature

Concept

The automatic climate control achieves the set temperature as quickly as possible, if needed, by using the maximum cooling or heating capacity, and then keeps it constant.

Adjusting

Turn the wheel to set the desired temperature.

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. Otherwise, the automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

Temperature of the ventilation

General information

The temperature of the ventilation in the upper body region can be adjusted.

The temperature is individually adjusted, e.g. colder toward blue, warmer toward red.

The air flow of the ventilation in the upper body region heats or cools noticeably, depending on the adjusted temperature.

This does not change the set interior temperature for the driver and front passenger.

Adjusting

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Temperature adjustment"
5. Set the desired temperature.

Air conditioning

Concept

The air in the car's interior will be cooled and dehumidified and, depending on the temperature setting, warmed again.

The car's interior can only be cooled with the drive-ready state switched on.

Switching on/off

A/C

Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with air conditioning switched on.

Depending on the weather, the windshield and the side windows may fog up briefly when drive-ready state is switched on.

Air conditioning is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops and collects underneath the vehicle.

Maximum cooling

Concept

The system is set to the lowest temperature, optimum air flow and recirculated-air mode with the drive-ready state switched on.

General information

The function is available with external temperatures above approx. 32 °F/0 °C and with the drive-ready state switched on.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3723
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Switching on/off

MAX A/C Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the system switched on.

Air flows out of the vents to the upper body region. The vents need to be open for this.

Adjust air flow on the driver's side with the program active.

AUTO program

Concept

The AUTO program cools, ventilates or heats the car's interior automatically.

The air distribution and temperature are controlled automatically depending on the temperature in the car's interior and the desired temperature setting including the selected intensity of the air flow.

Switching on/off

AUTO Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the AUTO program switched on.

Depending on the selected settings and outside influences, the air is directed to the windshield, side windows, upper body, and into the floor area.

Air conditioning is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

Point the side vents toward the side windows.

At the same time, a condensation sensor controls the program so as to prevent window condensation as much as possible.

The AUTO program is switched off automatically, when manual air distribution is set.

Intensity

With the AUTO program switched on, the intensity can be adjusted. This changes the automatic control for the air mass.

Press the left or right side of the button: to decrease or increase intensity.

The selected intensity is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

Automatic recirculated-air control AUC

Concept

The automatic recirculated-air control AUC recognizes odors or pollutants in the outside air. The outside air supply is shut off and the interior air is recirculated.

General information

If the system is activated, a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and controls the shut-off automatically.

If the system is deactivated, outside air continuously flows into the car's interior.

With constant recirculated-air mode, the air quality in the car's interior deteriorates and window fogging increases.

Switching on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. If necessary, "Air quality"
5. "Auto-recirculate"

If there is window condensation, switch off recirculated-air mode or defog the windows.

Recirculated-air mode

Concept

You may react to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air flow within the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3724

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Adjusting

Press the button:

The LED is illuminated when recirculated-air mode is switched on. The supply of outside air is shut off.

When recirculated-air mode is switched off, fresh air is directed into the vehicle's interior.

To prevent window fogging, recirculated-air mode switches off automatically after a certain amount of time, depending on the environmental conditions.

With constant recirculated-air mode, the air quality in the car's interior deteriorates and window fogging increases.

If there is window condensation, switch off recirculated-air mode or defog the windows.

Air flow, manual

Concept

The air flow for climate control can be adjusted manually.

General information

To adjust the air flow manually switch off AUTO program first.

Adjusting

Press the left or right side of the button: to decrease or increase air flow.

The selected air flow is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

The air flow of the automatic climate control may be reduced automatically to save battery power.

Manual air distribution

Concept

The air distribution for climate control can be adjusted manually.

Adjusting

Press the button repeatedly to select a program:

- Windows, upper body region, and floor area.
- Upper body region and floor area.
- Floor area.
- Windows and floor area.
- Windows: driver's side only.
- Windows and upper body.
- Upper body region.

The selected air distribution is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

SYNC program

Concept

The following settings of the driver's side can be transferred to the front-passenger side and the rear:

- Temperature.
- Air distribution.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the SYNC program switched on.

The program is switched off automatically if the settings on the front passenger side or in the rear are changed.

To defrost windows and remove condensation

Concept

Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3725
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Switching on/off

Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the system switched on.

The air flow can be adjusted manually with the system switched on.

If there is window condensation, press the button or switch on the air conditioning to utilize the condensation sensor. Make sure that air can flow to the windshield.

Rear window defroster

Press the button. The LED lights up.

The function is operational when the drive-ready state is switched on.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter

The microfilter removes dust and pollen from the incoming air.

The activated-charcoal filter also removes gaseous pollutants from the outside air that enters the vehicle.

Have this combined filter changed during vehicle maintenance.

Ventilation

Concept

The air flow directions can be individually adjusted.

Adjusting the ventilation

General information

The air flow directions can be adjusted for direct or indirect ventilation.

Open the vents and position them to ensure effective climate control.

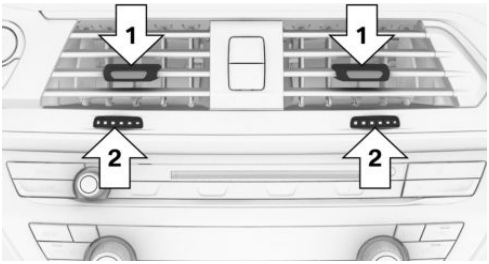
Direct ventilation

The air flow is directed towards the passengers. The air flow heats or cools noticeably, depending on the adjusted temperature.

Indirect ventilation

The air flow is not directed towards the passengers. The car's interior is warmed or cooled indirectly, depending on the set temperature.

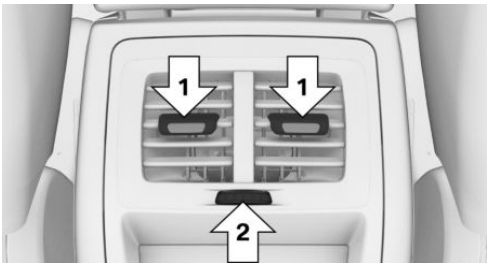
Front ventilation



- Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 1.
- Thumbwheel for variable opening and closing of the vents, arrow 2.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3726

Ventilation in rear, center



- Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 1.
- Thumbwheel for variable opening and closing of the vents, arrow 2.

Rear automatic climate control

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

Climate control functions

Button	Function
▼ ▲	Temperature.
AUTO	AUTO program.
	Air distribution, manual.
OFF	Switches off the system.
	Seat heating, refer to page 112.

Switching on/off

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Rear climate control"

The rear automatic climate control is not ready for operation if the automatic climate control is switched off or if the function for defrosting the windows and removing condensation is active.

Using the button: switching on

Press any button except for the following:

- OFF button.
- Seat heating.

Using the button: switching off

OFF Press the button.

Temperature

Concept

The automatic climate control achieves the set temperature as quickly as possible, if needed, by using the maximum cooling or heating capacity, and then keeps it constant.

Adjusting

▼ ▲ Press the left or right side of the button: to decrease or increase temperature.

The selected temperature is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3727
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. Otherwise, the automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

AUTO program

Concept

Air flow, air distribution and temperature are controlled automatically.

Switching on/off

AUTO Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the AUTO program switched on.

Depending on the selected temperature and outside influences, the air is directed to the upper body and into the floor area.

Manual air distribution

Concept

The air distribution for climate control can be adjusted manually.

Adjusting

Press the button repeatedly to select a program:

- Upper body region.
- Upper body region and floor area.
- Floor area.

Parked-car ventilation

Concept

The car's interior can be cooled or heated before driving off with the parked-car ventilation. Depending on set temperature and ambient temperature, the car's interior is ventilated or possibly heated using the residual engine heat.

General information

The system can be switched on and off directly or via a preset departure time.

The activation time is determined based on the external temperature. The system promptly switches on before the selected departure time.

Functional requirements

- The vehicle is in idle state or standby state and not in drive-ready state.
- The battery is sufficiently charged.

  If parked-car ventilation is switched on, the vehicle battery will be discharged. Thus, limit the maximum activation time to save the vehicle battery. The system will be available again after the engine is started or after a short trip.
- Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.
- Open the vents to allow air to flow out.

Switching on/off directly

General information

There are different ways to switch the system on or off.

The system switches off automatically after a certain period of time. The system continues to run for some time after being switched off.

Using the button

General information

When the vehicle is in standby state, the parked-car ventilation can be switched on or off via the automatic climate control buttons.

Switching on

Press any button except:

- Rear window defroster.
- Left side of air flow button.
- Seat heating.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3728
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

- SYNC program.
- MENU.

Switching off

Press and hold the left side of the button.

The system switches off after leaving and locking the vehicle.

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Pre-heating/ventilation"
5. "Start now"

Via BMW display key

Switching on

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap the symbol or the symbol.
4. "Activate now"
5. "Start"

Switching off

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap the symbol or the symbol.
4. "Stop"

Display

symbol on the automatic climate control indicates the system is switched on.

REST is displayed on the automatic climate control. The residual engine heat is used.

Departure time

Concept

Different departure times can be set to ensure a comfortable interior temperature in the vehicle at the time of departure.

- One-time departure time: the time can be set.

  The system is switched on once.
- Departure time with weekday: time and day of the week can be set.

  On the desired weekdays, the system will be switched on promptly before the set departure time.

The departure time is preselected in two steps:

- Set departure times.
- Activate departure times.

A minimum of 10 minutes should pass between setting/activating the departure time and the planned departure time to allow a sufficient period of time for the climate control.

Setting the departure time

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Pre-heating/ventilation"
5. "Departure schedule"
6. Select the desired departure time.
7. Set the departure time.
8. Select day of the week, if needed.
9. "OK"

Via BMW display key

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap the symbol or the symbol.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3729
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

4. Select the desired departure time.
5. Set the departure time.
6. Select day of the week, if needed.
7. "OK"

Activating the departure time

Functional requirement

If a departure time is to influence the switching on of parked-car ventilation, the respective departure time must be activated first.

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Pre-heating/ventilation"
5. "Departure schedule"
6. Activate the desired departure time.

Via BMW display key

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap the symbol or the symbol.
4. Tap on the symbol.
5. Activate the desired departure time.

Display

, Symbol on the climate control display signals an activated departure time.

Ambient air package

Concept

The Ambient Air Package can be used to clean and scent the interior air with high-quality fragrances.

Ionization is used to clean the air from suspended particles. Together with the selected fragrance, ionization contributes to well-being and relaxation while driving.

General information

Two different fragrances can be selected in the vehicle. A variety of other fragrances is possible by replacing the fragrance cartridges.

The following criteria can influence the perception of scents in the car's interior:

- Automatic climate control settings.
- Temperature and air humidity.
- Time of day and season.
- Physical condition of the vehicle occupants, for instance fatigue.

BMW recommends the use of genuine BMW fragrance cartridges.

The genuine BMW fragrance cartridges are not suitable for refilling. When a cartridge is empty, replace it with a new fragrance cartridge.

Safety information

Warning

Refilled genuine BMW fragrance cartridges can cause the emission of harmful substances, malfunctions, and damage to the system. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not refill genuine fragrance cartridges. When a cartridge is empty, replace it with a new fragrance cartridge.

Ionization

Concept

Ionization cleans the car's interior air of suspended particles.

Switching on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"

4. "Air quality"
5. "Ionization"

Fragrancing

General information

Fragrancing is done at intervals in order to avoid a habituation effect.

Two fragrance cartridges in the vehicle allow switching between the fragrances.

The fragrance cartridges are located in the glove compartment.

To ensure a pleasant fragrance inside of the vehicle when starting the trip, fragrancing can occur prior to the trip. The system is automatically switched on with the parked-car ventilation if fragrancing was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Functional requirements

- The fragrance cartridges are sufficiently filled.
- The interior temperature is between 41 °F/+5 °C and 104 °F/+40 °C.
- Open the vents to allow the fragrance to flow out.

Selecting the fragrance

The car's interior is fragranced depending on the selected fragrance.

Two different fragrances can be selected in the vehicle.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Fragrance"
5. Select the desired fragrance.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Switching fragrancing on/off, adjusting intensity

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Fragrance"
5. "Level"
6. Select the desired setting.

Display

The illustrations on the Control Display show the actual filling level of the fragrance cartridges.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Fragrance"

When an empty fragrance cartridge is indicated, the cartridge still contains a fluid carrying the fragrance. However, it is not sufficient for fragrancing.

When the fragrance cartridges are empty, a Check Control message is displayed once.

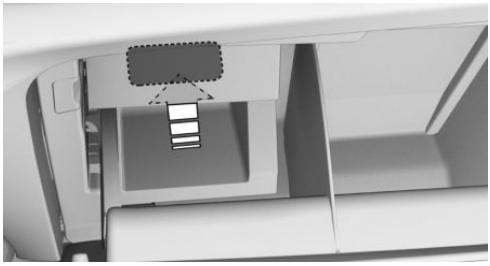
Inserting fragrance cartridges

The fragrance cartridges are located in the glove compartment.

1. Open the glove compartment.

   Front passenger side glove compartment, refer to page 255.
2. Press on the bottom of the cartridge holder.

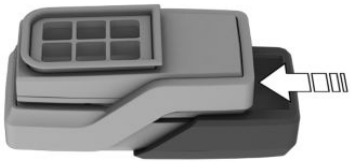
   The cartridge holder slides down.



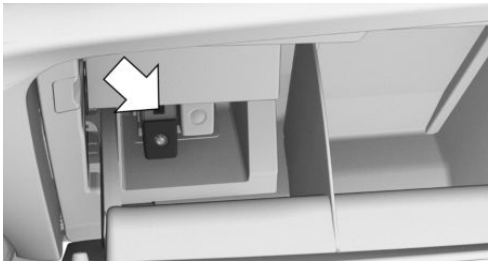
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3731
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

3. Remove the cover of the fragrance cartridge. Hold the cover on the top to slide it from the fragrance cartridge.

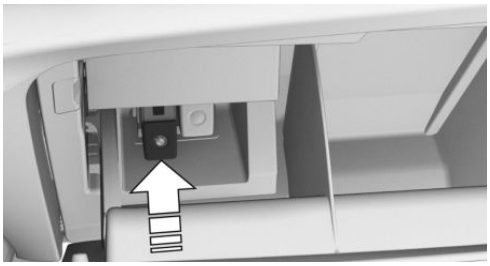
4. Insert the removed cover on the back side of the fragrance cartridge.



5. Position fragrance cartridge such that the chip faces away from the cartridge holder.



6. Insert the fragrance cartridge without pressure into the cartridge holder. The cartridge snaps lightly into place.



7. Push the cartridge holder up, until it engages.

   Make sure that no objects press against the cartridge holder from below, otherwise the function of the ambient air package could be impacted.

8. Close the glove compartment.

Removing the fragrance cartridge

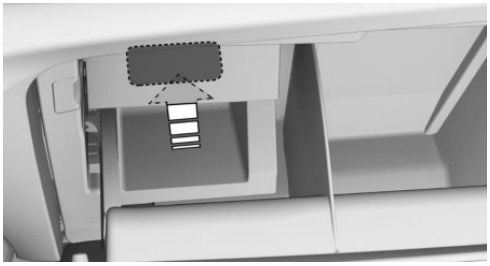
The fragrance cartridges are located in the glove compartment.

1. Open the glove compartment.

   Front passenger side glove compartment, refer to page 255.

2. Press on the bottom of the cartridge holder.

   The cartridge holder slides down.



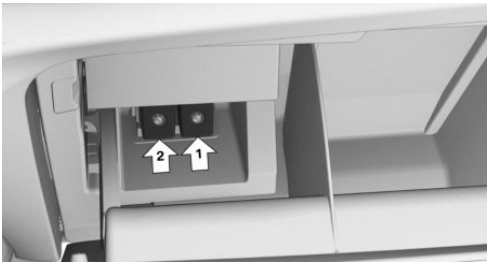
3. Pull desired fragrance cartridge from the holder.

   Fragrance cartridge, arrow 1: first fragrance indicated on the Control Display.

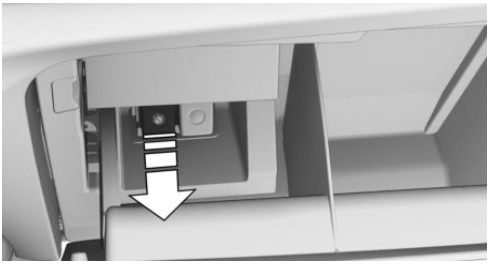
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3732

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Fragrance cartridge, arrow 2: second fragrance indicated on the Control Display.



4. Pull desired fragrance cartridge from the holder.



Recycling

Empty fragrance cartridges can be taken to a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop for recycling.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3733
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Interior equipment

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Integrated Universal Remote Control

Concept

The integrated Universal Remote Control in the interior mirror can operate up to 3 functions of remote-controlled systems such as garage door drives, barriers, or lighting systems.

General information

The Integrated Universal Remote Control replaces up to 3 different hand-held transmitters. To operate the remote control, the buttons on the interior mirror must be programmed with the desired functions. The hand-held transmitter for the particular system is required in order to program the remote control.

Before selling the vehicle, delete the stored functions for the sake of security.

If possible, do not install the antenna of the remote-controlled system, e.g. the garage door drive, near metal objects to ensure the best possible operation.

Safety information

Warning

The operation of remote-controlled systems with the integrated universal remote control, such as the garage door, may result in injury, for example, body parts becoming jammed in a garage door. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety information of the hand-held transmitter.

Compatibility

If this symbol is printed on the packaging or in the owner's manual of the system to be controlled, the system is generally compatible with the integrated Universal Remote Control.

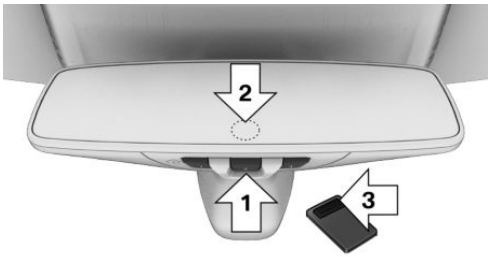
Additional questions are answered by:

- A dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
- www.homelink.com on the Internet.

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3734
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Control elements on the interior mirror



- ▷ Buttons, arrow 1.
- ▷ LED, arrow 2.
- ▷ The hand-held transmitter, arrow 3, is required for programming.

Programming

General information

The battery of the hand-held transmitter must be fully charged at the time of programming to ensure an optimal range of the integrated universal remote control.

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Initial setup:

   Press and hold the two outer buttons on the interior mirror simultaneously for approximately 10 seconds until the LED flashes green rapidly. This erases all programming of the buttons on the interior mirror.
3. Press the interior mirror button to be programmed. The LED on the interior mirror will slowly begin flashing orange.
4. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be used approx. 1 to 12 in/2.5 to 30 cm away from the buttons on the interior mirror. The required distance depends on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter.

   Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.
6. ▷ The LED lights up green: programming completed.

   Release the button.

   ▷ The LED flashes fast: programming is not complete.

   Press the button on the interior mirror for 2 seconds and release. Perform this procedure three times to complete the programming procedure.

   If the integrated universal remote control remains nonoperational, continue with the special features for change code wireless systems.

   ▷ LED does not flash green after 60 seconds: programming not completed.

   Repeat steps 3 to 6.

To program other functions on other buttons, repeat steps 3 to 5.

Special feature of the rolling code wireless system

If you are unable to operate the remote-controlled system after repeated programming, please check if the system to be controlled features a rolling code radio system.

Refer to the owner's manual for the system.

For systems with a rolling code radio system, the integrated Universal Remote Control and the system also have to be synchronized.

Please read the owner's manual to find out how to synchronize the system.

Synchronizing is easier with the aid of a second person.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3735
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Synchronizing the universal remote control with the system:

1. Park the vehicle within range of the remote-controlled system.
2. Program the relevant button on the interior mirror as described.
3. Locate and press the synchronizing button on the system being programmed, e.g. at the garage gate. You have approx. 30 seconds for the next step.
4. Hold down the programmed button on the interior mirror for approximately 3 seconds and then release it. If necessary, repeat this step up to three times in order to finish synchronization. Once synchronization is complete, the programmed function will be carried out.

Reprogramming individual buttons

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Press and hold the interior mirror button to be programmed.
3. As soon as the LED on the interior mirror flashes orange after approx. 20 seconds, release the button.
4. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be used approx. 1 to 12 in/2.5 to 30 cm away from the buttons on the interior mirror. The required distance depends on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter.

   Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.
6. The LED can light up in different ways.
   - ▷ The LED lights up green: the programming procedure is completed.

     Release the button.
   - ▷ The LED flashes fast: the hand-held transmitter was detected but programming is not complete.

     Press the button on the interior mirror for 2 seconds and release. Perform this procedure three times to complete the programming procedure.

     If the integrated universal remote control remains nonoperational, continue with the special features for change code wireless systems.
   - ▷ LED does not flash green after 60 seconds: programming not completed.

     Repeat steps 3 to 6.

If the programming procedure is not completed, the previous programming will remain unchanged.

Operation

⚠ Warning

The operation of remote-controlled systems with the integrated universal remote control, such as the garage door, may result in injury, for example, body parts becoming jammed in a garage door. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety information of the hand-held transmitter.

The system, such as the garage door, can be operated using the button on the interior mirror while the drive-ready or standby state is switched on. To do this, hold down the button within receiving range of the system until the function is activated. The interior mirror LED stays lit while the wireless signal is being transmitted.

Deleting stored functions

All stored functions will be deleted. The functions cannot be deleted individually.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3736
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Press and hold the two outer buttons on the interior mirror simultaneously for approximately 10 seconds until the LED on the interior mirror flashes green rapidly.

Sun visor

Glare shield

Fold the sun visor down or up.

Glare shield from the side

Folding out

1. Fold the sun visor down.
2. Unhook it from the holder and swing it to the side.

Folding up

Proceed in the reverse order to close the sun visor.

Vanity mirror

A vanity mirror is located in the sun visor behind a cover. When the cover is opened, the mirror lighting switches on.

Ashtray

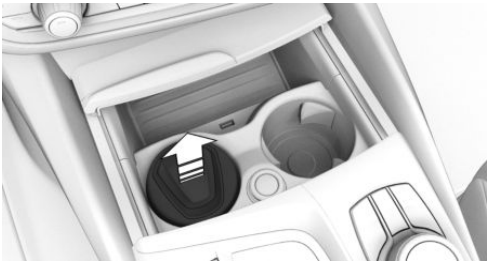
Front center console

Opening

1. Slide the cover forward.

2. The ashtray is located in a cup holder. Fold the ashtray cover upward.

Emptying



Pull the ashtray with the closed cover out of the cup holder.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3737
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Cigarette lighter

Safety information

Warning

Contact with the hot heating element or the hot socket of the cigarette lighter can cause burns. Flammable materials can ignite if the cigarette lighter falls down or is held against the objects. There is a risk of fire and injuries. There is a risk of damage to property. Take hold of the cigarette lighter by its handle. Make sure that children do not use the cigarette lighter.

NOTICE

If metal objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of damage to property. Replace the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.

Front center console

Slide the cover forward.

The cigarette lighter is located between the cup holders.

Operation

Push in the cigarette lighter.

The cigarette lighter can be removed as soon as it pops back out.

Sockets

Concept

The lighter socket can be used as a socket for electrical equipment when standby and drive-ready state are switched on.

General information

The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 watts at 12 volts.

Do not damage the socket by using non-compatible connectors.

Safety information

Warning

Devices and cables in the unfolding area of the airbags, such as portable navigation devices, can hinder the unfolding of the airbag or be thrown around in the car's interior during unfolding. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that

devices and cables are not in the airbag's area of unfolding.

NOTICE

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery can work with high voltages and currents, which means that the 12 volt electrical system can be overloaded or damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.

NOTICE

If metal objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of damage to property. Replace the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.

Front center console

Slide the cover forward.

A socket is located between the cup holders.

Pull off the cover.

In the cargo area

A socket is located on the right side in the cargo area. Unfold the cover.

USB port

General information

Follow the information regarding the connection of mobile devices to the USB port in the section on USB connections.

Additional information:

USB connections, refer to page 77.

In the center armrest

A USB port is located in the center armrest.

Properties:

- USB port Type C.
- For charging mobile devices and for data transfer.
- Charge current: max. 3 A.

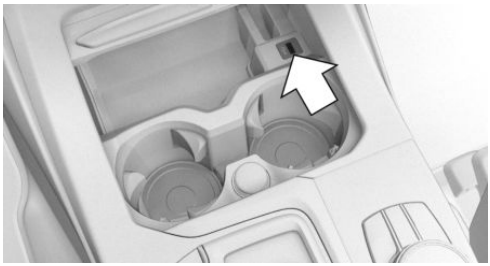
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3739
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

In the front center console

NOTICE

Objects in the storage compartment, e.g., large USB connectors, may block or damage the cover when it is being opened or closed. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the cover is clear while opening and closing it.

Slide the cover forward.



A USB port is located in the center console.

Properties:

- USB port Type A.
- For charging mobile devices and for data transfer.
- Charge current: max. 1.5 A.

In the rear center console

Two USB ports are located in the center console in the rear passenger compartment.

Properties:

- USB port Type C.
- For charging of mobile devices.
- Charge current: maximum 3 A per port.

Wireless charging tray

Concept

The wireless charging tray enables the following functions to be performed without cables:

- Charging the rechargeable battery of a mobile phone with Qi capability and of other mobile devices, which support the Qi standard.
- Charging the BMW Display key.
- Connect the mobile phone to the external antenna.

  Depending on the country, this provides for better network reception and a consistent reproduction quality.

General information

When inserting the mobile phone, make sure there are no objects between it and the wireless charging tray.

During charging, the surface of the tray and the mobile phone may become warm. Higher temperatures may lead to a reduction in the charge current through the mobile phone, and in iso-

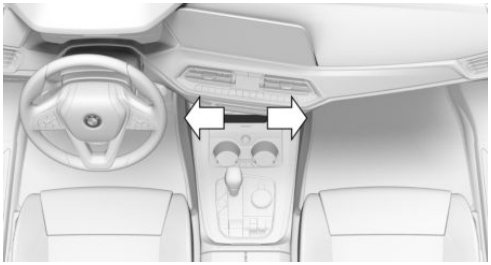
lated cases the charging process is paused temporarily. Follow the relevant instructions in the mobile phone owner's manual.

The charge indicator shows on the Control Display whether a mobile phone with Qi capability is being charged.

NOTE

This device has been tested for human exposure limits and found compliant at a minimum distance of 2 in/5 cm during operation.

Therefore, a distance of 4 in/10 cm must be maintained in every direction when operating the device.



Mounting position of the product.

Safety information

Warning

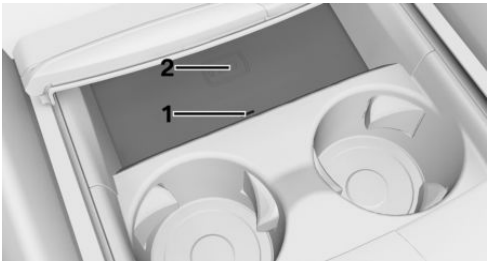
When charging a device that meets the Qi standard in the wireless charging tray, any metal objects located between the device and the tray can become very hot. Placing storage devices or electronic cards, such as chip cards, cards with magnetic strips or cards for signal transmission, between the device and the tray may impair the card function. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. When charging mobile devices, make sure there are no objects between the device and the tray.

NOTICE

The tray is intended for mobile phones up to a particular size. Forceful inserting of the mobile phone into the tray can damage the tray or the mobile phone. There is a risk of damage to property. Observe the maximum dimensions for mobile phones. Do not force the mobile phone into the tray.

Overview

Tray in the center console:



1 LED

2 Storage area

Functional requirements

- The mobile phone must compatibly support the required Qi standard.

  If the mobile phone does not support the Qi standard, the mobile phone can be charged using a special Qi-compatible charging case.
- Standby state is switched on.
- Observe the maximum dimensions of the mobile phone.
- Use only protective jackets and covers up to a maximum thickness of 0.07 in/2 mm; otherwise, the charging function may be impaired.
- The mobile phone to be charged is located in the center of the tray.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3741
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Operation

Inserting the mobile phone

The mobile phone must not exceed the maximum size of approximately 6.0 x 3.1 x 0.7 in/154.5 x 80 x 18 mm.

1. Open the tray cover.
2. Place the mobile phone centered in the tray with the display facing up.
3. Close the tray cover.

Removing the mobile phone

1. Open the tray cover.
2. Remove the mobile phone.

LED displays

Color	Meaning
Blue	The mobile phone is charging. The blue LED stays illuminated once the inserted mobile phone with Qi capability is fully charged.
Orange	The mobile phone is not charging. Temperature on the mobile phone possibly too high or foreign object in charging tray.
Red	The mobile phone is not charging. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Forgotten warning

General information

If the vehicle is equipped with the forgotten warning function, a warning can be output if a mobile phone with Qi capability was forgotten in the wireless charging tray when leaving the vehicle.

The forgotten warning is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Activating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Wireless charging tray"
5. Activate reminder.

System limits

At high temperatures on the mobile phone or in the vehicle, the charging functions of the mobile phone may be limited and some functions may no longer work.

LTE-Compensator - Information and User Manual

Your car is equipped with a wireless charging tray (WCA) to charge your mobile phone and connect it to the mobile network. To ensure the best possible connection a signal booster (LTE-Compensator) is used in conjunction with the WCA. The following paragraphs refer to this booster:

This is a CONSUMER device.

BEFORE USE, you MUST REGISTER THIS DEVICE with your wireless provider and have your provider's consent. Most wireless providers consent to the use of Compensators. Some providers may not consent to the use of this device on their network. If you are unsure, contact your provider. You MUST operate this device with approved antennas and cables as specified by the manufacturer. Antennas MUST be installed at least 20 cm (8 inches) from any person. You MUST cease operating this device immediately if requested by the FCC or a licensed wireless service provider. Warning E911 location information may not be provided or may be inaccurate for calls served by using this device.

Please observe additionally the following information

- Sprint Nextel will allow consumers to register their signal boosters by calling their toll-free number.
- T-Mobile online registration link: (www.T-Mobile.com/BoosterRegistration); (https://saqat.t-mobile.com/sites/SignalBooster#).
- Verizon's online registration link: (http://www.verizonwireless.com/wcms/consumer/register-signal-booster.html).
- AT&T online registration link (https://securec45.securewebsession.com/attsignal-booster.com/).
- U.S.Cellular online registration link (http://www.uscellular.com/uscellular/support/fcc-booster-registration.jsp).

Before use you must register your booster device with your wireless provider.

If you should be requested by the FCC to cease operating your booster you are not allowed to insert your mobile phone in the charging tray anymore unless the booster is permanently deactivated by your local BMW dealer.

You must not remove the booster from the car nor use it with any other than the preinstalled coupling device or antenna. Any modification of the existing antenna or coupling device as well as the use of other antennas or coupling devices will cause the cease of the booster´s operating license.

The booster device fulfills the network protection standards as required by the FCC, such as intermodulation limits, oscillation detection and gain limits.

Booster Manufacturer: Kathrein Automotive

Model Number: LTECOMPB0

Part Number: 6803145-01

FCC-ID: 2ACC7LTECOMPB0

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3743

Storage compartments

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Storage compartments

General information

The vehicle interior contains multiple storage compartments for stowing objects.

Safety information

Warning

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, for instance mobile phones, can be thrown about the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the car's interior.

NOTICE

Anti-slip pads such as anti-slip mats can damage the dashboard. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use anti-slip pads.

Front passenger side glove compartment

Safety information

Warning

Folded open, the glove compartment protrudes in the car's interior. Objects in the glove compartment can be thrown into the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Always close the glove compartment immediately after using it.

Opening

Pull the handle.

The light in the glove compartment switches on.

Closing

Fold cover closed.

Locking

The glove compartment can be locked with an integrated key. This prevents access to the glove compartment.

After the glove compartment is locked, the vehicle key can be handed over without the

integrated key, for instance when the vehicle is parked by valet parking.

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 88.

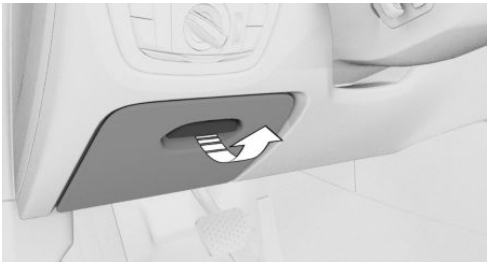
Driver's side glove compartment

Safety information

Warning

Folded open, the glove compartment protrudes in the car's interior. Objects in the glove compartment can be thrown into the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Always close the glove compartment immediately after using it.

Opening



Pull the handle.

Closing

Fold cover closed.

Compartments in the doors

General information

There are storage compartments in the doors.

Safety information

Warning

Breakable objects, such as glass bottles or glasses, can break in the event of an accident or a braking or evasive maneuver. Broken glass can be scattered in the car's interior. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not use any breakable objects while driving. Only stow breakable objects in closed storage compartments.

Storage compartment in the center console

Opening

Slide the cover forward.

Closing

Slide the cover rearward.

Storage compartment in the rear center console

The rear center console contains one or two storage compartments.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3745
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Center armrest, front

General information

A storage compartment is located in the center armrest between the seats.

Opening

Press the button.

Closing

Press cover down until it engages.

Front cup holder

Safety information

⚠ Warning

Unsuitable containers in the cup holders may damage the cup holders or be thrown about the car's interior in the event of an accident, an evasive maneuver, or forceful braking. Spilled liquids can distract from the traffic conditions and lead to an accident. Hot drinks can damage the cup holder or lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not force objects into the cup holder. Use lightweight, shatterproof, and sealable containers. Do not transport hot beverages.

Opening

Slide the cover forward.

Two cup holders are located in the center console.

Closing

Slide the cover rearward.

Rear cup holder

Safety information

⚠ Warning

Unsuitable containers in the cup holders may damage the cup holders or be thrown about the car's interior in the event of an accident, an evasive maneuver, or forceful braking. Spilled liquids can distract from the traffic conditions and lead to an accident. Hot drinks can damage the cup holder or lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not force objects into the cup holder. Use light-

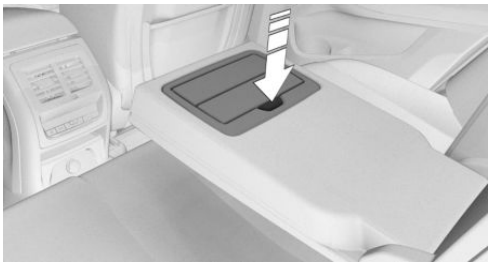
weight, shatterproof, and sealable containers. Do not transport hot beverages.

NOTICE

With an open cup holder, the center armrest cannot be folded back up. There is a risk of damage to property. Press back the covers before the center armrest is folded up.

Opening and closing

Opening



Fold the center armrest forward.

Press the button.

Closing

Press both covers back inward in sequence and fold the center armrest back.

Clothes hooks

General information

Two folding clothes hooks are provided on the roofliner in the rear of the vehicle. Press sideways onto the edge to fold open.

Safety information

Warning

Clothing articles on the clothes hooks can obstruct the view while driving. There is a risk of accident. When suspending clothing articles from the clothes hooks, ensure that they will not obstruct the driver's view.

Warning

Improper use of the clothes hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only hang lightweight objects, for instance clothing articles, from the clothes hooks.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3747
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Cargo area

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Loading

Safety information

Warning

High gross weight can overheat the tires, damage them internally and cause a sudden drop in tire inflation pressure. Driving characteristics may be negatively impacted, reducing lane stability, lengthening the braking distances and changing the steering response. There is a risk of accident. Pay attention to the permitted load capacity of the tires and never exceed the permitted gross weight.

Warning

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, for instance mobile phones, can be thrown about the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the car's interior.

Warning

Improperly stowed objects can shift and be thrown into the car's interior, for instance in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuver. Vehicle occupants can be hit and injured. There is a risk of injury. Stow and secure objects and cargo properly.

NOTICE

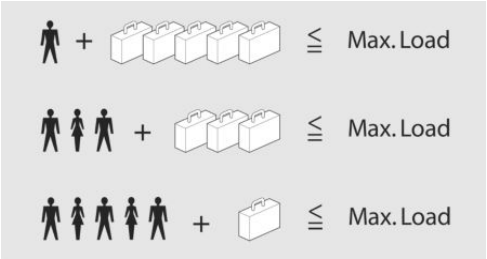
Fluids in the cargo area can cause damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that no fluids leak in the cargo area.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs” on your vehicle’s placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1,400 lbs and there will be five 150 lbs passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs (1,400 - 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your ve-

hicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Load



The maximum load is the sum of the weight of the occupants and the cargo.

The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo that can be transported.

Stowing and securing cargo

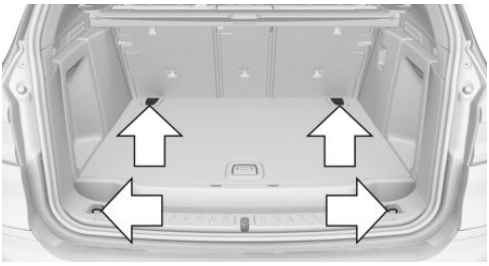
- Cover sharp edges and corners on the cargo.
- Heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear passenger seat backrests.
- Very heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear passenger seat backrests. When the rear seat is not occupied, secure each of the outer safety belts in the opposite buckle.
- If necessary, fold down the rear backrests to stow large cargo.
- Do not stack cargo above the top edge of the backrests.
- Small and light cargo: secure with ratchet straps or, depending on the equipment, with a cargo net or draw straps.
- Larger and heavy cargo: secure with cargo straps.

Lashing eyes in the cargo area

General information

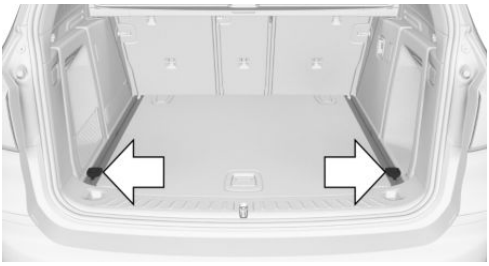
Attach load securing aids, such as lashing straps, tensioning straps, draw straps or cargo nets, to the lashing eyes in the cargo area.

Fixed lashing eyes



There are four lashing eyes in the cargo area for securing cargo.

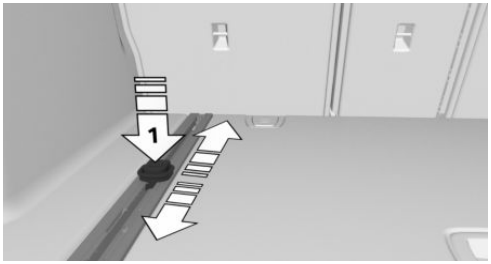
Movable lashing eyes



To secure the cargo there are additional movable lashing eyes in the cargo area.

The lashing eyes may be located underneath the cargo floor panel. The lashing eyes can be inserted into the openings in the rails.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3749
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20



To slide the lashing eyes, press the button, arrow 1. Make sure that the lashing eyes latch at the new position.

Multi-function hook

General information

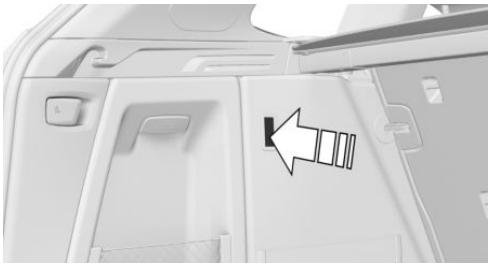
A multi-function hook is located on the left or right side in the cargo area.

Safety information

Warning

Improper use of the multi-function hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers, for example. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only hang lightweight objects, such as shopping bags, from the multi-function hooks. Only transport heavy luggage in the cargo area if it has been appropriately secured.

Folding down



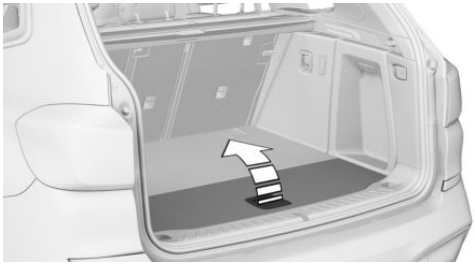
Press on the multi-function hook and turn until it engages.

Retaining function for the cargo floor panel

The cargo floor panel can be hooked onto the right-hand multi-function hook.

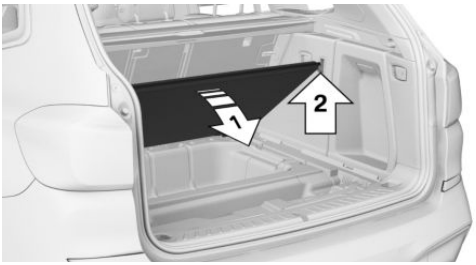
Without storage compartment package:

1. Fold the rear part of the cargo floor panel forward.



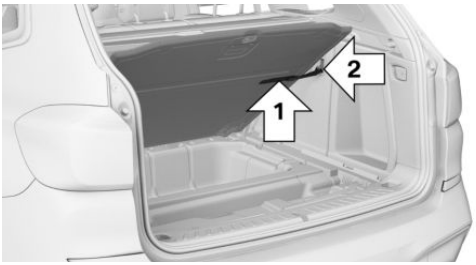
2. Lift the cargo floor panel up until it is over the multi-function hook.

3. Fold down the multi-function hook.
4. Lower the cargo floor panel, arrow 1, until it is resting on the multi-function hook, arrow 2.



With storage compartment package:

1. Fold down the multi-function hook.
2. Lift the cargo floor panel.
3. Release the loop from the cargo floor panel.
4. Attach the loop, arrow 1, on the multi-function hook, arrow 2.



Tensioning strap

A tensioning strap is available on the left side trim for fastening small objects.

Net

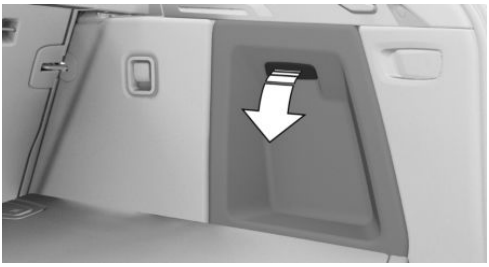
Small objects can be stowed in the net on the left side.

Storage compartment on the right side

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, a storage compartment is located on the right side.

Opening



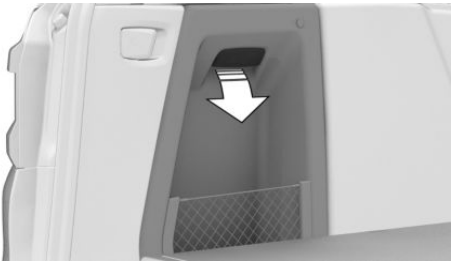
Pull the handle.

Storage compartment on the left side

General information

A storage compartment is located on the left side in the cargo area.

Opening



Pull the handle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3751
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Storage compartment under the cargo floor panel

General information

There is a storage compartment under the cargo floor panel.

Opening

Fold up the cargo floor panel.

Closing

Push the cargo floor panel downward.

Through-loading system

Concept

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the cargo area can be enlarged as follows:

- The rear seat backrests can be folded down.
- The rear seat backrests can be moved into an upright loading position using the cargo setting.

General information

The rear seat backrest is divided at a ratio of 40–20–40. The side rear seat backrests and the center section can be folded down separately.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the rear seat backrests can be folded down from the rear or from the cargo area.

Safety information

Warning

Danger of jamming with folding down the backrests. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the rear backrest and the of the head restraint is clear prior to folding down.

Warning

If a rear seat backrest is not locked, unsecured cargo can be thrown about the car's interior; for instance, in the event of an accident, braking or an evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the rear seat backrest is locked after folding it back.

Warning

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

Warning

Once the rear seat backrest has been folded down, the locking bracket protrudes into the car's interior. There is a risk of damage to property. When the rear seat backrest is folded down, pay attention to the protruding locking bracket and keep this area unobstructed.

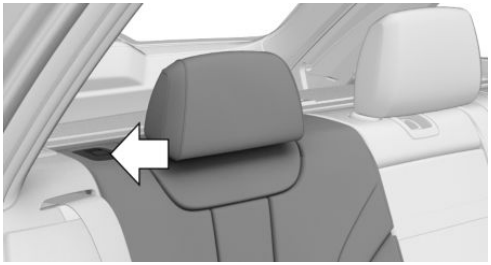
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3752
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

NOTICE

Vehicle parts can be damaged when folding down the rear backrest. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the rear backrest including head restraint is clear when folding down.

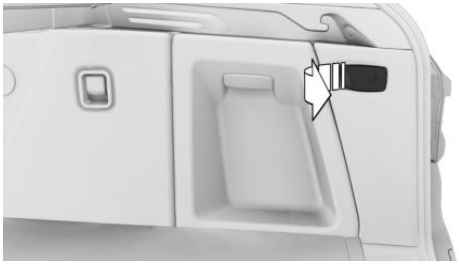
Reclining the backrest

From the rear



Pull the lever and fold the rear seat backrest forward.

From the cargo area



Pull the corresponding lever in the cargo area to release the rear seat backrest.

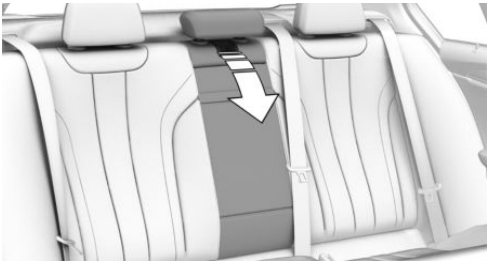
- Left lever: fold down the left and middle rear seat backrest.
- Right lever: fold down the right rear seat backrest.

Folding back the backrest

Return the rear seat backrest to the seat position and engage it.

Folding down the center section

1. Fold down the center head restraint.
2. Pull lever and fold the center section forward.



Cargo position

Concept

The rear seat backrests can be moved into an upright loading position individually. An adjustment in several tilt stages is possible as needed.

General information

The backrest tilt for the center section is adjusted together with the left backrest.

Adjusting

1. Pull the lever and hold it.

2. Move the rear seat backrest into an upright loading position.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3753
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

After the adjustment, move the backrest slightly forward or back to engage it correctly.

Ski and snowboard bag

The ski and snowboard bag is contained in a protective jacket in the cargo area.

Follow the installation and owner's manual included in the protective jacket.

Depending on the vehicle equipment: remove the emergency wheel from the vehicle to mount the ski and snowboard bag.

Things to remember when driving

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Breaking-in period

General information

Moving parts need to begin working together smoothly.

The following instructions will help you to achieve a long vehicle life and good efficiency.

During break-in, do not use the Launch Control.

Safety information

Warning

Due to new parts and components, safety and driver assistance systems can react with a delay. There is a risk of accident. After installing new parts or with a new vehicle, drive conservatively and intervene early if necessary. Observe the break-in procedures of the respective parts and components.

Engine, transmission, and axle drive

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Do not exceed the maximum engine and road speed:

- For gasoline engine 4,500 rpm and 100 mph/160 km/h.

Avoid full load or kickdown under all circumstances.

From 1,200 miles/2,000 km

The engine and vehicle speed can gradually be increased.

Tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new; they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

Brake discs and brake pads only reach their full effectiveness after approx. 300 miles/500 km. Drive moderately during this break-in period.

Following part replacement

Observe the break-in procedures again, if components mentioned above are replaced.

Driving on poor roads

Concept

Because of its greater ground clearance, the vehicle can be driven on a variety of road types and qualities.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3755
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

All-wheel drive can help improve forward momentum.

Safety information

NOTICE

Objects in unpaved areas, for instance stones or branches, can damage the vehicle. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not drive on unpaved terrain.

When driving on poor roads

For your own safety, for the safety of passengers and of the vehicle, heed the following points:

- Familiarize yourself with the vehicle before driving.
- Do not take risks when driving.
- Adjust the speed to the road surface conditions. The steeper and more uneven the road surface, the slower the speed should be.
- When driving on steep uphill or downhill grades: add engine oil and coolant up to near the MAX mark.
- On steep downhill grades, use Hill Descent Control HDC.
- Avoid that the chassis bottom coming in contact with the ground.

  The ground clearance is no more than 7.8 inches/20 cm and can vary according to the vehicle's load.
- When wheels continue to spin, depress the accelerator pedal sufficiently so that driving stability control systems can distribute the driving force to the wheels. Activate DTC Dynamic Traction Control if available.

After a trip on poor roads

After a trip on poor roads, check wheels and tires for damage to maintain driving safety. Clear heavy soiling from the body.

General driving notes

Closing the tailgate

Safety information

Warning

An open tailgate protrudes from the vehicle and can endanger occupants and other traffic participants or damage the vehicle in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. In addition, exhaust fumes may enter the vehicle interior. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not drive with the tailgate open.

Driving with the tailgate open

If driving with the tailgate open cannot be avoided:

- Close all windows and the glass sunroof.
- Greatly increase the air flow from the vents.
- Drive moderately.

Hot exhaust gas system

Warning

High temperatures can occur underneath the body, for instance caused by the exhaust gas system, while driving. Contact with the exhaust gas system can cause burns. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch the hot exhaust gas system, including the exhaust pipe.

Warning

If combustible materials, such as leaves or grass, come in contact with hot parts of the exhaust gas system, these materials can ignite. There is a risk of fire and injuries. Do not remove the heat shields installed and never apply undercoating to them. Make sure that no com-

bustible materials can come in contact with hot vehicle parts in driving operation, idle or during parking.

Mobile communication devices in the vehicle

Warning

Vehicle electronics and mobile phones can influence one another. There is radiation due to the transmission operations of mobile phones. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. If possible, in the car's interior use only mobile phones with direct connections to an exterior antenna in order to exclude mutual interference and deflect the radiation from the car's interior.

Hydroplaning

On wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water can form between the tires and road surface.

This phenomenon is referred to as hydroplaning. It is characterized by a partial or complete loss of contact between the tires and the road surface, ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle.

Driving through water

General information

When driving through water, follow the following:

- Deactivate Auto Start/Stop function.
- Drive through calm water only.
- Drive through water only if it is not deeper than maximum 19.6 inches/50 cm.
- Drive through water no faster than walking speed, up to 3 mph/5 km/h.

Safety information

NOTICE

When driving too quickly through too deep water, water can enter into the engine compartment, the electrical system or the transmission. There is a risk of damage to property. When driving through water, do not exceed the maximum indicated water level and the maximum speed for driving through water.

Braking safely

General information

The vehicle is equipped with an Antilock Braking System ABS as a standard feature.

Perform an emergency stop in situations that require such.

Steering is still responsive. You can still avoid any obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.

Pulsation of the brake pedal and sounds from the hydraulic circuits indicate that the Antilock Braking System ABS is in its active mode.

In certain braking situations, the perforated brake discs can emit functional noises. However, functional noises have no effect on the performance and operational reliability of the brake.

Objects in the area around the pedals

Warning

Objects in the driver's floor area can limit the pedal distance or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's floor area. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are se-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3757
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

curely fastened again after they were removed, for instance for cleaning.

Driving in wet conditions

When roads are wet, salted, or in heavy rain, gently press the brake pedal every few miles.

Ensure that this action does not endanger other traffic.

The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

In this way braking efficiency will be available when you need it.

Hills

General information

Drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear that requires least braking effort. Otherwise, the brakes may overheat and reduce brake efficiency.

You can increase the engine's braking effect by shifting down, going all the way to first gear, if needed.

Safety information

Warning

Light but consistent brake pressure can lead to high temperatures, brakes wearing out and possibly even brake failure. There is a risk of accident. Avoid placing excessive stress on the brake system.

Warning

In idle state or with the engine switched off, safety functions, for instance engine braking effect, braking assistance and steering assistance, may not be available. There is a risk of accident. Do not attempt to drive in idle state or with the engine switched off.

Brake disc corrosion

Corrosion on the brake discs and contamination on the brake pads are increased by the following circumstances:

- Low mileage.
- Extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all.
- Infrequent use of the brakes.
- Aggressive, acidic, or alkaline cleaning agents.

Corrosion buildup on the brake discs will cause a pulsating effect on the brakes in their response - generally this cannot be corrected.

Condensation water under the parked vehicle

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops and collects underneath the vehicle.

Roof-mounted luggage rack

General information

Installation only possible with roof rack.

Roof racks are available as special accessories.

Safety information

Warning

When driving with a roof load, for instance with roof-mounted luggage rack, the vehicle's center of gravity is higher, which increases the risk of the vehicle tipping in critical driving situations. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Do not deactivate DSC Dynamic Stability Control when driving with roof load.

Mounting

Follow the installation instructions of the roof rack.

Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.

Loading

Because roof-mounted luggage racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a major effect on vehicle handling and steering response.

Therefore, note the following when loading and driving:

- Do not exceed the approved roof/axle loads and the approved gross vehicle weight.
- Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.
- Distribute the roof load uniformly.
- The roof load should not extend past the loading area.
- Always place the heaviest pieces on the bottom.
- Secure the roof luggage firmly, for instance using ratchet straps.
- Do not let objects project into the opening path of the tailgate.
- Drive cautiously and avoid sudden acceleration and braking maneuvers. Take corners gently.

Driving on racetracks

Warning

The vehicle is not designed for use in M Sport or motor sport type competition. There is a risk of accident. Do not use the vehicle for M Sport or motor sport type competitions.

Higher mechanical and thermal loads during racetrack operation lead to increased wear. This wear is not covered by the warranty.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3759
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Saving fuel

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Reducing fuel consumption

General information

The vehicle contains advanced technologies for the reduction of consumption and emission values.

Fuel consumption depends on a number of different factors.

Carrying out certain measures, such as a moderate driving style and regular maintenance, can influence fuel consumption and the environmental impact.

Remove unnecessary cargo

Additional weight increases fuel consumption.

Remove attached parts following use

Remove roof-mounted which are no longer required following use.

Attached parts on the vehicle impair the aerodynamics and increase the fuel consumption.

Close the windows and glass sunroof

Driving with the glass sunroof and windows open results in increased air resistance and raises fuel consumption.

Tires

General information

Tires can affect consumption in various ways, for instance tire size may influence consumption.

Check the tire inflation pressure regularly

Check and, if needed, correct the tire inflation pressure at least twice a month and before starting on a long trip.

Low tire inflation pressure increases rolling resistance and thus raises fuel consumption and tire wear.

Observe the correct tire inflation pressure as well as the ECO tire inflation pressure, where applicable.

Additional information:

Tire inflation pressure specifications, refer to page 280.

Drive away without delay

Do not wait for the engine to warm-up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving right away, but at moderate engine speeds.

This is the quickest way of warming the cold engine up to operating temperature.

Look well ahead when driving

Driving smoothly and proactively reduces fuel consumption.

Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.

By maintaining a suitable distance to the vehicle driving ahead of you.

Avoid high engine speeds

Driving at low engine speeds lowers fuel consumption and reduces wear.

If necessary, observe the vehicle's gear shift indicator.

Use coasting conditions

When approaching a red light, take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle coast to a halt.

For going downhill take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle roll.

The flow of fuel is interrupted while coasting.

Switch off the engine during longer stops

Switching off the engine

Switch off the engine during longer stops, for instance at traffic lights, railroad crossings or in traffic congestion.

Auto Start/Stop function

The Auto Start/Stop function of the vehicle automatically switches off the engine during a stop.

If the engine is switched off and then restarted rather than leaving the engine running constantly, fuel consumption and emissions are reduced. Savings can begin within a few seconds of switching off the engine.

In addition, fuel consumption is also determined by other factors, such as driving style, road conditions, maintenance or environmental factors.

Switch off any functions that are not currently needed

Functions such as seat heating and the rear window defroster require a lot of energy and increase fuel consumption, especially in city and stop-and-go traffic.

Switch off these functions if they are not needed.

The ECO PRO drive mode supports the energy conserving use of comfort features. These functions are automatically deactivated partially or completely.

Have maintenance carried out

Have the vehicle maintained regularly to achieve optimal vehicle efficiency and service life. BMW recommends that maintenance work be performed by a BMW service center.

For information on the BMW Maintenance System.

ECO PRO

Concept

ECO PRO supports a driving style that saves on consumption. For this purpose, the engine control and comfort features, for instance the climate control output, are adjusted.

Steptronic transmission: under certain conditions the engine is automatically decoupled from the transmission in the D selector lever position. The vehicle continues traveling with the engine idling to reduce consumption. The D selector lever position remains engaged.

In addition, context-sensitive information, ECO PRO tips, are displayed to assist with an efficient driving style.

The achieved extended range is displayed in the instrument cluster as bonus range.

General information

The system includes the following EfficientDynamics functions and EfficientDynamics displays:

- ECO PRO bonus range.
- ECO PRO seat climate control.
- ECO PRO climate control.
- ECO PRO light and sight.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3761
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

- ECO PRO limit
- Coasting driving condition.
- Driving style analysis.

Overview

ECO PRO Button

Activating ECO PRO

ECO PRO Press the button. ECO PRO is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Configuring ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL

Via the Driving Dynamics Control

1. Activate ECO PRO.
2. "ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL"

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driving mode"
4. "ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

ECO PRO limit

- "ECO PRO speed": activate ECO PRO speed.

  An ECO PRO tip is displayed if the speed of the set ECO PRO limit is exceeded.
- "Notification at:"

  Set the desired speed for the ECO PRO speed.

Activating/deactivating ECO PRO functions

The following ECO PRO functions can be activated/deactivated:

- "ECO PRO seat heating"
- "ECO PRO climate control"
- "ECO PRO light and sight"

Settings are stored for the driver profile currently used.

Coasting

Efficiency can be optimized by disengaging the engine and coasting with the engine idling.

ECO PRO seat climate control

The activation of ECO PRO will reduce the output of the seat heating.

ECO PRO climate control

Climate control is set to be efficient.

This means, it is possible to deviate slightly from the set temperature or to heat or cool the car's interior more slowly, to economize on consumption.

ECO PRO light and sight

The output of exterior mirror heating and rear window defroster is reduced.

Resetting the settings

Reset ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL to the standard settings:

"Reset to ECO PRO STANDARD"

Display in the instrument cluster

General information

When ECO PRO driving mode is activated, the display switches to a special configuration.

ECO PRO bonus range

A modified driving style helps you extend your driving distance.

The range extension can be displayed as the bonus range in the instrument cluster.

The efficiency display includes the bonus range.

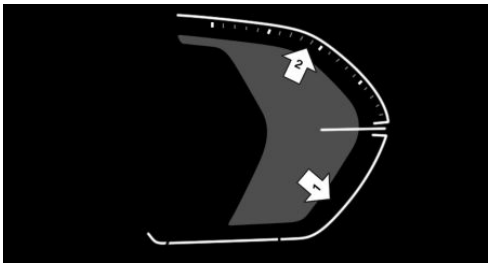
If the bonus range appears in gray, the current driving style is inefficient.

The display turns blue as soon as all conditions for efficient driving are met.

The intervals for resetting the bonus range depend on the settings of the trip data.

Consumption display

Instrument cluster with enhanced features:



A pointer in the consumption display informs about the current driving style:

- The current consumption in relation to the average consumption is displayed.
- Pointer in the area of arrow 1: display of the energy recovered by coasting or when braking.
- Pointer in the area of arrow 2: display when accelerating.

If the acceleration is inefficient, the area between the average consumption and the current consumption is colored red.

In addition, the following information is displayed, depending on the situation:

- Depending on the equipment: the total distance driven while coasting.
- The total time that the engine has been switched off during automatic engine stops.
- A gear shift indicator recommending the use of a more efficient gear.

Indications on the Control Display

General information

Information about the current effectiveness of the ECO PRO functions can be displayed as energy flow.

Displaying energy flow information

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Energy flow"

The following functions are displayed:

- Auto Start/Stop function.
- Energy recovery.
- Coasting.

Coasting

Concept

Under certain conditions the engine is automatically decoupled from the transmission in the D selector lever position. The vehicle continues traveling with the engine idling to reduce consumption. Selector lever position D remains engaged.

This driving condition is referred to as coasting.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3763
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

As soon as the brake or accelerator pedal is depressed, the engine is automatically coupled to the transmission again.

General information

Coasting is a component of the ECO PRO driving mode.

Coasting is automatically activated when ECO PRO mode is called via the Driving Dynamics Control.

A proactive driving style helps the driver to use the function often and supports the efficient effect of coasting.

Functional requirements

The function is available in the speed range from approx. 16 mph/25 km/h to 100 mph/160 km/h.

The function is active if the following conditions are met:

- The accelerator pedal is not depressed or the accelerator pedal is released.
- Brake pedal not depressed or only slightly depressed.
- The selector lever is in selector lever position D.
- Engine and transmission are at operating temperature.
- Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function, ACC, not activated.

Operation via shift paddles

Concept

The coasting driving condition can be influenced with the shift paddles.

Activating/deactivating coasting via shift paddles

1. Shift to the highest gear by pulling the right shift paddle.
2. To activate coasting mode, actuate the right shift paddle again.

To deactivate, actuate the left shift paddle.

Display

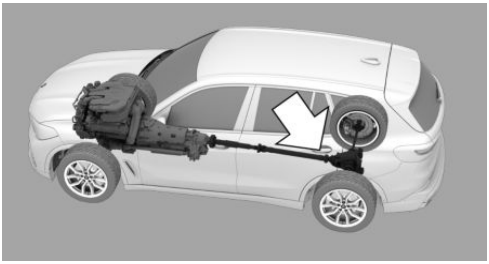
Display in the instrument cluster

The coasting distance traveled is indicated in coasting mode.

Indications on the Control Display

The coasting mode is displayed under energy flow while driving.

The distance traveled in coasting mode is displayed in the trip data.



Color code blue: coasting mode.

Displaying energy flow information

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Energy flow"

System limits

The function is not available under one of the following conditions.

- DSC OFF or TRACTION activated.
- Driving in the dynamic limit range and on steep uphill or downhill grades.
- Battery charge status temporarily too low or vehicle electrical system drawing excessive current.
- HDC Hill Descent Control activated

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3764
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Driving style analysis

Concept

The function helps develop an especially efficient driving style and to conserve fuel.

For this purpose, the driving style is analyzed. The assessment is done in various categories and is displayed on the Control Display.

This display will help you adjust your driving style and save some fuel.

General information

The current trip is assessed.

To assist with an efficient driving style, ECO PRO tips are displayed during driving.

The range of the vehicle can be extended by adjusting your driving style.

This gain in range is displayed as a bonus range in the instrument cluster and on the Control Display.

Functional requirement

This function is available in ECO PRO drive mode.

Calling up the Driving style analysis

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Driving style analysis"

Display on the Control Display

The display of the Driving style analysis shows the efficiency of the Driving style.

The more efficient the driving style, the more bars are displayed in color and the faster the bonus range increases.

In contrast, a reduced number of bars will be displayed with an inefficient driving style.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3765
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3766
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Refueling

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Follow the following when refueling

General information

Follow the fuel recommendation prior to refueling.

When refueling, insert the filler nozzle completely into the filler pipe. Lifting up the fuel pump nozzle during refueling causes:

- Premature switching off.
- Reduced return of the fuel vapors.

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

Make sure that the fuel cap is closed properly after refueling, otherwise the emissions warning light may light up.

Follow safety regulations posted at the gas station.

Additional information:

Fuel quality, refer to page 315.

Safety information

NOTICE

With a driving range of less than 30 miles/50 km the engine may no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of damage to property. Refuel promptly.

NOTICE

Fuels are toxic and aggressive. Overfilling of the fuel tank can damage the fuel system. Painted surfaces may be damaged by contact with fuel. Escaping fuel can harm the environment. There is a risk of damage to property. Avoid overfilling.

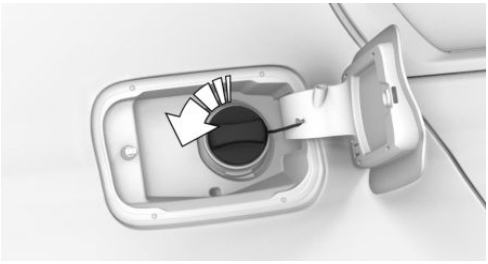
Fuel cap

Opening

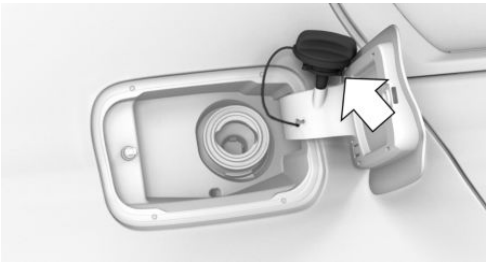
1. To open the fuel filler flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3767
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

2. Turn the fuel cap counterclockwise.



3. Place the fuel cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.



Closing

Warning

The retaining strap of the fuel cap can be jammed and crushed during closing. The cap cannot be correctly closed. Fuel or fuel vapors can escape. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Pay attention that the retaining strap is not jammed or crushed when closing the cap.

1. Fit the fuel cap and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.
2. Press on the fuel filler flap until it engages.

Emergency unlocking

It may be necessary in certain situations to unlock the fuel filler flap manually, for instance with an electrical fault.

Have fuel filler flap unlocked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Wheels and tires

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Tire inflation pressure

General information

The tire characteristics and tire inflation pressure influence the following:

- The service life of the tires.
- Road safety.
- Driving comfort.
- Fuel consumption.

Safety information

Warning

A tire with too little or no tire inflation pressure may heat up significantly and sustain damage. This will have a negative impact on aspects of handling, such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident. Regularly check the tire inflation pressure, and correct it as needed, for instance twice a month and before a long trip.

Tire inflation pressure specifications

In the tire inflation pressure table

The tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 280, contains all tire inflation pressure specifications for the specified tire sizes at the ambient temperature. The tire inflation pressure values apply to tire sizes approved by the manufacturer of the vehicle for the vehicle type.

To identify the correct tire inflation pressure, please note the following:

- Tire sizes of your vehicle.
- Maximum permitted driving speed.

On the Control Display

The current tire inflation pressure values and the intended tire inflation pressure values for the mounted tires can be displayed on the Control Display.

To ensure that they are displayed correctly, the tire sizes must be stored in the system and must have been set for the mounted tires.

The current tire inflation pressure value is located on each tire.

The reference tire inflation pressure value is located in the lower area of the Control Display.

Checking the tire inflation pressure

General information

Tires heat up while driving. The tire inflation pressure increases with the tire temperature.

Tires have a natural, consistent loss of tire inflation pressure.

The displays of inflation devices may under-read by up to 0.1 bar/2 psi.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3769
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Checking using tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire inflation pressure table

1. Determine the intended tire inflation pressure levels for the mounted tires.
2. Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, using a pressure gage, for example.
3. Correct the tire inflation pressure if the actual tire inflation pressure deviates from the intended tire inflation pressure.
4. Check whether all valve caps are screwed onto the tire valves.

The tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire inflation pressure table only relate to cold tires or tires at the same temperature as the ambient temperature.

Only check the tire inflation pressure levels when the tires are cold, i.e.:

- ▷ A driving distance of max. 1.25 miles/2 km has not been exceeded.
- ▷ If the vehicle has not moved again for at least 2 hours after a trip.

Check the tire inflation pressure of the emergency wheel in the cargo area regularly, and correct it as needed.

Checking using the tire inflation pressure specifications on the Control Display

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) "Tire Pressure Monitor"
4. Check whether the current tire inflation pressure levels deviate from the intended tire pressure value.
5. Correct the tire inflation pressure if the actual tire inflation pressure deviates from the intended tire inflation pressure.

After correcting the tire inflation pressure

With runflat tires:

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

With Tire Pressure Monitor:

The corrected tire inflation pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the correct tire settings have been made.

With tires that cannot be found in the tire pressure values on the Control Display, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM.

Tire inflation pressures up to 100 mph/160 km/h

For speeds of up to 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table and adjust as necessary.

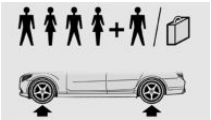
These pressure values can also be found on the tire inflation pressure label on the driver's door pillar.

Do not exceed a speed of 100 mph/160 km/h.

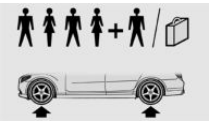
Tire inflation pressure values up to 100 mph/160 km/h

X4 xDrive30i

Without high-speed tuning feature

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
225/60 R 18 104 H XL A/S 245/50 R 19 105 H XL A/S 245/50 R 19 105 W XL 225/60 R 18 104 H XL M+S 245/50 R 19 105 V XL M+S	2.2 / 32	2.6 / 38
245/45 R 20 103 V XL M+S	2.2 / 32	2.7 / 39
Front: 245/45 R 20 103 Y XL	2.2 / 32	-
Rear: 275/40 R 20 106 Y XL	-	2.4 / 35
Front: 245/45 R 20 103 W XL	2.2 / 32	-
Rear: 275/40 R 20 106 W XL	-	2.4 / 35
Front: 245/40 R 21 100 Y XL	2.3 / 33	-
Rear: 275/35 R 21 103 Y XL	-	2.7 / 39
Front: 245/45 R 20 103 V XL M +S	2.2 / 32	-
Rear: 275/40 R 20 106 V XL M +S	-	2.4 / 35
Emergency wheel: T 135/80 R 18 104 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

With high-speed tuning feature

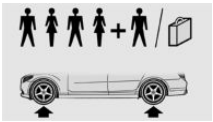
Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
245/50 R 19 105 W XL 225/60 R 18 104 H XL M+S	2.2 / 32	2.6 / 38
245/50 R 19 105 V XL M+S 245/45 R 20 103 V XL M+S	2.2 / 32	2.7 / 39
Front: 245/45 R 20 103 Y XL	2.2 / 32	-
Rear: 275/40 R 20 106 Y XL	-	2.4 / 35
Front: 245/45 R 20 103 W XL	2.2 / 32	-
Rear: 275/40 R 20 106 W XL	-	2.4 / 35
Front: 245/40 R 21 100 Y XL	2.3 / 33	-
Rear: 275/35 R 21 103 Y XL	-	2.7 / 39

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3771
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Front: 245/45 R 20 103 V XL M +S	2.2 / 32	-
Rear: 275/40 R 20 106 V XL M +S	-	2.4 / 35
Emergency wheel:	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h	
T 135/80 R 18 104 M	4.2 / 60	

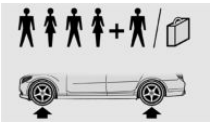
X4 M40i

Without high-speed tuning feature

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
245/50 R 19 105 H XL A/S 245/50 R 19 105 W XL 245/50 R 19 105 V XL M+S	2.2 / 32	2.4 / 35
245/45 R 20 103 V XL M+S	2.2 / 32	2.6 / 38
Front: 245/45 R 20 103 Y XL	2.2 / 32	-
Rear: 275/40 R 20 106 Y XL	-	2.4 / 35
Front: 245/45 R 20 103 W XL	2.2 / 32	-
Rear: 275/40 R 20 106 W XL	-	2.4 / 35

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Front: 245/40 R 21 100 Y XL	2.4 / 35	-
Rear: 275/35 R 21 103 Y XL	-	2.6 / 38
Front: 245/45 R 20 103 V XL M +S	2.2 / 32	-
Rear: 275/40 R 20 106 V XL M +S	-	2.4 / 35
Emergency wheel:	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h	
T 135/80 R 18 104 M	4.2 / 60	

With high-speed tuning feature

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
245/50 R 19 105 W XL	2.2 / 32	2.4 / 35
245/50 R 19 105 V XL M+S 245/45 R 20 103 V XL M+S	2.2 / 32	2.6 / 38
Front: 245/45 R 20 103 Y XL	2.2 / 32	-
Rear: 275/40 R 20 106 Y XL	-	2.4 / 35
Front: 245/45 R 20 103 W XL	2.2 / 32	-
Rear: 275/40 R 20 106 W XL	-	2.4 / 35

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3772

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Front: 245/40 R 21 100 Y XL	2.4 / 35	-
Rear: 275/35 R 21 103 Y XL	-	2.6 / 38
Front: 245/45 R 20 103 V XL M +S	2.2 / 32	-
Rear: 275/40 R 20 106 V XL M +S	-	2.4 / 35
Emergency wheel:	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h	
T 135/80 R 18 104 M	4.2 / 60	

Tire inflation pressures at max. speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h

Warning

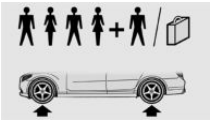
In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph/160 km/h, please observe, and, if necessary, adjust tire pressures for speeds exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h from the relevant table on the following pages. Otherwise, tire damage and accidents could occur.

For speeds over 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table and adjust as necessary.

Tire inflation pressure values over 100 mph/160 km/h

X4 xDrive30i

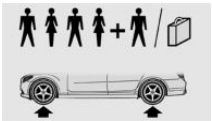
Without high-speed tuning feature

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
225/60 R 18 104 H XL A/S 225/60 R 18 104 H XL M+S 245/50 R 19 105 H XL A/S 245/50 R 19 105 V XL M+S	2.3 / 33	2.8 / 41
245/50 R 19 105 W XL	2.6 / 38	3.1 / 45
245/45 R 20 103 V XL M+S	2.4 / 35	2.9 / 42
Front: 245/45 R 20 103 Y XL	2.2 / 32	-
Rear: 275/40 R 20 106 Y XL	-	2.4 / 35
Front: 245/45 R 20 103 W XL	2.2 / 32	-
Rear: 275/40 R 20 106 W XL	-	2.6 / 38
Front: 245/40 R 21 100 Y XL	2.3 / 33	-
Rear: 275/35 R 21 103 Y XL	-	2.7 / 39
Front: 245/45 R 20 103 V XL M +S	2.4 / 35	-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3773
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Rear: 275/40 R 20 106 V XL M +S	-	2.7 / 39
Emergency wheel: T 135/80 R 18 104 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

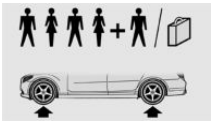
With high-speed tuning feature

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
225/60 R 18 104 H XL M+S	2.3 / 33	2.8 / 41
245/50 R 19 105 W XL	2.6 / 38	3.1 / 45
245/50 R 19 105 V XL M+S 245/45 R 20 103 V XL M+S	2.8 / 41	3.3 / 48
Front: 245/45 R 20 103 Y XL	2.3 / 33	-
Rear: 275/40 R 20 106 Y XL	-	2.6 / 38
Front: 245/45 R 20 103 W XL	2.6 / 38	-
Rear: 275/40 R 20 106 W XL	-	3.0 / 44
Front: 245/40 R 21 100 Y XL	2.5 / 36	-
Rear: 275/35 R 21 103 Y XL	-	2.9 / 42

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Front: 245/45 R 20 103 V XL M +S	2.8 / 41	-
Rear: 275/40 R 20 106 V XL M +S	-	3.0 / 44
Emergency wheel: T 135/80 R 18 104 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

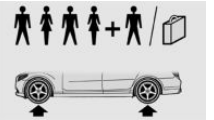
X4 M40i

Without high-speed tuning feature

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
245/50 R 19 105 H XL A/S 245/50 R 19 105 V XL M+S	2.3 / 33	2.7 / 39
245/50 R 19 105 W XL	2.7 / 39	3.2 / 46
245/45 R 20 103 V XL M+S	2.4 / 35	2.9 / 42
Front: 245/45 R 20 103 Y XL	2.2 / 32	-
Rear: 275/40 R 20 106 Y XL	-	2.4 / 35
Front: 245/45 R 20 103 W XL	2.3 / 33	-
Rear: 275/40 R 20 106 W XL	-	2.5 / 36

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Front: 245/40 R 21 100 Y XL	2.4 / 35	-
Rear: 275/35 R 21 103 Y XL	-	2.6 / 38
Front: 245/45 R 20 103 V XL M +S	2.4 / 35	-
Rear: 275/40 R 20 106 V XL M +S	-	2.7 / 39
Emergency wheel: T 135/80 R 18 104 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

With high-speed tuning feature

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
245/50 R 19 105 W XL	2.7 / 39	3.2 / 46
245/50 R 19 105 V XL M+S 245/45 R 20 103 V XL M+S	2.8 / 41	3.3 / 48
Front: 245/45 R 20 103 Y XL	2.7 / 39	-
Rear: 275/40 R 20 106 Y XL	-	2.7 / 39
Front: 245/45 R 20 103 W XL	2.9 / 42	-
Rear: 275/40 R 20 106 W XL	-	3.1 / 45

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Front: 245/40 R 21 100 Y XL	2.8 / 41	-
Rear: 275/35 R 21 103 Y XL	-	3.0 / 44
Front: 245/45 R 20 103 V XL M +S	2.8 / 41	-
Rear: 275/40 R 20 106 V XL M +S	-	3.0 / 44
Emergency wheel: T 135/80 R 18 104 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

Tire identification marks

Tire size

245/45 R 18 96 Y

245: nominal width in mm

45: aspect ratio in %

R: radial tire code

18: rim diameter in inches

96: load rating, not for ZR tires

Y: speed rating, before the R on ZR tires

Maximum tire load

Maximum tire load is the maximum permissible weight for which the tire is approved.

Locate the maximum tire load on the tire sidewall and the Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR – on the certification label on the driver door B-pillar. Divide the tire load by 1.1. It must be greater than one-half of the vehicle's Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR. Note, front vs. rear GAWR and tire loads, respectively.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3775
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Speed letter

Designation	Maximum speed
Q	up to 100 mph/160 km/h
R	up to 106 mph/170 km/h
S	up to 112 mph/180 km/h
T	up to 118 mph/190 km/h
H	up to 131 mph/210 km/h
V	up to 150 mph/240 km/h
W	up to 167 mph/270 km/h
Y	up to 186 mph/300 km/h
(Y)	above 186 mph/300 km/h

Tire Identification Number

DOT Code: DOT xxxx xxx 3820

xxxx: manufacturer code for the tire brand

xxx: tire size and tire design

2120: tire age

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

Tire age

Recommendation

Regardless of the tire tread, replace tires at least every 6 years.

Manufacture date

You can find the manufacture date of the tire on the tire's sidewall.

Designation	Manufacture date
DOT … 3820	38th week 2020

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

E.g.: Treadwear 200; Traction AA; Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades

Treadwear

Traction AA A B C

Temperature A B C

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. E.g., a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half, 1 g, times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.

Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3776

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades Band A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Warning

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

RSC – Run-flat tires

Run-flat tires, refer to page 291, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the sidewall.

M+S

Winter and all-season tires with better cold weather performance than summer tires.

Tire tread

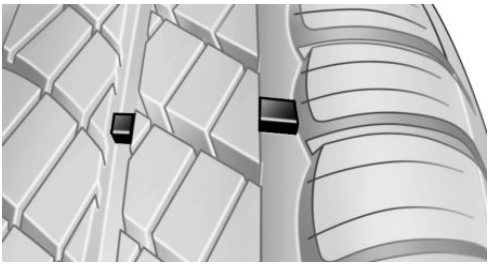
Summer tires

Do not drive with a tire tread of less than 0.12 in/3 mm, otherwise there is an increased risk of hydroplaning.

Winter tires

Do not drive with a tire tread of less than 0.16 in/4 mm, as such tires are less suitable for winter operation.

Minimum tread depth



Wear indicators are distributed around the tire circumference. These wear indicators have the legally required minimum height of 0.063 in/1.6 mm.

The positions of the wear indicators are marked on the tire sidewall with TWI, Tread Wear Indicator.

Tire damage

General information

Inspect your tires regularly for damage, foreign objects lodged in the tread, and tread wear.

Driving over rough or damaged road surfaces, as well as debris, curbs and other obstacles can cause serious damage to wheels, tires and suspension parts. This is more likely to occur with low-profile tires, which provide less cushioning between the wheel and the road. Be careful to avoid road hazards and reduce your speed, especially if your vehicle is equipped with low-profile tires.

Indications of tire damage or other vehicle malfunctions:

- Unusual vibrations.
- Unusual tire or running noises.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3777
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

- Unusual handling such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.

Damage can be caused by the following situations, for instance:

- Driving over curbs.
- Road damage.
- Tire inflation pressure too low.
- Vehicle overloading.
- Incorrect tire storage.

Safety information

Warning

Damaged tires can lose tire inflation pressure, which can lead to loss of vehicle control. There is a risk of accident. If tire damage is suspected while driving, immediately reduce speed and stop. Have wheels and tires checked. For this purpose, drive carefully to the nearest dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Have vehicle towed or transported as needed. Do not repair damaged tires, but have them replaced.

Warning

Tires can become damaged by driving over obstacles, e.g., curbs or road damage, at high speed. Larger wheels have a smaller tire cross-section. The smaller the tire cross-section, the higher the risk of tire damage. There is a danger of accidents and property damage. If possible, avoid driving over objects or road conditions that may damage tires, or drive over them slowly and carefully.

Changing wheels and tires

Mounting and wheel balancing

Have mounting and wheel balancing carried out by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Wheel and tire combination

General information

You can ask the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop about the correct wheel/tire combination and wheel rim versions for the vehicle.

Safety information

Warning

Wheels and tires which are not suitable for your vehicle can damage parts of the vehicle, for instance due to contact with the body due to tolerances despite the same official size rating. There is a risk of an accident. The manufacturer of your vehicle strongly suggests that you use wheels and tires that have been recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for your vehicle type.

Warning

Mounted steel wheels can cause technical problems, for instance unexpected loosening of the lug bolts and damage to the brake discs. There is a risk of accident. Do not mount steel wheels.

Warning

Incorrect wheel/tire combinations will have a negative impact on the vehicle's handling and on the function of a variety of systems, such as the ABS Antilock Braking System or DSC Dynamic Stability Control. There is a risk of acci-

dent. To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires with a single tread configuration from a single manufacturer. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you use wheels and tires that have been recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for your vehicle type. Following tire damage, have the original wheel/tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

Recommended tire brands

For each tire size, the manufacturer of the vehicle recommends certain tire brands. The tire brands can be identified by a star on the tire sidewall.

New tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new; they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Retreaded tires

Warning

Retreaded tires can have different tire casing structures. With advanced age the service life can be limited. There is a risk of an accident. The manufacturer of your vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

The manufacturer of the vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

Winter tires

General information

Winter tires are recommended for operating on winter roads.

Although so-called all-season M+S tires provide better winter traction than summer tires, they usually do not provide the same level of performance as winter tires.

Safety information

Warning

If the vehicle is equipped with an M Sport differential and all-weather tires on 19 inch rims, this can alter handling, for instance the vehicle may swerve off course. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. If the vehicle is equipped with an M Sport differential, do not fit all-weather tires on 19 inch rims.

Maximum speed of winter tires

If the maximum speed of the vehicle is higher than the permissible speed for the winter tires, then attach a label showing the permissible maximum speed in the field of view. The label is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

With winter tires mounted, observe and do not exceed the permissible maximum speed.

Changing runflat tires

When changing from run-flat tires to standard tires, it must be ensured that the vehicle contains a compact spare tire ("donut") or tire mobility kit. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3779
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Rotating wheels between axles

Warning

Rotating tires between the axles on vehicles with different tire sizes or rim sizes on the front and rear axles can cause damage to the tires and the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Do not rotate the tires between the axles on vehicles with different tire sizes or rim sizes on the front and rear axles.

Different wear patterns can occur on the front and rear axles depending on individual driving conditions. The tires can be rotated in pairs between the axles to achieve even wear. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. After rotating, check the tire pressure and correct, if needed.

Storing tires

Tire inflation pressure

Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the side wall of the tire.

Storage

- Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry and dark place.
- Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease, and solvents.
- Do not leave tires in plastic bags.
- Remove dirt from wheels or tires.

Run-flat tires

Concept

Run-flat tires permit continued driving under restricted conditions even in the event of a complete loss of tire inflation pressure.

General information

The wheels consist of tires that are self-supporting, to a limited degree, and possibly special rims.

The support of the sidewall allows the tire to remain drivable to a restricted degree in the event of a tire inflation pressure loss.

Follow the instructions for continued driving with a flat tire.

Safety information

Warning

The vehicle handles differently when a run-flat tire has insufficient or no tire pressure; for instance, reduced lane stability when braking, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of accident. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Label

The tires are marked on the tire sidewall with Run-flat System Component RSC.

Repairing a flat tire

Safety measures

- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
- Switch on the hazard warning system.

- Secure the vehicle against rolling away by setting the parking brake.
- Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
- If necessary, set up a warning triangle at an appropriate distance.

Mobility System

Concept

With the Mobility System, minor tire damage can be sealed temporarily to enable continued travel. To accomplish this, sealant is pumped into the tires, which seals the damage from the inside.

General information

- Follow the instructions on using the Mobility System found on the compressor and sealant container.
- Use of the Mobility System may be ineffective if the tire puncture measures approx. 1/8 inches/4 mm or more.
- Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop if the tire cannot be made drivable.
- Do not remove foreign bodies that have penetrated the tire. Remove foreign objects only when they are visibly protruding from the tire.
- Pull the speed limit sticker off the sealant container and apply it to the steering wheel.
- The use of a sealant can damage the wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics checked and replaced at the next opportunity.
- The compressor can be used to check the tire inflation pressure.

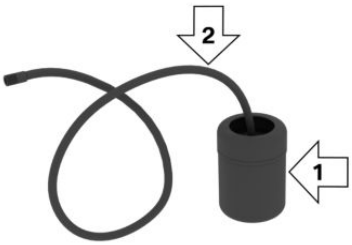
Overview

Storage

The Mobility System is located in the storage compartment under the cargo floor panel.

Fold up the cargo floor panel.

Sealant container

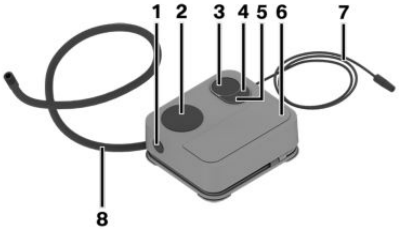


- Sealant container, arrow 1.
- Filling hose, arrow 2.

Observe use-by date on the sealant container.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3781
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Compressor



1 Sealant container unlocking
2 Sealant container holder
3 Tire pressure gage
4 Reduce tire inflation pressure button
5 On/off switch
6 Compressor
7 Connector/cable for socket
8 Connection hose

Safety measures

- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
- Switch on the hazard warning system.
- Secure the vehicle against rolling away by setting the parking brake.
- Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
- If necessary, set up a warning triangle at an appropriate distance.

Filling the tire with sealant

Safety information

⚠ DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can enter into the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.

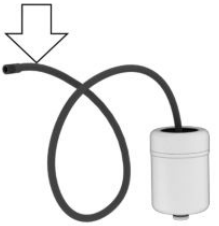
⚠ NOTICE

The compressor can overheat during extended operation. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not run the compressor for more than 10 minutes.

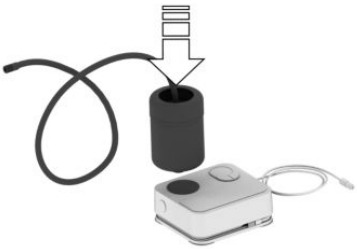
Filling

1. Shake the sealant container.

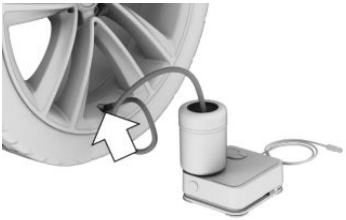
2. Pull filling hose completely out of the cover of the sealant container. Do not kink the hose.



3. Slide the sealant container into the holder on the compressor housing, ensuring that it engages audibly.



4. Screw the filling hose of the sealant container onto the tire valve of the nonworking wheel.



5. With the compressor switched off, insert the connector into the power socket in the vehicle interior.

6. With standby state or drive-ready state switched on, switch on the compressor.

Let the compressor run for max. 10 minutes to fill the tire with sealant and achieve a tire inflation pressure of approx. 2.0 bar.

While the tire is being filled with sealant, the tire inflation pressure may sporadically reach approx. 5 bar. Do not switch off the compressor at this point.

Checking and adjusting the tire inflation pressure

Checking

1. Switch off the compressor.
2. Read the tire inflation pressure on the tire pressure gage.

To continue the trip, a tire inflation pressure of at least 2 bar must be reached.

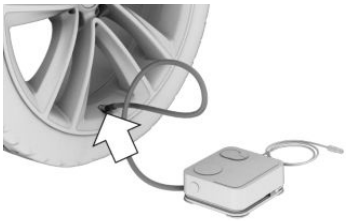
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3783
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Removing and stowing the sealant container

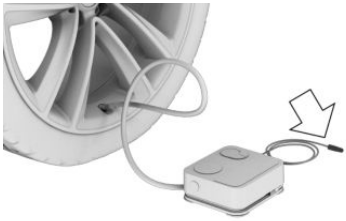
1. Unscrew the filling hose of the sealant container from the tire valve.
2. Press the red unlocking device.
3. Remove the sealant container from the compressor.
4. Wrap and store the sealant container in suitable material to avoid dirtying the cargo area.

Minimum tire inflation pressure is not reached

1. Pull the connector out of the power socket in the vehicle interior.
2. Drive 33 ft/10 m forward and back to distribute the sealant in the tire.
3. Screw the connection hose of the compressor directly onto the tire valve stem.



4. Insert the connector into the power socket in the vehicle interior.



5. With standby state or drive-ready state switched on, switch on the compressor.

   When the tire pressure does not reach at least 2 bar, contact a manufacturer service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

   When a tire pressure of at least 2 bar is reached, see Minimum tire inflation pressure is reached.
6. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
7. Pull the connector out of the power socket in the vehicle interior.
8. Stow the Mobility System in the vehicle.

Minimum tire inflation pressure is reached

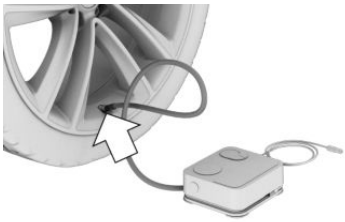
1. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
2. Pull the connector out of the power socket in the vehicle interior.
3. Stow the Mobility System in the vehicle.
4. Immediately drive approx. 5 miles/10 km to ensure that the sealant is evenly distributed in the tire.

   Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

   If possible, do not drive at speeds less than 12 mph/20 km/h.

Adjustment

1. Stop at a suitable location.
2. Screw the connection hose of the compressor directly onto the tire valve stem.



BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3784

3. Insert the connector into the power socket in the vehicle interior.

4. Correct the tire inflation pressure to at least 2.0 bar:
   - ▷ Increase tire inflation pressure: with standby state or drive-ready state switched on, switch on the compressor.
   - ▷ Reduce tire inflation pressure: press the button on the compressor.
5. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
6. Pull the connector out of the power socket in the vehicle interior.
7. Stow the Mobility System in the vehicle.

Continuing the trip

Do not exceed the maximum permissible speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor again.

Replace the nonworking tire and the sealant container of the Mobility System promptly.

Additional information:

- ▷ Run-flat tires, refer to page 304.
- ▷ Tire pressure monitor, refer to page 297.

Tire chains

Safety information

⚠ Warning

With the mounting of snow chains on unsuitable tires, the snow chains can come into contact with vehicle parts. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Only mount snow chains on tires that are designated by their manufacturer as suitable for the use of snow chains.

⚠ Warning

Insufficiently tight snow chains may damage tires and vehicle components. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the snow chains are always sufficiently tight. Re-tighten as needed according to the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Fine-link tire chains

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends the use of fine-link tire chains. Certain types of fine-link tire chains have been tested by the manufacturer of the vehicle and recommended as road-safe and suitable.

Information regarding suitable tire chains is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Use

Use only in pairs on the rear wheels, equipped with the tires of the following size:

- ▷ 225/60 R 18.
- ▷ 245/50 R 19.

Follow the tire chain manufacturer's instructions.

Do not initialize the Flat Tire Monitor after mounting tire chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3785
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Do not reset the Tire Pressure Monitor after mounting tire chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

When driving with tire chains, briefly activate Dynamic Traction Control DTC to optimize the drive power.

Maximum speed with tire chains

Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h when using tire chains.

Tire pressure monitor

Concept

The system monitors tire inflation pressure in the four mounted tires. The system warns you if there is a loss of pressure in one or more tires.

General information

Sensors in the tire valves measure the tire inflation pressure and tire temperature.

Using the tire settings in iDrive, the system can automatically compare the specified target pressures with the actual tire inflation pressures.

If tires are being used that are not specified on the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle, such as tires with special approval, the system needs to be actively reset. The system will then take over the actual tire inflation pressures as the target pressures.

When operating the system, also note the information found in the Tire inflation pressure chapter.

Additional information:

Tire inflation pressure, refer to page 280.

Safety information

Warning

The display of the target pressures is not a substitute for the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle. Incorrect entries in the tire settings can lead to incorrect target tire inflation pressure values. In this case, it cannot be guaranteed that the notification of a loss of tire inflation pressure will be reliable. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Ensure that the tire sizes of the mounted tires are displayed correctly and match the details on the tires and on the vehicle.

Functional requirements

The following conditions must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable flagging of a loss of tire inflation pressure is not assured:

- Every time a tire or wheel is changed, the correct details on the mounted tires must be entered in the tire settings.
- The Tire Pressure Monitor does not activate until after driving for a few minutes:
  - After a tire or wheel replacement.
  - After a reset, for tires with special approval.
  - After changing the tire setting.
- For tires with special approval:
  - After a tire or wheel replacement, a reset was performed with the correct tire inflation pressure.
  - After the tire inflation pressure was adjusted to a new value, a reset was performed.
- Wheels with wheel electronics.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3786

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Tire settings

General information

The tire sizes of the mounted tires can be gathered from the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle or directly on the tires.

The tire details do not need to be re-entered when the tire inflation pressure is corrected.

For summer and winter tires, the tire details entered last are stored. After a tire or wheel replacement, the settings of the tire sets used last can be selected.

Changing settings

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor"
4. "Tire settings"
5. "Tire selection"
6. "Manual"
7. "Tire type"
   - ▷ "Summer"
   - ▷ "Winter/All-year"
8. Select the tire type that is mounted on the rear axle.

   For tires with special approval:

   "Other tires".

   Observe further proceeding in the perform a reset section.
9. Select the maximum road speed that will be used with the tires.
10. "Save tire settings"

The measurement of the current tire inflation pressure is started. The measurement progress is displayed.

Status display

Current status

The system status can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g., whether or not the system is active.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor"

The current status is displayed.

Current tire inflation pressure

The current tire inflation pressure is displayed for each tire.

The current tire inflation pressures may change during driving operation or depending on the external temperature.

Current tire temperature

Depending on the model, the current tire temperatures are displayed.

The current tire temperatures may change while driving or due to the external temperature.

Target pressure

The target pressure for the tires on the front and rear axles is displayed.

The specified target pressures take the influence of driving operation and external temperature on the tire temperature into account. The appropriate target pressure is always displayed, independent of the weather situation, tire temperatures and travel times.

The displayed target pressure may change and may differ from the tire inflation pressure details on the door pillar of the driver's door. The tire inflation pressure can thus be corrected to the value of the displayed target pressures.

The target pressure is immediately adjusted if the vehicle load is changed in the tire settings.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3787
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Tire conditions

General information

Tire and system status are indicated by the color of the wheels and a text message on the Control Display.

Any existing messages may not be deleted if the target pressure is not reached after the tire inflation pressure is corrected.

All wheels green

- The system is active and bases warnings on the target pressures.
- For tires with special approval: the system is active and bases warnings on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

One to four yellow wheels

A flat tire or major drop in the tire inflation pressure has occurred in the indicated tires.

Gray wheels

It may not be possible to identify tire inflation pressure losses.

Possible causes:

- Malfunction.
- During tire inflation pressure measurement, after confirmation of the tire settings.
- For tires with special approval: a reset is performed for the system.

For tires with special approval: perform a reset

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor"
4. Make sure that correct tire settings have been made.

   Tire settings, refer to page 298.
5. Switch on drive-ready state and do not drive off.
6. Reset tire inflation pressure: "Perform reset".
7. Drive away.

The wheels are displayed in gray and the following is displayed "Resetting tire pressure…".

After a travel time of several minutes, the set tire inflation pressures are accepted as the target tire inflation pressures. The reset is completed automatically while driving.

After a successfully completed reset, the wheels on the Control Display are shown in green and the following is displayed: "Reset successful."

You may interrupt this trip at any time. When you continue the reset resumes automatically.

Messages: for tires without special approval

General information

A low tire inflation pressure may cause the DSC Dynamic Stability Control to be switched on.

Safety information

Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. Run-flat tires can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is equipped with normal tires. Follow the information on run-flat tires and continued driving with these tires.

If a tire inflation pressure check is required

Message

A symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	Inflation was not carried out according to specifications, for instance when the tire has not been sufficiently inflated or in the case of a natural steady tire pressure loss.

Measure

Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.

If the tire inflation pressure is too low

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a tire inflation pressure loss.

Measure

1. Reduce the vehicle speed. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph/130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, for instance at a gas station, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires and correct if necessary.

If there is a significant loss of tire inflation pressure

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with the affected tire appears in a Check Control message on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with normal tires or run-flat tires.

   Run-flat tires are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire's sidewall.

   Run-flat tires, refer to page 291.
3. Read the description on What to do in case of a flat tire.

   Actions in the event of a flat tire, refer to page 302.

Messages: for tires with special approval

General information

A low tire inflation pressure may cause the DSC Dynamic Stability Control to be switched on.

Safety information

Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. Run-flat tires can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is equipped with normal tires. Follow the information on run-flat tires and continued driving with these tires.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3789
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

If a tire inflation pressure check is required

Message

A symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	Inflation was not carried out according to specifications, e.g., the tire has not been sufficiently inflated. The system has detected a wheel change, but no reset was done. The tire inflation pressure has fallen below the level of the last reset. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.
2. Perform a system reset.

If the tire inflation pressure is too low

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a tire inflation pressure loss. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Reduce the vehicle speed. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph/130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, for instance at a gas station, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires and correct if necessary.
3. Reset the system.

If there is a significant loss of tire inflation pressure

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with the affected tire appears in a Check Control message on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with normal tires or run-flat tires.

   Run-flat tires are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire's sidewall.

   Run-flat tires, refer to page 291.
3. Read the description on What to do in case of a flat tire.

   Actions in the event of a flat tire, refer to page 302.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

Normal tires

1. Identify the damaged tire.

   Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure gage of a flat tire kit.

   For tires with special approval: when the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been reset. In this case, perform the reset.

   If tire damage cannot be found, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
2. Repair the flat tire, e.g., with a flat tire kit or by changing the wheel.

Use of sealant, for instance from the flat tire kit, may damage the wheel electronics. Have the electronics replaced at the next opportunity.

Run-flat tires

Safety information

Warning

The vehicle handles differently when a run-flat tire has insufficient or no tire pressure; for instance, reduced lane stability when braking, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of accident. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Maximum speed

You may continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

Continued driving with a flat tire

Follow the following when continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

Possible driving range with a depressurized tire

The distance for which it may be possible to drive safely varies depending on how the vehicle is loaded and used, e.g., speed, road conditions, external temperature. The driving range may be less but may also be more if an economical driving style is used.

If the vehicle is loaded with an average weight and used under favorable conditions, the distance for which it may be safe to drive may be up to 50 miles/80 km.

Vehicle handling with damaged tires

Vehicles driven with a damaged tire will handle differently, potentially leading to conditions such as the following:

- Greater likelihood of swerving off course.
- Longer braking distances.
- Changed self-steering properties.

Modify your driving style. Avoid abrupt steering maneuvers or driving over obstacles, for instance curbs or potholes.

Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire.

Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident.

Do not continue driving. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3791
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

System limits

Temperature

The tire inflation pressure depends on the tire's temperature.

Driving or exposure to the sun will increase the tire's temperature, thus increasing the tire inflation pressure.

The tire inflation pressure is reduced when the tire temperature falls again.

These circumstances may cause a warning when temperatures fall very sharply.

Following a temperature-related warning, the target pressures are displayed on the Control Display again after a short distance.

Sudden tire pressure loss

The system cannot indicate sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances.

Failure performing a reset

Tires with special approval: the system will not function correctly if a reset was not performed, for example a flat tire may be indicated although the tire inflation pressures are correct.

Malfunction

Message

The yellow warning light flashes and is then illuminated continuously. A Check Control message is displayed. It may not be possible to identify tire pressure losses.

Measure

- A wheel without wheel electronics is mounted: have the wheels checked, if needed.
- A wheel without wheel electronics, such as an emergency wheel, is mounted: have the wheels checked, if needed.
- Interference caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- For tires with special approval: the system was unable to complete the reset. Perform a system reset again.

Malfunction: have the system checked.

Declaration according to NHTSA/ FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Each tire, including the spare (if provided) should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.) As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale. Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously

illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Flat Tire Monitor FTM

Concept

The system detects tire inflation pressure loss on the basis of rotation speed differences between the individual wheels while driving.

In the event of a tire inflation pressure loss, the diameter and therefore the rotational speed of the corresponding wheel changes. The difference will be detected and reported as a flat tire.

The system does not measure the actual inflation pressure in the tires.

Functional requirements

The following conditions must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable flagging of a loss of tire inflation pressure is not assured:

- After a tire or wheel replacement, an initialization was performed with the correct tire inflation pressure.
- After the tire pressure was adjusted to a new value, an initialization was performed.

Status display

The current status of the Flat Tire Monitor FTM can be displayed, for instance whether the FTM is active.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Flat Tire Monitor"

The status is displayed.

Initialization required

An initialization must be performed in the following situations:

- After the tire inflation pressure has been adjusted.
- After a tire or wheel replacement.

Performing initialization

When initializing, the set tire inflation pressures serve as reference values in order to detect a flat tire. Initialization is started by confirming the tire inflation pressures.

Do not initialize the system when driving with tire chains.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Flat Tire Monitor"
4. Switch on drive-ready state and do not drive off.
5. Start the initialization with: "Perform reset"
6. Drive away.

The initialization is completed while driving, which can be interrupted at any time.

The initialization automatically continues when driving resumes.

Messages

General information

When a flat tire is indicated, DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if needed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3793
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Safety information

Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. Run-flat tires can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is equipped with normal tires. Follow the information on run-flat tires and continued driving with these tires.

Indication of a flat tire

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with normal tires or run-flat tires.

   Run-flat tires are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire's sidewall.

   Run-flat tires, refer to page 291.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

Normal tires

1. Identify the damaged tire.

   To do this, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure gage of a flat tire kit.

   When the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor FTM may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

   If identification of flat tire damage is not possible, please contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
2. Repair the flat tire, e.g., with a flat tire kit or by changing the wheel.

Run-flat tires

Safety information

Warning

The vehicle handles differently when a run-flat tire has insufficient or no tire pressure; for instance, reduced lane stability when braking, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of accident. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Maximum speed

You may continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

Continued driving with a flat tire

Follow the following when continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

   When the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

Possible driving range with a depressurized tire

The distance for which it may be possible to drive safely varies depending on how the vehicle is loaded and used, e.g., speed, road conditions, external temperature. The driving range may be less but may also be more if an economical driving style is used.

If the vehicle is loaded with an average weight and used under favorable conditions, the distance for which it may be safe to drive may be up to 50 miles/80 km.

Vehicle handling with damaged tires

Vehicles driven with a damaged tire will handle differently, potentially leading to conditions such as the following:

- Greater likelihood of swerving off course.
- Longer braking distances.
- Changed self-steering properties.

Modify your driving style. Avoid abrupt steering maneuvers or driving over obstacles, for instance curbs or potholes.

Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire.

Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident.

Do not continue driving. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

System limits

The system could be delayed or malfunction in the following situations:

- A natural, even tire inflation pressure loss in all four tires will not be recognized. Therefore, check the tire inflation pressure regularly.
- Sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances cannot be recognized in advance.
- The system has not been initialized.
- When driving on a snowy or slippery road surface.
- Sporty driving style: spinning traction wheels, high lateral acceleration (drifting).
- When driving with snow chains.

Changing wheels/tires

General information

When using run-flat tires or a flat tire kit, a wheel does not always need to be changed immediately when there is a loss of tire inflation pressure due to a flat tire.

If needed, the tools for changing wheels are available as accessories from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

⚠ DANGER

The vehicle jack is only provided for short-term lifting of the vehicle for wheel changes. Even if all safety measures are observed, there is a risk of the raised vehicle falling, if the vehicle jack tips over. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. If the vehicle is raised, do not lie under the vehicle and do not start the engine.

⚠ DANGER

Supports such as wooden blocks under the vehicle jack reduce the capacity of the vehicle jack to bear weight. They have the potential to exert too much strain on the vehicle jack, causing it to tip over and the vehicle to fall. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not place supports under the vehicle jack.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3795
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Warning

The jack, issued by the vehicle manufacturer, is provided in order to perform a wheel change in the event of a breakdown. The jack is not designed for frequent use; for example, changing from summer to winter tires. Using the jack frequently may cause it to become jammed or damaged. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only use the jack to attach an emergency or spare wheel in the event of a breakdown.

Warning

On soft, uneven or slippery ground, for example snow, ice, tiles, etc., the vehicle jack can slip away. There is a risk of injury. If possible, change the wheel on a flat, solid, and slip-resistant surface.

Warning

The vehicle jack is optimized for lifting the vehicle and for the jacking points on the vehicle only. There is a risk of injury. Do not lift any other vehicle or cargo using the vehicle jack.

Warning

When the vehicle jack is not inserted into the jacking point provided for this purpose, the vehicle may be damaged or the vehicle jack may slip when it is being cranked up. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. When cranking up the vehicle jack, ensure that it is inserted in the jacking point next to the wheel housing.

Warning

A vehicle that is raised on a vehicle jack may fall off of the jack if lateral forces are exerted on it. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. While the vehicle is raised, do not exert lateral forces on the vehicle or pull abruptly on the vehicle. Have a stuck wheel removed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Securing the vehicle against rolling

General information

The vehicle manufacturer recommends to additionally secure the vehicle against rolling away when changing a wheel.

On a level surface

Place wheel chocks or other suitable objects in front and behind the wheel that is diagonal to the wheel to be changed.

On a slight downhill gradient

If you need to change a wheel on a slight downhill grade, place chocks and other suitable objects, for instance rocks, under the wheels of both the front and rear axles against the rolling direction.

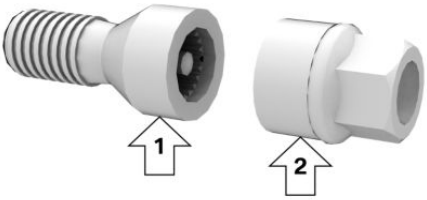
Lug bolt lock

Concept

The wheel lug bolts have a special coding. The lug bolts can only be released with the adapter which matches the coding.

Overview

The adapter of the lug bolt lock is in the onboard vehicle tool kit or in a storage compartment close to the onboard vehicle tool kit.



- Lug lock bolt, arrow 1.
- Adapter, arrow 2.

Unscrewing

1. Attach the adapter to the lug lock bolt.
2. Unscrew the lug lock bolt.
3. Remove the adapter after unscrewing the lug bolt.

Screwing on

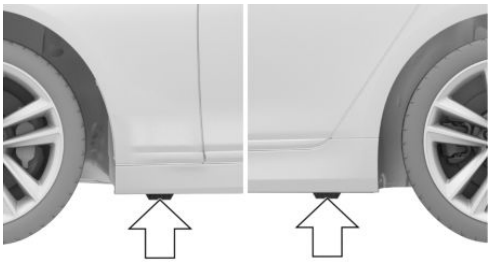
1. Attach the adapter to the lug lock bolt. If necessary, turn the adapter until it fits on the lug lock bolt.
2. Screw on the lug lock bolt. The tightening torque is 140 Nm.
3. Remove the adapter and stow it after screwing on the lug bolt.

Preparing the vehicle

- Park the vehicle on solid and non-slip ground at a safe distance from traffic.
- Switch on the hazard warning system.
- Set the parking brake.
- Engage a gear or move the selector lever to position P.
- As soon as permitted by the traffic flow, have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
- Depending on the vehicle equipment, get wheel change tools and, if necessary, the emergency wheel from the vehicle.
- If necessary, set up a warning triangle or portable hazard warning light at an appropriate distance.
- Secure the vehicle additionally against rolling.
- Loosen the lug bolts a half turn.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3797
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Jacking points for the vehicle jack



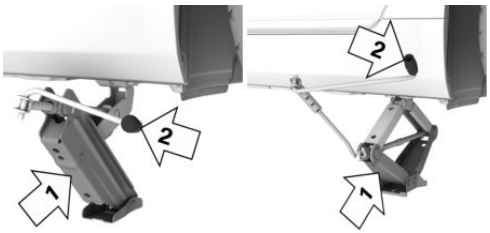
The jacking points for the vehicle jack are located at the indicated positions.

Jacking up the vehicle

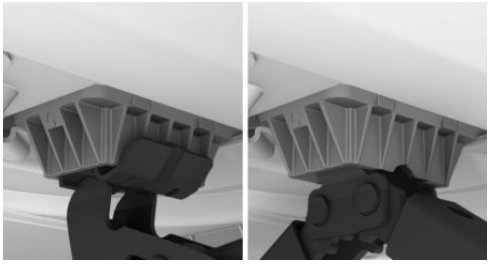
Warning

Hands and fingers can be jammed when using the vehicle jack. There is a risk of injury. Comply with the described hand position and do not change this position while using the vehicle jack.

1. Hold the vehicle jack with one hand, arrow 1, and grasp the vehicle jack crank or lever with your other hand, arrow 2.

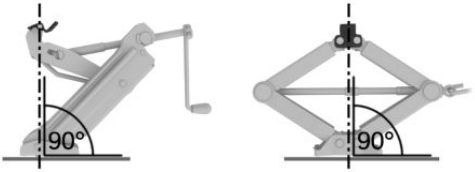


2. Insert the vehicle jack into the rectangular recess of the jacking point closest to the wheel to be changed.

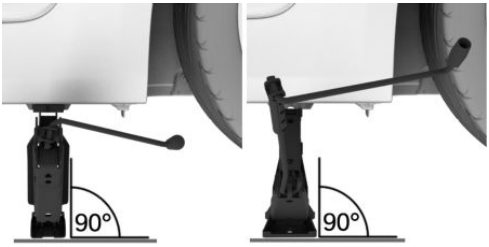


3. Extend the vehicle jack by turning the vehicle jack crank or lever clockwise.

4. Take your hand away from the vehicle jack as soon as the vehicle jack is under load and continue turning the vehicle jack crank or lever with one hand.
5. Make sure that the vehicle jack foot stands vertically and at a right angle beneath the jacking point.



6. Make sure that the vehicle jack foot stands vertically and perpendicularly beneath the jacking point after extending the vehicle jack.



7. Crank the vehicle up, until the vehicle jack is with the entire surface on the ground and the relevant wheel is maximum 1.2 inches/3 cm above ground.

Mounting a wheel

Mount one emergency wheel only, as required.

1. Unscrew the lug bolts.
2. Remove the wheel.
3. Put the new wheel or emergency wheel on and screw in at least two lug bolts in a crosswise pattern until hand-tight.

   When non-original light-alloy wheels of the vehicle manufacturer are mounted, the accompanying lug bolts may have to be used as well.
4. Hand-tighten the remaining lug bolts and tighten all lug bolts well in a crosswise pattern.
5. Turn the vehicle jack crank counterclockwise to retract the vehicle jack and lower the vehicle.
6. Remove the vehicle jack and stow it securely.

After the wheel change

1. Tighten the lug bolts crosswise. The tightening torque is 101 lbs ft/140 Nm.
2. Stow the nonworking wheel in the cargo area, if necessary.

   The nonworking wheel cannot be stored under the cargo floor panel because of its size.
3. Check tire inflation pressure at the next opportunity and correct as needed.
4. Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

   Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor again.
5. Check to make sure the lug bolts are tight with a calibrated torque wrench.
6. Have the damaged tire replaced at the nearest dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3799
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Emergency wheel

Concept

In the event of a flat tire, the emergency wheel can be used in place of the wheel with the defective tire. The emergency wheel is only intended for temporary use until the defective tire/wheel has been replaced.

General information

Mount one emergency wheel only.

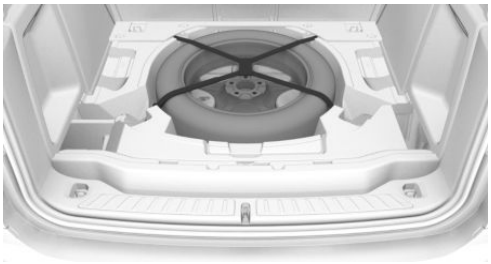
Also check the tire inflation pressure of the emergency wheel in the cargo area regularly, and correct it as needed.

Safety information

Warning

The emergency wheel has particular dimensions. When driving with an emergency wheel, changed driving properties may occur, for instance reduced lane stability when braking, longer braking distance, and changed self-steering properties in the limit area. There is a risk of accident. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

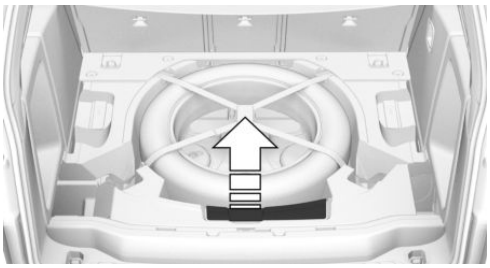
Overview



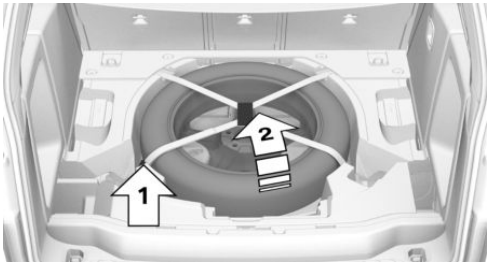
The emergency wheel and the wheel change tools are located in the cargo area under the cargo floor panel.

Removing the emergency wheel

1. Fold the rear part of the cargo floor panel forward.
2. Lift the cargo floor panel up and attach it to the folded-down multi-function hook.
3. Remove the cover.



4. Open the ratchet strap at the clasp, arrow 1.



5. Remove the emergency wheel from the storage well, arrow 2.

Inserting the emergency wheel

1. Place the emergency wheel in the storage well.
2. Tie the ratchet strap. Make sure that it is correctly and firmly seated.
3. Install the cover.
4. Lift the cargo floor panel up slightly and fold in the multi-function hook.
5. Lower the cargo floor panel and fold it toward the rear.

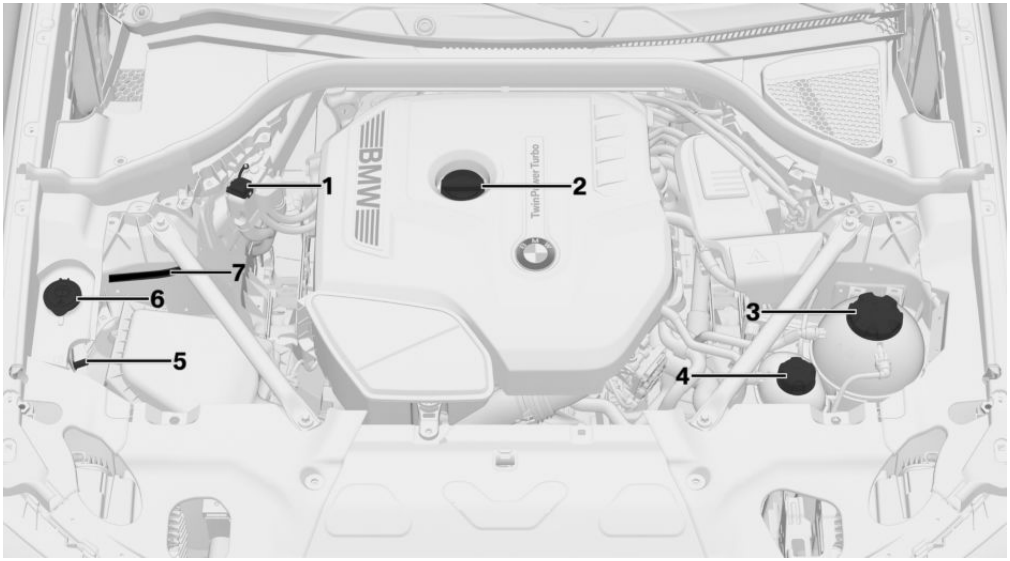
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3800
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Engine compartment

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Overview



1 Jump-starting, positive battery terminal
2 Oil filler neck
3 Coolant reservoir, engine
4 Depending on motorization: coolant reservoir for additional radiator
5 Jump-starting, negative battery terminal
6 Filler neck for washer fluid
7 Vehicle identification number

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3801
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Hood

Safety information

Warning

Improperly executed work in the engine compartment can damage vehicle components and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of an accident and damage to property. Have work in the engine compartment performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

The engine compartment accommodates moving components. Certain components in the engine compartment can also move with the vehicle switched off, for instance the radiator fan. There is a risk of injury. Do not reach into the area of moving parts. Keep articles of clothing and hair away from moving parts.

Warning

There are protruding parts, for instance locking hook, on the inside of the hood. There is a risk of injury. If the hood is open, pay attention to protruding parts and keep clear of these areas.

Warning

An incorrectly locked hood can open while driving and restrict visibility. There is a risk of accident. Stop immediately and correctly close the hood.

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when opening and closing the hood. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of hood is clear during opening and closing.

NOTICE

Folded-away wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.

NOTICE

When the hood is closed, it must engage on both sides. Pressing again can damage the hood. There is a risk of damage to property. Open the hood again and then close it energetically. Avoid pressing again.

Opening

1. Pull lever, arrow 1.

   Hood is unlocked.

2. After the lever is released, pull the lever again, arrow 2.

   Hood can be opened.

3. Be careful of protruding parts on the hood.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3802
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Closing

Energetically close the hood from approx. 20 in/50 cm.

The hood must engage on both sides.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3803
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Operating materials

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Fuel recommendation

General information

Depending on the region, many gas stations sell fuel that has been customized to winter or summer conditions. Fuel that is available in winter, for instance helps make a cold start easier.

Gasoline

General information

For the best fuel efficiency, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.

Fuels with a maximum ethanol content of 25 %, i. e. E10 or E25, may be used for refueling.

Ethanol should meet the following quality standards:

US: ASTM 4806–xx

CAN: CGSB-3.511–xx

xx: comply with the current standard in each case.

Safety information

⚠ CAUTION

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in harmful engine deposits or damage. Additionally, problems relating to drivability, starting and stalling, especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude, may occur.

If drivability problems are encountered, we recommend switching to a high quality gasoline brand and a higher octane grade — AKI number — for a few tank fills. To avoid harmful engine deposits, it is highly recommended to purchase gasoline from Top Tier retailers.

Failure to comply with these recommendations may result in the need for unscheduled maintenance.

⚠ NOTICE

Even small quantities of the wrong fuel or wrong fuel additives can damage the fuel system and engine. Furthermore, the catalytic converter is permanently damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not refuel or add the following in the case of gasoline engines:

- Leaded gasoline.
- Metallic additives, for instance manganese or iron.

Do not press the Start/Stop button after refueling with the wrong fuel. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

NOTICE

Fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality can compromise engine function or cause engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not fill with fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality.

NOTICE

Incorrect fuels can damage the fuel system and the engine. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use fuels with a higher percentage of ethanol than recommended. Do not refuel with fuels containing methanol, e.g. M5 to M100.

Recommended fuel grade

BMW recommends AKI 91.

M Performance model:

BMW recommends AKI 93.

Refuel with this gasoline to achieve the rated performance and consumption values.

Minimum fuel grade

BMW recommends AKI 89.

If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI Rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high external temperatures. This has no effect on the engine life.

BMW recommends Shell Quality Fuels

Engine oil

General information

The engine oil consumption is dependent on your driving style and driving conditions.

Therefore, regularly check the engine oil level after refueling by taking a detailed measurement.

The engine oil consumption can increase in the following situations, for instance:

- Sporty driving style.
- Break-in of the engine.
- Idling of the engine.
- With use of engine oil types that are classified as not suitable.

Different Check Control messages appear on the Control Display depending on the engine oil level.

Safety information

NOTICE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Immediately add engine oil.

NOTICE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add too much engine oil. When too much engine oil is added, have the engine oil level corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Electronic oil measurement

General information

The electronic oil measurement has two measuring principles:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3805
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

- Monitoring.
- Detailed measurement.

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a sporty driving style, for instance when taking curves aggressively, regularly perform a detailed measurement.

Monitoring

Concept

The engine oil level is monitored electronically while driving and can be shown on the Control Display.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.

A red indicator light indicates that the engine oil pressure is too low.

Functional requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of normal driving.

Displaying the engine oil level

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"

The engine oil level is displayed.

System limits

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a sporty driving style, it may not be possible to calculate a measured value. In this case, the measured value for the last, sufficiently long trip is displayed.

Detailed measurement

Concept

The engine oil level is checked when the vehicle is stationary and displayed via a scale.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.

General information

During the measurement, the idle speed is increased somewhat.

Functional requirements

- Vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- Steptronic transmission: selector lever in selector lever position N or P and accelerator pedal not depressed.
- Engine is running and is at operating temperature.

Performing a detailed measurement

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"
4. "Engine oil measurement"
5. "Start measurement"

The engine oil level is checked and displayed via a scale.

Adding engine oil

General information

Only add engine oil when the message is displayed in the instrument cluster. The quantity to be added is indicated in the message shown on the Control Display.

Only add suitable types of engine oil.

Safely park the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before adding engine oil.

Take care not to add too much engine oil.

Safety information

Warning

Operating materials, for instance oils, greases, coolants, fuels, can contain harmful ingredients. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Follow the instructions on the containers. Avoid the contact of articles of clothing, skin or eyes with operating materials. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.

NOTICE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Immediately add engine oil.

NOTICE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add too much engine oil. When too much engine oil is added, have the engine oil level corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Overview

The oil filler neck is located in the engine compartment.

Additional information:

For an overview, refer to page 312.

Adding engine oil

1. Opening the hood.

   Opening, refer to page 313.
2. Open the lid counterclockwise.

3. Add engine oil.
4. Close the lid.

Engine oil types to add

General information

The engine oil quality is critical for the life of the engine.

Only add the types of engine oil which are listed.

Safety information

NOTICE

Oil additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use oil additives.

NOTICE

Incorrect engine oil can cause malfunctions in the engine or damage it. There is a risk of damage to property. When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has the correct oil rating.

Suitable engine oil types

Add engine oils that meet the following oil rating standards:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3807
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Gasoline engine
BMW Longlife-01 FE.
BMW Longlife-14 FE+.
BMW Longlife-17 FE+.

Alternative engine oil types

If an engine oil suitable for continuous use is not available, up to 1 US quart/liter of an engine oil with the following oil rating can be added:

Oil rating
API SL.
API SM.
API SN.

Viscosity grades

Viscosity grades
SAE 0W-20.
SAE 0W-30.

More information about suitable oil ratings and viscosity grades of engine oils can be requested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Engine oil change

NOTICE

Engine oil that is not changed in timely fashion can cause increased engine wear and thus engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. It is recommended that you do not exceed the service intervals indicated in the vehicle.

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop change the engine oil.

BMW recommends
Original BMW Engine Oil.

Coolant

General information

Coolant consists of water and additives.

Not all commercially available additives are suitable for the vehicle. Do not mix additives of different colors. Observe the water - additive mixing ratio of 50:50. Information about suitable additives is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Warning

With the engine hot and the cooling system open, coolant can escape and lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury. Only open the cooling system with the engine cooled down.

Warning

Additives are harmful and incorrect additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Do not allow additives to come into contact with skin, eyes or articles of clothing. Use suitable additives only.

Coolant level

General information

Depending on the motorization, there are up to two coolant reservoirs in the engine compartment. Check and top up the coolant levels on a regular basis.

The coolant level is indicated using minimum and maximum markings in the filler neck of the coolant reservoir.

Depending on the engine installation, the coolant reservoir is located on the right side or the left side of the engine compartment.

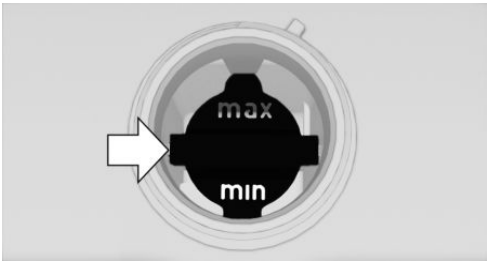
Additional information:

For an overview, refer to page 312.

Checking the coolant level in the filler neck

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Opening the hood.

   Opening, refer to page 313.
3. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.
4. Open the coolant reservoir lid.
5. The coolant level is correct if it lies between the minimum and maximum marks in the filler neck.



6. Close the lid.

Adding coolant

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Opening the hood.

   Opening, refer to page 313.
3. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.
4. Open the coolant reservoir lid.
5. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to the specified level; do not overfill.
6. Close the lid.
7. Have the cause of the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.

Disposal

Comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant and coolant additives.

Washer fluid

General information

All washer nozzles are supplied from one reservoir.

Use a mixture of tap water and windshield washer concentrate. If desired, a windshield washer concentrate containing antifreeze can be used.

Recommended minimum fill quantity:
0.2 US gal/1 liter.

Safety information

Warning

Some antifreeze agents can contain harmful substances and are flammable. There is a risk of fire and a risk of injury. Follow the instructions on the containers. Keep antifreeze away from ignition sources. Do not refill operating

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3809
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.

United States: the washer fluid mixture ratio is regulated by the U.S. EPA and many individual states; do not exceed the allowable washer fluid dilution ratio limits that apply. Follow the usage instructions on the washer fluid container.

Use of BMW's Windshield Washer Concentrate or the equivalent is recommended.

⚠ Warning

Washer fluid can ignite and catch fire on contact with hot engine parts. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Only add washer fluid when the engine is cooled down. Next, fully close the lid of the washer fluid reservoir.

⚠ NOTICE

Silicon-containing additives in the washer fluid for the water-repelling effect on the windows can lead to damage to the washing system. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add silicon-containing additives to the washer fluid.

⚠ NOTICE

Mixing different windshield washer concentrates or antifreeze can damage the washing system. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not mix different windshield washer concentrates or antifreeze. Follow the information and mixing ratios provided on the containers.

Overview

The washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment.

Malfunction

The use of undiluted windshield washer concentrate or alcohol-based antifreeze can lead to incorrect readings at temperatures below +5 °F/-15 °C.

Maintenance

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

BMW maintenance system

The maintenance system provides service notifications and thereby provides support in maintaining road safety and the operational reliability of the vehicle.

In some cases, scopes and intervals of the maintenance system may vary according to the country version. Replacement work, spare parts, fuels and lubricants, and wear materials are calculated separately. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Condition Based Service CBS

Concept

Sensors and special algorithms take into account the driving conditions of the vehicle. CBS uses these to provide maintenance recommendations.

The system makes it possible to adapt the amount of maintenance corresponding to your user profile.

General information

Information on service notifications can be displayed on the Control Display.

Additional information:

Service notifications, refer to page 148.

Service data in the vehicle key

Information on the service notifications is continuously stored in the vehicle key. The service center can read this data out and suggest a maintenance scope for the vehicle.

Therefore, hand the service advisor the vehicle key with which the vehicle was driven most recently.

Storage periods

Storage periods during which the vehicle battery was disconnected are not taken into account.

If this occurs, have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop update the time-dependent maintenance procedures, such as checking brake fluid and, if necessary, changing the engine oil and the microfilter/activated-charcoal filter.

Maintenance Manual and Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

Please consult your Maintenance Manual and Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3811
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

the performance of service and maintenance work.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that maintenance and repair be performed by a service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Records of regular maintenance and repair work should be retained.

Socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis

General information

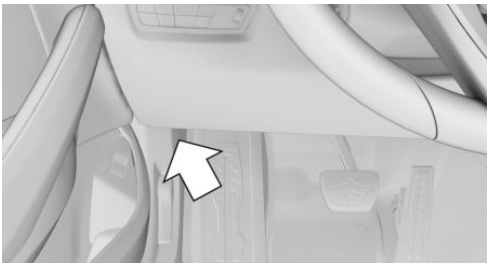
Devices connected to the OBD socket trigger the alarm system when the vehicle is locked. Remove any devices connected at the OBD socket before locking the vehicle.

Safety information

NOTICE

The socket for Onboard Diagnosis is an intricate component intended to be used in conjunction with specialized equipment to check the vehicle's primary emissions system. Improper use of the socket for Onboard Diagnosis, or contact with the socket for Onboard Diagnosis for other than its intended purpose, can cause vehicle malfunctions and creates risks of personal and property damage. Given the foregoing, the manufacture of your vehicle strongly recommends that access to the socket for Onboard Diagnosis be limited to a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or other persons that have the specialized training and equipment for purposes of properly utilizing the socket for Onboard Diagnosis.

Position



There is an OBD socket on the driver's side for checking the primary components in the vehicle's emissions.

Emissions

- The warning light lights up:

  Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

- The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:

  This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

  Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3812

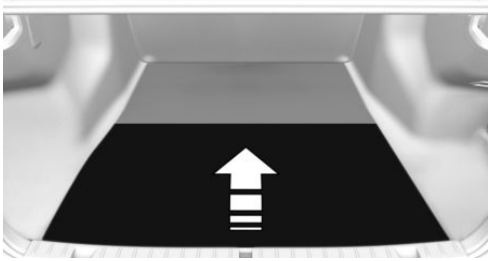
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Replacing components

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Vehicle tool kit



The onboard vehicle tool kit is located under the cargo floor panel.

Wiper blades

Safety information

NOTICE

The window may sustain damage if the wiper falls onto it without the wiper blade installed. There is a risk of damage to property. Hold the wiper firmly when changing the wiper blade. Do not fold or switch on the wiper without a wiper blade installed.

NOTICE

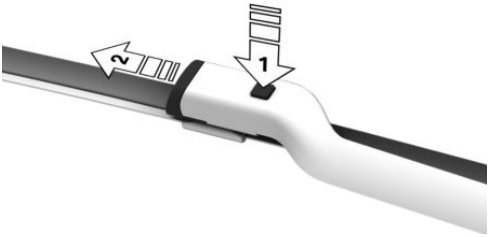
Folded-away wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.

Replacing

1. To change the wiper blades, fold up the wiper arms.

   Fold-away position of the wipers, refer to page 132.
2. Lift the wiper off of the windshield and hold.

3. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull out the wiper blade, arrow 2.



BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3813
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

4. Insert the new wiper blade and press it on until it you hear it snap into the holder.
5. Fold down the wipers.

Lights and bulbs

General information

Lights and bulbs make an essential contribution to vehicle safety.

All headlights and lights are made using LED or laser technology.

Some items of equipment use light-emitting diodes installed behind a cover as a light source. These light-emitting diodes are related to conventional lasers and are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you let a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop perform the work in case of a malfunction.

A spare light box is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Warning

Bulbs can get hot during operation. Contact with the bulbs can cause burns. There is a risk of injury. Only change bulbs after they have cooled off.

Warning

Work on switched-on lighting systems can cause short circuits. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. When working on the lighting system, switch off the lights in question. If necessary, heed the bulb manufacturer's instructions.

Warning

Focused laser light can irritate or permanently damage the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that the work on the lighting system including bulb replacement be performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

Intensive brightness can irritate or damage the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. Do not look directly into the headlights or other light sources. Do not remove the LED covers.

NOTICE

Dirty bulbs have a reduced service life. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not hold new bulbs with your bare hands. Use a clean cloth or something similar, or hold the bulb by its base.

Headlight glass

Condensation can form on the inside of the headlight glass in cool or humid weather. When driving with the lights switched on, the condensation evaporates after a short time. The headlight glass does not need to be changed.

If despite driving with the headlights switched on, increasing humidity forms, for instance water droplets in the light, have the headlights checked.

Front lights

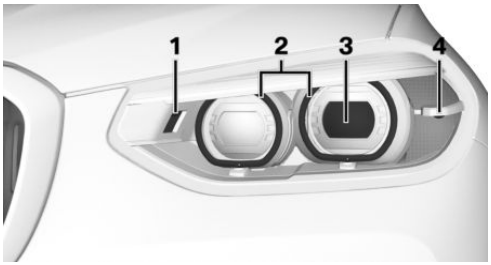
LED headlights with enhanced features

General information

All front lights are designed with LED technology, with the exception of the two turn signals.

In the case of a malfunction, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Overview

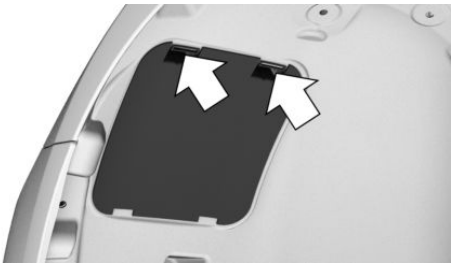


1 Cornering light
2 Daytime running lights/parking lights
3 Low beams/high beams
4 Turn signal

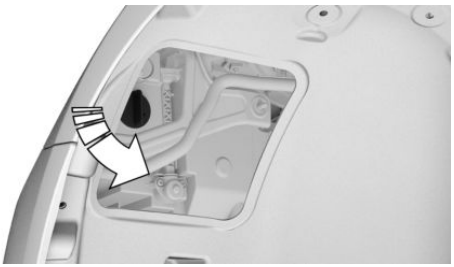
Turn signal, bulb replacement

24-watt bulb, PY24W

1. In the wheel house, press the two retainer tabs and fold down the cover.



2. Unscrew and remove the bulb holder.



3. Press the bulb gently into the bulb holder, turn counterclockwise and remove it.
4. Insert the new bulb.
5. Mount the bulb holder.
6. Mount the lid.

Adaptive LED headlights

All lights feature LED technology.

In the case of a malfunction, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

LED front fog lights

LED front fog lights are made using LED technology.

In the case of a malfunction, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3815
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Tail lights

General information

All tail lights feature LED technology.

In the case of a malfunction, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Vehicle battery

General information

The battery is maintenance-free.

More information about the battery can be requested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

DANGER

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.

Warning

Vehicle batteries that are not compatible can damage vehicle systems and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of an accident and damage to property. Only vehicle batteries that are compatible with your vehicle type should be installed in your vehicle. Information on compatible vehicle batteries is available at your dealer's service center.

Register the battery to the vehicle

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you have a service center or another qualified service center or repair shop register the vehicle battery to the vehicle after the battery has been replaced. Once the battery has been registered again, all comfort features will be available without restriction and any Check Control messages displayed which relate to comfort features will disappear.

Charging the battery

General information

Make sure that the battery is always sufficiently charged to guarantee that the battery remains usable for its full service life.

A discharged battery is indicated by a red indicator light.

Charge the battery when acceleration is insufficient.

The following circumstances can have a negative effect on the performance of the battery:

- Frequent short-distance drives.
- The vehicle is not used for more than a month.

Safety information

NOTICE

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery can work with high voltages and currents, which means that the 12 volt electrical system can be overloaded or damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.

Charging the battery

Charge the battery only when the engine is off and via the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.

Additional information:

Starting aid terminals, refer to page 333.

Power failure

After a power loss, some equipment needs to be newly initialized or individual settings updated, for example:

- With Memory function: store the positions again.
- Time: update.
- Date: update.
- Glass sunroof: initialize the system.

Disposing of old batteries

Have old batteries disposed of by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take them to a collection point.

Maintain the filled battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Secure the battery so that it does not tip over during transport.

Fuses

General information

The fuses are located at different places in the vehicle.

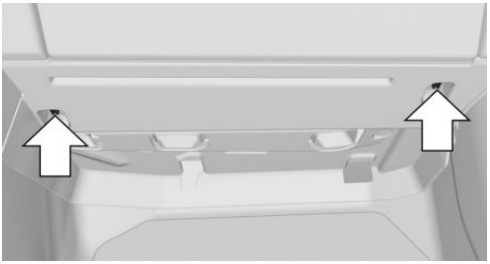
Safety information

Warning

Incorrect and repaired fuses can overload electrical lines and components. There is a risk of fire. Never attempt to repair a blown fuse. Do not replace a nonworking fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating.

In the car's interior

The fuses are located in the car's interior in the front passenger floor area behind a cover.

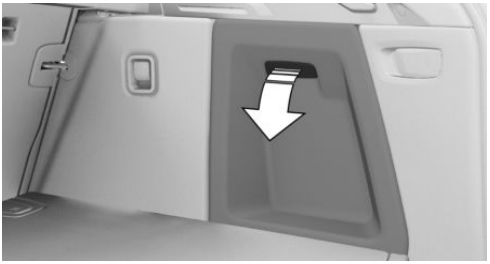


Loosen fasteners, arrows, and open cover.

The fuse box is located on the front right.

In the cargo area

The fuses are located in the cargo area on the right side behind a cover.



Open the cover on the right side trim.

The fuse box may be located behind the sound insulation.

Information on the fuse types and locations, as well as the positions of any other fuse boxes, is available on the Internet: www.bmw.com/fusecard.

Where applicable, information on the fuse types and locations is also found on a separate sheet in the fuse box.

Additional fuse boxes

Additional fuse boxes are located in the vehicle. In the case of a malfunction, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3817
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Replacing fuses

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop replace the fuses.

Breakdown assistance

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Hazard warning flashers

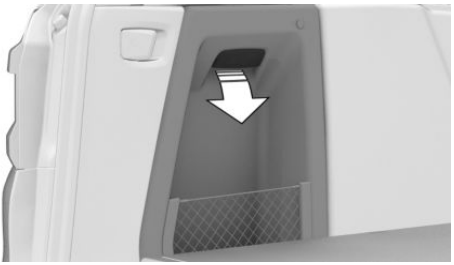
The button is located in the center console.

The red light in the button flashes when the hazard warning flashers are activated.

Warning triangle

The warning triangle is located behind the left-hand cover in the cargo area.

1. Open the cover on the left side trim.



2. Open the bracket and take the warning triangle out in the direction of the car's interior.

First-aid kit

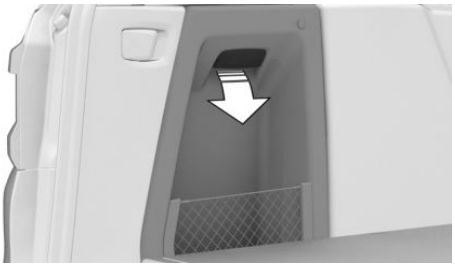
General information

Some of the articles have a limited service life.

Check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace any expired items promptly.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3819
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Storage



The first-aid kit is located behind the left-hand cover in the cargo area.

To open, pull on the handle.

BMW Roadside Assistance

Concept

Contact the BMW Group Roadside Assistance if assistance is needed in the event of a breakdown.

General information

In the event of a breakdown, data on the vehicle's condition is transmitted to the BMW Roadside Assistance.

There are various ways of contacting BMW Roadside Assistance.

- Via a Check Control message.

  Supplementary text messages, refer to page 142.
- Calling with a mobile phone.
- Via the BMW Connected app.

Functional requirements

- Active ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- Cellular network reception.
- Standby state is switched on.

Starting manually

If the vehicle is equipped with Teleservices, support is offered through Teleservice Diagnosis.

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "BMW Assist"
4. If necessary, "BMW Roadside Assistance"

   A voice connection is established.

Teleservice Diagnosis

Teleservice Diagnosis enables the wireless transmission of detailed vehicle data that is important for vehicle diagnosis. This data is transmitted automatically. It may be necessary to approve this on the Control Display.

Teleservice Help

Depending on the country, Teleservice Help enables an in-depth diagnosis of the vehicle by BMW Roadside Assistance via wireless transmission.

You can launch Teleservice Help by requesting it through BMW Roadside Assistance.

1. Park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Set the parking brake.
3. Control Display is switched on.
4. Confirm Teleservice Help.

BMW Accident Assistance

Concept

BMW Group Accident Assistance can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of an accident.

General information

If the vehicle sensors detect a minor to moderately severe accident, which did not trigger any airbags, a Check Control message appears on

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3820
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

the instrument cluster. In addition, a text message appears on the Control Display.

When BMW Accident Assistance is activated, data on the vehicle's condition is sent to BMW.

Functional requirements

- Active ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- Cellular network reception.
- Standby state is switched on.

Starting BMW Accident Assistance

If an accident is detected automatically

A text message relating to BMW Accident Assistance appears on the Control Display.

The connection can be established directly:

"Contact accident assistance"

The Check Control message for BMW Accident Assistance can also be called up from the stored Check Control messages for a certain length of time.

Additional information:

Check Control, refer to page 141.

Starting manually

BMW Accident Assistance can also be contacted independently of the automatic accident detection function.

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "BMW Assist"
4. "BMW Accident Assistance"

   Follow the displays on the Control Display. A voice connection is established.

Emergency Request

Intelligent emergency call

Concept

In case of an emergency, an Emergency Request can be triggered automatically by the system or manually.

General information

Only press the SOS button in an emergency.

The Intelligent Assist system establishes a connection with the BMW Response Center.

For technical reasons, the Emergency Request cannot be guaranteed under unfavorable conditions.

Overview

SOS button.

Functional requirements

- Standby state is switched on.
- The Assist system is functional.
- If the vehicle is equipped with intelligent emergency call: the SIM card integrated in the vehicle has been activated.

Automatic triggering

Under certain conditions, for instance if the airbags trigger, an Emergency Request is automatically initiated immediately after an accident of corresponding severity. Automatic Collision Noti-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3821
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

fication is not affected by pressing the SOS button.

Manual triggering

1. Tap the cover.
2. Press and hold the SOS button until the LED in the area of the button illuminates green.

▷ The LED is illuminated green when an Emergency Request has been initiated.

If a cancel prompt appears on the Control Display, the Emergency Request can be aborted.

If the situation allows, wait in your vehicle until the voice connection has been established.

▷ The LED flashes green when a connection to the BMW Response Center has been established.

The BMW Response Center then makes contact with the occupants of the vehicle and initiates further steps to help.

Even if you are unable to respond, the BMW Response Center can take further steps to help you under certain circumstances.

For this purpose, data that serves to determine the necessary rescue measures, for instance the current position of the vehicle when it can be determined, is transmitted to the BMW Response Center.

Even if the BMW Response Center is no longer heard through the loudspeakers, the BMW Response Center may still be able to hear the occupants of the vehicle.

The BMW Response Center ends the Emergency Request.

Jump-starting

General information

If the battery is discharged, the engine can be started using the battery of another vehicle and two jumper cables. Only use jumper cables with fully insulated clamp handles.

Safety information

⚠ DANGER

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.

⚠ Warning

If the jumper cables are connected in the incorrect order, sparking may occur. There is a risk of injury. Pay attention to the correct order during connection.

⚠ NOTICE

In the case of body contact between the two vehicles, a short circuit can occur during jump-starting. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that no body contact occurs.

Preparation

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts. The voltage information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any electrical consumers in both vehicles.

Starting aid terminals

The starting aid terminal in the engine compartment acts as the positive battery terminal.

A special connection on the body in the engine compartment acts as the negative battery terminal.

Additional information:

Overview of engine compartment, refer to page 312.

Open the cover of the positive battery terminal.

Connecting the cables

Before you begin, switch off all unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers, such as the radio, on the assisting and receiving vehicle.

1. Open the cover of the starting aid terminal.
2. Attach one terminal clamp of the positive jumper cable to the positive battery terminal, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the terminal clamp on the other end of the cable to the positive battery terminal, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one terminal clamp of the negative jumper cable to the negative battery terminal, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of assisting vehicle.
5. Attach the second terminal clamp to the negative battery terminal, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

Starting the engine

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.

1. Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run for several minutes at an increased idle speed.
2. Start the engine of the vehicle that is to be started in the usual way.

   If the first starting attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before making another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.
3. Let both engines run for several minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables in the reverse order.

Check the battery and recharge, if needed.

Tow-starting and towing

Safety information

Warning

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

Steptronic transmission: transporting the vehicle

General information

The vehicle is not permitted to be towed.

Safety information

NOTICE

The vehicle can be damaged when towing the vehicle with a single lifted axle. There is a risk of damage to property. The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.

NOTICE

The vehicle can become damaged when lifting and securing it.

There is a risk of damage to property.

- ▷ Lift the vehicle using suitable means.
- ▷ Do not lift or secure the vehicle by its tow fitting, body parts, or suspension parts.

Pushing the vehicle

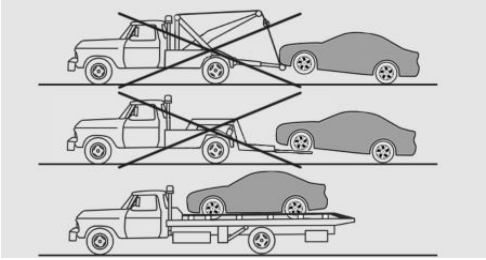
To remove a broken-down vehicle from the danger area, it can be pushed for a short distance.

Additional information:

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 134.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3823
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Tow truck



The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.

Towing other vehicles

General information

Switch on the hazard warning system, depending on local regulations.

If the electrical system has failed, clearly identify the vehicle being towed by placing a sign or a warning triangle in the rear window.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

If the approved gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is lighter than the vehicle to be towed, the tow fitting can tear off or it will not be possible to control the vehicle's response. There is a risk of accident. Make sure that the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is heavier than the vehicle to be towed.

⚠ NOTICE

If the tow bar or tow rope is attached incorrectly, damage to other vehicle parts can occur. There is a risk of damage to property. Correctly attach the tow bar or tow rope to the tow fitting.

Tow bar

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles.

Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an offset angle, please follow the following:

- Maneuvering capability is limited going around corners.
- The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is secured with an offset.

Tow rope

Observe the following notes when using the tow rope:

- Use nylon ropes or straps, which will enable the vehicle to be towed without jerking.
- Make sure the tow rope is not twisted when fastening.
- Check the fastening of the tow fitting and tow rope in regular intervals.
- Do not exceed a towing speed of 30 mph/50 km/h.
- Do not exceed a towing distance of 3 miles/5 km.
- When starting to tow the vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

Tow fitting

General information

The screw-in tow fitting should always be carried in the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3824
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

The tow fitting can be screwed in at the front or rear of the vehicle.

The tow fitting is found in the onboard vehicle tool kit.

- Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle and screw it all the way in.
- Use the tow fitting for towing on paved roads only.
- Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, for instance do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting.
- Check the fastening of the tow fitting in regular intervals.

Additional information:

Onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 324.

Safety information

NOTICE

If the tow fitting is not used as intended, there may be damage to the vehicle or to the tow fitting. There is a risk of damage to property. Follow the notes on using the tow fitting.

Screw thread for tow fitting

Press on the mark on the edge of the cover to push it out.

For covers which have an opening instead of a marking, pull the cover out by the opening.

Tow-starting

Do not tow-start the vehicle.

Start the engine by jump-starting, if possible.

Have the reasons for the starting difficulties corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Jump-starting, refer to page 333.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3825
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Care

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Washing the vehicle

General information

Regularly remove foreign objects such as leaves in the area below the windshield when the hood is raised.

Wash your vehicle frequently, particularly in winter. Intense soiling and road salt can damage the vehicle.

Steam blaster and high-pressure washer

Safety information

NOTICE

When cleaning with high-pressure washers, components can be damaged due to the pressure or temperatures being too high. There is a risk of damage to property. Maintain sufficient distance and do not spray too long continuously. Follow the operating instructions for the high-pressure washer.

Distances and temperature

- Maximum temperature: 140 °F/60 °C.
- Minimum distance from sensors, cameras, seals: 12 inches/30 cm.
- Minimum distance from glass sunroof: 31.5 in/80 cm.

Automatic washing systems or car washes

Safety information

NOTICE

Improper use of automatic washing systems or car washes can cause damage to the vehicle. There is a risk of damage to property. Follow the following instructions:

- Give preference to cloth car washes or those that use soft brushes in order to avoid paint damage.
- Do not drive through a car wash with guide rails higher than 4 in/10 cm to avoid damage to the chassis.
- Observe the tire width of the guide rail to avoid damage to tires and rims.
- Fold in exterior mirrors to avoid damage to the exterior mirrors.
- Deactivate the wiper and, if necessary, rain sensor to avoid damage to the wiper system.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3826
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Driving into a car wash with a Steptronic transmission

Safety information

NOTICE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not switch standby state off in vehicle washes.

General information

In a car wash, the vehicle must be able to roll freely.

Some car washes do not permit persons in the vehicle. The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside when in selector lever position N. A signal sounds when an attempt is made to lock the vehicle.

Additional information:

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 134.

Driving out of a car wash

Ensure that the vehicle key is in the car.

Switch on drive-ready state.

Additional information:

Drive-ready state, refer to page 42.

Headlights

Do not rub wet headlights dry and do not use abrasive or acidic cleaning agents.

Soak areas that have been dirtied, for instance from insects, with shampoo and wash off with water.

Thaw ice with de-icing spray; do not use an ice scraper.

After washing the vehicle

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them; otherwise, braking action can be reduced. The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Completely remove all residues on the windows, to minimize loss of visibility due to smearing and to reduce wiper noises and wiper blade wear.

Vehicle care

Vehicle care products

General information

BMW recommends using vehicle care and cleaning products from BMW. Suitable care products are available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Warning

Cleansers can contain substances that are dangerous and harmful to your health. There is a risk of injury. When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows. Only use products intended for cleaning vehicles. Follow the instructions on the container.

Vehicle paint

General information

Regular care contributes to driving safety and value retention. Environmental influences in areas with elevated air pollution or natural contaminants, such as tree resin or pollen can affect the vehicle's paintwork. Tailor the frequency and extent of your vehicle care to these influences.

Corrosive substances such as spilled fuel, oil, grease or bird droppings, must be removed immediately to prevent the finish from being altered or discolored.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3827
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Matte finish

Only use cleaning and care products suitable for vehicles with matte finish.

Leather care

Remove dust from the leather regularly, using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Otherwise, particles of dust and road grime chafe in pores and folds, and lead to increased wear and premature degradation of the leather surface.

To guard against discoloration, such as from clothing, clean leather and provide leather care roughly every two months.

Clean light-colored leather more frequently because soiling on such surfaces is substantially more visible.

Use leather care products; otherwise, dirt and grease will gradually break down the protective layer of the leather surface.

Upholstery material care

General information

Vacuum the upholstery regularly with a vacuum cleaner.

If upholstery is very dirty, for instance with beverage stains, use a soft sponge or microfiber cloth with a suitable interior cleaner.

Clean the upholstery down to the seams using large sweeping motions. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.

Safety information

NOTICE

Open Velcro® fasteners on articles of clothing can damage the seat covers. There is a risk of damage to property. Ensure that any Velcro® fasteners are closed.

Caring for special components

Light-alloy wheels

When cleaning the vehicle, use only neutral wheel cleaners having a pH value from 5 to 9. Do not use abrasive cleaning agents or steam jets above 140 °F/60 °C. Follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Aggressive, acidic or alkaline cleaning agents can destroy the protective layer of adjacent components, such as the brake disc.

After cleaning, apply the brakes briefly to dry them. The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Chrome surfaces

Carefully clean Chrome surfaces, especially in case of exposure to road salt, with plenty of water and added cleanser as needed.

Rubber components

Environmental influences can cause surface soiling of rubber parts and a loss of gloss. Use only water and suitable cleaning agents for cleaning.

Treat especially worn rubber parts with rubber care agents at regular intervals. When cleaning rubber seals, do not use any silicon-containing vehicle care products in order to avoid damage or noises.

Fine wood parts

Clean fine wood facing and fine wood components only with a moist rag. Then dry with a soft cloth.

Kenaf

Only treat parts made of Kenaf fibers using suitable care products.

Plastic components

NOTICE

Cleaning agents that contain alcohol or solvents, such as lacquer thinners, heavy-duty grease removers, fuel and such, can damage plastic parts. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Clean with a microfiber cloth. Dampen the cloth lightly with water, if needed.

Clean with a microfiber cloth.

Dampen the cloth lightly with water, if needed.

Do not soak the roofliner.

Safety belts

Warning

Chemical cleansers can destroy the safety belt webbing. Missing protective effect of the safety belts. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Use only a mild soapy solution for cleaning the safety belts.

Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus have a negative impact on safety.

Use only a mild soapy solution for cleaning the installed belt straps.

Safety belts should only be allowed to retract if they are dry.

Carpets and floor mats

Warning

Objects in the driver's floor area can limit the pedal distance or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's floor area. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats.

Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, for instance for cleaning.

The floor mats can be removed from the car's interior for cleaning.

If the floor carpets are very dirty, clean with a microfiber cloth and water or a textile cleaner. To prevent matting of the carpet, rub back and forth in the direction of travel only.

Sensors and camera lenses

To clean sensors and camera lenses, use a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass detergent.

Displays, screens, and protective glass of the Head-up Display

NOTICE

Chemical cleansers, moisture or fluids of any kind can damage the surface of displays and screens. There is a risk of damage to property. Clean with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth.

NOTICE

The surface of displays can be damaged with improper cleaning. There is a risk of damage to property. Avoid pressure that is too high and do not use any scratching materials.

Clean with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth.

Clean the protective glass of the Head-up Display using a microfiber cloth and commercially available dish-washing soap.

Long-term vehicle storage

When the vehicle is shut down for longer than three months, special measures must be taken. Further information is available from a dealer's

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3829
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Technical data

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

General information

The technical data and specifications in the Owner's Manual are used as guidance values. The vehicle-specific data can deviate from this, for instance due to the selected special equipment, country version or country-specific measurement method. Detailed values can be found in the approval documents, on labels on the vehicle or can be obtained from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Dimensions

The dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment or country-specific measurement method.

The specified heights do not take into account attached parts, for instance a roof antenna, roof racks or spoiler. The heights can deviate, for instance due to the selected special equipment, tires, load and chassis version.

BMW X4		
Width with mirrors	in/mm	84.2/2,138
Width without mirrors	in/mm	76.3/1,938
Height	in/mm	63.8/1,621
Length	in/mm	187.5/4,762
Wheelbase	in/mm	112.8/2,864
Smallest turning radius diam.	ft/m	39.7/12.1

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3831
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Weights

X4 xDrive30i		
Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs/kg	5,291/2,400
Load	lbs/kg	970/440
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	2,502/1,135
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	3,042/1,380

X4 M40i powered by BMW M		
Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs/kg	5,357/2,430
Load	lbs/kg	981/445
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	2,624/1,190
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	3,042/1,380

Capacities

BMW X4		
Fuel tank, approx.	US gal/liters	17.2/65.0

Observe further information on fuel quality, refer to page 315.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3832

Appendix

General information

Any updates to the Owner's Manual of the vehicle are listed here.

Updates made after the editorial deadline

The following chapters were updated in the printed version of the Owner's Manual after the editorial deadline for the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle had closed:

- Operation: light: daytime driving lights.
- Operation: light: fog light: front fog light.
- Driving tips: things to remember when driving: roof-mounted luggage rack: safety instructions.

License Texts and Certifications

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3833

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3834

Everything from A to Z

Index

0-9

3D View, see Surround View 217

A

ABS Antilock Braking System 189
Acceleration Assistant, see Launch Control 137
Accessories and parts 8
Accident prevention, see Active Protection 186
ACC, see Active Cruise Control 196
Activated charcoal filter 237
Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function ACC 196
Active damping control, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension 228
Active damping control, see Adaptive suspension 228
Active Guard Plus, see Intelligent Safety 167
Active Guard, see Intelligent Safety 167
Active PDC, see Emergency brake function 209
Active Protection 186
Active seat ventilation 113
Adaptive brake assistant 189
Adaptive brake lights, see Brake force display 186
Adaptive Light Control 158
Adaptive M chassis/suspension 228
ADAPTIVE, see Driving Dynamics Control 126
Adaptive suspension 228
Additives, engine oil types 318
Adjusting contents, iDrive 49
Adjusting engine sound 229
Adjusting sound of the engine 229
Adjustments, steering wheel 110
Airbags 163
Airbags, indicator and warning light 165
Air circulation, see Recirculated-air mode 232, 235
air conditioning, climate 234
Air distribution, manual 232, 236
Air drying, see air conditioning 234
Air flow, automatic climate control 232, 236
Air outlets, see Ventilation 237
Air pressure, tires 280
Air quality 230
Alarm system 96
Alarm, unintentional 97
All-season tires, see Winter tires 290
All-wheel-drive, see xDrive 191
Amazon Alexa Car Integration 55
Ambient air package 241
Ambient light 161
Android Auto, connection to the vehicle 76
Android Auto preparation, connection to the vehicle 76
Android Auto preparation, smartphone integration 76
Antifreeze, see Washer fluid 320
Antilock Braking System ABS 189
Anti-slip control, see DSC 189
Anti-theft protection, locking 80
Anti-theft protection, lug bolt lock 308
Apple CarPlay preparation, connection to the vehicle 76
Apple CarPlay preparation, smartphone integration 76
Approach control warning with City braking function 168
Apps, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Ashtray 248
Assistance when driving off, see Drive-off assistant 189
Assistance with breakdown 330
AUC Automatic Recirculating Air Control 235
Audio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
AUTO H button, see Parking brake 126

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3835
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Automatic activation, see Individual activation 113
Automatic car wash 337
Automatic climate control 230, 233
Automatic Curb Monitor, exterior mirror 110
Automatic deactivation, front-seat passenger airbags 166
Automatic Differential Brake 192
Automatic headlight control 156
Automatic Hold, see Parking brake 126
Automatic locking 95
Automatic Recirculating Air Control AUC 235
Automatic time setting 61
Automatic transmission, see Steptronic transmission 133
Automatic unlocking 95
Automating routines, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 57
AUTO program, automatic climate control 231, 235
AUTO program, intensity 235
Auto Start/Stop function 121
Average consumption, see Trip data 151
Axle loads, approved 343

B

Backrest curvature, see Lumbar support 104
Backrest, seats 102
Backrest tilt 103
Backrest, width 104
Bad road trips 266
Bandages, see First-aid kit 330
Bar for tow-starting/towing 335
Battery, disposing of 328
Battery, vehicle 327
Being towed, see Tow-starting and towing 334
Belts, see Safety belts 104
Beverage holder, see Cup holders 257
Blind spot collision warning 179
Blocking, power window, see Safety switch 99
Bluetooth connection 73
Blu-ray, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
BMW Accident Assistance 331
BMW Assist, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
BMW display key 83
BMW display key, malfunction 87
BMW Gesture Control 58
BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 56
BMW maintenance system 322
BMW Roadside Assistance 331
Bonus range, ECO PRO 274
Bottle holder, see Cup holders 257
Brake assistant 189
Brake assistant, adaptive 189
Brake discs, see Brake system 266
Brake force display 186
Brake lights, brake force display 186
Brake pads, see Brake system 266
Brake system 266
Braking, information 268
Breakdown assistance 330
Breaking in 266
Break recommendation, see Fatigue alert 187
Brightness, Control Display 63
Buttons on the steering wheel 32
Button, SOS, see Intelligent emergency call 332
Button, Start/Stop 121
Bypassing, see Jump-starting 333

C

Cable for tow-starting/towing 335
California Proposition 65 Warning 8
Call, gesture control 58
Camera-based assistance systems, see Intelligent Safety 167
Camera lenses, care 340
Camera, rearview camera, see Surround View 217
Camera, rearview camera, without Surround View 210
Camera, see Surround View 217
Cameras, see Sensors of the vehicle 37
CANCEL button, Active Cruise Control 196
CANCEL button, cruise control 194
Can holder, see Cup holders 257
Care 337
Care, Head-up Display 340

Care, light-alloy wheels 339
Care of displays, screens 340
Care, vehicle 338
Cargo area 259
Cargo area, enlarging 263
Cargo position, rear seat backrest 263
Cargo, stowing and securing 260
Cargo straps, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 260
Caring Car, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 57
Car key, see Vehicle key 79
Carpet, care 340
CarPlay, connection to the vehicle 76
Car seats, see Transporting children safely 115
Cartridge replacement, see Ambient air package 241
Car wash 337
Car wash, automatic 337
Catalytic converter, see Hot exhaust gas system 267
CBS Condition Based Service 322
Cell phone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Center armrest, front 257
Center console 34
Central Information Display (CID), see Control Display 47
Central locking system 89
Central screen, see Control Display 47
Changes, technical, see For Your Own Safety 8
Changing parts 324
Changing wheels 306
Changing, wheels and tires 289
Charging smartphone, see Wireless charging tray 251
Charging tray for smartphones, see Wireless charging tray 251
Chassis/suspension, electronic, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension 228
Chassis number, see Vehicle identification number 12
Check Control 141
Checking the engine oil level electronically 316
Children, seating position 115
Children, transporting safely 115
Child restraint system LATCH 117
Child restraint systems, mounting 116
Child restraint systems, see Transporting children safely 115
Child safety locks 120
Child seat, mounting 116
Child seats, see Transporting children safely 115
Chrome-plated surfaces, care 339
Chrome surfaces, care 339
Cigarette lighter 249
Cigarette lighter, front 249
Cleaning displays, screens 340
Cleaning, Head-up Display 340
Clearance, water 268
Climate control 230
Clothes hooks 258
Coasting 274
Coasting with engine decoupled, see Coasting 274
Coasting with idling engine 274
Combination switch, see Turn signals 129
Combination switch, see Washer/wiper system 130
Comfort Access 89
COMFORT, see Driving Dynamics Control 124
Communication, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Compact wheel, see Emergency wheel 311
Comparison of entries, see Entry comparison 45
Compartments, doors 256
Compatible devices, see Suitable devices 71
Compressor 293
Concierge Service, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Condensation water under the parked vehicle 269
Condensation, windshield 232, 236
Condition Based Service CBS 322
Confirmation signal from the vehicle 95
ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Connecting device 70
Connecting electrical devices, see Sockets 249
Connecting, mobile devices 70
Connections, Screen Mirroring 75

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3837
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Consumption display, ECO PRO 274
Consumption display, widget in the instrument cluster 140
Consumption, see Current consumption 140
Consumption, see Trip data 151
Contacts, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Container for washer fluid 320
Continued driving with a flat tire 302, 305
Control Display 47
Control Display, brightness 63
Controller 47
Control systems, driving stability 189
Convenient closing, vehicle key 81
Convenient opening, vehicle key 80
Coolant 319
Coolant level 320
Coolant temperature, see Engine temperature 147
Cooling, maximum 234
Cooling system 319
Cornering light 158
Corrosion on brake discs 269
Cosmetic mirror 248
Cross traffic warning 225
Cruise control 194
Cruise control, active with Stop&Go function 196
Cruise control, see Active Cruise Control 196
Cruise control with distance control, see Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function 196
Cruise control without distance control, see Cruise control 194
Cruising range 147
Cup holder 257
Cup holder, front 257
Cup holder, rear 257
Current consumption 140
Customer service, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

D

Damage, tires 288
Damping control active, see Adaptive M chassis/ suspension 228
Damping control, active, see Adaptive suspension 228
Data memory 10
Data protection, settings 65
Data, see Deleting personal data 65
Data, technical 342
Date 61
Daytime running lights 158
DCC, see Cruise control 194
Defrosting, see Defrosting windshield 232, 236
Defrosting, windshield 232, 236
Deleting personal data 65
Departure schedule, see Pre-ventilation 239
Departure time, parked-car ventilation 240
Device list 71
Diagnosis connection 323
Dimensions 342
Dimmable exterior mirrors 110
Dimmable interior mirror 110
Direct dial buttons, see Programmable memory buttons 46
Direction indicator, see Turn signals 129
Display, iDrive 44
Display in the windshield, see Head-up Display 153
Display key 83
Display key, malfunction 87
Display key, see BMW display key 83
Display lighting, see Instrument lighting 161
Display, notifications, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 56
Displays 139
Displays and symbols 7
Displays, ECO PRO 274
Disposal, coolant 320
Disposal, vehicle battery 328
Distance control, see PDC 206
Door opening angle, Surround View 219
Downhill control, see HDC Hill Descent Control 192
Drive-off assistant 189
Drive-off assistant, see DSC 189
Driver assistance, driving, see Intelligent Safety 167
Driver assistance, parking, see Parking assistance systems 206

Driver assistance, see Intelligent Safety 167
Driver assistance systems 194
Drive-ready state, engine start 42
Drive-ready state, idle state, and standby state 41
Driver profiles 66
Driver profile, setup 66
Driver profiles, welcome screen 66
Driving 121
Driving Assistant, see Intelligent Safety 167
Driving comfort 228
Driving Dynamics Control 124
Driving instructions, breaking in 266
Driving mode, ECO PRO 272
Driving mode, see Driving Dynamics Control 124
Driving notes, general 267
Driving on bad roads 266
Driving stability control systems 189
Driving style analysis, ECO PRO 276
Driving through water 268
Driving tips 267
DSC Dynamic Stability Control 189
DTC Dynamic Traction Control 191
Dynamic damping, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension 228
Dynamic damping, see Adaptive suspension 228
Dynamic Stability Control DSC 189
Dynamic Traction Control DTC 191

E

ECO PRO 272
ECO PRO, bonus range 274
ECO PRO, Driving style analysis 276
ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL, see Driving Dynamics Control 124
ECO PRO, see Driving Dynamics Control 124
Efficiency display, widget in the instrument cluster 140
Electronic oil measurement 316
Electronic Stability Program ESP, see DSC 189
E-mail, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Emergency brake function when parking, Active PDC 209
Emergency braking, see PostCrash - iBrake 187
Emergency Request 332
Emergency service, see BMW Accident Assistance 331
Emergency service, see BMW Roadside Assistance 331
Emergency unlocking, fuel filler flap 279
Emergency unlocking, transmission lock 136
Emergency wheel 311
Energy recovery 140
Energy savings, see Gear shift indicator 149
Engine, automatic Start/Stop function 121
Engine compartment 312
Engine coolant 319
Engine idling when driving, see Coasting 274
Engine oil, adding 317
Engine oil change 319
Engine oil filler neck 317
Engine oil temperature 147
Engine oil types to add 318
Engine start, see Drive-ready state 42
Engine start, see Jump-starting 333
Engine temperature 147
Entering a destination, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Entering an address, navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Entertainment, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Entertainment, selection list in the instrument cluster 150
Entry comparison 45
Equipment, interior 245
Error indicators, see Check Control 141
ESP Electronic Stability Program, see DSC 189
Evasion Assistant 172
Exchanging, wheels and tires 289
Exhaust gas system 267
Exhaustion warner 187
Exhaust, see Exhaust gas system 267
Experience Modes, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 57

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3839
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

Exterior lighting during unlocking 80
Exterior lighting with the vehicle locked 81
Exterior mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor 110
Exterior mirror, automatic dimming feature 110
Exterior mirrors 109
Exterior mirrors, malfunction 109
External start, see Jump-starting 333
External temperature 147
Eyelet for towing 335
Eyes, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 260

F

Factory settings, see Reset vehicle configuration 63
Failure message, see Check Control 141
False alarm, see Avoiding unintentional alarms 97
Fan, see Air flow 232, 236
Fastening safety belts, see Safety belts 104
Fatigue alert 187
Fault indicators, see Check Control 141
Filler neck for engine oil 317
Filter, see Microfilter 233
Fine wood parts, care 339
First-aid kit 330
First Steps, see Setup Wizard 66
Flat tire, changing wheels 306
Flat tire, continued driving 302, 305
Flat tire, Flat Tire Monitor TPM 304
Flat tire message, FTM 304
Flat tire message, Tire Pressure Monitor 300
Flat Tire Monitor TPM 304
Flat tire, repairing 291
Flat tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor 297
Flat tire warning light, FTM 304
Flat tire warning light, see Tire Pressure Monitor 300
Flooding, driving through 268
Floor carpet, care 340
Floor mats, care 340
Fold-away position, wiper 132
Foot brake 268
Forward collision mitigation, see Intelligent Safety 167
For Your Own Safety 8
Fragrance cartridge, see Ambient air package 241
Fragrance, see Ambient air package 241
Fragrancing, see Ambient air package 241
Front airbags 163
Front collision mitigation 168
Front collision mitigation, see Approach Control Warning 168
Front collision mitigation, see Pedestrian Warning 173
Front fog lights 160
Front fog lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 325
Front lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 325
Front-seat passenger airbags, automatic deactivation 166
Front-seat passenger airbags, indicator light 166
Front seats 102
Fuel 315
Fuel cap 278
Fuel filler flap 278
Fuel filler flap, unlocking manually 279
Fuel gauge 146
Fuel quality 315
Fuel recommendation 315
Fuel tank, see Filling capacity 343
Fuses 328

G

Garage door opener, see Integrated Universal Remote Control 245
Gasoline 315
Gear change, Steptronic transmission 133
Gear shift indicator 149
General driving notes 267
General settings 61
Gesture Control 58
Gestures, see BMW Gesture Control 58
Glare shield, see Sun visor 248
Glass sunroof, electric 99
Glass sunroof, initialize the system 101
Glove compartment 255
GPS, navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Gross vehicle weight, approved 343

H

Handbrake, see Parking brake 126
Hand-held transmitter, alternating code 246
Hands-free device, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Hazard warning flashers 330
HDC Hill Descent Control 192
Head airbags 164
Headlight control, automatic 156
Headlight flasher 129
Headlight glass 325
Headlights, care 338
Headlights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 325
Head restraints and seats 102
Head restraints, front 106
Head restraints, rear 108
Head-up Display 153
Head-up Display, care 340
Head-up Display, store position, see Memory function 111
Heated steering wheel 111
Heated steering wheel, individual activation 113
Heavy cargo, stowing 260
Height, vehicle 342
High-beam Assistant 159
High beams 129
High beams/low beams, see High-beam Assistant 159
Hill Descent Control HDC 192
Hills 269
Hill start assistant, see Drive-off assistant 189
Holder for beverages, see Cup holders 257
HomeLink, see Integrated Universal Remote Control 245
Homepage, see Internet 6
Hood 313
Horn 32
Hot exhaust gas system 267
Humidity in the headlight, see Headlight glass 325
Hydroplaning 268

I

iBrake - PostCrash 187
Ice warning, see External temperature 147
Icy roads, see External temperature 147
Identification marks, tires 286
Identification number, see Vehicle identification number 12
Idle state, standby state, and drive-ready state 41
iDrive 44
ID transmitter, see Vehicle key 79
Ignition key, see Vehicle key 79
Indicator/warning lights 142
Individual activation 113
Individual air distribution 232, 236
Individual settings, see Driver profiles 66
Inductive charging, smartphone, see Wireless charging tray 251
Inflation pressure, tires 280
Inflation pressure warning TPM, tires 304
Information 6
Information window, Control Display 63
Initialization, Flat Tire Monitor FTM 304
Input, iDrive 44
Instrument cluster 139
Instrument lighting 161
Integrated key 88
Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle 14
Integrated Universal Remote Control 245
Intelligent emergency call 332
Intelligent Personal Assistant 56
Intelligent Safety 167
Intended use 8
Intensity, AUTO program 235
Interior equipment 245
Interior lights 161
Interior lights during unlocking 80
Interior lights with the vehicle locked 81
Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature 110
Interior mirrors 110
Interior motion sensor 97
Internet connection 74
Internet hotspot 74
Internet page 6
Interval display, see Service notifications 148
Ionization, see Ambient air package 241

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3841

J

Jacking points for the vehicle jack 309
Jam protection system, glass sunroof 100
Jam protection system, windows 98
Joystick, Steptronic transmission 133
Jump-starting 333
Jump-starting terminals 333

K

Kenaf, care 339
Keyless Go, see Comfort Access 89
Key, mechanical 88
Key, see BMW display key 83
Key, see Vehicle key 79
Kickdown, Steptronic transmission 133
Knee airbag 164

L

Label on recommended tires 290
Lane control assistant with active side collision protection, see Side collision mitigation 182
Lane departure warning 176
Lane lines, Surround View 219
Lane threshold, warning 176
Language, set 62
Lashing eyes in the cargo area 260
LATCH child restraint fixing system 117
Launch Control 137
Leather care 339
LED front fog lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 325
LED headlights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 325
LED light carpet, see Welcome light 157
Length, vehicle 342
Letters and numbers, entering 45
Light-alloy wheels, care 339
Light control, adaptive 158
Lighter, cigarettes 249
Lighting 156
Light in the exterior mirror, see Blind spot collision warning 179
Light in the exterior mirror, see Cross traffic warning 225
Light replacement, see Lights and bulbs 325
Lights 156
Lights and bulbs 325
Light switch 156
List, instrument cluster, see Selection lists 150
List of all messages 63
Load 260
Loading 259
Loading position 263
Loading the cargo area, see Stowing cargo 260
Locking, automatic 95
Locking, see Opening and Closing 79
Locking, settings 95
Locking, vehicle key 80
Lock, lug bolts 308
Low beams 157
Low beams, automatic, see High-beam Assistant 159
Lower back support 104
Lug bolt lock 308
Luggage rack, see Roof-mounted luggage rack 269
Lumbar support 104

M

Maintenance 322
Maintenance recommendations, see Condition Based Service CBS 322
Maintenance, see Service notifications 148
Maintenance system, BMW 322
Make-up mirror 248
Malfunction, BMW display key 87
Malfunction, vehicle key 82
Managing devices 71
Manual brake, see Parking brake 126
Manual control, air distribution 232, 236
Manual control, air flow 232, 236
Manual mode, Steptronic transmission 133
Manual operation, fuel filler flap 279
Map update, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Marking, run-flat tire 291
Matt paint, care 339

Maximum cooling 234
Maximum speed display, see Speed Limit Info 149
Maximum speed, winter tires 290
M chassis/suspension, adaptive, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension 228
Measuring units 62
Media of the Owner's Manual 14
Medical supplies, see First-aid kit 330
Memory function 111
Menu, instrument cluster, see Selection lists 150
Menus, operating, iDrive 44
Messages 63
Messages, see Check Control 141
Microfilter 233, 237
Minimum tread depth, tires 288
Mobile communication devices in the vehicle 268
Mobile devices, managing 71
Mobile phone, connecting 70
Mobile phone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Mobile Service, see BMW Accident Assistance 331
Mobile Service, see BMW Roadside Assistance 331
Mobility System 292
MODE button, see Active Cruise Control 196
Mode, ECO PRO 272
Modifications, technical, see For Your Own Safety 8
Monitor, see Control Display 47
Mounting of child restraint systems 116
MP3 player, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Multi-function hook 261
Multifunction steering wheel, buttons 32
Multimedia, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6

N

Navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Neck restraints, front, see Head restraints front 106
Neck restraints, rear, see Head restraints rear 108
Net, cargo area 262
Neutral cleaner, see Light-alloy wheels, care 339
New wheels and tires 289
No-touch opening and closing of the tailgate 91
Nylon rope for tow-starting/towing 335

O

OBD Onboard Diagnosis 323
Obstacle marking, rearview camera 211
Obstacle marking, Surround View 219
Octane rating, see Recommended fuel grade 316
Odometer, see Trip data 151
Oil, adding 317
Oil change 319
Oil filler neck 317
Oil level, checking electronically 316
Oil service interval, see Service notifications 148
Oil types to add, engine 318
Onboard Diagnosis OBD 323
Onboard literature, printed 14
Onboard vehicle tool kit 324
On-call service, see BMW Accident Assistance 331
On-call service, see BMW Roadside Assistance 331
Opening and closing 79
Operating concept, iDrive 44
Operation via voice 52
Optional equipment, see Vehicle equipment 7
Outside air, see AUC 235
Overheating of the engine, see Engine temperature 147
Overwintering, see Long-term vehicle storage 340
Owner's Manual, printed 14
Owner's Manual via voice operation, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 57

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3843
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

P

Paint, car care 338
Pairing, mobile devices, see Connections 70
Panic alarm, see Panic mode 96
Panic mode 96
Panorama View 222
Panoramic glass sunroof, see Glass sunroof 99
Park Distance Control PDC 206
Parking aid, see PDC 206
Parking assistance systems 206
Parking assistant 213
Parking assistant Plus, see Surround View 217
Parking, Automatic Hold, see Parking brake 126
Parking brake 126
Parking lights 157
Parts and accessories 8
Passenger's side exterior mirror, tilt down, see Automatic Curb Monitor 110
Pathway lighting 158
Pathway lighting, switching on 82
Pathway lines, rearview camera 211
Payload, technical data 343
PDC Park Distance Control 206
Performance Control 228
Performance display, see Sport displays 152
Personal data, deleting 65
Personal profile, see Driver profiles 66
Personal settings 65
Person warning with braking function 173
Phone, connecting 70
Plastic parts, care 340
Possible gestures, gesture control 58
PostCrash - iBrake 187
Power Display, instrument cluster 146
Power failure 328
Power Meter, see Power Display 146
Power windows 98
Pressure test tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor 297
Pressure, tires 280
Pre-ventilation 239
Printed onboard literature 14
Profiles, see Driver profiles 66
Programmable memory buttons, iDrive 46
Protective function, glass sunroof, see Jam protection system 100
Protective function, windows, see Jam protection system 98
Push-and-turn reel, see Controller 47

R

Racing track 270
Radar sensors, see Sensors of the vehicle 37
Radiator fluid 319
Radio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Rain sensor 131
Rear automatic climate control 238
Rear collision preparation 185
Rear collision warning, see Rear collision preparation 185
Rear lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 325
Rear seat backrests, folding down 263
Rearview camera, see Surround View 217
Rearview camera, without Surround View 210
Rear-view mirrors, exterior 109
Rear-view mirrors, interior 110
Rear window defroster 232, 237
Recirculated-air filter, see Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter 237
Recirculated-air mode 232, 235
Recommended fuel grade 316
Recommended tire brands 290
Refueling 278
Remote 3D View 224
Remote control for audio, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Remote control, see Vehicle key 79
Remote control, universal 245
Remote services, app, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Replacing bulbs, see Lights and bulbs 325
Replacing light diodes, see Lights and bulbs 325
Replacing parts 324
Replacing the battery, vehicle key 82
Replacing, wheels and tires 289
Reporting safety malfunctions 13

RES CNCL button, Active Cruise Control ACC 196
RES CNCL button, cruise control 194
Reserve warning, see Range 147
Reset settings, vehicle 63
Reset, Tire Pressure Monitor 299
Reset, vehicle configuration 63
Reset, vehicle settings 63
RESUME button, Active Cruise Control 196
RESUME button, cruise control 194
Retreaded tires 290
Roadside parking lights 157
Rolling code hand-held transmitter 246
RON recommended fuel grade 316
Roofliner 35
Roof-mounted luggage rack 269
Rope for tow-starting/towing 335
Route, navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
RSC Runflat System, see Runflat tire 291
RTTI, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Rubber components, care 339
Run-flat tire 291

S

Safe braking 268
Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat 106
Safety belt reminder for the rear seats 106
Safety belts 104
Safety belts, care 340
Safety locks, doors and windows 120
Safety package, see Active Protection 186
Safety switch, windows 99
Safety systems, see Airbags 163
Safety systems, see Intelligent Safety 167
Saving fuel 271
Screen Mirroring, connection 75
Screen, see Control Display 47
Screwdriver, see Onboard vehicle tool kit 324
Sealant, see Mobility System 292
Seat heating 112
Seat heating, individual activation 113
Seating position for children 115
Seats and head restraints 102
Seats, front 102
Seat ventilation, individual activation 113
Securing, cargo 260
Selection list in the instrument cluster 150
Selector lever, Steptronic transmission 133
Self-supporting tires, see Run-flat tires 291
Sensors, care 340
Sensors of the vehicle 37
Service and warranty 9
Service Center, see BMW Accident Assistance 331
Service Center, see BMW Roadside Assistance 331
Service notifications 148
Service notifications, see Condition Based Service CBS 322
Services, ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
SET button, Active Cruise Control 196
SET button, cruise control 194
Set speed, see Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function 196
Setting, Control Display 63
Settings, general 61
Settings, locking/unlocking 95
Settings, seats and head restraints 102
Setup Wizard 66
Shift paddles on the steering wheel 133
Side airbag 163
Side collision mitigation 182
Side parking aid, Surround View 219
Side parking aid without Surround View 210
Side protection aid, Surround View, see Side parking aid 219
Side protection aid without Surround View, see Side parking aid 210
Signaling, horn 32
Signals when unlocking, see Confirmation signals from the vehicle 95
Sitting safely 102
Ski and snowboard bag 265
Slide/tilt glass roof, see Glass sunroof 99
Smallest turning circle, vehicle 342
Smartphone, connecting 70

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3845

Smartphone Integration, Android Auto preparation 76
Smartphone Integration, Apple CarPlay preparation 76
Smartphone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Smartphone, using via voice activation 55
Smoker's package 248
SMS, see Short messages, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis 323
Sockets, electrical devices 249
SOS button, see Intelligent emergency call 332
Sound output, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Spare tire, see Emergency wheel 311
Speech recognition 52
Speed limit display, see Speed Limit Info 149
Speed Limit Info 149
Speed warning 62
Sport chassis/suspension, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension 228
Sport displays 152
SPORT INDIVIDUAL, see Driving Dynamics Control 124
SPORT PLUS, see Driving Dynamics Control 124
Sport program, Steptronic transmission 133
SPORT, see Driving Dynamics Control 124
Sport steering, variable 193
Stability control systems 189
Standard equipment, see Vehicle equipment 7
Standby state, idle state and drive-ready state 41
Start/stop, automatic function 121
Start/Stop button 121
Starting aid terminals 333
Starting, see Drive-ready state 42
Starting the engine, see Drive-ready state 42
Stations, AM/FM, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Status control display, tires 299
Status information, iDrive 45
Status of Owner's Manual 7
Status, vehicle 152
Steering and Lane Control Assistant 203
Steering Assistant, see Steering and Lane Control Assistant 203
Steering column adjustment 110
Steering wheel, adjusting 110
Steering wheel, buttons 32
Steptronic Sport transmission, see Steptronic transmission 133
Steptronic transmission 133
Storage compartment, cargo area 262
Storage compartment, center console 256
Storage compartments 255
Storage compartments, locations 255
Storage, tires 291
Store Mirror position, see Memory function 111
Store seat position, see Memory function 111
Store steering wheel position, see Memory function 111
Storing the vehicle 340
Stowing, cargo 260
Straps for cargo, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 260
Suitable devices 71
Suitable mobile phones 71
Summer tires, tread 288
Sun visor 248
Supplementary Owner's Manuals 14
Supplementary text message 142
Surround View 217
Surround View, gesture control 58
Suspension settings, see Driving Dynamics Control 124
Switches, see Cockpit 32
Switch for driving dynamics, see Driving Dynamics Control 124
Switching off the engine, see Drive-ready state 42
Symbols and displays 7
SYNC program, automatic climate control 236

T

Tachometer 146
Tailgate, opening and closing with no-touch activation 91
Tailgate, vehicle key 81

Tail lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 325
Tank capacity 343
Technical changes, see For Your Own Safety 8
Technical data 342
Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Telephone, selection list in the instrument cluster 150
Teleservices, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Temperature, automatic climate control 231, 234
Temperature display, see External temperature 147
Temperature, engine oil 147
Tensioning straps, cargo area 262
Text message, Check Control 142
Theft alarm system, see Alarm system 96
Thigh support 103
Third-party provider, voice assistant 55
Through-loading system 263
Tilt alarm sensor 97
Tilt, backrest 103
Tilt down, passenger's side exterior mirror, see Automatic Curb Monitor 110
Time 61
Time setting, automatic 61
Tire brands, recommended 290
Tire chains 296
Tire damage 288
Tire identification marks 286
Tire inflation pressure 280
Tire inflation pressure monitoring, see TPM 304
Tire inflation pressure monitor TPM 304
Tire pressure 280
Tire Pressure Monitor 297
Tire Pressure Monitor, reset 299
Tire repair kit, see Mobility System 292
Tires and wheels 280
Tires, changing 289
Tire sealant, see Mobility System 292
Tire settings 298
Tires, run-flat 291
Tire tread 288
Title, gesture control 58
Tone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Tool 324
Top View, see Surround View 217
Torque display, see Sport displays 152
Touchpad, Controller 50
Tow bar 335
Tow fitting 335
Towing 334
Tow rope 335
Tow-starting 334
TPM Flat Tire Monitor 304
Traction control 191
TRACTION, driving dynamics 191
Traffic bulletins, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Transmission lock, electronic unlocking 136
Transmission, see Steptronic transmission 133
Transporting children safely 115
Tread, tires 288
Trip computer, see Trip data 151
Trip data 151
Triple turn signal activation 129
Trip odometer, see Trip data 151
Trunk, see Cargo area 259
Turning circle line, Surround View 219
Turning circle, vehicle 342
Turning radius lines, rearview camera 211
Turn signal, indicator light 144
Turn signal, replacing bulbs, see Lights and bulbs 325
Turn signals, high beams, headlight flasher 129

U

Ultrasonic sensors, see Sensors of the vehicle 37
Unintentional alarm, avoiding 97
Units, see Measuring units 62
Universal remote control 245
Unlock button, Steptronic transmission 133
Unlocking, automatic 95
Unlocking, see Opening and Closing 79
Unlocking, settings 95
Unlocking, vehicle key 80
Unpaved roads, cross-country trips 266

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3847

Updates made after the editorial deadline 7
Upholstery material care 339
USB connection 77
USB port, position in vehicle 250
Used battery, disposing of 328
Use, intended 8

V

Vanity mirror 248
Variable sport steering 193
Vehicle battery 327
Vehicle breakdown, see Breakdown assistance 330
Vehicle, breaking in 266
Vehicle care 338
Vehicle care products 338
Vehicle configuration, reset 63
Vehicle equipment 7
Vehicle identification number 12
Vehicle key 79
Vehicle key, additional 82
Vehicle key, integrated key 88
Vehicle key, loss 82
Vehicle key, malfunction 82
Vehicle key, replacing the battery 82
Vehicle key with display, malfunction 87
Vehicle key with display, see BMW display key 83
Vehicle paint, care 338
Vehicle status 152
Vehicle storage 340
Vehicle washing 337
Ventilation 237
Ventilation, see Pre-ventilation 239
Venting, see Ventilation 237
Vent, see Ventilation 237
Video, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
VIN, see Vehicle identification number 12
Voice activation, see BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 56
Voice activation system 52
Voice assistant, third-party provider 55
Voice command response 52
Voice control 52
Voice control, gesture control 58
Volume, gesture control 58

W

Wake word 52
Warning/indicator lights 142
Warning against cross traffic 225
Warning light in the exterior mirror, see Blind spot collision warning 179
Warning light in the exterior mirror, see Cross traffic warning 225
Warning messages, see Check Control 141
Warning triangle 330
Warranty 8
Washer fluid 320
Washer nozzles, windshield 132
Washer system 130
Washing the vehicle 337
Washing, vehicle 337
Wash view, Surround View 219
Water on roads 268
Water, see Condensation water under the parked vehicle 269
Website, see Internet 6
Weights 343
Welcome light during unlocking 80
Welcome lights 157
Welcome screen, driver profiles 66
Wheel base, vehicle 342
Wheels and tires 280
Wheels, changing 289
Widgets, iDrive 45
Widgets, instrument cluster 140
Width, vehicle 342
Wi-Fi connection 74
WiFi connection, see WLAN connection 74
Wi-Fi hotspot 74
Window, defrosting 232, 236
Windows, powered 98
Windshield, defrosting 232, 236
Windshield washer fluid, see Washer fluid 320
Windshield washer nozzles 132
Windshield wiper, see Wiper system 130
Winter storage, see Long-term vehicle storage 340

Winter tires 290
Winter tires, tread 288
Wiper blades, replacing 324
Wiper fluid, see Washer fluid 320
Wiper, fold-away position 132
Wiper, see Washer/wiper system 130
Wiper system 130
Wireless charging, smartphone, see Wireless charging tray 251
Wireless charging tray for smartphones 251
WLAN connection 74
Wood parts, care 339
Wordmatch principle, see Entry comparison 45
Wrench, see Onboard vehicle tool kit 324

X

xDrive 191

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3849
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

01405A1F698 ue

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3850

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3851

California Proposition 65 Warning

For vehicles sold in California:

California Proposition 65 Warning

WARNING

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

The Ultimate Driving Machine®

BMW DRIVER'S GUIDE APP.

Your customized information about the vehicle in an app.
Optimized for smartphones & tablets. Can be used offline.

Download on the App Store

GET IT ON Google Play

01405A1F698 DE

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3853
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F698 - X/20

LINK:
CONTENT & A-Z

The Ultimate Driving Machine®

OWNER'S MANUAL.

THE BMW X4 M.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3854
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3855
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

WELCOME TO BMW.

Owner's Manual.

Thank you for choosing a BMW.

The more familiar you are with your vehicle, the better control you will have on the road. We therefore strongly suggest:

Read this Owner's Manual before starting off in your new BMW. Also use the Integrated Owner's Manual in your vehicle. It contains important information on vehicle operation that will help you make full use of the technical features available in your BMW. The manual also contains information designed to enhance operating reliability and road safety, and to contribute to maintaining the value of your BMW.

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

You can find supplementary information in the additional brochures in the onboard literature.

We wish you a safe and enjoyable ride.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3856
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

TABLE OF CONTENTS

After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

NOTES

Information 6
Owner's Manual media 14

QUICK REFERENCE

Entering 16
Set-up and use 20
On the road 24

CONTROLS

Cockpit 30
Sensors of the vehicle 35
Operating state of the vehicle 39
iDrive 42
General settings 59
Personal settings 63
Connections 68
Opening and closing 77
Seats, mirrors and steering wheel 100
Transporting children safely 113
Driving 119
Displays 137
Lights 154
Safety 160
Driving stability control systems 186
Driver assistance systems 195
Driving comfort 229
Climate control 231

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3857
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Interior equipment 243
Storage compartments 253
Cargo area 257

DRIVING TIPS

BMW X4 M Technology 264
Things to remember when driving 265
Saving fuel 270

MOBILITY

Refueling 272
Wheels and tires 274
Engine compartment 300
Operating materials 303
Maintenance 310
Replacing components 312
Breakdown assistance 317
Care 324

REFERENCE

Technical data 328
Appendix 330
Everything from A to Z 332

© 2020 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Reprinting, including excerpts, only with the written consent of BMW AG, Munich.
US English ID7 X/20, 11 20 490
Printed on environmentally friendly paper, bleached without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3858

Information

Using this Owner's Manual

Orientation

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic is by using the index.

An initial overview of the vehicle is provided in the first chapter.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication

The Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can be obtained as a printed book from the service center.

The topics are also discussed in the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Additional sources of information

Service center

A service center will be glad to answer questions at any time.

Internet

Vehicle information and general information on BMW, for instance, on technology, are available on the Internet: www.bmwusa.com.

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

The Integrated Owner's Manual specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle. The Integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the Control Display.

BMW Driver’s Guide app

The BMW Driver's Guide app specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle. The app can be displayed on smartphones and tablets.

BMW Driver’s Guide Web

Driver’s Guide Web shows the most suitable information for the selected vehicle. If possible, only equipment and functions that are actually installed in the vehicle will be explained. Driver’s Guide Web can be displayed in any current browser.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3859

Symbols and displays

Symbols in the Owner's Manual

Symbol	Meaning
	Precautions that must be followed in order to avoid the possibility of injury to yourself and to others as well as serious damage to the vehicle.
	Measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.
"..."	Texts in vehicle used to select individual functions.
›...‹	Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.
»...«	Responses generated by the voice activation system.

Action steps

Action steps to be carried out are presented as a numbered list. The steps must be carried out in the defined order.

1. First action step.
2. Second action step.

Enumerations

Enumerations without mandatory order or alternative possibilities are presented as a list with bullet points.

- First possibility.
- Second possibility.

Symbols on vehicle components

This symbol on a vehicle component indicates that further information on the component is available in the Owner's Manual.

Vehicle features and options

This Owner's Manual describes all models and all standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series. Therefore, this Owner's Manual also describes and illustrates features and functions that are not available in a vehicle, for example because of the selected optional features or the country-specific version.

This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

For any options and equipment not described in this Owner's Manual, refer to the Supplementary Owner's Manuals.

Your BMW service center is happy to answer any questions that you may have about the features and options applicable to your vehicle.

Status of the Owner's Manual

Basic information

The manufacturer of your vehicle pursues a policy of constant development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards. In rare cases, therefore, the features described in this Owner's Manual may differ from those in your vehicle.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's

Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

For Your Own Safety

Intended use

Heed the following when using the vehicle:

- Owner's Manual.
- Information on the vehicle. Do not remove stickers.
- Technical vehicle data.
- The traffic, speed, and safety laws where the vehicle is driven.
- Vehicle documents and statutory documents.

Warranty

Your vehicle is technically configured for the operating conditions and registration requirements applying in the country of first delivery, also known as homologation. If your vehicle is to be operated in a different country it might be necessary to adapt your vehicle to potentially differing operating conditions and registration requirements. If your vehicle does not comply with the homologation requirements in a certain country you may not be able to lodge warranty claims for your vehicle there. Further information on warranty is available from a service center.

Maintenance and repairs

Advanced technology, for instance the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires suitable maintenance and repair work.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you entrust corresponding procedures to a BMW center. If you choose to use another service facility, BMW recommends use of a facility that performs work, e.g., maintenance and repair, according to BMW specifications with properly trained personnel, referred to in the Owner's Manual as "another qualified service center or repair shop".

If work is performed improperly, for instance maintenance and repair, there is a risk of subsequent damage and related safety risks.

Improperly performed work on the vehicle paint can lead to a failure or malfunction of components, e.g., the radar sensors, and thereby result in a safety risk.

Parts and accessories

BMW recommends the use of parts and accessory products approved by BMW.

Approved parts and accessories, and advice on their use and installation are available from a BMW center.

BMW parts and accessories have been tested by BMW for their safety and suitability in BMW vehicles.

BMW warrants genuine BMW parts and accessories.

BMW does not evaluate whether each individual product from another manufacturer can be used with BMW vehicles without presenting a safety hazard, even if a country-specific official approval was issued. BMW does not evaluate whether these products are suitable for BMW vehicles under all usage conditions.

California Proposition 65 Warning

For vehicles sold in California, the law requires vehicle manufacturers to provide the following warning:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3861
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Warning

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of Automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Batteries also contain other chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer. Wash your hands after handling. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

Warning

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly. Your vehicle is covered by the following warranties:

- New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- Rust Perforation Limited Warranty.
- Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty.
- Federal Emissions Performance Warranty.
- California Emission Control System Limited Warranty.

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

Your vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating conditions and homologation requirements in your country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish to operate your vehicle in another country or region, you may be required to adapt your vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and homologation requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

Maintenance

Maintain the vehicle regularly to sustain the road safety, operational reliability and the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Specifications for maintenance measures:

- BMW Maintenance system.
- Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models.
- Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

If the vehicle is not maintained or is improperly maintained, this could result in serious damage to the vehicle. Such damage is not covered by the BMW New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Refer to section on engine oil change regarding recommended service intervals for oil changes.

Data memory

General information

Electronic control devices are installed in the vehicle. Electronic control units process data they receive from vehicle sensors, self-generate or exchange with each other. Some control units are necessary for the vehicle to function safely or provide assistance during driving, for instance driver assistance systems. Furthermore, control units facilitate comfort or infotainment functions.

Information about stored or exchanged data can be requested from the manufacturer of the vehicle, in a separate booklet, for example.

Personal reference

Each vehicle is marked with a unique vehicle identification number. Depending on the country, the vehicle owner can be identified with the vehicle identification number, license plate and corresponding authorities. In addition, there are other options to track data collected in the vehicle to the driver or vehicle owner, for instance, via the ConnectedDrive account that is used.

Operating data in the vehicle

Control units process data to operate the vehicle.

For example, this includes:

- Status messages for the vehicle and its individual components, e.g., wheel rotational speed, wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration, engaged safety belt indicator.
- Ambient conditions, e.g., temperature, rain sensor signals.

The processed data is only processed in the vehicle itself and generally volatile. The data is not stored beyond the operating period.

Electronic components, e.g. control units and ignition keys, contain components for storing technical information. Information about the vehicle condition, component usage, maintenance recommendations, events or faults can be stored temporarily or permanently.

This information generally records the state of a component, a module, a system, or the environment, for instance:

- Operating states of system components, for instance, fill levels, tire inflation pressure, battery status.
- Malfunctions and faults in important system components, for instance lights and brakes.
- Responses by the vehicle to special situations such as airbag deployment or engagement of the driving stability control systems.
- Information on vehicle-damaging events.

The data is required to perform the control unit functions. Furthermore, it also serves to recognize and correct malfunctions, and helps the vehicle manufacturer to optimize vehicle functions.

The majority of this data is stored temporarily and is only processed within the vehicle itself. In some circumstances the vehicle may store some data for an additional but limited period of time.

When servicing, for instance during repairs, service processes, warranty cases, and quality assurance measures, this technical information can be read out from the vehicle together with the vehicle identification number.

A dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop can read out the information. The socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis required by law in the vehicle is used to read out the data.

The data is collected, processed, and used by the relevant organizations in the service network. The data documents technical conditions of the vehicle, which can be used to determine vehicle maintenance status, and facilitate quality improvement.

Fault and event memories in the vehicle can be reset when a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop performs repair or servicing work.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3863
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Data entry and data transfer into the vehicle

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, comfort and individual settings can be stored in the vehicle and modified or reset at any time.

For example, this includes:

- Settings for the seat and steering wheel positions.
- Suspension and climate control settings.

If necessary, data can be transferred to the entertainment and communication system of the vehicle, for instance via smartphone.

This includes the following depending on the respective equipment:

- Multimedia data such as music, films or photos for playback in an integrated multimedia system.
- Address book data for use in conjunction with an integrated hands-free system or an integrated navigation system.
- Entered navigation destinations.
- Data on the use of Internet services.

This data can be stored locally in the vehicle or is found on a device that has been connected to the vehicle, e.g., a smartphone, USB stick or MP3 player. If this data is stored in the vehicle, it can be deleted at any time.

This data is only transmitted to third parties upon personal request as part of the use of online services. The transmission depends on the selected settings for the use of the services.

Incorporation of mobile devices

Depending on the vehicle equipment, mobile devices connected to the vehicle, for instance smartphones, can be controlled via the vehicle control elements.

The sound and picture from the mobile device can be played back and displayed through the multimedia system. Certain information is transferred to the mobile device at the same time. Depending on the type of incorporation, this includes, for instance position data and other general vehicle information. This optimizes the way in which selected apps, for instance navigation or music playback, work.

There is no further interaction between the mobile device and the vehicle, such as active access to vehicle data.

How the data will be processed further is determined by the provider of the particular app being used. The extent of the possible settings depends on the respective app and the operating system of the mobile device.

Services

General information

If the vehicle has a wireless network connection, this enables data to be exchanged between the vehicle and other systems. The wireless network connection is realized via an in-vehicle transmitter and receiver unit or via personal mobile devices brought into the vehicle, for instance smartphones. This wireless network connection enables 'online functions' to be used. These include online services and apps supplied by the vehicle manufacturer or by other providers.

Services from the vehicle manufacturer

Where online services from the vehicle manufacturer are concerned, the corresponding functions are described in the appropriate place, for instance the Owner's Manual or manufacturer's website. The relevant legal information pertaining to data protection may also be found on the manufacturer's website. Personal data may be used to perform online services. Data is exchanged over a secure connection, for instance with the IT systems of the vehicle manufacturer intended for this purpose.

Any collection, processing, and use of personal data above and beyond that needed to provide the services must always be based on a legal

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3864

permission, contractual arrangement or consent. It is also possible to activate or deactivate the data connection as a whole. That is, with the exception of functions and services required by law such as Assist systems.

Services from other providers

When using online services from other providers, these services are the responsibility of the relevant provider and subject to their data privacy conditions and terms of use. The vehicle manufacturer has no influence on the content exchanged during this process. Information on the way in which personal data is collected and used in relation to services from third parties, the scope of such data, and its purpose, can be obtained from the relevant service provider.

Event Data Recorder EDR

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder EDR. The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were fastened.
- How far, if at all, the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

EDR data is recorded by your vehicle only if a nontrivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data, for instance name, gender, age, and crash location, are recorded.

However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

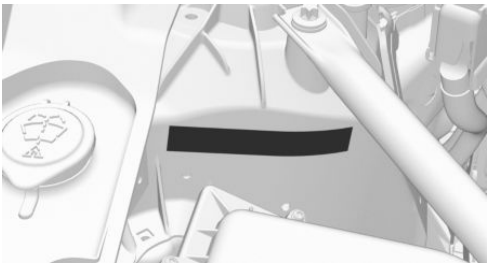
To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Vehicle identification number

General information

Depending on the national-market version, the vehicle identification number is located in different positions in the vehicle. This chapter describes all positions that are possible for the series.

Engine compartment



The engraved vehicle identification number can be found in the engine compartment, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3865
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Right nameplate

The vehicle identification number can be found on the nameplate, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

Left nameplate

The vehicle identification number can be found on the nameplate, on the left-hand side of the vehicle.

Windshield

The vehicle identification number can also be found behind the windshield.

iDrive

It is also possible to display the vehicle identification number via iDrive.

Additional information:

Displaying the vehicle identification number and software part number, refer to page 69.

Reporting safety defects

For US customers

The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration NHTSA, in addition to notifying BMW of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or BMW of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may call the toll-free hotline 1-800-333-0510. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety.

Owner's Manual media

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

General information

Media at a glance

You can use various media formats to call up the content in the Owner's Manual. The following Owner's Manual media formats are available:

- Printed Owner's Manual.
- Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – such as, a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

Printed Owner's Manual

Concept

The printed Owner's Manual describes all standard, country-specific, and optional features offered with the series.

General information

The Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can be obtained as a printed book from the service center.

Supplementary Owner's Manuals

Also follow the Supplementary Owner's Manuals, which are included in addition to the onboard literature.

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

Concept

The Integrated Owner's Manual specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle.

The Integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the Control Display.

Selecting the Owner's Manual

1. HOME Press the button.
2. "CAR"
3. "Owner's Manual"
4. Select the desired method of accessing the contents.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3867
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Scrolling through the Owner's Manual

Turn the Controller, until the next or previous contents are displayed.

Context help

General information

The Integrated Owner's Manual can be accessed from any menu. Depending on the selected function, either the associated description or the main menu of the Integrated Owner's Manual will be displayed.

Opening via iDrive

Change directly to the Options menu from the function on the Control Display:

1. OPTION Press the button.
2. "Help"

Opening when a Check Control message is displayed

Directly from the Check Control message on the Control Display:

"Owner's Manual"

Programmable memory buttons

General information

The entry points into the Owner's Manual can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly.

Storing

1. Select the desired entry point via iDrive:
   - ▷ "Keyword search"
   - ▷ "Picture search"
   - ▷ "Operating tips"
   - ▷ "Quick reference"
   - ▷ "Topics"
   - ▷ "Quick link"
2. 1 ... 7 Press and hold the desired button until the displayed bar on the Control Display has loaded completely.

Executing

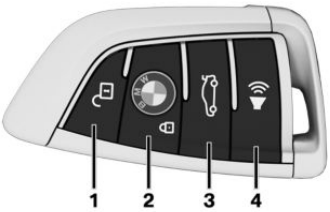
1 ... 7 Press the corresponding button.

The owner's manual is directly displayed at the selected entry point.

Entering

Opening and closing

Buttons on the vehicle key



1 Unlocking
2 Locking
3 To open the tailgate
4 Panic mode, pathway lighting

Unlocking the vehicle

Press the button on the vehicle key.

Depending on the settings, either only the driver's door or all vehicle access points are unlocked.

If only the driver's door is unlocked, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key after unlocking.

The windows and the glass sunroof are opened, as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Press the button on the vehicle key.

All vehicle access points are locked.

Buttons for the central locking system

Overview

Buttons for the central locking system.

Locking

Press the button with the front doors closed.

The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

Unlocking

Press the button.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

- ▷ Press the button on the vehicle key and hold for at least 3 seconds.
- ▷ Briefly press the button on the vehicle key three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3869
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Comfort Access

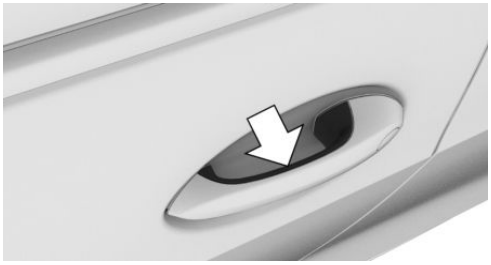
Concept

The vehicle can be accessed without operating the vehicle key.

Carrying the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket, is sufficient.

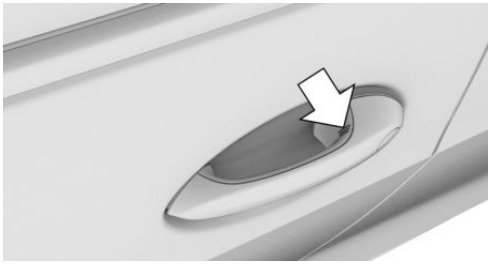
The vehicle automatically detects the vehicle key when it is in close proximity or in the car's interior.

Unlocking the vehicle



Grasp the handle of a vehicle door completely.

Locking the vehicle



Touch the grooved surface on the handle of a closed vehicle door with your finger for approx. 1 second without grasping the door handle.

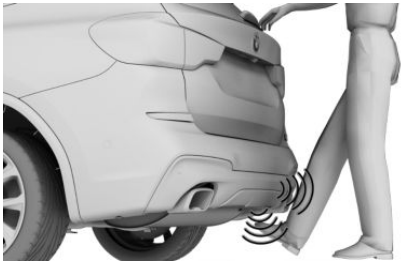
Opening and closing the tailgate with no-touch activation

Concept

The tailgate can be opened and closed with no-touch activation using the vehicle key you are carrying.

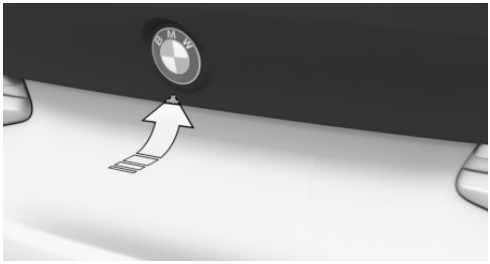
Performing the foot movement

1. Stand in the middle behind the vehicle at approx. one arm's length away from the rear of the vehicle.
2. Wave a foot under the vehicle in the direction of travel and immediately pull it back. With this movement, the leg must pass through the ranges of both sensors.



Tailgate

Opening



▷ Unlock the vehicle and then press the button on the outside of the tailgate.

▷ Press the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

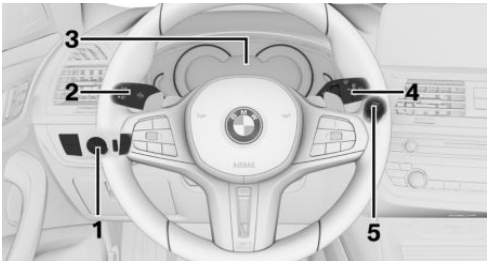
Depending on the setting, the doors may be unlocked.

Closing

Press the button on the inside of the upper tailgate.

Displays, control elements

In the vicinity of the steering wheel



1 Light switch element
2 Turn signal indicator, high beams
3 Instrument cluster
4 Wipers
5 Start/Stop button

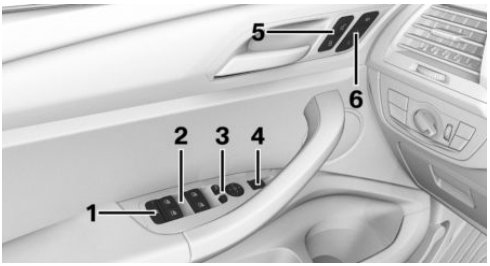
Indicator/warning lights

Instrument cluster

The indicator/warning lights can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

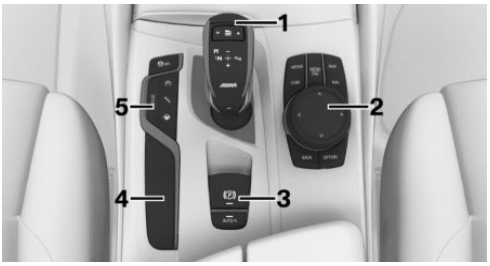
Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when drive-ready state is switched on.

Driver's door



1 Safety switch
2 Power windows
3 Exterior mirrors
4 Opening/closing the tailgate
5 Central locking system
6 Seats, comfort features

Switch console



1 Selector lever
2 Controller
3 Parking brake, Automatic Hold
4 ▷ Sound control
▷ Parking assistance systems
5 M Setup

iDrive

Concept

The iDrive combines the functions of many switches. These functions can be operated via the Controller.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3871
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Buttons on the Controller

Button	Function
MENU	Opens the main menu.
MEDIA	Opens the Media/Radio menu.
COM	Opens the Communication menu.
MAP	Opens navigation map.
NAV	Opens destination input menu for navigation.
BACK	Opens the previous display.
OPTION	Opens the Options menu.

Voice activation

Activating the voice activation system

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the signal.
3. Say the command.

This symbol indicates that the voice activation system is active.

No other commands may be available. In this case, operate the function via iDrive.

Terminating the voice activation system

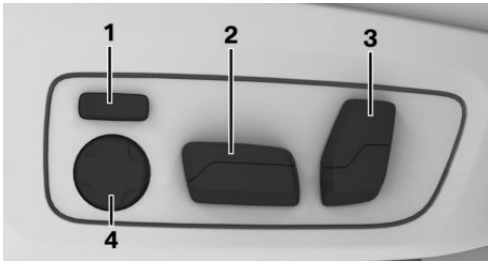
Press the button on the steering wheel or ›Cancel‹.

This symbol indicates that the voice activation system is deactivated.

Set-up and use

Seats, mirrors and steering wheel

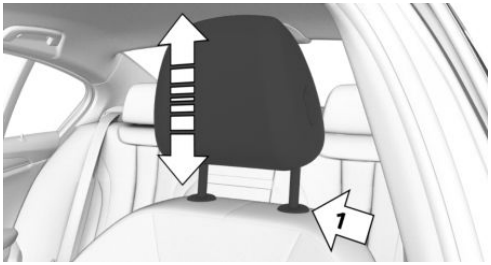
Electrically adjustable seats



1 Backrest width
2 Forward/backward, height, seat tilt
3 Backrest tilt, head restraint
4 Lumbar support

Adjusting the head restraint

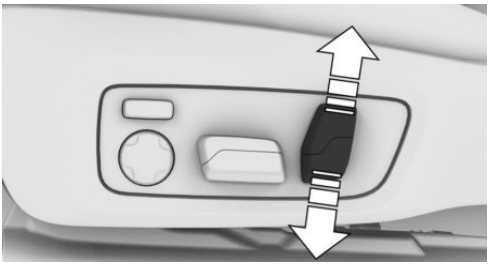
Adjusting the height: manual head restraints



- To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.
- To raise: push the head restraint up.

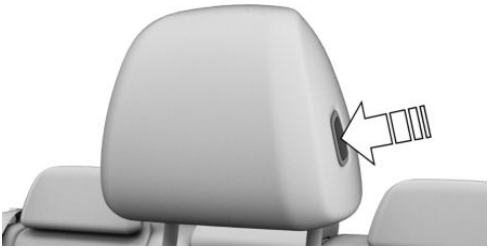
After setting the height, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Adjusting the height: power head restraints



Push switch up or down.

Adjust distance: manual head restraints



- Back: press the button and push the head restraint toward the rear.
- Forward: pull the head restraint toward the front.

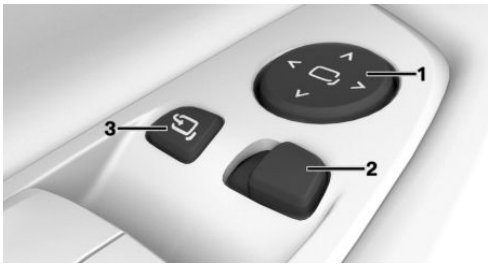
After setting the distance, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Adjusting the distance: power head restraints

The distance to the back of the head is adjusted via the backrest tilt.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3873
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

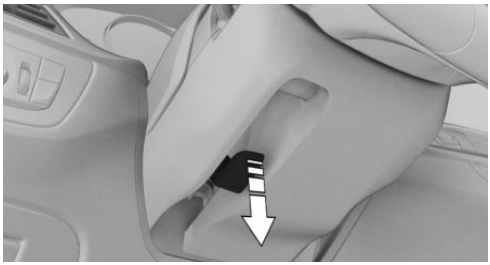
Adjusting the exterior mirrors



1 Adjusting
2 Selecting a mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor
3 Folding in and out

Adjusting the steering wheel

Manual steering wheel setting



1. Fold the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seat position.
3. Fold the lever back up.

Memory function

Concept

The following settings can be stored and, if necessary, retrieved using the memory function:

- Seat position.
- Exterior mirror position.
- Height of the Head-up Display.

Storing

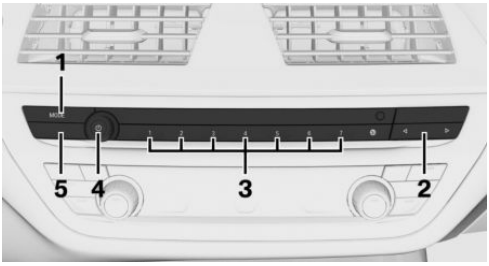
1. Set the desired position.
2. SET Press button on the door. The writing on the button lights up.
3. Press the desired button 1 or 2 at the door while the writing is lit. A signal sounds.

Calling up settings

Press the desired button 1 or 2.

Infotainment

Radio



1 Changing the entertainment source
2 Changing the station/track
3 Programmable memory buttons
4 Sound output on/off, volume
5 Changing the waveband

Waveband/satellite radio

Navigation destination input

Entering a destination via quick search

1. NAV Press the button on the Controller.
2. "Where to?"
3. Enter at least two letters or characters.

   The search term may be completed automatically in gray print.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3874

Press or move the controller up to apply the suggested search term.

4. OK Select the symbol, if needed.

   Results are displayed in a list.
5. "Search location": select search area.
6. Move the Controller to the right.
7. Select desired destination.

Connecting a mobile phone

General information

After the mobile phone is connected once to the vehicle, the mobile phone can be operated using iDrive and the steering wheel buttons.

Connecting the mobile phone via Bluetooth

1. "COM"
2. If necessary, select the following setting: "Telephone"
3. "Connect new phone"
4. To perform additional steps on the mobile phone, refer to the mobile phone owner's manual: e.g., search for or connect the Bluetooth device or a new device.

   The Bluetooth name of the vehicle appears on the mobile phone display. Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle.
5. Depending on the mobile device, a control number is displayed or the control number must be entered.
   - ▷ Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number on the display of the device.

     Confirm the control number on the device and on the Control Display.
   - ▷ Enter and confirm the same control number on the device and via iDrive.

   The device is connected and displayed in the device list.

Using the telephone

Accepting a call

Depending on the equipment, incoming calls can be answered in several ways.

- ▷ Via iDrive:

  "Accept"
- ▷ /

  Press the corresponding button on the steering wheel.
- ▷ Via the selection list in the instrument cluster:

  Use the thumbwheel on the steering wheel to select: "Accept"
- ▷ Via touch screen: tap on the corresponding entry on the Control Display.
- ▷ Via gestures: point the index finger into the direction of the Control Display.

Dialing a number

1. "COM"
2. If necessary, "Telephone"
3. "Dial number:"
4. Enter the numbers.
5. Select the symbol. The connection is established via the mobile phone to which this function has been assigned.

Establish the connection via the additional telephone:

1.

Press the button.
2. "Call via"

Apple CarPlay preparation

Concept

CarPlay allows certain functions of a compatible Apple iPhone to be used via Siri voice operation and iDrive.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3875
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Functional requirements

- Compatible iPhone, iPhone 5 or later with iOS 7.1 or later.
- Corresponding mobile contract.
- If necessary, the setting for mobile data must be activated on the iPhone.
- Bluetooth, WLAN, and Siri voice operation are activated on the iPhone.
- WLAN is activated on the vehicle.

Pairing the iPhone with CarPlay

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. "New device"
4. "Phone calls and audio"

   The vehicle's Bluetooth name is displayed on the Control Display.
5. On the mobile device, search for Bluetooth devices in the vicinity and select the vehicle.

   A control number is displayed.
6. Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number on the display of the mobile device, and confirm that the two match.
7. "Use Apple CarPlay"

The iPhone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3876

On the road

Driving

Drive-ready state

Switching on drive-ready state

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

Switching off drive-ready state

M Steptronic Sport transmission:

1. Engage selector lever position P with the vehicle stopped.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

   The engine is switched off.
3. Set the parking brake.

Auto Start/Stop function

The Auto Start/Stop function switches the engine off automatically while stationary to save fuel. The engine starts automatically under the following preconditions:

M Steptronic Sport transmission:

- By releasing the brake pedal.
- When Automatic Hold is activated: step on the accelerator pedal.

Parking brake

Setting

Pull the switch.

The LED on the switch and the indicator light in the instrument cluster are illuminated.

Releasing

With drive-ready state switched on:

Press the switch while stepping on the brake pedal or selector lever position P is set.

The LED and indicator light go out.

The parking brake is released.

Parking

The parking brake is automatically set if the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold and the drive-ready state is switched off or the vehicle is exited.

M Steptronic Sport transmission

Engaging selector lever position D/S, N, R

- R is reverse.
- Neutral N.
- Center position, forward position.
- - Downshifting, manual.
- + Upshifting, manual.
- D/S Drive mode or sequential mode.

With the driver's safety belt fastened, pull or push the selector lever in the desired direction, past a resistance point if necessary. The selector lever returns to the center position in each case.

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a gear position or reverse, maintain pres-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3877
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

sure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start.

In selector lever position R, the selector lever locks.

Engage selector lever position R only when the vehicle is stationary.

Drive mode D/S

Push the selector lever out of the center position in the D/S direction.

Drive mode is activated; all forward gears are automatically changed.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster along with a D, e.g., 1 D.

Sequential mode D/S

Push the selector lever out of the center position in the D/S direction, arrow 1, or shift via the selector lever, arrows at 2.

Sequential mode is activated; it is possible to shift gears manually without letting off the gas.

- To shift up: pull the selector lever rearwards.
- To shift down: press the selector lever forward.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, e.g., 1.

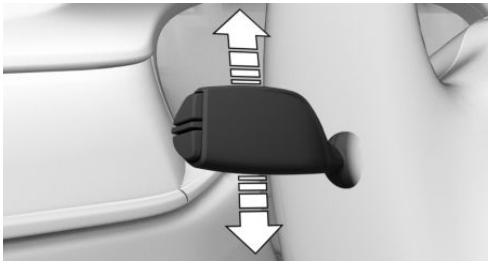
Engaging P

Engage selector lever position P only when the vehicle is stationary.

Press button P.

Turn signal, high beams, headlight flasher

Turn signal

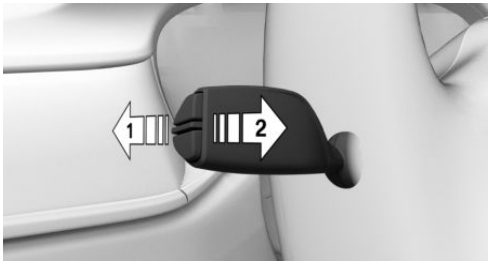


- On: press the lever past the resistance point.
- Off: press the lever past the resistance point in the opposite direction.
- Triple turn signal activation: lightly tap the lever up or down.
- Brief signaling: press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3878

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

High beams, headlight flasher



Push the lever forward or pull it backward.

- ▷ High beams on, arrow 1.
  The high beams light up when the low beams are switched on.
- ▷ High beams off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

Lights and lighting

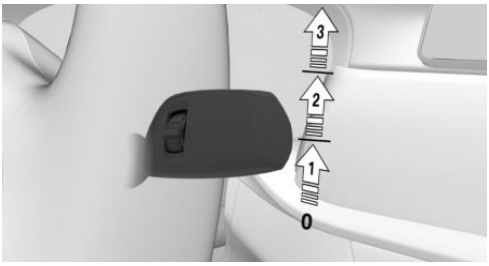
Light functions

Symbol	Function
0	Lights off. Daytime running lights.
≡D⊂≡	Parking lights.
CA	Automatic headlight control. Adaptive light functions.
≡D	Low beams.
	Instrument lighting.
P≡	Right roadside parking light.
≡P	Left roadside parking light.

Wiper system

Switching the wipers on/off and brief wipe

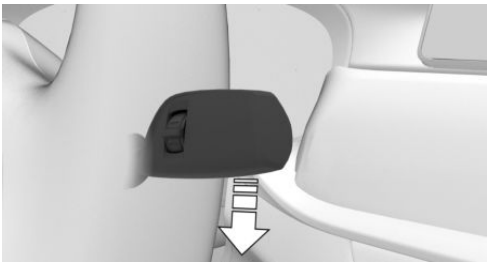
Switching on



Press the lever up until the desired position is reached.

- ▷ Resting position of the wipers: position 0.
- ▷ Rain sensor: position 1.
- ▷ Normal wiper speed: position 2.
- ▷ Fast wiper speed: position 3.

Switching off and brief wipe



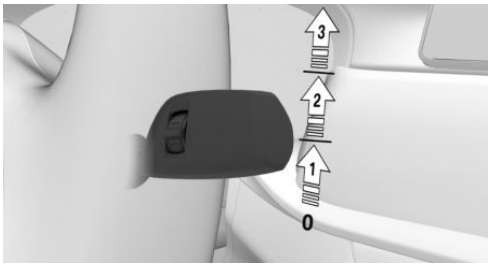
Press the lever down.

- ▷ Switching off: press the lever down until it reaches its standard position.
- ▷ Brief wipe: press the lever down from the standard position.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3879
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Rain sensor

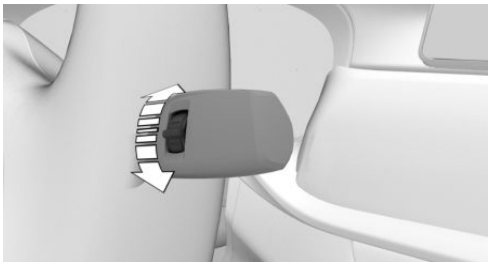
Activating/deactivating



To activate: press the lever up once from its standard position, arrow 1.

To deactivate: press the lever back into the standard position.

Adjusting the sensitivity



Turn the thumbwheel on the wiper lever.

Cleaning the windshield

Pull the wiper lever towards you.

Climate control

Automatic climate control

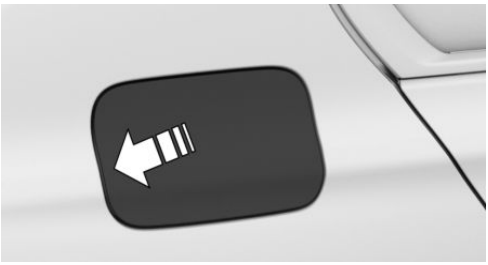
Button	Function
	Temperature.
A/C	Climate control operation.
MAX A/C	Maximum cooling.
AUTO	AUTO program.
	Recirculated-air mode.
	Air flow, manual.
	Air distribution, manual.
SYNC	SYNC program.
MAX	Defrost and defog window.
	Rear window defroster.
	Active seat ventilation.
	Seat heating.
MENU	Opening the Climate menu.

Intermediate stop

Refueling

Fuel cap

1. To open the fuel filler flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.



2. Turn the fuel cap counterclockwise.
3. Place the fuel cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.

Gasoline

For the best fuel efficiency, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.

Wheels and tires

Tire inflation pressure specifications

The tire inflation pressure specifications can be found in the tire inflation pressure table in the printed Owner's Manual.

After correcting the tire inflation pressure

With runflat tires:

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

With Tire Pressure Monitor:

The corrected tire inflation pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the correct tire settings have been made.

With tires that cannot be found in the tire pressure values on the Control Display, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM.

Checking the tire inflation pressure

Regularly check the tire inflation pressure and correct it as needed:

- ▷ At least twice a month.
- ▷ Before embarking on an extended trip.

Cleaning the wheels

The friction during hard braking may produce brake dust and make the rims dirty. Brake dust can be removed by cleaning the rims. BMW recommends using vehicle care and cleaning products from BMW.

Electronic oil measurement

Functional requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of normal driving with the combustion engine running.

Displaying the engine oil level

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"

Different messages appear on the Control Display depending on the engine oil level. Pay attention to these messages.

Adding engine oil

General information

Safely park the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before adding engine oil.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3881
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Adding engine oil

Only add engine oil when the message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Observe the quantity to be added in the message.

Take care not to add too much engine oil.

Observe recommended engine oil types.

Providing assistance

Hazard warning flashers

The button is located in the center console.

Breakdown assistance

BMW Roadside Assistance

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "BMW Assist"
4. If necessary, "BMW Roadside Assistance"
   A voice connection is established.

ConnectedDrive

Concierge service

The BMW Assist Concierge service offers information on events, gas stations or hotels, and provides phone numbers and addresses. Many hotels can be booked directly by the BMW Concierge service. The Concierge service is part of the optional BMW Assist Response Center.

1. "COM"
2. "BMW Assist"
3. If necessary, select the entry for the Concierge Service.

A voice connection to the Concierge service is established.

Teleservices

Teleservices are services that help to maintain vehicle mobility.

Teleservices can comprise the following services:

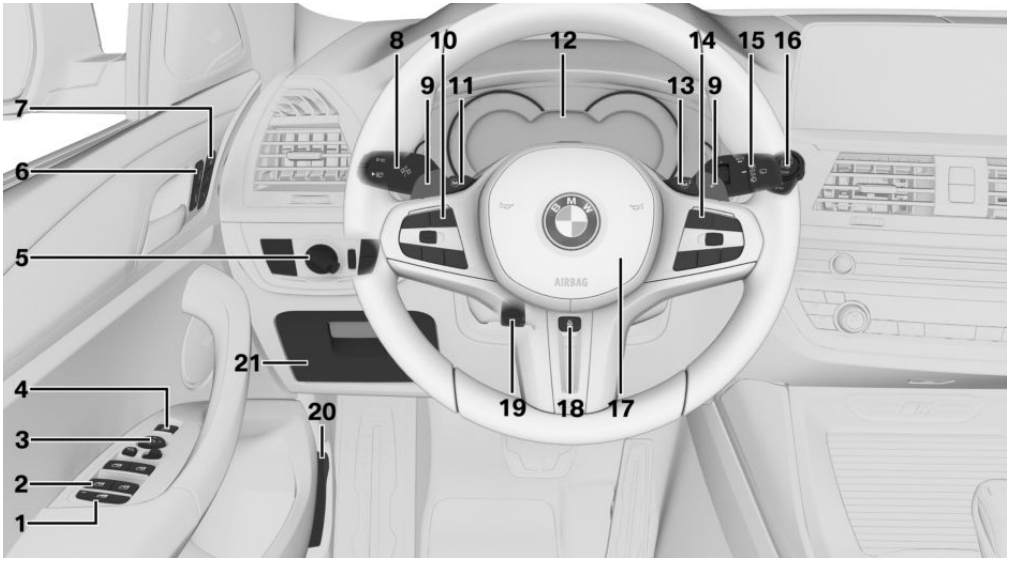
- BMW Roadside Assistance.
- BMW Accident Assistance.
- Service Request.
- Teleservice Report.
- Teleservice Battery Guard.
- Your dealer's service center.

Cockpit

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

In the vicinity of the steering wheel



1 Safety switch 97

2 Power windows 96

3 Exterior mirror operation 107

4 Opening and closing the tailgate 91

5 Lights

Light switch 154

Lights off

Daytime running lights 156

Parking lights 155

Automatic headlight control 154

Adaptive light functions 156

High-beam Assistant 157

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3883
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Low beams 155

Instrument lighting 158

Right roadside parking light 155

Left roadside parking light 155

6 Central locking system 87

Unlocking

Locking

7 Seating comfort features

Memory function 109

8 Steering column stalk, left

Turn signal 125

High beams, headlight flasher 125

High-beam Assistant 157

Widgets 138
Trip data 148

9 Shift paddle

10 Steering wheel buttons, left

Cruise control on/off 195

Active Cruise Control on/off 197

Steering and traffic jam assistant on/off 204

Cruise control: to store the speed

Pause or continue cruise control

Active Cruise Control: increase distance

Active Cruise Control: reduce distance

With steering and traffic jam assistant: adjust distance

Cruise control rocker switch

11
Activating M1 setup 186

12 Instrument cluster 137

13
Activating M2 setup 186

14 Steering wheel buttons, right

Selection lists 148

Volume, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6

Voice activation system 50

Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6

Thumbwheel for selection lists 148

15 Steering column stalk, right

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3884

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Wipers 125

Rain sensor 126

Cleaning the windshield 127

16 Switching drive-ready state on/off 119

Auto Start/Stop function 119

17 Horn, entire surface

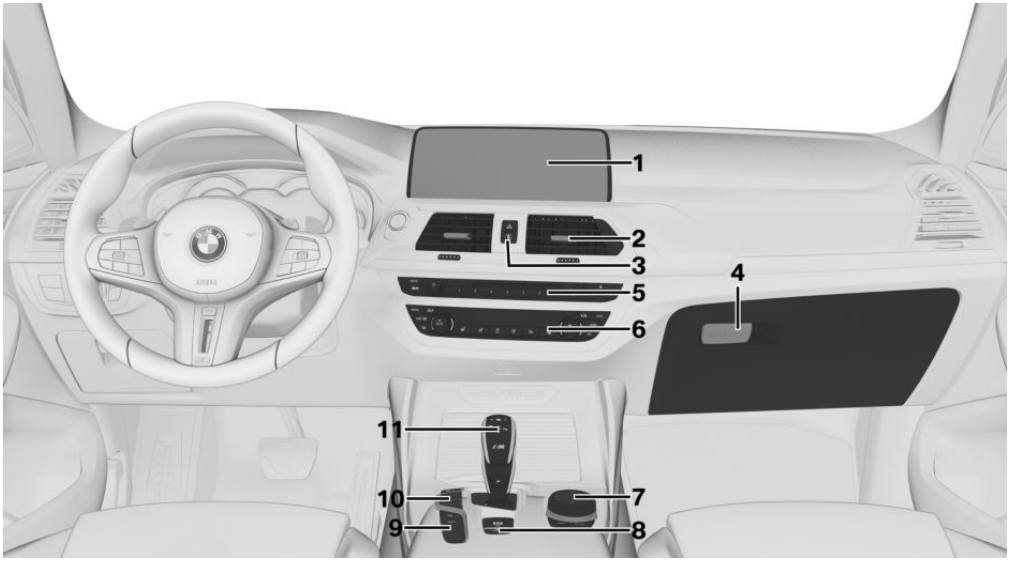
18 Heated steering wheel 109

19 Adjusting the steering wheel 109

20 Unlocking the hood 301

21 Driver's side glove compartment 254

In the vicinity of the center console



1 Control Display 46

2 Ventilation 235

3 Hazard warning system 317

Intelligent Safety 164

4 Glove compartment 253

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3885
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

5 Radio/multimedia, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication 6

6 Automatic climate control 231

7 Controller with buttons 46

8 Parking brake 122

Automatic Hold 123

9 Parking assistance systems 207

Panorama View 223

HDC Hill Descent Control 193

Sound control 136

10 Servotronic 188

Adaptive M chassis 229

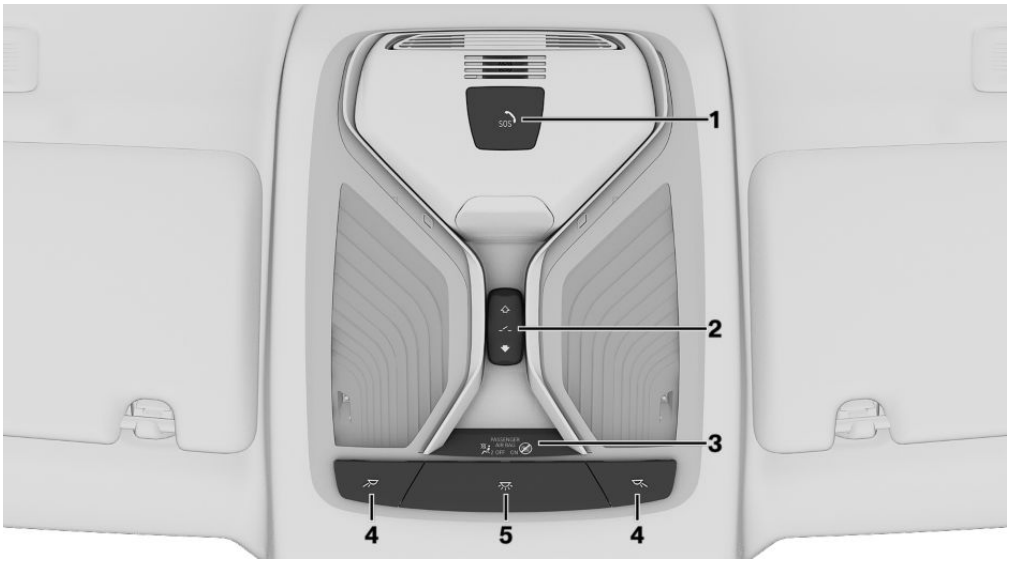
M Engine Dynamics Control 135

DSC Dynamic Stability Control 189

M Setup menu 186

11 Transmission selector lever 128

In the vicinity of the roofliner



1 SOS Emergency Request, SOS 319

2 Glass sunroof 97

3 PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON Indicator light, front-seat passenger airbag 163

4 Reading lights 159

5 Interior lights 158

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3887
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Sensors of the vehicle

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Overview

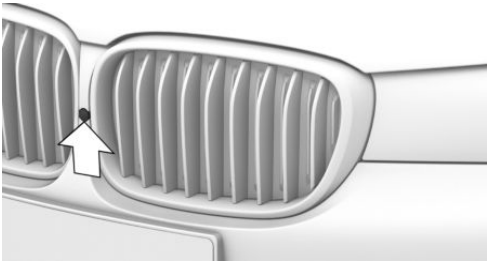
Depending on the equipment, the following cameras and sensors are installed in the vehicle:

- Front camera.
- Cameras behind the windshield.
- Top view cameras.
- Rearview camera.
- Front radar sensor.
- Radar sensors, side, front.
- Radar sensors, side, rear.
- Ultrasound sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors, side.

Keep the vehicle cameras and sensors, as well as surrounding areas, clean and unobstructed.

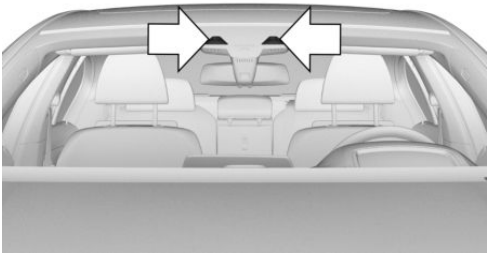
Cameras

Front camera



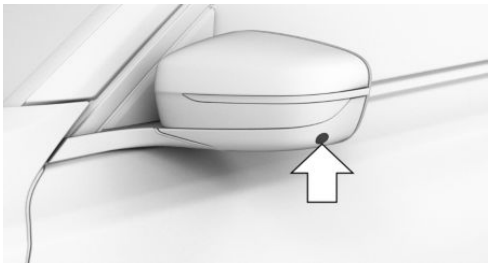
Front camera

Cameras behind the windshield



The cameras are located in the area of the interior mirror.

Top view cameras



One camera is located at the bottom of each exterior mirror housing.

Rearview camera

The camera is located between the license plate lights.

System limits of the cameras

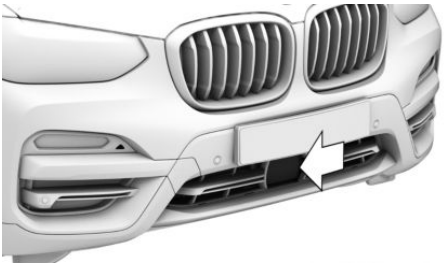
The cameras may not be fully functional and may provide incorrect information in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- On steep hills, in steep depressions or in tight curves.
- When the camera field of view is covered, for instance by a fogged up windshield or labels.
- When the camera lens is dirty or damaged.
- With exterior mirrors folded in.
- When driving toward bright lights or strong reflections, e.g., because of a setting sun.
- When it is dark outside.
- Camera behind the windshield: if the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- Camera behind the windshield: during calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

If applicable, a Check Control message is displayed if the system fails.

Radar sensors

Front radar sensor



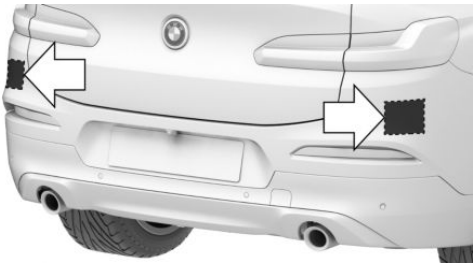
The radar sensor is located in the front bumper.

Radar sensors, side, front

The radar sensors are located in the bumper.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3889
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Radar sensors, side, rear



The radar sensors are located in the bumper.

System limits of the radar sensors

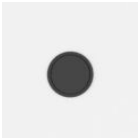
The radar sensors may not be fully functional or may not be available in the following situations:

- If sensors are dirty, such as due to icing.
- If sensors are covered, such as by labels, films or a number plate baseplate.
- If the sensor is not aligned correctly, for instance due to parking damage.
- If the radiation range of the sensors is covered, e.g., by protruding cargo.
- If the field of view of the sensors is covered, e.g., by garage walls, hedges or snow hills.
- After improperly performed work on the vehicle paint in the area of the sensors.
- On steep hilltops or in sharp dips in the road.

If applicable, a Check Control message is displayed if the system fails.

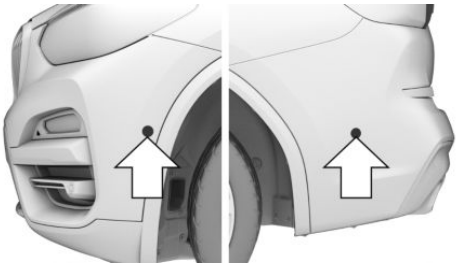
Ultrasound sensors

Ultrasound sensors in the front/ rear bumpers



The ultrasound sensors of the Park Distance Control PDC are located in the bumpers.

Ultrasonic sensors, side



The ultrasound sensors of the Automatic Parking Assistant are located on the side of the vehicle.

System limits of the ultrasonic sensors

The detection of objects with ultrasonic measurements can run into physical limits, e.g., in the following situations:

- In case of dirty sensors.
- In case of covered sensors, such as due to labels.
- If the sensor is not aligned correctly, for instance due to parking damage.
- After improperly performed work on the vehicle paint in the area of the sensors.
- For small children and animals.
- For persons with certain clothing, for instance coats.
- In case of external interference of the ultrasound, for instance from passing vehicles, loud machines or other ultrasonic sources.
- Under certain weather conditions, e.g., high relative humidity, wet conditions, snowfall, cold, extreme heat, or strong wind.
- With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.
- With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- With moving objects.
- With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges.

- With objects with corners, edges, and smooth surfaces.
- With objects with a fine surface structure such as fences.
- For objects with porous surfaces.
- With small and low objects, for instance boxes.
- With soft obstacles or obstacles covered in foam material.
- With plants and bushes.
- In automatic car washes.
- On uneven surfaces, such as speed bumps.
- Due to heavy exhaust.
- Cargo that extends beyond the perimeter of the vehicle is not taken into account by the ultrasonic sensors.

If applicable, a Check Control message is displayed if the system fails.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3891
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Operating state of the vehicle

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

General information

Depending on the situation, the vehicle is in one of the three states:

- Idle state.
- Standby state.
- Drive-ready state.

Idle state

Concept

When the vehicle is in idle state, it is switched off. All power consumers are deactivated.

General information

The vehicle is in idle state prior to opening from the outside and after exiting and locking.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Automatic idle state

For instance, the idle state is automatically established under the following conditions:

- After several minutes, if no operation takes place on the vehicle.
- If the charge state of the vehicle battery is low.
- Depending on the setting via iDrive: when one or both front doors are opened after driving when exiting the vehicle.

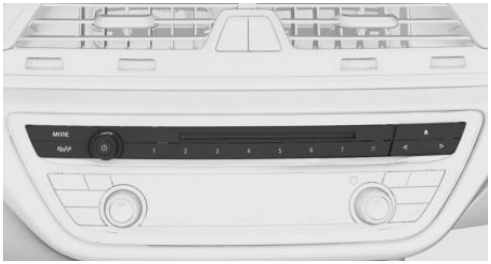
In some situations, the idle state is not set automatically, for instance during a phone call or when the low beams are switched on.

Establishing idle state when opening the front doors

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Turn off vehicle after opening door"

Manual idle state

To establish idle state in the vehicle after end of trip:



Press and hold the button until the OFF indicator on the instrument cluster goes out.

Standby state

Concept

When standby state is switched on, most functions can be used while the vehicle is stationary. Desired settings can be adjusted.

General information

The vehicle is in the standby state after the front doors are opened from the outside.

Display in the instrument cluster

OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster. The drivetrain is switched off and standby state switched on.

Drive-ready state

Concept

Switching on drive-ready state corresponds to starting the engine.

General information

Some vehicle functions can only be used with the drive-ready state switched on.

Safety information

⚠ DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can enter into the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3893
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

NOTICE

Repeated attempts to start the vehicle or repeated starting of the vehicle in rapid succession can cause the starter to overheat. This also results in unburned or inadequately burned fuel, and can cause the catalytic converter to overheat. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Avoid repeated starting of the vehicle, particularly repeated starting in rapid succession.

Switching on drive-ready state

Concept

Drive-ready state is switched on via the Start/Stop button.

M Steptronic Sport transmission

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

The ignition is activated automatically for a brief time and is stopped as soon as the engine starts.

Most of the indicator/warning lights in the instrument cluster light up for a varied length of time.

Gasoline engine

Depending on the motorization, the full drive power may not be available for approximately 30 seconds after starting the engine. In this case, the vehicle will not accelerate as usual.

Display in the instrument cluster

The lettering READY in the in the instrument cluster indicates that the drive-ready state is switched on.

Switching off drive-ready state

M Steptronic Sport transmission

1. Engage selector lever position P with the vehicle stopped.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

   The engine is switched off. The vehicle switches into standby state.
3. Set the parking brake.

iDrive

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Operating concept

Concept

iDrive includes a large number of functions. These functions can be operated via the Controller and, depending on the equipment version, via touchscreen, voice activation system or gesture control.

Safety information

Warning

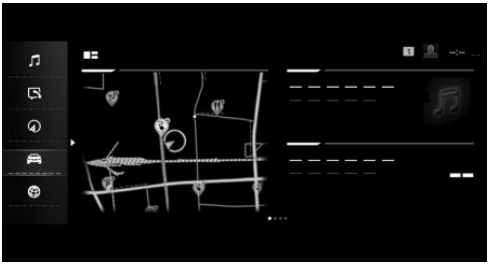
Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. As warranted, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.

Input and display

Main menu

General information

The main menu is divided into two areas. The left area contains menu items that can be used to call up all the iDrive functions. The right area contains widgets that provide quick access to certain functions.



Media/Radio

All functions of the entertainment system, e.g., radio stations or connection with external devices.

Communication

Phone and message functions, e-mail and calendar, and also the connection and management of mobile devices, such as smartphones.

Navigation

Access to the navigation system, destination input and traffic bulletins. Configurable map views and other functions, such as points of interest and areas to be avoided.

My Car

Information about vehicle status and trips. Access to the Integrated Owner's Manual and also administration of driver profiles and range of adjustments for vehicle and iDrive.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3895
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Apps

Management of apps, access to apps and vehicle functions. Additional apps and vehicle functions can be purchased from the BMW Store.

Widgets

Widgets provide quick access to frequently used functions. The configured widgets display dynamic contents such as the navigation map, and serve as interfaces at the same time.

Letters and numbers

Letters and numbers can be selected when the destination is inputed, for example.

Letters and numbers can be entered using the Controller and, depending on the equipment version, via touchscreen or voice activation system. The keyboard's display changes automatically.

Symbol	Function
abc ABC	Change between capital and lower-case letters.
␣	Enter a blank space.
EN	Switching between languages.
	Use voice activation.
OK	Confirm entry.
← →	Slide the input area to the left or right.

Entry comparison

When entering names and addresses, the choice is narrowed down with every letter and number and added automatically as needed.

Entries are continuously compared with data stored in the vehicle.

- Only those letters and numbers are offered during entry for which data is available.
- Destination search: place names can be entered in all languages that are available in iDrive.

Activating/deactivating the functions

Several menu items are preceded by a checkbox. The checkbox indicates whether the function is activated or deactivated. Selecting the menu item activates or deactivates the function.

☑ Function is activated.

☐ Function is deactivated.

Status information

General information

The status field can be found in the upper area of the Control Display. Status information is displayed in the form of symbols.

Radio symbols

Symbol	Meaning
HD	HD Radio station is being received.
SXM	Satellite radio is switched on.

Telephone symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Incoming or outgoing call.
	Missed call.
	Signal strength of cellular network.
	Network search.
	Cellular network is not available.
	The critical charge state of the mobile phone has been reached.
R	Roaming is active.
	Locating is active.
	SMS text message received.
	Message received.

Symbol	Meaning
	Reminder.
	Sending not possible.

Entertainment symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Bluetooth audio.
	USB device.
	WLAN.
	Apple CarPlay.

Other symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Check Control message.
	Sound output active.
	Sound output deactivated.
	Voice activation system active.
	Request for the current vehicle position.
	Checking the current vehicle position.
	Driver profile.
1	Messages.
	Service notifications.
	Information.
STOP	Stop.
	Data protection.

Programmable memory buttons

General information

The iDrive functions can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly, for instance radio stations, navigation destinations, phone numbers and menu entries or pages in the Integrated Owner's Manual.

Settings are stored for the driver profile currently used.

Overview

1 ... 7 Programmable memory buttons

Storing a function

A function can be stored on a programmable memory button. A button with a stored function can be overwritten with another function.

1. Select function via iDrive, for instance radio station.
2. 1 ... 7 Press and hold the desired button until the displayed bar on the Control Display has loaded completely.

Executing a function

1 ... 7 Press the button.

The function will work immediately. This means, for instance that the number is dialed when a phone number is selected.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3897
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Displaying the key assignment

Touch buttons with finger. Do not wear gloves or use objects.

The assignment of the buttons is displayed in the upper area of the Control Display.

Deleting all button assignments

All button assignments can be deleted.

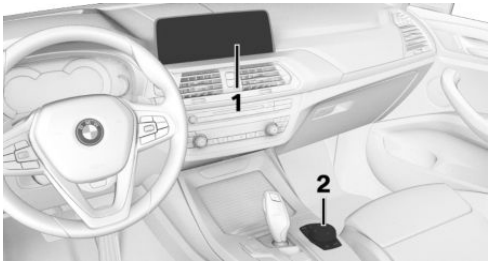
1. Press and hold buttons 1 and simultaneously for approx. 5 seconds.
2. "OK"

Control Display and Controller

Concept

The iDrive functions are displayed on the Control Display. The Control Display can be operated using the Controller, touchpad, and touch screen.

Overview



1 Control Display with touchscreen

2 Controller with buttons and touchpad

Control Display

Safety information

NOTICE

Objects in the area in the front of the Control Display can shift and damage the Control Display. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not place objects in the area in front of the Control Display.

Switching on/off automatically

The Control Display is switched on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked or as soon as the Control Display is needed for operation.

In certain situations, the Control Display is switched off automatically, for instance if no operation is performed on the vehicle for several minutes.

Switching on/off manually

The Control Display can also be switched off manually.

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Screen off"

Press the Controller or any button on the Controller to switch it back on again.

System limits

In the case of very high temperatures on the Control Display, for instance due to intense solar radiation, the brightness may be reduced down to complete deactivation. Once the temperature is reduced, for instance through shade or air conditioning, the normal functions are restored.

Controller

General information

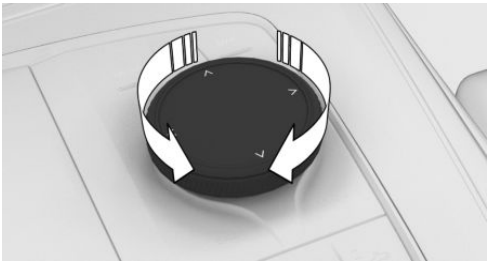
The buttons can be used to open the menus directly. The Controller can be used to select menu items and enter the settings.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3898
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

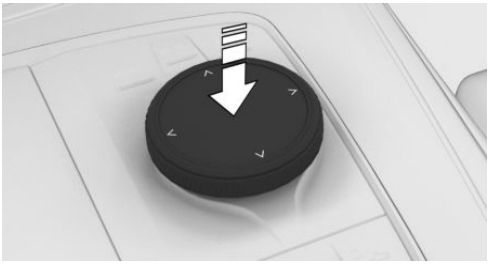
Some iDrive functions can be operated using the touchpad on the Controller.

Operation

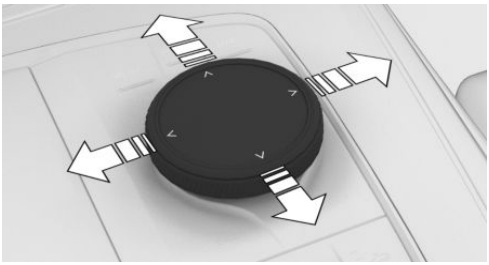
▷ Turn to switch between menu items, for example.



▷ Press to select a menu item, for example.



▷ Tilt in four directions to switch between displays, for example.



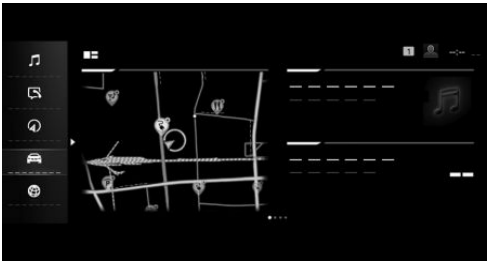
Buttons on the Controller

Button	Function
MENU	Opens the main menu.
MEDIA	Opens the Media/Radio menu.
COM	Opens the Communication menu.
MAP	Opens navigation map.
NAV	Opens destination input menu for navigation.
BACK	Opens the previous display.
OPTION	Opens the Options menu.

Operating via the Controller

Opening the main menu

MENU Press the button.



The main menu is displayed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3899
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Selecting a menu

Selecting menu items

1. Turn the Controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.
2. Press the Controller.

Select a widget

1. Move the Controller in the main menu to the right.
2. Turn the Controller until the desired widget is selected.
3. Press the Controller.

It is also possible to select widgets in the instrument cluster.

Adjusting the menu

Adjusting widgets

The widgets can be adjusted in the main menu. It is possible to create multiple pages with widgets and switch between pages. The adjustments can only be performed when the vehicle is stationary.

1. Select the desired page in the main menu. Only the currently selected page can be adjusted.
2. Tip the Controller up.
3. "Adjust main menu"
4. Select the desired adjustment:
   - ▷ + Symbol and select desired widget: add new widget.

     The requested widget will be inserted in the relevant position. A maximum of four widgets can be displayed per page.
   - ▷ ✕ Select symbol: delete selected widget.
   - ▷ Add new page: "Add page".
   - ▷ Delete selected page: "Delete page".
   - ▷ Adjust the content of the widget: select widget.
5. "Done"

Adjusting contents

Depending on the equipment, the contents of menus "MEDIA", "COM" and "NAV" can be adjusted, for instance to remove the entries of functions that are not used from the menu.

1. Select the menu.
2. "Personalize menu"
3. Select the desired setting.

Changing between displays

After a menu item is selected, for instance "Settings", a new display appears.

▷ Move the Controller to the left.

The current display closes and the previous display is shown.

▷

Press the button.

The previous display re-opens.

▷ Move the Controller to the right.

The new display opens.

An arrow indicates that additional displays can be opened.

Opening the Options menu

Press the button.

The "Options" menu is displayed.

The menu consists of various areas, for instance:

- ▷ "MEDIA": control options for the selected main menu.
- ▷ "Help": help for the selected menu.
- ▷ "Control display off": system settings.

Entering letters and numbers

Input

1. Turn the Controller: select letter or number.
2. OK : confirm entry.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3900

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Deleting

Symbol	Function
⌫	Press the Controller: delete letter or number.
⌫	Hold the Controller down: delete all letters or numbers.

Using alphabetical lists

For alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries, the letters for which an entry exists can be displayed in a text box.

1. Turn the Controller to the left or right quickly.
2. Select the first letter of the desired entry.

   The first entry of the selected letter is displayed in the list.

Operation via touchpad

General information

Some iDrive functions can be operated using the touchpad on the Controller.

Selecting functions

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Touchpad"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Character input": enter letters and numbers.
   - ▷ "Map": use the map.
   - ▷ "Search fields": to write letters without selecting the list field.
   - ▷ "Audio confirmation": pronounces entered letters and numbers.

Entering letters and numbers

- ▷ Enter characters as they are displayed on the Control Display.
- ▷ Always enter associated characters, such as accents or periods so that the letter can be clearly recognized.
- ▷ The set language determines what input is possible. Where necessary, enter special characters via the Controller.

Entering special characters

Input	Operation
Delete a character.	Swipe to the left on the touchpad.
Enter a blank space.	Swipe to the right in the center of the touchpad.
Enter a hyphen.	Swipe to the right in the upper area of the touchpad.
Enter an underscore.	Swipe to the right in the lower area of the touchpad.

Using the map

The map in the navigation system can be moved via the touchpad.

Function	Operation
Move map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Enlarge/shrink map.	Drag in or out on the touchpad with fingers.
Display menu.	Tap once.

Operation via touchscreen

General information

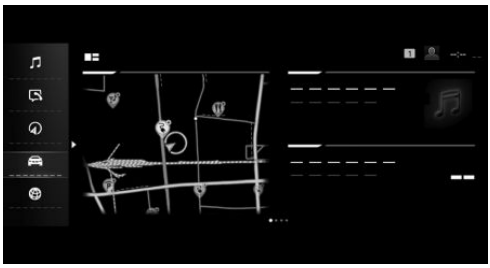
The Control Display is equipped with a touchscreen.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3901
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

You can tap on menu items and widgets. Touch the screen with your fingers. Do not use any objects.

Opening the main menu

Tap on the symbol.



The main menu is displayed.

Adjusting widgets

The widgets can be adjusted in the main menu. It is possible to create multiple pages with widgets and switch between pages. The adjustments can only be performed when the vehicle is stationary.

1. Select the desired page in the main menu. Only the currently selected page can be adjusted.
2. Tap the icon in the main menu.
3. Select the desired adjustment:
   - ▷ + Tap symbol and select desired widget: add new widget.

     The requested widget will be inserted in the relevant position. A maximum of four widgets can be displayed per page.
   - ▷ × Tap symbol: delete selected widget.
   - ▷ Add new page: tap "Add page".
   - ▷ Delete selected page: tap "Delete page".
   - ▷ Adjust content of the widget: tap center of widget.
4. Tap "Done".

Showing/hiding the display bar

In the upper area of the Control Display, it is possible to show or hide a display bar with additional functions.

- ▷ To show the display bar, pull down the display bar at the top edge of the screen.
- ▷ To hide the display bar, pull up the display bar at the top edge of the screen.

Changing between displays

After a menu item is selected, a new display opens.

An arrow indicates that additional displays can be opened.

- ▷ Swipe to the left.
- ▷ Tap arrow.

The new display opens.

Entering letters and numbers

Input

1. Depending on the equipment version, tap the symbol on the touchscreen or a keyboard is displayed on the Control Display when the touchscreen is approached.
2. Enter desired letters and numbers.

Deleting

Symbol	Function
⌫	Tapping the symbol: deletes the letter or number.
⌫	Tapping and holding the symbol all letters: deletes all letters or numbers.

Using the map

The navigation map can be moved using the touchscreen.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3902

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Function	Operation
Move map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Enlarge/shrink map.	Drag in or out with the fingers.
Display menu.	Tap once.

Operation via voice

Concept

The voice activation system can be used to operate functions with spoken commands. The system supports you with announcements during input.

The voice control system and the feedback it provides are not a substitute for the printed or Integrated Owner's Manual.

General information

- Functions that can only be used when the vehicle is stationary can only be operated via the voice activation system to a limited extent.
- The system includes special microphones on the driver side and the front passenger side.
- ›...‹ denotes commands to use with the voice activation system.

Functional requirements

- A language must be set via iDrive that is supported by the voice activation system.

  To set the language, refer to page 60.
- Always say commands in the language of the voice activation system.

Activating the voice activation system

General information

There are various methods for activating the voice activation feature:

- Press the button on the steering wheel.
- Say the wake word ›Hello BMW‹ or a personal wake word.

This symbol indicates that the voice activation system is active.

Then say the command. No other commands may be available. In this case, operate the function via iDrive.

The voice activation can be terminated:

- Press the button on the steering wheel again.
- ›Cancel‹

This symbol indicates that the voice activation system is deactivated.

Button on the steering wheel

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the signal.
3. Say the command.

Wake word

General information

Speaking the wake word ›Hello BMW‹ or the personal wake word will start the system.

Preset wake word

The preset wake word ›Hello BMW‹ can be activated and deactivated.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3903
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

›Hello BMW‹ activates the preset and personal wake word.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. If necessary, "Personal assistant"
5. "Voice control"
6. "Wake word"
7. "Activation with "Hello BMW""

Personal wake word

In addition to a preset wake word ›Hello BMW‹, a personal wake word can be set up.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. If necessary, "Personal assistant"
5. "Voice control"
6. "Wake word"
7. "Personal wake word"
8. "Start recording"

   For "Start recording", online speech processing must be available and activated. Alternatively, the personal wake word can be entered using the Controller.
9. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Possible commands

General information

Most contents on the Control Display can be spoken as commands, e.g. menu items or list entries. Speak these list entries out loud exactly as they are shown in the list.

Say the commands and numbers fluently as well as with normal volume, emphasis, and speed.

The status of the voice recognition is displayed in the upper area of the Control Display.

Function examples

Menu items

The commands of the menu items are spoken just as they are selected via the Controller.

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. ›MEDIA‹
3. ›Presets‹

The stored stations are displayed on the Control Display.

Navigation

Destinations can be entered in the navigation system using the voice activation system. It is also possible to say points of interest or have traffic reports announced.

- ›Drive me to 300 Chestnut Ridge Road, Woodcliff Lake in New Jersey‹
- ›Take me home‹
- ›Are there any traffic messages‹

Communication

For example, when a mobile phone is connected, the voice activation system can be used to start calls or send SMS.

- ›Call John Doe on cell phone‹
- ›Dial the number 1 8 0 0 8 3 1 1 1 1 7‹
- ›New text message to John Doe: I'll be right there‹

Media and Radio

Most radio functions can be used via the Active Voice Recognition.

- ›Turn on music‹
- ›Music off‹
- ›Next title‹

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3904

Climate control

Most climate control functions can be used via voice.

- ▷ ›Activate climate control‹
- ▷ ›Deactivate air recirculation‹
- ▷ ›Temperature [...] at ...‹

Help on the voice activation system

- ▷ ›Voice commands‹: to have the available spoken commands announced.
- ▷ ›General information on voice control‹: have information on the operating principle of the voice activation system read out loud.
- ▷ ›Help‹: have help for the current menu read out loud.

Information for Emergency Requests

Do not use the voice activation system to initiate an Emergency Request. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change. This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a telephone connection.

Instead, use the SOS button close to the interior mirror.

Additional information:

Emergency Request, refer to page 319.

Settings

Setting the voice control

You can set the system to use standard dialog or a short version.

The short version of the voice control plays back short messages in abbreviated form.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. If necessary, "Personal assistant"
5. "Voice control"
6. "Response length"
7. Select the desired setting.

Speaking during voice output

It is possible to answer during inquiries of the voice activation system. The function can be deactivated if inquiries are often undesirably interrupted, for instance due to background noise or conversations in the vehicle.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. If necessary, "Personal assistant"
5. "Voice control"
6. "Speaking during voice output"

Online speech processing

Online speech processing provides a dictation function, a natural method of destinations input and improves the quality of voice recognition. To use the functions, data is transmitted to a service provider via an encrypted connection and stored locally there.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. If necessary, "Personal assistant"
5. "Voice control"
6. "Online speech processing"

Adjusting the volume

Turn the volume button during the spoken instructions until the desired volume is set.

- ▷ The volume remains constant even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.
- ▷ The volume is stored for the driver profile currently used.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3905
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Using the voice activation system of the smartphone

Depending on the device, a smartphone connected to the vehicle can be used via voice activation.

Activate voice command response on the smartphone for this purpose.

1. Press and hold the button on the steering wheel for approx. 3 seconds.

   Voice command response is activated on the smartphone.

2. Release the button.

   If activation is successful, a confirmation appears on the Control Display.

Voice assistants from third-party providers

Concept

Some third-party providers provide digital voice assistants. Supported voice assistants can be used in the vehicle.

General information

Some of the functions are limited in the vehicle to prevent any impairment of safety while driving.

Functional requirements

- Connected Voice Services purchased via ConnectedDrive Store.
- Same ConnectedDrive account used in the vehicle and in the BMW Connected app.
- Vehicle added in the BMW Connected app.
- Third-party account and BMW account are linked in the BMW Connected app.
- Smartphone connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth.

Activation in the BMW Connected app

Third-party assistants are set up in the BMW Connected app.

Follow the instructions in the app.

Activation in the vehicle

An authorization for the use of the voice assistant is required every time before starting a trip.

1. Authorizing voice assistants from third-party providers:
   - Connect the smartphone to the vehicle via Bluetooth.
   - Selects appropriate driver profile.

     Driver profiles, refer to page 64.
2. If necessary, press the button on the steering wheel and wait for signal tone.
3. Say the specific activation word of the third-party provider and the desired command.

   Information about the active function is displayed on the Control Display.

Activation/deactivation of the specific activation word

In addition to the activation word of the voice activation system, the specific activation word from the third-party provider can be activated or deactivated.

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "Personal assistant"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Wake word"
6. "Activation by speech"
7. Select the desired setting.

Malfunction

In case of a malfunction, switch off the drive-ready state and restart again.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3906

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

System limits

- Certain noises can be detected and may lead to problems. Keep the doors, windows, and glass sunroof closed.
- Noises from the front passenger or the rear seat bench can impair the system. Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.
- Major language dialects can cause problems with the voice recognition feature. Speak loud and clear.

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant

Concept

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is the personal assistant that expands the voice activation system with intelligent functions and improves the interaction in the vehicle.

General information

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is available depending on the national-market version. The use of the personal assistant is based on voice operation. The voice operation is enhanced with personal recommendations and messages as well as the automation of routines.

The personal assistant is connected to other digital services such as the Concierge service and is continually being developed. The full scope requires an active driver profile.

The BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is available in two variants:

- In the Guest profile: the variant is linked to a vehicle and cannot be personalized. Not all described functions are available to the full extent.
- With active Driver profile: the variant can be used and personalized in different vehicles. All described functions are available to the full extent.

Functional requirements

Enter the following settings to access the full range of functions:

- The Driver profile is activated.
- Relevant ConnectedDrive Services have been purchased via ConnectedDrive Store.
- Registered in the ConnectedDrive Store.
- "Online speech processing" is activated.
- "Synchronize driver profile" under "Personalization" is activated.

  Data protection, refer to page 63.
- All settings under "BMW ConnectedDrive" activated.

  Data protection, refer to page 63.

Example for function

1. Say the wake word ›Hello BMW‹ or a personal wake word.
2. ›Is my tire pressure still OK?‹

   The personal assistant provides information about the tire pressure.

Settings

Display, notifications

General information

Depending on the situation, different conditions can be activated.

Condition	Description
"Do not disturb"	Incoming calls and some messages are not displayed.
"Passenger on board"	Private contents, such as sender and content of e-mails, will not be displayed.

Activating/deactivating

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3907
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

3. "Personal assistant"
4. "Notification display"
5. Select the desired setting.

Automating routines

General information

The personal assistant can learn routines, e.g., the automatic activation of the seat heating from a specific external temperature. Rules are created for this purpose, which can be activated and deactivated at any time.

Creating a rule

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "Personal assistant"
4. "Automate habits"
5. Select the desired setting.

Functions

Experience Modes

General information

The Experience Modes combine different vehicle functions in the car's interior to an overall experience. For example, the selection of a mode harmonizes the ambient light and seat climate control.

Functional requirements

▷ The Experience Modes app is installed in the vehicle.

▷ Drive-ready state is switched on.

Selecting a mode

1. "CAR"
2. "Experience Modes"
3. Select the desired mode.

Deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Experience Modes"
3. "End"

Adjusting the mode

1. "CAR"
2. "Experience Modes"
3. Select the desired mode.
4. "Settings"
5. Make the desired setting.

Caring Car

General information

Different vehicle functions in the car's interior are harmonized for the driver in a short-term program. A program takes 3 minutes.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Caring Car"
3. Select the desired channel.

The program can be stopped prematurely:

"End program"

Owner's Manual via voice operation

Concept

You can ask simple questions about vehicle functions and the operation of the vehicle.

General information

The voice control system and the feedback it provides are not a substitute for the printed or Integrated Owner's Manual. The voice recognition and quality of the feedback may vary.

The system supports questions that begin with How or What.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3908

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Example for function

1. ›Hello BMW‹
2. ›How can the passenger airbag be deactivated‹

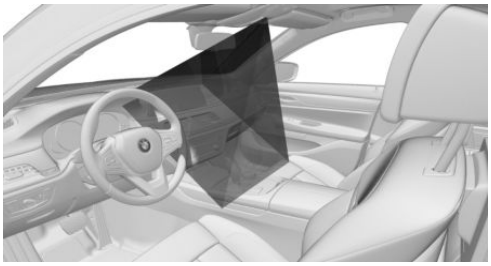
The voice activation system returns a feedback. When stationary, the section of the integrated Owner's Manual is displayed on the Control Display.

BMW Gesture Control

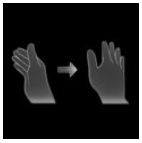
Concept

Several iDrive functions can be operated by hand motion using BMW Gesture Control.

Overview



Possible gestures

Gesture	Operation	Function
	Move index finger forward and backward in the direction of the screen.	Accept call. Select a highlighted entry in a list during voice activation. Confirm pop-up.
	Move hand across the width of the Control Display in the direction of the front-passenger side.	Reject call. Close pop-up. Terminate voice activation.

The camera in the roofliner detects gestures that are carried out in the area of the center console at the height of the Control Display.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Gesture control"
5. "Gesture control"

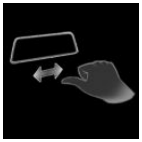
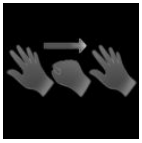
Settings

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Gesture control"
5. Select the desired setting.

Carrying out gestures

- ▷ Perform gestures underneath the interior mirror and next to the steering wheel.
- ▷ Execute gestures clearly.
- ▷ The gestures can also be executed from the front-passenger side.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3909
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Gesture	Operation	Function
	Slowly move hand clockwise in a circular pattern with the index finger stretched out forward. Gesture is detected after one circular motion.	Increase the volume.
	Slowly move forearm counterclockwise in a circular pattern with the index finger stretched out forward. Gesture is detected after one circular motion.	Reduce the volume.
	Pinch with thumb and index finger and move hand horizontally to the right or left.	Surround View: turn camera view. This gesture can only be executed while the vehicle is stationary.
	Move stretched out index and middle finger forward.	Individually assignable gesture.
	Move fist with thumb extended to the left back and forth.	Reverse Skip function. The previous music track is played.
	Move fist with thumb extended to right left back and forth.	Forward Skip function. The next music track is played.
	Stretch out five fingers, form a fist and stretch five fingers out again.	Individually assignable gesture.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3910

Assigning gesture individually

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the following functions can be assigned to gestures that allow individual assignments:

- Destination guidance to home address.
- Voice command response.
- Mute/Playback
- Last calls.
- Control Display on/off
- Notifications.
- Music recognition
- No function.

Select function

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Gesture control"
5. "Function assignment gesture 1" or "Function assignment gesture 2"
6. Select the desired setting.

System limits

Gesture recognition by the camera in the roofliner can be disturbed by the following circumstances:

- The camera lens is covered.
- Objects are located on the interior mirror.
- The camera lens is dirty, clean camera lens.

  Sensors and camera lenses, refer to page 327.
- The gesture is executed outside of the detection range.
- Wearing of gloves or jewelry.
- Smoking in the car's interior.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3911
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

General settings

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Time

Setting the time zone

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time zone:"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the time

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time:"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired hours are displayed.
7. Press the Controller.
8. Turn the Controller until the desired minutes are displayed.
9. "OK"

Setting the time format

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time format:"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Automatic time setting

Depending on your vehicle's optional features, the time, date and, if needed, the time zone are updated automatically.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Automatic time setting"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Date

Setting the date

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3912

5. "Date:"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired day is displayed.
7. Press the Controller.
8. Make the settings for the month and year.
9. "OK"

Setting the date format

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Date format:"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Language

Setting the language

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the units of measurement

Depending on the country version, you can set the units of measurement for some values, for instance consumption, distances, and temperature.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Units"
5. Select the desired menu item.
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Trip data settings

Concept

The intervals in which the trip data will be reset can be configured.

Resetting trip data

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Reset trip data"
5. Select the desired setting.

Speed warning

Concept

The system can be used to set a speed limit. A warning will be issued when this speed limit is exceeded.

General information

The warning is repeated if the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed limit again, after it has dropped below it by 3 mph/5 km/h.

Adjusting

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Warning at:"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3913
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

6. Turn the Controller until the desired speed is displayed.
7. Press the Controller.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Speed warning"

Setting your current speed as the speed warning

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Select current speed"

Activating/deactivating pop-ups

For some functions, pop-ups are displayed automatically on the Control Display. Some of these pop-ups can be activated or deactivated.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Pop-ups"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Control Display

Brightness

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Control display"
5. "Brightness at night"
6. Press the Controller.
7. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is set.
8. Press the Controller.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Depending on the light conditions, the brightness settings may not be clearly visible.

Resetting the vehicle configuration

All individual settings can be reset to the factory settings when the drive-ready state is switched off.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Reset vehicle data"
5. "Reset vehicle data"

When the stored settings in a driver profile are synchronized with the ConnectedDrive account, these settings will remain in the ConnectedDrive account.

Messages

Concept

The menu centrally displays all messages arriving in the vehicle in list form.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3914

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

General information

The following messages can be displayed:

- Traffic messages.
- Check Control messages.
- Messages on service notifications.
- Communication messages, for example e-mails, SMS text messages or reminders.
- Messages from, e.g., the Concierge service or the BMW Connected app.
- Messages from the vehicle manufacturer.

The number of messages is additionally displayed in the status field.

The Messages menu can also be created as Widget.

Retrieving messages

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Select the desired message.

Deleting messages

All messages, except Check Control messages or messages from the vehicle manufacturer, can be deleted from the list.

Check Control messages or messages from the vehicle manufacturer are displayed as long as they are relevant.

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Select desired message, for instance. SMS.
4.

Press the button.
5. - "Delete this notification"
   - "Delete all notifications"

Settings

The following settings can be adjusted:

- Select the applications, from which messages will be permitted.
- All messages or a limited time period for received messages.

1. Tip the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. Select the desired setting.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3915
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Personal settings

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Data protection

Data transfer

Concept

The vehicle offers different services, whose use requires a data transfer to BMW or a service provider. The data transfer can be deactivated for some services.

General information

When the data transfer is deactivated, the respective service cannot be used.

Only make these settings while stationary.

Settings

The data transfer can be configured in different stages or individually for separate services.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. Select the desired setting.

Deleting personal data in the vehicle

Concept

Depending on the usage, the vehicle stores personal data, such as stored radio stations. This personal data can be permanently deleted using iDrive.

General information

Depending on the equipment package, the following data can be deleted:

- Driver profile settings.
- Stored radio stations.
- Stored programmable memory buttons.
- Travel and trip computer information.
- Navigation, for instance stored destinations.
- Phone book.
- Online data, for instance Favorites, cookies.
- Office data, for instance voice memos.
- Login accounts.

Altogether, the deletion of the data can take up to 15 minutes.

Functional requirement

Data can only be deleted while stationary.

Deleting data

The personal data in the vehicle will be deleted when the vehicle is reset to the factory settings.

Additional information:

Resetting the vehicle configuration, refer to page 61.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3916
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Driver profiles

Concept

Driver profiles can be created to store personal vehicle settings. If the vehicle is used by multiple drivers, each driver can create his personal driver profile. When a driver profile is selected, the vehicle will automatically apply the stored settings in the driver profile.

General information

Three personal driver profiles can be created.

In addition, a guest profile is available that can be selected by any driver. The guest profile is active when a personal driver profile has not been selected.

Changes to the vehicle settings are automatically stored in the active driver profile or in the guest profile.

The recognition via a vehicle key can be assigned to a driver profile so that the vehicle will apply the settings as soon as the driver unlocks the vehicle. As soon as the vehicle recognizes the vehicle key, the corresponding driver profile will be activated.

ConnectedDrive countries: The settings stored in the driver's profile can be synchronized with the personal BMW ConnectedDrive account. It is thereby possible to use these settings in other BMW vehicles as well.

Functional requirements

When switching the driver profile, the vehicle must move at a maximum of walking speed.

Welcome screen

After the Control Display is switched on, the Welcome screen will be displayed.

The following actions can be carried out on the Welcome screen:

- Switching the driver profile.
- Starting the set-up assistant.

  This option is offered in new vehicle for a limited period of time.

As soon as the engine is started or any button is pressed, the Welcome screen will be hidden.

Setup assistant

The setup assistant is offered in new vehicles for a limited period of time on the Welcome screen to configure the most important settings for the vehicle.

"Getting started" Select to start the set-up assistant.

The set-up assistant can be started via iDrive at any time.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Getting started"

The driver is guided step by step through the following functions:

- Setting the system language.
- ConnectedDrive countries:

  If the set-up assistant was opened in the guest profile: create driver profile.
- Pairing mobile devices with the vehicle.
- If the set-up assistant was opened from an already defined driver profile: set up personal assistant.
- Depending on whether the set-up assistant was opened from an already defined driver profile or a guest profile: set up services or confirm the explanation for the transmission of vehicle related data.
- Set up other methods for use.

The selected settings are stored in the active driver's profile.

Guest profile

The guest profile can be activated by any driver. Vehicle settings that are entered when the guest profile is active will be stored in the guest profile.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3917
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

In the following cases the guest profile is automatically active:

- A driver profile has not been created yet.
- No driver profile has been assigned to the vehicle key that was used to unlock the vehicle.

The following limitations apply:

- The guest profile cannot be renamed.
- It is not possible to assign the recognition to the guest profile.
- It is not possible to assign a PIN to the guest profile.
- ConnectedDrive countries: It is not possible to synchronize with a ConnectedDrive account.

The guest profile is selected on the Welcome screen or via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"

   As an alternative for Steps 1 and 2, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
3. "Guest"
4. "OK"

Creating a driver profile

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Add driver profile"

Not ConnectedDrive countries: A name must be entered for the driver profile.

ConnectedDrive countries: An existing ConnectedDrive account must be assigned to a driver profile. The following options are available for this purpose:

- "Log in"

  The access data must be entered via iDrive.
- "New registration"

  If a ConnectedDrive account does not yet exist, it can be created via iDrive.

Selecting recognition

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Driver recognition"
5. "with vehicle key"

   The vehicle key that was used to unlock the vehicle is assigned to the driver profile.
6. "Activate linkage"

As soon as the vehicle recognizes the vehicle key, the corresponding driver profile will be activated.

Setting up a PIN

After unlocking the vehicle, another driver profile can be selected via iDrive. If a PIN was set up for the selected driver profile, this driver profile can only be activated with the PIN.

Non-ConnectedDrive countries: If the PIN is not known, the driver's profile cannot be activated.

ConnectedDrive countries: If the PIN is not known, the driver's profile can be activated with the access data of the corresponding ConnectedDrive account.

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Driver recognition"
5. "using PIN"

Changing/canceling the recognition function

If another vehicle key is assigned to a driver profile, the current assignment must be canceled first.

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Driver recognition"
5. "with vehicle key"
6. "Activate linkage"

When the vehicle and vehicle key will be handed over, such as for maintenance, carry out the following steps first:

- ▷ Setting up PIN.
- ▷ Canceling recognition using the vehicle key.
- ▷ Switching to the guest profile.

The handed over vehicle key can then no longer be used to access the personal driver profile.

Selecting a driver profile

Depending on the recognition setting, the driver profile will be selected automatically.

If the guest profile is active, the driver profile will be selected on the Welcome screen or via iDrive: A PIN may have to be entered.

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"

   As an alternative for Steps 1 and 2, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
3. Select driver profile.
4. "OK"

All settings stored in the selected driver profile are automatically applied.

Switching synchronization with the ConnectedDrive account on/off

ConnectedDrive countries:

The settings stored in the driver's profile are synchronized with the personal ConnectedDrive account. This means that it is possible to use the personal settings in other BMW vehicles with ConnectedDrive access as well, if this function is supported.

The synchronization with the ConnectedDrive account is enabled when a driver profile is created or via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Settings"
5. "Synchronize driver profile"
6. "Synchronize driver profile"

Renaming a driver profile

Non-ConnectedDrive countries:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"

   As an alternative for Steps 1 and 2, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
3. Select driver profile.
4. "Settings"
5. Enter a profile name.
6. OK Select the symbol.

ConnectedDrive countries:

The name of the driver profile is transferred from the ConnectedDrive account. Changes for the profile name must be made in the ConnectedDrive account.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3919
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Selecting a profile picture

Non-ConnectedDrive countries:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Avatar"
5. Select the desired profile picture.

Deleting the driver profile

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Move the Controller to the right.

   As an alternative for Steps 1 to 3, the profile image can be tapped in the top status bar.
4. "Settings"
5. "Remove driver profile"
6. Select the desired driver profile.
7. "Delete now"

ConnectedDrive countries: If the driver profile was synchronized with a ConnectedDrive account, the stored data in the ConnectedDrive account will be retained.

System limits

A clear detection of the desired vehicle key may not be possible in the following cases, e.g.:

- The driver unlocks the vehicle via Comfort Access.
- The driver changes, but the vehicle is not locked and unlocked.
- When multiple vehicle keys are located outside on the driver's side of the vehicle.

ConnectedDrive countries:

A driver profile can only be created and synchronized with the ConnectedDrive account when cellular network reception is available.

The use of personal settings that are stored in the ConnectedDrive account in other vehicles is subject to technical limitations. For example, settings may be stored for a system that is not available, or available in a non-compatible version, in other vehicles.

Connections

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle

Concept

Various connection types are available for using mobile devices in the vehicle. The connection type to select depends on the mobile device and the desired function.

General information

The following overview shows possible functions and the suitable connection types for them. The scope of functions depends on the mobile device.

Function	Connection type	Symbol in the device list
Making calls via the hands-free system. Using phone functions via iDrive or touchscreen. Other functions, e.g. Contacts or SMS.	Bluetooth.	
Playing music from the smartphone or the audio player.	Bluetooth audio.	
WLAN in the vehicle: Using apps in the vehicle.	WLAN.	
Wi-Fi hotspot: Using the vehicle Internet access.	WLAN.	
Screen Mirroring: Showing the smartphone display on the Control Display.	WLAN.	
USB port: Playing music or videos from a USB device.	USB.	

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3921
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Function	Connection type	Symbol in the device list
Apple CarPlay: Using apps via iDrive and via voice operation.	Bluetooth and WLAN.	
Android Auto: Using apps via iDrive and via voice operation.	Bluetooth and WLAN.	

The following connection types require one-time pairing with the vehicle:

- Bluetooth.
- WLAN.

Paired devices are automatically recognized later on and connected to the vehicle.

Safety information

Warning

Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. As warranted, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.

Compatible devices

General information

Information on mobile devices compatible with the vehicle can be found at www.bmwusa.com/bluetooth.

Malfunctions may occur with devices not listed or deviating software versions.

Displaying the vehicle identification number and software part number

When looking for compatible devices, you may have to state the vehicle identification number and the software part number. These numbers can be displayed in the vehicle.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth® info"
6. "System information"

Managing mobile devices

General information

- After one-time pairing, the devices are automatically recognized and reconnected when standby state is switched on.
- After stored content on the SIM card or the mobile phone, such as contacts, has been detected, the data is transmitted to the vehicle and can be used via iDrive.
- For some devices, certain settings are necessary, for instance authorization; see the owner's manual of the device.

Displaying the device list

All devices paired with or connected to the vehicle are displayed in the device list.

A maximum of four devices can be connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth, and a maximum of ten devices can be connected to the vehicle via WLAN. A maximum of 20 devices will be detected.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"

A symbol to the right of the device name indicates, for which function the device is used.

When the icon is displayed in white, this function is actively connected to the vehicle. The icon is displayed in gray when the function of the device is inactive.

Symbol	Meaning
	Telephone.
	Bluetooth audio.
	WLAN in the vehicle, WiFi hotspot.
	Apps.
	Screen Mirroring.
	Apple CarPlay.
	Android Auto.

Configuring the device

Functions can be activated or deactivated for paired and connected devices.

The scope of functions depends on the mobile device.

Follow the information on the Control Display.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Select the desired device.
4. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Connect device"

     The functions that were assigned to the device before disconnecting are assigned to the device when it is reconnected. The functions may be deactivated on a device already connected.
   - ▷ "Disconnect device"

     The device remains paired and can be connected again.
   - ▷ "Delete device"

     The device is disconnected and removed from the device list.
   - ▷ "Connection mode"

     Select a connection mode, for instance Apple CarPlay.
   - ▷ "Telephone"

     Set telephone.
   - ▷ "Bluetooth® audio"

     Playback of music files on external devices such as audio devices or mobile phones via Bluetooth.
   - ▷ "Apps"

     With the installed BMW Connected app, apps from the smartphone can be displayed in the vehicle.
   - ▷ "Wi-Fi®"

     Connects the device with the WLAN in the vehicle.

Priority of the phones

When multiple mobile phones are connected to the vehicle, you can specify the priority of the mobile phones for reconnection.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Priorities for telephones"
6. Select the desired device.
7. Select the desired priority by sliding.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3923
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Bluetooth connection

Functional requirements

- Compatible device with Bluetooth interface.

  Compatible devices, refer to page 69.
- The vehicle key or BMW display key is in the vehicle.
- The device is ready for operation.
- Bluetooth is switched on in the vehicle and on the device.
- The pairing readiness is displayed on the Control Display.
- Bluetooth presettings, such as visibility, may be required on the device; refer to the owner's manual of the device.

Activate Bluetooth

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth®"
6. Select setting.

Connecting the device

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Phone calls and audio"

   The vehicle's Bluetooth name is displayed on the Control Display.
6. Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number on the display of the mobile device, and confirm that the two match.
7. A Bluetooth connection is established.

The mobile device is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Activating/deactivating telephone functions

To use all supported functions of a mobile phone, activate the desired functions in the vehicle prior to pairing the mobile phone with the vehicle as needed.

1. "COM"
2. "Personalize menu"
3. Select the desired settings, for instance"Text messages".

Frequently Asked Questions

All requirements are met and all required steps were completed in the specified order. Despite that, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations can help:

Why could the mobile phone not be paired or connected?

- There are too many Bluetooth devices connected to the mobile phone or vehicle.

  In the vehicle, delete Bluetooth connections with other devices.

  Delete the Bluetooth connection from the device list on the mobile phone and start a new device search.

  Too many Bluetooth devices with the same function are paired.
- The mobile phone is in power-save mode or has only a limited remaining battery life.

  Charge the mobile phone and deactivate the power-save mode where required.

Why does the mobile phone no longer react?

- The applications on the mobile phone do not function anymore.

  Switch the mobile phone off and on again.
- Too high or too low ambient temperature for mobile phone operation.

  Do not subject the mobile phone to extreme ambient temperatures.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3924

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Why can phone functions not be used via iDrive?

- Phone functions are not configured for the mobile phone.

  Connect the mobile phone with the telephone function.

Why are no or not all phone book entries displayed or why are they incomplete?

- Transmission of the phone book entries is not yet complete.
- It is possible that only the phone book entries of the mobile phone or the SIM card are transmitted.
- It may not be possible to display phone book entries with special characters.
- It may not be possible to transmit contacts from social networks.
- The number of phone book entries to be transmitted is too high.
- Data volume of the contact too large, for instance due to stored information such as notes.

  Reduce the data volume of the contact.
- A mobile phone can only be connected as audio source or as telephone.

  Configure the mobile phone and connect it with the telephone function.
- Contact was created in the contact list of the phone after the last synchronization.

  Synchronize contacts again: "Reload contacts"

How can the phone connection quality be improved?

- Adjust the strength of the Bluetooth signal on the mobile phone, depending on the mobile phone.
- Insert the mobile phone into the wireless charging tray.
- Adjust the volume of the microphone separately in the sound settings.

If all points in this list have been checked and the required function is still not available, contact the hotline, a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

WLAN connection

General information

For certain applications, such as apps, the data exchange between smartphone and vehicle occurs via WLAN.

Functional requirements

- Standby state is switched on.
- Compatible device with activated WLAN interface.

Activate WLAN in the vehicle

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Wi-Fi®"

WiFi hotspot

Concept

Compatible devices with WLAN interface can use the Internet connection of the vehicle via the WiFi hotspot.

General information

Up to ten devices can be connected to the WiFi hotspot simultaneously.

Functional requirements

- Compatible device with activated WLAN interface.

  Compatible devices, refer to page 69.
- WLAN is activated on the vehicle.
- Internet use is activated for the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3925
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

- ▷ Registration and data contract with a service provider where required.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.

Connecting a device to the Internet via the WiFi hotspot

Using the Internet for the first time via the WiFi hotspot requires registration and possibly a data volume purchase from a service provider.

Depending on the country version, data volume can be purchased via the connected mobile device or from the ConnectedDrive Store.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Internet, apps"

   Hotspot name and hotspot code are displayed on the Control Display.
6. Activate Internet usage via WLAN if necessary.

   "Open settings"
7. Activate Internet usage.

   "Internet connection"
8. Move the Controller to the left.
9. Search for WLAN networks on the mobile device. Select network name on the device.
10. Enter hotspot code on the device and connect.

The device is displayed in the device list.

Additionally, a QR code will be displayed on the Control Display. Alternatively, this QR code can be used to pair the mobile device with the hotspot.

All devices connected via the hotspot use this data volume.

Deactivating Internet usage via the WiFi hotspot

Internet usage may be deactivated if the data volume is used up, for instance.

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Internet connection"
6. Select the desired setting.

Screen Mirroring

General information

Screen Mirroring enables mirroring (outputting) of the smartphone display on the Control Display.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Compatible smartphone with Screen Mirroring interface.

  Compatible devices, refer to page 69.
- ▷ Screen Mirroring is activated on the smartphone.
- ▷ WLAN is activated on the vehicle.

Pairing a smartphone with Screen Mirroring

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Screen Mirroring"

   The WLAN name of the vehicle is displayed on the Control Display.
6. Search for WLAN devices in the surroundings of the smartphone.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3926

The WLAN name of the vehicle appears on the device display. Select the WLAN name of the vehicle.

7. Confirm the connection via iDrive.

The device is connected and displayed in the device list.

Apple CarPlay preparation

Concept

CarPlay allows certain functions of a compatible Apple iPhone to be used via Siri voice operation and iDrive.

Functional requirements

- Compatible iPhone, iPhone 5 or later with iOS 7.1 or later.

  Compatible devices, refer to page 69.
- Corresponding mobile contract.
- Bluetooth, WLAN, and Siri voice operation are activated on the iPhone.
- If necessary, the setting for mobile data must be activated on the iPhone.
- Booking the ConnectedDrive service: smartphone integration.
- WLAN and Bluetooth are enabled in the vehicle.

Pairing the iPhone with CarPlay

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Phone calls and audio"

   The vehicle's Bluetooth name is displayed on the Control Display.
6. On the mobile device, search for Bluetooth devices in the vicinity and select the vehicle.

   A control number is displayed.
7. Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number on the display of the mobile device, and confirm that the two match.
8. "Use Apple CarPlay"

The iPhone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Operation

For more information, refer to the Integrated Owner's Manual or the Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication.

Frequently Asked Questions

All requirements are met and all required steps were completed in the specified order. Despite that, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations can help:

The iPhone has already been paired with Apple CarPlay. When a new connection is established, CarPlay can no longer be selected.

- Delete the iPhone concerned from the device list.
- On the iPhone, delete the vehicle concerned from the list of stored connections under Bluetooth and under WLAN.
- Pair the iPhone as a new device.

If the steps listed have been carried out and the required function is still not available: contact the hotline, a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Android Auto preparation

Concept

Android Auto allows the operation of certain functions of a compatible smartphone via voice operation and iDrive.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3927
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Functional requirements

- Compatible Android smartphone with Android 9.0 or later.

  Compatible devices, refer to page 69.
- Corresponding mobile contract.
- Bluetooth and WLAN are enabled on the smartphone.
- If necessary, the setting for mobile data must be activated on the smartphone.
- Booking the ConnectedDrive service: smartphone integration.
- The Android Auto app is installed on the smartphone.
- WLAN and Bluetooth are enabled in the vehicle.

Pairing a smartphone with Android Auto

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Phone calls and audio"

   The vehicle's Bluetooth name is displayed on the Control Display.
6. On the mobile device, search for Bluetooth devices in the vicinity and select the vehicle.

   A control number is displayed.
7. Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number on the display of the mobile device, and confirm that the two match.
8. "Use Android Auto"
9. If necessary, finish the setup on the mobile device.

The smartphone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Operation

For more information, refer to the Integrated Owner's Manual or the Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication.

Frequently Asked Questions

All requirements are met and all required steps were completed in the specified order. Despite that, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations can help:

The smartphone has already been paired with Android Auto. When a new connection is established, Android Auto can no longer be selected.

- Delete the smartphone concerned from the device list.
- On the smartphone, delete the vehicle concerned from the list of stored connections under Bluetooth and under WLAN.
- Pair the smartphone as a new device.

If the steps listed have been carried out and the required function is still not available: contact the hotline, a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

USB connection

General information

The following mobile devices can be connected to the USB port:

- Mobile phones.
- Audio devices such as MP3 players.
- USB storage devices.

  Common file systems are supported. FAT32 and exFAT are the recommended formats.

A connected USB device will be supplied with charge current via the USB port if the device supports this. Follow the maximum charge current of the USB port.

The following uses are possible on USB ports with data transfer:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3928
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

- Playing music files.
- Playing videos.

Follow the following when connecting:

- Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB port.
- Use a flexible adapter cable.
- Protect the USB device against mechanical damage.
- Due to the large number of USB devices available on the market, it cannot be guaranteed that every device is operable on the vehicle.
- Do not expose USB devices to extreme environmental conditions, such as very high temperatures; refer to the owner's manual of the device.
- Due to the many different compression techniques, proper playback of the media stored on the USB device cannot be guaranteed in all cases.
- To ensure proper transmission of the stored data, do not charge a USB device via the onboard socket, when it is connected to the USB port.
- Depending on how the USB device is being used, settings may be required on the USB storage device, refer to the owner's manual of the device.

Not compatible USB devices:

- USB hard drives.
- USB hubs.
- USB memory card readers with multiple slots.
- HFS-formatted USB devices.
- Devices such as fans or lamps.

Functional requirement

Compatible device with USB port.

Additional information:

Compatible devices, refer to page 69.

Connecting the device

Connect the USB device using a suitable adapter cable to a USB port.

The USB device is displayed in the device list.

Additional information:

USB port, refer to page 248.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3929
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Opening and closing

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Vehicle key

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the vehicle is delivered with two vehicle keys or one vehicle key and the BMW display key.

Each vehicle key contains a replaceable battery.

Depending on the equipment and country version, various settings can be configured for the button functions.

A driver profile with personal settings can be assigned to a vehicle key.

To provide information on maintenance recommendations, the service data is stored in the vehicle key.

To prevent possible locking in of the vehicle key, take the vehicle key with you when exiting the vehicle.

Safety information

Warning

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Take the vehicle key with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.

Warning

For some country versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

Warning

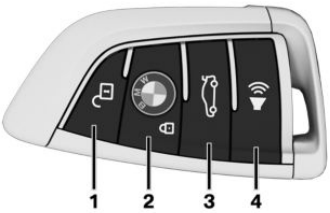
Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3930

Overview



1 Unlocking
2 Locking
3 To open the tailgate
4 Panic mode, pathway lighting

Unlocking

General information

The behavior of the vehicle during unlocking using the vehicle key depends on the following settings:

- If only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap or all access to the vehicle will be unlocked.
- If the unlocking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- If the welcome light is switched on when the vehicle is being unlocked.

Unlocking the vehicle

Press the button on the vehicle key.

If, due to the settings, only the driver's door and fuel filler flap were unlocked, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

In addition, the following functions are executed:

- If a driver profile was assigned to the vehicle key, this driver profile will be activated and the settings that are stored in it will be applied.
- The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off.
- Folded in exterior mirrors are folded out.

  If the exterior mirrors were folded in via the button in the car's interior, they will not be folded out when unlocking.
- With alarm system: The alarm system will be switched off.

After opening one of the front doors, the vehicle is ready for operation.

The light functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

Convenient opening

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key after unlocking.

The windows and the glass sunroof with sun protection are opened, as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Locking

General information

The behavior of the vehicle during locking using the vehicle key depends on the following settings:

- If the locking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- If the exterior mirrors are automatically folded in when the vehicle is locked. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.
- If pathway lighting is activated during locking.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Press the button on the vehicle key.

The following functions are executed:

- All doors, the tailgate, and the fuel filler flap are locked.
- With alarm system: The alarm system will be switched on.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3931
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

If the drive-ready state is still switched on when you lock the vehicle, the vehicle horn honks twice. In this case, the drive-ready state must be switched off by means of the Start/Stop button.

With Comfort Access: convenient closing

Safety information

Warning

With convenient closing, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during convenient closing.

Closing

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key in the area close to the vehicle after locking.

The windows and the glass sunroof with sun protection are closed, as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Switching on the interior and exterior lights

Press the button on the vehicle key with the vehicle locked.

The function is not available for the first 10 seconds after locking.

- The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off.

  Interior lights, refer to page 158.
- Depending on the settings, the exterior lighting will be switched on.

  Welcome lights, refer to page 155.

The light functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

Tailgate

General information

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

You can set up if the doors will be unlocked when the tailgate is opened with the vehicle key.

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

Warning

The tailgate pivots out when it opens. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

NOTICE

Sharp-edged or pointed objects can hit the windows and heat conductors while driving. There is a risk of damage to property. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects do not hit the windows.

Opening

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

- Press the button on the vehicle key and hold for at least 3 seconds.

▷ Briefly press the button on the vehicle key three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Switching pathway lighting on

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

It is possible to adjust the duration of the pathway lighting feature.

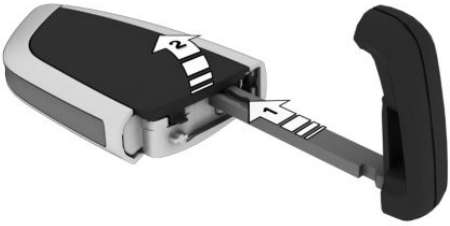
Additional information:

Pathway lighting, refer to page 156.

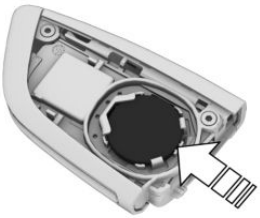
Replacing the battery

1. Remove the integrated key from the vehicle key.

   Integrated key, refer to page 86.
2. Place the integrated key underneath the battery compartment cover, arrow 1, and lift the cover with a lever movement of the integrated key, arrow 2.



3. Push battery in the direction of the arrow using a pointed object and lift it out.



4. Insert a type CR 2032 battery with the positive side facing up.
5. Press the cover closed.
6. Push the integrated key into the vehicle key until the integrated key engages.

Have old batteries disposed of by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take them to a collection point.

Additional vehicle keys

Additional vehicle keys are available from a service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Loss of vehicle keys

A lost vehicle key can be blocked and replaced by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

If the lost vehicle key has an assigned driver profile, the connection to this vehicle key must be deleted. A new vehicle key can then be assigned to the driver profile.

Malfunction

General information

A Check Control message is displayed.

Vehicle key recognition by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

▷ The battery of the vehicle key is discharged.

▷ Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.

▷ Shielding of the vehicle key due to metal objects.

  Do not transport the vehicle key together with metal objects.

▷ Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity to the vehicle key.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3933
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Do not transport the vehicle key together with electronic devices.

- Interference of radio transmission by a charging process of mobile devices, for instance charging of a mobile phone.
- The vehicle key is located in direct proximity of the tray for wireless charging tray.

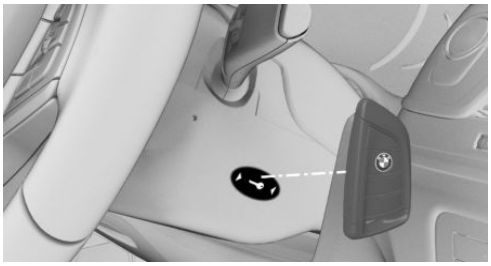
  Place the vehicle key in a different location.

In the case of interference, the vehicle can also be unlocked and locked from the outside with the integrated key.

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 86.

Switching the drive-ready state on via emergency detection of the vehicle key



It is not possible to switch on the drive-ready state if the vehicle key has not been detected.

Proceed as follows in this case:

1. Hold the back of the vehicle key against the marked area on the steering column. Pay attention to the display in the instrument cluster.
2. If the vehicle key is detected:

   Switch on drive-ready state within 10 seconds.

If the vehicle key is not recognized, slightly change the position of the vehicle key and repeat the procedure.

Frequently Asked Questions

What precautions can be taken to be able to open a vehicle with an accidentally locked in vehicle key?

- The options provided by the Remote Services of the BMW Connected app include the ability to lock and unlock a vehicle.

  This requires an active BMW ConnectedDrive contract and the BMW Connected app must be installed on a smartphone.
- Unlocking the vehicle can be requested via the BMW ConnectedDrive Call Center.

  An active BMW ConnectedDrive contract is required.

BMW display key

General information

The BMW display key is supplied with an additional mechanical key. If the display key is used, the mechanical key should be carried with you, for instance in the wallet. The mechanical key is used like the integrated key.

The display key supports all functions of the standard vehicle key.

In addition, the following functions are also available:

- Display status of doors and windows.
- Display status of the anti-theft warning system.
- Display service information.
- Call up range with available fuel.
- With parked-car heating: operate parked-car heating.

  Without parked-car heating: operate parked-car ventilation.

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 86.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3934

Safety information

Warning

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Take the vehicle key with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.

Warning

For some country versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

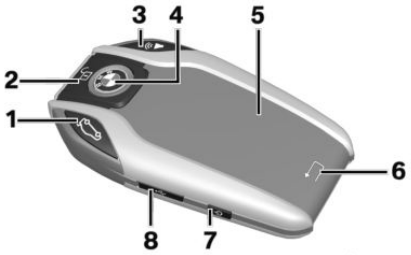
Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Overview



1 To open the tailgate
2 Unlocking
3 Press and hold or press three times in quick succession: panic mode

Press briefly: pathway lighting

4 Locking
5 Display
6 Back
7 Switch the display on/off
8 Micro-USB charging socket

Reception range

The number of available display key functions depends on the distance from the vehicle.

- When you are in close proximity to the vehicle, all functions of the display key are available.
- The status information can be called up in the extended reception range.

  With parked-car heating: the parked-car heating can be operated.

  Without parked-car heating: the parked-car ventilation can be operated.
- Outside of the reception range of the vehicle, you can display the last transmitted status information from the vehicle.

The symbol is shown on the display if one of the buttons is pressed outside of the reception range.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3935
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Display

General information

The display is divided into the upper status line, the information area, and the lower status line.

Upper status line

The upper status line displays the following information:

- / Vehicle secured/vehicle unsecured.
- Set time in the vehicle.
- Charge state of the display key battery.

Information area

The information area can be used to access information and perform additional functions.

If the information area contains more than one page, then page indicators are shown beneath the information.

○●○ A solid indicator denotes the current page.

Swipe to the right or left with a finger to change between the pages.

If further information is available on a page, tap the appropriate symbol.

To return to the original page: tap on the symbol beneath the display.

Lower status line

The lower status line indicates whether or not the display key is within reception range.

- "Connected": the display key is within reception range.
- "Updated": the display key is not within reception range. It indicates when the last data transfer from the vehicle took place.

Switching on/off

The display will go out automatically after a brief period to conserve battery power.

To hide the display manually:

Press the button on the left side of the display key.

To show the display:

1. Press the button on the left side of the display key.
2. Then, swipe with your finger from bottom to top to unlock the screen lock.

To switch off the display to increase the usable battery life:

1. If necessary, cancel the screen lock.
2. Press and hold the button on the left side of the display key for longer than 4 seconds.
3. "OK"

To switch the display on:

Press the button on the left side of the display key.

Operating concept

The following information shows how to access the information and functions using the main menus.

Main menu	Information/Function
"Security information"	/ Door status. Alarm system status. After alarm triggering: date, time, and reason for triggering the alarm.
	 Window status. Glass sunroof status.
"Vehicle information"	Maintenance indicators of Condition Based Service CBS. Status of the roadside parking lights.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3936

Main menu	Information/Function
"Mobility info"	Range with available fuel.
"Preconditioning setting"	With parked-car heating: operate parked-car heating. Without parked-car heating: operate parked-car ventilation.

Display key battery

General information

Follow the following information:

- If the charge state of the display key battery declines, the display is switched off automatically. The battery must be recharged so that the display can be switched back on. The operability of the standard buttons is retained until the battery is completely discharged.
- Charge the battery for at least three hours before using the display key for the first time or if the key has not been used for an extended period.
- The display key can be used while it is being charged via the USB port. If the battery is fully discharged, it may take some time before the display key can be used again.
- Due to the large number of USB chargers available on the market, it cannot be guaranteed that every charger will function properly. The charging duration depends on the charger used.
- Charging via the USB port may heat up the charger and the display key.

  Charging in the wireless charging tray may heat up the tray and the display key.

  At higher temperatures, the charge current through the display key may be reduced, and in isolated cases the charge process may be interrupted temporarily.
- When inserting the display key into the wireless charging tray, make sure there are no objects between it and the wireless charging tray.

Safety information

Warning

When charging a device that meets the Qi standard in the wireless charging tray, any metal objects located between the device and the tray can become very hot. Placing storage devices or electronic cards, such as chip cards, cards with magnetic strips or cards for signal transmission, between the device and the tray may impair the card function. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. When charging mobile devices, make sure there are no objects between the device and the tray.

Charging

Via USB

Connect the display key via the micro-USB charging socket to a USB port.

In the center console

1. Open the tray cover.
2. Place the display key into the middle of the wireless charging tray in front of the cup holders.

   Ensure that the display is facing up.
3. Close the tray cover.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3937
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

LED displays

Color	Meaning
Blue	The display key is charging. The blue LED stays illuminated once the inserted display key is fully charged.
Orange	The display key is not charging. Temperature on the display key possibly too high or foreign object in charging tray.
Red	The display key is not charging. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Malfunction

General information

A Check Control message is displayed.

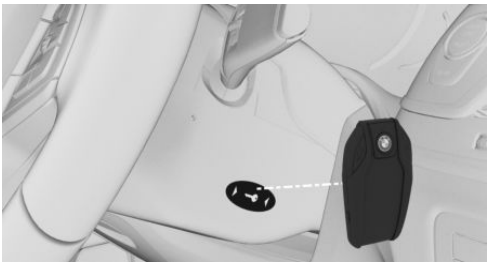
BMW display key detection by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- The battery of the display key is discharged.
- Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- Shielding of the display key due to metal objects.
- Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity.
- Interference of radio transmission by a charging process of mobile devices, for instance charging of a mobile phone.

Do not transport the display key together with metal objects or electronic devices.

In the case of interference, the vehicle can also be unlocked and locked from the outside with the mechanical key.

Switching on drive-ready state via emergency detection of the BMW display key



It is not possible to switch on the drive-ready state if the display key has not been detected.

Proceed as follows in this case:

1. Hold the display key with its back against the marked area on the steering column. Pay attention to the display in the instrument cluster.
2. If the display key is detected:

   Switch on drive-ready state within 10 seconds.

If the display key is not detected, slightly change the position of the display key and repeat the procedure.

Resetting the BMW display key

If the charged display key cannot be switched on anymore or if the display does not respond to entries anymore, the display key can be reset.

Press and hold the following buttons on the display key at the same time for at least 10 seconds until the display is switched off and then on again:

-
-

Integrated key

General information

The driver's door can be locked and unlocked without the vehicle key using the integrated key.

Depending on the national-market version, the integrated key also fits the glove compartment.

Safety information

Warning

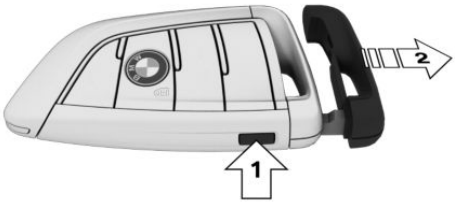
For some country versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

NOTICE

The door lock is permanently joined with the door. The door handle can be moved. When pulling the door handle with the integrated key inserted, paint or the integrated key can be damaged. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Remove the integrated key before pulling the external door handle.

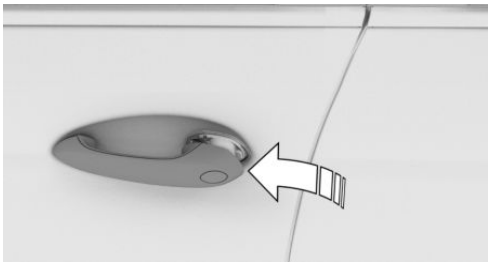
Removing



Press the button, arrow 1, and pull out the integrated key, arrow 2.

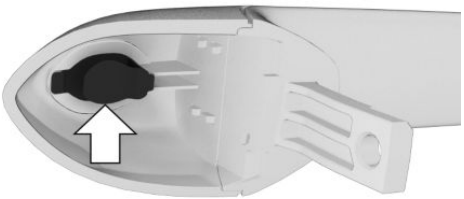
Locking/unlocking via the door lock

1. Pull and hold the door handle outward with one hand.



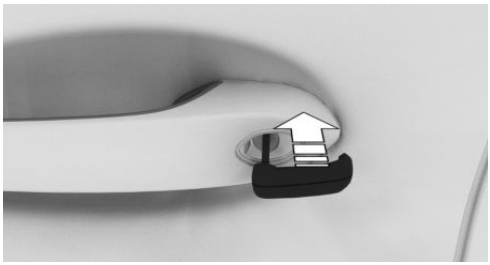
2. Guide one finger of your other hand from the back under the cover and push the cover out.

   Use the thumb for counter support to prevent the cover from falling out of the door handle.



BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3939
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

3. Remove the cover.
4. Unlock or lock the door lock using the integrated key.



The other doors must be unlocked or locked from the inside.

Alarm system

The activated alarm system is triggered when the door is opened, if the vehicle has been unlocked via the door lock.

The alarm system is not switched on if the vehicle is locked with the integrated key.

Buttons for the central locking system

General information

In the event of a severe accident, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The hazard warning system and interior lights come on.

Overview

Buttons for the central locking system.

Locking

Press the button with the front doors closed.

- The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.
- The vehicle is not secured against theft when locking.

Unlocking

Press the button.

Opening

- Press the button to unlock all the doors.

  Pull the door opener above the armrest.
- Front doors: pull the door handle on the door to open the door. The other doors remain locked.
- Back doors: pull twice on the door handle on the door to be opened; the first time unlocks the door, the second time opens it. The other doors remain locked.

Comfort Access

Concept

The vehicle can be accessed without operating the vehicle key.

Carrying the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket, is sufficient.

The vehicle automatically detects the vehicle key when it is in close proximity or in the car's interior.

General information

Comfort Access supports the following functions:

- Unlocking and locking the vehicle from the door handle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3940
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

- Convenient closing.
- Open the tailgate.
- Open and close the tailgate with no-touch activation.

Functional requirements

- To lock the vehicle, the vehicle key must be outside of the vehicle near the doors.
- The next unlocking and locking cycle is not possible until after approx. 2 seconds.

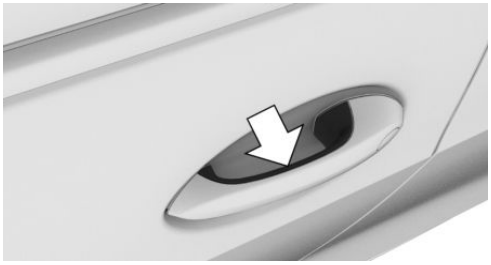
Unlocking

General information

The behavior of the vehicle during unlocking via the Comfort Access depends on the following settings:

- If the unlocking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- If the welcome light is switched on when the vehicle is being unlocked.

Unlocking the vehicle



Grasp the handle of a vehicle door completely.

In addition, the following functions are executed:

- If a driver profile was assigned to the vehicle key, this driver profile will be activated and the settings that are stored in it will be applied.
- The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off.
- Folded in exterior mirrors are folded out.

  If the exterior mirrors were folded in via the button in the car's interior, they will not be folded out when unlocking.
- With alarm system: The alarm system will be switched off.

Locking

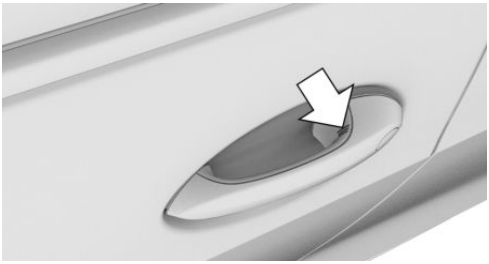
General information

The behavior of the vehicle during locking via the Comfort Access depends on the following settings:

- If the locking of the vehicle is confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- If the exterior mirrors are automatically folded in when the vehicle is locked. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.
- If pathway lighting is activated during locking.

Locking the vehicle

Close the driver's door.



Touch the grooved surface on the handle of a closed vehicle door with your finger for approx. 1 second without grasping the door handle.

The following functions are executed:

- All doors, the tailgate, and the fuel filler flap are locked.
- With alarm system: The alarm system will be switched on.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3941
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

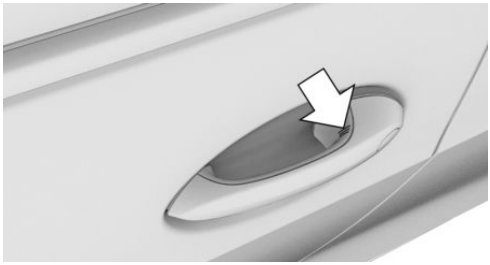
Convenient closing

Safety information

Warning

With convenient closing, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during convenient closing.

Closing



Touch the grooved surface on the handle of a closed vehicle door with your finger and hold it there without grasping the door handle.

In addition to locking, the windows and glass sunroof with sun protection will be closed.

Opening the tailgate

General information

If the tailgate is opened via Comfort Access, locked doors are not unlocked.

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

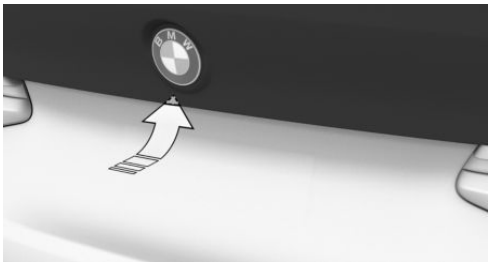
Warning

The tailgate pivots out when it opens. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

NOTICE

Sharp-edged or pointed objects can hit the windows and heat conductors while driving. There is a risk of damage to property. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects do not hit the windows.

Opening



Press the button on tailgate's exterior.

Opening and closing the tailgate with no-touch activation

Concept

The tailgate can be opened and closed with no-touch activation using the vehicle key you are

carrying. Two sensors detect a forward-directed foot motion in the central rear area and the tailgate is opened and closed.

General information

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

If the vehicle key is in the sensor area, the tailgate may open or close inadvertently if you unintentionally move your foot or if a foot movement is detected.

The sensor has an approximate range of 5 ft/1.50 m extending from the rear of the vehicle.

If the tailgate is opened with no-touch activation, locked doors are not unlocked.

Safety information

Warning

During no-touch activation, vehicle parts may be touched, such as the hot exhaust gas system. There is a risk of injury. When moving your foot, make sure you have a firm stance and do not touch the vehicle.

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

Warning

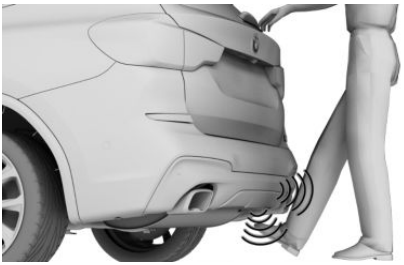
The tailgate pivots out when it opens. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

NOTICE

Sharp-edged or pointed objects can hit the windows and heat conductors while driving. There is a risk of damage to property. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects do not hit the windows.

Performing the foot movement

1. Stand in the middle behind the vehicle at approx. one arm's length away from the rear of the vehicle.
2. Wave a foot under the vehicle in the direction of travel and immediately pull it back. With this movement, the leg must pass through the ranges of both sensors.



Opening

Perform the foot movement described earlier.

Before the tailgate opens, the hazard warning system flashes.

Moving your foot again will stop the opening motion, and moving it one more time after that will close the tailgate.

Closing

Perform the foot movement described earlier.

The hazard warning system flashes and an acoustic signal sounds.

Moving your foot again will stop the closing motion, and moving it one more time after that will re-open the tailgate.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3943
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Malfunction

Vehicle key recognition by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- The battery of the vehicle key is discharged.

  For replacing the battery, refer to page 80.
- Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- Shielding of the vehicle key due to metal objects.

  Do not transport the vehicle key together with metal objects.
- Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity to the vehicle key.

  Do not transport the vehicle key together with electronic devices.

Wet or snowy conditions may disrupt the locking request recognition function on the door handles.

In the case of a malfunction, unlock and lock the vehicle using the buttons of the vehicle key or use the integrated key.

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 86.

Tailgate

General information

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country versions, it is possible to specify whether the doors are also unlocked when unlocking using the vehicle key.

Additional information:

Settings, refer to page 93.

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

Warning

The tailgate pivots out when it opens. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

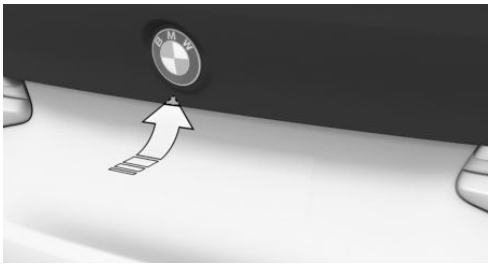
NOTICE

Sharp-edged or pointed objects can hit the windows and heat conductors while driving. There is a risk of damage to property. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects do not hit the windows.

Tailgate

Opening

From the outside



- Unlock the vehicle and then press the button on the outside of the tailgate.
- With Comfort Access: carry the vehicle key with you and press the button on the outside of the tailgate.

▷ Press the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

Depending on the setting, the doors may also be unlocked.

If the vehicle is stationary, the tailgate opens automatically to the adjusted opening height.

From the inside

Press the button in the driver's door downward.

If the vehicle is locked, selector lever position P must be engaged first.

The tailgate will be opened to the configured opening height.

Interruption of the opening procedure

The opening procedure is interrupted in the following situations:

- ▷ When the vehicle starts moving.
- ▷ By pressing the button on the outside of the tailgate. Pressing again closes the tailgate.
- ▷ By pressing the button on the inside of the tailgate. Pressing again closes the tailgate.
- ▷ By pressing the button on the vehicle key. Pressing again continues the opening motion.
- ▷ By pressing or pulling the button in the driver's door. Pressing again continues the opening motion.

Closing

From the outside

▷ Press the button on the inside of the tailgate.

With Comfort Access:

▷ Press the button on the inside of the tailgate.

The vehicle will be locked after closing the tailgate. The driver's door must be closed for this purpose and the vehicle key must be outside of the vehicle in the area of the tailgate.

From the inside

Pull and hold the button in the driver door.

The vehicle key must be located in the car's interior for this function.

An acoustic signal sounds before the tailgate is closed.

Interruption of the closing procedure

The closing procedure is interrupted in the following situations:

- ▷ If the vehicle starts off with a jerky movement.
- ▷ By pressing the button on the outside of the tailgate. Pressing again re-opens the tailgate.
- ▷ By pressing the button on the inside of the tailgate. Pressing again re-opens the tailgate.
- ▷ By releasing the button in the driver's door. Pulling again and holding continues the closing motion.

Malfunction

Safety information

⚠ Warning

With manual operation of a blocked tailgate, it can release itself unexpectedly from the blockage. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not operate the tailgate manually if it is blocked. Have it checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

In the event of an electrical malfunction, operate the unlocked tailgate manually with a slow and smooth motion.

To close the tailgate fully, press down lightly only. Closing occurs automatically.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3945
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Adjusting

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country version, various settings for opening and closing are possible.

These settings are stored for the driver profile currently used.

Unlocking and locking

Doors

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Key button settings"
4. Select the symbol.
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "Driver's door only"

     Only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.
   - "All doors"

     The entire vehicle is unlocked.

Confirmation signals from the vehicle

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. Deactivate or activate the desired confirmation signals:
   - "Flash when locking/unlocking"

     Unlocking is signaled by two flashes, locking by one.
   - With alarm system:

     "Sound when locking/unlocking"

     Unlocking is confirmed with two sound signals, locking is confirmed with one sound signal.

Folding mirrors in automatically

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Fold mirrors in when locked"

Automatic unlocking

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Unlock at end of trip"

   After drive-ready state is switched off by pressing the Start/Stop button, the locked vehicle is automatically unlocked.

Automatic locking

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. Select the desired setting:
   - "Lock automatically"

     The vehicle locks automatically after a while if no door is opened after unlocking.
   - "Lock after starting to drive"

     The vehicle locks automatically after you drive off.

Tailgate

Tailgate and doors

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country version, this setting may not be offered.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Key button settings"
4. Select the symbol.
   - "Tailgate"

     The tailgate is opened.
   - "Tailgate and door(s)"

The tailgate is opened and the doors unlocked.

Adjusting the opening height

You can set how far the tailgate can be opened.

When adjusting the opening height, make sure the clearance above the tailgate is at least 4 in/10 cm.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Tailgate"
5. "Opening height"
6. Monitor the tailgate and set the desired opening height.

Establishing idle state after opening the front doors

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/ vehicle access"
4. "Turn off vehicle after opening door"

Idle state, refer to page 39.

Alarm system

General information

When the vehicle is locked, the vehicle alarm system reacts to the following changes:

- Opening a door, the hood, or the tailgate.
- Movements in the car's interior.
- Changes in the vehicle tilt, for instance, during attempts at stealing a wheel or when towing the vehicle.
- Disconnected battery voltage.
- Improper use of the socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis.
- Locking the vehicle while a device is connected to the socket for the OBD Onboard-Diagnosis.

The alarm system signals these changes visually and acoustically:

- Acoustic alarm:

  Depending on local regulations, the acoustic alarm may be suppressed.
- Visual alarm:

  By flashing of the hazard warning system and headlights, where required.

Do not modify the system to ensure function of the alarm system.

Switching on/off

The alarm system is switched on or off as soon as the vehicle is locked with the vehicle key or unlocked or locked via Comfort Access.

Opening the doors with the alarm system switched on

The alarm system is triggered when a door is opened if the door was unlocked using the integrated key in the door lock.

Opening the tailgate with the alarm system switched on

The tailgate can be opened even when the alarm system is switched on.

After the tailgate is closed, it is locked and monitored again provided the doors are locked. The hazard warning system flashes once.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

- Press the button on the vehicle key and hold for at least 3 seconds.
- Briefly press the button on the vehicle key three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3947
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Indicator light on the interior mirror

- The indicator light flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

  The alarm system is switched on.
- Indicator light flashes for approx. 10 seconds, then it flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

  Interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor are not active, as doors, hood, or tailgate are not correctly closed. Correctly closed access points are secured.

  When the still open access points are closed, the interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor will be switched on.
- The indicator light goes out after unlocking:

  The vehicle has not been tampered with.
- The indicator light flashes after unlocking until drive-ready state is switched on, but no longer than approx. 5 minutes:

  An alarm has been triggered.

Tilt alarm sensor

The tilt of the vehicle is monitored.

The alarm system responds in situations such as attempts to steal a wheel or when the vehicle is towed.

Interior motion sensor

The windows and the glass sunroof must be closed for the system to function properly.

Avoiding unintentional alarms

General information

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor can trigger an alarm, although no unauthorized action occurred.

Possible situations for an unwanted alarm:

- In automatic car washes.
- In duplex garages.
- During transport on trains carrying vehicles, at sea or on a trailer.
- With animals in the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is locked after start of fueling.

The tilt alarm sensor and the interior motion sensor can be switched off in such situations.

Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor

Press the button on the vehicle key within 10 seconds as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator light lights up for approx. 2 seconds and then continues to flash.

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor are switched off until the vehicle is locked again.

Switching off the alarm

- Unlock the vehicle with the vehicle key.
- Unlock the vehicle with the integrated key and activate the drive-ready state via emergency detection of the vehicle key.

  Malfunction, refer to page 80.
- With Comfort Access: when carrying the vehicle key, grasp the driver's door or front passenger door handle completely.

Power windows

General information

The windows can be opened with the vehicle key from the outside as well as closed with Comfort Access.

With Comfort Access: The windows can be closed from the outside via Comfort Access.

When a window is often opened in the same position, this task can be performed by the BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant. For instance when the same parking garage is frequently used.

Additional information:

- Vehicle key, refer to page 77.
- BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant, refer to page 54.

Safety information

Warning

When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the windows is clear during opening and closing.

Overview

Power windows

Safety switch

Functional requirements

The windows can be operated under the following conditions.

- Standby state is switched on.
- Drive-ready state is switched on.

The vehicle key must be in the car's interior.

Opening

- Press the switch to the resistance point.

  The window opens while the switch is being held.
- Press the switch beyond the resistance point.

  The window opens automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Closing

- Pull the switch to the resistance point.

  The window closes while the switch is being held.
- Pull the switch beyond the resistance point.

  The window closes automatically if the door is closed. Pulling again stops the motion.

Jam protection system

Concept

The jam protection prevents objects or body parts becoming jammed between the door frame and window while a window is being closed.

General information

If resistance or a blockage is detected while a window is being closed, the closing action is interrupted.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3949
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Safety information

Warning

Accessories on the windows such as antennas can impact jam protection. There is a risk of injury. Do not install accessories in the area of movement of the windows.

Closing without the jam protection system

In case of danger from the outside or if ice might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it there.

   The window closes with limited jam protection. If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.

2. Pull the switch past the resistance point again within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there.

   The window closes without jam protection.

Safety switch

Concept

The safety switch can be used to prevent children, for instance from opening and closing the rear windows using the switches in the rear.

If an accident of a certain severity occurs, the safety function is switched off automatically.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

The LED lights up if the safety function is switched on.

Glass sunroof

General information

The glass sunroof and the sun protection are operated using the same switch.

The glass sunroof can be opened from the outside with the vehicle key and also closed with Comfort Access.

With Comfort Access: The glass sunroof can be closed from the outside via Comfort Access.

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the glass sunroof. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the glass sunroof is clear during opening and closing.

Overview

Opening/closing the glass sunroof.

Functional requirements

The glass sunroof and the sun protection can be operated under the following conditions.

- Standby state is switched on.
- Drive-ready state is switched on.

▷ Speed of 155 mph/250 km/h not exceeded.

The vehicle key must be in the car's interior.

Lifting/closing glass sunroof

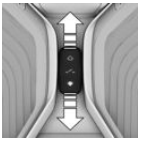
Push switch briefly upward.

▷ The closed glass sunroof tilts and the sun protection opens slightly.

▷ The opened glass sunroof closes until it is in the tilted position. The sun protection does not move.

▷ The tilted glass sunroof closes.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sun protection separately



▷ Slide switch back to the resistance point and hold.

Holding down the switch opens the sun protection. If the sun protection is already fully open, the glass sunroof opens.

▷ Slide switch forward to the resistance point and hold.

The glass sunroof closes while the switch is being held. If the glass sunroof is already closed or in the tilted position, the sun protection closes.

▷ Slide the switch back past the resistance point.

The sun protection opens automatically. If the sun protection is already fully open, the glass sunroof opens automatically.

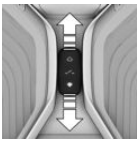
Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

▷ Push the switch forward past the resistance point.

The glass sunroof closes automatically. If the glass sunroof is already closed or in the tilted position, the sun protection closes automatically.

Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sun protection together



▷ Briefly press out the switch twice in succession toward the rear past the resistance point.

The glass sunroof and sun protection are opening together.

Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

▷ Briefly press out the switch twice in succession toward the front past the resistance point.

The glass sunroof and sun protection are closing together.

Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Comfort position

In some models, the wind noises in the car's interior are lowest when the glass sunroof is not fully open. In these models, the automatic function initially only opens the glass sunroof up to this comfort position.

Pressing the switch again opens the glass sunroof fully.

Jam protection system

Concept

The jam protection prevents objects or body parts from becoming jammed between the roof and glass sunroof while the glass sunroof is closing.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3951
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

General information

If a resistance or blockage is detected while the glass sunroof is closing, the closing operation is interrupted once the roof reaches the half-open position, or it is stopped when closing from the tilted position.

Closing from the open position without jam protection

In case of danger from the outside or if ice might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

1. Close all doors.
2. Push the switch forward past the resistance point and hold.

   The glass sunroof closes with limited jam protection. If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.
3. Push the switch forward again past the resistance point and hold until the glass sunroof closes without jam protection. Make sure that the closing area is clear.

Closing from the lifted position without jam protection

In case of danger from the outside or if ice might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

1. Close all doors.
2. Push the switch forward past the resistance point and hold.

Initializing after a power interruption

General information

After a power failure during the opening or closing process, the glass sunroof can only be operated to a limited extent. Initializing the system can help in this case.

The system can be initialized under the following conditions:

- The vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- The vehicle will not be moved until the initialization is completed.
- The drive-ready state is established.
- The external temperature is above 41 °F/5 °C.

During initialization, the glass sunroof closes without jam protection.

Make sure that the closing area is clear.

Initializing the system

Press the switch up and hold it until the initialization is complete:

Initialization begins within 15 seconds.

- If the glass sunroof is closed, it opens then closes again.
- If the glass sunroof is open, it first closes, then opens and closes again.

Initialization is complete once the glass sunroof and sun protection have opened then closed again.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3952

Seats, mirrors and steering wheel

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Sitting safely

An ideal seat position that meets the needs of the occupants can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving.

In the event of an accident, the correct seat position plays an important role. Follow the information in the following chapters.

Additional information:

- Seats, refer to page 100.
- Safety belts, refer to page 102.
- Head restraints, refer to page 104.
- Airbags, refer to page 160.

Seats

Safety information

⚠ Warning

Seat adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected movements of the seat. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. Only adjust the seat on the driver's side when the vehicle is stationary.

⚠ Warning

With a backrest inclined too far to the rear, the efficacy of the safety belt can no longer be ensured. There is a risk of sliding under the safety belt in an accident. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Adjust the seat prior to starting the trip. Adjust the backrest so that it is in the most upright position as possible and do not adjust again while driving.

⚠ Warning

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Electrically adjustable seats

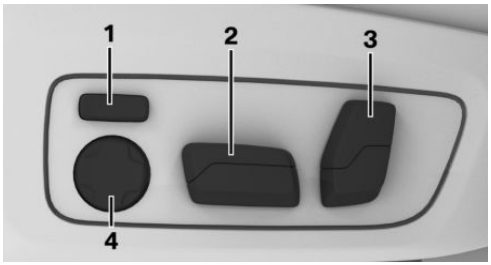
General information

The seat adjustment for the driver's seat is stored for the driver profile currently used. When a driver profile is selected, the stored position is called up automatically.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3953
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

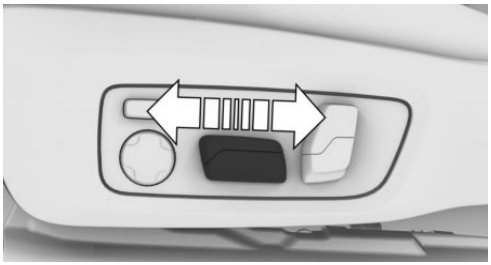
The current seat position can be stored using the memory function.

Overview



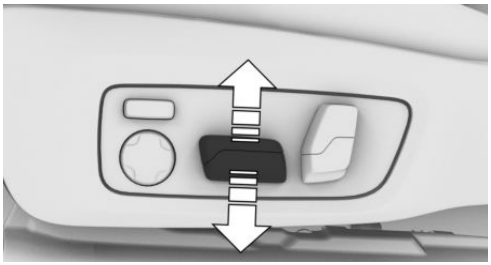
1 Backrest width
2 Forward/backward, height, seat tilt
3 Backrest tilt, head restraint
4 Lumbar support

Forward/backward



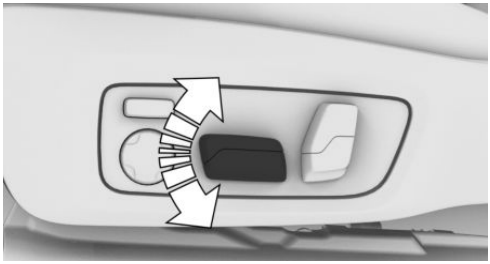
Push switch forward or backward.

Height



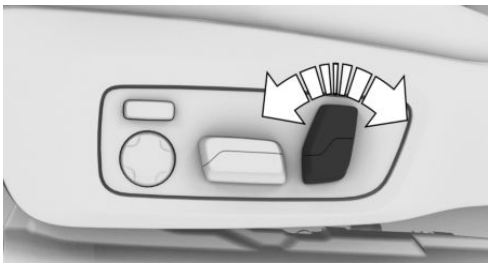
Push switch up or down.

Seat tilt



Move switch up or down.

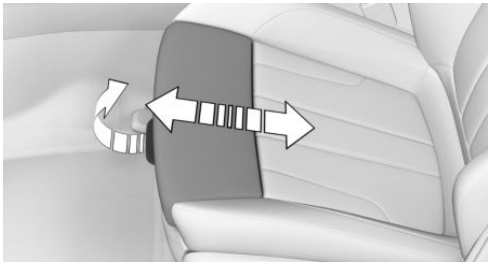
Backrest tilt



Move switch forward or backward.

Thigh support

Sport seat



Pull the lever at the front of the seat and push the thigh support forward or back.

Lumbar support

Concept

The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright posture.

Adjusting

- Press the front/rear section of the button:

  The curvature is increased/ decreased.
- Press the upper/lower section of the button:

  The curvature is shifted up/ down.

Functional limitations

It may not be possible to adjust the lumbar support at very high and very low temperatures.

Backrest width

Concept

Adjusting the backrest width may improve lateral support when taking corners.

General information

The backrest width is changed by adjusting the side sections of the backrest.

Adjusting

- Press the front section of the button:

  The backrest width decreases.
- Press the rear section of the button:

  The backrest width increases.

Functional limitations

It may not be possible to adjust the backrest width at very high and very low temperatures.

Safety belts

General information

The vehicle is fitted with five safety belts to ensure occupant safety. However, they can only offer protection when adjusted correctly.

Always make sure that safety belts are being worn by the occupants before driving off. The airbags supplement the safety belts as an additional safety device. The airbags are not a substitute for safety belts.

The upper shoulder strap's anchorage point will be correct for adult seat occupants of every build if the seat is correctly set.

The two outer safety belt buckles of the rear seats are intended for the persons sitting on the left and right.

The center safety belt buckle of the rear seats is intended for the person sitting in the middle.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

Use of a safety belt to buckle more than one person will potentially defeat the ability of the safety belt to serve its protective function. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Infants and children are not allowed on an occupant's lap, but must be transported and secured in designated child restraint systems.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3955
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Warning

The efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts, can be limited or lost when safety belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened safety belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that all occupants are wearing safety belts correctly.

Warning

With a rear backrest that is not locked, the protective function of the middle safety belt is not guaranteed. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. If you are using the middle safety belt, lock the wider rear seat backrest.

Warning

The efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts, may not be fully functional or fail in the following situations:

- The safety belts or safety belt buckles are damaged, soiled, or changed in any other way.
- Belt tensioners or belt retractors were modified.

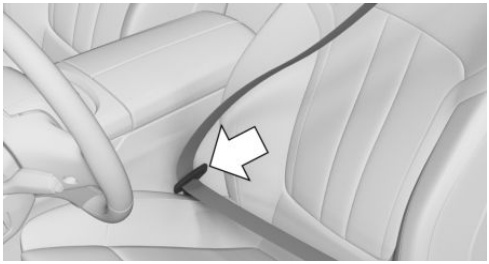
Safety belts can be imperceptibly damaged in the event of an accident. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not modify safety belts, safety belt buckles, belt tensioners, belt retractors or belt anchors and keep them clean. Have the safety belts checked after an accident at the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Correct use of safety belts

- Wear the safety belt twist-free and tight to your body over your lap and shoulders.
- Wear the safety belt deep on your hips over your lap. The safety belt may not press on your stomach.
- Do not rub the safety belt against sharp edges, or guide it or jam it in across hard or fragile objects.
- Avoid thick clothing.
- Re-tighten the safety belt frequently upward around your upper body.

Buckling the safety belt

1. Guide the safety belt slowly over shoulder and hip to put it on.
2. Insert the tongue plate into the safety belt buckle. The safety belt buckle must engage audibly.



To ease accessibility to the safety belt buckle, an adjustable slider is available on the belt to help position the buckle when not in use.

When the safety belt is fastened, the driver's and passenger's belt straps are automatically tightened once after driving away.

Unbuckling the safety belt

1. Hold the safety belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the safety belt buckle.
3. Guide the safety belt back into its roll-up mechanism.

Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat

Display in the instrument cluster

The indicator light lights up and a signal sounds. Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly. The safety belt reminder can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

Safety belt reminder for rear seats

General information

The safety belt reminder is automatically activated each time the engine starts.

The safety belt reminder is also activated when a passenger unbuckles a rear seat safety belt during the trip.

Display in the instrument cluster

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates after the engine is started.

The displays may vary depending on the equipment version and country variant.

Symbol	Description
	Green: the safety belt is buckled on the corresponding rear seat.
	Red: the safety belt is not buckled on the corresponding rear seat.

Safety mode

In critical situations, for instance during an emergency stop, the front safety belts tighten automatically.

If the situation passes without an accident occurring, the belt tension relaxes.

If the belt tension does not loosen automatically, stop the vehicle and unbuckle the safety belt using the red button in the safety belt buckle. Fasten the safety belt before continuing on your trip.

Front head restraints

General information

The current head restraint position can be stored using the memory function.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

A missing protective effect due to removed or not correctly adjusted head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
- ▷ Adjust the head restraint so its center supports the back of the head at as close to eye level as possible.
- ▷ Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the backrest tilt as needed.

⚠ Warning

Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.

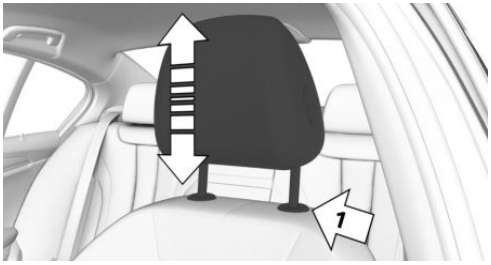
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3957
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Warning

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.

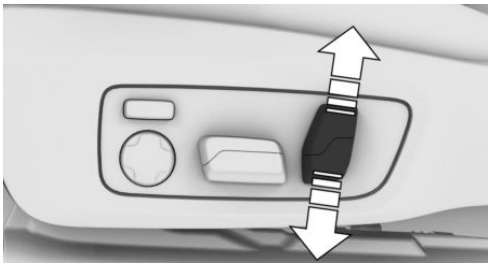
Adjusting the height: manual head restraints



- To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.
- To raise: push the head restraint up.

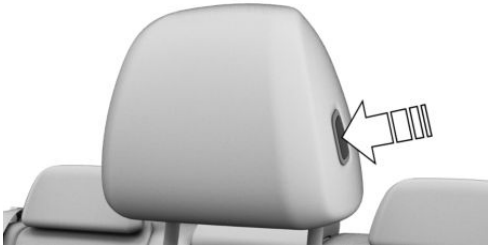
After setting the height, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Adjusting the height: power head restraint



Push switch up or down.

Adjusting the distance: manual head restraints



- Back: press the button and push the head restraint toward the rear.
- Forward: pull the head restraint toward the front.

After setting the distance, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

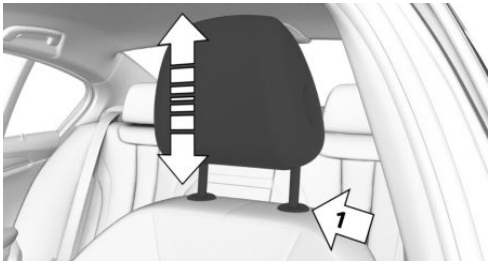
Adjusting the distance: power head restraints

The distance to the back of the head is adjusted via the backrest tilt.

Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head.

Removing

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.



1. Raise the head restraint up against the resistance.
2. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

Removing: M Sport seat

The head restraints cannot be removed.

Installing

Proceed in the reverse order to install the head restraint.

Rear head restraints

Safety information

Warning

A missing protective effect due to removed or not correctly adjusted head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
- Adjust the head restraint so its center supports the back of the head at as close to eye level as possible.
- Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the backrest tilt as needed.

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.

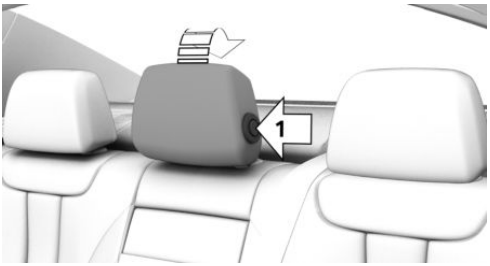
Warning

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.

Folding down the center head restraint

To improve the view to the rear, the center head restraint can be folded to the rear. Only push the head restraint down if no one will be sitting in the center seat.



- To the rear: press the button, arrow 1, and fold the head restraint backward.
- Forward: fold the head restraint toward the front as far as it will go. Make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3959
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Adjusting the height

The height of the outer head restraints can be adjusted.

- ▷ To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.
- ▷ To raise: push the head restraint up.

After setting the height, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Removing

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.

1. Fold down the rear seat backrest in question.
   Enlarging the cargo area, refer to page 261.
2. Raise the head restraint up against the resistance.
3. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

Installing

Proceed in the reverse order to install the head restraint.

After the installation, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Exterior mirrors

General information

The mirror on the front passenger side is more curved than the driver's side mirror.

The mirror setting is stored for the driver profile currently in use. When a driver profile is selected, the stored position is called up automatically.

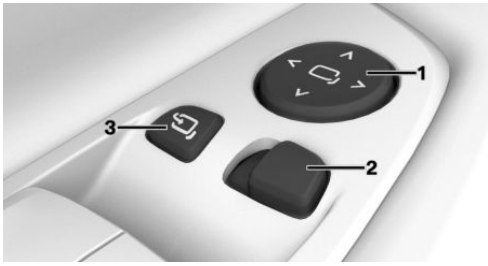
The current exterior mirror position can be stored using the memory function.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. The distance to the traffic behind could be incorrectly estimated, for instance while changing lanes. There is a risk of accident. Estimate the distance to the traffic behind by looking over your shoulder.

Overview



1 Adjusting

2 Selecting a mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor

3 Folding in and out

Adjusting electrically

Press the button.

The selected mirror moves along with the button movement.

Selecting a mirror

To change over to the other mirror:

Slide the switch.

Malfunction

In case of an electrical malfunction, adjust the mirror by pressing the edges of the mirror glass.

Folding in and out

NOTICE

Depending on the vehicle width, the vehicle can be damaged in vehicle washes. There is a risk of damage to property. Before washing, fold in the mirrors by hand or with the button.

Press the button.

Folding is only possible up to a speed of approx. 15 mph/20 km/h.

Folding the mirrors in and out is helpful in the following situations:

- In car washes.
- On narrow roads.

Mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Automatic heating

Both exterior mirrors are automatically heated as needed and when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Automatic dimming feature

The exterior mirror on the driver's side is automatically dimmed. Photocells in the interior mirror are used to control this.

Automatic Curb Monitor, exterior mirror

Concept

If reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass on the front passenger side is tilted downward. This improves your view of the curb and other low-lying obstacles when parking, for instance.

Activating

1. slide the switch to the driver's side mirror position.
2. Engage selector lever position R.

Deactivating

Slide the switch to the passenger's side mirror position.

Interior mirror

General information

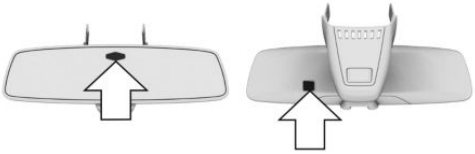
The interior mirror is dimmed automatically.

Photocells are used for control:

- In the mirror glass.
- On the back of the mirror.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3961
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Overview



Functional requirements

- Keep the photocells clean.
- Do not cover the area between the interior mirror and the windshield.

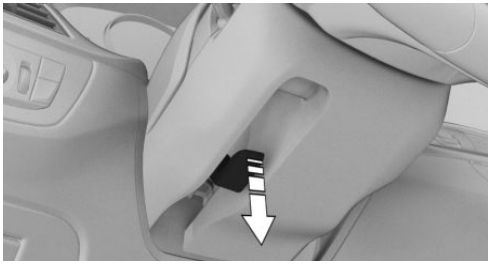
Steering wheel

Safety information

Warning

Steering wheel adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected steering wheel movements. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. Adjustng the steering wheel while the vehicle is stationary only.

Manual steering wheel adjustment



1. Fold the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seat position.
3. Fold the lever back up.

Heated steering wheel

Overview

Button for heated steering wheel

Switching on/off

Press the button.

A Check Control message is displayed.

If the trip is resumed within approx. 15 minutes after an intermediate stop, the heated steering wheel switches on automatically if the function was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Memory function

Concept

The following settings can be stored and, if necessary, retrieved using the memory function:

- Seat position.
- Exterior mirror position.
- Height of the Head-up Display.

General information

Two memory locations with different settings can be set for each driver profile.

The following settings are not stored:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3962
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

- Backrest width.
- Lumbar support.

Safety information

Warning

Using the memory function while driving can lead to unexpected seat or steering wheel movements. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident. Only retrieve the memory function when the vehicle is stationary.

Warning

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Overview

The memory buttons are located on the front doors.

Storing

1. Set the desired position.
2. SET Press the button. The writing on the button lights up.
3. Press desired button 1 or 2 while the LED is lit. A signal sounds.

Calling up settings

Press the desired button 1 or 2.

The stored position is called up.

The procedure stops when a switch for setting the seat is pressed or one of the memory buttons is pressed again.

Once underway, adjustment of the seat position on the driver's side is disabled after a short while.

Seat heating

Overview

Front

Seat heating

Rear

Seat heating

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3963
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Switching on

Press the button once for each temperature level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

Switching off

Press and hold the button, until the LEDs go out.

Seat heating distribution

The heating action in the seat cushion and the seat backrest can be distributed in different ways.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. Select the desired menu item.
5. Select desired seat.
6. Press the Controller and turn it to set the seat heating distribution.

Active seat ventilation

Concept

Integrated fans in the seat and armrest areas provide a comfortable seat temperature.

Overview

Active seat ventilation

Switching on

Press the button once for each ventilation level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

The ventilation switches back by one level after a short time.

Switching off

Press and hold the button, until the LEDs go out.

Individual activation

Concept

Depending on the equipment, some heating and cooling functions can be automatically activated depending on the external temperature.

General information

The external temperature at which the functions are to be automatically activated can be set via iDrive.

Activation is performed if the external temperature exceeds or falls below the set temperature in the first few minutes after drive-ready state has been switched on. A new alignment is carried out after the settings have been changed.

Depending on the equipment package, the following functions can be automatically activated:

- Seat heating.
- Heated steering wheel.
- Seat ventilation.

If the trip is continued within approx. 15 minutes after a stop, the functions are activated automatically with the levels that were last selected.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3964

Functional requirement

The safety belt of the corresponding seat is buckled.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. Select the desired menu item.
5. Select desired seat.
6. Select the menu item of the desired function.
7. Set the external temperature at which the function is to be activated.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3965
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Transporting children safely

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

The right place for children

Safety information

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Warning

A heated vehicle may result in death to persons, especially children, or animals. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not leave persons, especially children, or animals unattended in the vehicle.

Warning

Exposure to intense sunlight can cause child restraint systems and their components to become very hot. Persons may sustain burn injuries when touching the hot components. There is a risk of injury. Do not expose the child restraint system to direct sunlight or cover where necessary. If necessary, let the child restraint system cool down before transporting a child. Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle.

Transport children in the rear seat

General information

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is in the rear seat.

Children younger than 13 years of age or shorter than 5 ft/150 cm should be transported in the rear seat in suitable child restraint systems designed for the age, weight and size of the child. Children 13 years of age or older must wear a safety belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system can no longer be used due to their age, weight, or size.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3966

Safety information

Warning

The safety belt cannot be fastened correctly on children shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm without suitable additional child restraint systems. The efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts, can be limited or lost when safety belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened safety belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Secure children shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm using suitable child restraint systems.

Children on the front passenger seat

General information

Before using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, ensure that the front, knee, and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated.

Additional information:

For automatic deactivation of front-seat passenger airbags, refer to page 163.

Safety information

Warning

Active front-seat passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are activated. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front-seat passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light lights up.

Installing child restraint systems

General information

Pay attention to the specifications and the operating and safety information of the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing, and using child restraint systems.

Safety information

Warning

The protective effect of child restraint systems and their fastening systems which have been damaged or exposed to an accident can be limited or lost. A child cannot be properly restrained in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life.

Do not use child restraint systems which have been damaged or exposed to an accident.

If a child restraint system and its fastening system has been damaged or exposed to an accident, have these systems checked and replaced by the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3967
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

On the front passenger seat

Deactivating airbags

Warning

Active front-seat passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are activated. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front-seat passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light lights up.

Before installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, make sure that the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated.

Additional information:

For automatic deactivation of front-seat passenger airbags, refer to page 163.

Seat position and height

After installing a child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go and, if possible, bring it up to the highest position. This seat position and height ensure the best possible position for the belt and offers optimal protection in the event of an accident.

If the upper anchor of the safety belt is located in front of the belt guide of the child seat, move the front passenger seat carefully forward until the best possible belt guide position is reached.

Backrest width

Adjustable backrest width: before installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, open the backrest width completely. Do not change the backrest width again and do not call up a memory position.

Child seat security

The safety belts in the rear and the front passenger safety belt can be permanently locked to fasten child restraint systems.

Locking the safety belt

1. Pull out the belt strap completely.
2. Secure the child restraint system with the safety belt.
3. Allow the belt strap to be pulled in and pull it tight against the child restraint system. The safety belt is locked.

Unlocking the safety belt

1. Unbuckle the safety belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the belt strap to be pulled in completely.

LATCH child restraint fixing system

General information

LATCH: Lower Anchors and Tether for Children.

Pay attention to the specifications and the operating and safety information from the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing, and using LATCH child restraint fixing systems.

Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors

General information

The lower anchors may be used to attach the CRS to the vehicle seat up to a combined child and CRS weight of 65 lbs/30 kg when the child is restrained by the internal harnesses.

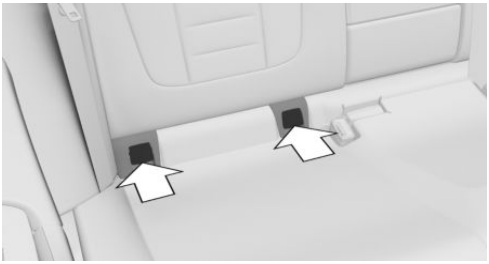
Safety information

Warning

If the LATCH child restraint fixing systems are not correctly engaged, the protective effect of the LATCH child restraint fixing system is limited. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the lower anchors are securely engaged and that the LATCH child restraint fixing system fits securely against the backrest.

Position

Symbol	Meaning
	The corresponding symbol shows the mounts for the lower LATCH anchors. Seats equipped with lower anchors are marked with a pair, (2), of LATCH symbols. For vehicles equipped with a middle seat: It is not recommended to use the inner lower anchors of standard outer LATCH positions to fasten a child restraint system on the middle seat. Use the vehicle safety belt instead for the middle seat.



Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors are located behind the marked covers.

The covers fold back automatically when the anchors of a child restraint system are inserted.

Before installing LATCH child restraint fixing systems

Pull the safety belt away from the area of the child restraint system.

Assembly of LATCH child restraint fixing systems

1. Install child restraint system, see manufacturer's information.
2. Ensure that both LATCH anchors are properly engaged.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3969
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Child restraint systems with tether strap

Safety information

Warning

If the upper retaining strap is incorrectly used for the child restraint system, the protective effect is reduced. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the upper retaining strap does not run over sharp edges and is not twisted as it passes the upper anchor.

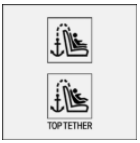
Warning

If the rear backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the child restraint system is limited or there is none. In certain situations, for instance braking maneuvers or in case of an accident, the rear backrest can fold forward. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the rear backrests are locked.

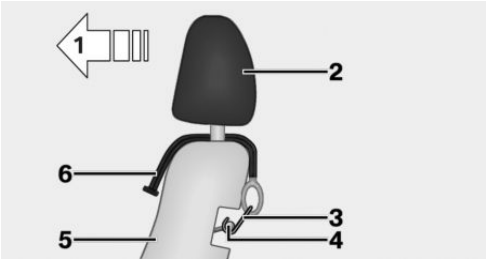
NOTICE

The anchors for the upper retaining straps of child restraint systems are only provided for these retaining straps. When other objects are mounted, the anchors can be damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Only mount child restraint systems to the upper anchors.

Anchors

Symbol	Meaning
	The respective symbol shows the anchor for the upper retaining strap. Seats with an upper top tether are marked with this symbol. It is located on the rear seat backrest, the rear shelf or the rear seat.

Routing the retaining strap



1 Direction of travel
2 Head restraint
3 Hook for upper retaining strap
4 Anchor
5 Seat backrest
6 Upper retaining strap

Attaching the upper retaining strap to the anchor

1. Raise the head restraint, if needed.
2. Guide the upper retaining strap between or along both sides of the supports for the head restraint to the anchor.

   For the middle seat, guide it over or along both sides of the head restraint to the anchor where applicable.
3. If there is a retaining strap, run it between the backrest and the cargo cover.

4. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the anchor.
5. Tighten the retaining strap by pulling it down.
6. Lower and engage head restraint as needed.

Locking the doors and windows in the rear

General information

In certain situations it may be advisable to secure the rear doors and windows, for instance when transporting children.

Doors

Push the locking lever on the rear doors up.

The door can now be opened from the outside only.

Safety switch for the rear

Press the button on the driver's door.

This locks various functions so that they cannot be operated from the rear.

Additional information:

Safety switch, refer to page 97.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3971
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Driving

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Start/Stop button

Concept

Pressing the Start/Stop button switches drive-ready state on or off.

Drive-ready state is switched on when you depress the brake pedal while pressing the Start/Stop button.

Pressing the Start/Stop button again switches the drive-ready state back off and standby state is switched back on.

Additional information:

- Drive-ready state, refer to page 40.
- Standby state, refer to page 40.

Driving away

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. Apply gear position.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Drive away.

Auto Start/Stop function

Concept

The Auto Start/Stop function helps save fuel. The system switches off the engine during a stop, for instance in traffic congestion or at traffic lights. Drive-ready state remains switched on. The engine starts automatically for driving off.

General information

After each engine start using the Start/Stop button, the Auto Start/Stop function is ready. The function is activated from speeds of approx. 3 mph/5 km/h.

Engine stop

Functional requirements

M Steptronic Sport transmission

The engine is switched off automatically during a stop under the following conditions:

- The selector lever is in selector lever position D.
- The brake pedal remains pressed while the vehicle is stationary or the vehicle is held by Automatic Hold.
- The driver's safety belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

M Steptronic Sport transmission: manual engine stop

If the engine was not switched off automatically when the vehicle stopped, the engine can be switched off manually:

- Press the brake pedal forcefully again from the current pedal position.
- Engage selector lever position P.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3972

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

When all functional preconditions are fulfilled, the engine switches off.

Air conditioner when the engine is switched off

The air flow from the air conditioner is reduced when the engine is switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster

General information

The display in the instrument cluster indicates that the Auto Start/Stop function is ready for an automatic engine start.

The display indicates that the conditions for an automatic engine stop have not been met.

Indications on the Control Display

Total time with switched-off engine

The total time for which the Auto Start/Stop function has switched off the engine is displayed in the trip data.

The total time is automatically reset every time the vehicle is refueled.

Functional limitations

The engine is not switched off automatically in the following situations:

- In case of a steep downhill grade.
- Brake not engaged strongly enough.
- The external temperature is high and automatic climate control is running.
- The car's interior has not yet been heated or cooled to the required level.
- Where there is a risk of window condensation when the automatic climate control is switched on.
- Engine or other parts not at operating temperature.
- Engine cooling is required.
- The wheels are at a sharp angle or the steering wheel is being turned.
- Vehicle battery is heavily discharged.
- At higher elevations.
- Hood is unlocked.
- HDC Hill Descent Control is activated.
- The parking assistant is activated.
- Stop-and-go traffic.
- Selector lever position in N or R.
- After driving in reverse.

Starting the engine

Functional requirements

M Steptronic Sport transmission

The engine starts automatically under the following preconditions:

- By releasing the brake pedal.
- When Automatic Hold is activated: step on the accelerator pedal.

Driving off

After the engine starts, accelerate as usual.

Safety mode

After the engine switches off automatically, it will not start again automatically if any one of the following conditions are met:

- The driver's safety belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is open.
- Hood was unlocked.

Some indicator lights light up for a varied length of time.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3973
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

The engine can only be started via the Start/Stop button.

System limits

Even if driving off was not intended, the deactivated engine starts up automatically in the following situations:

- Excessive warming of the car's interior when air conditioning is switched on.
- Excessive cooling of the car's interior when the heating is switched on.
- Where there is a risk of window condensation when the automatic climate control is switched on.
- When the steering wheel is turned.
- Change from selector lever position D to N or R.
- Change from selector lever position P to N, D, or R.
- Vehicle battery is heavily discharged.
- Start of an oil level measurement.

Additional functions Auto Start/Stop

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country-specific version, the vehicle features a variety of sensors for assessing the traffic situation. The Auto Start/Stop function uses this information to adapt to various traffic situations in a proactive manner.

For instance, this applies to the following situations:

- When a situation is detected in which the stopping time is expected to be very short, the engine is not switched off automatically. A message appears on the Control Display, depending on the situation.
- When a situation is detected in which the vehicle needs to drive off immediately, the engine is started automatically.

The function may be restricted if the navigation data is invalid, outdated or not available, for example.

Deactivate/activate the system manually

Concept

The engine is not automatically switched off.

The engine is started during an automatic engine stop.

Using the button

(A)OFF Press the button.

Display

- LED comes on: auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.
- LED goes out: auto Start/Stop function is activated.

Switching off the vehicle during an automatic engine stop

General information

During an automatic engine stop, the vehicle can be switched off permanently, for instance when leaving it.

M Steptronic Sport transmission

1. Press the Start/Stop button.
   - Drive-ready state is switched off.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3974

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

- ▷ Standby state is switched on.
- ▷ Selector lever position P is engaged automatically.

2. Set the parking brake.

Automatic deactivation

General information

In certain situations, the Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated automatically for safety reasons, for instance if no driver is detected.

Malfunction

The Auto Start/Stop function no longer switches off the engine automatically. A Check Control message is displayed. It is possible to continue driving. Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Parking brake

Concept

The parking brake is used to prevent the vehicle from rolling when it is parked.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

⚠ Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Overview

Parking brake

Setting

With a stationary vehicle

Pull the switch.

The LED lights up.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3975
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates red. The parking brake is set.

While driving

General information

To use as emergency brake while driving.

Pull the switch and hold it. The vehicle brakes hard while the switch is being pulled.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates red, a signal sounds, and the brake lights illuminate.

A Check Control message is displayed.

The parking brake is engaged when the vehicle is stationary.

Releasing

Releasing manually

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2.

Press the switch while stepping on the brake pedal or selector lever position P is set.

   The LED and indicator light go out.

   The parking brake is released.

Automatic release

The parking brake is released automatically when you drive away.

The LED and indicator light go out.

Automatic Hold

Concept

This system assists the driver by automatically setting and releasing the brake, such as when moving in stop-and-go traffic.

The vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

On uphill grades the system prevents the vehicle from rolling backward when driving off.

General information

Under the following conditions, the parking brake is automatically engaged:

- Drive-ready state is switched off.
- The driver's door is opened while the vehicle is stationary.
- The moving vehicle is brought to a standstill using the parking brake.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3976

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

NOTICE

If the vehicle is stationary, Automatic Hold engages the parking brake and prevents the vehicle from rolling in a car wash. There is a risk of damage to property. Deactivate Automatic Hold prior to entering the car wash.

Overview

AUTO H Automatic Hold

Establishing function readiness of Automatic Hold

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. AUTO H Press the button.

   The LED lights up.

AUTO H The indicator light lights up green.

Automatic Hold is functional.

After every new vehicle start, the last selected setting is active.

Automatic Hold holding the vehicle

Function readiness is established and the driver's door is closed.

PARK (P) After stepping on the brake pedal, for instance when stopping at a traffic light, the vehicle is automatically secured against rolling.

The indicator light lights up green.

Driving off

Press the accelerator pedal to drive off.

The brake is released automatically and the indicator light of the parking brake is no longer illuminated.

Activating the parking brake automatically

The parking brake is automatically set if drive-ready state is switched off while the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold or if the vehicle is exited.

PARK (P) The indicator light changes from green to red.

The parking brake is not set automatically, if the drive-ready state is switched off, while the vehicle is coasting to a halt. Automatic Hold is deactivated.

Switching function readiness off

AUTO H Press the button.

The LED goes out.

AUTO H The indicator light goes out.

Automatic Hold is switched off.

If the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold, press additionally on the brake pedal, when switching off.

Malfunction

If the parking brake fails or malfunctions, secure the vehicle against rolling before exiting.

A Check Control message is displayed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3977
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Secure the vehicle against rolling away, for instance with a wheel chock, after exiting the vehicle.

After a power failure

To reestablish parking brake functionality after a power failure:

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Pull the switch while stepping on the brake pedal or selector lever position P is set and then push.

This process may take a few seconds. Some mechanical sounds associated with this process are normal.

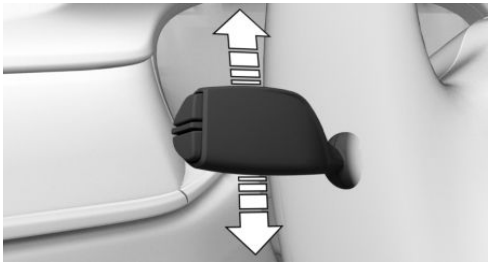
The indicator light is no longer illuminated as soon as the parking brake is ready for operation again.

Turn signal

Turn signal in exterior mirror

When driving and during operation of the turn signals or hazard warning system, do not fold in the exterior mirrors, so that the signal lights on the exterior mirror are easy to see.

Using turn signals



Press the lever past the resistance point.

Triple turn signal activation

Lightly tap the lever up or down.

The triple turn signal duration can be adjusted.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "One-touch turn signal"
5. Select the desired setting.

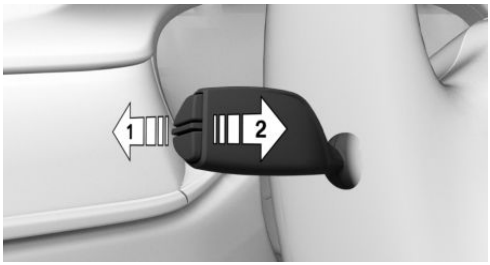
The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Signaling briefly

Press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

High beams, headlight flasher

Push the lever forward or pull it backward.



- ▷ High beams on, arrow 1.

  The high beams light up when the low beams are switched on.
- ▷ High beams off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

Wiper system

General information

Do not use the wipers if the windshield is dry, as this may damage the wiper blades or cause them to become worn more quickly.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3978

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Safety information

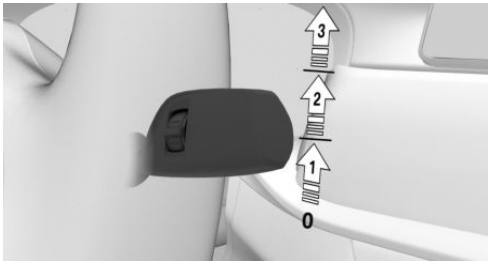
Warning

If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

NOTICE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of damage to property. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.

Switching on

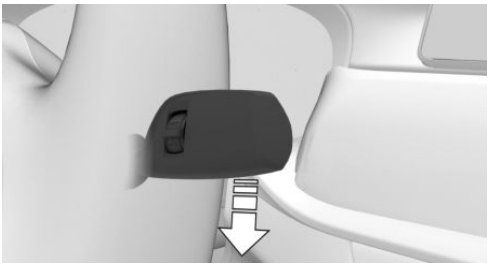


Press the lever up until the desired position is reached.

- Resting position of the wipers, position 0.
- Rain sensor, position 1.
- Normal wiper speed, position 2.
- Fast wiper speed, position 3.

When travel is interrupted with the wiper system switched on: when travel continues, the wipers resume at their previous speed.

Switching off and brief wipe



Press the lever down.

- Switching off: press the lever down until it reaches its standard position.
- Brief wipe: press the lever down from the standard position.

  The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

Rain sensor

Concept

The rain sensor automatically controls the time between wipes depending on the intensity of the rainfall.

General information

The sensor is located on the windshield, directly in front of the interior mirror.

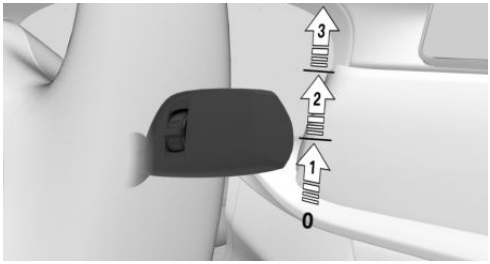
Safety information

NOTICE

If the rain sensor is activated, the wipers can accidentally start moving in vehicle washes. There is a risk of damage to property. Deactivate the rain sensor in vehicle washes.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3979
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Activating



Press the lever up once from its standard position, arrow 1.

Wiping is started.

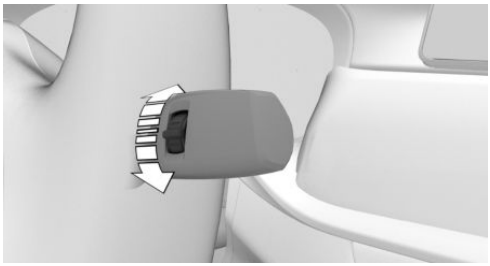
The LED in the wiper lever is illuminated.

In frosty conditions, wiper operation may not start.

Deactivating

Press the lever back into the standard position.

Adjusting the rain sensor sensitivity



Turn the thumbwheel to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Upward: high rain sensor sensitivity.

Downward: low rain sensor sensitivity.

Windshield washer system

Safety information

Warning

The washer fluid can freeze onto the window at low temperatures and obstruct the view. There is a risk of accident. Only use the washer systems, if the washer fluid cannot freeze. Use washer fluid with antifreeze, if needed.

NOTICE

When the washer fluid reservoir is empty, the wash pump cannot work as intended. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use the washer system when the washer fluid reservoir is empty.

Cleaning the windshield

Pull the lever.

The system sprays washer fluid on the windshield and activates the wipers briefly.

Windshield washer nozzles

The windshield washer nozzles are automatically heated while standby state is switched on.

Fold-away position of the wipers

Concept

The fold-away position enables the wipers to be folded away from the windshield.

General information

Important, for instance when changing the wiper blades or for folding away under frosty conditions.

Safety information

Warning

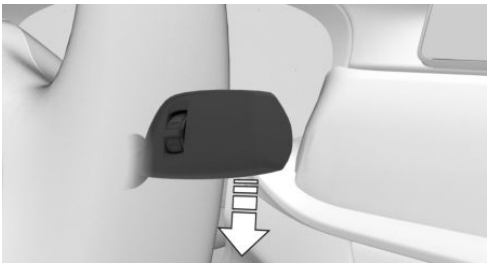
If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

NOTICE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of damage to property. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.

Folding away the wipers

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Press and hold the wiper lever down, until the wipers stop in a close to vertical position.



3. Fold the wipers all the way away from the windshield.

Folding down the wipers

After the wipers are folded back down, the wiper system must be reactivated.

1. Fold the wipers back down onto the windshield.
2. Switch on standby state and press and hold the wiper lever down again.
3. Wipers return to their resting position and are ready again for operation.

M Steptronic Sport transmission

General information

The M Steptronic Sport transmission is operated via the selector lever or the two shift paddles on the steering wheel.

The following functions are available:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3981
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

- Various driving programs: Drive mode or sequential mode.
- Low Speed Assistant.
- Various Drivelogic programs.
- Launch Control.
- Upshifting display, Shift point indicator.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling, for instance with the parking brake.

Overview

Selector lever

Selector lever functions

Symbol	Function
	Drivelogic programs
R:	Reverse gear.
N	Neutral.
	Center position, forward position.
-	Downshifting, manual.
+	Upshifting, manual.
D/S	Drive mode or sequential mode.
P	Parking.

Selector lever positions

D is Drive mode

Selector lever position for vehicle operation. All gears for forward travel are activated automatically.

S is Sequential mode

Selector lever position for vehicle operation. All gears for forward travel must be shifted manually.

R is reverse

Engage selector lever position R only when the vehicle is stationary.

N is Neutral

In selector lever position N, the vehicle may be pushed or roll without power, for instance, in vehicle washes.

P Park

Selector lever position, for instance for parking the vehicle. The transmission blocks the drive wheels in selector lever position P.

Engage selector lever position P only when the vehicle is stationary.

Selector lever position P is engaged automatically in situations such as the following:

- After the drive-ready state or standby state is switched off and selector lever position D/S or R is engaged.
- After the standby state has been switched off when selector lever position N is engaged.
- If the driver's safety belt is unbuckled, the driver's door is opened, and the brake pedal is not depressed while the vehicle is station-

ary and selector lever position D/S or R is engaged.

Engaging a selector lever position

General information

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a drive mode, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start.

The engaged selector lever position is displayed in the instrument cluster and on the selector lever.

Functional requirements

Only when the drive-ready state is switched on and the brake pedal is depressed is it possible to change from selector lever position P to another selector lever position.

Engaging selector lever position D/S, N, R

With the driver's safety belt fastened, press on the brake pedal and pull or push the selector lever in the required direction. The selector lever automatically returns to the center position when released.

In selector lever position R, the selector lever locks.

Engaging selector lever position P

Press button P.

Rolling or pushing the vehicle

General information

In some situations, the vehicle is to roll without its own power for a short distance, for instance in a car wash, or be pushed.

Engaging selector lever position N

1. Switch on drive-ready state while pressing on the brake pedal.
2. If necessary, release the parking brake.
3. If necessary, deactivate Automatic Hold.

   Automatic Hold, refer to page 123.
4. Depress the brake pedal.
5. Engage selector lever position N.
6. Switch off drive-ready state.

   In this way, standby state remains switched on, and a Check Control message is displayed.

   The vehicle can roll.

⚠ NOTICE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not switch standby state off in vehicle washes.

Selector lever position P is engaged automatically after approximately 35 minutes.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3983
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

If there is a malfunction, you may not be able to change the selector lever position.

Electronically unlock the transmission lock, if needed.

Kickdown

Kickdown is used to achieve maximum driving performance in Drive mode.

Step on the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position.

Drive mode D/S

Concept

In Drive mode, all forward gears are automatically changed.

Activating Drive mode

Push the selector lever out of the center position in the D/S direction.

Drive mode is activated. The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster along with a D, e.g., 1 D.

Deactivating Drive mode

Push the selector lever out of Drive mode in the D/S direction. Sequential mode is activated.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, e.g., 1.

Sequential mode D/S

Concept

In sequential mode, it is possible to shift gears manually using the selector lever or the shift paddles without letting off the gas.

General information

Shortly before falling below a gear-dependent minimum speed, the transmission is automatically downshifted.

Once the maximum engine speed is attained, upshifting is not automatically performed in sequential mode and the kickdown is deactivated.

It is also possible to start out in 2nd gear; for instance, on icy roads.

Activating sequential mode

Push the selector lever out of Drive mode in the D/S direction, arrow 1, or shift via the selector lever, arrows at 2.

Sequential mode is activated. The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, e.g., 1.

Deactivating sequential mode

Push the selector lever out of the center position in the D/S direction. Drive mode is activated.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster along with a D, e.g., 1 D.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3984

Gear change

Concept

Manual gear-shifting is possible via the shift paddles or the selector lever in sequential mode.

The shift paddles on the steering wheel allow you to shift gears quickly while keeping both hands on the steering wheel.

General information

Shifting

Gears will only be shifted at appropriate engine and road speeds; for instance, downshifting is not possible if the engine speed is too high.

The lowest possible gear is selected by simultaneously operating the kickdown and moving the selector lever forward or actuating the left shift paddle.

Temporary sequential mode

After a shift paddle is actuated in Drive mode, the system temporarily switches to sequential mode.

After conservative driving in sequential mode without acceleration or shifting via the shift paddles for a certain amount of time, the transmission switches back to Drive mode.

Permanent sequential mode

Sequential mode remains permanently active if it was active before the shift paddle was actuated.

Switching to Drive mode

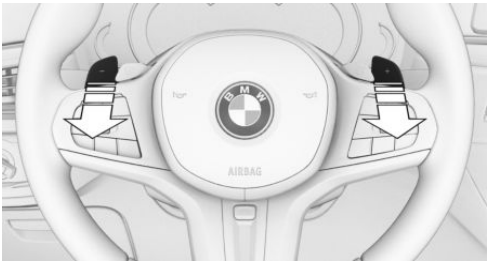
It is possible to switch to Drive mode as follows: pull and hold the right shift paddle.

Switching via the selector lever

- To shift up: pull the selector lever rearwards.
- To shift down: press the selector lever forward.

A shift in Drive mode causes a switch to Sequential mode.

Switching via the shift paddles



- Shift up: pull right shift paddle.
- Shift down: pull left shift paddle.

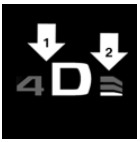
Display on the selector lever

The actually engaged transmission position can deviate from the selector lever position in some situations. The display in the selector lever flashes.

Observe the display in the instrument cluster in these cases.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Drive mode



- Engaged gear together with a D, arrow 1.
- Selected Drivelogic program, arrow 2.

Sequential mode

- Gear shift indicator, arrow 1.
- Engaged gear, arrow 2.
- Selected Drivelogic program, arrow 3.

Notice

When the external temperature is very low, the display may not work. Current driving direction is recognizable at the engaged selector lever position.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3985
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Low Speed Assistant

Concept

The Low Speed Assistant gives assistance at very low speeds. The vehicle moves at walking speed.

General information

Use the Low Speed Assistant for maneuvering or in stop-and-go traffic.

The Low Speed Assistant can also be used for rocking the vehicle in the snow. To do this, shift between reverse gear and forward gear without stepping on the brakes in the process.

Activating

1. Switch on drive-ready state while pressing on the brake pedal.
2. If necessary, release the parking brake.
3. If necessary, deactivate Automatic Hold.
4. Engage selector lever position D/S or R.
5. Release brake.

In 1st and 2nd gear and in reverse, the vehicle rolls at minimum speed.

Deactivating

Apply the brakes until the vehicle comes to a stop.

Drivelogic

Concept

Drivelogic changes the gear-shifting characteristics of the M Steptronic Sport transmission. For example, the shifting points are changed in Drive mode and the shifting times in sequential mode.

General information

Three Drivelogic programs are available.

After each switch between Sequential mode and Drive mode, the last program selected is an active.

If the drive-ready state is switched on after the vehicle has been in the idle state and is in Drive mode, the D1 program is activated.

Programs

Program	Drive mode	Sequential mode
D1/S1	Efficient driving.	Comfortable shifting operations.
D2/S2	Fast driving.	Sporty, fast shifting operations.
D3/S3	Sporty driving.	Maximum shifting speed, Launch Control.

Selecting a channel

Via the rocker switch on the selector lever

Press the rocker switch repeatedly until the desired program is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Via iDrive

It is possible to configure the required program for buttons M1 or M2.

1. "CAR"
2. "M setup"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"

4. "Transmission"
5. Select the desired channel
   - "D1" to "D3": Drive mode.
   - "S1" to "S3": sequential mode.

   The setting is immediately applied with active M1 or M2 configuration.

To activate the desired configuration with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:

- M1
- M2

Display in the instrument cluster

The selected program corresponds to the number of illuminated fields.

Launch Control

Concept

Launch Control enables optimum acceleration on surfaces with good traction under dry surrounding conditions.

General information

The use of Launch Control causes premature component wear since this function represents a very heavy load for the vehicle.

Do not use Launch Control during the break-in period.

Do not steer the steering wheel when driving off with Launch Control.

Additional information:

Breaking-in period, refer to page 265.

Functional requirements

Launch Control is available when the engine is at operating temperature. The engine is at operating temperature after an uninterrupted trip of at least 6 miles/10 km.

Start with launch control

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. Deactivate Dynamic Stability Control.

   DSC Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 189.
3. Select sequential mode with gear 1 and Drivelogic program S3.
4. With your left foot, forcefully press down on the brake.
5. Press and hold down the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position, kickdown.

   A destination flag is displayed in the instrument cluster.

   Keep the accelerator pedal in this position.
6. The starting engine speed adjusts. Within 3 seconds, release the brake. The vehicle accelerates.

   Upshifting occurs automatically as long as the destination flag is displayed and the accelerator pedal is not released.

Repeated use during a trip

After Launch Control has been used, it is necessary to drive a certain distance before Launch Control can be used again. Launch Control adjusts to the surrounding conditions, when used again.

After using Launch Control

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC Dynamic Stability Control again as soon as possible.

System limits

An experienced driver may be able to achieve better acceleration values in DSC OFF mode.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3987
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Electronic unlocking of the transmission lock

General information

Electronically unlock the transmission lock to maneuver vehicle from a danger area.

Unlocking is possible, if the starter can spin the engine.

Before unlocking the transmission lock, set the parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

Engaging selector lever position N

1. Press and hold down brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button. The starter must audibly start. Hold the Start/Stop button pressed.
3. With your free hand, press and hold the selector lever in selector lever position N, until selector lever position N is displayed in the instrument cluster.

   A Check Control message is displayed.
4. Release Start/Stop button and selector lever.
5. Release brake, as soon as the starter stops.
6. Maneuver the vehicle from the danger area and secure it against moving on its own.

Additional information:

Tow-starting/towing, refer to page 321.

M Engine Dynamics Control

Concept

The M Engine Dynamics Control affects the response of the vehicle to accelerator pedal movements.

General information

The system offers several different types of engine response behavior:

Program	Response behavior
"EFFICIENT"	Efficient, comfortable. Minimal consumption. Ideal, for instance in city traffic or on snow.
"SPORT"	Sporty, dynamic.
"SPORT PLUS"	Spontaneous, direct. Maximum dynamics.

The "SPORT" and "SPORT PLUS" programs change the sound characteristics of the exhaust gas system. The sound takes on a sporty nature.

Selecting a channel

Using the button

Press the button repeatedly until the desired program is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Via iDrive

It is possible to configure the required program for buttons M1 or M2.

1. "CAR"
2. "M setup"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4. "Engine"
5. Select the desired channel.

   The setting is immediately applied with active M1 or M2 configuration.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3988

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

To activate the desired configuration with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:

▷ M1

▷ M2

Display in the instrument cluster

Engine Dynamics Control with selected program with activated Display of the system states of the driving dynamics.

Sound control

Concept

The sound control function changes the sound characteristics of the exhaust gas system.

General information

When sound control is switched on, the sound of the exhaust gas system takes on a sporty nature.

When sound control is switched off, the sound is focused on comfort.

During the engine warm-up phase, sound control does not have any effect on the sound of the exhaust gas system.

Additional information:

High-performance engine, refer to page 264.

Selecting a channel

Using the button

Press button to activate or deactivate the sound control.

The LED lights up when sound control is switched on.

Via iDrive

It is possible to configure the required program for buttons M1 or M2.

1. "CAR"
2. "M setup"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4. "Sound Control"
5. Select the desired channel.

   The setting is immediately applied with active M1 or M2 configuration.

To activate the desired configuration with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:

▷ M1

▷ M2

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3989
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Displays

Vehicle features and options

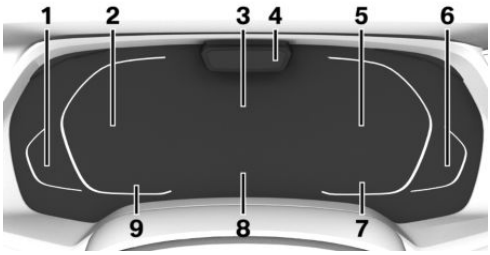
This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Instrument cluster

General information

Some of the displays in the instrument cluster may differ from the illustrations in the Owner's Manual.

Overview



1 Fuel gauge 143
Range 145

2 Speedometer

3 Central display area 137
Navigation display

4 Depending on the equipment: Driver Attention Camera

5 Tachometer 143
Selection lists 148
Widgets 138
Trip odometer, see Trip data 148
M Steptronic Sport transmission: gear display with Drivelogic 144
Driving Dynamics System 145

6 Engine oil temperature 144

7 External temperature 144

8 Check Control 138

9 Speed Limit Info 146
Time 59

Central display area

Depending on the equipment and configuration, the following is displayed in the central display area of the instrument cluster:

- Navigation displays such as the map view or, if destination guidance is active, a route preview with destination guidance information.
- Displays showing service notifications.

Some displays in the central display area can be configured individually.

The displays may vary depending on the equipment version and country variant.

Adjusting

Individual displays in the instrument cluster can be configured individually.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument panel"
5. Select the desired setting.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3990

Widgets

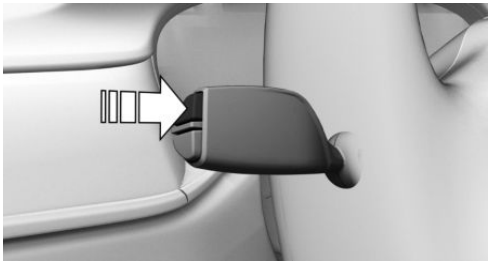
Concept

Displays for specific functions can be displayed in the instrument cluster.

The following displays can be selected:

- Current entertainment source, e.g., radio.
- Torque and power.
- Trip data.
- Consumption display.
- Tire data.

Selecting



Continue to press the button on the turn signal lever until the desired widget is selected.

Display

Consumption display

Concept

Information about consumption can be displayed in the form of a consumption display as a widget in the instrument cluster, for example.

Average consumption

The average consumption indicates the fuel consumption when driving a specific route.

Current consumption

The current consumption displays the current consumption of fuel. Check whether you are currently driving in an efficient and environmentally-friendly manner.

Energy recovery

During energy recovery, the kinetic energy of the vehicle is converted into electric energy during coasting. The vehicle battery is partially charged and fuel consumption can be reduced.

Tire data

Information about wheels and tires can be displayed in the instrument cluster as widget.

Check Control

Concept

The Check Control system monitors functions in the vehicle and notifies you of malfunctions in the monitored systems.

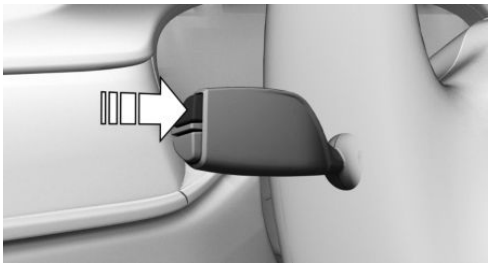
General information

A Check Control message is displayed as a combination of indicator or warning lights and text messages in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, in the Head-up Display.

In addition, an acoustic signal may sound and a text message may appear on the Control Display.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3991
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Hiding Check Control messages



Press the button on the turn signal lever.

Continuous display

Some Check Control messages are displayed continuously and are not cleared until the malfunction is eliminated. If several malfunctions occur at once, the messages are displayed consecutively.

The messages can be hidden for approx. 8 seconds. After this time, they are displayed again automatically.

Temporary display

Some Check Control messages are hidden automatically after approx. 20 seconds. The Check Control messages are stored and can be displayed again later.

Displaying stored Check Control messages

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. ⚠ "Check Control messages"
4. Select the text message.

Display

Check Control

⚠ At least one Check Control message is displayed or stored.

Text messages

Text messages in combination with a symbol in the instrument cluster explain a Check Control message and the meaning of the indicator/warning lights.

Supplementary text messages

Additional information, such as the reason for an error or malfunction or the required action, can be called up via Check Control.

With urgent messages the added text will be automatically displayed on the Control Display.

Depending on the Check Control message, further help can be selected.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. ⚠ "Check Control messages"
4. Select the desired text message.
5. Select the desired setting.

Messages after trip completion

Certain messages displayed while driving are displayed again after drive-ready state is switched off.

Indicator/warning lights

Concept

Indicator/warning lights in the instrument cluster display the status of some functions in the vehicle and indicate when a malfunction is present in the monitored systems.

General information

The indicator/warning lights can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when drive-ready state is switched on.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3992

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Red lights

Safety belt reminder

Indicator light flashes or is illuminated: safety belt on the driver or passenger side is not buckled. The safety belt reminder can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly.

Safety belt reminder for rear seats

The safety belt is not buckled on the corresponding rear seat.

The displays may vary depending on the equipment version and country variant.

Airbag system

Airbag system and belt tensioner may not be working.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Parking brake

The parking brake is set.

Additional information:

For releasing the parking brake, refer to page 123.

Brake system

Braking system impaired. Continue to drive moderately.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Front collision mitigation

The indicator light is illuminated: pre-warning. Brake and increase distance.

Indicator light flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Additional information:

Front collision mitigation, refer to page 165.

Person warning with City braking function

Indicator light flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: imminent collision with a detected person or a cyclist.

Intervene immediately by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

Additional information:

Person warning with City braking function, refer to page 170.

Steering and traffic jam assistant

Indicator light flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: the system will be switched off.

Additional information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, refer to page 204.

Yellow lights

Steering and traffic jam assistant

The indicator light lights up and an acoustic signal may sound: a system interruption is imminent.

The indicator warning light flashes: lane marking driven over.

Additional information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, refer to page 204.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3993
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Antilock Braking System ABS

The Brake Assistant function may not activate. Avoid abrupt braking. Take the longer braking distance into account.

Have the system immediately checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control

The indicator light flashes: DSC controls the drive and braking forces. The vehicle is stabilized. Reduce speed and modify your driving style to the driving circumstances.

The indicator light lights up: DSC has malfunctioned.

Have the system immediately checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

DSC Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 189.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control deactivated

DSC is deactivated or M Dynamic Mode MDM is activated.

Additional information:

- DSC Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 189.
- M Dynamic Mode MDM, refer to page 190.

Flat Tire Monitor FTM

The FTM signals a loss of tire inflation pressure in a tire.

Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

Additional information:

Run-flat tires, refer to page 292.

Tire pressure monitor

The indicator light illuminates: the Tire Pressure Monitor reports a low tire inflation pressure or a flat tire. Follow the information in the Check Control message.

The indicator light flashes and is then illuminated continuously: flat tires or tire pressure losses cannot be detected.

- Interference caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- In the case of tires with special approval: the tire pressure monitor was unable to complete the reset. Reset the system again.
- A wheel without wheel electronics is mounted: have it checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop as needed.
- Malfunction: have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Tire pressure monitor, refer to page 286.

Steering system

Steering system may not be working.

Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Emissions

- The warning light lights up:

  Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.
- The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:

  This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

  Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3994
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

Additional information:

Socket for Onboard Diagnosis, refer to page 311.

Green lights

Safety belt reminder for rear seats

The safety belt is buckled on the corresponding rear seat.

The displays may vary depending on the equipment version and country variant.

Turn signal

Turn signal switched on.

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator light indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

Additional information:

Turn signal, refer to page 125.

Parking lights

Parking lights are switched on.

Additional information:

Parking lights/low beams, refer to page 155.

Low beams

Low beams are switched on.

Additional information:

Parking lights/low beams, refer to page 155.

Lane departure warning

The indicator light lights up: the system is activated. A lane marking was detected on at least one side of the vehicle and warnings can be issued.

Additional information:

Lane departure warning, refer to page 173.

High-beam Assistant

High-beam Assistant is switched on.

High beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the traffic situation.

Additional information:

High-beam Assistant, refer to page 157.

Automatic Hold

Automatic Hold is activated. The vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

Additional information:

Automatic Hold, refer to page 123.

Cruise control

Indicator light is illuminated: the system is active.

Additional information:

Cruise control, refer to page 195.

Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go function

The indicator light lights up: the system is switched on.

Additional information:

Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function, refer to page 197.

Steering assistant

Indicator light lights up: the system supports the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3995
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Additional information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, refer to page 204.

Blue lights

High beams

High beams are switched on.

Additional information:

High beams, refer to page 125.

Gray lights

Steering and traffic jam assistant

Indicator light is illuminated: the system is ready.

Additional information:

Steering and Lane Control Assistant, refer to page 204.

Fuel gauge

Concept

The current fill level of the fuel tank is displayed.

General information

Vehicle tilt position may cause the display to vary.

Additional information:

Refueling, refer to page 272.

Display

An arrow beside the fuel pump symbol shows which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is on.

The current range is displayed as numerical value.

Indicator light in the instrument cluster

The yellow indicator light illuminates, once the fuel reserve is reached.

Tachometer

General information

A yellow prewarning field and a red prewarning field display the permitted speed range. The permitted engine speed increases as the engine oil temperature increases.

Always avoid engine speeds in the red warning field. In this range, the fuel supply is reduced to protect the engine.

Standby state and drive-ready state

The lettering OFF in the instrument cluster indicates that drive-ready state is switched off and standby state is switched on.

The lettering READY in the in the instrument cluster indicates that the drive-ready state is switched on.

Additional information:

Operating state of the vehicle, refer to page 39.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3996

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Engine oil temperature

Display

- Cold engine: the pointer is at the low temperature end. Drive at moderate engine and vehicle speeds.
- Normal operating temperature: the pointer is in the middle or in the lower half of the temperature display.
- Hot engine: the pointer is at the high end of the temperature range. In addition, a Check Control message is displayed.

Additional information:

Coolant level, refer to page 308.

Indicator light in the instrument cluster

A red indicator light is displayed.

External temperature

General information

If the indicator drops to +37 °F/+3 °C or lower, a signal sounds.

A Check Control message is displayed.

There is an increased risk of ice on roads.

Safety information

Warning

Even at temperatures above +37 °F/+3 °C there can be a risk of icy roads, for instance on bridges or shady sections of the road. There is a risk of accident. Modify your driving style to the weather conditions at low temperatures.

Digital tachometer

General information

The digital tachometer is permanently displayed in the instrument cluster.

Adjusting the unit

Depending on the country version, it may be possible to set the unit for the digital tachometer.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Units"
5. "Distance"
6. Select the desired setting.

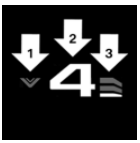
Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Display

The current speed is displayed in the instrument cluster.

M Steptronic Sport transmission: gear display with Drivelogic

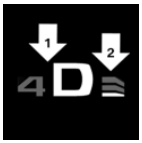
Sequential mode



- Gear shift indicator, arrow 1.
- Engaged gear, arrow 2.
- Selected Drivelogic program, arrow 3.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3997
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Drive mode



- Engaged gear together with a D, arrow 1.
- Selected Drivelogic program, arrow 2.

Driving dynamics systems

Concept

The driving dynamics system states are displayed in the instrument cluster.

Display

Symbols

Symbols	Description
	M Engine Dynamics Control, refer to page 135.
	Adaptive M chassis, refer to page 229.
	Servotronic, refer to page 188.

Range

Concept

The range indicates the distance that can still be covered with the current fuel level.

General information

The estimated range available with the remaining fuel is permanently displayed in the instrument cluster.

With a low remaining range, a Check Control message is briefly displayed. With a sporty driving style, for instance fast cornering, the engine function is not always ensured.

The Check Control message appears continuously below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km.

Safety information

NOTICE

With a driving range of less than 30 miles/50 km the engine may no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of damage to property. Refuel promptly.

Display

The current range is displayed as numerical value next to the fuel gauge.

Service notifications

Concept

The function displays the service notifications and the corresponding maintenance scopes.

General information

After switching on drive-ready state, the instrument cluster briefly displays available driving distance or time to the next scheduled maintenance.

A service advisor can read out the current service notifications from your vehicle key.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3998
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Some information on service notifications can also be shown on the BMW display key.

Display

Detailed information on service notifications

More information on the type of service required may be displayed on the Control Display.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Required services"
   Maintenance work and legally mandated inspections are displayed.
4. Select an entry to call up detailed information.

Symbols

Symbols	Description
OK	No service is currently required.
△	The time for recommended maintenance or a legally mandated inspection is approaching.
!	Service interval is exceeded.

Entering appointment dates

Enter the dates for the mandatory vehicle inspections.

Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Required services"
4. "Vehicle inspection"
5. "Date:"
6. Select the desired setting.

Gear shift indicator

Concept

The system recommends the most efficient gear for the current driving situation.

General information

The gear shift indicator is active in the sequential mode of the M Steptronic Sport transmission.

Displays

Symbol	Description
	Shift up to efficient gear.
	Shift down to efficient gear.

Speed Limit Info

Speed Limit Info

Concept

Speed Limit Info shows the currently valid speed limit in the instrument cluster and, if necessary, the Head-up Display.

General information

The camera in the area of the interior mirror detects traffic signs at the edge of the road as well as overhead sign posts.

Traffic signs with extra symbols are considered and compared with the vehicle's onboard data. The traffic sign will then be either displayed or ignored depending on the situation in the instrument cluster and the Head-up Display.

With the navigation system, the system takes into account the information stored in the navigation data and also displays speed limits present on routes without signs.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-3999
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windshield.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Displaying Speed Limit Info

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, Speed Limit Info is displayed permanently in the instrument cluster or via iDrive.

Activating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument panel"
5. "Speed limit information"

Display

Speed Limit Info

Current speed limit.

Depending on the equipment, Speed Limit Info not available.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 35.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional and may provide incorrect information in the following situations:

- When traffic signs are fully or partially concealed by objects, stickers or paint.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- In areas not covered by the navigation system.
- When roads differ from the navigation, such as due to changes in road routing.
- In case of electronic traffic signs.
- When passing buses or trucks with traffic signs applied to them.
- If the traffic signs are non-conforming.
- When traffic signs that are valid for a parallel road are detected.
- In the presence of country-specific road signs and road configurations.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4000

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Selection lists

Concept

Lists can be displayed and, if necessary, used for certain functions in the instrument cluster or the Head-up Display.

- Entertainment source.
- Current audio source.
- List of most recent telephone calls.

If necessary, the corresponding menu will open on the Control Display.

Display

Depending on the equipment version, the list in the instrument cluster may differ from the illustration.

Displaying and using the list

Button	Function
	Change the entertainment source. Pressing the button again will close the currently displayed list.
	Show list of most recent telephone calls.
	Turn the thumbwheel to select the desired setting. Press the thumbwheel to confirm the setting. The currently selected list can be displayed in the instrument cluster by turning the thumbwheel.

Trip data

Concept

Values for the trip, such as the average consumption or trip miles, are displayed.

General information

The trip data can be displayed on the Control Display and in the instrument cluster.

The values can be displayed and reset depending on various intervals, such as after refueling.

Display on the Control Display

Overview

The following information is displayed depending on the equipment and the set interval and drive mode:

- Configured interval for displaying trip data.
- Average fuel consumption depending on the configured interval.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4001
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

- Average speed.
- Total time for shut off engine through the Auto Start/Stop function.
- Consumption history in form of a chart.

Displays

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Trip data"

Consumption history

The average consumption is shown in the consumption history in form of a chart based on the distance traveled.

Display in the instrument cluster

Depending on the equipment, information about the route can be displayed as widget in the instrument cluster.

The following information is displayed:

- Total mileage.
- Configured interval for displaying trip data.
- Distance traveled depending on the configured interval.
- Average speed.

Selecting and setting widgets in the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Widgets, refer to page 138.

Adjusting the display of the trip data

The intervals for the display of the trip data in the instrument cluster and on the Control Display are adjustable.

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Trip data"
4. "Data since"
5. Select the desired setting:

- "Start of trip ( )": the values are automatically reset approx. four hours after the vehicle has come to a standstill.
- "Refueling ( )": the values are automatically reset after refueling with a larger quantity of fuel.
- "Factory": Average consumption since delivery from the factory.

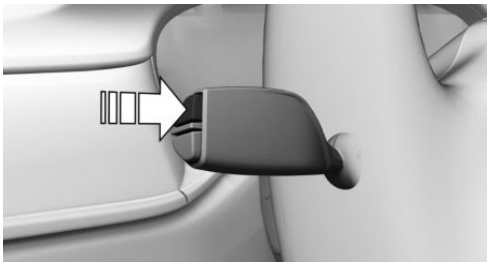
  The values since the time of the factory delivery are displayed.
- "Individual ( )": the values since the last manual reset are displayed. The values can be reset at any time.

Resetting average values manually

The following interval can be reset manually at any time: "Individual ( )".

With the button on the turn signal lever:

1. Continue to press the button on the turn signal lever until the widget for the trip data is selected.



2. Press and hold the button on the turn signal lever.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Trip data"
4. "Data since"
5. "Reset individual"

The average values and counters are reset. Once the average values and counters have

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4002
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

been reset, the following interval is automatically set: "Individual ( )".

Sport displays

Concept

The Sport displays especially support a sporty driving style.

Display on the Control Display

Overview

The following information is displayed:

- Torque.
- Power.

Displays

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Sport displays"

Display in the instrument cluster

The Sport displays can be displayed in form of a widget in the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Widgets in the instrument cluster, refer to page 138.

Vehicle status

General information

The status can be displayed and actions performed for several systems.

Opening the vehicle status

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"

Information at a glance

Symbols	Description
(!)	"Flat Tire Monitor": status of the run-flat tires, refer to page 292.
(!)	"Tire Pressure Monitor": status of the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 286.
	"Engine oil level": electronic oil measurement, refer to page 304.
⚠	"Check Control messages": displaying stored Check Control messages, refer to page 138.
	"Required services": displaying service notifications, refer to page 145.

Head-up Display

Concept

This system projects important information into the driver's field of vision, for instance the speed.

The driver can get information without averting his or her eyes from the road.

General information

Follow the information on cleaning the Head-up Display.

Overview

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4003
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Switching on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Head-up display"

Display

Overview

The following information is displayed on the Head-up Display:

- Vehicle speed.
- Navigation instructions.
- Check Control messages.
- Selection list in the instrument cluster.
- Driver assistance systems.

Some of this information is only displayed briefly as needed.

Selecting displays in the Head-up Display

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

M view

General information

In the M view, the displays on the Head-up Display switch from the standard view to a more sporty, M-specific view.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "M setup"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4. "Head-up displ."
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "M VIEW": in the selected configuration, the M View is always displayed in the Head-up Display.
   - "STANDARD": in the selected configuration, the standard view is always displayed in the Head-up Display.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the view in M Setup

In the M Setup, it is possible to make different settings for the Head-up Display.

1. "CAR"
2. "M setup"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4. "Head-up displ."
5. Select the desired setting.

Setting the brightness

The brightness is automatically adjusted to the ambient brightness.

The basic setting can be adjusted manually.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Brightness"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is set.
7. Press the Controller.

When the low beams are switched on, the brightness of the Head-up Display can be additionally influenced using the instrument lighting.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4004

Adjusting the height

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Height"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired height is reached.
7. Press the Controller.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

The height of the Head-up Display can also be stored using the memory function.

Setting the rotation

The Head-up Display view can be rotated.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Rotation"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is selected.
7. Press the Controller.

Additional settings

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "Speed Limit Assistance": access the settings for the speed assistant.
   - "Display infotainment lists in": set up if the selection lists are displayed in the instrument cluster or the Head-up Display.
   - "Reduced height": if not all of the information is in the driver's field of vision, the information can be displayed in the lower section of the Head-up Display.

Visibility of the display

The visibility of the displays in the Head-up Display is influenced by the following factors:

- Seat position.
- Objects on the cover of the Head-up Display.
- Sunglasses with certain polarization filters.
- Wet roads.
- Unfavorable light conditions.

If the image is distorted, have the basic settings checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Special windshield

The windshield is part of the system.

The shape of the windshield makes it possible to display a precise image.

A film in the windshield prevents double images from being generated.

For this reason, it is strongly suggested to have the special windshield replaced by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, if necessary.

Shift point indicator

Concept

The shift lights indicate the upshift point at which the best possible acceleration can be achieved.

General information

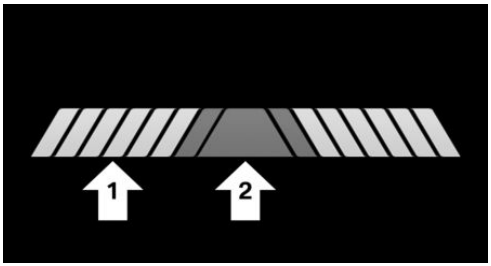
If the Head-up Display is switched on, the Shift Lights will be displayed in the Head-up Display.

Shift lights are only shown in the Head-up Display in the M view.

If the Head-up Display is switched off, the Shift Lights are displayed in the instrument cluster.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4005
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

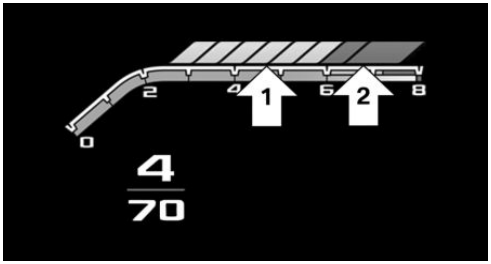
Shift lights in the instrument cluster



- Current engine speed is displayed in the tachometer.
- Arrow 1: successive yellow illuminated fields indicate the upcoming shift moment.
- Arrow 2: fields are illuminated in red. Do not wait any further to shift.

When the maximum RPM is reached, the entire display flashes. The fuel supply is reduced to protect the engine.

Shift point indicator in the Head-up Display



- Current engine speed is displayed in the tachometer.
- Arrow 1: successive yellow illuminated fields indicate the upcoming shift moment.
- Arrow 2: fields are illuminated in red. Do not wait any further to shift.

When the maximum speed is reached, the entire display flashes red and the supply of fuel is interrupted in order to protect the engine.

Lights

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Lights and lighting

Switches in the vehicle

The light switch element is located next to the steering wheel.

Symbol	Function
0	Lights off. Daytime running lights.
≡D⊂	Parking lights.
≡CA	Automatic headlight control. Adaptive light functions.
≡D	Low beams.
	Instrument lighting.
P≡	Right roadside parking light.
≡P	Left roadside parking light.

Automatic headlight control

Concept

The low beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness, for example in tunnels, in twilight or if there is precipitation.

General information

A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be switched on.

Activating

Position of switch: ≡D

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low beams are switched on.

System limits

The automatic headlight control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment of lighting conditions.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4007
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

For example, the sensors are unable to detect fog or hazy weather. In these situations, switch the lights on manually.

Parking lights, low beams and roadside parking lights

General information

Position of switch: 0 , ,

If the driver's door is opened when the drive-ready state is switched off, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off after a period of time.

Parking lights

Switching on

Position of switch:

The vehicle is illuminated on all sides.

Do not use the parking lights for extended periods; otherwise, they might drain the battery and it would then be impossible to switch on drive-ready state.

Low beams

Switching on

Position of switch:

The low beams illuminate when drive-ready state is switched on.

Roadside parking lights

When the vehicle is parked, a one-sided roadside parking light can be switched on.

Button	Function
	Right roadside parking light on/off.
	Left roadside parking light on/off.

Welcome lights

General information

The exterior lighting is switched on automatically during unlocking. Depending on the equipment, the exterior lighting of the vehicle can be set individually.

Activating/deactivating

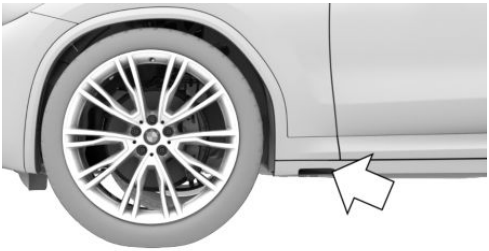
Position of switch: ,

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Welcome and goodbye"

     When unlocking the vehicle, individual light functions are switched on for a limited time.
   - ▷ "Welcome Light Carpet"

     The area next to the vehicle is illuminated for a limited time.

LED light carpet



The light source is located in the position indicated.

Keep the light source clean and unobstructed.

Pathway lighting

General information

For the illumination of the vehicle's surroundings after exiting the vehicle, the exterior lighting can be switched on for a defined period of time.

Activating

After switching off the drive-ready state, briefly push the indicator lever forward.

Setting the duration

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "Pathway lighting"
5. Select the desired setting.
6. "OK"

Daytime running lights

General information

Switch position:

- ▷ 0 ,
- ▷ Depending on the national-market version:

The daytime running lights light up when drive-ready state is switched on.

Depending on the national-market version: after switching off the drive-ready state, the parking lights will illuminate in position .

Activating/deactivating

In some countries, daytime running lights are mandatory, so it may not be possible to deactivate the daytime running lights in front.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "Daytime driving lights"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Adaptive light functions

Concept

Adaptive light functions enable dynamic illumination of the roadway.

General information

The adaptive light functions may consist of one system or multiple systems, depending on the equipment version:

- ▷ Adaptive Light Control.
- ▷ Cornering light.

Activating

Position of switch:

The adaptive light functions are active when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Adaptive Light Control

General information

Depending on the steering angle and other parameters, the light from the headlight follows the course of the road.

To avoid blinding oncoming traffic, the Adaptive Light Control does not swivel to the opposite lane when the vehicle is at a standstill.

Cornering light

In tight curves, for instance on mountainous roads or when turning, an additional, cornering light is switched on that lights up the inside of

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4009
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

the curve when the vehicle is moving below a certain speed.

The cornering light is automatically switched on depending on the steering angle or, where applicable, the use of turn signals.

When driving in reverse, the cornering lights may be automatically switched on regardless of the steering angle.

Adaptive headlight range control

The adaptive headlight range control feature balances out acceleration and braking processes as well as the vehicle load conditions in order to avoid dazzling oncoming traffic. Illumination of the road is optimized.

High-beam Assistant

Concept

The high-beam Assistant detects other traffic participants early on and automatically switches the high beams on or off depending on the traffic situation.

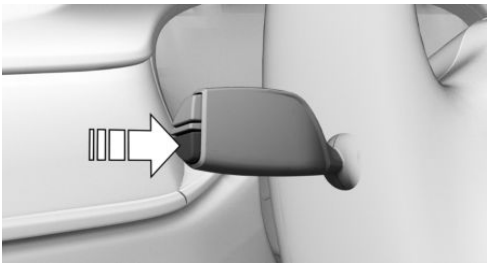
General information

The high-beam Assistant ensures that the high beams are switched on, whenever the traffic situation allows. In the low speed range, the high beams are not switched on by the system.

The system responds to light from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to ambient lighting, for instance in towns and cities.

The high beams can be switched on and off manually at any time.

Activating



Position of switch:

Press the button on the turn signal lever.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low beams are switched on.

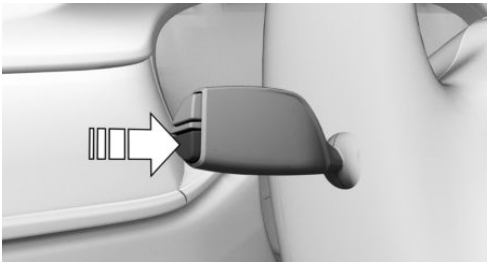
The headlights are automatically switched between low beams and high beams.

The blue indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up when the system switches on the high beams.

The high-beam Assistant is deactivated when manually switching the high beams on and off.

To reactivate the high-beam Assistant, press the button on the turn signal lever.

Deactivating



Press the button on the turn signal lever.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4010
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Sensitivity of the high-beam Assistant

General information

The sensitivity of the high-beam Assistant can be adjusted.

Safety information

Warning

If adjustments have been made or the sensitivity has been modified, oncoming traffic may be momentarily blinded. There is a risk of accident. If adjustments have been made and the sensitivity has been modified, make sure that oncoming traffic is not momentarily blinded. Switch off the high beams manually if required.

Adjusting the sensitivity

Pull the turn signal lever for approximately 10 seconds. The system responds more sensitively.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Resetting the sensitivity

Pull the turn signal lever again for approx. 10 seconds.

The sensitivity of the high-beam Assistant is reset to the factory settings.

System limits

The high-beam Assistant cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of when to use the high beams. In situation that require this, therefore switch off manually.

The system is not fully functional in the following situations, and driver intervention may be necessary:

- In very unfavorable weather conditions, such as fog or heavy precipitation.
- When detecting poorly-lit road users such as pedestrians, cyclists, horseback riders and wagons; when driving close to train or ship traffic; or at animal crossings.
- In tight curves, on hilltops or in depressions, in crossing traffic or half-obscured oncoming traffic on highways.
- In poorly-lit towns and cities or in the presence of highly reflective signs.
- When the windshield in front of the interior mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.

Instrument lighting

Functional requirement

The parking lights or low beams must be switched on to adjust the brightness.

Adjusting

Adjust the brightness with the thumbwheel.

Interior lights

General information

Depending on the equipment version, interior lights, footwell lights, entry lights, ambient lighting, and speaker lighting are automatically controlled.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4011
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

Interior lights

Reading lights

Switching the interior lights on/off

Press the button.

To switch off permanently: press the button and hold for approx. 3 seconds.

The interior lights in the rear of the vehicle can be switched on and off independently. The button is located in the rear roofliner.

Switching the reading lights on/off

Press the button.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the reading lights are located next to the interior lights in the front and rear.

Ambient light

General information

Depending on the equipment version, lighting can be adjusted for some lights in the car's interior.

Switching on/off

The ambient light is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked, and switched off when the vehicle is locked.

If the ambient light was deactivated via iDrive, it will not be switched on when the vehicle is unlocked.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Ambient lighting"

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Selecting the color scheme

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Color"
5. Select the desired setting.

Setting the brightness

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Brightness"
5. Select the desired setting.

Dimmed while driving

Some lights of the interior lighting are dimmed when the vehicle is driven in the dark.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Dimmed for night driving"

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

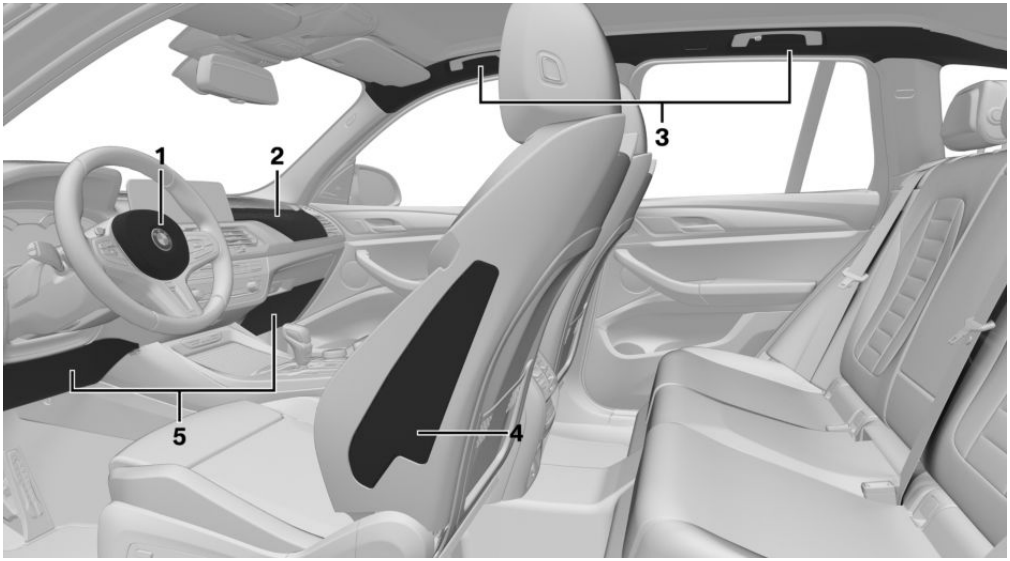
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4012
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Safety

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Airbags



1 Front airbag, driver
2 Front airbag, front passenger
3 Head airbag
4 Side airbag
5 Knee airbag

Front airbags

Front airbags help protect the driver and the front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which safety belts alone would not provide adequate protection.

Side airbag

In the event of a side impact, the side airbag protects the side of the body in the chest and lap area.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4013
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Head airbag

In the event of a side impact, the head airbag protects the head.

Ejection Mitigation

The head airbag system is designed as an ejection mitigation countermeasure to reduce the likelihood of ejections of vehicle occupants through side windows during rollovers or side impact events.

Knee airbag

The knee airbag protects the legs in the event of a frontal impact.

Protective effect

General information

Airbags are not triggered in every impact situation, e.g., in less severe accidents.

Information on optimum effect of the airbags

⚠ Warning

If the seat position is incorrect or the deployment area of the airbags is impaired, the airbag system cannot provide protection as intended and may cause additional injuries due to triggering. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Follow the information on achieving the optimum protective effect of the airbag system.

- Keep a distance from the airbags.
- Always grasp the steering wheel on the steering wheel rim. Hold your hands at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions, to keep the risk of injury to your hands or arms as low as possible when the airbag is triggered.
- Adjust seat and steering wheel so that hands can be crossed over the steering wheel. Select the settings so that the shoulder rests against the backrest when crossing the hands and the upper body is as far back as possible while still maintaining a comfortable grip on the steering wheel.
- Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e., keeps his or her feet and legs in the floor area and does not support them on the dashboard.
- Make sure that occupants keep their heads away from the side airbag.
- There should be no additional persons, animals or objects between an airbag and a person.
- Dashboard and windshield on the front passenger side must stay clear - do not attach adhesive labels or coverings and do not attach brackets or cables, for instance for GPS devices or mobile phones.
- Do not apply adhesive materials to the airbag cover panels, do not cover them or modify them in any way.
- Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area.
- Do not attach slip covers, seat cushions or other objects to the front passenger seat that are not specifically suited for seats with integrated side airbags.
- Do not hang pieces of clothing, such as jackets, over the backrests.
- Never modify either the individual components or the wiring in the airbag system. This also applies to steering wheel covers, the dashboard, and the seats.
- Do not remove the airbag system.

Even when you follow all instructions very closely, injury from contact with the airbags cannot be fully ruled out in certain situations.

The ignition and inflation noise may lead to short-term and, in most cases, temporary hearing impairment in sensitive occupants.

Vehicle modifications for a person with disabilities may affect the air bag system; contact BMW Customer Relations for further information.

Warnings and information on the airbags are also found on the sun visors.

Functional readiness of the airbag system

Safety information

Warning

Individual components can be hot after triggering of the airbag system. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch individual components.

Warning

Improperly executed work can lead to failure, malfunction or unintentional triggering of the airbag system. In the case of a malfunction, the airbag system might not trigger as intended despite the accident severity. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Have the airbag system checked, repaired, dismantled and scrapped by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Display in the instrument cluster

When drive-ready state is switched on, the warning light in the instrument cluster lights up briefly and thereby indicates the function readiness of the entire airbag system and the belt tensioners.

Malfunction

▷ Warning light does not come on when drive-ready state is switched on.

▷ The warning light lights up continuously.

Have the system checked.

Strength of the driver's and front-seat passenger airbag

General information

The explosive power that activates driver's/front-seat passenger airbags very much depends on the positions of the driver's/front passenger seat.

To maintain the accuracy of this function over the long term, calibrate the front seats as soon as a respective message appears on the Control Display.

Calibrating the front seats

Warning

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

A corresponding message appears on the Control Display.

1. Press the switch and move the respective seat all the way forward, until it stops.
2. Press the switch forward again. The seat still moves forward slightly.
3. Readjust the seat to the desired position.

The calibration procedure is completed when the message on the Control Display disappears.

If the message continues to be displayed, repeat the calibration.

If the message does not disappear after a repeat calibration, have the system checked as soon as possible.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4015
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Automatic deactivation of the front-seat passenger airbags

Concept

The system reads if the front passenger seat is occupied by measuring the human body's resistance.

Front, knee, and side airbag on the front passenger's side are activated or deactivated.

General information

Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, refer to the safety information and instructions for children on the front passenger seat, see Children.

Safety information

Warning

To ensure the front-seat passenger airbag function, the system must be able to detect whether a person is sitting in the front passenger seat. The entire seat cushion area must be used for this purpose. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the front passenger keeps his or her feet in the floor area.

Malfunction of the automatic deactivation system

When transporting older children and adults, the front-seat passenger airbags may be deactivated in certain sitting positions. In this case, the indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up.

In this case, change the sitting position so that the front-seat passenger airbags are activated and the indicator light goes out.

If it is not possible to activate the airbags, have the person sit in the rear.

To enable correct recognition of the occupied seat cushion:

- Do not attach covers, cushions, ball mats or other items to the front passenger seat unless they are specifically determined to be safe for use on the front passenger seat.
- Do not place any electronic devices on the front passenger seat if a child restraint system is to be installed on it.
- Do not place objects under the seat that can push against the seat from below.
- No moisture in or on the seat.

Indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbags

The indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbag in the roofliner indicates the operating state of the front-seat passenger airbag.

The light indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.

After drive-ready state is switched on, the light briefly lights up and then indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.

- The indicator light lights up when a child is properly seated in a child restraint system or when the seat is empty. The airbags on the front passenger side are not activated.
- The indicator light does not light up when, for instance a correctly seated person of sufficient size is detected on the seat. The airbags on the front passenger side are activated.

Detected child restraint systems

The system generally detects children seated in a child restraint system, particularly in child restraint systems required by NHTSA at the point in time when the vehicle was manufactured. After installing a child restraint system, make sure

that the indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up. This indicates that the child restraint system has been detected and the front-seat passenger airbags are not activated.

Intelligent Safety

Concept

Intelligent Safety enables central operation of the driver assistance systems.

General information

Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, Intelligent Safety consists of one or more systems that can help prevent an imminent collision.

- Front collision mitigation.
- Evasion Assistant.
- Person warning with City braking function.
- Lane departure warning.
- Blind spot collision warning.
- Side collision mitigation.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Switching on/off

Some Intelligent Safety systems are automatically active after every departure. Some Intelligent Safety systems activate according to the last setting.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4017
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly. The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions, for instance setting for warning time.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Front collision mitigation

Concept

The system may prevent some accidents. In the event of an accident, the system may reduce impact speed.

The system sounds a warning before an imminent collision and activates brakes independently, if needed.

General information

Sensors detect the traffic situation.

Intersection collision warning when equipped with a radar sensor: in addition, a warning is issued at intersections and junctions if a risk of collision with crossing traffic is detected.

The approach control warning is available even if cruise control has been deactivated.

With the vehicle approaching another vehicle intentionally, the approach control warning and brake intervention are delayed in order to avoid false system reactions.

The system issues a two-phase warning of a possible risk of collision with vehicles at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h. The timing of warnings may vary with the current driving situation.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windshield.
- With radar sensor: front radar sensor.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is automatically active when the vehicle is turned on.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Manual switching off

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and Warnings"
5. "Forward Collision Mitigation"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - "Early"
   - "Medium"
   - "Late": only acute warnings are displayed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4019
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

The selected time is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Warning with braking function

Display

A warning symbol appears in the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display if a collision with a detected vehicle is imminent.

Symbol	Measure
	Symbol lights up red: prewarning. Brake and increase distance.
	Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.
 	Intersection collision warning: Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning when vehicles cross your direction of travel. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Prewarning

This warning is provided, for instance when there is impending danger of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small.

If a prewarning is provided, respond by braking as warranted.

Acute warning with braking function

An acute warning is displayed in case of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another object at a high differential speed.

Intervene in the case of an acute warning. If an acute warning is provided, the system may provide assistance, such as through braking, when there is risk of collision.

Acute warnings may be provided even when there has been no prior warning.

Brake intervention, City braking function

The warning prompts the driver to intervene. If a warning is active, the maximum braking force is used when the brake is applied. The brake pedal must be applied sufficiently quickly and forcefully.

The system may also assist in braking if there is a risk of collision.

When the vehicle is traveling at a low speed, the vehicle may come to a complete stop.

The brake intervention takes place up to approx. 50 mph/80 km/h.

The brake intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

The system's ability to detect objects may be limited in some circumstances. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the limitations of the system and actively intervene as warranted.

With radar sensor: brake intervention

The warning prompts the driver to intervene. If a warning is active, the maximum braking force is used when the brake is applied. The brake pedal must be applied sufficiently quickly and forcefully.

The system may also assist in braking if there is a risk of collision.

The vehicle can be decelerated to a standstill.

The brake intervention occurs only if driving stability has not been restricted, for instance by deactivating the DSC Dynamic Stability Control.

At speeds above approx. 130 mph/210 km/h, the brake intervention occurs as a brief braking pressure. No automatic delay occurs.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4020

The brake intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Intersection collision warning: brake intervention is not performed in the event of cross traffic.

The system's ability to detect objects may be limited in some circumstances. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the limitations of the system and actively intervene as warranted.

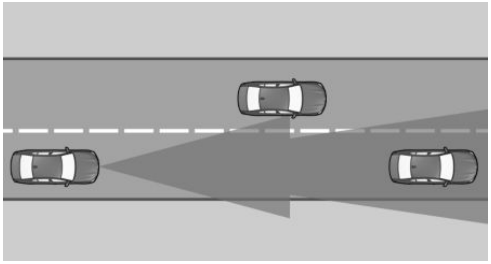
System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Detection range



The system's detection potential is limited.

Only objects that are detected by the system are taken into account.

Thus, a system reaction might not come or might come late.

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- Slow moving vehicles when you approach them at high speed.
- Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or sharply decelerating vehicles.
- Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.
- Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.
- Intersection collision warning: crossing vehicles if their speed is higher than your own speed.

Upper speed limit

If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is deactivated temporarily. When the vehicle slows down to below this speed, the system is reactivated.

Intersection collision warning: the vehicle responds to crossing traffic if its own speed is below approx. 40 mph/65 km/h.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 35.
- Radar sensors, refer to page 36.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- In tight curves.
- If the driving stability control systems are limited or deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.

Warning sensitivity

The more sensitive the warning settings are, for example the warning time, the more warnings are displayed. Therefore, there may also be an excess of premature or unjustified warnings and reactions.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4021
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Evasion Assistant

Concept

The system supports the driver in making evasive maneuvers in certain situations, such as when obstacles suddenly appear.

General information

The system issues a warning and intervenes to support the driver if a lateral evasive maneuver is possible. Sensors monitor and detect the clearance around the vehicle. If the system identifies space alongside the vehicle, it supports an evasive maneuver begun by the driver by safely providing targeted steering support.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windshield.
- Front radar sensor.
- Radar sensors, side, front.
- Radar sensors, side, rear.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Functional requirements

- Front collision mitigation is switched on.

  Front collision mitigation, refer to page 165.
- Sensors detect sufficient clearance around the vehicle.

Switching on/off

The system is automatically active when the vehicle is turned on.

Warning with evasion support

Display in the instrument cluster

A warning symbol appears in the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display if a collision with a detected vehicle is imminent.

Symbol	Measure
	Symbol lights up red: prewarning. Brake and increase distance.
	Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Acute warning with evasion support

An acute warning is displayed when there is an imminent danger of collision due to the vehicle approaching another object at a high speed.

Intervene in the case of an acute warning. The system is designed to provide assistance by taking evasive action when there is a risk of collision.

Acute warnings may be provided even when there has been no prior warning.

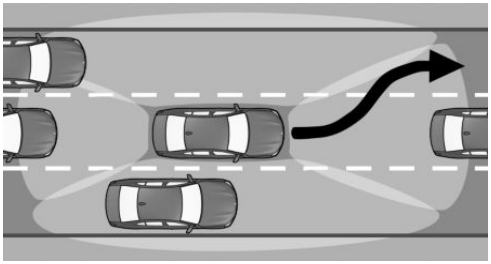
System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Detection range



The system's detection potential is limited.

Only objects that are detected by the system are taken into account.

Thus, a system reaction might not come or might come late.

The following situations may not be detected, for example:

- Slow moving vehicles when you approach them at high speed.
- Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or sharply decelerating vehicles.
- Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.
- Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 35.
- Radar sensors, refer to page 36.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- In tight curves.
- If the driving stability control systems are limited or deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.

Person warning with City braking function

Concept

The system may prevent some accidents with pedestrians. When driving at city speeds, the system will issue a warning if there is imminent risk of a collision with pedestrians, and support with a braking function.

General information

Sensors detect the traffic situation.

The system is active at speeds of approx. 3 mph/5 km/h up to approx. 40 mph/65 km/h.

The system reacts to people who are within the detection range of the system.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4023
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Sensors

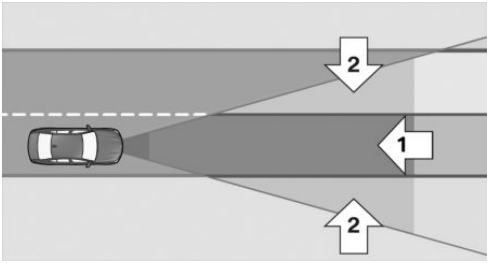
The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windshield.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Detection range



The detection area in front of the vehicle is divided into two areas:

- Central area, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.
- Expanded area, arrows 2, to the right and left of the central area.

A collision is imminent if pedestrians are located within the central area. A warning is issued about pedestrians who are located within the extended area only if they are moving in the direction of the central area.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is automatically active when the vehicle is turned on.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4024
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Manual switching off

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Warning with braking function

Display

If a collision with a detected person is imminent, a warning symbol appears on the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display.

The red symbol is displayed and a signal sounds.

Intervene immediately by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

Brake intervention

The warning prompts the driver to intervene. While a warning is active, the maximum braking force is used when the brake is applied. In order to activate the Brake Assistant function, the brakes must be applied sufficiently quickly and forcefully.

If there is a risk of collision, the system may also assist with brake intervention.

When the vehicle is traveling at a low speed, the vehicle may come to a complete stop.

The brake intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

The system's ability to detect objects may be limited in some circumstances. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the limitations of the system and actively intervene as warranted.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Detection range

The system's detection potential is limited.

Thus, a warning might not be issued or be issued late.

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- Partially covered pedestrians.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4025
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

- Pedestrians that are not detected as such because of the viewing angle or contour.
- Pedestrians outside of the detection range.
- Pedestrians having a body size less than 32 in/80 cm.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 35.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional or may not be available in the following situations:

- If the driving stability control systems are deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.

Lane departure warning

Concept

The lane departure warning alerts when the vehicle on roads with lane markings is about to leave the lane.

General information

This camera-based system warns starting at a minimum speed.

The minimum speed is country-specific and is displayed in the menu for the intelligent Safety systems.

Warnings are issued by means of a steering wheel vibration. The severity of the steering wheel vibration can be adjusted.

The time of the warning may vary depending on the current driving situation.

The system does not provide a warning if the turn signal is set before leaving the lane.

Vehicles with side collision mitigation: if in the speed range up to 130 mph/210 km/h a lane marking is crossed, the system intervenes with a brief active steering intervention in addition to vibrating. The system thus helps keep the vehicle in the lane.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing road and traffic safety. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate. Do not jerk the steering wheel in response to a warning.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Functional requirement

The camera must detect the lane markings for the lane departure warning to be active.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

▷ Cameras behind the windshield.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The lane departure warning activates automatically after departure if the function was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Manual switching off

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and Warnings"
5. "Lane Departure Warning"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Always": the system issues a warning whenever a hazardous situation is detected.
   - ▷ "Reduced": some warnings are suppressed depending on the situation, for instance during passing without a turn signal or when purposely driving over lane markings in curves.
   - ▷ "Off": no warnings are issued.

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Steering Wheel Feedback"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4027
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all Intelligent Safety systems and stored for the driver profile currently used.

Vehicles with side collision mitigation: switch steering intervention on/off

The steering intervention can be switched on and off separately for blind spot collision warning and lane departure warning.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and Warnings"
5. "Lane Departure Warning"
6. "Steering intervention"

The selected setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Display in the instrument cluster

The symbol illuminates green: at least one lane marking was detected and warnings can be issued.

Warning function

If you leave the lane

If you leave the lane and if a lane marking has been detected, the steering wheel vibrates in accordance with the steering wheel vibration setting.

When the turn signal is switched on before a lane charge, a warning is not issued.

With side collision mitigation

If in the speed range up to 130 mph/210 km/h a lane marking is crossed, the system intervenes with a brief active steering intervention in addition to vibrating. The steering intervention helps keep the vehicle in the lane. The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

Warning signal

Depending on the equipment version: in the event of multiple active steering interventions by the system within 3 minutes without the driver's intervention at the steering wheel, an acoustic warning will sound. A short warning signal will sound at the second steering intervention. Beginning with the third steering intervention, an continuous warning will sound.

In addition, a Check Control message is displayed.

The warning signal and Check Control message are an encouragement to pay closer attention to the lane.

End of warning

For instance, the warning will be canceled in the following situations:

- Automatically after approx. 3 seconds.
- When returning to your own lane.
- When braking hard.
- When using the turn signal.
- If DSC Dynamic Stability Control intervenes.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4028
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

▷ Cameras, refer to page 35.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

▷ In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane markings such as in construction areas.

▷ When lane markings are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.

▷ In tight curves or on narrow lanes.

▷ When lane markings are covered by objects.

▷ When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.

▷ Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.

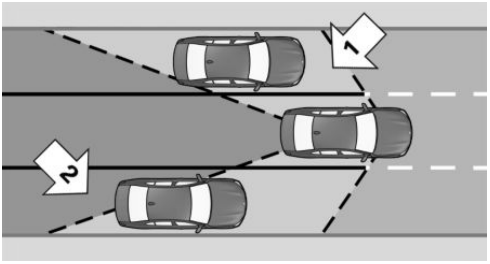
A Check Control message may be displayed when the system is not fully functional.

Blind spot collision warning

Concept

Blind spot collision warning detects vehicles in the blind spot or vehicles approaching from behind in the adjacent lane. A warning is issued in various gradations in these situations.

General information



Radar sensors monitor the area behind and next to the vehicle when traveling faster than a minimum speed.

The minimum speed is country-specific and is displayed in the menu for the intelligent Safety systems.

The system indicates whether there are vehicles in the blind spot, arrow 1, or approaching from behind in the adjacent lane, arrow 2.

The light in the exterior mirror lights up dimmed.

Before you change lanes after setting the turn signal, the system issues a warning in the situations described above.

The light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

Vehicles with side collision mitigation: at speeds between 45 mph/70 km/h and 130 mph/210 km/h, the system can intervene with a brief active steering intervention and help to return the vehicle into the lane.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4029
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Radar sensors, side, rear.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

Blind spot collision warning is automatically activated after departure if the function was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Manual switching off

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4030
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Setting the warning time

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and Warnings"
5. "Active Blind Spot Detection"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Early"
   - ▷ "Medium"
   - ▷ "Late"
   - ▷ "Off": with this setting, no warning is output.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Steering Wheel Feedback"
5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all Intelligent Safety systems and stored for the driver profile currently used.

Vehicles with side collision mitigation: switching steering intervention on/off

The steering intervention can be switched on and off separately for blind spot collision warning and lane departure warning.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Safety and Warnings"
5. "Active Blind Spot Detection"
6. "Steering intervention"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Warning function

Light in the exterior mirror

Prewarning

The dimmed light in the exterior mirror indicates when there are vehicles in the blind spot or approaching from behind.

Acute warning

When the turn signal is switched on while a vehicle is in the critical zone, the steering wheel vibrates briefly and the light in the exterior mirror flashes brightly.

The warning stops when the other vehicle has left the critical area or the turn signal has been deactivated.

Vehicles with side collision mitigation

When at speeds between 45 mph/70 km/h and 130 mph/210 km/h the vibrating steering wheel is ignored and the lane marking crossed, the system intervenes with a brief active steering intervention. The steering intervention helps return the vehicle into the lane. The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

Flashing of the light

A flashing of the light during vehicle unlocking serves as system self-test.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4031
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Upper speed limit

If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is deactivated temporarily.

If the vehicle speed falls below approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system once again responds according to the setting.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Radar sensors, refer to page 36.
- On vehicles with side collision warning: cameras, refer to page 35.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
- If the bumper is dirty, iced up, or covered, for instance by stickers.

For vehicles with side collision mitigation, the steering intervention can be limited, for instance in the following situation:

- In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane markings such as in construction areas.
- When lane markings are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- When lane markings are not white.
- When lane markings are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- If the camera is impaired.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.

A Check Control message is displayed when the system is not fully functional.

Displaying warnings

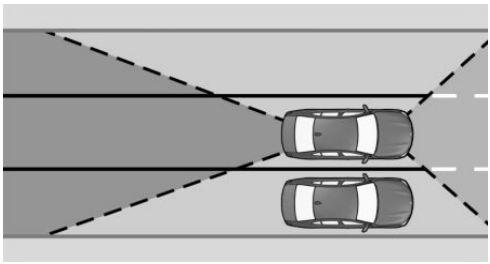
Depending on the selected warning settings, e.g., warning time, more or fewer warnings can be displayed. However, there may also be an excess of premature warnings of critical situations.

Side collision mitigation

Concept

The system helps to avoid imminent side collisions.

General information



Radar sensors monitor the area next to the vehicle in the speed range from approx. 45 mph/70 km/h to approx. 130 mph/210 km/h.

The front camera determines the lane marking positions.

If, for instance another vehicle is detected next to the vehicle and if there is a risk of collision with this vehicle, the system helps avoid the collision. The system will carry out an active steering intervention.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Functional requirement

The camera must detect the lane markings for the side collision mitigation with steering intervention to be active.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windshield.
- Radar sensors, side, front.
- Radar sensors, side, rear.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The side collision mitigation activates automatically after departure if the function was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Switching on manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety system is displayed.

If all Intelligent Safety systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment version, the Intelligent Safety systems can be individually configured. The individual settings are activated and stored for the driver profile currently used. As soon as a setting

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4033
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

is changed on the menu, all settings of the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The following settings are switched between:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the subfunctions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety systems cannot be individually switched off.

Manual switching off

Press and hold this button.

All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button lights up green: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
	Button lights up orange: some Intelligent Safety systems are switched off or currently unavailable.
	Button does not light up: all Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Steering Wheel Feedback"
5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all Intelligent Safety systems and stored for the driver profile currently used.

Warning function

Light in the exterior mirror

Acute warning

If there is a risk of collision, the light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

If necessary, an active steering intervention then takes place to prevent collisions and maintain the vehicle within its own lane.

The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 35.
- Radar sensors, refer to page 36.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4034
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
- In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane markings such as in construction areas.
- When lane markings are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- When lane markings are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.

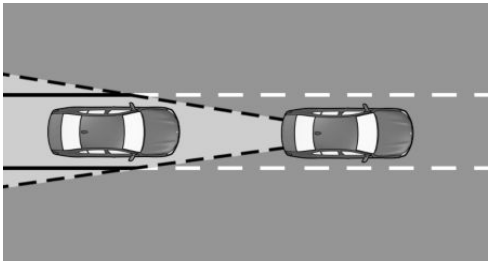
A Check Control message is displayed when the system is not fully functional.

Rear collision preparation

Concept

The system reacts to vehicles approaching from behind.

General information



Radar sensors monitor the area behind the vehicle.

When a vehicle approaches from the rear at a certain speed, the system responds as follows:

- Active Protection: when a collision seems to be unavoidable, PreCrash functions are triggered.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or reactions, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Radar sensors, side, rear.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Switching on/off

The system is automatically active when the vehicle is turned on.

The system is deactivated in the following situations:

- When driving in reverse.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4035
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Radar sensors, refer to page 36.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

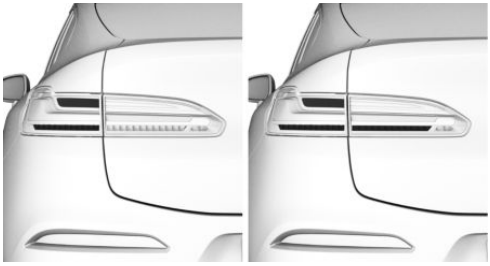
- When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- When the approaching vehicle approaches slowly.

Brake force display

Concept

Additional brake lights indicate emergency braking to the traffic behind. This can reduce the risk of a rear-end collision.

General information



- During normal brake application, the outer brake lights light up.
- During heavy brake application, the inner brake lights additionally light up.

Active Protection

Concept

Active Protection prepares occupants and the vehicle for a possible accident in critical driving or collision situations.

General information

Active Protection consists of various PreCrash functions, which can vary depending on the equipment.

The system is used to detect certain critical driving situations that might lead to an accident. This includes the following critical driving situations:

- Emergency stop.
- Severe understeering.
- Severe oversteering.

Certain functions of several systems can, within the system limits, lead to Active Protection triggering:

- Front collision mitigation: automatic brake intervention.
- Front collision mitigation: Brake Assistant.
- Rear collision preparation: detection of imminent rear collisions.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to the system limits, critical situation could not be detected reliably or in time. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4036

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Function

When the safety belt is fastened, the driver's and passenger's belt straps are automatically tightened once after driving away.

In accident-critical situations, the following individual functions become active as needed:

- Automatic pretensioning of the front safety belts.
- Automatic window closing up to a narrow gap.
- Automatic closing of the panoramic glass sunroof, including sun protection.

After a critical driving situation without an accident, the front safety belts are loosened again.

If the belt tension does not loosen automatically, stop the vehicle and unbuckle the safety belt using the red button in the buckle. Fasten the safety belt before continuing on your trip.

All other systems can be restored to the desired setting.

PostCrash – iBrake

Concept

In the event of an accident, the system can bring the vehicle to a halt automatically without intervention by the driver in certain situations. This can reduce the risk of a further collision and the consequences thereof.

At standstill

After coming to a halt, the brake is released automatically.

Harder vehicle braking

In certain situations, it can be necessary to bring the vehicle to a halt more quickly than the Brake Assistant allows.

To do this, quickly apply extra force to the brake. For a brief period, the braking pressure will be higher than the braking pressure that is achieved by the automatic braking function. Automatic braking is interrupted.

Interrupting automatic braking

It can be necessary to interrupt automatic braking in certain situations, for instance for an evasive maneuver.

Interrupt automatic braking:

- By pressing the brake pedal.
- By pressing the accelerator pedal.

Fatigue alert

General information

The system can detect decreasing alertness or fatigue of the driver during long, monotonous trips, for instance on highways. In this situation, it is recommended that the driver takes a break.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing one's physical state. An increasing lack of alertness or fatigue may not be detected or not be detected in time. There is a risk of accident. Make sure that the driver is rested and alert. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions.

Function

The system is switched on each time drive-ready state is switched on.

After travel has begun, the system monitors certain aspects of the driver's behavior, so that decreasing alertness or fatigue can be detected.

This procedure takes the following criteria into account:

- Personal driving style, for instance steering behavior.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4037
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

- Driving conditions, for instance time, length of trip.

Starting at approx. 43 mph/70 km/h, the system is active and can also display a recommendation to take a break.

Break recommendation

Adjusting

The fatigue alert is active automatically with each switching on of drive-ready state and can thus display a break recommendation.

The break recommendation can also be switched on or off and adjusted via iDrive.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Fatigue and Focus Alert"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "Standard": the break recommendation is made with a defined value.
   - "Sensitive": the break recommendation is issued earlier.
   - "Off": no break recommendation is made.

Display

If the driver becomes less alert or fatigued, a message is displayed in the Control Display with the recommendation to take a break.

During the display, various settings can be selected.

After a break, another recommendation to take a break cannot be displayed until after approximately 45 minutes.

System limits

The function may be limited in the following situations and may issue an incorrect warning or no warning at all:

- When the clock is set incorrectly.
- When the vehicle speed is mainly below about 43 mph/70 km/h.
- With a sporty driving style, such as during rapid acceleration or when cornering fast.
- In active driving situations, such as when changing lanes frequently.
- When the road surface is poor.
- In the event of strong side winds.

The system is reset approx. 45 minutes after parking the vehicle, for instance in the case of a break during longer trips on highways.

Driving stability control systems

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Antilock Braking System ABS

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during braking.

The vehicle maintains its steering power even during full brake applications, which increases the active safety.

ABS is operational every time you start the engine.

Brake assistant

When you apply the brakes rapidly, this system automatically boosts the vehicle braking assistance to the furthest possible extent. It reduces the braking distance to a minimum during an emergency stop. This system utilizes all of the capabilities provided by the Antilock Brake System ABS.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal for the duration of the emergency stop.

Adaptive brake assistant

In combination with Active Cruise Control ACC, this system ensures that the brakes respond even more rapidly when braking in critical situations.

Drive-off assistant

Concept

This system supports driving off on uphill grades.

Driving off

1. Hold the vehicle in place with the foot brake.
2. Release the foot brake and drive off without delay.

After the foot brake is released, the vehicle is held in place for approx. 2 seconds.

Depending on the vehicle loading, the vehicle may roll back slightly.

M Setup

Concept

Buttons M1 or M2 on the steering wheel can be used to store individual settings for the vehicle and call them up again as needed.

General information

The buttons are preset with the correct configuration for the vehicle and can be adjusted individually.

When the drive-ready state is switched on after the idle state, an efficient vehicle state is active by default. The configuration via the buttons is deactivated.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4039
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Safety information

Warning

Depending on the setting, the DSC may only be available to a limited extent or may not be available when the M1 or M2 button is activated. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Heed the settings for DSC in iDrive and react actively, if necessary. Modify your driving style and react, if necessary.

Settings

The settings for the following systems can be stored in buttons M1 or M2:

Symbol	Meaning
	"Engine": programs of M Engine Dynamics Control, refer to page 135.
	"Transmission": shift modes and Drivelogic programs. Drivelogic, refer to page 133.
	"Chassis": programs of Adaptive M suspension, refer to page 229.
	"Steering": programs of Servotronic, refer to page 188.
	"Head-up displ.": views of the Head-up Display, refer to page 150.
	"DSC": DSC Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 189, and M Dynamic Mode MDM, refer to page 189.
	"M xDrive": programs of M xDrive, refer to page 192.
	"Start/Stop": Auto Start/Stop function, refer to page 119.
	"Sound Control": Sound Control, refer to page 136.

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

Buttons	Function
OFF	Dynamic Stability Control DSC, M Dynamic Mode MDM.
	M Engine Dynamics Control.
	Adaptive M chassis.
	Servotronic.
	Drivelogic.
SETUP	"M setup".

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
M1	M1.
M2	M2.

Configuration

Via buttons

1. Set the required function with the corresponding button in the center console. This

deactivates currently active configuration, if applicable.

2. Press and hold button M1 or M2 on the steering wheel.

   The settings are stored.

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "M setup"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4. Select the desired setting.
5. Select the desired channel.

The individual settings are stored for the configuration currently in use.

With activated M1 or M2 configuration, any changes to the setting are immediately applied.

Activating

Press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:

▷ Activate M1.

▷ Activate M2.

If DSC OFF or MDM is set under "Configure M1" or "Configure M2", a message is displayed in the instrument cluster. This message is confirmed by pressing the button again.

Deactivating

Press the corresponding button on the steering wheel.

Resetting the configuration

Individual settings can be reset to default values.

1. "CAR"
2. "M setup"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4. "Reset"
5. "Yes"

To cancel resetting: "No"

Display in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Description
	Symbol lights up: corresponding configuration is activated.
	Symbol lights up and additional lettering "Cannot be activated" appears: configuration cannot be activated due to the current dynamic driving situation. Reactivate configuration when the lettering goes out.

Servotronic

Concept

Servotronic is a speed-dependent power steering function.

The system provides the steering force with more support at low speeds than at higher ones. This makes it easier to park, for instance, and makes steering firmer when driving at faster speeds.

Furthermore, the steering force adapts according to the program, so that a firm, sporty feel or a comfortable steering response is conveyed.

General information

The system offers several different steering force tunings.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4041
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Program	Steering force tuning
"COMFORT"	Low steering forces, good roadway feedback.
"SPORT"	Medium steering forces, enhanced roadway feedback.
"SPORT PLUS"	High steering forces, maximum roadway feedback.

Selecting a channel

Using the button

Press the button repeatedly until the desired program is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Via iDrive

It is possible to configure the required program for buttons M1 or M2.

1. "CAR"
2. "M setup"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4. "Steering"
5. Select the desired channel.

   The setting is immediately applied with active M1 or M2 configuration.

To activate the desired configuration with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:

▷ M1

▷ M2

Display in the instrument cluster

Servotronic with selected program with activated display of the System states of the driving dynamics.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control

Concept

Within the physical limits, the system helps to keep the vehicle on a steady course by reducing drive power and by braking the individual wheels.

General information

DSC detects the following unstable driving conditions, for instance:

- ▷ Fishtailing, which can lead to oversteering.
- ▷ Loss of traction of the front wheels, which can lead to understeering.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

⚠ Warning

When driving with a roof load, for instance with roof-mounted luggage rack, the vehicle's center of gravity is higher, which increases the risk of the vehicle tipping in critical driving situa-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4042
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

tions. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Do not deactivate DSC Dynamic Stability Control when driving with roof load.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

DSC OFF

Deactivating/activating DSC

General information

When DSC is deactivated, driving stability is reduced during acceleration and when driving in curves.

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

Deactivating DSC

Hold the button down until DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster and the DSC OFF indicator light is illuminated.

M xDrive appears on the Control Display. The required program can be selected.

Additional information:

M xDrive, refer to page 192.

Activating DSC

Press the button.

DSC OFF and the DSC OFF indicator light go out.

Display

In the instrument cluster

When DSC is deactivated, DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Indicator/warning lights

The indicator light lights up: DSC is deactivated.

The indicator light flashes: DSC controls the drive and braking forces.

The indicator light lights up: DSC has malfunctioned.

M Dynamic Mode MDM

Concept

M Dynamic Mode MDM makes it possible to drive on a dry roadway with high longitudinal and transverse acceleration but with limited vehicle stability.

Only in the absolute limit area does the system intervene for stabilization by reducing the engine power and by braking interventions on the wheels. In this driving condition, additional steering corrections may be necessary.

General information

When M Dynamic Mode MDM is activated, the active M xDrive program is: "4WD SPORT"

You may find it useful to briefly activate MDM under the following special circumstances:

- When driving in slush or on uncleared, snow-covered roads.
- When freeing vehicle from deep snow or driving off from loose ground.
- When driving with tire chains.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4043
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

To increase driving stability, activate DSC again.

Safety information

Warning

When M Dynamic Mode is activated, stabilizing interventions are carried out only to a reduced extent. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate. Do not jerk the steering wheel in response to a warning.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

DSC OFF

Activating/deactivating MDM

Activating MDM

Press the button.

The MDM and DSC OFF symbols in the instrument cluster light up.

Deactivating MDM

Press the button.

The MDM and DSC OFF symbols go out.

Via iDrive

It is possible to configure M Dynamic Mode MDM for buttons M1 or M2.

1. "CAR"
2. "M setup"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4. "DSC"
5. "MDM"

To activate the desired configuration with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:

▷ M1

▷ M2

A message appears in the instrument cluster. This message is confirmed by pressing the button again.

Display in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Description
MDM OFF	Symbols light up: M Dynamic Mode is activated.
	DSC indicator light also flashes: M Dynamic Mode controls the drive forces and braking forces.
OFF 	Indicator lights light up: M Dynamic Mode or DSC has failed.

M xDrive

Concept

M xDrive is the all-wheel-drive system of the vehicle. M xDrive and DSC Dynamic Stability Control work together to optimize the traction and driving dynamics. M xDrive variably distributes the drive forces to the front and rear axles as demanded by the driving situation and road surface.

General information

Two M xDrive programs are available when DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.

Programs

Program	Distribution of driving forces
"4WD"	Front and rear axles.
"4WD SPORT"	Front and rear axles. Main component, rear axle.

A program is activated automatically in the following situations:

- When the drive-ready state is switched on: "4WD".
- When MDM is activated: "4WD SPORT".
- When DSC is activated: "4WD".

Selecting a channel

General information

Changing programs in dynamic driving situations is not possible.

Via iDrive

It is possible to configure the required program for buttons M1 or M2.

1. "CAR"
2. "M setup"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4. Deactivate DSC, if needed.
5. "M xDrive"
6. Select the desired channel.

   The setting is immediately applied with active M1 or M2 configuration.

To activate the desired configuration with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:

-
-

Display in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Description
	The indicator light is illuminated and 4WD appears in the instrument cluster: "4WD" is activated.
	The indicator light is illuminated and 4WD Sport appears in the instrument cluster: "4WD SPORT" is activated.

Active M differential

The active M differential provides for continuously variable locking of the rear axle differential depending on the driving situation. This prevents individual rear wheels from spinning even when DSC is switched off and in M Dynamic Mode, enabling optimum traction to be achieved in all driving situations.

The driver is responsible adapting his or her driving style to the situation.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4045
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

HDC Hill Descent Control

Concept

HDC Hill Descent Control is a downhill control feature that controls the vehicle speed on steep downhill grades, for instance when driving on unpaved roads.

When the system is active, the vehicle moves at the speed set by the driver, without the driver having to depress the brake pedal.

While HDC is controlling the speed, the system automatically distributes the braking force to the individual wheels. This improves vehicle drivability and driving stability. If necessary, the Antilock Braking System prevents the wheels from locking.

General information

Hill Descent Control can be activated at speeds below approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Speeds can be set between approx. 2 mph/3 km/h and approx. 20 mph/30 km/h. When the vehicle is moving downhill, the system reduces the speed to the set value, within the physical limits.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

HDC

Activating HDC

Press the button. The LED on the button lights up.

Speeds between approx. 2 mph/3 km/h and approx. 20 mph/30 km/h are adopted as the desired speed.

Emergency braking function, Active PDC: the emergency braking function is deactivated.

Additional information:

Emergency brake function, Active PDC, refer to page 210.

Display in the instrument cluster

A symbol and the selected desired speed are displayed.

- Indicator green: HDC is active. The system is actively braking the vehicle.
- Gray display: HDC is on standby.

Display in the Head-up Display

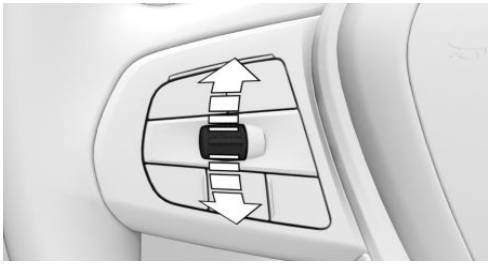
The HDC status can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

Increasing or decreasing vehicle speed

Using the cruise control rocker switch

The desired speed can be changed using the cruise control rocker switch on the steering wheel.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4046
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20



- Press the rocker switch up: the speed increases gradually.
- Press the rocker switch up and hold: the speed increases while the rocker switch is pressed.
- Press the rocker switch down: the speed decreases gradually.
- Press the rocker switch down and hold: the speed decreases while the rocker switch is pressed.

Using the brake pedal

While HDC is controlling the speed, the set desired speed can be reduced by depressing the brake pedal.

Deactivating HDC

Press the button again. The LED goes out.

HDC is automatically deactivated above approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Malfunction

If a malfunction occurs, a message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4047
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Driver assistance systems

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Cruise control

Concept

Using this system, a desired speed can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel. The system maintains the desired speed. The system accelerates and brakes automatically as needed.

General information

The system can be activated starting at 20 mph/30 km/h.

Depending on the settings, the cruise control settings many change under certain conditions.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

The use of the system can lead to an increased risk of accidents in the following situations, for instance:

- On winding roads.
- In heavy traffic.
- On slippery roads, in fog, snow, or wet conditions, or on a loose road surface.

There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Only use the system if driving at constant speed is possible.

Warning

The desired speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Cruise control on/off.
	Pause cruise control. Continue cruise control with the last setting.

Button	Function
SET	Store speed.
	Rocker switch: Set speed.

Switching cruise control on/off

Switching on

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster light up and the marking on the speedometer is set to the current speed.

Cruise control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

Switching off

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

Pausing cruise control

Interrupting manually

When active, press the button.

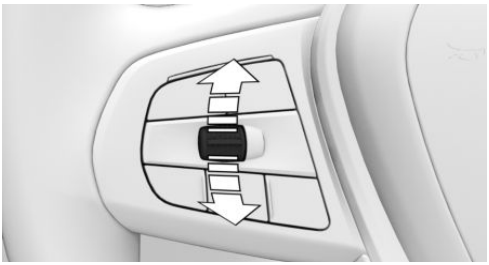
Interrupting automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations, for example:

- When the driver applies the brakes.
- When selector lever position D is disengaged.
- When M Dynamic Mode MDM is activated or DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.
- If DSC Dynamic Stability Control intervenes.

Setting the speed

Maintaining and storing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down once while the system is interrupted.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

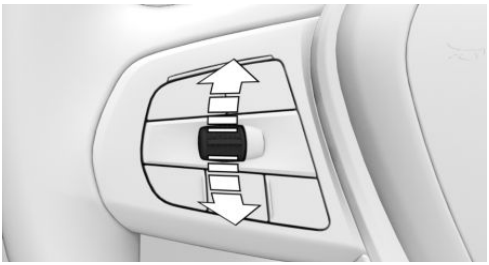
The stored speed is displayed on the speedometer.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

The speed can also be stored by pressing a button.

Press the button.

Changing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4049
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

- Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the desired speed increases or decreases by 1 mph/1 km/h.
- Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

  The maximum speed that can be set depends on the vehicle.
- Pressing the rocker switch to the resistance point and holding it: vehicle accelerates or decelerates without pressure on the accelerator pedal.

  After the rocker switch is released, the vehicle maintains its final speed. Pressing the switch beyond the resistance point causes the vehicle to accelerate more rapidly.

Continuing cruise control

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed.

Make sure that the difference between current speed and stored speed is not too large before calling up the stored speed. Otherwise, unintentional braking or accelerating may occur.

Press the button with the system interrupted.

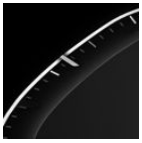
Cruise control is continued with the stored values.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- When the system is switched off.
- When drive-ready state is switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Display in the speedometer



- Green marking: system is active, the marking indicates the desired speed.
- Grey marking: system is interrupted, the marking indicates the stored speed.
- No marking: system is switched off.

Indicator light

- Indicator light green: system is active.
- Gray indicator light: the system has been interrupted.
- No indicator light: system is switched off.

Displays in the Head-up Display

Some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

The symbol is displayed when the set desired speed is reached.

Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go function ACC

Concept

Using this system, a desired speed and a distance to a vehicle ahead can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel.

The system maintains the desired speed on clear roads. The vehicle accelerates or brakes automatically.

If a vehicle is driving ahead of you, the system adjusts the speed of your vehicle so that the set distance to the vehicle ahead is maintained. The speed is adjusted as far as the given situation allows.

General information

Depending on the settings, the cruise control settings many change under certain conditions.

The distance can be adjusted in several steps. For safety reasons, it depends on the respective speed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4050

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

If the vehicle ahead of you brakes to a halt, and then proceeds to drive again within a brief period, the system is able to detect this within the given system limits.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

The desired speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Risk of accident due to too high speed differences to other vehicles, for instance in the following situations:

- When fast approaching a slowly moving vehicle.
- Vehicle suddenly swerving into own lane.
- When fast approaching standing vehicles.

There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Cruise control on/off.
	Store/maintain speed.
	Pause cruise control. Continue cruise control with the last setting.
	With steering and traffic jam assistant: Adjust distance.
	Without steering and traffic jam assistant: Reduce distance.
	Without steering and traffic jam assistant: Increase the distance.
	Rocker switch: Set speed.
	With steering and traffic jam assistant: Steering and traffic jam assistant including Traffic Jam Assist on/off.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4051
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windshield.
- Front radar sensor.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Area of application

The system is best used on well-constructed roads.

The minimum speed that can be set is 20 mph/30 km/h.

The maximum speed that can be set is limited and, e.g., depends on the vehicle and the vehicle equipment version.

Higher speeds can be selected if the system is switched to cruise control without distance control.

The system can also be activated when stationary.

Switching on/off and interrupting cruise control

Switching on

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster light up and the mark in the speedometer is set to the current speed.

Cruise control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

Switching off

To switch off the system while standing, step on brake pedal at the same time.

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

Interrupting manually

When active, press the button on the steering wheel.

If interrupting the system while stationary, press on the brake pedal at the same time.

Interrupting automatically

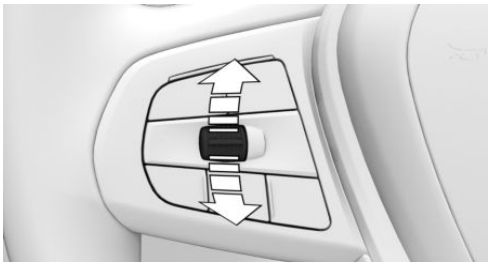
The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations:

- When the driver applies the brakes.
- When selector lever position D is disengaged.
- When M Dynamic Mode MDM is activated or DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.
- If DSC Dynamic Stability Control intervenes.
- If the safety belt and the driver's door are opened while the vehicle is standing still.
- If the system has not detected objects for an extended period, for instance on a road with very little traffic without curb or shoulder markings.
- If the detection range of the radar is impaired, for instance by dirt or heavy fog.
- After a longer stationary period when the vehicle has been braked to a stop by the system.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4052
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Setting the speed

Maintaining and storing the speed



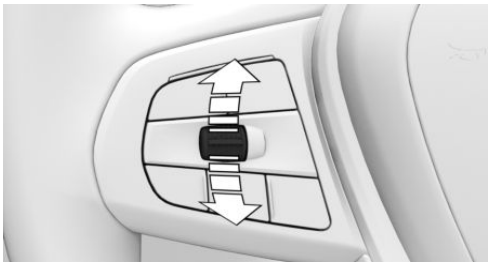
Press the rocker switch up or down once while the system is interrupted. The system will be activated.

The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

The stored speed is displayed on the speedometer.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

Changing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

- Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the desired speed increases or decreases by 1 mph/1 km/h.
- Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

Hold the rocker switch in position to repeat the action.

Adjusting the distance

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to the system limits, braking can be late. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Be aware to the traffic situation at all times. Adjust the distance to the traffic and weather conditions and maintain the prescribed safety distance, possibly by braking.

With steering and traffic jam assistant: adjusting distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Without steering and traffic jam assistant: reducing distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Instrument cluster will display selected distance.

Without steering and traffic jam assistant: increasing distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Instrument cluster will display selected distance.

Continuing cruise control

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4053
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Make sure that the difference between current speed and stored speed is not too large before calling up the stored speed. Otherwise, unintentional braking or accelerating may occur.

RES CANCEL Press the button with the system interrupted.

Cruise control is continued with the stored values.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- When the system is switched off.
- When drive-ready state is switched off.

Changing between cruise control with/without distance control

Safety information

Warning

The system does not react to traffic driving ahead of you, but instead maintains the stored speed. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions and brake as needed.

Changing to cruise control without distance control

Distance control can be switched off and on when driving with cruise control activated.

With steering and traffic jam assistant: press and hold this button.

Without steering and traffic jam assistant:

Press and hold this button.

Press and hold this button.

In order to switch back to Cruise control with distance control, press the button again.

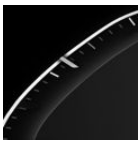
After switching, a Check Control message is displayed.

Displays in the instrument cluster

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the displays in the instrument cluster may vary.

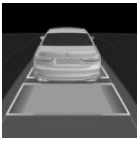
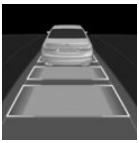
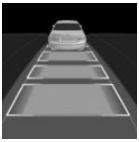
Display in the speedometer

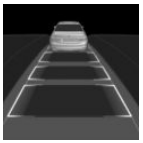


- Green marking: system is active, the marking indicates the desired speed.
- Grey marking: system is interrupted, the marking indicates the stored speed.
- No marking: system is switched off.

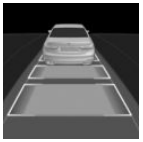
Distance to vehicle ahead of you

Selected distance to the vehicle ahead of you is shown.

Symbol	Description
	Distance 1
	Distance 2
	Distance 3

Symbol	Description
	Distance 4 This value is set automatically after the system is switched on.
	No distance control display, as the accelerator pedal is being pressed.

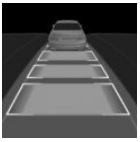
Detected vehicle

Symbol	Description
	Green symbol: A vehicle has been detected ahead of you.

When the distance to the detected vehicle increases, the vehicle symbol in the distance display will move away.

If necessary, independent drive-off, such as by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by pressing the rocker switch.

Indicator/warning lights

Symbol	Description
	Indicator light green: system is active. No indicator light: system is switched off.
	Vehicle symbol flashes: The conditions are not adequate for the system to work. The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.
	The vehicle symbol and distance bars flash red and an acoustic signal sounds: Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.
	System interrupted.

Displays in the Head-up Display

Desired speed

Some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

The symbol is displayed when the set desired speed is reached.

Distance information

The symbol is displayed when the distance from the vehicle traveling ahead is too short.

The distance information is active in the following situations:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4055
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

- Active Cruise Control switched off.
- Display in the Head-up Display selected.
  Head-Up Display, refer to page 150.
- Distance too short.
- Speed greater than approx. 40 mph/70 km/h.

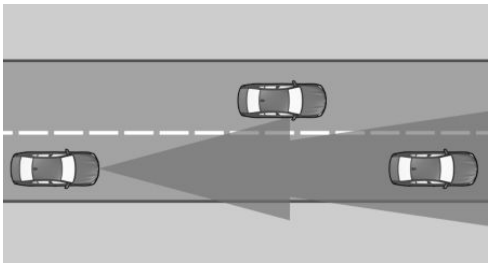
System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 35.
- Radar sensors, refer to page 36.

Detection range



The detection capacity of the system and the automatic braking capacity are limited.

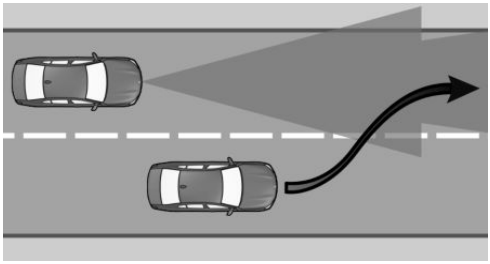
Two-wheeled vehicles for instance might not be detected.

Deceleration

The system does not decelerate in the following situations:

- For pedestrians or similarly slow-moving road users.
- Depending on the equipment, with red traffic lights.
- For cross traffic.
- For oncoming traffic.

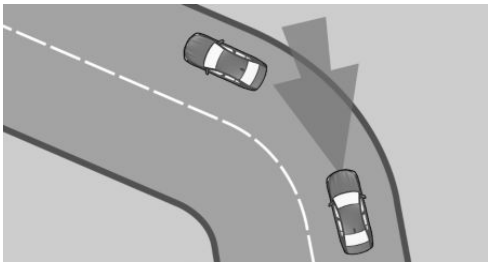
Merging vehicles



A vehicle driving in front of you is not detected until it is completely within the same lane as your vehicle.

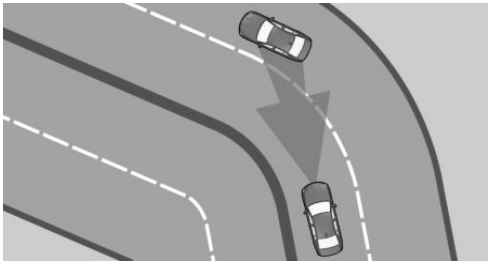
If a vehicle driving ahead of you suddenly merges into your lane, the system may not be able to automatically restore the selected distance. It may not be possible to restore the selected distance in certain situations, including if you are driving significantly faster than vehicles driving ahead of you, for instance when rapidly approaching a truck. When a vehicle driving ahead of you is reliably detected, the system requests that the driver intervene by braking and carrying out evasive maneuvers, if needed.

Cornering



When the desired speed is too high for a curve, the speed is reduced slightly. Because curves may not be anticipated in advance, drive into a curve at an appropriate speed.

The system has a limited detection range. Situations can arise in tight curves where a vehicle driving ahead will not be detected or will be detected very late.



When you approach a curve the system may briefly report vehicles in the next lane due to the bend of the curve. If the system decelerates you may compensate it by briefly accelerating. After releasing the accelerator pedal the system is reactivated and controls speed independently.

Driving off

In some situations, the vehicle cannot drive off automatically; for example:

- On steep uphill grades.
- In front of bumps in the road.

In these cases, step on the accelerator pedal.

Weather

The following restrictions can occur under unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- Poorer vehicle recognition.
- Short-term interruptions for vehicles that are already recognized.

Drive attentively, and react to the current traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for instance by braking, steering or evading.

Steering assistant

Concept

The system assists the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane. For this purpose, the system executes supporting steering movements, for instance when driving in a curve.

General information

Depending on the speed, the system orients itself according to the lane markings or vehicles in front.

Sensors on the steering wheel detect whether the steering wheel is being touched.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Steering and traffic jam assistant on/off.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windshield.
- Front radar sensor.
- Radar sensors, side, front.
- Radar sensors, side, rear.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Functional requirements

- Speed below 130 mph/210 km/h.
- Sufficient lane width.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4057
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

- Above approx. 43 mph, 70 km/h: lane marking on both sides is detected.
- Below approx. 43 mph, 70 km/h: lane marking on both sides or a vehicle driving ahead is detected.
- Hands on the steering wheel rim.
- Wide curves.
- Drive in the center of the lane.
- Turn signal switched off.
- The sensor system calibration process is complete.

Switching on/off

Switching on

Press the button on the steering wheel.

Steering wheel symbol lights up gray.

The system is on standby and does not manipulate steering.

System activates automatically as soon as all function conditions are fulfilled.

Steering wheel symbol lights up green.

The system is active.

With the system switched on, the person warning with City braking function and the side collision mitigation are active.

Switching off

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator goes out.

The system does not perform supportive steering wheel movements.

Interrupting automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations, for example:

- At a speed above 130 mph/210 km/h.
- When the steering wheel is released.
- When you manipulate steering.
- When leaving own lane.
- When the turn signal is switched on.
- When the lane is too narrow.
- If for a particular time no lane marking is detected and there is no vehicle driving in front.

Steering wheel symbol lights up gray.

The system is on standby and does not manipulate steering.

System activates automatically as soon as all function conditions are fulfilled.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Description
	Gray steering wheel symbol: The system is on standby.
	Green steering wheel symbol: The system is activated.
	Depending on equipment, yellow flashing steering wheel symbol: Lane marking driven over. The steering wheel vibrates where applicable.
	Yellow steering wheel symbol and a signal sounds, if applicable: System interruption is imminent.
	Depending on equipment, steering wheel symbol flashes red, signal sounds: System is switching off.

Symbol	Description
	Green steering wheel symbol and lane marking symbol: The system supports the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane.
	Green steering wheel symbol, gray lane marking symbol: No lane marking detected, the vehicle follows the vehicle ahead. The limits of steering support when cornering may have been reached.
	Yellow steering wheel symbol: The hands are not grasping the steering wheel. The system is still active.
	Red steering wheel symbol and a signal sounds: The hands are not grasping the steering wheel. System interruption is imminent. It is possible that the system will not execute any supporting steering movements. With Active Cruise Control, the system may reduce the speed.

Displays in the Head-up Display

All system information can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

System limits

General information

The system cannot be activated or meaningfully used in certain situations.

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 35.
- Radar sensors, refer to page 36.

Hands on the steering wheel

The sensors cannot detect hand-steering wheel contact in the following situations:

- Driving with gloves.
- Protective covers on the steering wheel.

Narrow lanes

When driving within narrow lanes, the system cannot be activated or effectively used, for instance in the following situations:

- In construction areas.
- Depending on the equipment, with automatic formation of emergency lanes.
- Within city limits.

Weather

The following restrictions can occur under unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- Poorer recognition of vehicles and lane markings.
- Short-term interruptions for vehicles that are already recognized.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4059
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Drive attentively, and react to the current traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for instance by braking, steering or evading.

Parking assistance systems

Concept

The parking assistance systems support the driver in parking and maneuvering.

General information

The parking assistance systems comprise the following individual systems.

Additional information:

- PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 207.
- Side parking aid, refer to page 211.
- Without Surround View: rearview camera, refer to page 211.
- Parking assistant, refer to page 214.
- Surround View with rearview camera, refer to page 218.
- Panorama View, refer to page 223.
- Remote 3D View, refer to page 225.
- Cross traffic warning, refer to page 226.

PDC Park Distance Control

Concept

PDC is a support when parking. Objects that you are approaching slowly in front of or behind the vehicle are indicated by signal tones and a display on the Control Display.

Depending on the equipment version: obstacles at the side of the vehicle that are detected by the side ultrasonic sensors may also be reported by the side parking aid.

General information

The range of the system, depending on obstacles and environmental conditions, is approx. 6 ft/2 m.

An acoustic warning sounds in case of an impending collision at a distance to the object of approx. 27 in/70 cm.

For objects behind the vehicle, the acoustic warning is already issued at a distance to the object of approx. 5 ft/1.50 m.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Due to high speeds when PDC Park Distance Control is activated, the warning can be delayed due to physical circumstances. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Avoid approaching an object too fast. Avoid driving off fast while PDC Park Distance Control is not yet active.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Ultrasound sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Depending on the equipment: ultrasonic sensors on the side.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system switches on automatically in the following situations:

- If selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.
- Depending on the equipment version: while approaching detected obstacles if the speed is slower than approx. 2.5 mph/4 km/h. The activation distance depends on the situation in question.

You may switch automatic activation when obstacles are detected on and off.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. If necessary, "Automatic PDC Activation"
6. "Automatic PDC Activation"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Depending on equipment, an additional camera view is also switched on.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on, if needed.

Switching on/off manually

Press the park assistance button.

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

The rearview camera image is displayed if the reverse gear is engaged when pressing the park assistance button.

Depending on the equipment version, the system cannot be switched off manually if the reverse gear is engaged.

Warning

Signal tones

General information

An intermittent tone indicates when the vehicle is approaching an object. E.g., when an object is detected to the left rear of the vehicle, a signal tone sounds from the left rear speaker.

The shorter the distance to the object, the shorter the intervals.

When the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 8 in/20 cm, a continuous tone is sounded.

When there are objects in front of and behind the vehicle at the same time, with a distance smaller

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4061
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

than approx. 8 in/20 cm, an alternating constant tone will sound.

The intermittent tone and constant tone are switched off if the selector lever position P is engaged.

The intermittent tone is switched off after a short time when the vehicle is stationary.

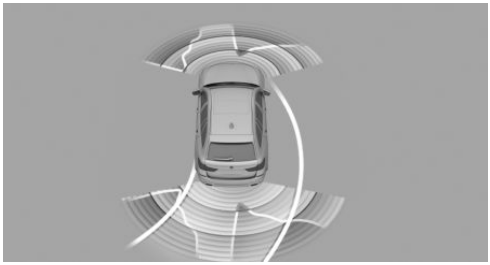
Volume

The PDC signal tone volume can be adjusted.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. "Volume PDC signal"
6. Set the desired value.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Visual warning



The approach of the vehicle to an object is shown on the Control Display. Objects that are farther away are already displayed on the Control Display before a signal sounds.

The display appears as soon as PDC is activated.

The range of the sensors is represented in the colors green, yellow and red when obstacles are detected.

Lanes are faded in for better estimation of the required space.

When the image of the rearview camera is displayed, the switch can be made to PDC or to a different view with obstacle markings as needed:

1. Press the Controller to the left, if needed.
2. For instance "Park. sensors only"

Cross traffic warning: depending on the equipment, it is warned in the PDC display against vehicles approaching in the front or rear from the side.

Additional information:

Cross traffic warning, refer to page 226.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

▷ Ultrasonic sensors, refer to page 37.

Limits of ultrasonic measurement

The detection of objects with ultrasonic measurements can run into physical limits, e.g., in the following situations:

- ▷ With obstacles and persons at the edge of the lane.
- ▷ Low objects already displayed, for instance curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.

False warnings

Reaching the system limits can cause false warnings.

To prevent false alarms, switch off automatic Park Distance Control PDC activation on obstacle detection, for instance in automatic car washes.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

White symbol is displayed, and the range of the sensors is dimmed on the Control Display.

PDC Park Distance Control has failed. Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Depending on equipment version: emergency brake function, Active PDC

Concept

The emergency braking function of PDC initiates an emergency braking in case of acute risk of collision.

General information

Due to system limits, a collision cannot be prevented under all circumstances.

The function is available below walking speed when driving in reverse or rolling backward.

A press of the accelerator pedal interrupts the brake intervention.

After emergency braking to a stop, further creeping toward an obstacle is possible. Proceed with caution. To move forward, lightly press the accelerator pedal and release as needed.

If the accelerator pedal is depressed longer, the vehicle drives off. Manual braking is possible at any time.

The system uses the ultrasonic sensors of the Park Distance Control PDC and the Parking Assistant.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Additionally, the Safety Instructions for the PDC Park Distance Control and the Automatic Parking Assistant apply.

Additional information:

- PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 207.
- Parking assistant, refer to page 214.

Settings

It is possible to set which areas on the vehicle will be protected by the system.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. "Active PDC with braking interv."
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

System limits

The limits of the systems of the Park Distance Control PDC and the Parking Assistant apply.

The system cannot be used in the following situations, for example:

- When Hill Descent Control is active, the emergency braking function is deactivated.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4063
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Hill Descent Control HDC, refer to page 193.

If required, deactivate the system via iDrive where applicable.

With Parking Assistant: side parking aid

Concept

The system warns of obstacles on the side of the vehicle.

General information

The system uses the ultrasonic sensors of the Park Distance Control PDC and the Parking Assistant.

Safety information

Warning

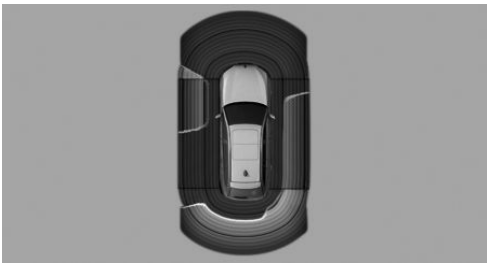
The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Additionally, the Safety Instructions for the PDC Park Distance Control and the Automatic Parking Assistant apply.

Additional information:

- PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 207.
- Parking assistant, refer to page 214.

Display



To protect the sides of the vehicle, obstacle markings are displayed on the sides of the vehicle.

- Color markings: warning against detected obstacles.
- Gray markings, hatched area: no obstacles were detected.
- No markings, black area: the area next to the vehicle was not yet captured.

Limits of the side parking aid

The system only displays stationary obstacles that were previously detected by sensors while passing them.

The system does not detect whether an obstacle moves later on. If the vehicle is stationary, the markings are shown in black after a certain time. The area next to the vehicle must be newly captured.

Additionally, the limits of the systems of the Park Distance Control PDC and the Parking Assistant apply.

Without Surround View: rearview camera

Concept

The rearview camera provides assistance in parking and maneuvering backwards. The area behind the vehicle is shown on the Control Display.

Additionally, assistance functions can be shown in the display, e.g., help lines.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Depending on the vehicle equipment: button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Rearview camera.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is switched on automatically if selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on, if needed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment: switching on/off manually

Press the park assistance button.

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

The parking assistance functions are shown on the Control Display.

Switching the view via iDrive

If the rearview camera view is not displayed, change the view via iDrive:

1. If necessary, tilt the controller to the side.
2. "Rear view camera"

The rearview camera image is displayed.

Functional requirements

- The tailgate is fully closed.
- Keep the recording range of the camera open. Protruding cargo, roof rack systems or trailers can limit the detection range of the camera.

Display on the Control Display

Function bars

The assistance functions can be activated manually via the function bars on the sides of the Control Display.

1. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.
2. With corresponding equipment: "Camera image"
3. "Parking aid lines".

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4065
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Pathway lines and turning radius lines are displayed.

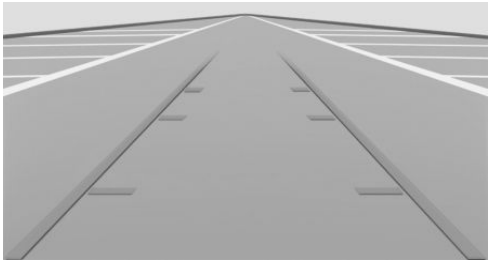
▷ "Obstacle mark.".

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the obstacles detected by PDC Park Distance Control are displayed by markings.

More than one assistance function can be active at the same time.

Parking aid lines

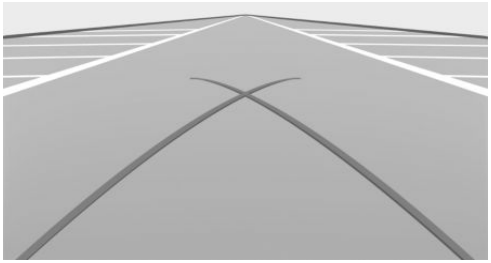
Pathway lines



Pathway lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.

Pathway lines depend on the steering angle and are continuously adjusted to the steering wheel movements.

Turning radius lines



Turning radius lines can only be superimposed on the camera image together with pathway lines.

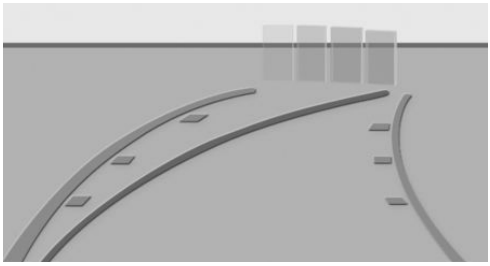
Turning radius lines show the course of the smallest possible turning radius on a level road.

Only one turning radius line is displayed after the steering wheel is turned past a certain angle.

Parking using pathway and turning radius lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the red turning radius line leads to within the limits of the parking space.
2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the green pathway line covers the corresponding turning radius line.

Obstacle marking



Depending on the vehicle equipment, obstacles behind the vehicle are detected by the PDC Park Distance Control sensors.

Obstacle markings can be faded into the image of the rearview camera.

The colored thresholds of the obstacle markings match the markings of the PDC Park Distance Control.

Setting brightness and contrast via iDrive

With the rearview camera switched on:

1. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.
2. "Camera image"
3. To perform the desired setting:
   ▷ "Brightness"
   ▷ "Contrast"

System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 35.

Deactivated camera

When the camera is deactivated, for instance when the tailgate is open, the camera image is displayed hatched in gray.

Detection of objects

Very low obstacles as well as high, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected by the system.

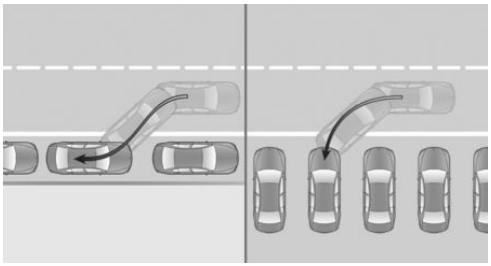
Depending on the vehicle equipment, some assistance functions also consider data from the PDC Park Distance Control.

Follow the notes in the PDC Park Distance Control chapter.

The objects displayed on the Control Display may be closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance from the objects on the display.

With Parking Assistant: Parking Assistant

Concept



The system supports the driver in the following situations:

- When parking parallel to the road, parallel parking.
- When reverse parking diagonally to the road, diagonal parking. The system orients itself with the middle of the parking space during diagonal parking.

General information

Handling

Parking assistant handling is divided into three steps:

- Switching on and activating.
- Parking space search.
- Parking.

System status and instructions on required actions are displayed on the Control Display.

Ultrasound sensors measure parking spaces on both sides of the vehicle.

M Steptronic Sport transmission

The parking assistant calculates the best possible parking line and takes control of the following functions during the parking operation:

- Steering.
- Accelerating and braking.
- Changing gears.

Press and hold the park assistance button for the duration of the parking operation.

The parking operation is automatic.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4067
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

NOTICE

The parking assistant can steer the vehicle over or onto curbs. There is a risk of damage to property. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

The safety information for PDC Park Distance Control and for opening the tailgate applies in addition.

Additional information:

- PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 207.
- Tailgate, refer to page 91.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Ultrasound sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors, side.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Functional requirements

For measuring parking spaces

- Maximum speed while driving forward approx. 22 mph/35 km/h.
- Maximum distance to row of parked vehicles: 5 ft/1.5 m.

Suitable parking space

General information:

- Gap behind an object that has a min. length of 1.7 ft/0.5 m.
- Gap between two objects with a minimum length of approx. 1.7 ft/0.5 m.

Parallel parking to the road:

- Min. length of gap between two objects: your vehicle's length plus approx. 2.6 ft/0.8 m.
- Minimum depth: approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.

Diagonal parking:

- Minimum width of the gap: own vehicle's width plus approx. 2.3 ft/0.7 m.
- Minimum depth: your vehicle's length.

  The depth of diagonal parking spaces must be estimated by the driver. Due to technical limitations, the system is only able to approximate the depth of diagonal parking spaces.

For the parking operation

- Doors and tailgate are closed.
- The parking brake is released.
- Driver's safety belt is fastened.

Switching on with the button

Press the park assistance button.

The LED lights up.

The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.

Parking assistant is activated automatically.

Switching on with reverse gear

1. Shift into reverse.

   The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.
2. If necessary, activate: "Autom. Parking"

Switching on via iDrive

Display of the rearview camera or PDC view must be active.

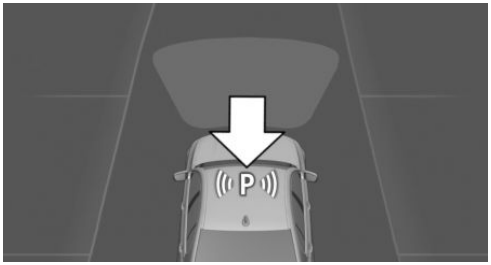
1. Move the Controller to the right.
2. Activate the parking assistant on the Control Display: "Autom. Parking"

Display on the Control Display

System activated/deactivated

Symbol	Meaning
	Gray: the system is not available. White: the system is available but not activated.
	System is activated.
	Parking space search is active.
	The parking procedure is active. The system takes over the steering.

Parking space search and system status



▷ Parking assistant is activated and parking space search is active.

▷ Control Display shows suitable parking spaces at the edge of the road next to the vehicle symbol. When Park Assistant is active, suitable parking spaces are highlighted and an acoustic signal sounds.

▷ If a diagonal or parallel parking space is clearly detected, the system automatically adjusts the suitable parking method. In the case of parking spaces suitable for parallel and diagonal parking, a selection menu is displayed. In this case, the desired parking method must be selected manually.

▷ The parking procedure is active. The system takes over the steering.

▷ Parking space search is always active whenever the vehicle is moving forward slow and straight, even if the system is deactivated. When the system is deactivated, the displays on the Control Display are shown in gray.

Switching signal tone for suitable parking spaces on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. "Automatic Parking"
6. "Alert if parking space detected"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Signal tones of the PDC Park Distance Control

During an automatic parking operation, no intermittent tone will sound from the PDC Park Distance Control.

A continuous tone sounds when the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 8 inches/20 cm.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4069
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Parking using the parking assistant

Parking

1. Switching on and activating the parking assistant.

   For this, engage the reverse gear or press the parking assist button and activate the system on the Control Display, if needed.

   Parking assistant is activated.
2. Pass the row of parked vehicles forward at a speed of up to approx. 22 mph/35 km/h and at a distance of maximum 5 ft/1.5 m.

   The status of the parking space search and possible parking spaces are displayed on the Control Display.
3. Confirm the suggested parking space for the parking operation: switch on the turn signal on the corresponding side.

   The system takes over the steering.
4. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

   Press and hold the park assistance button for the duration of the parking operation. At the end of the parking operation, the P selector lever position is set.

   The end of the parking operation is indicated on the Control Display.
5. Adjust the parking position yourself, if needed.

Interrupting manually

The parking assistant can be interrupted at any time:

- M Steptronic Sport transmission: release the park assistance button during the parking procedure.
- "Autom. Parking": select the symbol on the Control Display.

Interrupting automatically

The system is interrupted automatically in the following situations:

- When the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes over steering.
- Possibly on snow-covered or slippery road surfaces.
- When there are obstacles that are hard to overcome, such as curbs.
- When there are obstacles that suddenly appear.
- If the PDC Park Distance Control displays clearances that are too small.
- When a maximum number of parking attempts or the time taken for parking is exceeded.
- When switching to another function on the Control Display.
- When the park assistance button is released.
- If the tailgate is open.
- If doors are open.
- When setting the parking brake.
- During acceleration.
- When the brake pedal remains pressed for an extended period while the vehicle is stationary.
- When unfastening the driver's safety belt.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Flashing display on the selector lever

The actually engaged transmission position can deviate from the selector lever position in some situations after function interruption. The display in the selector lever flashes.

Observe the display in the instrument cluster in these cases.

Additional information:

Displays in the instrument cluster, refer to page 132.

Resuming

An interrupted parking procedure can be continued, if needed.

Reactivate the parking assistant and follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Switching off

The system can be switched off manually:

Press the park assistance button.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

The system is designed to operate in certain conditions and circumstances. Due to conditions or other factors, the system may not respond. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

No parking assistance

The parking assistant does not offer assistance in the following situations:

- In tight curves.
- For diagonal parking spaces.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Ultrasonic sensors, refer to page 37.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- On bumpy road surfaces such as gravel roads.
- On slippery ground.
- On steep uphill or downhill grades.
- With accumulations of leaves/snow in the parking space.
- With a mounted emergency wheel.
- In case of changes to an already-measured parking space.
- With ditches or edges, for instance an edge of a port.
- Parking spaces that are not suitable may be detected or suitable parking spaces may not be detected at all.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

The parking assistant failed. Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

With Parking Assistant Plus: Surround View

Concept

The system provides assistance in parking and maneuvering. The area around the vehicle is shown on the Control Display.

General information

Several cameras capture the area from different selectable perspectives.

The following camera perspectives can be displayed:

- Automatic camera perspective: the system shows the camera perspective suitable for the respective driving situation.
- Rearview camera: for representing the areas behind the vehicle.
- Right-hand and left-hand side view: for representing the areas on the sides of the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4071
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

- Unobstructed camera perspective, movable via iDrive.
- Panorama View: to present cross traffic, for instance at junctions and driveways, depending on the currently engaged gear.

Depending on the view, the vehicle's surroundings or a part of it is depicted.

Additionally, assistance functions are shown in the display, e.g., help lines.

More than one assistance function can be active at the same time.

Some assistance functions can be manually activated.

The following assistance functions are automatically displayed:

- Side parking aid.
- Door opening angle.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Panorama View

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Front camera.
- Top view cameras.
- Rearview camera.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is switched on automatically if selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.

The camera perspective suitable for the respective driving situation is displayed.

Additional information:

Park Distance Control, turn on/off, refer to page 208.

Switching on/off manually

Press the park assistance button.

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

Depending on the equipment version, the rearview camera cannot be switched off when the reverse gear is engaged.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

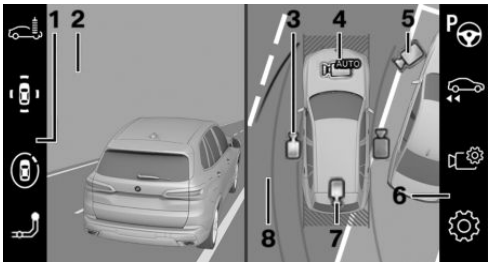
The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on, if needed.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4072
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Display on the Control Display

Overview



1 Function bar, left
2 Camera image
3 Side view
4 Automatic camera perspective
5 Movable unobstructed camera perspective
6 Function bar, right
7 Rearview camera
8 Selection window

Function bar on the left

The left function bar can be used for the direct selection of various views via iDrive. Move the Controller to the left, if needed.

- "Car wash".
- "Parking": around the vehicle.
- "3D view": available camera.

Side view

The side view can be selected for the right or left vehicle side.

This view helps when positioning the vehicle at the curb or with other obstacles on the side by displaying the side surroundings.

The side view looks from rear to front and in case of danger, focuses automatically on possible obstacles.

Automatic camera perspective

The automatic camera perspective shows a steering-dependent view in the respective driving direction.

This perspective adapts to the respective driving situation.

As soon as obstacles are detected, the view changes to a fixed display of the area in front or at the rear behind the bumper or, if necessary, changes to a side view.

When reverse gear is engaged, the automatic camera perspective is, if necessary, closed and the system uses a fixed perspective of the rear-view camera. If necessary, manually select the automatic camera perspective when reverse gear is engaged. The automatic camera perspective will be retained for the current parking operation.

Movable unobstructed camera perspective

With selection of the movable camera perspective, a circle appears on the Control Display.

By turning the Controller or via touch function, specified perspectives on the circle can be selected.

The current perspective is marked with a camera symbol.

To leave the function, move the Controller sideways and select another camera function.

Function bar on the right

Assistance functions can be activated and settings can be entered via the right function bar via iDrive. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.

- "Autom. Parking".
- "Back-up Assistant".
- "Camera image":
  - "Brightness".
  - "Contrast".
  - "Parking aid lines".

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4073
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

- "Obstacle mark.".
- "Settings": apply settings, for instance to use the activation points for Panorama View.

Rearview camera

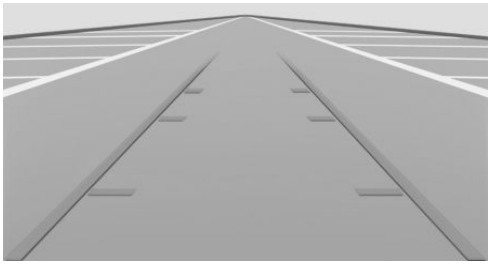
This view shows the picture of the rearview camera.

Selection window

The individual camera perspectives can be selected in the selection window via iDrive.

Parking aid lines

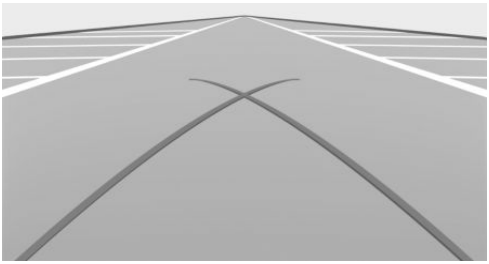
Pathway lines



Pathway lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.

Pathway lines depend on the steering angle and are continuously adjusted to the steering wheel movements.

Turning radius lines



Turning radius lines can only be superimposed on the camera image together with pathway lines.

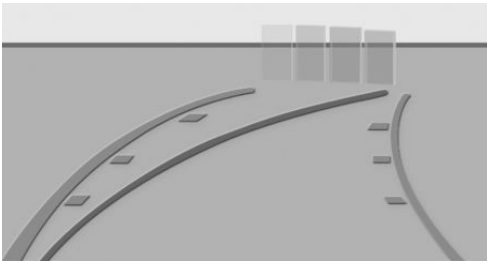
Turning radius lines show the course of the smallest possible turning radius on a level road.

Only one turning radius line is displayed after the steering wheel is turned past a certain angle.

Parking using pathway and turning radius lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the red turning radius line leads to within the limits of the parking space.
2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the green pathway line covers the corresponding turning radius line.

Obstacle marking



Obstacles behind the vehicle are detected by the PDC Park Distance Control sensors.

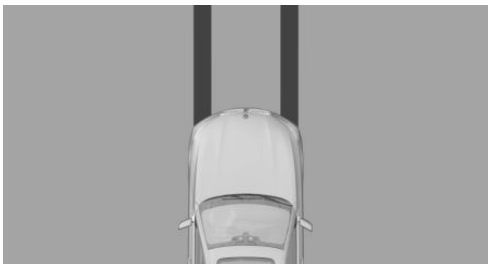
Obstacle markings can be shown in the camera image.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4074

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

The colored thresholds of the obstacle markings match the markings of the PDC Park Distance Control.

Car wash view



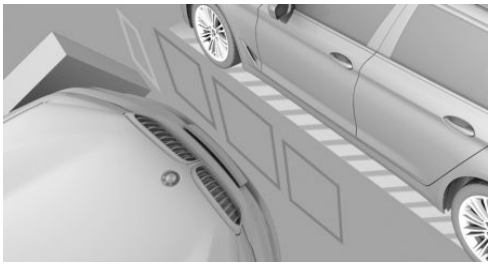
The car wash view assists when entering a car wash by displaying the floor and the vehicle's own track.

Side parking aid

Concept

The system warns of obstacles on the side of the vehicle.

Display



To protect the sides of the vehicle, obstacle markings are displayed on the sides of the vehicle.

- No markings: no obstacles were detected.
- Color markings: warning against detected obstacles.

Limits of the side parking aid

The system only displays stationary obstacles that were previously detected by sensors while passing them.

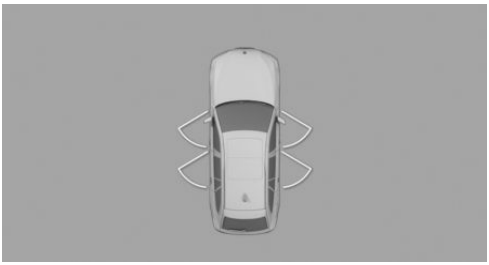
The system does not detect whether an obstacle moves later on. For this reason, at standstill, the markings are not shown anymore in the display after a certain time. The area next to the vehicle must be newly captured.

Door opening angle

Concept

If obstacle marking is activated, the system indicates fixed obstacles that obstruct the opening angles of the doors.

The system does not provide a warning of approaching traffic.



The maximum opening angle of the doors is displayed in selector lever position P. As soon as the vehicle begins moving, the opening angles are replaced by parking aid lines.

Limits of the display

The vehicle's surroundings are displayed with distorted image for technical reasons.

Even if the symbols for the door opening angles do not cross other objects on the Control Display, the following needs to be noted when parking next to other objects:

Because of the perspective, higher, protruding objects may be closer than they appear on the Control Display.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4075
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Setting brightness and contrast

Brightness and contrast can be adjusted with Surround View or Panorama View switched on.

1. Move the Controller to the right, if needed.
2. "Camera image"
3. To perform the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Brightness"
   - ▷ "Contrast"

Functional limitations

The system can be used only to a limited extent in the following situations:

- ▷ In poor light.
- ▷ In case of soiled cameras.
- ▷ With a door open.
- ▷ With the tailgate open.
- ▷ With exterior mirrors folded in.

Gray hatched areas with symbol, for instance open door, in the camera image mark areas that are currently not displayed.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- ▷ Cameras, refer to page 35.

Non-visible areas

Because of the camera angle, the areas under the vehicle cannot be viewed by the cameras.

Detection of objects

Very low obstacles as well as high, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected by the system.

Some assistance functions also consider data from the PDC Park Distance Control.

Follow the notes in the PDC Park Distance Control chapter.

The objects displayed on the Control Display may be closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance from the objects on the display.

Additional information:

PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 207.

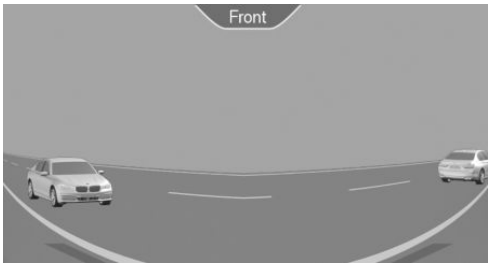
Malfunction

A camera malfunction is displayed on the Control Display.

A yellow symbol is displayed and the recording range of the malfunctioning camera is displayed in black on the Control Display.

With Parking Assistant Plus: Panorama View

Concept



The system provides an early look at cross traffic at blind driveways and intersections.

General information

Road users concealed by obstacles to the left and right of the vehicle can only be detected relatively late from the driver's seat. The cameras in the front and rear capture the sideways traffic area to improve the view.

Yellow lines in the screen display mark the front and rear end of the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4076
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

The camera image shows different levels of distortion in some areas and is thus not suitable for distance estimations.

Depending on the equipment version, the function can only be used when driving forward.

Additional information:

Surround View, refer to page 218.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Panorama View

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Front camera.
- Depending on the equipment: rearview camera.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Display on the Control Display

Press the button when the engine is running.

Depending on the driving direction, the image of the respective camera is displayed:

- "Front": front camera image.
- "Rear": rear camera image.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, cross traffic warning can additionally warn of approaching vehicles using radar sensors.

Additional information:

Cross traffic warning, refer to page 226.

With navigation system: activation points

Concept

Positions where Panorama View should switch on automatically can be stored as activation points provided that a GPS signal is received.

General information

Up to ten activation points can be stored.

Activation points can be used when driving forward for the front camera.

Storing activation points

1. Drive to the position at which the system is to be switched on, and stop.
2. Press the button.
3. Move the Controller to the right.
4. "Activation point"

   The current position is displayed.
5. "Save activation point"

Activation points are, if possible, stored with town/city and street address, or else with the GPS coordinates.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4077
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Using activation points

The use of activation points can be switched on and off.

1. Press the button.
2. Move the Controller to the right.
3. "Settings"
4. "Panorama View, GPS-based"
5. "Panorama View is displayed automatically when set activation points are reached."

Displaying activation points

1. Press the button.
2. Move the Controller to the right.
3. "Manage points"

   A list of all activation points is displayed.

Renaming or deleting activation points

1. Press the button.
2. Move the Controller to the right.
3. "Manage points"

   A list of all activation points is displayed.
4. Select an activation point as needed.
5. To perform the desired setting:
   - "Rename"
   - "Delete activation point"
   - "Delete all activation points"

Functional limitations

The Surround View functional limitations apply.

Additional information:

Surround View, refer to page 218.

System limits

The limits of the Surround View system apply.

Additional information:

Surround View, refer to page 218.

With Parking Assistant Plus: Remote 3D View

Concept

The BMW Connected app and the pictures of the Surround View cameras in combination with the corresponding equipment enable the display of the vehicle's surroundings on a mobile device.

The function displays a momentary view of the situation.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Front camera.
- Top view cameras.
- Rearview camera.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Functional requirements

- Data transmission must be activated.

  Data protection, refer to page 63.
- BMW Connected App must be installed on the mobile device.
- ConnectedDrive countries: an activated driver profile with an existing ConnectedDrive account is required.

  Driver profiles, refer to page 64.

Switching the function on/off

Switching on/off with other functions

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4078
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

4. "Data privacy"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "All services incl. analysis"
   - ▷ "All vehicle services"

Switching on/off individually

Pre-adjustment

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. "Select services individually"
6. "Connected App and cust. portal"
7. "Remote 3D View"

Switching on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. "Individual selection"

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- ▷ Cameras, refer to page 35.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional or may not be available in the following situations:

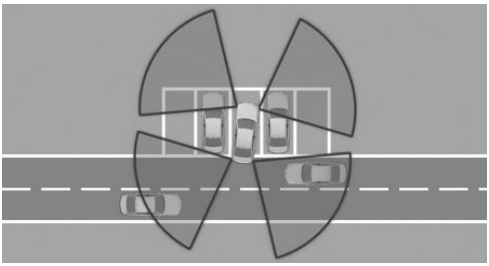
- ▷ With a door or the tailgate open. Dark fields in the display indicate areas that are not recorded by the system.
- ▷ With exterior mirrors folded in.
- ▷ When other camera functions are being performed in the vehicle.
- ▷ When the vehicle moves faster than walking speed.
- ▷ It may not be possible to use the function in every country.
- ▷ For reasons of data protection, the function can only be used three times within two hours.

Cross traffic warning

Concept

At blind driveways or when driving out of diagonal parking spaces, approaching cross traffic is detected sooner by the system than is possible from the driver's seat.

General information



Two radar sensors in the rear bumper monitor the area behind the vehicle.

The system indicates approaching traffic.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the traffic area in front of the vehicle is monitored as well. Two additional radar sensors are located in the front bumpers.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4079
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Radar sensors, side, rear.
- Depending on the equipment: radar sensors, side, front.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 35.

Switching on/off

Activating/deactivating the system

With the button

1. Press the park assistance button.
2. Move the Controller to the right.
3. "Settings"
4. "Cross Traffic Warning"
5. "Activate function"

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver Assistance"
4. "Parking and Maneuvering"
5. "Cross Traffic Warning"
6. "Activate function"

Switching on automatically

If the system was activated on the Control Display, it is automatically switched on as soon as PDC Park Distance Control or Panorama View is active and a gear is engaged.

If reverse gear is engaged, the rear system is switched on.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the front system is switched on when a forward gear is engaged.

Switching off automatically

The system is automatically switched off in the following situations:

- When the speed exceeds walking speed.
- With the steering and traffic jam assistant active: when a certain driving distance is exceeded.
- With an active parking operation of the parking assistant.

Warning

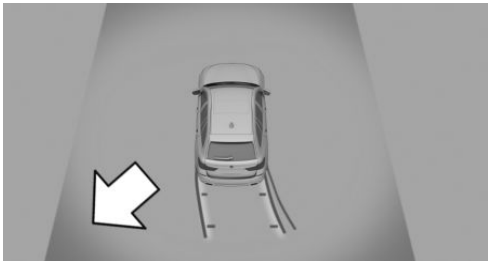
General information

The respective display is called up on the Control Display. A signal tone may sound and the light in the exterior mirror may flash.

Light in the exterior mirror

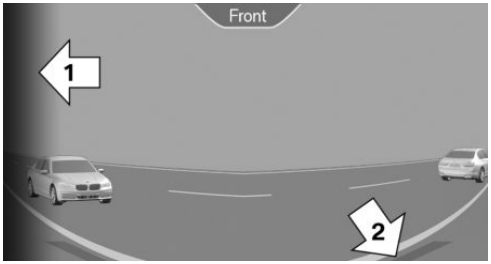
The light in the exterior mirror flashes if vehicles are detected by the rear sensors and your own vehicle is moving backwards.

Display in the PDC Park Distance Control view



In the PDC Park Distance Control view, the respective boundary area flashes red, if vehicles are detected by the sensors.

Display in the camera view



The respective boundary area, arrow 1, in the camera view flashes red, if vehicles are detected by the sensors.

Yellow lines, arrow 2, mark the bumper of your own vehicle.

Acoustic warning

In addition to the optical indicator, a warning signal sounds if your own vehicle moves into the respective direction.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Radar sensors, refer to page 36.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- In tight curves.
- When crossing objects move at a very slow or a very fast speed.
- If other objects are in the capture range of the sensors, that hide cross traffic.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4081
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Driving comfort

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Chassis components

The chassis components are optimized for the vehicle and its scope of application and thereby ensure the best possible Driving Dynamics.

Adaptive M chassis

Concept

This system reduces undesirable vehicle motion when using a sporty driving style or traveling on uneven road surfaces.

This enhances the driving dynamics and driving comfort depending on the road surface condition and driving style.

General information

The system offers several different damping settings.

Program	Damping settings
"COMFORT"	Comfort-oriented.
"SPORT"	Balanced out.
"SPORT PLUS"	Consistently sporty.

Selecting a channel

Using the button

Press the button repeatedly until the desired program is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Via iDrive

It is possible to configure the required program for buttons M1 or M2.

1. "CAR"
2. "M setup"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4. "Chassis"
5. Select the desired channel.

   The setting is immediately applied with active M1 or M2 configuration.

To activate the desired configuration with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:

▷ M1

▷ M2

Display in the instrument cluster

Adaptive M chassis with selected program for the active display of driving dynamics system statuses.

Performance Control

Performance Control enhances the agility of the vehicle.

To increase maneuverability, wheels are braked individually when a sporty driving style is used.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4083
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Climate control

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Interior air quality

The air quality in the vehicle is improved by the following components:

- Emission tested passenger compartment.
- Microfilter.
- Air conditioning system to control the temperature, air flow and recirculated-air mode.

Depending on the equipment:

- Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter.
- Ionization.
- Fragrancing.
- Automatic recirculated-air control AUC.
- Parked-car ventilation.

Automatic climate control

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

Climate control functions

Button	Function
	Temperature.
A/C	Climate control operation.
MAX A/C	Maximum cooling.
AUTO	AUTO program.
	Recirculated-air mode.
	Air flow, manual. Intensity AUTO program.
	Air distribution, manual.
SYNC	SYNC program.

Button	Function
MAX	Defrost and defog window.
	Rear window defroster.
	Active seat ventilation, refer to page 111.
	Seat heating, refer to page 110.
MENU	Opening the Climate menu. For example, for the following settings: upper body temperature adjustment, parked-car ventilation.

Some of the functions can also be used via voice, e.g., temperature.

Opening the Climate menu

MENU Press the button.

The Climate menu is displayed.

All the climate control functions which can adjusted via iDrive can be called up via the Climate menu, e.g., upper body temperature adjustment, parked-car ventilation.

Switching on/off

Switching on

Press any button except for the following:

- Rear window defroster.
- Left side of air flow button.
- SYNC program.
- Seat heating.
- Seat ventilation.

Switching off

Press and hold the left button until the system switches off.

Temperature

Concept

The automatic climate control achieves the set temperature as quickly as possible, if needed, by using the maximum cooling or heating capacity, and then keeps it constant.

Adjusting

Turn the wheel to set the desired temperature.

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. Otherwise, the automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

Temperature of the ventilation

General information

The temperature of the ventilation in the upper body region can be adjusted.

The temperature is individually adjusted, e.g. colder toward blue, warmer toward red.

The air flow of the ventilation in the upper body region heats or cools noticeably, depending on the adjusted temperature.

This does not change the set interior temperature for the driver and front passenger.

Adjusting

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4085
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

4. "Temperature adjustment"
5. Set the desired temperature.

Air conditioning

Concept

The air in the car's interior will be cooled and dehumidified and, depending on the temperature setting, warmed again.

The car's interior can only be cooled with the drive-ready state switched on.

Switching on/off

A/C Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with air conditioning switched on.

Depending on the weather, the windshield and the side windows may fog up briefly when drive-ready state is switched on.

Air conditioning is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops and collects underneath the vehicle.

Maximum cooling

Concept

The system is set to the lowest temperature, optimum air flow and recirculated-air mode with the drive-ready state switched on.

General information

The function is available with external temperatures above approx. 32 °F/0 °C and with the drive-ready state switched on.

Switching on/off

MAX A/C Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the system switched on.

Air flows out of the vents to the upper body region. The vents need to be open for this.

Adjust air flow on the driver's side with the program active.

AUTO program

Concept

The AUTO program cools, ventilates or heats the car's interior automatically.

The air distribution and temperature are controlled automatically depending on the temperature in the car's interior and the desired temperature setting including the selected intensity of the air flow.

Switching on/off

AUTO Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the AUTO program switched on.

Depending on the selected settings and outside influences, the air is directed to the windshield, side windows, upper body, and into the floor area.

Air conditioning is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

Point the side vents toward the side windows.

At the same time, a condensation sensor controls the program so as to prevent window condensation as much as possible.

The AUTO program is switched off automatically, when manual air distribution is set.

Intensity

With the AUTO program switched on, the intensity can be adjusted. This changes the automatic control for the air mass.

Press the left or right side of the button: to decrease or increase intensity.

The selected intensity is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

Automatic recirculated-air control AUC

Concept

The automatic recirculated-air control AUC recognizes odors or pollutants in the outside air. The outside air supply is shut off and the interior air is recirculated.

General information

If the system is activated, a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and controls the shut-off automatically.

If the system is deactivated, outside air continuously flows into the car's interior.

With constant recirculated-air mode, the air quality in the car's interior deteriorates and window fogging increases.

Switching on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. If necessary, "Air quality"
5. "Auto-recirculate"

If there is window condensation, switch off recirculated-air mode or defog the windows.

Recirculated-air mode

Concept

You may react to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air flow within the vehicle.

Adjusting

Press the button:

The LED is illuminated when recirculated-air mode is switched on. The supply of outside air is shut off.

When recirculated-air mode is switched off, fresh air is directed into the vehicle's interior.

To prevent window fogging, recirculated-air mode switches off automatically after a certain amount of time, depending on the environmental conditions.

With constant recirculated-air mode, the air quality in the car's interior deteriorates and window fogging increases.

If there is window condensation, switch off recirculated-air mode or defog the windows.

Air flow, manual

Concept

The air flow for climate control can be adjusted manually.

General information

To adjust the air flow manually switch off AUTO program first.

Adjusting

Press the left or right side of the button: to decrease or increase air flow.

The selected air flow is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

The air flow of the automatic climate control may be reduced automatically to save battery power.

Manual air distribution

Concept

The air distribution for climate control can be adjusted manually.

Adjusting

Press the button repeatedly to select a program:

- ▷ Windows, upper body region, and floor area.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4087
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

- Upper body region and floor area.
- Floor area.
- Windows and floor area.
- Windows: driver's side only.
- Windows and upper body.
- Upper body region.

The selected air distribution is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

SYNC program

Concept

The following settings of the driver's side can be transferred to the front-passenger side and the rear:

- Temperature.
- Air distribution.

Switching on/off

SYNC Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the SYNC program switched on.

The program is switched off automatically if the settings on the front passenger side or in the rear are changed.

To defrost windows and remove condensation

Concept

Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

Switching on/off

MAX Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the system switched on.

The air flow can be adjusted manually with the system switched on.

AUTO If there is window condensation, press the button or switch on the air conditioning to utilize the condensation sensor. Make sure that air can flow to the windshield.

Rear window defroster

Press the button. The LED lights up.

The function is operational when the drive-ready state is switched on.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter

The microfilter removes dust and pollen from the incoming air.

The activated-charcoal filter also removes gaseous pollutants from the outside air that enters the vehicle.

Have this combined filter changed during vehicle maintenance.

Ventilation

Concept

The air flow directions can be individually adjusted.

Adjusting the ventilation

General information

The air flow directions can be adjusted for direct or indirect ventilation.

Open the vents and position them to ensure effective climate control.

Direct ventilation

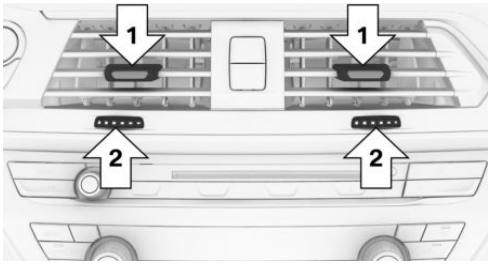
The air flow is directed towards the passengers. The air flow heats or cools noticeably, depending on the adjusted temperature.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4088

Indirect ventilation

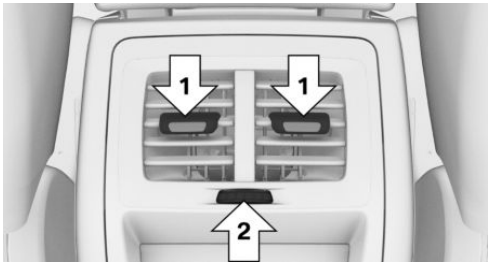
The air flow is not directed towards the passengers. The car's interior is warmed or cooled indirectly, depending on the set temperature.

Front ventilation



- Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 1.
- Thumbwheel for variable opening and closing of the vents, arrow 2.

Ventilation in rear, center



- Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 1.
- Thumbwheel for variable opening and closing of the vents, arrow 2.

Rear automatic climate control

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

Climate control functions

Button	Function
▼ ▲	Temperature.
AUTO	AUTO program.
	Air distribution, manual.
OFF	Switches off the system.
	Seat heating, refer to page 110.

Switching on/off

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Rear climate control"

The rear automatic climate control is not ready for operation if the automatic climate control is switched off or if the function for defrosting the windows and removing condensation is active.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4089
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Using the button: switching on

Press any button except for the following:

- OFF button.
- Seat heating.

Using the button: switching off

OFF Press the button.

Temperature

Concept

The automatic climate control achieves the set temperature as quickly as possible, if needed, by using the maximum cooling or heating capacity, and then keeps it constant.

Adjusting

Press the left or right side of the button: to decrease or increase temperature.

The selected temperature is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. Otherwise, the automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

AUTO program

Concept

Air flow, air distribution and temperature are controlled automatically.

Switching on/off

AUTO Press the button.

The LED is illuminated with the AUTO program switched on.

Depending on the selected temperature and outside influences, the air is directed to the upper body and into the floor area.

Manual air distribution

Concept

The air distribution for climate control can be adjusted manually.

Adjusting

Press the button repeatedly to select a program:

- Upper body region.
- Upper body region and floor area.
- Floor area.

Parked-car ventilation

Concept

The car's interior can be cooled or heated before driving off with the parked-car ventilation. Depending on set temperature and ambient temperature, the car's interior is ventilated or possibly heated using the residual engine heat.

General information

The system can be switched on and off directly or via a preset departure time.

The activation time is determined based on the external temperature. The system promptly switches on before the selected departure time.

Functional requirements

- The vehicle is in idle state or standby state and not in drive-ready state.
- The battery is sufficiently charged.

  If parked-car ventilation is switched on, the vehicle battery will be discharged. Thus, limit the maximum activation time to save the vehicle battery. The system will be available again after the engine is started or after a short trip.

- Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.
- Open the vents to allow air to flow out.

Switching on/off directly

General information

There are different ways to switch the system on or off.

The system switches off automatically after a certain period of time. The system continues to run for some time after being switched off.

Using the button

General information

When the vehicle is in standby state, the parked-car ventilation can be switched on or off via the automatic climate control buttons.

Switching on

Press any button except:

- Rear window defroster.
- Left side of air flow button.
- Seat heating.
- SYNC program.
- MENU.

Switching off

Press and hold the left side of the button.

The system switches off after leaving and locking the vehicle.

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Pre-ventilation"
5. "Start now"

Via BMW display key

Switching on

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap the symbol or the symbol.
4. "Activate now"
5. "Start"

Switching off

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap the symbol or the symbol.
4. "Stop"

Display

symbol on the automatic climate control indicates the system is switched on.

REST is displayed on the automatic climate control. The residual engine heat is used.

Departure time

Concept

Different departure times can be set to ensure a comfortable interior temperature in the vehicle at the time of departure.

- One-time departure time: the time can be set.

  The system is switched on once.
- Departure time with weekday: time and day of the week can be set.

  On the desired weekdays, the system will be switched on promptly before the set departure time.

The departure time is preselected in two steps:

- Set departure times.
- Activate departure times.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4091
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

A minimum of 10 minutes should pass between setting/activating the departure time and the planned departure time to allow a sufficient period of time for the climate control.

Setting the departure time

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Pre-ventilation"
5. "Departure schedule"
6. Select the desired departure time.
7. Set the departure time.
8. Select day of the week, if needed.
9. "OK"

Via BMW display key

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap the symbol or the symbol.
4. Select the desired departure time.
5. Set the departure time.
6. Select day of the week, if needed.
7. "OK"

Activating the departure time

Functional requirement

If a departure time is to influence the switching on of parked-car ventilation, the respective departure time must be activated first.

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Pre-ventilation"
5. "Departure schedule"
6. Activate the desired departure time.

Via BMW display key

1. Switch on the display of the BMW display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap the symbol or the symbol.
4. Tap on the symbol.
5. Activate the desired departure time.

Display

, Symbol on the climate control display signals an activated departure time.

Ambient air package

Concept

The Ambient Air Package can be used to clean and scent the interior air with high-quality fragrances.

Ionization is used to clean the air from suspended particles. Together with the selected fragrance, ionization contributes to well-being and relaxation while driving.

General information

Two different fragrances can be selected in the vehicle. A variety of other fragrances is possible by replacing the fragrance cartridges.

The following criteria can influence the perception of scents in the car's interior:

- Automatic climate control settings.
- Temperature and air humidity.
- Time of day and season.
- Physical condition of the vehicle occupants, for instance fatigue.

BMW recommends the use of genuine BMW fragrance cartridges.

The genuine BMW fragrance cartridges are not suitable for refilling. When a cartridge is empty, replace it with a new fragrance cartridge.

Safety information

Warning

Refilled genuine BMW fragrance cartridges can cause the emission of harmful substances, malfunctions, and damage to the system. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not refill genuine fragrance cartridges. When a cartridge is empty, replace it with a new fragrance cartridge.

Ionization

Concept

Ionization cleans the car's interior air of suspended particles.

Switching on/off

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Air quality"
5. "Ionization"

Fragrancing

General information

Fragrancing is done at intervals in order to avoid a habituation effect.

Two fragrance cartridges in the vehicle allow switching between the fragrances.

The fragrance cartridges are located in the glove compartment.

To ensure a pleasant fragrance inside of the vehicle when starting the trip, fragrancing can occur prior to the trip. The system is automatically switched on with the parked-car ventilation if fragrancing was switched on at the end of the last trip.

Functional requirements

- The fragrance cartridges are sufficiently filled.
- The interior temperature is between 41 °F/+5 °C and 104 °F/+40 °C.
- Open the vents to allow the fragrance to flow out.

Selecting the fragrance

The car's interior is fragranced depending on the selected fragrance.

Two different fragrances can be selected in the vehicle.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Fragrance"
5. Select the desired fragrance.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Switching fragrancing on/off, adjusting intensity

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Fragrance"
5. "Level"
6. Select the desired setting.

Display

The illustrations on the Control Display show the actual filling level of the fragrance cartridges.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate control"
4. "Fragrance"

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4093
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

When an empty fragrance cartridge is indicated, the cartridge still contains a fluid carrying the fragrance. However, it is not sufficient for fragrancing.

When the fragrance cartridges are empty, a Check Control message is displayed once.

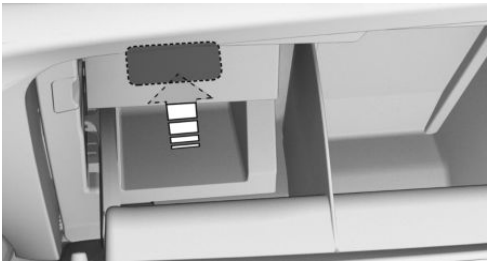
Inserting fragrance cartridges

The fragrance cartridges are located in the glove compartment.

1. Open the glove compartment.

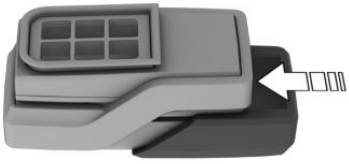
   Front passenger side glove compartment, refer to page 253.
2. Press on the bottom of the cartridge holder.

   The cartridge holder slides down.

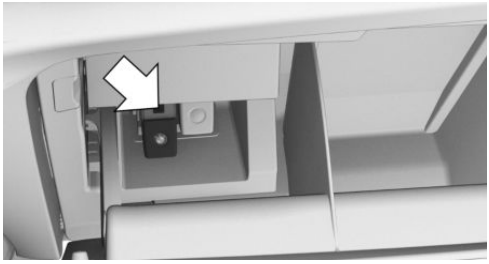


3. Remove the cover of the fragrance cartridge. Hold the cover on the top to slide it from the fragrance cartridge.

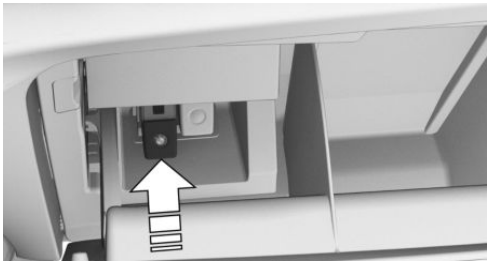
4. Insert the removed cover on the back side of the fragrance cartridge.



5. Position fragrance cartridge such that the chip faces away from the cartridge holder.



6. Insert the fragrance cartridge without pressure into the cartridge holder. The cartridge snaps lightly into place.



7. Push the cartridge holder up, until it engages.

   Make sure that no objects press against the cartridge holder from below, otherwise the function of the ambient air package could be impacted.
8. Close the glove compartment.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4094
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Removing the fragrance cartridge

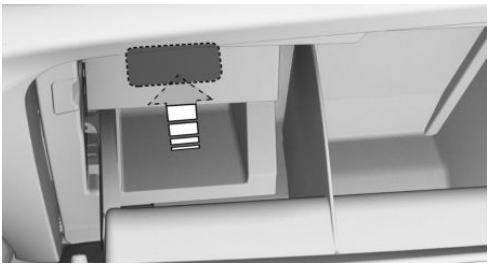
The fragrance cartridges are located in the glove compartment.

1. Open the glove compartment.

   Front passenger side glove compartment, refer to page 253.

2. Press on the bottom of the cartridge holder.

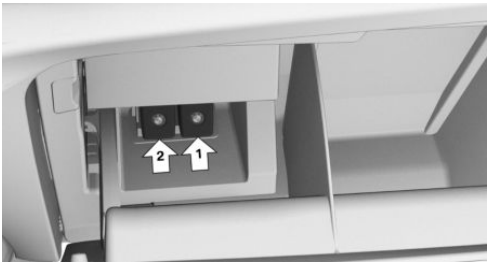
   The cartridge holder slides down.



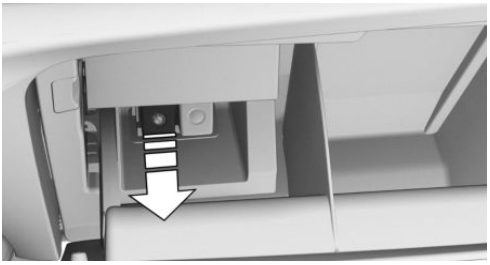
3. Pull desired fragrance cartridge from the holder.

   Fragrance cartridge, arrow 1: first fragrance indicated on the Control Display.

   Fragrance cartridge, arrow 2: second fragrance indicated on the Control Display.



4. Pull desired fragrance cartridge from the holder.



Recycling

Empty fragrance cartridges can be taken to a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop for recycling.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4095
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Interior equipment

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Integrated Universal Remote Control

Concept

The integrated Universal Remote Control in the interior mirror can operate up to 3 functions of remote-controlled systems such as garage door drives, barriers, or lighting systems.

General information

The Integrated Universal Remote Control replaces up to 3 different hand-held transmitters. To operate the remote control, the buttons on the interior mirror must be programmed with the desired functions. The hand-held transmitter for the particular system is required in order to program the remote control.

Before selling the vehicle, delete the stored functions for the sake of security.

If possible, do not install the antenna of the remote-controlled system, e.g. the garage door drive, near metal objects to ensure the best possible operation.

Safety information

Warning

The operation of remote-controlled systems with the integrated universal remote control, such as the garage door, may result in injury, for example, body parts becoming jammed in a garage door. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety information of the hand-held transmitter.

Compatibility

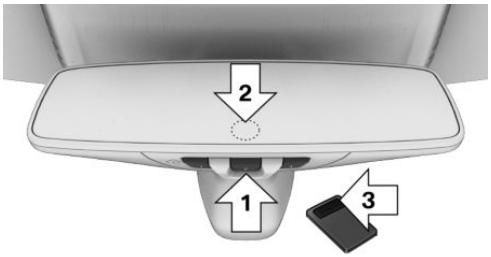
If this symbol is printed on the packaging or in the owner's manual of the system to be controlled, the system is generally compatible with the integrated Universal Remote Control.

Additional questions are answered by:

- A dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
- www.homelink.com on the Internet.

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

Control elements on the interior mirror



- ▷ Buttons, arrow 1.
- ▷ LED, arrow 2.
- ▷ The hand-held transmitter, arrow 3, is required for programming.

Programming

General information

The battery of the hand-held transmitter must be fully charged at the time of programming to ensure an optimal range of the integrated universal remote control.

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Initial setup:

   Press and hold the two outer buttons on the interior mirror simultaneously for approximately 10 seconds until the LED flashes green rapidly. This erases all programming of the buttons on the interior mirror.
3. Press the interior mirror button to be programmed. The LED on the interior mirror will slowly begin flashing orange.
4. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be used approx. 1 to 12 in/2.5 to 30 cm away from the buttons on the interior mirror. The required distance depends on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter.

   Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.
6. ▷ The LED lights up green: programming completed.

   Release the button.

   ▷ The LED flashes fast: programming is not complete.

   Press the button on the interior mirror for 2 seconds and release. Perform this procedure three times to complete the programming procedure.

   If the integrated universal remote control remains nonoperational, continue with the special features for change code wireless systems.

   ▷ LED does not flash green after 60 seconds: programming not completed.

   Repeat steps 3 to 6.

To program other functions on other buttons, repeat steps 3 to 5.

Special feature of the rolling code wireless system

If you are unable to operate the remote-controlled system after repeated programming, please check if the system to be controlled features a rolling code radio system.

Refer to the owner's manual for the system.

For systems with a rolling code radio system, the integrated Universal Remote Control and the system also have to be synchronized.

Please read the owner's manual to find out how to synchronize the system.

Synchronizing is easier with the aid of a second person.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4097
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Synchronizing the universal remote control with the system:

1. Park the vehicle within range of the remote-controlled system.
2. Program the relevant button on the interior mirror as described.
3. Locate and press the synchronizing button on the system being programmed, e.g. at the garage gate. You have approx. 30 seconds for the next step.
4. Hold down the programmed button on the interior mirror for approximately 3 seconds and then release it. If necessary, repeat this step up to three times in order to finish synchronization. Once synchronization is complete, the programmed function will be carried out.

Reprogramming individual buttons

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Press and hold the interior mirror button to be programmed.
3. As soon as the LED on the interior mirror flashes orange after approx. 20 seconds, release the button.
4. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be used approx. 1 to 12 in/2.5 to 30 cm away from the buttons on the interior mirror. The required distance depends on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter.

   Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.
6. The LED can light up in different ways.
   - ▷ The LED lights up green: the programming procedure is completed.

     Release the button.
   - ▷ The LED flashes fast: the hand-held transmitter was detected but programming is not complete.

     Press the button on the interior mirror for 2 seconds and release. Perform this procedure three times to complete the programming procedure.

     If the integrated universal remote control remains nonoperational, continue with the special features for change code wireless systems.
   - ▷ LED does not flash green after 60 seconds: programming not completed.

     Repeat steps 3 to 6.

If the programming procedure is not completed, the previous programming will remain unchanged.

Operation

Warning

The operation of remote-controlled systems with the integrated universal remote control, such as the garage door, may result in injury, for example, body parts becoming jammed in a garage door. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety information of the hand-held transmitter.

The system, such as the garage door, can be operated using the button on the interior mirror while the drive-ready or standby state is switched on. To do this, hold down the button within receiving range of the system until the function is activated. The interior mirror LED stays lit while the wireless signal is being transmitted.

Deleting stored functions

All stored functions will be deleted. The functions cannot be deleted individually.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4098
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Press and hold the two outer buttons on the interior mirror simultaneously for approximately 10 seconds until the LED on the interior mirror flashes green rapidly.

Sun visor

Glare shield

Fold the sun visor down or up.

Glare shield from the side

Folding out

1. Fold the sun visor down.
2. Unhook it from the holder and swing it to the side.

Folding up

Proceed in the reverse order to close the sun visor.

Vanity mirror

A vanity mirror is located in the sun visor behind a cover. When the cover is opened, the mirror lighting switches on.

Ashtray

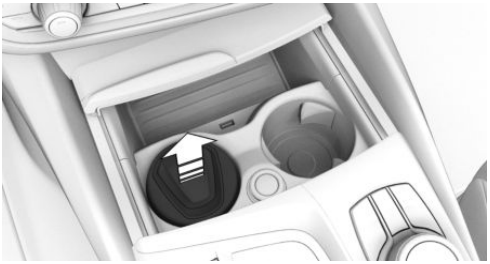
Front center console

Opening

1. Slide the cover forward.

2. The ashtray is located in a cup holder. Fold the ashtray cover upward.

Emptying



Pull the ashtray with the closed cover out of the cup holder.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4099
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Cigarette lighter

Safety information

Warning

Contact with the hot heating element or the hot socket of the cigarette lighter can cause burns. Flammable materials can ignite if the cigarette lighter falls down or is held against the objects. There is a risk of fire and injuries. There is a risk of damage to property. Take hold of the cigarette lighter by its handle. Make sure that children do not use the cigarette lighter.

NOTICE

If metal objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of damage to property. Replace the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.

Front center console

Slide the cover forward.

The cigarette lighter is located between the cup holders.

Operation

Push in the cigarette lighter.

The cigarette lighter can be removed as soon as it pops back out.

Sockets

Concept

The lighter socket can be used as a socket for electrical equipment when standby and drive-ready state are switched on.

General information

The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 watts at 12 volts.

Do not damage the socket by using non-compatible connectors.

Safety information

Warning

Devices and cables in the unfolding area of the airbags, such as portable navigation devices, can hinder the unfolding of the airbag or be thrown around in the car's interior during unfolding. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4100
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

devices and cables are not in the airbag's area of unfolding.

NOTICE

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery can work with high voltages and currents, which means that the 12 volt electrical system can be overloaded or damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.

NOTICE

If metal objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of damage to property. Replace the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.

Front center console

Slide the cover forward.

A socket is located between the cup holders.

Pull off the cover.

In the cargo area

A socket is located on the right side in the cargo area. Unfold the cover.

USB port

General information

Follow the information regarding the connection of mobile devices to the USB port in the section on USB connections.

Additional information:

USB connections, refer to page 75.

In the center armrest

A USB port is located in the center armrest.

Properties:

- USB port Type C.
- For charging mobile devices and for data transfer.
- Charge current: max. 3 A.

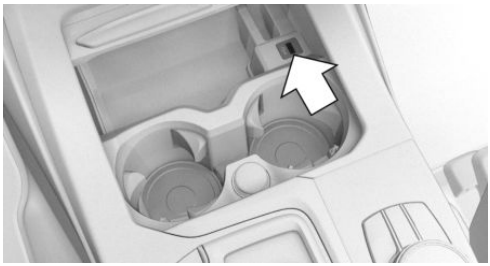
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4101
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

In the front center console

NOTICE

Objects in the storage compartment, e.g., large USB connectors, may block or damage the cover when it is being opened or closed. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the cover is clear while opening and closing it.

Slide the cover forward.



A USB port is located in the center console.

Properties:

- USB port Type A.
- For charging mobile devices and for data transfer.
- Charge current: max. 1.5 A.

In the rear center console

Two USB ports are located in the center console in the rear passenger compartment.

Properties:

- USB port Type C.
- For charging of mobile devices.
- Charge current: maximum 3 A per port.

Wireless charging tray

Concept

The wireless charging tray enables the following functions to be performed without cables:

- Charging the rechargeable battery of a mobile phone with Qi capability and of other mobile devices, which support the Qi standard.
- Charging the BMW Display key.
- Connect the mobile phone to the external antenna.

  Depending on the country, this provides for better network reception and a consistent reproduction quality.

General information

When inserting the mobile phone, make sure there are no objects between it and the wireless charging tray.

During charging, the surface of the tray and the mobile phone may become warm. Higher temperatures may lead to a reduction in the charge current through the mobile phone, and in iso-

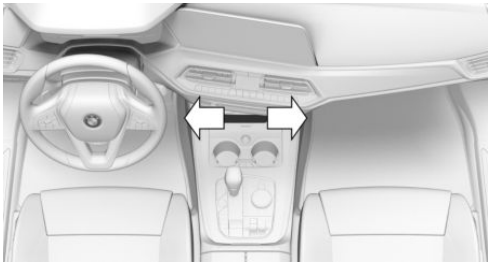
lated cases the charging process is paused temporarily. Follow the relevant instructions in the mobile phone owner's manual.

The charge indicator shows on the Control Display whether a mobile phone with Qi capability is being charged.

NOTE

This device has been tested for human exposure limits and found compliant at a minimum distance of 2 in/5 cm during operation.

Therefore, a distance of 4 in/10 cm must be maintained in every direction when operating the device.



Mounting position of the product.

Safety information

Warning

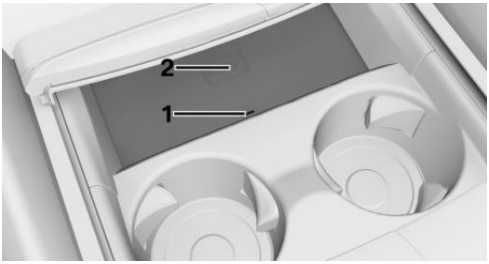
When charging a device that meets the Qi standard in the wireless charging tray, any metal objects located between the device and the tray can become very hot. Placing storage devices or electronic cards, such as chip cards, cards with magnetic strips or cards for signal transmission, between the device and the tray may impair the card function. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. When charging mobile devices, make sure there are no objects between the device and the tray.

NOTICE

The tray is intended for mobile phones up to a particular size. Forceful inserting of the mobile phone into the tray can damage the tray or the mobile phone. There is a risk of damage to property. Observe the maximum dimensions for mobile phones. Do not force the mobile phone into the tray.

Overview

Tray in the center console:



1 LED

2 Storage area

Functional requirements

- The mobile phone must compatibly support the required Qi standard.

  If the mobile phone does not support the Qi standard, the mobile phone can be charged using a special Qi-compatible charging case.
- Standby state is switched on.
- Observe the maximum dimensions of the mobile phone.
- Use only protective jackets and covers up to a maximum thickness of 0.07 in/2 mm; otherwise, the charging function may be impaired.
- The mobile phone to be charged is located in the center of the tray.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4103
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Operation

Inserting the mobile phone

The mobile phone must not exceed the maximum size of approximately 6.0 x 3.1 x 0.7 in/154.5 x 80 x 18 mm.

1. Open the tray cover.
2. Place the mobile phone centered in the tray with the display facing up.
3. Close the tray cover.

Removing the mobile phone

1. Open the tray cover.
2. Remove the mobile phone.

LED displays

Color	Meaning
Blue	The mobile phone is charging. The blue LED stays illuminated once the inserted mobile phone with Qi capability is fully charged.
Orange	The mobile phone is not charging. Temperature on the mobile phone possibly too high or foreign object in charging tray.
Red	The mobile phone is not charging. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Forgotten warning

General information

If the vehicle is equipped with the forgotten warning function, a warning can be output if a mobile phone with Qi capability was forgotten in the wireless charging tray when leaving the vehicle.

The forgotten warning is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Activating

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Wireless charging tray"
5. Activate reminder.

System limits

At high temperatures on the mobile phone or in the vehicle, the charging functions of the mobile phone may be limited and some functions may no longer work.

LTE-Compensator - Information and User Manual

Your car is equipped with a wireless charging tray (WCA) to charge your mobile phone and connect it to the mobile network. To ensure the best possible connection a signal booster (LTE-Compensator) is used in conjunction with the WCA. The following paragraphs refer to this booster:

This is a CONSUMER device.

BEFORE USE, you MUST REGISTER THIS DEVICE with your wireless provider and have your provider's consent. Most wireless providers consent to the use of Compensators. Some providers may not consent to the use of this device on their network. If you are unsure, contact your provider. You MUST operate this device with approved antennas and cables as specified by the manufacturer. Antennas MUST be installed at least 20 cm (8 inches) from any person. You MUST cease operating this device immediately if requested by the FCC or a licensed wireless service provider. Warning E911 location information may not be provided or may be inaccurate for calls served by using this device.

Please observe additionally the following information

- Sprint Nextel will allow consumers to register their signal boosters by calling their toll-free number.
- T-Mobile online registration link: (www.T-Mobile.com/BoosterRegistration); (https://saqat.t-mobile.com/sites/SignalBooster#).
- Verizon's online registration link: (http://www.verizonwireless.com/wcms/consumer/register-signal-booster.html).
- AT&T online registration link (https://securec45.securewebsession.com/attsignal-booster.com/).
- U.S.Cellular online registration link (http://www.uscellular.com/uscellular/support/fcc-booster-registration.jsp).

Before use you must register your booster device with your wireless provider.

If you should be requested by the FCC to cease operating your booster you are not allowed to insert your mobile phone in the charging tray anymore unless the booster is permanently deactivated by your local BMW dealer.

You must not remove the booster from the car nor use it with any other than the preinstalled coupling device or antenna. Any modification of the existing antenna or coupling device as well as the use of other antennas or coupling devices will cause the cease of the booster´s operating license.

The booster device fulfills the network protection standards as required by the FCC, such as intermodulation limits, oscillation detection and gain limits.

Booster Manufacturer: Kathrein Automotive

Model Number: LTECOMPB0

Part Number: 6803145-01

FCC-ID: 2ACC7LTECOMPB0

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4105

Storage compartments

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Storage compartments

General information

The vehicle interior contains multiple storage compartments for stowing objects.

Safety information

Warning

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, for instance mobile phones, can be thrown about the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the car's interior.

NOTICE

Anti-slip pads such as anti-slip mats can damage the dashboard. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use anti-slip pads.

Front passenger side glove compartment

Safety information

Warning

Folded open, the glove compartment protrudes in the car's interior. Objects in the glove compartment can be thrown into the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Always close the glove compartment immediately after using it.

Opening

Pull the handle.

The light in the glove compartment switches on.

Closing

Fold cover closed.

Locking

The glove compartment can be locked with an integrated key. This prevents access to the glove compartment.

After the glove compartment is locked, the vehicle key can be handed over without the

integrated key, for instance when the vehicle is parked by valet parking.

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 86.

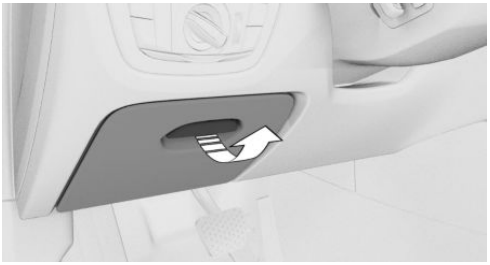
Driver's side glove compartment

Safety information

Warning

Folded open, the glove compartment protrudes in the car's interior. Objects in the glove compartment can be thrown into the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Always close the glove compartment immediately after using it.

Opening



Pull the handle.

Closing

Fold cover closed.

Compartments in the doors

General information

There are storage compartments in the doors.

Safety information

Warning

Breakable objects, such as glass bottles or glasses, can break in the event of an accident or a braking or evasive maneuver. Broken glass can be scattered in the car's interior. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not use any breakable objects while driving. Only stow breakable objects in closed storage compartments.

Storage compartment in the center console

Opening

Slide the cover forward.

Closing

Slide the cover rearward.

Storage compartment in the rear center console

The rear center console contains one or two storage compartments.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4107
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Center armrest, front

General information

A storage compartment is located in the center armrest between the seats.

Opening

Press the button.

Closing

Press cover down until it engages.

Front cup holder

Safety information

⚠ Warning

Unsuitable containers in the cup holders may damage the cup holders or be thrown about the car's interior in the event of an accident, an evasive maneuver, or forceful braking. Spilled liquids can distract from the traffic conditions and lead to an accident. Hot drinks can damage the cup holder or lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not force objects into the cup holder. Use lightweight, shatterproof, and sealable containers. Do not transport hot beverages.

Opening

Slide the cover forward.

Two cup holders are located in the center console.

Closing

Slide the cover rearward.

Rear cup holder

Safety information

⚠ Warning

Unsuitable containers in the cup holders may damage the cup holders or be thrown about the car's interior in the event of an accident, an evasive maneuver, or forceful braking. Spilled liquids can distract from the traffic conditions and lead to an accident. Hot drinks can damage the cup holder or lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not force objects into the cup holder. Use light-

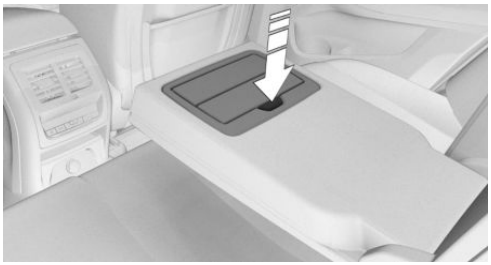
weight, shatterproof, and sealable containers. Do not transport hot beverages.

NOTICE

With an open cup holder, the center armrest cannot be folded back up. There is a risk of damage to property. Press back the covers before the center armrest is folded up.

Opening and closing

Opening



Fold the center armrest forward.

Press the button.

Closing

Press both covers back inward in sequence and fold the center armrest back.

Clothes hooks

General information

Two folding clothes hooks are provided on the roofliner in the rear of the vehicle. Press sideways onto the edge to fold open.

Safety information

Warning

Clothing articles on the clothes hooks can obstruct the view while driving. There is a risk of accident. When suspending clothing articles from the clothes hooks, ensure that they will not obstruct the driver's view.

Warning

Improper use of the clothes hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only hang lightweight objects, for instance clothing articles, from the clothes hooks.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4109
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Cargo area

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Loading

Safety information

Warning

High gross weight can overheat the tires, damage them internally and cause a sudden drop in tire inflation pressure. Driving characteristics may be negatively impacted, reducing lane stability, lengthening the braking distances and changing the steering response. There is a risk of accident. Pay attention to the permitted load capacity of the tires and never exceed the permitted gross weight.

Warning

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, for instance mobile phones, can be thrown about the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the car's interior.

Warning

Improperly stowed objects can shift and be thrown into the car's interior, for instance in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuver. Vehicle occupants can be hit and injured. There is a risk of injury. Stow and secure objects and cargo properly.

NOTICE

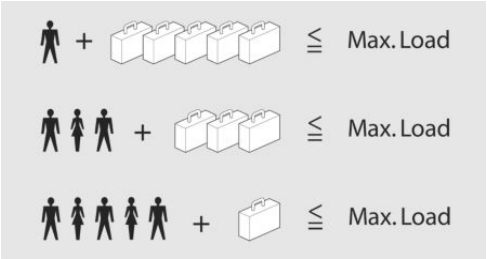
Fluids in the cargo area can cause damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that no fluids leak in the cargo area.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs” on your vehicle’s placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1,400 lbs and there will be five 150 lbs passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs (1,400 - 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your ve-

hicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Load



The maximum load is the sum of the weight of the occupants and the cargo.

The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo that can be transported.

Stowing and securing cargo

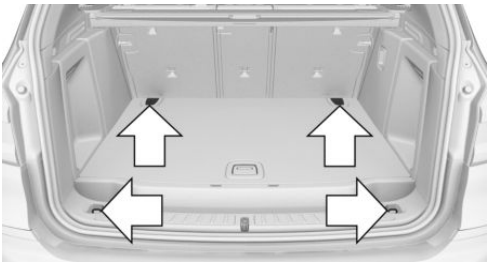
- Cover sharp edges and corners on the cargo.
- Heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear passenger seat backrests.
- Very heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear passenger seat backrests. When the rear seat is not occupied, secure each of the outer safety belts in the opposite buckle.
- If necessary, fold down the rear backrests to stow large cargo.
- Do not stack cargo above the top edge of the backrests.
- Small and light cargo: secure with ratchet straps or, depending on the equipment, with a cargo net or draw straps.
- Larger and heavy cargo: secure with cargo straps.

Lashing eyes in the cargo area

General information

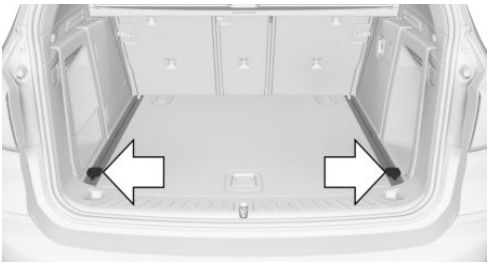
Attach load securing aids, such as lashing straps, tensioning straps, draw straps or cargo nets, to the lashing eyes in the cargo area.

Fixed lashing eyes



There are four lashing eyes in the cargo area for securing cargo.

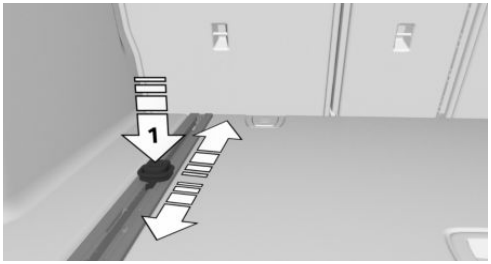
Movable lashing eyes



To secure the cargo there are additional movable lashing eyes in the cargo area.

The lashing eyes may be located underneath the cargo floor panel. The lashing eyes can be inserted into the openings in the rails.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4111
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20



To slide the lashing eyes, press the button, arrow 1. Make sure that the lashing eyes latch at the new position.

Multi-function hook

General information

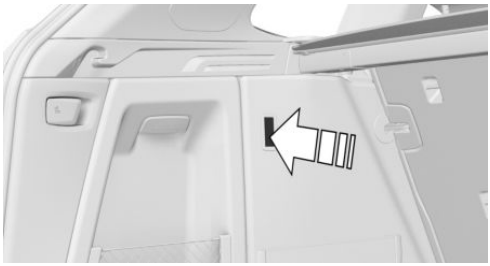
A multi-function hook is located on the left or right side in the cargo area.

Safety information

Warning

Improper use of the multi-function hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers, for example. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only hang lightweight objects, such as shopping bags, from the multi-function hooks. Only transport heavy luggage in the cargo area if it has been appropriately secured.

Folding down



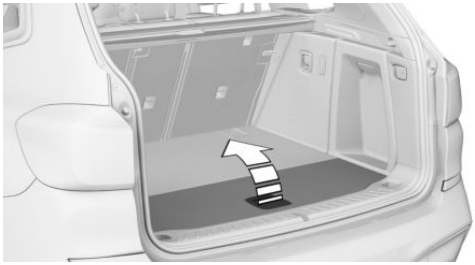
Press on the multi-function hook and turn until it engages.

Retaining function for the cargo floor panel

The cargo floor panel can be hooked onto the right-hand multi-function hook.

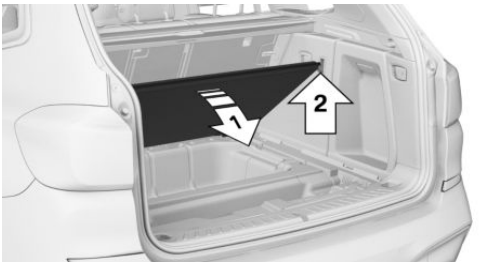
Without storage compartment package:

1. Fold the rear part of the cargo floor panel forward.



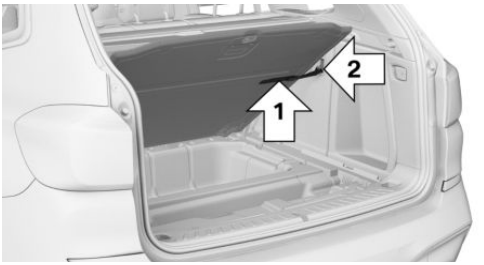
2. Lift the cargo floor panel up until it is over the multi-function hook.

3. Fold down the multi-function hook.
4. Lower the cargo floor panel, arrow 1, until it is resting on the multi-function hook, arrow 2.



With storage compartment package:

1. Fold down the multi-function hook.
2. Lift the cargo floor panel.
3. Release the loop from the cargo floor panel.
4. Attach the loop, arrow 1, on the multi-function hook, arrow 2.



Tensioning strap

A tensioning strap is available on the left side trim for fastening small objects.

Net

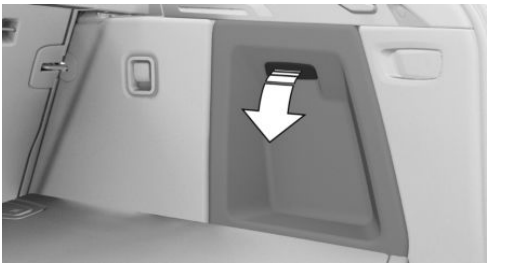
Small objects can be stowed in the net on the left side.

Storage compartment on the right side

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, a storage compartment is located on the right side.

Opening



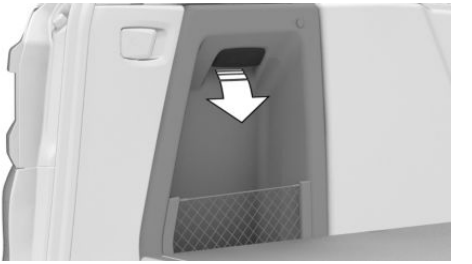
Pull the handle.

Storage compartment on the left side

General information

A storage compartment is located on the left side in the cargo area.

Opening



Pull the handle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4113
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Storage compartment under the cargo floor panel

General information

There is a storage compartment under the cargo floor panel.

Opening

Fold up the cargo floor panel.

Closing

Push the cargo floor panel downward.

Through-loading system

Concept

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the cargo area can be enlarged as follows:

- The rear seat backrests can be folded down.
- The rear seat backrests can be moved into an upright loading position using the cargo setting.

General information

The rear seat backrest is divided at a ratio of 40–20–40. The side rear seat backrests and the center section can be folded down separately.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the rear seat backrests can be folded down from the rear or from the cargo area.

Safety information

Warning

Danger of jamming with folding down the backrests. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the rear backrest and the of the head restraint is clear prior to folding down.

Warning

If a rear seat backrest is not locked, unsecured cargo can be thrown about the car's interior; for instance, in the event of an accident, braking or an evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the rear seat backrest is locked after folding it back.

Warning

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

Warning

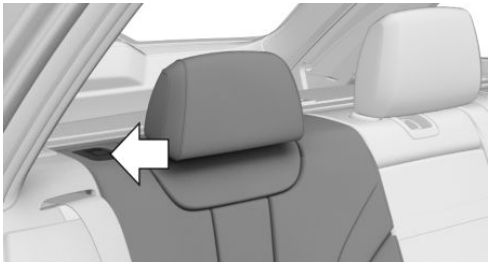
Once the rear seat backrest has been folded down, the locking bracket protrudes into the car's interior. There is a risk of damage to property. When the rear seat backrest is folded down, pay attention to the protruding locking bracket and keep this area unobstructed.

NOTICE

Vehicle parts can be damaged when folding down the rear backrest. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the rear backrest including head restraint is clear when folding down.

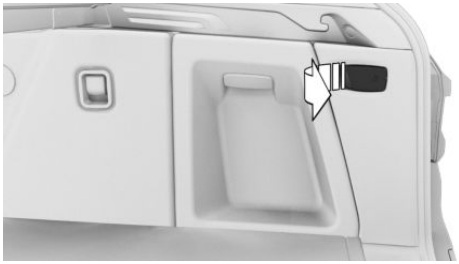
Reclining the backrest

From the rear



Pull the lever and fold the rear seat backrest forward.

From the cargo area

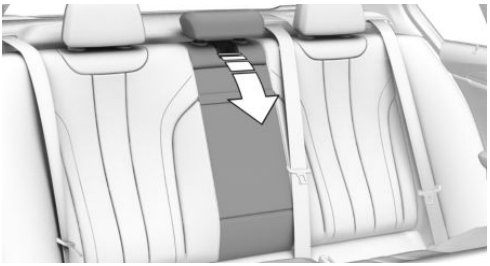


Pull the corresponding lever in the cargo area to release the rear seat backrest.

- Left lever: fold down the left and middle rear seat backrest.
- Right lever: fold down the right rear seat backrest.

Folding down the center section

1. Fold down the center head restraint.
2. Pull lever and fold the center section forward.



Cargo position

Concept

The rear seat backrests can be moved into an upright loading position individually. An adjustment in several tilt stages is possible as needed.

General information

The backrest tilt for the center section is adjusted together with the left backrest.

Adjusting

1. Pull the lever and hold it.

2. Move the rear seat backrest into an upright loading position.

After the adjustment, move the backrest slightly forward or back to engage it correctly.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4115
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Ski and snowboard bag

The ski and snowboard bag is contained in a protective jacket in the cargo area.

Follow the installation and owner's manual included in the protective jacket.

Depending on the vehicle equipment: remove the emergency wheel from the vehicle to mount the ski and snowboard bag.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4116

BMW X4 M Technology

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

High-performance engine

General information

With a displacement of 3 liters, the high-performance engine generates a maximum power of 473 hp, with Competition Package 503 hp, and a maximum torque of 443 lbs ft/600 Nm. With its spontaneous response behavior, a speed range of wide utility results. The maximum engine speed is 7,200 rpm and is electronically controlled. Because of the high engine dynamics, the maximum engine speed with the vehicle stationary is reduced.

Warm-up

During the engine warm-up phase, the high-performance engine has a somewhat rougher running behavior because of the emission controls.

During the engine warm-up phase, the start occurs at an increased idle speed, which leads to increased exhaust system noises.

Additional information:

Tachometer, refer to page 143.

Engine oil temperature, refer to page 144.

Compound brake

General information

The high-performance braking system has perforated compound brake discs.

Due to the specific layout, temporary functional noise may occur after an extended minor brake load.

The functional noises have no effect on the performance, operational reliability, and durability of the brake.

Correct braking

To prevent functional noises, it is expedient to apply the brakes hard a few times in regular intervals. Ensure that the traffic situation permits the brake operations.

With moisture on the brake discs, the brake system may be operated dry to prevent noise.

Drivetrain

With this vehicle, particular value was placed on the direct connection from engine to the drivetrain. Due to the torsionally rigid design of the drivetrain, as is typical in a sports vehicle, the transmission of the torque also gives acoustic feedback.

When there are load changes, this may result in clicking noises. The clicking noises do not impair the operation or the service life of the components.

The M xDrive all-wheel-drive system establishes variable torque distribution to the front and rear axles. The combination of M xDrive, active M differential, and an Adaptive M chassis in this vehicle ensures a high degree of driving dynamics that is typical of BMW M.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4117
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Things to remember when driving

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Breaking-in period

General information

Moving parts need to begin working together smoothly.

The following instructions will help you to achieve a long vehicle life and good efficiency.

During break-in, do not use the Launch Control.

Safety information

Warning

Due to new parts and components, safety and driver assistance systems can react with a delay. There is a risk of accident. After installing new parts or with a new vehicle, drive conservatively and intervene early if necessary. Observe the break-in procedures of the respective parts and components.

Engine, transmission, and axle drive

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Drive at varying engine and road speeds, but do not exceed 5,500 rpm and 106 mph/170 km/h.

Avoid full load or kickdown under all circumstances.

At 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Have drive-in checkup maintenance performed.

From 1,200 miles/2,000 km to 3,100 miles/5,000 km

The engine and road speed can gradually be increased to a constant speed of 137 mph/220 km/h.

Use the maximum speed of 155 mph/250 km/h only briefly, for instance when passing.

Tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new; they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

For M compound brake:

Brake discs and brake pads of the M Compound brake only reach their full effectiveness after approx. 300 miles/500 km. Drive moderately during this break-in period.

Following part replacement

Observe the break-in procedures again, if components mentioned above are replaced.

Driving on poor roads

Concept

Because of its greater ground clearance, the vehicle can be driven on a variety of road types and qualities.

All-wheel drive can help improve forward momentum.

Safety information

NOTICE

Objects in unpaved areas, for instance stones or branches, can damage the vehicle. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not drive on unpaved terrain.

When driving on poor roads

For your own safety, for the safety of passengers and of the vehicle, heed the following points:

- Familiarize yourself with the vehicle before driving.
- Do not take risks when driving.
- Adjust the speed to the road surface conditions. The steeper and more uneven the road surface, the slower the speed should be.
- When driving on steep uphill or downhill grades: add engine oil and coolant up to near the MAX mark.
- On steep downhill grades, use Hill Descent Control HDC.
- Avoid that the chassis bottom coming in contact with the ground.

  The ground clearance is no more than 7.8 inches/20 cm and can vary according to the vehicle's load.
- When wheels continue to spin, depress the accelerator so that driving stability control systems can distribute the driving force to the wheels. Activate M Dynamic Mode MDM if necessary.

After a trip on poor roads

After a trip on poor roads, check wheels and tires for damage to maintain driving safety. Clear heavy soiling from the body.

General driving notes

Closing the tailgate

Safety information

Warning

An open tailgate protrudes from the vehicle and can endanger occupants and other traffic participants or damage the vehicle in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. In addition, exhaust fumes may enter the vehicle interior. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not drive with the tailgate open.

Driving with the tailgate open

If driving with the tailgate open cannot be avoided:

- Close all windows and the glass sunroof.
- Greatly increase the air flow from the vents.
- Drive moderately.

Hot exhaust gas system

Warning

High temperatures can occur underneath the body, for instance caused by the exhaust gas system, while driving. Contact with the exhaust gas system can cause burns. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch the hot exhaust gas system, including the exhaust pipe.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4119
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Warning

If combustible materials, such as leaves or grass, come in contact with hot parts of the exhaust gas system, these materials can ignite. There is a risk of fire and injuries. Do not remove the heat shields installed and never apply undercoating to them. Make sure that no combustible materials can come in contact with hot vehicle parts in driving operation, idle or during parking.

Mobile communication devices in the vehicle

Warning

Vehicle electronics and mobile phones can influence one another. There is radiation due to the transmission operations of mobile phones. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. If possible, in the car's interior use only mobile phones with direct connections to an exterior antenna in order to exclude mutual interference and deflect the radiation from the car's interior.

Hydroplaning

On wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water can form between the tires and road surface.

This phenomenon is referred to as hydroplaning. It is characterized by a partial or complete loss of contact between the tires and the road surface, ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle.

Driving through water

General information

When driving through water, follow the following:

- Deactivate Auto Start/Stop function.
- Drive through calm water only.
- Drive through water only if it is not deeper than maximum 9.8 inches/25 cm.
- Drive through water no faster than walking speed, up to 3 mph/5 km/h.

Safety information

NOTICE

When driving too quickly through too deep water, water can enter into the engine compartment, the electrical system or the transmission. There is a risk of damage to property. When driving through water, do not exceed the maximum indicated water level and the maximum speed for driving through water.

Braking safely

General information

The vehicle is equipped with an Antilock Braking System ABS as a standard feature.

Perform an emergency stop in situations that require such.

Steering is still responsive. You can still avoid any obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.

The pulsing of the brake pedal indicates that the Antilock Braking System ABS is in its active mode.

In certain braking situations, the perforated brake discs can emit functional noises. However, functional noises have no effect on the performance and operational reliability of the brake.

Objects in the area around the pedals

Warning

Objects in the driver's floor area can limit the pedal distance or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's floor area. Use floor mats

that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, for instance for cleaning.

Driving in wet conditions

When roads are wet, salted, or in heavy rain, gently press the brake pedal every few miles.

Ensure that this action does not endanger other traffic.

The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

In this way braking efficiency will be available when you need it.

Hills

General information

Drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear that requires least braking effort. Otherwise, the brakes may overheat and reduce brake efficiency.

You can increase the engine's braking effect by shifting down, going all the way to first gear, if needed.

Safety information

Warning

Light but consistent brake pressure can lead to high temperatures, brakes wearing out and possibly even brake failure. There is a risk of accident. Avoid placing excessive stress on the brake system.

Warning

In idle state or with the engine switched off, safety functions, for instance engine braking effect, braking assistance and steering assistance, may not be available. There is a risk of accident. Do not attempt to drive in idle state or with the engine switched off.

Brake disc corrosion

Corrosion on the brake discs and contamination on the brake pads are increased by the following circumstances:

- Low mileage.
- Extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all.
- Infrequent use of the brakes.
- Aggressive, acidic, or alkaline cleaning agents.

Corrosion buildup on the brake discs will cause a pulsating effect on the brakes in their response - generally this cannot be corrected.

Condensation water under the parked vehicle

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops and collects underneath the vehicle.

Ground clearance

NOTICE

If the ground clearance is insufficient, e.g., curbs or underground garage entrances, contact with vehicle parts, e.g., spoiler, and the underbody may occur. There is a risk of damage to property. Ensure that there is sufficient ground clearance available.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4121
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Roof-mounted luggage rack

General information

Installation only possible with roof rack.

Roof racks are available as special accessories.

Safety information

Warning

When driving with a roof load, for instance with roof-mounted luggage rack, the vehicle's center of gravity is higher, which increases the risk of the vehicle tipping in critical driving situations. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Do not deactivate DSC Dynamic Stability Control when driving with roof load.

Mounting

Follow the installation instructions of the roof rack.

Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.

Loading

Because roof-mounted luggage racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a major effect on vehicle handling and steering response.

Therefore, note the following when loading and driving:

- Do not exceed the approved roof/axle loads and the approved gross vehicle weight.
- Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.
- Distribute the roof load uniformly.
- The roof load should not extend past the loading area.
- Always place the heaviest pieces on the bottom.
- Secure the roof luggage firmly, for instance using ratchet straps.
- Do not let objects project into the opening path of the tailgate.
- Drive cautiously and avoid sudden acceleration and braking maneuvers. Take corners gently.

Driving on racetracks

Warning

The vehicle is not designed for use in M Sport or motor sport type competition. There is a risk of accident. Do not use the vehicle for M Sport or motor sport type competitions.

Higher mechanical and thermal loads during racetrack operation lead to increased wear. This wear is not covered by the warranty.

When driving on a racetrack, increase the duration of the load slowly.

The standard brake linings and the wear indicators are not designed for racetrack operation.

Saving fuel

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Reducing fuel consumption

General information

The vehicle contains advanced technologies for the reduction of consumption and emission values.

Fuel consumption depends on a number of different factors.

Carrying out certain measures, such as a moderate driving style and regular maintenance, can influence fuel consumption and the environmental impact.

Remove unnecessary cargo

Additional weight increases fuel consumption.

Remove attached parts following use

Remove roof-mounted which are no longer required following use.

Attached parts on the vehicle impair the aerodynamics and increase the fuel consumption.

Close the windows and glass sunroof

Driving with the glass sunroof and windows open results in increased air resistance and raises fuel consumption.

Tires

General information

Tires can affect consumption in various ways, for instance tire size may influence consumption.

Check the tire inflation pressure regularly

Check and, if needed, correct the tire inflation pressure at least twice a month and before starting on a long trip.

Low tire inflation pressure increases rolling resistance and thus raises fuel consumption and tire wear.

Additional information:

Tire inflation pressure specifications, refer to page 274.

Drive away without delay

Do not wait for the engine to warm-up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving right away, but at moderate engine speeds.

This is the quickest way of warming the cold engine up to operating temperature.

Look well ahead when driving

Driving smoothly and proactively reduces fuel consumption.

Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.

By maintaining a suitable distance to the vehicle driving ahead of you.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4123
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Avoid high engine speeds

Driving at low engine speeds lowers fuel consumption and reduces wear.

If necessary, observe the vehicle's gear shift indicator.

Use coasting conditions

When approaching a red light, take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle coast to a halt.

For going downhill take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle roll.

The flow of fuel is interrupted while coasting.

Switch off the engine during longer stops

Switching off the engine

Switch off the engine during longer stops, for instance at traffic lights, railroad crossings or in traffic congestion.

Auto Start/Stop function

The Auto Start/Stop function of the vehicle automatically switches off the engine during a stop.

If the engine is switched off and then restarted rather than leaving the engine running constantly, fuel consumption and emissions are reduced. Savings can begin within a few seconds of switching off the engine.

In addition, fuel consumption is also determined by other factors, such as driving style, road conditions, maintenance or environmental factors.

Switch off any functions that are not currently needed

Functions such as seat heating and the rear window defroster require a lot of energy and increase fuel consumption, especially in city and stop-and-go traffic.

Switch off these functions if they are not needed.

Have maintenance carried out

Have the vehicle maintained regularly to achieve optimal vehicle efficiency and service life. BMW recommends that maintenance work be performed by a BMW service center.

For information on the BMW Maintenance System.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4124
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Refueling

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Follow the following when refueling

General information

Follow the fuel recommendation prior to refueling.

When refueling, insert the filler nozzle completely into the filler pipe. Lifting up the fuel pump nozzle during refueling causes:

- Premature switching off.
- Reduced return of the fuel vapors.

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

Make sure that the fuel cap is closed properly after refueling, otherwise the emissions warning light may light up.

Follow safety regulations posted at the gas station.

Additional information:

Fuel quality, refer to page 303.

Safety information

NOTICE

With a driving range of less than 30 miles/50 km the engine may no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of damage to property. Refuel promptly.

NOTICE

Fuels are toxic and aggressive. Overfilling of the fuel tank can damage the fuel system. Painted surfaces may be damaged by contact with fuel. Escaping fuel can harm the environment. There is a risk of damage to property. Avoid overfilling.

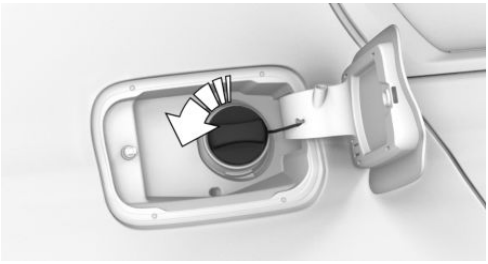
Fuel cap

Opening

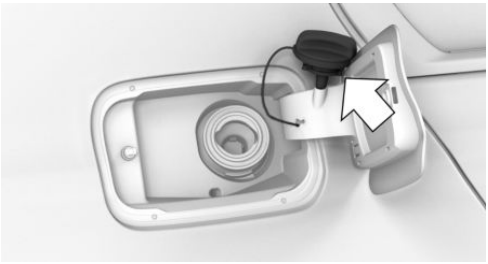
1. To open the fuel filler flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4125
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

2. Turn the fuel cap counterclockwise.



3. Place the fuel cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.



Closing

Warning

The retaining strap of the fuel cap can be jammed and crushed during closing. The cap cannot be correctly closed. Fuel or fuel vapors can escape. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Pay attention that the retaining strap is not jammed or crushed when closing the cap.

1. Fit the fuel cap and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.
2. Press on the fuel filler flap until it engages.

Emergency unlocking

It may be necessary in certain situations to unlock the fuel filler flap manually, for instance with an electrical fault.

Have fuel filler flap unlocked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Wheels and tires

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Tire inflation pressure

General information

The tire characteristics and tire inflation pressure influence the following:

- The service life of the tires.
- Road safety.
- Driving comfort.
- Fuel consumption.

Safety information

Warning

A tire with too little or no tire inflation pressure may heat up significantly and sustain damage. This will have a negative impact on aspects of handling, such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident. Regularly check the tire inflation pressure, and correct it as needed, for instance twice a month and before a long trip.

Tire inflation pressure specifications

In the tire inflation pressure table

The tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 274, contains all tire inflation pressure specifications for the specified tire sizes at the ambient temperature. The tire inflation pressure values apply to tire sizes approved by the manufacturer of the vehicle for the vehicle type.

To identify the correct tire inflation pressure, please note the following:

- Tire sizes of your vehicle.
- Maximum permitted driving speed.

On the Control Display

The current tire inflation pressure values for the mounted tires can be displayed on the Control Display.

To ensure that they are displayed correctly, the tire sizes must be stored in the system and must have been set for the mounted tires.

The current tire inflation pressure value is located on each tire.

Checking the tire inflation pressure

General information

Tires heat up while driving. The tire inflation pressure increases with the tire temperature.

Tires have a natural, consistent loss of tire inflation pressure.

The displays of inflation devices may under-read by up to 0.1 bar/2 psi.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4127
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Checking using tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire inflation pressure table

1. Determine the intended tire inflation pressure levels for the mounted tires.
2. Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, using a pressure gage, for example.
3. Correct the tire inflation pressure if the actual tire inflation pressure deviates from the intended tire inflation pressure.
4. Check whether all valve caps are screwed onto the tire valves.

The tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire inflation pressure table only relate to cold tires or tires at the same temperature as the ambient temperature.

Only check the tire inflation pressure levels when the tires are cold, i.e.:

- A driving distance of max. 1.25 miles/2 km has not been exceeded.
- If the vehicle has not moved again for at least 2 hours after a trip.

Check the tire inflation pressure of the emergency wheel in the cargo area regularly, and correct it as needed.

Checking using the tire inflation pressure specifications on the Control Display

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) "Tire Pressure Monitor"
4. Check whether the current tire inflation pressure levels deviate from the intended tire pressure value.
5. Correct the tire inflation pressure if the actual tire inflation pressure deviates from the intended tire inflation pressure.

After correcting the tire inflation pressure

With runflat tires:

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

With Tire Pressure Monitor:

The corrected tire inflation pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the correct tire settings have been made.

With tires that cannot be found in the tire pressure values on the Control Display, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM.

Tire inflation pressures up to 100 mph/160 km/h

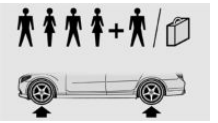
For speeds of up to 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table and adjust as necessary.

These pressure values can also be found on the tire inflation pressure label on the driver's door pillar.

Do not exceed a speed of 100 mph/160 km/h.

Tire inflation pressure values up to 100 mph/160 km/h

X4 M

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
255/45 R 20 105 V XL M+S	2.2 / 32	2.6 / 38
Front: 255/45 ZR 20 105 Y XL	2.2 / 32	-
Rear: 265/45 ZR 20 108 Y XL	-	2.4 / 35
Front: 255/40 ZR 21 102 Y XL	2.3 / 33	-
Rear: 265/40 ZR 21 105 Y XL	-	2.6 / 38
Emergency wheel:	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h	
T 135/70 R 19 105 M	4.2 / 60	

Tire inflation pressures at max. speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h

Warning

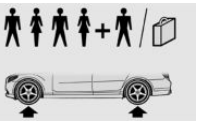
In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph/160 km/h, please observe, and, if necessary, adjust tire pressures for speeds exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h from the relevant table on the following pages. Otherwise, tire damage and accidents could occur.

For speeds over 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table and adjust as necessary.

Tire inflation pressure values over 100 mph/160 km/h

X4 M

Without M Driver's Package:

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
255/45 R 20 105 V XL M+S	2.6 / 38	3.1 / 45
Front: 255/45 ZR 20 105 Y XL	2.4 / 35	-
Rear: 265/45 ZR 20 108 Y XL	-	2.7 / 39
Front: 255/40 ZR 21 102 Y XL	2.6 / 38	-
Rear: 265/40 ZR 21 105 Y XL	-	3.0 / 44
Emergency wheel:	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h	
T 135/70 R 19 105 M	4.2 / 60	

With M Driver's Package:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4129
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
255/45 R 20 105 V XL M+S	2.6 / 38	3.1 / 45
Front: 255/45 ZR 20 105 Y XL	2.7 / 39	-
Rear: 265/45 ZR 20 108 Y XL	-	3.2 / 46
Front: 255/40 ZR 21 102 Y XL	3.0 / 44	-
Rear: 265/40 ZR 21 105 Y XL	-	3.4 / 49
Emergency wheel: T 135/70 R 19 105 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

Tire identification marks

Tire size

245/45 R 18 96 Y

245: nominal width in mm

45: aspect ratio in %

R: radial tire code

18: rim diameter in inches

96: load rating, not for ZR tires

Y: speed rating, before the R on ZR tires

Maximum tire load

Maximum tire load is the maximum permissible weight for which the tire is approved.

Locate the maximum tire load on the tire sidewall and the Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR – on the certification label on the driver door B-pillar. Divide the tire load by 1.1. It must be greater than one-half of the vehicle's Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR. Note, front vs. rear GAWR and tire loads, respectively.

Speed letter

Designation	Maximum speed
Q	up to 100 mph/160 km/h
R	up to 106 mph/170 km/h
S	up to 112 mph/180 km/h
T	up to 118 mph/190 km/h
H	up to 131 mph/210 km/h
V	up to 150 mph/240 km/h
W	up to 167 mph/270 km/h
Y	up to 186 mph/300 km/h
(Y)	above 186 mph/300 km/h

Tire Identification Number

DOT Code: DOT xxxx xxx 3820

xxxx: manufacturer code for the tire brand

xxx: tire size and tire design

2120: tire age

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

Tire age

Recommendation

Regardless of the tire tread, replace tires at least every 6 years.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4130
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Manufacture date

You can find the manufacture date of the tire on the tire's sidewall.

Designation	Manufacture date
DOT … 3820	38th week 2020

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

E.g.: Treadwear 200; Traction AA; Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades

Treadwear

Traction AA A B C

Temperature A B C

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. E.g., a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half, 1 g, times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.

Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades Band A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Warning

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

M+S

Winter and all-season tires with better cold weather performance than summer tires.

Tire tread

Summer tires

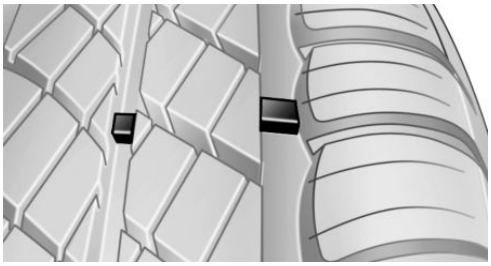
Do not drive with a tire tread of less than 0.12 in/3 mm, otherwise there is an increased risk of hydroplaning.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4131
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Winter tires

Do not drive with a tire tread of less than 0.16 in/4 mm, as such tires are less suitable for winter operation.

Minimum tread depth



Wear indicators are distributed around the tire circumference. These wear indicators have the legally required minimum height of 0.063 in/1.6 mm.

The positions of the wear indicators are marked on the tire sidewall with TWI, Tread Wear Indicator.

Tire damage

General information

Inspect your tires regularly for damage, foreign objects lodged in the tread, and tread wear.

Driving over rough or damaged road surfaces, as well as debris, curbs and other obstacles can cause serious damage to wheels, tires and suspension parts. This is more likely to occur with low-profile tires, which provide less cushioning between the wheel and the road. Be careful to avoid road hazards and reduce your speed, especially if your vehicle is equipped with low-profile tires.

Indications of tire damage or other vehicle malfunctions:

- Unusual vibrations.
- Unusual tire or running noises.
- Unusual handling such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.

Damage can be caused by the following situations, for instance:

- Driving over curbs.
- Road damage.
- Tire inflation pressure too low.
- Vehicle overloading.
- Incorrect tire storage.

Safety information

Warning

Damaged tires can lose tire inflation pressure, which can lead to loss of vehicle control. There is a risk of accident. If tire damage is suspected while driving, immediately reduce speed and stop. Have wheels and tires checked. For this purpose, drive carefully to the nearest dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Have vehicle towed or transported as needed. Do not repair damaged tires, but have them replaced.

Warning

Tires can become damaged by driving over obstacles, e.g., curbs or road damage, at high speed. Larger wheels have a smaller tire cross-section. The smaller the tire cross-section, the higher the risk of tire damage. There is a danger of accidents and property damage. If possible, avoid driving over objects or road conditions that may damage tires, or drive over them slowly and carefully.

Changing wheels and tires

Mounting and wheel balancing

Have mounting and wheel balancing carried out by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Wheel and tire combination

General information

You can ask the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop about the correct wheel/tire combination and wheel rim versions for the vehicle.

Safety information

Warning

Wheels and tires which are not suitable for your vehicle can damage parts of the vehicle, for instance due to contact with the body due to tolerances despite the same official size rating. There is a risk of an accident. The manufacturer of your vehicle strongly suggests that you use wheels and tires that have been recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for your vehicle type.

Warning

Mounted steel wheels can cause technical problems, for instance unexpected loosening of the lug bolts and damage to the brake discs. There is a risk of accident. Do not mount steel wheels.

Warning

Incorrect wheel/tire combinations will have a negative impact on the vehicle's handling and on the function of a variety of systems, such as the ABS Antilock Braking System or DSC Dynamic Stability Control. There is a risk of accident. To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires with a single tread configuration from a single manufacturer. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you use wheels and tires that have been recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for your vehicle type. Following tire damage, have the original wheel/tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

Warning

Unsuitable wheel studs, such as single-section wheel studs, may loosen or come off. The wheel may come loose during driving. There is a risk of accident. Use only two-section wheel studs that have been categorized as suitable for the respective wheel type by the manufacturer of the vehicle.

Recommended tire brands

For each tire size, the manufacturer of the vehicle recommends certain tire brands. The tire brands can be identified by a star on the tire sidewall.

New tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new; they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4133
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Retreaded tires

Warning

Retreaded tires can have different tire casing structures. With advanced age the service life can be limited. There is a risk of an accident. The manufacturer of your vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

The manufacturer of the vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

Winter tires

General information

Winter tires are recommended for operating on winter roads.

Although so-called all-season M+S tires provide better winter traction than summer tires, they usually do not provide the same level of performance as winter tires.

Maximum speed of winter tires

If the maximum speed of the vehicle is higher than the permissible speed for the winter tires, then attach a label showing the permissible maximum speed in the field of view. The label is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

With winter tires mounted, observe and do not exceed the permissible maximum speed.

Rotating wheels between axles

Warning

Rotating tires between the axles on vehicles with different tire sizes or rim sizes on the front and rear axles can cause damage to the tires and the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Do not rotate the tires between the axles on vehicles with different tire sizes or rim sizes on the front and rear axles.

Storing tires

Tire inflation pressure

Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the side wall of the tire.

Storage

- Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry and dark place.
- Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease, and solvents.
- Do not leave tires in plastic bags.
- Remove dirt from wheels or tires.

Repairing a flat tire

Safety measures

- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
- Switch on the hazard warning system.
- Secure the vehicle against rolling away by setting the parking brake.
- Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
- If necessary, set up a warning triangle at an appropriate distance.

Mobility System

Concept

With the Mobility System, minor tire damage can be sealed temporarily to enable continued travel. To accomplish this, sealant is pumped into the tires, which seals the damage from the inside.

General information

- Follow the instructions on using the Mobility System found on the compressor and sealant container.
- Use of the Mobility System may be ineffective if the tire puncture measures approx. 1/8 inches/4 mm or more.
- Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop if the tire cannot be made drivable.
- Do not remove foreign bodies that have penetrated the tire. Remove foreign objects only when they are visibly protruding from the tire.
- Pull the speed limit sticker off the sealant container and apply it to the steering wheel.
- The use of a sealant can damage the wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics checked and replaced at the next opportunity.
- The compressor can be used to check the tire inflation pressure.

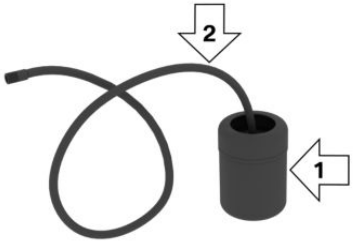
Overview

Storage

The Mobility System is located in the storage compartment under the cargo floor panel.

Fold up the cargo floor panel.

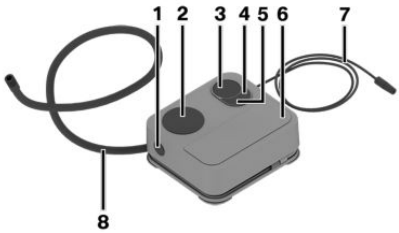
Sealant container



- Sealant container, arrow 1.
- Filling hose, arrow 2.

Observe use-by date on the sealant container.

Compressor



1 Sealant container unlocking
2 Sealant container holder
3 Tire pressure gage
4 Reduce tire inflation pressure button
5 On/off switch
6 Compressor
7 Connector/cable for socket
8 Connection hose

Safety measures

- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
- Switch on the hazard warning system.
- Secure the vehicle against rolling away by setting the parking brake.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4135
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

- Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
- If necessary, set up a warning triangle at an appropriate distance.

Filling the tire with sealant

Safety information

DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can enter into the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.

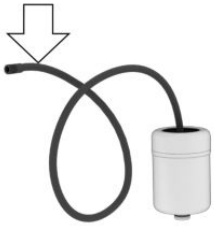
NOTICE

The compressor can overheat during extended operation. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not run the compressor for more than 10 minutes.

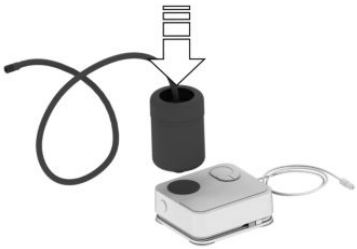
Filling

1. Shake the sealant container.

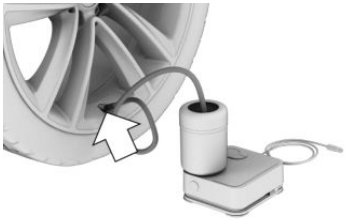
2. Pull filling hose completely out of the cover of the sealant container. Do not kink the hose.



3. Slide the sealant container into the holder on the compressor housing, ensuring that it engages audibly.



4. Screw the filling hose of the sealant container onto the tire valve of the nonworking wheel.



5. With the compressor switched off, insert the connector into the power socket in the vehicle interior.

6. With standby state or drive-ready state switched on, switch on the compressor.

Let the compressor run for max. 10 minutes to fill the tire with sealant and achieve a tire inflation pressure of approx. 2.0 bar.

While the tire is being filled with sealant, the tire inflation pressure may sporadically reach approx. 5 bar. Do not switch off the compressor at this point.

Checking and adjusting the tire inflation pressure

Checking

1. Switch off the compressor.
2. Read the tire inflation pressure on the tire pressure gage.

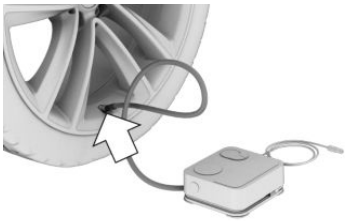
To continue the trip, a tire inflation pressure of at least 2 bar must be reached.

Removing and stowing the sealant container

1. Unscrew the filling hose of the sealant container from the tire valve.
2. Press the red unlocking device.
3. Remove the sealant container from the compressor.
4. Wrap and store the sealant container in suitable material to avoid dirtying the cargo area.

Minimum tire inflation pressure is not reached

1. Pull the connector out of the power socket in the vehicle interior.
2. Drive 33 ft/10 m forward and back to distribute the sealant in the tire.
3. Screw the connection hose of the compressor directly onto the tire valve stem.



4. Insert the connector into the power socket in the vehicle interior.

5. With standby state or drive-ready state switched on, switch on the compressor.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4137
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

When the tire pressure does not reach at least 2 bar, contact a manufacturer service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

When a tire pressure of at least 2 bar is reached, see Minimum tire inflation pressure is reached.

6. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
7. Pull the connector out of the power socket in the vehicle interior.
8. Stow the Mobility System in the vehicle.

Minimum tire inflation pressure is reached

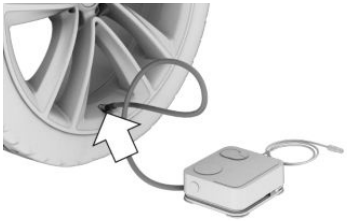
1. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
2. Pull the connector out of the power socket in the vehicle interior.
3. Stow the Mobility System in the vehicle.
4. Immediately drive approx. 5 miles/10 km to ensure that the sealant is evenly distributed in the tire.

   Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

   If possible, do not drive at speeds less than 12 mph/20 km/h.

Adjustment

1. Stop at a suitable location.
2. Screw the connection hose of the compressor directly onto the tire valve stem.



3. Insert the connector into the power socket in the vehicle interior.

4. Correct the tire inflation pressure to at least 2.0 bar:
   - ▷ Increase tire inflation pressure: with standby state or drive-ready state switched on, switch on the compressor.
   - ▷ Reduce tire inflation pressure: press the button on the compressor.
5. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
6. Pull the connector out of the power socket in the vehicle interior.
7. Stow the Mobility System in the vehicle.

Continuing the trip

Do not exceed the maximum permissible speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor again.

Replace the nonworking tire and the sealant container of the Mobility System promptly.

Additional information:

- ▷ Run-flat tires, refer to page 292.
- ▷ Tire pressure monitor, refer to page 286.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4138

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Tire chains

Safety information

Warning

With the mounting of snow chains on unsuitable tires, the snow chains can come into contact with vehicle parts. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Only mount snow chains on tires that are designated by their manufacturer as suitable for the use of snow chains.

Warning

Insufficiently tight snow chains may damage tires and vehicle components. There may be a risk of accident or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the snow chains are always sufficiently tight. Re-tighten as needed according to the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Fine-link tire chains

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends the use of fine-link tire chains. Certain types of fine-link tire chains have been tested by the manufacturer of the vehicle and recommended as road-safe and suitable.

Information regarding suitable tire chains is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Use

Use only in pairs on the rear wheels, equipped with the tires of the following size:

▷ 255/45 R 20.

Follow the tire chain manufacturer's instructions.

Do not initialize the Flat Tire Monitor after mounting tire chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

Do not reset the Tire Pressure Monitor after mounting tire chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

When driving with tire chains, briefly activate Dynamic Traction Control DTC to optimize the drive power.

Maximum speed with tire chains

Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h when using tire chains.

Tire pressure monitor

Concept

The system monitors tire inflation pressure in the four mounted tires. The system warns you if there is a loss of pressure in one or more tires.

General information

Sensors in the tire valves measure the tire inflation pressure and tire temperature.

Using the tire settings in iDrive, the system can automatically compare the specified target pressures with the actual tire inflation pressures.

If tires are being used that are not specified on the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle, such as tires with special approval, the system needs to be actively reset. The system will then take over the actual tire inflation pressures as the target pressures.

When operating the system, also note the information found in the Tire inflation pressure chapter.

Additional information:

Tire inflation pressure, refer to page 274.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4139
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Safety information

Warning

Incorrect entries in the tire settings can lead to incorrect target tire inflation pressure values. In this case, it cannot be guaranteed that the notification of a loss of tire inflation pressure will be reliable. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Ensure that the tire sizes of the mounted tires are displayed correctly and match the details on the tires and on the vehicle.

Functional requirements

The following conditions must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable flagging of a loss of tire inflation pressure is not assured:

- Every time a tire or wheel is changed, the correct details on the mounted tires must be entered in the tire settings.
- The Tire Pressure Monitor does not activate until after driving for a few minutes:
  - After a tire or wheel replacement.
  - After a reset, for tires with special approval.
  - After changing the tire setting.
- For tires with special approval:
  - After a tire or wheel replacement, a reset was performed with the correct tire inflation pressure.
  - After the tire inflation pressure was adjusted to a new value, a reset was performed.
- Wheels with wheel electronics.

Tire settings

General information

The tire sizes of the mounted tires can be gathered from the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle or directly on the tires.

The tire details do not need to be re-entered when the tire inflation pressure is corrected.

For summer and winter tires, the tire details entered last are stored. After a tire or wheel replacement, the settings of the tire sets used last can be selected.

Changing settings

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor"
4. "Tire settings"
5. "Tire selection"
6. "Manual"
7. "Tire type"
   - "Summer"
   - "Winter/All-year"
8. Select the tire type that is mounted on the rear axle.

   For tires with special approval:

   "Other tires/raceway"

   Observe further proceeding in the perform a reset section.
9. Select the maximum road speed that will be used with the tires.
10. "Save tire settings"

The measurement of the current tire inflation pressure is started. The measurement progress is displayed.

Status display

Current status

The system status can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g., whether or not the system is active.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor"

The current status is displayed.

Current tire inflation pressure

The current tire inflation pressure is displayed for each tire.

The current tire inflation pressures may change during driving operation or depending on the external temperature.

Current tire temperature

The current tire temperatures are displayed.

The current tire temperatures may change while driving or due to the external temperature.

Tire conditions

General information

Tire and system status are indicated by the color of the wheels and a text message on the Control Display.

Any existing messages may not be deleted if the target pressure is not reached after the tire inflation pressure is corrected.

All wheels green

- The system is active and bases warnings on the target pressures.
- For tires with special approval: the system is active and bases warnings on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

One to four yellow wheels

A flat tire or major drop in the tire inflation pressure has occurred in the indicated tires.

Gray wheels

It may not be possible to identify tire inflation pressure losses.

Possible causes:

- Malfunction.
- During tire inflation pressure measurement, after confirmation of the tire settings.
- For tires with special approval: a reset is performed for the system.

For tires with special approval: perform a reset

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor"
4. Make sure that correct tire settings have been made.

   Tire settings, refer to page 287.
5. Switch on drive-ready state and do not drive off.
6. Reset tire inflation pressure: "Perform reset".
7. Drive away.

The wheels are displayed in gray and the following is displayed "Resetting tire pressure…".

After a travel time of several minutes, the set tire inflation pressures are accepted as the target tire inflation pressures. The reset is completed automatically while driving.

After a successfully completed reset, the wheels on the Control Display are shown in green and the following is displayed: "Reset successful."

You may interrupt this trip at any time. When you continue the reset resumes automatically.

Messages: for tires without special approval

General information

A low tire inflation pressure may cause the DSC Dynamic Stability Control to be switched on.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving. Repair the flat tire or replace the wheel.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4141
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

If a tire inflation pressure check is required

Message

A symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	Inflation was not carried out according to specifications, for instance when the tire has not been sufficiently inflated or in the case of a natural steady tire pressure loss.

Measure

Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.

If the tire inflation pressure is too low

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a tire inflation pressure loss.

Measure

1. Reduce the vehicle speed. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph/130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, for instance at a gas station, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires and correct if necessary.

If there is a significant loss of tire inflation pressure

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with the affected tire appears in a Check Control message on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Read the description on What to do in case of a flat tire.

   Actions in the event of a flat tire, refer to page 290.

Messages: for tires with special approval

General information

A low tire inflation pressure may cause the DSC Dynamic Stability Control to be switched on.

Safety information

Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving. Repair the flat tire or replace the wheel.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4142
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

If a tire inflation pressure check is required

Message

A symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	Inflation was not carried out according to specifications, e.g., the tire has not been sufficiently inflated. The system has detected a wheel change, but no reset was done. The tire inflation pressure has fallen below the level of the last reset. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.
2. Perform a system reset.

If the tire inflation pressure is too low

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a tire inflation pressure loss. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Reduce the vehicle speed. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph/130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, for instance at a gas station, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires and correct if necessary.
3. Reset the system.

If there is a significant loss of tire inflation pressure

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with the affected tire appears in a Check Control message on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Read the description on What to do in case of a flat tire.

   Actions in the event of a flat tire, refer to page 290.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

1. Identify the damaged tire.

   Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure gage of a flat tire kit.

   For tires with special approval: if the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4143
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been reset. In this case, perform the reset.

If tire damage cannot be found, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

2. Repair the flat tire, e.g., with a flat tire kit or by changing the wheel.

   Use of sealant, for instance from the flat tire kit, may damage the wheel electronics. Have the electronics replaced at the next opportunity.

System limits

Temperature

The tire inflation pressure depends on the tire's temperature.

Driving or exposure to the sun will increase the tire's temperature, thus increasing the tire inflation pressure.

The tire inflation pressure is reduced when the tire temperature falls again.

These circumstances may cause a warning when temperatures fall very sharply.

Sudden tire pressure loss

The system cannot indicate sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances.

Failure performing a reset

Tires with special approval: the system will not function correctly if a reset was not performed, for example a flat tire may be indicated although the tire inflation pressures are correct.

Malfunction

Message

The yellow warning light flashes and is then illuminated continuously. A Check Control message is displayed. It may not be possible to identify tire pressure losses.

Measure

- A wheel without wheel electronics is mounted: have the wheels checked, if needed.
- A wheel without wheel electronics, such as an emergency wheel, is mounted: have the wheels checked, if needed.
- Interference caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- For tires with special approval: the system was unable to complete the reset. Perform a system reset again.

Malfunction: have the system checked.

Declaration according to NHTSA/ FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Each tire, including the spare (if provided) should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.) As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illu-

mination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale. Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Flat Tire Monitor FTM

Concept

The system detects tire inflation pressure loss on the basis of rotation speed differences between the individual wheels while driving.

In the event of a tire inflation pressure loss, the diameter and therefore the rotational speed of the corresponding wheel changes. The difference will be detected and reported as a flat tire.

The system does not measure the actual inflation pressure in the tires.

Functional requirements

The following conditions must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable flagging of a loss of tire inflation pressure is not assured:

- After a tire or wheel replacement, an initialization was performed with the correct tire inflation pressure.
- After the tire pressure was adjusted to a new value, an initialization was performed.

Status display

The current status of the Flat Tire Monitor FTM can be displayed, for instance whether the FTM is active.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) "Flat Tire Monitor"

The status is displayed.

Initialization required

An initialization must be performed in the following situations:

- After the tire inflation pressure has been adjusted.
- After a tire or wheel replacement.

Performing initialization

When initializing, the set tire inflation pressures serve as reference values in order to detect a flat tire. Initialization is started by confirming the tire inflation pressures.

Do not initialize the system when driving with tire chains.

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Flat Tire Monitor"
4. Switch on drive-ready state and do not drive off.
5. Start the initialization with: "Perform reset"
6. Drive away.

The initialization is completed while driving, which can be interrupted at any time.

The initialization automatically continues when driving resumes.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4145
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Messages

General information

When a flat tire is indicated, DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if needed.

Safety information

Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving. Repair the flat tire or replace the wheel.

Indication of a flat tire

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

1. Identify the damaged tire.

   To do this, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure gage of a flat tire kit.

   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

   If identification of flat tire damage is not possible, please contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
2. Repair the flat tire, e.g., with a flat tire kit or by changing the wheel.

System limits

The system could be delayed or malfunction in the following situations:

- A natural, even tire inflation pressure loss in all four tires will not be recognized. Therefore, check the tire inflation pressure regularly.
- Sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances cannot be recognized in advance.
- The system has not been initialized.
- When driving on a snowy or slippery road surface.
- Sporty driving style: spinning traction wheels, high lateral acceleration (drifting).
- When driving with snow chains.

Changing wheels/tires

General information

When a flat tire kit is used, an immediate wheel change when there is a loss of tire inflation pressure in the event of a flat tire is not always necessary.

If needed, the tools for changing wheels are available as accessories from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

DANGER

The vehicle jack is only provided for short-term lifting of the vehicle for wheel changes. Even if all safety measures are observed, there is a risk of the raised vehicle falling, if the vehicle jack tips over. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. If the vehicle is raised, do not lie under the vehicle and do not start the engine.

DANGER

Supports such as wooden blocks under the vehicle jack reduce the capacity of the vehicle jack to bear weight. They have the potential to exert too much strain on the vehicle jack, causing it to tip over and the vehicle to fall. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not place supports under the vehicle jack.

Warning

The jack, issued by the vehicle manufacturer, is provided in order to perform a wheel change in the event of a breakdown. The jack is not designed for frequent use; for example, changing from summer to winter tires. Using the jack frequently may cause it to become jammed or damaged. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only use the jack to attach an emergency or spare wheel in the event of a breakdown.

Warning

On soft, uneven or slippery ground, for example snow, ice, tiles, etc., the vehicle jack can slip away. There is a risk of injury. If possible, change the wheel on a flat, solid, and slip-resistant surface.

Warning

The vehicle jack is optimized for lifting the vehicle and for the jacking points on the vehicle only. There is a risk of injury. Do not lift any other vehicle or cargo using the vehicle jack.

Warning

When the vehicle jack is not inserted into the jacking point provided for this purpose, the vehicle may be damaged or the vehicle jack may slip when it is being cranked up. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. When cranking up the vehicle jack, ensure that it is inserted in the jacking point next to the wheel housing.

Warning

A vehicle that is raised on a vehicle jack may fall off of the jack if lateral forces are exerted on it. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. While the vehicle is raised, do not exert lateral forces on the vehicle or pull abruptly on the vehicle. Have a stuck wheel removed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Securing the vehicle against rolling

General information

The vehicle manufacturer recommends to additionally secure the vehicle against rolling away when changing a wheel.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4147
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

On a level surface

Place wheel chocks or other suitable objects in front and behind the wheel that is diagonal to the wheel to be changed.

On a slight downhill gradient

If you need to change a wheel on a slight downhill grade, place chocks and other suitable objects, for instance rocks, under the wheels of both the front and rear axles against the rolling direction.

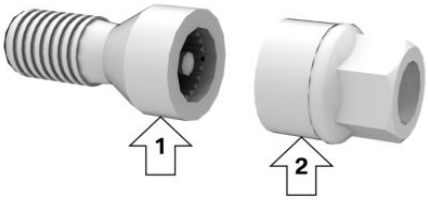
Lug bolt lock

Concept

The wheel lug bolts have a special coding. The lug bolts can only be released with the adapter which matches the coding.

Overview

The adapter of the lug bolt lock is in the onboard vehicle tool kit or in a storage compartment close to the onboard vehicle tool kit.



- Lug lock bolt, arrow 1.
- Adapter, arrow 2.

Unscrewing

1. Attach the adapter to the lug lock bolt.
2. Unscrew the lug lock bolt.
3. Remove the adapter after unscrewing the lug bolt.

Screwing on

1. Attach the adapter to the lug lock bolt. If necessary, turn the adapter until it fits on the lug lock bolt.
2. Screw on the lug lock bolt. The tightening torque is 140 Nm.
3. Remove the adapter and stow it after screwing on the lug bolt.

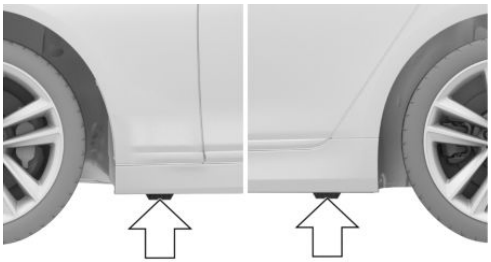
Preparing the vehicle

- Park the vehicle on solid and non-slip ground at a safe distance from traffic.
- Switch on the hazard warning system.
- Set the parking brake.
- Engage a gear or move the selector lever to position P.
- As soon as permitted by the traffic flow, have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4148
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

- Depending on the vehicle equipment, get wheel change tools and, if necessary, the emergency wheel from the vehicle.
- If necessary, set up a warning triangle or portable hazard warning light at an appropriate distance.
- Secure the vehicle additionally against rolling.
- Loosen the lug bolts a half turn.

Jacking points for the vehicle jack



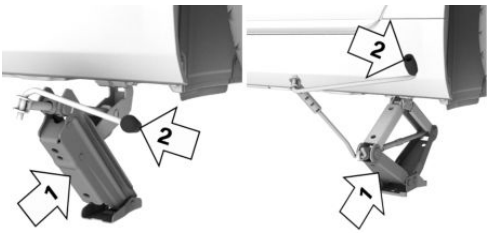
The jacking points for the vehicle jack are located at the indicated positions.

Jacking up the vehicle

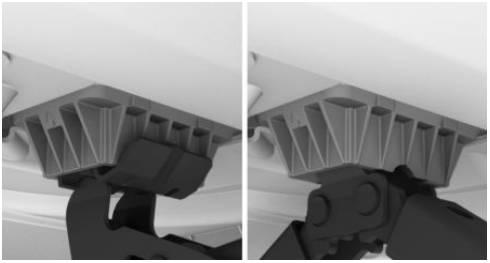
Warning

Hands and fingers can be jammed when using the vehicle jack. There is a risk of injury. Comply with the described hand position and do not change this position while using the vehicle jack.

1. Hold the vehicle jack with one hand, arrow 1, and grasp the vehicle jack crank or lever with your other hand, arrow 2.



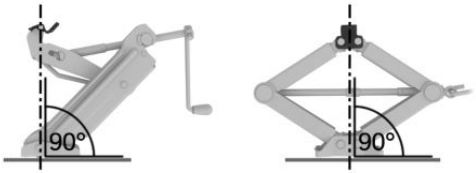
2. Insert the vehicle jack into the rectangular recess of the jacking point closest to the wheel to be changed.



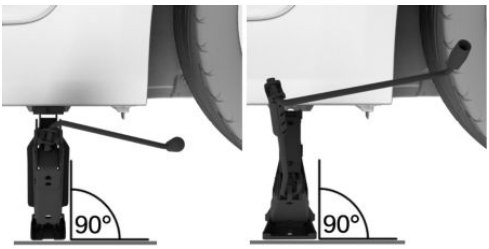
BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4149
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

3. Extend the vehicle jack by turning the vehicle jack crank or lever clockwise.

4. Take your hand away from the vehicle jack as soon as the vehicle jack is under load and continue turning the vehicle jack crank or lever with one hand.
5. Make sure that the vehicle jack foot stands vertically and at a right angle beneath the jacking point.



6. Make sure that the vehicle jack foot stands vertically and perpendicularly beneath the jacking point after extending the vehicle jack.



7. Crank the vehicle up, until the vehicle jack is with the entire surface on the ground and the relevant wheel is maximum 1.2 inches/3 cm above ground.

Mounting a wheel

Warning

Unsuitable wheel studs, such as single-section wheel studs, may loosen or come off. The wheel may come loose during driving. There is a risk of accident. Use only two-section wheel studs that have been categorized as suitable for the respective wheel type by the manufacturer of the vehicle.

Mount one emergency wheel only, as required.

1. Unscrew the lug bolts.
2. Remove the wheel.
3. Put the new wheel or emergency wheel on and screw in at least two lug bolts in a crosswise pattern until hand-tight.

   When non-original light-alloy wheels of the vehicle manufacturer are mounted, the accompanying lug bolts may have to be used as well.
4. Hand-tighten the remaining lug bolts and tighten all lug bolts well in a crosswise pattern.
5. Turn the vehicle jack crank counterclockwise to retract the vehicle jack and lower the vehicle.
6. Remove the vehicle jack and stow it securely.

After the wheel change

1. Tighten the lug bolts crosswise. The tightening torque is 101 lbs ft/140 Nm.
2. Stow the nonworking wheel in the cargo area, if necessary.

   The nonworking wheel cannot be stored under the cargo floor panel because of its size.
3. Check tire inflation pressure at the next opportunity and correct as needed.
4. Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

   Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor again.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4150
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

5. Check to make sure the lug bolts are tight with a calibrated torque wrench.
6. Have the damaged tire replaced at the nearest dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Emergency wheel

Concept

In the event of a flat tire, the emergency wheel can be used in place of the wheel with the defective tire. The emergency wheel is only intended for temporary use until the defective tire/wheel has been replaced.

General information

Mount one emergency wheel only.

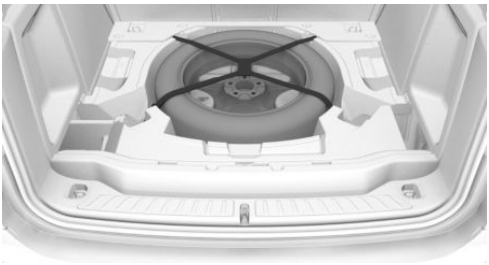
Also check the tire inflation pressure of the emergency wheel in the cargo area regularly, and correct it as needed.

Safety information

Warning

The emergency wheel has particular dimensions. When driving with an emergency wheel, changed driving properties may occur, for instance reduced lane stability when braking, longer braking distance, and changed self-steering properties in the limit area. There is a risk of accident. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

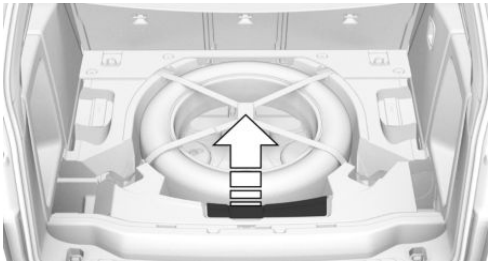
Overview



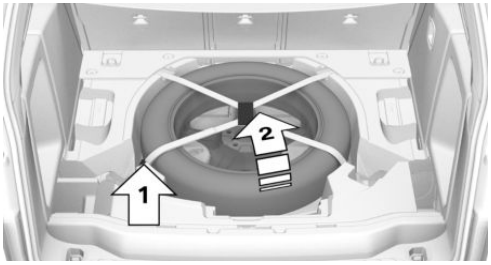
The emergency wheel and the wheel change tools are located in the cargo area under the cargo floor panel.

Removing the emergency wheel

1. Fold the rear part of the cargo floor panel forward.
2. Lift the cargo floor panel up and attach it to the folded-down multi-function hook.
3. Remove the cover.



4. Open the ratchet strap at the clasp, arrow 1.



5. Remove the emergency wheel from the storage well, arrow 2.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4151
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Inserting the emergency wheel

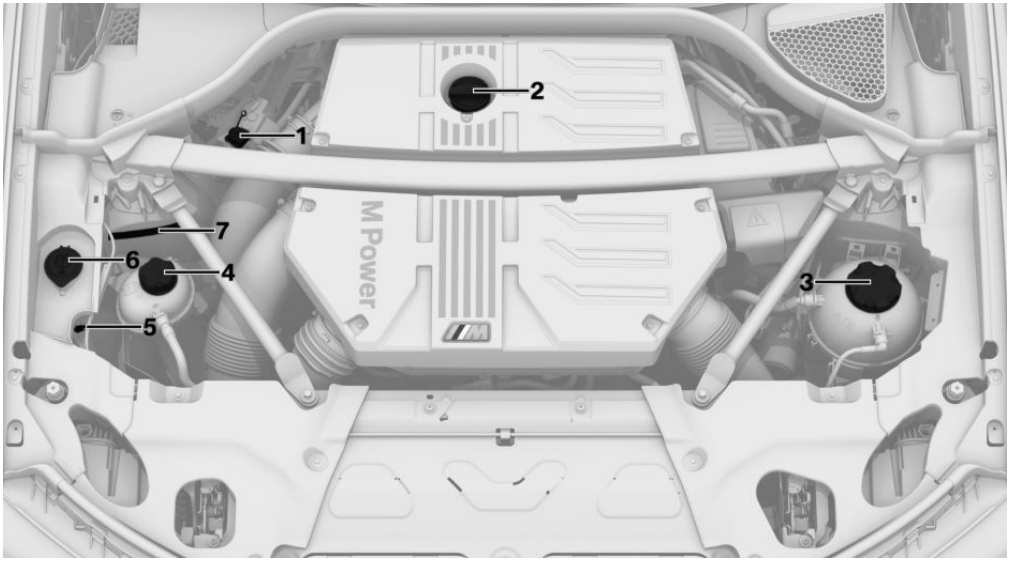
1. Place the emergency wheel in the storage well.
2. Tie the ratchet strap. Make sure that it is correctly and firmly seated.
3. Install the cover.
4. Lift the cargo floor panel up slightly and fold in the multi-function hook.
5. Lower the cargo floor panel and fold it toward the rear.

Engine compartment

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Overview



1 Jump-starting, positive battery terminal
2 Oil filler neck
3 Coolant reservoir, engine
4 Coolant reservoir, auxiliary cooling
5 Jump-starting, negative battery terminal
6 Filler neck for washer fluid
7 Vehicle identification number

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4153
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Hood

Safety information

Warning

Improperly executed work in the engine compartment can damage vehicle components and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of an accident and damage to property. Have work in the engine compartment performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

The engine compartment accommodates moving components. Certain components in the engine compartment can also move with the vehicle switched off, for instance the radiator fan. There is a risk of injury. Do not reach into the area of moving parts. Keep articles of clothing and hair away from moving parts.

Warning

There are protruding parts, for instance locking hook, on the inside of the hood. There is a risk of injury. If the hood is open, pay attention to protruding parts and keep clear of these areas.

Warning

An incorrectly locked hood can open while driving and restrict visibility. There is a risk of accident. Stop immediately and correctly close the hood.

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when opening and closing the hood. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of hood is clear during opening and closing.

NOTICE

Folded-away wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.

NOTICE

When the hood is closed, it must engage on both sides. Pressing again can damage the hood. There is a risk of damage to property. Open the hood again and then close it energetically. Avoid pressing again.

Opening

1. Pull lever, arrow 1.

   Hood is unlocked.

2. After the lever is released, pull the lever again, arrow 2.

   Hood can be opened.

3. Be careful of protruding parts on the hood.

Closing

Energetically close the hood from approx. 20 in/50 cm.

The hood must engage on both sides.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4155
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Operating materials

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Fuel recommendation

General information

Depending on the region, many gas stations sell fuel that has been customized to winter or summer conditions. Fuel that is available in winter, for instance helps make a cold start easier.

Gasoline

General information

For the best fuel efficiency, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.

Fuels with a maximum ethanol content of 25 %, i. e. E10 or E25, may be used for refueling.

Ethanol should meet the following quality standards:

US: ASTM 4806–xx

CAN: CGSB-3.511–xx

xx: comply with the current standard in each case.

Safety information

⚠ CAUTION

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in harmful engine deposits or damage. Additionally, problems relating to drivability, starting and stalling, especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude, may occur.

If drivability problems are encountered, we recommend switching to a high quality gasoline brand and a higher octane grade — AKI number — for a few tank fills. To avoid harmful engine deposits, it is highly recommended to purchase gasoline from Top Tier retailers.

Failure to comply with these recommendations may result in the need for unscheduled maintenance.

⚠ NOTICE

Even small quantities of the wrong fuel or wrong fuel additives can damage the fuel system and engine. Furthermore, the catalytic converter is permanently damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not refuel or add the following in the case of gasoline engines:

- Leaded gasoline.
- Metallic additives, for instance manganese or iron.

Do not press the Start/Stop button after refueling with the wrong fuel. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4156

NOTICE

Fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality can compromise engine function or cause engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not fill with fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality.

NOTICE

Incorrect fuels can damage the fuel system and the engine. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use fuels with a higher percentage of ethanol than recommended. Do not refuel with fuels containing methanol, e.g. M5 to M100.

Recommended fuel grade

BMW recommends AKI 93.

Refuel with this gasoline to achieve the rated performance and consumption values.

Minimum fuel grade

BMW recommends AKI 91.

If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI Rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high external temperatures. This has no effect on the engine life.

BMW M recommends Shell V-Power

Engine oil

General information

The engine oil consumption is dependent on your driving style and driving conditions.

Therefore, regularly check the engine oil level after refueling by taking a detailed measurement.

The engine oil consumption can increase in the following situations, for instance:

- Sporty driving style.
- Break-in of the engine.
- Idling of the engine.
- With use of engine oil types that are classified as not suitable.

Different Check Control messages appear on the Control Display depending on the engine oil level.

Safety information

NOTICE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Immediately add engine oil.

NOTICE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add too much engine oil. When too much engine oil is added, have the engine oil level corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Electronic oil measurement

General information

The electronic oil measurement has two measuring principles:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4157
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

- Monitoring.
- Detailed measurement.

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a sporty driving style, for instance when taking curves aggressively, regularly perform a detailed measurement.

Monitoring

Concept

The engine oil level is monitored electronically while driving and can be shown on the Control Display.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.

A red indicator light indicates that the engine oil pressure is too low.

Functional requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of normal driving.

Displaying the engine oil level

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"

The engine oil level is displayed.

System limits

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a sporty driving style, it may not be possible to calculate a measured value. In this case, the measured value for the last, sufficiently long trip is displayed.

Detailed measurement

Concept

The engine oil level is checked when the vehicle is stationary and displayed via a scale.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.

General information

During the measurement, the idle speed is increased somewhat.

Functional requirements

- Vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- Selector lever in selector lever position N or P and accelerator pedal not depressed.
- Engine is running and is at operating temperature.

Performing a detailed measurement

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"
4. "Engine oil measurement"
5. "Start measurement"

The engine oil level is checked and displayed via a scale.

Adding engine oil

General information

Only add engine oil when the message is displayed in the instrument cluster. The quantity to be added is indicated in the message shown on the Control Display.

Only add suitable types of engine oil.

Safely park the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before adding engine oil.

Take care not to add too much engine oil.

Safety information

Warning

Operating materials, for instance oils, greases, coolants, fuels, can contain harmful ingredients. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Follow the instructions on the containers. Avoid the contact of articles of clothing, skin or eyes with operating materials. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.

NOTICE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Immediately add engine oil.

NOTICE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add too much engine oil. When too much engine oil is added, have the engine oil level corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Overview

The oil filler neck is located in the engine compartment.

Additional information:

For an overview, refer to page 300.

Adding engine oil

1. Opening the hood.

   Opening, refer to page 301.
2. Open the lid counterclockwise.

3. Add engine oil.
4. Close the lid.

Engine oil types to add

General information

The engine oil quality is critical for the life of the engine.

Only add the types of engine oil which are listed.

Safety information

NOTICE

Oil additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use oil additives.

NOTICE

Incorrect engine oil can cause malfunctions in the engine or damage it. There is a risk of damage to property. When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has the correct oil rating.

Suitable engine oil types

Add engine oils that meet the following oil rating standards:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4159
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Oil rating
BMW Longlife-01 FE.

Alternative engine oil types

If an engine oil suitable for continuous use is not available, up to 1 US quart/liter of an engine oil with the following oil rating can be added:

Oil rating
API SL.
API SM.
API SN.

Viscosity grades

Viscosity grades
SAE 0W-20.
SAE 0W-30.

More information about suitable oil ratings and viscosity grades of engine oils can be requested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Engine oil change

NOTICE

Engine oil that is not changed in timely fashion can cause increased engine wear and thus engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. It is recommended that you do not exceed the service intervals indicated in the vehicle.

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop change the engine oil.

BMW recommends
Original BMW Engine Oil.

Coolant

General information

Coolant consists of water and additives.

Not all commercially available additives are suitable for the vehicle. Do not mix additives of different colors. Observe the water - additive mixing ratio of 50:50. Information about suitable additives is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Warning

With the engine hot and the cooling system open, coolant can escape and lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury. Only open the cooling system with the engine cooled down.

Warning

Additives are harmful and incorrect additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Do not allow additives to come into contact with skin, eyes or articles of clothing. Use suitable additives only.

Coolant level

General information

Depending on the motorization, there are up to two coolant reservoirs in the engine compartment. Check and top up the coolant levels on a regular basis.

The coolant level is indicated using minimum and maximum markings in the filler neck of the coolant reservoir.

Additional information:

For an overview, refer to page 300.

Checking the coolant level on the side markings

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Opening the hood.

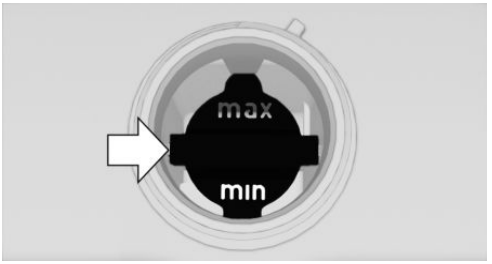
   Opening, refer to page 301.
3. The coolant level is correct if it lies between the minimum and maximum marks on the coolant reservoir.

Symbol	Meaning
▽	Maximum.
△	Minimum.

Checking the coolant level in the filler neck

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Opening the hood.

   Opening, refer to page 301.
3. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.
4. Open the coolant reservoir lid.
5. The coolant level is correct if it lies between the minimum and maximum marks in the filler neck.



6. Close the lid.

Adding coolant

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Opening the hood.

   Opening, refer to page 301.
3. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.
4. Open the coolant reservoir lid.
5. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to the specified level; do not overfill.
6. Close the lid.
7. Have the cause of the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.

Disposal

Comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant and coolant additives.

Washer fluid

General information

All washer nozzles are supplied from one reservoir.

Use a mixture of tap water and windshield washer concentrate. If desired, a windshield

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4161
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

washer concentrate containing antifreeze can be used.

Recommended minimum fill quantity:
0.2 US gal/1 liter.

Safety information

Warning

Some antifreeze agents can contain harmful substances and are flammable. There is a risk of fire and a risk of injury. Follow the instructions on the containers. Keep antifreeze away from ignition sources. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.

United States: the washer fluid mixture ratio is regulated by the U.S. EPA and many individual states; do not exceed the allowable washer fluid dilution ratio limits that apply. Follow the usage instructions on the washer fluid container.

Use of BMW's Windshield Washer Concentrate or the equivalent is recommended.

Warning

Washer fluid can ignite and catch fire on contact with hot engine parts. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Only add washer fluid when the engine is cooled down. Next, fully close the lid of the washer fluid reservoir.

NOTICE

Silicon-containing additives in the washer fluid for the water-repelling effect on the windows can lead to damage to the washing system. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add silicon-containing additives to the washer fluid.

NOTICE

Mixing different windshield washer concentrates or antifreeze can damage the washing system. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not mix different windshield washer concentrates or antifreeze. Follow the information and mixing ratios provided on the containers.

Overview

The washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment.

Malfunction

The use of undiluted windshield washer concentrate or alcohol-based antifreeze can lead to incorrect readings at temperatures below +5 °F/-15 °C.

Maintenance

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

BMW maintenance system

The maintenance system provides service notifications and thereby provides support in maintaining road safety and the operational reliability of the vehicle.

In some cases, scopes and intervals of the maintenance system may vary according to the country version. Replacement work, spare parts, fuels and lubricants, and wear materials are calculated separately. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Condition Based Service CBS

Concept

Sensors and special algorithms take into account the driving conditions of the vehicle. CBS uses these to provide maintenance recommendations.

The system makes it possible to adapt the amount of maintenance corresponding to your user profile.

General information

Information on service notifications can be displayed on the Control Display.

Additional information:

Service notifications, refer to page 145.

Service data in the vehicle key

Information on the service notifications is continuously stored in the vehicle key. The service center can read this data out and suggest a maintenance scope for the vehicle.

Therefore, hand the service advisor the vehicle key with which the vehicle was driven most recently.

Storage periods

Storage periods during which the vehicle battery was disconnected are not taken into account.

If this occurs, have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop update the time-dependent maintenance procedures, such as checking brake fluid and, if necessary, changing the engine oil and the microfilter/activated-charcoal filter.

Maintenance Manual and Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

Please consult your Maintenance Manual and Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4163
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

the performance of service and maintenance work.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that maintenance and repair be performed by a service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Records of regular maintenance and repair work should be retained.

Socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis

General information

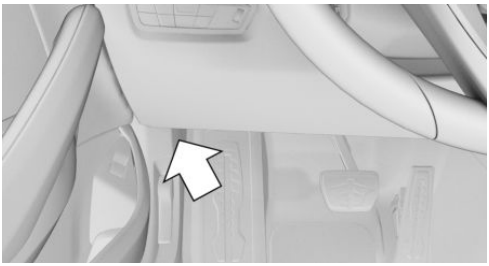
Devices connected to the OBD socket trigger the alarm system when the vehicle is locked. Remove any devices connected at the OBD socket before locking the vehicle.

Safety information

NOTICE

The socket for Onboard Diagnosis is an intricate component intended to be used in conjunction with specialized equipment to check the vehicle's primary emissions system. Improper use of the socket for Onboard Diagnosis, or contact with the socket for Onboard Diagnosis for other than its intended purpose, can cause vehicle malfunctions and creates risks of personal and property damage. Given the foregoing, the manufacture of your vehicle strongly recommends that access to the socket for Onboard Diagnosis be limited to a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or other persons that have the specialized training and equipment for purposes of properly utilizing the socket for Onboard Diagnosis.

Position



There is an OBD socket on the driver's side for checking the primary components in the vehicle's emissions.

Emissions

- The warning light lights up:

  Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

- The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:

  This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

  Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4164

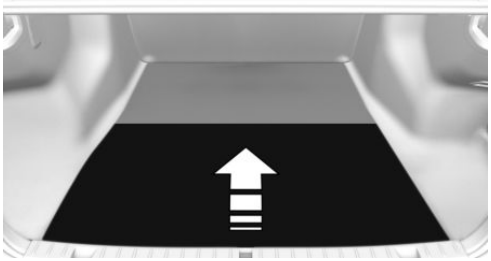
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Replacing components

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Vehicle tool kit



The onboard vehicle tool kit is located under the cargo floor panel.

Wiper blades

Safety information

NOTICE

The window may sustain damage if the wiper falls onto it without the wiper blade installed. There is a risk of damage to property. Hold the wiper firmly when changing the wiper blade. Do not fold or switch on the wiper without a wiper blade installed.

NOTICE

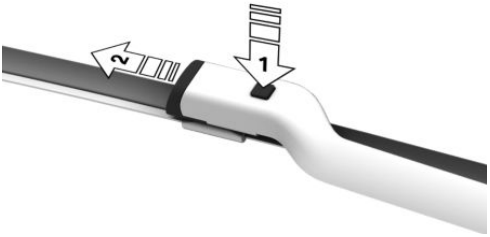
Folded-away wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.

Replacing

1. To change the wiper blades, fold up the wiper arms.

   Fold-away position of the wipers, refer to page 128.
2. Lift the wiper off of the windshield and hold.

3. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull out the wiper blade, arrow 2.



BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4165
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

4. Insert the new wiper blade and press it on until it you hear it snap into the holder.
5. Fold down the wipers.

Lights and bulbs

General information

Lights and bulbs make an essential contribution to vehicle safety.

All headlights and lights are made using LED or laser technology.

Some items of equipment use light-emitting diodes installed behind a cover as a light source. These light-emitting diodes are related to conventional lasers and are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you let a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop perform the work in case of a malfunction.

Safety information

Warning

Bulbs can get hot during operation. Contact with the bulbs can cause burns. There is a risk of injury. Only change bulbs after they have cooled off.

Warning

Work on switched-on lighting systems can cause short circuits. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. When working on the lighting system, switch off the lights in question. If necessary, heed the bulb manufacturer's instructions.

Warning

Focused laser light can irritate or permanently damage the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that the work on the lighting system including bulb replacement be performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

Intensive brightness can irritate or damage the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. Do not look directly into the headlights or other light sources. Do not remove the LED covers.

NOTICE

Dirty bulbs have a reduced service life. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not hold new bulbs with your bare hands. Use a clean cloth or something similar, or hold the bulb by its base.

Headlight glass

Condensation can form on the inside of the headlight glass in cool or humid weather. When driving with the lights switched on, the condensation evaporates after a short time. The headlight glass does not need to be changed.

If despite driving with the headlights switched on, increasing humidity forms, for instance water droplets in the light, have the headlights checked.

Tail lights

General information

All tail lights feature LED technology.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4166
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

In the case of a malfunction, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Vehicle battery

General information

The battery is maintenance-free.

More information about the battery can be requested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

⚠ DANGER

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.

⚠ Warning

Vehicle batteries that are not compatible can damage vehicle systems and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of an accident and damage to property. Only vehicle batteries that are compatible with your vehicle type should be installed in your vehicle. Information on compatible vehicle batteries is available at your dealer's service center.

Register the battery to the vehicle

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you have a service center or another qualified service center or repair shop register the vehicle battery to the vehicle after the battery has been replaced. Once the battery has been registered again, all comfort features will be available without restriction and any Check Control messages displayed which relate to comfort features will disappear.

Charging the battery

General information

Make sure that the battery is always sufficiently charged to guarantee that the battery remains usable for its full service life.

A discharged battery is indicated by a red indicator light.

Charge the battery when acceleration is insufficient.

The following circumstances can have a negative effect on the performance of the battery:

- Frequent short-distance drives.
- The vehicle is not used for more than a month.

Safety information

⚠ NOTICE

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery can work with high voltages and currents, which means that the 12 volt electrical system can be overloaded or damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.

Charging the battery

Charge the battery only when the engine is off and via the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.

Additional information:

Starting aid terminals, refer to page 320.

Power failure

After a power loss, some equipment needs to be newly initialized or individual settings updated, for example:

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4167
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

- With Memory function: store the positions again.
- Time: update.
- Date: update.
- Glass sunroof: initialize the system.

Disposing of old batteries

Have old batteries disposed of by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take them to a collection point.

Maintain the filled battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Secure the battery so that it does not tip over during transport.

Fuses

General information

The fuses are located at different places in the vehicle.

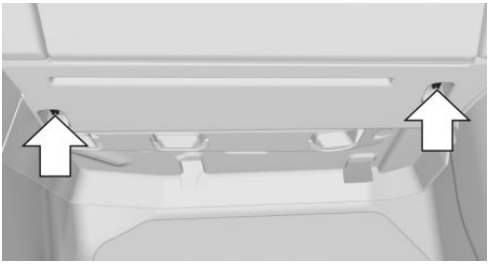
Safety information

Warning

Incorrect and repaired fuses can overload electrical lines and components. There is a risk of fire. Never attempt to repair a blown fuse. Do not replace a nonworking fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating.

In the car's interior

The fuses are located in the car's interior in the front passenger floor area behind a cover.

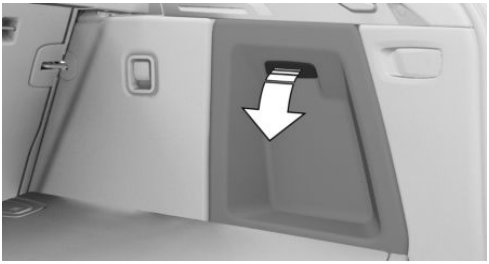


Loosen fasteners, arrows, and open cover.

The fuse box is located on the front right.

In the cargo area

The fuses are located in the cargo area on the right side behind a cover.



Open the cover on the right side trim.

The fuse box may be located behind the sound insulation.

Information on the fuse types and locations, as well as the positions of any other fuse boxes, is available on the Internet: www.bmw.com/fusecard.

Where applicable, information on the fuse types and locations is also found on a separate sheet in the fuse box.

Additional fuse boxes

Additional fuse boxes are located in the vehicle. In the case of a malfunction, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Replacing fuses

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop replace the fuses.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4169
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Breakdown assistance

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Hazard warning flashers

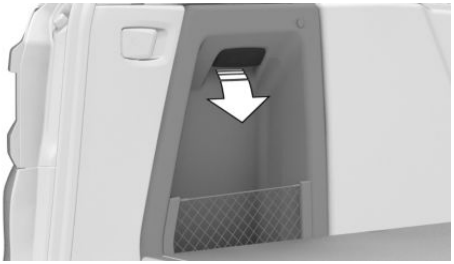
The button is located in the center console.

The red light in the button flashes when the hazard warning flashers are activated.

Warning triangle

The warning triangle is located behind the left-hand cover in the cargo area.

1. Open the cover on the left side trim.



2. Open the bracket and take the warning triangle out in the direction of the car's interior.

First-aid kit

General information

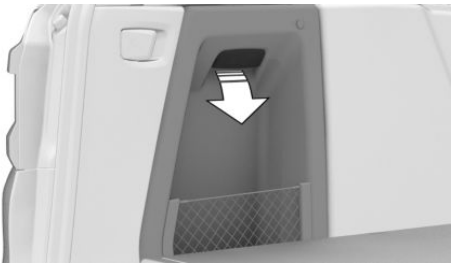
Some of the articles have a limited service life.

Check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace any expired items promptly.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4170

Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Storage



The first-aid kit is located behind the left-hand cover in the cargo area.

To open, pull on the handle.

BMW Roadside Assistance

Concept

Contact the BMW Group Roadside Assistance if assistance is needed in the event of a breakdown.

General information

In the event of a breakdown, data on the vehicle's condition is transmitted to the BMW Roadside Assistance.

There are various ways of contacting BMW Roadside Assistance.

- Via a Check Control message.

  Supplementary text messages, refer to page 139.
- Calling with a mobile phone.
- Via the BMW Connected app.

Functional requirements

- Active ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- Cellular network reception.
- Standby state is switched on.

Starting manually

If the vehicle is equipped with Teleservices, support is offered through Teleservice Diagnosis.

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "BMW Assist"
4. If necessary, "BMW Roadside Assistance"

   A voice connection is established.

Teleservice Diagnosis

Teleservice Diagnosis enables the wireless transmission of detailed vehicle data that is important for vehicle diagnosis. This data is transmitted automatically. It may be necessary to approve this on the Control Display.

Teleservice Help

Depending on the country, Teleservice Help enables an in-depth diagnosis of the vehicle by BMW Roadside Assistance via wireless transmission.

You can launch Teleservice Help by requesting it through BMW Roadside Assistance.

1. Park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Set the parking brake.
3. Control Display is switched on.
4. Confirm Teleservice Help.

BMW Accident Assistance

Concept

BMW Group Accident Assistance can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of an accident.

General information

If the vehicle sensors detect a minor to moderately severe accident, which did not trigger any airbags, a Check Control message appears on

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4171
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

the instrument cluster. In addition, a text message appears on the Control Display.

When BMW Accident Assistance is activated, data on the vehicle's condition is sent to BMW.

Functional requirements

- Active ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- Cellular network reception.
- Standby state is switched on.

Starting BMW Accident Assistance

If an accident is detected automatically

A text message relating to BMW Accident Assistance appears on the Control Display.

The connection can be established directly:

"Contact accident assistance"

The Check Control message for BMW Accident Assistance can also be called up from the stored Check Control messages for a certain length of time.

Additional information:

Check Control, refer to page 138.

Starting manually

BMW Accident Assistance can also be contacted independently of the automatic accident detection function.

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "BMW Assist"
4. "BMW Accident Assistance"

   Follow the displays on the Control Display. A voice connection is established.

Emergency Request

Intelligent emergency call

Concept

In case of an emergency, an Emergency Request can be triggered automatically by the system or manually.

General information

Only press the SOS button in an emergency.

The Intelligent Assist system establishes a connection with the BMW Response Center.

For technical reasons, the Emergency Request cannot be guaranteed under unfavorable conditions.

Overview

SOS button.

Functional requirements

- Standby state is switched on.
- The Assist system is functional.
- If the vehicle is equipped with intelligent emergency call: the SIM card integrated in the vehicle has been activated.

Automatic triggering

Under certain conditions, for instance if the airbags trigger, an Emergency Request is automatically initiated immediately after an accident of corresponding severity. Automatic Collision Noti-

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4172
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

fication is not affected by pressing the SOS button.

Manual triggering

1. Tap the cover.
2. Press and hold the SOS button until the LED in the area of the button illuminates green.

▷ The LED is illuminated green when an Emergency Request has been initiated.

If a cancel prompt appears on the Control Display, the Emergency Request can be aborted.

If the situation allows, wait in your vehicle until the voice connection has been established.

▷ The LED flashes green when a connection to the BMW Response Center has been established.

The BMW Response Center then makes contact with the occupants of the vehicle and initiates further steps to help.

Even if you are unable to respond, the BMW Response Center can take further steps to help you under certain circumstances.

For this purpose, data that serves to determine the necessary rescue measures, for instance the current position of the vehicle when it can be determined, is transmitted to the BMW Response Center.

Even if the BMW Response Center is no longer heard through the loudspeakers, the BMW Response Center may still be able to hear the occupants of the vehicle.

The BMW Response Center ends the Emergency Request.

Jump-starting

General information

If the battery is discharged, the engine can be started using the battery of another vehicle and two jumper cables. Only use jumper cables with fully insulated clamp handles.

Safety information

⚠ DANGER

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.

⚠ Warning

If the jumper cables are connected in the incorrect order, sparking may occur. There is a risk of injury. Pay attention to the correct order during connection.

⚠ NOTICE

In the case of body contact between the two vehicles, a short circuit can occur during jump-starting. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that no body contact occurs.

Preparation

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts. The voltage information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any electrical consumers in both vehicles.

Starting aid terminals

The starting aid terminal in the engine compartment acts as the positive battery terminal.

A special connection on the body in the engine compartment acts as the negative battery terminal.

Additional information:

Overview of engine compartment, refer to page 300.

Open the cover of the positive battery terminal.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4173
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Connecting the cables

Before you begin, switch off all unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers, such as the radio, on the assisting and receiving vehicle.

1. Open the cover of the starting aid terminal.
2. Attach one terminal clamp of the positive jumper cable to the positive battery terminal, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the terminal clamp on the other end of the cable to the positive battery terminal, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one terminal clamp of the negative jumper cable to the negative battery terminal, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of assisting vehicle.
5. Attach the second terminal clamp to the negative battery terminal, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

Starting the engine

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.

1. Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run for several minutes at an increased idle speed.
2. Start the engine of the vehicle that is to be started in the usual way.

   If the first starting attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before making another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.
3. Let both engines run for several minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables in the reverse order.

Check the battery and recharge, if needed.

Tow-starting and towing

Safety information

Warning

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

M Steptronic Sport transmission: transporting the vehicle

General information

The vehicle is not permitted to be towed.

Safety information

NOTICE

The vehicle can be damaged when towing the vehicle with a single lifted axle. There is a risk of damage to property. The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.

NOTICE

The vehicle can become damaged when lifting and securing it.

There is a risk of damage to property.

- ▷ Lift the vehicle using suitable means.
- ▷ Do not lift or secure the vehicle by its tow fitting, body parts, or suspension parts.

Pushing the vehicle

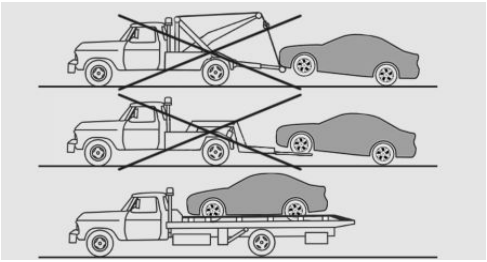
To remove a broken-down vehicle from the danger area, it can be pushed for a short distance.

Additional information:

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 130.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4174

Tow truck



The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.

Towing other vehicles

General information

Switch on the hazard warning system, depending on local regulations.

If the electrical system has failed, clearly identify the vehicle being towed by placing a sign or a warning triangle in the rear window.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

If the approved gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is lighter than the vehicle to be towed, the tow fitting can tear off or it will not be possible to control the vehicle's response. There is a risk of accident. Make sure that the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is heavier than the vehicle to be towed.

⚠ NOTICE

If the tow bar or tow rope is attached incorrectly, damage to other vehicle parts can occur. There is a risk of damage to property. Correctly attach the tow bar or tow rope to the tow fitting.

Tow bar

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles.

Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an offset angle, please follow the following:

- Maneuvering capability is limited going around corners.
- The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is secured with an offset.

Tow rope

Observe the following notes when using the tow rope:

- Use nylon ropes or straps, which will enable the vehicle to be towed without jerking.
- Make sure the tow rope is not twisted when fastening.
- Check the fastening of the tow fitting and tow rope in regular intervals.
- Do not exceed a towing speed of 30 mph/50 km/h.
- Do not exceed a towing distance of 3 miles/5 km.
- When starting to tow the vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

Tow fitting

General information

The screw-in tow fitting should always be carried in the vehicle.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4175
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

The tow fitting can be screwed in at the front or rear of the vehicle.

The tow fitting is found in the onboard vehicle tool kit.

- Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle and screw it all the way in.
- Use the tow fitting for towing on paved roads only.
- Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, for instance do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting.
- Check the fastening of the tow fitting in regular intervals.

Additional information:

Onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 312.

Safety information

NOTICE

If the tow fitting is not used as intended, there may be damage to the vehicle or to the tow fitting. There is a risk of damage to property. Follow the notes on using the tow fitting.

Screw thread for tow fitting

Press on the mark on the edge of the cover to push it out.

For covers which have an opening instead of a marking, pull the cover out by the opening.

Tow-starting

Do not tow-start the vehicle.

Start the engine by jump-starting, if possible.

Have the reasons for the starting difficulties corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Jump-starting, refer to page 320.

Care

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Washing the vehicle

General information

Regularly remove foreign objects such as leaves in the area below the windshield when the hood is raised.

Wash your vehicle frequently, particularly in winter. Intense soiling and road salt can damage the vehicle.

Steam blaster and high-pressure washer

Safety information

NOTICE

When cleaning with high-pressure washers, components can be damaged due to the pressure or temperatures being too high. There is a risk of damage to property. Maintain sufficient distance and do not spray too long continuously. Follow the operating instructions for the high-pressure washer.

Distances and temperature

- Maximum temperature: 140 °F/60 °C.
- Minimum distance from sensors, cameras, seals: 12 inches/30 cm.
- Minimum distance from glass sunroof: 31.5 in/80 cm.

Automatic washing systems or car washes

Safety information

NOTICE

Improper use of automatic washing systems or car washes can cause damage to the vehicle. There is a risk of damage to property. Follow the following instructions:

- Give preference to cloth car washes or those that use soft brushes in order to avoid paint damage.
- Do not drive through a car wash with guide rails higher than 4 in/10 cm to avoid damage to the chassis.
- Observe the tire width of the guide rail to avoid damage to tires and rims.
- Fold in exterior mirrors to avoid damage to the exterior mirrors.
- Deactivate the wiper and, if necessary, rain sensor to avoid damage to the wiper system.

Driving out of a car wash

Ensure that the vehicle key is in the car.

Switch on drive-ready state.

Additional information:

Drive-ready state, refer to page 40.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4177
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Headlights

Do not rub wet headlights dry and do not use abrasive or acidic cleaning agents.

Soak areas that have been dirtied, for instance from insects, with shampoo and wash off with water.

Thaw ice with de-icing spray; do not use an ice scraper.

After washing the vehicle

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them; otherwise, braking action can be reduced. The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Completely remove all residues on the windows, to minimize loss of visibility due to smearing and to reduce wiper noises and wiper blade wear.

Vehicle care

Vehicle care products

General information

BMW recommends using vehicle care and cleaning products from BMW. Suitable care products are available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

⚠ Warning

Cleansers can contain substances that are dangerous and harmful to your health. There is a risk of injury. When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows. Only use products intended for cleaning vehicles. Follow the instructions on the container.

Vehicle paint

General information

Regular care contributes to driving safety and value retention. Environmental influences in areas with elevated air pollution or natural contaminants, such as tree resin or pollen can affect the vehicle's paintwork. Tailor the frequency and extent of your vehicle care to these influences.

Corrosive substances such as spilled fuel, oil, grease or bird droppings, must be removed immediately to prevent the finish from being altered or discolored.

Matte finish

Only use cleaning and care products suitable for vehicles with matte finish.

Leather care

Remove dust from the leather regularly, using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Otherwise, particles of dust and road grime chafe in pores and folds, and lead to increased wear and premature degradation of the leather surface.

To guard against discoloration, such as from clothing, clean leather and provide leather care roughly every two months.

Clean light-colored leather more frequently because soiling on such surfaces is substantially more visible.

Use leather care products; otherwise, dirt and grease will gradually break down the protective layer of the leather surface.

Upholstery material care

General information

Vacuum the upholstery regularly with a vacuum cleaner.

If upholstery is very dirty, for instance with beverage stains, use a soft sponge or microfiber cloth with a suitable interior cleaner.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4178
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Clean the upholstery down to the seams using large sweeping motions. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.

Safety information

NOTICE

Open Velcro® fasteners on articles of clothing can damage the seat covers. There is a risk of damage to property. Ensure that any Velcro® fasteners are closed.

Caring for special components

Light-alloy wheels

When cleaning the vehicle, use only neutral wheel cleaners having a pH value from 5 to 9. Do not use abrasive cleaning agents or steam jets above 140 °F/60 °C. Follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Aggressive, acidic or alkaline cleaning agents can destroy the protective layer of adjacent components, such as the brake disc.

After cleaning, apply the brakes briefly to dry them. The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Chrome surfaces

Carefully clean Chrome surfaces, especially in case of exposure to road salt, with plenty of water and added cleanser as needed.

Rubber components

Environmental influences can cause surface soiling of rubber parts and a loss of gloss. Use only water and suitable cleaning agents for cleaning.

Treat especially worn rubber parts with rubber care agents at regular intervals. When cleaning rubber seals, do not use any silicon-containing vehicle care products in order to avoid damage or noises.

Fine wood parts

Clean fine wood facing and fine wood components only with a moist rag. Then dry with a soft cloth.

Kenaf

Only treat parts made of Kenaf fibers using suitable care products.

Plastic components

NOTICE

Cleaning agents that contain alcohol or solvents, such as lacquer thinners, heavy-duty grease removers, fuel and such, can damage plastic parts. There is a risk of damage to property, among other potential damage. Clean with a microfiber cloth. Dampen the cloth lightly with water, if needed.

Clean with a microfiber cloth.

Dampen the cloth lightly with water, if needed.

Do not soak the roofliner.

Safety belts

Warning

Chemical cleansers can destroy the safety belt webbing. Missing protective effect of the safety belts. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Use only a mild soapy solution for cleaning the safety belts.

Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus have a negative impact on safety.

Use only a mild soapy solution for cleaning the installed belt straps.

Safety belts should only be allowed to retract if they are dry.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4179
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Carpets and floor mats

Warning

Objects in the driver's floor area can limit the pedal distance or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's floor area. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, for instance for cleaning.

The floor mats can be removed from the car's interior for cleaning.

If the floor carpets are very dirty, clean with a microfiber cloth and water or a textile cleaner. To prevent matting of the carpet, rub back and forth in the direction of travel only.

Sensors and camera lenses

To clean sensors and camera lenses, use a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass detergent.

Displays, screens, and protective glass of the Head-up Display

NOTICE

Chemical cleansers, moisture or fluids of any kind can damage the surface of displays and screens. There is a risk of damage to property. Clean with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth.

NOTICE

The surface of displays can be damaged with improper cleaning. There is a risk of damage to property. Avoid pressure that is too high and do not use any scratching materials.

Clean with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth.

Clean the protective glass of the Head-up Display using a microfiber cloth and commercially available dish-washing soap.

Long-term vehicle storage

When the vehicle is shut down for longer than three months, special measures must be taken. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Technical data

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features and functions that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

General information

The technical data and specifications in the Owner's Manual are used as guidance values. The vehicle-specific data can deviate from this, for instance due to the selected special equipment, country version or country-specific measurement method. Detailed values can be found in the approval documents, on labels on the vehicle or can be obtained from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Dimensions

The dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment or country-specific measurement method.

The specified heights do not take into account attached parts, for instance a roof antenna, roof racks or spoiler. The heights can deviate, for instance due to the selected special equipment, tires, load and chassis version.

BMW X4 M		
Width with mirrors	in/mm	84.2/2,138
Width without mirrors	in/mm	75.9/1,927
Height	in/mm	63.8/1,620
Length	in/mm	187.5/4,762
Wheelbase	in/mm	112.8/2,864
Smallest turning radius diam.	ft/m	41.3/12.6

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4181
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Weights

BMW X4 M		
Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs/kg	5,509/2,499
Load	lbs/kg	840/381
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	2,610/1,184
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	3,139/1,424

Capacities

BMW X4 M		
Fuel tank, approx.	US gal/liters	17.2/65.0

Observe further information on fuel quality, refer to page 303.

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4182

Appendix

General information

Any updates to the Owner's Manual of the vehicle are listed here.

Updates made after the editorial deadline

The following chapters were updated in the printed version of the Owner's Manual after the editorial deadline for the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle had closed:

- Operation: light: daytime driving lights.
- Driving tips: things to remember when driving: roof-mounted luggage rack: safety instructions.

License Texts and Certifications

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4183

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4184

Everything from A to Z

Index

0-9

3D View, see Surround View 218

A

ABS Antilock Braking System 186
Acceleration Assistant, see Launch Control 134
Accessories and parts 8
Accident prevention, see Active Protection 183
ACC, see Active Cruise Control 197
Activated charcoal filter 235
Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function ACC 197
Active damping control, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension 229
Active Guard Plus, see Intelligent Safety 164
Active Guard, see Intelligent Safety 164
Active M differential 192
Active PDC, see Emergency brake function 210
Active Protection 183
Active seat ventilation 111
Adaptive brake assistant 186
Adaptive brake lights, see Brake force display 183
Adaptive Light Control 156
Adaptive M chassis/suspension 229
Additives, engine oil types 306
Adjusting contents, iDrive 47
Adjustments, steering wheel 109
Airbags 160
Airbags, indicator and warning light 162
Air circulation, see Recirculated-air mode 234
air conditioning, climate 233
Air distribution, manual 234
Air drying, see air conditioning 233
Air flow, automatic climate control 234
Air outlets, see Ventilation 235
Air pressure, tires 274
Air quality 231
Alarm system 94
Alarm, unintentional 95
All-season tires, see Winter tires 281
All-wheel drive, see M xDrive 192
Amazon Alexa Car Integration 53
Ambient air package 239
Ambient light 159
Android Auto, connection to the vehicle 74
Android Auto preparation, connection to the vehicle 74
Android Auto preparation, smartphone integration 74
Antifreeze, see Washer fluid 308
Antilock Braking System ABS 186
Anti-slip control, see DSC 189
Anti-theft protection, lug bolt lock 295
Apple CarPlay preparation, connection to the vehicle 74
Apple CarPlay preparation, smartphone integration 74
Approach control warning with City braking function 165
Apps, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Ashtray 246
Assistance when driving off, see Drive-off assistant 186
Assistance with breakdown 317
AUC Automatic Recirculating Air Control 234
Audio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
AUTO H button, see Parking brake 122
Automatic activation, see Individual activation 111
Automatic car wash 324
Automatic climate control 231
Automatic Curb Monitor, exterior mirror 108
Automatic deactivation, front-seat passenger airbags 163
Automatic headlight control 154

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4185
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Automatic Hold, see Parking brake 122
Automatic locking 93
Automatic Recirculating Air Control AUC 234
Automatic time setting 59
Automatic transmission, see M Steptronic Sport transmission 128
Automatic unlocking 93
Automating routines, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 55
AUTO program, automatic climate control 233
AUTO program, intensity 233
Auto Start/Stop function 119
Average consumption, see Trip data 148
Axle loads, approved 329

B

Backrest curvature, see Lumbar support 102
Backrest, seats 100
Backrest tilt 101
Backrest, width 102
Bad road trips 266
Bandages, see First-aid kit 317
Bar for tow-starting/towing 322
Battery, disposing of 315
Battery, vehicle 314
Being towed, see Tow-starting and towing 321
Belts, see Safety belts 102
Beverage holder, see Cup holders 255
Blind spot collision warning 176
Blocking, power window, see Safety switch 97
Bluetooth connection 71
Blu-ray, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
BMW Accident Assistance 318
BMW Assist, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
BMW display key 81
BMW display key, malfunction 85
BMW Gesture Control 56
BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 54
BMW maintenance system 310
BMW M technology 264
BMW Roadside Assistance 318
Bottle holder, see Cup holders 255
Brake assistant 186
Brake assistant, adaptive 186
Brake discs, see Brake system 265
Brake force display 183
Brake lights, brake force display 183
Brake pads, see Brake system 265
Brake system 265
Braking, information 267
Breakdown assistance 317
Breaking in 265
Break recommendation, see Fatigue alert 184
Brightness, Control Display 61
Buttons on the steering wheel 30
Button, SOS, see Intelligent emergency call 319
Button, Start/Stop 119
Bypassing, see Jump-starting 320

C

Cable for tow-starting/towing 322
California Proposition 65 Warning 8
Call, gesture control 56
Camera-based assistance systems, see Intelligent Safety 164
Camera lenses, care 327
Camera, rearview camera, see Surround View 218
Camera, rearview camera, without Surround View 211
Camera, see Surround View 218
Cameras, see Sensors of the vehicle 35
CANCEL button, Active Cruise Control 197
CANCEL button, cruise control 195
Can holder, see Cup holders 255
Care 324
Care, Head-up Display 327
Care, light-alloy wheels 326
Care of displays, screens 327
Care, vehicle 325
Cargo area 257
Cargo area, enlarging 261
Cargo position, rear seat backrest 261
Cargo, stowing and securing 258
Cargo straps, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 258
Caring Car, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 55

Car key, see Vehicle key 77
Carpet, care 327
CarPlay, connection to the vehicle 74
Car seats, see Transporting children safely 113
Cartridge replacement, see Ambient air package 239
Car wash 324
Car wash, automatic 324
Catalytic converter, see Hot exhaust gas system 266
CBS Condition Based Service 310
Cell phone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Center armrest, front 255
Center console 32
Central Information Display (CID), see Control Display 45
Central locking system 87
Central screen, see Control Display 45
Changes, technical, see For Your Own Safety 8
Changing parts 312
Changing wheels 293
Changing, wheels and tires 280
Charging smartphone, see Wireless charging tray 249
Charging tray for smartphones, see Wireless charging tray 249
Chassis/suspension, electronic, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension 229
Chassis number, see Vehicle identification number 12
Check Control 138
Checking the engine oil level electronically 304
Children, seating position 113
Children, transporting safely 113
Child restraint system LATCH 115
Child restraint systems, mounting 114
Child restraint systems, see Transporting children safely 113
Child safety locks 118
Child seat, mounting 114
Child seats, see Transporting children safely 113
Chrome-plated surfaces, care 326
Chrome surfaces, care 326
Cigarette lighter 247
Cigarette lighter, front 247
Cleaning displays, screens 327
Cleaning, Head-up Display 327
Clearance, water 267
Climate control 231
Clothes hooks 256
Combination switch, see Turn signals 125
Combination switch, see Washer/wiper system 125
Comfort Access 87
Communication, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Compact wheel, see Emergency wheel 298
Comparison of entries, see Entry comparison 43
Compartments, doors 254
Compatible devices, see Suitable devices 69
Compound brake 264
Compressor 282
Concierge Service, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Condensation water under the parked vehicle 268
Condensation, windshield 235
Condition Based Service CBS 310
Confirmation signal from the vehicle 93
ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Connecting device 68
Connecting electrical devices, see Sockets 247
Connecting, mobile devices 68
Connections, Screen Mirroring 73
Consumption display, widget in the instrument cluster 138
Consumption, see Current consumption 138
Consumption, see Trip data 148
Contacts, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Container for washer fluid 308
Control Display 45
Control Display, brightness 61
Controller 45
Control systems, driving stability 186
Convenient closing, vehicle key 79
Convenient opening, vehicle key 78
Coolant 307
Coolant level 308

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4187

Coolant temperature, see Engine temperature 144
Cooling, maximum 233
Cooling system 307
Cornering light 156
Corrosion on brake discs 268
Cosmetic mirror 246
Cross traffic warning 226
Cruise control 195
Cruise control, active with Stop&Go function 197
Cruise control, see Active Cruise Control 197
Cruise control with distance control, see Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function 197
Cruise control without distance control, see Cruise control 195
Cruising range 145
Cup holder 255
Cup holder, front 255
Cup holder, rear 255
Current consumption 138
Customer service, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

D

Damage, tires 279
Damping control 229
Damping control active, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension 229
Data memory 10
Data protection, settings 63
Data, see Deleting personal data 63
Data, technical 328
Date 59
Daytime running lights 156
DCC, see Cruise control 195
Defrosting, see Defrosting windshield 235
Defrosting, windshield 235
Deleting personal data 63
Departure schedule, see Pre-ventilation 237
Departure time, parked-car ventilation 238
Device list 69
Diagnosis connection 311
Differential lock 192
Dimensions 328
Dimmable exterior mirrors 108
Dimmable interior mirror 108
Direct dial buttons, see Programmable memory buttons 44
Direction indicator, see Turn signals 125
Display, iDrive 42
Display in the windshield, see Head-up Display 150
Display key 81
Display key, malfunction 85
Display key, see BMW display key 81
Display lighting, see Instrument lighting 158
Display, notifications, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 54
Displays 137
Displays and symbols 7
Disposal, coolant 308
Disposal, vehicle battery 315
Distance control, see PDC 207
Door opening angle, Surround View 220
Downhill control, see HDC Hill Descent Control 193
Drivelogic 133
Drive mode 131
Drive-off assistant 186
Drive-off assistant, see DSC 189
Driver assistance, driving, see Intelligent Safety 164
Driver assistance, parking, see Parking assistance systems 207
Driver assistance, see Intelligent Safety 164
Driver assistance systems 195
Drive-ready state, engine start 40
Drive-ready state, idle state, and standby state 39
Driver profiles 64
Driver profile, setup 64
Driver profiles, welcome screen 64
Driving 119
Driving Assistant, see Intelligent Safety 164
Driving comfort 229
Driving Dynamics Control 135
Driving instructions, breaking in 265
Driving notes, general 266
Driving on bad roads 266
Driving program, see Drivelogic 133

Driving stability control systems 186
Driving through water 267
Driving tips 266
DSC Dynamic Stability Control 189
Dynamic damping, see Adaptive M chassis/ suspension 229
Dynamic Stability Control DSC 189

E

Efficiency display, widget in the instrument cluster 138
Electronic oil measurement 304
Electronic Stability Program ESP, see DSC 189
E-mail, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Emergency brake function when parking, Active PDC 210
Emergency braking, see PostCrash - iBrake 184
Emergency Request 319
Emergency service, see BMW Accident Assistance 318
Emergency service, see BMW Roadside Assistance 318
Emergency unlocking, fuel filler flap 273
Emergency unlocking, transmission lock 135
Emergency wheel 298
Energy recovery 138
Energy savings, see Gear shift indicator 146
Engine, automatic Start/Stop function 119
Engine compartment 300
Engine coolant 307
Engine oil, adding 305
Engine oil change 307
Engine oil filler neck 305
Engine oil temperature 144
Engine oil types to add 306
Engine start, see Drive-ready state 40
Engine start, see Jump-starting 320
Engine temperature 144
Entering a destination, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Entering an address, navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Entertainment, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Entertainment, selection list in the instrument cluster 148
Entry comparison 43
Equipment, interior 243
Error indicators, see Check Control 138
ESP Electronic Stability Program, see DSC 189
Evasion Assistant 169
Exchanging, wheels and tires 280
Exhaust gas system 266
Exhaust gas system sound 136
Exhaustion warner 184
Exhaust, see Exhaust gas system 266
Experience Modes, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 55
Exterior lighting during unlocking 78
Exterior lighting with the vehicle locked 79
Exterior mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor 108
Exterior mirror, automatic dimming feature 108
Exterior mirrors 107
Exterior mirrors, malfunction 108
External start, see Jump-starting 320
External temperature 144
Eyelet for towing 322
Eyes, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 258

F

Factory settings, see Reset vehicle configuration 61
Failure message, see Check Control 138
False alarm, see Avoiding unintentional alarms 95
Fan, see Air flow 234
Fastening safety belts, see Safety belts 102
Fatigue alert 184
Fault indicators, see Check Control 138
Filler neck for engine oil 305
Fine wood parts, care 326
First-aid kit 317
First Steps, see Setup Wizard 64
Flat tire, changing wheels 293
Flat tire, Flat Tire Monitor TPM 292
Flat tire message, FTM 293
Flat tire message, Tire Pressure Monitor 289

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4189
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Flat Tire Monitor TPM 292
Flat tire, repairing 281
Flat tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor 286
Flat tire warning light, FTM 293
Flat tire warning light, see Tire Pressure Monitor 289
Flooding, driving through 267
Floor carpet, care 327
Floor mats, care 327
Fold-away position, wiper 128
Foot brake 267
Forward collision mitigation, see Intelligent Safety 164
For Your Own Safety 8
Fragrance cartridge, see Ambient air package 239
Fragrance, see Ambient air package 239
Fragrancing, see Ambient air package 239
Front airbags 160
Front collision mitigation 165
Front collision mitigation, see Approach Control Warning 165
Front collision mitigation, see Pedestrian Warning 170
Front fog lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 313
Front lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 313
Front-seat passenger airbags, automatic deactivation 163
Front-seat passenger airbags, indicator light 163
Front seats 100
Fuel 303
Fuel cap 272
Fuel filler flap 272
Fuel filler flap, unlocking manually 273
Fuel gauge 143
Fuel quality 303
Fuel recommendation 303
Fuel tank, see Filling capacity 329
Fuses 315

G

Garage door opener, see Integrated Universal Remote Control 243
Gasoline 303
Gear change 132
Gear change, M Steptronic Sport transmission 128
Gear shift indicator 146
General driving notes 266
General settings 59
Gesture Control 56
Gestures, see BMW Gesture Control 56
Glare shield, see Sun visor 246
Glass sunroof, electric 97
Glass sunroof, initialize the system 99
Glove compartment 253
GPS, navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Gross vehicle weight, approved 329

H

Handbrake, see Parking brake 122
Hand-held transmitter, alternating code 244
Hands-free device, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Hazard warning flashers 317
HDC Hill Descent Control 193
Head airbags 161
Headlight control, automatic 154
Headlight flasher 125
Headlight glass 313
Headlights, care 325
Headlights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 313
Head restraints and seats 100
Head restraints, front 104
Head restraints, rear 106
Head-up Display 150
Head-up Display, care 327
Head-up Display, M view 151
Head-up Display, standard view 151
Head-up Display, store position, see Memory function 109
Heated steering wheel 109
Heated steering wheel, individual activation 111
Heavy cargo, stowing 258
Height, vehicle 328
High-beam Assistant 157
High beams 125

High beams/low beams, see High-beam Assistant 157
High-performance engine 264
Hill Descent Control HDC 193
Hills 268
Hill start assistant, see Drive-off assistant 186
Holder for beverages, see Cup holders 255
HomeLink, see Integrated Universal Remote Control 243
Homepage, see Internet 6
Hood 301
Horn 30
Hot exhaust gas system 266
Humidity in the headlight, see Headlight glass 313
Hydroplaning 267

I

iBrake - PostCrash 184
Ice warning, see External temperature 144
Icy roads, see External temperature 144
Identification marks, tires 277
Identification number, see Vehicle identification number 12
Idle state, standby state, and drive-ready state 39
iDrive 42
ID transmitter, see Vehicle key 77
Ignition key, see Vehicle key 77
Indicator/warning lights 139
Individual activation 111
Individual air distribution 234
Individual settings, see Driver profiles 64
Individual settings, see M Setup 186
Inductive charging, smartphone, see Wireless charging tray 249
Inflation pressure, tires 274
Inflation pressure warning TPM, tires 292
Information 6
Information window, Control Display 61
Initialization, Flat Tire Monitor FTM 292
Input, iDrive 42
Instrument cluster 137
Instrument lighting 158
Integrated key 86
Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle 14
Integrated Universal Remote Control 243
Intelligent emergency call 319
Intelligent Personal Assistant 54
Intelligent Safety 164
Intended use 8
Intensity, AUTO program 233
Interior equipment 243
Interior lights 158
Interior lights during unlocking 78
Interior lights with the vehicle locked 79
Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature 108
Interior mirrors 108
Interior motion sensor 95
Internet connection 72
Internet hotspot 72
Internet page 6
Interval display, see Service notifications 145
Ionization, see Ambient air package 239

J

Jacking points for the vehicle jack 296
Jam protection system, glass sunroof 98
Jam protection system, windows 96
Joystick, M Steptronic Sport transmission 128
Jump-starting 320
Jump-starting terminals 320

K

Kenaf, care 326
Keyless Go, see Comfort Access 87
Key, mechanical 86
Key, see BMW display key 81
Key, see Vehicle key 77
Kickdown, M Steptronic Sport transmission 128
Knee airbag 161

L

Label on recommended tires 280
Lane control assistant with active side collision protection, see Side collision mitigation 179
Lane departure warning 173
Lane lines, Surround View 220

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4191
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20

Lane threshold, warning 173
Language, set 60
Lashing eyes in the cargo area 258
LATCH child restraint fixing system 115
Launch Control 134
Leather care 325
LED headlights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 313
LED light carpet, see Welcome light 155
Length, vehicle 328
Letters and numbers, entering 43
Light-alloy wheels, care 326
Light control, adaptive 156
Lighter, cigarettes 247
Lighting 154
Light in the exterior mirror, see Blind spot collision warning 176
Light in the exterior mirror, see Cross traffic warning 226
Light replacement, see Lights and bulbs 313
Lights 154
Lights and bulbs 313
Light switch 154
List, instrument cluster, see Selection lists 148
List of all messages 61
Load 258
Loading 257
Loading position 261
Loading the cargo area, see Stowing cargo 258
Locking, automatic 93
Locking, see Opening and Closing 77
Locking, settings 93
Locking, vehicle key 78
Lock, lug bolts 295
Low beams 155
Low beams, automatic, see High-beam Assistant 157
Lower back support 102
Low Speed Assistant 133
Lug bolt lock 295
Luggage rack, see Roof-mounted luggage rack 269
Lumbar support 102

M

Maintenance 310
Maintenance recommendations, see Condition Based Service CBS 310
Maintenance, see Service notifications 145
Maintenance system, BMW 310
Make-up mirror 246
Malfunction, BMW display key 85
Malfunction, vehicle key 80
Managing devices 69
Manual brake, see Parking brake 122
Manual control, air distribution 234
Manual control, air flow 234
Manual mode, M Steptronic Sport transmission 128
Manual operation, fuel filler flap 273
Map update, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Matt paint, care 325
Maximum cooling 233
Maximum speed display, see Speed Limit Info 146
Maximum speed, winter tires 281
M chassis/suspension, adaptive, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension 229
M Compound brake 264
M differential, active 192
MDM, M Dynamic Mode 190
M Dynamic Mode MDM 190
Measuring units 60
Media of the Owner's Manual 14
Medical supplies, see First-aid kit 317
Memory function 109
M Engine Dynamics Control 135
Menu, instrument cluster, see Selection lists 148
Menus, operating, iDrive 42
Messages 61
Messages, see Check Control 138
Microfilter 235
Minimum tread depth, tires 279
Mobile communication devices in the vehicle 267
Mobile devices, managing 69
Mobile phone, connecting 68

Mobile phone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Mobile Service, see BMW Accident Assistance 318
Mobile Service, see BMW Roadside Assistance 318
Mobility System 281
MODE button, see Active Cruise Control 197
Modifications, technical, see For Your Own Safety 8
Monitor, see Control Display 45
Mounting of child restraint systems 114
MP3 player, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
M Setup 186
M Steptronic Sport transmission 128
M technology 264
Multi-function hook 259
Multifunction steering wheel, buttons 30
Multimedia, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
M view, Head-up Display 151
M xDrive 192

N

Navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Neck restraints, front, see Head restraints front 104
Neck restraints, rear, see Head restraints rear 106
Net, cargo area 260
Neutral cleaner, see Light-alloy wheels, care 326
New wheels and tires 280
No-touch opening and closing of the tailgate 89
Nylon rope for tow-starting/towing 322

O

OBD Onboard Diagnosis 311
Obstacle marking, rearview camera 212
Obstacle marking, Surround View 220
Octane rating, see Recommended fuel grade 304
Odometer, see Trip data 148
Oil, adding 305
Oil change 307
Oil filler neck 305
Oil level, checking electronically 304
Oil service interval, see Service notifications 145
Oil types to add, engine 306
Onboard Diagnosis OBD 311
Onboard literature, printed 14
Onboard vehicle tool kit 312
On-call service, see BMW Accident Assistance 318
On-call service, see BMW Roadside Assistance 318
Opening and closing 77
Operating concept, iDrive 42
Operation via voice 50
Optional equipment, see Vehicle equipment 7
Outside air, see AUC 234
Overheating of the engine, see Engine temperature 144
Overwintering, see Long-term vehicle storage 327
Owner's Manual, printed 14
Owner's Manual via voice operation, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 55

P

Paint, car care 325
Pairing, mobile devices, see Connections 68
Panic alarm, see Panic mode 94
Panic mode 94
Panorama View 223
Panoramic glass sunroof, see Glass sunroof 97
Park Distance Control PDC 207
Parking aid, see PDC 207
Parking assistance systems 207
Parking assistant 214
Parking assistant Plus, see Surround View 218
Parking, Automatic Hold, see Parking brake 122
Parking brake 122
Parking lights 155
Parts and accessories 8
Passenger's side exterior mirror, tilt down, see Automatic Curb Monitor 108
Pathway lighting 156

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4193

Pathway lighting, switching on 80
Pathway lines, rearview camera 212
Payload, technical data 329
PDC Park Distance Control 207
Performance Control 230
Performance display, see Sport displays 150
Personal data, deleting 63
Personal profile, see Driver profiles 64
Personal settings 63
Person warning with braking function 170
Phone, connecting 68
Plastic parts, care 326
Possible gestures, gesture control 56
PostCrash - iBrake 184
Power failure 314
Power windows 96
Pressure test tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor 286
Pressure, tires 274
Pre-ventilation 237
Printed onboard literature 14
Profiles, see Driver profiles 64
Programmable memory buttons, iDrive 44
Protective function, glass sunroof, see Jam protection system 98
Protective function, windows, see Jam protection system 96
Push-and-turn reel, see Controller 45

R

Racing track 269
Radar sensors, see Sensors of the vehicle 35
Radiator fluid 307
Radio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Rain sensor 126
Rear automatic climate control 236
Rear collision preparation 182
Rear collision warning, see Rear collision preparation 182
Rear lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 313
Rear seat backrests, folding down 261
Rearview camera, see Surround View 218
Rearview camera, without Surround View 211
Rear-view mirrors, exterior 107
Rear-view mirrors, interior 108
Rear window defroster 235
Recirculated-air filter, see Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter 235
Recirculated-air mode 234
Recommended fuel grade 304
Recommended tire brands 280
Refueling 272
Remote 3D View 225
Remote control for audio, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Remote control, see Vehicle key 77
Remote control, universal 243
Remote services, app, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Replacing bulbs, see Lights and bulbs 313
Replacing light diodes, see Lights and bulbs 313
Replacing parts 312
Replacing the battery, vehicle key 80
Replacing, wheels and tires 280
Reporting safety malfunctions 13
RES CNCL button, Active Cruise Control ACC 197
RES CNCL button, cruise control 195
Reserve warning, see Range 145
Reset settings, vehicle 61
Reset, Tire Pressure Monitor 288
Reset, vehicle configuration 61
Reset, vehicle settings 61
RESUME button, Active Cruise Control 197
RESUME button, cruise control 195
Retreaded tires 281
Roadside parking lights 155
Rolling code hand-held transmitter 244
RON recommended fuel grade 304
Roofliner 34
Roof-mounted luggage rack 269
Rope for tow-starting/towing 322
Route, navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
RTTI, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Rubber components, care 326

S

Safe braking 267
Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat 104
Safety belt reminder for the rear seats 104
Safety belts 102
Safety belts, care 326
Safety locks, doors and windows 118
Safety package, see Active Protection 183
Safety switch, windows 97
Safety systems, see Airbags 160
Safety systems, see Intelligent Safety 164
Saving fuel 270
Screen Mirroring, connection 73
Screen, see Control Display 45
Screwdriver, see Onboard vehicle tool kit 312
Sealant, see Mobility System 281
Seat heating 110
Seat heating, individual activation 111
Seating position for children 113
Seats and head restraints 100
Seats, front 100
Seat ventilation, individual activation 111
Securing, cargo 258
Selection list in the instrument cluster 148
Selector lever 129
Selector lever, M Steptronic Sport transmission 128
Selector lever position 129
Sensors, care 327
Sensors of the vehicle 35
Sequential mode 131
Service and warranty 9
Service Center, see BMW Accident Assistance 318
Service Center, see BMW Roadside Assistance 318
Service notifications 145
Service notifications, see Condition Based Service CBS 310
Services, ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Servotronic 188
SET button, Active Cruise Control 197
SET button, cruise control 195
Set speed, see Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function 197
Setting, Control Display 61
Settings, general 59
Settings, locking/unlocking 93
Settings, M Setup 186
Settings, seats and head restraints 100
Setup Wizard 64
Shift paddles on the steering wheel 128
Shift point indicator 152
Side airbag 160
Side collision mitigation 179
Side parking aid, Surround View 220
Side parking aid without Surround View 211
Side protection aid, Surround View, see Side parking aid 220
Side protection aid without Surround View, see Side parking aid 211
Signaling, horn 30
Signals when unlocking, see Confirmation signals from the vehicle 93
Sitting safely 100
Ski and snowboard bag 263
Slide/tilt glass roof, see Glass sunroof 97
Smallest turning circle, vehicle 328
Smartphone, connecting 68
Smartphone Integration, Android Auto preparation 74
Smartphone Integration, Apple CarPlay preparation 74
Smartphone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Smartphone, using via voice activation 53
Smoker's package 246
SMS, see Short messages, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis 311
Sockets, electrical devices 247
SOS button, see Intelligent emergency call 319
Sound control 136
Sound, exhaust gas system 136
Sound output, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Spare tire, see Emergency wheel 298

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4195

Speech recognition 50
Speed limit display, see Speed Limit Info 146
Speed Limit Info 146
Speed warning 60
Sport chassis/suspension, see Adaptive M chassis/suspension 229
Sport displays 150
Sport program, M Steptronic Sport transmission 128
Stability control systems 186
Standard equipment, see Vehicle equipment 7
Standard view, Head-up Display 151
Standby state, idle state and drive-ready state 39
Start/stop, automatic function 119
Start/Stop button 119
Starting aid terminals 320
Starting, see Drive-ready state 40
Starting the engine, see Drive-ready state 40
Stations, AM/FM, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Status control display, tires 288
Status information, iDrive 43
Status of Owner's Manual 7
Status, vehicle 150
Steering and Lane Control Assistant 204
Steering assistance 188
Steering Assistant, see Steering and Lane Control Assistant 204
Steering column adjustment 109
Steering wheel, adjusting 109
Steering wheel, buttons 30
Storage compartment, cargo area 260
Storage compartment, center console 254
Storage compartments 253
Storage compartments, locations 253
Storage, tires 281
Store Mirror position, see Memory function 109
Store seat position, see Memory function 109
Store steering wheel position, see Memory function 109
Storing the vehicle 327
Stowing, cargo 258
Straps for cargo, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 258
Suitable devices 69
Suitable mobile phones 69
Summer tires, tread 278
Sun visor 246
Supplementary Owner's Manuals 14
Supplementary text message 139
Surround View 218
Surround View, gesture control 56
Switches, see Cockpit 30
Switching off the engine, see Drive-ready state 40
Symbols and displays 7
SYNC program, automatic climate control 235

T

Tachometer 143
Tailgate, opening and closing with no-touch activation 89
Tailgate, vehicle key 79
Tail lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 313
Tank capacity 329
Technical changes, see For Your Own Safety 8
Technical data 328
Technology, BMW M 264
Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Telephone, selection list in the instrument cluster 148
Teleservices, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Temperature, automatic climate control 232
Temperature display, see External temperature 144
Temperature, engine oil 144
Tensioning straps, cargo area 260
Text message, Check Control 139
Theft alarm system, see Alarm system 94
Thigh support 101
Third-party provider, voice assistant 53
Through-loading system 261
Tilt alarm sensor 95
Tilt, backrest 101
Tilt down, passenger's side exterior mirror, see Automatic Curb Monitor 108
Time 59
Time setting, automatic 59

Tire brands, recommended 280
Tire chains 286
Tire damage 279
Tire data, widget in the instrument cluster 138
Tire identification marks 277
Tire inflation pressure 274
Tire inflation pressure monitoring, see TPM 292
Tire inflation pressure monitor TPM 292
Tire pressure 274
Tire Pressure Monitor 286
Tire Pressure Monitor, reset 288
Tire repair kit, see Mobility System 281
Tires and wheels 274
Tires, changing 280
Tire sealant, see Mobility System 281
Tire settings 287
Tire tread 278
Title, gesture control 56
Tone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Tool 312
Top View, see Surround View 218
Torque display, see Sport displays 150
Touchpad, Controller 48
Tow bar 322
Tow fitting 322
Towing 321
Tow rope 322
Tow-starting 321
TPM Flat Tire Monitor 292
Traffic bulletins, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Transmission lock, electronic unlocking 135
Transmission, see M Steptronic Sport transmission 128
Transporting children safely 113
Tread, tires 278
Trip computer, see Trip data 148
Trip data 148
Triple turn signal activation 125
Trip odometer, see Trip data 148
Trunk, see Cargo area 257
Turning circle line, Surround View 220
Turning circle, vehicle 328
Turning radius lines, rearview camera 212
Turn signal, indicator light 142
Turn signal, replacing bulbs, see Lights and bulbs 313
Turn signals, high beams, headlight flasher 125

U

Ultrasonic sensors, see Sensors of the vehicle 35
Unintentional alarm, avoiding 95
Units, see Measuring units 60
Universal remote control 243
Unlock button, M Steptronic Sport transmission 128
Unlocking, automatic 93
Unlocking, see Opening and Closing 77
Unlocking, settings 93
Unlocking, vehicle key 78
Unpaved roads, cross-country trips 266
Updates made after the editorial deadline 7
Upholstery material care 325
USB connection 75
USB port, position in vehicle 248
Used battery, disposing of 315
Use, intended 8

V

Vanity mirror 246
Vehicle battery 314
Vehicle breakdown, see Breakdown assistance 317
Vehicle, breaking in 265
Vehicle care 325
Vehicle care products 325
Vehicle configuration, reset 61
Vehicle equipment 7
Vehicle identification number 12
Vehicle key 77
Vehicle key, additional 80
Vehicle key, integrated key 86
Vehicle key, loss 80
Vehicle key, malfunction 80
Vehicle key, replacing the battery 80
Vehicle key with display, malfunction 85
Vehicle key with display, see BMW display key 81

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4197

Vehicle paint, care 325
Vehicle status 150
Vehicle storage 327
Vehicle washing 324
Ventilation 235
Ventilation, see Pre-ventilation 237
Venting, see Ventilation 235
Vent, see Ventilation 235
Video, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
VIN, see Vehicle identification number 12
Voice activation, see BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 54
Voice activation system 50
Voice assistant, third-party provider 53
Voice command response 50
Voice control 50
Voice control, gesture control 56
Volume, gesture control 56

W

Wake word 50
Warning/indicator lights 139
Warning against cross traffic 226
Warning light in the exterior mirror, see Blind spot collision warning 176
Warning light in the exterior mirror, see Cross traffic warning 226
Warning messages, see Check Control 138
Warning triangle 317
Warranty 8
Washer fluid 308
Washer nozzles, windshield 127
Washer system 125
Washing the vehicle 324
Washing, vehicle 324
Wash view, Surround View 220
Water on roads 267
Water, see Condensation water under the parked vehicle 268
Website, see Internet 6
Weights 329
Welcome light during unlocking 78
Welcome lights 155
Welcome screen, driver profiles 64
Wheel base, vehicle 328
Wheels and tires 274
Wheels, changing 280
Widgets, iDrive 43
Widgets, instrument cluster 138
Width, vehicle 328
Wi-Fi connection 72
WiFi connection, see WLAN connection 72
Wi-Fi hotspot 72
Window, defrosting 235
Windows, powered 96
Windshield, defrosting 235
Windshield washer fluid, see Washer fluid 308
Windshield washer nozzles 127
Windshield wiper, see Wiper system 125
Winter storage, see Long-term vehicle storage 327
Winter tires 281
Winter tires, tread 279
Wiper blades, replacing 312
Wiper fluid, see Washer fluid 308
Wiper, fold-away position 128
Wiper, see Washer/wiper system 125
Wiper system 125
Wireless charging, smartphone, see Wireless charging tray 249
Wireless charging tray for smartphones 249
WLAN connection 72
Wood parts, care 326
Wordmatch principle, see Entry comparison 43
Wrench, see Onboard vehicle tool kit 312

01405A1F5F7 ue

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4199

California Proposition 65 Warning

For vehicles sold in California:

California Proposition 65 Warning

WARNING

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

The Ultimate Driving Machine®

BMW DRIVER'S GUIDE APP.

Your customized information about the vehicle in an app.
Optimized for smartphones & tablets. Can be used offline.

Download on the App Store

GET IT ON Google Play

01405A1F5F7 DE

BMW NHTSA PE21-020-4201
Online Edition for Part no. 01405A1F5F7 - X/20